

Run-Time Library (RTL) :  
Reference guide.

---

Free Pascal version 3.2.0:  
Reference guide for RTL units.  
Document version 3.2.0  
May 2020

Michaël Van Canneyt

---

# Contents

0.1	Overview . . . . .	136
<b>1</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'BaseUnix'</b>	<b>137</b>
1.1	Used units . . . . .	137
1.2	Overview . . . . .	137
1.3	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	137
1.3.1	Constants . . . . .	137
1.3.2	Types . . . . .	161
1.4	Procedures and functions . . . . .	174
1.4.1	CreateShellArgV . . . . .	174
1.4.2	FpAccess . . . . .	174
1.4.3	FpAlarm . . . . .	175
1.4.4	FpChdir . . . . .	176
1.4.5	FpChmod . . . . .	176
1.4.6	FpChown . . . . .	178
1.4.7	FpClose . . . . .	179
1.4.8	FpClosedir . . . . .	179
1.4.9	FpDup . . . . .	179
1.4.10	FpDup2 . . . . .	180
1.4.11	FpExecv . . . . .	181
1.4.12	FpExecve . . . . .	182
1.4.13	FpExit . . . . .	183
1.4.14	FpFcntl . . . . .	183
1.4.15	fpdffillset . . . . .	184
1.4.16	fpFD_CLR . . . . .	184
1.4.17	fpFD_ISSET . . . . .	184
1.4.18	fpFD_SET . . . . .	185
1.4.19	fpFD_ZERO . . . . .	185
1.4.20	FpFork . . . . .	185
1.4.21	FPFStat . . . . .	185
1.4.22	FpFtruncate . . . . .	187

---

1.4.23	FpGetcwd	187
1.4.24	FpGetegid	187
1.4.25	FpGetEnv	188
1.4.26	fpgeterno	188
1.4.27	FpGeteuid	188
1.4.28	FpGetgid	189
1.4.29	FpGetgroups	189
1.4.30	FpGetpggrp	190
1.4.31	FpGetpid	190
1.4.32	FpGetppid	190
1.4.33	fpGetPriority	191
1.4.34	FpGetRLimit	191
1.4.35	FpGetsid	191
1.4.36	FpGetuid	192
1.4.37	FpIOCtl	192
1.4.38	FpKill	193
1.4.39	FpLink	193
1.4.40	FpLseek	194
1.4.41	fpLstat	195
1.4.42	FpMkdir	196
1.4.43	FpMkfifo	197
1.4.44	Fp mmap	197
1.4.45	Fp mprotect	199
1.4.46	Fp munmap	199
1.4.47	FpNanoSleep	199
1.4.48	fpNice	200
1.4.49	FpOpen	201
1.4.50	FpOpendir	202
1.4.51	FpPause	203
1.4.52	FpPipe	203
1.4.53	FpPoll	204
1.4.54	FpPRead	204
1.4.55	FpPWrite	205
1.4.56	FpRead	205
1.4.57	FpReaddir	206
1.4.58	fpReadLink	206
1.4.59	FpReadV	208
1.4.60	FpRename	208
1.4.61	FpRmdir	209
1.4.62	fpSelect	209

---

1.4.63	<a href="#">fpseterno</a>	210
1.4.64	<a href="#">FpSetgid</a>	211
1.4.65	<a href="#">fpSetPriority</a>	211
1.4.66	<a href="#">FpSetRLimit</a>	211
1.4.67	<a href="#">FpSetsid</a>	212
1.4.68	<a href="#">fpsettimeofday</a>	212
1.4.69	<a href="#">FpSetuid</a>	212
1.4.70	<a href="#">FPSigaction</a>	213
1.4.71	<a href="#">FpSigAddSet</a>	214
1.4.72	<a href="#">FpSigDelSet</a>	214
1.4.73	<a href="#">FpsigEmptySet</a>	214
1.4.74	<a href="#">FpSigFillSet</a>	215
1.4.75	<a href="#">FpSigIsMember</a>	215
1.4.76	<a href="#">FpSignal</a>	215
1.4.77	<a href="#">FpSigPending</a>	216
1.4.78	<a href="#">FpSigProcMask</a>	216
1.4.79	<a href="#">FpSigSuspend</a>	217
1.4.80	<a href="#">FpSigTimedWait</a>	217
1.4.81	<a href="#">FpSleep</a>	217
1.4.82	<a href="#">FpStat</a>	218
1.4.83	<a href="#">fpSymlink</a>	219
1.4.84	<a href="#">fpS_ISBLK</a>	220
1.4.85	<a href="#">fpS_ISCHR</a>	220
1.4.86	<a href="#">fpS_ISDIR</a>	221
1.4.87	<a href="#">fpS_ISFIFO</a>	221
1.4.88	<a href="#">fpS_ISLNK</a>	221
1.4.89	<a href="#">fpS_ISREG</a>	222
1.4.90	<a href="#">fpS_ISSOCK</a>	222
1.4.91	<a href="#">fpTime</a>	222
1.4.92	<a href="#">FpTimes</a>	223
1.4.93	<a href="#">FpUmask</a>	223
1.4.94	<a href="#">FpUname</a>	224
1.4.95	<a href="#">FpUnlink</a>	224
1.4.96	<a href="#">FpUtime</a>	224
1.4.97	<a href="#">FpWait</a>	225
1.4.98	<a href="#">FpWaitPid</a>	226
1.4.99	<a href="#">FpWrite</a>	226
1.4.100	<a href="#">FpWriteV</a>	227
1.4.101	<a href="#">FreeShellArgV</a>	227
1.4.102	<a href="#">wexitStatus</a>	227

1.4.103	wifexited	227
1.4.104	wifsignaled	228
1.4.105	wstopsig	228
1.4.106	wtermSIG	228
1.5	Dir	228
1.6	Dirent	229
1.7	FLock	229
1.8	iovec	229
1.9	pollfd	229
1.10	sigactionrec	230
1.11	Stat	230
1.12	tfpreg	230
1.13	tfpstate	231
1.14	timezone	231
1.15	tms	231
1.16	TRLimit	231
1.17	tsigaltstack	232
1.18	TSigContext	232
1.19	tsiginfo	233
1.20	TUcontext	234
1.21	UTimBuf	234
1.22	UtsName	234
<b>2</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Character'</b>	<b>236</b>
2.1	Used units	236
2.2	Overview	236
2.3	Constants, types and variables	236
2.3.1	Types	236
2.4	Procedures and functions	238
2.4.1	ConvertFromUtf32	238
2.4.2	ConvertToUtf32	239
2.4.3	GetNumericValue	239
2.4.4	GetUnicodeCategory	239
2.4.5	IsControl	240
2.4.6	IsDigit	240
2.4.7	IsHighSurrogate	240
2.4.8	IsLetter	240
2.4.9	IsLetterOrDigit	241
2.4.10	IsLower	241
2.4.11	IsLowSurrogate	241

2.4.12	IsNumber	241
2.4.13	IsPunctuation	242
2.4.14	IsSeparator	242
2.4.15	IsSurrogate	242
2.4.16	IsSurrogatePair	242
2.4.17	IsSymbol	243
2.4.18	IsUpper	243
2.4.19	IsWhiteSpace	243
2.4.20	ToLower	243
2.4.21	ToUpper	244
2.5	TCharacter	244
2.5.1	Description	244
2.5.2	Method overview	244
2.5.3	TCharacter.Create	244
2.5.4	TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32	245
2.5.5	TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32	245
2.5.6	TCharacter.GetNumericValue	246
2.5.7	TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory	246
2.5.8	TCharacter.IsControl	246
2.5.9	TCharacter.IsDigit	247
2.5.10	TCharacter.IsSurrogate	247
2.5.11	TCharacter.IsHighSurrogate	248
2.5.12	TCharacter.IsLowSurrogate	248
2.5.13	TCharacter.IsSurrogatePair	248
2.5.14	TCharacter.IsLetter	249
2.5.15	TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit	249
2.5.16	TCharacter.IsLower	250
2.5.17	TCharacter.IsNumber	250
2.5.18	TCharacter.IsPunctuation	251
2.5.19	TCharacter.IsSeparator	251
2.5.20	TCharacter.IsSymbol	251
2.5.21	TCharacter.IsUpper	252
2.5.22	TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace	252
2.5.23	TCharacter.ToLower	253
2.5.24	TCharacter.ToUpper	253
<b>3</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'charset'</b>	<b>254</b>
3.1	Overview	254
3.2	Constants, types and variables	254
3.2.1	Constants	254

3.2.2	Types	254
3.3	Procedures and functions	255
3.3.1	getascii	255
3.3.2	getmap	255
3.3.3	getunicode	256
3.3.4	loadbinaryunicodemapping	256
3.3.5	loadunicodemapping	257
3.3.6	mappingavailable	257
3.3.7	registerbinarymapping	257
3.3.8	registermapping	257
3.4	reversecharmapping	258
3.5	TSerializedMapHeader	258
3.6	tunicodecharmapping	258
3.7	tunicodemap	258
<b>4</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Classes'</b>	<b>260</b>
4.1	Used units	260
4.2	Overview	260
4.3	Constants, types and variables	260
4.3.1	Constants	260
4.3.2	Types	263
4.3.3	Variables	280
4.4	Procedures and functions	281
4.4.1	ActivateClassGroup	281
4.4.2	BeginGlobalLoading	281
4.4.3	BinToHex	281
4.4.4	Bounds	282
4.4.5	CheckSynchronize	282
4.4.6	ClassGroupOf	283
4.4.7	CollectionsEqual	283
4.4.8	EndGlobalLoading	283
4.4.9	ExtractStrings	283
4.4.10	FindClass	284
4.4.11	FindGlobalComponent	284
4.4.12	FindIdentToInt	284
4.4.13	FindIntToIdent	284
4.4.14	FindNestedComponent	285
4.4.15	GetClass	285
4.4.16	GetFixupInstanceNames	285
4.4.17	GetFixupReferenceNames	285

4.4.18	GlobalFixupReferences	286
4.4.19	GroupDescendentsWith	286
4.4.20	HexToBin	286
4.4.21	IdentToInt	286
4.4.22	InitComponentRes	287
4.4.23	InitInheritedComponent	287
4.4.24	IntToIdent	287
4.4.25	InvalidPoint	287
4.4.26	LineStart	288
4.4.27	NotifyGlobalLoading	288
4.4.28	ObjectBinaryToText	288
4.4.29	ObjectResourceToText	288
4.4.30	ObjectTextToBinary	288
4.4.31	ObjectTextToResource	289
4.4.32	Point	289
4.4.33	PointsEqual	289
4.4.34	ReadComponentRes	289
4.4.35	ReadComponentResEx	290
4.4.36	ReadComponentResFile	290
4.4.37	Rect	290
4.4.38	RedirectFixupReferences	290
4.4.39	RegisterClass	291
4.4.40	RegisterClassAlias	291
4.4.41	RegisterClasses	291
4.4.42	RegisterComponents	291
4.4.43	RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc	292
4.4.44	RegisterInitComponentHandler	292
4.4.45	RegisterIntegerConsts	292
4.4.46	RegisterNoIcon	293
4.4.47	RegisterNonActiveX	293
4.4.48	RemoveFixupReferences	293
4.4.49	RemoveFixups	294
4.4.50	SmallPoint	294
4.4.51	StartClassGroup	294
4.4.52	UnRegisterClass	294
4.4.53	UnRegisterClasses	294
4.4.54	UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc	295
4.4.55	UnRegisterModuleClasses	295
4.4.56	WriteComponentResFile	295
4.5	TIdentMapEntry	295



---

4.6	TStringItem	296
4.7	EBitsError	296
4.7.1	Description	296
4.8	EClassNotFound	296
4.8.1	Description	296
4.9	EComponentError	296
4.9.1	Description	296
4.10	ECreateError	296
4.10.1	Description	296
4.11	EFileError	297
4.11.1	Description	297
4.12	EOpenError	297
4.12.1	Description	297
4.13	EInvalidImage	297
4.13.1	Description	297
4.14	EInvalidOperation	297
4.14.1	Description	297
4.15	EListError	297
4.15.1	Description	297
4.16	EMethodNotFound	298
4.16.1	Description	298
4.17	EObserver	298
4.17.1	Description	298
4.18	EOutOfResources	298
4.18.1	Description	298
4.19	EParserError	298
4.19.1	Description	298
4.20	EReadError	298
4.20.1	Description	298
4.21	EResNotFound	299
4.21.1	Description	299
4.22	EStreamError	299
4.22.1	Description	299
4.23	EStringListError	299
4.23.1	Description	299
4.24	EThread	299
4.24.1	Description	299
4.25	EThreadDestroyCalled	299
4.25.1	Description	299
4.26	EThreadExternalException	300

4.26.1	Description	300
4.27	EWriteError	300
4.27.1	Description	300
4.28	IDesignerNotify	300
4.28.1	Description	300
4.28.2	Method overview	300
4.28.3	IDesignerNotify.Modified	300
4.28.4	IDesignerNotify.Notification	300
4.29	IFPObserved	301
4.29.1	Description	301
4.29.2	Method overview	301
4.29.3	IFPObserved.FPOAttachObserver	301
4.29.4	IFPObserved.FPODetachObserver	301
4.29.5	IFPObserved.FPONotifyObservers	302
4.30	IFPObserver	302
4.30.1	Description	302
4.30.2	Method overview	302
4.30.3	IFPObserver.FPOObservedChanged	302
4.31	IInterfaceComponentReference	303
4.31.1	Description	303
4.31.2	Method overview	303
4.31.3	IInterfaceComponentReference.GetComponent	303
4.32	IInterfaceList	303
4.32.1	Description	303
4.32.2	Method overview	304
4.32.3	Property overview	304
4.32.4	IInterfaceList.Get	304
4.32.5	IInterfaceList.GetCapacity	304
4.32.6	IInterfaceList.GetCount	305
4.32.7	IInterfaceList.Put	305
4.32.8	IInterfaceList.SetCapacity	305
4.32.9	IInterfaceList.SetCount	305
4.32.10	IInterfaceList.Clear	306
4.32.11	IInterfaceList.Delete	306
4.32.12	IInterfaceList.Exchange	306
4.32.13	IInterfaceList.First	306
4.32.14	IInterfaceList.IndexOf	307
4.32.15	IInterfaceList.Add	307
4.32.16	IInterfaceList.Insert	307
4.32.17	IInterfaceList.Last	307

4.32.18	<a href="#">InterfaceList.Remove</a>	307
4.32.19	<a href="#">InterfaceList.Lock</a>	308
4.32.20	<a href="#">InterfaceList.Unlock</a>	308
4.32.21	<a href="#">InterfaceList.Capacity</a>	308
4.32.22	<a href="#">InterfaceList.Count</a>	308
4.32.23	<a href="#">InterfaceList.Items</a>	309
4.33	<a href="#">IStreamPersist</a>	309
4.33.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	309
4.33.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	309
4.33.3	<a href="#">IStreamPersist.LoadFromStream</a>	309
4.33.4	<a href="#">IStreamPersist.SaveToStream</a>	309
4.34	<a href="#">IStringsAdapter</a>	310
4.34.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	310
4.34.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	310
4.34.3	<a href="#">IStringsAdapter.ReferenceStrings</a>	310
4.34.4	<a href="#">IStringsAdapter.ReleaseStrings</a>	310
4.35	<a href="#">IVCLComObject</a>	310
4.35.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	310
4.35.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	310
4.35.3	<a href="#">IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfoCount</a>	311
4.35.4	<a href="#">IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfo</a>	311
4.35.5	<a href="#">IVCLComObject.GetIDsOfNames</a>	311
4.35.6	<a href="#">IVCLComObject.Invoke</a>	311
4.35.7	<a href="#">IVCLComObject.SafeCallException</a>	312
4.35.8	<a href="#">IVCLComObject.FreeOnRelease</a>	312
4.36	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader</a>	312
4.36.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	312
4.36.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	313
4.36.3	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.FlushBuffer</a>	313
4.36.4	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.NextValue</a>	313
4.36.5	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue</a>	314
4.36.6	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.BeginRootComponent</a>	314
4.36.7	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent</a>	314
4.36.8	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.BeginProperty</a>	314
4.36.9	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.Read</a>	315
4.36.10	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadBinary</a>	315
4.36.11	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat</a>	315
4.36.12	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle</a>	315
4.36.13	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate</a>	316
4.36.14	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadCurrency</a>	316

4.36.15	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent</a>	316
4.36.16	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8</a>	317
4.36.17	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16</a>	317
4.36.18	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32</a>	318
4.36.19	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64</a>	318
4.36.20	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSet</a>	318
4.36.21	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature</a>	319
4.36.22	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadStr</a>	319
4.36.23	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadString</a>	319
4.36.24	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString</a>	319
4.36.25	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString</a>	320
4.36.26	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.SkipComponent</a>	320
4.36.27	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectReader.SkipValue</a>	320
4.37	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter</a>	320
4.37.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	320
4.37.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	321
4.37.3	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginCollection</a>	321
4.37.4	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginComponent</a>	321
4.37.5	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature</a>	321
4.37.6	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginList</a>	322
4.37.7	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.EndList</a>	322
4.37.8	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginProperty</a>	322
4.37.9	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.EndProperty</a>	322
4.37.10	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.FlushBuffer</a>	322
4.37.11	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.Write</a>	323
4.37.12	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBinary</a>	323
4.37.13	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBoolean</a>	323
4.37.14	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteFloat</a>	323
4.37.15	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSingle</a>	323
4.37.16	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteDate</a>	324
4.37.17	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteCurrency</a>	324
4.37.18	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteIdent</a>	324
4.37.19	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteInteger</a>	324
4.37.20	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUInt64</a>	324
4.37.21	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteVariant</a>	325
4.37.22	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteMethodName</a>	325
4.37.23	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSet</a>	325
4.37.24	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString</a>	325
4.37.25	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteWideString</a>	325
4.37.26	<a href="#">TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUnicodeString</a>	326

4.38	TBasicAction	326
4.38.1	Description	326
4.38.2	Method overview	326
4.38.3	Property overview	326
4.38.4	TBasicAction.Create	326
4.38.5	TBasicAction.Destroy	327
4.38.6	TBasicAction.HandlesTarget	327
4.38.7	TBasicAction.UpdateTarget	327
4.38.8	TBasicAction.ExecuteTarget	328
4.38.9	TBasicAction.Execute	328
4.38.10	TBasicAction.RegisterChanges	328
4.38.11	TBasicAction.UnRegisterChanges	328
4.38.12	TBasicAction.Update	329
4.38.13	TBasicAction.ActionComponent	329
4.38.14	TBasicAction.OnExecute	329
4.38.15	TBasicAction.OnUpdate	330
4.39	TBasicActionLink	330
4.39.1	Description	330
4.39.2	Method overview	330
4.39.3	Property overview	330
4.39.4	TBasicActionLink.Create	330
4.39.5	TBasicActionLink.Destroy	331
4.39.6	TBasicActionLink.Execute	331
4.39.7	TBasicActionLink.Update	331
4.39.8	TBasicActionLink.Action	332
4.39.9	TBasicActionLink.OnChange	332
4.40	TBinaryObjectReader	332
4.40.1	Description	332
4.40.2	Method overview	333
4.40.3	TBinaryObjectReader.Create	333
4.40.4	TBinaryObjectReader.Destroy	333
4.40.5	TBinaryObjectReader.NextValue	334
4.40.6	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadValue	334
4.40.7	TBinaryObjectReader.BeginRootComponent	334
4.40.8	TBinaryObjectReader.BeginComponent	334
4.40.9	TBinaryObjectReader.BeginProperty	335
4.40.10	TBinaryObjectReader.Read	335
4.40.11	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadBinary	335
4.40.12	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadFloat	335
4.40.13	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSingle	335

4.40.14	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadDate	336
4.40.15	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadCurrency	336
4.40.16	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadIdent	336
4.40.17	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt8	336
4.40.18	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt16	336
4.40.19	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt32	337
4.40.20	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt64	337
4.40.21	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSet	337
4.40.22	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSignature	337
4.40.23	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadStr	338
4.40.24	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadString	338
4.40.25	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadWideString	338
4.40.26	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString	338
4.40.27	TBinaryObjectReader.SkipComponent	339
4.40.28	TBinaryObjectReader.SkipValue	339
4.41	TBinaryObjectWriter	339
4.41.1	Description	339
4.41.2	Method overview	340
4.41.3	TBinaryObjectWriter.Create	340
4.41.4	TBinaryObjectWriter.Destroy	340
4.41.5	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature	340
4.41.6	TBinaryObjectWriter.FlushBuffer	341
4.41.7	TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginCollection	341
4.41.8	TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginComponent	341
4.41.9	TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginList	341
4.41.10	TBinaryObjectWriter.EndList	341
4.41.11	TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginProperty	342
4.41.12	TBinaryObjectWriter.EndProperty	342
4.41.13	TBinaryObjectWriter.Write	342
4.41.14	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBinary	342
4.41.15	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBoolean	342
4.41.16	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteFloat	342
4.41.17	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSingle	343
4.41.18	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteDate	343
4.41.19	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteCurrency	343
4.41.20	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteIdent	343
4.41.21	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteInteger	343
4.41.22	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUInt64	343
4.41.23	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteMethodName	344
4.41.24	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSet	344

4.41.25	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString	344
4.41.26	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString	344
4.41.27	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString	344
4.41.28	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString	344
4.41.29	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString	345
4.42	TBits	345
4.42.1	Description	345
4.42.2	Method overview	345
4.42.3	Property overview	345
4.42.4	TBits.Create	346
4.42.5	TBits.Destroy	346
4.42.6	TBits.GetFSize	346
4.42.7	TBits.SetOn	346
4.42.8	TBits.Clear	347
4.42.9	TBits.Clearall	347
4.42.10	TBits.CopyBits	347
4.42.11	TBits.AndBits	347
4.42.12	TBits.OrBits	348
4.42.13	TBits.XorBits	348
4.42.14	TBits.NotBits	348
4.42.15	TBits.Get	349
4.42.16	TBits.Grow	349
4.42.17	TBits.Equals	349
4.42.18	TBits.SetIndex	349
4.42.19	TBits.FindFirstBit	350
4.42.20	TBits.FindNextBit	350
4.42.21	TBits.FindPrevBit	350
4.42.22	TBits.OpenBit	351
4.42.23	TBits.Bits	351
4.42.24	TBits.Size	351
4.43	TBytesStream	351
4.43.1	Description	351
4.43.2	Method overview	352
4.43.3	Property overview	352
4.43.4	TBytesStream.Create	352
4.43.5	TBytesStream.Bytes	352
4.44	TCollection	352
4.44.1	Description	352
4.44.2	Method overview	353
4.44.3	Property overview	353

4.44.4	<a href="#">TCollection.Create</a>	353
4.44.5	<a href="#">TCollection.Destroy</a>	353
4.44.6	<a href="#">TCollection.Owner</a>	354
4.44.7	<a href="#">TCollection.Add</a>	354
4.44.8	<a href="#">TCollection.Assign</a>	354
4.44.9	<a href="#">TCollection.BeginUpdate</a>	354
4.44.10	<a href="#">TCollection.Clear</a>	355
4.44.11	<a href="#">TCollection.EndUpdate</a>	355
4.44.12	<a href="#">TCollection.Delete</a>	355
4.44.13	<a href="#">TCollection.GetEnumerator</a>	356
4.44.14	<a href="#">TCollection.GetNamePath</a>	356
4.44.15	<a href="#">TCollection.Insert</a>	356
4.44.16	<a href="#">TCollection.FindItemID</a>	356
4.44.17	<a href="#">TCollection.Exchange</a>	357
4.44.18	<a href="#">TCollection.Move</a>	357
4.44.19	<a href="#">TCollection.Sort</a>	357
4.44.20	<a href="#">TCollection.Count</a>	357
4.44.21	<a href="#">TCollection.ItemClass</a>	358
4.44.22	<a href="#">TCollection.Items</a>	358
4.45	<a href="#">TCollectionEnumerator</a>	358
4.45.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	358
4.45.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	358
4.45.3	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	359
4.45.4	<a href="#">TCollectionEnumerator.Create</a>	359
4.45.5	<a href="#">TCollectionEnumerator.GetCurrent</a>	359
4.45.6	<a href="#">TCollectionEnumerator.MoveNext</a>	359
4.45.7	<a href="#">TCollectionEnumerator.Current</a>	359
4.46	<a href="#">TCollectionItem</a>	360
4.46.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	360
4.46.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	360
4.46.3	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	360
4.46.4	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.Create</a>	360
4.46.5	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.Destroy</a>	360
4.46.6	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.GetNamePath</a>	361
4.46.7	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.Collection</a>	361
4.46.8	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.ID</a>	361
4.46.9	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.Index</a>	362
4.46.10	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.DisplayName</a>	362
4.47	<a href="#">TComponent</a>	362
4.47.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	362



4.47.2	Interfaces overview	363
4.47.3	Method overview	363
4.47.4	Property overview	363
4.47.5	TComponent.Notification	364
4.47.6	TComponent.WriteState	364
4.47.7	TComponent.Create	364
4.47.8	TComponent.Destroy	365
4.47.9	TComponent.BeforeDestruction	365
4.47.10	TComponent.DestroyComponents	365
4.47.11	TComponent.Destroying	365
4.47.12	TComponent.ExecuteAction	366
4.47.13	TComponent.FindComponent	366
4.47.14	TComponent.FreeNotification	366
4.47.15	TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification	366
4.47.16	TComponent.FreeOnRelease	366
4.47.17	TComponent.GetEnumerator	367
4.47.18	TComponent.GetNamePath	367
4.47.19	TComponent.GetParentComponent	367
4.47.20	TComponent.HasParent	367
4.47.21	TComponent.InsertComponent	368
4.47.22	TComponent.RemoveComponent	368
4.47.23	TComponent.SafeCallException	368
4.47.24	TComponent.SetSubComponent	368
4.47.25	TComponent.UpdateAction	369
4.47.26	TComponent.IsImplementorOf	369
4.47.27	TComponent.ReferenceInterface	369
4.47.28	TComponent.ComObject	369
4.47.29	TComponent.Components	370
4.47.30	TComponent.ComponentCount	370
4.47.31	TComponent.ComponentIndex	370
4.47.32	TComponent.ComponentState	370
4.47.33	TComponent.ComponentStyle	371
4.47.34	TComponent.DesignInfo	371
4.47.35	TComponent.Owner	371
4.47.36	TComponent.VCLComObject	372
4.47.37	TComponent.Name	372
4.47.38	TComponent.Tag	372
4.48	TComponentEnumerator	373
4.48.1	Description	373
4.48.2	Method overview	373

4.48.3	Property overview	373
4.48.4	TComponentEnumerator.Create	373
4.48.5	TComponentEnumerator.GetCurrent	373
4.48.6	TComponentEnumerator.MoveNext	374
4.48.7	TComponentEnumerator.Current	374
4.49	TCustomMemoryStream	374
4.49.1	Description	374
4.49.2	Method overview	374
4.49.3	Property overview	375
4.49.4	TCustomMemoryStream.Read	375
4.49.5	TCustomMemoryStream.Seek	375
4.49.6	TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream	375
4.49.7	TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToFile	376
4.49.8	TCustomMemoryStream.Memory	376
4.50	TDataModule	376
4.50.1	Description	376
4.50.2	Method overview	377
4.50.3	Property overview	377
4.50.4	TDataModule.Create	377
4.50.5	TDataModule.CreateNew	377
4.50.6	TDataModule.Destroy	378
4.50.7	TDataModule.AfterConstruction	378
4.50.8	TDataModule.BeforeDestruction	378
4.50.9	TDataModule.DesignOffset	378
4.50.10	TDataModule.DesignSize	379
4.50.11	TDataModule.DesignPPI	379
4.50.12	TDataModule.OnCreate	379
4.50.13	TDataModule.OnDestroy	379
4.50.14	TDataModule.OldCreateOrder	380
4.51	TFiler	380
4.51.1	Description	380
4.51.2	Method overview	380
4.51.3	Property overview	380
4.51.4	TFiler.DefineProperty	380
4.51.5	TFiler.DefineBinaryProperty	381
4.51.6	TFiler.FlushBuffer	381
4.51.7	TFiler.Root	381
4.51.8	TFiler.LookupRoot	381
4.51.9	TFiler.Ancestor	382
4.51.10	TFiler.IgnoreChildren	382

4.52	TFileStream	382
4.52.1	Description	382
4.52.2	Method overview	382
4.52.3	Property overview	382
4.52.4	TFileStream.Create	383
4.52.5	TFileStream.Destroy	383
4.52.6	TFileStream.FileName	384
4.53	TFPList	384
4.53.1	Description	384
4.53.2	Method overview	384
4.53.3	Property overview	385
4.53.4	TFPList.Destroy	385
4.53.5	TFPList.AddList	385
4.53.6	TFPList.Add	385
4.53.7	TFPList.Clear	385
4.53.8	TFPList.Delete	386
4.53.9	TFPList.Error	386
4.53.10	TFPList.Exchange	386
4.53.11	TFPList.Expand	386
4.53.12	TFPList.Extract	387
4.53.13	TFPList.First	387
4.53.14	TFPList.GetEnumerator	387
4.53.15	TFPList.IndexOf	387
4.53.16	TFPList.IndexOfItem	388
4.53.17	TFPList.Insert	388
4.53.18	TFPList.Last	388
4.53.19	TFPList.Move	388
4.53.20	TFPList.Assign	389
4.53.21	TFPList.Remove	389
4.53.22	TFPList.Pack	389
4.53.23	TFPList.Sort	389
4.53.24	TFPList.ForEachCall	390
4.53.25	TFPList.Capacity	390
4.53.26	TFPList.Count	390
4.53.27	TFPList.Items	391
4.53.28	TFPList.List	391
4.54	TFPListEnumerator	391
4.54.1	Description	391
4.54.2	Method overview	391
4.54.3	Property overview	391

4.54.4	TFPListEnumerator.Create	391
4.54.5	TFPListEnumerator.GetCurrent	392
4.54.6	TFPListEnumerator.MoveNext	392
4.54.7	TFPListEnumerator.Current	392
4.55	THandleStream	393
4.55.1	Description	393
4.55.2	Method overview	393
4.55.3	Property overview	393
4.55.4	THandleStream.Create	393
4.55.5	THandleStream.Read	393
4.55.6	THandleStream.Write	394
4.55.7	THandleStream.Seek	394
4.55.8	THandleStream.Handle	394
4.56	TInterfacedPersistent	395
4.56.1	Description	395
4.56.2	Interfaces overview	395
4.56.3	Method overview	395
4.56.4	TInterfacedPersistent.QueryInterface	395
4.56.5	TInterfacedPersistent.AfterConstruction	395
4.57	TInterfaceList	395
4.57.1	Description	395
4.57.2	Interfaces overview	396
4.57.3	Method overview	396
4.57.4	Property overview	396
4.57.5	TInterfaceList.Create	396
4.57.6	TInterfaceList.Destroy	396
4.57.7	TInterfaceList.Clear	397
4.57.8	TInterfaceList.Delete	397
4.57.9	TInterfaceList.Exchange	397
4.57.10	TInterfaceList.First	397
4.57.11	TInterfaceList.GetEnumerator	398
4.57.12	TInterfaceList.IndexOf	398
4.57.13	TInterfaceList.Add	398
4.57.14	TInterfaceList.Insert	398
4.57.15	TInterfaceList.Last	399
4.57.16	TInterfaceList.Remove	399
4.57.17	TInterfaceList.Lock	399
4.57.18	TInterfaceList.Unlock	399
4.57.19	TInterfaceList.Expand	400
4.57.20	TInterfaceList.Capacity	400

4.57.21	TInterfaceList.Count	400
4.57.22	TInterfaceList.Items	400
4.58	TInterfaceListEnumerator	401
4.58.1	Description	401
4.58.2	Method overview	401
4.58.3	Property overview	401
4.58.4	TInterfaceListEnumerator.Create	401
4.58.5	TInterfaceListEnumerator.GetCurrent	401
4.58.6	TInterfaceListEnumerator.MoveNext	402
4.58.7	TInterfaceListEnumerator.Current	402
4.59	TList	402
4.59.1	Description	402
4.59.2	Interfaces overview	402
4.59.3	Method overview	403
4.59.4	Property overview	403
4.59.5	TList.Create	403
4.59.6	TList.Destroy	403
4.59.7	TList.FPOAttachObserver	404
4.59.8	TList.FPODetachObserver	404
4.59.9	TList.FPONotifyObservers	404
4.59.10	TList.AddList	405
4.59.11	TList.Add	405
4.59.12	TList.Clear	405
4.59.13	TList.Delete	405
4.59.14	TList.Error	406
4.59.15	TList.Exchange	406
4.59.16	TList.Expand	406
4.59.17	TList.Extract	406
4.59.18	TList.First	407
4.59.19	TList.GetEnumerator	407
4.59.20	TList.IndexOf	407
4.59.21	TList.Insert	407
4.59.22	TList.Last	408
4.59.23	TList.Move	408
4.59.24	TList.Assign	408
4.59.25	TList.Remove	408
4.59.26	TList.Pack	409
4.59.27	TList.Sort	409
4.59.28	TList.Capacity	409
4.59.29	TList.Count	410

4.59.30	TList.Items	410
4.59.31	TList.List	410
4.60	TListEnumerator	410
4.60.1	Description	410
4.60.2	Method overview	410
4.60.3	Property overview	411
4.60.4	TListEnumerator.Create	411
4.60.5	TListEnumerator.GetCurrent	411
4.60.6	TListEnumerator.MoveNext	411
4.60.7	TListEnumerator.Current	411
4.61	TMemoryStream	412
4.61.1	Description	412
4.61.2	Method overview	412
4.61.3	TMemoryStream.Destroy	412
4.61.4	TMemoryStream.Clear	412
4.61.5	TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream	412
4.61.6	TMemoryStream.LoadFromFile	413
4.61.7	TMemoryStream.SetSize	413
4.61.8	TMemoryStream.Write	413
4.62	TOwnedCollection	414
4.62.1	Description	414
4.62.2	Method overview	414
4.62.3	TOwnedCollection.Create	414
4.63	TOwnerStream	414
4.63.1	Description	414
4.63.2	Method overview	415
4.63.3	Property overview	415
4.63.4	TOwnerStream.Create	415
4.63.5	TOwnerStream.Destroy	415
4.63.6	TOwnerStream.Source	415
4.63.7	TOwnerStream.SourceOwner	416
4.64	TParser	416
4.64.1	Description	416
4.64.2	Method overview	416
4.64.3	Property overview	417
4.64.4	TParser.Create	417
4.64.5	TParser.Destroy	417
4.64.6	TParser.CheckToken	417
4.64.7	TParser.CheckTokenSymbol	417
4.64.8	TParser.Error	418

4.64.9	<a href="#">TParser.ErrorFmt</a>	418
4.64.10	<a href="#">TParser.ErrorStr</a>	418
4.64.11	<a href="#">TParser.HexToBinary</a>	418
4.64.12	<a href="#">TParser.NextToken</a>	419
4.64.13	<a href="#">TParser.SourcePos</a>	419
4.64.14	<a href="#">TParser.TokenComponentIdent</a>	419
4.64.15	<a href="#">TParser.TokenFloat</a>	420
4.64.16	<a href="#">TParser.TokenInt</a>	420
4.64.17	<a href="#">TParser.TokenString</a>	420
4.64.18	<a href="#">TParser.TokenWideString</a>	421
4.64.19	<a href="#">TParser.TokenSymbolIs</a>	421
4.64.20	<a href="#">TParser.FloatType</a>	421
4.64.21	<a href="#">TParser.SourceLine</a>	422
4.64.22	<a href="#">TParser.Token</a>	422
4.65	<a href="#">TPersistent</a>	422
4.65.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	422
4.65.2	<a href="#">Interfaces overview</a>	423
4.65.3	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	423
4.65.4	<a href="#">TPersistent.Destroy</a>	423
4.65.5	<a href="#">TPersistent.Assign</a>	423
4.65.6	<a href="#">TPersistent.FPOAttachObserver</a>	424
4.65.7	<a href="#">TPersistent.FPODetachObserver</a>	424
4.65.8	<a href="#">TPersistent.FPONotifyObservers</a>	424
4.65.9	<a href="#">TPersistent.GetNamePath</a>	424
4.66	<a href="#">TProxyStream</a>	425
4.66.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	425
4.66.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	425
4.66.3	<a href="#">TProxyStream.Create</a>	425
4.66.4	<a href="#">TProxyStream.Read</a>	425
4.66.5	<a href="#">TProxyStream.Write</a>	425
4.66.6	<a href="#">TProxyStream.Seek</a>	425
4.66.7	<a href="#">TProxyStream.Check</a>	426
4.67	<a href="#">TRawByteStringStream</a>	426
4.67.1	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	426
4.67.2	<a href="#">TRawByteStringStream.Create</a>	426
4.67.3	<a href="#">TRawByteStringStream.DataString</a>	426
4.67.4	<a href="#">TRawByteStringStream.ReadString</a>	426
4.67.5	<a href="#">TRawByteStringStream.WriteString</a>	426
4.68	<a href="#">TReader</a>	426
4.68.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	426

4.68.2	Method overview	427
4.68.3	Property overview	428
4.68.4	TReader.Create	428
4.68.5	TReader.Destroy	428
4.68.6	TReader.FlushBuffer	428
4.68.7	TReader.BeginReferences	429
4.68.8	TReader.CheckValue	429
4.68.9	TReader.DefineProperty	429
4.68.10	TReader.DefineBinaryProperty	429
4.68.11	TReader.EndOfList	429
4.68.12	TReader.EndReferences	430
4.68.13	TReader.FixupReferences	430
4.68.14	TReader.NextValue	430
4.68.15	TReader.Read	430
4.68.16	TReader.ReadBoolean	430
4.68.17	TReader.ReadChar	431
4.68.18	TReader.ReadWideChar	431
4.68.19	TReader.ReadUnicodeChar	431
4.68.20	TReader.ReadCollection	431
4.68.21	TReader.ReadComponent	431
4.68.22	TReader.ReadComponents	432
4.68.23	TReader.ReadFloat	432
4.68.24	TReader.ReadSingle	432
4.68.25	TReader.ReadDate	432
4.68.26	TReader.ReadCurrency	432
4.68.27	TReader.ReadIdent	433
4.68.28	TReader.ReadInteger	433
4.68.29	TReader.ReadInt64	433
4.68.30	TReader.ReadSet	433
4.68.31	TReader.ReadListBegin	433
4.68.32	TReader.ReadListEnd	434
4.68.33	TReader.ReadRootComponent	434
4.68.34	TReader.ReadVariant	434
4.68.35	TReader.ReadSignature	434
4.68.36	TReader.ReadString	434
4.68.37	TReader.ReadWideString	435
4.68.38	TReader.ReadUnicodeString	435
4.68.39	TReader.ReadValue	435
4.68.40	TReader.CopyValue	435
4.68.41	TReader.Driver	435



4.68.42	TReader.Owner	436
4.68.43	TReader.Parent	436
4.68.44	TReader.OnError	436
4.68.45	TReader.OnPropertyNotFound	436
4.68.46	TReader.OnFindMethod	437
4.68.47	TReader.OnSetMethodProperty	437
4.68.48	TReader.OnSetName	437
4.68.49	TReader.OnReferenceName	437
4.68.50	TReader.OnAncestorNotFound	437
4.68.51	TReader.OnCreateComponent	438
4.68.52	TReader.OnFindComponentClass	438
4.68.53	TReader.OnReadStringProperty	438
4.69	TRecall	438
4.69.1	Description	438
4.69.2	Method overview	439
4.69.3	Property overview	439
4.69.4	TRecall.Create	439
4.69.5	TRecall.Destroy	439
4.69.6	TRecall.Store	439
4.69.7	TRecall.Forget	440
4.69.8	TRecall.Reference	440
4.70	TResourceStream	440
4.70.1	Description	440
4.70.2	Method overview	440
4.70.3	TResourceStream.Create	441
4.70.4	TResourceStream.CreateFromID	441
4.70.5	TResourceStream.Destroy	441
4.71	TStream	441
4.71.1	Description	441
4.71.2	Method overview	442
4.71.3	Property overview	442
4.71.4	TStream.Read	442
4.71.5	TStream.Write	443
4.71.6	TStream.Seek	443
4.71.7	TStream.ReadBuffer	444
4.71.8	TStream.WriteBuffer	444
4.71.9	TStream.CopyFrom	445
4.71.10	TStream.ReadComponent	445
4.71.11	TStream.ReadComponentRes	445
4.71.12	TStream.WriteComponent	446

4.71.13	TStream.WriteComponentRes	446
4.71.14	TStream.WriteDescendent	446
4.71.15	TStream.WriteDescendentRes	446
4.71.16	TStream.WriteResourceHeader	447
4.71.17	TStream.FixupResourceHeader	447
4.71.18	TStream.ReadResHeader	447
4.71.19	TStream.ReadByte	447
4.71.20	TStream.ReadWord	448
4.71.21	TStream.ReadDWord	448
4.71.22	TStream.ReadQWord	448
4.71.23	TStream.ReadAnsiString	449
4.71.24	TStream.WriteByte	449
4.71.25	TStream.WriteWord	449
4.71.26	TStream.WriteDWord	449
4.71.27	TStream.WriteQWord	450
4.71.28	TStream.WriteAnsiString	450
4.71.29	TStream.Position	450
4.71.30	TStream.Size	451
4.72	TStreamAdapter	451
4.72.1	Description	451
4.72.2	Interfaces overview	451
4.72.3	Method overview	451
4.72.4	Property overview	452
4.72.5	TStreamAdapter.Create	452
4.72.6	TStreamAdapter.Destroy	452
4.72.7	TStreamAdapter.Read	452
4.72.8	TStreamAdapter.Write	452
4.72.9	TStreamAdapter.Seek	453
4.72.10	TStreamAdapter.SetSize	453
4.72.11	TStreamAdapter.CopyTo	453
4.72.12	TStreamAdapter.Commit	454
4.72.13	TStreamAdapter.Revert	454
4.72.14	TStreamAdapter.LockRegion	454
4.72.15	TStreamAdapter.UnlockRegion	454
4.72.16	TStreamAdapter.Stat	455
4.72.17	TStreamAdapter.Clone	455
4.72.18	TStreamAdapter.Stream	455
4.72.19	TStreamAdapter.StreamOwnership	455
4.73	TStringList	456
4.73.1	Description	456

4.73.2	Method overview	456
4.73.3	Property overview	456
4.73.4	TStringList.Destroy	456
4.73.5	TStringList.Add	457
4.73.6	TStringList.Clear	457
4.73.7	TStringList.Delete	457
4.73.8	TStringList.Exchange	457
4.73.9	TStringList.Find	458
4.73.10	TStringList.IndexOf	458
4.73.11	TStringList.Insert	458
4.73.12	TStringList.Sort	458
4.73.13	TStringList.CustomSort	459
4.73.14	TStringList.Duplicates	459
4.73.15	TStringList.Sorted	459
4.73.16	TStringList.CaseSensitive	460
4.73.17	TStringList.OnChange	460
4.73.18	TStringList.OnChanging	460
4.73.19	TStringList.OwnsObjects	461
4.73.20	TStringList.SortStyle	461
4.74	TStrings	461
4.74.1	Description	461
4.74.2	Method overview	462
4.74.3	Property overview	463
4.74.4	TStrings.Create	463
4.74.5	TStrings.Destroy	464
4.74.6	TStrings.ToObjectArray	464
4.74.7	TStrings.ToStringArray	464
4.74.8	TStrings.Add	464
4.74.9	TStrings.AddObject	464
4.74.10	TStrings.AddPair	465
4.74.11	TStrings.AddStrings	465
4.74.12	TStrings.SetStrings	465
4.74.13	TStrings.AddText	466
4.74.14	TStrings.AddCommaText	466
4.74.15	TStrings.AddDelimitedtext	466
4.74.16	TStrings.Append	466
4.74.17	TStrings.Assign	466
4.74.18	TStrings.BeginUpdate	467
4.74.19	TStrings.Clear	467
4.74.20	TStrings.Delete	467

4.74.21	TStrings.EndUpdate	468
4.74.22	TStrings.Equals	468
4.74.23	TStrings.Exchange	468
4.74.24	TStrings.ExtractName	469
4.74.25	TStrings.Filter	469
4.74.26	TStrings.Fill	469
4.74.27	TStrings.ForEach	469
4.74.28	TStrings.GetEnumerator	469
4.74.29	TStrings.GetNameValue	469
4.74.30	TStrings.GetText	470
4.74.31	TStrings.IndexOf	470
4.74.32	TStrings.IndexOfName	470
4.74.33	TStrings.IndexOfObject	470
4.74.34	TStrings.Insert	471
4.74.35	TStrings.InsertObject	471
4.74.36	TStrings.LastIndexOf	471
4.74.37	TStrings.LoadFromFile	472
4.74.38	TStrings.LoadFromStream	472
4.74.39	TStrings.Map	472
4.74.40	TStrings.Move	472
4.74.41	TStrings.Pop	473
4.74.42	TStrings.Reduce	473
4.74.43	TStrings.Reverse	473
4.74.44	TStrings.SaveToFile	474
4.74.45	TStrings.SaveToStream	474
4.74.46	TStrings.Shift	474
4.74.47	TStrings.Slice	474
4.74.48	TStrings.SetText	475
4.74.49	TStrings.AlwaysQuote	475
4.74.50	TStrings.Capacity	475
4.74.51	TStrings.CommaText	475
4.74.52	TStrings.Count	476
4.74.53	TStrings.DefaultEncoding	477
4.74.54	TStrings.DelimitedText	477
4.74.55	TStrings.Delimiter	477
4.74.56	TStrings.Encoding	478
4.74.57	TStrings.LineBreak	478
4.74.58	TStrings.MissingNameValueSeparatorAction	478
4.74.59	TStrings.Names	478
4.74.60	TStrings.NameValueSeparator	479

4.74.61	TStrings.Objects	479
4.74.62	TStrings.Options	479
4.74.63	TStrings.QuoteChar	480
4.74.64	TStrings.SkipLastLineBreak	480
4.74.65	TStrings.TrailingLineBreak	480
4.74.66	TStrings.StrictDelimiter	480
4.74.67	TStrings.Strings	481
4.74.68	TStrings.StringsAdapter	481
4.74.69	TStrings.Text	481
4.74.70	TStrings.TextLineBreakStyle	482
4.74.71	TStrings.UseLocale	482
4.74.72	TStrings.ValueFromIndex	483
4.74.73	TStrings.Values	483
4.74.74	TStrings.WriteBOM	483
4.75	TStringsEnumerator	484
4.75.1	Description	484
4.75.2	Method overview	484
4.75.3	Property overview	484
4.75.4	TStringsEnumerator.Create	484
4.75.5	TStringsEnumerator.GetCurrent	484
4.75.6	TStringsEnumerator.MoveNext	484
4.75.7	TStringsEnumerator.Current	485
4.76	TStringStream	485
4.76.1	Description	485
4.76.2	Method overview	485
4.76.3	Property overview	486
4.76.4	TStringStream.Create	486
4.76.5	TStringStream.CreateRaw	486
4.76.6	TStringStream.Destroy	486
4.76.7	TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString	487
4.76.8	TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString	487
4.76.9	TStringStream.ReadAnsiString	487
4.76.10	TStringStream.WriteAnsiString	487
4.76.11	TStringStream.ReadString	488
4.76.12	TStringStream.WriteString	488
4.76.13	TStringStream.DataString	488
4.76.14	TStringStream.UnicodeDataString	488
4.76.15	TStringStream.OwnsEncoding	489
4.76.16	TStringStream.Encoding	489
4.77	TTextObjectWriter	489

4.77.1	Description	489
4.78	TThread	489
4.78.1	Description	489
4.78.2	Method overview	490
4.78.3	Property overview	490
4.78.4	TThread.Execute	490
4.78.5	TThread.Synchronize	491
4.78.6	TThread.Queue	491
4.78.7	TThread.Create	491
4.78.8	TThread.Destroy	491
4.78.9	TThread.CreateAnonymousThread	492
4.78.10	TThread.NameThreadForDebugging	492
4.78.11	TThread.SetReturnValue	492
4.78.12	TThread.CheckTerminated	492
4.78.13	TThread.RemoveQueuedEvents	493
4.78.14	TThread.SpinWait	493
4.78.15	TThread.Sleep	493
4.78.16	TThread.Yield	494
4.78.17	TThread.GetSystemTimes	494
4.78.18	TThread.GetTickCount	494
4.78.19	TThread.GetTickCount64	494
4.78.20	TThread.ExecuteInThread	494
4.78.21	TThread.AfterConstruction	499
4.78.22	TThread.Start	499
4.78.23	TThread.Resume	500
4.78.24	TThread.Suspend	500
4.78.25	TThread.Terminate	500
4.78.26	TThread.WaitFor	500
4.78.27	TThread.CurrentThread	501
4.78.28	TThread.ProcessorCount	501
4.78.29	TThread.IsSingleProcessor	501
4.78.30	TThread.FreeOnTerminate	502
4.78.31	TThread.Handle	502
4.78.32	TThread.ExternalThread	502
4.78.33	TThread.Priority	502
4.78.34	TThread.Suspended	503
4.78.35	TThread.Finished	503
4.78.36	TThread.ThreadID	503
4.78.37	TThread.OnTerminate	503
4.78.38	TThread.FatalException	504

4.79	TThreadList	504
4.79.1	Description	504
4.79.2	Method overview	504
4.79.3	Property overview	504
4.79.4	TThreadList.Create	504
4.79.5	TThreadList.Destroy	505
4.79.6	TThreadList.Add	505
4.79.7	TThreadList.Clear	505
4.79.8	TThreadList.LockList	505
4.79.9	TThreadList.Remove	506
4.79.10	TThreadList.UnlockList	506
4.79.11	TThreadList.Duplicates	506
4.80	TWriter	506
4.80.1	Description	506
4.80.2	Method overview	507
4.80.3	Property overview	507
4.80.4	TWriter.Create	507
4.80.5	TWriter.Destroy	508
4.80.6	TWriter.FlushBuffer	508
4.80.7	TWriter.DefineProperty	508
4.80.8	TWriter.DefineBinaryProperty	508
4.80.9	TWriter.Write	508
4.80.10	TWriter.WriteBoolean	509
4.80.11	TWriter.WriteCollection	509
4.80.12	TWriter.WriteComponent	509
4.80.13	TWriter.WriteChar	509
4.80.14	TWriter.WriteWideChar	509
4.80.15	TWriter.WriteDescendent	510
4.80.16	TWriter.WriteFloat	510
4.80.17	TWriter.WriteSingle	510
4.80.18	TWriter.WriteDate	510
4.80.19	TWriter.WriteCurrency	510
4.80.20	TWriter.WriteIdent	511
4.80.21	TWriter.WriteInteger	511
4.80.22	TWriter.WriteSet	511
4.80.23	TWriter.WriteListBegin	511
4.80.24	TWriter.WriteListEnd	511
4.80.25	TWriter.WriteSignature	512
4.80.26	TWriter.WriteRootComponent	512
4.80.27	TWriter.WriteString	512

4.80.28	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteString</a>	512
4.80.29	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteUnicodeString</a>	512
4.80.30	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteVariant</a>	513
4.80.31	<a href="#">TWriter.RootAncestor</a>	513
4.80.32	<a href="#">TWriter.OnFindAncestor</a>	513
4.80.33	<a href="#">TWriter.OnWriteMethodProperty</a>	513
4.80.34	<a href="#">TWriter.OnWriteStringProperty</a>	514
4.80.35	<a href="#">TWriter.Driver</a>	514
4.80.36	<a href="#">TWriter.PropertyPath</a>	514
<b>5</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'clocale'</b>	<b>515</b>
5.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	515
<b>6</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'cmem'</b>	<b>516</b>
6.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	516
6.2	<a href="#">Constants, types and variables</a>	516
6.2.1	<a href="#">Constants</a>	516
6.3	<a href="#">Procedures and functions</a>	516
6.3.1	<a href="#">CAlloc</a>	516
6.3.2	<a href="#">Free</a>	517
6.3.3	<a href="#">Malloc</a>	517
6.3.4	<a href="#">ReAlloc</a>	517
<b>7</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'collation_de'</b>	<b>518</b>
7.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	518
<b>8</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'collation_es'</b>	<b>519</b>
8.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	519
<b>9</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'collation_fr_ca'</b>	<b>520</b>
9.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	520
<b>10</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'collation_ja'</b>	<b>521</b>
10.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	521
<b>11</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'collation_ko'</b>	<b>522</b>
11.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	522
<b>12</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'collation_ru'</b>	<b>523</b>
12.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	523
<b>13</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'collation_sv'</b>	<b>524</b>
13.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	524



<b>14 Reference for unit 'collation_zh'</b>	<b>525</b>
14.1 Overview . . . . .	525
<b>15 Reference for unit 'cp1250'</b>	<b>526</b>
15.1 Overview . . . . .	526
<b>16 Reference for unit 'cp1251'</b>	<b>527</b>
16.1 Overview . . . . .	527
<b>17 Reference for unit 'cp1252'</b>	<b>528</b>
17.1 Overview . . . . .	528
<b>18 Reference for unit 'cp1253'</b>	<b>529</b>
18.1 Overview . . . . .	529
<b>19 Reference for unit 'cp1254'</b>	<b>530</b>
19.1 Overview . . . . .	530
<b>20 Reference for unit 'cp1255'</b>	<b>531</b>
20.1 Overview . . . . .	531
<b>21 Reference for unit 'cp1256'</b>	<b>532</b>
21.1 Overview . . . . .	532
<b>22 Reference for unit 'cp1257'</b>	<b>533</b>
22.1 Overview . . . . .	533
<b>23 Reference for unit 'cp1258'</b>	<b>534</b>
23.1 Overview . . . . .	534
<b>24 Reference for unit 'cp437'</b>	<b>535</b>
24.1 Overview . . . . .	535
<b>25 Reference for unit 'cp646'</b>	<b>536</b>
25.1 Overview . . . . .	536
<b>26 Reference for unit 'cp850'</b>	<b>537</b>
26.1 Overview . . . . .	537
<b>27 Reference for unit 'cp852'</b>	<b>538</b>
27.1 Overview . . . . .	538
<b>28 Reference for unit 'cp856'</b>	<b>539</b>
28.1 Overview . . . . .	539

<b>29 Reference for unit 'cp866'</b>	<b>540</b>
29.1 Overview . . . . .	540
<b>30 Reference for unit 'cp874'</b>	<b>541</b>
30.1 Overview . . . . .	541
<b>31 Reference for unit 'cp8859_1'</b>	<b>542</b>
31.1 Overview . . . . .	542
<b>32 Reference for unit 'cp8859_2'</b>	<b>543</b>
32.1 Overview . . . . .	543
<b>33 Reference for unit 'cp8859_5'</b>	<b>544</b>
33.1 Overview . . . . .	544
<b>34 Reference for unit 'cp895'</b>	<b>545</b>
34.1 Overview . . . . .	545
<b>35 Reference for unit 'cp932'</b>	<b>546</b>
35.1 Overview . . . . .	546
<b>36 Reference for unit 'cp936'</b>	<b>547</b>
36.1 Overview . . . . .	547
<b>37 Reference for unit 'cp949'</b>	<b>548</b>
37.1 Overview . . . . .	548
<b>38 Reference for unit 'cp950'</b>	<b>549</b>
38.1 Overview . . . . .	549
<b>39 Reference for unit 'cpall'</b>	<b>550</b>
39.1 Used units . . . . .	551
39.2 Overview . . . . .	552
<b>40 Reference for unit 'Crt'</b>	<b>553</b>
40.1 Overview . . . . .	553
40.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	553
40.2.1 Constants . . . . .	553
40.2.2 Types . . . . .	556
40.2.3 Variables . . . . .	556
40.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	557
40.3.1 AssignCrt . . . . .	557
40.3.2 ClrEol . . . . .	557
40.3.3 ClrScr . . . . .	558

40.3.4	cursorbig	559
40.3.5	cursoroff	559
40.3.6	cursoron	559
40.3.7	Delay	559
40.3.8	DelLine	560
40.3.9	GotoXY	561
40.3.10	HighVideo	561
40.3.11	InsLine	562
40.3.12	KeyPressed	562
40.3.13	LowVideo	563
40.3.14	NormVideo	563
40.3.15	NoSound	563
40.3.16	ReadKey	564
40.3.17	Sound	565
40.3.18	TextBackground	565
40.3.19	TextColor	566
40.3.20	TextMode	566
40.3.21	WhereX	566
40.3.22	WhereY	567
40.3.23	Window	567
40.4	TCharAttr	568
<b>41</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'cthreads'</b>	<b>569</b>
41.1	Overview	569
41.2	Procedures and functions	569
41.2.1	SetCThreadManager	569
<b>42</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'ctypes'</b>	<b>570</b>
42.1	Overview	570
42.2	Constants, types and variables	570
42.2.1	Types	570
<b>43</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'cwstring'</b>	<b>576</b>
43.1	Overview	576
43.2	Procedures and functions	576
43.2.1	SetCWidestringManager	576
<b>44</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'DateUtils'</b>	<b>577</b>
44.1	Used units	577
44.2	Overview	577
44.3	Constants, types and variables	577

---

44.3.1	Constants	577
44.4	Procedures and functions	579
44.4.1	CompareDate	579
44.4.2	CompareDateTime	580
44.4.3	CompareTime	581
44.4.4	DateInRange	582
44.4.5	DateOf	583
44.4.6	DateTimeInRange	583
44.4.7	DateTimeToDosDateTime	583
44.4.8	DateTimeToJulianDate	584
44.4.9	DateTimeToMac	584
44.4.10	DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate	584
44.4.11	DateTimeToUnix	585
44.4.12	DateToISO8601	585
44.4.13	DayOf	585
44.4.14	DayOfTheMonth	586
44.4.15	DayOfTheWeek	586
44.4.16	DayOfTheYear	586
44.4.17	DaysBetween	587
44.4.18	DaysInAMonth	588
44.4.19	DaysInAYear	588
44.4.20	DaysInMonth	589
44.4.21	DaysInYear	589
44.4.22	DaySpan	590
44.4.23	DecodeDateDay	590
44.4.24	DecodeDateMonthWeek	591
44.4.25	DecodeDateTime	592
44.4.26	DecodeDateWeek	592
44.4.27	DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth	593
44.4.28	DosDateTimeToDateTime	593
44.4.29	EncodeDateDay	594
44.4.30	EncodeDateMonthWeek	594
44.4.31	EncodeDateTime	594
44.4.32	EncodeDateWeek	595
44.4.33	EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth	595
44.4.34	EncodeTimeInterval	595
44.4.35	EndOfADay	596
44.4.36	EndOfAMonth	596
44.4.37	EndOfAWeek	597
44.4.38	EndOfAYear	598

44.4.39	EndOfDay	598
44.4.40	EndOfMonth	599
44.4.41	EndOfWeek	599
44.4.42	EndOfYear	600
44.4.43	HourOf	600
44.4.44	HourOfDay	601
44.4.45	HourOfMonth	601
44.4.46	HourOfWeek	601
44.4.47	HourOfYear	602
44.4.48	HoursBetween	602
44.4.49	HourSpan	603
44.4.50	IncDay	604
44.4.51	IncHour	604
44.4.52	IncMilliSecond	605
44.4.53	IncMinute	605
44.4.54	IncSecond	606
44.4.55	IncWeek	606
44.4.56	IncYear	607
44.4.57	InvalidDateDayError	607
44.4.58	InvalidDateMonthWeekError	608
44.4.59	InvalidDateTimeError	608
44.4.60	InvalidDateWeekError	608
44.4.61	InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError	609
44.4.62	IsInLeapYear	609
44.4.63	ISO8601ToDate	610
44.4.64	ISO8601ToDateDef	610
44.4.65	IsPM	611
44.4.66	IsSameDay	611
44.4.67	IsSameMonth	612
44.4.68	IsToday	612
44.4.69	IsValidDate	613
44.4.70	IsValidDateDay	613
44.4.71	IsValidDateMonthWeek	614
44.4.72	IsValidDateTime	615
44.4.73	IsValidDateWeek	616
44.4.74	IsValidTime	616
44.4.75	JulianDateToDateTime	617
44.4.76	LocalTimeToUniversal	617
44.4.77	MacTimeStampToUnix	617
44.4.78	MacToDateTime	617

44.4.79	MilliSecondOf	618
44.4.80	MilliSecondOfDay	618
44.4.81	MilliSecondOfTheHour	618
44.4.82	MilliSecondOfTheMinute	619
44.4.83	MilliSecondOfTheMonth	619
44.4.84	MilliSecondOfTheSecond	619
44.4.85	MilliSecondOfTheWeek	620
44.4.86	MilliSecondOfTheYear	620
44.4.87	MilliSecondsBetween	620
44.4.88	MilliSecondSpan	621
44.4.89	MinuteOf	622
44.4.90	MinuteOfDay	622
44.4.91	MinuteOfTheHour	622
44.4.92	MinuteOfTheMonth	623
44.4.93	MinuteOfTheWeek	623
44.4.94	MinuteOfTheYear	624
44.4.95	MinutesBetween	624
44.4.96	MinuteSpan	625
44.4.97	ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime	626
44.4.98	MonthOf	626
44.4.99	MonthOfTheYear	626
44.4.100	MonthsBetween	627
44.4.101	MonthSpan	627
44.4.102	NthDayOfWeek	628
44.4.103	PeriodBetween	629
44.4.104	PreviousDayOfWeek	629
44.4.105	RecodeDate	630
44.4.106	RecodeDateTime	630
44.4.107	RecodeDay	631
44.4.108	RecodeHour	632
44.4.109	RecodeMilliSecond	632
44.4.110	RecodeMinute	633
44.4.111	RecodeMonth	634
44.4.112	RecodeSecond	634
44.4.113	RecodeTime	635
44.4.114	RecodeYear	636
44.4.115	SameDate	636
44.4.116	SameDateTime	637
44.4.117	SameTime	638
44.4.118	ScanDateTime	639

44.4.119	SecondOf	639
44.4.120	SecondOfTheDay	639
44.4.121	SecondOfTheHour	640
44.4.122	SecondOfTheMinute	640
44.4.123	SecondOfTheMonth	641
44.4.124	SecondOfTheWeek	641
44.4.125	SecondOfTheYear	641
44.4.126	SecondsBetween	641
44.4.127	SecondSpan	642
44.4.128	StartOfADay	643
44.4.129	StartOfAMonth	644
44.4.130	StartOfAWeek	644
44.4.131	StartOfAYear	645
44.4.132	StartOfTheDay	646
44.4.133	StartOfTheMonth	646
44.4.134	StartOfTheWeek	647
44.4.135	StartOfTheYear	647
44.4.136	TimeInRange	648
44.4.137	TimeOf	648
44.4.138	Today	649
44.4.139	Tomorrow	649
44.4.140	TryEncodeDateDay	649
44.4.141	TryEncodeDateMonthWeek	650
44.4.142	TryEncodeDateTime	651
44.4.143	TryEncodeDateWeek	651
44.4.144	TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth	652
44.4.145	TryEncodeTimeInterval	653
44.4.146	TryISO8601ToDate	653
44.4.147	TryISOStrToDate	654
44.4.148	TryISOStrToDateTime	654
44.4.149	TryISOStrToTime	655
44.4.150	TryISOTZStrToTZOffset	655
44.4.151	TryJulianDateToDateTime	656
44.4.152	TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime	656
44.4.153	TryRecodeDateTime	656
44.4.154	UniversalTimeToLocal	657
44.4.155	UnixTimeStampToMac	658
44.4.156	UnixToDateTime	658
44.4.157	WeekOf	658
44.4.158	WeekOfTheMonth	658

44.4.159	WeekOfTheYear	659
44.4.160	WeeksBetween	660
44.4.161	WeeksInAYear	661
44.4.162	WeeksInYear	661
44.4.163	WeekSpan	662
44.4.164	WithinPastDays	663
44.4.165	WithinPastHours	664
44.4.166	WithinPastMilliSeconds	665
44.4.167	WithinPastMinutes	666
44.4.168	WithinPastMonths	667
44.4.169	WithinPastSeconds	668
44.4.170	WithinPastWeeks	669
44.4.171	WithinPastYears	669
44.4.172	YearOf	670
44.4.173	YearsBetween	671
44.4.174	YearSpan	672
44.4.175	Yesterday	673
<b>45</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Dos'</b>	<b>674</b>
45.1	Used units	674
45.2	Overview	674
45.3	System information	674
45.4	Process handling	675
45.5	Directory and disk handling	675
45.6	File handling	676
45.7	File open mode constants.	676
45.8	File attributes	676
45.9	Constants, types and variables	677
45.9.1	Constants	677
45.9.2	Types	678
45.9.3	Variables	680
45.10	Procedures and functions	680
45.10.1	AddDisk	680
45.10.2	DiskFree	681
45.10.3	DiskSize	682
45.10.4	DosExitCode	682
45.10.5	DosVersion	683
45.10.6	DTToUnixDate	683
45.10.7	EnvCount	684
45.10.8	EnvStr	684



45.10.9	Exec	685
45.10.10	FExpand	685
45.10.11	FindClose	685
45.10.12	FindFirst	686
45.10.13	FindNext	687
45.10.14	FSearch	687
45.10.15	FSplit	688
45.10.16	GetCBreak	688
45.10.17	GetDate	689
45.10.18	GetEnv	689
45.10.19	GetFAttr	690
45.10.20	GetFTime	691
45.10.21	GetIntVec	691
45.10.22	GetLongName	692
45.10.23	GetMsCount	692
45.10.24	GetShortName	692
45.10.25	GetTime	693
45.10.26	GetVerify	693
45.10.27	Intr	694
45.10.28	Keep	694
45.10.29	MSDos	694
45.10.30	PackTime	695
45.10.31	SetCBreak	695
45.10.32	SetDate	696
45.10.33	SetFAttr	696
45.10.34	SetFTime	697
45.10.35	SetIntVec	697
45.10.36	SetTime	697
45.10.37	SetVerify	697
45.10.38	SwapVectors	698
45.10.39	UnixDateToDt	698
45.10.40	UnpackTime	698
45.10.41	weekday	699
45.11	DateTime	699
45.12	SearchRec	699
<b>46</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'dxeload'</b>	<b>701</b>
46.1	Overview	701
46.2	Procedures and functions	701
46.2.1	dxeload	701

<b>47 Reference for unit 'dynlibs'</b>	<b>702</b>
47.1 Overview . . . . .	702
47.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	702
47.2.1 Constants . . . . .	702
47.2.2 Types . . . . .	702
47.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	703
47.3.1 FreeLibrary . . . . .	703
47.3.2 GetLoadErrorStr . . . . .	703
47.3.3 GetProcAddress . . . . .	703
47.3.4 GetProcedureAddress . . . . .	703
47.3.5 LoadLibrary . . . . .	704
47.3.6 SafeLoadLibrary . . . . .	704
47.3.7 UnloadLibrary . . . . .	704
<b>48 Reference for unit 'emu387'</b>	<b>705</b>
48.1 Overview . . . . .	705
48.2 Procedures and functions . . . . .	705
48.2.1 npxsetup . . . . .	705
<b>49 Reference for unit 'errors'</b>	<b>706</b>
49.1 Used units . . . . .	706
49.2 Overview . . . . .	706
49.3 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	706
49.3.1 Constants . . . . .	706
49.4 Procedures and functions . . . . .	707
49.4.1 PError . . . . .	707
49.4.2 StrError . . . . .	708
<b>50 Reference for unit 'exeinfo'</b>	<b>709</b>
50.1 Overview . . . . .	709
50.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	709
50.2.1 Types . . . . .	709
50.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	709
50.3.1 CloseExeFile . . . . .	709
50.3.2 FindExeSection . . . . .	709
50.3.3 GetModuleByAddr . . . . .	710
50.3.4 OpenExeFile . . . . .	710
50.3.5 ReadDebugLink . . . . .	710
50.4 TExeFile . . . . .	711
<b>51 Reference for unit 'fgl'</b>	<b>712</b>

51.1	Used units	712
51.2	Overview	712
51.3	Constants, types and variables	712
51.3.1	Constants	712
51.3.2	Types	712
51.4	EListError	713
51.4.1	Description	713
51.5	TFPGInterfacedObjectList	713
51.5.1	Description	713
51.5.2	Method overview	713
51.5.3	Property overview	713
51.5.4	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Create	714
51.5.5	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add	714
51.5.6	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Extract	714
51.5.7	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.GetEnumerator	714
51.5.8	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.IndexOf	715
51.5.9	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Insert	715
51.5.10	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Assign	715
51.5.11	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.AddList	715
51.5.12	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Remove	716
51.5.13	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Sort	716
51.5.14	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.First	716
51.5.15	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Last	717
51.5.16	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items	717
51.5.17	TFPGInterfacedObjectList.List	717
51.6	TFPGList	717
51.6.1	Description	717
51.6.2	Method overview	718
51.6.3	Property overview	718
51.6.4	TFPGList.Create	718
51.6.5	TFPGList.ItemIsManaged	718
51.6.6	TFPGList.Add	718
51.6.7	TFPGList.Extract	719
51.6.8	TFPGList.GetEnumerator	719
51.6.9	TFPGList.IndexOf	719
51.6.10	TFPGList.Insert	719
51.6.11	TFPGList.Assign	720
51.6.12	TFPGList.AddList	720
51.6.13	TFPGList.Remove	720
51.6.14	TFPGList.Sort	720

---

51.6.15	TFPGList.First	721
51.6.16	TFPGList.Last	721
51.6.17	TFPGList.Items	721
51.6.18	TFPGList.List	721
51.7	TFPGListEnumerator	722
51.7.1	Description	722
51.7.2	Method overview	722
51.7.3	Property overview	722
51.7.4	TFPGListEnumerator.Create	722
51.7.5	TFPGListEnumerator.MoveNext	722
51.7.6	TFPGListEnumerator.Current	722
51.8	TFPGMap	723
51.8.1	Description	723
51.8.2	Method overview	723
51.8.3	Property overview	723
51.8.4	TFPGMap.Create	723
51.8.5	TFPGMap.Add	724
51.8.6	TFPGMap.Find	724
51.8.7	TFPGMap.TryGetData	724
51.8.8	TFPGMap.AddOrSetData	724
51.8.9	TFPGMap.IndexOf	725
51.8.10	TFPGMap.IndexOfData	725
51.8.11	TFPGMap.InsertKey	725
51.8.12	TFPGMap.InsertKeyData	725
51.8.13	TFPGMap.Remove	726
51.8.14	TFPGMap.Keys	726
51.8.15	TFPGMap.Data	726
51.8.16	TFPGMap.KeyData	727
51.8.17	TFPGMap.OnCompare	727
51.8.18	TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare	727
51.8.19	TFPGMap.OnDataCompare	728
51.9	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData	728
51.9.1	Description	728
51.9.2	Method overview	728
51.9.3	Property overview	729
51.9.4	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Create	729
51.9.5	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add	729
51.9.6	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find	729
51.9.7	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.TryGetData	730
51.9.8	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.AddOrSetData	730

51.9.9	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf	730
51.9.10	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOfData	730
51.9.11	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKey	731
51.9.12	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKeyData	731
51.9.13	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Remove	731
51.9.14	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys	731
51.9.15	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data	732
51.9.16	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData	732
51.9.17	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnCompare	732
51.9.18	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare	733
51.9.19	TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnDataCompare	733
51.10	TFPGMapObject	733
51.10.1	Description	733
51.10.2	Method overview	734
51.10.3	Property overview	734
51.10.4	TFPGMapObject.Create	734
51.10.5	TFPGMapObject.Add	734
51.10.6	TFPGMapObject.Find	735
51.10.7	TFPGMapObject.TryGetData	735
51.10.8	TFPGMapObject.AddOrSetData	735
51.10.9	TFPGMapObject.IndexOf	735
51.10.10	TFPGMapObject.IndexOfData	736
51.10.11	TFPGMapObject.InsertKey	736
51.10.12	TFPGMapObject.InsertKeyData	736
51.10.13	TFPGMapObject.Remove	736
51.10.14	TFPGMapObject.Keys	737
51.10.15	TFPGMapObject.Data	737
51.10.16	TFPGMapObject.KeyData	737
51.10.17	TFPGMapObject.OnCompare	738
51.10.18	TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare	738
51.10.19	TFPGMapObject.OnDataCompare	738
51.11	TFPGObjectList	739
51.11.1	Description	739
51.11.2	Method overview	739
51.11.3	Property overview	739
51.11.4	TFPGObjectList.Create	739
51.11.5	TFPGObjectList.Add	739
51.11.6	TFPGObjectList.Extract	740
51.11.7	TFPGObjectList.GetEnumerator	740
51.11.8	TFPGObjectList.IndexOf	740

---

51.11.9	TFPGObjectList.Insert	741
51.11.10	TFPGObjectList.AddList	741
51.11.11	TFPGObjectList.Assign	741
51.11.12	TFPGObjectList.Remove	741
51.11.13	TFPGObjectList.Sort	742
51.11.14	TFPGObjectList.First	742
51.11.15	TFPGObjectList.Last	742
51.11.16	TFPGObjectList.Items	742
51.11.17	TFPGObjectList.List	743
51.11.18	TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects	743
51.12	TFPSList	743
51.12.1	Description	743
51.12.2	Method overview	744
51.12.3	Property overview	744
51.12.4	TFPSList.Create	744
51.12.5	TFPSList.Destroy	744
51.12.6	TFPSList.ItemIsManaged	745
51.12.7	TFPSList.Add	745
51.12.8	TFPSList.Clear	745
51.12.9	TFPSList.Delete	745
51.12.10	TFPSList.DeleteRange	746
51.12.11	TFPSList.Error	746
51.12.12	TFPSList.Exchange	746
51.12.13	TFPSList.Expand	746
51.12.14	TFPSList.Extract	747
51.12.15	TFPSList.IndexOf	747
51.12.16	TFPSList.Insert	747
51.12.17	TFPSList.Move	748
51.12.18	TFPSList.Assign	748
51.12.19	TFPSList.AddList	748
51.12.20	TFPSList.Remove	748
51.12.21	TFPSList.Pack	749
51.12.22	TFPSList.Sort	749
51.12.23	TFPSList.Capacity	749
51.12.24	TFPSList.Count	750
51.12.25	TFPSList.Items	750
51.12.26	TFPSList.ItemSize	750
51.12.27	TFPSList.List	750
51.12.28	TFPSList.First	751
51.12.29	TFPSList.Last	751

51.13	TFPSMap	751
51.13.1	Description	751
51.13.2	Method overview	751
51.13.3	Property overview	752
51.13.4	TFPSMap.Create	752
51.13.5	TFPSMap.Add	752
51.13.6	TFPSMap.Find	752
51.13.7	TFPSMap.IndexOf	753
51.13.8	TFPSMap.IndexOfData	753
51.13.9	TFPSMap.Insert	753
51.13.10	TFPSMap.InsertKey	754
51.13.11	TFPSMap.InsertKeyData	754
51.13.12	TFPSMap.Remove	754
51.13.13	TFPSMap.Sort	754
51.13.14	TFPSMap.Duplicates	755
51.13.15	TFPSMap.KeySize	755
51.13.16	TFPSMap.DataSize	755
51.13.17	TFPSMap.Keys	756
51.13.18	TFPSMap.Data	756
51.13.19	TFPSMap.KeyData	756
51.13.20	TFPSMap.Sorted	756
51.13.21	TFPSMap.OnPtrCompare	757
51.13.22	TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare	757
51.13.23	TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare	757
<b>52</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'fpwidingstring'</b>	<b>758</b>
52.1	Used units	758
52.2	Overview	758
52.3	Constants, types and variables	759
52.3.1	Variables	759
52.4	Procedures and functions	759
52.4.1	GetActiveCollation	759
52.4.2	SetActiveCollation	759
<b>53</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'getopts'</b>	<b>760</b>
53.1	Overview	760
53.2	Constants, types and variables	760
53.2.1	Constants	760
53.2.2	Types	761
53.2.3	Variables	761
53.3	Procedures and functions	761

53.3.1	GetLongOpts	761
53.3.2	GetOpt	762
53.4	TOption	764
53.4.1	Method overview	765
53.4.2	TOption.SetOption	765
<b>54</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'go32'</b>	<b>766</b>
54.1	Overview	766
54.2	Real mode callbacks	766
54.3	Executing software interrupts	767
54.4	Software interrupts	769
54.5	Hardware interrupts	770
54.6	Disabling interrupts	772
54.7	Creating your own interrupt handlers	772
54.8	Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts	772
54.9	Handling interrupts with DPMI	772
54.10	Interrupt redirection	773
54.11	Processor access	773
54.12	I/O port access	773
54.13	dos memory access	773
54.14	FPC specialities	773
54.15	Selectors and descriptors	774
54.16	What is DPMI	774
54.17	Constants, types and variables	774
54.17.1	Constants	774
54.17.2	Types	777
54.17.3	Variables	779
54.18	Procedures and functions	779
54.18.1	allocate_ldt_descriptors	779
54.18.2	allocate_memory_block	782
54.18.3	copyfromdos	783
54.18.4	copytodos	783
54.18.5	create_code_segment_alias_descriptor	783
54.18.6	disable	784
54.18.7	dpmi_dosmemfillchar	784
54.18.8	dpmi_dosmemfillword	784
54.18.9	dpmi_dosmemget	784
54.18.10	dpmi_dosmemmove	785
54.18.11	dpmi_dosmemput	785
54.18.12	enable	785



---

54.18.13	free_ldt_descriptor	785
54.18.14	free_linear_addr_mapping	786
54.18.15	free_memory_block	786
54.18.16	free_rm_callback	786
54.18.17	get_cs	787
54.18.18	get_descriptor_access_right	787
54.18.19	get_dpmi_version	787
54.18.20	get_ds	788
54.18.21	get_exception_handler	788
54.18.22	get_linear_addr	788
54.18.23	get_meminfo	789
54.18.24	get_next_selector_increment_value	790
54.18.25	get_page_attributes	790
54.18.26	get_page_size	790
54.18.27	get_pm_exception_handler	791
54.18.28	get_pm_interrupt	791
54.18.29	get_rm_callback	791
54.18.30	get_rm_interrupt	796
54.18.31	get_run_mode	796
54.18.32	get_segment_base_address	797
54.18.33	get_segment_limit	798
54.18.34	get_ss	798
54.18.35	global_dos_alloc	798
54.18.36	global_dos_free	801
54.18.37	inportb	801
54.18.38	inportl	802
54.18.39	inportw	802
54.18.40	lock_code	802
54.18.41	lock_data	803
54.18.42	lock_linear_region	803
54.18.43	map_device_in_memory_block	803
54.18.44	outportb	804
54.18.45	outportl	804
54.18.46	outportw	805
54.18.47	realintr	805
54.18.48	request_linear_region	806
54.18.49	segment_to_descriptor	806
54.18.50	seg_fillchar	807
54.18.51	seg_fillword	808
54.18.52	seg_move	808

54.18.53	set_descriptor_access_right . . . . .	809
54.18.54	set_exception_handler . . . . .	809
54.18.55	set_page_attributes . . . . .	809
54.18.56	set_pm_exception_handler . . . . .	809
54.18.57	set_pm_interrupt . . . . .	809
54.18.58	set_rm_interrupt . . . . .	811
54.18.59	set_segment_base_address . . . . .	811
54.18.60	set_segment_limit . . . . .	812
54.18.61	tb_offset . . . . .	812
54.18.62	tb_segment . . . . .	812
54.18.63	tb_size . . . . .	813
54.18.64	transfer_buffer . . . . .	813
54.18.65	unlock_code . . . . .	813
54.18.66	unlock_data . . . . .	814
54.18.67	unlock_linear_region . . . . .	814
54.19	tdpmiversioninfo . . . . .	814
54.20	tmeminfo . . . . .	815
54.21	tseinfo . . . . .	815
<b>55</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'gpm'</b>	<b>817</b>
55.1	Used units . . . . .	817
55.2	Overview . . . . .	817
55.3	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	817
55.3.1	Constants . . . . .	817
55.3.2	Types . . . . .	819
55.3.3	Variables . . . . .	820
55.4	Procedures and functions . . . . .	821
55.4.1	Gpm_AnyDouble . . . . .	821
55.4.2	Gpm_AnySingle . . . . .	821
55.4.3	Gpm_AnyTriple . . . . .	821
55.4.4	gpm_close . . . . .	822
55.4.5	gpm_fitvalues . . . . .	822
55.4.6	gpm_fitvaluesM . . . . .	822
55.4.7	gpm_getevent . . . . .	823
55.4.8	gpm_getsnapshot . . . . .	824
55.4.9	gpm_lowerroi . . . . .	824
55.4.10	gpm_open . . . . .	824
55.4.11	gpm_poproi . . . . .	825
55.4.12	gpm_pushroi . . . . .	825
55.4.13	gpm_raiseroi . . . . .	825

55.4.14	gpm_repeat	826
55.4.15	Gpm_StrictDouble	826
55.4.16	Gpm_StrictSingle	826
55.4.17	Gpm_StrictTriple	826
55.5	Tgpm_connect	827
55.6	Tgpm_event	827
55.7	Tgpm_roi	827
<b>56</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Graph'</b>	<b>829</b>
56.1	Overview	829
56.2	Categorized functions: Text and font handling	829
56.3	Categorized functions: Filled drawings	829
56.4	Categorized functions: Drawing primitives	830
56.5	Categorized functions: Color management	830
56.6	Categorized functions: Screen management	831
56.7	Categorized functions: Initialization	831
56.8	Target specific issues: Linux	832
56.9	Target specific issues: DOS	833
56.10	A word about mode selection	833
56.11	Requirements	837
56.12	Constants, types and variables	838
56.12.1	Constants	838
56.12.2	Types	855
56.12.3	Variables	858
56.13	Procedures and functions	861
56.13.1	Arc	861
56.13.2	Bar	861
56.13.3	Bar3D	861
56.13.4	ClearDevice	861
56.13.5	Closegraph	862
56.13.6	DetectGraph	862
56.13.7	DrawPoly	862
56.13.8	Ellipse	863
56.13.9	FillEllipse	863
56.13.10	FillPoly	863
56.13.11	FloodFill	863
56.13.12	GetArcCoords	864
56.13.13	GetAspectRatio	864
56.13.14	GetColor	864
56.13.15	GetDefaultPalette	864

---

56.13.16	GetDirectVideo	865
56.13.17	GetDriverName	865
56.13.18	GetFillPattern	865
56.13.19	GetFillSettings	865
56.13.20	GetGraphMode	866
56.13.21	GetLineSettings	866
56.13.22	GetMaxColor	866
56.13.23	GetMaxMode	866
56.13.24	GetMaxX	867
56.13.25	GetMaxY	867
56.13.26	GetModeName	867
56.13.27	GetModeRange	867
56.13.28	GetPalette	868
56.13.29	GetPaletteSize	868
56.13.30	GetTextSettings	868
56.13.31	GetViewSettings	868
56.13.32	GetX	869
56.13.33	GetY	869
56.13.34	GraphDefaults	869
56.13.35	GraphErrorMsg	869
56.13.36	GraphResult	870
56.13.37	InitGraph	870
56.13.38	InstallUserDriver	871
56.13.39	InstallUserFont	871
56.13.40	LineRel	871
56.13.41	LineTo	872
56.13.42	MoveRel	872
56.13.43	MoveTo	872
56.13.44	OutText	872
56.13.45	PieSlice	873
56.13.46	queryadapterinfo	873
56.13.47	Rectangle	873
56.13.48	RegisterBGIDriver	873
56.13.49	RegisterBGIfont	874
56.13.50	RestoreCrtMode	874
56.13.51	Sector	874
56.13.52	SetAspectRatio	874
56.13.53	SetColor	875
56.13.54	SetDirectVideo	875
56.13.55	SetFillPattern	875

56.13.56 SetFillStyle . . . . .	875
56.13.57 SetGraphMode . . . . .	876
56.13.58 SetLineStyle . . . . .	876
56.13.59 SetPalette . . . . .	877
56.13.60 SetTextJustify . . . . .	877
56.13.61 SetTextStyle . . . . .	877
56.13.62 SetUserCharSize . . . . .	878
56.13.63 SetViewPort . . . . .	878
56.13.64 SetWriteMode . . . . .	879
56.13.65 SetWriteModeEx . . . . .	879
56.13.66 TextHeight . . . . .	879
56.13.67 TextWidth . . . . .	879
56.14 ArcCoordsType . . . . .	880
56.15 FillSettingsType . . . . .	880
56.16 LineSettingsType . . . . .	880
56.17 PaletteType . . . . .	880
56.18 PointType . . . . .	880
56.19 RGBRec . . . . .	881
56.20 TextSettingsType . . . . .	881
56.21 TModeInfo . . . . .	881
56.22 TResolutionRec . . . . .	882
56.23 ViewPortType . . . . .	882
<b>57 Reference for unit 'heaptrc'</b>	<b>884</b>
57.1 Overview . . . . .	884
57.2 Controlling HeapTrc with environment variables . . . . .	884
57.3 HeapTrc Usage . . . . .	885
57.4 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	886
57.4.1 Constants . . . . .	886
57.4.2 Types . . . . .	887
57.5 Procedures and functions . . . . .	888
57.5.1 CheckPointer . . . . .	888
57.5.2 DumpHeap . . . . .	888
57.5.3 SetHeapExtraInfo . . . . .	888
57.5.4 SetHeapTraceOutput . . . . .	890
<b>58 Reference for unit 'ipc'</b>	<b>891</b>
58.1 Used units . . . . .	891
58.2 Overview . . . . .	891
58.3 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	891
58.3.1 Constants . . . . .	891

58.3.2	Types	893
58.4	Procedures and functions	895
58.4.1	ftok	895
58.4.2	msgctl	895
58.4.3	msgget	898
58.4.4	msgrcv	898
58.4.5	msgsnd	899
58.4.6	semctl	899
58.4.7	semget	904
58.4.8	semop	905
58.4.9	shmat	905
58.4.10	shmctl	906
58.4.11	shmdt	908
58.4.12	shmget	908
58.5	TIPC_Perm	909
58.6	TMSG	909
58.7	TMSGbuf	909
58.8	TMSGinfo	910
58.9	TMSQid_ds	910
58.10	TSEMbuf	910
58.11	TSEMid_ds	911
58.12	TSEMinfo	911
58.13	TSHMinfo	911
<b>59</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'keyboard'</b>	<b>913</b>
59.1	Overview	913
59.2	Unix specific notes	913
59.3	Writing a keyboard driver	914
59.4	Keyboard scan codes	917
59.5	Constants, types and variables	919
59.5.1	Constants	919
59.5.2	Types	924
59.6	Procedures and functions	924
59.6.1	DoneKeyboard	924
59.6.2	FunctionKeyName	925
59.6.3	GetKeyboardDriver	925
59.6.4	GetKeyEvent	926
59.6.5	GetKeyEventChar	926
59.6.6	GetKeyEventCode	927
59.6.7	GetKeyEventFlags	928

59.6.8	GetKeyEventShiftState . . . . .	928
59.6.9	GetKeyEventUniCode . . . . .	929
59.6.10	InitKeyboard . . . . .	929
59.6.11	IsFunctionKey . . . . .	929
59.6.12	KeyEventToString . . . . .	930
59.6.13	KeyPressed . . . . .	930
59.6.14	PollKeyEvent . . . . .	931
59.6.15	PollShiftStateEvent . . . . .	931
59.6.16	PutKeyEvent . . . . .	932
59.6.17	SetKeyboardDriver . . . . .	933
59.6.18	ShiftStateToString . . . . .	933
59.6.19	TranslateKeyEvent . . . . .	934
59.6.20	TranslateKeyEventUniCode . . . . .	934
59.7	TKeyboardDriver . . . . .	934
59.8	TKeyRecord . . . . .	935
59.9	TTreeElement . . . . .	935
<b>60</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'lineinfo' . . . . .</b>	<b>937</b>
60.1	Overview . . . . .	937
60.2	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	937
60.2.1	Types . . . . .	937
60.2.2	Variables . . . . .	937
60.3	Procedures and functions . . . . .	937
60.3.1	CloseStabs . . . . .	937
60.3.2	GetLineInfo . . . . .	938
60.3.3	StabBackTraceStr . . . . .	938
<b>61</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Linux' . . . . .</b>	<b>939</b>
61.1	Used units . . . . .	939
61.2	Overview . . . . .	939
61.3	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	939
61.3.1	Constants . . . . .	939
61.3.2	Types . . . . .	953
61.4	Procedures and functions . . . . .	954
61.4.1	capget . . . . .	954
61.4.2	capset . . . . .	955
61.4.3	clock_getres . . . . .	955
61.4.4	clock_gettime . . . . .	955
61.4.5	clock_settime . . . . .	955
61.4.6	clone . . . . .	956
61.4.7	epoll_create . . . . .	956

61.4.8	epoll_ctl	957
61.4.9	epoll_wait	957
61.4.10	fdatasync	958
61.4.11	futex	958
61.4.12	futex_op	959
61.4.13	inotify_add_watch	959
61.4.14	inotify_init	960
61.4.15	inotify_init1	960
61.4.16	inotify_rm_watch	960
61.4.17	sched_yield	960
61.4.18	setregid	961
61.4.19	setreuid	961
61.4.20	sync_file_range	961
61.4.21	Sysinfo	962
61.5	EPoll_Event	963
61.6	inotify_event	963
61.7	TSysInfo	963
61.8	user_cap_data	964
61.9	user_cap_header	964
<b>62</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Infodwrf'</b>	<b>965</b>
62.1	Overview	965
62.2	Constants, types and variables	965
62.2.1	Types	965
62.2.2	Variables	965
62.3	Procedures and functions	965
62.3.1	CloseDwarf	965
62.3.2	DwarfBackTraceStr	966
62.3.3	GetLineInfo	966
<b>63</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Math'</b>	<b>967</b>
63.1	Used units	967
63.2	Overview	967
63.3	Cash flow functions	967
63.4	Geometrical functions	968
63.5	Statistical functions	968
63.6	Number converting	969
63.7	Exponential and logarithmic functions	969
63.8	Hyperbolic functions	969
63.9	Trigonometric functions	970
63.10	Angle unit conversion	970



63.11	Min/max determination	970
63.12	Constants, types and variables	971
63.12.1	Constants	971
63.12.2	Types	972
63.13	Procedures and functions	974
63.13.1	ArcCos	974
63.13.2	ArcCosH	974
63.13.3	ArCosH	975
63.13.4	ArcSin	975
63.13.5	ArcSinH	976
63.13.6	ArcTan2	976
63.13.7	ArcTanH	977
63.13.8	ArSinH	977
63.13.9	ArTanH	977
63.13.10	Ceil	978
63.13.11	Ceil64	978
63.13.12	ClearExceptions	979
63.13.13	CompareValue	979
63.13.14	Cosecant	979
63.13.15	CosH	980
63.13.16	Cot	980
63.13.17	Cotan	980
63.13.18	Csc	981
63.13.19	CycleToRad	981
63.13.20	DegNormalize	982
63.13.21	DegToGrad	982
63.13.22	DegToRad	982
63.13.23	DivMod	983
63.13.24	EnsureRange	983
63.13.25	Floor	983
63.13.26	Floor64	984
63.13.27	FMod	984
63.13.28	Frexp	985
63.13.29	FutureValue	985
63.13.30	GetExceptionMask	986
63.13.31	GetPrecisionMode	986
63.13.32	GetRoundMode	986
63.13.33	GradToDeg	986
63.13.34	GradToRad	987
63.13.35	Hypot	987

63.13.36 IfThen . . . . .	988
63.13.37 InRange . . . . .	988
63.13.38 InterestRate . . . . .	988
63.13.39 IntPower . . . . .	989
63.13.40 IsInfinite . . . . .	989
63.13.41 IsNan . . . . .	989
63.13.42 IsZero . . . . .	990
63.13.43 Ldexp . . . . .	990
63.13.44 LnXP1 . . . . .	991
63.13.45 Log10 . . . . .	991
63.13.46 Log2 . . . . .	992
63.13.47 LogN . . . . .	992
63.13.48 Max . . . . .	993
63.13.49 MaxIntValue . . . . .	993
63.13.50 MaxValue . . . . .	994
63.13.51 Mean . . . . .	995
63.13.52 MeanAndStdDev . . . . .	996
63.13.53 Min . . . . .	997
63.13.54 MinIntValue . . . . .	997
63.13.55 MinValue . . . . .	998
63.13.56 modulus(Float,Float):Float . . . . .	999
63.13.57 MomentSkewKurtosis . . . . .	999
63.13.58 Norm . . . . .	1001
63.13.59 NumberOfPeriods . . . . .	1001
63.13.60 Payment . . . . .	1002
63.13.61 PopnStdDev . . . . .	1002
63.13.62 PopnVariance . . . . .	1003
63.13.63 Power . . . . .	1004
63.13.64 power(Float,Float):Float . . . . .	1004
63.13.65 power(Int64,Int64):Int64 . . . . .	1004
63.13.66 PresentValue . . . . .	1005
63.13.67 RadToCycle . . . . .	1005
63.13.68 RadToDeg . . . . .	1005
63.13.69 RadToGrad . . . . .	1006
63.13.70 RandG . . . . .	1006
63.13.71 RandomFrom . . . . .	1007
63.13.72 RandomRange . . . . .	1007
63.13.73 RoundTo . . . . .	1008
63.13.74 SameValue . . . . .	1008
63.13.75 Sec . . . . .	1008

63.13.76	Secant	1009
63.13.77	SetExceptionMask	1009
63.13.78	SetPrecisionMode	1009
63.13.79	SetRoundMode	1009
63.13.80	Sign	1010
63.13.81	SimpleRoundTo	1010
63.13.82	SinCos	1010
63.13.83	SinH	1011
63.13.84	StdDev	1011
63.13.85	Sum	1012
63.13.86	SumInt	1013
63.13.87	SumOfSquares	1013
63.13.88	SumsAndSquares	1014
63.13.89	Tan	1015
63.13.90	TanH	1016
63.13.91	TotalVariance	1016
63.13.92	Variance	1017
63.14	EInvalidArgument	1019
63.14.1	Description	1019
<b>64</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'matrix'</b>	<b>1020</b>
64.1	Overview	1020
64.2	Constants, types and variables	1021
64.2.1	Types	1021
64.3	Procedures and functions	1023
64.3.1	add(Tmatrix2_double,Double):Tmatrix2_double	1023
64.3.2	add(Tmatrix2_double,Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_double	1023
64.3.3	add(Tmatrix2_extended,extended):Tmatrix2_extended	1024
64.3.4	add(Tmatrix2_extended,Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_extended	1024
64.3.5	add(Tmatrix2_single,single):Tmatrix2_single	1024
64.3.6	add(Tmatrix2_single,Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_single	1024
64.3.7	add(Tmatrix3_double,Double):Tmatrix3_double	1024
64.3.8	add(Tmatrix3_double,Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_double	1025
64.3.9	add(Tmatrix3_extended,extended):Tmatrix3_extended	1025
64.3.10	add(Tmatrix3_extended,Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_extended	1025
64.3.11	add(Tmatrix3_single,single):Tmatrix3_single	1025
64.3.12	add(Tmatrix3_single,Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_single	1025
64.3.13	add(Tmatrix4_double,Double):Tmatrix4_double	1026
64.3.14	add(Tmatrix4_double,Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_double	1026
64.3.15	add(Tmatrix4_extended,extended):Tmatrix4_extended	1026

64.3.16	<code>add(Tmatrix4_extended,Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_extended</code>	1026
64.3.17	<code>add(Tmatrix4_single,single):Tmatrix4_single</code>	1026
64.3.18	<code>add(Tmatrix4_single,Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_single</code>	1027
64.3.19	<code>add(Tvector2_double,Double):Tvector2_double</code>	1027
64.3.20	<code>add(Tvector2_double,Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double</code>	1027
64.3.21	<code>add(Tvector2_extended,extended):Tvector2_extended</code>	1027
64.3.22	<code>add(Tvector2_extended,Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended</code>	1027
64.3.23	<code>add(Tvector2_single,single):Tvector2_single</code>	1028
64.3.24	<code>add(Tvector2_single,Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single</code>	1028
64.3.25	<code>add(Tvector3_double,Double):Tvector3_double</code>	1028
64.3.26	<code>add(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double</code>	1028
64.3.27	<code>add(Tvector3_extended,extended):Tvector3_extended</code>	1028
64.3.28	<code>add(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended</code>	1029
64.3.29	<code>add(Tvector3_single,single):Tvector3_single</code>	1029
64.3.30	<code>add(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single</code>	1029
64.3.31	<code>add(Tvector4_double,Double):Tvector4_double</code>	1029
64.3.32	<code>add(Tvector4_double,Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double</code>	1029
64.3.33	<code>add(Tvector4_extended,extended):Tvector4_extended</code>	1030
64.3.34	<code>add(Tvector4_extended,Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended</code>	1030
64.3.35	<code>add(Tvector4_single,single):Tvector4_single</code>	1030
64.3.36	<code>add(Tvector4_single,Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single</code>	1030
64.3.37	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_extended</code>	1030
64.3.38	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_single</code>	1031
64.3.39	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix3_double</code>	1031
64.3.40	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix3_extended</code>	1031
64.3.41	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix3_single</code>	1031
64.3.42	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix4_double</code>	1031
64.3.43	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix4_extended</code>	1032
64.3.44	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix4_single</code>	1032
64.3.45	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_double</code>	1032
64.3.46	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_single</code>	1032
64.3.47	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix3_double</code>	1033
64.3.48	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix3_extended</code>	1033
64.3.49	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix3_single</code>	1033
64.3.50	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix4_double</code>	1033
64.3.51	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix4_extended</code>	1034
64.3.52	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix4_single</code>	1034
64.3.53	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_double</code>	1034
64.3.54	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_extended</code>	1034
64.3.55	<code>assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix3_double</code>	1034

64.3.56	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix3_extended</a>	1035
64.3.57	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix3_single</a>	1035
64.3.58	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix4_double</a>	1035
64.3.59	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix4_extended</a>	1035
64.3.60	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix4_single</a>	1035
64.3.61	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix2_double</a>	1036
64.3.62	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix2_extended</a>	1036
64.3.63	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix2_single</a>	1036
64.3.64	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_extended</a>	1036
64.3.65	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_single</a>	1036
64.3.66	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix4_double</a>	1037
64.3.67	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix4_extended</a>	1037
64.3.68	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix4_single</a>	1037
64.3.69	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix2_double</a>	1037
64.3.70	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix2_extended</a>	1038
64.3.71	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix2_single</a>	1038
64.3.72	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_double</a>	1038
64.3.73	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_single</a>	1038
64.3.74	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix4_double</a>	1039
64.3.75	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix4_extended</a>	1039
64.3.76	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix4_single</a>	1039
64.3.77	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix2_double</a>	1039
64.3.78	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix2_extended</a>	1039
64.3.79	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix2_single</a>	1040
64.3.80	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_double</a>	1040
64.3.81	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_extended</a>	1040
64.3.82	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix4_double</a>	1040
64.3.83	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix4_extended</a>	1041
64.3.84	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix4_single</a>	1041
64.3.85	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix2_double</a>	1041
64.3.86	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix2_extended</a>	1041
64.3.87	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix2_single</a>	1041
64.3.88	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix3_double</a>	1042
64.3.89	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix3_extended</a>	1042
64.3.90	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix3_single</a>	1042
64.3.91	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_extended</a>	1042
64.3.92	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_single</a>	1042
64.3.93	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix2_double</a>	1043
64.3.94	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix2_extended</a>	1043
64.3.95	<a href="#">assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix2_single</a>	1043

64.3.96	assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	1043
64.3.97	assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	1044
64.3.98	assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	1044
64.3.99	assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	1044
64.3.100	assign(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_single . . . . .	1044
64.3.101	assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix2_double . . . . .	1044
64.3.102	assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix2_extended . . . . .	1045
64.3.103	assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix2_single . . . . .	1045
64.3.104	assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix3_double . . . . .	1045
64.3.105	assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix3_extended . . . . .	1045
64.3.106	assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix3_single . . . . .	1046
64.3.107	assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_double . . . . .	1046
64.3.108	assign(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_extended . . . . .	1046
64.3.109	assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector2_extended . . . . .	1046
64.3.110	assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector2_single . . . . .	1046
64.3.111	assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector3_double . . . . .	1047
64.3.112	assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector3_extended . . . . .	1047
64.3.113	assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector3_single . . . . .	1047
64.3.114	assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector4_double . . . . .	1047
64.3.115	assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector4_extended . . . . .	1047
64.3.116	assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector4_single . . . . .	1048
64.3.117	assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_double . . . . .	1048
64.3.118	assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_single . . . . .	1048
64.3.119	assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector3_double . . . . .	1048
64.3.120	assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector3_extended . . . . .	1049
64.3.121	assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector3_single . . . . .	1049
64.3.122	assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector4_double . . . . .	1049
64.3.123	assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector4_extended . . . . .	1049
64.3.124	assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector4_single . . . . .	1050
64.3.125	assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector2_double . . . . .	1050
64.3.126	assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector2_extended . . . . .	1050
64.3.127	assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector3_double . . . . .	1050
64.3.128	assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector3_extended . . . . .	1050
64.3.129	assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector3_single . . . . .	1051
64.3.130	assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector4_double . . . . .	1051
64.3.131	assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector4_extended . . . . .	1051
64.3.132	assign(Tvector2_single):Tvector4_single . . . . .	1051
64.3.133	assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector2_double . . . . .	1052
64.3.134	assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector2_extended . . . . .	1052
64.3.135	assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector2_single . . . . .	1052

64.3.136	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector3_extended</a>	1052
64.3.137	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector3_single</a>	1052
64.3.138	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector4_double</a>	1053
64.3.139	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector4_extended</a>	1053
64.3.140	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_double):Tvector4_single</a>	1053
64.3.141	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector2_double</a>	1053
64.3.142	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector2_extended</a>	1054
64.3.143	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector2_single</a>	1054
64.3.144	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_double</a>	1054
64.3.145	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_single</a>	1054
64.3.146	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector4_double</a>	1055
64.3.147	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector4_extended</a>	1055
64.3.148	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_extended):Tvector4_single</a>	1055
64.3.149	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector2_double</a>	1055
64.3.150	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector2_extended</a>	1055
64.3.151	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector2_single</a>	1056
64.3.152	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector3_double</a>	1056
64.3.153	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector3_extended</a>	1056
64.3.154	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector4_double</a>	1056
64.3.155	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector4_extended</a>	1057
64.3.156	<a href="#">assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector4_single</a>	1057
64.3.157	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector2_double</a>	1057
64.3.158	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector2_extended</a>	1057
64.3.159	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector2_single</a>	1057
64.3.160	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector3_double</a>	1058
64.3.161	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector3_extended</a>	1058
64.3.162	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector3_single</a>	1058
64.3.163	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector4_extended</a>	1058
64.3.164	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_double):Tvector4_single</a>	1059
64.3.165	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector2_double</a>	1059
64.3.166	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector2_extended</a>	1059
64.3.167	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector2_single</a>	1059
64.3.168	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector3_double</a>	1060
64.3.169	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector3_extended</a>	1060
64.3.170	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector3_single</a>	1060
64.3.171	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_double</a>	1060
64.3.172	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_single</a>	1061
64.3.173	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector2_double</a>	1061
64.3.174	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector2_extended</a>	1061
64.3.175	<a href="#">assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector2_single</a>	1061

64.3.176	<code>assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector3_double</code>	1062
64.3.177	<code>assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector3_extended</code>	1062
64.3.178	<code>assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector3_single</code>	1062
64.3.179	<code>assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector4_double</code>	1062
64.3.180	<code>assign(Tvector4_single):Tvector4_extended</code>	1062
64.3.181	<code>divide(Tmatrix2_double,Double):Tmatrix2_double</code>	1063
64.3.182	<code>divide(Tmatrix2_extended,extended):Tmatrix2_extended</code>	1063
64.3.183	<code>divide(Tmatrix2_single,single):Tmatrix2_single</code>	1063
64.3.184	<code>divide(Tmatrix3_double,Double):Tmatrix3_double</code>	1063
64.3.185	<code>divide(Tmatrix3_extended,extended):Tmatrix3_extended</code>	1063
64.3.186	<code>divide(Tmatrix3_single,single):Tmatrix3_single</code>	1064
64.3.187	<code>divide(Tmatrix4_double,Double):Tmatrix4_double</code>	1064
64.3.188	<code>divide(Tmatrix4_extended,extended):Tmatrix4_extended</code>	1064
64.3.189	<code>divide(Tmatrix4_single,single):Tmatrix4_single</code>	1064
64.3.190	<code>divide(Tvector2_double,Double):Tvector2_double</code>	1064
64.3.191	<code>divide(Tvector2_extended,extended):Tvector2_extended</code>	1065
64.3.192	<code>divide(Tvector2_single,single):Tvector2_single</code>	1065
64.3.193	<code>divide(Tvector3_double,Double):Tvector3_double</code>	1065
64.3.194	<code>divide(Tvector3_extended,extended):Tvector3_extended</code>	1065
64.3.195	<code>divide(Tvector3_single,single):Tvector3_single</code>	1065
64.3.196	<code>divide(Tvector4_double,Double):Tvector4_double</code>	1066
64.3.197	<code>divide(Tvector4_extended,extended):Tvector4_extended</code>	1066
64.3.198	<code>divide(Tvector4_single,single):Tvector4_single</code>	1066
64.3.199	<code>multiply(Tmatrix2_double,Double):Tmatrix2_double</code>	1066
64.3.200	<code>multiply(Tmatrix2_double,Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_double</code>	1066
64.3.201	<code>multiply(Tmatrix2_double,Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double</code>	1067
64.3.202	<code>multiply(Tmatrix2_extended,extended):Tmatrix2_extended</code>	1067
64.3.203	<code>multiply(Tmatrix2_extended,Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_extended</code>	1067
64.3.204	<code>multiply(Tmatrix2_extended,Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended</code>	1067
64.3.205	<code>multiply(Tmatrix2_single,single):Tmatrix2_single</code>	1068
64.3.206	<code>multiply(Tmatrix2_single,Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_single</code>	1068
64.3.207	<code>multiply(Tmatrix2_single,Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single</code>	1068
64.3.208	<code>multiply(Tmatrix3_double,Double):Tmatrix3_double</code>	1068
64.3.209	<code>multiply(Tmatrix3_double,Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_double</code>	1068
64.3.210	<code>multiply(Tmatrix3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double</code>	1069
64.3.211	<code>multiply(Tmatrix3_extended,extended):Tmatrix3_extended</code>	1069
64.3.212	<code>multiply(Tmatrix3_extended,Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_extended</code>	1069
64.3.213	<code>multiply(Tmatrix3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended</code>	1069
64.3.214	<code>multiply(Tmatrix3_single,single):Tmatrix3_single</code>	1070
64.3.215	<code>multiply(Tmatrix3_single,Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_single</code>	1070



64.3.216	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single</a>	1070
64.3.217	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix4_double,Double):Tmatrix4_double</a>	1070
64.3.218	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix4_double,Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_double</a>	1070
64.3.219	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix4_double,Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double</a>	1071
64.3.220	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix4_extended,extended):Tmatrix4_extended</a>	1071
64.3.221	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix4_extended,Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_extended</a>	1071
64.3.222	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix4_extended,Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended</a>	1071
64.3.223	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix4_single,single):Tmatrix4_single</a>	1072
64.3.224	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix4_single,Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_single</a>	1072
64.3.225	<a href="#">multiply(Tmatrix4_single,Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single</a>	1072
64.3.226	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector2_double,Double):Tvector2_double</a>	1072
64.3.227	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector2_double,Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double</a>	1072
64.3.228	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector2_extended,extended):Tvector2_extended</a>	1073
64.3.229	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector2_extended,Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended</a>	1073
64.3.230	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector2_single,single):Tvector2_single</a>	1073
64.3.231	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector2_single,Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single</a>	1073
64.3.232	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector3_double,Double):Tvector3_double</a>	1073
64.3.233	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double</a>	1074
64.3.234	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector3_extended,extended):Tvector3_extended</a>	1074
64.3.235	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended</a>	1074
64.3.236	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector3_single,single):Tvector3_single</a>	1074
64.3.237	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single</a>	1074
64.3.238	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_double,Double):Tvector4_double</a>	1075
64.3.239	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_double,Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double</a>	1075
64.3.240	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_extended,extended):Tvector4_extended</a>	1075
64.3.241	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_extended,Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended</a>	1075
64.3.242	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_single,single):Tvector4_single</a>	1075
64.3.243	<a href="#">multiply(Tvector4_single,Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single</a>	1076
64.3.244	<a href="#">negative(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_double</a>	1076
64.3.245	<a href="#">negative(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_extended</a>	1076
64.3.246	<a href="#">negative(Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_single</a>	1076
64.3.247	<a href="#">negative(Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_double</a>	1076
64.3.248	<a href="#">negative(Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_extended</a>	1076
64.3.249	<a href="#">negative(Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_single</a>	1077
64.3.250	<a href="#">negative(Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_double</a>	1077
64.3.251	<a href="#">negative(Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_extended</a>	1077
64.3.252	<a href="#">negative(Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_single</a>	1077
64.3.253	<a href="#">negative(Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double</a>	1077
64.3.254	<a href="#">negative(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended</a>	1077
64.3.255	<a href="#">negative(Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single</a>	1078

64.3.256	<code>negative(Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double</code>	1078
64.3.257	<code>negative(Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended</code>	1078
64.3.258	<code>negative(Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single</code>	1078
64.3.259	<code>negative(Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double</code>	1078
64.3.260	<code>negative(Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended</code>	1079
64.3.261	<code>negative(Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single</code>	1079
64.3.262	<code>power(Tvector2_double,Tvector2_double):Double</code>	1079
64.3.263	<code>power(Tvector2_extended,Tvector2_extended):extended</code>	1079
64.3.264	<code>power(Tvector2_single,Tvector2_single):single</code>	1079
64.3.265	<code>power(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Double</code>	1080
64.3.266	<code>power(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):extended</code>	1080
64.3.267	<code>power(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):single</code>	1080
64.3.268	<code>power(Tvector4_double,Tvector4_double):Double</code>	1080
64.3.269	<code>power(Tvector4_extended,Tvector4_extended):extended</code>	1080
64.3.270	<code>power(Tvector4_single,Tvector4_single):single</code>	1081
64.3.271	<code>subtract(Tmatrix2_double,Double):Tmatrix2_double</code>	1081
64.3.272	<code>subtract(Tmatrix2_double,Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_double</code>	1081
64.3.273	<code>subtract(Tmatrix2_extended,extended):Tmatrix2_extended</code>	1081
64.3.274	<code>subtract(Tmatrix2_extended,Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_extended</code>	1081
64.3.275	<code>subtract(Tmatrix2_single,single):Tmatrix2_single</code>	1082
64.3.276	<code>subtract(Tmatrix2_single,Tmatrix2_single):Tmatrix2_single</code>	1082
64.3.277	<code>subtract(Tmatrix3_double,Double):Tmatrix3_double</code>	1082
64.3.278	<code>subtract(Tmatrix3_double,Tmatrix3_double):Tmatrix3_double</code>	1082
64.3.279	<code>subtract(Tmatrix3_extended,extended):Tmatrix3_extended</code>	1082
64.3.280	<code>subtract(Tmatrix3_extended,Tmatrix3_extended):Tmatrix3_extended</code>	1083
64.3.281	<code>subtract(Tmatrix3_single,single):Tmatrix3_single</code>	1083
64.3.282	<code>subtract(Tmatrix3_single,Tmatrix3_single):Tmatrix3_single</code>	1083
64.3.283	<code>subtract(Tmatrix4_double,Double):Tmatrix4_double</code>	1083
64.3.284	<code>subtract(Tmatrix4_double,Tmatrix4_double):Tmatrix4_double</code>	1083
64.3.285	<code>subtract(Tmatrix4_extended,extended):Tmatrix4_extended</code>	1084
64.3.286	<code>subtract(Tmatrix4_extended,Tmatrix4_extended):Tmatrix4_extended</code>	1084
64.3.287	<code>subtract(Tmatrix4_single,single):Tmatrix4_single</code>	1084
64.3.288	<code>subtract(Tmatrix4_single,Tmatrix4_single):Tmatrix4_single</code>	1084
64.3.289	<code>subtract(Tvector2_double,Double):Tvector2_double</code>	1084
64.3.290	<code>subtract(Tvector2_double,Tvector2_double):Tvector2_double</code>	1085
64.3.291	<code>subtract(Tvector2_extended,extended):Tvector2_extended</code>	1085
64.3.292	<code>subtract(Tvector2_extended,Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_extended</code>	1085
64.3.293	<code>subtract(Tvector2_single,single):Tvector2_single</code>	1085
64.3.294	<code>subtract(Tvector2_single,Tvector2_single):Tvector2_single</code>	1085
64.3.295	<code>subtract(Tvector3_double,Double):Tvector3_double</code>	1086

64.3.296	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double</a>	1086
64.3.297	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_extended,extended):Tvector3_extended</a>	1086
64.3.298	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended</a>	1086
64.3.299	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_single,single):Tvector3_single</a>	1086
64.3.300	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single</a>	1087
64.3.301	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_double,Double):Tvector4_double</a>	1087
64.3.302	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_double,Tvector4_double):Tvector4_double</a>	1087
64.3.303	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_extended,extended):Tvector4_extended</a>	1087
64.3.304	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_extended,Tvector4_extended):Tvector4_extended</a>	1087
64.3.305	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_single,single):Tvector4_single</a>	1088
64.3.306	<a href="#">subtract(Tvector4_single,Tvector4_single):Tvector4_single</a>	1088
64.3.307	<a href="#">symmetricaldifference(Tvector3_double,Tvector3_double):Tvector3_double</a>	1088
64.3.308	<a href="#">symmetricaldifference(Tvector3_extended,Tvector3_extended):Tvector3_extended</a>	1088
64.3.309	<a href="#">symmetricaldifference(Tvector3_single,Tvector3_single):Tvector3_single</a>	1089
64.4	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double</a>	1089
64.4.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1089
64.4.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1089
64.4.3	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.init_zero</a>	1089
64.4.4	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.init_identity</a>	1089
64.4.5	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.init</a>	1090
64.4.6	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.get_column</a>	1090
64.4.7	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.get_row</a>	1090
64.4.8	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.set_column</a>	1090
64.4.9	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.set_row</a>	1090
64.4.10	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.determinant</a>	1090
64.4.11	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.inverse</a>	1091
64.4.12	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_double.transpose</a>	1091
64.5	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended</a>	1091
64.5.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1091
64.5.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1091
64.5.3	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.init_zero</a>	1091
64.5.4	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.init_identity</a>	1092
64.5.5	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.init</a>	1092
64.5.6	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.get_column</a>	1092
64.5.7	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.get_row</a>	1092
64.5.8	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.set_column</a>	1092
64.5.9	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.set_row</a>	1092
64.5.10	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.determinant</a>	1093
64.5.11	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.inverse</a>	1093
64.5.12	<a href="#">Tmatrix2_extended.transpose</a>	1093

64.6	Tmatrix2_single	1093
64.6.1	Description	1093
64.6.2	Method overview	1093
64.6.3	Tmatrix2_single.init_zero	1094
64.6.4	Tmatrix2_single.init_identity	1094
64.6.5	Tmatrix2_single.init	1094
64.6.6	Tmatrix2_single.get_column	1094
64.6.7	Tmatrix2_single.get_row	1094
64.6.8	Tmatrix2_single.set_column	1094
64.6.9	Tmatrix2_single.set_row	1095
64.6.10	Tmatrix2_single.determinant	1095
64.6.11	Tmatrix2_single.inverse	1095
64.6.12	Tmatrix2_single.transpose	1095
64.7	Tmatrix3_double	1095
64.7.1	Description	1095
64.7.2	Method overview	1096
64.7.3	Tmatrix3_double.init_zero	1096
64.7.4	Tmatrix3_double.init_identity	1096
64.7.5	Tmatrix3_double.init	1096
64.7.6	Tmatrix3_double.get_column	1096
64.7.7	Tmatrix3_double.get_row	1097
64.7.8	Tmatrix3_double.set_column	1097
64.7.9	Tmatrix3_double.set_row	1097
64.7.10	Tmatrix3_double.determinant	1097
64.7.11	Tmatrix3_double.inverse	1097
64.7.12	Tmatrix3_double.transpose	1097
64.8	Tmatrix3_extended	1098
64.8.1	Description	1098
64.8.2	Method overview	1098
64.8.3	Tmatrix3_extended.init_zero	1098
64.8.4	Tmatrix3_extended.init_identity	1098
64.8.5	Tmatrix3_extended.init	1098
64.8.6	Tmatrix3_extended.get_column	1099
64.8.7	Tmatrix3_extended.get_row	1099
64.8.8	Tmatrix3_extended.set_column	1099
64.8.9	Tmatrix3_extended.set_row	1099
64.8.10	Tmatrix3_extended.determinant	1099
64.8.11	Tmatrix3_extended.inverse	1099
64.8.12	Tmatrix3_extended.transpose	1100
64.9	Tmatrix3_single	1100

64.9.1	Description	1100
64.9.2	Method overview	1100
64.9.3	Tmatrix3_single.init_zero	1100
64.9.4	Tmatrix3_single.init_identity	1100
64.9.5	Tmatrix3_single.init	1101
64.9.6	Tmatrix3_single.get_column	1101
64.9.7	Tmatrix3_single.get_row	1101
64.9.8	Tmatrix3_single.set_column	1101
64.9.9	Tmatrix3_single.set_row	1101
64.9.10	Tmatrix3_single.determinant	1102
64.9.11	Tmatrix3_single.inverse	1102
64.9.12	Tmatrix3_single.transpose	1102
64.10	Tmatrix4_double	1102
64.10.1	Description	1102
64.10.2	Method overview	1102
64.10.3	Tmatrix4_double.init_zero	1103
64.10.4	Tmatrix4_double.init_identity	1103
64.10.5	Tmatrix4_double.init	1103
64.10.6	Tmatrix4_double.get_column	1103
64.10.7	Tmatrix4_double.get_row	1103
64.10.8	Tmatrix4_double.set_column	1104
64.10.9	Tmatrix4_double.set_row	1104
64.10.10	Tmatrix4_double.determinant	1104
64.10.11	Tmatrix4_double.inverse	1104
64.10.12	Tmatrix4_double.transpose	1104
64.11	Tmatrix4_extended	1105
64.11.1	Description	1105
64.11.2	Method overview	1105
64.11.3	Tmatrix4_extended.init_zero	1105
64.11.4	Tmatrix4_extended.init_identity	1105
64.11.5	Tmatrix4_extended.init	1105
64.11.6	Tmatrix4_extended.get_column	1106
64.11.7	Tmatrix4_extended.get_row	1106
64.11.8	Tmatrix4_extended.set_column	1106
64.11.9	Tmatrix4_extended.set_row	1106
64.11.10	Tmatrix4_extended.determinant	1106
64.11.11	Tmatrix4_extended.inverse	1107
64.11.12	Tmatrix4_extended.transpose	1107
64.12	Tmatrix4_single	1107
64.12.1	Description	1107

64.12.2	Method overview	1107
64.12.3	Tmatrix4_single.init_zero	1107
64.12.4	Tmatrix4_single.init_identity	1108
64.12.5	Tmatrix4_single.init	1108
64.12.6	Tmatrix4_single.get_column	1108
64.12.7	Tmatrix4_single.get_row	1108
64.12.8	Tmatrix4_single.set_column	1108
64.12.9	Tmatrix4_single.set_row	1109
64.12.10	Tmatrix4_single.determinant	1109
64.12.11	Tmatrix4_single.inverse	1109
64.12.12	Tmatrix4_single.transpose	1109
64.13	Tvector2_double	1109
64.13.1	Description	1109
64.13.2	Method overview	1110
64.13.3	Tvector2_double.init_zero	1110
64.13.4	Tvector2_double.init_one	1110
64.13.5	Tvector2_double.init	1110
64.13.6	Tvector2_double.length	1110
64.13.7	Tvector2_double.squared_length	1110
64.14	Tvector2_extended	1111
64.14.1	Description	1111
64.14.2	Method overview	1111
64.14.3	Tvector2_extended.init_zero	1111
64.14.4	Tvector2_extended.init_one	1111
64.14.5	Tvector2_extended.init	1111
64.14.6	Tvector2_extended.length	1111
64.14.7	Tvector2_extended.squared_length	1112
64.15	Tvector2_single	1112
64.15.1	Description	1112
64.15.2	Method overview	1112
64.15.3	Tvector2_single.init_zero	1112
64.15.4	Tvector2_single.init_one	1112
64.15.5	Tvector2_single.init	1112
64.15.6	Tvector2_single.length	1113
64.15.7	Tvector2_single.squared_length	1113
64.16	Tvector3_double	1113
64.16.1	Description	1113
64.16.2	Method overview	1113
64.16.3	Tvector3_double.init_zero	1113
64.16.4	Tvector3_double.init_one	1113

---

64.16.5	<a href="#">Tvector3_double.init</a>	1114
64.16.6	<a href="#">Tvector3_double.length</a>	1114
64.16.7	<a href="#">Tvector3_double.squared_length</a>	1114
64.17	<a href="#">Tvector3_extended</a>	1114
64.17.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1114
64.17.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1114
64.17.3	<a href="#">Tvector3_extended.init_zero</a>	1114
64.17.4	<a href="#">Tvector3_extended.init_one</a>	1115
64.17.5	<a href="#">Tvector3_extended.init</a>	1115
64.17.6	<a href="#">Tvector3_extended.length</a>	1115
64.17.7	<a href="#">Tvector3_extended.squared_length</a>	1115
64.18	<a href="#">Tvector3_single</a>	1115
64.18.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1115
64.18.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1115
64.18.3	<a href="#">Tvector3_single.init_zero</a>	1116
64.18.4	<a href="#">Tvector3_single.init_one</a>	1116
64.18.5	<a href="#">Tvector3_single.init</a>	1116
64.18.6	<a href="#">Tvector3_single.length</a>	1116
64.18.7	<a href="#">Tvector3_single.squared_length</a>	1116
64.19	<a href="#">Tvector4_double</a>	1116
64.19.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1116
64.19.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1117
64.19.3	<a href="#">Tvector4_double.init_zero</a>	1117
64.19.4	<a href="#">Tvector4_double.init_one</a>	1117
64.19.5	<a href="#">Tvector4_double.init</a>	1117
64.19.6	<a href="#">Tvector4_double.length</a>	1117
64.19.7	<a href="#">Tvector4_double.squared_length</a>	1117
64.20	<a href="#">Tvector4_extended</a>	1118
64.20.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1118
64.20.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1118
64.20.3	<a href="#">Tvector4_extended.init_zero</a>	1118
64.20.4	<a href="#">Tvector4_extended.init_one</a>	1118
64.20.5	<a href="#">Tvector4_extended.init</a>	1118
64.20.6	<a href="#">Tvector4_extended.length</a>	1118
64.20.7	<a href="#">Tvector4_extended.squared_length</a>	1119
64.21	<a href="#">Tvector4_single</a>	1119
64.21.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1119
64.21.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1119
64.21.3	<a href="#">Tvector4_single.init_zero</a>	1119
64.21.4	<a href="#">Tvector4_single.init_one</a>	1119

64.21.5	Tvector4_single.init . . . . .	1119
64.21.6	Tvector4_single.length . . . . .	1120
64.21.7	Tvector4_single.squared_length . . . . .	1120
<b>65</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'mmx'</b>	<b>1121</b>
65.1	Overview . . . . .	1121
65.2	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	1121
65.2.1	Constants . . . . .	1121
65.2.2	Types . . . . .	1122
65.3	Procedures and functions . . . . .	1123
65.3.1	emms . . . . .	1123
65.3.2	femms . . . . .	1123
<b>66</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Mouse'</b>	<b>1124</b>
66.1	Overview . . . . .	1124
66.2	Writing a custom mouse driver . . . . .	1124
66.3	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	1126
66.3.1	Constants . . . . .	1126
66.3.2	Types . . . . .	1127
66.3.3	Variables . . . . .	1127
66.4	Procedures and functions . . . . .	1128
66.4.1	DetectMouse . . . . .	1128
66.4.2	DoneMouse . . . . .	1128
66.4.3	GetMouseButtons . . . . .	1129
66.4.4	GetMouseDriver . . . . .	1129
66.4.5	GetMouseEvent . . . . .	1130
66.4.6	GetMouseX . . . . .	1130
66.4.7	GetMouseY . . . . .	1131
66.4.8	HideMouse . . . . .	1131
66.4.9	InitMouse . . . . .	1132
66.4.10	PollMouseEvent . . . . .	1132
66.4.11	PutMouseEvent . . . . .	1133
66.4.12	SetMouseDriver . . . . .	1133
66.4.13	SetMouseXY . . . . .	1133
66.4.14	ShowMouse . . . . .	1134
66.5	TMouseDriver . . . . .	1134
66.6	TMouseEvent . . . . .	1135
<b>67</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Objects'</b>	<b>1136</b>
67.1	Overview . . . . .	1136
67.2	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	1136



67.2.1	Constants	1136
67.2.2	Types	1139
67.2.3	Variables	1141
67.3	Procedures and functions	1141
67.3.1	Abstract	1141
67.3.2	CallPointerConstructor	1142
67.3.3	CallPointerLocal	1142
67.3.4	CallPointerMethod	1142
67.3.5	CallPointerMethodLocal	1143
67.3.6	CallVoidConstructor	1143
67.3.7	CallVoidLocal	1143
67.3.8	CallVoidMethod	1144
67.3.9	CallVoidMethodLocal	1144
67.3.10	DisposeStr	1144
67.3.11	LongDiv	1144
67.3.12	LongMul	1145
67.3.13	NewStr	1145
67.3.14	RegisterObjects	1146
67.3.15	RegisterType	1146
67.3.16	SetStr	1148
67.4	LongRec	1148
67.5	PtrRec	1148
67.6	TStreamRec	1148
67.7	TStrIndexRec	1149
67.8	WordRec	1149
67.9	TBufStream	1149
67.9.1	Description	1149
67.9.2	Method overview	1150
67.9.3	TBufStream.Init	1150
67.9.4	TBufStream.Done	1150
67.9.5	TBufStream.Close	1151
67.9.6	TBufStream.Flush	1151
67.9.7	TBufStream.Truncate	1152
67.9.8	TBufStream.Seek	1152
67.9.9	TBufStream.Open	1152
67.9.10	TBufStream.Read	1153
67.9.11	TBufStream.Write	1153
67.10	TCollection	1153
67.10.1	Description	1153
67.10.2	Method overview	1154

---

67.10.3	<a href="#">TCollection.Init</a>	1154
67.10.4	<a href="#">TCollection.Load</a>	1154
67.10.5	<a href="#">TCollection.Done</a>	1155
67.10.6	<a href="#">TCollection.At</a>	1155
67.10.7	<a href="#">TCollection.IndexOf</a>	1156
67.10.8	<a href="#">TCollection.GetItem</a>	1157
67.10.9	<a href="#">TCollection.LastThat</a>	1157
67.10.10	<a href="#">TCollection.FirstThat</a>	1158
67.10.11	<a href="#">TCollection.Pack</a>	1159
67.10.12	<a href="#">TCollection.FreeAll</a>	1160
67.10.13	<a href="#">TCollection.DeleteAll</a>	1161
67.10.14	<a href="#">TCollection.Free</a>	1161
67.10.15	<a href="#">TCollection.Insert</a>	1162
67.10.16	<a href="#">TCollection.Delete</a>	1162
67.10.17	<a href="#">TCollection.AtFree</a>	1163
67.10.18	<a href="#">TCollection.FreeItem</a>	1164
67.10.19	<a href="#">TCollection.AtDelete</a>	1164
67.10.20	<a href="#">TCollection.ForEach</a>	1165
67.10.21	<a href="#">TCollection.SetLimit</a>	1166
67.10.22	<a href="#">TCollection.Error</a>	1166
67.10.23	<a href="#">TCollection.AtPut</a>	1166
67.10.24	<a href="#">TCollection.AtInsert</a>	1167
67.10.25	<a href="#">TCollection.Store</a>	1168
67.10.26	<a href="#">TCollection.PutItem</a>	1168
67.11	<a href="#">TDosStream</a>	1168
67.11.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1168
67.11.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1168
67.11.3	<a href="#">TDosStream.Init</a>	1169
67.11.4	<a href="#">TDosStream.Done</a>	1169
67.11.5	<a href="#">TDosStream.Close</a>	1169
67.11.6	<a href="#">TDosStream.Truncate</a>	1170
67.11.7	<a href="#">TDosStream.Seek</a>	1170
67.11.8	<a href="#">TDosStream.Open</a>	1171
67.11.9	<a href="#">TDosStream.Read</a>	1172
67.11.10	<a href="#">TDosStream.Write</a>	1172
67.12	<a href="#">TMemoryStream</a>	1173
67.12.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1173
67.12.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1173
67.12.3	<a href="#">TMemoryStream.Init</a>	1173
67.12.4	<a href="#">TMemoryStream.Done</a>	1173

67.12.5	TMemoryStream.Truncate	1174
67.12.6	TMemoryStream.Read	1174
67.12.7	TMemoryStream.Write	1175
67.13	TObject	1175
67.13.1	Description	1175
67.13.2	Method overview	1175
67.13.3	TObject.Init	1175
67.13.4	TObject.Free	1176
67.13.5	TObject.Is_Object	1176
67.13.6	TObject.Done	1176
67.14	TPoint	1177
67.14.1	Description	1177
67.15	TRect	1177
67.15.1	Description	1177
67.15.2	Method overview	1177
67.15.3	TRect.Empty	1177
67.15.4	TRect.Equals	1178
67.15.5	TRect.Contains	1179
67.15.6	TRect.Copy	1179
67.15.7	TRect.Union	1180
67.15.8	TRect.Intersect	1180
67.15.9	TRect.Move	1181
67.15.10	TRect.Grow	1182
67.15.11	TRect.Assign	1182
67.16	TResourceCollection	1183
67.16.1	Description	1183
67.16.2	Method overview	1183
67.16.3	TResourceCollection.KeyOf	1183
67.16.4	TResourceCollection.GetItem	1184
67.16.5	TResourceCollection.FreeItem	1184
67.16.6	TResourceCollection.PutItem	1184
67.17	TResourceFile	1184
67.17.1	Description	1184
67.17.2	Method overview	1185
67.17.3	TResourceFile.Init	1185
67.17.4	TResourceFile.Done	1185
67.17.5	TResourceFile.Count	1185
67.17.6	TResourceFile.KeyAt	1186
67.17.7	TResourceFile.Get	1186
67.17.8	TResourceFile.SwitchTo	1186

67.17.9	TResourceFile.Flush	1186
67.17.10	TResourceFile.Delete	1187
67.17.11	TResourceFile.Put	1187
67.18	TSortedCollection	1187
67.18.1	Description	1187
67.18.2	Method overview	1188
67.18.3	TSortedCollection.Init	1188
67.18.4	TSortedCollection.Load	1188
67.18.5	TSortedCollection.KeyOf	1188
67.18.6	TSortedCollection.IndexOf	1189
67.18.7	TSortedCollection.Compare	1189
67.18.8	TSortedCollection.Search	1190
67.18.9	TSortedCollection.Insert	1191
67.18.10	TSortedCollection.Store	1192
67.19	TStrCollection	1193
67.19.1	Description	1193
67.19.2	Method overview	1193
67.19.3	TStrCollection.Compare	1193
67.19.4	TStrCollection.GetItem	1194
67.19.5	TStrCollection.FreeItem	1194
67.19.6	TStrCollection.PutItem	1194
67.20	TStream	1195
67.20.1	Description	1195
67.20.2	Method overview	1195
67.20.3	TStream.Init	1195
67.20.4	TStream.Get	1195
67.20.5	TStream.StrRead	1196
67.20.6	TStream.GetPos	1197
67.20.7	TStream.GetSize	1197
67.20.8	TStream.ReadStr	1198
67.20.9	TStream.Open	1199
67.20.10	TStream.Close	1199
67.20.11	TStream.Reset	1199
67.20.12	TStream.Flush	1200
67.20.13	TStream.Truncate	1200
67.20.14	TStream.Put	1200
67.20.15	TStream.StrWrite	1201
67.20.16	TStream.WriteStr	1201
67.20.17	TStream.Seek	1201
67.20.18	TStream.Error	1201

67.20.19	TStream.Read	1202
67.20.20	TStream.Write	1202
67.20.21	TStream.CopyFrom	1203
67.21	TStringCollection	1203
67.21.1	Description	1203
67.21.2	Method overview	1204
67.21.3	TStringCollection.GetItem	1204
67.21.4	TStringCollection.Compare	1204
67.21.5	TStringCollection.FreeItem	1205
67.21.6	TStringCollection.PutItem	1205
67.22	TStringList	1205
67.22.1	Description	1205
67.22.2	Method overview	1206
67.22.3	TStringList.Load	1206
67.22.4	TStringList.Done	1206
67.22.5	TStringList.Get	1206
67.23	TStrListMaker	1207
67.23.1	Description	1207
67.23.2	Method overview	1207
67.23.3	TStrListMaker.Init	1207
67.23.4	TStrListMaker.Done	1207
67.23.5	TStrListMaker.Put	1207
67.23.6	TStrListMaker.Store	1208
67.24	TUnSortedStrCollection	1208
67.24.1	Description	1208
67.24.2	Method overview	1208
67.24.3	TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert	1208
<b>68</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'objpas'</b>	<b>1210</b>
68.1	Overview	1210
68.2	Constants, types and variables	1210
68.2.1	Constants	1210
68.2.2	Types	1210
<b>69</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'ports'</b>	<b>1212</b>
69.1	Overview	1212
69.2	Constants, types and variables	1212
69.2.1	Variables	1212
69.3	tport	1213
69.3.1	Description	1213
69.3.2	Property overview	1213

69.3.3	tport.pp	1213
69.4	tportl	1214
69.4.1	Description	1214
69.4.2	Property overview	1214
69.4.3	tportl.pp	1214
69.5	tportw	1214
69.5.1	Description	1214
69.5.2	Property overview	1214
69.5.3	tportw.pp	1214
<b>70</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'printer'</b>	<b>1215</b>
70.1	Overview	1215
70.2	Constants, types and variables	1215
70.2.1	Variables	1215
70.3	Procedures and functions	1215
70.3.1	AssignLst	1215
70.3.2	InitPrinter	1216
70.3.3	IsLstAvailable	1216
<b>71</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'sharemem'</b>	<b>1217</b>
71.1	Overview	1217
<b>72</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Sockets'</b>	<b>1218</b>
72.1	Overview	1218
72.2	Constants, types and variables	1218
72.2.1	Constants	1218
72.2.2	Types	1239
72.3	Procedures and functions	1242
72.3.1	Accept	1242
72.3.2	Bind	1244
72.3.3	CloseSocket	1244
72.3.4	Connect	1244
72.3.5	fpaccept	1246
72.3.6	fpbind	1247
72.3.7	fpconnect	1248
72.3.8	fpgetpeername	1250
72.3.9	fpgetsockname	1250
72.3.10	fpgetsockopt	1251
72.3.11	fplisten	1251
72.3.12	fprecv	1251
72.3.13	fprecvfrom	1252

72.3.14	fp <code>send</code>	1252
72.3.15	fp <code>sendto</code>	1253
72.3.16	fp <code>setsockopt</code>	1253
72.3.17	fp <code>shutdown</code>	1254
72.3.18	fp <code>socket</code>	1254
72.3.19	fp <code>socketpair</code>	1255
72.3.20	HostAddrToStr	1255
72.3.21	HostAddrToStr6	1255
72.3.22	HostToNet	1255
72.3.23	htonl	1256
72.3.24	htons	1256
72.3.25	NetAddrToStr	1256
72.3.26	NetAddrToStr6	1256
72.3.27	NetToHost	1257
72.3.28	NToHl	1257
72.3.29	NToHs	1257
72.3.30	ShortHostToNet	1257
72.3.31	ShortNetToHost	1258
72.3.32	Sock2File	1258
72.3.33	Sock2Text	1258
72.3.34	socketerror	1258
72.3.35	Str2UnixSockAddr	1259
72.3.36	StrToHostAddr	1259
72.3.37	StrToHostAddr6	1259
72.3.38	StrToNetAddr	1259
72.3.39	StrToNetAddr6	1260
72.4	linger	1260
72.5	sockaddr_in	1260
72.6	sockaddr_in6	1260
72.7	sockaddr_un	1261
72.8	TUnixSockAddr	1261
<b>73</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Strings'</b>	<b>1262</b>
73.1	Overview	1262
73.2	Procedures and functions	1262
73.2.1	stralloc	1262
73.2.2	strcat	1262
73.2.3	strcmp	1263
73.2.4	strcpy	1263
73.2.5	strdispose	1264

73.2.6	strecopy	1264
73.2.7	strend	1265
73.2.8	stricmp	1266
73.2.9	stripos	1266
73.2.10	striscan	1267
73.2.11	strlcat	1267
73.2.12	strlcomp	1268
73.2.13	strlcopy	1268
73.2.14	strlen	1269
73.2.15	strlicomp	1269
73.2.16	strlower	1270
73.2.17	strmove	1270
73.2.18	strnew	1271
73.2.19	strpas	1272
73.2.20	strpcopy	1272
73.2.21	strpos	1273
73.2.22	strriscan	1273
73.2.23	strrscan	1274
73.2.24	strscan	1274
73.2.25	strupper	1274
<b>74</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'StrUtils'</b>	<b>1275</b>
74.1	Used units	1275
74.2	Constants, types and variables	1275
74.2.1	Resource strings	1275
74.2.2	Constants	1275
74.2.3	Types	1276
74.3	Procedures and functions	1278
74.3.1	AddChar	1278
74.3.2	AddCharR	1278
74.3.3	AnsiContainsStr	1278
74.3.4	AnsiContainsText	1279
74.3.5	AnsiEndsStr	1279
74.3.6	AnsiEndsText	1279
74.3.7	AnsiIndexStr	1279
74.3.8	AnsiIndexText	1280
74.3.9	AnsiLeftStr	1280
74.3.10	AnsiMatchStr	1280
74.3.11	AnsiMatchText	1281
74.3.12	AnsiMidStr	1281



74.3.13	<a href="#">AnsiProperCase</a>	1281
74.3.14	<a href="#">AnsiReplaceStr</a>	1281
74.3.15	<a href="#">AnsiReplaceText</a>	1282
74.3.16	<a href="#">AnsiResemblesText</a>	1282
74.3.17	<a href="#">AnsiReverseString</a>	1282
74.3.18	<a href="#">AnsiRightStr</a>	1283
74.3.19	<a href="#">AnsiStartsStr</a>	1283
74.3.20	<a href="#">AnsiStartsText</a>	1283
74.3.21	<a href="#">BinToHex</a>	1283
74.3.22	<a href="#">ContainsStr</a>	1284
74.3.23	<a href="#">ContainsText</a>	1284
74.3.24	<a href="#">Copy2Space</a>	1284
74.3.25	<a href="#">Copy2SpaceDel</a>	1285
74.3.26	<a href="#">Copy2Symb</a>	1285
74.3.27	<a href="#">Copy2SymbDel</a>	1285
74.3.28	<a href="#">Dec2Numb</a>	1286
74.3.29	<a href="#">DecodeSoundexInt</a>	1286
74.3.30	<a href="#">DecodeSoundexWord</a>	1286
74.3.31	<a href="#">DelChars</a>	1286
74.3.32	<a href="#">DelSpace</a>	1287
74.3.33	<a href="#">DelSpace1</a>	1287
74.3.34	<a href="#">DupeString</a>	1287
74.3.35	<a href="#">EndsStr</a>	1287
74.3.36	<a href="#">EndsText</a>	1288
74.3.37	<a href="#">ExtractDelimited</a>	1288
74.3.38	<a href="#">ExtractSubstr</a>	1288
74.3.39	<a href="#">ExtractWord</a>	1289
74.3.40	<a href="#">ExtractWordPos</a>	1289
74.3.41	<a href="#">FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive</a>	1289
74.3.42	<a href="#">FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive</a>	1290
74.3.43	<a href="#">FindPart</a>	1290
74.3.44	<a href="#">GetCmdLineArg</a>	1291
74.3.45	<a href="#">Hex2Dec</a>	1291
74.3.46	<a href="#">Hex2Dec64</a>	1291
74.3.47	<a href="#">HexToBin</a>	1292
74.3.48	<a href="#">IfThen</a>	1292
74.3.49	<a href="#">in(string,):Boolean</a>	1292
74.3.50	<a href="#">in(UnicodeString,):Boolean</a>	1292
74.3.51	<a href="#">IndexStr</a>	1293
74.3.52	<a href="#">IndexText</a>	1293

74.3.53	IntToBin	1293
74.3.54	IntToRoman	1294
74.3.55	IsEmptyStr	1294
74.3.56	IsWild	1294
74.3.57	IsWordPresent	1295
74.3.58	LeftBStr	1295
74.3.59	LeftStr	1295
74.3.60	MatchStr	1296
74.3.61	MatchText	1296
74.3.62	MidBStr	1296
74.3.63	MidStr	1296
74.3.64	NaturalCompareText	1297
74.3.65	NPos	1297
74.3.66	Numb2Dec	1298
74.3.67	Numb2USA	1298
74.3.68	PadCenter	1298
74.3.69	PadLeft	1298
74.3.70	PadRight	1299
74.3.71	PosEx	1299
74.3.72	PosSet	1299
74.3.73	PosSetEx	1300
74.3.74	RandomFrom	1300
74.3.75	Removeleadingchars	1300
74.3.76	RemovePadChars	1300
74.3.77	RemoveTrailingChars	1301
74.3.78	ReplaceStr	1301
74.3.79	ReplaceText	1301
74.3.80	ResemblesText	1302
74.3.81	ReverseString	1302
74.3.82	RightBStr	1302
74.3.83	RightStr	1302
74.3.84	RomanToInt	1303
74.3.85	RomanToIntDef	1303
74.3.86	RPos	1303
74.3.87	RPosex	1304
74.3.88	SearchBuf	1304
74.3.89	Soundex	1305
74.3.90	SoundexCompare	1305
74.3.91	SoundexInt	1305
74.3.92	SoundexProc	1306

74.3.93	SoundexSimilar	1306
74.3.94	SoundexWord	1306
74.3.95	SplitCommandLine	1306
74.3.96	SplitString	1307
74.3.97	StartsStr	1307
74.3.98	StartsText	1307
74.3.99	StringReplace	1307
74.3.100	StringsReplace	1308
74.3.101	StuffString	1308
74.3.102	Tab2Space	1309
74.3.103	TrimLeftSet	1309
74.3.104	TrimRightSet	1309
74.3.105	TrimSet	1310
74.3.106	TryRomanToInt	1310
74.3.107	WordCount	1310
74.3.108	WordPosition	1310
74.3.109	XorDecode	1311
74.3.110	XorEncode	1311
74.3.111	XorString	1311
<b>75</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'System'</b>	<b>1313</b>
75.1	Overview	1313
75.2	Unicode and codepage support	1313
75.3	Miscellaneous functions	1314
75.4	Operating System functions	1315
75.5	String handling	1315
75.6	Mathematical routines	1316
75.7	Memory management functions	1317
75.8	File handling functions	1317
75.9	Run-Time Error behaviour	1318
75.10	Constants, types and variables	1318
75.10.1	Constants	1318
75.10.2	Types	1346
75.10.3	Variables	1389
75.11	Procedures and functions	1393
75.11.1	Abs	1393
75.11.2	AbstractError	1394
75.11.3	AcquireExceptionObject	1394
75.11.4	add(variant,variant):variant	1394
75.11.5	AddExitProc	1395

75.11.6	Addr	1395
75.11.7	Align	1395
75.11.8	AllocMem	1396
75.11.9	AnsiToUtf8	1396
75.11.10	Append	1396
75.11.11	ArcTan	1397
75.11.12	ArrayStringToPPchar	1397
75.11.13	Assert	1398
75.11.14	Assign	1398
75.11.15	assign(olevariant):Real	1399
75.11.16	assign(olevariant):single	1399
75.11.17	assign(olevariant):UnicodeString	1399
75.11.18	assign(Real):olevariant	1399
75.11.19	assign(Real):variant	1399
75.11.20	assign(single):olevariant	1400
75.11.21	assign(single):variant	1400
75.11.22	assign(UCS4String):variant	1400
75.11.23	assign(UnicodeString):olevariant	1400
75.11.24	assign(UnicodeString):variant	1400
75.11.25	assign(UTF8String):variant	1400
75.11.26	assign(variant):Real	1401
75.11.27	assign(variant):single	1401
75.11.28	assign(variant):unicodestring	1401
75.11.29	assign(variant):UTF8String	1401
75.11.30	Assigned	1401
75.11.31	BasicEventCreate	1402
75.11.32	BasicEventDestroy	1402
75.11.33	BasicEventResetEvent	1402
75.11.34	BasicEventSetEvent	1402
75.11.35	BasicEventWaitFor	1403
75.11.36	BeginThread	1403
75.11.37	BEtoN	1403
75.11.38	BinStr	1404
75.11.39	BlockRead	1404
75.11.40	BlockWrite	1405
75.11.41	Break	1406
75.11.42	BsfByte	1407
75.11.43	BsfDWord	1407
75.11.44	BsfQWord	1408
75.11.45	BsfWord	1408

75.11.46 BsrByte . . . . .	1408
75.11.47 BsrDWord . . . . .	1408
75.11.48 BsrQWord . . . . .	1409
75.11.49 BsrWord . . . . .	1409
75.11.50 CaptureBacktrace . . . . .	1409
75.11.51 ChDir . . . . .	1410
75.11.52 Chr . . . . .	1410
75.11.53 Close . . . . .	1411
75.11.54 CloseThread . . . . .	1411
75.11.55 CompareByte . . . . .	1411
75.11.56 CompareChar . . . . .	1412
75.11.57 CompareChar0 . . . . .	1414
75.11.58 CompareDWord . . . . .	1414
75.11.59 CompareWord . . . . .	1415
75.11.60 Concat . . . . .	1416
75.11.61 Continue . . . . .	1417
75.11.62 Copy . . . . .	1418
75.11.63 CopyArray . . . . .	1419
75.11.64 Cos . . . . .	1419
75.11.65 CSeg . . . . .	1420
75.11.66 Dec . . . . .	1420
75.11.67 Default . . . . .	1421
75.11.68 DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove . . . . .	1421
75.11.69 DefaultAnsi2WideMove . . . . .	1422
75.11.70 DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove . . . . .	1422
75.11.71 Delete . . . . .	1422
75.11.72 Dispose . . . . .	1423
75.11.73 divide(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1424
75.11.74 DoneCriticalSection . . . . .	1424
75.11.75 DoneThread . . . . .	1424
75.11.76 DSeg . . . . .	1425
75.11.77 DumpExceptionBacktrace . . . . .	1425
75.11.78 Dump_Stack . . . . .	1425
75.11.79 DynArrayBounds . . . . .	1426
75.11.80 DynArrayClear . . . . .	1426
75.11.81 DynArrayDim . . . . .	1426
75.11.82 DynArrayIndex . . . . .	1426
75.11.83 DynArraySetLength . . . . .	1427
75.11.84 DynArraySize . . . . .	1427
75.11.85 EmptyMethod . . . . .	1427

75.11.86 EndThread . . . . .	1427
75.11.87 EnterCriticalSection . . . . .	1428
75.11.88 EnumResourceLanguages . . . . .	1428
75.11.89 EnumResourceNames . . . . .	1429
75.11.90 EnumResourceTypes . . . . .	1429
75.11.91 EOF . . . . .	1429
75.11.92 EOLn . . . . .	1430
75.11.93 equal(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . .	1431
75.11.94 Erase . . . . .	1431
75.11.95 Error . . . . .	1432
75.11.96 Exclude . . . . .	1432
75.11.97 Exit . . . . .	1433
75.11.98 Exp . . . . .	1435
75.11.99 Fail . . . . .	1435
75.11.100FilePos . . . . .	1436
75.11.101FileSize . . . . .	1437
75.11.102FillByte . . . . .	1437
75.11.103FillChar . . . . .	1438
75.11.104FillDWord . . . . .	1439
75.11.105FillWord . . . . .	1439
75.11.106Finalize . . . . .	1440
75.11.107FinalizeArray . . . . .	1440
75.11.108FindResource . . . . .	1440
75.11.109FindResourceEx . . . . .	1441
75.11.110float_raise . . . . .	1441
75.11.111Flush . . . . .	1442
75.11.112FlushThread . . . . .	1442
75.11.113FMADouble . . . . .	1442
75.11.114FMASingle . . . . .	1443
75.11.115Frac . . . . .	1443
75.11.116FreeLibrary . . . . .	1443
75.11.117Freemem . . . . .	1443
75.11.118Freememory . . . . .	1444
75.11.119FreeResource . . . . .	1444
75.11.120GetCPUCount . . . . .	1445
75.11.121GetCurrentThreadId . . . . .	1445
75.11.122GetDir . . . . .	1445
75.11.123GetDynLibsManager . . . . .	1446
75.11.124GetFPCHeapStatus . . . . .	1446
75.11.125GetHeapStatus . . . . .	1446

75.11.126GetLoadErrorStr . . . . .	1446
75.11.127GetMem . . . . .	1446
75.11.128GetMemory . . . . .	1447
75.11.129GetMemoryManager . . . . .	1447
75.11.130GetProcAddress . . . . .	1447
75.11.131GetProcedureAddress . . . . .	1448
75.11.132GetProcessID . . . . .	1448
75.11.133GetResourceManager . . . . .	1448
75.11.134GetTextCodePage . . . . .	1449
75.11.135GetThreadID . . . . .	1449
75.11.136GetThreadManager . . . . .	1449
75.11.137GetTypeKind . . . . .	1449
75.11.138GetUnicodeStringManager . . . . .	1450
75.11.139GetVariantManager . . . . .	1450
75.11.140GetWideStringManager . . . . .	1450
75.11.141get_caller_addr . . . . .	1451
75.11.142get_caller_frame . . . . .	1451
75.11.143get_caller_stackinfo . . . . .	1451
75.11.144get_cmdline . . . . .	1451
75.11.145get_frame . . . . .	1452
75.11.146Get_pc_addr . . . . .	1452
75.11.147greaterthan(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . .	1452
75.11.148greaterthanorequal(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . .	1452
75.11.149Halt . . . . .	1453
75.11.150HexStr . . . . .	1453
75.11.151Hi . . . . .	1454
75.11.152High . . . . .	1455
75.11.153HINSTANCE . . . . .	1456
75.11.154Inc . . . . .	1456
75.11.155Include . . . . .	1457
75.11.156IndexByte . . . . .	1457
75.11.157IndexChar . . . . .	1458
75.11.158IndexChar0 . . . . .	1459
75.11.159IndexDWord . . . . .	1459
75.11.160IndexQWord . . . . .	1460
75.11.161Indexword . . . . .	1460
75.11.162InitCriticalSection . . . . .	1461
75.11.163Initialize . . . . .	1461
75.11.164InitializeArray . . . . .	1463
75.11.165InitThread . . . . .	1463

75.11.166InitThreadVars . . . . .	1464
75.11.167Insert . . . . .	1464
75.11.168Int . . . . .	1465
75.11.169intdivide(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1465
75.11.170InterlockedCompareExchange . . . . .	1465
75.11.171InterlockedCompareExchangePointer . . . . .	1466
75.11.172InterlockedDecrement . . . . .	1466
75.11.173InterlockedExchange . . . . .	1466
75.11.174InterlockedExchangeAdd . . . . .	1467
75.11.175InterlockedIncrement . . . . .	1467
75.11.176IOResult . . . . .	1467
75.11.177IsDynArrayRectangular . . . . .	1469
75.11.178IsMemoryManagerSet . . . . .	1469
75.11.179Is_IntResource . . . . .	1469
75.11.180KillThread . . . . .	1470
75.11.181LeaveCriticalSection . . . . .	1470
75.11.182leftshift(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1470
75.11.183Length . . . . .	1470
75.11.184lessthan(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . .	1471
75.11.185lessthanorequal(variant,variant):Boolean . . . . .	1472
75.11.186LEtoN . . . . .	1472
75.11.187Ln . . . . .	1472
75.11.188Lo . . . . .	1473
75.11.189LoadLibrary . . . . .	1473
75.11.190LoadResource . . . . .	1474
75.11.191LockResource . . . . .	1474
75.11.192logicaland(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1474
75.11.193logicalnot(variant):variant . . . . .	1475
75.11.194logicalor(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1475
75.11.195logicalxor(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1475
75.11.196longjmp . . . . .	1476
75.11.197Low . . . . .	1476
75.11.198LowerCase . . . . .	1476
75.11.199MakeLangID . . . . .	1477
75.11.200MemSize . . . . .	1477
75.11.201MkDir . . . . .	1477
75.11.202modulus(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1478
75.11.203Move . . . . .	1478
75.11.204MoveChar0 . . . . .	1479
75.11.205multiply(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1479



---

75.11.206negative(variant):variant . . . . .	1479
75.11.207New . . . . .	1480
75.11.208NtoBE . . . . .	1480
75.11.209NtoLE . . . . .	1480
75.11.210Null . . . . .	1481
75.11.211OctStr . . . . .	1481
75.11.212Odd . . . . .	1482
75.11.213Ofs . . . . .	1482
75.11.214Ord . . . . .	1483
75.11.215Pack . . . . .	1483
75.11.216ParamCount . . . . .	1484
75.11.217ParamStr . . . . .	1484
75.11.218Pi . . . . .	1485
75.11.219PopCnt . . . . .	1485
75.11.220Pos . . . . .	1485
75.11.221power(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1487
75.11.222Pred . . . . .	1487
75.11.223Prefetch . . . . .	1487
75.11.224Ptr . . . . .	1487
75.11.225RaiseList . . . . .	1488
75.11.226Random . . . . .	1488
75.11.227Randomize . . . . .	1489
75.11.228Read . . . . .	1489
75.11.229ReadBarrier . . . . .	1490
75.11.230ReadDependencyBarrier . . . . .	1491
75.11.231ReadLn . . . . .	1491
75.11.232ReadStr . . . . .	1491
75.11.233ReadWriteBarrier . . . . .	1492
75.11.234Real2Double . . . . .	1492
75.11.235ReAllocMem . . . . .	1493
75.11.236ReAllocMemory . . . . .	1493
75.11.237ReleaseExceptionObject . . . . .	1493
75.11.238Rename . . . . .	1494
75.11.239Reset . . . . .	1494
75.11.240ResumeThread . . . . .	1495
75.11.241Rewrite . . . . .	1495
75.11.242rightshift(variant,variant):variant . . . . .	1496
75.11.243Rmdir . . . . .	1496
75.11.244RolByte . . . . .	1497
75.11.245RolDWord . . . . .	1497

75.11.246RolQWord . . . . .	1498
75.11.247RolWord . . . . .	1498
75.11.248RorByte . . . . .	1498
75.11.249RorDWord . . . . .	1499
75.11.250RorQWord . . . . .	1499
75.11.251RorWord . . . . .	1499
75.11.252Round . . . . .	1499
75.11.253RTLEventCreate . . . . .	1500
75.11.254RTLEventDestroy . . . . .	1500
75.11.255RTLEventResetEvent . . . . .	1501
75.11.256RTLEventSetEvent . . . . .	1501
75.11.257RTLEventWaitFor . . . . .	1501
75.11.258RunError . . . . .	1501
75.11.259SafeLoadLibrary . . . . .	1502
75.11.260SarInt64 . . . . .	1502
75.11.261SarLongint . . . . .	1502
75.11.262SarShortint . . . . .	1503
75.11.263SarSmallint . . . . .	1503
75.11.264Seek . . . . .	1503
75.11.265SeekEOF . . . . .	1504
75.11.266SeekEOLn . . . . .	1505
75.11.267Seg . . . . .	1505
75.11.268SetCodePage . . . . .	1506
75.11.269SetDynLibsManager . . . . .	1506
75.11.270Setjmp . . . . .	1506
75.11.271SetLength . . . . .	1507
75.11.272SetMemoryManager . . . . .	1508
75.11.273SetMultiByteConversionCodePage . . . . .	1509
75.11.274SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage . . . . .	1509
75.11.275SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage . . . . .	1509
75.11.276SetResourceManager . . . . .	1510
75.11.277SetString . . . . .	1510
75.11.278SetTextBuf . . . . .	1510
75.11.279SetTextCodePage . . . . .	1511
75.11.280SetTextLineEnding . . . . .	1512
75.11.281SetThreadManager . . . . .	1512
75.11.282SetUnicodeStringManager . . . . .	1512
75.11.283SetVariantManager . . . . .	1513
75.11.284SetWideStringManager . . . . .	1513
75.11.285ShortCompareText . . . . .	1513

75.11.286Sin	1514
75.11.287SizeOf	1514
75.11.288SizeofResource	1515
75.11.289Slice	1515
75.11.290Space	1516
75.11.291SPtr	1516
75.11.292Sqr	1516
75.11.293Sqrt	1517
75.11.294SSeg	1517
75.11.295StackTop	1518
75.11.296Str	1518
75.11.297StringCodePage	1519
75.11.298StringElementSize	1520
75.11.299StringOfChar	1520
75.11.300StringRefCount	1521
75.11.301StringToPPChar	1521
75.11.302StringToUnicodeChar	1521
75.11.303StringToWideChar	1522
75.11.304StrLen	1522
75.11.305StrPas	1522
75.11.306subtract(variant,variant):variant	1522
75.11.307Succ	1523
75.11.308SuspendThread	1523
75.11.309Swap	1523
75.11.310SwapEndian	1524
75.11.311SysAllocMem	1524
75.11.312SysAssert	1524
75.11.313SysBacktraceStr	1525
75.11.314SysFlushStdIO	1525
75.11.315SysFreemem	1525
75.11.316SysFreememSize	1525
75.11.317SysGetFPCHeapStatus	1526
75.11.318SysGetHeapStatus	1526
75.11.319SysGetmem	1526
75.11.320SysInitExceptions	1526
75.11.321SysInitFPU	1527
75.11.322SysInitStdIO	1527
75.11.323SysMemSize	1527
75.11.324SysReAllocMem	1527
75.11.325SysResetFPU	1527

---

75.11.326SysSetCtrlBreakHandler . . . . .	1528
75.11.327SysTryResizeMem . . . . .	1528
75.11.328ThreadGetPriority . . . . .	1528
75.11.329ThreadSetPriority . . . . .	1528
75.11.330ThreadSwitch . . . . .	1529
75.11.331ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName . . . . .	1529
75.11.332Trunc . . . . .	1529
75.11.333Truncate . . . . .	1530
75.11.334TryEnterCriticalSection . . . . .	1530
75.11.335TypeInfo . . . . .	1531
75.11.336TypeOf . . . . .	1531
75.11.337UCS4StringToUnicodeString . . . . .	1531
75.11.338UCS4StringToWideString . . . . .	1531
75.11.339Unassigned . . . . .	1531
75.11.340UnicodeCharLenToString . . . . .	1532
75.11.341UnicodeCharLenToStrVar . . . . .	1532
75.11.342UnicodeCharToString . . . . .	1532
75.11.343UnicodeCharToStrVar . . . . .	1533
75.11.344UnicodeStringToUCS4String . . . . .	1533
75.11.345UnicodeToUtf8 . . . . .	1533
75.11.346UniqueString . . . . .	1533
75.11.347UnloadLibrary . . . . .	1534
75.11.348UnlockResource . . . . .	1534
75.11.349UnPack . . . . .	1534
75.11.350UpCase . . . . .	1534
75.11.351Utf8CodePointLen . . . . .	1535
75.11.352UTF8Decode . . . . .	1536
75.11.353UTF8Encode . . . . .	1536
75.11.354Utf8ToAnsi . . . . .	1536
75.11.355UTF8ToString . . . . .	1537
75.11.356Utf8ToUnicode . . . . .	1537
75.11.357Val . . . . .	1537
75.11.358VarArrayGet . . . . .	1538
75.11.359VarArrayPut . . . . .	1538
75.11.360VarArrayRedim . . . . .	1539
75.11.361VarCast . . . . .	1539
75.11.362WaitForThreadTerminate . . . . .	1539
75.11.363WideCharLenToString . . . . .	1540
75.11.364WideCharLenToStrVar . . . . .	1540
75.11.365WideCharToString . . . . .	1540

75.11.366WideCharToStrVar . . . . .	1541
75.11.367WideStringToUCS4String . . . . .	1541
75.11.368Write . . . . .	1541
75.11.369WriteBarrier . . . . .	1542
75.11.370WriteLn . . . . .	1542
75.11.371WriteStr . . . . .	1543
75.12 TDoubleRec . . . . .	1544
75.12.1 Method overview . . . . .	1545
75.12.2 Property overview . . . . .	1545
75.12.3 TDoubleRec.Mantissa . . . . .	1545
75.12.4 TDoubleRec.Fraction . . . . .	1545
75.12.5 TDoubleRec.Exponent . . . . .	1545
75.12.6 TDoubleRec.SpecialType . . . . .	1546
75.12.7 TDoubleRec.BuildUp . . . . .	1546
75.12.8 TDoubleRec.Sign . . . . .	1546
75.12.9 TDoubleRec.Exp . . . . .	1546
75.12.10 TDoubleRec.Frac . . . . .	1547
75.13 tinterfaceentry . . . . .	1547
75.13.1 Property overview . . . . .	1547
75.13.2 tinterfaceentry.IID . . . . .	1548
75.13.3 tinterfaceentry.IIDStr . . . . .	1548
75.14 TSingleRec . . . . .	1548
75.14.1 Method overview . . . . .	1549
75.14.2 Property overview . . . . .	1549
75.14.3 TSingleRec.Mantissa . . . . .	1549
75.14.4 TSingleRec.Fraction . . . . .	1549
75.14.5 TSingleRec.Exponent . . . . .	1550
75.14.6 TSingleRec.SpecialType . . . . .	1550
75.14.7 TSingleRec.BuildUp . . . . .	1550
75.14.8 TSingleRec.Sign . . . . .	1550
75.14.9 TSingleRec.Exp . . . . .	1550
75.14.10 TSingleRec.Frac . . . . .	1551
75.15 TVmt . . . . .	1551
75.15.1 Property overview . . . . .	1552
75.15.2 TVmt.vParent . . . . .	1552
75.16 IDispatch . . . . .	1552
75.16.1 Description . . . . .	1552
75.16.2 Method overview . . . . .	1552
75.16.3 IDispatch.GetTypeInfoCount . . . . .	1552
75.16.4 IDispatch.GetTypeInfo . . . . .	1552

75.16.5	<a href="#">IDispatch.GetIDsOfNames</a>	1553
75.16.6	<a href="#">IDispatch.Invoke</a>	1553
75.17	<a href="#">IEnumerable</a>	1553
75.17.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1553
75.17.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1553
75.17.3	<a href="#">IEnumerable.GetEnumerator</a>	1553
75.18	<a href="#">IEnumerator</a>	1554
75.18.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1554
75.18.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1554
75.18.3	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	1554
75.18.4	<a href="#">IEnumerator.GetCurrent</a>	1554
75.18.5	<a href="#">IEnumerator.MoveNext</a>	1555
75.18.6	<a href="#">IEnumerator.Reset</a>	1555
75.18.7	<a href="#">IEnumerator.Current</a>	1555
75.19	<a href="#">IInvokable</a>	1556
75.19.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1556
75.20	<a href="#">IUnknown</a>	1556
75.20.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1556
75.20.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1556
75.20.3	<a href="#">IUnknown.QueryInterface</a>	1556
75.20.4	<a href="#">IUnknown._AddRef</a>	1556
75.20.5	<a href="#">IUnknown._Release</a>	1556
75.21	<a href="#">TAggregatedObject</a>	1557
75.21.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1557
75.21.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1557
75.21.3	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	1557
75.21.4	<a href="#">TAggregatedObject.Create</a>	1557
75.21.5	<a href="#">TAggregatedObject.Controller</a>	1557
75.22	<a href="#">TContainedObject</a>	1558
75.22.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1558
75.22.2	<a href="#">Interfaces overview</a>	1558
75.23	<a href="#">TInterfacedObject</a>	1558
75.23.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1558
75.23.2	<a href="#">Interfaces overview</a>	1558
75.23.3	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1558
75.23.4	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	1558
75.23.5	<a href="#">TInterfacedObject.destroy</a>	1558
75.23.6	<a href="#">TInterfacedObject.AfterConstruction</a>	1559
75.23.7	<a href="#">TInterfacedObject.BeforeDestruction</a>	1559
75.23.8	<a href="#">TInterfacedObject.NewInstance</a>	1559

75.23.9	TInterfacedObject.RefCount	1559
75.24	TObject	1560
75.24.1	Description	1560
75.24.2	Method overview	1560
75.24.3	TObject.Create	1561
75.24.4	TObject.Destroy	1561
75.24.5	TObject.newinstance	1561
75.24.6	TObject.FreeInstance	1562
75.24.7	TObject.SafeCallException	1562
75.24.8	TObject.DefaultHandler	1562
75.24.9	TObject.Free	1562
75.24.10	TObject.InitInstance	1563
75.24.11	TObject.CleanupInstance	1563
75.24.12	TObject.ClassType	1563
75.24.13	TObject.ClassInfo	1563
75.24.14	TObject.ClassName	1564
75.24.15	TObject.ClassNameIs	1564
75.24.16	TObject.ClassParent	1564
75.24.17	TObject.InstanceSize	1564
75.24.18	TObject.InheritsFrom	1565
75.24.19	TObject.StringMessageTable	1565
75.24.20	TObject.MethodAddress	1565
75.24.21	TObject.MethodName	1565
75.24.22	TObject.FieldAddress	1566
75.24.23	TObject.AfterConstruction	1566
75.24.24	TObject.BeforeDestruction	1566
75.24.25	TObject.DefaultHandlerStr	1566
75.24.26	TObject.Dispatch	1567
75.24.27	TObject.DispatchStr	1567
75.24.28	TObject.GetInterface	1567
75.24.29	TObject.GetInterfaceByStr	1568
75.24.30	TObject.GetInterfaceWeak	1568
75.24.31	TObject.GetInterfaceEntry	1568
75.24.32	TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr	1568
75.24.33	TObject.GetInterfaceTable	1569
75.24.34	TObject.UnitName	1569
75.24.35	TObject.QualifiedClassName	1569
75.24.36	TObject.Equals	1569
75.24.37	TObject.GetHashCode	1570
75.24.38	TObject.ToString	1570

<b>76 Reference for unit 'sysutils'</b>	<b>1571</b>
76.1 Used units	1571
76.2 Overview	1571
76.3 Type Helpers for basic types	1571
76.4 Localization support	1572
76.5 Unicode and codepage awareness	1572
76.6 Miscellaneous conversion routines	1573
76.7 Date/time routines	1574
76.8 File Name handling routines	1574
76.9 File input/output routines	1575
76.10 PChar related functions	1576
76.11 Date and time formatting characters	1577
76.12 Formatting strings	1578
76.13 String functions	1578
76.14 Constants, types and variables	1579
76.14.1 Constants	1579
76.14.2 Types	1586
76.14.3 Variables	1598
76.15 Procedures and functions	1603
76.15.1 AbandonSignalHandler	1603
76.15.2 Abort	1603
76.15.3 AddDisk	1603
76.15.4 AddTerminateProc	1604
76.15.5 AdjustLineBreaks	1604
76.15.6 AnsiCompareFileName	1604
76.15.7 AnsiCompareStr	1605
76.15.8 AnsiCompareText	1606
76.15.9 AnsiDequotedStr	1607
76.15.10 AnsiExtractQuotedStr	1607
76.15.11 AnsiLastChar	1608
76.15.12 AnsiLowerCase	1608
76.15.13 AnsiLowerCaseFileName	1609
76.15.14 AnsiPos	1609
76.15.15 AnsiQuotedStr	1609
76.15.16 AnsiSameStr	1610
76.15.17 AnsiSameText	1610
76.15.18 AnsiStrComp	1610
76.15.19 AnsiStrIComp	1611
76.15.20 AnsiStrLastChar	1612
76.15.21 AnsiStrLComp	1613



76.15.22	AnsiStrLIComp	1613
76.15.23	AnsiStrLower	1614
76.15.24	AnsiStrPos	1615
76.15.25	AnsiStrRScan	1615
76.15.26	AnsiStrScan	1615
76.15.27	AnsiStrUpper	1616
76.15.28	AnsiUpperCase	1616
76.15.29	AnsiUpperCaseFileName	1617
76.15.30	AppendStr	1617
76.15.31	ApplicationName	1618
76.15.32	AssignStr	1618
76.15.33	BCDToInt	1619
76.15.34	Beep	1619
76.15.35	BoolToStr	1620
76.15.36	ByteLength	1620
76.15.37	BytesOf	1620
76.15.38	ByteToCharIndex	1620
76.15.39	ByteToCharLen	1621
76.15.40	ByteType	1621
76.15.41	CallTerminateProcs	1621
76.15.42	ChangeFileExt	1622
76.15.43	CharInSet	1622
76.15.44	CharToByteLen	1622
76.15.45	CheckOSError	1622
76.15.46	CodePageNameToCodePage	1623
76.15.47	CodePageToCodePageName	1623
76.15.48	CompareMem	1623
76.15.49	CompareMemRange	1623
76.15.50	CompareStr	1624
76.15.51	CompareText	1625
76.15.52	ComposeDateTime	1626
76.15.53	ConcatPaths	1626
76.15.54	CreateDir	1626
76.15.55	CreateGUID	1627
76.15.56	CurrentYear	1627
76.15.57	CurrToStr	1628
76.15.58	CurrToStrF	1628
76.15.59	Date	1628
76.15.60	DateTimeToFileDate	1629
76.15.61	DateTimeToStr	1629

---

76.15.62	<a href="#">DateTimeToString</a>	1630
76.15.63	<a href="#">DateTimeToSystemTime</a>	1631
76.15.64	<a href="#">DateTimeToTimeStamp</a>	1632
76.15.65	<a href="#">DateToStr</a>	1632
76.15.66	<a href="#">DayOfWeek</a>	1633
76.15.67	<a href="#">DecodeDate</a>	1633
76.15.68	<a href="#">DecodeDateFully</a>	1634
76.15.69	<a href="#">DecodeTime</a>	1634
76.15.70	<a href="#">DeleteFile</a>	1635
76.15.71	<a href="#">DirectoryExists</a>	1635
76.15.72	<a href="#">DiskFree</a>	1636
76.15.73	<a href="#">DiskSize</a>	1636
76.15.74	<a href="#">DisposeStr</a>	1637
76.15.75	<a href="#">DoDirSeparators</a>	1637
76.15.76	<a href="#">EncodeDate</a>	1638
76.15.77	<a href="#">EncodeTime</a>	1638
76.15.78	<a href="#">ExceptAddr</a>	1639
76.15.79	<a href="#">ExceptFrameCount</a>	1639
76.15.80	<a href="#">ExceptFrames</a>	1640
76.15.81	<a href="#">ExceptionErrorMessage</a>	1640
76.15.82	<a href="#">ExceptObject</a>	1640
76.15.83	<a href="#">ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter</a>	1640
76.15.84	<a href="#">ExcludeTrailingBackslash</a>	1641
76.15.85	<a href="#">ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter</a>	1641
76.15.86	<a href="#">ExecuteProcess</a>	1642
76.15.87	<a href="#">ExeSearch</a>	1642
76.15.88	<a href="#">ExpandFileName</a>	1643
76.15.89	<a href="#">ExpandFileNameCase</a>	1643
76.15.90	<a href="#">ExpandUNCFileName</a>	1644
76.15.91	<a href="#">ExtractFileDir</a>	1645
76.15.92	<a href="#">ExtractFileDrive</a>	1645
76.15.93	<a href="#">ExtractFileExt</a>	1646
76.15.94	<a href="#">ExtractFileName</a>	1646
76.15.95	<a href="#">ExtractFilePath</a>	1646
76.15.96	<a href="#">ExtractRelativePath</a>	1647
76.15.97	<a href="#">ExtractShortPathName</a>	1647
76.15.98	<a href="#">FileAge</a>	1648
76.15.99	<a href="#">FileClose</a>	1648
76.15.100	<a href="#">FileCreate</a>	1649
76.15.101	<a href="#">FileDateToDateTime</a>	1650

76.15.102FileExists . . . . .	1651
76.15.103FileFlush . . . . .	1651
76.15.104FileGetAttr . . . . .	1652
76.15.105FileGetDate . . . . .	1653
76.15.106FileGetSymLinkTarget . . . . .	1653
76.15.107FileIsReadOnly . . . . .	1654
76.15.108FileOpen . . . . .	1654
76.15.109FileRead . . . . .	1655
76.15.110FileSearch . . . . .	1655
76.15.111FileSeek . . . . .	1656
76.15.112FileSetAttr . . . . .	1657
76.15.113FileSetDate . . . . .	1658
76.15.114FileTruncate . . . . .	1658
76.15.115FileWrite . . . . .	1658
76.15.116FindClose . . . . .	1659
76.15.117FindCmdLineSwitch . . . . .	1659
76.15.118FindFirst . . . . .	1660
76.15.119FindNext . . . . .	1661
76.15.120FloattoCurr . . . . .	1661
76.15.121FloatToDateTime . . . . .	1661
76.15.122FloatToDecimal . . . . .	1662
76.15.123FloatToStr . . . . .	1662
76.15.124FloatToStrF . . . . .	1663
76.15.125FloatToText . . . . .	1665
76.15.126FloatToTextFmt . . . . .	1666
76.15.127FmtStr . . . . .	1667
76.15.128ForceDirectories . . . . .	1667
76.15.129Format . . . . .	1668
76.15.130FormatBuf . . . . .	1674
76.15.131FormatCurr . . . . .	1675
76.15.132FormatDateTime . . . . .	1675
76.15.133FormatFloat . . . . .	1676
76.15.134FreeAndNil . . . . .	1677
76.15.135FreeMemAndNil . . . . .	1678
76.15.136GetAppConfigDir . . . . .	1678
76.15.137GetAppConfigFile . . . . .	1679
76.15.138GetCurrentDir . . . . .	1679
76.15.139GetDirs . . . . .	1680
76.15.140GetDriveIDFromLetter . . . . .	1681
76.15.141GetEnvironmentString . . . . .	1681

76.15.142GetEnvironmentVariable . . . . .	1681
76.15.143GetEnvironmentVariableCount . . . . .	1681
76.15.144GetFileHandle . . . . .	1682
76.15.145GetLastError . . . . .	1682
76.15.146GetLocalTime . . . . .	1682
76.15.147GetLocalTimeOffset . . . . .	1683
76.15.148GetModuleName . . . . .	1683
76.15.149GetTempDir . . . . .	1683
76.15.150GetTempFileName . . . . .	1684
76.15.151GetTickCount . . . . .	1684
76.15.152GetTickCount64 . . . . .	1684
76.15.153GetUserDir . . . . .	1685
76.15.154GuidCase . . . . .	1685
76.15.155GUIDToString . . . . .	1685
76.15.156HashName . . . . .	1685
76.15.157HookSignal . . . . .	1686
76.15.158IncAMonth . . . . .	1686
76.15.159IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter . . . . .	1686
76.15.160IncludeTrailingBackslash . . . . .	1687
76.15.161IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter . . . . .	1687
76.15.162IncMonth . . . . .	1687
76.15.163InquireSignal . . . . .	1688
76.15.164IntToHex . . . . .	1688
76.15.165IntToStr . . . . .	1689
76.15.166IsDelimiter . . . . .	1690
76.15.167IsEqualGUID . . . . .	1690
76.15.168IsLeadChar . . . . .	1690
76.15.169IsLeapYear . . . . .	1690
76.15.170IsPathDelimiter . . . . .	1691
76.15.171IsValidIdent . . . . .	1691
76.15.172LastDelimiter . . . . .	1692
76.15.173LeftStr . . . . .	1692
76.15.174LoadStr . . . . .	1693
76.15.175LowerCase . . . . .	1693
76.15.176MsecsToTimeStamp . . . . .	1694
76.15.177NewStr . . . . .	1694
76.15.178Now . . . . .	1695
76.15.179OutOfMemoryError . . . . .	1695
76.15.180QuotedStr . . . . .	1695
76.15.181RaiseLastError . . . . .	1696

76.15.182RemoveDir . . . . .	1696
76.15.183RenameFile . . . . .	1696
76.15.184ReplaceDate . . . . .	1697
76.15.185ReplaceTime . . . . .	1697
76.15.186RightStr . . . . .	1698
76.15.187SafeLoadLibrary . . . . .	1698
76.15.188SameFileName . . . . .	1698
76.15.189SameStr . . . . .	1699
76.15.190SameText . . . . .	1699
76.15.191SetCurrentDir . . . . .	1699
76.15.192SetDirSeparators . . . . .	1700
76.15.193ShowException . . . . .	1700
76.15.194Sleep . . . . .	1700
76.15.195SScanf . . . . .	1701
76.15.196StrAlloc . . . . .	1701
76.15.197StrBufSize . . . . .	1702
76.15.198StrByteType . . . . .	1702
76.15.199strcat . . . . .	1702
76.15.200StrCharLength . . . . .	1703
76.15.201strcomp . . . . .	1703
76.15.202StrCopy . . . . .	1704
76.15.203StrDispose . . . . .	1704
76.15.204strecopy . . . . .	1705
76.15.205strend . . . . .	1705
76.15.206StrFmt . . . . .	1706
76.15.207stricomp . . . . .	1706
76.15.208StringOf . . . . .	1707
76.15.209StringReplace . . . . .	1707
76.15.210StringToGUID . . . . .	1708
76.15.211strlcat . . . . .	1708
76.15.212strlcomp . . . . .	1709
76.15.213StrLCopy . . . . .	1710
76.15.214StrLen . . . . .	1710
76.15.215StrLFmt . . . . .	1711
76.15.216strlicomp . . . . .	1711
76.15.217strlower . . . . .	1712
76.15.218StrMove . . . . .	1712
76.15.219strnew . . . . .	1713
76.15.220StrNextChar . . . . .	1714
76.15.221StrPas . . . . .	1714

76.15.222StrPCopy	1714
76.15.223StrPLCopy	1715
76.15.224strpos	1715
76.15.225strrscan	1715
76.15.226StrScan	1716
76.15.227StrToBool	1716
76.15.228StrToBoolDef	1717
76.15.229StrToCurr	1717
76.15.230StrToCurrDef	1717
76.15.231StrToDate	1717
76.15.232StrToDateDef	1718
76.15.233StrToDateTime	1719
76.15.234StrToDateTimeDef	1720
76.15.235StrToDWord	1720
76.15.236StrToDWordDef	1720
76.15.237StrToFloat	1721
76.15.238StrToFloatDef	1722
76.15.239StrToInt	1722
76.15.240StrToInt64	1723
76.15.241StrToInt64Def	1723
76.15.242StrToIntDef	1723
76.15.243StrToQWord	1724
76.15.244StrToQWordDef	1724
76.15.245StrToTime	1724
76.15.246StrToTimeDef	1725
76.15.247StrToUInt64	1726
76.15.248StrToUInt64Def	1726
76.15.249strupper	1726
76.15.250Supports	1726
76.15.251SysErrorMessage	1727
76.15.252SystemTimeToDateTime	1727
76.15.253TextToFloat	1728
76.15.254Time	1729
76.15.255TimeStampToDateTime	1729
76.15.256TimeStampToMsecs	1730
76.15.257TimeToStr	1730
76.15.258Trim	1731
76.15.259TrimLeft	1731
76.15.260TrimRight	1732
76.15.261TryEncodeDate	1733

76.15.262TryEncodeTime . . . . .	1733
76.15.263TryFloatToCurr . . . . .	1733
76.15.264TryStringToGUID . . . . .	1734
76.15.265TryStrToBool . . . . .	1734
76.15.266TryStrToCurr . . . . .	1734
76.15.267TryStrToDate . . . . .	1735
76.15.268TryStrToDateTime . . . . .	1735
76.15.269TryStrToDWord . . . . .	1736
76.15.270TryStrToFloat . . . . .	1736
76.15.271TryStrToInt . . . . .	1736
76.15.272TryStrToInt64 . . . . .	1737
76.15.273TryStrToQWord . . . . .	1737
76.15.274TryStrToTime . . . . .	1737
76.15.275TryStrToUInt64 . . . . .	1738
76.15.276UIntToStr . . . . .	1738
76.15.277UnhookSignal . . . . .	1738
76.15.278UnicodeCompareStr . . . . .	1738
76.15.279UnicodeCompareText . . . . .	1738
76.15.280UnicodeFmtStr . . . . .	1739
76.15.281UnicodeFormat . . . . .	1739
76.15.282UnicodeFormatBuf . . . . .	1740
76.15.283UnicodeLowerCase . . . . .	1740
76.15.284UnicodeSameStr . . . . .	1740
76.15.285UnicodeSameText . . . . .	1740
76.15.286UnicodeStringReplace . . . . .	1741
76.15.287UnicodeUpperCase . . . . .	1741
76.15.288UpperCase . . . . .	1741
76.15.289VendorName . . . . .	1742
76.15.290WideBytesOf . . . . .	1742
76.15.291WideCompareStr . . . . .	1742
76.15.292WideCompareText . . . . .	1743
76.15.293WideFmtStr . . . . .	1743
76.15.294WideFormat . . . . .	1744
76.15.295WideFormatBuf . . . . .	1744
76.15.296WideLowerCase . . . . .	1744
76.15.297WideSameStr . . . . .	1745
76.15.298WideSameText . . . . .	1745
76.15.299WideStrAlloc . . . . .	1745
76.15.300WideStringOf . . . . .	1745
76.15.301WideStringReplace . . . . .	1746

76.15.302WideUpperCase	1746
76.15.303WrapText	1746
76.16 TRawbyteSearchRec	1747
76.16.1 Property overview	1747
76.16.2 TRawbyteSearchRec.TimeStamp	1747
76.17 TRawbyteSymLinkRec	1747
76.17.1 Property overview	1748
76.17.2 TRawbyteSymLinkRec.TimeStamp	1748
76.18 TUnicodeSearchRec	1748
76.18.1 Property overview	1748
76.18.2 TUnicodeSearchRec.TimeStamp	1749
76.19 TUnicodeSymLinkRec	1749
76.19.1 Property overview	1749
76.19.2 TUnicodeSymLinkRec.TimeStamp	1749
76.20 EAbort	1749
76.20.1 Description	1749
76.21 EAbstractError	1749
76.21.1 Description	1749
76.22 EAccessViolation	1750
76.22.1 Description	1750
76.23 EArgumentException	1750
76.23.1 Description	1750
76.24 EArgumentNilException	1750
76.24.1 Description	1750
76.25 EArgumentOutOfRangeException	1750
76.25.1 Description	1750
76.26 EAssertionFailed	1750
76.26.1 Description	1750
76.27 EBusError	1751
76.27.1 Description	1751
76.28 EControlC	1751
76.28.1 Description	1751
76.29 EConvertError	1751
76.29.1 Description	1751
76.30 EDirectoryNotFoundException	1751
76.30.1 Description	1751
76.31 EDivByZero	1751
76.31.1 Description	1751
76.32 EEncodingError	1751
76.32.1 Description	1751



76.33	EExternal	1752
76.33.1	Description	1752
76.34	EExternalException	1752
76.34.1	Description	1752
76.35	EFileNotFoundException	1752
76.35.1	Description	1752
76.36	EFormatError	1752
76.36.1	Description	1752
76.37	EHeapMemoryError	1752
76.37.1	Description	1752
76.37.2	Method overview	1752
76.37.3	EHeapMemoryError.FreeInstance	1753
76.38	EInOutError	1753
76.38.1	Description	1753
76.39	EInterror	1753
76.39.1	Description	1753
76.40	EIntfCastError	1753
76.40.1	Description	1753
76.41	EIntOverflow	1753
76.41.1	Description	1753
76.42	EInvalidCast	1753
76.42.1	Description	1753
76.43	EInvalidContainer	1754
76.43.1	Description	1754
76.44	EInvalidInsert	1754
76.44.1	Description	1754
76.45	EInvalidOp	1754
76.45.1	Description	1754
76.46	EInvalidOpException	1754
76.47	EInvalidPointer	1754
76.47.1	Description	1754
76.48	EMathError	1754
76.48.1	Description	1754
76.49	ENoConstructException	1754
76.49.1	Description	1754
76.50	ENoDynLibsSupport	1755
76.51	ENoThreadSupport	1755
76.51.1	Description	1755
76.52	ENotImplemented	1755
76.52.1	Description	1755

76.53	ENotSupportedException	1755
76.53.1	Description	1755
76.54	ENoWideStringSupport	1755
76.54.1	Description	1755
76.55	EObjectCheck	1755
76.55.1	Description	1755
76.56	EOSError	1755
76.56.1	Description	1755
76.57	EOutOfMemory	1756
76.57.1	Description	1756
76.58	EOverflow	1756
76.58.1	Description	1756
76.59	EPackageError	1756
76.59.1	Description	1756
76.60	EPathNotFoundException	1756
76.60.1	Description	1756
76.61	EPathTooLongException	1756
76.61.1	Description	1756
76.62	EPrivilege	1757
76.62.1	Description	1757
76.63	EProgrammerNotFound	1757
76.64	EPropReadOnly	1757
76.64.1	Description	1757
76.65	EPropWriteOnly	1757
76.65.1	Description	1757
76.66	ERangeError	1757
76.66.1	Description	1757
76.67	ESafecallException	1757
76.67.1	Description	1757
76.68	ESigQuit	1757
76.69	EStackOverflow	1757
76.69.1	Description	1757
76.70	EThreadError	1758
76.71	EUnderflow	1758
76.71.1	Description	1758
76.72	EVariantError	1758
76.72.1	Description	1758
76.72.2	Method overview	1758
76.72.3	EVariantError.CreateCode	1758
76.73	Exception	1758

76.73.1	Description	1758
76.73.2	Method overview	1759
76.73.3	Property overview	1759
76.73.4	Exception.Create	1759
76.73.5	Exception.CreateFmt	1759
76.73.6	Exception.CreateRes	1759
76.73.7	Exception.CreateResFmt	1760
76.73.8	Exception.CreateHelp	1760
76.73.9	Exception.CreateFmtHelp	1760
76.73.10	Exception.CreateResHelp	1760
76.73.11	Exception.CreateResFmtHelp	1761
76.73.12	Exception.ToString	1761
76.73.13	Exception.HelpContext	1761
76.73.14	Exception.Message	1761
76.74	EZeroDivide	1762
76.74.1	Description	1762
76.75	IReadWriteSync	1762
76.75.1	Description	1762
76.75.2	Method overview	1762
76.75.3	IReadWriteSync.BeginRead	1762
76.75.4	IReadWriteSync.EndRead	1762
76.75.5	IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite	1763
76.75.6	IReadWriteSync.EndWrite	1763
76.76	TANSISTRINGBUILDER	1763
76.76.1	Method overview	1763
76.76.2	Property overview	1763
76.76.3	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Create	1764
76.76.4	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Append	1764
76.76.5	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.AppendFormat	1764
76.76.6	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.AppendLine	1764
76.76.7	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Clear	1765
76.76.8	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.CopyTo	1765
76.76.9	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.EnsureCapacity	1765
76.76.10	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Equals	1765
76.76.11	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Insert	1765
76.76.12	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Remove	1766
76.76.13	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Replace	1766
76.76.14	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.ToString	1766
76.76.15	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Chars	1766
76.76.16	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Length	1767

76.76.17	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Capacity	1767
76.76.18	TANSISTRINGBUILDER.MaxCapacity	1767
76.77	TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding	1767
76.77.1	Description	1767
76.77.2	Method overview	1767
76.77.3	TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding.Clone	1767
76.77.4	TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding.GetPreamble	1768
76.78	TBooleanHelper	1768
76.78.1	Description	1768
76.78.2	Method overview	1768
76.78.3	TBooleanHelper.Parse	1768
76.78.4	TBooleanHelper.Size	1768
76.78.5	TBooleanHelper.ToString	1769
76.78.6	TBooleanHelper.TryParse	1769
76.78.7	TBooleanHelper.ToInteger	1769
76.79	TByteBoolHelper	1770
76.79.1	Description	1770
76.79.2	Method overview	1770
76.79.3	TByteBoolHelper.Parse	1770
76.79.4	TByteBoolHelper.Size	1770
76.79.5	TByteBoolHelper.ToString	1770
76.79.6	TByteBoolHelper.TryParse	1771
76.79.7	TByteBoolHelper.ToInteger	1771
76.80	TByteHelper	1771
76.80.1	Description	1771
76.80.2	Method overview	1772
76.80.3	TByteHelper.Parse	1772
76.80.4	TByteHelper.Size	1772
76.80.5	TByteHelper.ToString	1772
76.80.6	TByteHelper.TryParse	1773
76.80.7	TByteHelper.ToBoolean	1773
76.80.8	TByteHelper.ToDouble	1773
76.80.9	TByteHelper.ToExtended	1773
76.80.10	TByteHelper.ToBinString	1774
76.80.11	TByteHelper.ToHexString	1774
76.80.12	TByteHelper.ToSingle	1774
76.80.13	TByteHelper.SetBit	1774
76.80.14	TByteHelper.ClearBit	1774
76.80.15	TByteHelper.ToggleBit	1775
76.80.16	TByteHelper.TestBit	1775

76.81	TCardinalHelper	1775
76.81.1	Description	1775
76.81.2	Method overview	1775
76.81.3	TCardinalHelper.Parse	1775
76.81.4	TCardinalHelper.Size	1776
76.81.5	TCardinalHelper.ToString	1776
76.81.6	TCardinalHelper.TryParse	1776
76.81.7	TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean	1776
76.81.8	TCardinalHelper.ToDouble	1777
76.81.9	TCardinalHelper.ToExtended	1777
76.81.10	TCardinalHelper.ToBinString	1777
76.81.11	TCardinalHelper.ToHexString	1777
76.81.12	TCardinalHelper.ToSingle	1777
76.81.13	TCardinalHelper.SetBit	1778
76.81.14	TCardinalHelper.ClearBit	1778
76.81.15	TCardinalHelper.ToggleBit	1778
76.81.16	TCardinalHelper.TestBit	1778
76.82	TDoubleHelper	1778
76.82.1	Description	1778
76.82.2	Method overview	1778
76.82.3	Property overview	1779
76.82.4	TDoubleHelper.IsInfinity	1779
76.82.5	TDoubleHelper.IsNan	1779
76.82.6	TDoubleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity	1779
76.82.7	TDoubleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity	1780
76.82.8	TDoubleHelper.Parse	1780
76.82.9	TDoubleHelper.Size	1780
76.82.10	TDoubleHelper.ToString	1780
76.82.11	TDoubleHelper.TryParse	1781
76.82.12	TDoubleHelper.BuildUp	1781
76.82.13	TDoubleHelper.Exponent	1782
76.82.14	TDoubleHelper.Fraction	1782
76.82.15	TDoubleHelper.Mantissa	1782
76.82.16	TDoubleHelper.SpecialType	1783
76.82.17	TDoubleHelper.Bytes	1783
76.82.18	TDoubleHelper.Words	1783
76.82.19	TDoubleHelper.Sign	1783
76.82.20	TDoubleHelper.Exp	1784
76.82.21	TDoubleHelper.Frac	1784
76.83	TEncoding	1784

76.83.1	Description	1784
76.83.2	Method overview	1785
76.83.3	Property overview	1785
76.83.4	TEncoding.Clone	1785
76.83.5	TEncoding.Convert	1785
76.83.6	TEncoding.IsStandardEncoding	1786
76.83.7	TEncoding.GetBufferEncoding	1786
76.83.8	TEncoding.GetEncoding	1786
76.83.9	TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount	1787
76.83.10	TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount	1787
76.83.11	TEncoding.GetPreamble	1787
76.83.12	TEncoding.GetString	1788
76.83.13	TEncoding.CodePage	1788
76.83.14	TEncoding.EncodingName	1788
76.83.15	TEncoding.IsSingleByte	1788
76.83.16	TEncoding.ANSI	1789
76.83.17	TEncoding.ASCII	1789
76.83.18	TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode	1789
76.83.19	TEncoding.Default	1789
76.83.20	TEncoding.SystemEncoding	1790
76.83.21	TEncoding.Unicode	1790
76.83.22	TEncoding.UTF7	1790
76.83.23	TEncoding.UTF8	1790
76.84	TExtendedHelper	1791
76.84.1	Description	1791
76.84.2	Method overview	1791
76.84.3	Property overview	1791
76.84.4	TExtendedHelper.ToString	1791
76.84.5	TExtendedHelper.Parse	1792
76.84.6	TExtendedHelper.TryParse	1792
76.84.7	TExtendedHelper.IsNan	1793
76.84.8	TExtendedHelper.IsInfinity	1793
76.84.9	TExtendedHelper.IsNegativeInfinity	1793
76.84.10	TExtendedHelper.IsPositiveInfinity	1794
76.84.11	TExtendedHelper.Size	1794
76.84.12	TExtendedHelper.BuildUp	1794
76.84.13	TExtendedHelper.Exponent	1795
76.84.14	TExtendedHelper.Fraction	1795
76.84.15	TExtendedHelper.Mantissa	1795
76.84.16	TExtendedHelper.SpecialType	1795

76.84.17	TExtendedHelper.Bytes	1796
76.84.18	TExtendedHelper.Words	1796
76.84.19	TExtendedHelper.Sign	1796
76.84.20	TExtendedHelper.Exp	1796
76.84.21	TExtendedHelper.Frac	1797
76.85	TGuidHelper	1797
76.85.1	Description	1797
76.85.2	Method overview	1797
76.85.3	TGuidHelper.Create	1797
76.85.4	TGuidHelper.NewGuid	1798
76.85.5	TGuidHelper.ToByteArray	1798
76.85.6	TGuidHelper.ToString	1798
76.86	TInt64Helper	1799
76.86.1	Description	1799
76.86.2	Method overview	1799
76.86.3	TInt64Helper.Parse	1799
76.86.4	TInt64Helper.Size	1799
76.86.5	TInt64Helper.ToString	1800
76.86.6	TInt64Helper.TryParse	1800
76.86.7	TInt64Helper.ToBoolean	1800
76.86.8	TInt64Helper.ToDouble	1800
76.86.9	TInt64Helper.ToExtended	1801
76.86.10	TInt64Helper.ToBinString	1801
76.86.11	TInt64Helper.ToHexString	1801
76.86.12	TInt64Helper.ToSingle	1801
76.86.13	TInt64Helper.SetBit	1801
76.86.14	TInt64Helper.ClearBit	1802
76.86.15	TInt64Helper.ToggleBit	1802
76.86.16	TInt64Helper.TestBit	1802
76.87	TIntegerHelper	1802
76.87.1	Description	1802
76.87.2	Method overview	1802
76.87.3	TIntegerHelper.Size	1802
76.87.4	TIntegerHelper.ToString	1803
76.87.5	TIntegerHelper.Parse	1803
76.87.6	TIntegerHelper.TryParse	1803
76.87.7	TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean	1804
76.87.8	TIntegerHelper.ToDouble	1804
76.87.9	TIntegerHelper.ToExtended	1804
76.87.10	TIntegerHelper.ToBinString	1804

76.87.11	<a href="#">TIntegerHelper.ToHexString</a>	1804
76.87.12	<a href="#">TIntegerHelper.ToSingle</a>	1805
76.87.13	<a href="#">TIntegerHelper.SetBit</a>	1805
76.87.14	<a href="#">TIntegerHelper.ClearBit</a>	1805
76.87.15	<a href="#">TIntegerHelper.ToggleBit</a>	1805
76.87.16	<a href="#">TIntegerHelper.TestBit</a>	1805
76.88	<a href="#">TLongBoolHelper</a>	1805
76.88.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1805
76.88.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1806
76.88.3	<a href="#">TLongBoolHelper.Parse</a>	1806
76.88.4	<a href="#">TLongBoolHelper.Size</a>	1806
76.88.5	<a href="#">TLongBoolHelper.ToString</a>	1806
76.88.6	<a href="#">TLongBoolHelper.TryToParse</a>	1807
76.88.7	<a href="#">TLongBoolHelper.ToInteger</a>	1807
76.89	<a href="#">TMBCSEncoding</a>	1807
76.89.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1807
76.89.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1807
76.89.3	<a href="#">TMBCSEncoding.Create</a>	1807
76.89.4	<a href="#">TMBCSEncoding.Clone</a>	1808
76.89.5	<a href="#">TMBCSEncoding.GetMaxByteCount</a>	1808
76.89.6	<a href="#">TMBCSEncoding.GetMaxCharCount</a>	1808
76.89.7	<a href="#">TMBCSEncoding.GetPreamble</a>	1808
76.90	<a href="#">TMREWException</a>	1809
76.91	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer</a>	1809
76.91.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1809
76.91.2	<a href="#">Interfaces overview</a>	1809
76.91.3	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1809
76.91.4	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	1809
76.91.5	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Create</a>	1809
76.91.6	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Destroy</a>	1810
76.91.7	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginwrite</a>	1810
76.91.8	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endwrite</a>	1810
76.91.9	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginread</a>	1810
76.91.10	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endread</a>	1811
76.91.11	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.RevisionLevel</a>	1811
76.91.12	<a href="#">TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.WriterThreadID</a>	1811
76.92	<a href="#">TNativeIntHelper</a>	1811
76.92.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1811
76.92.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1812
76.92.3	<a href="#">TNativeIntHelper.Parse</a>	1812



76.92.4	TNativeIntHelper.Size . . . . .	1812
76.92.5	TNativeIntHelper.ToString . . . . .	1812
76.92.6	TNativeIntHelper.TryParse . . . . .	1813
76.92.7	TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean . . . . .	1813
76.92.8	TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble . . . . .	1813
76.92.9	TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended . . . . .	1813
76.92.10	TNativeIntHelper.ToBinString . . . . .	1814
76.92.11	TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString . . . . .	1814
76.92.12	TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle . . . . .	1814
76.92.13	TNativeIntHelper.SetBit . . . . .	1814
76.92.14	TNativeIntHelper.ClearBit . . . . .	1814
76.92.15	TNativeIntHelper.ToggleBit . . . . .	1815
76.92.16	TNativeIntHelper.TestBit . . . . .	1815
76.93	TNativeUIntHelper . . . . .	1815
76.93.1	Description . . . . .	1815
76.93.2	Method overview . . . . .	1815
76.93.3	TNativeUIntHelper.Parse . . . . .	1815
76.93.4	TNativeUIntHelper.Size . . . . .	1816
76.93.5	TNativeUIntHelper.ToString . . . . .	1816
76.93.6	TNativeUIntHelper.TryParse . . . . .	1816
76.93.7	TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean . . . . .	1816
76.93.8	TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble . . . . .	1817
76.93.9	TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended . . . . .	1817
76.93.10	TNativeUIntHelper.ToBinString . . . . .	1817
76.93.11	TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString . . . . .	1817
76.93.12	TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle . . . . .	1817
76.93.13	TNativeUIntHelper.SetBit . . . . .	1818
76.93.14	TNativeUIntHelper.ClearBit . . . . .	1818
76.93.15	TNativeUIntHelper.ToggleBit . . . . .	1818
76.93.16	TNativeUIntHelper.TestBit . . . . .	1818
76.94	TQWordHelper . . . . .	1818
76.94.1	Description . . . . .	1818
76.94.2	Method overview . . . . .	1818
76.94.3	TQWordHelper.Parse . . . . .	1819
76.94.4	TQWordHelper.Size . . . . .	1819
76.94.5	TQWordHelper.ToString . . . . .	1819
76.94.6	TQWordHelper.TryParse . . . . .	1819
76.94.7	TQWordHelper.ToBoolean . . . . .	1820
76.94.8	TQWordHelper.ToDouble . . . . .	1820
76.94.9	TQWordHelper.ToExtended . . . . .	1820

76.94.10	TQWordHelper.ToBinString	1820
76.94.11	TQWordHelper.ToHexString	1820
76.94.12	TQWordHelper.ToSingle	1821
76.94.13	TQWordHelper.SetBit	1821
76.94.14	TQWordHelper.ClearBit	1821
76.94.15	TQWordHelper.ToggleBit	1821
76.94.16	TQWordHelper.TestBit	1821
76.95	TShortIntHelper	1821
76.95.1	Description	1821
76.95.2	Method overview	1822
76.95.3	TShortIntHelper.Parse	1822
76.95.4	TShortIntHelper.Size	1822
76.95.5	TShortIntHelper.ToString	1822
76.95.6	TShortIntHelper.TryParse	1823
76.95.7	TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean	1823
76.95.8	TShortIntHelper.ToDouble	1823
76.95.9	TShortIntHelper.ToExtended	1823
76.95.10	TShortIntHelper.ToBinString	1824
76.95.11	TShortIntHelper.ToHexString	1824
76.95.12	TShortIntHelper.ToSingle	1824
76.95.13	TShortIntHelper.SetBit	1824
76.95.14	TShortIntHelper.ClearBit	1824
76.95.15	TShortIntHelper.ToggleBit	1825
76.95.16	TShortIntHelper.TestBit	1825
76.96	TSimpleRWSync	1825
76.96.1	Description	1825
76.96.2	Interfaces overview	1825
76.96.3	Method overview	1825
76.96.4	TSimpleRWSync.Create	1825
76.96.5	TSimpleRWSync.Destroy	1826
76.96.6	TSimpleRWSync.Beginwrite	1826
76.96.7	TSimpleRWSync.Endwrite	1826
76.96.8	TSimpleRWSync.Beginread	1826
76.96.9	TSimpleRWSync.Endread	1827
76.97	TSingleHelper	1827
76.97.1	Description	1827
76.97.2	Method overview	1827
76.97.3	Property overview	1827
76.97.4	TSingleHelper.IsNan	1827
76.97.5	TSingleHelper.IsInfinity	1828

---

76.97.6	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity</a>	1828
76.97.7	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity</a>	1828
76.97.8	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Parse</a>	1829
76.97.9	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Size</a>	1829
76.97.10	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.ToString</a>	1829
76.97.11	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.TryParse</a>	1830
76.97.12	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.BuildUp</a>	1830
76.97.13	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Exponent</a>	1830
76.97.14	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Fraction</a>	1831
76.97.15	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Mantissa</a>	1831
76.97.16	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.SpecialType</a>	1831
76.97.17	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Bytes</a>	1831
76.97.18	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Words</a>	1832
76.97.19	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Sign</a>	1832
76.97.20	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Exp</a>	1832
76.97.21	<a href="#">TSingleHelper.Frac</a>	1832
76.98	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper</a>	1833
76.98.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1833
76.98.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1833
76.98.3	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.Parse</a>	1833
76.98.4	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.Size</a>	1833
76.98.5	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToString</a>	1834
76.98.6	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.TryParse</a>	1834
76.98.7	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean</a>	1834
76.98.8	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToBinString</a>	1834
76.98.9	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString</a>	1835
76.98.10	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle</a>	1835
76.98.11	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble</a>	1835
76.98.12	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended</a>	1835
76.98.13	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.SetBit</a>	1835
76.98.14	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ClearBit</a>	1836
76.98.15	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.ToggleBit</a>	1836
76.98.16	<a href="#">TSmallIntHelper.TestBit</a>	1836
76.99	<a href="#">TStringHelper</a>	1836
76.99.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1836
76.99.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1838
76.99.3	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	1839
76.99.4	<a href="#">TStringHelper.Compare</a>	1839
76.99.5	<a href="#">TStringHelper.CompareOrdinal</a>	1840
76.99.6	<a href="#">TStringHelper.CompareText</a>	1840

76.99.7	TStringHelper.Copy	1840
76.99.8	TStringHelper.Create	1841
76.99.9	TStringHelper.EndsWith	1841
76.99.10	TStringHelper.Equals	1841
76.99.11	TStringHelper.Format	1842
76.99.12	TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmpty	1842
76.99.13	TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmptyOrWhiteSpace	1842
76.99.14	TStringHelper.Join	1842
76.99.15	TStringHelper.LowerCase	1843
76.99.16	TStringHelper.Parse	1843
76.99.17	TStringHelper.ToBoolean	1843
76.99.18	TStringHelper.ToDouble	1844
76.99.19	TStringHelper.ToExtended	1844
76.99.20	TStringHelper.ToInt64	1844
76.99.21	TStringHelper.ToInteger	1845
76.99.22	TStringHelper.ToSingle	1845
76.99.23	TStringHelper.UpperCase	1845
76.99.24	TStringHelper.CompareTo	1846
76.99.25	TStringHelper.Contains	1846
76.99.26	TStringHelper.CopyTo	1846
76.99.27	TStringHelper.CountChar	1846
76.99.28	TStringHelper.DeQuotedString	1847
76.99.29	TStringHelper.EndsWithWith	1847
76.99.30	TStringHelper.GetHashCode	1847
76.99.31	TStringHelper.IndexOf	1847
76.99.32	TStringHelper.IndexOfUnQuoted	1848
76.99.33	TStringHelper.IndexOfAny	1848
76.99.34	TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted	1849
76.99.35	TStringHelper.Insert	1849
76.99.36	TStringHelper.IsDelimiter	1850
76.99.37	TStringHelper.IsEmpty	1850
76.99.38	TStringHelper.LastDelimiter	1850
76.99.39	TStringHelper.LastIndexOf	1850
76.99.40	TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny	1851
76.99.41	TStringHelper.PadLeft	1851
76.99.42	TStringHelper.PadRight	1852
76.99.43	TStringHelper.QuotedString	1852
76.99.44	TStringHelper.Remove	1852
76.99.45	TStringHelper.Replace	1853
76.99.46	TStringHelper.Split	1853

76.99.47	<a href="#">TStringHelper.StartsWith</a>	1854
76.99.48	<a href="#">TStringHelper.Substring</a>	1854
76.99.49	<a href="#">TStringHelper.ToCharArray</a>	1855
76.99.50	<a href="#">TStringHelper.ToLower</a>	1855
76.99.51	<a href="#">TStringHelper.ToLowerInvariant</a>	1855
76.99.52	<a href="#">TStringHelper.ToUpper</a>	1855
76.99.53	<a href="#">TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant</a>	1856
76.99.54	<a href="#">TStringHelper.Trim</a>	1856
76.99.55	<a href="#">TStringHelper.TrimLeft</a>	1856
76.99.56	<a href="#">TStringHelper.TrimRight</a>	1856
76.99.57	<a href="#">TStringHelper.TrimEnd</a>	1857
76.99.58	<a href="#">TStringHelper.TrimStart</a>	1857
76.99.59	<a href="#">TStringHelper.Chars</a>	1857
76.99.60	<a href="#">TStringHelper.Length</a>	1857
76.100	<a href="#">TUnicodeEncoding</a>	1857
76.100.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	1857
76.100.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1858
76.100.3	<a href="#">TUnicodeEncoding.Create</a>	1858
76.100.4	<a href="#">TUnicodeEncoding.Clone</a>	1858
76.100.5	<a href="#">TUnicodeEncoding.GetMaxByteCount</a>	1858
76.100.6	<a href="#">TUnicodeEncoding.GetMaxCharCount</a>	1858
76.100.7	<a href="#">TUnicodeEncoding.GetPreamble</a>	1859
76.101	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER</a>	1859
76.101.1	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1859
76.101.2	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	1859
76.101.3	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Create</a>	1859
76.101.4	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Append</a>	1859
76.101.5	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.AppendFormat</a>	1860
76.101.6	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.AppendLine</a>	1860
76.101.7	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Clear</a>	1860
76.101.8	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.CopyTo</a>	1860
76.101.9	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.EnsureCapacity</a>	1861
76.101.10	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Equals</a>	1861
76.101.11	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Insert</a>	1861
76.101.12	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Remove</a>	1862
76.101.13	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Replace</a>	1862
76.101.14	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.ToString</a>	1862
76.101.15	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Chars</a>	1862
76.101.16	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Length</a>	1862
76.101.17	<a href="#">TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Capacity</a>	1863

76.101.18TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.MaxCapacity . . . . .	1863
76.102TUTF7Encoding . . . . .	1863
76.102.1 Description . . . . .	1863
76.102.2 Method overview . . . . .	1863
76.102.3 TUTF7Encoding.Create . . . . .	1863
76.102.4 TUTF7Encoding.Clone . . . . .	1863
76.102.5 TUTF7Encoding.GetMaxByteCount . . . . .	1864
76.102.6 TUTF7Encoding.GetMaxCharCount . . . . .	1864
76.103TUTF8Encoding . . . . .	1864
76.103.1 Description . . . . .	1864
76.103.2 Method overview . . . . .	1864
76.103.3 TUTF8Encoding.Create . . . . .	1864
76.103.4 TUTF8Encoding.Clone . . . . .	1865
76.103.5 TUTF8Encoding.GetMaxByteCount . . . . .	1865
76.103.6 TUTF8Encoding.GetMaxCharCount . . . . .	1865
76.103.7 TUTF8Encoding.GetPreamble . . . . .	1865
76.104TWordBoolHelper . . . . .	1866
76.104.1 Description . . . . .	1866
76.104.2 Method overview . . . . .	1866
76.104.3 TWordBoolHelper.Parse . . . . .	1866
76.104.4 TWordBoolHelper.Size . . . . .	1866
76.104.5 TWordBoolHelper.ToString . . . . .	1866
76.104.6 TWordBoolHelper.TryToParse . . . . .	1867
76.104.7 TWordBoolHelper.ToInteger . . . . .	1867
76.105TWordHelper . . . . .	1867
76.105.1 Description . . . . .	1867
76.105.2 Method overview . . . . .	1868
76.105.3 TWordHelper.Parse . . . . .	1868
76.105.4 TWordHelper.Size . . . . .	1868
76.105.5 TWordHelper.ToString . . . . .	1868
76.105.6 TWordHelper.TryParse . . . . .	1869
76.105.7 TWordHelper.ToBoolean . . . . .	1869
76.105.8 TWordHelper.ToDouble . . . . .	1869
76.105.9 TWordHelper.ToExtended . . . . .	1869
76.105.10TWordHelper.ToBinString . . . . .	1870
76.105.11TWordHelper.ToHexString . . . . .	1870
76.105.12TWordHelper.ToSingle . . . . .	1870
76.105.13TWordHelper.SetBit . . . . .	1870
76.105.14TWordHelper.ClearBit . . . . .	1870
76.105.15TWordHelper.ToggleBit . . . . .	1871

76.105.16TWordHelper.TestBit . . . . .	1871
<b>77 Reference for unit 'Types' . . . . .</b>	<b>1872</b>
77.1 Overview . . . . .	1872
77.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	1872
77.2.1 Constants . . . . .	1872
77.2.2 Types . . . . .	1877
77.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	1883
77.3.1 Bounds . . . . .	1883
77.3.2 CenterPoint . . . . .	1884
77.3.3 EqualRect . . . . .	1884
77.3.4 InflateRect . . . . .	1884
77.3.5 IntersectRect . . . . .	1884
77.3.6 IsRectEmpty . . . . .	1885
77.3.7 OffsetRect . . . . .	1885
77.3.8 Point . . . . .	1885
77.3.9 PtInRect . . . . .	1885
77.3.10 Rect . . . . .	1886
77.3.11 Size . . . . .	1886
77.3.12 UnionRect . . . . .	1886
77.4 TPoint . . . . .	1886
77.4.1 Method overview . . . . .	1888
77.4.2 TPoint.Zero . . . . .	1888
77.4.3 TPoint.Add . . . . .	1888
77.4.4 TPoint.Distance . . . . .	1888
77.4.5 TPoint.IsZero . . . . .	1888
77.4.6 TPoint.Subtract . . . . .	1888
77.4.7 TPoint.SetLocation . . . . .	1888
77.4.8 TPoint.Offset . . . . .	1889
77.4.9 TPoint.PointInCircle . . . . .	1889
77.4.10 TPoint.equal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean . . . . .	1889
77.4.11 TPoint.notequal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean . . . . .	1889
77.4.12 TPoint.add(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint . . . . .	1889
77.4.13 TPoint.subtract(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint . . . . .	1889
77.4.14 TPoint.assign(TSmallPoint):TPoint . . . . .	1889
77.4.15 TPoint.explicit(TPoint):TSmallPoint . . . . .	1889
77.5 TPointF . . . . .	1890
77.5.1 Method overview . . . . .	1891
77.5.2 TPointF.Add . . . . .	1891
77.5.3 TPointF.Distance . . . . .	1891

77.5.4	<a href="#">TPointF.DotProduct</a>	1891
77.5.5	<a href="#">TPointF.IsZero</a>	1891
77.5.6	<a href="#">TPointF.Subtract</a>	1892
77.5.7	<a href="#">TPointF.SetLocation</a>	1892
77.5.8	<a href="#">TPointF.Offset</a>	1892
77.5.9	<a href="#">TPointF.Scale</a>	1892
77.5.10	<a href="#">TPointF.Ceiling</a>	1892
77.5.11	<a href="#">TPointF.Truncate</a>	1892
77.5.12	<a href="#">TPointF.Floor</a>	1892
77.5.13	<a href="#">TPointF.Round</a>	1892
77.5.14	<a href="#">TPointF.Length</a>	1893
77.5.15	<a href="#">TPointF.Create</a>	1893
77.5.16	<a href="#">TPointF.equal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean</a>	1893
77.5.17	<a href="#">TPointF.notequal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean</a>	1893
77.5.18	<a href="#">TPointF.add(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF</a>	1893
77.5.19	<a href="#">TPointF.subtract(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF</a>	1893
77.5.20	<a href="#">TPointF.negative(TPointF):TPointF</a>	1893
77.5.21	<a href="#">TPointF.multiply(TPointF,TPointF):Single</a>	1893
77.5.22	<a href="#">TPointF.multiply(TPointF,single):TPointF</a>	1894
77.5.23	<a href="#">TPointF.multiply(single,TPointF):TPointF</a>	1894
77.6	<a href="#">TRect</a>	1894
77.6.1	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	1895
77.6.2	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	1896
77.6.3	<a href="#">TRect.Create</a>	1896
77.6.4	<a href="#">TRect.equal(TRect,TRect):Boolean</a>	1896
77.6.5	<a href="#">TRect.notequal(TRect,TRect):Boolean</a>	1896
77.6.6	<a href="#">TRect.add(TRect,TRect):TRect</a>	1896
77.6.7	<a href="#">TRect.multiply(TRect,TRect):TRect</a>	1896
77.6.8	<a href="#">TRect.Empty</a>	1896
77.6.9	<a href="#">TRect.NormalizeRect</a>	1896
77.6.10	<a href="#">TRect.IsEmpty</a>	1897
77.6.11	<a href="#">TRect.Contains</a>	1897
77.6.12	<a href="#">TRect.IntersectsWith</a>	1897
77.6.13	<a href="#">TRect.Intersect</a>	1897
77.6.14	<a href="#">TRect.Union</a>	1897
77.6.15	<a href="#">TRect.Offset</a>	1897
77.6.16	<a href="#">TRect.SetLocation</a>	1897
77.6.17	<a href="#">TRect.Inflate</a>	1897
77.6.18	<a href="#">TRect.CenterPoint</a>	1898
77.6.19	<a href="#">TRect.SplitRect</a>	1898



77.6.20	TRect.Height	1898
77.6.21	TRect.Width	1898
77.6.22	TRect.Size	1898
77.6.23	TRect.Location	1898
77.7	TRectF	1898
77.7.1	Method overview	1899
77.7.2	Property overview	1899
77.7.3	TRectF.Union	1899
77.7.4	TRectF.Offset	1899
77.7.5	TRectF.Width	1900
77.7.6	TRectF.Height	1900
77.8	TSize	1900
77.8.1	Method overview	1901
77.8.2	Property overview	1901
77.8.3	TSize.Add	1901
77.8.4	TSize.Distance	1901
77.8.5	TSize.IsZero	1901
77.8.6	TSize.Subtract	1901
77.8.7	TSize.equal(TSize,TSize):Boolean	1901
77.8.8	TSize.notequal(TSize,TSize):Boolean	1901
77.8.9	TSize.add(TSize,TSize):TSize	1902
77.8.10	TSize.subtract(TSize,TSize):TSize	1902
77.8.11	TSize.Width	1902
77.8.12	TSize.Height	1902
77.9	IClassFactory	1902
77.9.1	Description	1902
77.9.2	Method overview	1902
77.9.3	IClassFactory.CreateInstance	1902
77.9.4	IClassFactory.LockServer	1903
77.10	ISequentialStream	1903
77.10.1	Description	1903
77.10.2	Method overview	1903
77.10.3	ISequentialStream.Read	1903
77.10.4	ISequentialStream.Write	1903
77.11	IStream	1903
77.11.1	Description	1903
77.11.2	Method overview	1904
77.11.3	IStream.Seek	1904
77.11.4	IStream.SetSize	1904
77.11.5	IStream.CopyTo	1904

77.11.6	ISStream.Commit	1905
77.11.7	ISStream.Revert	1905
77.11.8	ISStream.LockRegion	1905
77.11.9	ISStream.UnlockRegion	1905
77.11.10	ISStream.Stat	1906
77.11.11	ISStream.Clone	1906
<b>78</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'TypeInfo'</b>	<b>1907</b>
78.1	Used units	1907
78.2	Overview	1907
78.3	Auxiliary functions	1907
78.4	Getting or setting property values	1908
78.5	Examining published property information	1908
78.6	Constants, types and variables	1909
78.6.1	Constants	1909
78.6.2	Types	1912
78.7	Procedures and functions	1919
78.7.1	AddEnumElementAliases	1919
78.7.2	AlignPTypeInfo	1919
78.7.3	AlignTParamFlags	1919
78.7.4	AlignTypeData	1919
78.7.5	DerefTypeInfoPtr	1919
78.7.6	FindPropInfo	1919
78.7.7	GetDynArrayProp	1920
78.7.8	GetEnumeratedAliasValue	1921
78.7.9	GetEnumName	1921
78.7.10	GetEnumNameCount	1921
78.7.11	GetEnumProp	1922
78.7.12	GetEnumValue	1923
78.7.13	GetFloatProp	1923
78.7.14	GetInt64Prop	1924
78.7.15	GetInterfaceProp	1925
78.7.16	GetMethodProp	1925
78.7.17	GetObjectProp	1927
78.7.18	GetObjectPropClass	1928
78.7.19	GetOrdProp	1929
78.7.20	GetPropInfo	1930
78.7.21	GetPropInfos	1930
78.7.22	GetPropList	1931
78.7.23	GetPropValue	1932

78.7.24	GetRawByteStrProp . . . . .	1932
78.7.25	GetRawInterfaceProp . . . . .	1933
78.7.26	GetSetProp . . . . .	1933
78.7.27	GetStrProp . . . . .	1934
78.7.28	GetTypeData . . . . .	1935
78.7.29	GetUnicodeStrProp . . . . .	1935
78.7.30	GetVariantProp . . . . .	1936
78.7.31	GetWideStrProp . . . . .	1936
78.7.32	IsPublishedProp . . . . .	1936
78.7.33	IsReadableProp . . . . .	1937
78.7.34	IsStoredProp . . . . .	1937
78.7.35	IsWriteableProp . . . . .	1938
78.7.36	PropIsType . . . . .	1938
78.7.37	PropType . . . . .	1939
78.7.38	RemoveEnumElementAliases . . . . .	1940
78.7.39	SetDynArrayProp . . . . .	1940
78.7.40	SetEnumProp . . . . .	1940
78.7.41	SetFloatProp . . . . .	1941
78.7.42	SetInt64Prop . . . . .	1941
78.7.43	SetInterfaceProp . . . . .	1942
78.7.44	SetMethodProp . . . . .	1942
78.7.45	SetObjectProp . . . . .	1943
78.7.46	SetOrdProp . . . . .	1943
78.7.47	SetPropValue . . . . .	1944
78.7.48	SetRawByteStrProp . . . . .	1944
78.7.49	SetRawInterfaceProp . . . . .	1944
78.7.50	SetSetProp . . . . .	1944
78.7.51	SetStrProp . . . . .	1945
78.7.52	SetToString . . . . .	1945
78.7.53	SetUnicodeStrProp . . . . .	1946
78.7.54	SetVariantProp . . . . .	1947
78.7.55	SetWideStrProp . . . . .	1947
78.7.56	StringToSet . . . . .	1947
78.8	TArrayTypeData . . . . .	1948
78.8.1	Property overview . . . . .	1948
78.8.2	TArrayTypeData.ElType . . . . .	1948
78.8.3	TArrayTypeData.Dims . . . . .	1949
78.9	TClassData . . . . .	1949
78.9.1	Property overview . . . . .	1949
78.9.2	TClassData.UnitName . . . . .	1949

78.9.3	TClassData.PropertyTable	1949
78.10	TInterfaceData	1950
78.10.1	Property overview	1950
78.10.2	TInterfaceData.UnitName	1950
78.10.3	TInterfaceData.PropertyTable	1950
78.10.4	TInterfaceData.MethodTable	1950
78.11	TInterfaceRawData	1951
78.11.1	Property overview	1951
78.11.2	TInterfaceRawData.UnitName	1951
78.11.3	TInterfaceRawData.IIDStr	1951
78.11.4	TInterfaceRawData.PropertyTable	1951
78.11.5	TInterfaceRawData.MethodTable	1952
78.12	TIntfMethodEntry	1952
78.12.1	Property overview	1952
78.12.2	TIntfMethodEntry.Name	1953
78.12.3	TIntfMethodEntry.Param	1953
78.12.4	TIntfMethodEntry.ResultLocs	1953
78.12.5	TIntfMethodEntry.Tail	1953
78.12.6	TIntfMethodEntry.Next	1953
78.13	TIntfMethodTable	1953
78.13.1	Property overview	1954
78.13.2	TIntfMethodTable.Method	1954
78.14	TManagedField	1954
78.14.1	Property overview	1954
78.14.2	TManagedField.TypeRef	1954
78.15	TParameterLocation	1954
78.15.1	Property overview	1955
78.15.2	TParameterLocation.Reference	1955
78.15.3	TParameterLocation.RegType	1955
78.15.4	TParameterLocation.ShiftVal	1955
78.16	TParameterLocations	1955
78.16.1	Property overview	1956
78.16.2	TParameterLocations.Location	1956
78.16.3	TParameterLocations.Tail	1956
78.17	TProcedureParam	1956
78.17.1	Property overview	1957
78.17.2	TProcedureParam.ParamType	1957
78.17.3	TProcedureParam.Flags	1957
78.18	TProcedureSignature	1957
78.18.1	Method overview	1957

78.18.2	Property overview	1958
78.18.3	TProcedureSignature.GetParam	1958
78.18.4	TProcedureSignature.ResultType	1958
78.19	TPropData	1958
78.19.1	Property overview	1959
78.19.2	TPropData.Prop	1959
78.19.3	TPropData.Tail	1959
78.20	TPropInfo	1959
78.20.1	Property overview	1960
78.20.2	TPropInfo.PropType	1960
78.20.3	TPropInfo.Tail	1960
78.20.4	TPropInfo.Next	1960
78.21	TTypeData	1960
78.21.1	Property overview	1975
78.21.2	TTypeData.BaseType	1976
78.21.3	TTypeData.CompType	1976
78.21.4	TTypeData.ParentInfo	1976
78.21.5	TTypeData.RecInitData	1976
78.21.6	TTypeData.HelperParent	1976
78.21.7	TTypeData.ExtendedInfo	1977
78.21.8	TTypeData.IntfParent	1977
78.21.9	TTypeData.RawIntfParent	1977
78.21.10	TTypeData.IIDStr	1977
78.21.11	TTypeData.ElType2	1977
78.21.12	TTypeData.ElType	1978
78.21.13	TTypeData.InstanceType	1978
78.21.14	TTypeData.RefType	1978
78.22	TVmtFieldEntry	1978
78.22.1	Property overview	1978
78.22.2	TVmtFieldEntry.Tail	1979
78.22.3	TVmtFieldEntry.Next	1979
78.23	TVmtFieldTable	1979
78.23.1	Property overview	1979
78.23.2	TVmtFieldTable.Field	1979
78.24	TVmtMethodParam	1979
78.24.1	Property overview	1980
78.24.2	TVmtMethodParam.Name	1980
78.24.3	TVmtMethodParam.Tail	1980
78.24.4	TVmtMethodParam.Next	1980
78.25	TVmtMethodTable	1981

78.25.1	Property overview	1981
78.25.2	TVmtMethodTable.Entry	1981
78.26	EPropertyConvertError	1981
78.26.1	Description	1981
78.27	EPropertyError	1981
78.27.1	Description	1981
<b>79</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'unicodedata'</b>	<b>1982</b>
79.1	Overview	1982
79.2	Constants, types and variables	1983
79.2.1	Resource strings	1983
79.2.2	Constants	1983
79.2.3	Types	1987
79.3	Procedures and functions	1989
79.3.1	AddAliasCollation	1989
79.3.2	BytesToName	1990
79.3.3	BytesToString	1990
79.3.4	CanonicalOrder	1990
79.3.5	CompareSortKey	1990
79.3.6	ComputeSortKey	1991
79.3.7	FilterString	1991
79.3.8	FindCollation	1991
79.3.9	FreeCollation	1991
79.3.10	FromUCS4	1992
79.3.11	GetCollationCount	1992
79.3.12	GetProps	1992
79.3.13	GetPropUCA	1992
79.3.14	IncrementalCompareString	1993
79.3.15	LoadCollation	1993
79.3.16	NormalizeNFD	1994
79.3.17	PrepareCollation	1994
79.3.18	RegisterCollation	1995
79.3.19	ToUCS4	1995
79.3.20	UnicodeIsHighSurrogate	1995
79.3.21	UnicodeIsLowSurrogate	1996
79.3.22	UnicodeIsSurrogatePair	1996
79.3.23	UnicodeToLower	1996
79.3.24	UnicodeToUpper	1997
79.3.25	UnregisterCollation	1997
79.3.26	UnregisterCollations	1997

79.4	TCollationTable	1998
79.4.1	Method overview	1998
79.4.2	Property overview	1998
79.4.3	TCollationTable.NormalizeName	1998
79.4.4	TCollationTable.Clear	1999
79.4.5	TCollationTable.IndexOf	1999
79.4.6	TCollationTable.Find	1999
79.4.7	TCollationTable.Add	1999
79.4.8	TCollationTable.Remove	1999
79.4.9	TCollationTable.Item	1999
79.4.10	TCollationTable.Count	1999
79.4.11	TCollationTable.Capacity	2000
79.5	TUCA_DataBook	2000
79.5.1	Method overview	2000
79.5.2	TUCA_DataBook.IsVariable	2000
79.6	TUCA_PropItemContextRec	2001
79.6.1	Method overview	2001
79.6.2	TUCA_PropItemContextRec.GetCodePoints	2001
79.6.3	TUCA_PropItemContextRec.GetWeights	2001
79.7	TUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec	2001
79.7.1	Method overview	2002
79.7.2	TUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec.GetLeftNode	2002
79.7.3	TUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec.GetRightNode	2002
79.8	TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec	2002
79.8.1	Method overview	2002
79.8.2	Property overview	2002
79.8.3	TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec.GetData	2003
79.8.4	TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec.Find	2003
79.8.5	TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec.Data	2003
79.9	TUCA_PropItemRec	2003
79.9.1	Method overview	2004
79.9.2	Property overview	2004
79.9.3	TUCA_PropItemRec.HasCodePoint	2004
79.9.4	TUCA_PropItemRec.IsValid	2004
79.9.5	TUCA_PropItemRec.GetWeightArray	2005
79.9.6	TUCA_PropItemRec.GetSelfOnlySize	2005
79.9.7	TUCA_PropItemRec.GetContextual	2005
79.9.8	TUCA_PropItemRec.GetContext	2005
79.9.9	TUCA_PropItemRec.IsDeleted	2005
79.9.10	TUCA_PropItemRec.IsWeightCompress_1	2005

79.9.11	TUCA_PropItemRec.IsWeightCompress_2	2006
79.9.12	TUCA_PropItemRec.CodePoint	2006
79.9.13	TUCA_PropItemRec.Contextual	2006
79.10	TUC_Prop	2006
79.10.1	Property overview	2007
79.10.2	TUC_Prop.Category	2007
79.10.3	TUC_Prop.WhiteSpace	2007
79.10.4	TUC_Prop.HangulSyllable	2007
79.10.5	TUC_Prop.NumericValue	2008
79.11	TUInt24Rec	2008
79.11.1	Method overview	2011
79.11.2	TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal	2012
79.11.3	TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt	2012
79.11.4	TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word	2012
79.11.5	TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte	2012
79.11.6	TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec	2013
79.11.7	TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2013
79.11.8	TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean	2013
79.11.9	TUInt24Rec.equal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2013
79.11.10	TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,LongInt):Boolean	2013
79.11.11	TUInt24Rec.equal(LongInt,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2014
79.11.12	TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Word):Boolean	2014
79.11.13	TUInt24Rec.equal(Word,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2014
79.11.14	TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Byte):Boolean	2014
79.11.15	TUInt24Rec.equal(Byte,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2014
79.11.16	TUInt24Rec.notequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2014
79.11.17	TUInt24Rec.notequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean	2015
79.11.18	TUInt24Rec.notequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2015
79.11.19	TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2015
79.11.20	TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean	2015
79.11.21	TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2015
79.11.22	TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2016
79.11.23	TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean	2016
79.11.24	TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2016
79.11.25	TUInt24Rec.less than(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2016
79.11.26	TUInt24Rec.less than(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean	2016
79.11.27	TUInt24Rec.less than(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2017
79.11.28	TUInt24Rec.less thanorequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2017
79.11.29	TUInt24Rec.less thanorequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean	2017
79.11.30	TUInt24Rec.less thanorequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean	2017



<b>80 Reference for unit 'unicodeducet'</b>	<b>2018</b>
80.1 Overview . . . . .	2018
<b>81 Reference for unit 'Unix'</b>	<b>2019</b>
81.1 Used units . . . . .	2019
81.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	2019
81.2.1 Constants . . . . .	2019
81.2.2 Types . . . . .	2025
81.2.3 Variables . . . . .	2034
81.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	2035
81.3.1 AssignPipe . . . . .	2035
81.3.2 AssignStream . . . . .	2036
81.3.3 FpExecL . . . . .	2037
81.3.4 FpExecLE . . . . .	2038
81.3.5 FpExecLP . . . . .	2039
81.3.6 FpExecLPE . . . . .	2040
81.3.7 FpExecV . . . . .	2040
81.3.8 FpExecVP . . . . .	2041
81.3.9 FpExecVPE . . . . .	2042
81.3.10 fpFlock . . . . .	2043
81.3.11 fpfStatFS . . . . .	2043
81.3.12 fpfsync . . . . .	2043
81.3.13 fpgettimeofday . . . . .	2044
81.3.14 fpStatFS . . . . .	2044
81.3.15 fpSystem . . . . .	2044
81.3.16 FSearch . . . . .	2045
81.3.17 GetDomainName . . . . .	2046
81.3.18 GetHostName . . . . .	2046
81.3.19 GetLocalTimezone . . . . .	2047
81.3.20 GetTimezoneFile . . . . .	2047
81.3.21 PClose . . . . .	2047
81.3.22 POpen . . . . .	2048
81.3.23 ReadTimezoneFile . . . . .	2049
81.3.24 ReReadLocalTime . . . . .	2049
81.3.25 SeekDir . . . . .	2049
81.3.26 Telldir . . . . .	2050
81.3.27 WaitProcess . . . . .	2050
81.3.28 WIFSTOPPED . . . . .	2050
81.3.29 W_EXITCODE . . . . .	2051
81.3.30 W_STOPCODE . . . . .	2051

<b>82 Reference for unit 'unixcp'</b>	<b>2052</b>
82.1 Used units . . . . .	2052
82.2 Overview . . . . .	2052
82.3 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	2052
82.3.1 Constants . . . . .	2052
82.3.2 Types . . . . .	2055
82.4 Procedures and functions . . . . .	2055
82.4.1 GetCodepageByName . . . . .	2055
82.4.2 GetCodepageData . . . . .	2056
82.4.3 GetSystemCodepage . . . . .	2056
82.5 TUnixCpData . . . . .	2056
<b>83 Reference for unit 'unixtype'</b>	<b>2057</b>
83.1 Overview . . . . .	2057
83.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	2057
83.2.1 Constants . . . . .	2057
83.2.2 Types . . . . .	2059
83.3 mbstate_t . . . . .	2069
83.4 pthread_attr_t . . . . .	2069
83.5 pthread_condattr_t . . . . .	2069
83.6 pthread_cond_t . . . . .	2070
83.7 pthread_mutexattr_t . . . . .	2070
83.8 pthread_rwlockattr_t . . . . .	2070
83.9 sched_param . . . . .	2070
83.10 sem_t . . . . .	2070
83.11 timespec . . . . .	2071
83.12 timeval . . . . .	2071
83.13 TStatfs . . . . .	2071
83.14 _pthread_fastlock . . . . .	2072
<b>84 Reference for unit 'unixutil'</b>	<b>2073</b>
84.1 Overview . . . . .	2073
84.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	2073
84.2.1 Variables . . . . .	2073
84.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	2073
84.3.1 ArrayStringToPPchar . . . . .	2073
84.3.2 EpochToLocal . . . . .	2074
84.3.3 GregorianToJulian . . . . .	2074
84.3.4 JulianToGregorian . . . . .	2074
84.3.5 LocalToEpoch . . . . .	2075
84.3.6 StringToPPChar . . . . .	2075

<b>85</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Variants'</b>	<b>2077</b>
85.1	Used units . . . . .	2077
85.2	Overview . . . . .	2077
85.3	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	2077
85.3.1	Constants . . . . .	2077
85.3.2	Types . . . . .	2078
85.3.3	Variables . . . . .	2080
85.4	Procedures and functions . . . . .	2082
85.4.1	DynArrayFromVariant . . . . .	2082
85.4.2	DynArrayToVariant . . . . .	2082
85.4.3	FindCustomVariantType . . . . .	2082
85.4.4	FindVarData . . . . .	2083
85.4.5	GetPropValue . . . . .	2083
85.4.6	GetVariantProp . . . . .	2083
85.4.7	HandleConversionException . . . . .	2084
85.4.8	Null . . . . .	2084
85.4.9	SetClearVarToEmptyParam . . . . .	2084
85.4.10	SetPropValue . . . . .	2084
85.4.11	SetVariantProp . . . . .	2085
85.4.12	Unassigned . . . . .	2085
85.4.13	VarArrayAsPSafeArray . . . . .	2085
85.4.14	VarArrayCreate . . . . .	2085
85.4.15	VarArrayCreateError . . . . .	2086
85.4.16	VarArrayDimCount . . . . .	2086
85.4.17	VarArrayHighBound . . . . .	2087
85.4.18	VarArrayLock . . . . .	2087
85.4.19	VarArrayLockedError . . . . .	2087
85.4.20	VarArrayLowBound . . . . .	2088
85.4.21	VarArrayOf . . . . .	2088
85.4.22	VarArrayRef . . . . .	2088
85.4.23	VarArrayUnlock . . . . .	2088
85.4.24	VarAsError . . . . .	2089
85.4.25	VarAsType . . . . .	2089
85.4.26	VarBadIndexError . . . . .	2089
85.4.27	VarBadTypeError . . . . .	2089
85.4.28	VarCastError . . . . .	2090
85.4.29	VarCastErrorOle . . . . .	2090
85.4.30	VarCheckEmpty . . . . .	2090
85.4.31	VarClear . . . . .	2090
85.4.32	VarCompareValue . . . . .	2091

85.4.33	<a href="#">VarCopyNoInd</a>	2091
85.4.34	<a href="#">VarEnsureRange</a>	2091
85.4.35	<a href="#">VarFromDateTime</a>	2091
85.4.36	<a href="#">VarInRange</a>	2092
85.4.37	<a href="#">VarInvalidArgError</a>	2092
85.4.38	<a href="#">VarInvalidNullOp</a>	2092
85.4.39	<a href="#">VarInvalidOp</a>	2092
85.4.40	<a href="#">VarIsArray</a>	2093
85.4.41	<a href="#">VarIsBool</a>	2093
85.4.42	<a href="#">VarIsByRef</a>	2093
85.4.43	<a href="#">VarIsClear</a>	2093
85.4.44	<a href="#">VarIsCustom</a>	2094
85.4.45	<a href="#">VarIsEmpty</a>	2094
85.4.46	<a href="#">VarIsEmptyParam</a>	2094
85.4.47	<a href="#">VarIsError</a>	2094
85.4.48	<a href="#">VarIsFloat</a>	2095
85.4.49	<a href="#">VarIsNull</a>	2095
85.4.50	<a href="#">VarIsNumeric</a>	2095
85.4.51	<a href="#">VarIsOrdinal</a>	2095
85.4.52	<a href="#">VarIsStr</a>	2096
85.4.53	<a href="#">VarIsType</a>	2096
85.4.54	<a href="#">VarNotImplError</a>	2096
85.4.55	<a href="#">VarOutOfMemoryError</a>	2096
85.4.56	<a href="#">VarOverflowError</a>	2097
85.4.57	<a href="#">VarRangeCheckError</a>	2097
85.4.58	<a href="#">VarResultCheck</a>	2097
85.4.59	<a href="#">VarSameValue</a>	2097
85.4.60	<a href="#">VarSupports</a>	2098
85.4.61	<a href="#">VarToDateTime</a>	2098
85.4.62	<a href="#">VarToStr</a>	2098
85.4.63	<a href="#">VarToStrDef</a>	2098
85.4.64	<a href="#">VarToUnicodeStr</a>	2099
85.4.65	<a href="#">VarToUnicodeStrDef</a>	2099
85.4.66	<a href="#">VarToWideStr</a>	2099
85.4.67	<a href="#">VarToWideStrDef</a>	2099
85.4.68	<a href="#">VarType</a>	2100
85.4.69	<a href="#">VarTypeAsText</a>	2100
85.4.70	<a href="#">VarTypeDeRef</a>	2100
85.4.71	<a href="#">VarTypeIsValidArrayType</a>	2100
85.4.72	<a href="#">VarTypeIsValidElementType</a>	2101

85.4.73	VarUnexpectedError	2101
85.5	EVariantArrayCreateError	2101
85.5.1	Description	2101
85.6	EVariantArrayLockedError	2101
85.6.1	Description	2101
85.7	EVariantBadIndexError	2102
85.7.1	Description	2102
85.8	EVariantBadVarTypeError	2102
85.8.1	Description	2102
85.9	EVariantDispatchError	2102
85.9.1	Description	2102
85.10	EVariantInvalidArgError	2102
85.10.1	Description	2102
85.11	EVariantInvalidNullOpError	2102
85.11.1	Description	2102
85.12	EVariantInvalidOpError	2102
85.12.1	Description	2102
85.13	EVariantNotAnArrayError	2103
85.13.1	Description	2103
85.14	EVariantNotImplError	2103
85.14.1	Description	2103
85.15	EVariantOutOfMemoryError	2103
85.15.1	Description	2103
85.16	EVariantOverflowError	2103
85.16.1	Description	2103
85.17	EVariantParamNotFoundError	2103
85.17.1	Description	2103
85.18	EVariantRangeCheckError	2103
85.18.1	Description	2103
85.19	EVariantTypeCastError	2104
85.19.1	Description	2104
85.20	EVariantUnexpectedError	2104
85.20.1	Description	2104
85.21	IVarInstanceReference	2104
85.21.1	Description	2104
85.21.2	Method overview	2104
85.21.3	IVarInstanceReference.GetInstance	2104
85.22	IVarInvokeable	2105
85.22.1	Description	2105
85.22.2	Method overview	2105

85.22.3	IVarInvokeable.DoFunction . . . . .	2105
85.22.4	IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure . . . . .	2105
85.22.5	IVarInvokeable.GetProperty . . . . .	2106
85.22.6	IVarInvokeable.SetProperty . . . . .	2106
85.23	TCustomVariantType . . . . .	2106
85.23.1	Description . . . . .	2106
85.23.2	Interfaces overview . . . . .	2107
85.23.3	Method overview . . . . .	2107
85.23.4	Property overview . . . . .	2107
85.23.5	TCustomVariantType.Create . . . . .	2107
85.23.6	TCustomVariantType.Destroy . . . . .	2107
85.23.7	TCustomVariantType.IsClear . . . . .	2108
85.23.8	TCustomVariantType.Cast . . . . .	2108
85.23.9	TCustomVariantType.CastTo . . . . .	2108
85.23.10	TCustomVariantType.CastToOle . . . . .	2108
85.23.11	TCustomVariantType.Clear . . . . .	2109
85.23.12	TCustomVariantType.Copy . . . . .	2109
85.23.13	TCustomVariantType.BinaryOp . . . . .	2109
85.23.14	TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp . . . . .	2110
85.23.15	TCustomVariantType.CompareOp . . . . .	2110
85.23.16	TCustomVariantType.Compare . . . . .	2110
85.23.17	TCustomVariantType.VarType . . . . .	2111
85.24	TInvokeableVariantType . . . . .	2111
85.24.1	Description . . . . .	2111
85.24.2	Interfaces overview . . . . .	2111
85.24.3	Method overview . . . . .	2111
85.24.4	TInvokeableVariantType.DoFunction . . . . .	2111
85.24.5	TInvokeableVariantType.DoProcedure . . . . .	2112
85.24.6	TInvokeableVariantType.GetProperty . . . . .	2112
85.24.7	TInvokeableVariantType.SetProperty . . . . .	2112
85.25	TPublishableVariantType . . . . .	2113
85.25.1	Description . . . . .	2113
85.25.2	Interfaces overview . . . . .	2113
85.25.3	Method overview . . . . .	2113
85.25.4	TPublishableVariantType.GetProperty . . . . .	2113
85.25.5	TPublishableVariantType.SetProperty . . . . .	2113
<b>86</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'video'</b>	<b>2114</b>
86.1	Overview . . . . .	2114
86.2	Examples utility unit . . . . .	2115

86.3	Writing a custom video driver . . . . .	2115
86.4	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	2119
86.4.1	Constants . . . . .	2119
86.4.2	Types . . . . .	2123
86.4.3	Variables . . . . .	2124
86.5	Procedures and functions . . . . .	2124
86.5.1	ClearScreen . . . . .	2124
86.5.2	DefaultErrorHandler . . . . .	2125
86.5.3	DoneVideo . . . . .	2125
86.5.4	GetCapabilities . . . . .	2126
86.5.5	GetCursorType . . . . .	2127
86.5.6	GetLockScreenCount . . . . .	2128
86.5.7	GetVideoDriver . . . . .	2128
86.5.8	GetVideoMode . . . . .	2129
86.5.9	GetVideoModeCount . . . . .	2129
86.5.10	GetVideoModeData . . . . .	2131
86.5.11	InitVideo . . . . .	2131
86.5.12	LockScreenUpdate . . . . .	2131
86.5.13	SetCursorPos . . . . .	2132
86.5.14	SetCursorType . . . . .	2133
86.5.15	SetVideoDriver . . . . .	2133
86.5.16	SetVideoMode . . . . .	2133
86.5.17	UnlockScreenUpdate . . . . .	2134
86.5.18	UpdateScreen . . . . .	2134
86.6	TVideoDriver . . . . .	2135
86.7	TVideoMode . . . . .	2135
<b>87</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'WinCRT'</b>	<b>2136</b>
87.1	Overview . . . . .	2136
87.2	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	2136
87.2.1	Variables . . . . .	2136
87.3	Procedures and functions . . . . .	2136
87.3.1	delay . . . . .	2136
87.3.2	keypressed . . . . .	2136
87.3.3	nosound . . . . .	2137
87.3.4	readkey . . . . .	2137
87.3.5	sound . . . . .	2137
87.3.6	textmode . . . . .	2137
<b>88</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'WinDirs'</b>	<b>2138</b>
88.1	Overview . . . . .	2138

88.2	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	2138
88.2.1	Constants . . . . .	2138
88.3	Procedures and functions . . . . .	2151
88.3.1	ConvertCSIDLtoFOLDERID . . . . .	2151
88.3.2	ConvertFOLDERIDtoCSIDL . . . . .	2152
88.3.3	GetWindowsSpecialDir . . . . .	2152
88.3.4	GetWindowsSpecialDirUnicode . . . . .	2152
88.3.5	GetWindowsSystemDirectory . . . . .	2152
88.3.6	GetWindowsSystemDirectoryUnicode . . . . .	2152
<b>89</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'x86'</b>	<b>2153</b>
89.1	Used units . . . . .	2153
89.2	Overview . . . . .	2153
89.3	Procedures and functions . . . . .	2153
89.3.1	fpIOperm . . . . .	2153
89.3.2	fpIoPL . . . . .	2154
89.3.3	ReadPort . . . . .	2154
89.3.4	ReadPortB . . . . .	2154
89.3.5	ReadPortL . . . . .	2155
89.3.6	ReadPortW . . . . .	2155
89.3.7	WritePort . . . . .	2155
89.3.8	WritePortB . . . . .	2156
89.3.9	WritePortl . . . . .	2156
89.3.10	WritePortW . . . . .	2156



## About this guide

This document describes all constants, types, variables, functions and procedures as they are declared in the units that come standard with the Free Pascal Run-Time library (RTL).

Throughout this document, we will refer to functions, types and variables with `typewriter` font. Functions and procedures have their own subsections, and for each function or procedure we have the following topics:

**Declaration** The exact declaration of the function.

**Description** What does the procedure exactly do ?

**Errors** What errors can occur.

**See Also** Cross references to other related functions/commands.

## 0.1 Overview

The Run-Time Library is the basis of all Free Pascal programs. It contains the basic units that most programs will use, and are made available on all platforms supported by Free pascal (well, more or less).

There are units for compatibility with the Turbo Pascal Run-Time library, and there are units for compatibility with Delphi.

On top of these two sets, there are also a series of units to handle keyboard/mouse and text screens in a cross-platform way.

Other units include platform specific units that implement the specifics of a platform, these are usually needed to support the Turbo Pascal or Delphi units.

Units that fall outside the above outline do not belong in the RTL, but should be included in the packages, or in the FCL.

# Chapter 1

## Reference for unit 'BaseUnix'

### 1.1 Used units

Table 1.1: Used units by unit 'BaseUnix'

Name	Page
unixtype	<a href="#">2057</a>

### 1.2 Overview

The `BaseUnix` unit was implemented by Marco Van de Voort. It contains basic Unix functionality. It supersedes the Linux unit of version 1.0.X of the compiler, but only implements a cleaned up, portable subset of that unit.

For porting FPC to new Unix-like platforms, it should be sufficient to implement the functionality in this unit for the new platform.

### 1.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 1.3.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = UnixType.ARG_MAX`

Maximum number of arguments to a program.

`AT_FDCWD = - 100`

Flag for various `*at` calls to indicate current working directory

`AT_REMOVEDIR = $200`

Unlink at: specify `rmdir` behaviour

`BITSINWORD = 8 * sizeof(cuLong)`

Number of bits in a word.

`clone_flags_fork = 01200011`

Request fork behaviour for clone call

`ESysE2BIG = 7`

System error: Argument list too long

`ESysEACCES = 13`

System error: Permission denied

`ESysEADDRINUSE = 98`

System error: Address already in use

`ESysEADDRNOTAVAIL = 99`

System error: Cannot assign requested address

`ESysEADV = 68`

System error: Advertise error

`ESysEAFNOSUPPORT = 97`

System error: Address family not supported by protocol

`ESysEAGAIN = 11`

System error: Try again

`ESysEALREADY = 114`

System error: Operation already in progress

`ESysEBADE = 52`

System error: Invalid exchange

`ESysEBADF = 9`

System error: Bad file number

`ESysEBADFD = 77`

System error: File descriptor in bad state

`ESysEBADMSG = 74`

System error: Not a data message

ESysEBADR = 53

System error: Invalid request descriptor

ESysEBADRQC = 56

System error: Invalid request code

ESysEBADSLT = 57

System error: Invalid slot

ESysEBFONT = 59

System error: Bad font file format

ESysEBUSY = 16

System error: Device or resource busy

ESysECANCELED = 125

Operation canceled

ESysECHILD = 10

System error: No child processes

ESysECHRNG = 44

System error: Channel number out of range

ESysECOMM = 70

System error: Communication error on send

ESysECONNABORTED = 103

System error: Software caused connection abort

ESysECONNREFUSED = 111

System error: Connection refused

ESysECONNRESET = 104

System error: Connection reset by peer

ESysEDEADLK = 35

System error: Resource deadlock would occur

ESysEDEADLOCK = ESysEDEADLK

System error: File locking deadlock error

ESysEDESTADDRREQ = 89

System error: Destination address required

ESysEDOM = 33

System error: Math argument out of domain of func

ESysEDOTDOT = 73

System error: RFS specific error

ESysEDQUOT = 122

System error: Quota exceeded

ESysEEXIST = 17

System error: File exists

ESysEFAULT = 14

System error: Bad address

ESysEFBIG = 27

System error: File too large

ESysEHOSTDOWN = 112

System error: Host is down

ESysEHOSTUNREACH = 113

System error: No route to host

ESysEIDRM = 43

System error: Identifier removed

ESysEILSEQ = 84

System error: Illegal byte sequence

ESysEINPROGRESS = 115

System error: Operation now in progress

ESysEINTR = 4

System error: Interrupted system call

ESysEINVAL = 22

System error: Invalid argument

ESysEIO = 5

System error: I/O error

ESysEISCONN = 106

System error: Transport endpoint is already connected

ESysEISDIR = 21

System error: Is a directory

ESysEISNAM = 120

System error: Is a named type file

ESysEKEYEXPIRED = 127

Key has expired (Linux kernel module)

ESysEKEYREJECTED = 129

Key was rejected by service (Linux kernel module)

ESysEKEYREVOKED = 128

Key has been revoked (Linux kernel module)

ESysEL2HLT = 51

System error: Level 2 halted

ESysEL2NSYNC = 45

System error: Level 2 not synchronized

ESysEL3HLT = 46

System error: Level 3 halted

ESysEL3RST = 47

System error: Level 3 reset

ESysELIBACC = 79

System error: Can not access a needed shared library

ESysELIBBAD = 80

System error: Accessing a corrupted shared library

ESysELIBEXEC = 83

System error: Cannot exec a shared library directly

ESysELIBMAX = 82

System error: Attempting to link in too many shared libraries

ESysELIBSCN = 81

System error: .lib section in a.out corrupted

ESysELNRNG = 48

System error: Link number out of range

ESysELOOP = 40

System error: Too many symbolic links encountered

ESysEMEDIUMTYPE = 124

Wrong medium type

ESysEMFILE = 24

System error: Too many open files

ESysEMLINK = 31

System error: Too many links

ESysEMSGSIZE = 90

System error: Message too long

ESysEMULTIHOP = 72

System error: Multihop attempted

ESysENAMETOOLONG = 36

System error: File name too long

ESysENAVAIL = 119

System error: No XENIX semaphores available

ESysENETDOWN = 100

System error: Network is down

ESysENETRESET = 102

System error: Network dropped connection because of reset

ESysENETUNREACH = 101

System error: Network is unreachable

ESysENFILE = 23

System error: File table overflow

ESysENOANO = 55

System error: No anode

ESysENOBUFFS = 105

System error: No buffer space available

ESysENOCSSI = 50

System error: No CSI structure available

ESysENODATA = 61

System error: No data available

ESysENODEV = 19

System error: No such device

ESysENOENT = 2

System error: No such file or directory

ESysENOEXEC = 8

System error: Exec format error

ESysENOKEY = 126



Required key not available (Linux kernel module)

ESysENOLCK = 37

System error: No record locks available

ESysENOLINK = 67

System error: Link has been severed

ESysENOMEDIUM = 123

No medium present

ESysENOMEM = 12

System error: Out of memory

ESysENOMSG = 42

System error: No message of desired type

ESysENONET = 64

System error: Machine is not on the network

ESysENOPKG = 65

System error: Package not installed

ESysENOPROTOOPT = 92

System error: Protocol not available

ESysENOSPC = 28

System error: No space left on device

ESysENOSR = 63

System error: Out of streams resources

ESysENOSTR = 60

System error: Device not a stream

ESysENOSYS = 38

System error: Function not implemented

ESysENOTBLK = 15

System error: Block device required

ESysENOTCONN = 107

System error: Transport endpoint is not connected

ESysENOTDIR = 20

System error: Not a directory

ESysENOTEMPTY = 39

System error: Directory not empty

ESysENOTNAM = 118

System error: Not a XENIX named type file

ESysENOTRECOVERABLE = 131

State not recoverable (mutexes)

ESysENOTSOCK = 88

System error: Socket operation on non-socket

ESysENOTTY = 25

System error: Not a typewriter

ESysENOTUNIQ = 76

System error: Name not unique on network

ESysENXIO = 6

System error: No such device or address

ESysEOPNOTSUPP = 95

System error: Operation not supported on transport endpoint

ESysEOVERFLOW = 75

System error: Value too large for defined data type

ESysEOWNERDEAD = 130

Owner died (mutexes)

ESysEPERM = 1

System error: Operation not permitted.

ESysEPFNOSUPPORT = 96

System error: Protocol family not supported

ESysEPIPE = 32

System error: Broken pipe

ESysEPROTO = 71

System error: Protocol error

ESysEPROTONOSUPPORT = 93

System error: Protocol not supported

ESysEPROTOTYPE = 91

System error: Protocol wrong type for socket

ESysERANGE = 34

System error: Math result not representable

ESysEREMCHG = 78

System error: Remote address changed

ESysEREMOTE = 66

System error: Object is remote

ESysEREMOTEIO = 121

System error: Remote I/O error

ESysERESTART = 85

System error: Interrupted system call should be restarted

ESysERFKILL = 132

Operation not possible due to RF-Kill (wireless)

ESysEROFS = 30

System error: Read-only file system

ESysESHUTDOWN = 108

System error: Cannot send after transport endpoint shutdown

ESysESOCKTNOSUPPORT = 94

System error: Socket type not supported

ESysESPIPE = 29

System error: Illegal seek

ESysESRCH = 3

System error: No such process

ESysESRMNT = 69

System error: Srmount error

ESysESTALE = 116

System error: Stale NFS file handle

ESysESTRPIPE = 86

System error: Streams pipe error

ESysETIME = 62

System error: Timer expired

ESysETIMEDOUT = 110

System error: Connection timed out

ESysETOOMANYREFS = 109

System error: Too many references: cannot splice

ESysETXTBSY = 26

System error: Text (code segment) file busy

ESysEUCLEAN = 117

System error: Structure needs cleaning

ESysEUNATCH = 49

System error: Protocol driver not attached

ESysEUSERS = 87

System error: Too many users

ESysEWOULDBLOCK = ESysEAGAIN

System error: Operation would block

ESysEXDEV = 18

System error: Cross-device link

ESysEXFULL = 54

System error: Exchange full

FD\_MAXFDSET = 1024

Maximum elements in a TFDSet ([171](#)) array.

FPE\_FLTDIV = 3

Value signalling floating point divide by zero in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTINV = 7

Value signalling floating point invalid operation in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTOVF = 4

Value signalling floating point overflow in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTRES = 6

Value signalling floating point inexact result in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTSUB = 8

Value signalling floating point subscript out of range in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_FLTUND = 5

Value signalling floating point underflow in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_INTDIV = 1

Value signalling integer divide in case of SIGFPE signal

FPE\_INTOVF = 2

Value signalling integer overflow in case of SIGFPE signal

F\_GetFd = 1

fpFCntl (183) command: Get close-on-exec flag

F\_GetFl = 3

fpFCntl (183) command: Get file descriptor flags

F\_GetLk = 5

fpFCntl (183) command: Get lock

F\_GetOwn = 9

fpFCntl (183) command: get owner of file descriptor events

F\_OK = 0

fpAccess (174) call test: file exists.

F\_SetFd = 2

fpFCntl (183) command: Set close-on-exec flag

F\_SetFl = 4

fpFCntl (183) command: Set file descriptor flags

F\_SetLk = 6

fpFCntl (183) command: Set lock

F\_SetLkW = 7

fpFCntl (183) command: Test lock

F\_SetOwn = 8

fpFCntl (183) command: Set owner of file descriptor events

ln2bitmask = 1 shl ln2bitsinword - 1

Last bit in word.

ln2bitsinword = 6

Power of 2 number of bits in word.

MAP\_ANON = MAP\_ANONYMOUS

Anonymous memory mapping (data private to application)

MAP\_ANONYMOUS = \$20

FpMMap (197) map type: Don't use a file

MAP\_DENYWRITE = \$800

FpMMap (197) option: Ignored.

MAP\_EXECUTABLE = \$1000

FpMMap (197) option: Ignored.

MAP\_FAILED = pointer(- 1)

Memory mapping failed error code

MAP\_FIXED = \$10

FpMMap (197) map type: Interpret addr exactly

MAP\_GROWSDOWN = \$100

FpMMap (197) option: Memory grows downward (like a stack)

MAP\_LOCKED = \$2000

FpMMap (197) option: lock the pages in memory.

MAP\_NORESERVE = \$4000

FpMMap (197) option: Do not reserve swap pages for this memory.

MAP\_PRIVATE = \$2

FpMMap (197) map type: Changes are private

MAP\_SHARED = \$1

FpMMap (197) map type: Share changes

MAP\_TYPE = \$f

FpMMap (197) map type: Bitmask for type of mapping

NAME\_MAX = UnixType.NAME\_MAX

Maximum filename length.

O\_APPEND = \$400

fpOpen (201) file open mode: Append to file

O\_CREAT = \$40

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.

`O_DIRECT` = \$4000

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Minimize caching effects

`O_DIRECTORY` = \$10000

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: File must be directory.

`O_EXCL` = \$80

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Open exclusively

`O_NDELAY` = `O_NONBLOCK`

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Alias for `O_NonBlock` (151)

`O_NOCTTY` = \$100

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: No TTY control.

`O_NOFOLLOW` = \$20000

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Fail if file is symbolic link.

`O_NONBLOCK` = \$800

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Open in non-blocking mode

`O_RDONLY` = 0

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Read only

`O_RDWR` = 2

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Read/Write

`O_SYNC` = \$1000

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Write to disc at once

`O_TRUNC` = \$200

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Truncate file to length 0

`O_WRONLY` = 1

`fpOpen` (201) file open mode: Write only

`PATH_MAX` = `UnixType.PATH_MAX`



Maximum pathname length.

POLLERR = \$0008

Error condition on output file descriptor

POLLHUP = \$0010

Hang up

POLLIN = \$0001

Data is available for reading

POLLNVAL = \$0020

Invalid request, file descriptor not open.

POLLOUT = \$0004

Writing data will not block the write call

POLLPRI = \$0002

Urgent data is available for reading.

POLLRDBAND = \$0080

Priority data ready for reading.

POLLRDNORM = \$0040

Same as POLLIN.

POLLWRBAND = \$0200

Priority data may be written.

POLLWRNORM = \$0100

Equivalent to POLLOUT.

PRIO\_PGRP = UnixType.PRIO\_PGRP

Easy access alias for unixtype.PRIO\_PGRP ([2057](#))

PRIO\_PROCESS = UnixType.PRIO\_PROCESS

Easy access alias for unixtype.PRIO\_PROCESS ([2057](#))

PRIO\_USER = UnixType.PRIO\_USER

Easy access alias for unixtype.PRIO\_USER ([2057](#))

PROT\_EXEC = \$4

FpMMap ([197](#)) memory access: page can be executed

PROT\_NONE = \$0

FpMMap ([197](#)) memory access: page can not be accessed

PROT\_READ = \$1

FpMMap ([197](#)) memory access: page can be read

PROT\_WRITE = \$2

FpMMap ([197](#)) memory access: page can be written

RLIMIT\_AS = 9

RLimit request address space limit

RLIMIT\_CORE = 4

RLimit request max core file size

RLIMIT\_CPU = 0

RLimit request CPU time in ms

RLIMIT\_DATA = 2

RLimit request max data size

RLIMIT\_FSIZE = 1

Rlimit request maximum file size

RLIMIT\_LOCKS = 10

RLimit request maximum file locks held

RLIMIT\_MEMLOCK = 8

RLimit request max locked-in-memory address space

RLIMIT\_NOFILE = 7

RLimit request max number of open files

RLIMIT\_NPROC = 6

RLimit request max number of processes

RLIMIT\_RSS = 5

RLimit request max resident set size

RLIMIT\_STACK = 3

RLimit request max stack size

R\_OK = 4

fpAccess (174) call test: read allowed

SA\_INTERRUPT = \$20000000

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_NOCLDSTOP = 1

Sigaction options: Do not receive notification when child processes stop

SA\_NOCLDWAIT = 2

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_NODEFER = \$40000000

Sigaction options: Do not mask signal in its own signal handler

SA\_NOMASK = SA\_NODEFER

Sigaction options: Do not prevent the signal from being received when it is handled.

SA\_ONESHOT = SA\_RESETHAND

Sigaction options: Restore the signal action to the default state.

SA\_ONSTACK = \$08000000

SA\_ONSTACK is used in the `fp_sigaction` (213) to indicate the signal handler must be called on an alternate signal stack provided by `sigaltstack(2)`. If an alternate stack is not available, the default stack will be used.

SA\_RESETHAND = \$80000000

Sigaction options: Restore signal action to default state when signal handler exits.

SA\_RESTART = \$10000000

Sigaction options: Provide behaviour compatible with BSD signal semantics

SA\_RESTORER = \$04000000

Signal restorer handler

SA\_SIGINFO = 4

Sigaction options: The signal handler takes 3 arguments, not one.

SEEK\_CUR = 1

fpLSeek (194) option: Set position relative to current position.

SEEK\_END = 2

fpLSeek (194) option: Set position relative to end of file.

SEEK\_SET = 0

fpLSeek (194) option: Set absolute position.

SIGABRT = 6

Signal: ABRT (Abort)

SIGALRM = 14

Signal: ALRM (Alarm clock)

SIGBUS = 7

Signal: BUS (bus error)

SIGCHLD = 17

Signal: CHLD (child status changed)

SIGCONT = 18

Signal: CONT (Continue)

SIGFPE = 8

Signal: FPE (Floating point error)

SIGHUP = 1

Signal: HUP (Hangup)

SIGILL = 4

Signal: ILL (Illegal instruction)

SIGINT = 2

Signal: INT (Interrupt)

SIGIO = 29

Signal: IO (I/O operation possible)

SIGIOT = 6

Signal: IOT (IOT trap)

SIGKILL = 9

Signal: KILL (unblockable)

SIGPIPE = 13

Signal: PIPE (Broken pipe)

SIGPOLL = SIGIO

Signal: POLL (Pollable event)

SIGPROF = 27

Signal: PROF (Profiling alarm)

SIGPWR = 30

Signal: PWR (power failure restart)

SIGQUIT = 3

Signal: QUIT

SIGSEGV = 11

Signal: SEGV (Segmentation violation)

SIGSTKFLT = 16

Signal: STKFLT (Stack Fault)

SIGSTOP = 19

Signal: STOP (Stop, unblockable)

SIGTERM = 15

Signal: TERM (Terminate)

SIGTRAP = 5

Signal: TRAP (Trace trap)

SIGTSTP = 20

Signal: TSTP (keyboard stop)

SIGTTIN = 21

Signal: TTIN (Terminal input, background)

SIGTTOU = 22

Signal: TTOU (Terminal output, background)

SIGUNUSED = 31

Signal: Unused

SIGURG = 23

Signal: URG (Socket urgent condition)

SIGUSR1 = 10

Signal: USR1 (User-defined signal 1)

SIGUSR2 = 12

Signal: USR2 (User-defined signal 2)

SIGVTALRM = 26

Signal: VTALRM (Virtual alarm clock)

SIGWINCH = 28

Signal: WINCH (Window/Terminal size change)

SIGXCPU = 24

Signal: XCPU (CPU limit exceeded)

SIGXFSZ = 25

Signal: XFSZ (File size limit exceeded)

SIG\_BLOCK = 0

Sigprocmask flags: Add signals to the set of blocked signals.

`SIG_DFL = 0`

Signal handler: Default signal handler

`SIG_ERR = - 1`

Signal handler: error

`SIG_IGN = 1`

Signal handler: Ignore signal

`SIG_MAXSIG = UnixType.SIG_MAXSIG`

Maximum system signal number.

`SIG_SETMASK = 2`

Sigprocmask flags: Set of blocked signals is given.

`SIG_UNBLOCK = 1`

Sigprocmask flags: Remove signals from the set set of blocked signals.

`SI_PAD_SIZE = 128 div sizeof(longint) - 3`

Signal information pad size.

`SYS_NMLN = UnixType.SYS_NMLN`

Max system name length.

`S_IFBLK = 24576`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Block device

`S_IFCHR = 8192`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Character device

`S_IFDIR = 16384`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Directory

`S_IFIFO = 4096`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: FIFO

`S_IFLNK = 40960`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Link

S\_IFMT = 61440

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: File type bit mask

S\_IFREG = 32768

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Regular file

S\_IFSOCK = 49152

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Socket

S\_IRGRP = %0000100000

Mode flag: Read by group.

S\_IROTH = %0000000100

Mode flag: Read by others.

S\_IRUSR = %0100000000

Mode flag: Read by owner.

S\_IRWXG = S\_IRGRP or S\_IWGRP or S\_IXGRP

Mode flag: Read, write, execute by groups.

S\_IRWXO = S\_IROTH or S\_IWOTH or S\_IXOTH

Mode flag: Read, write, execute by others.

S\_IRWXU = S\_IRUSR or S\_IWUSR or S\_IXUSR

Mode flag: Read, write, execute by user.

S\_IWGRP = %0000010000

Mode flag: Write by group.

S\_IWOTH = %0000000010

Mode flag: Write by others.

S\_IWUSR = %0010000000

Mode flag: Write by owner.

S\_IXGRP = %0000001000

Mode flag: Execute by group.



S\_IXOTH = %0000000001

Mode flag: Execute by others.

S\_IXUSR = %0001000000

Mode flag: Execute by owner.

UTSNAME\_DOMAIN\_LENGTH = UTSNAME\_LENGTH

Max length of utsname (235) domain name.

UTSNAME\_LENGTH = SYS\_NMLN

Max length of utsname (235) system name, release, version, machine.

UTSNAME\_NODENAME\_LENGTH = UTSNAME\_LENGTH

Max length of utsname (235) node name.

WNOHANG = 1

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitpid (226) option: Do not wait for processes to terminate.

wordsinfdset = FD\_MAXFDSET div BITSINWORD

Number of words in a TFDSet (171) array

wordsinsigset = SIG\_MAXSIG div BITSINWORD

Number of words in a signal set.

WUNTRACED = 2

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitpid (226) option: Also report children which were stopped but not yet reported

W\_OK = 2

fpAccess (174) call test: write allowed

X\_OK = 1

fpAccess (174) call test: execute allowed

\_STAT\_VER = \_STAT\_VER\_LINUX

Stat version number

\_STAT\_VER\_KERNEL = 1

Current version of stat record

`_STAT_VER_LINUX = 3`

Version of Linux stat record

`_STAT_VER_LINUX_OLD = 1`

Old kernel definition of stat

`_STAT_VER_SVR4 = 2`

SVR 4 definition of stat

### 1.3.2 Types

`Blkcnt64_t = cuint64`

64-bit block count

`Blkcnt_t = cuint`

Block count type.

`Blksize_t = cuint`

Block size type.

`cbool = UnixType.cbool`

Boolean type

`cchar = UnixType.cchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cchar` ([2059](#))

`cdouble = UnixType.cdouble`

Double precision real format.

`cfloat = UnixType.cfloat`

Floating-point real format

`cint = UnixType.cint`

C type: integer (natural size)

`cint16 = UnixType.cint16`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint32 = UnixType.cint32`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint64 = UnixType.cint64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint8 = UnixType.cint8`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clock_t = UnixType.clock_t`

Clock ticks type

`clong = UnixType.clong`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`clonglong = UnixType.clonglong`

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

`coff_t = UnixType.TOff`

Character offset type

`cschar = UnixType.cschar`

Signed character type

`cshort = UnixType.cshort`

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

`csigned = UnixType.csigned`

`csigned` is an alias for `cint` ([161](#)).

`csint = UnixType.csint`

Signed integer

`csize_t = UnixType.size_t`

Character size type

`cslong = UnixType.cslong`

The size is CPU dependent.

`cslonglong = UnixType.cslonglong`

`cslonglong` is an alias for `clonglong` ([162](#)).

`csshort = UnixType.csshort`

Short signed integer type

`cuchar = UnixType.cuchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cuchar` ([2060](#))

`cuint = UnixType.cuint`

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

`cuint16 = UnixType.cuint16`

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuint32 = UnixType.cuint32`

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuint64 = UnixType.cuint64`

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuint8 = UnixType.cuint8`

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`culong = UnixType.culong`

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

`culonglong = UnixType.culonglong`

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

`cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cunsigned` ([2061](#))

`cushort = UnixType.cushort`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t = UnixType.dev_t`

Device descriptor type.

`gid_t = UnixType.gid_t`

**Group ID type.**

`ino_t = UnixType.ino_t`

**Inode type.**

`kernel_gid_t = cuint`

`kernel_gid_t` may differ from the libc type used to describe group IDs.

`kernel_loff_t = clonglong`

**Long kernel offset type**

`kernel_mode_t = cuint`

`kernel_mode_t` may differ from the libc type used to describe file modes.

`kernel_off_t = clong`

**Kernel offset type**

`kernel_uid_t = cuint`

`kernel_uid_t` may differ from the libc type used to describe user IDs.

`mode_t = UnixType.mode_t`

**Inode mode type.**

`nlink_t = UnixType.nlink_t`

**Number of links type.**

`off_t = UnixType.off_t`

**Offset type.**

`PBlkCnt = ^Blkcnt_t`

pointer to `TBlkCnt` ([171](#)) type.

`PBlkSize = ^Blksize_t`

Pointer to `TBlkSize` ([171](#)) type.

`pbool = UnixType.pbool`

Pointer to boolean type `cbool` ([161](#))

`pcchar = UnixType.pcchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.pcchar` (2062)

`pcdouble = UnixType.pcdouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (161) type.

`pcfloat = UnixType.pcfloating`

Pointer to `cfloat` (161) type.

`pcint = UnixType.pcint`

Pointer to `cInt` (161) type.

`pcint16 = UnixType.pcint16`

Pointer to 16-bit signed integer type

`pcint32 = UnixType.pcint32`

Pointer to signed 32-bit integer type

`pcint64 = UnixType.pcint64`

Pointer to signed 64-bit integer type

`pcint8 = UnixType.pcint8`

Pointer to 8-bits signed integer type

`pClock = UnixType.pClock`

Pointer to `TClock` (171) type.

`pclong = UnixType.pclong`

Pointer to `cLong` (162) type.

`pclonglong = UnixType.pclonglong`

Pointer to `longlong` type.

`pcschar = UnixType.pcschar`

Pointer to character type `cschar` (162).

`pcshort = UnixType.pcsshort`

Pointer to `cShort` (162) type.

`pcsigned = UnixType.pcsigned`

Pointer to signed integer type `csigned` (162).

`pcsint = UnixType.pcsint`

Pointer to signed integer type `csint` (162)

`pcsize_t = UnixType.psize_t`

Pointer to `csize_t`

`pcslong = UnixType.pcslong`

Pointer to the signed long `clong` (162)

`pcslonglong = UnixType.pcslonglong`

Pointer to Signed longlong type `clonglong` (163)

`pcsshort = UnixType.pcsshort`

Pointer to short signed integer type `csshort` (163)

`pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.pcuchar` (2063)

`pcuint = UnixType.pcuint`

Pointer to `cUInt` (163) type.

`pcuint16 = UnixType.pcuint16`

Pointer to 16-bit unsigned integer type

`pcuint32 = UnixType.pcuint32`

Pointer to unsigned 32-bit integer type

`pcuint64 = UnixType.pcuint64`

Pointer to unsigned 64-bit integer type

`pcuint8 = UnixType.pcuint8`

Pointer to 8-bits unsigned integer type

`pculong = UnixType.pculong`

Pointer to `cuLong` (163) type.

`pculonglong = UnixType.pculonglong`

Unsigned longlong type

`pcunsigned = UnixType.punsigned`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.punsigned` (2064)

`pcushort = UnixType.pcushort`

Pointer to `cuShort` (163) type.

`pDev = UnixType.pDev`

Pointer to `TDev` (171) type.

`pDir = ^Dir`

Pointer to `TDir` (171) record

`pDirent = ^Dirent`

Pointer to `TDirent` (171) record.

`pFDSet = ^TFDSet`

Pointer to `TFDSet` (171) type.

`pFilDes = ^TFilDes`

Pointer to `TFilDes` (171) type.

`pfpstate = ^tfpstate`

Pointer to `tfpstate` (231) record.

`pGid = UnixType.pGid`

Pointer to `TGid` (172) type.

`pGrpArr = ^TGrpArr`

Pointer to `TGrpArr` (172) array.

`pid_t = UnixType.pid_t`

Process ID type.

`pIno = UnixType.pIno`

Pointer to `TIno` (172) type.



`piovec = ^tiovec`

pointer to a [iovec \(229\)](#) record

`pMode = UnixType.pMode`

Pointer to [TMode \(172\)](#) type.

`pnLink = UnixType.pnLink`

Pointer to [TnLink \(172\)](#) type.

`pOff = UnixType.pOff`

Pointer to [TOff \(172\)](#) type.

`pPid = UnixType.pPid`

Pointer to [TPid \(172\)](#) type.

`ppollfd = ^pollfd`

Pointer to `tpollfd`.

`PRLimit = ^TRLimit`

Pointer to [TRLimit \(232\)](#) record

`psigactionrec = ^sigactionrec`

Pointer to [SigActionRec \(230\)](#) record type.

`PSigContext = ^TSigContext`

Pointer to `#rtl.baseunix.TSigContext` [\(233\)](#) record type.

`psiginfo = ^tsiginfo`

Pointer to `#rtl.baseunix.TSigInfo` [\(234\)](#) record type.

`psigset = ^tsigset`

Pointer to [SigSet \(170\)](#) type.

`pSize = UnixType.pSize`

Pointer to [TSize \(173\)](#) type.

`pSize_t = UnixType.pSize_t`

Pointer to `Size_t`

`pSocklen = UnixType.pSocklen`

Pointer to `TSockLen` (173) type.

`psSize = UnixType.psSize`

Pointer to `TsSize` (173) type

`PStat = ^Stat`

Pointer to `TStat` (173) type.

`pstatfs = UnixType.PStatFs`

This is an alias for the type defined in the `#rtl.unixtype` (2057) unit.

`pthread_cond_t = UnixType.pthread_cond_t`

Thread conditional variable type.

`pthread_mutex_t = UnixType.pthread_mutex_t`

Thread mutex type.

`pthread_t = UnixType.pthread_t`

POSIX thread type.

`pTime = UnixType.pTime`

Pointer to `TTime` (173) type.

`ptimespec = UnixType.ptimespec`

Pointer to `timespec` (172) type.

`ptimeval = UnixType.ptimeval`

Pointer to `timeval` (172) type.

`ptimezone = ^timezone`

Pointer to `TimeZone` (231) record.

`ptime_t = UnixType.ptime_t`

Pointer to `time_t` (172) type.

`PTms = ^tms`

Pointer to `TTms` (174) type.

`Pucontext = ^Tucontext`

Pointer to `TUContext` (234) type.

`pUId = UnixType.pUId`

Pointer to `TUId` (174) type.

`pUtimBuf = ^UtimBuf`

Pointer to `TUtimBuf` (174) type.

`PUtsName = ^TUTsName`

Pointer to `TUTsName` (174) type.

`rlim_t = culong`

`rlim_t` is used as the type for the various fields in the `TRLimit` (232) record.

`sigactionhandler = sigactionhandler_t`

When installing a signal handler, the actual signal handler must be of type `SigActionHandler`.

```
sigactionhandler_t = procedure(signal: LongInt; info: psiginfo;
    context: PSigContext)
```

Standard signal action handler prototype

`signalhandler = signalhandler_t`

Simple signal handler prototype

```
signalhandler_t = procedure(signal: LongInt)
```

Standard signal handler prototype

`sigrestorerhandler = sigrestorerhandler_t`

Alias for `sigrestorerhandler_t` (170) type.

```
sigrestorerhandler_t = procedure
```

Standard signal action restorer prototype

`sigset = sigset_t`

Signal set type

`Array = Array[0..wordsinsigset-1] of culong`

Signal set type

`size_t = UnixType.size_t`

Size specification type.

`socklen_t = UnixType.socklen_t`

Socket address length type.

`ssize_t = UnixType.ssize_t`

Small size type.

`TBlkCnt = Blkcnt_t`

Alias for `Blkcnt_t` (161) type.

`TBlkSize = Blksize_t`

Alias for `blksize_t` (161) type.

`TClock = UnixType.TClock`

Alias for `clock_t` (162) type.

`TDev = UnixType.TDev`

Alias for `dev_t` (163) type.

`TDir = Dir`

Alias for `Dir` (228) type.

`TDirent = Dirent`

Alias for `Dirent` (229) type.

`Array = Array[0..(FD_MAXFDSETdivBITSINWORD)-1] of TFDSetEl`

File descriptor set for `fpSelect` (209) call.

`TFDSetEl = culong`

Type alias for an element of the `TFDSet`

`Array = Array[0..1] of cint`

Array of file descriptors as used in `fpPipe` (203) call.

`TGid = UnixType.TGid`

Alias for `gid_t` (164) type.

`Array = Array[0..0] of TGid`

Array of `gid_t` (164) IDs

`timespec = UnixType.timespec`

Short time specification type.

`timeval = UnixType.timeval`

Time specification type.

`time_t = UnixType.time_t`

Time span type

`TIno = UnixType.TIno`

Alias for `ino_t` (164) type.

`TIOctlRequest = UnixType.TIOctlRequest`

Easy access alias for `unixtype.TIOctlRequest` (2067)

`tiovec = iovec`

Alias for the `iovec` (229) record type.

`TMode = UnixType.TMode`

Alias for `mode_t` (164) type.

`TnLink = UnixType.TnLink`

Alias for `nlink_t` (164) type.

`TOff = UnixType.TOff`

Alias for `off_t` (164) type.

`TPid = UnixType.TPid`

Alias for `pid_t` (167) type.

`tpollfd = pollfd`

Alias for `pollfd` type

`tsigactionhandler = sigactionhandler_t`

Alias for `sigactionhandler_t` (170) type.

`tsignalhandler = signalhandler_t`

Alias for `signalhandler_t` (170) type.

`tsigrestorerhandler = sigrestorerhandler_t`

Alias for `sigrestorerhandler_t` (170) type.

`tsigset = sigset_t`

Alias for `SigSet` (170) type.

`TSize = UnixType.TSize`

Alias for `size_t` (171) type

`TSocklen = UnixType.TSocklen`

Alias for `socklen_t` (171) type.

`TsSize = UnixType.TsSize`

Alias for `ssize_t` (171) type

`TStat = Stat`

Alias for `Stat` (230) type.

`tstatfs = UnixType.TStatFs`

Record describing a file system in the `unix.fpstatfs` (137) call.

`TTime = UnixType.TTime`

Alias for `TTime` (173) type.

`Ttimespec = UnixType.Ttimespec`

Alias for `TimeSpec` (172) type.

`TTimeVal = UnixType.TTimeVal`

Alias for `timeval` (172) type.

`TTimeZone = timezone`

Alias for `TimeZone` (231) record.

`TTms = tms`

Alias for Tms (231) record type.

```
TUId = UnixType.TUId
```

Alias for uid\_t (174) type.

```
TUtimBuf = UTimBuf
```

Alias for UtimBuf (234) type.

```
TUtsName = UtsName
```

Alias for UtsName (235) type.

```
uid_t = UnixType.uid_t
```

User ID type

## 1.4 Procedures and functions

### 1.4.1 CreateShellArgV

**Synopsis:** Create a null-terminated array of strings from a command-line string

**Declaration:** `function CreateShellArgV(const prog: string) : ppchar`  
`function CreateShellArgV(const prog: RawByteString) : ppchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CreateShellArgV` creates a command-line string for executing a shell command using 'sh -c'. The result is a null-terminated array of null-terminated strings suitable for use in `fpExecv` (181) and friends.

**Errors:** If no more memory is available, a heap error may occur.

**See also:** `fpExecv` (181), `FreeShellArgV` (227)

### 1.4.2 FpAccess

**Synopsis:** Check file access

**Declaration:** `function FpAccess(pathname: pChar; aMode: cint) : cint`  
`function FpAccess(const pathname: RawByteString; aMode: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpAccess` tests user's access rights on the specified file. Mode is a mask existing of one or more of the following:

**R\_OK**User has read rights.

**W\_OK**User has write rights.

**X\_OK**User has execute rights.

**F\_OK**File exists.

The test is done with the real user ID, instead of the effective user ID. If the user has the requested rights, zero is returned. If access is denied, or an error occurred, a nonzero value is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

**sys\_eaccess** The requested access is denied, either to the file or one of the directories in its path.

**sys\_einval** Mode was incorrect.

**sys\_enoent** A directory component in `Path` doesn't exist or is a dangling symbolic link.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory component in `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_eloop** `Path` has a circular symbolic link.

See also: `FpChown` (178), `FpChmod` (176)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Access function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**begin**

```
  if fpAccess ( '/etc/passwd', W_OK ) = 0 then
    begin
      Writeln ( 'Better check your system.' );
      Writeln ( 'I can write to the /etc/passwd file !' );
    end;
```

**end.**

---

### 1.4.3 FpAlarm

Synopsis: Schedule an alarm signal to be delivered

Declaration: `function FpAlarm(seconds: cuint) : cuint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpAlarm` schedules an alarm signal to be delivered to your process in `Seconds` seconds. When `Seconds` seconds have elapsed, the system will send a `SIGALRM` signal to the current process. If `Seconds` is zero, then no new alarm will be set. Whatever the value of `Seconds`, any previous alarm is cancelled.

The function returns the number of seconds till the previously scheduled alarm was due to be delivered, or zero if there was none. A negative value indicates an error.

See also: `fpSigAction` (213), `fpPause` (203)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** `Example59`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Alarm function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;



---

```

Procedure AlarmHandler(Sig : cint);cdecl;

begin
  WriteLn ('Got to alarm handler');
end;

begin
  WriteLn ('Setting alarm handler');
  fpSignal(SIGALRM, SignalHandler(@AlarmHandler));
  WriteLn ('Scheduling Alarm in 10 seconds');
  fpAlarm(10);
  WriteLn ('Pausing');
  fpPause;
  WriteLn ('Pause returned');
end.

```

---

### 1.4.4 FpChdir

**Synopsis:** Change current working directory.

**Declaration:** `function FpChdir(path: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpChdir(const path: RawByteString) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpChDir` sets the current working directory to `Path`.

It returns zero if the call was successful, -1 on error.

**Note:** There exist a portable alternative to `fpChDir`: `system.chdir`. Please use `fpChDir` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.chdir` will work on all operating systems.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([188](#)).

**See also:** `fpGetCwd` ([187](#))

### 1.4.5 FpChmod

**Synopsis:** Change file permission bits

**Declaration:** `function FpChmod(path: pChar; Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpChmod(const path: RawByteString; Mode: TMode) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpChmod` sets the `Mode` bits of the file in `Path` to `Mode`. `Mode` can be specified by 'or'-ing the following values:

**S\_ISUID**Set user ID on execution.

**S\_ISGID**Set Group ID on execution.

**S\_ISVTX**Set sticky bit.

**S\_IRUSR**Read by owner.

**S\_IWUSR**Write by owner.

**S\_IXUSR**Execute by owner.

**S\_IRGRP**Read by group.

**S\_IWGRP** Write by group.

**S\_IXGRP** Execute by group.

**S\_IROTH** Read by others.

**S\_IWOTH** Write by others.

**S\_IXOTH** Execute by others.

**S\_IRWXO** Read, write, execute by others.

**S\_IRWXG** Read, write, execute by groups.

**S\_IRWXU** Read, write, execute by user.

If the function is successful, zero is returned. A nonzero return value indicates an error.

Errors: The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_eperm** The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess** One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** The file is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop** `Path` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: `fpChown` ([178](#)), `fpAccess` ([174](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `Example23`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chmod function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix, Unix`;

**Var** `F : Text`;

**begin**

```

  { Create a file }
  Assign (f, 'testex21');
  Rewrite (F);
  Writeln (f, '#!/bin/sh');
  Writeln (f, 'echo Some text for this file');
  Close (F);
  fpChmod ('testex21', &777);
  { File is now executable }
  fpexecl ('./testex21', []);

```

**end.**

---

### 1.4.6 FpChown

Synopsis: Change owner of file

**Declaration:** `function FpChown(path: pChar; owner: TUid; group: TGid) : cint`  
`function FpChown(const path: RawByteString; owner: TUid; group: TGid)`  
`: cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `fpChown` sets the User ID and Group ID of the file in `Path` to `Owner,Group`.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

**Errors:** The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop**`Path` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: `fpChmod` (176), `fpAccess` (174)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex24.pp`

**Program** Example24;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chown function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Var** UID : TUid;  
 GID : TGid;  
 F : Text;

**begin**

```

  Writeln ('This will only work if you are root. ');
  Write ('Enter a UID : '); readln(UID);
  Write ('Enter a GID : '); readln(GID);
  Assign (f, 'test.txt');
  Rewrite (f);
  Writeln (f, 'The owner of this file should become : ');
  Writeln (f, 'UID : ', UID);
  Writeln (f, 'GID : ', GID);
  Close (F);
  if fpChown ('test.txt', UID, GID) <> 0 then
    if fpgeterrno = ESysEPERM then
      Writeln ('You are not root !')
    else
      Writeln ('Chmod failed with exit code : ', fpgeterrno)
  else
    Writeln ('Changed owner successfully !');
end.
```

### 1.4.7 FpClose

Synopsis: Close file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpClose(fd: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpClose` closes a file with file descriptor `Fd`. The function returns zero if the file was closed successfully, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

For an example, see `FpOpen` (201).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

See also: `FpOpen` (201), `FpRead` (205), `FpWrite` (226), `FpFTruncate` (187), `FpLSeek` (194)

### 1.4.8 FpClosedir

Synopsis: Close directory file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpClosedir(var dirp: Dir) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpCloseDir` closes the directory pointed to by `dirp`. It returns zero if the directory was closed successfully, -1 otherwise.

For an example, see `fpOpenDir` (202).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

See also: `FpOpenDir` (202), `FpReadDir` (206)

### 1.4.9 FpDup

Synopsis: Duplicate a file handle

Declaration: `function FpDup(fildes: cint) : cint`  
`function FpDup(var oldfile: text; var newfile: text) : cint`  
`function FpDup(var oldfile: File; var newfile: File) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpDup` returns a file descriptor that is a duplicate of the file descriptor `fildes`.

The second and third forms make `NewFile` an exact copy of `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in case it is a Text file or untyped file. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, these calls do not have the same functionality as the `dup` call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an `lseek` will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a `lseek` will change the file position in both files.

The function returns a negative value in case of an error, a positive value is a file handle, and indicates success.

Errors: A negative value can be one of the following error codes:

**sys\_ebadf** `OldFile` hasn't been assigned.

**sys\_emfile** Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: `fpDup2` ([180](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex31.pp`

---

```

program Example31;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function. }

uses baseunix;

var f : text;

begin
  if fpdup (output,f)=-1 then
    Writeln ('Dup Failed !');
    writeln ('This is written to stdout. ');
    writeln (f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed'); flush(f);
    writeln
end.

```

---

### 1.4.10 FpDup2

**Synopsis:** Duplicate one file handle to another

**Declaration:** `function FpDup2(fildes: cint; fildes2: cint) : cint`  
`function FpDup2(var oldfile: text; var newfile: text) : cint`  
`function FpDup2(var oldfile: File; var newfile: File) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Makes `fildes2` or `NewFile` an exact copy of `fildes` or `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in the case of text or untyped files.

After a call to `fdup2`, the 2 file descriptors point to the same physical device (a file, socket, or a terminal).

`NewFile` can be an assigned file. If `newfile` or `fildes` was open, it is closed first. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the `dup2` call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an `lseek` will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a `lseek` will change the file position in both files.

The function returns the new file descriptor number, on error -1 is returned, and the error can be retrieved with `fpgeterrno` ([188](#))

**Errors:** In case of error, the following error codes can be reported:

`sys_ebadf` `OldFile` (or `fildes`) hasn't been assigned.

`sys_emfile` Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: `fpDup` ([179](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex32.pp`

---

```

program Example32;

{ Program to demonstrate the FpDup2 function. }

```

---

```

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : longint;

begin
  Assign (f, 'text.txt');
  Rewrite (F);
  For i:=1 to 10 do writeln (F, 'Line : ', i);
  if fpdup2 (output, f)=-1 then
    Writeln ('Dup2 Failed !');
  writeln ('This is written to stdout. ');
  writeln (f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed');
  flush(f);
  writeln;
  { Remove file . Comment this if you want to check flushing. }
  fpUnlink ('text.txt');
end.

```

---

### 1.4.11 FpExecv

Synopsis: Execute process

**Declaration:** `function FpExecv(path: pChar; argv: ppChar) : cint`  
`function FpExecv(const path: RawByteString; argv: ppchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `argv`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execv` does not return.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` ([188](#))

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted .

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `fpExecve` ([182](#)), `fpFork` ([185](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex8.pp`

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

---

```

Const Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lS';
        Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

Var PP : PPchar;

begin
  GetMem (PP,3*SizeOf(Pchar));
  PP[0]:=Arg0;
  PP[1]:=Arg1;
  PP[3]:= Nil;
  { Execute '/bin/lS -l', with current environment }
  fpExecv ('/bin/lS',pp);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.12 FpExecve

Synopsis: Execute process using environment

**Declaration:** `function FpExecve(path: pChar; argv: ppChar; envp: ppChar) : cint`  
`function FpExecve(const path: RawByteString; argv: ppchar; envp: ppchar)`  
`: cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `argv`, and the environment in `envp`. They are pointers to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be `nil`. On success, `execve` does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrno` ([188](#)), and includes the following:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted .

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `fpExecv` ([181](#)), `fpFork` ([185](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execve function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lS';

```

    Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

Var PP : PPchar;

begin
    GetMem (PP, 3*SizeOf(Pchar));
    PP[0]:=Arg0;
    PP[1]:=Arg1;
    PP[3]:=Nil;
    { Execute '/bin/l', with current environment }
    { Env is defined in system.inc }
    fpExecVe ('/bin/l',pp,envp);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.13 FpExit

Synopsis: Exit the current process

Declaration: `procedure FpExit(Status: cint)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExit` exits the currently running process, and report `Status` as the exit status.

**Remark** If this call is executed, the normal unit finalization code will not be executed. This may lead to unexpected errors and stray files on your system. It is therefore recommended to use the `Halt` call instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpFork` ([185](#)), `FpExecve` ([182](#))

### 1.4.14 FpFcntl

Synopsis: File control operations.

Declaration: `function FpFcntl(fildes: cint; cmd: cint) : cint`  
`function FpFcntl(fildes: cint; cmd: cint; arg: cint) : cint`  
`function FpFcntl(fildes: cint; cmd: cint; var arg: FLock) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: Read/set a file's attributes. `Fildes` a valid file descriptor. `Cmd` specifies what to do, and is one of the following:

**F\_GetFdRead** the `close_on_exec` flag. If the low-order bit is 0, then the file will remain open across `execve` calls.

**F\_GetFlRead** the descriptor's flags.

**F\_GetOwnGet** the Process ID of the owner of a socket.

**F\_SetFdSet** the `close_on_exec` flag of `fildes`. (only the least significant bit is used).

**F\_GetLkReturn** the `flock` record that prevents this process from obtaining the lock, or set the `l_type` field of the lock of there is no obstruction. `Arg` is the flock record.

**F\_SetLkSet** the lock or clear it (depending on `l_type` in the `flock` structure). if the lock is held by another process, an error occurs.



**F\_GetLkw** Same as for **F\_Setlk**, but wait until the lock is released.

**F\_SetOwn** Set the Process or process group that owns a socket.

The function returns 0 if successful, -1 otherwise.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Use `fpGetErrno` (188) for extended error information.

**sys\_ebadf** `fd` has a bad file descriptor.

**sys\_eagain** or **sys\_eaccess** For , if the lock is held by another process.

### 1.4.15 `fpfdfillset`

Synopsis: Set all file descriptors in the set.

Declaration: `function fpfdfillset(var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpfdfillset` sets all file descriptors in `nset`.

See also: `FpSelect` (209), `FpFD_ZERO` (185), `FpFD_IsSet` (184), `FpFD_Clr` (184), `FpFD_Set` (185)

### 1.4.16 `fpFD_CLR`

Synopsis: Clears a file descriptor in a set

Declaration: `function fpFD_CLR(fdno: cint; var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Clr` clears file descriptor `fdno` in file descriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (209).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (209), `FpFD_ZERO` (185), `FpFD_Set` (185), `FpFD_IsSet` (184)

### 1.4.17 `fpFD_ISSET`

Synopsis: Check whether a file descriptor is set

Declaration: `function fpFD_ISSET(fdno: cint; const nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Set` Checks whether file descriptor `fdNo` in file descriptor set `fds` is set. It returns zero if the descriptor is not set, 1 if it is set. If the number of the file descriptor it wrong, -1 is returned.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (209).

Errors: If an invalid file descriptor number is passed, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSelect` (209), `FpFD_ZERO` (185), `FpFD_Clr` (184), `FpFD_Set` (185)

### 1.4.18 fpFD\_SET

Synopsis: Set a file descriptor in a set

Declaration: `function fpFD_SET(fdno: cint; var nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Set` sets file descriptor `fdno` in file descriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (209).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (209), `FpFD_ZERO` (185), `FpFD_Clr` (184), `FpFD_IsSet` (184)

### 1.4.19 fpFD\_ZERO

Synopsis: Clear all file descriptors in set

Declaration: `function fpFD_ZERO(out nset: TFDSet) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_ZERO` clears all the file descriptors in the file descriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (209).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (209), `FpFD_Clr` (184), `FpFD_Set` (185), `FpFD_IsSet` (184)

### 1.4.20 FpFork

Synopsis: Create child process

Declaration: `function FpFork : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFork` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process. `FpFork` returns the process ID in the parent process, and zero in the child's process. (you can get the parent's PID with `fpGetPPid` (190)).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: `fpExecve` (182), `#rtl.linux.Clone` (956)

### 1.4.21 FPFStat

Synopsis: Retrieve file information about a file descriptor.

Declaration: `function FpFStat(fd: cint; var sb: Stat) : cint`  
`function FPFStat(var F: Text; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FPFStat(var F: File; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFStat` gets information about the file specified in one of the following:

**Fda** valid file descriptor.

**Fan** an opened text file or untyped file.

and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat` (230). The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

`sys_enoent` `Path` does not exist.

See also: `FpStat` (218), `FpLStat` (195)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex28.pp`

---

```

program example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil ');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if fpstat ('test.fil ', info) <> 0 then
    begin
      writeln ('Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil ''.');
  writeln ('Inode   : ', info.st_ino);
  writeln ('Mode    : ', info.st_mode);
  writeln ('nlink   : ', info.st_nlink);
  writeln ('uid     : ', info.st_uid);
  writeln ('gid     : ', info.st_gid);
  writeln ('rdev    : ', info.st_rdev);
  writeln ('Size    : ', info.st_size);
  writeln ('Blksize : ', info.st_blksize);
  writeln ('Blocks  : ', info.st_blocks);
  writeln ('atime   : ', info.st_atime);
  writeln ('mtime   : ', info.st_mtime);
  writeln ('ctime   : ', info.st_ctime);
  { Remove file }
  erase (f);
end.
```

---

### 1.4.22 FpFtruncate

Synopsis: Truncate file on certain size.

Declaration: `function FpFtruncate(fd: cint; flength: TOff) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFtruncate` sets the length of a file in `fd` on `flength` bytes, where `flength` must be less than or equal to the current length of the file in `fd`.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates that an error occurred.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

See also: `FpOpen` (201), `FpClose` (179), `FpRead` (205), `FpWrite` (226), `FpLSeek` (194)

### 1.4.23 FpGetcwd

Synopsis: Retrieve the current working directory.

Declaration: `function FpGetcwd(path: pChar; siz: TSize) : pChar`  
`function FpGetcwd : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpgetCWD` returns the current working directory of the running process. It is returned in `Path`, which points to a memory location of at least `siz` bytes.

If the function is successful, a pointer to `Path` is returned, or a string with the result. On error `Nil` or an empty string are returned.

Errors: On error `Nil` or an empty string are returned.

See also: `FpGetPID` (190), `FpGetUID` (192)

### 1.4.24 FpGetegid

Synopsis: Return effective group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetegid : TGid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetegid` returns the effective group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetGid` (189), `FpGetUid` (192), `FpGetEUid` (188), `FpGetPid` (190), `FpGetPPid` (190), `fpSetUID` (212), `FpSetGid` (211)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**  
`writeln ( 'Group Id = ',fpgetgid , ' Effective group Id = ',fpgetegid );`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.25 FpGetEnv

Synopsis: Return value of environment variable.

Declaration: `function FpGetEnv(name: pChar) : pChar`  
`function FpGetEnv(name: string) : pChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPGetEnv` returns the value of the environment variable in `Name`. If the variable is not defined, `nil` is returned. The value of the environment variable may be the empty string. A `PChar` is returned to accommodate for strings longer than 255 bytes, `TERMCAP` and `LS_COLORS`, for instance.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**begin**  
`WriteLn ( 'Path is : ', fpGetenv( 'PATH' ) );`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.26 fpgeterrno

Synopsis: Retrieve extended error information.

Declaration: `function fpgeterrno : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpgeterrno` returns extended information on the latest error. It is set by all functions that communicate with the kernel or C library.

Errors: None.

See also: `fpseterrno` ([210](#))

### 1.4.27 FpGeteuid

Synopsis: Return effective user ID

Declaration: `function FpGeteuid : TUid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGeteuid` returns the effective user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetUid` ([192](#)), `FpGetGid` ([189](#)), `FpGetEGid` ([187](#)), `FpGetPid` ([190](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([190](#)), `fpSetUID` ([212](#)), `FpSetGid` ([211](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**begin**  
    **writeln** ( 'User Id = ',fpgetuid, ' Effective user Id = ',fpgeteuid);  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.28 FpGetgid

Synopsis: Return real group ID

Declaration: function FpGetgid : TGid

Visibility: default

Description: FpGetgid returns the real group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: FpGetEGid ([187](#)), FpGetUid ([192](#)), FpGetEUid ([188](#)), FpGetPid ([190](#)), FpGetPPid ([190](#)), fpSetUID ([212](#)), FpSetGid ([211](#))

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex18.pp

---

**Program** Example18;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**begin**  
    **writeln** ( 'Group Id = ',fpgetgid, ' Effective group Id = ',fpgetegid);  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.29 FpGetgroups

Synopsis: Get the list of supplementary groups.

Declaration: function FpGetgroups(gidsetsize: cint; var grouplist: TGrpArr) : cint

Visibility: default

Description: FpGetgroups returns up to gidsetsize groups in GroupList

If the function is successful, then number of groups that were stored is returned. On error, -1 is returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with fpGetErrNo ([188](#))

See also: FpGetgrp ([190](#)), FpGetGID ([189](#)), FpGetEGID ([187](#))

### 1.4.30 FpGetpgrp

Synopsis: Get process group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetpgrp : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetpgrp` returns the process group ID of the current process.

Errors: None.

See also: `fpGetPID` ([190](#)), `fpGetPPID` ([190](#)), `FpGetGID` ([189](#)), `FpGetUID` ([192](#))

### 1.4.31 FpGetpid

Synopsis: Return current process ID

Declaration: `function FpGetpid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetpid` returns the process ID of the currently running process.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to `fpGetpid`: `system.GetProcessID`. Please use `fpGetpid` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.GetProcessID` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetPPid` ([190](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Process Id = ', `fpgetpid`, ' Parent process Id = ', `fpgetppid` );  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.32 FpGetppid

Synopsis: Return parent process ID

Declaration: `function FpGetppid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetppid` returns the Process ID of the parent process.

Errors: None.

See also: `fpGetPid` ([190](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Process Id = ', fpgetpid, ' Parent process Id = ', fpgetppid );  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.33 fpGetPriority

**Synopsis:** Return process priority

**Declaration:** `function fpGetPriority(Which: cint; Who: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetPriority returns the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the Which and Who variables. Which can be one of the predefined Prio\_Process, Prio\_PGrp, Prio\_User, in which case Who is the process ID, Process group ID or User ID, respectively.

For an example, see FpNice (200).

**Errors:** Error information is returned solely by the FpGetErrno (188) function: a priority can be a positive or negative value.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using which and who.

**sys\_einval**Which was not one of Prio\_Process, Prio\_Grp or Prio\_User.

See also: FpSetPriority (211), FpNice (200)

### 1.4.34 FpGetRLimit

**Synopsis:** Get process resource limits

**Declaration:** `function FpGetRLimit(resource: cint; rlim: PRLimit) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpGetRLimit gets the resource limits for the current process: resource determines the resource of which the kernel should return the limits (one of the many RLIMIT\_\* constants). rlim should point to a TRLimit (232) record and on success will contain the resource limits.

The function returns zero if the resource limits were correctly returned.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned and fpgeterrno (188) can be used to retrieve the error code.

See also: FpSetRLimit (211)

### 1.4.35 FpGetsid

**Synopsis:** Get current session ID

**Declaration:** `function FpGetsid(pid: TPid) : TPid`

**Visibility:** default



**Description:** `FpGetsid` returns the session ID of the process `pid`. The return value is the session ID of the process. (it equals the PID of the session leader). The process `pid` must be in the same session as the current process.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned, and extended error information can be obtained with `fpGetErrno`.

See also: `FpGetpgrp` ([190](#)), `FpGetpid` ([190](#)), `FpGetPpid` ([190](#))

### 1.4.36 FpGetuid

**Synopsis:** Return current user ID

**Declaration:** `function FpGetuid : TUid`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpGetuid` returns the real user ID of the currently running process.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `FpGetGid` ([189](#)), `FpGetEuid` ([188](#)), `FpGetEGid` ([187](#)), `FpGetPid` ([190](#)), `FpGetPPid` ([190](#)), `fpSetUID` ([212](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEuid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`writeln ( 'User Id = ',fpgetuid, ' Effective user Id = ',fpgeteuid);`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.37 FpIOctl

**Synopsis:** General kernel IOCTL call.

**Declaration:** `function FpIOctl(Handle: cint; Ndx: TIOctlRequest; Data: Pointer) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This is a general interface to the Unix/ Linux `ioctl` call. It performs various operations on the file descriptor `Handle`. `Ndx` describes the operation to perform. `Data` points to data needed for the `Ndx` function. The structure of this data is function-dependent, so we don't elaborate on this here. For more information on this, see various manual pages under Linux.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([188](#)).

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** `Example54;`

**uses** `BaseUnix, Termio;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the IOctl function. }*

---

```

var
  tios : Termios;

begin
  {$ifdef FreeBSD}
    fpIOCtl(1,TIOCGETA,@tios); // these constants are very OS dependant.
                                // see the tcgetattr example for a better way
  {$endif}
  WriteLn('Input Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_iflag,8));
  WriteLn('Output Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_oflag,8));
  WriteLn('Line Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_lflag,8));
  WriteLn('Control Flags: $',hexstr(tios.c_cflag,8));
end.

```

---

### 1.4.38 FpKill

Synopsis: Send a signal to a process

Declaration: `function FpKill(pid: TPid; sig: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpKill` sends a signal `Sig` to a process or process group. If `Pid`>0 then the signal is sent to `Pid`, if it equals -1, then the signal is sent to all processes except process 1. If `Pid`<-1 then the signal is sent to process group -`Pid`.

The return value is zero, except in case three, where the return value is the number of processes to which the signal was sent.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([188](#)):

**sys\_einval**An invalid signal is sent.

**sys\_esrch**The `Pid` or process group don't exist.

**sys\_eperm**The effective userid of the current process doesn't math the one of process `Pid`.

See also: `FpSigAction` ([213](#)), `FpSignal` ([215](#))

### 1.4.39 FpLink

Synopsis: Create a hard link to a file

Declaration: `function FpLink(existing: pChar; newone: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpLink(const existing: RawByteString;`  
`const newone: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpLink` makes `NewOne` point to the same file as `Existing`. The two files then have the same inode number. This is known as a 'hard' link. The function returns zero if the call was successful, and returns a non-zero value if the call failed.

Errors: The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_exdev**`Existing` and `NewOne` are not on the same file system.

**sys\_eperm**The file system containing `Existing` and `NewOne` doesn't support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess** Write access for the directory containing NewOne is disallowed, or one of the directories in Existing or NewOne has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in Existing or NewOne does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory entry in Existing or NewOne is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** The files are on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eexist** NewOne already exists.

**sys\_mlink** Existing has reached maximal link count.

**sys\_eloop** Existing or NewOne has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc** The device containing NewOne has no room for another entry.

**sys\_eperm** Existing points to . or .. of a directory.

See also: [fpSymLink \(219\)](#), [fpUnLink \(224\)](#)

---

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex21.pp

**Program** Example21;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Link and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Var** F : Text;

    S : String;

**begin**

    Assign (F, 'test.txt');

    Rewrite (F);

    Writeln (F, 'This is written to test.txt');

    Close(f);

*{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*

    if fpLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 then

        writeln ('Error when linking !');

*{ Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt }*

    If fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 then

        Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');

    Assign (f, 'new.txt');

    Reset (F);

    While not EOF(f) do

        begin

            Readln(F,S);

            Writeln ('> ',s);

        end;

    Close (f);

*{ Remove new.txt also }*

    If not FPUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0 then

        Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');

**end.**

---

### 1.4.40 FpLseek

Synopsis: Set file pointer position.

**Declaration:** `function FpLseek (fd: cint; offset: TOff; whence: cint) : TOff`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpLseek` sets the current file position of file `fd` to `Offset`, starting from `Whence`, which can be one of the following:

**Seek\_SetOffset** is the absolute position in the file.

**Seek\_CurOffset** is relative to the current position.

**Seek\_endOffset** is relative to the end of the file.

The function returns the new file position, or -1 if an error occurred.

For an example, see `FpOpen` (201).

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

See also: `FpOpen` (201), `FpWrite` (226), `FpClose` (179), `FpRead` (205), `FpFTruncate` (187)

### 1.4.41 fpLstat

**Synopsis:** Return information about symbolic link. Do not follow the link

**Declaration:** `function fpLstat (path: pchar; Info: PStat) : cint`  
`function fpLstat (const path: RawByteString; Info: PStat) : cint`  
`function fpLstat (path: pchar; var Info: Stat) : cint`  
`function fpLstat (const Filename: RawByteString; var Info: Stat) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpLstat` gets information about the link specified in `Path` (or `FileName`, and stores it in `Info`, which points to a record of type `TStat`. Contrary to `FpFstat` (185), it stores information about the link, not about the file the link points to. The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates failure. failed.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function.

**sys\_enoent**`Path` does not exist.

See also: `FpFStat` (185), `#rtl.unixtype.TStatFS` (2071)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex29.pp`

---

```
program example29;

{ Program to demonstrate the LStat function. }

uses BaseUnix, Unix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
```

---

```

close (f);
{ Do the call on made file. }
if fpstat ('test.fil',info)<>0 then
begin
  writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);
  halt (1);
end;
writeln;
writeln ('Result of stat on file ''test.fil''.');
writeln ('Inode   : ',info.st_ino);
writeln ('Mode    : ',info.st_mode);
writeln ('nlink   : ',info.st_nlink);
writeln ('uid     : ',info.st_uid);
writeln ('gid     : ',info.st_gid);
writeln ('rdev    : ',info.st_rdev);
writeln ('Size    : ',info.st_size);
writeln ('Blksize  : ',info.st_blksize);
writeln ('Blocks  : ',info.st_blocks);
writeln ('atime   : ',info.st_atime);
writeln ('mtime   : ',info.st_mtime);
writeln ('ctime   : ',info.st_ctime);

If fpSymLink ('test.fil','test.lnk')<>0 then
  writeln ('Link failed ! Errno : ',fpgeterrno);

if fplstat ('test.lnk',@info)<>0 then
begin
  writeln('LStat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);
  halt (1);
end;
writeln;
writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.lnk''.');
writeln ('Inode   : ',info.st_ino);
writeln ('Mode    : ',info.st_mode);
writeln ('nlink   : ',info.st_nlink);
writeln ('uid     : ',info.st_uid);
writeln ('gid     : ',info.st_gid);
writeln ('rdev    : ',info.st_rdev);
writeln ('Size    : ',info.st_size);
writeln ('Blksize  : ',info.st_blksize);
writeln ('Blocks  : ',info.st_blocks);
writeln ('atime   : ',info.st_atime);
writeln ('mtime   : ',info.st_mtime);
writeln ('ctime   : ',info.st_ctime);
{ Remove file and link }
erase (f);
fpunlink ('test.lnk');
end.

```

---

#### 1.4.42 FpMkdir

Synopsis: Create a new directory

Declaration: `function FpMkdir(path: pChar; Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpMkdir(const path: RawByteString; Mode: TMode) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpMkDir` creates a new directory `Path`, and sets the new directory's mode to `Mode`. `Path` can be an absolute path or a relative path. Note that only the last element of the directory will be created, higher level directories must already exist, and must be writeable by the current user.

On success, 0 is returned. if the function fails, -1 is returned.

**Note:** There exist a portable alternative to `fpMkDir`: `system.mkdir`. Please use `fpMkDir` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.mkdir` will work on all operating systems.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

See also: `fpGetCWD` (187), `fpChDir` (176)

### 1.4.43 FpMkfifo

**Synopsis:** Create FIFO (named pipe) in file system

**Declaration:** `function FpMkfifo(path: PChar; Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpMkfifo(const path: RawByteString; Mode: TMode) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpMkFifo` creates named a named pipe in the file system, with name `Path` and mode `Mode`.

The function returns zero if the command was successful, and nonzero if it failed.

**Errors:** The error codes include:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

### 1.4.44 Fpmmmap

**Synopsis:** Create memory map of a file

**Declaration:** `function Fpmmmap(start: pointer; len: size_t; prot: cint; flags: cint; fd: cint; offst: off_t) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpMMap` maps or unmaps files or devices into memory. The different arguments determine what and how the file is mapped:

**adr** Address where to mmap the device. This address is a hint, and may not be followed.

**len** Size (in bytes) of area to be mapped.

**prot** Protection of mapped memory. This is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**PROT\_EXEC** The memory can be executed.

**PROT\_READ** The memory can be read.

**PROT\_WRITE** The memory can be written.

**PROT\_NONE** The memory can not be accessed.

**flags** Contains some options for the mmap call. It is an OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**MAP\_FIXED** Do not map at another address than the given address. If the address cannot be used, `MMap` will fail.

**MAP\_SHARED** Share this map with other processes that map this object.

**MAP\_PRIVATE** Create a private map with copy-on-write semantics.

**MAP\_ANONYMOUS***fd* does not have to be a file descriptor.

One of the options **MAP\_SHARED** and **MAP\_PRIVATE** must be present, but not both at the same time.

**fd** File descriptor from which to map.

**off** Offset to be used in file descriptor *fd*.

The function returns a pointer to the mapped memory, or a -1 in case of an error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and extended error information is returned by the **FpGetErrno** (188) function.

**Sys\_EBADF***fd* is not a valid file descriptor and **MAP\_ANONYMOUS** was not specified.

**Sys\_EACCES****MAP\_PRIVATE** was specified, but *fd* is not open for reading. Or **MAP\_SHARED** was asked and **PROT\_WRITE** is set, *fd* is not open for writing

**Sys\_EINVAL**One of the record fields *Start*, *length* or *offset* is invalid.

**Sys\_ETXTBUSY****MAP\_DENYWRITE** was set but the object specified by *fd* is open for writing.

**Sys\_EAGAIN***fd* is locked, or too much memory is locked.

**Sys\_ENOMEM**Not enough memory for this operation.

See also: **FpMUnMap** (199)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex66.pp

---

**Program** Example66;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MMap function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

```
Var S      : String;
    fd     : cint;
    Len    : longint;
//    args : tmmargs;
    P      : PChar;
```

**begin**

```
s:= 'This is the string';
Len:= Length(S);
fd:= fpOpen('testfile.txt', O_wrOnly or o_creat);
If fd=-1 then
  Halt(1);
If fpWrite(fd, S[1], Len)=-1 then
  Halt(2);
fpClose(fd);
fd:= fpOpen('testfile.txt', O_rdOnly);
if fd=-1 then
  Halt(3);
P:= Pchar(fpmmap(nil, len+1, PROT_READ or PROT_WRITE, MAP_PRIVATE, fd, 0));
```

```
If longint(P)=-1 then
  Halt(4);
WriteLn('Read in memory : ', P);
fpclose(fd);
if fpMUnMap(P, Len)<>0 Then
  Halt(fpgeterrno);
```

**end.**

---

### 1.4.45 Fpmprotect

**Declaration:** `function Fpmprotect(start: pointer; len: size_t; prot: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

### 1.4.46 Fpmunmap

**Synopsis:** Unmap previously mapped memory block

**Declaration:** `function Fpmunmap(start: pointer; len: size_t) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpMUnMap` unmaps the memory block of size `Len`, pointed to by `Adr`, which was previously allocated with `FpMMap` (197).

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `FpMMap` (197).

**Errors:** In case of error the function returns a nonzero value, extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function. See `FpMMap` (197) for possible error values.

See also: `FpMMap` (197)

### 1.4.47 FpNanoSleep

**Synopsis:** Suspend process for a short time

**Declaration:** `function FpNanoSleep(req: ptimespec; rem: ptimespec) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpNanoSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `req` has passed. Then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and `rem` will contain the remaining time till the end of the intended period. In this case the return value will be -1, and `ErrNo` will be set to `EINTR`

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

**Errors:** If an error occurred or the call was interrupted, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

See also: `FpPause` (203), `FpAlarm` (175)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex72.pp`

---

**program** `example72;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the NanoSleep function. }*

**uses** `BaseUnix;`

**Var**

`Req, Rem : TimeSpec;`  
`Res : Longint;`

**begin**

**With** `Req` **do**



---

```

begin
tv_sec:=10;
tv_nsec:=100;
end;
Write( 'NanoSleep returned : ');
Flush( Output);
Res:=(fpNanoSleep(@Req,@rem));
WriteLn( res );
If (res<>0) then
  With rem do
    begin
      WriteLn( 'Remaining seconds      : ',tv_sec );
      WriteLn( 'Remaining nanoseconds : ',tv_nsec );
    end;
  end;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.48 fpNice

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `function fpNice(N: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Nice` adds `-N` to the priority of the running process. The lower the priority numerically, the less the process is favored. Only the superuser can specify a negative `N`, i.e. increase the rate at which the process is run.

If the function is successful, zero is returned. On error, a nonzero value is returned.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([188](#)) function.

**sys\_eperm** A non-superuser tried to specify a negative `N`, i.e. do a priority increase.

See also: `FpGetPriority` ([191](#)), `FpSetPriority` ([211](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Nice and Get/SetPriority functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

```

begin
  writeln( 'Setting priority to 5' );
  fpsetpriority (prio_process,fpgetpid,5);
  writeln( 'New priority = ',fpgetpriority (prio_process,fpgetpid));
  writeln( 'Doing nice 10' );
  fpnice (10);
  writeln( 'New Priority = ',fpgetpriority (prio_process,fpgetpid));
end.

```

---

### 1.4.49 FpOpen

Synopsis: Open file and return file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpOpen(path: PChar; flags: cint; Mode: TMode) : cint`  
`function FpOpen(path: PChar; flags: cint) : cint`  
`function FpOpen(const path: RawByteString; flags: cint) : cint`  
`function FpOpen(const path: RawByteString; flags: cint; Mode: TMode)`  
`: cint`  
`function FpOpen(path: ShortString; flags: cint) : cint`  
`function FpOpen(path: ShortString; flags: cint; Mode: TMode) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: FpOpen opens a file in Path with flags flags and mode Mode One of the following:

**O\_RdOnlyFile** is opened Read-only

**O\_WrOnlyFile** is opened Write-only

**O\_RdWrFile** is opened Read-Write

The flags may beOR-ed with one of the following constants:

**O\_CreatFile** is created if it doesn't exist.

**O\_ExclIf** the file is opened with **O\_Creat** and it already exists, the call will fail.

**O\_NoCttyIf** the file is a terminal device, it will NOT become the process' controlling terminal.

**O\_TruncIf** the file exists, it will be truncated.

**O\_Append** the file is opened in append mode. *Before each write*, the file pointer is positioned at the end of the file.

**O\_NonBlock** The file is opened in non-blocking mode. No operation on the file descriptor will cause the calling process to wait till.

**O\_NDelay** Idem as **O\_NonBlock**

**O\_Sync** The file is opened for synchronous IO. Any write operation on the file will not return until the data is physically written to disk.

**O\_NoFollow** if the file is a symbolic link, the open fails. (Linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

**O\_Directory** if the file is not a directory, the open fails. (Linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

Path can be of type PChar or String. The optional mode argument specifies the permissions to set when opening the file. This is modified by the umask setting. The real permissions are Mode and not umask. The return value of the function is the file descriptor, or a negative value if there was an error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno ([188](#)).

See also: FpClose ([179](#)), FpRead ([205](#)), FpWrite ([226](#)), FpFTruncate ([187](#)), FpLSeek ([194](#))

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex19.pp

**Program** Example19;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fpOpen, fpwrite and fpClose functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Const** Line : **String**[80] = 'This is easy writing !';

---

```

Var FD : CInt;

begin
  FD:=fpOpen ( 'Test.dat',O_WrOnly or O_Creat);
  if FD>0 then
    begin
      if length(Line)<>fpwrite (FD,Line[1],Length(Line)) then
        Writeln ('Error when writing to file !');
      fpClose(FD);
    end;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.50 FpOpendir

Synopsis: Open a directory for reading

Declaration: function FpOpendir(dirname: pChar) : pDir  
 function FpOpendir(const dirname: RawByteString) : pDir  
 function FpOpendir(dirname: ShortString) : pDir

Visibility: default

Description: FpOpenDir opens the directory DirName, and returns a pdir pointer to a Dir (228) record, which can be used to read the directory structure. If the directory cannot be opened, nil is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno (188).

See also: FpCloseDir (179), FpReadDir (206)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex35.pp

**Program** Example35;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the
  OpenDir, ReadDir, SeekDir and Telldir functions. }

```

**Uses** BaseUnix;

```

Var TheDir : PDir;
    ADirent : PDirent;
    Entry : Longint;

```

```

begin
  TheDir:=fpOpenDir( ' ./. ');
  Repeat
    // Entry:=fpTelldir(TheDir);
    ADirent:=fpReadDir (TheDir^);
    If ADirent<>Nil then
      With ADirent^ do
        begin
          Writeln ('Entry No : ',Entry);
          Writeln ('Inode   : ',d_fileno);
          // Writeln ('Offset   : ',d_off);
          Writeln ('Reclen  : ',d_reclen);
          Writeln ('Name    : ',pchar(@d_name[0]));
        end;
      Until ADirent=Nil;

```

---

```

Repeat
  Write ( 'Entry No. you would like to see again (-1 to stop): ');
  ReadLn ( Entry );
  If Entry <> -1 then
    begin
//      fpSeekDir ( TheDir, Entry );           // not implemented for various platforms
      ADirent := fpReadDir ( TheDir ^ );
      If ADirent <> Nil then
        With ADirent ^ do
          begin
            Writeln ( 'Entry No : ', Entry );
            Writeln ( 'Inode   : ', d_fileno );
//          Writeln ( 'Offset  : ', off );
            Writeln ( 'Reclen  : ', d_reclen );
            Writeln ( 'Name    : ', pchar (@d_name[0]));
          end;
        end;
      Until Entry = -1;
      fpCloseDir ( TheDir ^ );
    end.

```

---

### 1.4.51 FpPause

Synopsis: Wait for a signal to arrive

Declaration: `function FpPause : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPause` puts the process to sleep and waits until the application receives a signal. If a signal handler is installed for the received signal, the handler will be called and after that pause will return control to the process.

For an example, see `fpAlarm` ([175](#)).

### 1.4.52 FpPipe

Synopsis: Create a set of pipe file handlers

Declaration: `function FpPipe(var fildes: TFileDes) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPipe` creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. The file handles are returned in the array `fildes`. The input handle is in the 0-th element of the array, the output handle is in the 1-st element.

The function returns zero if everything went successfully, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

Errors: In case the function fails, the following return values are possible:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `#rtl.unix.POpen` ([2048](#)), `fpMkFifo` ([197](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex36.pp`

---

```

Program Example36;

{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }

Uses BaseUnix, Unix;

Var pipi, pipo : Text;
    s : String;

begin
    Writeln ( 'Assigning Pipes.' );
    If assignpipe(pipi, pipo) <> 0 then
        Writeln ( 'Error assigning pipes !', fpgeterrno );
    Writeln ( 'Writing to pipe, and flushing.' );
    Writeln ( pipo, 'This is a textstring' ); close(pipo);
    Writeln ( 'Reading from pipe.' );
    While not eof(pipi) do
        begin
            Readln ( pipi, s );
            Writeln ( 'Read from pipe : ', s );
        end;
    close ( pipi );
    writeln ( 'Closed pipes.' );
    writeln
end.

```

---

### 1.4.53 FpPoll

**Synopsis:** Poll a file descriptor for events.

**Declaration:** `function FpPoll(fds: ppollfd; nfds: cuint; timeout: clong) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpPoll` waits for events on file descriptors. `fds` points to an array of `tpollfd` records, each of these records describes a file descriptor on which to wait for events. The number of file descriptors is given by `nfds`. `>timeout` specifies the maximum time (in milliseconds) to wait for events.

On timeout, the result value is 0. If an event occurred on some descriptors, then the return value is the number of descriptors on which an event (or error) occurred. The `revents` field of the `tpollfd` records will contain the events for the file descriptor it described.

See also: `tpollfd` ([172](#))

### 1.4.54 FpPRead

**Synopsis:** Positional read: read from file descriptor at a certain position.

**Declaration:** `function FpPRead(fd: cint; buf: pChar; nbytes: TSize; offset: TOff) : TSize`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpPRead` reads `nbytes` bytes from file descriptor `fd` into buffer `buf` starting at offset `offset`. `Offset` is measured from the start of the file. This function can only be used on files, not on pipes or sockets (i.e. any seekable file descriptor).

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 on error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: [FpReadV \(208\)](#), [FpPWrite \(205\)](#)

### 1.4.55 FpPWrite

Synopsis: Positional write: write to file descriptor at a certain position.

Declaration: `function FpPWrite(fd: cint; buf: pChar; nbytes: TSize; offset: TOff) : TSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPWrite` writes `nbytes` bytes from buffer `buf` into file descriptor `fd` starting at offset `offset`. Offset is measured from the start of the file. This function can only be used on files, not on pipes or sockets (i.e. any seekable file descriptor).

The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 on error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: [FpPRead \(204\)](#), [FpWriteV \(227\)](#)

### 1.4.56 FpRead

Synopsis: Read data from file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpRead(fd: cint; buf: pChar; nbytes: TSize) : TSize`  
`function FpRead(fd: cint; var buf; nbytes: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpRead` reads at most `nbytes` bytes from the file descriptor `fd`, and stores them in `buf`.

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 if an error occurred. No checking on the length of `buf` is done.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using [fpGetErrno \(188\)](#).

See also: [FpOpen \(201\)](#), [FpClose \(179\)](#), [FpWrite \(226\)](#), [FpFTruncate \(187\)](#), [FpLSeek \(194\)](#)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `Example20;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdRead and fdTruncate functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**Const** `Data : string[10] = '1234567890';`

**Var** `FD : cint;`  
`l : longint;`

**begin**

`FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_wronly or o_creat,&666);`

`if fd>0 then`

`begin`

*{ Fill file with data }*

`for l:=1 to 10 do`

---

```

    if fpWrite (FD,Data[1],10)<>10 then
    begin
        writeln ('Error when writing !');
        halt(1);
    end;
fpClose(FD);
FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_rdonly);
{ Read data again }
If FD>0 then
begin
    For l:=1 to 5 do
        if fpRead (FD,Data[1],10)<>10 then
        begin
            Writeln ('Error when Reading !');
            Halt(2);
        end;
fpClose(FD);
{ Truncating file at 60 bytes }
{ For truncating , file must be open or write }
FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_wronly,&666);
if FD>0 then
begin
    if fpfTruncate(FD,60)<>0 then
        Writeln('Error when truncating !');
    fpClose (FD);
end;
end;
end;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.57 FpReaddir

Synopsis: Read entry from directory

Declaration: `function FpReaddir(var dirp: Dir) : pDirent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpReadDir` reads the next entry in the directory pointed to by `dirp`. It returns a `pdirent` pointer to a `dirent` (229) record describing the entry. If the next entry can't be read, `Nil` is returned.

For an example, see `FpOpenDir` (202).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

See also: `FpCloseDir` (179), `FpOpenDir` (202)

### 1.4.58 fpReadLink

Synopsis: Read destination of symbolic link

Declaration: `function fpReadLink(name: pchar; linkname: pchar; maxlen: size_t) : cint`  
`function fpReadLink(const Name: RawByteString) : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpReadLink` returns the file the symbolic link name is pointing to. The first form of this function accepts a buffer `linkname` of length `maxlen` where the filename will be stored. It returns the actual number of characters stored in the buffer.

The second form of the function returns simply the name of the file.

**Errors:** On error, the first form of the function returns -1; the second one returns an empty string. Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function.

**SYS\_ENOTDIR**A part of the path in `Name` is not a directory.

**SYS\_EINVAL**`maxlen` is not positive, or the file is not a symbolic link.

**SYS\_ENAMETOOLONG**A pathname, or a component of a pathname, was too long.

**SYS\_ENOENT**the link name does not exist.

**SYS\_EACCES**No permission to search a directory in the path

**SYS\_ELOOP**Too many symbolic links were encountered in translating the pathname.

**SYS\_EIO**An I/O error occurred while reading from the file system.

**SYS\_EFAULT**The buffer is not part of the process's memory space.

**SYS\_ENOMEM**Not enough kernel memory was available.

See also: `FpSymLink` (219)

---

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex62.pp`

**Program** `Example62`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the ReadLink function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix, Unix`;

**Var** `F : Text;`  
       `S : String;`

```
begin
  Assign (F, 'test.txt');
  Rewrite (F);
  Writeln (F, 'This is written to test.txt');
  Close(f);
  { new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }
  if fpSymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 then
    writeln ('Error when symlinking !');
  S:=fpReadLink('new.txt');
  If S='' then
    Writeln ('Error reading link !')
  Else
    Writeln ('Link points to : ',S);
  { Now remove links }
  If fpUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
  If fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
end.
```

---



### 1.4.59 FpReadV

Synopsis: Vector read: Read into multiple buffers

Declaration: `function FpReadV(fd: cint; const iov: piovec; iovcnt: cint) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpReadV` reads data from file descriptor `fd` and writes it into `iovcnt` buffers described by the `tiovec` (172) buffers pointed to by `iov`. It works like `fpRead` (205) only on multiple buffers.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpWriteV` (227), `FpPWrite` (205), `FpPRead` (204)

### 1.4.60 FpRename

Synopsis: Rename file

Declaration: `function FpRename(old: pChar; newpath: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpRename(const old: RawByteString;`  
`const newpath: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpRename` renames the file `Old` to `NewPath`. `NewPath` can be in a different directory than `Old`, but it cannot be on another partition (device). Any existing file on the new location will be replaced.

If the operation fails, then the `Old` file will be preserved.

The function returns zero on success, a nonzero value indicates failure.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to `fpRename`: `system.rename`. Please use `fpRename` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.rename` will work on all operating systems.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

**sys\_eisdir**`NewPath` exists and is a directory, but `Old` is not a directory.

**sys\_exdev**`NewPath` and `Old` are on different devices.

**sys\_enotempty or sys\_eexist**`NewPath` is an existing, non-empty directory.

**sys\_ebusy**`Old` or `NewPath` is a directory and is in use by another process.

**sys\_einval**`NewPath` is part of `Old`.

**sys\_emlink**`OldPath` or `NewPath` already have the maximum amount of links pointing to them.

**sys\_enotdir**part of `Old` or `NewPath` is not directory.

**sys\_efault**For the `pchar` case: One of the pointers points to an invalid address.

**sys\_eaccess**access is denied when attempting to move the file.

**sys\_enametoolong**Either `Old` or `NewPath` is too long.

**sys\_enoenta**directory component in `Old` or `NewPath` didn't exist.

**sys\_enomem**not enough kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**`NewPath` or `Old` is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop**too many symbolic links were encountered trying to expand `Old` or `NewPath`

**sys\_enosp**the file system has no room for the new directory entry.

See also: `FpUnLink` (224)

### 1.4.61 FpRmdir

**Synopsis:** Remove a directory.

**Declaration:** `function FpRmdir(path: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpRmdir(const path: RawByteString) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpRmdir` removes the directory `Path` from the system. The directory must be empty for this call to succeed, and the user must have the necessary permissions in the parent directory. Only the last component of the directory is removed, i.e. higher-lying directories are not removed.

On success, zero is returned. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

**Note:** There exist a portable alternative to `fpRmdir`: `system.rmdir`. Please use `fpRmdir` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.rmdir` will work on all operating systems.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

### 1.4.62 fpSelect

**Synopsis:** Wait for events on file descriptors

**Declaration:** `function FPSelect(N: cint; readfds: pFDSet; writefds: pFDSet;`  
`exceptfds: pFDSet; TimeOut: ptimeval) : cint`  
`function fpSelect(N: cint; readfds: pFDSet; writefds: pFDSet;`  
`exceptfds: pFDSet; TimeOut: cint) : cint`  
`function fpSelect(var T: Text; TimeOut: ptimeval) : cint`  
`function fpSelect(var T: Text; TimeOut: time_t) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpSelect` checks one of the file descriptors in the `FDSet`s to see if the following I/O operation on the file descriptors will block.

`readfds`, `writefds` and `exceptfds` are pointers to arrays of 256 bits. If you want a file descriptor to be checked, you set the corresponding element in the array to 1. The other elements in the array must be set to zero. Three arrays are passed : The entries in `readfds` are checked to see if the following read operation will block. The entries in `writefds` are checked to see if the following write operation will block, while entries in `exceptfds` are checked to see if an exception occurred on them.

You can use the functions `fpFD_ZERO` (185), `fpFD_Clr` (184), `fpFD_Set` (185) or `fpFD_IsSet` (184) to manipulate the individual elements of a set.

The pointers can be `Nil`.

`N` is the value of the largest file descriptor in one of the sets, + 1. In other words, it is the position of the last bit which is set in the array of bits.

`TimeOut` can be used to set a time limit. If `TimeOut` can be two types :

1. `TimeOut` is of type `ptimeval` and contains a zero time, the call returns immediately. If `TimeOut` is `Nil`, the kernel will wait forever, or until a status changed.
2. `TimeOut` is of type `cint`. If it is -1, this has the same effect as a `Timeout` of type `PTime` which is `Nil`. Otherwise, `TimeOut` contains a time in milliseconds.

When the `TimeOut` is reached, or one of the file descriptors has changed, the `Select` call returns. On return, it will have modified the entries in the array which have actually changed, and it returns

the number of entries that have been changed. If the timeout was reached, and no descriptor changed, zero is returned; The arrays of indexes are undefined after that. On error, -1 is returned.

The variant with the text file will execute the `FpSelect` call on the file descriptor associated with the text file `T`

**Errors:** On error, the function returns -1. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([188](#)).

**SYS\_EBADF**An invalid descriptor was specified in one of the sets.

**SYS\_EINTRA** non blocked signal was caught.

**SYS\_EINVAL**N is negative or too big.

**SYS\_ENOMEM**`Select` was unable to allocate memory for its internal tables.

See also: `fpFD_ZERO` ([185](#)), `fpFD_Clr` ([184](#)), `fpFD_Set` ([185](#)), `fpFD_IsSet` ([184](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Select function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Var** `FDS : Tfdset`;

**begin**

```

fpfd_zero(FDS);
fpfd_set(0,FDS);
Writeln ( 'Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' );
{ Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }
fpSelect (1,@FDS,nil ,nil ,nil );
{ Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
readln;
Writeln ( 'Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...' );
Fpfd_zero(FDS);
FpFd_set (0,FDS);
if fpSelect (1,@FDS,nil ,nil ,2000)>0 then
  Writeln ( 'Thank you !' )
  { FD_ISSET(0,FDS) would be true here. }
else
  Writeln ( 'Too late !' );
end.
```

---

### 1.4.63 fpseterrno

**Synopsis:** Set extended error information.

**Declaration:** `procedure fpseterrno(err: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpseterrno` sets the extended information on the latest error. It is called by all functions that communicate with the kernel or C library.

Unless a direct kernel call is performed, there should never be any need to call this function.

See also: `fpgeterrno` ([188](#))

### 1.4.64 FpSetgid

Synopsis: Set the current group ID

Declaration: `function FpSetgid(gid: TGid) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetUID` sets the group ID of the current process. This call will only work if it is executed as root, or the program is `setgid` root.

On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` (188).

See also: `FpSetUid` (212), `FpGetGid` (189), `FpGetUid` (192), `FpGetEUid` (188), `FpGetEGid` (187), `FpGetPid` (190), `FpGetPPid` (190)

### 1.4.65 fpSetPriority

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `function fpSetPriority(Which: cint; Who: cint; What: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetPriority` sets the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. Which can be one of the predefined constants:

**Prio\_Process**`Who` is interpreted as process ID

**Prio\_PGrp**`Who` is interpreted as process group ID

**Prio\_User**`Who` is interpreted as user ID

`Prio` is a value in the range -20 to 20.

For an example, see `FpNice` (200).

The function returns zero on success, -1 on failure

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using `which` and `who`.

**sys\_einval**`Which` was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

**sys\_eperm**A process was found, but neither its effective or real user ID match the effective user ID of the caller.

**sys\_eaccess**A non-superuser tried to a priority increase.

See also: `FpGetPriority` (191), `FpNice` (200)

### 1.4.66 FpSetRLimit

Synopsis: Set process resource limits

Declaration: `function FpSetRLimit(Resource: cint; rlim: PRLimit) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpGetRLimit` sets the resource limits for the current process: `resource` determines the resource of which the kernel should set the limits (one of the many `RLIMIT_*` constants). `rlim` should point to a `TRLimit` (232) record which contains the new limits for the resource indicated in `resource`.

The function returns zero if the resource limits were successfully set.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned and `fpgeterrno` (188) can be used to retrieve the error code.

See also: `FpGetRLimit` (191)

### 1.4.67 FpSetsid

**Synopsis:** Create a new session.

**Declaration:** `function FpSetsid : TPid`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpSetsid` creates a new session (process group). It returns the new process group id (as returned by `FpGetpgrp` (190)). This call will fail if the current process is already the process group leader.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` (188)

### 1.4.68 fpsettimeofday

**Synopsis:** Set kernel time

**Declaration:** `function fpsettimeofday(tp: ptimeval; tzp: ptimezone) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpSetTimeOfDay` sets the kernel time to the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT specified in the `tp` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account time-zones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call.

See also: `#rtl.unix.FPGetTimeOfDay` (2044)

### 1.4.69 FpSetuid

**Synopsis:** Set the current user ID

**Declaration:** `function FpSetuid(uid: TUid) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpSetUID` sets the user ID of the current process. This call will only work if it is executed as root, or the program is `setuid root`.

On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` (188).

See also: `FpGetGid` (189), `FpGetUid` (192), `FpGetEUid` (188), `FpGetEGid` (187), `FpGetPid` (190), `FpGetPPid` (190), `FpSetGid` (211)

### 1.4.70 FPSigaction

Synopsis: Install signal handler

Declaration: `function FPSigaction(sig: cint; act: psigactionrec; oact: psigactionrec)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPSigaction` changes the action to take upon receipt of a signal. `Act` and `Oact` are pointers to a `SigActionRec` (230) record. `Sig` specifies the signal, and can be any signal except **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

If `Act` is non-nil, then the new action for signal `Sig` is taken from it. If `Oact` is non-nil, the old action is stored there. `Sa_Handler` may be `SIG_DFL` for the default action or `SIG_IGN` to ignore the signal. `Sa_Mask` Specifies which signals should be ignored during the execution of the signal handler. `Sa_Flags` Specifies a series of flags which modify the behaviour of the signal handler. You can 'or' none or more of the following :

**SA\_NOCLDSTOP**If `sig` is **SIGCHLD** do not receive notification when child processes stop.

**SA\_ONESHOT** or **SA\_RESETHAND**Restore the signal action to the default state once the signal handler has been called.

**SA\_RESTART**For compatibility with BSD signals.

**SA\_NOMASK** or **SA\_NODEFER**Do not prevent the signal from being received from within its own signal handler.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

**sys\_einval**an invalid signal was specified, or it was **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

**sys\_efault**`Act`, `OldAct` point outside this process address space

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: `FpSigProcMask` (216), `FpSigPending` (216), `FpSigSuspend` (217), `FpKill` (193)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex57.pp`

---

**Program** `example57;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SigAction function.}

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}
```

**uses** `BaseUnix;`

**Var**  
    `oa, na : PSigActionRec;`

**Procedure** `DoSig(sig : cint); cdecl;`

```
begin
    writeln('Receiving signal: ', sig);
end;
```

---

```

begin
  new(na);
  new(oa);
  na^.sa_Handler:=SigActionHandler(@DoSig);
  fillchar(na^.Sa_Mask,sizeof(na^.sa_mask),#0);
  na^.Sa_Flags:=0;
  {$ifdef Linux}           // Linux specific
    na^.Sa_Restorer:=Nil;
  {$endif}
  if fpSigAction(SigUsr1,na,oa)<>0 then
    begin
      writeln('Error: ',fpgeterrno,'. ');
      halt(1);
    end;
  Writeln('Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit');
  readln;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.71 FpSigAddSet

Synopsis: Set a signal in a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigAddSet(var nset: tsigset; signo: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigAddSet` adds signal `Signo` to the signal set `nset`. The function returns 0 on success.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (214), `FpSigFillSet` (215), `FpSigDelSet` (214), `FpSigIsMember` (215)

### 1.4.72 FpSigDelSet

Synopsis: Remove a signal from a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigDelSet(var nset: tsigset; signo: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigDelSet` removes signal `Signo` to the signal set `nset`. The function returns 0 on success.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (214), `FpSigFillSet` (215), `FpSigAddSet` (214), `FpSigIsMember` (215)

### 1.4.73 FpsigEmptySet

Synopsis: Clear all signals from signal set.

Declaration: `function FpsigEmptySet(var nset: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigEmptySet` clears all signals from the signal set `nset`.

Errors: None. This function always returns zero.

See also: `FpSigFillSet` (215), `FpSigAddSet` (214), `FpSigDelSet` (214), `FpSigIsMember` (215)

### 1.4.74 FpSigFillSet

Synopsis: Set all signals in signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigFillSet (var nset: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigFillSet` sets all signals in the signal set `nset`.

Errors: None. This function always returns zero.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (214), `FpSigAddSet` (214), `FpSigDelSet` (214), `FpSigIsMember` (215)

### 1.4.75 FpSigIsMember

Synopsis: Check whether a signal appears in a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigIsMember (const nset: tsigset; signo: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigIsMember` checks whether `SigNo` appears in the set `nset`. If it is a member, then 1 is returned. If not, zero is returned.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (214), `FpSigFillSet` (215), `FpSigAddSet` (214), `FpSigDelSet` (214)

### 1.4.76 FpSignal

Synopsis: Install signal handler (deprecated)

Declaration: `function FpSignal (signum: LongInt; Handler: signalhandler)  
: signalhandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSignal` installs a new signal handler (specified by `Handler`) for signal `SigNum`.

This call has a subset of the functionality provided by the `FpSigAction` (213) call. The return value for `FpSignal` is the old signal handler, or nil on error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

**SIG\_ERR** An error occurred.

See also: `FpSigAction` (213), `FpKill` (193)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** `example58;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Signal function. }  
  
{  
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.  
replace pid with the real pid of this program.  
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.  
}
```



---

```

uses BaseUnix;

Procedure DoSig(sig : cint);cdecl;

begin
  writeln( 'Receiving signal: ',sig);
end;

begin
  if fpSignal( SigUsrc1 , SignalHandler (@DoSig))= signalhandler (SIG_ERR) then
    begin
      writeln( 'Error: ',fpGetErrno , '. ');
      halt(1);
    end;
    Writeln ( 'Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit ');
    readln;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.77 FpSigPending

Synopsis: Return set of currently pending signals

Declaration: `function FpSigPending(var nset: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSigpending` allows the examination of pending signals (which have been raised while blocked.)  
The signal mask of pending signals is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `fpSigAction` (213), `fpSigProcMask` (216), `fpSigSuspend` (217), `fpSignal` (215), `fpKill` (193)

### 1.4.78 FpSigProcMask

Synopsis: Set list of blocked signals

Declaration: `function FpSigProcMask(how: cint; nset: psigset; oset: psigset) : cint`  
`function FpSigProcMask(how: cint; constref nset: tsigset;`  
`var oset: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: Changes the list of currently blocked signals. The behaviour of the call depends on `How` :

**SIG\_BLOCK**The set of blocked signals is the union of the current set and the `nset` argument.

**SIG\_UNBLOCK**The signals in `nset` are removed from the set of currently blocked signals.

**SIG\_SETMASK**The list of blocked signals is set so `nset`.

If `oset` is non-nil, then the old set is stored in it.

Errors: `Errno` is used to report errors.

**sys\_efault**`oset` or `nset` point to an address outside the range of the process.

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: `fpSigAction` (213), `fpSigPending` (216), `fpSigSuspend` (217), `fpKill` (193)

### 1.4.79 FpSigSuspend

Synopsis: Set signal mask and suspend process till signal is received

Declaration: `function FpSigSuspend(const sigmask: tsigset) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigSuspend` temporarily replaces the signal mask for the process with the one given in `SigMask`, and then suspends the process until a signal is received.

Errors: None

See also: `FpSigAction` (213), `FpSigProcMask` (216), `FpSigPending` (216), `FpSignal` (215), `FpKill` (193)

### 1.4.80 FpSigTimedWait

Synopsis: Wait for signal, with timeout

Declaration: `function FpSigTimedWait(const sigset: tsigset; info: psiginfo; timeout: ptimespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigTimedWait` will suspend the current thread and wait for one of the signals in `sigset` to be delivered. information on the delivered signal is placed in the location provided by `info` (or in `info` itself, if the `Var` variant of the call is used). If the signal is not delivered within the time limit set in `timeout`, then the call will return -1, and `FpGetErrno` will return `EAGAIN`.

On success, the signal number is returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and extended error information can be obtained with `FpGetErrno`.

See also: `FpSigSuspend` (217)

### 1.4.81 FpSleep

Synopsis: Suspend process for several seconds

Declaration: `function FpSleep(seconds: cuint) : cuint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `seconds` has passed, then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and the return value is the remaining time till the end of the intended period.

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

See also: `FpPause` (203), `FpAlarm` (175), `FpNanoSleep` (199)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex73.pp`

---

**program** `example73;`

`{ Program to demonstrate the FpSleep function. }`

**uses** `BaseUnix;`

**Var**

```

    Res : Longint;

begin
    Write('Sleep returned : ');
    Flush(Output);
    Res:=(fpSleep(10));
    Writeln(res);
    If (res<>0) then
        Writeln('Remaining seconds      : ',res);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.82 FpStat

Synopsis: Retrieve file information about a file descriptor.

Declaration: `function FpStat(path: pChar; var buf: Stat) : cint`  
`function FpStat(const path: RawByteString; var buf: Stat) : cint`  
`function FpStat(path: ShortString; var buf: Stat) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFStat` gets information about the file specified in `Path`, and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat` (230). The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

`sys_enoent``Path` does not exist.

See also: `FpStat` (218), `FpLStat` (195)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex28.pp`

---

```

program example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
    { Make a file }
    assign (f, 'test.fil ');
    rewrite (f);
    for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ',i);
    close (f);
    { Do the call on made file. }
    if fpstat ('test.fil ',info)<>0 then
        begin
            writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);
            halt (1);
        end;
    writeln;
    writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil ''.');

```

---

```

writeln ( 'Inode      : ', info.st_ino );
writeln ( 'Mode       : ', info.st_mode );
writeln ( 'nlink      : ', info.st_nlink );
writeln ( 'uid        : ', info.st_uid );
writeln ( 'gid        : ', info.st_gid );
writeln ( 'rdev       : ', info.st_rdev );
writeln ( 'Size       : ', info.st_size );
writeln ( 'Blksize    : ', info.st_blksize );
writeln ( 'Blocks     : ', info.st_blocks );
writeln ( 'atime      : ', info.st_atime );
writeln ( 'mtime      : ', info.st_mtime );
writeln ( 'ctime      : ', info.st_ctime );
  { Remove file }
  erase ( f );
end .

```

---

### 1.4.83 fpSymlink

Synopsis: Create a symbolic link

Declaration: `function fpSymlink(oldname: pchar; newname: pchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `SymLink` makes `NewName` point to the file in `OldName`, which doesn't necessarily exist. The two files DO NOT have the same inode number. This is known as a 'soft' link.

The permissions of the link are irrelevant, as they are not used when following the link. Ownership of the file is only checked in case of removal or renaming of the link.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value if the call failed.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function.

**sys\_eperm**The file system containing `oldpath` and `newpath` does not support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess**Write access for the directory containing `Newpath` is disallowed, or one of the directories in `OldPath` or `NewPath` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `OldPath` or `NewPath` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in `OldPath` or `NewPath` is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The files are on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eexist**`NewPath` already exists.

**sys\_eloop**`OldPath` or `NewPath` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc**The device containing `NewPath` has no room for another entry.

See also: `FpLink` (193), `FpUnLink` (224), `FpReadLink` (206)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** Example22;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SymLink and UnLink functions. }
```

**Uses** baseunix, Unix;

**Var** F : Text;  
S : **String**;

```
begin
  Assign (F, 'test.txt');
  Rewrite (F);
  Writeln (F, 'This is written to test.txt');
  Close(f);
  { new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }
  if fpSymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 then
    writeln ('Error when symlinking !');
  { Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt
    Pointing now to a non-existent file ! }
  If fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
  Assign (f, 'new.txt');
  { This should fail, since the symbolic link
    points to a non-existent file ! }
  {$i-}
  Reset (F);
  {$i+}
  If IOResult=0 then
    Writeln ('This shouldn''t happen');
  { Now remove new.txt also }
  If fpUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
end.
```

#### 1.4.84 fpS\_ISBLK

**Synopsis:** Is file a block device

**Declaration:** function fpS\_ISBLK(m: TMode) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpS\_ISBLK checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a block device file. If so it returns True.

See also: FpFStat ([185](#)), FpS\_ISLNK ([221](#)), FpS\_ISREG ([222](#)), FpS\_ISDIR ([221](#)), FpS\_ISCHR ([220](#)), FpS\_ISFIFO ([221](#)), FpS\_ISSOCK ([222](#))

#### 1.4.85 fpS\_ISCHR

**Synopsis:** Is file a character device

**Declaration:** function fpS\_ISCHR(m: TMode) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpS\_ISCHR checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a character device file. If so it returns True.

See also: FpFStat ([185](#)), FpS\_ISLNK ([221](#)), FpS\_ISREG ([222](#)), FpS\_ISDIR ([221](#)), FpS\_ISBLK ([220](#)), FpS\_ISFIFO ([221](#)), FpS\_ISSOCK ([222](#))

### 1.4.86 fpS\_ISDIR

Synopsis: Is file a directory

Declaration: `function fpS_ISDIR(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpS_ISDIR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a directory. If so, it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` (185), `FpS_ISLNK` (221), `FpS_ISREG` (222), `FpS_ISCHR` (220), `FpS_ISBLK` (220), `fpS_ISFIFO` (221), `FpS_ISSOCK` (222)

### 1.4.87 fpS\_ISFIFO

Synopsis: Is file a FIFO

Declaration: `function fpS_ISFIFO(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISFIFO` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a fifo (a named pipe). If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` (185), `FpS_ISLNK` (221), `FpS_ISREG` (222), `FpS_ISCHR` (220), `FpS_ISBLK` (220), `FpS_ISDIR` (221), `FpS_ISSOCK` (222)

### 1.4.88 fpS\_ISLNK

Synopsis: Is file a symbolic link

Declaration: `function fpS_ISLNK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISLNK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a symbolic link. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` (185), `FpS_ISFIFO` (221), `FpS_ISREG` (222), `FpS_ISCHR` (220), `FpS_ISBLK` (220), `FpS_ISDIR` (221), `FpS_ISSOCK` (222)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex53.pp`

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ Program to demonstrate the S\_ISLNK function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** Info : Stat;

**begin**

```

    if fpLStat (paramstr(1), @info)=0 then
    begin
        if fpS_ISLNK(info.st_mode) then
            Writeln ('File is a link');
        if fpS_ISREG(info.st_mode) then
            Writeln ('File is a regular file');
        if fpS_ISDIR(info.st_mode) then
            Writeln ('File is a directory');
```

---

```

    if fpS_ISCHR(info.st_mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a character device file ');
    if fpS_ISBLK(info.st_mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a block device file ');
    if fpS_ISFIFO(info.st_mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a named pipe (FIFO) ');
    if fpS_ISSOCK(info.st_mode) then
        Writeln ('File is a socket ');
    end;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.89 fpS\_ISREG

Synopsis: Is file a regular file

Declaration: `function fpS_ISREG(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISREG` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a regular file. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` (185), `FpS_ISFIFO` (221), `FpS_ISLNK` (221), `FpS_ISCHR` (220), `FpS_ISBLK` (220), `FpS_ISDIR` (221), `FpS_ISSOCK` (222)

### 1.4.90 fpS\_ISSOCK

Synopsis: Is file a Unix socket

Declaration: `function fpS_ISSOCK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISSOCK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a socket. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` (185), `FpS_ISFIFO` (221), `FpS_ISLNK` (221), `FpS_ISCHR` (220), `FpS_ISBLK` (220), `FpS_ISDIR` (221), `FpS_ISREG` (222)

### 1.4.91 fptime

Synopsis: Return the current Unix time

Declaration: `function FpTime(var tloc: TTime) : TTime`  
`function fptime : time_t`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpTime` returns the number of seconds since 00:00:00 GMT, january 1, 1970. it is adjusted to the local time zone, but not to DST. The result is also stored in `tloc`, if it is specified.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex1.pp`

---

```

Program Example1;

{ Program to demonstrate the fptime function. }

Uses baseunix;

begin
  Write ( 'Secs past the start of the Epoch (00:00 1/1/1980) : ');
  Writeln ( fptime );
end.

```

---

### 1.4.92 FpTimes

Synopsis: Return execution times for the current process

Declaration: `function FpTimes(var buffer: tms) : TClock`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpTimes` stores the execution time of the current process and child processes in `buffer`.

The return value (on Linux) is the number of clock ticks since boot time. On error, -1 is returned, and extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrno` ([188](#)).

See also: `fpUTime` ([224](#))

### 1.4.93 FpUmask

Synopsis: Set file creation mask.

Declaration: `function FpUmask(cmask: TMode) : TMode`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpUmask` changes the file creation mask for the current user to `cmask`. The current mask is returned.

See also: `fpChmod` ([176](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex27.pp`

---

```

Program Example27;

{ Program to demonstrate the Umask function. }

Uses BaseUnix;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Old Umask was : ', fpUmask(&111));
  Writeln ( 'New Umask is : ', &111);
end.

```

---



### 1.4.94 FpUname

Synopsis: Return system name.

Declaration: `function FpUname(var name: UtsName) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Uname` gets the name and configuration of the current Linux kernel, and returns it in the `name` record.

On success, 0 is returned, on error, -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

See also: `FpUTime` (224)

### 1.4.95 FpUnlink

Synopsis: Unlink (i.e. remove) a file.

Declaration: `function FpUnlink(path: pChar) : cint`  
`function FpUnlink(const path: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpUnlink` decreases the link count on file `Path`. `Path` can be of type `AnsiString` or `PChar`. If the link count is zero, the file is removed from the disk.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value indicates failure.

Note: There exist a portable alternative to erase files: `system.erase`. Please use `fpUnlink` only if you are writing Unix specific code. `System.erase` will work on all operating systems.

For an example, see `FpLink` (193).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

**sys\_eaccess** You have no write access right in the directory containing `Path`, or you have no search permission in one of the directory components of `Path`.

**sys\_eperm** The directory containing pathname has the sticky-bit set and the process's effective uid is neither the uid of the file to be deleted nor that of the directory containing it.

**sys\_enoent** A component of the path doesn't exist.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eisdir** `Path` refers to a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** `Path` is on a read-only file system.

See also: `FpLink` (193), `FpSymLink` (219)

### 1.4.96 FpUtime

Synopsis: Set access and modification times of a file (touch).

Declaration: `function FpUtime(path: pChar; times: pUtimBuf) : cint`  
`function FpUtime(const path: RawByteString; times: pUtimBuf) : cint`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpUtime` sets the access and modification times of the file specified in `Path`. the `times` record contains 2 fields, `actime`, and `modtime`, both of type `time_t` (commonly a `longint`). They should be filled with an epoch-like time, specifying, respectively, the last access time, and the last modification time. For some file systems (most notably, FAT), these times are the same.

The function returns zero on success, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

**sys\_eaccess** One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

Other errors may occur, but aren't documented.

See also: `FpTime` (222), `FpChown` (178), `FpAccess` (174)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the UTime function. }*

**Uses** `Dos`, `BaseUnix`, `Unix`, `UnixUtil`;

**Var** `utim` : `utimbuf`;  
       `dow`, `msec`, `year`, `month`, `day`, `hour`, `minute`, `second` : `Word`;

```
begin
  { Set access and modification time of executable source }
  GetTime (hour, minute, second, msec);
  GetDate (year, month, day, dow);
  utim.actime := LocalToEpoch (year, month, day, hour, minute, second);
  utim.modtime := utim.actime;
  if Fputime ('ex25.pp', @utim) <> 0 then
    writeln ('Call to UTime failed !')
  else
    begin
      Write ('Set access and modification times to : ');
      Write (Hour:2, ':', minute:2, ':', second, ', ');
      Writeln (Day:2, '/', month:2, '/', year:4);
    end;
end.
```

---

### 1.4.97 FpWait

**Synopsis:** Wait for a child to exit.

**Declaration:** `function FpWait (var stat_loc: cint) : TPid`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `fpWait` suspends the current process and waits for any child to exit or stop due to a signal. It reports the exit status of the exited child in `stat_loc`.

The return value of the function is the process ID of the child that exited, or -1 on error.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpgetErrno` (188).

See also: `fpFork` (185), `fpExecve` (182), `fpWaitPid` (226)

### 1.4.98 FpWaitPid

Synopsis: Wait for a process to terminate

Declaration: `function FpWaitpid(pid: TPid; stat_loc: pcint; options: cint) : TPid`  
`function FpWaitPid(pid: TPid; var Status: cint; Options: cint) : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpWaitPid` waits for a child process with process ID `Pid` to exit. The value of `Pid` can be one of the following:

**Pid < -1** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the absolute value of `pid`.

**Pid = -1** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for any child process.

**Pid = 0** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the one of the calling process.

**Pid > 0** Causes `fpWaitPid` to wait for the child whose process ID equals the value of `Pid`.

The `Options` parameter can be used to specify further how `fpWaitPid` behaves:

**WNOHANG** Causes `fpWaitpid` to return immediately if no child has exited.

**WUNTRACED** Causes `fpWaitPid` to return also for children which are stopped, but whose status has not yet been reported.

**\_\_WCLONE** Causes `fpWaitPid` also to wait for threads created by the `#rtl.linux.Clone` (956) call.

The exit status of the process that caused `fpWaitPID` is reported in `stat_loc` or `Status`.

Upon return, it returns the process id of the process that exited, 0 if no process exited, or -1 in case of failure.

For an example, see `fpFork` (185).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpgetErrno` (188).

See also: `fpFork` (185), `fpExecve` (182), `fpWait` (225)

### 1.4.99 FpWrite

Synopsis: Write data to file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpWrite(fd: cint; buf: pChar; nbytes: TSize) : TSize`  
`function FpWrite(fd: cint; const buf; nbytes: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpWrite` writes at most `nbytes` bytes from `buf` to file descriptor `fd`.

The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (188).

See also: `FpOpen` (201), `FpClose` (179), `FpRead` (205), `FpFTruncate` (187), `FpLSeek` (194)

### 1.4.100 FpWriteV

Synopsis: Vector write: Write from multiple buffers to a file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpWriteV(fd: cint; const iov: piovec; iovcnt: cint) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpWriteV` writes data to file descriptor `fd`. The data is taken from `iovcnt` buffers described by the `tiovec` (172) buffers pointed to by `iov`. It works like `fpWrite` (226) only from multiple buffers.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpReadV` (208), `FpPWrite` (205), `FpPRead` (204)

### 1.4.101 FreeShellArgV

Synopsis: Free the result of a `CreateShellArgV` (174) function

Declaration: `procedure FreeShellArgV(p: ppchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeShellArgV` frees the memory pointed to by `P`, which was allocated by a call to `CreateShellArgV` (174).

Errors: None.

See also: `CreateShellArgV` (174)

### 1.4.102 wexitStatus

Synopsis: Extract the exit status from the `fpWaitPID` (226) result.

Declaration: `function wexitStatus(Status: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WEXITSTATUS` can be used to extract the exit status from `Status`, the result of the `FpWaitPID` (226) call.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (226), `WTERMSIG` (228), `WSTOPSIG` (228), `WIFEXITED` (227), `WIFSIGNALED` (228)

### 1.4.103 wifexited

Synopsis: Check whether the process exited normally

Declaration: `function wifexited(Status: cint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFEXITED` checks `Status` and returns `True` if the status indicates that the process terminated normally, i.e. was not stopped by a signal.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (226), `WTERMSIG` (228), `WSTOPSIG` (228), `WIFSIGNALED` (228), `WEXITSTATUS` (227)

#### 1.4.104 wifsignaled

Synopsis: Check whether the process was exited by a signal.

Declaration: `function wifsignaled(Status: cint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFSIGNALED` returns `True` if `Status` indicates that the process exited because it received a signal.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (226), `WTERMSIG` (228), `WSTOPSIG` (228), `WIFEXITED` (227), `WEXITSTATUS` (227)

#### 1.4.105 wstopsig

Synopsis: Return the exit code from the process.

Declaration: `function wstopsig(Status: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WSTOPSIG` is an alias for `WEXITSTATUS` (227).

See also: `FpWaitPID` (226), `WTERMSIG` (228), `WIFEXITED` (227), `WIFSIGNALED` (228), `WEXITSTATUS` (227)

#### 1.4.106 wtermSIG

Synopsis: Return the signal that caused a process to exit.

Declaration: `function wtermSIG(Status: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WTERMSIG` extracts from `Status` the signal number which caused the process to exit.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (226), `WSTOPSIG` (228), `WIFEXITED` (227), `WIFSIGNALED` (228), `WEXITSTATUS` (227)

### 1.5 Dir

```

Dir = record
  dd_fd : LongInt;
  dd_loc : LongInt;
  dd_size : LongInt
  ;
  dd_buf : pDirent;
  dd_nextoff : Cardinal;
  dd_max : Integer
  ;
  dd_lock : pointer;
end

```

Record used in `fpOpenDir` (202) and `fpReadDir` (206) calls

## 1.6 Dirent

```
Dirent = record
  d_fileno : ino64_t;
  d_off : off_t;
  d_reclen
    : cushort;
  d_type : cuchar;
  d_name : Array[0..4095-sizeof(ino64_t
    )-sizeof(off_t)-sizeof(cushort)-sizeof(cuchar)] of Char;
end
```

Record used in the `fpReadDir` (206) function to return files in a directory.

## 1.7 FLock

```
FLock = record
  l_type : cshort;
  l_whence : cshort;
  l_start
    : kernel_off_t;
  l_len : kernel_off_t;
  l_pid : pid_t;
end
```

Lock description type for `fpFCntl` (183) lock call.

## 1.8 iovec

```
iovec = record
  iov_base : pointer;
  iov_len : size_t;
end
```

`iovec` is used in `freadv` (208) for IO to multiple buffers to describe a buffer location.

## 1.9 pollfd

```
pollfd = record
  fd : cint;
  events : cshort;
  revents : cshort
;
end
```

`pollfd` is used in the `fpPoll` (204) call to describe the various actions.

## 1.10 sigactionrec

```
sigactionrec = record
  sa_handler : sigactionhandler_t;
  sa_flags
    : culong;
  sa_restorer : sigrestorerhandler_t;
  sa_mask : sigset_t
;
end
```

Record used in `fpSigAction` ([213](#)) call.

## 1.11 Stat

```
Stat = packed record
  st_dev : QWord;
  __pad0_ : Array[0..3] of
    Byte;
  __st_ino_ : Cardinal;
  st_mode : Cardinal;
  st_nlink :
    Cardinal;
  st_uid : Cardinal;
  st_gid : Cardinal;
  st_rdev : QWord
;
  __pad3_ : Array[0..3] of Byte;
  st_size : QWord;
  st_blksize
    : Cardinal;
  st_blocks : QWord;
  st_atime : Cardinal;
  st_atime_nsec
    : Cardinal;
  st_mtime : Cardinal;
  st_mtime_nsec : Cardinal;
  st_ctime : Cardinal;
  st_ctime_nsec : Cardinal;
  st_ino : QWord
;
end
```

Record describing an inode (file) in the `FPFstat` ([185](#)) call.

## 1.12 tfpreg

```
tfpreg = record
  significand : Array[0..3] of Word;
  exponent :
    Word;
```

end

Record describing floating point register in signal handler.

### 1.13 tfpstate

```
tfpstate = record
  cw : Cardinal;
  sw : Cardinal;
  tag : Cardinal
;
  ipoff : Cardinal;
  cssel : Cardinal;
  dataoff : Cardinal;
  datasel : Cardinal;
  st : Array[0..7] of tfpreg;
  status : Cardinal
;
end
```

Record describing floating point unit in signal handler.

### 1.14 timezone

```
timezone = record
  tz_minuteswest : cint;
  tz_dsttime : cint;
end
```

Record describing a timezone

### 1.15 tms

```
tms = record
  tms_utime : clock_t;
  tms_stime : clock_t;
  tms_cutime
    : clock_t;
  tms_cstime : clock_t;
end
```

Record containing timings for fpTimes [\(223\)](#) call.

### 1.16 TRLimit

```
TRLimit = record
  rlim_cur : rlim_t;
```



```

    rlim_max : rlim_t;
end

```

TRLimit is the structure used by the kernel to return resource limit information in.

## 1.17 tsigaltstack

```

tsigaltstack = record
    ss_sp : pointer;
    ss_flags : LongInt;
    ss_size
        : LongInt;
end

```

Provide the location of an alternate signal handler stack.

## 1.18 TSigContext

```

TSigContext = record
    gs : Word;
    __gsh : Word;
    fs : Word;
    __fsh
        : Word;
    es : Word;
    __esh : Word;
    ds : Word;
    __dsh : Word
    ;
    edi : Cardinal;
    esi : Cardinal;
    ebp : Cardinal;
    esp : Cardinal
    ;
    ebx : Cardinal;
    edx : Cardinal;
    ecx : Cardinal;
    eax : Cardinal
    ;
    trapno : Cardinal;
    err : Cardinal;
    eip : Cardinal;
    cs :
    Word;
    __csh : Word;
    eflags : Cardinal;
    esp_at_signal : Cardinal
    ;
    ss : Word;
    __ssh : Word;

```

```

    fpstate : pfpstate;
    oldmask : Cardinal
;
    cr2 : Cardinal;
end

```

This type is CPU dependent. Cross-platform code should not use the contents of this record.

## 1.19 tsiginfo

```

tsiginfo = record
    si_signo : LongInt;
    si_errno : LongInt;
    si_code
    : LongInt;
    _sifields : record
    case LongInt of
    0: (
        _pad
        : Array[0..(SI_PAD_SIZE)-1] of LongInt;
    );
    1: (
        _kill : record
        _pid : pid_t;
        _uid : uid_t;
        end;
    );
    2: (
        _timer : record
        _timer1 : dword;
        _timer2 : dword;
        end;
    );
    3: (
        _rt : record
        _pid : pid_t;
        _uid
        : uid_t;
        _sigval : pointer;
        end;
    );
    4: (
        _sigchld
        : record
        _pid : pid_t;
        _uid : uid_t;
        _status :
        LongInt;
        _utime : clock_t;
        _stime : clock_t;
        end
    ;

```

```

);
5: (
  _sigfault : record
    _addr : pointer;
  end
;
);
6: (
  _sigpoll : record
    _band : LongInt;
    _fd
: LongInt;
  end;
);
end;
end

```

This type describes the signal that occurred.

## 1.20 TUcontext

```

TUcontext = record
  uc_flags : Cardinal;
  uc_link : Pucontext;
  uc_stack : tsigaltstack;
  uc_mcontext : TSigContext;
  uc_sigmask
: tsigset;
end

```

This structure is used to describe the user context in a program or thread. It is not used in this unit, but is provided for completeness.

## 1.21 UTimBuf

```

UTimBuf = record
  actime : time_t;
  modtime : time_t;
end

```

Record used in `fpUtime` ([224](#)) to set file access and modification times.

## 1.22 UtsName

```

UtsName = record
  Sysname : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Nodename : Array[0..UTSNAME_NODENAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Release

```

```
: Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;  
Version : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH  
-1] of Char;  
Machine : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;  
Domain  
: Array[0..UTSNAME_DOMAIN_LENGTH-1] of Charplatform;  
end
```

The elements of this record are null-terminated C style strings, you cannot access them directly. Note that the `Domain` field is a GNU extension, and may not be available on all platforms.

## Chapter 2

# Reference for unit 'Character'

### 2.1 Used units

Table 2.1: Used units by unit 'Character'

Name	Page
unicodedata	<a href="#">1982</a>

### 2.2 Overview

The `character` unit contains the `TCharacter` ([244](#)) class, which consists mainly of class functions. It should not be constructed, but its class methods can be used. All class methods also exist as regular methods.

Many routines depend on Unicode collation data to be present in the binary (or distributed on disc with the application. This data can be loaded using the routines in the `unicodedata` ([1982](#)) unit.. The FPC project distributes some Unicode collation data in `.bco` files which can be loaded using the `LoadCollation` ([1993](#)) routine from that unit.

### 2.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 2.3.1 Types

```
TCharacterOption = (coIgnoreInvalidSequence)
```

Table 2.2: Enumeration values for type `TCharacterOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>coIgnoreInvalidSequence</code>	Ignore invalid unicodecode sequences

`TCharacterOption` is used in the `toUpper` ([244](#)) and `toLower` ([243](#)) functions to control the behaviour of the function.

TCharacterOptions = Set of TCharacterOption

TCharacterOptions is the set of TCharacterOption, used in toUpper (244) and toLower (243) functions to control the behaviour of the function.

```
TUnicodeCategory = (ucUppercaseLetter, ucLowercaseLetter,  
    ucTitlecaseLetter, ucModifierLetter, ucOtherLetter,  
    ucNonSpacingMark, ucCombiningMark, ucEnclosingMark  
,  
    ucDecimalNumber, ucLetterNumber, ucOtherNumber  
,  
    ucConnectPunctuation, ucDashPunctuation,  
    ucOpenPunctuation, ucClosePunctuation,  
    ucInitialPunctuation, ucFinalPunctuation,  
    ucOtherPunctuation, ucMathSymbol, ucCurrencySymbol,  
    ucModifierSymbol, ucOtherSymbol, ucSpaceSeparator,  
    ucLineSeparator, ucParagraphSeparator, ucControl,  
    ucFormat, ucSurrogate, ucPrivateUse, ucUnassigned)
```

Table 2.3: Enumeration values for type TUnicodeCategory

Value	Explanation
ucClosePunctuation	Punctuation, close (Pe)
ucCombiningMark	Mark, spacing combining (Mc)
ucConnectPunctuation	Punctuation, connector (Pc)
ucControl	Other, control (Cc)
ucCurrencySymbol	Symbol, currency (Sc)
ucDashPunctuation	Punctuation, dash (Pd)
ucDecimalNumber	Number, decimal digit (Nd)
ucEnclosingMark	Mark, enclosing (Me)
ucFinalPunctuation	Punctuation, final quote (Pf, may behave like Ps or Pe depending on usage)
ucFormat	Other, format (Cf)
ucInitialPunctuation	Punctuation, initial quote (Pi, may behave like Ps or Pe depending on usage)
ucLetterNumber	Number, letter (Nl)
ucLineSeparator	Separator, line (Zl)
ucLowercaseLetter	Letter, lowercase (Ll)
ucMathSymbol	Symbol, math (Sm)
ucModifierLetter	Letter, modifier (Lm)
ucModifierSymbol	Symbol, modifier (Sk)
ucNonSpacingMark	Mark, nonspacing (Mn)
ucOpenPunctuation	Punctuation, open (Ps)
ucOtherLetter	Letter, other (Lo)
ucOtherNumber	Number, other (No)
ucOtherPunctuation	Punctuation, other (Po)
ucOtherSymbol	Symbol, other (So)
ucParagraphSeparator	Separator, paragraph (Zp)
ucPrivateUse	Other, private use (Co)
ucSpaceSeparator	Separator, space (Zs)
ucSurrogate	Other, surrogate (Cs)
ucTitlecaseLetter	Letter, titlecase (Lt)
ucUnassigned	Other, not assigned (including noncharacters) (Cn)
ucUppercaseLetter	Letter, uppercase (Lu)

This enumeration type contains the characterization of all possible Unicode characters. It is used in the `GetUnicodeCategory` (239) and `TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory` (246) functions.

`TUnicodeCategorySet = Set of TUnicodeCategory`

`TUnicodeCategorySet` is the set of `TUnicodeCategory` (237). It is used internally in the `TCharacter` (244) class.

## 2.4 Procedures and functions

### 2.4.1 ConvertFromUtf32

Synopsis: alias for `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32`

Declaration: `function ConvertFromUtf32 (AChar: UCS4Char) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConvertFromUtf32` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32` (245).

See also: `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32` (245)

### 2.4.2 ConvertToUtf32

Synopsis: alias for `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32`

Declaration: 

```
function ConvertToUtf32(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)
                        : UCS4Char; Overload
function ConvertToUtf32(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer;
                        out ACharLength: Integer) : UCS4Char; Overload
function ConvertToUtf32(const AHighSurrogate: UnicodeChar;
                        const ALowSurrogate: UnicodeChar) : UCS4Char
                        ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ConvertToUtf32` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` (245).

See also: `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` (245)

### 2.4.3 GetNumericValue

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.GetNumericValue`

Declaration: 

```
function GetNumericValue(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Double; Overload
function GetNumericValue(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)
                        : Double; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetNumericValue` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.GetNumericValue` (246).

See also: `TCharacter.GetNumericValue` (246)

### 2.4.4 GetUnicodeCategory

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory`

Declaration: 

```
function GetUnicodeCategory(AChar: UnicodeChar) : TUnicodeCategory
                        ; Overload
function GetUnicodeCategory(const AString: UnicodeString;
                        AIndex: Integer) : TUnicodeCategory
                        ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetUnicodeCategory` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory` (246).

See also: `TCharacter.GetUnicodeCategory` (246)



### 2.4.5 IsControl

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsControl`

Declaration: `function IsControl(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsControl(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsControl` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsControl` (246).

See also: `TCharacter.IsControl` (246)

### 2.4.6 IsDigit

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsDigit`

Declaration: `function IsDigit(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsDigit(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsDigit` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsDigit` (247).

See also: `TCharacter.IsDigit` (247)

### 2.4.7 IsHighSurrogate

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsHighSurrogate`

Declaration: `function IsHighSurrogate(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsHighSurrogate(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsHighSurrogate` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsHighSurrogate` (248)

See also: `TCharacter.IsHighSurrogate` (248)

### 2.4.8 IsLetter

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsLetter`

Declaration: `function IsLetter(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLetter(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLetter` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsLetter` (249)

See also: `TCharacter.IsLetter` (249)

### 2.4.9 IsLetterOrDigit

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit`

Declaration: `function IsLetterOrDigit (AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLetterOrDigit (const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLetterOrDigit` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit` ([249](#)).

See also: `TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit` ([249](#))

### 2.4.10 IsLower

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsLower`

Declaration: `function IsLower (AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLower (const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLower` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsLower` ([250](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsLower` ([250](#))

### 2.4.11 IsLowSurrogate

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsLowSurrogate`

Declaration: `function IsLowSurrogate (AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsLowSurrogate (const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLowSurrogate` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsLowSurrogate` ([248](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsLowSurrogate` ([248](#))

### 2.4.12 IsNumber

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsNumber`

Declaration: `function IsNumber (AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsNumber (const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsNumber` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsNumber` ([250](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsNumber` ([250](#))

### 2.4.13 IsPunctuation

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsPunctuation`

Declaration: `function IsPunctuation(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsPunctuation(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsPunctuation` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsPunctuation` ([251](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsPunctuation` ([251](#))

### 2.4.14 IsSeparator

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsSeparator`

Declaration: `function IsSeparator(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsSeparator(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSeparator` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsSeparator` ([251](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsSeparator` ([251](#))

### 2.4.15 IsSurrogate

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsSurrogate`

Declaration: `function IsSurrogate(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsSurrogate(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSurrogate` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsSurrogate` ([247](#)).

See also: `TCharacter.IsSurrogate` ([247](#))

### 2.4.16 IsSurrogatePair

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsSurrogatePair`

Declaration: `function IsSurrogatePair(const AHighSurrogate: UnicodeChar;`  
`const ALowSurrogate: UnicodeChar) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`  
`function IsSurrogatePair(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSurrogatePair` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsSurrogatePair` ([248](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsSurrogatePair` ([248](#))

### 2.4.17 IsSymbol

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsSymbol`

Declaration: `function IsSymbol(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsSymbol(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSymbol` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsSymbol` ([251](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsSymbol` ([251](#))

### 2.4.18 IsUpper

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsUpper`

Declaration: `function IsUpper(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsUpper(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsUpper` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsUpper` ([252](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsUpper` ([252](#))

### 2.4.19 IsWhiteSpace

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace`

Declaration: `function IsWhiteSpace(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsWhiteSpace(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsWhiteSpace` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace` ([252](#))

See also: `TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace` ([252](#))

### 2.4.20 ToLower

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.ToLower`

Declaration: `function ToLower(AChar: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar; Overload`  
`function ToLower(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToLower` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.ToLower` ([253](#))

See also: `TCharacter.ToLower` ([253](#))

### 2.4.21 ToUpper

Synopsis: Alias for `TCharacter.ToUpper`

Declaration: `function ToUpper(AChar: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar; Overload`  
`function ToUpper(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToUpper` is a shortcut for `TCharacter.ToUpper` ([253](#))

See also: `TCharacter.ToUpper` ([253](#))

## 2.5 TCharacter

### 2.5.1 Description

`TCharacter` is provided for Delphi compatibility. All it's class functions and methods are also available as regular functions.

### 2.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">245</a>	<code>ConvertFromUtf32</code>	Convert a UTF32 character to <code>UnicodeString</code>
<a href="#">245</a>	<code>ConvertToUtf32</code>	Convert a UTF16 character to a UTF32 character
<a href="#">244</a>	<code>Create</code>	Constructor (do not call)
<a href="#">246</a>	<code>GetNumericValue</code>	Get the numeric value of the character
<a href="#">246</a>	<code>GetUnicodeCategory</code>	Get the Unicode category of a character
<a href="#">246</a>	<code>IsControl</code>	Check whether a Unicode character is a Unicode control character
<a href="#">247</a>	<code>IsDigit</code>	Check whether a Unicode character is a digit
<a href="#">248</a>	<code>IsHighSurrogate</code>	Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate in the high range
<a href="#">249</a>	<code>IsLetter</code>	Check if a Unicode character is a letter.
<a href="#">249</a>	<code>IsLetterOrDigit</code>	Check if a Unicode character is a letter or digit
<a href="#">250</a>	<code>IsLower</code>	Check if a Unicode character is a lowercase letter
<a href="#">248</a>	<code>IsLowSurrogate</code>	Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate in the low range
<a href="#">250</a>	<code>IsNumber</code>	Check if a Unicode character is a number
<a href="#">251</a>	<code>IsPunctuation</code>	Check if a Unicode character is a punctuation character
<a href="#">251</a>	<code>IsSeparator</code>	Check if a Unicode character is a separator character
<a href="#">247</a>	<code>IsSurrogate</code>	Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate
<a href="#">248</a>	<code>IsSurrogatePair</code>	Check if a pair of characters is a set of high/low surrogate characters
<a href="#">251</a>	<code>IsSymbol</code>	Check if a Unicode character is a symbol character
<a href="#">252</a>	<code>IsUpper</code>	Check whether a Unicode character is an uppercase letter
<a href="#">252</a>	<code>IsWhiteSpace</code>	Check whether a Unicode character is a whitespace character
<a href="#">253</a>	<code>ToLower</code>	Convert a character or string to lowercase
<a href="#">253</a>	<code>ToUpper</code>	Convert a character or string to uppercase

### 2.5.3 TCharacter.Create

Synopsis: Constructor (do not call)

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is provided for completeness and Delphi compatibility, but should not be called in FPC code, it will raise an exception.

Errors: Any attempt to call `Create` will result in an exception being raised.

## 2.5.4 TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32

Synopsis: Convert a UTF32 character to UnicodeString

Declaration: `class function ConvertFromUtf32(AChar: UCS4Char) : UnicodeString; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32` converts a single UTF32 character `AChar` to a UTF16 string. This is the opposite of `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` (245).

The result is a string, since multiple UTF16 characters can be needed to encode a single UTF32 character.

Errors: If `AChar` is not in the valid range of UTF32 characters, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

See also: `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236), `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` (245)

## 2.5.5 TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32

Synopsis: Convert a UTF16 character to a UTF32 character

Declaration: `class function ConvertToUtf32(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer) : UCS4Char; Overload; Static`  
`class function ConvertToUtf32(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer; out ACharLength: Integer) : UCS4Char; Overload; Static`  
`class function ConvertToUtf32(const AHighSurrogate: UnicodeChar; const ALowSurrogate: UnicodeChar) : UCS4Char; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TCharacter.ConvertToUtf32` converts a UTF16-encoded Unicode character to a Unicode32 character. This is the opposite of `TCharacter.ConvertFromUtf32` (245). The function exists in several overloaded versions, to be able to present the Unicode character in one of 2 ways:

1. As a position `AIndex` (in `unicodechar` units) in a string `AString` to a Unicode32 character. The source is a string, since multiple UTF16 characters can be needed to encode a single UTF32 character. In this form, Optionally, the character length (1 or 2) can be returned in `ACharLength`.
2. As 2 UTF16 Unicode characters, representing the high and low surrogate pairs: `AHighSurrogate` and `ALowSurrogate`.

Errors: If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.



Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsControl` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucControl`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

**See also:** `GetUnicodeCategory` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsSurrogate` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsSurrogatePair` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLetterOrDigit` (249), `IsLower` (250), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSeparator` (251), `IsSymbol` (251), `IsUpper` (252), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)

### 2.5.9 TCharacter.IsDigit

**Synopsis:** Check whether a Unicode character is a digit

**Declaration:** `class function IsDigit(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`class function IsDigit(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsDigit` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucDecimalNumber`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsSurrogate` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsSurrogatePair` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLetterOrDigit` (249), `IsLower` (250), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSeparator` (251), `IsSymbol` (251), `IsUpper` (252), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)

### 2.5.10 TCharacter.IsSurrogate

**Synopsis:** Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate

**Declaration:** `class function IsSurrogate(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function IsSurrogate(const AString: UnicodeString;`  
`AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsSurrogate` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucSurrogate`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

**See also:** `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236), `IsControl` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLetterOrDigit` (249), `IsLower` (250), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSymbol` (251), `IsUpper` (252), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)



### 2.5.11 TCharacter.IsHighSurrogate

## Synopsis: Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate in the high range

```
Declaration: class function IsHighSurrogate(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
class function IsHighSurrogate(const AString: UnicodeString;
AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsHighSurrogate` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucSurrogate` and is in the high range of the surrogate characters (between `HIGH_SURROGATE_BEGIN` and `HIGH_SURROGATE_END`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentException` (236) exception is raised.

See also: [EArgumentException \(236\)](#), [IsControl \(246\)](#), [IsDigit \(247\)](#), [IsSurrogate \(247\)](#), [IsLowSurrogate \(248\)](#), [IsLetter \(249\)](#), [IsLetterOrDigit \(249\)](#), [IsLower \(250\)](#), [IsNumber \(250\)](#), [IsPunctuation \(251\)](#), [IsSymbol \(251\)](#), [IsUpper \(252\)](#), [IsWhiteSpace \(252\)](#)

### 2.5.12 TCharacter.IsLowSurrogate

### Synopsis: Check whether a Unicode character is a surrogate in the low range

```
Declaration: class function IsLowSurrogate(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
                ; Static
    class function IsLowSurrogate(const AString: UnicodeString;
                AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
                ; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsLowSurrogate` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucSurrogate` and is in the low range of the surrogate characters (between `LOW_SURROGATE_BEGIN` and `LOW_SURROGATE_END`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentException` (236) exception is raised.

See also: [EArgumentException \(236\)](#), [IsControl \(246\)](#), [IsDigit \(247\)](#), [IsSurrogate \(247\)](#), [IsHighSurrogate \(248\)](#), [IsLetter \(249\)](#), [IsLetterOrDigit \(249\)](#), [IsLower \(250\)](#), [IsNumber \(250\)](#), [IsPunctuation \(251\)](#), [IsSymbol \(251\)](#), [IsUpper \(252\)](#), [IsWhiteSpace \(252\)](#)

### 2.5.13 TCharacter.IsSurrogatePair

**Synopsis:** Check if a pair of characters is a set of high/low surrogate characters

[illegible]

```
class function IsSurrogatePair(const AString: UnicodeString;
                              AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsSurrogatePair` returns `True` if `AHighSurrogate` and `ALowSurrogate` form a valid Unicode surrogate pair. (`AHighSurrogate` is a high surrogate and `ALowSurrogate` a matching low surrogate) The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a pair of UTF16 encoded characters starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

See also: `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236), `IsControl` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsSurrogate` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLetterOrDigit` (249), `IsLower` (250), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSymbol` (251), `IsUpper` (252), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)

### 2.5.14 TCharacter.IsLetter

**Synopsis:** Check if a Unicode character is a letter.

```
Declaration: class function IsLetter(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
class function IsLetter(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)
: Boolean; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsLetter` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the letter categories (`ucUppercaseLetter`, `ucLowercaseLetter`, `ucTitlecaseLetter`, `ucModifierLetter`, `ucOtherLetter`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an

See also: `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236), `IsControl` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsSurrogate` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsSurrogatePair` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLetterOrDigit` (249), `IsLower` (250), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSymbol` (251), `IsUpper` (252), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)

### 2.5.15 TCharacter.IsLetterOrDigit

**Synopsis:** Check if a Unicode character is a letter or digit

```
Declaration: class function IsLetterOrDigit(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
class function IsLetterOrDigit(const AString: UnicodeString;
                              AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsLetterOrDigit` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the letter categories (`ucUppercaseLetter`, `ucLowercaseLetter`, `ucTitlecaseLetter`, `ucModifierLetter`, `ucOtherLetter`, `ucDecimalNumber`, `ucLetterNumber`). The character can be specified as

a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsSurrogate` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsSurrogatePair` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLower` (250), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSymbol` (251), `IsUpper` (252), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)

### 2.5.16 TCharacter.IsLower

**Synopsis:** Check if a Unicode character is a lowercase letter

**Declaration:** `class function IsLower(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`class function IsLower(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsLower` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucLowercaseLetter`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsSurrogate` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsSurrogatePair` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLetterOrDigit` (249), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSymbol` (251), `IsUpper` (252), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)

### 2.5.17 TCharacter.IsNumber

**Synopsis:** Check if a Unicode character is a number

**Declaration:** `class function IsNumber(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function IsNumber(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsNumber` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the number categories (`ucDecimalNumber`, `ucLetterNumber`, `ucOtherNumber`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsSurrogate` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsSurrogatePair` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLetterOrDigit` (249), `IsLower` (250), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSymbol` (251), `IsUpper` (252), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)

### 2.5.18 TCharacter.IsPunctuation

## Synopsis: Check if a Unicode character is a punctuation character

```
Declaration: class function IsPunctuation(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
              ; Static
      class function IsPunctuation(const AString: UnicodeString;
              AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
              ; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsPunctuation` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the punctuation categories (`ucConnectPunctuation`, `ucDashPunctuation`, `ucOpenPunctuation`, `ucClosePunctuation`, `ucInitialPunctuation`, `ucFinalPunctuation`, `ucOtherPunctuation`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentException` (236) exception is raised.

See also: [IsControl \(246\)](#), [IsDigit \(247\)](#), [IsSurrogate \(247\)](#), [IsHighSurrogate \(248\)](#), [IsLowSurrogate \(248\)](#), [IsSurrogatePair \(248\)](#), [IsLetter \(249\)](#), [IsLetterOrDigit \(249\)](#), [IsLower \(250\)](#), [IsNumber \(250\)](#), [IsSymbol \(251\)](#), [IsUpper \(252\)](#), [IsWhiteSpace \(252\)](#)

### 2.5.19 TCharacter.IsSeparator

## Synopsis: Check if a Unicode character is a separator character

```
Declaration: class function IsSeparator(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
                ; Static
        class function IsSeparator(const AString: UnicodeString;
                AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsSeparator` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the separator categories (`ucSpaceSeparator`, `ucLineSeparator`, `ucParagraphSeparator`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentException` (236) exception is raised.

See also: [IsControl \(246\)](#), [IsDigit \(247\)](#), [IsSurrogate \(247\)](#), [IsHighSurrogate \(248\)](#), [IsLowSurrogate \(248\)](#), [IsSurrogatePair \(248\)](#), [IsLetter \(249\)](#), [IsLetterOrDigit \(249\)](#), [IsLower \(250\)](#), [IsNumber \(250\)](#), [IsPunctuation \(251\)](#), [IsSymbol \(251\)](#), [IsUpper \(252\)](#), [IsWhiteSpace \(252\)](#)

### 2.5.20 TCharacter.IsSymbol

## Synopsis: Check if a Unicode character is a symbol character

```
Declaration: class function IsSymbol(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload
              ; Static
              class function IsSymbol(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)
              : Boolean; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsSymbol` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category that is one of the symbol categories (`ucMathSymbol`, `ucCurrencySymbol`, `ucModifierSymbol`, `ucOtherSymbol`). The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsSurrogate` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsSurrogatePair` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLetterOrDigit` (249), `IsLower` (250), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSeparator` (251), `IsUpper` (252), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)

### 2.5.21 TCharacter.IsUpper

**Synopsis:** Check whether a Unicode character is an uppercase letter

**Declaration:** `class function IsUpper(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`class function IsUpper(const AString: UnicodeString; AIndex: Integer)`  
`: Boolean; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsUpper` returns `True` if a Unicode character has category `ucUppercaseLetter`. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

**See also:** `IsControl` (246), `IsDigit` (247), `IsSurrogate` (247), `IsHighSurrogate` (248), `IsLowSurrogate` (248), `IsSurrogatePair` (248), `IsLetter` (249), `IsLetterOrDigit` (249), `IsLower` (250), `IsNumber` (250), `IsPunctuation` (251), `IsSeparator` (251), `IsSymbol` (251), `IsWhiteSpace` (252)

### 2.5.22 TCharacter.IsWhiteSpace

**Synopsis:** Check whether a Unicode character is a whitespace character

**Declaration:** `class function IsWhiteSpace(AChar: UnicodeChar) : Boolean; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function IsWhiteSpace(const AString: UnicodeString;`  
`AIndex: Integer) : Boolean; Overload`  
`; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsUpper` returns `True` if a Unicode character has is a whitespace character. It checks the character properties. The character can be specified as a UTF16 character `AChar` or a UTF16 encoded character starting at position `AIndex` in string `AString`.

**Errors:** If `AIndex` is not a valid character index in the string `AString`, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised. If the character at that position is not complete, an `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` (236) exception is raised.

See also: [IsControl \(246\)](#), [IsDigit \(247\)](#), [IsSurrogate \(247\)](#), [IsHighSurrogate \(248\)](#), [IsLowSurrogate \(248\)](#), [IsSurrogatePair \(248\)](#), [IsLetter \(249\)](#), [IsLetterOrDigit \(249\)](#), [IsLower \(250\)](#), [IsNumber \(250\)](#), [IsPunctuation \(251\)](#), [IsSeparator \(251\)](#), [IsSymbol \(251\)](#), [IsUpper \(252\)](#)

### 2.5.23 TCharacter.ToLower

**Synopsis:** Convert a character or string to lowercase

**Declaration:**

```
class function ToLower(AChar: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar; Overload
    ; Static
class function ToLower(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload; Static
class function ToLower(const AString: UnicodeString;
    const AOptions: TCharacterOptions) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload; Static
```

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToLower` converts the Unicode character `AChar` or string `AString` to lowercase. Options determines the behaviour of the conversion: if `AOptions` contains `coIgnoreInvalidSequence` then no exception will be raised when the string or character contains an invalid Unicode sequence. The default behaviour is to raise an `EArgumentException (236)` exception when this happens.

**Errors:** If an invalid character is encountered, an `EArgumentException (236)` exception is raised, unless `coIgnoreInvalidSequence` is specified in the options.

See also: [TCharacter.ToUpper \(253\)](#), [TCharacter.IsLower \(250\)](#), [TCharacter.IsUpper \(252\)](#)

### 2.5.24 TCharacter.ToUpper

**Synopsis:** Convert a character or string to uppercase

**Declaration:**

```
class function ToUpper(AChar: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar; Overload
    ; Static
class function ToUpper(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload; Static
class function ToUpper(const AString: UnicodeString;
    const AOptions: TCharacterOptions) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload; Static
```

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToUpper` converts the Unicode character `AChar` or string `AString` to uppercase. Options determines the behaviour of the conversion: if `AOptions` contains `coIgnoreInvalidSequence` then no exception will be raised when the string or character contains an invalid Unicode sequence. The default behaviour is to raise an `EArgumentException (236)` exception when this happens.

**Errors:** If an invalid character is encountered, an `EArgumentException (236)` exception is raised, unless `coIgnoreInvalidSequence` is specified in the options.

See also: [TCharacter.ToUpper \(253\)](#), [TCharacter.IsLower \(250\)](#), [TCharacter.IsUpper \(252\)](#)

## Chapter 3

# Reference for unit 'charset'

### 3.1 Overview

The charset unit can be used to load single-byte character set (code page) descriptions. It is used in the `fpwiderstring` (254) unit to add support for converting single-byte codepage strings to Unicode strings (and vice versa).

Data of a code page may be included using one of the ready-made units, or can be loaded (in a binary form) at runtime with the `loadbinaryunicodemapping` (256) function. The binary files have the `.bcm` extension and are produced by the `creumap` utility distributed with Free Pascal.

Pre-made units are available for the following codepages: `cp895` (254), `cp932` (254), `cp936` (254), `cp949` (254) and `cp950` (254).

### 3.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 3.2.1 Constants

```
BINARY_MAPPING_FILE_EXT = '.bcm'
```

`BINARY_MAPPING_FILE_EXT` contains the default extension of a file containing a binary-coded map.

#### 3.2.2 Types

```
preversecharmapping = ^treversecharmapping
```

Pointer to `treversecharmapping`

```
punicodecharmapping = ^tunicodecharmapping
```

Pointer to `tunicodecharmapping`

```
punicodemap = ^tunicodemap
```

Pointer to `tunicodemap`

```
tunicodechar = Word
```

`tunicodechar` is a type used to represent Unicode characters in this file, it should not be used for other Unicode routines.

```
tunicodecharmappingflag = (umf_noinfo, umf_leadbyte, umf_undefined,
    umf_unused)
```

Table 3.1: Enumeration values for type `tunicodecharmappingflag`

Value	Explanation
<code>umf_leadbyte</code>	Unicode character uses leading byte
<code>umf_noinfo</code>	No extra information about Unicode character
<code>umf_undefined</code>	Currently unused
<code>umf_unused</code>	Unused position in code page

`tunicodecharmappingflag` contains various Flags describing information about a Unicode character.

```
tunicodestring = ^tunicodechar
```

`tunicodestring` is a type used to represent Unicode strings in this file, it should not be used for other Unicode routines.

## 3.3 Procedures and functions

### 3.3.1 `getascii`

**Synopsis:** Convert Unicode character or string to single-byte character or string.

**Declaration:**

```
function getascii(c: tunicodechar; p: puniconemap) : string
function getascii(c: tunicodechar; p: puniconemap; ABuffer: PAnsiChar;
    ABufferLen: LongInt) : LongInt
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `getascii` converts a Unicode character `c` to one or more single-byte characters according to the map in `p`. The result can be a string containing up to 2 characters, or the number of characters copied to the buffer `ABuffer` with length `ABufferLen`.

**Errors:** If the character cannot be translated, ASCII character 63 is returned (or copied to the buffer). In the case of the buffer variant of the function, -1 is then returned. If the buffer is not large enough, -1 is returned.

See also: `getunicode` ([256](#))

### 3.3.2 `getmap`

**Synopsis:** Find a codepage map

**Declaration:**

```
function getmap(const s: string) : puniconemap
function getmap(cp: Word) : puniconemap
```

**Visibility:** default



**Description:** `getmap` looks in the registered codepage mappings and returns the mapping for the requested codepage. The codepage can be specified using a name `s` or a numerical identifier `cp`. The search is case sensitive.

**Errors:** if the requested map is not found, `Nil` is returned.

**See also:** `registermapping` (257), `registerbinarymapping` (257), `mappingavailable` (257)

### 3.3.3 getunicode

**Synopsis:** Map single-byte character to Unicode character.

**Declaration:**

```
function getunicode(c: Char; p: punichar) : tunicodechar
function getunicode(AAnsiStr: pansichar; AAnsiLen: LongInt;
                    AMap: punichar; ADest: tunicodestring) : LongInt
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `getunicode` will map a single character `c` to its Unicode equivalent for mapping `p`. If no equivalent can be found, 0 is returned.

The second form of `getunicode` will transform a string (specified using a pointer `AAnsiStr` to a buffer with length `AAnsiLen`) to a Unicode string using single byte codepage map `AMap`. It returns the number of Unicode characters. If `ADest` is `Nil` then just the number of characters is returned. If `ADest` is not `nil`, it must point to a buffer large enough to contain the Unicode string, and the converted string will be copied to it.

**Errors:** No checking on the validity of the buffers is done.

**See also:** `getasci` (255)

### 3.3.4 loadbinaryunicodemapping

**Synopsis:** Load binary single-byte codepage to Unicode map from file or memory

**Declaration:**

```
function loadbinaryunicodemapping(const directory: string;
                                const cpname: string) : punichar
                                ; Overload
function loadbinaryunicodemapping(const filename: string) : punichar
                                ; Overload
function loadbinaryunicodemapping(const AData: Pointer;
                                const ADataLength: Integer)
                                : punichar; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `loadbinaryunicodemapping` loads a binary description of a single-byte Unicode mapping.

The mapping can reside in a file, in which case the file to load can be specified using a filename `filename` or using a directory `directory` and codepage name `cpname`. In the latter case, a suffix consisting of `_le` or `_be` depending on the endianness of the current platform will be appended, and the filename extension is `.bcm`. Note that the file names may be case sensitive.

The data can also be loaded from a memory block `AData` with size `ADataLength`.

It will produce an in-memory map of the file. It returns a pointer to the map, or `Nil` if something went wrong. The resulting mapping can be registered using `registermapping` (257).

**Errors:** On error, `Nil` is returned.

**See also:** `loadunicodemapping` (257), `registermapping` (257)

### 3.3.5 loadunicodemapping

Synopsis: Load textual single-byte codepage to Unicode map from file

Declaration: `function loadunicodemapping(const cpname: string; const f: string;  
cp: Word) : puniconemap`

Visibility: default

Description: `loadunicodemapping` loads a text description of a single-byte Unicode mapping. It will analyse the textual description in file `f`, and produce an in-memory map of the file. It returns a pointer to the map, or `Nil` if something went wrong. The Unicode map name must be specified in `cpName`, and the numerical identifier in `cp`

The resulting mapping can be registered using `registermapping` (257).

Errors: On error, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `loadbinaryunicodemapping` (256), `registermapping` (257)

### 3.3.6 mappingavailable

Synopsis: Check if a mapping is available for a specified code page.

Declaration: `function mappingavailable(const s: string) : Boolean  
function mappingavailable(cp: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `mappingavailable` returns `True` if a mapping for a specified code page (using name `s` or numerical identifier `cp`) is available, or `False` if it is not.

See also: `registermapping` (257), `registerbinarymapping` (257), `getmap` (255)

### 3.3.7 registerbinarymapping

Synopsis: Load and register binary single-byte codepage to Unicode map from file

Declaration: `function registerbinarymapping(const directory: string;  
const cpname: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `registerbinarymapping` calls `loadbinaryunicodemapping` (256) using `directory` and `cpname` and registers the resulting mapping, if any was successfully loaded, using `registermapping` (257). It returns `True` if the operation was successful.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `loadbinaryunicodemapping` (256), `registermapping` (257)

### 3.3.8 registermapping

Synopsis: Register mapping

Declaration: `procedure registermapping(p: puniconemap)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** RegisterMapping registers mapping p in the registry of single-byte codepages. No attempt is made to avoid double registrations. In case of doubles, the last registered mapping will be used first.

See also: loadunicodemapping ([257](#)), loadbinaryunicodemapping ([256](#)), registerbinarymapping ([257](#))

### 3.4 treversecharmapping

```
treversecharmapping = packed record
  unicode : tunicodechar;
  char1
    : Byte;
  char2 : Byte;
end
```

treversecharmapping describes how a Unicode character can be created in terms of single-byte characters.

### 3.5 TSerializedMapHeader

```
TSerializedMapHeader = packed record
  cpName : string;
  cp : UInt16
  ;
  mapLength : UInt32;
  lastChar : Int32;
  reverseMapLength : UInt32
  ;
end
```

TSerializedMapHeader is a record describing the binary map data file. The contents of this record can be found at offset zero of a (.bcm) file containing a single-byte Unicode map.

### 3.6 tunicodecharmapping

```
tunicodecharmapping = packed record
  unicode : tunicodechar;
  flag
    : tunicodecharmappingflag;
  reserved : Byte;
end
```

tunicodecharmapping describes a Unicode character. An array of these mappings is built for each character in the single-byte character set,

### 3.7 tunicodemap

```
tunicodemap = record
  cpname : string;
```

```
cp : Word;
map : punicodecharmapping
;
lastchar : LongInt;
reversemap : preversecharmapping;
reversemaplength
: LongInt;
next : punicodemap;
internalmap : Boolean;
end
```

`tunicodemap` describes a complete mapping between a single-byte code page and a Unicode character set. It contains both a forward and backward mapping.

## Chapter 4

# Reference for unit 'Classes'

### 4.1 Used units

Table 4.1: Used units by unit 'Classes'

Name	Page
rtlconsts	??
sysutils	<a href="#">1571</a>
Types	<a href="#">1872</a>
TypeInfo	<a href="#">1907</a>

### 4.2 Overview

This documentation describes the FPC `classes` unit. The `Classes` unit contains basic classes for the Free Component Library (FCL):

- a `TList` ([402](#)) class for maintaining lists of pointers,
- `TStringList` ([456](#)) for lists of strings,
- `TCollection` ([352](#)) to manage collections of objects
- `TStream` ([441](#)) classes to support streaming.

Furthermore it introduces methods for object persistence, and classes that understand an owner-owned relationship, with automatic memory management.

### 4.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 4.3.1 Constants

`BITSHIFT` = 5

Used to calculate the size of a bits array

`dupAccept = Types.dupAccept`

Duplicate values can be added to the list.

`dupError = Types.dupError`

If an attempt is made to add a duplicate value to the list, an `EStringListError` (299) exception is raised.

`dupIgnore = Types.dupIgnore`

Duplicate values will not be added to the list, but no error will be triggered.

`FilerSignature : Array[1..4] of Char = 'TPF0'`

Constant that is found at the start of a binary stream containing a streamed component.

`fmCreate = $FF00`

`TFileStream.Create` (383) creates a new file if needed.

`fmOpenRead = 0`

`TFileStream.Create` (383) opens a file with read-only access.

`fmOpenReadWrite = 2`

`TFileStream.Create` (383) opens a file with read-write access.

`fmOpenWrite = 1`

`TFileStream.Create` (383) opens a file with write-only access.

`MASK = 31`

Bitmask with all bits on.

`MaxBitFlags = $7FFFFFFE0`

Maximum number of bits in `TBits` collection.

`MaxBitRec = MaxBitFlags div SizeOf(cardinal) * 8`

Maximum number of bit records in `TBits`.

`MaxListSize = Maxint div 16`

This constant sets the maximum number of elements in a `TList` (402).

`scAlt = $8000`

Indicates ALT key in a keyboard shortcut.

```
scCtrl = $4000
```

indicates CTRL key in a keyboard shortcut.

```
scNone = 0
```

Indicates no special key is pressed in a keyboard shortcut.

```
scShift = $2000
```

Indicates Shift key in a keyboard shortcut.

```
SGUIDObserved = '{663C603C-3F3C-4CC5-823C-AC8079F979E5}'
```

Observed interface GUID as a string

```
SGUIDObserver = '{BC7376EA-199C-4C2A-8684-F4805F0691CA}'
```

Observer interface GUID as a string

```
soFromBeginning = 0
```

Seek (443) starts relative to the stream origin.

```
soFromCurrent = 1
```

Seek (443) starts relative to the current position in the stream.

```
soFromEnd = 2
```

Seek (443) starts relative to the stream end.

```
toEOF = Char(0)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (422) when the end of the input stream was reached.

```
toFloat = Char(4)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (422) when a floating point value was found in the input stream.

```
toInteger = Char(3)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (422) when an integer was found in the input stream.

```
toString = Char(2)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (422) when a string was found in the input stream.

```
toSymbol = Char(1)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (422) when a symbol was found in the input stream.

```
toWString = Char(5)
```

Value returned by TParser.Token (422) when a widestring was found in the input stream.

### 4.3.2 Types

```
HMODULE = puint
```

FPC doesn't support modules yet, so this is a dummy type.

```
HRSRC = TFPResourceHandle deprecated
```

This type is provided for Delphi compatibility, it is used for resource streams.

```
PPointerList = ^TPointerList
```

Pointer to an array of pointers.

```
PStringItem = ^TStringItem
```

Pointer to a TStringItem (296) record.

```
PStringItemList = ^TStringItemList
```

Pointer to a TStringItemList (275).

```
TActiveXRegType = (axrComponentOnly, axrIncludeDescendants)
```

Table 4.2: Enumeration values for type TActiveXRegType

Value	Explanation
axrComponentOnly	
axrIncludeDescendants	

This type is provided for compatibility only, and is currently not used in Free Pascal.

```
TAlignment = (taLeftJustify, taRightJustify, taCenter)
```

Table 4.3: Enumeration values for type TAlignment

Value	Explanation
taCenter	Text is displayed centered.
taLeftJustify	Text is displayed aligned to the left
taRightJustify	Text is displayed aligned to the right.

The TAlignment type is used to specify the alignment of the text in controls that display a text.

```
TAncestorNotFoundEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
  const ComponentName: string;
  ComponentClass: TPersistentClass;
  var Component: TComponent) of object
```



This event occurs when an ancestor component cannot be found.

```
TBasicActionClass = Class of TBasicAction
```

TBasicAction (326) class reference.

```
TBasicActionLinkClass = Class of TBasicActionLink
```

TBasicActionLink (330) class reference.

```
TBiDiMode = (bdLeftToRight, bdRightToLeft, bdRightToLeftNoAlign,
  bdRightToLeftReadingOnly)
```

Table 4.4: Enumeration values for type TBiDiMode

Value	Explanation
bdLeftToRight	Texts read from left to right.
bdRightToLeft	Texts read from right to left.
bdRightToLeftNoAlign	Texts read from right to left, but not right-aligned
bdRightToLeftReadingOnly	Texts read from right to left

TBiDiMode describes bi-directional support for displaying texts.

```
Array = Array[0..MaxBitRec-1] of Cardinal
```

Array to store bits.

```
TCollectionItemClass = Class of TCollectionItem
```

TCollectionItemClass is used by the TCollection.ItemClass (358) property of TCollection (352) to identify the descendant class of TCollectionItem (360) which should be created and managed.

```
TCollectionNotification = (cnAdded, cnExtracting, cnDeleting)
```

Table 4.5: Enumeration values for type TCollectionNotification

Value	Explanation
cnAdded	An item is added to the collection.
cnDeleting	An item is deleted from the collection.
cnExtracting	An item is extracted from the collection.

TCollectionNotification is used in the TCollection (352) class to send notifications about changes to the collection.

```
TCollectionSortCompare = function(Item1: TCollectionItem;
  Item2: TCollectionItem) : Integer
```

`TCollectionSortCompare` is the prototype for a callback used in the `TCollection.Sort` (357) method. The procedure should compare `Item1` and `Item2` and return an integer:

**Result < 0** if `Item1` comes before `Item2`

**Result = 0** if `Item1` is at the same level as `Item2`

**Result > 0** if `Item1` comes after `Item2`

`TComponentClass = Class of TComponent`

The `TComponentClass` type is used when constructing `TComponent` (362) descendant instances and when registering components.

`TComponentName = String`

Names of components are of type `TComponentName`. By specifying a different type, the Object inspector can handle this property differently than a standard string property.

```
TComponentState= Set of (csLoading,csReading,csWriting,csDestroying
,
                        csDesigning,csAncestor,csUpdating,csFixups
,
                        csFreeNotification,csInline,csDesignInstance
)
```

Table 4.6: Enumeration values for type

Value	Explanation
<code>csAncestor</code>	The component is being streamed as part of a frame (?)
<code>csDesigning</code>	The component is being designed in an IDE.
<code>csDesignInstance</code>	??
<code>csDestroying</code>	The component is being destroyed.
<code>csFixups</code>	The component's references to other components are being fixed.
<code>csFreeNotification</code>	Indicates whether the component has freenotifications
<code>csInline</code>	Component is part of a frame (?).
<code>csLoading</code>	The component is being loaded from the stream.
<code>csReading</code>	Properties are being read from the stream.
<code>csUpdating</code>	The component is being updated.
<code>csWriting</code>	Properties are being written to the stream.

The following values are possible:

**csLoading** The component (and all child components) are being loaded from a stream. This means that a `TReader` (426) instance is reading properties from this and child components from a stream and is applying the values found in the stream to the properties.

**csReading** The properties of this component are being read from a stream. This means that a `TReader` (426) instance is reading properties from this component from a stream and is applying the values.

**csWriting** The properties of this component are being written to a stream. This means that a `TWriter` (506) instance is writing properties from this component to a stream.

**csDestroying** The component is being destroyed.

**csDesigning** The component is being designed in an IDE.

**csAncestor** The component has a design ancestor. This is used to record differences between a component and its design ancestor. For example a form `TForm2` inherited from a form `TForm1`. `TForm1` and all its components are copied to `TForm2`. `TForm2` and all its inherited components have `csAncestor` set. Only differences between `TForm1` and `TForm2` are stored in the stream of `TForm2`. The child components of a frame put onto a form have `csAncestor` too.

**csInline** The component is a nested top level component. For example a frame on a form. The children of the frame do not have `csInline`, unless they are other frames.

**csDesignInstance** The component is designed (`csDesigning`) and is a root component, meaning it has no owner (`Owner=nil`).

**csFixups** The component's references to other components are being fixed. While reading a component from stream, it can happen that the stream contains a component reference property with a name of a component that was not yet created and read from the stream. Such properties are saved, and the missing references are resolved when the complete stream was read. This resolving step is called fixing up references, and the `csFixups` flag is set during this step.

**csFreeNotification** This flag indicates that the component has free notifications registered with `TComponent.FreeNotification` (366)

```
TComponentStyle= Set of (csInheritable,csCheckPropAvail,csSubComponent
,
                        csTransient)
```

Table 4.7: Enumeration values for type

Value	Explanation
<code>csCheckPropAvail</code>	??
<code>csInheritable</code>	The component can be on inherited forms.
<code>csSubComponent</code>	Subcomponent - streamed as part of the owning component
<code>csTransient</code>	Transient component

Describes the style of the component.

```
TCreateComponentEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
  ComponentClass: TComponentClass;
  var Component: TComponent) of object
```

Event handler type, occurs when a component instance must be created when a component is read from a stream.

```
TDataModuleClass = Class of TDataModule
```

`TDataModuleClass` defines the class pointer for `TDataModule` (376).

`TDuplicates = Types.TDuplicates`

Type to describe what to do with duplicate values in a `TStringlist` (456).

`TExceptionClass = Class of Exception`

`TExceptionClass` is the class pointer for the `Exception` (1758) class, defined in the `SysUtils` (1571) unit.

`TFilerFlag = (ffInherited, ffChildPos, ffInline)`

Table 4.8: Enumeration values for type `TFilerFlag`

Value	Explanation
<code>ffChildPos</code>	The position of the child on it's parent is included.
<code>ffInherited</code>	Stored object is an inherited object.
<code>ffInline</code>	Used for frames.

The `TFiler` class uses this enumeration type to decide whether the streamed object was streamed as part of an inherited form or not.

`TFilerFlags = Set of TFilerFlag`

Set of `TFilerFlag` (267)

```
TFindAncestorEvent = procedure(Writer: TWriter; Component: TComponent
;
                                const Name: string;
    var Ancestor: TComponent;
    var RootAncestor: TComponent) of object
```

Event that occurs w

```
TFindComponentClassEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
    const ClassName: string;
    var ComponentClass: TComponentClass)
of object
```

Event handler type, occurs when a component class pointer must be found when reading a component from a stream.

`TFindGlobalComponent = function(const Name: string) : TComponent`

`TFindGlobalComponent` is a callback used to find a component in a global scope. It is used when the streaming system needs to find a component which is not part of the component which is currently being streamed. It should return the component with name `Name`, or `Nil` if none is found.

The variable `FindGlobalComponent` (284) is a callback of type `TFindGlobalComponent`. It can be set by the IDE when an unknown reference is found, to offer the designer to redirect the link to a new component.

```
TFindMethodEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader; const MethodName: string
;
                                var Address: CodePointer;
var Error: Boolean) of object
```

If a [TReader \(426\)](#) instance needs to locate a method and it doesn't find it in the streamed form, then the [OnFindMethod \(437\)](#) event handler will be called, if one is installed. This event can be assigned in order to use different locating methods. If a method is found, then its address should be returned in `Address`. The `Error` should be set to `True` if the reader should raise an exception after the event was handled. If it is set to `False` no exception will be raised, even if no method was found. On entry, `Error` will be set to `True`.

```
TFPObservedOperation = (ooChange, ooFree, ooAddItem, ooDeleteItem, ooCustom
)
```

Table 4.9: Enumeration values for type `TFPObservedOperation`

Value	Explanation
<code>ooAddItem</code>	An item is added to the observed object (generally a list).
<code>ooChange</code>	The observed object has changed.
<code>ooCustom</code>	Custom event.
<code>ooDeleteItem</code>	An item is deleted from the observed object (generally a list).
<code>ooFree</code>	The observed object is being freed.

`TFPObservedOperation` enumerates the possible operations that can be reported to an observer. Which of these operations is reported depends on the implementation of the observed object.

```
TGetChildProc = procedure(Child: TComponent) of object
```

Callback used when obtaining child components.

```
TGetStrProc = procedure(const S: string) of object
```

This event is used as a callback to retrieve string values. It is used, among other things, to pass along string properties in property editors.

```
THandle = System.THandle
```

This type is used as the handle for [THandleStream \(393\)](#) stream descendants

```
THelpContext = - MaxLongint..MaxLongint
```

Range type to specify help contexts.

```
THelpEvent = function(Command: Word; Data: LongInt;
var CallHelp: Boolean) : Boolean of object
```

This event is used for display of online help.

```
THelpType = (htKeyword, htContext)
```

Table 4.10: Enumeration values for type THelpType

Value	Explanation
htContext	Help type: Context ID help.
htKeyword	Help type: Keyword help

Enumeration type specifying the kind of help requested.

```
TIdentToInt = function(const Ident: string; var Int: LongInt) :
    Boolean
```

TIdentToInt is a callback used to look up identifiers (Ident) and return an integer value corresponding to this identifier (Int). The callback should return True if a value corresponding to integer Ident was found, False if not.

A callback of type TIdentToInt should be specified when an integer is registered using the RegisterIntegerConsts (292) call.

```
TInitComponentHandler = function(Instance: TComponent;
    RootAncestor: TClass) : Boolean
```

TInitComponentHandler is a callback type. It is used in the InitInheritedComponent (287) call to initialize a component. Callbacks of this type are registered with the RegisterInitComponentHandler (292) call.

```
TIntToIdent = function(Int: LongInt; var Ident: string) : Boolean
```

TIntToIdent is a callback used to look up integers (Ident) and return an identifier (Ident) that can be used to represent this integer value in an IDE. The callback should return True if a value corresponding to integer Ident was found, False if not.

A callback of type TIntToIdent should be specified when an integer is registered using the RegisterIntegerConsts (292) call.

```
TLeftRight = taLeftJustify..taRightJustify
```

TLeftRight is a subrange type based on the TAlignment (263) enumerated type. It contains only the left and right alignment constants.

```
TListAssignOp = (laCopy, laAnd, laOr, laXor, laSrcUnique, laDestUnique
    )
```

Table 4.11: Enumeration values for type TListAssignOp

Value	Explanation
laAnd	Remove all elements not first second list
laCopy	Clear list and copy all strings from second list.
laDestUnique	Keep all elements that exists only in list2
laOr	Add all elements from second (and optional third) list, eliminate duplicates
laSrcUnique	Just keep all elements that exist only in source list
laXor	Remove elements in second lists, Add all elements from second list not in first list

This type determines what operation `TList.Assign` (408) or `TFPList.assign` (389) performs.

```
TListCallback = Types.TListCallback
```

`TListCallback` is the method callback prototype for the function that is passed to the `TFPList.ForEachCall` (390) call. The `data` argument will be filled with all the pointers in the list (one per call) and the `arg` argument is the `Arg` argument passed to the `ForEachCall` call.

```
TListNotification = (lnAdded, lnExtracted, lnDeleted)
```

Table 4.12: Enumeration values for type `TListNotification`

Value	Explanation
<code>lnAdded</code>	List change notification: Element added to the list.
<code>lnDeleted</code>	List change notification: Element deleted from the list.
<code>lnExtracted</code>	List change notification: Element extracted from the list.

Kind of list notification event.

```
TListSortCompare = function(Item1: Pointer; Item2: Pointer) :
    Integer
```

Callback type for the list sort algorithm.

```
TListStaticCallback = Types.TListStaticCallback
```

`TListCallback` is the procedural callback prototype for the function that is passed to the `TFPList.ForEachCall` (390) call. The `data` argument will be filled with all the pointers in the list (one per call) and the `arg` argument is the `Arg` argument passed to the `ForEachCall` call.

```
TMissingNameValueSeparatorAction = (mnvaValue, mnvaName, mnvaEmpty,
    mnvaError)
```

Table 4.13: Enumeration values for type `TMissingNameValueSeparatorAction`

Value	Explanation
<code>mnvaEmpty</code>	
<code>mnvaError</code>	
<code>mnvaName</code>	
<code>mnvaValue</code>	

```
TMissingNameValueSeparatorActions = Set of
    TMissingNameValueSeparatorAction
```

```
TNotifyCallBack = procedure(Sender: TObject; AData: Pointer)
```

TNotifyCallback is used to notify about thread termination when using static callbacks. When called, the Sender will contain the thread which is terminating, and AData is the AData parameter passed to TThread.ExecuteInThread (494).

TNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject) of object

Most event handlers are implemented as a property of type TNotifyEvent. When this is set to a certain method of a class, when the event occurs, the method will be called, and the class that generated the event will pass itself along as the Sender argument.

TObjectTextEncoding = (oteDFM,oteLFM)

Table 4.14: Enumeration values for type TObjectTextEncoding

Value	Explanation
oteDFM	Characters are in DFM (Delphi) format: widechar encoded.
oteLFM	Characters are in LFM format: UTF-8 encoded.

TObjectTextEncoding is an enumerated type which denotes the encoding of non ASCII characters in an object stream file. It is needed for correct encoding when reading string values in the text stream.

TOperation = (opInsert,opRemove)

Table 4.15: Enumeration values for type TOperation

Value	Explanation
opInsert	A new component is being inserted in the child component list.
opRemove	A component is being removed from the child component list.

Operation of which a component is notified.

TPersistentClass = Class of TPersistent

TPersistentClass is the class reference type for the TPersistent (422) class.

TPoint = Types.TPoint

This record describes a coordinate. It is used to handle the Top (362) and Left (362) properties of TComponent (362).

X represents the X-Coordinate of the point described by the record. Y represents the Y-Coordinate of the point described by the record.

Array = Array[0..MaxListSize-1] of Pointer

Type for an Array of pointers.



```
TPropertyNotFoundEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
  Instance: TPersistent;
  var PropName: string;
  IsPath: Boolean;
                                var
  Handled: Boolean;
                                var Skip: Boolean
) of object
```

TPropertyNotFoundEvent is the prototype for the TReader.OnPropertyNotFound (436) event. Reader is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being read. Handled should be set to True if the handler redirected the unknown property successfully, and Skip should be set to True if the value should be skipped. IsPath determines whether the property refers to a sub-property.

```
TReadComponentsProc = procedure(Component: TComponent) of object
```

Callback type when reading a component from a stream

```
TReaderError = procedure(Reader: TReader; const Message: string;
  var Handled: Boolean) of object
```

Event handler type, called when an error occurs during the streaming.

```
TReaderProc = procedure(Reader: TReader) of object
```

The TReaderProc reader procedure is a callback procedure which will be used by a TPersistent (422) descendant to read user properties from a stream during the streaming process. The Reader argument is the writer object which can be used read properties from the stream.

```
TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
  const Instance: TPersistent;
  PropInfo: PPropInfo;
  var Content: string) of
  object
```

TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent is the prototype for the TReader.OnReadStringProperty (438) event handler. Reader is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being read. Content is the string as it was read from the stream.

```
TRect = Types.TRect
```

TRect describes a rectangle in space with its upper-left (in (Top,Left>)) and lower-right (in (Bottom,Right)) corners.

```
TReferenceNameEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader; var Name: string
  )
                                of object
```

Occurs when a named object needs to be looked up.

```
TSeekOrigin = (soBeginning, soCurrent, soEnd)
```

Table 4.16: Enumeration values for type TSeekOrigin

Value	Explanation
soBeginning	Offset is interpreted relative to the start of the stream.
soCurrent	Offset is interpreted relative to the current position in the stream.
soEnd	Offset is interpreted relative to the end of the stream.

Specifies the origin of the TStream.Seek (443) method.

```
TSetMethodPropertyEvent = procedure (Reader: TReader;
  Instance: TPersistent;
  PropInfo: PPropInfo;
  const TheMethodName: string;
  var Handled: Boolean) of object
```

TSetMethodPropertyEvent is the prototype for the TReader.OnSetMethodProperty (437) event. Reader is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being read, and TheMethodName is the name of the method that the property should be set to. Handled should be set to True if the handler set the property successfully.

```
TSetNameEvent = procedure (Reader: TReader; Component: TComponent;
  var Name: string) of object
```

Occurs when the reader needs to set a component's name.

```
TShiftState = Set of TShiftStateEnum
```

This type is used when describing a shortcut key or when describing what special keys are pressed on a keyboard when a key event is generated.

The set contains the special keys that can be used in combination with a 'normal' key.

```
TShiftStateEnum = (ssShift, ssAlt, ssCtrl, ssLeft, ssRight, ssMiddle,
  ssDouble, ssMeta, ssSuper, ssHyper, ssAltGr, ssCaps
  , ssNum,
  ssScroll, ssTriple, ssQuad, ssExtral, ssExtra2
  )
```

Table 4.17: Enumeration values for type TShiftStateEnum

Value	Explanation
ssAlt	Alt key pressed
ssAltGr	Alt-GR key pressed.
ssCaps	Caps lock key pressed
ssCtrl	Ctrl key pressed
ssDouble	Double mouse click.
ssExtra1	Extra key 1
ssExtra2	Extra key 2
ssHyper	Hyper key pressed.
ssLeft	Left mouse button pressed.
ssMeta	Meta key pressed.
ssMiddle	Middle mouse button pressed.
ssNum	Num lock key pressed
ssQuad	Quadruple mouse click
ssRight	Right mouse button pressed.
ssScroll	Scroll lock key pressed
ssShift	Shift key pressed
ssSuper	Super key pressed.
ssTriple	Triple mouse click

Keyboard/Mouse shift state enumerator

```
TShortCut = (Word) .. (Word)
```

Enumeration type to identify shortcut key combinations.

```
TSmallPoint = Types.TSmallPoint
```

Same as TPoint (271), only the X and Y ranges are limited to 2-byte integers instead of 4-byte integers.

```
TStreamOwnership = (soReference, soOwned)
```

Table 4.18: Enumeration values for type TStreamOwnership

Value	Explanation
soOwned	Stream is owned: it will be freed when the adapter is freed.
soReference	Stream is referenced only, it is not freed by the adapter

The ownership of a streamadapter determines what happens with the stream on which a TStreamAdapter (451) acts, when the adapter is freed.

```
TStreamProc = procedure(Stream: TStream) of object
```

Procedure type used in streaming.

```
Array = Array[0..MaxListSize] of TStringItem
```

This declaration is provided for Delphi compatibility, it is not used in Free Pascal.

```
TStringListSortCompare = function(List: TStringList; Index1: Integer
;
                                Index2: Integer) : Integer
```

Callback type used in stringlist compares.

```
TStringsClass = Class of TStrings
```

```
TStringsFilterMethod = function(const s: string) : Boolean of
object
```

```
TStringsForEachMethod = procedure(const CurrentValue: string) of
object
```

```
TStringsForEachMethodEx = procedure(const CurrentValue: string;
const index: Integer) of
object
```

```
TStringsForEachMethodExObj = procedure(const CurrentValue: string
;
                                const index: Integer;
                                Obj: TObject) of object
```

```
TStringsMapMethod = function(const s: string) : string of object
```

```
TStringsOption = (soStrictDelimiter, soWriteBOM, soTrailingLineBreak
,
                    soUseLocale, soPreserveBOM)
```

Table 4.19: Enumeration values for type TStringsOption

Value	Explanation
soPreserveBOM	If this option is enabled, TStrings.WriteBOM (483) is set in TStrings.LoadFromStream (472) or TStrings.SaveToStream (473).
soStrictDelimiter	See TStrings.StrictDelimiter (480).
soTrailingLineBreak	See TStrings.TrailingLineBreak (480).
soUseLocale	See TStrings.UseLocale (482).
soWriteBOM	See TStrings.WriteBOM (483).

TStringsOption is the type used in the TStrings.Options (479) set property, and it lists various strings options. It has the following values:

**soStrictDelimiter** See TStrings.StrictDelimiter (480).

**soWriteBOM** See `TStrings.WriteBOM` (483).

**soTrailingLineBreak** See `TStrings.TrailingLineBreak` (480).

**soUseLocale** See `TStrings.UseLocale` (482).

**soPreserveBOM** If this option is enabled, `TStrings.WriteBOM` (483) is set in `TStrings.LoadFromStream` (472) or `TStrings.LoadFromFile` (472) according to BOM presence in the loaded file.

`TStringsOptions` = Set of `TStringsOption`

`TStringsOptions` is the set type for enumeration `TStringsOption` (275).

```
TStringsReduceMethod = function(const s1: string; const s2: string
)
                        : string of object
```

`TStringsSortStyle` = (`sslNone`, `sslUser`, `sslAuto`)

Table 4.20: Enumeration values for type `TStringsSortStyle`

Value	Explanation
<code>sslAuto</code>	The <code>TStrings</code> instance keeps the strings sorted.
<code>sslNone</code>	The strings are not sorted
<code>sslUser</code>	The strings are kept sorted by the user.

`TStringsSortStyle` is the type used in the `TStringList.SortStyle` (461) property, and describes how the strings are sorted when the `TStringList.Sorted` (459) property is `True`. It has the following values:

**sslNone** The strings are not sorted

**sslUser** The strings are kept sorted by the user.

**sslAuto** The `TStrings` instance keeps the strings sorted.

`TStringsSortStyles` = Set of `TStringsSortStyle`

`TStringsSortStyles` is the set type for enumeration `TStringsSortStyle` (276).

`TSynchronizeProcVar` = procedure

Synchronize callback type

`TThreadExecuteCallBack` = procedure(`AData`: Pointer)

`TThreadExecuteCallBack` is the signature of the static procedure to be used when executing something in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (494) when no status reporting is required.

`TThreadExecuteHandler` = `TThreadMethod`

`TThreadExecuteHandler` is the signature of the method to be used when executing something in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (494) when no status reporting is required.

```
TThreadExecuteStatusCallBack = procedure (AData: Pointer;
    ReportStatus: TThreadReportStatus
)
```

`TThreadExecuteStatusCallBack` is the signature of a procedure to be used when executing something in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (494) when status reporting is required.

On entry in the method, `AData` is the `AData` parameter passed to `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (494). `ReportStatus` is passed to the method, and the threaded procedure can call `ReportStatus` at various stages to report about the status of the method: The status will be reported to the main thread using `TThread.synchronize` (491), so calls to `ReportStatus` will be blocked as long as the status was not reported.

```
TThreadExecuteStatusHandler = procedure
    (ReportStatus: TThreadReportStatus)
of object
```

`TThreadExecuteStatusHandler` is the signature of the method to be used when executing something in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (494) when status reporting is required.

On entry in the method, `ReportStatus` is passed to the method, and the method can call `ReportStatus` at various stages to report about the status of the method: The status will be reported to the main thread using `TThread.synchronize` (491), and calls `ReportStatus` will be blocked as long as the status was not reported.

```
TThreadMethod = procedure of object
```

Procedure variable used when synchronizing threads.

```
TThreadPriority = (tpIdle, tpLowest, tpLower, tpNormal, tpHigher, tpHighest
    ,
    tpTimeCritical)
```

Table 4.21: Enumeration values for type `TThreadPriority`

Value	Explanation
<code>tpHigher</code>	Thread runs at high priority
<code>tpHighest</code>	Thread runs at highest possible priority.
<code>tpIdle</code>	Thread only runs when other processes are idle.
<code>tpLower</code>	Thread runs at a lower priority.
<code>tpLowest</code>	Thread runs at the lowest priority.
<code>tpNormal</code>	Thread runs at normal process priority.
<code>tpTimeCritical</code>	Thread runs at realtime priority.

Enumeration specifying the priority at which a thread runs.

```
TThreadReportStatus = procedure (const status: string) of object
```

`TThreadReportStatus` is the callback prototype for the `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (494) method. This callback is used to report thread status to the main thread: the `Status` string can be used to report the status of thread execution.

```
TThreadStatusNotifyCallBack = procedure(Sender: TThread;
    AData: Pointer;
    const status: string)
```

`TThreadStatusNotifyCallBack` is the signature of the callback to be provided when executing a static procedure in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (494) when status reporting is required.

This callback will be called in the main thread. When called, it has the thread whose status is reported in `Sender`, `AData` is the `AData` parameter passed to `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (494). Finally, the status message in `ReportStatus` is passed to the callback.

Note that the thread reporting its status is blocked while the callback is being handled: The status is be reported to the main thread using `TThread.synchronize` (491).

```
TThreadStatusNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TThread;
    const status: string) of object
```

`TThreadStatusNotifyEvent` is the signature of the method to be provided when executing something in a thread using `TThread.ExecuteInThread` (494) when status reporting is required.

This event handler will be called in the main thread. When called, it has the thread whose status is reported in `Sender`, and the status message in `ReportStatus` is passed to the method.

Note that the thread reporting its status is blocked while the callback is being handled: The status is be reported to the main thread using `TThread.synchronize` (491).

```
TTopBottom = taAlignTop..taAlignBottom
```

```
TValueType = (vaNull, vaList, vaInt8, vaInt16, vaInt32, vaExtended, vaString
    ,
    vaIdent, vaFalse, vaTrue, vaBinary, vaSet, vaLString, vaNil
    ,
    vaCollection, vaSingle, vaCurrency, vaDate, vaWString
    , vaInt64,
    vaUTF8String, vaUString, vaQWord)
```

Table 4.22: Enumeration values for type TValueType

Value	Explanation
vaBinary	Binary data follows.
vaCollection	Collection follows
vaCurrency	Currency value follows
vaDate	Date value follows
vaExtended	Extended value.
vaFalse	Boolean False value.
vaIdent	Identifier.
vaInt16	Integer value, 16 bits long.
vaInt32	Integer value, 32 bits long.
vaInt64	Integer value, 64 bits long.
vaInt8	Integer value, 8 bits long.
vaList	Identifies the start of a list of values
vaLString	Ansistring data follows.
vaNil	Nil pointer.
vaNull	Empty value. Ends a list.
vaQWord	QWord (64-bit word) value
vaSet	Set data follows.
vaSingle	Single type follows.
vaString	String value.
vaTrue	Boolean True value.
vaUString	UnicodeString value
vaUTF8String	UTF8 encoded Unicode string.
vaWString	Widestring value follows.

Enumerated type used to identify the kind of streamed property

```
TVerticalAlignment = (taAlignTop, taAlignBottom, taVerticalCenter)
```

Table 4.23: Enumeration values for type TVerticalAlignment

Value	Explanation
taAlignBottom	
taAlignTop	
taVerticalCenter	

```
TWriteMethodPropertyEvent = procedure(Writer: TWriter;
  Instance: TPersistent;
  PropInfo: PPropInfo;
  const MethodValue: TMethod;
  const DefMethodValue: TMethod;
  var Handled: Boolean) of object
```

TWriteMethodPropertyEvent is the prototype for the TWriter.OnWriteMethodProperty (513) event. Writer is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being written, and MethodValue is the value of the method that the property was set to. DefMethodCodeValue is set to the default



value of the property (Nil or the parent value). Handled should be set to True if the handler set the property successfully.

`TWriterProc = procedure(Writer: TWriter) of object`

The `TWriterProc` writer procedure is a callback procedure which will be used by a `TPersistent` (422) descendant to write user properties from a stream during the streaming process. The `Writer` argument is the writer object which can be used write properties to the stream.

### 4.3.3 Variables

`AddDataModule : procedure(DataModule: TDataModule) of object`

`AddDataModule` can be set by an IDE or a streaming mechanism to receive notification when a new instance of a `TDataModule` (376) descendant is created.

`ApplicationHandleException : procedure(Sender: TObject) of object`

`ApplicationHandleException` can be set by an application object to handle any exceptions that may occur when a `TDataModule` (376) is created.

`ApplicationShowException : procedure(E: Exception) of object`

Unused.

`CreateVCLComObjectProc : procedure(Component: TComponent) = Nil`

`CreateVCLComObjectProc` is called by `TComponent` if it needs to create a `IVCLComObject` interface for itself (when the `ComObject` property is read). It passes itself as the `Component` parameter.

`GlobalNameSpace : IReadWriteSync`

An interface protecting the global namespace. Used when reading/writing to the global namespace list during streaming of forms.

`MainThreadID : TThreadID`

ID of main thread. Unused at this point.

`RegisterComponentsProc : procedure(const Page: string;  
ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass)`

`RegisterComponentsProc` can be set by an IDE to be notified when new components are being registered. Application programmers should never have to set `RegisterComponentsProc`

`RegisterNoIconProc : procedure(ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass  
)`

`RegisterNoIconProc` can be set by an IDE to be notified when new components are being registered, and which do not need an Icon in the component palette. Application programmers should never have to set `RegisterComponentsProc`

`RemoveDataModule : procedure(DataModule: TDataModule) of object`

`RemoveDataModule` can be set by an IDE or a streaming mechanism to receive notification when an instance of a `TDataModule` (376) descendant is freed.

`WakeMainThread : TNotifyEvent = Nil`

`WakeMainThread` is a handler, which, when set, is called by the `TThread.Synchronize` (491) routine to signal the main thread that a synchronization routine is waiting in the queue.

This handler is by default empty. An actual implementation depends on the main program logic (usually an event loop) and must be provided by the event loop logic: the event loop will normally call `CheckSynchronize` (282) at regular intervals. The `WakeMainThread` can make sure this happens as soon as possible.

While this handle should alert the main program thread that a thread is waiting for synchronization, the call is executed by the thread, and should therefore NOT synchronize the thread, but should somehow signal the main thread that a thread is waiting for synchronization. For example, by sending a message.

## 4.4 Procedures and functions

### 4.4.1 ActivateClassGroup

Synopsis: Activates a class group

Declaration: `function ActivateClassGroup(AClass: TPersistentClass) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `ActivateClassGroup` activates the group of classes to which `AClass` belongs. The function returns the class that was last used to activate the class group.

The class registration and streaming mechanism allows to organize the classes in groups. This allows an IDE to form groups of classes, which can be enabled or disabled. It is not needed at Run-Time.

Errors: If `AClass` does not belong to a class group, an exception is raised.

See also: `StartClassGroup` (294), `GroupDescendentsWith` (286), `ClassGroupOf` (283)

### 4.4.2 BeginGlobalLoading

Synopsis: Not yet implemented

Declaration: `procedure BeginGlobalLoading`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented

### 4.4.3 BinToHex

Synopsis: Convert a binary buffer to a hexadecimal string

Declaration: `procedure BinToHex(BinValue: PChar; HexValue: PChar;  
BinBufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `BinToHex` converts the byte values in `BinValue` to a string consisting of 2-character hexadecimal strings in `HexValue`. `BufSize` specifies the length of `BinValue`, which means that `HexValue` must have size  $2 * \text{BufSize}$ .

For example a buffer containing the byte values 255 and 0 will be converted to FF00.

**Errors:** No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `HexToBin` (286)

#### 4.4.4 Bounds

**Synopsis:** Returns a `TRect` structure with the bounding rect of the given location and size.

**Declaration:** `function Bounds(ALeft: Integer; ATop: Integer; AWidth: Integer; AHeight: Integer) : TRect`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Bounds` returns a `TRect` (272) record with the given origin (`ALeft`, `ATop`) and dimensions (`AWidth`, `AHeight`) filled in. The bottom-right corner is calculated by adding `AWidth` to `ALeft` and `AHeight` to `ATop`. As a result, a rectangle with width/height set to 0 is exactly 1 pixel.

See also: `Rect` (290)

#### 4.4.5 CheckSynchronize

**Synopsis:** Check whether there are any synchronize calls in the synchronize queue.

**Declaration:** `function CheckSynchronize(timeout: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CheckSynchronize` should be called regularly by the main application thread to handle any `TThread.Synchronize` (491) calls that may be waiting for execution by the main thread. If any such calls are waiting for execution by the main thread, they are executed at once, in the order that they were scheduled.

The function returns `True` if any `Synchronize` method was executed.

`TimeOut` is the maximum amount of time (in milliseconds) that the `CheckSynchronize` routine will wait for synchronisation requests to appear in the queue.

Calling this routine more often will ensure that synchronize requests are handled faster.

This routine may not be called from any thread other than the main thread, as it will execute the waiting requests.

Threads may call the `WakeMainThread` (281) to signal the main thread that the synchronisation queue contains items, and thus speed up the execution of the synchronize calls.

See also: `TThread.Synchronize` (491), `WakeMainThread` (281)

#### 4.4.6 ClassGroupOf

Synopsis: Returns the class group to which an instance or class belongs

Declaration: `function ClassGroupOf(AClass: TPersistentClass) : TPersistentClass`  
`function ClassGroupOf(Instance: TPersistent) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClassGroupOf` returns the class group to which `AClass` or `Instance` belongs.

Errors: The result is `Nil` if no matching class group is found.

See also: `StartClassGroup` ([294](#)), `ActivateClassGroup` ([281](#)), `GroupDescendentsWith` ([286](#))

#### 4.4.7 CollectionsEqual

Synopsis: Returns `True` if two collections are equal.

Declaration: `function CollectionsEqual(C1: TCollection; C2: TCollection) : Boolean`  
`function CollectionsEqual(C1: TCollection; C2: TCollection;`  
`Owner1: TComponent; Owner2: TComponent)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CollectionsEqual` is not yet implemented. It simply returns `False`

#### 4.4.8 EndGlobalLoading

Synopsis: Not yet implemented.

Declaration: `procedure EndGlobalLoading`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

#### 4.4.9 ExtractStrings

Synopsis: Split a string in different words.

Declaration: `function ExtractStrings(Separators: TSysCharSet;`  
`WhiteSpace: TSysCharSet; Content: PChar;`  
`Strings: TStrings; AddEmptyStrings: Boolean)`  
`: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractStrings` splits `Content` (a null-terminated string) into words, and adds the words to the `Strings` stringlist. The words are separated by `Separators` and any characters in `whitespace` are stripped from the strings. The space and CR/LF characters are always considered `whitespace`.

Errors: No length checking is performed on `Content`. If no null-termination character is present, an access violation may occur. Likewise, if `Strings` is not valid, an access violation may occur.

#### 4.4.10 FindClass

Synopsis: Returns the class pointer of a class with given name.

Declaration: `function FindClass(const AClassName: string) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindClass` searches for the class named `ClassName` in the list of registered classes and returns a class pointer to the definition. If no class with the given name could be found, an exception is raised.

The `GetClass` (285) function does not raise an exception when it does not find the class, but returns a `Nil` pointer instead.

See also: `RegisterClass` (291), `GetClass` (285)

#### 4.4.11 FindGlobalComponent

Synopsis: Callback used when a component must be found.

Declaration: `function FindGlobalComponent(const Name: string) : TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindGlobalComponent` is a callback of type `TFindGlobalComponent` (267). It can be set by the IDE when an unknown reference is found, to offer the user to redirect the link to a new component.

It is a callback used to find a component in a global scope. It is used when the streaming system needs to find a component which is not part of the component which is currently being streamed. It should return the component with name `Name`, or `Nil` if none is found.

See also: `TFindGlobalComponent` (267)

#### 4.4.12 FindIdentToInt

Synopsis: Return the string to integer converter for an integer type

Declaration: `function FindIdentToInt(AIntegerType: Pointer) : TIdentToInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindIdentToInt` returns the handler that handles the conversion of a string representation to an integer that can be used in component streaming, when `IdentToInt` (286) is called.

Errors: `Nil` is returned if no handler is registered for the given type.

#### 4.4.13 FindIntToIdent

Synopsis: Return the integer to string converter for an integer type

Declaration: `function FindIntToIdent(AIntegerType: Pointer) : TIntToIdent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindIntToIdent` returns the handler that handles the conversion of an integer to a string representation that can be used in component streaming, when `IntToIdent` (287) is called.

Errors: `Nil` is returned if no handler is registered for the given type.

See also: `IntToIdent` (287), `TIntToIdent` (269), `FindIdentToInt` (284)

#### 4.4.14 FindNestedComponent

Synopsis: Finds the component with name path starting at the indicated root component.

Declaration: `function FindNestedComponent (Root: TComponent; APath: string;  
CStyle: Boolean) : TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindNestedComponent` will descend through the list of owned components (starting at `Root`) and will return the component whose name path matches `NamePath`. As a path separator the characters `.` (dot), `-` (dash) and `>` (greater than) can be used

See also: `GlobalFixupReferences` ([286](#))

#### 4.4.15 GetClass

Synopsis: Returns the class pointer of a class with given name.

Declaration: `function GetClass (const AClassName: string) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetClass` searches for the class named `ClassName` in the list of registered classes and returns a class pointer to the definition. If no class with the given name could be found, `Nil` is returned.

The `FindClass` ([284](#)) function will raise an exception if it does not find the class.

See also: `RegisterClass` ([291](#)), `GetClass` ([285](#))

#### 4.4.16 GetFixupInstanceNames

Synopsis: Returns the names of elements that need to be resolved for the `root` component, whose reference contains `ReferenceRootName`

Declaration: `procedure GetFixupInstanceNames (Root: TComponent;  
const ReferenceRootName: string;  
Names: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFixupInstanceNames` examines the list of unresolved references and returns the names of classes that contain unresolved references to the `Root` component in the list `Names`. The list is not cleared prior to filling it.

See also: `GetFixupReferenceNames` ([285](#)), `GlobalFixupReferences` ([286](#))

#### 4.4.17 GetFixupReferenceNames

Synopsis: Returns the names of elements that need to be resolved for the `root` component.

Declaration: `procedure GetFixupReferenceNames (Root: TComponent; Names: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFixupReferenceNames` examines the list of unresolved references and returns the names of properties that must be resolved for the component `Root` in the list `Names`. The list is not cleared prior to filling it.

See also: `GetFixupInstanceNames` ([285](#)), `GlobalFixupReferences` ([286](#))

#### 4.4.18 GlobalFixupReferences

Synopsis: Called to resolve unresolved references after forms are loaded.

Declaration: `procedure GlobalFixupReferences`

Visibility: default

Description: `GlobalFixupReferences` runs over the list of unresolved references and tries to resolve them. This routine should under normal circumstances not be called in an application programmer's code. It is called automatically by the streaming system after a component has been instantiated and its properties read from a stream. It will attempt to resolve references to other global components.

See also: `GetFixupReferenceNames` (285), `GetFixupInstanceNames` (285)

#### 4.4.19 GroupDescendentsWith

Synopsis: Provided for Delphi compatibility

Declaration: `procedure GroupDescendentsWith(AClass: TPersistentClass;  
AClassGroup: TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GroupDescendentsWith` exists for Delphi compatibility, it doesn't actually do anything in Free Pascal.

See also: `RegisterClasses` (291)

#### 4.4.20 HexToBin

Synopsis: Convert a hexadecimal string to a binary buffer

Declaration: `function HexToBin(HexValue: PChar; BinValue: PChar; BinBufSize: Integer)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexToBin` scans the hexadecimal string representation in `HexValue` and transforms every 2 character hexadecimal number to a byte and stores it in `BinValue`. The buffer size is the size of the binary buffer. Scanning will stop if the size of the binary buffer is reached or when an invalid character is encountered. The return value is the number of stored bytes.

Errors: No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `BinToHex` (281)

#### 4.4.21 IdentToInt

Synopsis: Looks up an integer value in a integer-to-identifier map list.

Declaration: `function IdentToInt(const Ident: string; out Int: LongInt;  
const Map: Array of TIdentMapEntry) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IdentToInt` searches `Map` for an entry whose `Name` field matches `Ident` and returns the corresponding integer value in `Int`. If a match was found, the function returns `True`, otherwise, `False` is returned.

See also: `TIdentToInt` (269), `TIntToIdent` (269), `IntToIdent` (287), `TIdentMapEntry` (295)

#### 4.4.22 InitComponentRes

Synopsis: Provided for Delphi compatibility only

Declaration: `function InitComponentRes(const ResName: string; Instance: TComponent)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is provided for Delphi compatibility. It always returns `false`.

See also: [ReadComponentRes \(289\)](#)

#### 4.4.23 InitInheritedComponent

Synopsis: Initializes a component descending from `RootAncestor`

Declaration: `function InitInheritedComponent(Instance: TComponent;  
RootAncestor: TClass) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitInheritedComponent` should be called from a constructor to read properties of the component `Instance` from the streaming system. The `RootAncestor` class is the root class from which `Instance` is a descendant. This must be one of `TDataModule`, `TCustomForm` or `TFrame`. The function returns `True` if the properties were successfully read from a stream or `False` if some error occurred.

See also: [ReadComponentRes \(289\)](#), [ReadComponentResEx \(290\)](#), [ReadComponentResFile \(290\)](#)

#### 4.4.24 IntToIdent

Synopsis: Looks up an identifier for an integer value in a identifier-to-integer map list.

Declaration: `function IntToIdent(Int: LongInt; var Ident: string;  
const Map: Array of TIdentMapEntry) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToIdent` searches `Map` for an entry whose `Value` field matches `Int` and returns the corresponding identifier in `Ident`. If a match was found, the function returns `True`, otherwise, `False` is returned.

See also: [TIdentToInt \(269\)](#), [TIntToIdent \(269\)](#), [IdentToInt \(286\)](#), [TIdentMapEntry \(295\)](#)

#### 4.4.25 InvalidPoint

Synopsis: Check whether a point is invalid.

Declaration: `function InvalidPoint(X: Integer; Y: Integer) : Boolean  
function InvalidPoint(const At: TPoint) : Boolean  
function InvalidPoint(const At: TSmallPoint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InvalidPoint` returns `True` if the `X` and `Y` coordinates (of the `TPoint` or `TSmallPoint` records, if one of these versions is used) are `-1`.

See also: [TPoint \(271\)](#), [TSmallPoint \(274\)](#), [PointsEqual \(289\)](#)



#### 4.4.26 LineStart

Synopsis: Finds the start of a line in `Buffer` before `BufPos`.

Declaration: `function LineStart(Buffer: PChar; BufPos: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineStart` reversely scans `Buffer` starting at `BufPos` for a linefeed character. It returns a pointer at the linefeed character.

#### 4.4.27 NotifyGlobalLoading

Synopsis: Not yet implemented.

Declaration: `procedure NotifyGlobalLoading`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

#### 4.4.28 ObjectBinaryToText

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a binary to a text format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectBinaryToText(Input: TStream; Output: TStream;  
  Encoding: TObjectTextEncoding)  
          procedure ObjectBinaryToText(Input: TStream; Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ObjectBinaryToText` reads an object stream in binary format from `Input` and writes the object stream in text format to `Output`. No components are instantiated during the process, this is a pure conversion routine.

See also: `ObjectTextToBinary` ([288](#))

#### 4.4.29 ObjectResourceToText

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a (windows) resource to a text format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectResourceToText(Input: TStream; Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ObjectResourceToText` reads the resource header from the `Input` stream and then passes the streams to `ObjectBinaryToText` ([288](#))

See also: `ObjectBinaryToText` ([288](#)), `ObjectTextToResource` ([289](#))

#### 4.4.30 ObjectTextToBinary

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a text to a binary format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectTextToBinary(Input: TStream; Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts an object stream from a text to a binary format.

### 4.4.31 ObjectTextToResource

**Synopsis:** Converts an object stream from a text to a (windows) resource format.

**Declaration:** `procedure ObjectTextToResource (Input: TStream; Output: TStream)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ObjectTextToResource` reads an object stream in text format from `Input` and writes a resource stream to `Output`.

Note that for the current implementation of this method in Free Pascal, the output stream should support positioning. (e.g. it should not be a pipe)

See also: `ObjectBinaryToText` (288), `ObjectResourceToText` (288)

### 4.4.32 Point

**Synopsis:** Returns a `TPoint` record with the given coordinates.

**Declaration:** `function Point (AX: Integer; AY: Integer) : TPoint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Point` returns a `TPoint` (271) record with the given coordinates `AX` and `AY` filled in.

See also: `TPoint` (271), `SmallPoint` (294), `Rect` (290), `Bounds` (282)

### 4.4.33 PointsEqual

**Synopsis:** Check whether two `TPoint` variables are equal.

**Declaration:** `function PointsEqual (const P1: TPoint; const P2: TPoint) : Boolean`  
`function PointsEqual (const P1: TSmallPoint; const P2: TSmallPoint)`  
`: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PointsEqual` compares the `P1` and `P2` points (of type `TPoint` (271) or `TSmallPoint` (274)) and returns `True` if the X and Y coordinates of the points are equal, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `TPoint` (271), `TSmallPoint` (274), `InvalidPoint` (287)

### 4.4.34 ReadComponentRes

**Synopsis:** Read component properties from a resource in the current module

**Declaration:** `function ReadComponentRes (const ResName: string; Instance: TComponent)`  
`: TComponent`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReadComponentRes` will read the component's properties from the resource `ResName` in the current module (always program module). It returns `Nil` if the resource was not found. It returns `Instance` if the resource was found and successfully applied to the component.

**Errors:** The function may raise an exception if the stream contains wrong data.

See also: `ReadComponentResEx` (290)

#### 4.4.35 ReadComponentResEx

Synopsis: Read component properties from a resource in the specified module

Declaration: `function ReadComponentResEx(HInstance: THandle; const ResName: string)  
: TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadComponentRes` will locate the resource `ResName` in instance `HInstance` (the current program, normally). It returns `Nil` if the resource was not found. It returns an instantiated component with all properties found in the stream, applied. This requires that the component is registered using `registerclass`.

Errors: The function may raise an exception if the stream contains wrong data.

See also: `ReadComponentRes` ([289](#))

#### 4.4.36 ReadComponentResFile

Synopsis: Read component properties from a specified resource file

Declaration: `function ReadComponentResFile(const FileName: string;  
Instance: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadComponentResFile` starts reading properties for `Instance` from the file `FileName`. It creates a filestream from `FileName` and then calls the `TStream.ReadComponentRes` ([445](#)) method to read the state of the component from the stream.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponentRes` ([445](#)), `WriteComponentResFile` ([295](#))

#### 4.4.37 Rect

Synopsis: Returns a `TRect` record with the given coordinates.

Declaration: `function Rect(ALeft: Integer; ATop: Integer; ARight: Integer;  
ABottom: Integer) : TRect`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rect` returns a `TRect` ([272](#)) record with the given top-left (`ALeft`, `ATop`) and bottom-right (`ABottom`, `ARight`) corners filled in.

No checking is done to see whether the coordinates are valid.

See also: `TRect` ([272](#)), `Point` ([289](#)), `SmallPoint` ([294](#)), `Bounds` ([282](#))

#### 4.4.38 RedirectFixupReferences

Synopsis: Redirects references under the `root` object from `OldRootName` to `NewRootName`

Declaration: `procedure RedirectFixupReferences(Root: TComponent;  
const OldRootName: string;  
const NewRootName: string)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RedirectFixupReferences` examines the list of unresolved references and replaces references to a root object named `OldRootName` with references to root object `NewRootName`.

An application programmer should never need to call `RedirectFixupReferences`. This function can be used by an IDE to support redirection of broken component links.

See also: `RemoveFixupReferences` ([293](#))

#### 4.4.39 RegisterClass

**Synopsis:** Registers a class with the streaming system.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterClass (AClass: TPersistentClass)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterClass` registers the class `AClass` in the streaming system. After the class has been registered, it can be read from a stream when a reference to this class is encountered.

See also: `RegisterClasses` ([291](#)), `RegisterClassAlias` ([291](#)), `RegisterComponents` ([291](#)), `UnregisterClass` ([294](#))

#### 4.4.40 RegisterClassAlias

**Synopsis:** Registers a class alias with the streaming system.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterClassAlias (AClass: TPersistentClass;  
const Alias: string)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterClassAlias` registers a class alias in the streaming system. If a reference to a class `Alias` is encountered in a stream, then an instance of the class `AClass` will be created instead by the streaming code.

See also: `RegisterClass` ([291](#)), `RegisterClasses` ([291](#)), `RegisterComponents` ([291](#)), `UnregisterClass` ([294](#))

#### 4.4.41 RegisterClasses

**Synopsis:** Registers multiple classes with the streaming system.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterClasses (AClasses: Array of TPersistentClass)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterClasses` registers the specified classes `AClass` in the streaming system. After the classes have been registered, they can be read from a stream when a reference to this class is encountered.

See also: `RegisterClass` ([291](#)), `RegisterClassAlias` ([291](#)), `RegisterComponents` ([291](#)), `UnregisterClass` ([294](#))

#### 4.4.42 RegisterComponents

**Synopsis:** Registers components for the component palette.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterComponents (const Page: string;  
ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterComponents` registers the component on the appropriate component page. The component pages can be used by an IDE to display the known components so an application programmer may pick and use the components in his programs.

`RegisterComponents` inserts the component class in the correct component page. If the `RegisterComponentsProc` procedure is set, this is called as well. Note that this behaviour is different from Delphi's behaviour where an exception will be raised if the procedural variable is not set.

See also: `RegisterClass` (291), `RegisterNoIcon` (293)

#### 4.4.43 RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc

**Synopsis:** Register a component searching handler

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc`  
`(AFindGlobalComponent: TFindGlobalComponent)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` registers a global component search callback `AFindGlobalComponent`. When `FindGlobalComponent` (284) is called, then this callback will be used to search for the component.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `FindGlobalComponent` (284), `UnRegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` (295)

#### 4.4.44 RegisterInitComponentHandler

**Synopsis:** Register a component initialization handler

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterInitComponentHandler(ComponentClass: TComponentClass;`  
`Handler: TInitComponentHandler)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterInitComponentHandler` registers a component initialization handler `Handler` for the component `ComponentClass`. This handler will be used to initialize descendants of `ComponentClass` in the `InitInheritedComponent` (287) call.

See also: `InitInheritedComponent` (287), `TInitComponentHandler` (269)

#### 4.4.45 RegisterIntegerConsts

**Synopsis:** Registers some integer-to-identifier mappings.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterIntegerConsts(IntegerType: Pointer;`  
`IdentToIntFn: TIdentToInt;`  
`IntToIdentFn: TIntToIdent)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterIntegerConsts` registers a pair of callbacks to be used when an integer of type `IntegerType` must be mapped to an identifier (using `IntToIdentFn`) or when an identifier must be mapped to an integer (using `IdentToIntFn`).

Component programmers can use `RegisterIntegerConsts` to associate a series of identifier strings with integer values for a property. A necessary condition is that the property should have a

separate type declared using the `type integer` syntax. If a type of integer is defined in this way, an IDE can show symbolic names for the values of these properties.

The `IntegerType` should be a pointer to the type information of the integer type. The `IntToIdentFn` and `IdentToIntFn` are two callbacks that will be used when converting between the identifier and integer value and vice versa. The functions `IdentToInt` (286) and `IntToIdent` (287) can be used to implement these callback functions.

See also: `TIdentToInt` (269), `TIntToIdent` (269), `IdentToInt` (286), `IntToIdent` (287)

#### 4.4.46 RegisterNoIcon

Synopsis: Registers components that have no icon on the component palette.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterNoIcon(ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterNoIcon` performs the same function as `RegisterComponents` (291) except that it calls `RegisterNoIconProc` (280) instead of `RegisterComponentsProc` (280)

See also: `RegisterNoIconProc` (280), `RegisterComponents` (291)

#### 4.4.47 RegisterNonActiveX

Synopsis: Register non-activex component.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterNonActiveX  
(ComponentClasses: Array of TComponentClass;  
AxRegType: TActiveXRegType)`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented in Free Pascal

#### 4.4.48 RemoveFixupReferences

Synopsis: Removes references to rootname from the fixup list.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveFixupReferences(Root: TComponent;  
const RootName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemoveFixupReferences` examines the list of unresolved references and removes references to a root object pointing at `Root` or a root component named `RootName`.

An application programmer should never need to call `RemoveFixupReferences`. This function can be used by an IDE to support removal of broken component links.

See also: `RedirectFixupReferences` (290)

#### 4.4.49 RemoveFixups

Synopsis: Removes Instance from the fixup list.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveFixups (Instance: TPersistent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemoveFixups` removes all entries for component Instance from the list of unresolved references.

See also: [RedirectFixupReferences \(290\)](#), [RemoveFixupReferences \(293\)](#)

#### 4.4.50 SmallPoint

Synopsis: Returns a `TSmallPoint` record with the given coordinates.

Declaration: `function SmallPoint (AX: SmallInt; AY: SmallInt) : TSmallPoint`

Visibility: default

Description: `SmallPoint` returns a `TSmallPoint` (274) record with the given coordinates AX and AY filled in.

See also: [TSmallPoint \(274\)](#), [Point \(289\)](#), [Rect \(290\)](#), [Bounds \(282\)](#)

#### 4.4.51 StartClassGroup

Synopsis: Start new class group.

Declaration: `procedure StartClassGroup (AClass: TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartClassGroup` starts a new class group and adds AClass to it.

The class registration and streaming mechanism allows to organize the classes in groups. This allows an IDE to form groups of classes, which can be enabled or disabled. It is not needed at Run-Time.

See also: [GroupDescendentsWith \(286\)](#), [ActivateClassGroup \(281\)](#), [ClassGroupOf \(283\)](#)

#### 4.4.52 UnRegisterClass

Synopsis: Unregisters a class from the streaming system.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterClass (AClass: TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnregisterClass` removes the class AClass from the class definitions in the streaming system.

See also: [UnRegisterClasses \(294\)](#), [UnRegisterModuleClasses \(295\)](#), [RegisterClass \(291\)](#)

#### 4.4.53 UnRegisterClasses

Synopsis: Unregisters multiple classes from the streaming system.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterClasses (AClasses: Array of TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnregisterClasses` removes the classes in AClasses from the class definitions in the streaming system.

#### 4.4.54 UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc

Synopsis: Remove a previously registered component searching handler.

Declaration: `procedure UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc`  
`(AFindGlobalComponent: TFindGlobalComponent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` unregisters the previously registered global component search callback `AFindGlobalComponent`. After this call, when `FindGlobalComponent` (284) is called, then this callback will be no longer be used to search for the component.

Errors: None.

See also: `FindGlobalComponent` (284), `RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` (292)

#### 4.4.55 UnRegisterModuleClasses

Synopsis: Unregisters classes registered by module.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterModuleClasses (Module: HMODULE)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterModuleClasses` unregisters all classes which reside in the module `Module`. For each registered class, the definition pointer is checked to see whether it resides in the module, and if it does, the definition is removed.

See also: `UnRegisterClass` (294), `UnRegisterClasses` (294), `RegisterClasses` (291)

#### 4.4.56 WriteComponentResFile

Synopsis: Write component properties to a specified resource file

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponentResFile (const FileName: string;`  
`Instance: TComponent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteComponentResFile` starts writing properties of `Instance` to the file `FileName`. It creates a filestream from `FileName` and then calls `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (446) method to write the state of the component to the stream.

See also: `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (446), `ReadComponentResFile` (290)

### 4.5 TIdentMapEntry

```
TIdentMapEntry = record
  Value : Integer;
  Name  : string;
end
```

`TIdentMapEntry` is used internally by the `IdentToInt` (286) and `IntToIdent` (287) calls to store the mapping between the identifiers and the integers they represent.



## 4.6 TStringItem

```
TStringItem = record
  FString : string;
  FObject : TObject;
end
```

The `TStringItem` is used to store the string and object items in a `TStringList` (456) string list instance. It should never be used directly.

## 4.7 EBitsError

### 4.7.1 Description

When an index of a bit in a `TBits` (345) is out of the valid range (0 to `Count-1`) then a `EBitsError` exception is raised.

## 4.8 EClassNotFound

### 4.8.1 Description

When the streaming system needs to create a component, it looks for the class pointer (VMT) in the list of registered classes by its name. If this name is not found, then an `EClassNotFound` is raised.

See also: `EFileError` (297)

## 4.9 EComponentError

### 4.9.1 Description

When an error occurs during the registration of a component, or when naming a component, then a `EComponentError` is raised. Possible causes are:

1. An name with an illegal character was assigned to a component.
2. A component with the same name and owner already exists.
3. The component registration system isn't set up properly.

See also: `TComponent` (362), `TComponent.Name` (372)

## 4.10 EFCREATEError

### 4.10.1 Description

When the operating system reports an error during creation of a new file in the `FileStream Constructor` (383), a `EFCREATEError` is raised.

See also: `EStreamError` (299), `EOpenError` (297)

## 4.11 EFileError

### 4.11.1 Description

This class serves as an ancestor class for exceptions that are raised when an error occurs during component streaming. A `EFileError` exception is raised when a class is registered twice.

See also: `EStreamError` ([299](#)), `EReadError` ([298](#))

## 4.12 EOpenError

### 4.12.1 Description

When the operating system reports an error during the opening of a file in the `FileStream` Constructor ([383](#)), a `EOpenError` is raised.

See also: `EStreamError` ([299](#)), `ECreateError` ([296](#))

## 4.13 EInvalidImage

### 4.13.1 Description

This exception is not used by Free Pascal but is provided for Delphi compatibility.

## 4.14 EInvalidOperation

### 4.14.1 Description

This exception is not used in Free Pascal, it is defined for Delphi compatibility purposes only.

## 4.15 EListError

### 4.15.1 Description

If an error occurs in one of the `TList` ([402](#)) or `TStrings` ([461](#)) methods, then a `EListError` exception is raised. This can occur in one of the following cases:

1. There is not enough memory to expand the list.
2. The list tried to grow beyond its maximal capacity.
3. An attempt was made to reduce the capacity of the list below the current element count.
4. An attempt was made to set the list count to a negative value.
5. A non-existent element of the list was referenced. (i.e. the list index was out of bounds)
6. An attempt was made to move an item to a position outside the list's bounds.

See also: `TList` ([402](#)), `TStrings` ([461](#))

## 4.16 EMethodNotFound

### 4.16.1 Description

This exception is no longer used in the streaming system. This error is replaced by a `EReadError` (298).

See also: `EFileError` (297), `EReadError` (298)

## 4.17 EObserver

### 4.17.1 Description

`EObserver` is an error that is raised when an object is registered as an observer, and it does not implement the `IFPObserver` (302) interface.

See also: `IFPObserver` (302), `IFPObserver.FPOAttachObserver` (301)

## 4.18 EOutOfResources

### 4.18.1 Description

This exception is not used in Free Pascal, it is defined for Delphi compatibility purposes only.

## 4.19 EParserError

### 4.19.1 Description

When an error occurs during the parsing of a stream, an `EParserError` is raised. Usually this indicates that an invalid token was found on the input stream, or the token read from the stream wasn't the expected token.

See also: `TParser` (416)

## 4.20 EReadError

### 4.20.1 Description

If an error occurs when reading from a stream, a `EReadError` exception is raised. Possible causes for this are:

1. Not enough data is available when reading from a stream
2. The stream containing a component's data contains invalid data. this will occur only when reading a component from a stream.

See also: `EFileError` (297), `EWriteError` (300)

## 4.21 EResNotFound

### 4.21.1 Description

This exception is not used by Free Pascal but is provided for Delphi compatibility.

## 4.22 EStreamError

### 4.22.1 Description

An `EStreamError` is raised when an error occurs during reading from or writing to a stream: Possible causes are

1. Not enough data is available in the stream.
2. Trying to seek beyond the beginning or end of the stream.
3. Trying to set the capacity of a memory stream and no memory is available.
4. Trying to write to a read-only stream, such as a resource stream.
5. Trying to read from a write-only stream.

See also: `EFCREATEERROR` ([296](#))

## 4.23 EStringListError

### 4.23.1 Description

When an error occurs in one of the methods of `TStrings` ([461](#)) then an `EStringListError` is raised. This can have one of the following causes:

1. There is not enough memory to expand the list.
2. The list tried to grow beyond its maximal capacity.
3. A non-existent element of the list was referenced. (i.e. the list index was out of bounds)
4. An attempt was made to add a duplicate entry to a `TStringList` ([456](#)) when `TStringList.Duplicates` ([459](#)) is `False`.

See also: `TStrings` ([461](#)), `TStringList` ([456](#))

## 4.24 EThread

### 4.24.1 Description

Thread error exception.

## 4.25 EThreadDestroyCalled

### 4.25.1 Description

Exception raised when a thread is destroyed illegally.

## 4.26 EThreadExternalException

### 4.26.1 Description

`EThreadExternalException` is raised by for example `TThread.CheckTerminated` (492) and `TThread.SetReturnValue` (492) when the thread was not created by the Free Pascal program, but by an external code base (for example a DLL, or the calling application in a DLL).

See also: `TThread.CheckTerminated` (492), `TThread.SetReturnValue` (492)

## 4.27 EWriteError

### 4.27.1 Description

If an error occurs when writing to a stream, a `EWriteError` exception is raised. Possible causes for this are:

1. The stream doesn't allow writing.
2. An error occurred when writing a property to a stream.

See also: `EFileError` (297), `EReadError` (298)

## 4.28 IDesignerNotify

### 4.28.1 Description

`IDesignerNotify` is an interface that can be used to communicate changes to a designer mechanism. It offers functionality for detecting changes, and notifications when the component is destroyed.

### 4.28.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">300</a>	<code>Modified</code>	Notify that the component is modified.
<a href="#">300</a>	<code>Notification</code>	Notification of owner changes

### 4.28.3 IDesignerNotify.Modified

Synopsis: Notify that the component is modified.

Declaration: `procedure Modified`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Modified` can be used to notify a designer of changes, indicating that components should be streamed.

### 4.28.4 IDesignerNotify.Notification

Synopsis: Notification of owner changes

**Declaration:** `procedure Notification (AnObject: TPersistent; Operation: TOperation)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Notification` is the interface counterpart of `TComponent.Notification` (364) which is used to communicate adds to the components.

See also: `TComponent.Notification` (364)

## 4.29 IFPObserved

### 4.29.1 Description

`IFPObserved` is an interface which can be implemented in objects that must be observable. Objects that wish to observe the object can register themselves with the `FPOAttachObserver` (260) call, and must be detached using the `FPODetachObserver` (260) call.

This interface is not reference counted, so care must be taken that the `ooFree` message is sent with `FPONotifyObservers` (260) when the object is freed.

See also: `FPONotifyObservers` (260)

### 4.29.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">301</a>	<code>FPOAttachObserver</code>	Attach a new observer to the object
<a href="#">301</a>	<code>FPODetachObserver</code>	Remove an observer from the list of observers.
<a href="#">302</a>	<code>FPONotifyObservers</code>	Notify all observers

### 4.29.3 IFPObserved.FPOAttachObserver

**Synopsis:** Attach a new observer to the object

**Declaration:** `procedure FPOAttachObserver (AObserver: TObject)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FPOAttachObserver` must be called with an object instance `AObserver` that implements the `IFPObserver` (302) interface. The `FPOObservedChanged` (302) method of the interface will be called whenever `FPONotifyObservers` (260) is used to notify observers of a change. Objects implementing this interface should check that `AObserver` actually implements the `IFPObserver` (302) interface.

Do not make assumptions on how the interface behaves if `FPOAttachObserver` is called more than once with the same interface. It may add the object to the list of observers unconditionally (in which case it will be notified twice) or it may check that it is not yet in the list.

**Errors:** If `AObserver` does not implement the `IFPObserver` (302) interface, an `EObserver` (298) exception must be raised. No other errors should be raised, other than a possible out of memory error.

See also: `IFPObserver` (302), `FPOObservedChanged` (302), `FPONotifyObservers` (260)

### 4.29.4 IFPObserved.FPODetachObserver

**Synopsis:** Remove an observer from the list of observers.

**Declaration:** `procedure FPODetachObserver (AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FPODetachObserver` removes the `AObserver` object from the list of observers. If it was not in the list, then this is silently accepted. Once removed, it will no longer receive notifications when `FPOObservedChanged` (302) is called.

If the object was added more than once using `FPOAttachObserver` (260), then it depends on the implementor of the interface whether or `FPODetachObserver` must be called an equal number of times.

See also: `IFPOObserver` (302), `FPOObservedChanged` (302), `FPONotifyObservers` (260), `FPOAttachObserver` (260)

### 4.29.5 IFPObserved.FPONotifyObservers

Synopsis: Notify all observers

**Declaration:** `procedure FPONotifyObservers (ASender: TObject;  
  AOperation: TFPObservedOperation;  
  Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FPONotifyObservers` notifies all observers of the object that a change has occurred. It calls `FPOObservedChanged` (302) on the `IFPOObserver` (302) interface of all attached objects, and passes on `ASender` (normally this is `Self`), `AOperation` and `Data`. What `Data` is, depends on the implementor of the interface.

There is no guaranteed order in which the change notifications are delivered to the observers. This is an implementation-specific detail, which should not be relied upon in any way.

See also: `IFPOObserver` (302), `FPOObservedChanged` (302), `FPODetachObserver` (260), `FPOAttachObserver` (260)

## 4.30 IFPObserver

### 4.30.1 Description

`IFPObserver` is the interface an object must implement if it wishes to receive change notifications from another object. The presence of this interface will be checked when the object registers itself using `IFPObserver.FPOAttachObserver` (302). The change notifications arrive because the `FPOObservedChanged` (260) method is called by the observed object.

See also: `IFPObserved` (301), `FPOAttachObserver` (301)

### 4.30.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
302	<code>FPOObservedChanged</code>	Entry point for change notifications

### 4.30.3 IFPObserver.FPOObservedChanged

Synopsis: Entry point for change notifications

**Declaration:** `procedure FPObservedChanged (ASender: TObject;  
Operation: TFPObservedOperation;  
Data: Pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FPObservedChanged` is the method that is called by an observed object (`IFPObserved` (301)) when it calls `FPONotifyObservers` (302). The `Sender` is the object under observation, the `Operation` and `Data` are the parameters used in the call to `FPONotifyObservers`.

See also: `IFPObserved` (301), `FPONotifyObservers` (302)

## 4.31 IInterfaceComponentReference

### 4.31.1 Description

`IInterfaceComponentReference` is an interface to return the component that implements a given interface. It is implemented by `TComponent` (362).

See also: `TComponent` (362)

### 4.31.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
303	<code>GetComponent</code>	Return component instance

### 4.31.3 IInterfaceComponentReference.GetComponent

**Synopsis:** Return component instance

**Declaration:** `function GetComponent : TComponent`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetComponent` returns the component instance.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TComponent` (362)

## 4.32 IInterfaceList

### 4.32.1 Description

`IInterfaceList` is an interface for maintaining a list of interfaces, strongly resembling the standard `TList` (402) class. It offers the same list of public methods as `TList`, with the exception that it uses interfaces instead of pointers.

All interfaces in the list should descend from `IUnknown`.

More detailed descriptions of how the various methods behave can be found in the `TList` reference.

See also: `TList` (402)



**4.32.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">307</a>	Add	Add an interface to the list
<a href="#">306</a>	Clear	Clear the list
<a href="#">306</a>	Delete	Remove an interface from the list
<a href="#">306</a>	Exchange	Exchange 2 interfaces in the list
<a href="#">306</a>	First	Return the first non-empty interface in the list.
<a href="#">304</a>	Get	Retrieve an interface pointer from the list.
<a href="#">304</a>	GetCapacity	Return the capacity of the list.
<a href="#">305</a>	GetCount	Return the current number of elements in the list.
<a href="#">307</a>	IndexOf	Return the index of an interface.
<a href="#">307</a>	Insert	Insert an interface in the list.
<a href="#">307</a>	Last	Returns the last non-nil interface in the list.
<a href="#">308</a>	Lock	Lock the list
<a href="#">305</a>	Put	Write an item to the list
<a href="#">307</a>	Remove	Remove an interface from the list
<a href="#">305</a>	SetCapacity	Set the capacity of the list
<a href="#">305</a>	SetCount	Set the number of items in the list
<a href="#">308</a>	Unlock	Unlock the list.

**4.32.3 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">308</a>	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list
<a href="#">308</a>	Count	rw	Current number of elements in the list.
<a href="#">309</a>	Items	rw	Provides Index-based, sequential, access to the interfaces in the list.

**4.32.4 IList.Get**

Synopsis: Retrieve an interface pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Get(i: Integer) : IUnknown`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get` returns the interface pointer at position `i` in the list. It serves as the `Read` method for the `Items` ([309](#)) property.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Items` ([309](#)), `TList.Items` ([410](#))

**4.32.5 IList.GetCapacity**

Synopsis: Return the capacity of the list.

Declaration: `function GetCapacity : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCapacity` returns the current capacity of the list. It serves as the `Read` method for the `Capacity` ([308](#)) property.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Capacity` ([308](#)), `TList.Capacity` ([409](#))

#### 4.32.6 **InterfaceList.GetCount**

Synopsis: Return the current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `function GetCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: It serves as the `Read` method for the `Count` (308) property.

See also: `InterfaceList.Count` (308), `TList.Count` (410)

#### 4.32.7 **InterfaceList.Put**

Synopsis: Write an item to the list

Declaration: `procedure Put(i: Integer; item: IUnknown)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` writes the interface `Item` at position `I` in the list. It servers as the `Write` method for the `Items` (309) property.

See also: `InterfaceList.Items` (309), `TList.Items` (410)

#### 4.32.8 **InterfaceList.SetCapacity**

Synopsis: Set the capacity of the list

Declaration: `procedure SetCapacity(NewCapacity: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCapacity` sets the capacity of the list to `NewCapacity`. It serves as the `Write` method for the `Capacity` (308) property.

See also: `InterfaceList.Capacity` (308), `TList.Capacity` (409)

#### 4.32.9 **InterfaceList.SetCount**

Synopsis: Set the number of items in the list

Declaration: `procedure SetCount(NewCount: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCount` sets the count of the list to `NewCount`. It serves as the `Write` method for the `Capacity` (308)

See also: `InterfaceList.Count` (308), `TList.Count` (410)

#### 4.32.10 **IInterfaceList.Clear**

Synopsis: Clear the list

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: default

Description: `Clear` removes all interfaces from the list. All interfaces in the list will be cleared (i.e. their reference count will decrease with 1)

See also: `TList.Clear` ([405](#))

#### 4.32.11 **IInterfaceList.Delete**

Synopsis: Remove an interface from the list

Declaration: `procedure Delete(index: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delete` removes the interface at position `Index` from the list. It does this by explicitly clearing the interface and then removing the slot.

See also: `TList.Clear` ([405](#)), `IInterfaceList.Add` ([307](#)), `IInterfaceList.Delete` ([306](#)), `IInterfaceList.Insert` ([307](#))

#### 4.32.12 **IInterfaceList.Exchange**

Synopsis: Exchange 2 interfaces in the list

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(index1: Integer; index2: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exchange` exchanges 2 interfaces in the list at locations `index1` and `Index2`.

See also: `TList.Exchange` ([406](#)), `IInterfaceList.Add` ([307](#)), `IInterfaceList.Delete` ([306](#)), `IInterfaceList.Insert` ([307](#))

#### 4.32.13 **IInterfaceList.First**

Synopsis: Return the first non-empty interface in the list.

Declaration: `function First : IUnknown`

Visibility: default

Description: `First` returns the first non-empty interface in the list.

See also: `TList.First` ([407](#)), `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` ([307](#)), `IInterfaceList.Last` ([307](#))

**4.32.14 IList.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Return the index of an interface.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexOf` returns the location in the list of the interface `Item`. If there is no such interface in the list, then -1 is returned.

See also: `TList.IndexOf` (407), `IInterfaceList.First` (306), `IInterfaceList.Last` (307)

**4.32.15 IList.Add**

Synopsis: Add an interface to the list

Declaration: `function Add(item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Add` adds the interface `Item` to the list, and returns the position at which it has been added.

See also: `TList.Add` (405), `IInterfaceList.Insert` (307), `IInterfaceList.Delete` (306)

**4.32.16 IList.Insert**

Synopsis: Insert an interface in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(i: Integer; item: IUnknown)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts the interface `Item` in the list, at position `I`, shifting all items one position.

See also: `TList.Insert` (407), `IInterfaceList.Add` (307), `IInterfaceList.Delete` (306)

**4.32.17 IList.Last**

Synopsis: Returns the last non-nil interface in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : IUnknown`

Visibility: default

Description: `Last` returns the last non-empty interface in the list.

See also: `TList.Last` (408), `IInterfaceList.First` (306), `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` (307)

**4.32.18 IList.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove an interface from the list

Declaration: `function Remove(item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Remove` searches for the first occurrence of `Item` in the list and deletes it.

See also: `TList.Remove` (408), `IInterfaceList.Delete` (306), `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` (307)

**4.32.19 IList.Lock**

Synopsis: Lock the list

Declaration: `procedure Lock`

Visibility: default

Description: `Lock` locks the list. After a call to lock, the object list can only be accessed by the current thread, until `Unlock` (308) is called.

See also: `TInterfaceList.Lock` (399), `IInterfaceList.Unlock` (308)

**4.32.20 IList.Unlock**

Synopsis: Unlock the list.

Declaration: `procedure Unlock`

Visibility: default

Description: `Unlock` unlocks a locked list. After a call to `Unlock`, other threads are again able to access the list.

See also: `TInterfaceList.Unlock` (399), `IInterfaceList.Lock` (308)

**4.32.21 IList.Capacity**

Synopsis: Capacity of the list

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: default

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` is the maximum number of elements the list can hold without needing to reallocate memory for the list. It can be set to improve speed when adding a lot of items to the list.

See also: `TList.Capacity` (409), `IInterfaceList.Count` (308)

**4.32.22 IList.Count**

Synopsis: Current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: default

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the current number of elements in the list. Setting it to a larger number will allocate empty slots. Setting it to a smaller number will clear any interfaces that fall outside the new border.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Capacity` (308), `TList.Count` (410)

### 4.32.23 InterfaceList.Items

Synopsis: Provides Index-based, sequential, access to the interfaces in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[index: Integer]: IUnknown; default`

Visibility: default

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is the default property of the interface list and provides index-based array access to the interfaces in the list. Allowed values for `Index` include 0 to `Count-1`

See also: `InterfaceList.Count` (308), `TList.Items` (410)

## 4.33 IStreamPersist

### 4.33.1 Description

`IStreamPersist` defines an interface for object persistence streaming to a stream. Any class implementing this interface is expected to be able to save or load it's state from or to a stream.

See also: `TPersistent` (422), `TComponent` (362), `TStream` (441)

### 4.33.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">309</a>	<code>LoadFromStream</code>	Load persistent data from stream.
<a href="#">309</a>	<code>SaveToStream</code>	Save persistent data to stream.

### 4.33.3 IStreamPersist.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load persistent data from stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadFromStream` is the method called when the object should load it's state from the stream stream. It should be able to read the data which was written using the `SaveToStream` method.

See also: `TPersistent` (422), `TComponent` (362), `TStream` (441), `IStreamPersist.SaveToStream` (309)

### 4.33.4 IStreamPersist.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save persistent data to stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SaveFromStream` is the method called when the object should load it's state from the stream stream. The data written by this method should be readable by the `LoadFromStream` method.

See also: `TPersistent` (422), `TComponent` (362), `TStream` (441), `IStreamPersist.LoadFromStream` (309)

## 4.34 IStringsAdapter

### 4.34.1 Description

Is not yet supported in Free Pascal.

See also: TStrings ([461](#))

### 4.34.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">310</a>	ReferenceStrings	Add a reference to the indicated strings.
<a href="#">310</a>	ReleaseStrings	Release the reference to the strings.

### 4.34.3 IStringsAdapter.ReferenceStrings

Synopsis: Add a reference to the indicated strings.

Declaration: `procedure ReferenceStrings(S: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

### 4.34.4 IStringsAdapter.ReleaseStrings

Synopsis: Release the reference to the strings.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseStrings`

Visibility: default

## 4.35 IVCLComObject

### 4.35.1 Description

IVCLComObject is used by TComponent to implement the IUnknown interface used by COM automation servers. Partially, it is the translation to pascal of the IDispatch interface definition by Microsoft. If TComponent needs to return an IUnknown interface, it creates a IVCLComObject interface instead.

See also: TComponent.VCLComObject ([372](#))

### 4.35.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">312</a>	FreeOnRelease	Is called by TComponent.FreeOnRelease
<a href="#">311</a>	GetIDsOfNames	The IDispatch: GetIDsOfNames call for automation servers.
<a href="#">311</a>	GetTypeInfo	The IDispatch: GetTypeInfo call for automation servers
<a href="#">311</a>	GetTypeInfoCount	The IDispatch: GetTypeInfoCount call for automation servers
<a href="#">311</a>	Invoke	The IDispatch: Invoke call for automation servers.
<a href="#">312</a>	SafeCallException	This method can be invoked if an exception occurs during Invoke

### 4.35.3 IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfoCount

Synopsis: The IDispatch::TypeInfoCount call for automation servers

Declaration: `function TypeInfoCount(out Count: Integer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeInfoCount` must return in `Count` either 0 or 1 to indicate that it provides type information (1) or not (0).

Errors: On error, a nonzero (different from `S_OK`) return value must be returned.

See also: `IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfo` (311)

### 4.35.4 IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfo

Synopsis: The IDispatch::TypeInfo call for automation servers

Declaration: `function TypeInfo(Index: Integer; LocaleID: Integer; out TypeInfo) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeInfo` must return the `Index`-th entry in the type information of the component in `TypeInfo`. The `LocaleID` argument can be used to indicate the locale of the caller, as different type information can be returned depending on the locale.

Errors: On error, a nonzero (different from `S_OK`) return value must be returned.

See also: `IVCLComObject.GetTypeInfoCount` (311)

### 4.35.5 IVCLComObject.GetIDsOfNames

Synopsis: The IDispatch::GetIDsOfNames call for automation servers.

Declaration: `function GetIDsOfNames(const IID: TGUID; Names: Pointer; NameCount: Integer; LocaleID: Integer; DispIDs: Pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetIDsOfNames` must return in `DispIDs` the dispatch Ids for the `NameCount` names of the methods listed in `Names`. The `LocaleID` indicates the locale of the caller.

Errors: On error, a nonzero (different from `S_OK`) return value must be returned.

See also: `IVCLComObject.Invoke` (311)

### 4.35.6 IVCLComObject.Invoke

Synopsis: The IDispatch::Invoke call for automation servers.

Declaration: `function Invoke(DispID: Integer; const IID: TGUID; LocaleID: Integer; Flags: Word; var Params; VarResult: Pointer; ExcepInfo: Pointer; ArgErr: Pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `Invoke` must invoke the method designated by `DispID`. `IID` can be ignored. `LocaleID` is used by the caller to indicate the locale it is using. The `Flags` argument describes the context in which `Invoke` is called: a method, or property getter/setter. The `Params` argument contains the parameters to the call. The result should be in `VarResult`. On error, `ExcepInfo` and `ArgError` should be filled.

The function should return 0 (`S_OK`) if all went well.

See also: `IVCLComObject.GetIDsOfNames` ([311](#))

#### 4.35.7 `IVCLComObject.SafeCallException`

**Synopsis:** This method can be invoked if an exception occurs during `Invoke`

**Declaration:** `function SafeCallException(ExceptObject: TObject;  
ExceptAddr: CodePointer) : HRESULT`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SafeCallException` is called to handle an exception during invocation of the `Invoke` method. The `TObject` implementation of this method returns `E_UNEXPECTED`.

See also: `IVCLComObject.Invoke` ([311](#))

#### 4.35.8 `IVCLComObject.FreeOnRelease`

**Synopsis:** Is called by `TComponent.FreeOnRelease`

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeOnRelease`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FreeOnRelease` is called by `TComponent.FreeOnRelease` ([366](#)) for the `IVCLComObject` interface implemented by `TComponent`.

See also: `TComponent.FreeOnRelease` ([366](#))

### 4.36 `TAbstractObjectReader`

#### 4.36.1 Description

The Free Pascal streaming mechanism, while compatible with Delphi's mechanism, differs from it in the sense that the streaming mechanism uses a driver class when streaming components. The `TAbstractObjectReader` class is the base driver class for reading property values from streams. It consists entirely of abstract methods, which must be implemented by descendant classes.

Different streaming mechanisms can be implemented by making a descendant from `TAbstractObjectReader`. The `TBinaryObjectReader` ([332](#)) class is such a descendant class, which streams data in binary (Delphi compatible) format.

All methods described in this class, must be implemented by descendant classes.

See also: `TBinaryObjectReader` ([332](#))

### 4.36.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">314</a>	<code>BeginComponent</code>	Marks the reading of a new component.
<a href="#">314</a>	<code>BeginProperty</code>	Marks the reading of a property value.
<a href="#">314</a>	<code>BeginRootComponent</code>	Starts the reading of the root component.
<a href="#">313</a>	<code>FlushBuffer</code>	Flush the buffer
<a href="#">313</a>	<code>NextValue</code>	Returns the type of the next value in the stream.
<a href="#">315</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read raw data from stream
<a href="#">315</a>	<code>ReadBinary</code>	Read binary data from the stream.
<a href="#">316</a>	<code>ReadCurrency</code>	Read a currency value from the stream.
<a href="#">316</a>	<code>ReadDate</code>	Read a date value from the stream.
<a href="#">315</a>	<code>ReadFloat</code>	Read a float value from the stream.
<a href="#">316</a>	<code>ReadIdent</code>	Read an identifier from the stream.
<a href="#">317</a>	<code>ReadInt16</code>	Read a 16-bit integer from the stream.
<a href="#">318</a>	<code>ReadInt32</code>	Read a 32-bit integer from the stream.
<a href="#">318</a>	<code>ReadInt64</code>	Read a 64-bit integer from the stream.
<a href="#">317</a>	<code>ReadInt8</code>	Read an 8-bit integer from the stream.
<a href="#">318</a>	<code>ReadSet</code>	Reads a set from the stream.
<a href="#">319</a>	<code>ReadSignature</code>	Read resource signature
<a href="#">315</a>	<code>ReadSingle</code>	Read a single (real-type) value from the stream.
<a href="#">319</a>	<code>ReadStr</code>	Read a shortstring from the stream
<a href="#">319</a>	<code>ReadString</code>	Read a string of type <code>StringType</code> from the stream.
<a href="#">320</a>	<code>ReadUnicodeString</code>	Read a Unicode string value
<a href="#">314</a>	<code>ReadValue</code>	Reads the type of the next value.
<a href="#">319</a>	<code>ReadWideString</code>	Read a widestring value from the stream.
<a href="#">320</a>	<code>SkipComponent</code>	Skip till the end of the component.
<a href="#">320</a>	<code>SkipValue</code>	Skip the current value.

### 4.36.3 TAbstractObjectReader.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flush the buffer

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TFile.FlushBuffer` ([381](#))

### 4.36.4 TAbstractObjectReader.NextValue

Synopsis: Returns the type of the next value in the stream.

Declaration: `function NextValue : TValueType; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This function should return the type of the next value in the stream, but should not read the actual value, i.e. the stream position should not be altered by this method. This is used to 'peek' in the stream what value is next.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue` ([314](#))

### 4.36.5 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue

Synopsis: Reads the type of the next value.

Declaration: `function ReadValue : TValueType; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: This function returns the type of the next value in the stream and reads it. i.e. after the call to this method, the stream is positioned to read the value of the type returned by this function.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue` (314)

### 4.36.6 TAbstractObjectReader.BeginRootComponent

Synopsis: Starts the reading of the root component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginRootComponent; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: This function can be used to initialize the driver class for reading a component. It is called once at the beginning of the read process, and is immediately followed by a call to `BeginComponent` (314).

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent` (314)

### 4.36.7 TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent

Synopsis: Marks the reading of a new component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent (var Flags: TFileFlags;  
var AChildPos: Integer;  
var CompClassName: string; var CompName: string)  
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: This method is called when the streaming process wants to start reading a new component.

Descendant classes should override this method to read the start of a component new component definition and return the needed arguments. `Flags` should be filled with any flags that were found at the component definition, as well as `AChildPos`. The `CompClassName` should be filled with the class name of the streamed component, and the `CompName` argument should be filled with the name of the component.

`AChildPos` is used to change the ordering in which components appear below their parent component when streaming descendant forms.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginRootComponent` (314), `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginProperty` (314)

### 4.36.8 TAbstractObjectReader.BeginProperty

Synopsis: Marks the reading of a property value.

Declaration: `function BeginProperty : string; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `BeginProperty` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a new property. The return value of the function is the name of the property which can be read from the stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent` (314)

### 4.36.9 TAbstractObjectReader.Read

Synopsis: Read raw data from stream

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to read raw data from the component stream. This should not be used in production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TBinaryObjectReader.Read` (335), `TReader.Read` (430)

### 4.36.10 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadBinary

Synopsis: Read binary data from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadBinary(const DestData: TMemoryStream); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadBinary` is called when binary data should be read from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a value type of `vaBinary`). The data should be stored in the `DestData` memory stream by descendant classes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

### 4.36.11 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a float value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadFloat : Extended; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadFloat` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a float from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a value type of `vaExtended`). The return value should be the value of the float.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

### 4.36.12 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle

Synopsis: Read a single (real-type) value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ReadSingle` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a single-type float from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a value type of `vaSingle`). The return value should be the value of the float.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

### 4.36.13 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate

**Synopsis:** Read a date value from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function ReadDate : TDateTime; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadDate` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a date/time value from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a value type of `vaDate`). The return value should be the date/time value. (This value can be stored as a float, since `TDateTime` is nothing but a float.)

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

### 4.36.14 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadCurrency

**Synopsis:** Read a currency value from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function ReadCurrency : Currency; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadCurrency` is called when a currency-typed value should be read from the stream. This abstract method should be overridden by descendant classes, and should return the currency value read from the stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteCurrency` (324)

### 4.36.15 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent

**Synopsis:** Read an identifier from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function ReadIdent(ValueType: TValueType) : string; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadIdent` is called by the streaming system if it expects to read an identifier of type `ValueType` from the stream after a call to `ReadValue` (314) returned `vaIdent`. The identifier should be returned as a string. Note that in some cases the identifier does not actually have to be in the stream. The following table indicates which identifiers must actually be read:

Table 4.24:

ValueType	Expected value
valIdent	Read from stream.
vaNil	'Nil'. This does not have to be read from the stream.
vaFalse	'False'. This does not have to be read from the stream.
vaTrue	'True'. This does not have to be read from the stream.
vaNull	'Null'. This does not have to be read from the stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

#### 4.36.16 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8

Synopsis: Read an 8-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt8 : ShortInt; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInt8` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an integer value with a size of 8 bits (1 byte) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a `valuetype` of `vaInt8`). The return value is the value if the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 1 byte.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

#### 4.36.17 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16

Synopsis: Read a 16-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt16 : SmallInt; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInt16` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an integer value with a size of 16 bits (2 bytes) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a `valuetype` of `vaInt16`). The return value is the value if the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 2 bytes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

**4.36.18 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32**

Synopsis: Read a 32-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt32 : LongInt; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadInt32` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an integer value with a size of 32 bits (4 bytes) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a valuetype of `vaInt32`). The return value is the value of the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 4 bytes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

**4.36.19 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64**

Synopsis: Read a 64-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt64 : Int64; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadInt64` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an `int64` value with a size of 64 bits (8 bytes) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a valuetype of `vaInt64`). The return value is the value if the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 8 bytes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

**4.36.20 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSet**

Synopsis: Reads a set from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSet (EnumType: Pointer) : Integer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This method is called by the streaming system if it expects to read a set from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a valuetype of `vaSet`). The return value is the contents of the set, encoded in a bitmask the following way:

For each (enumerated) value in the set, the bit corresponding to the ordinal value of the enumerated value should be set. i.e. as `1 shl ord(value)`.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

**4.36.21 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature**

Synopsis: Read resource signature

Declaration: `procedure ReadSignature; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSignature` reads the streaming signature from a stream. This method does nothing. It must be implemented by descendents that have a signature header in the stream. (such as binary streams)

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` (321), `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSignature` (337)

**4.36.22 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadStr**

Synopsis: Read a shortstring from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadStr : string; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadStr` is called by the streaming system if it expects to read a string from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a valuetype of `vaLString`, `vaWstring` or `vaString`). The return value is the string.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (319)

**4.36.23 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadString**

Synopsis: Read a string of type `StringType` from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadString(StringType: TValueType) : string; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadStr` is called by the streaming system if it expects to read a string from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (314) returned a valuetype of `vaLString`, `vaWstring` or `vaString`). The return value is the string.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (315), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (316), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (317), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (318), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (318), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (319)

**4.36.24 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString**

Synopsis: Read a widestring value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadWideString : WideString; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public



**Description:** `ReadWideString` is called when a widestring-typed value should be read from the stream. This abstract method should be overridden by descendant classes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString` ([325](#))

### 4.36.25 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString

**Synopsis:** Read a Unicode string value

**Declaration:** `function ReadUnicodeString : UnicodeString; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadUnicodeString` should read a `UnicodeString` value from the stream. (indicated by the `vaUString` value type).

Descendant classes should override this method to actually read a `UnicodeString` value.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUnicodeString` ([344](#)), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString` ([319](#))

### 4.36.26 TAbstractObjectReader.SkipComponent

**Synopsis:** Skip till the end of the component.

**Declaration:** `procedure SkipComponent (SkipComponentInfos: Boolean); Virtual  
; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** This method is used to skip the entire declaration of a component in the stream. Each descendant of `TAbstractObjectReader` should implement this in a way which is optimal for the implemented stream format.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent` ([314](#)), `TAbstractObjectReader.SkipValue` ([320](#))

### 4.36.27 TAbstractObjectReader.SkipValue

**Synopsis:** Skip the current value.

**Declaration:** `procedure SkipValue; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `SkipValue` should be used when skipping a value in the stream; The method should determine the type of the value which should be skipped by itself, if this is necessary.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.SkipComponent` ([320](#))

## 4.37 TAbstractObjectWriter

### 4.37.1 Description

Abstract driver class for writing component data.

**4.37.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">321</a>	BeginCollection	Start writing a collection.
<a href="#">321</a>	BeginComponent	Start writing a component
<a href="#">322</a>	BeginList	Start writing a list.
<a href="#">322</a>	BeginProperty	Start writing a property
<a href="#">322</a>	EndList	Mark the end of a list.
<a href="#">322</a>	EndProperty	Marks the end of writing of a property.
<a href="#">322</a>	FlushBuffer	Flush the buffer
<a href="#">323</a>	Write	Write raw data to stream
<a href="#">323</a>	WriteBinary	Writes binary data to the stream.
<a href="#">323</a>	WriteBoolean	Writes a boolean value to the stream.
<a href="#">324</a>	WriteCurrency	Write a currency value to the stream
<a href="#">324</a>	WriteDate	Writes a date type to the stream.
<a href="#">323</a>	WriteFloat	Writes a float value to the stream.
<a href="#">324</a>	WriteIdent	Writes an identifier to the stream.
<a href="#">324</a>	WriteInteger	Writes an integer value to the stream
<a href="#">325</a>	WriteMethodName	Writes a methodname to the stream.
<a href="#">325</a>	WriteSet	Writes a set value to the stream.
<a href="#">321</a>	WriteSignature	Write stream signature to the stream
<a href="#">323</a>	WriteSingle	Writes a single-type real value to the stream.
<a href="#">325</a>	WriteString	Writes a string value to the stream.
<a href="#">324</a>	WriteUInt64	Write an unsigned 64-bit integer
<a href="#">326</a>	WriteUnicodeString	Write a Unicode string to the stream.
<a href="#">325</a>	WriteVariant	Write a variant to the stream
<a href="#">325</a>	WriteWideString	Write a widestring value to the stream

**4.37.3 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginCollection**

Synopsis: Start writing a collection.

Declaration: `procedure BeginCollection; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Start writing a collection.

**4.37.4 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginComponent**

Synopsis: Start writing a component

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent (Component: TComponent; Flags: TFileFlags;  
ChildPos: Integer); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Start writing a component

**4.37.5 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature**

Synopsis: Write stream signature to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteSignature; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `WriteSignature` writes the streaming signature to a stream. This method does nothing, it must be implemented by descendents that have a signature header in the stream. (such as binary streams)

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature` ([319](#)), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([340](#))

#### 4.37.6 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginList

**Synopsis:** Start writing a list.

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginList; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Start writing a list.

#### 4.37.7 TAbstractObjectWriter.EndList

**Synopsis:** Mark the end of a list.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndList; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Mark the end of a list.

#### 4.37.8 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginProperty

**Synopsis:** Start writing a property

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginProperty(const PropName: string); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Start writing a property

#### 4.37.9 TAbstractObjectWriter.EndProperty

**Synopsis:** Marks the end of writing of a property.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndProperty; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Marks the end of writing of a property.

#### 4.37.10 TAbstractObjectWriter.FlushBuffer

**Synopsis:** Flush the buffer

**Declaration:** `procedure FlushBuffer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TFile.FlushBuffer` ([381](#)), `TWriter.FlushBuffer` ([508](#))

#### **4.37.11 TAbstractObjectWriter.Write**

Synopsis: Write raw data to stream

Declaration: `procedure Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to write raw data to the component stream. This should not be used in new production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.Write` ([342](#)), `TWriter.Write` ([508](#))

#### **4.37.12 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBinary**

Synopsis: Writes binary data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBinary(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes binary data to the stream.

#### **4.37.13 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBoolean**

Synopsis: Writes a boolean value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBoolean(Value: Boolean); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a boolean value to the stream.

#### **4.37.14 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteFloat**

Synopsis: Writes a float value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Value: Extended); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a float value to the stream.

#### **4.37.15 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSingle**

Synopsis: Writes a single-type real value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(const Value: Single); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a single-type real value to the stream.

**4.37.16 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteDate**

Synopsis: Writes a date type to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Value: TDateTime); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a date type to the stream.

**4.37.17 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteCurrency**

Synopsis: Write a currency value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteCurrency(const Value: Currency); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteCurrency` is called when a currency-typed value should be written to the stream. This abstract method should be overridden by descendant classes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadCurrency` ([316](#))

**4.37.18 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteIdent**

Synopsis: Writes an identifier to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteIdent(const Ident: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes an identifier to the stream.

**4.37.19 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteInteger**

Synopsis: Writes an integer value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(Value: Int64); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes an integer value to the stream

**4.37.20 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUInt64**

Synopsis: Write an unsigned 64-bit integer

Declaration: `procedure WriteUInt64(Value: QWord); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteUInt64` must be overridden by descendant classes to write a 64-bit unsigned `Value` (value type `QWord`) to the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUInt64` ([343](#))

#### 4.37.21 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteVariant

Synopsis: Write a variant to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteVariant(const Value: Variant); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteVariant` must be overridden by descendant classes to write a simple variant type to the stream. `WriteVariant` does not write arrays types or complex types.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteVariant` ([345](#))

#### 4.37.22 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteMethodName

Synopsis: Writes a methodname to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteMethodName(const Name: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a methodname to the stream.

#### 4.37.23 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSet

Synopsis: Writes a set value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSet(Value: LongInt; SetType: Pointer); Virtual  
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a set value to the stream.

#### 4.37.24 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Writes a string value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Value: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a string value to the stream.

#### 4.37.25 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteWideString

Synopsis: Write a widestring value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteWideString(const Value: WideString); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteCurrency` is called when a currency-typed value should be written to the stream. This abstract method should be overridden by descendant classes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString` ([319](#))

### 4.37.26 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUnicodeString

Synopsis: Write a Unicode string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteUnicodeString(const Value: UnicodeString); Virtual  
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteUnicodeString` must be overridden by descendant classes to write a `unicodestring` (value type `vaUString`) value to the stream.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUnicodeString` (344)

## 4.38 TBasicAction

### 4.38.1 Description

`TBasicAction` implements a basic action class from which all actions are derived. It introduces all basic methods of an action, and implements functionality to maintain a list of clients, i.e. components that are connected with this action.

Do not create instances of `TBasicAction`. Instead, create a descendant class and create an instance of this class instead.

See also: `TBasicActionLink` (330), `TComponent` (362)

### 4.38.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">326</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of a <code>TBasicAction</code> (326) class.
<a href="#">327</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the action.
<a href="#">328</a>	<code>Execute</code>	Triggers the <code>OnExecute</code> (329) event
<a href="#">328</a>	<code>ExecuteTarget</code>	Executes the action on the <code>Target</code> object
<a href="#">327</a>	<code>HandlesTarget</code>	Determines whether <code>Target</code> can be handled by this action
<a href="#">328</a>	<code>RegisterChanges</code>	Registers a new client with the action.
<a href="#">328</a>	<code>UnRegisterChanges</code>	Unregisters a client from the list of clients
<a href="#">329</a>	<code>Update</code>	Triggers the <code>OnUpdate</code> (330) event
<a href="#">327</a>	<code>UpdateTarget</code>	Notify client controls when the action updates itself.

### 4.38.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">329</a>	<code>ActionComponent</code>	rw	Returns the component that initiated the action.
<a href="#">329</a>	<code>OnExecute</code>	rw	Event triggered when the action executes.
<a href="#">330</a>	<code>OnUpdate</code>	rw	Event triggered when the application is idle.

### 4.38.4 TBasicAction.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a `TBasicAction` (326) class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Create` calls the inherited constructor, and then initializes the list of clients controls (or action lists).

Under normal circumstances it should not be necessary to create a `TBasicAction` descendant manually, actions are created in an IDE.

See also: `Destroy` ([327](#)), `AssignClient` ([326](#))

#### 4.38.5 `TBasicAction.Destroy`

**Synopsis:** Destroys the action.

**Declaration:** `destructor Destroy; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` cleans up the list of client controls and then calls the inherited destructor.

An application programmer should not call `Destroy` directly; Instead `Free` should be called, if it needs to be called at all. Normally the controlling class (e.g. a `TActionList`) will destroy the action.

#### 4.38.6 `TBasicAction.HandlesTarget`

**Synopsis:** Determines whether `Target` can be handled by this action

**Declaration:** `function HandlesTarget(Target: TObject) : Boolean; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `HandlesTarget` returns `True` if `Target` is a valid client for this action and if so, if it is in a suitable state to execute the action. An application programmer should never need to call `HandlesTarget` directly, it will be called by the action itself when needed.

In `TBasicAction` this method is empty; descendant classes should override this method to implement appropriate checks.

See also: `UpdateTarget` ([327](#)), `ExecuteTarget` ([328](#))

#### 4.38.7 `TBasicAction.UpdateTarget`

**Synopsis:** Notify client controls when the action updates itself.

**Declaration:** `procedure UpdateTarget(Target: TObject); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `UpdateTarget` should update the client control specified by `Target` when the action updates itself. In `TBasicAction`, the implementation of `UpdateTarget` is empty. Descendant classes should override and implement `UpdateTarget` to actually update the `Target` object.

An application programmer should never need to call `HandlesTarget` directly, it will be called by the action itself when needed.

See also: `HandlesTarget` ([327](#)), `ExecuteTarget` ([328](#))



#### 4.38.8 TBasicAction.ExecuteTarget

Synopsis: Executes the action on the `Target` object

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteTarget (Target: TObject); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteTarget` performs the action on the `Target` object. In `TBasicAction` this method does nothing. Descendant classes should implement the action to be performed. For instance an action to post data in a dataset could call the `Post` method of the dataset.

An application programmer should never call `ExecuteTarget` directly.

See also: `HandlesTarget` (327), `UpdateTarget` (328), `Execute` (328)

#### 4.38.9 TBasicAction.Execute

Synopsis: Triggers the `OnExecute` (329) event

Declaration: `function Execute : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` triggers the `OnExecute` event, if one is assigned. It returns `True` if the event handler was called, `False` otherwise.

#### 4.38.10 TBasicAction.RegisterChanges

Synopsis: Registers a new client with the action.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterChanges (Value: TBasicActionLink)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RegisterChanges` adds `Value` to the list of clients.

See also: `UnregisterChanges` (328)

#### 4.38.11 TBasicAction.UnRegisterChanges

Synopsis: Unregisters a client from the list of clients

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterChanges (Value: TBasicActionLink)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnregisterChanges` removes `Value` from the list of clients. This is called for instance when the action is destroyed, or when the client is assigned a new action.

See also: `UnregisterChanges` (328), `Destroy` (327)

### 4.38.12 TBasicAction.Update

Synopsis: Triggers the OnUpdate ([330](#)) event

Declaration: `function Update : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Update` triggers the `OnUpdate` event, if one is assigned. It returns `True` if the event was triggered, or `False` if no event was assigned.

Application programmers should never run `Update` directly. The `Update` method is called automatically by the action mechanism; Normally this is in the Idle time of an application. An application programmer should assign the `OnUpdate` ([330](#)) event, and perform any checks in that handler.

See also: `OnUpdate` ([330](#)), `Execute` ([328](#)), `UpdateTarget` ([327](#))

### 4.38.13 TBasicAction.ActionComponent

Synopsis: Returns the component that initiated the action.

Declaration: `Property ActionComponent : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ActionComponent` is set to the component that caused the action to execute, e.g. a `toolbutton` or a menu item. The property is set just before the action executes, and is reset to `nil` after the action was executed.

See also: `Execute` ([328](#)), `OnExecute` ([329](#))

### 4.38.14 TBasicAction.OnExecute

Synopsis: Event triggered when the action executes.

Declaration: `Property OnExecute : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnExecute` is the event triggered when the action is activated (executed). The event is triggered e.g. when the user clicks e.g. on a menu item or a button associated to the action. The application programmer should provide a `OnExecute` event handler to execute whatever code is necessary when the button is pressed or the menu item is chosen.

Note that assigning an `OnExecute` handler will result in the `Execute` ([328](#)) method returning a `True` value. Predefined actions (such as dataset actions) will check the result of `Execute` and will not perform their normal task if the `OnExecute` handler was called.

See also: `Execute` ([328](#)), `OnUpdate` ([330](#))

### 4.38.15 TBasicAction.OnUpdate

Synopsis: Event triggered when the application is idle.

Declaration: `Property OnUpdate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnUpdate` is the event triggered when the application is idle, and the action is being updated. The `OnUpdate` event can be used to set the state of the action, for instance disable it if the action cannot be executed at this point in time.

See also: `Update` ([329](#)), `OnExecute` ([329](#))

## 4.39 TBasicActionLink

### 4.39.1 Description

`TBasicActionLink` links an Action to its clients. With each client for an action, a `TBasicActionLink` class is instantiated to handle the communication between the action and the client. It passes events between the action and its clients, and thus presents the action with a uniform interface to the clients.

An application programmer should never use a `TBasicActionLink` instance directly; They are created automatically when an action is associated with a component. Component programmers should create specialized descendants of `TBasicActionLink` which communicate changes in the action to the component.

See also: `TBasicAction` ([326](#))

### 4.39.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">330</a>	Create	Creates a new instance of the <code>TBasicActionLink</code> class
<a href="#">331</a>	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TBasicActionLink</code> instance.
<a href="#">331</a>	Execute	Calls the action's <code>Execute</code> method.
<a href="#">331</a>	Update	Calls the action's <code>Update</code> method

### 4.39.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">332</a>	Action	rw	The action to which the link was assigned.
<a href="#">332</a>	OnChange	rw	Event handler triggered when the action's properties change

### 4.39.4 TBasicActionLink.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TBasicActionLink` class

Declaration: `constructor Create(AClient: TObject); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of a `TBasicActionLink` and assigns `AClient` as the client of the link.

Application programmers should never instantiate `TBasicActionLink` classes directly. An instance is created automatically when an action is assigned to a control (client).

Component programmers can override the `create` constructor to initialize further properties.

See also: `Destroy` ([331](#))

#### 4.39.5 `TBasicActionLink.Destroy`

**Synopsis:** Destroys the `TBasicActionLink` instance.

**Declaration:** `destructor Destroy; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` unregisters the `TBasicActionLink` with the action, and then calls the inherited destructor.

Application programmers should never call `Destroy` directly. If a link should be destroyed at all, the `Free` method should be called instead.

See also: `Create` ([330](#))

#### 4.39.6 `TBasicActionLink.Execute`

**Synopsis:** Calls the action's `Execute` method.

**Declaration:** `function Execute(AComponent: TComponent) : Boolean; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Execute` sets the `ActionComponent` ([329](#)) property of the associated `Action` ([332](#)) to `AComponent` and then calls the `Action`'s `execute` ([328](#)) method. After the action has executed, the `ActionComponent` property is cleared again.

The return value of the function is the return value of the `Action`'s `execute` method.

Application programmers should never call `Execute` directly. This method will be called automatically when the associated control is activated. (e.g. a button is clicked on)

Component programmers should call `Execute` whenever the action should be activated.

See also: `Action` ([332](#)), `TBasicAction.ActionComponent` ([329](#)), `TBasicAction.Execute` ([328](#)), `TBasicAction.onExecute` ([329](#))

#### 4.39.7 `TBasicActionLink.Update`

**Synopsis:** Calls the action's `Update` method

**Declaration:** `function Update : Boolean; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Update` calls the associated `Action`'s `Update` ([329](#)) method.

Component programmers can override the `Update` method to provide additional processing when the `Update` method occurs.

### 4.39.8 TBasicActionLink.Action

Synopsis: The action to which the link was assigned.

Declaration: `Property Action : TBasicAction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Action` represents the Action (326) which was assigned to the client. Setting this property will unregister the client at the old action (if one existed) and registers the client at the new action.

See also: `TBasicAction` (326)

### 4.39.9 TBasicActionLink.OnChange

Synopsis: Event handler triggered when the action's properties change

Declaration: `Property OnChange : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OnChange` is the event triggered when the action's properties change.

Application programmers should never need to assign this event. Component programmers can assign this event to have a client control reflect any changes in an Action's properties.

See also: `Change` (330), `TBasicAction.Change` (326)

## 4.40 TBinaryObjectReader

### 4.40.1 Description

The `TBinaryObjectReader` class reads component data stored in binary form in a file. For this, it overrides or implements all abstract methods from `TAbstractObjectReader` (312). No new functionality is added by this class, it is a driver class for the streaming system.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of this class directly. Instead, the `TStream.WriteComponent` (446) call should be used.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader` (312), `TBinaryObjectWriter` (339)

### 4.40.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">334</a>	<code>BeginComponent</code>	Start reading a component.
<a href="#">335</a>	<code>BeginProperty</code>	Start reading a property.
<a href="#">334</a>	<code>BeginRootComponent</code>	Start reading the root component.
<a href="#">333</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new binary data reader instance.
<a href="#">333</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the binary data reader.
<a href="#">334</a>	<code>NextValue</code>	Return the type of the next value.
<a href="#">335</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read raw data from stream
<a href="#">335</a>	<code>ReadBinary</code>	Start reading a binary value.
<a href="#">336</a>	<code>ReadCurrency</code>	Read a currency value from the stream.
<a href="#">336</a>	<code>ReadDate</code>	Read a date.
<a href="#">335</a>	<code>ReadFloat</code>	Read a float value
<a href="#">336</a>	<code>ReadIdent</code>	Read an identifier
<a href="#">336</a>	<code>ReadInt16</code>	Read a 16-bits integer.
<a href="#">337</a>	<code>ReadInt32</code>	Read a 32-bits integer.
<a href="#">337</a>	<code>ReadInt64</code>	Read a 64-bits integer.
<a href="#">336</a>	<code>ReadInt8</code>	Read an 8-bits integer.
<a href="#">337</a>	<code>ReadSet</code>	Read a set
<a href="#">337</a>	<code>ReadSignature</code>	Reads the filer signature
<a href="#">335</a>	<code>ReadSingle</code>	Read a single-size float value
<a href="#">338</a>	<code>ReadStr</code>	Read a short string
<a href="#">338</a>	<code>ReadString</code>	Read a string
<a href="#">338</a>	<code>ReadUnicodeString</code>	Read a Unicode string value
<a href="#">334</a>	<code>ReadValue</code>	Read the next value in the stream
<a href="#">338</a>	<code>ReadWideString</code>	Read a widestring value from the stream.
<a href="#">339</a>	<code>SkipComponent</code>	Skip a component's data
<a href="#">339</a>	<code>SkipValue</code>	Skip a value's data

### 4.40.3 TBinaryObjectReader.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new binary data reader instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new binary component data reader. The `Stream` stream is the stream from which data will be read. The `BufSize` argument is the size of the internal buffer that will be used by the reader. This can be used to optimize the reading process.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

### 4.40.4 TBinaryObjectReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the binary data reader.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the buffer allocated when the instance was created. It also positions the stream on the last used position in the stream (the buffering may cause the reader to read more bytes than were actually used.)

See also: `TBinaryObjectReader.Create` ([333](#))

#### 4.40.5 TBinaryObjectReader.NextValue

Synopsis: Return the type of the next value.

Declaration: `function NextValue : TValueType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NextValue` returns the type of the next value in a binary stream, but does not read the value.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

#### 4.40.6 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadValue

Synopsis: Read the next value in the stream

Declaration: `function ReadValue : TValueType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NextValue` reads the next value in a binary stream and returns the type of the read value.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

#### 4.40.7 TBinaryObjectReader.BeginRootComponent

Synopsis: Start reading the root component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginRootComponent; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeginRootComponent` starts reading the root component in a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

#### 4.40.8 TBinaryObjectReader.BeginComponent

Synopsis: Start reading a component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent (var Flags: TFileFlags;  
var AChildPos: Integer;  
var CompClassName: string; var CompName: string)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

#### 4.40.9 TBinaryObjectReader.BeginProperty

Synopsis: Start reading a property.

Declaration: `function BeginProperty : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

#### 4.40.10 TBinaryObjectReader.Read

Synopsis: Read raw data from stream

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to read raw data from the component stream. This should not be used in production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.Read` ([315](#)), `TReader.Read` ([430](#))

#### 4.40.11 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadBinary

Synopsis: Start reading a binary value.

Declaration: `procedure ReadBinary(const DestData: TMemoryStream); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadBinary` reads a binary value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

#### 4.40.12 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a float value

Declaration: `function ReadFloat : Extended; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadFloat` reads a float value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

#### 4.40.13 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSingle

Synopsis: Read a single-size float value

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadSingle` reads a single-sized float value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))



#### 4.40.14 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadDate

Synopsis: Read a date.

Declaration: `function ReadDate : TDateTime; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadDate` reads a date value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

#### 4.40.15 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadCurrency

Synopsis: Read a currency value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadCurrency : Currency; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `var>ReadCurrency` reads a currency-typed value from a binary stream. It is the implementation of the method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312).

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadCurrency` (316), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteCurrency` (343)

#### 4.40.16 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadIdent

Synopsis: Read an identifier

Declaration: `function ReadIdent(ValueType: TValueType) : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadIdent` reads an identifier from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

#### 4.40.17 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt8

Synopsis: Read an 8-bits integer.

Declaration: `function ReadInt8 : ShortInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read8Int` reads an 8-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

#### 4.40.18 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt16

Synopsis: Read a 16-bits integer.

Declaration: `function ReadInt16 : SmallInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Read16Int` reads a 16-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

#### 4.40.19 `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt32`

**Synopsis:** Read a 32-bits integer.

**Declaration:** `function ReadInt32 : LongInt; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Read32Int` reads a 32-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

#### 4.40.20 `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt64`

**Synopsis:** Read a 64-bits integer.

**Declaration:** `function ReadInt64 : Int64; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Read64Int` reads a 64-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

#### 4.40.21 `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSet`

**Synopsis:** Read a set

**Declaration:** `function ReadSet (EnumType: Pointer) : Integer; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadSet` reads a set from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

#### 4.40.22 `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSignature`

**Synopsis:** Reads the filer signature

**Declaration:** `procedure ReadSignature; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadSignature` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectReader` to read the signature (TPF0) from binary streams.

**Errors:** If the stream does not start with the correct signature, an `EReadError` ([298](#)) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature` ([319](#)), `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([321](#)), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([340](#))

#### 4.40.23 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadStr

Synopsis: Read a short string

Declaration: `function ReadStr : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadStr` reads a short string from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

#### 4.40.24 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string

Declaration: `function ReadString(StringType: TValueType) : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadStr` reads a string of type `StringType` from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#))

#### 4.40.25 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadWideString

Synopsis: Read a widestring value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadWideString : WideString; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `var>ReadWideString` reads a widestring-typed value from a binary stream. It is the implementation of the method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([312](#)).

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadWideString` ([319](#)), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteWideString` ([344](#))

#### 4.40.26 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString

Synopsis: Read a Unicode string value

Declaration: `function ReadUnicodeString : UnicodeString; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadUnicodeString` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectReader` to read a `UnicodeString` value from the binary stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString` ([320](#))

#### 4.40.27 TBinaryObjectReader.SkipComponent

Synopsis: Skip a component's data

Declaration: `procedure SkipComponent (SkipComponentInfos: Boolean);` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `SkipComponent` skips the data of a component in a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312).

#### 4.40.28 TBinaryObjectReader.SkipValue

Synopsis: Skip a value's data

Declaration: `procedure SkipValue;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `SkipComponent` skips the data of the next value in a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

### 4.41 TBinaryObjectWriter

#### 4.41.1 Description

Driver class which stores component data in binary form.

**4.41.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
341	BeginCollection	Start writing a collection.
341	BeginComponent	Start writing a component
341	BeginList	Start writing a list.
342	BeginProperty	Start writing a property
340	Create	Creates a new instance of a binary object writer.
340	Destroy	Destroys an instance of the binary object writer.
341	EndList	Mark the end of a list.
342	EndProperty	Marks the end of writing of a property.
341	FlushBuffer	Flush the buffer
342	Write	Write raw data to stream
342	WriteBinary	Writes binary data to the stream.
342	WriteBoolean	Writes a boolean value to the stream.
343	WriteCurrency	Write a currency-valued type to a stream
343	WriteDate	Writes a date type to the stream.
342	WriteFloat	Writes a float value to the stream.
343	WriteIdent	Writes an identifier to the stream.
343	WriteInteger	Writes an integer value to the stream.
344	WriteMethodName	Writes a methodname to the stream.
344	WriteSet	Writes a set value to the stream.
340	WriteSignature	Write stream signature to the stream
343	WriteSingle	Writes a single-type real value to the stream.
344	WriteStr	Write a string to the binary stream
344	WriteString	Writes a string value to the stream.
343	WriteUInt64	Write an unsigned 64-bit integer
344	WriteUnicodeString	Write a Unicode string to the stream.
345	WriteVariant	Write a variant to the stream
344	WriteWideString	Write a widestring-valued type to a stream

**4.41.3 TBinaryObjectWriter.Create**

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a binary object writer.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new instance of a binary object writer.

**4.41.4 TBinaryObjectWriter.Destroy**

Synopsis: Destroys an instance of the binary object writer.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys an instance of the binary object writer.

**4.41.5 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature**

Synopsis: Write stream signature to the stream

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteSignature; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `WriteSignature` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectWriter` to write the signature (TPF0) to binary streams.

**See also:** `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` (321), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature` (319), `TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSignature` (337)

#### 4.41.6 TBinaryObjectWriter.FlushBuffer

**Synopsis:** Flush the buffer

**Declaration:** `procedure FlushBuffer; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

**See also:** `TFile.FlushBuffer` (381), `TWriter.FlushBuffer` (508), `TAbstractObjectWriter.FlushBuffer` (322)

#### 4.41.7 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginCollection

**Synopsis:** Start writing a collection.

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginCollection; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

#### 4.41.8 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginComponent

**Synopsis:** Start writing a component

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginComponent(Component: TComponent; Flags: TFileFlags;  
ChildPos: Integer); Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

#### 4.41.9 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginList

**Synopsis:** Start writing a list.

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginList; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

#### 4.41.10 TBinaryObjectWriter.EndList

**Synopsis:** Mark the end of a list.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndList; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

#### 4.41.11 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginProperty

Synopsis: Start writing a property

Declaration: `procedure BeginProperty(const PropName: string); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.12 TBinaryObjectWriter.EndProperty

Synopsis: Marks the end of writing of a property.

Declaration: `procedure EndProperty; Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.13 TBinaryObjectWriter.Write

Synopsis: Write raw data to stream

Declaration: `procedure Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to write raw data to the component stream. This should not be used in new production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.Write` ([323](#)), `TWriter.Write` ([508](#))

#### 4.41.14 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBinary

Synopsis: Writes binary data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBinary(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.15 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBoolean

Synopsis: Writes a boolean value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBoolean(Value: Boolean); Override`

Visibility: public

#### 4.41.16 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteFloat

Synopsis: Writes a float value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Value: Extended); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.17 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSingle**

Synopsis: Writes a single-type real value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(const Value: Single); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.18 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteDate**

Synopsis: Writes a date type to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Value: TDateTime); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.19 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteCurrency**

Synopsis: Write a currency-valued type to a stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteCurrency(const Value: Currency); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteCurrency` writes a currency-typed value to a binary stream. It is the implementation of the method introduced in `TAbstractObjectWriter` ([320](#)).

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteCurrency` ([324](#))

**4.41.20 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteIdent**

Synopsis: Writes an identifier to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteIdent(const Ident: string); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.21 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteInteger**

Synopsis: Writes an integer value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(Value: Int64); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.22 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteUInt64**

Synopsis: Write an unsigned 64-bit integer

Declaration: `procedure WriteUInt64(Value: QWord); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteUInt64` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectWriter` to write an unsigned 64-bit integer (`QWord`) to the stream. It tries to use the smallest possible storage for the value that is passed. (largest valuetype will be `vaQWord`).

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteUInt64` ([324](#))



**4.41.23 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteMethodName**

Synopsis: Writes a methodname to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteMethodName(const Name: string); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.24 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSet**

Synopsis: Writes a set value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSet(Value: LongInt; SetType: Pointer); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.25 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a string to the binary stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteStr(const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteStr` writes a string value to the binary stream. It is exposed so it can be used in `DefineProperties`.

**4.41.26 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Writes a string value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Value: string); Override`

Visibility: public

**4.41.27 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a widestring-valued type to a stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteWideString(const Value: WideString); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteWidestring` writes a widestring-typed value to a binary stream. It is the implementation of the method introduced in `TAbstractObjectWriter` (320).

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString` (325)

**4.41.28 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a Unicode string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteUnicodeString(const Value: UnicodeString); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteUnicodeString` is overridden `TBinaryObjectWriter` to write a `unicodestring` (valuetype `vaUString`) value to the stream. It simply writes the character length and then all widecharacters.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString` (326)

### 4.41.29 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteVariant

Synopsis: Write a variant to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteVariant(const VarValue: Variant);` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteVariant` is overridden by `TBinaryObjectWriter` to write a simple variant type to the stream. `WriteVariant` does not write arrays types or complex types. Only null, integer (ordinal) float and string types are written.

Errors: If a non-supported type is written, then an `EWriteError` exception is.

## 4.42 TBits

### 4.42.1 Description

`TBits` can be used to store collections of bits in an indexed array. This is especially useful for storing collections of booleans: Normally the size of a boolean is the size of the smallest enumerated type, i.e. 1 byte. Since a bit can take 2 values it can be used to store a boolean as well. Since `TBits` can store 8 bits in a byte, it takes 8 times less space to store an array of booleans in a `TBits` class then it would take to store them in a conventional array.

`TBits` introduces methods to store and retrieve bit values, apply masks, and search for bits.

### 4.42.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">347</a>	<code>AndBits</code>	Performs an <code>and</code> operation on the bits.
<a href="#">347</a>	<code>Clear</code>	Clears a particular bit.
<a href="#">347</a>	<code>Clearall</code>	Clears all bits in the array.
<a href="#">347</a>	<code>CopyBits</code>	Copy bits from one bits set to another
<a href="#">346</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new bits collection.
<a href="#">346</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys a bit collection
<a href="#">349</a>	<code>Equals</code>	Determines whether the bits of 2 arrays are equal.
<a href="#">350</a>	<code>FindFirstBit</code>	Find first bit with a particular value
<a href="#">350</a>	<code>FindNextBit</code>	Searches the next bit with a particular value.
<a href="#">350</a>	<code>FindPrevBit</code>	Searches the previous bit with a particular value.
<a href="#">349</a>	<code>Get</code>	Retrieve the value of a particular bit
<a href="#">346</a>	<code>GetFSize</code>	Returns the number of records used to store the bits.
<a href="#">349</a>	<code>Grow</code>	Expands the bits array to the requested size.
<a href="#">348</a>	<code>NotBits</code>	Performs a <code>not</code> operation on the bits.
<a href="#">351</a>	<code>OpenBit</code>	Returns the position of the first bit that is set to <code>False</code> .
<a href="#">348</a>	<code>OrBits</code>	Performs an <code>or</code> operation on the bits.
<a href="#">349</a>	<code>SetIndex</code>	Sets the start position for <code>FindNextBit</code> ( <a href="#">350</a> ) and <code>FindPrevBit</code> ( <a href="#">350</a> )
<a href="#">346</a>	<code>SetOn</code>	Turn a particular bit on.
<a href="#">348</a>	<code>XorBits</code>	Performs a <code>xor</code> operation on the bits.

### 4.42.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">351</a>	<code>Bits</code>	<code>rw</code>	Access to all bits in the array.
<a href="#">351</a>	<code>Size</code>	<code>rw</code>	Current size of the array of bits.

#### 4.42.4 TBits.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new bits collection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(TheSize: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new bit collection with initial size `TheSize`. The size of the collection can be changed later on.

All bits are initially set to zero.

See also: `Destroy` ([346](#))

#### 4.42.5 TBits.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys a bit collection

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys a previously created bit collection and releases all memory used to store the bit collection.

`Destroy` should never be called directly, `Free` should be used instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `Create` ([346](#))

#### 4.42.6 TBits.GetFSize

Synopsis: Returns the number of records used to store the bits.

Declaration: `function GetFSize : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetFSize` returns the number of records used to store the current number of bits.

Errors: None.

See also: `Size` ([351](#))

#### 4.42.7 TBits.SetOn

Synopsis: Turn a particular bit on.

Declaration: `procedure SetOn(Bit: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetOn` turns on the bit at position `bit`, i.e. sets it to 1. If `bit` is at a position bigger than the current size, the collection is expanded to the required size using `Grow` ([349](#)).

Errors: If `bit` is larger than the maximum allowed bits array size or is negative, an `EBitsError` ([296](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Bits` ([351](#)), `Clear` ([347](#))

#### 4.42.8 TBits.Clear

Synopsis: Clears a particular bit.

Declaration: `procedure Clear(Bit: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the bit at position `bit`. If the array `bit` is at a position bigger than the current size, the collection is expanded to the required size using `Grow` (349).

Errors: If `bit` is larger than the maximum allowed bits array size or is negative, an `EBitsError` (296) exception is raised.

See also: `Bits` (351), `seton` (347)

#### 4.42.9 TBits.Clearall

Synopsis: Clears all bits in the array.

Declaration: `procedure Clearall`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClearAll` clears all bits in the array, i.e. sets them to zero. `ClearAll` works faster than clearing all individual bits, since it uses the packed nature of the bits.

Errors: None.

See also: `Bits` (351), `clear` (347)

#### 4.42.10 TBits.CopyBits

Synopsis: Copy bits from one bits set to another

Declaration: `procedure CopyBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CopyBits` copies the bits from `BitSet` to the current `Bits`. Existing bits will be overwritten. The two sets of bits will be equal after this operation.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBits.Equals` (349)

#### 4.42.11 TBits.AndBits

Synopsis: Performs an and operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure AndBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `andbits` performs an and operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `BitSet`. If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are cleared.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (347), `OrBits` (348), `XOrBits` (348), `NotBits` (348)

#### 4.42.12 TBits.OrBits

Synopsis: Performs an `or` operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure OrBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `andbits` performs an `or` operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `BitSet`.

If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are left untouched.

If the current array contains less bits than `BitSet` then it is grown to the size of `BitSet` before the `or` operation is performed.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (347), `andBits` (347), `XorBits` (348), `NotBits` (348)

#### 4.42.13 TBits.XorBits

Synopsis: Performs a `xor` operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure XorBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `XorBits` performs a `xor` operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `BitSet`.

If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are left untouched.

If the current array contains less bits than `BitSet` then it is grown to the size of `BitSet` before the `xor` operation is performed.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (347), `andBits` (347), `OrBits` (348), `NotBits` (348)

#### 4.42.14 TBits.NotBits

Synopsis: Performs a `not` operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure NotBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NotBits` performs a `not` operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `Bitset`.

If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are left untouched.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (347), `andBits` (347), `OrBits` (348), `XorBits` (348)

#### 4.42.15 TBits.Get

Synopsis: Retrieve the value of a particular bit

Declaration: `function Get (Bit: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Get` returns `True` if the bit at position `bit` is set, or `False` if it is not set.

Errors: If `bit` is not a valid bit index then an `EBitsError` (296) exception is raised.

See also: `Bits` (351), `FindFirstBit` (350), `seton` (346)

#### 4.42.16 TBits.Grow

Synopsis: Expands the bits array to the requested size.

Declaration: `procedure Grow (NBit: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Grow` expands the bit array so it can at least contain `nbit` bits. If `nbit` is less than the current size, nothing happens.

Errors: If there is not enough memory to complete the operation, then an `EBitsError` (296) is raised.

See also: `Size` (351)

#### 4.42.17 TBits.Equals

Synopsis: Determines whether the bits of 2 arrays are equal.

Declaration: `function Equals (Obj: TObject) : Boolean; Override; Overload`  
`function Equals (BitSet: TBits) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `equals` returns `True` if all the bits in `BitSet` are the same as the ones in the current `BitSet`; if not, `False` is returned.

If the sizes of the two `BitSets` are different, the arrays are still reported equal when all the bits in the larger set, which are not present in the smaller set, are zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearAll` (347), `andBits` (347), `OrBits` (348), `XOrBits` (348)

#### 4.42.18 TBits.SetIndex

Synopsis: Sets the start position for `FindNextBit` (350) and `FindPrevBit` (350)

Declaration: `procedure SetIndex (Index: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetIndex` sets the search start position for `FindNextBit` (350) and `FindPrevBit` (350) to `Index`. This means that these calls will start searching from position `Index`.

This mechanism provides an alternative to `FindFirstBit` (350) which can also be used to position for the `FindNextBit` and `FindPrevBit` calls.

Errors: None.

See also: [FindNextBit \(350\)](#), [FindPrevBit \(350\)](#), [FindFirstBit \(350\)](#), [OpenBit \(351\)](#)

#### 4.42.19 TBits.FindFirstBit

Synopsis: Find first bit with a particular value

Declaration: `function FindFirstBit (State: Boolean) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindFirstBit` searches for the first bit with value `State`. It returns the position of this bit, or `-1` if no such bit was found.

The search starts at position 0 in the array. If the first search returned a positive result, the found position is saved, and the [FindNextBit \(350\)](#) and [FindPrevBit \(350\)](#) will use this position to resume the search. To start a search from a certain position, the start position can be set with the [SetIndex \(349\)](#) instead.

Errors: None.

See also: [FindNextBit \(350\)](#), [FindPrevBit \(350\)](#), [OpenBit \(351\)](#), [SetIndex \(349\)](#)

#### 4.42.20 TBits.FindNextBit

Synopsis: Searches the next bit with a particular value.

Declaration: `function FindNextBit : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindNextBit` resumes a previously started search. It searches for the next bit with the value specified in the [FindFirstBit \(350\)](#). The search is done towards the end of the array and starts at the position last reported by one of the `Find` calls or at the position set with [SetIndex \(349\)](#).

If another bit with the same value is found, its position is returned. If no more bits with the same value are present in the array, `-1` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: [FindFirstBit \(350\)](#), [FindPrevBit \(350\)](#), [OpenBit \(351\)](#), [SetIndex \(349\)](#)

#### 4.42.21 TBits.FindPrevBit

Synopsis: Searches the previous bit with a particular value.

Declaration: `function FindPrevBit : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPrevBit` resumes a previously started search. It searches for the previous bit with the value specified in the [FindFirstBit \(350\)](#). The search is done towards the beginning of the array and starts at the position last reported by one of the `Find` calls or at the position set with [SetIndex \(349\)](#).

If another bit with the same value is found, its position is returned. If no more bits with the same value are present in the array, `-1` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: [FindFirstBit \(350\)](#), [FindNextBit \(350\)](#), [OpenBit \(351\)](#), [SetIndex \(349\)](#)

#### 4.42.22 TBits.OpenBit

Synopsis: Returns the position of the first bit that is set to `False`.

Declaration: `function OpenBit : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `OpenBit` returns the position of the first bit whose value is 0 (`False`), or `-1` if no open bit was found. This call is equivalent to `FindFirstBit(False)`, except that it doesn't set the position for the next searches.

Errors: None.

See also: `FindNextBit` (350), `FindPrevBit` (350), `FindFirstBit` (350), `SetIndex` (349)

#### 4.42.23 TBits.Bits

Synopsis: Access to all bits in the array.

Declaration: `Property Bits[Bit: LongInt]: Boolean; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Bits` allows indexed access to all of the bits in the array. It gives `True` if the bit is 1, `False` otherwise; Assigning to this property will set, respectively clear the bit.

Errors: If an index is specified which is out of the allowed range then an `EBitsError` (296) exception is raised.

See also: `Size` (351)

#### 4.42.24 TBits.Size

Synopsis: Current size of the array of bits.

Declaration: `Property Size : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Size` is the current size of the bit array. Setting this property will adjust the size; this is equivalent to calling `Grow(Value-1)`

Errors: If an invalid size (negative or too large) is specified, a `EBitsError` (296) exception is raised.

See also: `Bits` (351)

### 4.43 TBytesStream

#### 4.43.1 Description

`TBytesStream` is a stream that uses an array of byte (`TBytes` (260)) to keep the stream data. it overrides the `TMemoryStream` (412) memory allocation routine to use the array of bytes. The array of bytes is exposed through the `Bytes` (260) property.

See also: `TBytes` (260), `TMemoryStream` (412), `Bytes` (260)



### 4.43.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">352</a>	Create	Create a new instance of the stream, initializing it with an array of bytes

### 4.43.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">352</a>	Bytes	r	The stream data as an array of bytes.

### 4.43.4 TBytesStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the stream, initializing it with an array of bytes

Declaration: `constructor Create(const ABytes: TBytes); Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance and initializes the memory with the data in `ABytes`.

See also: `TBytes` ([260](#)), `TMemoryStream` ([412](#)), `Bytes` ([260](#))

### 4.43.5 TBytesStream.Bytes

Synopsis: The stream data as an array of bytes.

Declaration: `Property Bytes : TBytes`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Bytes` provides byte-sized access to the array of bytes that represent the stream data. As a pointer value, it equals `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` ([376](#)), meaning that `Memory` points to the first byte in the array.

See also: `TBytes` ([260](#)), `TMemoryStream` ([412](#)), `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` ([376](#))

## 4.44 TCollection

### 4.44.1 Description

`TCollection` implements functionality to manage a collection of named objects. Each of these objects needs to be a descendant of the `TCollectionItem` ([360](#)) class. Exactly which type of object is managed can be seen from the `TCollection.ItemClass` ([358](#)) property.

Normally, no `TCollection` is created directly. Instead, a descendants of `TCollection` and `TCollectionItem` ([360](#)) are created as a pair.

See also: `TCollectionItem` ([360](#))

#### 4.44.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">354</a>	Add	Creates and adds a new item to the collection.
<a href="#">354</a>	Assign	Assigns one collection to another.
<a href="#">354</a>	BeginUpdate	Start an update batch.
<a href="#">355</a>	Clear	Removes all items from the collection.
<a href="#">353</a>	Create	Creates a new collection.
<a href="#">355</a>	Delete	Delete an item from the collection.
<a href="#">353</a>	Destroy	Destroys the collection and frees all the objects it manages.
<a href="#">355</a>	EndUpdate	Ends an update batch.
<a href="#">357</a>	Exchange	Exchange 2 items in the collection
<a href="#">356</a>	FindItemID	Searches for an Item in the collection, based on its <code>TCollectionItem.ID</code> ( <a href="#">361</a> ) property.
<a href="#">356</a>	GetEnumerator	Create an <code>IEnumerator</code> instance
<a href="#">356</a>	GetNamePath	Overrides <code>TPersistent.GetNamePath</code> ( <a href="#">424</a> ) to return a proper pathname.
<a href="#">356</a>	Insert	Insert an item in the collection.
<a href="#">357</a>	Move	
<a href="#">354</a>	Owner	Owner of the collection.
<a href="#">357</a>	Sort	Sort the items in the collection

#### 4.44.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">357</a>	Count	r	Number of items in the collection.
<a href="#">358</a>	ItemClass	r	Class pointer for each item in the collection.
<a href="#">358</a>	Items	rw	Indexed array of items in the collection.

#### 4.44.4 TCollection.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new collection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AItemClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TCollection` class which will manage objects of class `AItemClass`. It creates the list used to hold all objects, and stores the `AItemClass` for the adding of new objects to the collection.

See also: `TCollection.ItemClass` ([358](#)), `TCollection.Destroy` ([353](#))

#### 4.44.5 TCollection.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the collection and frees all the objects it manages.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` first clears the collection, and then frees all memory allocated to this instance.

Don't call `Destroy` directly, call `Free` instead.

See also: `TCollection.Create` ([353](#))

#### 4.44.6 TCollection.Owner

Synopsis: Owner of the collection.

Declaration: `function Owner : TPersistent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Owner` returns a reference to the owner of the collection. This property is required by the object inspector to be able to show the collection.

#### 4.44.7 TCollection.Add

Synopsis: Creates and adds a new item to the collection.

Declaration: `function Add : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` instantiates a new item of class `TCollection.ItemClass` (358) and adds it to the list. The newly created object is returned.

See also: `TCollection.ItemClass` (358), `TCollection.Clear` (355)

#### 4.44.8 TCollection.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns one collection to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` assigns the contents of one collection to another. It does this by clearing the items list, and adding as much elements as there are in the `Source` collection; it assigns to each created element the contents of it's counterpart in the `Source` element.

Two collections cannot be assigned to each other if instances of the `ItemClass` classes cannot be assigned to each other.

Errors: If the objects in the collections cannot be assigned to one another, then an `EConvertError` is raised.

See also: `TPersistent.Assign` (423), `TCollectionItem` (360)

#### 4.44.9 TCollection.BeginUpdate

Synopsis: Start an update batch.

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeginUpdate` is called at the beginning of a batch update. It raises the update count with 1.

Call `BeginUpdate` at the beginning of a series of operations that will change the state of the collection. This will avoid the call to `TCollection.Update` (352) for each operation. At the end of the operations, a corresponding call to `EndUpdate` must be made. It is best to do this in the context of a `Try ... finally` block:

```

With MyCollection Do
  try
    BeginUpdate;
    // Some Lengthy operations
  finally
    EndUpdate;
  end;

```

This insures that the number of calls to `BeginUpdate` always matches the number of calls to `TCollection.EndUpdate` (355), even in case of an exception.

See also: `TCollection.EndUpdate` (355), `TCollection.Changed` (352), `TCollection.Update` (352)

#### 4.44.10 TCollection.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all items from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` will clear the collection, i.e. each item in the collection is destroyed and removed from memory. After a call to `Clear`, `Count` is zero.

See also: `TCollection.Add` (354), `TCollectionItem.Destroy` (360), `TCollection.Destroy` (353)

#### 4.44.11 TCollection.EndUpdate

Synopsis: Ends an update batch.

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndUpdate` signals the end of a series of operations that change the state of the collection, possibly triggering an update event. It does this by decreasing the update count with 1 and calling `TCollection.Changed` (352) it should always be used in conjunction with `TCollection.BeginUpdate` (354), preferably in the `Finally` section of a `Try ... Finally` block.

See also: `TCollection.BeginUpdate` (354), `TCollection.Changed` (352), `TCollection.Update` (352)

#### 4.44.12 TCollection.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an item from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` deletes the item at (zero based) position `Index` from the collection. This will result in a `cnDeleted` notification.

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an `EListError` exception is raised.

See also: `TCollection.Items` (358), `TCollection.Insert` (356), `TCollection.Clear` (355)

#### 4.44.13 TCollection.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TCollectionEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` (1553) interface for `TCollection`. It creates a `TCollectionEnumerator` (358) instance and returns its `IEnumerator` (1554) interface.

See also: `TCollectionEnumerator` (358), `IEnumerator` (1554), `IEnumerable` (1553)

#### 4.44.14 TCollection.GetNamePath

Synopsis: Overrides `TPersistent.GetNamePath` (424) to return a proper pathname.

Declaration: `function GetNamePath : string; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNamePath` returns the name path for this collection. If the following conditions are satisfied:

1. There is an owner object.
2. The owner object returns a non-empty name path.
3. The `TCollection.Propname` (352) property is not empty

collection has an owner and the owning object has a name, then the function returns the owner name, followed by the propname. If one of the conditions is not satisfied, then the classname is returned.

See also: `TCollection.GetOwner` (352), `TCollection.Propname` (352)

#### 4.44.15 TCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert an item in the collection.

Declaration: `function Insert(Index: Integer) : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` creates a new item instance and inserts it in the collection at position `Index`, and returns the new instance.

In contrast, `TCollection.Add` (354) adds a new item at the end.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Add` (354), `TCollection.Delete` (355), `TCollection.Items` (358)

#### 4.44.16 TCollection.FindItemID

Synopsis: Searches for an Item in the collection, based on its `TCollectionItem.ID` (361) property.

Declaration: `function FindItemID(ID: Integer) : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `FindItemID` searches through the collection for the item that has a value of `ID` for its `TCollectionItem.ID` (361) property, and returns the found item. If no such item is found in the collection, `Nil` is returned.

The routine performs a linear search, so this can be slow on very large collections.

See also: `TCollection.Items` (358), `TCollectionItem.ID` (361)

#### 4.44.17 TCollection.Exchange

**Synopsis:** Exchange 2 items in the collection

**Declaration:** `procedure Exchange(const Index1: Integer; const index2: Integer)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Exchange` exchanges the items at indexes `Index1` and `Index2` in the collection.

**Errors:** If one of the two indexes is invalid (less than zero or larger than the number of items) an `EListError` exception is raised.

See also: `Items` (358), `TCollectionItem.Index` (362)

#### 4.44.18 TCollection.Move

**Declaration:** `procedure Move(const Index1: Integer; const index2: Integer)`

**Visibility:** public

#### 4.44.19 TCollection.Sort

**Synopsis:** Sort the items in the collection

**Declaration:** `procedure Sort(const Compare: TCollectionSortCompare)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Sort` sorts the items in the collection, and uses the `Compare` procedure to compare 2 items in the collection. It is more efficient to use this method than to perform the sort manually, because the list items are manipulated directly.

For more information on how the `Compare` function should behave, see the `TCollectionSortCompare` (265) type.

See also: `TCollectionSortCompare` (265)

#### 4.44.20 TCollection.Count

**Synopsis:** Number of items in the collection.

**Declaration:** `Property Count : Integer`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `Count` contains the number of items in the collection.

**Remark** The items in the collection are identified by their `TCollectionItem.Index` (362) property, which is a zero-based index, meaning that it can take values between 0 and `Count-1`, borders included.

See also: `TCollectionItem.Index` (362), `TCollection.Items` (358)

#### 4.44.21 TCollection.ItemClass

Synopsis: Class pointer for each item in the collection.

Declaration: `Property ItemClass : TCollectionItemClass`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ItemClass` is the class pointer with which each new item in the collection is created. It is the value that was passed to the collection's constructor when it was created, and does not change during the lifetime of the collection.

See also: `TCollectionItem` (360), `TCollection.Items` (358)

#### 4.44.22 TCollection.Items

Synopsis: Indexed array of items in the collection.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the items in the collection. Since the array is zero-based, `Index` should be an integer between 0 and `Count-1`.

It is possible to set or retrieve an element in the array. When setting an element of the array, the object that is assigned should be compatible with the class of the objects in the collection, as given by the `TCollection.ItemClass` (358) property.

Adding an element to the array can be done with the `TCollection.Add` (354) method. The array can be cleared with the `TCollection.Clear` (355) method. Removing an element of the array should be done by freeing that element.

See also: `TCollection.Count` (357), `TCollection.ItemClass` (358), `TCollection.Clear` (355), `TCollection.Add` (354)

### 4.45 TCollectionEnumerator

#### 4.45.1 Description

`TCollectionEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554) interface for the `TCollection` (352) class, so the `TCollection` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop. It is returned by the `TCollection.GetEnumerator` (356) method of `TCollection`.

See also: `TCollection` (352), `TCollection.GetEnumerator` (356), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554)

#### 4.45.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
359	Create	Initialize a new instance of <code>TCollectionEnumerator</code>
359	GetCurrent	Return the current pointer in the list
359	MoveNext	Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the collection.

### 4.45.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">359</a>	Current	r	Current pointer in the list

### 4.45.4 TCollectionEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TCollectionEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create (ACollection: TCollection)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TCollectionEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the collection `ACollection` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TCollection` ([352](#))

### 4.45.5 TCollectionEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current `TCollectionItem` ([360](#)) instance in the enumerator.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` ([359](#)), `TCollectionItem` ([360](#))

### 4.45.6 TCollectionEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the collection.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next item in the collection, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last element in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([359](#))

### 4.45.7 TCollectionEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` ([359](#)) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([359](#))



## 4.46 TCollectionItem

### 4.46.1 Description

TCollectionItem and TCollection (352) form a pair of base classes that manage a collection of named objects. The TCollectionItem is the named object that is managed, it represents one item in the collection. An item in the collection is represented by three properties: TCollectionItem.DisplayName (362), TCollection.Index (352) and TCollectionItem.ID (361).

A TCollectionItem object is never created directly. To manage a set of named items, it is necessary to make a descendant of TCollectionItem to which needed properties and methods are added. This descendant can then be managed with a TCollection (352) class. The managing collection will create and destroy it's items by itself, it should therefore never be necessary to create TCollectionItem descendants manually.

See also: TCollection (352)

### 4.46.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
360	Create	Creates a new instance of this collection item.
360	Destroy	Destroys this collection item.
361	GetNamePath	Returns the namepath of this collection item.

### 4.46.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
361	Collection	rw	Pointer to the collection managing this item.
362	DisplayName	rw	Name of the item, displayed in the object inspector.
361	ID	r	Initial index of this item.
362	Index	rw	Index of the item in its managing collection TCollection.Items (358) property.

### 4.46.4 TCollectionItem.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of this collection item.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new item in a TCollection (352). It is called by the TCollection.Add (354) function and should under normal circumstances never be called directly. called

See also: TCollectionItem.Destroy (360)

### 4.46.5 TCollectionItem.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys this collection item.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` removes the item from the managing collection and Destroys the item instance.

This is the only way to remove items from a collection;

See also: `TCollectionItem.Create` (360)

#### 4.46.6 `TCollectionItem.GetNamePath`

**Synopsis:** Returns the namepath of this collection item.

**Declaration:** `function GetNamePath : string; Override`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `GetNamePath` overrides the `TPersistent.GetNamePath` (424) method to return the name of the managing collection and appends its `TCollectionItem.Index` (362) property.

See also: `TCollectionItem.Collection` (361), `TPersistent.GetNamePath` (424), `TCollectionItem.Index` (362)

#### 4.46.7 `TCollectionItem.Collection`

**Synopsis:** Pointer to the collection managing this item.

**Declaration:** `Property Collection : TCollection`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Collection` points to the collection managing this item. This property can be set to point to a new collection. If this is done, the old collection will be notified that the item should no longer be managed, and the new collection is notified that it should manage this item as well.

See also: `TCollection` (352)

#### 4.46.8 `TCollectionItem.ID`

**Synopsis:** Initial index of this item.

**Declaration:** `Property ID : Integer`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `ID` is the initial value of `TCollectionItem.Index` (362); it doesn't change after the index changes. It can be used to uniquely identify the item. The `ID` property doesn't change as items are added and removed from the collection.

While the `TCollectionItem.Index` (362) property forms a continuous series, `ID` does not. If items are removed from the collection, their `ID` is not used again, leaving gaps. Only when the collection is initially created, the `ID` and `Index` properties will be equal.

See also: `TCollection.Items` (358), `TCollectionItem.Index` (362)

### 4.46.9 TCollectionItem.Index

Synopsis: Index of the item in its managing collection `TCollection.Items` (358) property.

Declaration: `Property Index : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Index` is the current index of the item in its managing collection's `TCollection.Items` (358) property. This property may change as items are added and removed from the collection.

The index of an item is zero-based, i.e. the first item has index zero. The last item has index `Count-1` where `Count` is the number of items in the collection.

The `Index` property of the items in a collection form a continuous series ranging from 0 to `Count-1`. The `TCollectionItem.ID` (361) property does not form a continuous series, but can also be used to identify an item.

See also: `TCollectionItem.ID` (361), `TCollection.Items` (358)

### 4.46.10 TCollectionItem.DisplayName

Synopsis: Name of the item, displayed in the object inspector.

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DisplayName` contains the name of this item as shown in the object inspector. For `TCollectionItem` this returns always the class name of the managing collection, followed by the index of the item.

`TCollectionItem` does not implement any functionality to store the `DisplayName` property. The property can be set, but this will have no effect other than that the managing collection is notified of a change. The actual displayname will remain unchanged. To store the `DisplayName` property, `TCollectionItem` descendants should override the `TCollectionItem.SetDisplayName` (360) and `TCollectionItem.GetDisplayName` (360) to add storage functionality.

See also: `TCollectionItem.Index` (362), `TCollectionItem.ID` (361), `TCollectionItem.GetDisplayName` (360), `TCollectionItem.SetDisplayName` (360)

## 4.47 TComponent

### 4.47.1 Description

`TComponent` is the base class for any set of classes that needs owner-owned functionality, and which needs support for property streaming. All classes that should be handled by an IDE (Integrated Development Environment) must descend from `TComponent`, as it includes all support for streaming all its published properties.

Components can 'own' other components. `TComponent` introduces methods for enumerating the child components. It also allows to name the owned components with a unique name. Furthermore, functionality for sending notifications when a component is removed from the list or removed from memory altogether is also introduced in `TComponent`.

`TComponent` introduces a form of automatic memory management: When a component is destroyed, all its child components will be destroyed first.

**4.47.2 Interfaces overview**

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">303</a>	IInterfaceComponentReference	Interface for checking component references
<a href="#">260</a>	IUnknown	

**4.47.3 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">365</a>	BeforeDestruction	Overrides standard BeforeDestruction.
<a href="#">364</a>	Create	Creates a new instance of the component.
<a href="#">365</a>	Destroy	Destroys the instance of the component.
<a href="#">365</a>	DestroyComponents	Destroy child components.
<a href="#">365</a>	Destroying	Called when the component is being destroyed
<a href="#">366</a>	ExecuteAction	Standard action execution method.
<a href="#">366</a>	FindComponent	Finds and returns the named component in the owned components.
<a href="#">366</a>	FreeNotification	Ask the component to notify called when it is being destroyed.
<a href="#">366</a>	FreeOnRelease	Part of the IVCLComObject interface.
<a href="#">367</a>	GetEnumerator	Create an IEnumerator instance
<a href="#">367</a>	GetNamePath	Returns the name path of this component.
<a href="#">367</a>	GetParentComponent	Returns the parent component.
<a href="#">367</a>	HasParent	Does the component have a parent ?
<a href="#">368</a>	InsertComponent	Insert the given component in the list of owned components.
<a href="#">369</a>	IsImplementorOf	Checks if the current component is the implementor of the interface
<a href="#">364</a>	Notification	Called by components that are freed and which received a FreeNotification.
<a href="#">369</a>	ReferenceInterface	Interface implementation of Notification
<a href="#">368</a>	RemoveComponent	Remove the given component from the list of owned components.
<a href="#">366</a>	RemoveFreeNotification	Remove a component from the Free Notification list.
<a href="#">368</a>	SafeCallException	Part of the IVCLComObject Interface.
<a href="#">368</a>	SetSubComponent	Sets the csSubComponent style.
<a href="#">369</a>	UpdateAction	Updates the state of an action.
<a href="#">364</a>	WriteState	Writes the component to a stream.

**4.47.4 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">369</a>	ComObject	r	Interface reference implemented by the component
<a href="#">370</a>	ComponentCount	r	Count of owned components
<a href="#">370</a>	ComponentIndex	rw	Index of component in it's owner's list.
<a href="#">370</a>	Components	r	Indexed list (zero-based) of all owned components.
<a href="#">370</a>	ComponentState	r	Current component's state.
<a href="#">371</a>	ComponentStyle	r	Current component's style.
<a href="#">371</a>	DesignInfo	rw	Information for IDE designer.
<a href="#">372</a>	Name	rws	Name of the component.
<a href="#">371</a>	Owner	r	Owner of this component.
<a href="#">372</a>	Tag	rw	Tag value of the component.
<a href="#">372</a>	VCLComObject	rw	Not implemented.

### 4.47.5 TComponent.Notification

**Synopsis:** Called by components that are freed and which received a FreeNotification.

**Declaration:** `procedure Notification(AComponent: TComponent; Operation: TOperation)  
; Virtual`

**Visibility:** protected

**Description:** `Notification` is called whenever a child component is destroyed, inserted or removed from the list of owned component. Components that were requested to send a notification when they are freed ((with `FreeNotification` (366)) will also call `Notification` when they are freed.

The `AComponent` parameter specifies which component sends the notification, and `Operation` specifies whether the component is being inserted into or removed from the child component list, or whether it is being destroyed.

Descendants of `TComponent` can use `FreeNotification` (366) to request notification of the destruction of another object. By overriding the `Notification` method, they can do special processing (typically, set a reference to this component to `Nil`) when this component is destroyed. The `Notification` method is called quite often in the streaming process, so speed should be a consideration when overriding this method.

See also: `TOperation` (271), `TComponent.FreeNotification` (366), `TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification` (366)

### 4.47.6 TComponent.WriteState

**Synopsis:** Writes the component to a stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteState(Writer: TWriter); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `WriteState` writes the component's current state to a stream through the writer (506) object `writer`. Values for all published properties of the component can be written to the stream. Normally there is no need to call `WriteState` directly. The streaming system calls `WriteState` itself.

The `TComponent` (362) implementation of `WriteState` simply calls `TWriter.WriteData` (506). Descendant classes can, however, override `WriteState` to provide additional processing of stream data.

See also: `ReadState` (362), `TStream.WriteComponent` (446), `TWriter.WriteData` (506)

### 4.47.7 TComponent.Create

**Synopsis:** Creates a new instance of the component.

**Declaration:** `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of a `TComponent` class. If `AOwner` is not `Nil`, the new component attempts to insert itself in the list of owned components of the owner.

See also: `Insert` (362), `Owner` (371)

#### 4.47.8 TComponent.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance of the component.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` sends a `opRemove` notification to all components in the free-notification list. After that, all owned components are destroyed by calling `DestroyComponents` (365) (and hence removed from the list of owned components). When this is done, the component removes itself from its owner's child component list. After that, the parent's destroy method is called.

See also: Notification (364), Owner (371), `DestroyComponents` (365), Components (370)

#### 4.47.9 TComponent.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis: Overrides standard `BeforeDestruction`.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeforeDestruction` is overridden by `TComponent` to set the `csDestroying` flag in `TComponent.ComponentState` (370)

See also: `TComponent.ComponentState` (370)

#### 4.47.10 TComponent.DestroyComponents

Synopsis: Destroy child components.

Declaration: `procedure DestroyComponents`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DestroyComponents` calls the destructor of all owned components, till no more components are left in the Components (370) array.

Calling the destructor of an owned component has as the effect that the component will remove itself from the list of owned components, if nothing has disrupted the sequence of destructors.

Errors: If an overridden 'destroy' method does not call it's inherited destructor or raises an exception, it's `TComponent.Destroy` (365) destructor will not be called, which may result in an endless loop.

See also: `Destroy` (365), Components (370)

#### 4.47.11 TComponent.Destroying

Synopsis: Called when the component is being destroyed

Declaration: `procedure Destroying`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroying` sets the `csDestroying` flag in the component's state (362) property, and does the same for all owned components.

It is not necessary to call `Destroying` directly, the destructor `Destroy` (365) does this automatically.

See also: State (362), `Destroy` (365)

#### 4.47.12 TComponent.ExecuteAction

Synopsis: Standard action execution method.

Declaration: `function ExecuteAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: public

Description: `ExecuteAction` checks whether `Action` handles the current component, and if yes, calls the `ExecuteAction` method, passing itself as a parameter. The function returns `True` if the action handles the current component.

See also: `TBasicAction` (326), `TBasicAction.ExecuteAction` (326), `TBasicAction.HandlesTarget` (327), `TComponent.UpdateAction` (369)

#### 4.47.13 TComponent.FindComponent

Synopsis: Finds and returns the named component in the owned components.

Declaration: `function FindComponent(const AName: string) : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindComponent` searches the component with name `AName` in the list of owned components. If `AName` is empty, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `Components` (370), `Name` (372)

#### 4.47.14 TComponent.FreeNotification

Synopsis: Ask the component to notify called when it is being destroyed.

Declaration: `procedure FreeNotification(AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `FreeNotification` inserts `AComponent` in the freenotification list. When the component is destroyed, the `Notification` (364) method is called for all components in the freenotification list.

See also: `Components` (370), `Notification` (364), `TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification` (366)

#### 4.47.15 TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification

Synopsis: Remove a component from the Free Notification list.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveFreeNotification(AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `RemoveFreeNotification` removes `AComponent` from the freenotification list.

See also: `TComponent.FreeNotification` (366)

#### 4.47.16 TComponent.FreeOnRelease

Synopsis: Part of the `IVCLComObject` interface.

Declaration: `procedure FreeOnRelease`

Visibility: public

Description: Provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not yet implemented.

#### 4.47.17 TComponent.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TComponentEnumerator`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` (1553) interface for `TComponent`. It creates a `TComponentEnumerator` (373) instance and returns its `IEnumerator` (1554) interface. The enumerator enumerates all child components of the component instance.

See also: `TComponentEnumerator` (373), `IEnumerator` (1554), `IEnumerable` (1553)

#### 4.47.18 TComponent.GetNamePath

Synopsis: Returns the name path of this component.

Declaration: `function GetNamePath : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetNamePath` returns the name of the component as it will be shown in the object inspector. `TComponent` overrides `GetNamePath` so it returns the `Name` (372) property of the component.

See also: `Name` (372), `TPersistent.GetNamePath` (424)

#### 4.47.19 TComponent.GetParentComponent

Synopsis: Returns the parent component.

Declaration: `function GetParentComponent : TComponent; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetParentComponent` can be implemented to return the parent component of this component. The implementation of this method in `TComponent` always returns `Nil`. Descendant classes must override this method to return the visual parent of the component.

See also: `HasParent` (367), `Owner` (371)

#### 4.47.20 TComponent.HasParent

Synopsis: Does the component have a parent ?

Declaration: `function HasParent : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HasParent` can be implemented to return whether the parent of the component exists. The implementation of this method in `TComponent` always returns `False`, and should be overridden by descendant classes to return `True` when a parent is available. If `HasParent` returns `True`, then `GetParentComponent` (367) will return the parent component.

See also: `HasParent` (367), `Owner` (371)



#### 4.47.21 TComponent.InsertComponent

Synopsis: Insert the given component in the list of owned components.

Declaration: `procedure InsertComponent (AComponent : TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InsertComponent` attempts to insert `AComponent` in the list with owned components. It first calls `ValidateComponent` (362) to see whether the component can be inserted. It then checks whether there are no name conflicts by calling `ValidateRename` (362). If neither of these checks have raised an exception the component is inserted, and notified of the insert.

See also: `RemoveComponent` (368), `Insert` (362), `ValidateContainer` (362), `ValidateRename` (362), `Notification` (364)

#### 4.47.22 TComponent.RemoveComponent

Synopsis: Remove the given component from the list of owned components.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveComponent (AComponent : TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RemoveComponent` will send an `opRemove` notification to `AComponent` and will then proceed to remove `AComponent` from the list of owned components.

See also: `InsertComponent` (368), `Remove` (362), `ValidateRename` (362), `Notification` (364)

#### 4.47.23 TComponent.SafeCallException

Synopsis: Part of the `IVCLComObject` Interface.

Declaration: `function SafeCallException (ExceptObject : TObject;  
  ExceptAddr : CodePointer) : HRESULT; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Provided for Delphi compatibility, but not implemented.

#### 4.47.24 TComponent.SetSubComponent

Synopsis: Sets the `csSubComponent` style.

Declaration: `procedure SetSubComponent (ASubComponent : Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetSubComponent` includes `csSubComponent` in the `ComponentStyle` (371) property if `ASubComponent` is `True`, and excludes it again if `ASubComponent` is `False`.

See also: `TComponent.ComponentStyle` (371)

#### 4.47.25 TComponent.UpdateAction

Synopsis: Updates the state of an action.

Declaration: `function UpdateAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateAction` checks whether `Action` handles the current component, and if yes, calls the `UpdateTarget` method, passing itself as a parameter. The function returns `True` if the action handles the current component.

See also: [TBasicAction \(326\)](#), [TBasicAction.UpdateTarget \(327\)](#), [TBasicAction.HandlesTarget \(327\)](#), [TBasicAction.ExecuteAction \(326\)](#)

#### 4.47.26 TComponent.IsImplementorOf

Synopsis: Checks if the current component is the implementor of the interface

Declaration: `function IsImplementorOf(const Intf: IInterface) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsImplementorOf` returns `True` if the current component implements the given interface. The interface should descend from [IInterfaceComponentReference \(303\)](#) and the `GetComponent` method should return the current instance.

See also: [IInterfaceComponentReference \(303\)](#)

#### 4.47.27 TComponent.ReferenceInterface

Synopsis: Interface implementation of Notification

Declaration: `procedure ReferenceInterface(const intf: IInterface; op: TOperation)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReferenceInterface` can be used to notify an interface of a component operation: it is the equivalent of the `TComponent.Notification (364)` method of `TComponent` for interfaces. If the interface implements [IInterfaceComponentReference \(303\)](#), then the component that implements the interface is notified of the given operation `Op`.

Errors: None.

See also: [TComponent.Notification \(364\)](#), [IInterfaceComponentReference \(303\)](#)

#### 4.47.28 TComponent.ComObject

Synopsis: Interface reference implemented by the component

Declaration: `Property ComObject : IUnknown`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ComObject` returns the COM interface represented by the component. If the component does not represent a COM interface, reading this property will raise an [EComponentError \(296\)](#).

See also: [EComponentError \(296\)](#)

#### 4.47.29 TComponent.Components

Synopsis: Indexed list (zero-based) of all owned components.

Declaration: `Property Components[Index: Integer]: TComponent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Components` provides indexed access to the list of owned components. `Index` can range from 0 to `ComponentCount-1` (370).

See also: `ComponentCount` (370), `Owner` (371)

#### 4.47.30 TComponent.ComponentCount

Synopsis: Count of owned components

Declaration: `Property ComponentCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ComponentCount` returns the number of components that the current component owns. It can be used to determine the valid index range in the `Component` (370) array.

See also: `Components` (370), `Owner` (371)

#### 4.47.31 TComponent.ComponentIndex

Synopsis: Index of component in it's owner's list.

Declaration: `Property ComponentIndex : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ComponentIndex` is the index of the current component in its owner's list of components. If the component has no owner, the value of this property is -1.

See also: `Components` (370), `ComponentCount` (370), `Owner` (371)

#### 4.47.32 TComponent.ComponentState

Synopsis: Current component's state.

Declaration: `Property ComponentState : TComponentState`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**Description:** `ComponentState` indicates the current state of the component. It is a set of flags which indicate the various stages in the lifetime of a component. The following values can occur in this set:

Table 4.25: Component states

Flag	Meaning
<code>csLoading</code>	The component is being loaded from stream
<code>csReading</code>	Component properties are being read from stream.
<code>csWriting</code>	Component properties are being written to stream.
<code>csDestroying</code>	The component or one of it's owners is being destroyed.
<code>csAncestor</code>	The component is being streamed as part of a frame
<code>csUpdating</code>	The component is being updated
<code>csFixups</code>	References to other components are being resolved
<code>csFreeNotification</code>	The component has freenotifications.
<code>csInline</code>	The component is being loaded as part of a frame
<code>csDesignInstance</code>	? not used.

The component state is set by various actions such as reading it from stream, destroying it etc.

See also: `SetAncestor` (362), `SetDesigning` (362), `SetInline` (362), `SetDesignInstance` (362), `Updating` (362), `Updated` (362), `Loaded` (362)

### 4.47.33 TComponent.ComponentStyle

**Synopsis:** Current component's style.

**Declaration:** `Property ComponentStyle : TComponentStyle`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** Current component's style.

### 4.47.34 TComponent.DesignInfo

**Synopsis:** Information for IDE designer.

**Declaration:** `Property DesignInfo : LongInt`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `DesignInformation` can be used by an IDE to store design information in the component. It should not be used by an application programmer.

See also: `Tag` (372)

### 4.47.35 TComponent.Owner

**Synopsis:** Owner of this component.

**Declaration:** `Property Owner : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Owner` returns the owner of this component. The owner cannot be set except by explicitly inserting the component in another component's owned components list using that component's `InsertComponent` (368) method, or by removing the component from it's owner's owned component list using the `RemoveComponent` (368) method.

See also: Components (370), `InsertComponent` (368), `RemoveComponent` (368)

#### 4.47.36 TComponent.VCLComObject

Synopsis: Not implemented.

Declaration: `Property VCLComObject : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `VCLComObject` is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

#### 4.47.37 TComponent.Name

Synopsis: Name of the component.

Declaration: `Property Name : TComponentName`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is the name of the component. This name should be a valid identifier, i.e. must start with a letter or underscore, and can contain only letters, numbers and the underscore character. When attempting to set the name of a component, the name will be checked for validity. Furthermore, when a component is owned by another component, the name must be either empty or must be unique among the child component names.

By "letters", 7-bit letters are meant.

Errors: Attempting to set the name to an invalid value will result in an exception being raised.

See also: `ValidateRename` (362), `Owner` (371)

#### 4.47.38 TComponent.Tag

Synopsis: Tag value of the component.

Declaration: `Property Tag : PtrInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Tag` can be used to store an integer value in the component. This value is streamed together with all other published properties. It can be used for instance to quickly identify a component in an event handler.

See also: `Name` (372)

## 4.48 TComponentEnumerator

### 4.48.1 Description

`TComponentEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554) interface for the `TComponent` (362) class, so the `TComponent` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop over the `TComponent.Components` (370) child components of the component. It is returned by the `TComponent.GetEnumerator` (367) method of `TComponent`.

See also: `TComponent` (362), `TComponent.GetEnumerator` (367), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554)

### 4.48.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">373</a>	<code>Create</code>	Initialize a new instance of <code>TComponentEnumerator</code>
<a href="#">373</a>	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Return the current pointer in the list
<a href="#">374</a>	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the children of the component.

### 4.48.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">374</a>	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Current pointer in the list

### 4.48.4 TComponentEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TComponentEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create (AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TComponentEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the component `AComponent` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TComponent` (362)

### 4.48.5 TComponentEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current `TComponent` (362) child component instance in the enumerator.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` (374), `TComponent.Components` (370)

### 4.48.6 TComponentEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the children of the component.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next child in the components child components, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last child in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([373](#))

### 4.48.7 TComponentEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` ([373](#)) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([373](#))

## 4.49 TCustomMemoryStream

### 4.49.1 Description

`TCustomMemoryStream` is the parent class for streams that stored their data in memory. It introduces all needed functions to handle reading from and navigating through the memory, and introduces a `Memory` ([376](#)) property which points to the memory area where the stream data is kept.

The only thing which `TCustomMemoryStream` does not do is obtain memory to store data when writing data or the writing of data. This functionality is implemented in descendant streams such as `TMemoryStream` ([412](#)). The reason for this approach is that this way it is possible to create e.g. read-only descendants of `TCustomMemoryStream` that point to a fixed part in memory which can be read from, but not written to.

**Remark** Since `TCustomMemoryStream` is an abstract class, do not create instances of `TMemoryStream` directly. Instead, create instances of descendants such as `TMemoryStream` ([412](#)).

See also: `TMemoryStream` ([412](#)), `TStream` ([441](#))

### 4.49.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">375</a>	<code>Read</code>	Reads <code>Count</code> bytes from the stream into <code>buffer</code> .
<a href="#">376</a>	<code>SaveToFile</code>	Writes the contents of the stream to a file.
<a href="#">375</a>	<code>SaveToStream</code>	Writes the contents of the memory stream to another stream.
<a href="#">375</a>	<code>Seek</code>	Sets a new position in the stream.

### 4.49.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">376</a>	Memory	r	Pointer to the data kept in the memory stream.

### 4.49.4 TCustomMemoryStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Reads `Count` bytes from the stream into `buffer`.

**Declaration:** `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Read` reads `Count` bytes from the stream into the memory pointed to by `buffer`. It returns the number of bytes actually read.

This method overrides the `TStream.Read` ([442](#)) method of `TStream` ([441](#)). It will read as much bytes as are still available in the memory area pointer to by `Memory` ([376](#)). After the bytes are read, the internal stream position is updated.

See also: `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` ([376](#)), `TStream.Read` ([442](#))

### 4.49.5 TCustomMemoryStream.Seek

**Synopsis:** Sets a new position in the stream.

**Declaration:** `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Seek` overrides the abstract `TStream.Seek` ([443](#)) method. It simply updates the internal stream position, and returns the new position.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether the new position is still a valid position, i.e. whether the position is still within the range `0..Size`. Attempting a seek outside the valid memory range of the stream may result in an exception at the next read or write operation.

See also: `TStream.Position` ([450](#)), `TStream.Size` ([451](#)), `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` ([376](#))

### 4.49.6 TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream

**Synopsis:** Writes the contents of the memory stream to another stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `SaveToStream` writes the contents of the memory stream to `Stream`. The content of `Stream` is not cleared first. The current position of the memory stream is not changed by this action.

**Remark** This method will work much faster than the use of the `TStream.CopyFrom` ([445](#)) method:

```
Seek(0, soFromBeginning);
Stream.CopyFrom(Self, Size);
```

because the `CopyFrom` method copies the contents in blocks, while `SaveToStream` writes the contents of the memory as one big block.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when writing to `Stream` an `EStreamError` ([299](#)) exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToFile` ([376](#)), `TStream.CopyFrom` ([445](#))



### 4.49.7 TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToFile

**Synopsis:** Writes the contents of the stream to a file.

**Declaration:** `procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `SaveToFile` writes the contents of the stream to a file with name `FileName`. It simply creates a filestream and writes the contents of the memorystream to this file stream using `TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream` (375).

**Remark** This method will work much faster than the use of the `TStream.CopyFrom` (445) method:

```
Stream:=TFileStream.Create(fmCreate,FileName);
Seek(0,soFromBeginning);
Stream.CopyFrom(Self,Size);
```

because the `CopyFrom` method copies the contents in blocks, while `SaveToFile` writes the contents of the memory as one big block.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when creating or writing to the file, an `EStreamError` (299) exception may occur.

**See also:** `TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream` (375), `TFileStream` (382), `TStream.CopyFrom` (445)

### 4.49.8 TCustomMemoryStream.Memory

**Synopsis:** Pointer to the data kept in the memory stream.

**Declaration:** `Property Memory : Pointer`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `Memory` points to the memory area where stream keeps it's data. The property is read-only, so the pointer cannot be set this way.

**Remark** Do not write to the memory pointed to by `Memory`, since the memory content may be read-only, and thus writing to it may cause errors.

**See also:** `TStream.Size` (451)

## 4.50 TDataModule

### 4.50.1 Description

`TDataModule` is a container for non-visual objects which can be used in an IDE to group non-visual objects which can be used by various other containers (forms) in a project. Notably, data access components are typically stored on a datamodule. Web components and services can also be implemented as descendants of datamodules.

`TDataModule` introduces some events which make it easier to program, and provides the needed streaming capabilities for persistent storage.

An IDE will typically allow to create a descendant of `TDataModule` which contains non-visual components in it's published property list.

**See also:** `TDataModule.OnCreate` (379)

### 4.50.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">378</a>	AfterConstruction	Overrides standard TObject ( <a href="#">1560</a> ) behaviour.
<a href="#">378</a>	BeforeDestruction	
<a href="#">377</a>	Create	Create a new instance of a TDataModule.
<a href="#">377</a>	CreateNew	
<a href="#">378</a>	Destroy	Destroys the TDataModule instance.

### 4.50.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">378</a>	DesignOffset	rw	Position property needed for manipulation in an IDE.
<a href="#">379</a>	DesignPPI	rw	Design Time PPI
<a href="#">379</a>	DesignSize	rw	Size property needed for manipulation in an IDE.
<a href="#">380</a>	OldCreateOrder	rw	Determines when OnCreate and OnDestroy are triggered.
<a href="#">379</a>	OnCreate	rw	Event handler, called when the datamodule is created.
<a href="#">379</a>	OnDestroy	rw	Event handler, called when the datamodule is destroyed.

### 4.50.4 TDataModule.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a TDataModule.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TDataModule` and calls `TDataModule.CreateNew` ([377](#)). After that it reads the published properties from a stream using `InitInheritedComponent` ([287](#)) if a descendant class is instantiated. If the `OldCreateOrder` ([380](#)) property is `True`, the `TDataModule.OnCreate` ([379](#)) event is called.

Errors: An exception can be raised during the streaming operation.

See also: `TDataModule.CreateNew` ([377](#))

### 4.50.5 TDataModule.CreateNew

Synopsis:

Declaration: `constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent)`  
`constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent; CreateMode: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateNew` creates a new instance of the class, but bypasses the streaming mechanism. The `CreateMode` parameter (by default zero) is not used in `TDataModule`. If the `AddDataModule` ([280](#)) handler is set, then it is called, with the newly created instance as an argument.

See also: `TDataModule.Create` ([377](#)), `AddDataModule` ([280](#)), `TDataModule.OnCreate` ([379](#))

#### 4.50.6 TDataModule.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TDataModule instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the TDataModule instance. If the `OldCreateOrder` (380) property is `True` the `OnDestroy` (379) event handler is called prior to destroying the data module.

Before calling the inherited `destroy`, the `RemoveDataModule` (281) handler is called if it is set, and `Self` is passed as a parameter.

Errors: An event can be raised during the `OnDestroy` event handler.

See also: `TDataModule.OnDestroy` (379), `RemoveDataModule` (281)

#### 4.50.7 TDataModule.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Overrides standard TObject (1560) behaviour.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AfterConstruction` calls the `OnCreate` (379) handler if the `OldCreateOrder` (380) property is `False`.

See also: `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` (380), `TDataModule.OnCreate` (379)

#### 4.50.8 TDataModule.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeforeDestruction` calls the `OnDestroy` (379) handler if the `OldCreateOrder` (380) property is `False`.

See also: `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` (380), `TDataModule.OnDestroy` (379)

#### 4.50.9 TDataModule.DesignOffset

Synopsis: Position property needed for manipulation in an IDE.

Declaration: `Property DesignOffset : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `DesignOffset` is the position of the datamodule when displayed in an IDE. It is streamed to the form file, and should not be used at run-time.

See also: `TDataModule.DesignSize` (379)

#### 4.50.10 TDataModule.DesignSize

Synopsis: Size property needed for manipulation in an IDE.

Declaration: `Property DesignSize : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DesignSize` is the size of the datamodule when displayed in an IDE. It is streamed to the form file, and should not be used at run-time.

See also: `TDataModule.DesignOffset` ([378](#))

#### 4.50.11 TDataModule.DesignPPI

Synopsis: Design Time PPI

Declaration: `Property DesignPPI : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DesignPPI` exists for the benefit of graphical designers, to store the PPI at which the module was designed. It is not used in FPC itself.

#### 4.50.12 TDataModule.OnCreate

Synopsis: Event handler, called when the datamodule is created.

Declaration: `Property OnCreate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `OnCreate` event is triggered when the datamodule is created and streamed. The exact moment of triggering is dependent on the value of the `OldCreateOrder` ([380](#)) property.

See also: `TDataModule.Create` ([377](#)), `TDataModule.CreateNew` ([377](#)), `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` ([380](#))

#### 4.50.13 TDataModule.OnDestroy

Synopsis: Event handler, called when the datamodule is destroyed.

Declaration: `Property OnDestroy : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `OnDestroy` event is triggered when the datamodule is destroyed. The exact moment of triggering is dependent on the value of the `OldCreateOrder` ([380](#)) property.

See also: `TDataModule.Destroy` ([378](#)), `TDataModule.OnCreate` ([379](#)), `TDataModule.Create` ([377](#)), `TDataModule.CreateNew` ([377](#)), `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` ([380](#))

#### 4.50.14 TDataModule.OldCreateOrder

Synopsis: Determines when `OnCreate` and `OnDestroy` are triggered.

Declaration: `Property OldCreateOrder : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OldCreateOrder` determines when exactly the `OnCreate` (379) and `OnDestroy` (379) event handlers are called.

If set to `True`, then the `OnCreate` event handler is called after the data module was streamed. If it is set to `False`, then the handler is called prior to the streaming process.

If set to `True`, then the `OnDestroy` event handler is called before the data module is removed from the streaming system. If it is set to `False`, then the handler is called after the data module was removed from the streaming process.

See also: `TDataModule.OnDestroy` (379), `TDataModule.OnCreate` (379), `TDataModule.Destroy` (378), `TDataModule.Create` (377), `TDataModule.CreateNew` (377), `TDataModule.OldCreateOrder` (380)

### 4.51 TFiler

#### 4.51.1 Description

Class responsible for streaming of components.

#### 4.51.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
381	<code>DefineBinaryProperty</code>	
380	<code>DefineProperty</code>	
381	<code>FlushBuffer</code>	Flush the buffer

#### 4.51.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
382	<code>Ancestor</code>	<code>rw</code>	Ancestor component from which an inherited component is streamed.
382	<code>IgnoreChildren</code>	<code>rw</code>	Determines whether children will be streamed as well.
381	<code>LookupRoot</code>	<code>r</code>	Component used to look up ancestor components.
381	<code>Root</code>	<code>rw</code>	The root component is the initial component which is being streamed.

#### 4.51.4 TFiler.DefineProperty

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure DefineProperty(const Name: string; ReadData: TReaderProc; WriteData: TWriterProc; HasData: Boolean); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description:

### 4.51.5 TFiler.DefineBinaryProperty

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure DefineBinaryProperty(const Name: string;  
 ReadData: TStreamProc;  
 WriteData: TStreamProc; HasData: Boolean)  
 ; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description:

### 4.51.6 TFiler.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flush the buffer

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer by calling the `flushbuffer` on the driver. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.FlushBuffer` ([313](#))

### 4.51.7 TFileer.Root

Synopsis: The root component is the initial component which is being streamed.

Declaration: `Property Root : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The streaming process will stream a component and all the components which it owns. The `Root` component is the component which is initially streamed.

See also: `LookupRoot` ([381](#))

### 4.51.8 TFileer.LookupRoot

Synopsis: Component used to look up ancestor components.

Declaration: `Property LookupRoot : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: When comparing inherited component's values against parent values, the values are compared with the component in `LookupRoot`. Initially, it is set to `Root` ([381](#)).

See also: `Root` ([381](#))

### 4.51.9 TFile.Ancestor

Synopsis: Ancestor component from which an inherited component is streamed.

Declaration: `Property Ancestor : TPersistent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: When streaming a component, this is the parent component. Only properties that differ from the parent's property value will be streamed.

See also: [Root \(381\)](#), [LookupRoot \(381\)](#)

### 4.51.10 TFile.IgnoreChildren

Synopsis: Determines whether children will be streamed as well.

Declaration: `Property IgnoreChildren : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: By default, all children (i.e. owned objects) will also be streamed when streaming a component. This property can be used to prevent owned objects from being streamed.

## 4.52 TFileStream

### 4.52.1 Description

`TFileStream` is a `TStream` ([441](#)) descendant that stores or reads its data from a named file in the file system of the operating system.

To this end, it overrides some of the methods in `TStream` and implements them for the case of files on disk, and it adds the `FileName` ([384](#)) property to the list of public properties.

See also: `TFileStream.Create` ([383](#)), `TStream` ([441](#))

### 4.52.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">383</a>	Create	Creates a file stream.
<a href="#">383</a>	Destroy	Destroys the file stream.

### 4.52.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">384</a>	FileName	r	The filename of the stream.





### 4.52.6 TFileStream.FileName

Synopsis: The filename of the stream.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FileName` is the name of the file that the stream reads from or writes to. It is the name as passed in the constructor of the stream; it cannot be changed. To write to another file, the stream must be freed and created again with the new filename.

See also: `TFileStream.Create` (383)

## 4.53 TFPList

### 4.53.1 Description

`TFPList` is a class that can be used to manage collections of pointers. It introduces methods and properties to store the pointers, search in the list of pointers, sort them. It manages its memory by itself, no intervention for that is needed. Contrary to `TList` (402), `TFPList` has no notification mechanism. If no notification mechanism is used, it is better to use `TFPList` instead of `TList`, as the performance of `TFPList` is much higher.

To manage collections of strings, it is better to use a `TStrings` (461) descendant such as `TStringList` (456). To manage general objects, a `TCollection` (352) class exists, from which a descendant can be made to manage collections of various kinds.

See also: `TStrings` (461), `TCollection` (352)

### 4.53.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
385	<code>Add</code>	Adds a new pointer to the list.
385	<code>AddList</code>	Add all pointers from another list
389	<code>Assign</code>	<code>Assign</code> performs the given operation on the list.
385	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the pointer list.
386	<code>Delete</code>	Removes a pointer from the list.
385	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.
386	<code>Error</code>	Raises an <code>EListError</code> (297) exception.
386	<code>Exchange</code>	Exchanges two pointers in the list.
386	<code>Expand</code>	Increases the capacity of the list if needed.
387	<code>Extract</code>	Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.
387	<code>First</code>	Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.
390	<code>ForEachCall</code>	Call a procedure or method for each pointer in the list.
387	<code>GetEnumerator</code>	Create an <code>IEnumerator</code> instance
387	<code>IndexOf</code>	Returns the index of a given pointer.
388	<code>IndexOfItem</code>	Search an item in the list
388	<code>Insert</code>	Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.
388	<code>Last</code>	Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.
388	<code>Move</code>	Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.
389	<code>Pack</code>	Removes <code>Nil</code> pointers from the list and frees unused memory.
389	<code>Remove</code>	Removes a value from the list.
389	<code>Sort</code>	Sorts the pointers in the list.

### 4.53.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">390</a>	Capacity	rw	Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.
<a href="#">390</a>	Count	rw	Current number of pointers in the list.
<a href="#">391</a>	Items	rw	Provides access to the pointers in the list.
<a href="#">391</a>	List	r	Memory array where pointers are stored.

### 4.53.4 TFPList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements. The elements themselves are in no way touched, i.e. any memory they point to must be explicitly released before calling the destructor.

### 4.53.5 TFPList.AddList

Synopsis: Add all pointers from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList (AList: TFPList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AddList` adds all pointers from `AList` to the list. If a pointer is already present, it is added a second time.

See also: `TFPList.Assign` ([389](#)), `TList.AddList` ([405](#))

### 4.53.6 TFPList.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new pointer to the list.

Declaration: `function Add (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new pointer to the list after the last pointer (i.e. at position `Count`, thus increasing the item count with 1. If the list is at full capacity, the capacity of the list is expanded, using the `Expand` ([386](#)) method.

To insert a pointer at a certain position in the list, use the `Insert` ([388](#)) method instead.

See also: `Delete` ([386](#)), `Grow` ([402](#)), `Insert` ([388](#))

### 4.53.7 TFPList.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the pointer list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Clear` removes all pointers from the list, and sets the capacity to 0, thus freeing any memory allocated to maintain the list.

See also: `Destroy` ([385](#))

#### 4.53.8 TFPList.Delete

**Synopsis:** Removes a pointer from the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Delete` removes the pointer at position `Index` from the list, shifting all following pointers one position up (or to the left).

The memory the pointer is pointing to is *not* deallocated.

#### 4.53.9 TFPList.Error

**Synopsis:** Raises an `EListError` ([297](#)) exception.

**Declaration:** `class procedure Error(const Msg: string; Data: PtrInt)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Error` raises an `EListError` ([297](#)) exception, with a message formatted with `Msg` and `Data`.

#### 4.53.10 TFPList.Exchange

**Synopsis:** Exchanges two pointers in the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Exchange` exchanges the pointers at positions `Index1` and `Index2`. Both pointers must be within the current range of the list, or an `EListError` ([297](#)) exception will be raised.

#### 4.53.11 TFPList.Expand

**Synopsis:** Increases the capacity of the list if needed.

**Declaration:** `function Expand : TFPList`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Expand` increases the capacity of the list if the current element count matches the current list capacity.

The capacity is increased according to the following algorithm:

- 1.If the capacity is less than 3, the capacity is increased with 4.
- 2.If the capacity is larger than 3 and less than 8, the capacity is increased with 8.
- 3.If the capacity is larger than 8, the capacity is increased with 16.

The return value is `Self`.

See also: `Capacity` ([390](#))

#### 4.53.12 TFPList.Extract

Synopsis: Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract (Item: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` searches for the first occurrence of `Item` in the list and deletes it from the list. If `Item` was found, it's value is returned. If `Item` was not found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPList.Delete` ([386](#))

#### 4.53.13 TFPList.First

Synopsis: Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function First : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns the value of the first non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `Last` ([388](#))

#### 4.53.14 TFPList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFPListEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` ([1553](#)) interface for `TFPList`. It creates a `TFPListEnumerator` ([391](#)) instance and returns it's `IEnumerator` ([1554](#)) interface.

See also: `TFPListEnumerator` ([391](#)), `IEnumerator` ([1554](#)), `IEnumerable` ([1553](#))

#### 4.53.15 TFPList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Returns the index of a given pointer.

Declaration: `function IndexOf (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for the pointer `Item` in the list of pointers, and returns the index of the pointer, if found.

If no pointer with the value `Item` was found, -1 is returned.

**4.53.16 TFPList.IndexOfItem**

Synopsis: Search an item in the list

Declaration: `function IndexOfItem(Item: Pointer; Direction: TDirection) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfItem` has the same function as the `IndexOf` (260) function: it searches for `Item` in the list, and returns the index of the first found matching pointer. If none is found, -1 is returned.

In difference with the `IndexOf` function, it accepts a parameter `Direction` indicating the search direction: from the beginning of the list till the end of the list, or from the end of the list till the beginning. The `IndexOf` function starts at the beginning of the list. The search direction is only important if the item can appear multiple times in the list.

See also: `TFPList.TDirection` (??), `TFPList.IndexOf` (387)

**4.53.17 TFPList.Insert**

Synopsis: Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts pointer `Item` at position `Index` in the list. All pointers starting from `Index` are shifted to the right.

If `Index` is not a valid position, then a `EListError` (297) exception is raised.

See also: `Add` (385), `Delete` (386)

**4.53.18 TFPList.Last**

Synopsis: Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns the value of the last non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `First` (387)

**4.53.19 TFPList.Move**

Synopsis: Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move(CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the pointer at position `CurIndex` to position `NewIndex`. This is done by storing the value at position `CurIndex`, deleting the pointer at position `CurIndex`, and reinserting the value at position `NewIndex`.

If `CurIndex` or `Newindex` are not inside the valid range of indices, an `EListError` (297) exception is raised.

See also: `Exchange` (386)

### 4.53.20 TFPList.Assign

Synopsis: Assign performs the given operation on the list.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(ListA: TFPList; AOperator: TListAssignOp;  
ListB: TFPList)`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign can be used to merge or assign lists. It is an extended version of the usual `TPersistent.Assign` mechanism. The arguments `ListA` and `ListB` are used as sources of pointers to add or remove elements from the current list, depending on the operation `AOperation`. The available operations are documented in the `TListAssignOp` (269) type.

See also: `TFPList.Add` (385), `TFPList.Clear` (385)

### 4.53.21 TFPList.Remove

Synopsis: Removes a value from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Remove searches `Item` in the list, and, if it finds it, deletes the item from the list. Only the first occurrence of `Item` is removed.

See also: `Delete` (386), `IndexOf` (387), `Insert` (388)

### 4.53.22 TFPList.Pack

Synopsis: Removes `Nil` pointers from the list and frees unused memory.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: public

Description: Pack removes all `nil` pointers from the list. The capacity of the list is then set to the number of pointers in the list. This method can be used to free unused memory if the list has grown to very large sizes and has a lot of unneeded `nil` pointers in it.

See also: `TFPList.Clear` (385)

### 4.53.23 TFPList.Sort

Synopsis: Sorts the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` sorts the pointers in the list. Two pointers are compared by passing them to the `Compare` function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first pointer is assumed to be 'less' than the second and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second and will be moved after the second in the list.

- if the function result is zero, the pointers are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

The sort is done using a quicksort algorithm.

#### 4.53.24 TFPList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: Call a procedure or method for each pointer in the list.

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TListCallback; arg: pointer)`  
`procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TListStaticCallback; arg: pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEachCall` iterates over all pointers in the list and calls `proc2call`, passing it the pointer and the additional `arg` data pointer. `Proc2Call` can be a method or a static procedure.

Errors: None.

See also: `TListStaticCallback` (270), `TListCallback` (270)

#### 4.53.25 TFPList.Capacity

Synopsis: Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` contains the number of pointers the list can store before it starts to grow.

If a new pointer is added to the list using `add` (385) or `insert` (388), and there is not enough memory to store the new pointer, then the list will try to allocate more memory to store the new pointer. Since this is a time consuming operation, it is important that this operation be performed as little as possible. If it is known how many pointers there will be before filling the list, it is a good idea to set the capacity first before filling. This ensures that the list doesn't need to grow, and will speed up filling the list.

See also: `SetCapacity` (384), `Count` (390)

#### 4.53.26 TFPList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the current number of (possibly `Nil`) pointers in the list. Since the list is zero-based, the index of the largest pointer is `Count-1`.

### 4.53.27 TFPList.Items

Synopsis: Provides access to the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Items` is used to access the pointers in the list. It is the default property of the `TFPList` class, so it can be omitted.

The list is zero-based, so `Index` must be in the range 0 to `Count-1`.

### 4.53.28 TFPList.List

Synopsis: Memory array where pointers are stored.

Declaration: `Property List : PPointerList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` points to the memory space where the pointers are stored. This can be used to quickly copy the list of pointers to another location.

## 4.54 TFPListEnumerator

### 4.54.1 Description

`TFPListEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554) interface for the `TFPList` (384) class, so the `TFPList` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop. It is returned by the `TFPList.GetEnumerator` (387) method of `TFPList`.

See also: `TFPList` (384), `TFPList.GetEnumerator` (387), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554)

### 4.54.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">391</a>	<code>Create</code>	Initialize a new instance of <code>TFPListEnumerator</code>
<a href="#">392</a>	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Return the current pointer in the list
<a href="#">392</a>	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list.

### 4.54.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">392</a>	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Current pointer in the list

### 4.54.4 TFPListEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TFPListEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AList: TFPList)`



Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TFPListEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the list `AList` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TFPList` ([384](#))

#### 4.54.5 `TFPListEnumerator.GetCurrent`

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current pointer in the enumerator.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` ([392](#))

#### 4.54.6 `TFPListEnumerator.MoveNext`

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next item in the list, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last element in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([392](#))

#### 4.54.7 `TFPListEnumerator.Current`

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` ([392](#)) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([392](#))

## 4.55 THandleStream

### 4.55.1 Description

`THandleStream` is an abstract descendant of the `TStream` (441) class that provides methods for a stream to handle all reading and writing to and from a handle, provided by the underlying OS. To this end, it overrides the `Read` (393) and `Write` (394) methods of `TStream`.

#### Remark

- `THandleStream` does not obtain a handle from the OS by itself, it just handles reading and writing to such a handle by wrapping the system calls for reading and writing; Descendant classes should obtain a handle from the OS by themselves and pass it on in the inherited constructor.
- Contrary to Delphi, no seek is implemented for `THandleStream`, since pipes and sockets do not support this. The seek is implemented in descendant methods that support it.

See also: `TStream` (441), `TFileStream` (382)

### 4.55.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
393	<code>Create</code>	Create a handlestream from an OS Handle.
393	<code>Read</code>	Overrides standard read method.
394	<code>Seek</code>	Overrides the <code>Seek</code> method.
394	<code>Write</code>	Overrides standard write method.

### 4.55.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
394	<code>Handle</code>	r	The OS handle of the stream.

### 4.55.4 THandleStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a handlestream from an OS Handle.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AHandle: THandle)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of a `THandleStream` class. It stores `AHandle` in an internal variable and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TStream` (441)

### 4.55.5 THandleStream.Read

Synopsis: Overrides standard read method.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Read` overrides the `Read` (442) method of `TStream`. It uses the `Handle` (394) property to read the `Count` bytes into `Buffer`.

If no error occurs while reading, the number of bytes actually read will be returned.

**Errors:** If the operating system reports an error while reading from the handle, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (442), `THandleStream.Write` (394), `THandleStream.Handle` (394)

#### 4.55.6 THandleStream.Write

**Synopsis:** Overrides standard write method.

**Declaration:** `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Write` overrides the `Write` (443) method of `TStream`. It uses the `Handle` (394) property to write the `Count` bytes from `Buffer`.

If no error occurs while writing, the number of bytes actually written will be returned.

**Errors:** If the operating system reports an error while writing to the handle, 0 is returned.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (442), `THandleStream.Write` (394), `THandleStream.Handle` (394)

#### 4.55.7 THandleStream.Seek

**Synopsis:** Overrides the `Seek` method.

**Declaration:** `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `seek` uses the `FileSeek` (1656) method to position the stream on the desired position. Note that handle stream descendants (notably pipes) can override the method to prevent the seek.

#### 4.55.8 THandleStream.Handle

**Synopsis:** The OS handle of the stream.

**Declaration:** `Property Handle : THandle`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read`

**Description:** `Handle` represents the Operating system handle to which reading and writing is done. The handle can be read only, i.e. it cannot be set after the `THandleStream` instance was created. It should be passed to the constructor `THandleStream.Create` (393)

**See also:** `THandleStream` (393), `THandleStream.Create` (393)

## 4.56 TInterfacedPersistent

### 4.56.1 Description

TInterfacedPersistent is a direct descendant of TPersistent (422) which implements the #rtl.system.IInterface (1347) interface. In particular, it implements the QueryInterface as a public method.

See also: IInterface (1347)

### 4.56.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">260</a>	IInterface	

### 4.56.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">395</a>	AfterConstruction	Overrides the standard AfterConstruction method.
<a href="#">395</a>	QueryInterface	Implementation of IInterface.QueryInterface

### 4.56.4 TInterfacedPersistent.QueryInterface

Synopsis: Implementation of IInterface.QueryInterface

Declaration: `function QueryInterface(const IID: TGUID; out Obj) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: QueryInterface simply calls GetInterface using the specified IID, and returns the correct values.

See also: TObject.GetInterface (1567)

### 4.56.5 TInterfacedPersistent.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Overrides the standard AfterConstruction method.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: AfterConstruction is overridden to do some extra interface housekeeping: a reference to the IInterface interface of the owning class is obtained (if it exists).

## 4.57 TInterfaceList

### 4.57.1 Description

TInterfaceList is a standard implementation of the IInterfaceList (303) interface. It uses a TThreadList (504) instance to store the list of interfaces.

See also: IInterfaceList (303), TList (402)

### 4.57.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">303</a>	<code>IInterfaceList</code>	Interface for maintaining a list of interfaces.

### 4.57.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">398</a>	<code>Add</code>	Add an interface to the list
<a href="#">397</a>	<code>Clear</code>	Removes all interfaces from the list.
<a href="#">396</a>	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TInterfaceList</code>
<a href="#">397</a>	<code>Delete</code>	Delete an interface from the list.
<a href="#">396</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the list of interfaces
<a href="#">397</a>	<code>Exchange</code>	Exchange 2 interfaces in the list
<a href="#">400</a>	<code>Expand</code>	Expands the list
<a href="#">397</a>	<code>First</code>	Returns the first non- <code>Nil</code> element in the list.
<a href="#">398</a>	<code>GetEnumerator</code>	Create an <code>IEnumerator</code> instance
<a href="#">398</a>	<code>IndexOf</code>	Returns the index of an interface.
<a href="#">398</a>	<code>Insert</code>	Insert an interface to the list
<a href="#">399</a>	<code>Last</code>	Returns the last non- <code>Nil</code> element in the list.
<a href="#">399</a>	<code>Lock</code>	Lock the list
<a href="#">399</a>	<code>Remove</code>	Remove an interface from the list
<a href="#">399</a>	<code>Unlock</code>	UnLocks a locked list

### 4.57.4 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">400</a>	<code>Capacity</code>	<code>rw</code>	The current capacity of the list.
<a href="#">400</a>	<code>Count</code>	<code>rw</code>	The current number of elements in the list.
<a href="#">400</a>	<code>Items</code>	<code>rw</code>	Array-based access to the list's items.

### 4.57.5 `TInterfaceList.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TInterfaceList`

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TInterfaceList` class. It sets up the internal structures needed to store the list of interfaces.

See also: `Destroy` ([396](#))

### 4.57.6 `TInterfaceList.Destroy`

Synopsis: Destroys the list of interfaces

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` first calls `Clear` ([397](#)) and then frees the `TInterfaceList` instance from memory.

Note that the `Clear` method decreases the reference count of all interfaces.

See also: `Create` ([396](#)), `Clear` ([397](#))

#### 4.57.7 TInterfaceList.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all interfaces from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Clear` (306) method. It removes all interfaces from the list. It does this by setting each element in the list to `Nil`, in this way the reference count of each interface in the list is decreased.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Clear` (306), `Add` (398), `Destroy` (396), `TList.Clear` (405), `TFPList.Clear` (385)

#### 4.57.8 TInterfaceList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an interface from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(index: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Delete` (306) method. It clears the slot first and then removes the element from the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Delete` (306), `TInterfaceList.Remove` (399), `TInterfaceList.Add` (398), `TList.Delete` (405), `TFPList.Delete` (386)

#### 4.57.9 TInterfaceList.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchange 2 interfaces in the list

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(index1: Integer; index2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Exchange` (306) method. It exchanges the position of 2 interfaces in the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Exchange` (306), `TInterfaceList.Delete` (397), `TInterfaceList.Add` (398), `TList.Exchange` (406), `TFPList.Exchange` (386)

#### 4.57.10 TInterfaceList.First

Synopsis: Returns the first non-`Nil` element in the list.

Declaration: `function First : IUnknown`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `First` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.First` (306) method. It returns the first non-`Nil` element from the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.First` (306), `TList.First` (407)

#### 4.57.11 TInterfaceList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TInterfaceListEnumerator`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` (1553) interface for `TInterfaceList`. It creates a `TInterfaceListEnumerator` (401) instance and returns its `IEnumerator` (1554) interface. The enumerator enumerates all interfaces in the list.

See also: `TInterfaceListEnumerator` (401), `IEnumerator` (1554), `IEnumerable` (1553)

#### 4.57.12 TInterfaceList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Returns the index of an interface.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOf` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` (307) method. It returns the zero-based index in the list of the indicated interface, or -1 if the index is not in the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.IndexOf` (307), `TList.IndexOf` (407)

#### 4.57.13 TInterfaceList.Add

Synopsis: Add an interface to the list

Declaration: `function Add(item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Add` (307) method. It adds an interface to the list, and returns the location of the new element in the list. This operation will increment the reference count of the interface.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Add` (307), `TInterfaceList.Delete` (397), `TInterfaceList.Insert` (398), `TList.Add` (405), `TFPList.Add` (385)

#### 4.57.14 TInterfaceList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert an interface to the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert(i: Integer; item: IUnknown)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Insert` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Insert` (307) method. It inserts an interface in the list at the indicated position. This operation will increment the reference count of the interface.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Insert` (307), `TInterfaceList.Delete` (397), `TInterfaceList.Add` (398), `TList.Insert` (407), `TFPList.Insert` (388)

**4.57.15 TInterfaceList.Last**

Synopsis: Returns the last non-`Nil` element in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : IUnknown`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Last` (307) method. It returns the last non-`Nil` element from the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Last` (307), `TInterfaceList.First` (397), `TList.Last` (408), `TFPList.Last` (388)

**4.57.16 TInterfaceList.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove an interface from the list

Declaration: `function Remove(item: IUnknown) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Remove` (307) method. It removes the first occurrence of the interface from the list.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Remove` (307), `TInterfaceList.Delete` (397), `TInterfaceList.IndexOf` (398), `TList.Remove` (408), `TFPList.Remove` (389)

**4.57.17 TInterfaceList.Lock**

Synopsis: Lock the list

Declaration: `procedure Lock`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Lock` locks the list. It is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Lock` (308) method. It limits access to the list to the current thread.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Lock` (308), `TInterfaceList.Unlock` (399), `TThreadList.LockList` (505)

**4.57.18 TInterfaceList.Unlock**

Synopsis: Unlocks a locked list

Declaration: `procedure Unlock`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Unlock` unlocks the list. It is the implementation of the `IInterfaceList.Unlock` (308) method. After a call to unlock, the current thread releases the list for manipulation by other threads.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Unlock` (308), `TInterfaceList.Lock` (399), `TThreadList.UnlockList` (506)



### 4.57.19 TInterfaceList.Expand

Synopsis: Expands the list

Declaration: `function Expand : TInterfaceList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Expand` calls the `expand` method from the internally used list. It returns itself.

See also: `TList.Expand` ([406](#))

### 4.57.20 TInterfaceList.Capacity

Synopsis: The current capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Capacity` is the number of elements that the list can contain without needing to allocate more memory.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Capacity` ([308](#)), `TInterfaceList.Count` ([400](#)), `TList.Capacity` ([409](#)), `TFPList.Capacity` ([390](#))

### 4.57.21 TInterfaceList.Count

Synopsis: The current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Count` is the number of elements in the list. This can include `Nil` elements. Note that the elements are zero-based, and thus are indexed from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `IInterfaceList.Count` ([308](#)), `TInterfaceList.Items` ([400](#)), `TInterfaceList.Capacity` ([400](#)), `TList.Count` ([410](#)), `TFPList.Count` ([390](#))

### 4.57.22 TInterfaceList.Items

Synopsis: Array-based access to the list's items.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: IUnknown; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the elements in the list. Note that the elements are zero-based, and thus are indexed from 0 to `Count-1`. The items are read-write. It is not possible to add elements to the list by accessing an element with index larger or equal to `Count` ([400](#)).

See also: `IInterfaceList.Items` ([309](#)), `TInterfaceList.Count` ([400](#)), `TList.Items` ([410](#)), `TFPList.Items` ([391](#))

## 4.58 TInterfaceListEnumerator

### 4.58.1 Description

`TInterfaceListEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554) interface for the `TInterfaceList` (395) class, so the `TInterfaceList` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop over the `TInterfaceList.Components` (395) child components of the component. It is returned by the `TInterfaceList.GetEnumerator` (398) method of `TInterfaceList`.

See also: `TInterfaceList` (395), `TInterfaceList.GetEnumerator` (398), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554)

### 4.58.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">401</a>	<code>Create</code>	Initialize a new instance of <code>TInterfaceListEnumerator</code>
<a href="#">401</a>	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Return the current pointer in the list
<a href="#">402</a>	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the children of the component.

### 4.58.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">402</a>	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Current pointer in the list

### 4.58.4 TInterfaceListEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TInterfaceListEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create (AList: TInterfaceList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TInterfaceListEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the component `AComponent` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TInterfaceList` (395)

### 4.58.5 TInterfaceListEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : IUnknown`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current interface in the `TInterfaceList` (395) list.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` (402), `TInterfaceList.Components` (395)

### 4.58.6 TInterfaceListEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the children of the component.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next interface in the list, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last interface in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([401](#))

### 4.58.7 TInterfaceListEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : IUnknown`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` ([401](#)) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([401](#))

## 4.59 TList

### 4.59.1 Description

`TList` is a class that can be used to manage collections of pointers. It introduces methods and properties to store the pointers, search in the list of pointers, sort them. It manages its memory by itself, no intervention for that is needed. It has an event notification mechanism which allows to notify of list changes. This slows down some of `TList` mechanisms, and if no notification is used, `TFPList` ([384](#)) may be used instead.

To manage collections of strings, it is better to use a `TStrings` ([461](#)) descendant such as `TStringList` ([456](#)). To manage general objects, a `TCollection` ([352](#)) class exists, from which a descendant can be made to manage collections of various kinds.

See also: `TStrings` ([461](#)), `TCollection` ([352](#))

### 4.59.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">301</a>	<code>IFPObserved</code>	Interface implemented by an object that can be observed.

### 4.59.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">405</a>	Add	Adds a new pointer to the list.
<a href="#">405</a>	AddList	Add all pointers from another list
<a href="#">408</a>	Assign	Copy the contents of other lists.
<a href="#">405</a>	Clear	Clears the pointer list.
<a href="#">403</a>	Create	Class to manage collections of pointers.
<a href="#">405</a>	Delete	Removes a pointer from the list.
<a href="#">403</a>	Destroy	Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.
<a href="#">406</a>	Error	Raises an <code>EListError</code> ( <a href="#">297</a> ) exception.
<a href="#">406</a>	Exchange	Exchanges two pointers in the list.
<a href="#">406</a>	Expand	Increases the capacity of the list if needed.
<a href="#">406</a>	Extract	Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.
<a href="#">407</a>	First	Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.
<a href="#">404</a>	FPOAttachObserver	Add an observer to the list of observers
<a href="#">404</a>	FPODetachObserver	Remove an observer from the list of observers
<a href="#">404</a>	FPONotifyObservers	Notify observers of changes in the list
<a href="#">407</a>	GetEnumerator	Create an <code>IEnumerator</code> instance
<a href="#">407</a>	IndexOf	Returns the index of a given pointer.
<a href="#">407</a>	Insert	Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.
<a href="#">408</a>	Last	Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.
<a href="#">408</a>	Move	Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.
<a href="#">409</a>	Pack	Removes <code>Nil</code> pointers from the list and frees unused memory.
<a href="#">408</a>	Remove	Removes a value from the list.
<a href="#">409</a>	Sort	Sorts the pointers in the list.

### 4.59.4 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">409</a>	Capacity	rw	Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.
<a href="#">410</a>	Count	rw	Current number of pointers in the list.
<a href="#">410</a>	Items	rw	Provides access to the pointers in the list.
<a href="#">410</a>	List	r	Memory array where pointers are stored.

### 4.59.5 TList.Create

Synopsis: Class to manage collections of pointers.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TList.Create` creates a new instance of `TList`. It clears the list and prepares it for use.

See also: `TList` ([402](#)), `TList.Destroy` ([403](#))

### 4.59.6 TList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Destroy` destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements. The elements themselves are in no way touched, i.e. any memory they point to must be explicitly released before calling the destructor.

#### 4.59.7 TList.FPOAttachObserver

**Synopsis:** Add an observer to the list of observers

**Declaration:** `procedure FPOAttachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `FPOAttachObserver` is part of the implementation of the `IFPObserved` (301) interface in `TList`. It adds a new observer to the list of observers. Calling this multiple times will add the observed object multiple times to the list.

**Errors:** An `EObserver` exception may be raised if `AObject` does not implement the `IFPObserver` (302) interface.

See also: `IFPObserver` (302), `IFPObserved.FPOAttachObserver` (301), `IFPObserved` (301)

#### 4.59.8 TList.FPODetachObserver

**Synopsis:** Remove an observer from the list of observers

**Declaration:** `procedure FPODetachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `FPODetachObserver` is part of the implementation of the `IFPObserved` (301) interface in `TList`. It removes the first found instance of the observer from the list of observers.

See also: `IFPObserved` (301), `IFPObserved.FPODetachObserver` (301), `IFPObserver` (302)

#### 4.59.9 TList.FPONotifyObservers

**Synopsis:** Notify observers of changes in the list

**Declaration:** `procedure FPONotifyObservers(ASender: TObject;  
AOperation: TFPObservedOperation;  
Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `FPONotifyObservers` is called to notify observers of changes in the list. The following notifications are sent:

**ooAddItem** when a pointer is added. `Data` is the pointer that is added.

**ooDeleteItem** when a pointer is deleted or extracted. `Data` is the pointer that is deleted or extracted.

**ooChange** called when 2 pointers are exchanged.

**ooFree** Called when the list is freed.

See also: `FPODetachObserver` (260), `FPOAttachObserver` (260), `Add` (260), `Exchange` (260), `Delete` (260), `Extract` (260)

#### 4.59.10 TList.AddList

Synopsis: Add all pointers from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList (AList: TList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all pointers from `AList` to the list. If a pointer is already present, it is added a second time.

See also: `TList.Assign` (408), `TFPList.AddList` (385)

#### 4.59.11 TList.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new pointer to the list.

Declaration: `function Add (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new pointer to the list after the last pointer (i.e. at position `Count`, thus increasing the item count with 1. If the list is at full capacity, the capacity of the list is expanded, using the `Grow` (402) method.

To insert a pointer at a certain position in the list, use the `Insert` (407) method instead.

See also: `Delete` (405), `Grow` (402), `Insert` (407)

#### 4.59.12 TList.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the pointer list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` removes all pointers from the list, and sets the capacity to 0, thus freeing any memory allocated to maintain the list.

See also: `Destroy` (403)

#### 4.59.13 TList.Delete

Synopsis: Removes a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete (Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` removes the pointer at position `Index` from the list, shifting all following pointers one position up (or to the left).

The memory the pointer is pointing to is *not* deallocated.

**4.59.14 TList.Error**

Synopsis: Raises an `EListError` (297) exception.

Declaration: `class procedure Error(const Msg: string; Data: PtrInt); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Error` raises an `EListError` (297) exception, with a message formatted with `Msg` and `Data`.

**4.59.15 TList.Exchange**

Synopsis: Exchanges two pointers in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` exchanges the pointers at positions `Index1` and `Index2`. Both pointers must be within the current range of the list, or an `EListError` (297) exception will be raised.

**4.59.16 TList.Expand**

Synopsis: Increases the capacity of the list if needed.

Declaration: `function Expand : TList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Expand` increases the capacity of the list if the current element count matches the current list capacity.

The capacity is increased according to the following algorithm:

- 1.If the capacity is less than 3, the capacity is increased with 4.
- 2.If the capacity is larger than 3 and less than 8, the capacity is increased with 8.
- 3.If the capacity is larger than 8, the capacity is increased with 16.

The return value is `Self`.

See also: `Capacity` (409)

**4.59.17 TList.Extract**

Synopsis: Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(item: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` searched for an occurrence of `item`, and if a match is found, the match is deleted from the list. If no match is found, nothing is deleted. If `Item` was found, the result is `Item`. If `Item` was not found, the result is `Nil`. A `lnExtracted` notification event is triggered if an element is extracted from the list.

See also: `TList.Delete` (405), `TList.IndexOf` (407), `TList.Remove` (408)

**4.59.18 TList.First**

Synopsis: Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function First : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns the value of the first non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `Last` ([408](#))

**4.59.19 TList.GetEnumerator**

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TListEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` ([1553](#)) interface for `TList`. It creates a `TListEnumerator` ([410](#)) instance and returns it's `IEnumerator` ([1554](#)) interface.

See also: `TListEnumerator` ([410](#)), `IEnumerator` ([1554](#)), `IEnumerable` ([1553](#))

**4.59.20 TList.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Returns the index of a given pointer.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for the pointer `Item` in the list of pointers, and returns the index of the pointer, if found.

If no pointer with the value `Item` was found, -1 is returned.

**4.59.21 TList.Insert**

Synopsis: Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts pointer `Item` at position `Index` in the list. All pointers starting from `Index` are shifted to the right.

If `Index` is not a valid position, then a `EListError` ([297](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Add` ([405](#)), `Delete` ([405](#))



#### 4.59.22 TList.Last

Synopsis: Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` returns the value of the last non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `First` ([407](#))

#### 4.59.23 TList.Move

Synopsis: Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move (CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Move` moves the pointer at position `CurIndex` to position `NewIndex`. This is done by storing the value at position `CurIndex`, deleting the pointer at position `CurIndex`, and reinserting the value at position `NewIndex`.

If `CurIndex` or `Newindex` are not inside the valid range of indices, an `EListError` ([297](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Exchange` ([406](#))

#### 4.59.24 TList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy the contents of other lists.

Declaration: `procedure Assign (ListA: TList; AOperator: TListAssignOp; ListB: TList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` can be used to merge or assign lists. It is an extended version of the usual `TPersistent.Assign` mechanism. The arguments `ListA` and `ListB` are used as sources of pointers to add or remove elements from the current list, depending on the operation `AOperation`. The available operations are documented in the `TListAssignOp` ([269](#)) type.

See also: `TList.Clear` ([405](#))

#### 4.59.25 TList.Remove

Synopsis: Removes a value from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` searches `Item` in the list, and, if it finds it, deletes the item from the list. Only the first occurrence of `Item` is removed.

See also: `Delete` ([405](#)), `IndexOf` ([407](#)), `Insert` ([407](#))

#### 4.59.26 TList.Pack

Synopsis: Removes Nil pointers from the list and frees unused memory.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: public

Description: `Pack` removes all `nil` pointers from the list. The capacity of the list is then set to the number of pointers in the list. This method can be used to free unused memory if the list has grown to very large sizes and has a lot of unneeded `nil` pointers in it.

See also: `TList.Clear` (405)

#### 4.59.27 TList.Sort

Synopsis: Sorts the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Sort (Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` sorts the pointers in the list. Two pointers are compared by passing them to the `Compare` function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first pointer is assumed to be 'less' than the second and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second and will be moved after the second in the list.
- If the function result is zero, the pointers are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

The sort is done using a quicksort algorithm.

#### 4.59.28 TList.Capacity

Synopsis: Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Capacity` contains the number of pointers the list can store before it starts to grow.

If a new pointer is added to the list using `add` (405) or `insert` (407), and there is not enough memory to store the new pointer, then the list will try to allocate more memory to store the new pointer. Since this is a time consuming operation, it is important that this operation be performed as little as possible. If it is known how many pointers there will be before filling the list, it is a good idea to set the capacity first before filling. This ensures that the list doesn't need to grow, and will speed up filling the list.

See also: `SetCapacity` (402), `Count` (410)

### 4.59.29 TList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Count` is the current number of (possibly `Nil`) pointers in the list. Since the list is zero-based, the index of the largest pointer is `Count-1`.

### 4.59.30 TList.Items

Synopsis: Provides access to the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` is used to access the pointers in the list. It is the default property of the `TList` class, so it can be omitted.

The list is zero-based, so `Index` must be in the range 0 to `Count-1`.

### 4.59.31 TList.List

Synopsis: Memory array where pointers are stored.

Declaration: `Property List : PPointerList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` points to the memory space where the pointers are stored. This can be used to quickly copy the list of pointers to another location.

## 4.60 TListEnumerator

### 4.60.1 Description

`TListEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554) interface for the `TList` (402) class, so the `TList` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop. It is returned by the `TList.GetEnumerator` (407) method of `TList`.

See also: `TList` (402), `TList.GetEnumerator` (407), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554)

### 4.60.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
411	<code>Create</code>	Initialize a new instance of <code>TListEnumerator</code>
411	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Return the current pointer in the list
411	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list.

### 4.60.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">411</a>	Current	r	Current pointer in the list

### 4.60.4 TListEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TListEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create (AList: TList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TListEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the list `AList` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TList` ([402](#))

### 4.60.5 TListEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current pointer in the enumerator.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` ([411](#))

### 4.60.6 TListEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next item in the list, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last element in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([411](#))

### 4.60.7 TListEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` ([411](#)) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([411](#))

## 4.61 TMemoryStream

### 4.61.1 Description

`TMemoryStream` is a `TStream` (441) descendant that stores its data in memory. It descends directly from `TCustomMemoryStream` (374) and implements the necessary to allocate and de-allocate memory directly from the heap. It implements the `Write` (413) method which is missing in `TCustomMemoryStream`.

`TMemoryStream` also introduces methods to load the contents of another stream or a file into the memory stream.

It is not necessary to do any memory management manually, as the stream will allocate or de-allocate memory as needed. When the stream is freed, all allocated memory will be freed as well.

See also: `TCustomMemoryStream` (374), `TStream` (441)

### 4.61.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
412	<code>Clear</code>	Zeroes the position, capacity and size of the stream.
412	<code>Destroy</code>	Frees any allocated memory and destroys the memory stream.
413	<code>LoadFromFile</code>	Loads the contents of a file into memory.
412	<code>LoadFromStream</code>	Loads the contents of a stream into memory.
413	<code>SetSize</code>	Sets the size for the memory stream.
413	<code>Write</code>	Writes data to the stream's memory.

### 4.61.3 TMemoryStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Frees any allocated memory and destroys the memory stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears the memory stream, thus in effect freeing any memory allocated for it, and then frees the memory stream.

### 4.61.4 TMemoryStream.Clear

Synopsis: Zeroes the position, capacity and size of the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` sets the position and size to 0, and sets the capacity of the stream to 0, thus freeing all memory allocated for the stream.

See also: `TStream.Size` (451), `TStream.Position` (450), `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` (376)

### 4.61.5 TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Loads the contents of a stream into memory.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `LoadFromStream` loads the contents of `Stream` into the memorybuffer of the stream. Any previous contents of the memory stream are overwritten. Memory is allocated as needed.

**Remark** The `LoadFromStream` uses the `Size` (451) property of `Stream` to determine how much memory must be allocated. Some streams do not allow the stream size to be determined, so care must be taken when using this method.

This method will work much faster than the use of the `TStream.CopyFrom` (445) method:

```
Seek(0, soFromBeginning);
CopyFrom(Stream, Stream.Size);
```

because the `CopyFrom` method copies the contents in blocks, while `LoadFromStream` reads the contents of the stream as one big block.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when reading from the stream, an `EStreamError` (299) may occur.

See also: `TStream.CopyFrom` (445), `TMemoryStream.LoadFromFile` (413)

#### 4.61.6 TMemoryStream.LoadFromFile

**Synopsis:** Loads the contents of a file into memory.

**Declaration:** `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `LoadFromFile` loads the contents of the file with name `FileName` into the memory stream. The current contents of the memory stream is replaced by the contents of the file. Memory is allocated as needed.

The `LoadFromFile` method simply creates a filestream and then calls the `TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream` (412) method.

See also: `TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream` (412)

#### 4.61.7 TMemoryStream.SetSize

**Synopsis:** Sets the size for the memory stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetSize(NewSize: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `SetSize` sets the size of the memory stream to `NewSize`. This will set the capacity of the stream to `NewSize` and correct the current position in the stream when needed.

See also: `TStream.Position` (450), `TStream.Size` (451)

#### 4.61.8 TMemoryStream.Write

**Synopsis:** Writes data to the stream's memory.

**Declaration:** `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the stream's memory, starting at the current position in the stream. If more memory is needed than currently allocated, more memory will be allocated. Any contents in the memory stream at the current position will be overwritten. The function returns the number of bytes actually written (which should under normal circumstances always equal `Count`).

This method overrides the `TStream.Write` (443) method.

**Errors:** If no more memory could be allocated, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomMemoryStream.Read` (375)

## 4.62 TOwnedCollection

### 4.62.1 Description

`TOwnedCollection` automatically maintains owner information, so it can be displayed in an IDE. Collections that should be displayed in an IDE should descend from `TOwnedCollection` or must implement a `GetOwner` function.

See also: `TCollection` (352)

### 4.62.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
414	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TOwnerCollection</code> instance.

### 4.62.3 TOwnedCollection.Create

**Synopsis:** Create a new `TOwnerCollection` instance.

**Declaration:** `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent;  
                                  AItemClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of `TOwnedCollection` and stores the `AOwner` references. It will the value returned in the `TCollection.Owner` (354) property of the collection. The `ItemClass` class reference is passed on to the inherited constructor, and will be used to create new instances in the `Insert` (356) and `Add` (354) methods.

See also: `TCollection.Create` (353), `TCollection.Owner` (354)

## 4.63 TOwnerStream

### 4.63.1 Description

`TOwnerStream` can be used when creating stream chains such as when using encryption and compression streams. It keeps a reference to the source stream and will automatically free the source stream when ready (if the `SourceOwner` (416) property is set to `True`).

See also: `TStream` (441), `TOwnerStream.Source` (415), `TOwnerStream.SourceOwner` (416)

### 4.63.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">415</a>	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TOwnerStream</code> .
<a href="#">415</a>	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TOwnerStream</code> instance and the source stream.

### 4.63.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">415</a>	Source	r	Reference to the source stream.
<a href="#">416</a>	SourceOwner	rw	Indicates whether the ownerstream owns it's source

### 4.63.4 TOwnerStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TOwnerStream`.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ASource: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TOwnerStream` and stores the reference to `ASource`. If `SourceOwner` is `True`, the source stream will also be freed when the instance is destroyed.

See also: `TOwnerStream.Destroy` ([415](#)), `TOwnerStream.Source` ([415](#)), `TOwnerStream.SourceOwner` ([416](#))

### 4.63.5 TOwnerStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TOwnerStream` instance and the source stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the source stream if the `SourceOwner` property is `True`.

See also: `TOwnerStream.Create` ([415](#)), `TOwnerStream.Source` ([415](#)), `TOwnerStream.SourceOwner` ([416](#))

### 4.63.6 TOwnerStream.Source

Synopsis: Reference to the source stream.

Declaration: `Property Source : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Source` is the source stream. It should be used by descendant streams to access the source stream to read from or write to.

Do not free the `Source` reference directly if `SourceOwner` is `True`. In that case the owner stream instance will free the source stream itself.

See also: `TOwnerStream.Create` ([415](#))



### 4.63.7 TOwnerStream.SourceOwner

Synopsis: Indicates whether the ownerstream owns it's source

Declaration: `Property SourceOwner : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `SourceOwner` indicates whether the `TOwnerStream` owns it's `Source` stream or not. If this property is `True` then the `Source` stream is freed when the `TOwnerStream` instance is freed.

See also: `TOwnerStream.Source` (415), `TOwnerStream.Destroy` (415)

## 4.64 TParser

### 4.64.1 Description

This class breaks a stream of text data in tokens. Its primary use is to help reading the contents of a form file (usually a file with `dfm`, `xfm` or `lfm` extension), and for this reason it isn't suitable to be used as a general parser.

The parser is always positioned on a certain token, whose type is stored in the `Token` (422) property. Various methods are provided to obtain the token value in the desired format.

To advance to the next token, invoke `NextToken` (419) method.

See also: `TParser.Token` (422), `TParser.NextToken` (419)

### 4.64.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
417	<code>CheckToken</code>	Checks whether the token if of the given type.
417	<code>CheckTokenSymbol</code>	Checks whether the token equals the given symbol
417	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new parser instance.
417	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the parser instance.
418	<code>Error</code>	Raises an <code>EParserError</code> (298) exception with the given message
418	<code>ErrorFmt</code>	Raises an <code>EParserError</code> (298) exception and formats the message.
418	<code>ErrorStr</code>	Raises an <code>EParserError</code> (298) exception with the given message
418	<code>HexToBinary</code>	Writes hexadecimal data to a stream.
419	<code>NextToken</code>	Reads the next token and returns its type.
419	<code>SourcePos</code>	Returns the current position in the stream.
419	<code>TokenComponentIdent</code>	Returns the path of a subcomponent starting from the current token.
420	<code>TokenFloat</code>	Returns the current token as a float.
420	<code>TokenInt</code>	Returns the current token as an integer.
420	<code>TokenString</code>	Returns the current token as a string.
421	<code>TokenSymbolIs</code>	Returns <code>True</code> if the token equals the given symbol.
421	<code>TokenWideString</code>	Returns the current token as a widestring

### 4.64.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">421</a>	FloatType	r	The type of a float token.
<a href="#">422</a>	SourceLine	r	Current source line number.
<a href="#">422</a>	Token	r	The type of the current token.

### 4.64.4 TParser.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new parser instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TParser` instance, using `Stream` as the stream to read data from, and reads the first token from the stream.

Errors: If an error occurs while parsing the first token, an `EParserError` ([298](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` ([419](#)), `TParser.Token` ([422](#))

### 4.64.5 TParser.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the parser instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the parser instance.

Errors: None.

### 4.64.6 TParser.CheckToken

Synopsis: Checks whether the token is of the given type.

Declaration: `procedure CheckToken(T: Char)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Checks whether the token is of the given type.

Errors: If current token isn't of type `T`, an `EParserError` ([298](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.Token` ([422](#))

### 4.64.7 TParser.CheckTokenSymbol

Synopsis: Checks whether the token equals the given symbol

Declaration: `procedure CheckTokenSymbol(const S: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckTokenSymbol` performs a case-insensitive comparison of current token value with `S`.

Current token must be of type `toSymbol` ([262](#)), otherwise an `EParserError` ([298](#)) exception is raised.

Errors: If the comparison fails, or current token isn't a symbol, an `EParseError` (298) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.TokenSymbolIs` (421), `toSymbol` (262)

#### 4.64.8 `TParser.Error`

Synopsis: Raises an `EParseError` (298) exception with the given message

Declaration: `procedure Error(const Ident: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an `EParseError` (298) exception with the given message

#### 4.64.9 `TParser.ErrorFmt`

Synopsis: Raises an `EParseError` (298) exception and formats the message.

Declaration: `procedure ErrorFmt(const Ident: string; const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an `EParseError` (298) exception and formats the message.

#### 4.64.10 `TParser.ErrorStr`

Synopsis: Raises an `EParseError` (298) exception with the given message

Declaration: `procedure ErrorStr(const Message: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an `EParseError` (298) exception with the given message

#### 4.64.11 `TParser.HexToBinary`

Synopsis: Writes hexadecimal data to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure HexToBinary(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `HexToBinary` reads a sequence of hexadecimal characters from the input stream and converts them to a sequence of bytes which is written to `Stream`. Each byte is represented by two contiguous hexadecimal characters.

Whitespace is allowed between hexadecimal characters if it doesn't appear between two characters that form the same byte.

`HexToBinary` stops when the first non-hexadecimal and non-whitespace character is found, or the end of the input stream is reached.

**Remark** This method begins reading after the current token: that is, current token, even if it's a valid hexadecimal value, isn't included.

Errors: If a single hexadecimal character is found, an `EParseError` (298) exception is raised.

#### 4.64.12 TParser.NextToken

Synopsis: Reads the next token and returns its type.

Declaration: `function NextToken : Char`

Visibility: public

Description: `NextToken` parses the next token in the stream and returns its type. The type of the token can also be retrieved later reading `Token` (422) property.

If the end of the stream is reached, `toEOF` (262) is returned.

For details about token types, see `TParser.Token` (422)

Errors: If an error occurs while parsing the token, an `EParserError` (298) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.Token` (422)

#### 4.64.13 TParser.SourcePos

Synopsis: Returns the current position in the stream.

Declaration: `function SourcePos : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: This is not the character position relative to the current source line, but the byte offset from the beginning of the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TParser.SourceLine` (422)

#### 4.64.14 TParser.TokenComponentIdent

Synopsis: Returns the path of a subcomponent starting from the current token.

Declaration: `function TokenComponentIdent : string`

Visibility: public

Description: If current token is `toSymbol` (262), `TokenComponentIdent` tries to find subcomponent names separated by a dot (.). The returned string is the longest subcomponent path found. If there are no subcomponents, current symbol is returned.

**Remark** After this method has been called, subsequent calls to `TokenString` (420) or `TokenWideString` (421) return the same value returned by `TokenComponentIdent`.

##### Example

If source stream contains `a.b.c` and `TParser` is positioned on the first token (`a`), this method returns `a.b.c`.

Errors: If `Token` (422) isn't `toSymbol` (262), or no valid symbol is found after a dot, an `EParserError` (298) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (419), `TParser.Token` (422), `TParser.TokenString` (420), `TParser.TokenWideString` (421), `toSymbol` (262)

#### 4.64.15 TParser.TokenFloat

Synopsis: Returns the current token as a float.

Declaration: `function TokenFloat : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: If current token type is `toFloat` (262), this method returns the token value as a float.

To specify a negative number, no space must exist between unary minus and number.

Floating point numbers can be postfixed with a character that specifies the floating point type. See `FloatType` (421) for further information.

**Remark** In the input stream the decimal separator, if present, must be a dot ( . ).

Errors: If `Token` (422) isn't `toFloat` (262), an `EParserError` (298) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.FloatType` (421), `TParser.NextToken` (419), `TParser.Token` (422), `toFloat` (262)

#### 4.64.16 TParser.TokenInt

Synopsis: Returns the current token as an integer.

Declaration: `function TokenInt : Int64`

Visibility: public

Description: If current token type is `toInteger` (262), this method returns the token value as an integer.

In the input stream an integer can be an hexadecimal (prefixed by ' \$ ' character) or decimal number. Decimal numbers can be prefixed by an unary minus: if this is the case, no space must exist between minus and number.

Errors: If `Token` (422) isn't `toInteger` (262), an `EConvertError` (260) exception is raised.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (419), `TParser.Token` (422), `toInteger` (262)

#### 4.64.17 TParser.TokenString

Synopsis: Returns the current token as a string.

Declaration: `function TokenString : string`

Visibility: public

Description: If current token type is `toString` (262) or `toWString` (262), this method returns the contents of the string. That is, enclosing quotes are removed, embedded quotes are unescaped and control strings are converted to the appropriate sequence of characters.

If current token type isn't a string, a string containing the token representation in the input stream is returned, without any conversion: hexadecimal integers are returned with the leading \$, and floating point suffixes like `s`, `c` or `d` are kept. For tokens whose type isn't a special type, return value of `TokenString` equals `Token` (422).

**Remark** If `Token` (422) is `toWString` (262), `TokenWideString` (421) should be used instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (419), `TParser.TokenWideString` (421), `TParser.Token` (422), `toString` (262), `toWString` (262)

#### 4.64.18 TParser.TokenWideString

Synopsis: Returns the current token as a widestring

Declaration: `function TokenWideString : WideString`

Visibility: public

Description: If current token type is `toWString` (262), this method returns the contents of the string. That is, enclosing quotes are removed, embedded quotes are unescaped and control strings are converted to the appropriate sequence of characters.

If current token isn't a widestring, `TokenWideString` behaviour is the same as `TokenString` (420).

Errors: None.

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (419), `TokenString` (420), `TParser.Token` (422), `toWString` (262)

#### 4.64.19 TParser.TokenSymbols

Synopsis: Returns `True` if the token equals the given symbol.

Declaration: `function TokenSymbolIs(const S: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `TokenSymbolIs` performs a case-insensitive comparison of current token value with `S`.

If current token isn't of type `toSymbol` (262), or comparison fails, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TParser.CheckTokenSymbol` (417), `TParser.Token` (422)

#### 4.64.20 TParser.FloatType

Synopsis: The type of a float token.

Declaration: `Property FloatType : Char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Floating point numbers can be postfixed with a character specifying the type of floating point value.

When specified, this property holds the character postfixed to the number.

It can be one of the following values:

Table 4.28:

s or S	Value is a single.
c or C	Value is a currency.
d or D	Value is a date.

If `Token` (422) isn't `toFloat` (262) or one of the above characters wasn't specified, `FloatType` is the null character (zero).

See also: `TParser.NextToken` (419), `TParser.Token` (422), `TParser.TokenFloat` (420), `toFloat` (262)

#### 4.64.21 TParser.SourceLine

Synopsis: Current source line number.

Declaration: `Property SourceLine : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Current source line number.

See also: `TParser.SourcePos` (419)

#### 4.64.22 TParser.Token

Synopsis: The type of the current token.

Declaration: `Property Token : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: This property holds the type of the current token. When `Token` isn't one of the special token types (whose value can be retrieved with specific methods) it is the character representing the current token.

Special token types:

Table 4.29:

<code>toEOF</code> (262)	Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (422) when the end of the input stream was reached.
<code>toSymbol</code> (262)	Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (422) when a symbol was found in the input stream.
<code>toString</code> (262)	Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (422) when a string was found in the input stream.
<code>toInteger</code> (262)	Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (422) when an integer was found in the input stream.
<code>toFloat</code> (262)	Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (422) when a floating point value was found in the input stream.
<code>toWString</code> (262)	Value returned by <code>TParser.Token</code> (422) when a wstring was found in the input stream.

To advance to the next token, use `NextToken` (419) method.

See also: `TParser.CheckToken` (417), `TParser.NextToken` (419), `TParser.TokenComponentIdent` (419), `TParser.TokenFloat` (420), `TParser.TokenInt` (420), `TParser.TokenString` (420), `TParser.TokenWideString` (421)

### 4.65 TPersistent

#### 4.65.1 Description

`TPersistent` is the basic class for the streaming system. Since it is compiled in the `{ $M+ }` state, the compiler generates RTTI (Run-Time Type Information) for it and all classes that descend from it. This information can be used to stream all properties of classes.

It also introduces functionality to assign the contents of 2 classes to each other.

`TPersistent` implements the `IFPObserved` (301) interface for the benefit of descendant classes, but does not call `IFPObserved.FPONotifyObservers` (302). Descendants such as `TStrings` (461) and `TCollection` (352) and `TCollectionItem` (360) do use it.

See also: `TComponent` (362), `IFPObserved` (301), `TStrings` (461), `TCollection` (352), `TCollectionItem` (360)

### 4.65.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">301</a>	IFPObserved	Interface implemented by an object that can be observed.

### 4.65.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">423</a>	Assign	Assign the contents of one class to another.
<a href="#">423</a>	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TPersistent</code> instance.
<a href="#">424</a>	FPOAttachObserver	Add an observer to the list of observers.
<a href="#">424</a>	FPODetachObserver	Remove an observer from the list of observers
<a href="#">424</a>	FPONotifyObservers	Notify observers of changes.
<a href="#">424</a>	GetNamePath	Returns a string that can be used to identify the class instance.

### 4.65.4 `TPersistent.Destroy`

**Synopsis:** Destroys the `TPersistent` instance.

**Declaration:** `destructor Destroy; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` disposes of the persistent object. This method should never be called directly. Instead the `Free` method should be used.

### 4.65.5 `TPersistent.Assign`

**Synopsis:** Assign the contents of one class to another.

**Declaration:** `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Assign` copies the contents of `Source` to `Self`, if the classes of the destination and source classes are compatible.

The `TPersistent` implementation of `Assign` does nothing but calling the `AssignTo` ([422](#)) method of source. This means that if the destination class does not know how to assign the contents of the source class, the source class instance is asked to assign itself to the destination class. This means that it is necessary to implement only one of the two methods so that two classes can be assigned to one another.

**Remark** In general, a statement of the form

```
Destination:=Source;
```

(where `Destination` and `Source` are classes) does not achieve the same as a statement of the form

```
Destination.Assign(Source);
```

After the former statement, both `Source` and `Destination` will point to the same object. The latter statement will copy the *contents* of the `Source` class to the `Destination` class.

See also: `AssignTo` ([422](#))



#### 4.65.6 TPersistent.FPOAttachObserver

Synopsis: Add an observer to the list of observers.

Declaration: `procedure FPOAttachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `FPOAttachObserver` is part of the implementation of the `IFPObserved` (301) interface in `TPersistent`. It adds a new observer to the list of observers. Calling this multiple times will add the observed object multiple times to the list.

Errors: An `EObserver` exception may be raised if `AObject` does not implement the `IFPObserver` (302) interface.

See also: `IFPObserver` (302), `IFPObserved.FPOAttachObserver` (301), `IFPObserved` (301)

#### 4.65.7 TPersistent.FPODetachObserver

Synopsis: Remove an observer from the list of observers

Declaration: `procedure FPODetachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `FPODetachObserver` is part of the implementation of the `IFPObserved` (301) interface in `TPersistent`. It removes the first found instance of the observer from the list of observers.

See also: `IFPObserved` (301), `IFPObserved.FPODetachObserver` (301), `IFPObserver` (302)

#### 4.65.8 TPersistent.FPONotifyObservers

Synopsis: Notify observers of changes.

Declaration: `procedure FPONotifyObservers(ASender: TObject;  
AOperation: TFPObservedOperation;  
Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `FPONotifyObservers` can be called to notify observers of changes in the object. This method simply passes on the parameters that it receives to all attached `IFPObserver` (302) interfaces.

`TPersistent` does not call `FPONotifyObservers`. It is implemented for the benefit of descendant classes.

See also: `IFPObserved` (301), `IFPObserved.FPONotifyObservers` (302), `IFPObserver` (302)

#### 4.65.9 TPersistent.GetNamePath

Synopsis: Returns a string that can be used to identify the class instance.

Declaration: `function GetNamePath : string; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNamePath` returns a string that can be used to identify the class instance. This can be used to display a name for this instance in a Object designer.

`GetNamePath` constructs a name by recursively prepending the `Classname` of the Owner instance to the `Classname` of this instance, separated by a dot.

See also: `TPersistent.GetOwner` (422)

## 4.66 TProxyStream

### 4.66.1 Description

TProxyStream is a proxy class for the #rtl.types.IStream ([1903](#)) interface. It implements all stream methods by relaying them to the IStream interface.

See also: #rtl.types.IStream ([1903](#)), TStreamAdapter ([451](#))

### 4.66.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">426</a>	Check	Check errors
<a href="#">425</a>	Create	Create a new instance of the TProxyStream class.
<a href="#">425</a>	Read	
<a href="#">425</a>	Seek	
<a href="#">425</a>	Write	

### 4.66.3 TProxyStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TProxyStream class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const Stream: IStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of the TProxyStream class. It saves var stream for use in the other methods.

See also: #rtl.types.IStream ([1903](#))

### 4.66.4 TProxyStream.Read

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

### 4.66.5 TProxyStream.Write

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

### 4.66.6 TProxyStream.Seek

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

### 4.66.7 TProxyStream.Check

Synopsis: Check errors

Declaration: `procedure Check(err: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Check` will check the result of the `IStream` interface. This method must be overridden by descendant classes to return interface-specific errors.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream` ([1903](#))

## 4.67 TRawByteStringStream

### 4.67.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">426</a>	<code>Create</code>	
<a href="#">426</a>	<code>DataStream</code>	
<a href="#">426</a>	<code>ReadString</code>	
<a href="#">426</a>	<code>WriteString</code>	

### 4.67.2 TRawByteStringStream.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(const aData: RawByteString); Overload`

Visibility: public

### 4.67.3 TRawByteStringStream.DataString

Declaration: `function DataString : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

### 4.67.4 TRawByteStringStream.ReadString

Declaration: `function ReadString(Count: LongInt) : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

### 4.67.5 TRawByteStringStream.WriteString

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const AString: RawByteString)`

Visibility: public

## 4.68 TReader

### 4.68.1 Description

The `TReader` class is a reader class that implements generic component streaming capabilities, independent of the format of the data in the stream. It uses a driver class `TAbstractObjectReader`

(312) to do the actual reading of data. The interface of the `TReader` class should be identical to the interface in Delphi.

Note that the `TReader` design is such that it can read a single component from a stream. It will read all children of this component, but it is not designed to read multiple components in succession from one stream.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of this class directly. Instead, the `TStream.ReadComponent` (445) call should be used.

See also: `TFile` (380), `TWriter` (506), `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

### 4.68.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
429	<code>BeginReferences</code>	Initializes the component referencing mechanism.
429	<code>CheckValue</code>	Raises an exception if the next value in the stream is not of type <code>Value</code>
435	<code>CopyValue</code>	Copy a value to a writer.
428	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new reader class
429	<code>DefineBinaryProperty</code>	Reads a user-defined binary property from the stream.
429	<code>DefineProperty</code>	Reads a user-defined property from the stream.
428	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys a reader class.
429	<code>EndOfList</code>	Returns true if the stream contains an end-of-list marker.
430	<code>EndReferences</code>	Finalizes the component referencing mechanism.
430	<code>FixupReferences</code>	Tries to resolve all unresolved component references.
428	<code>FlushBuffer</code>	Flush the buffer
430	<code>NextValue</code>	Returns the type of the next value.
430	<code>Read</code>	Read raw data from stream
430	<code>ReadBoolean</code>	Reads a boolean from the stream.
431	<code>ReadChar</code>	Reads a character from the stream.
431	<code>ReadCollection</code>	Reads a collection from the stream.
431	<code>ReadComponent</code>	Starts reading a component from the stream.
432	<code>ReadComponents</code>	Starts reading child components from the stream.
432	<code>ReadCurrency</code>	Read a currency value from the stream.
432	<code>ReadDate</code>	Reads a date from the stream
432	<code>ReadFloat</code>	Reads a float from the stream.
433	<code>ReadIdent</code>	Reads an identifier from the stream.
433	<code>ReadInt64</code>	Reads a 64-bit integer from the stream.
433	<code>ReadInteger</code>	Reads an integer from the stream
433	<code>ReadListBegin</code>	Checks for the beginning of a list.
434	<code>ReadListEnd</code>	Checks for the end of a list.
434	<code>ReadRootComponent</code>	Starts reading a root component.
433	<code>ReadSet</code>	Read a set value from the stream
434	<code>ReadSignature</code>	Read stream signature from the stream
432	<code>ReadSingle</code>	Reads a single-type real from the stream.
434	<code>ReadString</code>	Reads a string from the stream.
431	<code>ReadUnicodeChar</code>	Read Unicode character
435	<code>ReadUnicodeString</code>	Read a <code>UnicodeString</code> value from the stream
435	<code>ReadValue</code>	Reads the next value type from the stream.
434	<code>ReadVariant</code>	Read a variant from the stream
431	<code>ReadWideChar</code>	Read widechar from the stream
435	<code>ReadWideString</code>	Read a <code>WideString</code> value from the stream.

### 4.68.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">435</a>	Driver	r	The driver in use for streaming the data.
<a href="#">437</a>	OnAncestorNotFound	rw	Handler called when the ancestor component cannot be found.
<a href="#">438</a>	OnCreateComponent	rw	Handler called when a component needs to be created.
<a href="#">436</a>	OnError	rw	Handler called when an error occurs.
<a href="#">438</a>	OnFindComponentClass	rw	Handler called when a component class reference needs to be found.
<a href="#">437</a>	OnFindMethod	rw	Handler to find or change a method address.
<a href="#">436</a>	OnPropertyNotFound	rw	Handler for treating missing properties.
<a href="#">438</a>	OnReadStringProperty	rw	Handler for translating strings when read from the stream.
<a href="#">437</a>	OnReferenceName	rw	Handler called when another component is referenced.
<a href="#">437</a>	OnSetMethodProperty	rw	Handler for setting method properties.
<a href="#">437</a>	OnSetName	rw	Handler called when setting a component name.
<a href="#">436</a>	Owner	rw	Owner of the component being read
<a href="#">436</a>	Parent	rw	Parent of the component being read.

### 4.68.4 TReader.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new reader class

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new reader class

### 4.68.5 TReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys a reader class.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys a reader class.

### 4.68.6 TReader.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flush the buffer

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TFile.FlushBuffer` ([381](#)), `TAbstractObjectReader.FlushBuffer` ([313](#))

#### 4.68.7 TReader.BeginReferences

Synopsis: Initializes the component referencing mechanism.

Declaration: `procedure BeginReferences`

Visibility: `public`

Description: When streaming components, the streaming mechanism keeps a list of existing components that can be referenced to. This method initializes up that system.

#### 4.68.8 TReader.CheckValue

Synopsis: Raises an exception if the next value in the stream is not of type `Value`

Declaration: `procedure CheckValue(Value: TValueType)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Raises an exception if the next value in the stream is not of type `Value`

#### 4.68.9 TReader.DefineProperty

Synopsis: Reads a user-defined property from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure DefineProperty(const Name: string; AReadData: TReaderProc;  
WriteData: TWriterProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a user-defined property from the stream.

#### 4.68.10 TReader.DefineBinaryProperty

Synopsis: Reads a user-defined binary property from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure DefineBinaryProperty(const Name: string;  
AReadData: TStreamProc;  
WriteData: TStreamProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a user-defined binary property from the stream.

#### 4.68.11 TReader.EndOfList

Synopsis: Returns true if the stream contains an end-of-list marker.

Declaration: `function EndOfList : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns true if the stream contains an end-of-list marker.

#### 4.68.12 TReader.EndReferences

Synopsis: Finalizes the component referencing mechanism.

Declaration: `procedure EndReferences`

Visibility: `public`

Description: When streaming components, the streaming mechanism keeps a list of existing components that can be referenced to. This method cleans up that system.

#### 4.68.13 TReader.FixupReferences

Synopsis: Tries to resolve all unresolved component references.

Declaration: `procedure FixupReferences`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Tries to resolve all unresolved component references.

#### 4.68.14 TReader.NextValue

Synopsis: Returns the type of the next value.

Declaration: `function NextValue : TValueType`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the type of the next value.

#### 4.68.15 TReader.Read

Synopsis: Read raw data from stream

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to read raw data from the component stream. This should not be used in new production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.Read` ([315](#)), `TBinaryObjectReader.Read` ([335](#))

#### 4.68.16 TReader.ReadBoolean

Synopsis: Reads a boolean from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a boolean from the stream.

#### 4.68.17 TReader.ReadChar

Synopsis: Reads a character from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadChar : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a character from the stream.

#### 4.68.18 TReader.ReadWideChar

Synopsis: Read widechar from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadWideChar : WideChar`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TReader.ReadWideChar` reads a widechar from the stream. This actually reads a widestring and returns the first character.

See also: `TReader.ReadWideString` ([435](#)), `TWriter.WriteWideChar` ([509](#))

#### 4.68.19 TReader.ReadUnicodeChar

Synopsis: Read Unicode character

Declaration: `function ReadUnicodeChar : UnicodeChar`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadUnicodeChar` reads a single Unicode character from the stream. It does this by reading a `UnicodeString` string from the stream and returning the first character.

Errors: If the string has a length different from 1, an `EReadError` exception will occur.

See also: `TReader.ReadUnicodeString` ([435](#))

#### 4.68.20 TReader.ReadCollection

Synopsis: Reads a collection from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadCollection(Collection: TCollection)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a collection from the stream.

#### 4.68.21 TReader.ReadComponent

Synopsis: Starts reading a component from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadComponent(Component: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Starts reading a component from the stream.



#### 4.68.22 TReader.ReadComponents

Synopsis: Starts reading child components from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadComponents(AOwner: TComponent; AParent: TComponent;  
Proc: TReadComponentsProc)`

Visibility: public

Description: Starts reading child components from the stream.

#### 4.68.23 TReader.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Reads a float from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadFloat : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads a float from the stream.

#### 4.68.24 TReader.ReadSingle

Synopsis: Reads a single-type real from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads a single-type real from the stream.

#### 4.68.25 TReader.ReadDate

Synopsis: Reads a date from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadDate : TDateTime`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads a date from the stream

#### 4.68.26 TReader.ReadCurrency

Synopsis: Read a currency value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadCurrency` reads a currency typed value from the stream and returns the result. This method does nothing except call the driver method of the driver being used.

See also: `TWriter.WriteCurrency` ([510](#))

#### 4.68.27 TReader.ReadIdent

Synopsis: Reads an identifier from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadIdent : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads an identifier from the stream.

#### 4.68.28 TReader.ReadInteger

Synopsis: Reads an integer from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadInteger : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads an integer from the stream

#### 4.68.29 TReader.ReadInt64

Synopsis: Reads a 64-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt64 : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a 64-bit integer from the stream.

#### 4.68.30 TReader.ReadSet

Synopsis: Read a set value from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadSet (EnumType: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadSet` reads a set of elements with type `EnumType` and returns them as an integer where each element is encoded in a bit of the integer. Thus, at most an enumerated type with 32 elements can be read with this function.

Errors: No checking is performed on the validity of `EnumType`. It is assumed to be a valid `PTypeInfo` pointer.

See also: `TWriter.WriteSet` ([511](#))

#### 4.68.31 TReader.ReadListBegin

Synopsis: Checks for the beginning of a list.

Declaration: `procedure ReadListBegin`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Checks for the beginning of a list.

#### 4.68.32 TReader.ReadListEnd

Synopsis: Checks for the end of a list.

Declaration: `procedure ReadListEnd`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Checks for the end of a list.

#### 4.68.33 TReader.ReadRootComponent

Synopsis: Starts reading a root component.

Declaration: `function ReadRootComponent (ARoot: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Starts reading a root component.

#### 4.68.34 TReader.ReadVariant

Synopsis: Read a variant from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadVariant : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadVariant` reads the next value from the stream and returns it as a variant. No variant array can be read from the stream, only single values.

Errors: If no variant manager is installed, the function will raise an `EReadError` exception. If the next value is not a simple value, again an `EReadError` exception is raised. exception is

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteVariant` ([345](#))

#### 4.68.35 TReader.ReadSignature

Synopsis: Read stream signature from the stream

Declaration: `procedure ReadSignature`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadSignature` is called when starting to read a root component from a stream. Some streams contain a signature (header) to detect whether the stream contains correct data.

Errors: If the stream does not start with the correct signature, an `EReadError` ([298](#)) exception will be raised.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSignature` ([319](#)), `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([321](#))

#### 4.68.36 TReader.ReadString

Synopsis: Reads a string from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadString : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a string from the stream.

#### 4.68.37 TReader.ReadWideString

Synopsis: Read a WideString value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadWideString : WideString`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadWidestring` reads a widestring typed value from the stream and returns the result. This method does nothing except call the driver method of the driver being used.

See also: `TWriter.WriteString` ([512](#))

#### 4.68.38 TReader.ReadUnicodeString

Synopsis: Read a UnicodeString value from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadUnicodeString : UnicodeString`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadUnicodeString` reads a `UnicodeString` string from the stream. The stream can contain a string from any type, it will be converted to `UniCodeString`.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadUnicodeString` ([320](#)), `TWriter.WriteUnicodeString` ([512](#))

#### 4.68.39 TReader.ReadValue

Synopsis: Reads the next value type from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadValue : TValueType`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads the next value type from the stream.

#### 4.68.40 TReader.CopyValue

Synopsis: Copy a value to a writer.

Declaration: `procedure CopyValue (Writer: TWriter)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyValue` reads the next value from the reader stream, and writes it to the passed `Writer`.

#### 4.68.41 TReader.Driver

Synopsis: The driver in use for streaming the data.

Declaration: `Property Driver : TAbstractObjectReader`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The driver in use for streaming the data.

#### 4.68.42 TReader.Owner

Synopsis: Owner of the component being read

Declaration: `Property Owner : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Owner of the component being read

#### 4.68.43 TReader.Parent

Synopsis: Parent of the component being read.

Declaration: `Property Parent : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Parent of the component being read.

#### 4.68.44 TReader.OnError

Synopsis: Handler called when an error occurs.

Declaration: `Property OnError : TReaderError`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler called when an error occurs.

#### 4.68.45 TReader.OnPropertyNotFound

Synopsis: Handler for treating missing properties.

Declaration: `Property OnPropertyNotFound : TPropertyNotFoundEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnPropertyNotFound` can be used to take appropriate action when a property is read from a stream and no such property is found in the RTTI information of the Instance that is being read from the stream. It can be set at runtime, or at design time by an IDE.

For more information about the meaning of the various arguments to the event handler, see `TPropertyNotFoundEvent` ([272](#)).

See also: `TPropertyNotFoundEvent` ([272](#)), `TReader.OnSetMethodProperty` ([437](#)), `TReader.OnReadStringProperty` ([438](#))

#### 4.68.46 TReader.OnFindMethod

Synopsis: Handler to find or change a method address.

Declaration: `Property OnFindMethod : TFindMethodEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler to find or change a method address.

#### 4.68.47 TReader.OnSetMethodProperty

Synopsis: Handler for setting method properties.

Declaration: `Property OnSetMethodProperty : TSetMethodPropertyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnSetMethodProperty` can be set to handle the setting of method properties. This handler can be used by an IDE to prevent methods from actually being assigned when an object is being streamed in the designer.

See also: `TReader.OnReadStringProperty` ([438](#)), `TReader.OnPropertyNotFound` ([436](#))

#### 4.68.48 TReader.OnSetName

Synopsis: Handler called when setting a component name.

Declaration: `Property OnSetName : TSetNameEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler called when setting a component name.

#### 4.68.49 TReader.OnReferenceName

Synopsis: Handler called when another component is referenced.

Declaration: `Property OnReferenceName : TReferenceNameEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler called when another component is referenced.

#### 4.68.50 TReader.OnAncestorNotFound

Synopsis: Handler called when the ancestor component cannot be found.

Declaration: `Property OnAncestorNotFound : TAncestorNotFoundEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Handler called when the ancestor component cannot be found.

#### 4.68.51 TReader.OnCreateComponent

Synopsis: Handler called when a component needs to be created.

Declaration: Property OnCreateComponent : TCreateComponentEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when a component needs to be created.

#### 4.68.52 TReader.OnFindComponentClass

Synopsis: Handler called when a component class reference needs to be found.

Declaration: Property OnFindComponentClass : TFindComponentClassEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when a component class reference needs to be found.

#### 4.68.53 TReader.OnReadStringProperty

Synopsis: Handler for translating strings when read from the stream.

Declaration: Property OnReadStringProperty : TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnReadStringProperty is called whenever a string property is read from the stream. It can be used e.g. by a translation mechanism to translate the strings on the fly, when a form is loaded. See TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent (272) for a description of the various parameters.

See also: TReader.OnPropertyNotFound (436), TReader.OnSetMethodProperty (437), TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent (272)

### 4.69 TRecall

#### 4.69.1 Description

TRecall is a helper class used to copy published properties of a class (the reference object) in another class (the storage object). The reference object and storage object must be assignable to each other.

The TRecall can be used to store the state of a persistent class, and restore it at a later time.

When a TRecall object is created, it gets passed a reference instance and a storage instance. It immediately stores the properties of the reference object in the storage object.

The Store (439) method can be called throughout the lifetime of the reference object to update the stored properties.

When the TRecall instance is destroyed then the properties are copied from the storage object to the reference object. The storage object is freed automatically.

If the properties should not be copied back from the storage to the reference object, the Forget (440) can be called.

See also: `TRecall.Create` (439), `TRecall.Destroy` (439), `TRecall.Forget` (440), `TRecall.Store` (439), `TPersistent.Assign` (423)

#### 4.69.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">439</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of <code>TRecall</code> .
<a href="#">439</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Copies the stored properties to the reference object and destroys the <code>TRecall</code> instance.
<a href="#">440</a>	<code>Forget</code>	Clear the reference property.
<a href="#">439</a>	<code>Store</code>	Assigns the reference instance to the storage instance.

#### 4.69.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">440</a>	<code>Reference</code>	<code>r</code>	The reference object.

#### 4.69.4 TRecall.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of `TRecall`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AStorage: TPersistent; AReference: TPersistent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TRecall` and initializes the `Reference` and `Storage` instances. It calls `Store` (439) to assign the reference object properties to the storage instance.

See also: `TRecall.Store` (439), `TRecall.Destroy` (439)

#### 4.69.5 TRecall.Destroy

Synopsis: Copies the stored properties to the reference object and destroys the `TRecall` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` assigns the storage instance to the reference instance, if the latter is still valid. After this, it frees the storage and calls the inherited `destroy`.

Errors: `Destroy` does not check whether the reference (440) instance is still valid. If the reference pointer was invalidated, call `TRecall.Forget` (440) to clear the reference instance.

See also: `TRecall.Store` (439), `TRecall.Forget` (440)

#### 4.69.6 TRecall.Store

Synopsis: Assigns the reference instance to the storage instance.

Declaration: `procedure Store`

Visibility: `public`



**Description:** `Store` assigns the reference instance to the storage instance. This will only work if the two classes can be assigned to each other.

This method can be used to refresh the storage.

**Errors:** `Store` does not check whether the reference (440) instance is still valid. If the reference pointer was invalidated, call `TRecall.Forget` (440) to clear the reference instance.

#### 4.69.7 TRecall.Forget

**Synopsis:** Clear the reference property.

**Declaration:** `procedure Forget`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Forget` sets the `Reference` (440) property to `Nil`. When the `TRecall` instance is destroyed, the reference instance will not be restored.

Note that after a call to `Forget`, a call to `Store` (439) has no effect.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRecall.Reference` (440), `TRecall.Store` (439), `TRecall.Destroy` (439)

#### 4.69.8 TRecall.Reference

**Synopsis:** The reference object.

**Declaration:** `Property Reference : TPersistent`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read`

**Description:** `Reference` is the instance of the reference object. Do not free the reference directly. Call `Forget` (440) to clear the reference and then free the reference object.

See also: `TRecall.Forget` (440)

### 4.70 TResourceStream

#### 4.70.1 Description

Stream that reads its data from a resource object.

#### 4.70.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
441	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of a resource stream.
441	<code>CreateFromID</code>	Creates a new instance of a resource stream with a resource
441	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the instance of the resource stream.

### 4.70.3 TResourceStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a resource stream.

Declaration: constructor `Create`(Instance: TFPResourceHMODULE; const ResName: string;  
ResType: PChar)

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new instance of a resource stream.

### 4.70.4 TResourceStream.CreateFromID

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a resource stream with a resource

Declaration: constructor `CreateFromID`(Instance: TFPResourceHMODULE; ResID: Integer;  
ResType: PChar)

Visibility: public

Description: The resource is loaded from the loaded module (identified by the handle `Instance`), identifier `ResID` and type `ResType`.

### 4.70.5 TResourceStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance of the resource stream.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy`; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the instance of the resource stream.

## 4.71 TStream

### 4.71.1 Description

`TStream` is the base class for all streaming classes. It defines methods for reading (442), writing (443) from and to streams, as well as functions to determine the size of the stream as well as the current position of the stream.

Descendant classes such as `TMemoryStream` (412) or `TFileStream` (382) then override these methods to write streams to memory or file.

See also: `TMemoryStream` (412), `TFileStream` (382), `TStringStream` (485)

### 4.71.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">445</a>	CopyFrom	Copy data from one stream to another
<a href="#">447</a>	FixupResourceHeader	Not implemented in FPC
<a href="#">442</a>	Read	Reads data from the stream to a buffer and returns the number of bytes read.
<a href="#">449</a>	ReadAnsiString	Read an ansistring from the stream and return its value.
<a href="#">444</a>	ReadBuffer	Reads data from the stream to a buffer
<a href="#">447</a>	ReadByte	Read a byte from the stream and return its value.
<a href="#">445</a>	ReadComponent	Reads component data from a stream
<a href="#">445</a>	ReadComponentRes	Reads component data and resource header from a stream
<a href="#">448</a>	ReadDWord	Read a DWord from the stream and return its value.
<a href="#">448</a>	ReadQWord	Read a QWord value from the stream and return its value
<a href="#">447</a>	ReadResHeader	Read a resource header from the stream.
<a href="#">448</a>	ReadWord	Read a word from the stream and return its value.
<a href="#">443</a>	Seek	Sets the current position in the stream
<a href="#">443</a>	Write	Writes data from a buffer to the stream and returns the number of bytes written.
<a href="#">450</a>	WriteAnsiString	Write an ansistring to the stream.
<a href="#">444</a>	WriteBuffer	Writes data from a buffer to the stream
<a href="#">449</a>	WriteByte	Write a byte to the stream.
<a href="#">446</a>	WriteComponent	Write component data to the stream
<a href="#">446</a>	WriteComponentRes	Write resource header and component data to a stream
<a href="#">446</a>	WriteDescendent	Write descendent of a component
<a href="#">446</a>	WriteDescendentRes	Write descendent of a component as resource
<a href="#">449</a>	WriteDWord	Write a DWord to the stream.
<a href="#">450</a>	WriteQWord	Write a QWord value to the stream
<a href="#">447</a>	WriteResourceHeader	Write resource header to the stream
<a href="#">449</a>	WriteWord	Write a word to the stream.

### 4.71.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">450</a>	Position	rw	The current position in the stream.
<a href="#">451</a>	Size	rw	The current size of the stream.

### 4.71.4 TStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Reads data from the stream to a buffer and returns the number of bytes read.

**Declaration:** `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Virtual; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** Read attempts to read `Count` from the stream to `Buffer` and returns the number of bytes actually read.

This method should be used when the number of bytes is not determined. If a specific number of bytes is expected, use `TStream.ReadBuffer` ([444](#)) instead.

As implemented in `TStream`, `Read` does nothing but raises an `EStreamError` ([299](#)) exception to indicate that reading is not supported. Descendant classes that allow reading must override this method to do the actual reading.

Descendant classes should (if they don't explicitly raise an exception) return a positive value ( $\geq 0$ ), where zero indicates an error.

Errors: In case a descendant class does not allow reading from the stream, an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (443), `TStream.ReadBuffer` (444)

### 4.71.5 TStream.Write

Synopsis: Writes data from a buffer to the stream and returns the number of bytes written.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Virtual  
; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` attempts to write `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the stream. It returns the actual number of bytes written to the stream.

This method should be used when the number of bytes that should be written is not determined. If a specific number of bytes should be written, use `TStream.WriteBuffer` (444) instead.

As implemented in `TStream`, `Write` does nothing but raises `EStreamError` (299) exception to indicate that writing is not supported. Descendant classes that allow writing must override this method to do the actual writing.

Descendant classes should (if they don't explicitly raise an exception) return a positive value ( $\geq 0$ ), where zero indicates an error.

Errors: In case a descendant class does not allow writing to the stream, an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Read` (442), `TStream.WriteBuffer` (444)

### 4.71.6 TStream.Seek

Synopsis: Sets the current position in the stream

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Virtual  
; Overload  
function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64  
; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the position of the stream to `Offset` bytes from `Origin`. There is a 32-bit variant of this function and a 64-bit variant. The difference can be made by choosing the correct `Offset` parameter: the integer-typed parameter selects the 32-bit variant, the parameter of type `TSeekOrigin` (273) selects the 64-bit variant of the function.

The `Origin` parameter for the 32-bit version can have one of the following values:

Table 4.30:

Constant	Meaning
<code>soFromBeginning</code>	Set the position relative to the start of the stream.
<code>soFromCurrent</code>	Set the position relative to the current position in the stream.
<code>soFromEnd</code>	Set the position relative to the end of the stream.

These values are defined in the `SysUtils` (260) unit.

The `Origin` parameter for the 64-bit version has one of the following values:

Table 4.31:

Value	Meaning
<code>soBeginning</code>	Offset is interpreted relative to the start of the stream.
<code>soCurrent</code>	Offset is interpreted relative to the current position in the stream.
<code>soEnd</code>	Offset is interpreted relative to the end of the stream.

Offset should be negative when the origin is `SoFromEnd` (`soEnd`). It should be positive for `soFromBeginning` and can have both signs for `soFromCurrent`.

This is an abstract method, which must be overridden by descendant classes. They may choose not to implement this method for all values of `Origin` and `Offset`.

**Remark** Internally, all calls are re-routed to the 64-bit version of the call. When creating a descendant of `TStream`, the 64-bit version of the call should be overridden.

**Errors:** An exception may be raised if this method is called with an invalid pair of `Offset, Origin` values. e.g. a negative offset for `soFromBeginning` (or `soBeginning`).

See also: `TStream.Position` ([450](#))

#### 4.71.7 TStream.ReadBuffer

**Synopsis:** Reads data from the stream to a buffer

**Declaration:** `procedure ReadBuffer(var Buffer; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ReadBuffer` reads `Count` bytes of the stream into `Buffer`. If the stream does not contain `Count` bytes, then an exception is raised.

`ReadBuffer` should be used to read in a fixed number of bytes, such as when reading structures or the content of variables. If the number of bytes is not determined, use `TStream.Read` ([442](#)) instead. `ReadBuffer` uses `Read` internally to do the actual reading.

**Errors:** If the stream does not allow to read `Count` bytes, then an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Read` ([442](#)), `TStream.WriteBuffer` ([444](#))

#### 4.71.8 TStream.WriteBuffer

**Synopsis:** Writes data from a buffer to the stream

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteBuffer(const Buffer; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `WriteBuffer` writes `Count` bytes to the stream from `Buffer`. If the stream does not allow `Count` bytes to be written, then an exception is raised.

`WriteBuffer` should be used to write a fixed number of bytes, such as when writing structures or the content of variables. If the number of bytes is not determined, use `TStream.Write` ([443](#)) instead. `WriteBuffer` uses `Write` internally to do the actual writing.

**Errors:** If the stream does not allow to write `Count` bytes, then an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` ([443](#)), `TStream.ReadBuffer` ([444](#))

### 4.71.9 TStream.CopyFrom

Synopsis: Copy data from one stream to another

Declaration: `function CopyFrom(Source: TStream; Count: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyFrom` reads `Count` bytes from `Source` and writes them to the current stream. This updates the current position in the stream. After the action is completed, the number of bytes copied is returned. If `Count` is zero, then the whole contents of the `Source` stream is copied. It is positioned on the first byte of data, and `Size` bytes are copied. Note that this cannot be used with streams that do not allow seeking or do not allow determining the size of the stream.

This can be used to quickly copy data from one stream to another or to copy the whole contents of the stream.

See also: `TStream.Read` (442), `TStream.Write` (443)

### 4.71.10 TStream.ReadComponent

Synopsis: Reads component data from a stream

Declaration: `function ReadComponent(Instance: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadComponent` reads a component state from the stream and transfers this state to `Instance`. If `Instance` is `nil`, then it is created first based on the type stored in the stream. `ReadComponent` returns the component as it is read from the stream.

`ReadComponent` simply creates a `TReader` (426) object and calls its `ReadRootComponent` (434) method.

Errors: If an error occurs during the reading of the component, an `EFileError` (297) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.WriteComponent` (446), `TStream.ReadComponentRes` (445), `TReader.ReadRootComponent` (434)

### 4.71.11 TStream.ReadComponentRes

Synopsis: Reads component data and resource header from a stream

Declaration: `function ReadComponentRes(Instance: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadComponentRes` reads a resource header from the stream, and then calls `ReadComponent` (445) to read the component state from the stream into `Instance`.

This method is usually called by the global streaming method when instantiating forms and datamodules as created by an IDE. It should be used mainly on Windows, to store components in Windows resources.

Errors: If an error occurs during the reading of the component, an `EFileError` (297) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponent` (445), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (446)

### 4.71.12 TStream.WriteComponent

Synopsis: Write component data to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponent (Instance: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteComponent` writes the published properties of `Instance` to the stream, so they can later be read with `TStream.ReadComponent` (445). This method is intended to be used by an IDE, to preserve the state of a form or datamodule as designed in the IDE.

`WriteComponent` simply calls `WriteDescendant` (441) with `Nil` ancestor.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponent` (445), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (446)

### 4.71.13 TStream.WriteComponentRes

Synopsis: Write resource header and component data to a stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponentRes (const ResName: string; Instance: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteComponentRes` writes a `ResName` resource header to the stream and then calls `WriteComponent` (446) to write the published properties of `Instance` to the stream.

This method is intended for use by an IDE that can use it to store forms or datamodules as designed in a Windows resource stream.

See also: `TStream.WriteComponent` (446), `TStream.ReadComponentRes` (445)

### 4.71.14 TStream.WriteDescendent

Synopsis: Write descendent of a component

Declaration: `procedure WriteDescendent (Instance: TComponent; Ancestor: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDescendent` will create a `TWriter` (506) writer class and write `Instance` as a descendent of `Ancestor` using the writer. This is used to create diff streams: only the properties where `Instance` differs from `Ancestor` are written to the stream.

See also: `TWriter.WriteDescendent` (510)

### 4.71.15 TStream.WriteDescendentRes

Synopsis: Write descendent of a component as resource

Declaration: `procedure WriteDescendentRes (const ResName: string;  
Instance: TComponent; Ancestor: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDescendentRes` calls `WriteDescendent` as a resource stream.

See also: `TWriter.WriteDescendent` (510)

#### 4.71.16 TStream.WriteResourceHeader

Synopsis: Write resource header to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteResourceHeader(const ResName: string;  
var FixupInfo: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteResourceHeader` writes a resource-file header for a resource called `ResName`. It returns in `FixupInfo` the argument that should be passed on to `TStream.FixupResourceHeader` (447).  
`WriteResourceHeader` should not be used directly. It is called by the `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (446) and `TStream.WriteDescendantRes` (441) methods.

See also: `TStream.FixupResourceHeader` (447), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (446), `TStream.WriteDescendantRes` (441)

#### 4.71.17 TStream.FixupResourceHeader

Synopsis: Not implemented in FPC

Declaration: `procedure FixupResourceHeader(FixupInfo: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `FixupResourceHeader` is used to write the size of the resource after a component was written to stream. The size is determined from the current position, and it is written at position `FixupInfo`. After that the current position is restored.  
`FixupResourceHeader` should never be called directly; it is handled by the streaming system.

See also: `TStream.WriteResourceHeader` (447), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (446), `TStream.WriteDescendantRes` (441)

#### 4.71.18 TStream.ReadResHeader

Synopsis: Read a resource header from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadResHeader`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadResourceHeader` reads a resource file header from the stream. It positions the stream just beyond the header.  
`ReadResourceHeader` should not be called directly, it is called by the streaming system when needed.

Errors: If the resource header is invalid an `EInvalidImage` (297) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponentRes` (445), `EInvalidImage` (297)

#### 4.71.19 TStream.ReadByte

Synopsis: Read a byte from the stream and return its value.

Declaration: `function ReadByte : Byte`

Visibility: public



**Description:** `ReadByte` reads one byte from the stream and returns its value.

**Errors:** If the byte cannot be read, a `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Read` (442) function.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (442), `TStream.WriteByte` (449), `TStream.ReadWord` (448), `TStream.ReadDWord` (448), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (449)

#### 4.71.20 `TStream.ReadWord`

**Synopsis:** Read a word from the stream and return its value.

**Declaration:** `function ReadWord : Word`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadWord` reads one `Word` (i.e. 2 bytes) from the stream and returns its value. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Read` (442) function.

**Errors:** If the word cannot be read, a `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (442), `TStream.WriteWord` (449), `TStream.ReadByte` (447), `TStream.ReadDWord` (448), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (449)

#### 4.71.21 `TStream.ReadDWord`

**Synopsis:** Read a `DWord` from the stream and return its value.

**Declaration:** `function ReadDWord : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadDWord` reads one `DWord` (i.e. 4 bytes) from the stream and returns its value. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Read` (442) function.

**Errors:** If the `DWord` cannot be read, a `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (442), `TStream.WriteDWord` (449), `TStream.ReadByte` (447), `TStream.ReadWord` (448), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (449)

#### 4.71.22 `TStream.ReadQWord`

**Synopsis:** Read a `QWord` value from the stream and return its value

**Declaration:** `function ReadQWord : QWord`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadQWord` reads a `QWord` value (8 bytes) from the stream and returns its value.

**Errors:** If not enough bytes are available on the stream, an `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Read` (442), `TStream.WriteByte` (449), `TStream.ReadWord` (448), `TStream.ReadDWord` (448), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (449)

### 4.71.23 TStream.ReadAnsiString

Synopsis: Read an ansistring from the stream and return its value.

Declaration: `function ReadAnsiString : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadAnsiString` reads an ansistring from the stream and returns its value. This is a utility function which simply calls the read function several times. The Ansistring should be stored as 4 bytes (a DWord) representing the length of the string, and then the string value itself. The `WriteAnsiString` (450) function writes an ansistring in such a format.

Errors: If the AnsiString cannot be read, a `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream.Read` (442), `TStream.WriteAnsiString` (450), `TStream.ReadByte` (447), `TStream.ReadWord` (448), `TStream.ReadDWord` (448)

### 4.71.24 TStream.WriteByte

Synopsis: Write a byte to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteByte(b: Byte)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteByte` writes the byte B to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (443) function. The byte can be read from the stream using the `ReadByte` (447) function.

Errors: If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (443), `TStream.ReadByte` (447), `TStream.WriteWord` (449), `TStream.WriteDWord` (449), `TStream.WriteAnsiString` (450)

### 4.71.25 TStream.WriteWord

Synopsis: Write a word to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteWord(w: Word)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteWord` writes the word W (i.e. 2 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (443) function. The word can be read from the stream using the `ReadWord` (448) function.

Errors: If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (443), `TStream.ReadWord` (448), `TStream.WriteByte` (449), `TStream.WriteDWord` (449), `TStream.WriteAnsiString` (450)

### 4.71.26 TStream.WriteDWord

Synopsis: Write a DWord to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDWord(d: Cardinal)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `WriteDWord` writes the `DWord D` (i.e. 4 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (443) function. The `DWord` can be read from the stream using the `ReadDWord` (448) function.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Write` (443), `TStream.ReadDWord` (448), `TStream.WriteByte` (449), `TStream.WriteWord` (449), `TStream.WriteString` (450)

#### 4.71.27 TStream.WriteQWord

**Synopsis:** Write a `QWord` value to the stream

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteQWord(q: QWord)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `WriteQWord` writes the word `W` (i.e. 8 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (443) function. The word can be read from the stream using the `ReadQWord` (448) function.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Write` (443), `TStream.ReadByte` (447), `TStream.WriteWord` (449), `TStream.WriteDWord` (449), `TStream.WriteString` (450)

#### 4.71.28 TStream.WriteString

**Synopsis:** Write an ansistring to the stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteAnsiString(const S: string)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `WriteAnsiString` writes the `AnsiString S` (i.e. 4 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (443) function. The ansistring is written as a 4 byte length specifier, followed by the ansistring's content. The ansistring can be read from the stream using the `ReadAnsiString` (449) function.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (299) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TStream.Write` (443), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (449), `TStream.WriteByte` (449), `TStream.WriteWord` (449), `TStream.WriteDWord` (449)

#### 4.71.29 TStream.Position

**Synopsis:** The current position in the stream.

**Declaration:** `Property Position : Int64`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read, Write`

**Description:** `Position` can be read to determine the current position in the stream. It can be written to set the (absolute) position in the stream. The position is zero-based, so to set the position at the beginning of the stream, the position must be set to zero.

**Remark** Not all `TStream` descendants support setting the position in the stream, so this should be used with care.

**Errors:** Some descendants may raise an `EStreamError` (299) exception if they do not support setting the stream position.

See also: `TStream.Size` (451), `TStream.Seek` (443)

### 4.71.30 TStream.Size

**Synopsis:** The current size of the stream.

**Declaration:** `Property Size : Int64`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `Size` can be read to determine the stream size or to set the stream size.

**Remark** Not all descendants of `TStream` support getting or setting the stream size; they may raise an exception if the `Size` property is read or set.

See also: `TStream.Position` (450), `TStream.Seek` (443)

## 4.72 TStreamAdapter

### 4.72.1 Description

Implements `IStream` for `TStream` (441) descendants

### 4.72.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">1903</a>	<code>IStream</code>	COM stream abstraction

### 4.72.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">455</a>	<code>Clone</code>	Clone the stream
<a href="#">454</a>	<code>Commit</code>	Commit data to the stream
<a href="#">453</a>	<code>CopyTo</code>	Copy data to destination stream
<a href="#">452</a>	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TStreamAdapter</code>
<a href="#">452</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the <code>TStreamAdapter</code> instance
<a href="#">454</a>	<code>LockRegion</code>	Lock a region of the stream
<a href="#">452</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read from the stream.
<a href="#">454</a>	<code>Revert</code>	Revert operations on the stream
<a href="#">453</a>	<code>Seek</code>	Set the stream position
<a href="#">453</a>	<code>SetSize</code>	Set the stream size
<a href="#">455</a>	<code>Stat</code>	Return statistical data about the stream
<a href="#">454</a>	<code>UnlockRegion</code>	Unlock a region of the stream
<a href="#">452</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write to the stream

#### 4.72.4 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">455</a>	Stream	r	Stream on which adaptor works
<a href="#">455</a>	StreamOwnership	rw	Determines what happens with the stream when the adaptor is freed

#### 4.72.5 TStreamAdapter.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TStreamAdapter`

Declaration: constructor `Create(Stream: TStream; Ownership: TStreamOwnership)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TStreamAdapter`. It initializes `TStreamAdapter.Stream` ([455](#)) with `Stream` and initializes `StreamOwnership` ([455](#)) with `Ownership`.

`TStreamAdapter` is an abstract class: descendants must be created that implement the actual functionality.

See also: `StreamOwnership` ([455](#)), `TStreamAdapter.Stream` ([455](#))

#### 4.72.6 TStreamAdapter.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the `TStreamAdapter` instance

Declaration: destructor `Destroy`; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Explicitly free the `TStreamAdapter` instance. Normally, this is done automatically if a reference to the `IStream` interface is freed.

#### 4.72.7 TStreamAdapter.Read

Synopsis: Read from the stream.

Declaration: function `Read(pv: Pointer; cb: DWORD; pcbRead: PDWord) : HRESULT`  
; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` implements `#rtl.types.ISequentialStream.Read` ([1903](#)) by reading from the stream specified at creation.

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.ISequentialStream.Read` ([1903](#))

#### 4.72.8 TStreamAdapter.Write

Synopsis: Write to the stream

Declaration: function `Write(pv: Pointer; cb: DWORD; pcbWritten: PDWord) : HRESULT`  
; Virtual

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Write` implements `#rtl.types.ISequentialStream.Write` (1903) by writing to the stream specified at creation.

**Errors:** This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

**See also:** `#rtl.types.ISequentialStream.Write` (1903)

#### 4.72.9 TStreamAdapter.Seek

**Synopsis:** Set the stream position

**Declaration:** `function Seek(dlibMove: Largeint; dwOrigin: DWORD;  
out libNewPosition: LargeUint) : HRESULT; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Seek` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Seek` (1904) by setting the position of the stream specified at creation.

**Errors:** This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

**See also:** `#rtl.types.IStream.Seek` (1904)

#### 4.72.10 TStreamAdapter.SetSize

**Synopsis:** Set the stream size

**Declaration:** `function SetSize(libNewSize: LargeUint) : HRESULT; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `SetSize` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.SetSize` (1904) by setting the size of the stream specified at creation.

**Errors:** This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

**See also:** `#rtl.types.IStream.SetSize` (1904)

#### 4.72.11 TStreamAdapter.CopyTo

**Synopsis:** Copy data to destination stream

**Declaration:** `function CopyTo(stm: IStream; cb: LargeUint; out cbRead: LargeUint;  
out cbWritten: LargeUint) : HRESULT; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `CopyTo` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.CopyTo` (1904).

**Errors:** This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

**4.72.12 TStreamAdapter.Commit**

Synopsis: Commit data to the stream

Declaration: `function Commit(grfCommitFlags: DWORD) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Commit` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Commit` (1905).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.Commit` (1905)

**4.72.13 TStreamAdapter.Revert**

Synopsis: Revert operations on the stream

Declaration: `function Revert : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Revert` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Revert` (1905).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.Revert` (1905)

**4.72.14 TStreamAdapter.LockRegion**

Synopsis: Lock a region of the stream

Declaration: `function LockRegion(libOffset: LargeUint; cb: LargeUint;  
dwLockType: DWORD) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `LockRegion` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.LockRegion` (1905).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.LockRegion` (1905)

**4.72.15 TStreamAdapter.UnlockRegion**

Synopsis: Unlock a region of the stream

Declaration: `function UnlockRegion(libOffset: LargeUint; cb: LargeUint;  
dwLockType: DWORD) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnLockRegion` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.UnLockRegion` (1905).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.UnLockRegion` (1905)

#### 4.72.16 TStreamAdapter.Stat

Synopsis: Return statistical data about the stream

Declaration: `function Stat(out statstg: TStatStg; grfStatFlag: DWORD) : HRESULT  
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Stat` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Stat` (1906).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.Stat` (1906)

#### 4.72.17 TStreamAdapter.Clone

Synopsis: Clone the stream

Declaration: `function Clone(out stm: IStream) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` implements `#rtl.types.IStream.Clone` (1906).

Errors: This function must be overridden and will raise a `runerror 217` when called directly.

See also: `#rtl.types.IStream.Clone` (1906)

#### 4.72.18 TStreamAdapter.Stream

Synopsis: Stream on which adaptor works

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: This is the stream on which the adaptor works. It was specified at creation.

#### 4.72.19 TStreamAdapter.StreamOwnership

Synopsis: Determines what happens with the stream when the adaptor is freed

Declaration: `Property StreamOwnership : TStreamOwnership`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StreamOwnership` determines what happens when the adaptor



## 4.73 TStringList

### 4.73.1 Description

`TStringList` is a descendant class of `TStrings` (461) that implements all of the abstract methods introduced there. It also introduces some additional methods:

- Sort the list, or keep the list sorted at all times
- Special handling of duplicates in sorted lists
- Notification of changes in the list

See also: `TStrings` (461), `TStringList.Duplicates` (459), `TStringList.Sorted` (459)

### 4.73.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
457	Add	Implements the <code>TStrings.Add</code> (464) function.
457	Clear	Implements the <code>TStrings.Clear</code> (467) function.
459	CustomSort	Sort the stringlist using a custom sort algorithm
457	Delete	Implements the <code>TStrings.Delete</code> (467) function.
456	Destroy	Destroys the stringlist.
457	Exchange	Implements the <code>TStrings.Exchange</code> (468) function.
458	Find	Locates the index for a given string in sorted lists.
458	IndexOf	Overrides the <code>TStrings.IndexOf</code> (470) property.
458	Insert	Overrides the <code>TStrings.Insert</code> (471) method.
458	Sort	Sorts the strings in the list.

### 4.73.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
460	CaseSensitive	rw	Indicates whether comparing strings happens in a case sensitive manner.
459	Duplicates	rw	Describes the behaviour of a sorted list with respect to duplicate strings.
460	OnChange	rw	Event triggered after the list was modified.
460	OnChanging	rw	Event triggered when the list is about to be modified.
461	OwnsObjects	rw	Determines whether the stringlist owns it's objects or not.
459	Sorted	rw	Determines whether the list is sorted or not.
461	SortStyle	rw	Sort style for strings

### 4.73.4 TStringList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the stringlist.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears the stringlist, release all memory allocated for the storage of the strings, and then calls the inherited `destroy` method.

**Remark** Any objects associated to strings in the list will *not* be destroyed; it is the responsibility of the caller to destroy all objects associated with strings in the list.

### 4.73.5 TStringList.Add

Synopsis: Implements the TStrings.Add (464) function.

Declaration: `function Add(const S: string) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Add will add S to the list. If the list is sorted and the string S is already present in the list and TStringList.Duplicates (459) is dupError then an EStringListError (299) exception is raised. If Duplicates is set to dupIgnore then the return value is the index of the previous entry.

If the list is sorted, new strings will not necessarily be added to the end of the list, rather they will be inserted at their alphabetical position.

Errors: If the list is sorted and the string S is already present in the list and TStringList.Duplicates (459) is dupError then an EStringListError (299) exception is raised.

See also: TStringList.Insert (458), TStringList.Duplicates (459)

### 4.73.6 TStringList.Clear

Synopsis: Implements the TStrings.Clear (467) function.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Implements the TStrings.Clear (467) function.

### 4.73.7 TStringList.Delete

Synopsis: Implements the TStrings.Delete (467) function.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Implements the TStrings.Delete (467) function.

### 4.73.8 TStringList.Exchange

Synopsis: Implements the TStrings.Exchange (468) function.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Exchange will exchange two items in the list as described in TStrings.Exchange (468).

**Remark** Exchange will not check whether the list is sorted or not; if Exchange is called on a sorted list and the strings are not identical, the sort order of the list will be destroyed.

See also: TStringList.Sorted (459), TStrings.Exchange (468)

### 4.73.9 TStringList.Find

Synopsis: Locates the index for a given string in sorted lists.

Declaration: `function Find(const S: string; out Index: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` returns `True` if the string `S` is present in the list. Upon exit, the `Index` parameter will contain the position of the string in the list. If the string is not found, the function will return `False` and `Index` will contain the position where the string will be inserted if it is added to the list.

#### Remark

1. Use this method only on sorted lists. For unsorted lists, use `TStringList.IndexOf` (458) instead.
2. `Find` uses a binary search method to locate the string

### 4.73.10 TStringList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Overrides the `TStrings.IndexOf` (470) property.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const S: string) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` overrides the ancestor method `TStrings.indexOf` (470). It tries to optimize the search by executing a binary search if the list is sorted. The function returns the position of `S` if it is found in the list, or -1 if the string is not found in the list.

See also: `TStrings.IndexOf` (470), `TStringList.Find` (458)

### 4.73.11 TStringList.Insert

Synopsis: Overrides the `TStrings.Insert` (471) method.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const S: string); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` will insert the string `S` at position `Index` in the list. If the list is sorted, an `EStringListError` (299) exception will be raised instead. `Index` is a zero-based position.

Errors: If `Index` contains an invalid value (less than zero or larger than `Count`, or the list is sorted, an `EStringListError` (299) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStringList.Add` (457), `TStrings.Insert` (471), `TStrings.InsertObject` (471)

### 4.73.12 TStringList.Sort

Synopsis: Sorts the strings in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Sort; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` will sort the strings in the list using the quicksort algorithm. If the list has its `TStringList.Sorted` (459) property set to `True` then nothing will be done.

See also: `TStringList.Sorted` (459)

### 4.73.13 TStringList.CustomSort

Synopsis: Sort the stringlist using a custom sort algorithm

Declaration: `procedure CustomSort (CompareFn: TStringListSortCompare); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CustomSort` sorts the stringlist with a custom comparison function. The function should compare 2 elements in the list, and return a negative number if the first item is before the second. It should return 0 if the elements are equal, and a positive result indicates that the second elements should be before the first.

See also: `TStringList.Sorted` (459), `TStringList.Sort` (458)

### 4.73.14 TStringList.Duplicates

Synopsis: Describes the behaviour of a sorted list with respect to duplicate strings.

Declaration: `Property Duplicates : TDuplicates`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Duplicates` describes what to do in case a duplicate value is added to the list:

Table 4.32:

<code>dupIgnore</code>	Duplicate values will not be added to the list, but no error will be triggered.
<code>dupError</code>	If an attempt is made to add a duplicate value to the list, an <code>EStringListError</code> (299) exception is raised.
<code>dupAccept</code>	Duplicate values can be added to the list.

If the stringlist is not sorted, the `Duplicates` setting is ignored.

### 4.73.15 TStringList.Sorted

Synopsis: Determines whether the list is sorted or not.

Declaration: `Property Sorted : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Sorted` can be set to `True` in order to cause the list of strings to be sorted. Further additions to the list will be inserted at the correct position so the list remains sorted at all times. Setting the property to `False` has no immediate effect, but will allow strings to be inserted at any position.

#### Remark

1. When `Sorted` is `True`, `TStringList.Insert` (458) cannot be used. For sorted lists, `TStringList.Add` (457) should be used instead.
2. If `Sorted` is `True`, the `TStringList.Duplicates` (459) setting has effect. This setting is ignored when `Sorted` is `False`.

See also: `TStringList.Sort` (458), `TStringList.Duplicates` (459), `TStringList.Add` (457), `TstringList.Insert` (458)

#### 4.73.16 TStringList.CaseSensitive

Synopsis: Indicates whether comparing strings happens in a case sensitive manner.

Declaration: `Property CaseSensitive : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CaseSensitive` indicates how string values are compared: When `True` this happens case sensitively, and when `False`, case must match.

This property influences [IndexOf \(470\)](#), [Find \(458\)](#), [IndexOfName \(470\)](#) and [Sort \(458\)](#).

See also: [IndexOf \(470\)](#), [Find \(458\)](#), [IndexOfName \(470\)](#), [Sort \(458\)](#)

#### 4.73.17 TStringList.OnChange

Synopsis: Event triggered after the list was modified.

Declaration: `Property OnChange : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnChange` can be assigned to respond to changes that have occurred in the list. The handler is called whenever strings are added, moved, modified or deleted from the list.

The `OnChange` event is triggered after the modification took place. When the modification is about to happen, an `TStringList.OnChanging (460)` event occurs.

See also: [TStringList.OnChanging \(460\)](#)

#### 4.73.18 TStringList.OnChanging

Synopsis: Event triggered when the list is about to be modified.

Declaration: `Property OnChanging : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnChanging` can be assigned to respond to changes that will occurred in the list. The handler is called whenever strings will be added, moved, modified or deleted from the list.

The `Onchanging` event is triggered before the modification will take place. When the modification has happened, an `TStringList.OnChange (460)` event occurs.

See also: [TStringList.OnChange \(460\)](#)

### 4.73.19 TStringList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Determines whether the stringlist owns it's objects or not.

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OwnsObjects` can be set to `true` to let the stringlist instance own the objects in the list: if an element is removed from the list, the associated object (if there is any) will be freed as well. The same is true if the list is cleared or destroyed.

See also: `TStrings.Objects` ([479](#))

### 4.73.20 TStringList.SortStyle

Synopsis: Sort style for strings

Declaration: `Property SortStyle : TStringsSortStyle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SortStyle` sets the sort style for the `TStringList` instance. Setting it to `sslAuto` will keep the list sorted automatically at all times.

`Find` ([458](#)) (and hence `IndexOf` ([470](#))) will use a binary search if `SortStyle` differs from `sslNone`. if `SortStyle` is `sslNone`, then it will raise an exception.

See also: `TStringsSortStyle` ([276](#)), `TStrings.Sorted` ([461](#))

## 4.74 TStrings

### 4.74.1 Description

`TStrings` implements an abstract class to manage an array of strings. It introduces methods to set and retrieve strings in the array, searching for a particular string, concatenating the strings and so on. It also allows an arbitrary object to be associated with each string.

It also introduces methods to manage a series of `name=value` settings, as found in many configuration files.

An instance of `TStrings` is never created directly, instead a descendant class such as `TStringList` ([456](#)) should be created. This is because `TStrings` is an abstract class which does not implement all methods; `TStrings` also doesn't store any strings, this is the functionality introduced in descendants such as `TStringList` ([456](#)).

`TStrings` implements the `IFPObserved` ([301](#)) interface: when the stringlist is changed, a `ooChanged` notification is sent to all observers.

See also: `TStringList` ([456](#)), `IFPObserved` ([301](#))

**4.74.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
464	Add	Add a string to the list
466	AddCommaText	
466	AddDelimitedtext	
464	AddObject	Add a string and associated object to the list.
465	AddPair	Add a name-value pair
465	AddStrings	Add contents of another stringlist to this list.
466	AddText	Add text to the string list.
466	Append	Add a string to the list.
466	Assign	Assign the contents of another stringlist to this one.
467	BeginUpdate	Mark the beginning of an update batch.
467	Clear	Removes all strings and associated objects from the list.
463	Create	Initializ a new <code>TStrings</code> instance
467	Delete	Delete a string from the list.
464	Destroy	Frees all strings and objects, and removes the list from memory.
468	EndUpdate	Mark the end of an update batch.
468	Equals	Compares the contents of two stringlists.
468	Exchange	Exchanges two strings in the list.
469	ExtractName	Extract the name part of a string
469	Fill	
469	Filter	
469	ForEach	
469	GetEnumerator	Create an <code>IEnumerator</code> instance
469	GetNameValue	Return both name and value of a name,value pair based on it's index.
470	GetText	Returns the contents as a <code>PChar</code>
470	IndexOf	Find a string in the list and return its position.
470	IndexOfName	Finds the index of a name in the name-value pairs.
470	IndexOfObject	Finds an object in the list and returns its index.
471	Insert	Insert a string in the list.
471	InsertObject	Insert a string and associated object in the list.
471	LastIndexOf	
472	LoadFromFile	Load the contents of a file as a series of strings.
472	LoadFromStream	Load the contents of a stream as a series of strings.
472	Map	
472	Move	Move a string from one place in the list to another.
473	Pop	
473	Reduce	
473	Reverse	
474	SaveToFile	Save the contents of the list to a file.
474	SaveToStream	Save the contents of the string to a stream.
465	SetStrings	
475	SetText	Set the contents of the list from a <code>PChar</code> .
474	Shift	
474	Slice	
464	ToObjectArray	
464	ToStringArray	

**4.74.3 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">475</a>	AlwaysQuote	rw	Always quote strings in DelimitedText
<a href="#">475</a>	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list, i.e. number of strings that the list can currently hold before it tries to expand.
<a href="#">475</a>	CommaText	rw	Contents of the list as a comma-separated string.
<a href="#">476</a>	Count	r	Number of strings in the list.
<a href="#">477</a>	DefaultEncoding	rw	Default encoding of stringlist
<a href="#">477</a>	DelimitedText	rw	Get or set all strings in the list in a delimited form.
<a href="#">477</a>	Delimiter	rw	Delimiter character used in DelimitedText ( <a href="#">477</a> ).
<a href="#">478</a>	Encoding	r	Current encoding of stringlist
<a href="#">478</a>	LineBreak	rw	LineBreak character to use
<a href="#">478</a>	MissingNameValueSeparatorAction	rw	
<a href="#">478</a>	Names	r	Name parts of the name-value pairs in the list.
<a href="#">479</a>	NameValueSeparator	rw	Value of the character used to separate name,value pairs
<a href="#">479</a>	Objects	rw	Indexed access to the objects associated with the strings in the list.
<a href="#">479</a>	Options	rw	A set of TStringOptions ( <a href="#">275</a> ) - various boolean properties.
<a href="#">480</a>	QuoteChar	rw	Quote character used in DelimitedText ( <a href="#">477</a> ).
<a href="#">480</a>	SkipLastLineBreak	rw	Do not add a linebreak to the last item
<a href="#">480</a>	StrictDelimiter	rw	Should only the delimiter character be considered a delimiter
<a href="#">481</a>	Strings	rw	Indexed access to the strings in the list.
<a href="#">481</a>	StringsAdapter	rw	Not implemented in Free Pascal.
<a href="#">481</a>	Text	rw	Contents of the list as one big string.
<a href="#">482</a>	TextLineBreakStyle	rw	Determines which line breaks to use in the Text ( <a href="#">481</a> ) property
<a href="#">480</a>	TrailingLineBreak	rw	Add a linebreak to the last item
<a href="#">482</a>	UseLocale	rw	Determines what methods are used in strings comparison.
<a href="#">483</a>	ValueFromIndex	rw	Return the value part of a string based on it's index.
<a href="#">483</a>	Values	rw	Value parts of the name-value pairs in the list.
<a href="#">483</a>	WriteBOM	rw	Write BOM when writing stringlist to stream

**4.74.4 TString.Create**

**Synopsis:** Initialize a new TString instance

**Declaration:** `constructor Create`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` initializes the codepage variables of a new TString instance. Note that TString is



an abstract class, you must always instantiate a descendent such as `TStringList` ([456](#))

Errors: Only an `EOutOfMemory` exception can occur.

See also: `TStringList` ([456](#))

#### 4.74.5 `TStrings.Destroy`

Synopsis: Frees all strings and objects, and removes the list from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` is the destructor of `TStrings` it does nothing except calling the inherited destructor.

#### 4.74.6 `TStrings.ToObjectArray`

Declaration: `function ToObjectArray(aStart: Integer; aEnd: Integer) : TObjectDynArray  
; Overload  
function ToObjectArray : TObjectDynArray; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

#### 4.74.7 `TStrings.ToStringArray`

Declaration: `function ToStringArray(aStart: Integer; aEnd: Integer) : TStringDynArray  
; Overload  
function ToStringArray : TStringDynArray; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

#### 4.74.8 `TStrings.Add`

Synopsis: Add a string to the list

Declaration: `function Add(const S: string) : Integer; Virtual; Overload  
function Add(const Fmt: string; const Args: Array of const) : Integer  
; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds `S` at the end of the list and returns the index of `S` in the list (which should equal `Tstrings.Count` ([476](#)))

See also: `TStrings.Objects` ([479](#)), `TStrings.AddObject` ([464](#)), `TStrings.Insert` ([471](#)), `TStrings.Delete` ([467](#)), `TStrings.Strings` ([481](#)), `TStrings.Count` ([476](#))

#### 4.74.9 `TStrings.AddObject`

Synopsis: Add a string and associated object to the list.

Declaration: `function AddObject(const S: string; AObject: TObject) : Integer  
; Virtual; Overload  
function AddObject(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const;  
AObject: TObject) : Integer; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** AddObject adds S to the list of strings, and associates AObject with it. It returns the index of S.

**Remark** An object added to the list is not automatically destroyed by the list when the list is destroyed or the string it is associated with is deleted. It is the responsibility of the application to destroy any objects associated with strings.

See also: TStrings.Add (464), TStrings.Strings (481), TStrings.Objects (479), TStrings.InsertObject (471)

#### 4.74.10 TStrings.AddPair

**Synopsis:** Add a name-value pair

**Declaration:**

```
function AddPair(const AName: string; const AValue: string) : TStrings
    ; Overload
function AddPair(const AName: string; const AValue: string;
    AObject: TObject) : TStrings; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** AddPair adds a Name=Value pair with the AName and AValue parameters, optionally with object AObject. It uses the correct NameValueSeparator (260) character to do so.

AddPair does not test whether aName already exists, so it is possible to add duplicate names.

Errors: None.

See also: TStrings.GetNameValue (469), TStrings.NameValueSeparator (479), TStrings.Add (464), TStrings.AddObject (464)

#### 4.74.11 TStrings.AddStrings

**Synopsis:** Add contents of another stringlist to this list.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure AddStrings(TheStrings: TStrings); Virtual; Overload
procedure AddStrings(TheStrings: TStrings; ClearFirst: Boolean)
    ; Overload
procedure AddStrings(const TheStrings: Array of string); Virtual
    ; Overload
procedure AddStrings(const TheStrings: Array of string;
    ClearFirst: Boolean); Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** AddStrings adds the contents of TheStrings to the stringlist. Any associated objects are added as well.

See also: TStrings.Add (464), TStrings.Assign (466)

#### 4.74.12 TStrings.SetStrings

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetStrings(TheStrings: TStrings); Virtual; Overload
procedure SetStrings(TheStrings: Array of string); Virtual; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**4.74.13 TStrings.AddText**

Synopsis: Add text to the string list.

Declaration: `procedure AddText(const S: string); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AddText` adds `S` to the strings. It is identical in function to setting `Text` (260) but does not clear the list of strings first: `S` is split into lines, and each line is added to the list.

See also: `TString.Text` (260)

**4.74.14 TStrings.AddCommaText**

Declaration: `procedure AddCommaText(const S: string)`

Visibility: `public`

**4.74.15 TStrings.AddDelimitedtext**

Declaration: `procedure AddDelimitedText(const S: string; ADelimiter: Char;  
AStrictDelimiter: Boolean); Overload`  
`procedure AddDelimitedtext(const S: string); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

**4.74.16 TStrings.Append**

Synopsis: Add a string to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Append(const S: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Append` does the same as `TStrings.Add` (464), only it does not return the index of the inserted string.

See also: `TStrings.Add` (464)

**4.74.17 TStrings.Assign**

Synopsis: Assign the contents of another stringlist to this one.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` replaces the contents of the stringlist with the contents of `Source` if `Source` is also of type `TStrings`. Any associated objects are copied as well.

See also: `TStrings.Add` (464), `TStrings.AddStrings` (465), `TPersistent.Assign` (423)

### 4.74.18 TStrings.BeginUpdate

**Synopsis:** Mark the beginning of an update batch.

**Declaration:** `procedure BeginUpdate`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `BeginUpdate` increases the update count by one. It is advisable to call `BeginUpdate` before lengthy operations on the stringlist. At the end of these operation, `TStrings.EndUpdate` (468) should be called to mark the end of the operation. Descendant classes may use this information to perform optimizations. e.g. updating the screen only once after many strings were added to the list.

All `TStrings` methods that modify the string list call `BeginUpdate` before the actual operation, and call `endUpdate` when the operation is finished. Descendant classes should also call these methods when modifying the string list.

**Remark** Always put the corresponding call to `TStrings.EndUpdate` (468) in the context of a `Finally` block, to ensure that the update count is always decreased at the end of the operation, even if an exception occurred:

```
With MyStrings do
  try
    BeginUpdate;
    // Some lengthy operation.
  Finally
    EndUpdate
  end;
```

See also: `TStrings.EndUpdate` (468)

### 4.74.19 TStrings.Clear

**Synopsis:** Removes all strings and associated objects from the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Clear; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Clear` will remove all strings and their associated objects from the list. After a call to `clear`, `TStrings.Count` (476) is zero.

Since it is an abstract method, `TStrings` itself does not implement `Clear`. Descendant classes such as `TStringList` (456) implement this method.

See also: `TStrings.Objects` (479), `TStrings.Strings` (481), `TStrings.Delete` (467), `TStrings.Count` (476)

### 4.74.20 TStrings.Delete

**Synopsis:** Delete a string from the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Delete(Index: Integer); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Delete` deletes the string at position `Index` from the list. The associated object is also removed from the list, but not destroyed. `Index` is zero-based, and should be in the range 0 to `Count-1`.

Since it is an abstract method, `TStrings` itself does not implement `Delete`. Descendant classes such as `TStringList` (456) implement this method.

Errors: If `Index` is not in the allowed range, an `EStringListError` (299) is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Insert` (471), `TStrings.Objects` (479), `TStrings.Strings` (481), `TStrings.Clear` (467)

#### 4.74.21 TStrings.EndUpdate

Synopsis: Mark the end of an update batch.

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndUpdate` should be called at the end of a lengthy operation on the stringlist, but only if there was a call to `BeginUpdate` before the operation was started. It is best to put the call to `EndUpdate` in the context of a `Finally` block, so it will be called even if an exception occurs.

For more information, see `TStrings.BeginUpdate` (467).

`TStrings` implements the `IFPObserved` (301) interface: when `EndUpdate` is called, a `ooChanged` notification is sent to all observers.

See also: `TStrings.BeginUpdate` (467), `IFPObserved` (301)

#### 4.74.22 TStrings.Equals

Synopsis: Compares the contents of two stringlists.

Declaration: `function Equals(Obj: TObject) : Boolean; Override; Overload`  
`function Equals(TheStrings: TStrings) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Equals` compares the contents of the stringlist with the contents of `TheStrings`. If the contents match, i.e. the stringlist contain an equal amount of strings, and all strings match, then `True` is returned. If the number of strings in the lists is unequal, or they contain one or more different strings, `False` is returned.

##### Remark

- 1.The strings are compared case-insensitively.
- 2.The associated objects are not compared

See also: `TStrings.Objects` (479), `TStrings.Strings` (481), `TStrings.Count` (476), `TStrings.Assign` (466)

#### 4.74.23 TStrings.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchanges two strings in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` exchanges the strings at positions `Index1` and `Index2`. The associated objects are also exchanged.

Both indexes must be in the range of valid indexes, i.e. must have a value between 0 and `Count-1`.

Errors: If either `Index1` or `Index2` is not in the range of valid indexes, an `EStringListError` (299) exception is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Move` (472), `TStrings.Strings` (481), `TStrings.Count` (476)

**4.74.24 TStrings.ExtractName**

Synopsis: Extract the name part of a string

Declaration: `function ExtractName(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ExtractName` returns the name part (the part before the `NameValueSeparator` (479) character) of the string. If the character is not present, an empty string is returned. The resulting string is not trimmed, it can end or start with spaces.

See also: `NameValueSeparator` (479)

**4.74.25 TStrings.Filter**

Declaration: `procedure Filter(aFilter: TStringsFilterMethod; aList: TStrings)`  
`function Filter(aFilter: TStringsFilterMethod) : TStrings`

Visibility: public

**4.74.26 TStrings.Fill**

Declaration: `procedure Fill(const aValue: string; aStart: Integer; aEnd: Integer)`

Visibility: public

**4.74.27 TStrings.ForEach**

Declaration: `procedure ForEach(aCallback: TStringsForEachMethod)`  
`procedure ForEach(aCallback: TStringsForEachMethodEx)`  
`procedure ForEach(aCallback: TStringsForEachMethodExObj)`

Visibility: public

**4.74.28 TStrings.GetEnumerator**

Synopsis: Create an `IEnumerator` instance

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TStringsEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of the `IEnumerable` (1553) interface for `TStrings`. It creates a `TStringsEnumerator` (484) instance and returns its `IEnumerator` (1554) interface.

See also: `TStringsEnumerator` (484), `IEnumerator` (1554), `IEnumerable` (1553)

**4.74.29 TStrings.GetNameValue**

Synopsis: Return both name and value of a name,value pair based on it's index.

Declaration: `procedure GetNameValue(Index: Integer; out AName: string;`  
`out AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Return both name and value of a name,value pair based on it's index.

### 4.74.30 TStrings.GetText

Synopsis: Returns the contents as a PChar

Declaration: `function GetText : PChar; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetText` allocates a memory buffer and copies the contents of the stringlist to this buffer as a series of strings, separated by an end-of-line marker. The buffer is zero terminated.

**Remark** The caller is responsible for freeing the returned memory buffer.

### 4.74.31 TStrings.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find a string in the list and return its position.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const S: string) : Integer; Virtual`  
`function IndexOf(const S: string; aStart: Integer) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches the list for `S`. The search is case-insensitive. If a matching entry is found, its position is returned. if no matching string is found, `-1` is returned.

**Remark**

1. Only the first occurrence of the string is returned.
2. The returned position is zero-based, i.e. 0 indicates the first string in the list.

See also: `TStrings.IndexOfObject` ([470](#)), `TStrings.IndexOfName` ([470](#)), `TStrings.Strings` ([481](#))

### 4.74.32 TStrings.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Finds the index of a name in the name-value pairs.

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const Name: string) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfName` searches in the list of strings for a name-value pair with name part `Name`. If such a pair is found, it returns the index of the pair in the stringlist. If no such pair is found, the function returns `-1`. The search is done case-insensitive.

**Remark**

1. Only the first occurrence of a matching name-value pair is returned.
2. The returned position is zero-based, i.e. 0 indicates the first string in the list.

See also: `TStrings.IndexOf` ([470](#)), `TStrings.IndexOfObject` ([470](#)), `TStrings.Strings` ([481](#))

### 4.74.33 TStrings.IndexOfObject

Synopsis: Finds an object in the list and returns its index.

Declaration: `function IndexOfObject(AObject: TObject) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IndexOfObject` searches through the list of strings till it find a string associated with `AObject`, and returns the index of this string. If no such string is found, `-1` is returned.

**Remark**

1. Only the first occurrence of a string with associated object `AObject` is returned; if more strings in the list can be associated with `AObject`, they will not be found by this routine.
2. The returned position is zero-based, i.e. 0 indicates the first string in the list.

#### 4.74.34 TStrings.Insert

**Synopsis:** Insert a string in the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const S: string); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Insert` inserts the string `S` at position `Index` in the list. `Index` is a zero-based position, and can have values from 0 to `Count`. If `Index` equals `Count` then the string is appended to the list.

**Remark**

1. All methods that add strings to the list use `Insert` to add a string to the list.
2. If the string has an associated object, use `TStrings.InsertObject` (471) instead.

**Errors:** If `Index` is less than zero or larger than `Count` then an `EStringListError` (299) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TStrings.Add` (464), `TStrings.InsertObject` (471), `TStrings.Append` (466), `TStrings.Delete` (467)

#### 4.74.35 TStrings.InsertObject

**Synopsis:** Insert a string and associated object in the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure InsertObject(Index: Integer; const S: string;  
AObject: TObject)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `InsertObject` inserts the string `S` and its associated object `AObject` at position `Index` in the list. `Index` is a zero-based position, and can have values from 0 to `Count`. If `Index` equals `Count` then the string is appended to the list.

**Errors:** If `Index` is less than zero or larger than `Count` then an `EStringListError` (299) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TStrings.Insert` (471), `TStrings.AddObject` (464), `TStrings.Append` (466), `TStrings.Delete` (467)

#### 4.74.36 TStrings.LastIndexOf

**Declaration:** `function LastIndexOf(const S: string; aStart: Integer) : Integer  
; Virtual  
function LastIndexOf(const S: string) : Integer`

**Visibility:** `public`



**4.74.37 TStrings.LoadFromFile**

Synopsis: Load the contents of a file as a series of strings.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string); Virtual; Overload`  
`procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string; IgnoreEncoding: Boolean)`  
`procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string; AEncoding: TEncoding)`  
`; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` loads the contents of a file into the stringlist. Each line in the file (as marked by the end-of-line marker of the particular OS the application runs on) becomes one string in the stringlist. This action replaces the contents of the stringlist, it does not append the strings to the current content.

`LoadFromFile` simply creates a file stream (382) with the given filename, and then executes `TStrings.LoadfromStream` (472); after that the file stream object is destroyed again.

See also: `TStrings.LoadFromStream` (472), `TStrings.SaveToFile` (474), `Tstrings.SaveToStream` (474)

**4.74.38 TStrings.LoadFromStream**

Synopsis: Load the contents of a stream as a series of strings.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream); Virtual; Overload`  
`procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream; IgnoreEncoding: Boolean)`  
`; Overload`  
`procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream; AEncoding: TEncoding)`  
`; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` loads the contents of `Stream` into the stringlist. Each line in the stream (as marked by the end-of-line marker of the particular OS the application runs on) becomes one string in the stringlist. This action replaces the contents of the stringlist, it does not append the strings to the current content.

See also: `TStrings.LoadFromFile` (472), `TStrings.SaveToFile` (474), `Tstrings.SaveToStream` (474)

**4.74.39 TStrings.Map**

Declaration: `procedure Map(aMap: TStringsMapMethod; aList: TStrings)`  
`function Map(aMap: TStringsMapMethod) : TStrings`

Visibility: public

**4.74.40 TStrings.Move**

Synopsis: Move a string from one place in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move(CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Move` moves the string at position `CurIndex` so it has position `NewIndex` after the move operation. The object associated to the string is also moved. `CurIndex` and `NewIndex` should be in the range of 0 to `Count-1`.

**Remark** `NewIndex` is *not* the position in the stringlist before the move operation starts. The move operation

- 1.removes the string from position `CurIndex`
- 2.inserts the string at position `NewIndex`

This may not lead to the desired result if `NewIndex` is bigger than `CurIndex`. Consider the following example:

```
With MyStrings do
begin
  Clear;
  Add('String 0');
  Add('String 1');
  Add('String 2');
  Add('String 3');
  Add('String 4');
  Move(1,3);
end;
```

After the `Move` operation has completed, 'String 1' will be between 'String 3' and 'String 4'.

**Errors:** If either `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` is outside the allowed range, an `EStringListError` ([299](#)) is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Exchange` ([468](#))

#### 4.74.41 TStrings.Pop

**Declaration:** `function Pop : string`

**Visibility:** public

#### 4.74.42 TStrings.Reduce

**Declaration:** `function Reduce(aReduceMethod: TStringsReduceMethod;  
const startingValue: string) : string`

**Visibility:** public

#### 4.74.43 TStrings.Reverse

**Declaration:** `function Reverse : TStrings  
procedure Reverse(aList: TStrings)`

**Visibility:** public

#### 4.74.44 TStrings.SaveToFile

**Synopsis:** Save the contents of the list to a file.

```
Declaration: procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string); Virtual; Overload
              procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string; IgnoreEncoding: Boolean)
                              ; Overload
              procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string; AEncoding: TEncoding)
                              ; Virtual; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `SaveToFile` saves the contents of the stringlist to the file with name `FileName`. It writes the strings to the file, separated by end-of-line markers, so each line in the file will contain 1 string from the stringlist.

`SaveToFile` creates a file stream (382) with name `FileName`, calls `TStrings.SaveToStream` (474) and then destroys the file stream object.

Errors: An `EStreamError` (299) exception can be raised if the file `FileName` cannot be opened, or if it cannot be written to.

See also: [TStrings.SaveToStream \(474\)](#), [Tstrings.LoadFromStream \(472\)](#), [TStrings.LoadFromFile \(472\)](#)

#### 4.74.45 TStrings.SaveToStream

**Synopsis:** Save the contents of the string to a stream.

```
Declaration: procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream); Virtual; Overload
            procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream; IgnoreEncoding: Boolean)
                    ; Overload
            procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream; AEncoding: TEncoding); Virtual
                    ; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `SaveToStream` saves the contents of the stringlist to `Stream`. It writes the strings to the stream, separated by end-of-line markers, so each 'line' in the stream will contain 1 string from the stringlist.

**Errors:** An `EStreamError` (299) exception can be raised if the stream cannot be written to.

See also: [TStrings.SaveToFile \(474\)](#), [Tstrings.LoadFromStream \(472\)](#), [TStrings.LoadFromFile \(472\)](#)

#### 4.74.46 TStrings.Shift

```
Declaration: function Shift : string
```

Visibility: public

#### 4.74.47 TStrings.Slice

```
Declaration: procedure Slice(fromIndex: Integer; aList: TStrings)
              function Slice(fromIndex: Integer) : TStrings
```

Visibility: public

**4.74.48 TStrings.SetText**

Synopsis: Set the contents of the list from a PChar.

Declaration: `procedure SetText(TheText: PChar); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetText` parses the contents of `TheText` and fills the stringlist based on the contents. It regards `TheText` as a series of strings, separated by end-of-line markers. Each of these strings is added to the stringlist.

See also: `TStrings.Text` ([481](#))

**4.74.49 TStrings.AlwaysQuote**

Synopsis: Always quote strings in `DelimitedText`

Declaration: `Property AlwaysQuote : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AlwaysQuote` tells the stringlist instance to quote strings in `DelimitedText` ([477](#)) . The default is to quote strings only when they have whitespace in them.

See also: `DelimitedText` ([477](#)), `CommaText` ([477](#)), `StrictDelimiter` ([480](#))

**4.74.50 TStrings.Capacity**

Synopsis: Capacity of the list, i.e. number of strings that the list can currently hold before it tries to expand.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` is the number of strings that the list can hold before it tries to allocate more memory.

`TStrings` returns `TStrings.Count` ([476](#)) when read. Trying to set the capacity has no effect. Descendant classes such as `TStringList` ([456](#)) can override this property such that it actually sets the new capacity.

See also: `TStringList` ([456](#)), `TStrings.Count` ([476](#))

**4.74.51 TStrings.CommaText**

Synopsis: Contents of the list as a comma-separated string.

Declaration: `Property CommaText : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CommaText` represents the stringlist as a single string, consisting of a comma-separated concatenation of the strings in the list. If one of the strings contains spaces, comma's or quotes it will be enclosed by double quotes. Any double quotes in a string will be doubled. For instance the following strings:

```
Comma,string
Quote"string
Space string
NormalSttring
```

is converted to

```
"Comma,string","Quote""String","Space string",NormalString
```

Conversely, when setting the `CommaText` property, the text will be parsed according to the rules outlined above, and the strings will be set accordingly. Note that spaces will in this context be regarded as string separators, unless the string as a whole is contained in double quotes. Spaces that occur next to a delimiter will be ignored. The following string:

```
"Comma,string" , "Quote""String",Space string,, NormalString
```

Will be converted to

```
Comma,String
Quote"String
Space
String

NormalString
```

This is a special case of the `TStrings.DelimitedText` (477) property where the quote character is always the double quote, and the delimiter is always the colon.

See also: `TStrings.Text` (481), `TStrings.SetText` (475)

#### 4.74.52 TStrings.Count

Synopsis: Number of strings in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the current number of strings in the list. `TStrings` does not implement this property; descendant classes should override the property read handler to return the correct value.

Strings in the list are always uniquely identified by their `Index`; the index of a string is zero-based, i.e. it's supported range is 0 to `Count-1`. trying to access a string with an index larger than or equal to `Count` will result in an error. Code that iterates over the list in a stringlist should always take into account the zero-based character of the list index.

See also: `TStrings.Strings` (481), `TStrings.Objects` (479), `TStrings.Capacity` (475)

#### 4.74.53 TStrings.DefaultEncoding

Synopsis: Default encoding of stringlist

Declaration: `Property DefaultEncoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DefaultEncoding` is the default encoding used by the `TStrings` instance. It is not the actual encoding, as specified by `Encoding` (478).

See also: `Encoding` (478)

#### 4.74.54 TStrings.DelimitedText

Synopsis: Get or set all strings in the list in a delimited form.

Declaration: `Property DelimitedText : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DelimitedText` returns all strings, properly quoted with `QuoteChar` (480) and separated by the `Delimiter` (477) character.

Strings are quoted if they contain a space or any character with ASCII value less than 32.

The `CommaText` (475) property is a special case of delimited text where the delimiter character is a comma and the quote character is a double quote.

If `StrictDelimiter` (480) is set to `True`, then no quoting is done (The `QuoteChar` property is disregarded completely): the returned text will contain the items in the stringlist, separated by the `Delimiter` character. When writing the `DelimitedText` property, the text will be split at all occurrences of the `Delimiter` character; however, when reading, the `QuoteChar` property will be taken into account.

See also: `TStrings.Delimiter` (477), `TStrings.Text` (481), `TStrings.QuoteChar` (480), `TStrings.CommaText` (475)

#### 4.74.55 TStrings.Delimiter

Synopsis: Delimiter character used in `DelimitedText` (477).

Declaration: `Property Delimiter : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Delimiter` is the delimiter character used to separate the different strings in the stringlist when they are read or set through the `DelimitedText` (477) property.

See also: `TStrings.DelimitedText` (477)

#### 4.74.56 TStrings.Encoding

Synopsis: Current encoding of stringlist

Declaration: `Property Encoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Encoding` is the current encoding used by the `TStrings` instance, and which was specified in the constructor. It is not the default encoding, as specified by `DefaultEncoding` (477).

See also: `DefaultEncoding` (477)

#### 4.74.57 TStrings.LineBreak

Synopsis: `LineBreak` character to use

Declaration: `Property LineBreak : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LineBreak` is the character used to separate lines when reading or writing `TStrings.Text` (481), and it is also used when reading from file.

See also: `TStrings.Text` (481)

#### 4.74.58 TStrings.MissingNameValueSeparatorAction

Declaration: `Property MissingNameValueSeparatorAction : TMissingNameValueSeparatorAction`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

#### 4.74.59 TStrings.Names

Synopsis: Name parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

Declaration: `Property Names[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Names` provides indexed access to the names of the name-value pairs in the list. It returns the name part of the `Index`-th string in the list.

**Remark** The index is not an index based on the number of name-value pairs in the list. It is the name part of the name-value pair a string `Index` in the list. If the string at position `Index` is not a name-value pair (i.e. does not contain the equal sign (=)), then an empty name is returned.

See also: `TStrings.Values` (483), `TStrings.IndexOfName` (470)

#### 4.74.60 TStrings.NameValueSeparator

Synopsis: Value of the character used to separate name,value pairs

Declaration: `Property NameValueSeparator : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `NameValueSeparator` is the character used to separate name,value pair. By default, this is the equal sign (=), resulting in `Name=Value` pairs.

It can be set to a colon for `Name : Value` pairs.

#### 4.74.61 TStrings.Objects

Synopsis: Indexed access to the objects associated with the strings in the list.

Declaration: `Property Objects[Index: Integer]: TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Objects` provides indexed access to the objects associated to the strings in the list. `Index` is a zero-based index and must be in the range of 0 to `Count-1`.

Setting the `objects` property will not free the previously associated object, if there was one. The caller is responsible for freeing the object that was previously associated to the string.

`TStrings` does not implement any storage for objects. Reading the `Objects` property will always return `Nil`, Setting the property will have no effect. It is the responsibility of the descendant classes to provide storage for the associated objects.

Errors: If an `Index` outside the valid range is specified, an `EStringListError` (299) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStrings.Strings` (481), `TStrings.IndexOfObject` (470), `TStrings.Names` (478), `TStrings.Values` (483)

#### 4.74.62 TStrings.Options

Synopsis: A set of `TStringsOption` (275) - various boolean properties.

Declaration: `Property Options : TStringsOptions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Set `Options` instead of the underlying boolean properties.

See also: `TStringsOption` (275)



#### 4.74.63 TStrings QuoteChar

Synopsis: Quote character used in DelimitedText (477).

Declaration: `Property QuoteChar : Char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `QuoteChar` is the character used by the `DelimitedText` (477) property to quote strings that have a space or non-printing character in it.

#### 4.74.64 TStrings.SkipLastLineBreak

Synopsis: Do not add a linebreak to the last item

Declaration: `Property SkipLastLineBreak : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SkipLastLineBreak` can be set to `True` to omit a linebreak character after the last string in the `TStrings.Text` (481). This also means when writing to file, that the file will not have a terminating linebreak character. Note that `SkipLastLineBreak` has the opposite meaning to `TStrings.TrailingLineBreak` (480).

See also: `TStrings.TrailingLineBreak` (480), `TStrings.LineBreak` (478), `TStrings.Text` (481), `TStrings.Options` (479)

#### 4.74.65 TStrings.TrailingLineBreak

Synopsis: Add a linebreak to the last item

Declaration: `Property TrailingLineBreak : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TrailingLineBreak` can be set to `False` to omit a linebreak character after the last string in the `TStrings.Text` (481). This also means when writing to file, that the file will not have a terminating linebreak character. Note that `TrailingLineBreak` has the opposite meaning to `TStrings.SkipLastLineBreak` (480).

See also: `TStrings.SkipLastLineBreak` (480), `TStrings.LineBreak` (478), `TStrings.Text` (481), `TStrings.Options` (479)

#### 4.74.66 TStrings.StrictDelimiter

Synopsis: Should only the delimiter character be considered a delimiter

Declaration: `Property StrictDelimiter : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `StrictDelimiter` can be used to indicate that only the delimiter character should be considered a delimiter when setting `DelimitedText` (477): under normal circumstances, quotes and spaces are considered specially (see the `TStrings.CommaText` (475) property for more information).

When `StrictDelimiter` is set to `True` then only the `Delimiter` (477) character is considered when splitting the text in items: no quoting whatsoever is performed when writing the `DelimitedText` property. However, when reading the `DelimitedText` property, quoted strings are taken into account (so a quoted string can contain a delimiter that is treated as text instead of a delimiter).

See also: `DelimitedText` (477), `CommaText` (475), `Delimiter` (477), `TStrings.Options` (479)

#### 4.74.67 TStrings.Strings

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the strings in the list.

**Declaration:** `Property Strings[Index: Integer]: string; default`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Strings` is the default property of `TStrings`. It provides indexed read-write access to the list of strings. Reading it will return the string at position `Index` in the list. Writing it will set the string at position `Index`.

`Index` is the position of the string in the list. It is zero-based, i.e. valued values range from 0 (the first string in the list) till `Count-1` (the last string in the list). When browsing through the strings in the list, this fact must be taken into account.

To access the objects associated with the strings in the list, use the `TStrings.Objects` (479) property. The name parts of name-value pairs can be accessed with the `TStrings.Names` (478) property, and the values can be set or read through the `TStrings.Values` (483) property.

Searching through the list can be done using the `TStrings.IndexOf` (470) method.

**Errors:** If `Index` is outside the allowed range, an `EStringListError` (299) exception is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Count` (476), `TStrings.Objects` (479), `TStrings.Names` (478), `TStrings.Values` (483), `TStrings.IndexOf` (470)

#### 4.74.68 TStrings.StringsAdapter

**Synopsis:** Not implemented in Free Pascal.

**Declaration:** `Property StringsAdapter : IStringsAdapter`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** Not implemented in Free Pascal.

#### 4.74.69 TStrings.Text

**Synopsis:** Contents of the list as one big string.

**Declaration:** `Property Text : string`

**Visibility:** public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `Text` returns, when read, the contents of the stringlist as one big string consisting of all strings in the list, separated by an end-of-line marker. When this property is set, the string will be cut into smaller strings, based on the positions of end-of-line markers in the string. Any previous content of the stringlist will be lost.

**Remark** If any of the strings in the list contains an end-of-line marker, then the resulting string will appear to contain more strings than actually present in the list. To avoid this ambiguity, use the `TStrings.CommaText` (475) property instead.

See also: `TStrings.Strings` (481), `TStrings.Count` (476), `TStrings.CommaText` (475)

#### 4.74.70 `TStrings.TextLineBreakStyle`

**Synopsis:** Determines which line breaks to use in the `Text` (481) property

**Declaration:** `Property TextLineBreakStyle : TTextLineBreakStyle`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `TextLineBreakStyle` determines which linebreak style is used when constructing the `Text` property: the same rules are used as in the writing to text files:

**tlbsLFLines** are separated with a linefeed character #10.

**tlbsCRLFLines** are separated with a carriage-return/linefeed character pair: #13#10.

**tlbsCRLines** are separated with a carriage-return character #13.

It has no effect when setting the text property.

See also: `Text` (481)

#### 4.74.71 `TStrings.UseLocale`

**Synopsis:** Determines what methods are used in strings comparison.

**Declaration:** `Property UseLocale : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** Set `UseLocale` to `True` to use `AnsiCompareStr` (260) and `AnsiCompareText` (260) for comparing strings in the `TStrings` object.

Set `UseLocale` to `False` to use `CompareStr` (260) and `CompareText` (260) for comparing strings in the `TStrings` object.

The default value is `True`.

See also: `TStrings.Options` (479)

#### 4.74.72 TStrings.ValueFromIndex

Synopsis: Return the value part of a string based on it's index.

Declaration: `Property ValueFromIndex[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ValueFromIndex` returns the value part of a string based on the string index. The value part are all characters in the string after the `NameValueSeparator` (479) character, or all characters if the `NameValueSeparator` character is not present.

#### 4.74.73 TStrings.Values

Synopsis: Value parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

Declaration: `Property Values[Name: string]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Values` represents the value parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

When reading this property, if there is a name-value pair in the list of strings that has name part `Name`, then the corresponding value is returned. If there is no such pair, an empty string is returned.

When writing this value, first it is checked whether there exists a name-value pair in the list with name `Name`. If such a pair is found, it's value part is overwritten with the specified value. If no such pair is found, a new name-value pair is added with the specified `Name` and value.

##### Remark

- 1.Names are compared case-insensitively.
- 2.Any character, including whitespace, up till the first equal (=) sign in a string is considered part of the name.

See also: `TStrings.Names` (478), `TStrings.Strings` (481), `TStrings.Objects` (479)

#### 4.74.74 TStrings.WriteBOM

Synopsis: Write BOM when writing stringlist to stream

Declaration: `Property WriteBOM : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WriteBOM` signals the stringlist to write a BOM Marker to the stream if the stringlist is written to stream using `TStrings.SaveToStream` (474) or `TStrings.SaveToFile` (474)

See also: `TStrings.SaveToStream` (474), `TStrings.SaveToFile` (474), `TStrings.Options` (479)

## 4.75 TStringsEnumerator

### 4.75.1 Description

`TStringsEnumerator` implements the `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554) interface for the `TStrings` (461) class, so the `TStrings` class can be used in a `for ... in` loop. It is returned by the `TStrings.GetEnumerator` (469) method of `TStrings`.

See also: `TStrings` (461), `TStrings.GetEnumerator` (469), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (1554)

### 4.75.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">484</a>	<code>Create</code>	Initialize a new instance of <code>TStringsEnumerator</code>
<a href="#">484</a>	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Return the current pointer in the list
<a href="#">484</a>	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list.

### 4.75.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">485</a>	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Current pointer in the list

### 4.75.4 TStringsEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TStringsEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AStrings: TStrings)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TStringsEnumerator` and keeps a reference to the stringlist `AStrings` that will be enumerated.

See also: `TStrings` (461)

### 4.75.5 TStringsEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current pointer in the list

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current string item in the enumerator.

Errors: No checking is done on the validity of the current position.

See also: `MoveNext` (484), `TStringItem` (296)

### 4.75.6 TStringsEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the position of the enumerator to the next position in the list.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` puts the pointer on the next item in the stringlist, and returns `True` if this succeeded, or `False` if the pointer is past the last element in the list.

Errors: Note that if `False` is returned, calling `GetCurrent` will result in an exception.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([484](#))

#### 4.75.7 TStringsEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current pointer in the list

Declaration: `Property Current : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` redefines `GetCurrent` ([484](#)) as a property.

See also: `GetCurrent` ([484](#))

### 4.76 TStringStream

#### 4.76.1 Description

`TStringStream` stores its data in an `ansistring`. The contents of this string is available as the `DataStream` ([488](#)) property. It also introduces some methods to read or write parts of the stringstream's data as a string.

The main purpose of a `TStringStream` is to be able to treat a string as a stream from which can be read.

See also: `TStream` ([441](#)), `TStringStream.DataStream` ([488](#)), `TStringStream.ReadString` ([488](#)), `TStringStream.WriteString` ([488](#))

#### 4.76.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">486</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new stringstream and sets its initial content.
<a href="#">486</a>	<code>CreateRaw</code>	Create stringstream using codepage of string
<a href="#">486</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the instance of the stream
<a href="#">487</a>	<code>ReadAnsiString</code>	Read an <code>ansistring</code> from the stream
<a href="#">488</a>	<code>ReadString</code>	Reads a string of length <code>Count</code>
<a href="#">487</a>	<code>ReadUnicodeString</code>	Read a unicode string from the stream
<a href="#">487</a>	<code>WriteAnsiString</code>	Write an <code>ansistring</code> to the stream
<a href="#">488</a>	<code>WriteString</code>	<code>WriteString</code> writes a string to the stream.
<a href="#">487</a>	<code>WriteUnicodeString</code>	Write a unicode string to the stream

### 4.76.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">488</a>	DataStream	r	Contains the contents of the stream in string form
<a href="#">489</a>	Encoding	r	Encoding of the string with the data
<a href="#">489</a>	OwnsEncoding	r	Does the stream instance owns the encoding
<a href="#">488</a>	UnicodeDataStream	r	Datastring as unicode string

### 4.76.4 TStringStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new stringstream and sets its initial content.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const ABytes: TBytes); Override; Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: string); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: string; AEncoding: TEncoding;`  
`AOwnsEncoding: Boolean); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: string; ACodePage: Integer); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: UnicodeString); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: UnicodeString; AEncoding: TEncoding;`  
`AOwnsEncoding: Boolean); Overload`  
`constructor Create(const AString: UnicodeString; ACodePage: Integer)`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new `TStringStream` instance and sets its initial content to `AString`. The position is still 0 but the size of the stream will equal the length of the string.

The `Encoding` argument specifies the codepage with which the bytes in the string will be interpreted. If it is not specified (or `Nil`) the system default encoding will be used. The correct encoding can be detected from the string by using the `TStringStream.CreateRaw` ([486](#)) constructor.

See also: `TStringStream.DataString` ([488](#)), `TStringStream.UnicodeDataStream` ([488](#)), `TStringStream.Encoding` ([489](#)), `TStringStream.CreateRaw` ([486](#))

### 4.76.5 TStringStream.CreateRaw

Synopsis: Create stringstream using codepage of string

Declaration: `constructor CreateRaw(const AString: RawByteString); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateRaw` will create the stream using the codepage of the string passed on in the constructor. The default constructor uses the default codepage of the system.

See also: `TStringStream.Create` ([486](#))

### 4.76.6 TStringStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the instance of the stream

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` frees the encoding if it owns it and calls the inherited destructor.

#### 4.76.7 TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString

Synopsis: Read a unicode string from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadUnicodeString(Count: LongInt) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadUnicodeString` will read a unicodestring and correctly handle the codepage translation if necessary..

See also: `TStream.ReadString` (441), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (449), `TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString` (487)

#### 4.76.8 TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString

Synopsis: Write a unicode string to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteUnicodeString(const AString: UnicodeString)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteUnicodeString` will write a unicodestring and correctly handle the codepage translation if necessary.

See also: `TStream.ReadString` (441), `TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString` (487), `TStringStream.ReadAnsiString` (487), `TStringStream.WriteAnsiString` (487)

#### 4.76.9 TStringStream.ReadAnsiString

Synopsis: Read an ansistring from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadAnsiString(Count: LongInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadAnsiString` will read an ansistring and correctly handle the codepage translation if necessary..

See also: `TStream.ReadString` (441), `TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString` (487), `TStringStream.WriteAnsiString` (487), `TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString` (487)

#### 4.76.10 TStringStream.WriteAnsiString

Synopsis: Write an ansistring to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteAnsiString(const AString: AnsiString)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteAnsiString` will write an ansistring and correctly handle the codepage translation if necessary.

See also: `TStream.ReadString` (441), `TStringStream.ReadUnicodeString` (487), `TStringStream.ReadAnsiString` (487), `TStringStream.WriteUnicodeString` (487)



#### 4.76.11 TStringStream.ReadString

Synopsis: Reads a string of length `Count`

Declaration: `function ReadString(Count: LongInt) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadString` reads `Count` bytes from the stream and returns the read bytes as a string. If less than `Count` bytes were available, the string has as many characters as bytes could be read.

The `ReadString` method is a wrapper around the `Read` (485) method. It does not do the same string as the `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (449) method, which first reads a length integer to determine the length of the string to be read.

See also: `TStringStream.Read` (485), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (449)

#### 4.76.12 TStringStream.WriteString

Synopsis: `WriteString` writes a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const AString: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteString` writes a string to the stream.

#### 4.76.13 TStringStream.DataString

Synopsis: Contains the contents of the stream in string form

Declaration: `Property DataString : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Contains the contents of the stream in string form

#### 4.76.14 TStringStream.UnicodeDataString

Synopsis: Datastring as unicode string

Declaration: `Property UnicodeDataString : UnicodeString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `UnicodeDataString` returns the data string as a unicode encoded string.

See also: `TStringStream.DataString` (488)

### 4.76.15 TStringStream.OwnsEncoding

Synopsis: Does the stream instance owns the encoding

Declaration: `Property OwnsEncoding : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `OwnsEncoding` indicates whether the stream instance owns the encoding or not. If it owns the encoding, it will be freed when the stream instance is freed.

See also: `TStringStream.Encoding` ([489](#))

### 4.76.16 TStringStream.Encoding

Synopsis: Encoding of the string with the data

Declaration: `Property Encoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Encoding` is the encoding of the string which contains the data. If the encoding was not specified (or detected) in the constructor, this is the default system encoding.

See also: `TStringStream.OwnsEncoding` ([489](#)), `TStringStream.Create` ([486](#)), `TStringStream.CreateRaw` ([486](#))

## 4.77 TTextObjectWriter

### 4.77.1 Description

Not yet implemented.

## 4.78 TThread

### 4.78.1 Description

The `TThread` class encapsulates the native thread support of the operating system. To create a thread, declare a descendant of the `TThread` object and override the `Execute` ([490](#)) method. In this method, the `tthread`'s code should be executed. To run a thread, create an instance of the `tthread` descendant, and call its `execute` method.

It is also possible to simply execute a method or static procedure in a thread using the `TThread.ExecuteInThread` ([494](#)) class method.

See also: `EThread` ([299](#)), `TThread.Execute` ([490](#)), `TThread.ExecuteInThread` ([494](#))

**4.78.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
499	AfterConstruction	Code to be executed after construction but before execute.
492	CheckTerminated	Check if the current thread has finished executing.
491	Create	Creates a new thread.
492	CreateAnonymousThread	Execute code in an anonymous thread
491	Destroy	Destroys the thread object.
490	Execute	Execute method. Must be overridden in a descendant thread.
494	ExecuteInThread	Execute a method or static procedure in a thread
494	GetSystemTimes	Return CPU stats
494	GetTickCount	Return tick count (32-bit)
494	GetTickCount64	Return tick count (64-bit)
492	NameThreadForDebugging	Set a thread name
491	Queue	Queue a method for execution in the main thread
493	RemoveQueuedEvents	Remove methods scheduled for execution from queue
500	Resume	Resumes the thread's execution. Deprecated, see <code>TThread.Start</code>
492	SetReturnValue	Set return value of a thread
493	Sleep	Prevent thread execution
493	SpinWait	Prevent thread execution in a spin-wait loop
499	Start	Starts a thread that was created in a suspended state.
500	Suspend	Suspends the thread's execution.
491	Synchronize	Synchronizes the thread by executing the method in the main thread.
500	Terminate	Signals the thread it should terminate.
500	WaitFor	Waits for the thread to terminate and returns the exit status.
494	Yield	Yield execution to other threads

**4.78.3 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
501	CurrentThread	r	Return current thread instance
502	ExternalThread	r	Is the thread instance an external thread ?
504	FatalException	r	Exception that occurred during thread execution
503	Finished	r	Has the thread finished executing
502	FreeOnTerminate	rw	Indicates whether the thread should free itself when it stops executing.
502	Handle	r	Returns the thread handle.
501	IsSingleProcessor	r	Is the current system single processor or not
503	OnTerminate	rw	Event called when the thread terminates.
502	Priority	rw	Returns the thread priority.
501	ProcessorCount	r	Return the processor count for this system
503	Suspended	rw	Indicates whether the thread is suspended.
503	ThreadID	r	Returns the thread ID.

**4.78.4 TThread.Execute**

Synopsis: Execute method. Must be overridden in a descendant thread.

Declaration: `procedure Execute; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `protected`

**Description:** `Execute` is a method that must be overridden in descendant classes of the thread. It must contain the code that must execute in the thread. The `Execute` method is responsible for checking `Terminated` (260) at regular intervals: when it is set to `True` the execute method must exit.

See also: `Terminated` (260)

#### 4.78.5 `TThread.Synchronize`

**Synopsis:** Synchronizes the thread by executing the method in the main thread.

**Declaration:** `procedure Synchronize (AMethod: TThreadMethod)`  
`class procedure Synchronize (AThread: TThread; AMethod: TThreadMethod)`

**Visibility:** `protected`

**Description:** Synchronizes the thread by executing the method in the main thread.

#### 4.78.6 `TThread.Queue`

**Synopsis:** `Queue` a method for execution in the main thread

**Declaration:** `procedure Queue (aMethod: TThreadMethod)`  
`class procedure Queue (aThread: TThread; aMethod: TThreadMethod); Static`

**Visibility:** `protected`

**Description:** `Queue` schedules a method `aMethod` for execution in the main thread. In difference with `TThread.Synchronize` (491), `Queue` just posts the method for execution in a queue, and does not wait for it to be executed, so this call returns at once.

In the class procedure overloaded version of this call, the thread for which the method must be posted is the first argument. In the protected version of this call (used in the `tthread` instance), this argument is not there, and the thread instance is used.

When a thread object is destroyed (after it has finished executing) all its queued calls are removed from the queue list.

See also: `TThread.Synchronize` (491), `TThread.RemoveQueuedEvents` (493)

#### 4.78.7 `TThread.Create`

**Synopsis:** Creates a new thread.

**Declaration:** `constructor Create (CreateSuspended: Boolean; const StackSize: SizeUInt)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** Creates a new thread.

#### 4.78.8 `TThread.Destroy`

**Synopsis:** Destroys the thread object.

**Declaration:** `destructor Destroy; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** Destroys the thread object.

### 4.78.9 TThread.CreateAnonymousThread

Synopsis: Execute code in an anonymous thread

Declaration: `class function CreateAnonymousThread(aProc: TProcedure) : TThread  
; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateAnonymousThread` will create an instance of a `TThread` descendant and calls `aProc` in this procedure. This can be used to quickly execute a method in another thread without having to explicitly declare a thread for such purposes. It returns the created `TThread` instance, which can be checked for termination etc.

Note that this method differs slightly from Delphi in that FPC does not yet support anonymous methods, so the signature of `aProc` differs slightly.

See also: `TThread.CheckTerminated` ([492](#))

### 4.78.10 TThread.NameThreadForDebugging

Synopsis: Set a thread name

Declaration: `class procedure NameThreadForDebugging(aThreadName: UnicodeString;  
aThreadID: TThreadID); Static  
class procedure NameThreadForDebugging(aThreadName: AnsiString;  
aThreadID: TThreadID); Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `NameThreadForDebugging` sets the name of thread `aThreadID` to `aThreadName`. The thread name can be Unicode or ansistring. This is mainly useful for debugging purposes, as thread names are more easily recognizable than IDs.

Note that this requires OS support. Currently this is not implemented for any FPC platform and is supported for Delphi compatibility only.

### 4.78.11 TThread.SetReturnValue

Synopsis: Set return value of a thread

Declaration: `class procedure SetReturnValue(aValue: Integer); Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TThread.SetReturnValue` sets the return value of an internally created thread.

Errors: If the thread was not created by the FPC program, an `EThreadExternalException` ([300](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `EThreadExternalException` ([300](#)), `TThread.CheckTerminated` ([492](#))

### 4.78.12 TThread.CheckTerminated

Synopsis: Check if the current thread has finished executing.

Declaration: `class function CheckTerminated : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `TThread.CheckTerminated` can be used to check if the current thread has finished executing (i.e. `Execute` has finished). This can be called from methods in other classes where the current thread instance is not available.

**Errors:** If the thread was not created by the FPC program, an `EThreadExternalException` (300) exception is raised.

See also: `EThreadExternalException` (300), `TThread.SetReturnValue` (492)

### 4.78.13 `TThread.RemoveQueuedEvents`

**Synopsis:** Remove methods scheduled for execution from queue

**Declaration:** `class procedure RemoveQueuedEvents(aThread: TThread;  
aMethod: TThreadMethod); Static  
class procedure RemoveQueuedEvents(aMethod: TThreadMethod); Static  
class procedure RemoveQueuedEvents(aThread: TThread); Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `RemoveQueuedEvents` removes methods from the list of methods waiting for execution in the main thread. If only `aThread` is specified, all methods scheduled for execution by that thread are removed. If only `aMethod` is specified, then all calls to that method are removed, regardless of the thread. If both arguments are specified, then all calls to the given method by the given thread are removed.

See also: `TThread.Synchronize` (491), `TThread.Queue` (491)

### 4.78.14 `TThread.SpinWait`

**Synopsis:** Prevent thread execution in a spin-wait loop

**Declaration:** `class procedure SpinWait(aIterations: LongWord); Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `SpinWait` blocks the execution of the thread in a spin-wait loop: it simply executes some simple instructions.

This can be used to create short time delays without an immediate thread switch (e.g. `SysUtils.Sleep` (260) can cause a thread switch). The input parameter (`aIterations`) specifies the number of spin loops.

See also: `SysUtils.Sleep` (260), `TThread.Sleep` (493)

### 4.78.15 `TThread.Sleep`

**Synopsis:** Prevent thread execution

**Declaration:** `class procedure Sleep(aMilliseconds: Cardinal); Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Sleep` blocks the execution of the thread for `aMilliseconds`. This function simply calls `sysutils.sleep` (260)

In difference with `TThread.SpinWait` (493), a thread switch may occur during the sleep.

See also: `SysUtils.Sleep` (260), `TThread.SpinWait` (493)

#### 4.78.16 TThread.Yield

Synopsis: Yield execution to other threads

Declaration: `class procedure Yield; Static`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TThread.Yield` yields the processor to other threads. It can be called from methods outside the thread class itself.

#### 4.78.17 TThread.GetSystemTimes

Synopsis: Return CPU stats

Declaration: `class procedure GetSystemTimes(out aSystemTimes: TSystemTimes); Static`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetSystemTimes` is provided for Delphi compatibility only, it currently returns empty values only.

See also: `TSystemTimes` ([260](#))

#### 4.78.18 TThread.GetTickCount

Synopsis: Return tick count (32-bit)

Declaration: `class function GetTickCount : LongWord; Static`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetTickCount` is deprecated and should not be used. Use `TThread.GetTickCount64` ([494](#)) instead.

See also: `TThread.GetTickCount64` ([494](#))

#### 4.78.19 TThread.GetTickCount64

Synopsis: Return tick count (64-bit)

Declaration: `class function GetTickCount64 : QWord; Static`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetTickCount64` simply calls `SysUtils.GetTickCount64` ([260](#)) and is implemented for Delphi compatibility only.

See also: `SysUtils.GetTickCount64` ([260](#))

#### 4.78.20 TThread.ExecuteInThread

Synopsis: Execute a method or static procedure in a thread

```

Declaration: class function ExecuteInThread(AMethod: TThreadExecuteHandler;
                                           AOnTerminate: TNotifyEvent) : TThread
                                           ; Overload; Static
class function ExecuteInThread(AMethod: TThreadExecuteStatusHandler;
                               AOnStatus: TThreadStatusNotifyEvent;
                               AOnTerminate: TNotifyEvent) : TThread
                               ; Overload; Static
class function ExecuteInThread(AMethod: TThreadExecuteCallBack;
                               AData: Pointer;
                               AOnTerminate: TNotifyCallBack) : TThread
                               ; Overload; Static
class function ExecuteInThread(AMethod: TThreadExecuteStatusCallBack;
                               AOnStatus: TThreadStatusNotifyCallBack;
                               AData: Pointer;
                               AOnTerminate: TNotifyCallBack) : TThread
                               ; Overload; Static

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `TThread.ExecuteInThread` is a class method which allows to quickly execute a method or procedure in a thread. The method or procedure to be executed is passed in `Method`, this can be a method or a plain (static) procedure.

The caller can be notified of thread termination: In the optional argument `AOnTerminate` a callback (procedure or method, depending on the signature) can be specified that will be called when the thread terminated. This callback is executed in the main thread.

The signature of `AMethod` determines whether status reporting is enabled or not. If the method of type `TThreadExecuteStatusHandler` (277) or `TThreadExecuteStatusCallBack` (277), then an extra `AOnStatus` callback must be specified. This callback will be called in the main thread whenever the thread wishes to be report its status. The status callback should not do extensive work, because while the status callback is called, thread execution is suspended.

When using a plain procedure, extra data can be passed on to the procedure in `AData`. The `AData` pointer will be passed to the thread method, and also to the thread status callback and thread termination callback.

See also: `TThreadExecuteHandler` (277), `TThreadExecuteStatusHandler` (277), `TThreadExecuteStatusCallBack` (277), `TThreadExecuteCallBack` (276)

**Listing:** `./classesex/tthrc.pp`

---

```

program tthrc;

uses cthreads, sysutils, classes;

Var
  D : Integer;

Procedure DoneThread(Sender : TObject; AData : Pointer);

begin
  WriteLn('Thread ', TThread(Sender).ThreadID, ' done. D is currently: ', PInteger(AData)^);
end;

Procedure DoThread(AData : Pointer);

Var
  I : integer;

```



```

begin
  for I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      Sleep(10*Random(30));
      Writeln('Thread ',TThread.CurrentThread.ThreadID,' ping ',I);
      Inc(PInteger(AData)^,i);
    end;
  end;

Var
  T1,T2 : TThread;

begin
  T1:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@D,@DoneThread);
  T2:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@D,@DoneThread);
  Writeln('Main thread done');
  T1.WaitFor;
  T2.WaitFor;
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./classesex/tthre.pp

---

```

program tthre;

```

```

{$mode objfpc}
{$H+}

```

```

uses cthreads, sysutils, classes;

```

**Type**

```

TTestThread = Class(TObject)
  D : Integer;
  Procedure DoneThread(Sender : TObject);
  Procedure DoThread;
  Procedure Run;
end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.DoneThread(Sender : TObject);

```

**begin**

```

  Writeln('Thread ',TThread(Sender).ThreadID,' done. D is currently: ', D);
end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.DoThread;

```

**Var**

```

  I : integer;

```

**begin**

```

  for I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      Sleep(10*Random(30));
      Writeln('Thread ',TThread.CurrentThread.ThreadID,' ping ',I);
      Inc(D,i);
    end;
  end;

```

**end;**

**Procedure** TTestThread.Run;

**Var**

T1,T2 : TThread;

**begin**

T1:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@DoneThread);

T2:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@DoneThread);

**WriteIn**( 'Main thread done' );

T1.WaitFor;

T2.WaitFor;

**end;**

**begin**

**With** TTestThread.Create **do**

**try**

Run;

**finally**

**Free**;

**end**;

**end.**

---

**Listing:** ./classesex/tthrcs.pp

---

**program** tthrcs;

{ \$h+ }

**uses** cthreads, sysutils, classes;

**Var**

D : Integer;

DoneThreads : INteger;

**Procedure** DoneThread(Sender : TObject; Data : Pointer);

**begin**

**Inc**(DoneThreads);

**WriteIn**( 'Thread ',TThread(Sender).ThreadID, ' done. D is currently: ', PInteger(Data)^);

**end;**

**Procedure** ReportThreadStatus(Sender : TThread; AData : Pointer;**Const** status : **String**);

**begin**

**WriteIn**( 'Thread ',Sender.ThreadID, ' Status report : ',Status);

**end;**

**Procedure** DoThread(AData : Pointer; Report : TThreadReportStatus);

**Var**

I : integer;

**begin**

**for** I:=1 **to** 10 **do**

**begin**

Sleep(10\***Random**(30));

Report( 'Ping '+**IntToStr**(i));

```

        Inc(PInteger(AData)^, i);
    end;
end;

Var
    T1, T2 : TThread;

begin
    DoneThreads:=0;
    T1:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread, @ReportThreadStatus, @D, @DoneThread);
    T2:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread, @ReportThreadStatus, @D, @DoneThread);
    WriteLn('Main thread loop');
    While DoneThreads<2 do
        begin
            Sleep(10);
            CheckSynchronize;
        end;
        T1.WaitFor;
        T2.WaitFor;
    end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./classesex/tthres.pp

---

```

program tthrc;

```

```

{$mode objfpc}
{$H+}

```

```

uses cthreads, sysutils, classes;

```

**Type**

```

TTestThread = Class(TObject)
    D : Integer;
    DoneThreads : integer;
    Procedure DoneThread(Sender : TObject);
    Procedure ReportThreadStatus(Sender : TThread; Const status : String);
    Procedure DoThread(Report: TThreadReportStatus);
    Procedure Run;
end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.DoneThread(Sender : TObject);

```

**begin**

```

    Inc(DoneThreads);
    WriteLn('Thread ', TThread(Sender).ThreadID, ' done. D is currently: ', D);
end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.ReportThreadStatus(Sender : TThread; Const status : String);

```

**begin**

```

    WriteLn('Thread ', Sender.ThreadID, ' Status report : ', Status);
end;

```

```

Procedure TTestThread.DoThread(Report : TThreadReportStatus);

```

**Var**

```

    I : integer;

```

---

```

begin
  for I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      Sleep(10*Random(30));
      Report('Ping '+IntToStr(i));
      Inc(D,i);
    end;
  end;

  Procedure TTestThread.Run;

  Var
    T1,T2 : TThread;

  begin
    DoneThreads:=0;
    T1:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@ReportThreadStatus,@DoneThread);
    T2:=TThread.ExecuteInThread(@DoThread,@ReportThreadStatus,@DoneThread);
    Writeln('Main thread loop');
    While DoneThreads<2 do
      begin
        Sleep(10);
        CheckSynchronize;
      end;
    T1.WaitFor;
    T2.WaitFor;
  end;

  begin
    With TTestThread.Create do
      try
        Run;
      finally
        Free;
      end;
    end.
  end.

```

---

#### 4.78.21 TThread.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Code to be executed after construction but before execute.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AfterConstruction` is overridden in `TThread`, it actually starts the thread if it was created with `CreateSuspended` equal to `False`, i.e. not suspended. When overriding this method, the inherited method must be called, or the thread will never be started.

#### 4.78.22 TThread.Start

Synopsis: Starts a thread that was created in a suspended state.

Declaration: `procedure Start`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** The effect of this method is currently the same as calling `TThread.Resume` after creating a thread in a suspended state. This method was added for Delphi-compatibility, where it was introduced after `TThread.Suspend` and `TThread.Resume` were deprecated.

See also: `TThread.Create` ([491](#))

#### 4.78.23 TThread.Resume

**Synopsis:** Resumes the thread's execution. Deprecated, see `TThread.Start`

**Declaration:** `procedure Resume`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** Resumes the thread's execution. Deprecated, see `TThread.Start`

See also: `TThread.Start` ([499](#)), `TThread.Suspend` ([500](#))

#### 4.78.24 TThread.Suspend

**Synopsis:** Suspends the thread's execution.

**Declaration:** `procedure Suspend`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** On non-Windows platforms, a thread can only suspend itself. Other threads can wake up a suspended thread by calling `TThread.Start`.

See also: `TThread.Resume` ([500](#)), `TThread.Start` ([499](#))

#### 4.78.25 TThread.Terminate

**Synopsis:** Signals the thread it should terminate.

**Declaration:** `procedure Terminate`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** Signals the thread it should terminate.

#### 4.78.26 TThread.WaitFor

**Synopsis:** Waits for the thread to terminate and returns the exit status.

**Declaration:** `function WaitFor : Integer`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** Waits for the thread to terminate and returns the exit status.

#### 4.78.27 TThread.CurrentThread

Synopsis: Return current thread instance

Declaration: `Property CurrentThread : TThread`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `TThread.CurrentThread` can be used to get the current thread instance. This is useful in code that is not inside a `TThread` implementation, but which needs access to the current thread.

For threads that were created outside of FPC code (DLLs or a calling program) this will return a dummy `TThread` instance.

See also: `TThread.ExternalThread` ([502](#))

#### 4.78.28 TThread.ProcessorCount

Synopsis: Return the processor count for this system

Declaration: `Property ProcessorCount : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ProcessorCount` returns the processor count for this system.

Whether this is the number of cores or the number of CPUs present in the hardware, is deliberately unspecified. The number of cores can also vary during the lifetime of the program, and the FPC implementation does not guarantee that this will always match, the value is set at program start.

As such, the number specified should only be used as an indication of how many threads can be executed at once by the system.

See also: `TThread.IsSingleProcessor` ([501](#))

#### 4.78.29 TThread.IsSingleProcessor

Synopsis: Is the current system single processor or not

Declaration: `Property IsSingleProcessor : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Thread.IsSingleProcessor` returns `True` if `TThread.ProcessorCount` ([501](#)) is less than or equal to 1, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TThread.ProcessorCount` ([501](#))

**4.78.30 TThread.FreeOnTerminate**

Synopsis: Indicates whether the thread should free itself when it stops executing.

Declaration: `Property FreeOnTerminate : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FreeOnTerminate`, when set to `True` indicates that the tread instance will freed automatically as soon as the thread stops executing. You can use the `OnTerminate` (503) property to get a notification of when the thread has terminated and will be freed.

When setting this property to `True`, in general you may not read or write any property of the `TThread` instance from a different thread, because there is no guarantee that the thread instance still exists in memory. This implies 2 things:

- 1.The `OnTerminate` event handler should be set before setting `FreeOnTerminate` to `True`
- 2.The properties can still be read and set in the `OnTerminate` event handler, as the thread instance is then still guaranteed to exist.

See also: `OnTerminate` (503)

**4.78.31 TThread.Handle**

Synopsis: Returns the thread handle.

Declaration: `Property Handle : TThreadID`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Returns the thread handle.

**4.78.32 TThread.ExternalThread**

Synopsis: Is the thread instance an external thread ?

Declaration: `Property ExternalThread : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ExternalThread` returns `True` if the thread is an externally created thread. If the thread was created by the FPC program, this returns `False`. This is useful for examining instances returned by `TThread.CurrentThread` (501).

See also: `TThread.CurrentThread` (501)

**4.78.33 TThread.Priority**

Synopsis: Returns the thread priority.

Declaration: `Property Priority : TThreadPriority`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Returns the thread priority.

#### 4.78.34 TThread.Suspended

Synopsis: Indicates whether the thread is suspended.

Declaration: `Property Suspended : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Indicates whether the thread is suspended.

#### 4.78.35 TThread.Finished

Synopsis: Has the thread finished executing

Declaration: `Property Finished : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Finished` is `True` when `TThread.Execue` (489) has finished executing, but the thread is still cleaning up (calling `OnTerminate`, etc).

See also: `TThread.Execue` (489), `TThread.OnTerminate` (503)

#### 4.78.36 TThread.ThreadID

Synopsis: Returns the thread ID.

Declaration: `Property ThreadID : TThreadID`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Returns the thread ID.

#### 4.78.37 TThread.OnTerminate

Synopsis: Event called when the thread terminates.

Declaration: `Property OnTerminate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `TThread.OnTerminate` is called when the thread terminates. The event is always called in the context of the main thread, i.e. using `TThread.Synchronize` (491)

See also: `TThread.Synchronize` (491), `TThread.FreeOnTerminate` (502)



### 4.78.38 TThread.FatalException

Synopsis: Exception that occurred during thread execution

Declaration: `Property FatalException : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FatalException` contains the exception that occurred during the thread's execution.

## 4.79 TThreadList

### 4.79.1 Description

`TThreadList` is a thread-safe `TList` (402) implementation. Unlike `TList`, it can be accessed read-write by multiple threads: the list implementation will take care of locking the list when adding or removing items from the list.

See also: `TList` (402)

### 4.79.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">505</a>	<code>Add</code>	Adds an element to the list.
<a href="#">505</a>	<code>Clear</code>	Removes all elements from the list.
<a href="#">504</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new thread-safe list.
<a href="#">505</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the list instance.
<a href="#">505</a>	<code>LockList</code>	Locks the list for exclusive access.
<a href="#">506</a>	<code>Remove</code>	Removes an item from the list.
<a href="#">506</a>	<code>UnlockList</code>	Unlocks the list after it was locked.

### 4.79.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">506</a>	<code>Duplicates</code>	<code>rw</code>	Describes what to do with duplicates

### 4.79.4 TThreadList.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new thread-safe list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TThreadList` instance. It initializes a critical section and an internal list object.

See also: `TThreadList.Destroy` (505)

#### 4.79.5 TThreadList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` finalizes the critical section, clears the internal list object and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TThreadList.Create` ([504](#))

#### 4.79.6 TThreadList.Add

Synopsis: Adds an element to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` attempts to lock the list and adds the pointer `Item` to the list. After the pointer was added, the list is unlocked again.

See also: `LockList` ([505](#)), `Clear` ([505](#)), `Remove` ([506](#)), `UnlockList` ([506](#))

#### 4.79.7 TThreadList.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all elements from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` attempts to lock the list and then clears the list; all items are removed from the list. After the list is cleared, it is again unlocked.

See also: `LockList` ([505](#)), `Add` ([505](#)), `Remove` ([506](#)), `UnlockList` ([506](#))

#### 4.79.8 TThreadList.LockList

Synopsis: Locks the list for exclusive access.

Declaration: `function LockList : TList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LockList` locks the list for exclusive access. `Locklist` uses an internal critical section, so all rules for multiple locking of critical sections apply to `locklist/unlocklist` as well.

See also: `Clear` ([505](#)), `Add` ([505](#)), `Remove` ([506](#)), `UnlockList` ([506](#))

### 4.79.9 TThreadList.Remove

Synopsis: Removes an item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove (Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` attempts to lock the list and then removes `Item` from the list. After the item is removed, the list is again unlocked.

See also: `LockList` (505), `Add` (505), `Clear` (505), `UnlockList` (506)

### 4.79.10 TThreadList.UnlockList

Synopsis: Unlocks the list after it was locked.

Declaration: `procedure UnlockList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnLockList` unlocks the list when it was locked for exclusive access. `UnLocklist` and `LockList` use an internal critical section, so all rules for multiple locking/unlocking of critical sections apply.

See also: `Clear` (505), `Add` (505), `Remove` (506), `lockList` (505)

### 4.79.11 TThreadList.Duplicates

Synopsis: Describes what to do with duplicates

Declaration: `Property Duplicates : TDuplicates`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Duplicates` describes what the threadlist should do when a duplicate pointer is added to the list. It is identical in behaviour to the `Duplicates` (459) property of `TStringList` (456).

See also: `TDuplicates` (267)

## 4.80 TWriter

### 4.80.1 Description

The `TWriter` class is a writer class that implements generic component streaming capabilities, independent of the format of the data in the stream. It uses a driver class `TAbstractObjectWriter` (320) to do the actual reading of data. The interface of the `TWriter` class should be identical to the interface in Delphi.

Note that the `TWriter` design is such that it will write a single component to a stream. It will write all children of this component, but it is not designed to write multiple components in succession to one stream.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of this class directly. Instead, the `TStream.WriteComponent` (446) call should be used.

See also: `TFile` (380), `TWriter` (506), `TAbstractObjectReader` (312)

### 4.80.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
507	Create	Creates a new Writer with a stream and bufsize.
508	DefineBinaryProperty	Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.
508	DefineProperty	Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.
508	Destroy	Destroys the writer instance.
508	FlushBuffer	Flush the buffer
508	Write	Write raw data to stream
509	WriteBoolean	Write boolean value to the stream.
509	WriteChar	Write a character to the stream.
509	WriteCollection	Write a collection to the stream.
509	WriteComponent	Stream a component to the stream.
510	WriteCurrency	Write a currency value to the stream
510	WriteDate	Write a date to the stream.
510	WriteDescendent	Write descendent to stream
510	WriteFloat	Write a float to the stream.
511	WriteIdent	Write an identifier to the stream.
511	WriteInteger	Write an integer to the stream.
511	WriteListBegin	Write a start-of-list marker to the stream.
511	WriteListEnd	Write an end-of-list marker to the stream.
512	WriteRootComponent	Write a root component to the stream.
511	WriteSet	Write a set value to the stream
512	WriteSignature	Write a signature to the stream
510	WriteSingle	Write a single-type real to the stream.
512	WriteString	Write a string to the stream.
512	WriteUnicodeString	Write a Unicode string to the stream.
513	WriteVariant	Write a variant to the stream
509	WriteWideChar	Write widechar to stream
512	WriteWideString	Write a widestring value to the stream

### 4.80.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
514	Driver	r	Driver used when writing to the stream.
513	OnFindAncestor	rw	Event occurring when an ancestor component must be found.
513	OnWriteMethodProperty	rw	Handler from writing method properties.
514	OnWriteStringProperty	rw	Event handler for translating strings written to stream.
514	PropertyPath	r	Path to the property that is currently being written
513	RootAncestor	rw	Ancestor of root component.

### 4.80.4 TWriter.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new Writer with a stream and bufsize.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADriver: TAbstractObjectWriter)`  
`constructor Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new Writer with a stream and bufsize.

#### 4.80.5 TWriter.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the writer instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the writer instance.

#### 4.80.6 TWriter.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flush the buffer

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the buffer. It is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in FPC.

See also: `TFile.FlushBuffer` ([381](#)), `TBinaryObjectWriter.FlushBuffer` ([341](#)), `TAbstractObjectWriter.FlushBuffer` ([322](#))

#### 4.80.7 TWriter.DefineProperty

Synopsis: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

Declaration: `procedure DefineProperty(const Name: string; ReadData: TReaderProc;  
AWriteData: TWriterProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

#### 4.80.8 TWriter.DefineBinaryProperty

Synopsis: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

Declaration: `procedure DefineBinaryProperty(const Name: string;  
ReadData: TStreamProc;  
AWriteData: TStreamProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

#### 4.80.9 TWriter.Write

Synopsis: Write raw data to stream

Declaration: `procedure Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` is introduced for Delphi compatibility to write raw data to the component stream. This should not be used in new production code as it will totally mess up the streaming.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.Write` ([342](#)), `TAbstractObjectWriter.Write` ([323](#))

#### **4.80.10 TWriter.WriteBoolean**

Synopsis: Write boolean value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBoolean(Value: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write boolean value to the stream.

#### **4.80.11 TWriter.WriteCollection**

Synopsis: Write a collection to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteCollection(Value: TCollection)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a collection to the stream.

#### **4.80.12 TWriter.WriteComponent**

Synopsis: Stream a component to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponent(Component: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Stream a component to the stream.

#### **4.80.13 TWriter.WriteChar**

Synopsis: Write a character to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteChar(Value: Char)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a character to the stream.

#### **4.80.14 TWriter.WriteWideChar**

Synopsis: Write widechar to stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteWideChar(Value: WideChar)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteWideChar` writes a widechar to the stream. This actually writes a widestring of length 1.

See also: `TReader.ReadWideChar` ([431](#)), `TWriter.WriteWideString` ([512](#))

#### 4.80.15 TWriter.WriteDescendent

Synopsis: Write descendent to stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteDescendent (ARoot: TComponent; AAncestor: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDescendent` writes `ARoot` as a descendent of `AAncestor`. This is used to create diff streams: only the properties where `ARoot` differs from `AAncestor` are written to the stream.

See also: `TStream.WriteDescendent` ([446](#))

#### 4.80.16 TWriter.WriteFloat

Synopsis: Write a float to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat (const Value: Extended)`

Visibility: public

Description: Write a float to the stream.

#### 4.80.17 TWriter.WriteSingle

Synopsis: Write a single-type real to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle (const Value: Single)`

Visibility: public

Description: Write a single-type real to the stream.

#### 4.80.18 TWriter.WriteDate

Synopsis: Write a date to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate (const Value: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: Write a date to the stream.

#### 4.80.19 TWriter.WriteCurrency

Synopsis: Write a currency value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteCurrency (const Value: Currency)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteCurrency` writes a currency typed value to the stream. This method does nothing except call the driver method of the driver being used.

See also: `TReader.ReadCurrency` ([432](#))

#### 4.80.20 TWriter.WriteIdent

Synopsis: Write an identifier to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteIdent(const Ident: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write an identifier to the stream.

#### 4.80.21 TWriter.WriteInteger

Synopsis: Write an integer to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(Value: LongInt); Overload`  
`procedure WriteInteger(Value: Int64); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write an integer to the stream.

#### 4.80.22 TWriter.WriteSet

Synopsis: Write a set value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteSet(Value: LongInt; SetType: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteSet` writes a set `Value` consisting of elements with type `EnumType`. The set must be encoded as an integer where each element is encoded in a bit of the integer. Thus, at most an enumerated type with 32 elements can be written with this method.

Errors: No checking is performed on the validity of `EnumType`. It is assumed to be a valid `PTypeInfo` pointer.

See also: `TReader.ReadSet` ([433](#))

#### 4.80.23 TWriter.WriteListBegin

Synopsis: Write a start-of-list marker to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteListBegin`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a start-of-list marker to the stream.

#### 4.80.24 TWriter.WriteListEnd

Synopsis: Write an end-of-list marker to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteListEnd`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write an end-of-list marker to the stream.



#### 4.80.25 TWriter.WriteSignature

Synopsis: Write a signature to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteSignature`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteSignature` writes the streaming signature (if any) to a stream. It is called once, at the start of writing the root component to a stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([321](#)), `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSignature` ([340](#))

#### 4.80.26 TWriter.WriteRootComponent

Synopsis: Write a root component to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteRootComponent (ARoot: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a root component to the stream.

#### 4.80.27 TWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Value: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a string to the stream.

#### 4.80.28 TWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a widestring value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteWideString(const Value: WideString)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteWideString` writes a currency typed value to the stream. This method does nothing except call the driver method of the driver being used.

See also: `TReader.ReadWideString` ([435](#))

#### 4.80.29 TWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a Unicode string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteUnicodeString(const Value: UnicodeString)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteUnicodeString` writes `Value`, a `UnicodeString` string to the stream. It simply passes the string on to the `WriteUnicodeString` method of the writer driver class.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString` ([344](#)), `TReader.ReadUnicodeString` ([435](#))

### 4.80.30 TWriter.WriteVariant

Synopsis: Write a variant to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteVariant (const VarValue: Variant)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteVariant` writes `Value`, a simple variant, o the stream. It simply passes the string on to the `WriteVariant` method of the writer driver class.

See also: `TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteVariant` ([345](#)), `TReader.ReadVariant` ([434](#))

### 4.80.31 TWriter.RootAncestor

Synopsis: Ancestor of root component.

Declaration: `Property RootAncestor : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Ancestor of root component.

### 4.80.32 TWriter.OnFindAncestor

Synopsis: Event occurring when an ancestor component must be found.

Declaration: `Property OnFindAncestor : TFindAncestorEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event occurring when an ancestor component must be found.

### 4.80.33 TWriter.OnWriteMethodProperty

Synopsis: Handler from writing method properties.

Declaration: `Property OnWriteMethodProperty : TWriteMethodPropertyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnWriteMethodProperty` can be set by an IDE or some streaming mechanism which handles dummy values for method properties; It can be used to write a real value to the stream which will be interpreted correctly when the stream is read. See `TWriteMethodPropertyEvent` ([279](#)) for a description of the arguments.

See also: `TWriteMethodPropertyEvent` ([279](#)), `TReader.OnSetMethodProperty` ([437](#))

#### 4.80.34 TWriter.OnWriteStringProperty

Synopsis: Event handler for translating strings written to stream.

Declaration: `Property OnWriteStringProperty : TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OnWriteStringProperty` is called whenever a string property is written to the stream. It can be used e.g. by a translation mechanism to translate the strings on the fly, when a form is written. See `TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent` (272) for a description of the various parameters.

See also: `TReader.OnPropertyNotFound` (436), `TReader.OnSetMethodProperty` (437), `TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent` (272)

#### 4.80.35 TWriter.Driver

Synopsis: Driver used when writing to the stream.

Declaration: `Property Driver : TAbstractObjectWriter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Driver used when writing to the stream.

#### 4.80.36 TWriter.PropertyPath

Synopsis: Path to the property that is currently being written

Declaration: `Property PropertyPath : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `PropertyPath` is set to the property name of the class currently being written to stream. This is only done when `TPersistent` (422) descendant class properties are written.

## Chapter 5

# Reference for unit 'clocale'

### 5.1 Overview

The `clocale` offers no API by itself: it just initializes the internationalization settings of the `sysutils` (1571) unit with the values provided by the C library found on most Unix or Linux systems that are POSIX compliant.

The `clocale` should simply be included in the `uses` clause of the program, preferably as one of the first units, and the initialization section of the unit will do all the work.

Note that including this unit, links your program to the C library of the system.

It makes no sense to use this unit on a non-POSIX system: Windows, OS/2 or DOS - therefore it should always be between an `ifdef` statement:

```
program myprogram;

uses
  {$ifdef unix}clocale{$endif},
  classes, sysutils;
```

## Chapter 6

# Reference for unit 'cmem'

### 6.1 Overview

The `cmem` memory manager sets the system units memory manager to a C-based memory manager: all memory management calls are shunted through to the C memory manager, using `Malloc` (517), `Free` (517) and `ReAlloc` (517). For this reason, the `cmem` unit should be the first unit of the uses clause of the program.

The unit also offers the C memory calls directly as external declarations from the C library, but it is recommended to use the normal FPC routines for this.

Obviously, including this unit links your program to the C library.

**Remark** Note that specifying the `-gv` command-line option, to enable valgrind debugging info will implicitly add this unit to your program.

### 6.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 6.2.1 Constants

`LibName = 'c'`

`LibName` is the name of the library that is actually used. On most systems, this is simply "libc.so".

### 6.3 Procedures and functions

#### 6.3.1 CAlloc

Synopsis: Allocate memory based on item size and count

Declaration: `function CAlloc(unitSize: ptruint; UnitCount: ptruint) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CAlloc` allocates memory to hold `UnitCount` units of size `UnitSize` each. The memory is one block of memory. It returns a pointer to the newly allocated memory block.

See also: `Malloc` (517), `Free` (517), `Realloc` (517)

### 6.3.2 Free

Synopsis: Free a previously allocated block

Declaration: `procedure Free(P: pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Free` returns the memory block pointed to by `P` to the system. After `Free` was called, the pointer `P` is no longer valid.

See also: `Malloc` ([517](#)), `ReAlloc` ([517](#))

### 6.3.3 Malloc

Synopsis: `Malloc` external declaration.

Declaration: `function Malloc(Size: ptruint) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Malloc` is the external declaration of the C libraries `malloc` call. It accepts a size parameter, and returns a pointer to a memory block of the requested size or `Nil` if no more memory could be allocated.

See also: `Free` ([517](#)), `ReAlloc` ([517](#))

### 6.3.4 ReAlloc

Synopsis: Reallocates a memory block

Declaration: `function ReAlloc(P: Pointer; Size: ptruint) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReAlloc` re-allocates a block of memory pointed to by `p`. The new block will have size `Size`, and as much data as was available or as much data as fits is copied from the old to the new location.

See also: `Malloc` ([517](#)), `Free` ([517](#))

## Chapter 7

# Reference for unit 'collation\_de'

### 7.1 Overview

The `collation_de` unit registers the German Unicode collation (de). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 8

# Reference for unit 'collation\_es'

### 8.1 Overview

The `collation_es` unit registers the Spanish Unicode collation (de). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.



## Chapter 9

# Reference for unit 'collation\_fr\_ca'

### 9.1 Overview

The `collation_fr_ca` unit registers the French Unicode collation (fr). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 10

# Reference for unit 'collation\_ja'

### 10.1 Overview

The `collation_ja` unit registers the Japanese Unicode collation (ja). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 11

# Reference for unit 'collation\_ko'

### 11.1 Overview

The `collation_ko` unit registers the Korean Unicode collation (ko). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 12

# Reference for unit 'collation\_ru'

### 12.1 Overview

The `collation_ru` unit registers the Russian Unicode collation (ru). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 13

# Reference for unit 'collation\_sv'

### 13.1 Overview

The `collation_sv` unit registers the Swedish Unicode collation (sv). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 14

# Reference for unit 'collation\_zh'

### 14.1 Overview

The `collation_zh` unit registers the Chinese Unicode collation (zh). This collation bases itself on the DUCET collation, so that collation will be included as well.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 15

# Reference for unit 'cp1250'

### 15.1 Overview

The `cp1250` unit registers single-byte codepage 1250. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1250 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 16

# Reference for unit 'cp1251'

### 16.1 Overview

The `cp1251` unit registers single-byte codepage 1251. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1251 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.



## Chapter 17

# Reference for unit 'cp1252'

### 17.1 Overview

The `cp1252` unit registers single-byte codepage 1252. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1252 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 18

# Reference for unit 'cp1253'

### 18.1 Overview

The `cp1253` unit registers single-byte codepage 1253. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1253 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 19

# Reference for unit 'cp1254'

### 19.1 Overview

The `cp1254` unit registers single-byte codepage 1254. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1254 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 20

# Reference for unit 'cp1255'

### 20.1 Overview

The `cp1255` unit registers single-byte codepage 1255. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1255 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 21

# Reference for unit 'cp1256'

### 21.1 Overview

The `cp1256` unit registers single-byte codepage 1256. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1256 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 22

# Reference for unit 'cp1257'

### 22.1 Overview

The `cp1257` unit registers single-byte codepage 1257. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1257 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 23

# Reference for unit 'cp1258'

### 23.1 Overview

The `cp1258` unit registers single-byte codepage 1258. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 1258 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 24

# Reference for unit 'cp437'

### 24.1 Overview

The `cp437` unit registers single-byte codepage 437. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 437 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.



## Chapter 25

# Reference for unit 'cp646'

### 25.1 Overview

The `cp646` unit registers single-byte codepage 646. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 646 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 26

# Reference for unit 'cp850'

### 26.1 Overview

The `cp850` unit registers single-byte codepage 850. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 850 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 27

# Reference for unit 'cp852'

### 27.1 Overview

The `cp852` unit registers single-byte codepage 852. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 852 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 28

# Reference for unit 'cp856'

### 28.1 Overview

The `cp856` unit registers single-byte codepage 856. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 856 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 29

# Reference for unit 'cp866'

### 29.1 Overview

The `cp866` unit registers single-byte codepage 866. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 866 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 30

# Reference for unit 'cp874'

### 30.1 Overview

The `cp874` unit registers single-byte codepage 874. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 874 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 31

# Reference for unit 'cp8859\_1'

### 31.1 Overview

The `cp8859_1` unit registers single-byte codepage 8859-1. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 8859-1 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 32

# Reference for unit 'cp8859\_2'

### 32.1 Overview

The `cp8859_2` unit registers single-byte codepage 8859-2. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 8859-2 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.



## Chapter 33

# Reference for unit 'cp8859\_5'

### 33.1 Overview

The `cp8859_5` unit registers single-byte codepage 8859-5. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 8859-5 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 34

# Reference for unit 'cp895'

### 34.1 Overview

The `cp895` unit registers single-byte codepage 895. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 895 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 35

# Reference for unit 'cp932'

### 35.1 Overview

The `cp932` unit registers single-byte codepage 932. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 932 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 36

# Reference for unit 'cp936'

### 36.1 Overview

The `cp936` unit registers single-byte codepage 936. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 936 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 37

# Reference for unit 'cp949'

### 37.1 Overview

The `cp949` unit registers single-byte codepage 949. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 949 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.

## Chapter 38

# Reference for unit 'cp950'

### 38.1 Overview

The `cp950` unit registers single-byte codepage 950. This is necessary to convert single-byte strings using codepage 950 to unicode strings.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the code page data in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the uses clause of the program is sufficient.



## Chapter 39

# Reference for unit 'cpall'

### 39.1 Used units

Table 39.1: Used units by unit 'cpall'

Name	Page
cp1250	<a href="#">526</a>
cp1251	<a href="#">527</a>
cp1252	<a href="#">528</a>
cp1253	<a href="#">529</a>
cp1254	<a href="#">530</a>
cp1255	<a href="#">531</a>
cp1256	<a href="#">532</a>
cp1257	<a href="#">533</a>
cp1258	<a href="#">534</a>
cp3021	??
cp437	<a href="#">535</a>
cp646	<a href="#">536</a>
cp737	??
cp775	??
cp850	<a href="#">537</a>
cp852	<a href="#">538</a>
cp855	??
cp856	<a href="#">539</a>
cp857	??
cp860	??
cp861	??
cp862	??
cp863	??
cp864	??
cp865	??
cp866	<a href="#">540</a>
cp869	??
cp874	<a href="#">541</a>
cp8859_1	<a href="#">542</a>
cp8859_10	??
cp8859_11	??
cp8859_13	??
cp8859_14	??
cp8859_15	??
cp8859_16	??
cp8859_2	<a href="#">543</a>
cp8859_3	??
cp8859_4	??
cp8859_5	<a href="#">544</a>



## 39.2 Overview

The `cpall` unit registers all known single-byte codepages: 1251 ([551](#)), 866 ([551](#)), ISO 8856-5 ([551](#)) (cyrillic), 8859-1 ([551](#)), 8859-2 ([551](#)), 1253 ([551](#)) (greek), 850 ([551](#)), 437 ([551](#)), 1252 ([551](#)), 646 ([551](#)), 874 ([551](#)), 856 ([551](#)), 1250 ([551](#)), 1254 ([551](#)), 1255 ([551](#)), 1256 ([551](#)), 1257 ([551](#)), 1258 ([551](#)), 852 ([551](#)).

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply uses the other units so all corresponding code pages are registered.

## Chapter 40

# Reference for unit 'Crt'

### 40.1 Overview

This chapter describes the CRT unit for Free Pascal, under all of Dos, Linux and Windows. The unit was first written for Dos by Florian Klaempfl. The unit was ported to Linux by Mark May and enhanced by Michael Van Canneyt and Peter Vreman. It works on the Linux console, and in xterm and rxvt windows under X-Windows. The functionality for both is the same, except that under Linux the use of an early implementation (versions 0.9.1 and earlier of the compiler) the CRT unit automatically cleared the screen at program startup.

There are some caveats when using the CRT unit:

- Programs using the CRT unit will *not* be usable when input/output is being redirected on the command-line.
- For similar reasons they are not usable as CGI-scripts for use with a webserver.
- The use of the CRT unit and the graph unit may not always be supported.
- The CRT unit is not thread safe.
- On Linux or other Unix OSes, executing other programs that expect special terminal behaviour (using one of the special functions in the Linux unit) will not work. The terminal is set in RAW mode, which will destroy most terminal emulation settings.
- The CRT unit stems from the TP/Dos area. It is designed to work with single-byte character sets, where 1 char = 1 byte. That means that widestrings or UTF-8 encoded (ansi)strings will not work correctly.

### 40.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 40.2.1 Constants

`Black = 0`

Black color attribute

`Blink = 128`

Blink attribute

Blue = 1

**Blue color attribute**

Brown = 6

**Brown color attribute**

BW40 = 0

**40 columns black and white screen mode.**

BW80 = 2

**80 columns black and white screen mode.**

C40 = CO40

**40 columns color screen mode.**

C80 = CO80

**80 columns color screen mode.**

CO40 = 1

**40 columns color screen mode.**

CO80 = 3

**80 columns color screen mode.**

ConsoleMaxX = 1024

ConsoleMaxY = 1024

Cyan = 3

**Cyan color attribute**

DarkGray = 8

**Dark gray color attribute**

Flushing = False

Font8x8 = 256

**Internal ROM font mode**

Green = 2

**Green color attribute**

LightBlue = 9

**Light Blue color attribute**

LightCyan = 11

**Light cyan color attribute**

LightGray = 7

**Light gray color attribute**

LightGreen = 10

**Light green color attribute**

LightMagenta = 13

**Light magenta color attribute**

LightRed = 12

**Light red color attribute**

Magenta = 5

**Magenta color attribute**

Mono = 7

**Monochrome screen mode (hercules screens)**

Red = 4

**Red color attribute**

ScreenHeight : LongInt = 25

**Current screen height.**

ScreenWidth : LongInt = 80

**Current screen width**

White = 15

**White color attribute**

Yellow = 14

**Yellow color attribute**

### 40.2.2 Types

`tcrtcoord = 1..255`

`tcrtcoord` is a subrange type for denoting CRT coordinates. It supports coordinates ranging from 1 to 255. Using this type together with range-checking turned on can be used to debug CRT code.

### 40.2.3 Variables

`CheckBreak : Boolean`

Check for CTRL-Break keystroke. Not used.

`CheckEOF : Boolean`

Check for EOF on standard input. Not used.

`CheckSnow : Boolean`

Check snow on CGA screens. Not used.

`ConsoleBuf : PConsoleBuf`

`DirectVideo : Boolean`

The `DirectVideo` variable controls the writing to the screen. If it is `True`, the cursor is set via direct port access. If `False`, then the BIOS is used. This is defined under dos only.

`LastMode : Word = 3`

The `Lastmode` variable tells you which mode was last selected for the screen. It is defined on DOS only.

`TextAttr : Byte = $07`

The `TextAttr` variable controls the attributes with which characters are written to screen.

`WindMax : Word = $184f`

The upper byte of `WindMax` contains the Y coordinate while the lower byte contains the X coordinate. The use of this variable is deprecated, use `WindMaxX` and `WindMaxY` instead.

`WindMaxX : DWord`

X coordinate of lower right corner of the defined window

`WindMaxY : DWord`

Y coordinate of lower right corner of the defined window

`WindMin : Word = $0`

The upper byte of `WindMin` contains the Y coordinate while the lower byte contains the X coordinate. The use of this variable is deprecated, use `WindMinX` and `WindMinY` instead.

`WindMinX` : `DWord`

X coordinate of upper left corner of the defined window

`WindMinY` : `DWord`

Y coordinate of upper left corner of the defined window

## 40.3 Procedures and functions

### 40.3.1 AssignCrt

Synopsis: Assign file to CRT.

Declaration: `procedure AssignCrt (var F: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignCrt` Assigns a file `F` to the console. Everything written to the file `F` goes to the console instead. If the console contains a window, everything is written to the window instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `Window` ([567](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex1.pp`

---

```
Program Example1;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the AssignCrt function. }

var
  F : Text;
begin
  AssignCrt(F);
  Rewrite(F); { Don't forget to open for output! }
  WriteLn(F, 'This is written to the Assigned File');
  Close(F);
end.
```

---

### 40.3.2 ClrEol

Synopsis: Clear from cursor position till end of line.

Declaration: `procedure ClrEol`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClrEol` clears the current line, starting from the cursor position, to the end of the window. The cursor doesn't move

Errors: None.

See also: [DelLine \(560\)](#), [InsLine \(562\)](#), [ClrScr \(558\)](#)

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex9.pp

---

```

Program Example9;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ClrEol function. }
var
  I,J : integer;

begin
  For I:=1 to 15 do
    For J:=1 to 80 do
      begin
        gotoxy(j,i);
        Write(j mod 10);
      end;
  Window(5,5,75,12);
  Write('This line will be cleared from',
        ' here till the right of the window');
  GotoXY(27,WhereY);
  ReadKey;
  ClrEol;
  WriteLn;
end.

```

---

### 40.3.3 ClrScr

Synopsis: Clear current window.

Declaration: `procedure ClrScr`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClrScr` clears the current window (using the current colors), and sets the cursor in the top left corner of the current window.

Errors: None.

See also: [Window \(567\)](#)

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex8.pp

---

```

Program Example8;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ClrScr function. }

begin
  WriteLn('Press any key to clear the screen');
  ReadKey;
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn('Have fun with the cleared screen');
end.

```

---

### 40.3.4 cursorbig

Synopsis: Show big cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursorbig`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorBig` makes the cursor a big rectangle. Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn` ([559](#)), `CursorOff` ([559](#))

### 40.3.5 cursoroff

Synopsis: Hide cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursoroff`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorOff` switches the cursor off (i.e. the cursor is no longer visible). Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn` ([559](#)), `CursorBig` ([559](#))

### 40.3.6 cursoron

Synopsis: Display cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursoron`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorOn` switches the cursor on. Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorBig` ([559](#)), `CursorOff` ([559](#))

### 40.3.7 Delay

Synopsis: Delay program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Delay (MS: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delay` waits a specified number of milliseconds. The number of specified seconds is an approximation, and may be off a lot, if system load is high.

Errors: None

See also: `Sound` ([565](#)), `NoSound` ([563](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex15.pp`



---

```

Program Example15;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Delay function. }
var
    i : longint;
begin
    WriteLn( 'Counting Down' );
    for i:=10 downto 1 do
        begin
            WriteLn(i);
            Delay(1000); { Wait one second }
        end;
    WriteLn( 'BOOM!!! ' );
end.

```

---

### 40.3.8 DelLine

Synopsis: Delete line at cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure DelLine`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelLine` removes the current line. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line up, and an empty line is inserted at the bottom of the current window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClrEol` ([557](#)), `InsLine` ([562](#)), `ClrScr` ([558](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex11.pp`

---

```

Program Example10;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function. }

begin
    ClrScr;
    WriteLn;
    WriteLn( 'Line 1' );
    WriteLn( 'Line 2' );
    WriteLn( 'Line 2' );
    WriteLn( 'Line 3' );
    WriteLn;
    WriteLn( 'Oops, Line 2 is listed twice, ',
              ' let''s delete the line at the cursor postion' );
    GotoXY(1,3);
    ReadKey;
    DelLine;
    GotoXY(1,10);
end.

```

---

### 40.3.9 GotoXY

Synopsis: Set cursor position on screen.

Declaration: `procedure GotoXY(X: tcoord; Y: tcoord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GotoXY` positions the cursor at  $(X, Y)$ ,  $X$  in horizontal,  $Y$  in vertical direction relative to the origin of the current window. The origin is located at  $(1, 1)$ , the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: [WhereX \(566\)](#), [WhereY \(567\)](#), [Window \(567\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex6.pp`

---

```

Program Example6;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the GotoXY function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  GotoXY(10,10);
  Write('10,10');
  GotoXY(70,20);
  Write('70,20');
  GotoXY(1,22);
end.
```

---

### 40.3.10 HighVideo

Synopsis: Switch to highlighted text mode

Declaration: `procedure HighVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `HighVideo` switches the output to highlighted text. (It sets the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

Errors: None.

See also: [TextColor \(566\)](#), [TextBackground \(565\)](#), [LowVideo \(563\)](#), [NormVideo \(563\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex14.pp`

---

```

Program Example14;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the LowVideo, HighVideo, NormVideo functions. }

begin
  LowVideo;
  WriteLn('This is written with LowVideo');
  HighVideo;
  WriteLn('This is written with HighVideo');
  NormVideo;
  WriteLn('This is written with NormVideo');
end.
```

---

### 40.3.11 InsLine

Synopsis: Insert an empty line at cursor position

Declaration: `procedure InsLine`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `InsLine` inserts an empty line at the current cursor position. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line down, causing the last line to disappear from the window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClrEol` ([557](#)), `DelLine` ([560](#)), `ClrScr` ([558](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex10.pp`

---

```

Program Example10;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn('Line 1');
  WriteLn('Line 3');
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn('Oops, forgot Line 2, let''s insert at the cursor postion');
  GotoXY(1,3);
  ReadKey;
  InsLine;
  Write('Line 2');
  GotoXY(1,10);
end.

```

---

### 40.3.12 KeyPressed

Synopsis: Check if there is a keypress in the keybuffer

Declaration: `function KeyPressed : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `KeyPressed` scans the keyboard buffer and sees if a key has been pressed. If this is the case, `True` is returned. If not, `False` is returned. The `Shift`, `Alt`, `Ctrl` keys are not reported. The key is not removed from the buffer, and can hence still be read after the `KeyPressed` function has been called.

Errors: None.

See also: `ReadKey` ([564](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex2.pp`

---

```

Program Example2;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the KeyPressed function. }

```

---

```

begin
  WriteLn('Waiting until a key is pressed');
  repeat
    until KeyPressed;
  { The key is not Read,
    so it should also be outputted at the commandline}
end.

```

---

### 40.3.13 LowVideo

Synopsis: Switch to low intensity colors.

Declaration: `procedure LowVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `LowVideo` switches the output to non-highlighted text. (It clears the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

For an example, see `HighVideo` (561)

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` (566), `TextBackground` (565), `HighVideo` (561), `NormVideo` (563)

### 40.3.14 NormVideo

Synopsis: Return to normal (startup) modus

Declaration: `procedure NormVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `NormVideo` switches the output to the defaults, read at startup. (The defaults are read from the cursor position at startup)

For an example, see `HighVideo` (561)

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` (566), `TextBackground` (565), `LowVideo` (563), `HighVideo` (561)

### 40.3.15 NoSound

Synopsis: Stop system speaker

Declaration: `procedure NoSound`

Visibility: default

Description: `NoSound` stops the speaker sound. This call is not supported on all operating systems.

Errors: None.

See also: `Sound` (565)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex16.pp`

---

```

Program Example16;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Sound and NoSound function. }

var
    i : longint;
begin
    WriteLn('You will hear some tones from your speaker');
    i:=0;
    while (i<15000) do
        begin
            inc(i,500);
            Sound(i);
            Delay(100);
        end;
    WriteLn('Quiet now!');
    NoSound; {Stop noise}
end.

```

---

### 40.3.16 ReadKey

Synopsis: Read key from keybuffer

Declaration: `function ReadKey : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadKey` reads 1 key from the keyboard buffer, and returns this. If an extended or function key has been pressed, then the zero ASCII code is returned. You can then read the scan code of the key with a second `ReadKey` call.

Key mappings under Linux can cause the wrong key to be reported by `ReadKey`, so caution is needed when using `ReadKey`.

Errors: None.

See also: `KeyPressed` ([562](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex3.pp`

---

```

Program Example3;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ReadKey function. }

var
    ch : char;
begin
    writeLn('Press Left/Right, Esc=Quit');
    repeat
        ch:=ReadKey;
        case ch of
            #0 : begin
                ch:=ReadKey; {Read ScanCode}
                case ch of
                    #75 : WriteLn('Left');

```

---

```

        #77 : WriteLn( 'Right' );
    end;
end;
#27 : WriteLn( 'ESC' );
end;
until ch=#27 {Esc}
end.

```

---

### 40.3.17 Sound

Synopsis: Sound system speaker

Declaration: `procedure Sound(Hz: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sound` sounds the speaker at a frequency of `hz`. Under Windows, a system sound is played and the frequency parameter is ignored. On other operating systems, this routine may not be implemented.

Errors: None.

See also: `NoSound` ([563](#))

### 40.3.18 TextBackground

Synopsis: Set text background

Declaration: `procedure TextBackground(Color: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextBackground` sets the background color to `CL`. `CL` can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([566](#)), `HighVideo` ([561](#)), `LowVideo` ([563](#)), `NormVideo` ([563](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** `Example13;`  
**uses** `Crt;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TextBackground function. }*

```

begin
  TextColor(White);
  WriteLn('This is written in with the default background color');
  TextBackground(Green);
  WriteLn('This is written in with a Green background');
  TextBackground(Brown);
  WriteLn('This is written in with a Brown background');
  TextBackground(Black);
  WriteLn('Back with a black background');
end.

```

---

### 40.3.19 TextColor

Synopsis: Set text color

Declaration: `procedure TextColor(Color: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextColor` sets the foreground color to CL. CL can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextBackground` ([565](#)), `HighVideo` ([561](#)), `LowVideo` ([563](#)), `NormVideo` ([563](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex12.pp`

---

```

Program Example12;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the TextColor function. }

begin
  WriteLn('This is written in the default color');
  TextColor(Red);
  WriteLn('This is written in Red');
  TextColor(White);
  WriteLn('This is written in White');
  TextColor(LightBlue);
  WriteLn('This is written in Light Blue');
end.

```

---

### 40.3.20 TextMode

Synopsis: Set screen mode.

Declaration: `procedure TextMode(Mode: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextMode` sets the textmode of the screen (i.e. the number of lines and columns of the screen). The lower byte is use to set the VGA text mode.

This procedure is only implemented on dos.

Errors: None.

See also: `Window` ([567](#))

### 40.3.21 WhereX

Synopsis: Return X (horizontal) cursor position

Declaration: `function WhereX : tcrtdcoord`

Visibility: default

Description: `WhereX` returns the current X-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is (1, 1), in the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: GotoXY ([561](#)), WhereY ([567](#)), Window ([567](#))

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex7.pp

---

```
Program Example7;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions. }

begin
  WriteLn('Cursor position: X= ',WhereX, ' Y= ',WhereY);
end.
```

---

### 40.3.22 WhereY

Synopsis: Return Y (vertical) cursor position

Declaration: `function WhereY : tcrctcoord`

Visibility: default

Description: WhereY returns the current Y-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is (1, 1), in the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: GotoXY ([561](#)), WhereX ([566](#)), Window ([567](#))

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex7.pp

---

```
Program Example7;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions. }

begin
  WriteLn('Cursor position: X= ',WhereX, ' Y= ',WhereY);
end.
```

---

### 40.3.23 Window

Synopsis: Create new window on screen.

Declaration: `procedure Window(X1: Byte; Y1: Byte; X2: Byte; Y2: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: Window creates a window on the screen, to which output will be sent. (X1, Y1) are the coordinates of the upper left corner of the window, (X2, Y2) are the coordinates of the bottom right corner of the window. These coordinates are relative to the entire screen, with the top left corner equal to (1, 1). Further coordinate operations, except for the next Window call, are relative to the window's top left corner.

Errors: None.

See also: GotoXY ([561](#)), WhereX ([566](#)), WhereY ([567](#)), ClrScr ([558](#))



---

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex5.pp

---

```
Program Example5;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Window function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn('Creating a window from 30,10 to 50,20');
  Window(30,10,50,20);
  WriteLn('We are now writing in this small window we just created, we '+
    'can''t get outside it when writing long lines like this one');
  Write('Press any key to clear the window');
  ReadKey;
  ClrScr;
  Write('The window is cleared, press any key to restore to fullscreen');
  ReadKey;
  { Full Screen is 80x25 }
  Window(1,1,80,25);
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn('Back in Full Screen');
end.
```

---

## 40.4 TCharAttr

```
TCharAttr = packed record
  ch : Char;
  attr : Byte;
end
```

# Chapter 41

## Reference for unit 'cthreads'

### 41.1 Overview

The `CThreads` unit initializes the system unit's thread management routines with an implementation based on the POSIX thread managing routines in the C library. This assures that C libraries that are thread-aware still work if they are linked to by a FPC program.

It doesn't offer any API by itself: the initialization section of the unit just initializes the `ThreadManager` record in the `System` ([1313](#)) unit. This is done using the `SetCThreadManager` ([569](#)) call

The `cthreads` unit simply needs to be included in the `uses` clause of the program, preferably the very first unit, and the initialization section of the unit will do all the work.

Note that including this unit links your program to the C library of the system.

It makes no sense to use this unit on a non-POSIX system: Windows, OS/2 or DOS, therefor it should always be between an `ifdef` statement:

```
program myprogram;

uses
  {$ifdef unix}cthreads{$endif},
  classes, sysutils;
```

The Lazarus IDE inserts this conditional automatically for each new started program.

### 41.2 Procedures and functions

#### 41.2.1 SetCThreadManager

**Synopsis:** Sets the thread manager to the C thread manager

**Declaration:** `procedure SetCThreadManager`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SetCThreadManager` actually sets the thread manager to the C thread manager. It can be called to re-set the thread manager if the thread manager was set to some other thread manager during the life-time of the program.

## Chapter 42

# Reference for unit 'ctypes'

### 42.1 Overview

The `ctypes` unit contains the definitions of commonly found C types. It can be used when interfaces to C libraries need to be defined. The types here are correct on all platforms, 32 or 64 bit.

The main advantage of using this file is to make sure that all C header import units use the same definitions for basic C types.

The `h2pas` program can include the `ctypes` unit automatically in the units it generates. The `-C` command-line switch can be used for this.

### 42.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 42.2.1 Types

`cbool = longbool`

C boolean (longbool)

`cchar = cint8`

C character type (No signedness specification, 8 bit integer)

`cdouble = Double`

Double precision floating point type (double)

`cfloat = single`

Single precision floating point type (single)

`cint = cint32`

C integer (commonly 32 bit)

`cint16 = SmallInt`

16-bit signed integer.

`cint32 = LongInt`

32-bit signed integer (commonly: int)

`cint64 = Int64`

64-bit integer

`cint8 = ShortInt`

8-bit signed integer

`clong = LongInt`

long integer (32/64 bit, depending on CPU register size)

`clongdouble = Double`

Long precision floating point type (extended/double, depending on CPU)

`clonglong = cint64`

Long (64-bit) integer

`coff_t = clong`

Generic type to indicate offset

`cschar = cint8`

C signed character type (8 bit signed integer)

`cshort = cint16`

Short integer (16 bit)

`csigned = cint`

Signed integer (commonly 32 bit)

`csint = cint32`

Signed integer (commonly 32 bit)

`csize_t = ptruint`

Generic type to contain a size of all kinds of structures

`cslong = LongInt`

Signed long integer (32/64 bit, depending on CPU register size)

`cslonglong = cint64`

Signed long (64-bit) integer

`csshort = cint16`

Short signed integer (16 bit)

`cuchar = cuint8`

C unsigned character type (8 bit unsigned integer).

`cuint = cuint32`

Unsigned integer (commonly 32 bit)

`cuint16 = Word`

16-bit unsigned integer.

`cuint32 = LongWord`

32-bit unsigned integer

`cuint64 = QWord`

Unsigned 64-bit integer

`cuint8 = Byte`

8-bit unsigned integer

`culong = Cardinal`

Unsigned long integer (32/64 bit, depending on CPU register size)

`culonglong = cuint64`

Unsigned long (64-bit) integer

`cunsigned = cuint`

Unsigned integer (commonly 32 bit)

`cushort = cuint16`

Short unsigned integer (16 bit)

`pcbool = ^cbool`

Pointer to cbool (570) type.

```
pcchar = ^cchar
```

Pointer to cchar (570) type.

```
pcdouble = ^cdouble
```

Pointer to cdouble (570) type.

```
pcfloat = ^cfloat
```

Pointer to cfloat (570) type.

```
pcint = ^cint
```

Pointer to cint (570) type.

```
pcint16 = ^cint16
```

Pointer to cint16 (571) type.

```
pcint32 = ^cint32
```

Pointer to cint32 (571) type.

```
pcint64 = ^cint64
```

Pointer to cint64 (571) type.

```
pcint8 = ^cint8
```

Pointer to cint8 (571) type.

```
pclong = ^clong
```

Pointer to clong (571) type.

```
pclongdouble = ^clongdouble
```

Pointer to clongdouble (571) type.

```
pclonglong = ^clonglong
```

Pointer to clonglong (571) type.

```
pcschar = ^cschar
```

Pointer to cschar (571) type.

```
pcshort = ^cshort
```

Pointer to cshort (571) type.

```
pcsigned = ^csigned
```

Pointer to csigned (571) type.

```
pcsint = ^csint
```

Pointer to csint (571) type.

```
pcsize_t = pptruint
```

Pointer to generic size type

```
pcslong = ^cslong
```

Pointer to cslong (572) type.

```
pcslonglong = ^cslonglong
```

Pointer to cslonglong (572) type.

```
pcsshort = ^csshort
```

Pointer to csshort (572) type.

```
pcuchar = ^cuchar
```

Pointer to cuchar (572) type.

```
pcuint = ^cuint
```

Pointer to cuint (572) type.

```
pcuint16 = ^cuint16
```

Pointer to cuint16 (572) type.

```
pcuint32 = ^cuint32
```

Pointer to cuint32 (572) type.

```
pcuint64 = ^cuint64
```

Pointer to cuint64 (572) type.

```
pcuint8 = ^cuint8
```

Pointer to cuint8 (572) type.

```
pculong = ^culong
```

Pointer to culong (572) type.

```
pculonglong = ^culonglong
```

Pointer to culonglong (572) type.

```
pcunsigned = ^cunsigned
```

Pointer to cunsigned (572) type.

```
pcushort = ^cushort
```

Pointer to cushort (572) type.

```
pptruint = ^ptruint
```

Pointer to 32-bit unsigned integer

```
ptruint = Cardinal
```

32-bit unsigned integer

```
qword = Int64
```

QWord (unsigned 64-bit integer)

```
u_long = culong
```

Unsigned long (64-bit) integer

```
u_short = cushort
```

Unsigned short (16-bit) integer



## Chapter 43

# Reference for unit 'cwstring'

### 43.1 Overview

The `cstring` unit offers no API by itself: it just initializes the widestring manager record of the system (1313) unit with an implementation that uses collation and conversion routines which are provided by the C library found on most Unix or Linux systems that are POSIX compliant.

The `cstring` should simply be included in the uses clause of the program, preferably as one of the first units, and the initialization section of the unit will do all the work.

Note that including this unit links your program to the C library of the system.

It makes no sense to use this unit on a non-POSIX system like Windows, OS/2 or DOS. Therefore it should always be enclosed with an `ifdef` statement:

```
program myprogram;

uses
  {$ifdef unix}cstring, {$endif}
  classes, sysutils;
```

### 43.2 Procedures and functions

#### 43.2.1 SetCWidestringManager

**Synopsis:** Set the Widestring manager of the system unit to the C version

**Declaration:** `procedure SetCWidestringManager`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SetCWidestringManager` actually sets the widestring manager record of the system unit. It is called automatically by the initialization section of the unit.

## Chapter 44

# Reference for unit 'DateUtils'

### 44.1 Used units

Table 44.1: Used units by unit 'DateUtils'

Name	Page
Math	<a href="#">967</a>
sysutils	<a href="#">1571</a>

### 44.2 Overview

`DateUtils` contains a large number of date/time manipulation routines, all based on the `TDateTime` type. There are routines for date/time math, for comparing dates and times, for composing dates and decomposing dates in their constituent parts.

### 44.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 44.3.1 Constants

`ApproxDaysPerMonth : Double = 30.4375`

Average number of days in a month, measured over a year. Used in `MonthsBetween` ([627](#)).

`ApproxDaysPerYear : Double = 365.25`

Average number of days in a year, measured over 4 years. Used in `YearsBetween` ([671](#)).

`DayFriday = 5`

ISO day number for Friday

`DayMonday = 1`

ISO day number for Monday

DaySaturday = 6

ISO day number for Saturday

DaysPerWeek = 7

Number of days in a week.

DaysPerYear : Array[Boolean] of Word = (365, 366)

Array with number of days in a year. The Boolean index indicates whether it is a leap year or not.

DaySunday = 7

ISO day number for Sunday

DayThursday = 4

ISO day number for Thursday

DayTuesday = 2

ISO day number for Tuesday

DayWednesday = 3

ISO day number for Wednesday

MonthsPerYear = 12

Number of months in a year

OneHour = TDateTime(1) / HoursPerDay

One hour as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneMillisecond = TDateTime(1) / MSecsPerDay

One millisecond as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneMinute = TDateTime(1) / MinsPerDay

One minute as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneSecond = TDateTime(1) / SecsPerDay

One second as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs = High(Word)

Bitmask deciding what to do with each TDateTime field in recode routines

WeeksPerFortnight = 2

Number of weeks in fortnight

YearsPerCentury = 100

Number of years in a century

YearsPerDecade = 10

Number of years in a decade

YearsPerMillennium = 1000

Number of years in a millennium

## 44.4 Procedures and functions

### 44.4.1 CompareDate

Synopsis: Compare 2 dates, disregarding the time of day

Declaration: `function CompareDate(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareDate` compares the date parts of two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

< 0 if the day part of A is earlier than the day part of B.

0 if A and B are the on same day (times may differ) .

> 0 if the day part of A is later than the day part of B.

See also: `CompareTime` ([581](#)), `CompareDateTime` ([580](#)), `SameDate` ([636](#)), `SameTime` ([638](#)), `SameDateTime` ([637](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex99.pp`

---

**Program** `Example99;`

*{ This program demonstrates the CompareDate function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy';`

**Procedure** `Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);`

**Var**

`Cmp : Integer;`

**begin**

---

```

Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is ');
Cmp:=CompareDate(D1,D2);
If Cmp<0 then
    write('earlier than ')
else if Cmp>0 then
    Write('later than ')
else
    Write('equal to ');
WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2));
end;

Var
    D,N : TDateTime;

Begin
    D:=Today;
    N:=Now;
    Test(D,D);
    Test(N,N);
    Test(D+1,D);
    Test(D-1,D);
    Test(D+OneSecond,D);
    Test(D-OneSecond,D);
    Test(N+OneSecond,N);
    Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.2 CompareDateTime

Synopsis: Compare 2 dates, taking into account the time of day

Declaration: `function CompareDateTime(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareDateTime compares two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

- < 0 if A is earlier in date/time than B.
- 0 if A and B are the same date/time .
- > 0 if A is later in date/time than B.

See also: CompareTime ([581](#)), CompareDate ([579](#)), SameDate ([636](#)), SameTime ([638](#)), SameDateTime ([637](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex98.pp

---

**Program** Example98;

*{ This program demonstrates the CompareDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz' ;

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

---

```

Var
  Cmp : Integer;

begin
  Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is ');
  Cmp:=CompareDateTime(D1,D2);
  If Cmp<0 then
    write('earlier than ')
  else if Cmp>0 then
    Write('later than ')
  else
    Write('equal to ');
  WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2));
end;

Var
  D,N : TDateTime;

Begin
  D:=Today;
  N:=Now;
  Test(D,D);
  Test(N,N);
  Test(D+1,D);
  Test(D-1,D);
  Test(D+OneSecond,D);
  Test(D-OneSecond,D);
  Test(N+OneSecond,N);
  Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

### 44.4.3 CompareTime

**Synopsis:** Compares two times of the day, disregarding the date part.

**Declaration:** `function CompareTime(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CompareTime` compares the time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

- < 0 if the time part of A is earlier than the time part of B.
- 0 if A and B have the same time part (dates may differ) .
- > 0 if the time part of A is later than the time part of B.

See also: `CompareDateTime` (580), `CompareDate` (579), `SameDate` (636), `SameTime` (638), `SameDateTime` (637)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex100.pp`

---

**Program** Example100;

```
{ This program demonstrates the CompareTime function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**Var**

    Cmp : Integer;

**begin**

**Write**(**FormatDateTime**(Fmt,D1), ' has ');

    Cmp:=CompareDateTime(D1,D2);

**If** Cmp<0 **then**

**write**('earlier time than ')

**else if** Cmp>0 **then**

**Write**('later time than ')

**else**

**Write**('equal time with ');

**WriteIn**(**FormatDateTime**(Fmt,D2));

**end**;

**Var**

    D,N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D:=Today;

    N:=**Now**;

    Test(D,D);

    Test(N,N);

    Test(N+1,N);

    Test(N-1,N);

    Test(N+OneSecond,N);

    Test(N-OneSecond,N);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.4 DateInRange

**Synopsis:** Checks whether a date value is in a given rang

**Declaration:** function DateInRange(ADate: TDate; AStartDate: TDate; AEndDate: TDate;  
                                  AInclusive: Boolean) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DateInRange checks whether the value ADate lies between AStartDate and AEndDate, and returns True if it is. When AInclusive is True (the default), then the limits are included. When AInclusive is False, the limits are excluded. Only the date part of the 3 parameters is considered.

**Errors:** The AStartDate value must be before AEndDate, but no check is performed.

**See also:** TimeInRange ([648](#)), DateTimeInRange ([583](#))

### 44.4.5 DateOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the date part from a TDateTime indication.

**Declaration:** `function DateOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateOf` extracts the date part from `AValue` and returns the result.

Since the `TDateTime` is actually a double with the date part encoded in the integer part, this operation corresponds to a call to `Trunc`.

See also: `TimeOf` (648), `YearOf` (670), `MonthOf` (626), `DayOf` (585), `HourOf` (600), `MinuteOf` (622), `SecondOf` (639), `MilliSecondOf` (618)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateOf function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

`WriteIn('Date is: ', DateTimeToStr(DateOf(Now)));`  
**End.**

---

### 44.4.6 DateTimeInRange

**Synopsis:** Checks whether a date/time value is in a given range

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeInRange(ATime: TDateTime;  
AStartTime: TDateTime;  
AEndTime: TDateTime; aInclusive: Boolean)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeInRange` checks whether the value `ATime` lies between `AStartTime` and `AEndTime`, and returns `True` if it is. When `aInclusive` is `True` (the default), then the limits are included. When `aInclusive` is `False`, the limits are excluded.

**Errors:** The `AStartTime` value must be before `AEndTime`, but no check is performed.

See also: `DateInRange` (582), `TimeInRange` (648)

### 44.4.7 DateTimeToDosDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert TDateTime format to DOS date/time format

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToDosDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToDosDatetime` takes `Value`, a `TDateTime` formatted timestamp, and recodes it to a MS-DOS encoded date/time value. This is a longint with the date/time encoded in the bits as:

**0-4Seconds** divided by 2



**5-10**Minutes

**11-15**Hours

**16-20**Day

**21-24**Month

**25-31**Years since 1980

See also: `DosDateTimeToDateTime` ([593](#))

#### 44.4.8 `DateTimeToJulianDate`

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a Julian date representation

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToJulianDate(const AValue: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToJulianDate` converts the `AValue` date/time indication to a Julian (as opposed to Gregorian) date.

See also: `JulianDateToDateTime` ([617](#)), `TryJulianDateToDateTime` ([656](#)), `DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate` ([584](#)), `TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime` ([656](#))

#### 44.4.9 `DateTimeToMac`

**Synopsis:** Convert a `TDateTime` timestamp to a Mac timestamp

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToMac(const AValue: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToMac` converts the `TDateTime` value `AValue` to a valid Mac timestamp indication and returns the result.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `UnixTimeStampToMac` ([658](#)), `MacToDateTime` ([617](#)), `MacTimeStampToUnix` ([617](#))

#### 44.4.10 `DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate`

**Synopsis:** Convert a `TDateTime` value to a modified Julian date representation

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate(const AValue: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Not yet implemented.

**Errors:** Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: `DateTimeToJulianDate` ([584](#)), `JulianDateToDateTime` ([617](#)), `TryJulianDateToDateTime` ([656](#)), `TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime` ([656](#))

#### 44.4.11 DateTimeToUnix

**Synopsis:** Convert a `TDateTime` value to Unix epoch time

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToUnix(const AValue: TDateTime; AInputIsUTC: Boolean) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToUnix` converts a `TDateTime` value to a epoch time (i.e. the number of seconds elapsed since 1/1/1970).

See also: `UnixToDateTime` (658)

#### 44.4.12 DateToISO8601

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to ISO 8601 date/time format

**Declaration:** `function DateToISO8601(const ADate: TDateTime; AInputIsUTC: Boolean) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateToISO8601` is a `String` function used to convert the `TDateTime` value in `ADate` to ISO 8601 date/time notation.

`ADate` contains the native `TDateTime` value converted in the function.

`AInputIsUTC` indicates if the value in `ADate` represents a date/time value for the UTC time zone. When `AInputIsUTC` contains `True`, the 'Z' (Zulu time) time zone designation is used in the converted ISO 8601 value. Otherwise, the time zone is expressed as a positive or negative number of hours and minutes (such as "-04:00") in the return value.

`DateToISO8601` calls `GetLocalTimeOffset` to determine the time zone offset in use on the local computer. The integer offset is used to adjust the value in `ADate` to the UTC time zone when necessary.

The return value contains the adjusted value in `ADate` formatted using the notation:

- `yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss.zzz±hh:nn` or
- `yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss.zzzZ` for Zulu time

Use `ISO8601ToDate` to convert the return value back to a native `TDateTime` type.

See also: `ISO8601ToDate` (610)

#### 44.4.13 DayOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the day (of month) part from a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function DayOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DayOf` returns the day of the month part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 31.

For an example, see `YearOf` (670)

See also: `YearOf` (670), `WeekOf` (658), `MonthOf` (626), `HourOf` (600), `MinuteOf` (622), `SecondOf` (639), `MilliSecondOf` (618)

#### 44.4.14 DayOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Extract the day (of month) part of a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function DayOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOfTheMonth` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the month till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. the first day of the month will return 1.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (658) function.

See also: `DayOfTheYear` (586), `WeekOfTheMonth` (658), `HourOfTheMonth` (601), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (623), `SecondOfTheMonth` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (619)

#### 44.4.15 DayOfTheWeek

Synopsis: Extracts the day of the week from a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function DayOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOfTheWeek` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the week till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. the first day of the week will return 1.

See also: `DayOfTheYear` (586), `DayOfTheMonth` (586), `HourOfTheWeek` (601), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (623), `SecondOfTheWeek` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (620)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex42.pp

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Day of the Week : ', DayOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('Hour of the Week : ', HourOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('Minute of the Week : ', MinuteOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('Second of the Week : ', SecondOfTheWeek(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Week : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheWeek(N));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.16 DayOfTheYear

Synopsis: Extracts the day of the year from a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function DayOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DayOfTheYear` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the year till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. January 1 will return 1.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (659) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (659), `HourOfTheYear` (602), `MinuteOfTheYear` (624), `SecondOfTheYear` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (620)

### 44.4.17 DaysBetween

**Synopsis:** Number of whole days between two `TDateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function DaysBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DaysBetween` returns the number of whole days between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a day (hours, minutes, etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (671), `MonthsBetween` (627), `WeeksBetween` (660), `HoursBetween` (602), `MinutesBetween` (624), `SecondsBetween` (641), `MillisecondsBetween` (620)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** Example58;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**( 'Number of days between ' );

**Write**( **DateTimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateTimeToStr**(ANow) );

**WriteLn**( ' : ', DaysBetween(ANow, AThen) );

**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1 := **Now**;

    D2 := Today - 23/24;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 1;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 25/24;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 26/24;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 5.4;

    Test(D1, D2);

    D2 := Today - 2.5;

    Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.18 DaysInAMonth

Synopsis: Number of days in a month of a certain year.

Declaration: `function DaysInAMonth(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaysInMonth` returns the number of days in the month `AMonth` in the year `AYear`. The return value takes leap years into account.

See also: [WeeksInAYear \(661\)](#), [WeeksInYear \(661\)](#), [DaysInYear \(589\)](#), [DaysInAYear \(588\)](#), [DaysInMonth \(589\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInAMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, M : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

For M:=1 to 12 do

WriteLn(LongMonthNames[m], ' ', Y, ' has ', DaysInAMonth(Y, M), ' days. ');

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.19 DaysInAYear

Synopsis: Number of days in a particular year.

Declaration: `function DaysInAYear(const AYear: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaysInAYear` returns the number of weeks in the year `AYear`. The return value is either 365 or 366.

See also: [WeeksInAYear \(661\)](#), [WeeksInYear \(661\)](#), [DaysInYear \(589\)](#), [DaysInMonth \(589\)](#), [DaysInAMonth \(588\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInAYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

WriteLn(Y, ' has ', DaysInAYear(Y), ' days. ');

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.20 DaysInMonth

**Synopsis:** Return the number of days in the month in which a date occurs.

**Declaration:** `function DaysInMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DaysInMonth` returns the number of days in the month in which `AValue` falls. The return value takes leap years into account.

**See also:** [WeeksInAYear \(661\)](#), [WeeksInYear \(661\)](#), [DaysInYear \(589\)](#), [DaysInAYear \(588\)](#), [DaysInAMonth \(588\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,M : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

For M:=1 to 12 do

WriteLn(LongMonthNames[m], ' ', Y, ' has ', DaysInMonth(EncodeDate(Y,M,1)), ' days.');

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.21 DaysInYear

**Synopsis:** Return the number of days in the year in which a date occurs.

**Declaration:** `function DaysInYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `daysInYear` returns the number of days in the year part of `AValue`. The return value is either 365 or 366.

**See also:** [WeeksInAYear \(661\)](#), [WeeksInYear \(661\)](#), [DaysInAYear \(588\)](#), [DaysInMonth \(589\)](#), [DaysInAMonth \(588\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

WriteLn(Y, ' has ', DaysInYear(EncodeDate(Y,1,1)), ' days.');

**End.**

---

### 44.4.22 DaySpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of days between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function DaySpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DaySpan returns the number of Days between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a Day.

See also: YearSpan (672), MonthSpan (627), WeekSpan (662), HourSpan (603), MinuteSpan (625), SecondSpan (642), MilliSecondSpan (621), DaysBetween (587)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex66.pp

---

**Program** Example66;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaySpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write( 'Number of days between ' );

  Write( DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

  WriteLn( ' : ', DaySpan(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=Now;

  D2:=Today-23/24;

  Test(D1,D2);

  D2:=Today-1;

  Test(D1,D2);

  D2:=Today-25/24;

  Test(D1,D2);

  D2:=Today-26/24;

  Test(D1,D2);

  D2:=Today-5.4;

  Test(D1,D2);

  D2:=Today-2.5;

  Test(D1,D2);

**End.**

---

### 44.4.23 DecodeDateDay

**Synopsis:** Decode a TDateTime value in year and year of day.

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDateDay(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word;  
                                  out ADayOfYear: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DecodeDateDay` decomposes the date indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `ADayOfYear`.

See also: [EncodeDateTime \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(595\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(594\)](#), [DecodeDateTime \(592\)](#), [DecodeDateWeek \(592\)](#), [DecodeDateMonthWeek \(591\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex83.pp`

---

**Program** `Example83`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y, DoY : Word;`  
`TS : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`DecodeDateDay(Now, Y, DoY);`  
`TS := EncodeDateDay(Y, DoY);`  
`WriteLn('Today is : ', DateToStr(TS));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.24 DecodeDateMonthWeek

**Synopsis:** Decode a `TDateTime` value in a month, week of month and day of week

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDateMonthWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word;`  
`out AMonth: Word; out AWeekOfMonth: Word;`  
`out ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DecodeDateMonthWeek` decomposes the date indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `AWeekOfMonth` and `ADayOfWeek`.

See also: [EncodeDateTime \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(595\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(594\)](#), [DecodeDateTime \(592\)](#), [DecodeDateWeek \(592\)](#), [DecodeDateDay \(590\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex85.pp`

---

**Program** `Example85`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y, M, WoM, DoW : Word;`  
`TS : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`DecodeDateMonthWeek(Now, Y, M, WoM, DoW);`  
`TS := EncodeDateMonthWeek(Y, M, WoM, DoW);`  
`WriteLn('Today is : ', DateToStr(TS));`

**End.**

---



#### 44.4.25 DecodeDateTime

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime value in a date and time value

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word;  
out AMonth: Word; out ADay: Word;  
out AHour: Word; out AMinute: Word;  
out ASecond: Word; out AMilliSecond: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: DecodeDateTime decomposes the date/time indication in AValue and returns the various components in AYear, AMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecond, AMilliSecond

See also: EncodeDateTime (594), EncodeDateMonthWeek (594), EncodeDateWeek (595), EncodeDateDay (594), DecodeDateWeek (592), DecodeDateDay (590), DecodeDateMonthWeek (591)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex79.pp

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateTime(**Now**, Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS);  
TS := EncodeDateTime(Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS);  
**WriteIn**('Now is : ', DateTimeToStr(TS));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.26 DecodeDateWeek

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime value in a week of year and day of week.

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDateWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word;  
out AWeekOfYear: Word; out ADayOfWeek: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: DecodeDateWeek decomposes the date indication in AValue and returns the various components in AYear, AWeekOfYear, ADayOfWeek.

See also: EncodeDateTime (594), EncodeDateMonthWeek (594), EncodeDateWeek (595), EncodeDateDay (594), DecodeDateTime (592), DecodeDateDay (590), DecodeDateMonthWeek (591)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex81.pp

---

**Program** Example81;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

---

```

Var
  Y,W,Dow : Word;
  TS : TDateTime;

Begin
  DecodeDateWeek(Now,Y,W,Dow);
  TS:=EncodeDateWeek(Y,W,Dow);
  WriteIn('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.27 DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime value in year, month, day of week parts

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AValue: TDateTime;`  
   `out AYear: Word; out AMonth: Word;`  
   `out ANthDayOfWeek: Word;`  
   `out ADayOfWeek: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` decodes the date `AValue` in a `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` and `ANthDayOfWeek`. (This is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third Saturday of the month.)

See also: `NthDayOfWeek` (628), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (594), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` (1633), `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (595), `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (652)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex105.pp

---

**Program** Example105;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Var
  Y,M,NDoW,DoW : Word;
  D : TDateTime;
Begin
  DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth(Date,Y,M,NDoW,DoW);
  D:=EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(Y,M,NDoW,DoW);
  Write(DateToStr(D),' is the ',NDoW,'-th ');
  WriteIn(formatDateTime('dddd',D),' of the month. ');
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.28 DosDateTimeToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert DOS date/time format to TDateTime format

Declaration: `function DosDateTimeToDateTime(AValue: LongInt) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosDateTimeToDateTime` takes a DOS encoded date/time `AValue` and recodes it as a `TDateTime` value.

The bit encoding of the DOS date/time is explained in the `DateTimeToDosDateTime` (583) function.

See also: [DateTimeToDosDateTime \(583\)](#)

#### 44.4.29 EncodeDateDay

**Synopsis:** Encodes a year and day of year to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** `function EncodeDateDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDateDay` encodes the values `AYear` and `ADayOfYear` to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateDay \(590\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(594\)](#), [DecodeDateDay \(590\)](#), [EncodeDateTime \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(595\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(651\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(650\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(651\)](#)

#### 44.4.30 EncodeDateMonthWeek

**Synopsis:** Encodes a year, month, week of month and day of week to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** `function EncodeDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDateMonthWeek` encodes the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `WeekOfMonth`, `ADayOfWeek`, to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateMonthWeek \(591\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [DecodeDateMonthWeek \(591\)](#), [EncodeDateTime \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(595\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(594\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(651\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(651\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(650\)](#), [TryEncodeDateDay \(649\)](#), [NthDayOfWeek \(628\)](#)

#### 44.4.31 EncodeDateTime

**Synopsis:** Encodes a TDateTime value from all its parts

**Declaration:** `function EncodeDateTime(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDateTime` encodes the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond` to a date/time value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateTime \(592\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [DecodeDateTime \(592\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(595\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(594\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(651\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(651\)](#), [TryEncodeDateDay \(649\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(650\)](#)

#### 44.4.32 EncodeDateWeek

**Synopsis:** Encode a `TDateTime` value from a year, week and day of week triplet

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                        const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
function EncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word)
                        : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDateWeek` encodes the values `AYear`, `AWeekOfYear` and `ADayOfWeek` to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateWeek \(592\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(594\)](#), [DecodeDateWeek \(592\)](#), [EncodeDateTime \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(594\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(651\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(651\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(650\)](#)

#### 44.4.33 EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth

**Synopsis:** Encodes a year, month, week, day of week specification to a `TDateTime` value

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;
                                const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;
                                const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` encodes `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` and `ANthDayOfWeek` to a valid date stamp and returns the result.

`ANthDayOfWeek` is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third Saturday of the month.

For an example, see [DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(593\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the values is not in range, then an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: [NthDayOfWeek \(628\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(594\)](#), [#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek \(1633\)](#), [DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(593\)](#), [TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(652\)](#)

#### 44.4.34 EncodeTimeInterval

**Synopsis:** Encode an interval as a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:**

```
function EncodeTimeInterval(Hour: Word; Minute: Word; Second: Word;
                            MilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EncodeTimeInterval` encodes a time interval expressed in Hour, Min, Sec, MSec as a `TDateTime` value and returns the value in Time.

**Errors:** If `Min`, `Sec`, `MSec` do not contain a valid time indication, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `TryEncodeTimeInterval` (653)

### 44.4.35 EndOfDay

**Synopsis:** Calculates a `TDateTime` value representing the end of a specified day

**Declaration:**

```
function EndOfDay(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;
                  const ADay: Word) : TDateTime; Overload
function EndOfDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)
                  : TDateTime; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfDay` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date/time indication of the last moment (23:59:59.999) of the day given by `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`.

The day may also be indicated with a `AYear`, `ADayOfYear` pair.

See also: `StartOfDay` (646), `StartOfDay` (643), `StartOfTheWeek` (647), `StartOfAWeek` (644), `StartOfAMonth` (644), `StartOfTheMonth` (646), `EndOfTheWeek` (599), `EndOfAWeek` (597), `EndOfTheYear` (600), `EndOfAYear` (598), `EndOfTheMonth` (599), `EndOfAMonth` (596), `EndOfTheDay` (598)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** `Example39`;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'End of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

**Var**

`Y,M,D : Word;`

**Begin**

`Y:=YearOf(Today);`

`M:=MonthOf(Today);`

`D:=DayOf(Today);`

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, EndOfDay(Y,M,D)));`

`DecodeDateDay(Today,Y,D);`

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, EndOfDay(Y,D)));`

**End.**

---

### 44.4.36 EndOfAMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate a `TDateTime` value representing the last day of the indicated month

**Declaration:** `function EndOfAMonth(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfAMonth` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of the month indicated by the `AYear`, `AMonth` pair.

See also: [StartOfTheMonth \(646\)](#), [StartOfAMonth \(644\)](#), [EndOfTheMonth \(599\)](#), [EndOfTheYear \(600\)](#), [EndOfAYear \(598\)](#), [StartOfAWeek \(644\)](#), [StartOfTheWeek \(647\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex31.pp

---

**Program** Example31 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "Last day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy ' ;

**Var**

Y,M : Word ;

**Begin**

Y:=YearOf( Today ) ;

M:=MonthOf( Today ) ;

**WriteLn** ( **FormatDateTime** ( Fmt , EndOfAMonth ( Y,M ) ) ) ;

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.37 EndOfAWeek

**Synopsis:** Return the last moment of day of the week, given a year and a week in the year.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime  
function EndOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EndOfAWeek returns a TDateTime value with the date of the last moment (23:59:59:999) on the indicated day of the week indicated by the AYear, AWeek, ADayOfWeek values.

The default value for ADayOfWeek is 7.

See also: [StartOfTheWeek \(647\)](#), [EndOfTheWeek \(599\)](#), [EndOfAWeek \(597\)](#), [StartOfAMonth \(644\)](#), [EndOfTheYear \(600\)](#), [EndOfAYear \(598\)](#), [EndOfTheMonth \(599\)](#), [EndOfAMonth \(596\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "Last day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ' ;

Fmt2 = ' "Last-1 day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ' ;

**Var**

Y,W : Word ;

**Begin**

Y:=YearOf( Today ) ;

```

W:=WeekOf( Today );
WriteIn (FormatDateTime ( Fmt , EndOfAWeek ( Y , W ) ) );
WriteIn (FormatDateTime ( Fmt2 , EndOfAWeek ( Y , W , 6 ) ) );
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.38 EndOfAYear

Synopsis: Calculate a TDateTime value representing the last day of a year

Declaration: `function EndOfAYear(const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfAYear` returns a TDateTime value with the date of the last day of the year AYear (December 31).

See also: `StartOfTheYear` (647), `EndOfTheYear` (600), `EndOfAYear` (598), `EndOfTheMonth` (599), `EndOfA-Month` (596), `StartOfAWeek` (644), `StartOfTheWeek` (647)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex27.pp

---

**Program** Example27;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

Fmt = 'Last day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime ( Fmt , EndOfAYear ( YearOf ( Today ) ) ) );

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.39 EndOfTheDay

Synopsis: Calculate a TDateTime value that represents the end of a given day.

Declaration: `function EndOfTheDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `EndOfTheDay` extracts the date part of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date/-time indication of the last moment (23:59:59.999) of this day.

See also: `StartOfTheDay` (646), `StartOfADay` (643), `StartOfTheWeek` (647), `StartOfAWeek` (644), `StartOfA-Month` (644), `StartOfTheMonth` (646), `EndOfTheWeek` (599), `EndOfAWeek` (597), `EndOfTheYear` (600), `EndOfAYear` (598), `EndOfTheMonth` (599), `EndOfAMonth` (596), `EndOfADay` (596)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex37.pp

---

**Program** Example37;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

```
Fmt = ' "End of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';
```

**Begin**

```
WriteIn ( FormatDateTime ( Fmt , EndOfTheDay ( Today ) ) );
```

```
End.
```

---

**44.4.40 EndOfTheMonth**

**Synopsis:** Calculate a TDateTime value representing the last day of the month, given a day in that month.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfTheMonth` extracts the year and month parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of that year and month as the `EndOfAMonth` (596) function.

**See also:** `StartOfAMonth` (644), `StartOfTheMonth` (646), `EndOfAMonth` (596), `EndOfTheYear` (600), `EndOfAYear` (598), `StartOfAWeek` (644), `StartOfTheWeek` (647)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** Example29;

```
{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheMonth function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

```
Fmt = ' "last day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy ';
```

**Begin**

```
WriteIn ( FormatDateTime ( Fmt , EndOfTheMonth ( Today ) ) );
```

```
End.
```

---

**44.4.41 EndOfTheWeek**

**Synopsis:** Calculate a TDateTime value which represents the end of a week, given a date in that week.

**Declaration:** `function EndOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndOfTheWeek` extracts the year and week parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of that week as the `EndOfAWeek` (597) function.

**See also:** `StartOfAWeek` (644), `StartOfTheWeek` (647), `EndOfAWeek` (597), `StartOfAMonth` (644), `EndOfTheYear` (600), `EndOfAYear` (598), `EndOfTheMonth` (599), `EndOfAMonth` (596)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex33.pp`



---

**Program** Example33;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = '"last day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheWeek (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.42 EndOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate a TDateTime value representing the last day of a year, given a date in that year.

**Declaration:** function EndOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EndOfTheYear extracts the year part of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date of the last day of that year (December 31), as the EndOfAYear (598) function.

See also: StartOfAYear (645), StartOfTheYear (647), EndOfTheMonth (599), EndOfAMonth (596), StartOfAWeek (644), StartOfTheWeek (647), EndOfAYear (598)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex25.pp

---

**Program** Example25;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = '"Last day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheYear (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.43 HourOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the hour part from a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** function HourOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** HourOf returns the hour of the day part of the AValue date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 23.

For an example, see YearOf (670)

See also: YearOf (670), WeekOf (658), MonthOf (626), DayOf (585), MinuteOf (622), SecondOf (639), MilliSecondOf (618)

#### 44.4.44 HourOfDay

Synopsis: Calculate the hour of a given TDateTime value

Declaration: `function HourOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `HourOfDay` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the day till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 will return 0.

See also: `HourOfYear` (602), `HourOfMonth` (601), `HourOfWeek` (601), `MinuteOfDay` (622), `SecondOfDay` (639), `MillisecondOfDay` (618)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex43.pp`

---

**Program** Example43;

*{ This program demonstrates the HourOfDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Hour of the Day : ', HourOfDay(N));

WriteLn('Minute of the Day : ', MinuteOfDay(N));

WriteLn('Second of the Day : ', SecondOfDay(N));

WriteLn('Millisecond of the Day : ',  
MillisecondOfDay(N));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.45 HourOfMonth

Synopsis: Calculate the number of hours passed since the start of the month.

Declaration: `function HourOfMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `HourOfMonth` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the month till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfMonth` (658) function.

See also: `WeekOfMonth` (658), `DayOfMonth` (586), `MinuteOfMonth` (623), `SecondOfMonth` (641), `MillisecondOfMonth` (619)

#### 44.4.46 HourOfWeek

Synopsis: Calculate the number of hours elapsed since the start of the week.

Declaration: `function HourOfWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `HourOfTheWeek` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the Week till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (586) function.

See also: `HourOfTheYear` (602), `HourOfTheMonth` (601), `HourOfTheDay` (601), `DayOfTheWeek` (586), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (623), `SecondOfTheWeek` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (620)

#### 44.4.47 HourOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of hours passed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function HourOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HourOfTheYear` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:59:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (659) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (659), `DayOfTheYear` (586), `MinuteOfTheYear` (624), `SecondOfTheYear` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (620)

#### 44.4.48 HoursBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole hours between two `TDateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function HoursBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HoursBetween` returns the number of whole hours between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of an hour (minutes,seconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (671), `MonthsBetween` (627), `WeeksBetween` (660), `DaysBetween` (587), `MinutesBetween` (624), `SecondsBetween` (641), `MillisecondsBetween` (620)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** Example59;

*{ This program demonstrates the HoursBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**( 'Number of hours between ' );  
    **Write**( **DateTimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateTimeToStr**(ANow) );  
    **WriteLn**( ' : ', HoursBetween(ANow, AThen) );  
**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(59*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(61*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(122*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(306*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2);

```

**End.****44.4.49 HourSpan**

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of hours between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function HourSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** HourSpan returns the number of Hours between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a Hour.

See also: YearSpan ([672](#)), MonthSpan ([627](#)), WeekSpan ([662](#)), DaySpan ([590](#)), MinuteSpan ([625](#)), SecondSpan ([642](#)), MilliSecondSpan ([621](#)), HoursBetween ([602](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex67.pp

**Program** Example67;

*{ This program demonstrates the HourSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```

Write('Number of hours between ');
Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', HourSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

**Var**

```

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

```

**Begin**

```

D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(59*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(61*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);

```

```

D2:=D1-(122*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(306*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.50 IncDay

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of days.

Declaration: `function IncDay(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfDays: Integer) : TDateTime`  
`function IncDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncDay` adds `ANumberOfDays` days to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfDays` can be positive or negative.

See also: `IncYear` (607), `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1687), `IncWeek` (606), `IncHour` (604), `IncMinute` (605), `IncSecond` (606), `IncMilliSecond` (605)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex74.pp`

---

**Program** `Example74`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn('One Day from today is ', DateToStr(IncDay(Today, 1)));`

`WriteLn('One Day ago from today is ', DateToStr(IncDay(Today, -1)));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.51 IncHour

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of hours.

Declaration: `function IncHour(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfHours: Int64) : TDateTime`  
`function IncHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncHour` adds `ANumberOfHours` hours to `AValue` and returns the resulting date/time. `ANumberOfHours` can be positive or negative.

See also: `IncYear` (607), `#rtl.sysutils.IncMonth` (1687), `IncWeek` (606), `IncDay` (604), `IncMinute` (605), `IncSecond` (606), `IncMilliSecond` (605)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex75.pp`

---

**Program Example75**

;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncHour function }***Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;**Begin****WriteLn**( 'One Hour from now is ', **DateTimeToStr**(IncHour(**Now**, 1)));**WriteLn**( 'One Hour ago from now is ', **DateTimeToStr**(IncHour(**Now**, -1)));**End.**

---

**44.4.52 IncMilliSecond**

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of milliseconds.

**Declaration:** `function IncMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfMilliseconds: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** IncMilliSecond adds ANumberOfMilliseconds milliseconds to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfMilliseconds can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear ([607](#)), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth ([1687](#)), IncWeek ([606](#)), IncDay ([604](#)), IncHour ([604](#)), IncSecond ([606](#)), IncMilliSecond ([605](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex78.pp

---

**Program Example78;***{ This program demonstrates the IncMilliSecond function }***Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;**Begin****WriteLn**( 'One MilliSecond from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMilliSecond(**Now**, 1)));**WriteLn**( 'One MilliSecond ago from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMilliSecond(**Now**, -1)));**End.**

---

**44.4.53 IncMinute**

Synopsis: Increase a TDateTime value with a number of minutes.

**Declaration:** `function IncMinute(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfMinutes: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** IncMinute adds ANumberOfMinutes minutes to AValue and returns the resulting date/-time. ANumberOfMinutes can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear ([607](#)), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth ([1687](#)), IncWeek ([606](#)), IncDay ([604](#)), IncHour ([604](#)), IncSecond ([606](#)), IncMilliSecond ([605](#))

---

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncMinute function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn**( 'One Minute from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMinute(**Time**, 1)));

**WriteLn**( 'One Minute ago from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMinute(**Time**, -1)));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.54 IncSecond

**Synopsis:** Increase a TDateTime value with a number of seconds.

**Declaration:** function IncSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfSeconds: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncSecond adds ANumberOfSeconds seconds to AValue and returns the resulting date/-time. ANumberOfSeconds can be positive or negative.

**See also:** IncYear (607), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1687), IncWeek (606), IncDay (604), IncHour (604), IncSecond (606), IncMilliSecond (605)

---

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex77.pp

---

**Program** Example77;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn**( 'One Second from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncSecond(**Time**, 1)));

**WriteLn**( 'One Second ago from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncSecond(**Time**, -1)));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.55 IncWeek

**Synopsis:** Increase a TDateTime value with a number of weeks.

**Declaration:** function IncWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfWeeks: Integer)  
: TDateTime  
function IncWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncWeek adds ANumberOfWeeks weeks to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfWeeks can be positive or negative.

**See also:** IncYear (607), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1687), IncDay (604), IncHour (604), IncMinute (605), IncSecond (606), IncMilliSecond (605)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex73.pp

**Program** Example73;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn**( 'One Week from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncWeek(Today, 1)));

**WriteLn**( 'One Week ago from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncWeek(Today, - 1)));

**End.**

#### 44.4.56 IncYear

**Synopsis:** Increase a TDateTime value with a number of years.

**Declaration:** function IncYear(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfYears: Integer)  
: TDateTime  
function IncYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncYear adds ANumberOfYears years to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfYears can be positive or negative.

See also: #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1687), IncWeek (606), IncDay (604), IncHour (604), IncMinute (605), IncSecond (606), IncMilliSecond (605)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex71.pp

**Program** Example71;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn**( 'One year from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncYear(Today, 1)));

**WriteLn**( 'One year ago from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncYear(Today, - 1)));

**End.**

#### 44.4.57 InvalidDateDayError

**Synopsis:** Raise an EConvertError exception when a day is not a valid day of a year.

**Declaration:** procedure InvalidDateDayError(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** InvalidDateDayError raises an EConvertError (1751) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts AYear and ADayOfYear.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: InvalidDateWeekError (608), InvalidDateTimeError (608), InvalidDateMonthWeekError (608), InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError (609)



#### 44.4.58 InvalidDateMonthWeekError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` exception when a `Year,Month,WeekOfMonth,DayOfWeek` is invalid.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure InvalidDateMonthWeekError(const AYear: Word;
                                     const AMonth: Word;
                                     const AWeekOfMonth: Word;
                                     const ADayOfWeek: Word)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` raises an `EConvertError` (1751) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AMonth`, `AWeekOfMonth` and `ADayOfWeek`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

**See also:** `InvalidDateWeekError` (608), `InvalidDateTimeError` (608), `InvalidDateDayError` (607), `InvalidDay-Of-WeekInMonthError` (609)

#### 44.4.59 InvalidDateTimeError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` about an invalid date-time specification.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure InvalidDateTimeError(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;
                               const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word;
                               const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;
                               const AMilliSecond: Word;
                               const ABaseDate: TDateTime)
procedure InvalidDateTimeError(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;
                               const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word;
                               const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;
                               const AMilliSecond: Word)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateTimeError` raises an `EConvertError` (1751) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

**See also:** `InvalidDateWeekError` (608), `InvalidDateDayError` (607), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (608), `InvalidDayOf-WeekInMonthError` (609)

#### 44.4.60 InvalidDateWeekError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` with an invalid `Year`, `WeekOfyear` and `DayOfWeek` specification

**Declaration:**

```
procedure InvalidDateWeekError(const AYear: Word;
                               const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                               const ADayOfWeek: Word)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDateWeekError` raises an `EConvertError` (1751) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AWeek`, `ADayOfWeek`.  
Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateTimeError` (608), `InvalidDateDayError` (607), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (608), `InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError` (609)

#### 44.4.61 InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` exception when a `Year,Month,NthDayOfWeek,DayOfWeek` is invalid.

**Declaration:** `procedure InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError(const AYear: Word;  
const AMonth: Word;  
const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError` raises an `EConvertError` (1751) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ANthDayOfWeek` and `ADayOfWeek`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: `InvalidDateWeekError` (608), `InvalidDateTimeError` (608), `InvalidDateDayError` (607), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (608)

#### 44.4.62 IsInLeapYear

**Synopsis:** Determine whether a date is in a leap year.

**Declaration:** `function IsInLeapYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsInLeapYear` returns `True` if the year part of `AValue` is leap year, or `False` if not.

See also: `YearOf` (670), `IsPM` (611), `IsToday` (612), `IsSameDay` (611)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsInLeapYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn('Current year is leap year: ',IsInLeapYear(Date));`

**End.**

---

### 44.4.63 ISO8601ToDate

**Synopsis:** Converts a date/time value in ISO 8601 notation to a native `TDateTime` type

**Declaration:** `function ISO8601ToDate(const DateString: string; ReturnUTC: Boolean) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ISO8601ToDate` is a function used to convert a string using ISO 8601 date/time notation to a native `TDateTime` type.

`DateString` contains the date/time value expressed using ISO 8601 notation.

`ReturnUTC` indicates if the `TDateTime` value should be adjusted to reflect the UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) time zone. The default value for the argument is `True`.

`ISO8601ToDate` calls the `TryISO8601ToDate` function to perform the conversion, and raises an `EConvertError` exception if `DateString` contains an invalid ISO 8601 date/time value. The return value contains the native `TDateTime` value for the timestamp (adjusted to UTC when requested).

Use `DateToISO8601` to convert the native date/time value back to its representation using ISO 8601 date/time notation.

See also: `TryISO8601ToDate` ([653](#)), `DateToISO8601` ([585](#))

### 44.4.64 ISO8601ToDateDef

**Synopsis:** Converts an ISO 8601 date/time string to a `TDateTime` type

**Declaration:** `function ISO8601ToDateDef(const DateString: string; ReturnUTC: Boolean; aDefault: TDateTime) : TDateTime`  
`function ISO8601ToDateDef(const DateString: string; aDefault: TDateTime; ReturnUTC: Boolean) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ISO8601ToDateDef` is used to convert a date/time string in ISO 8601 format to its representation as a `TDateTime` value. `DateString` contains the ISO 8601-formatted date/time value converted in the routine. It can use one of the supported ISO 8601 date/time formats, and may contain an optional time zone offset. `DateString` uses the format returned from the `DateToISO8601` function. Each of the following represent the date/time for Noon on July 4, 2019:

- 20190714 12:00
- 2019-07-14 12:00
- 20190714 12:00:00
- 2019-07-14 12:00:00
- 20190714T12:00
- 20190714T12:00:00
- 2019-07-14T12:00
- 2019-07-14T12:00:00
- 20190714T12:00:00-04:00
- 2019-07-14T12:00:00-04:00

Time values in `DateString` specified without a time zone offset are assumed to be in the local time zone.

`ReturnUTC` indicates if the value in `DateString` is adjusted to UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) in the return value.

`aDefault` contains the default `TDateTime` value used as the return value when `DateString` cannot be successfully parsed and converted.

Please note that the overloaded variant which uses `String`, `Boolean`, and `TDateTime` arguments has been deprecated. Use the variant with `String`, `TDateTime`, and `Boolean` arguments (in that order) instead.

`ISO8601ToDateDef` calls the `TryISO8601ToDate` function in its implementation.

See also: `DateToISO8601` ([585](#)), `TryISO8601ToDate` ([653](#))

#### 44.4.65 IsPM

Synopsis: Determine whether a time is PM or AM.

Declaration: `function IsPM(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsPM` returns `True` if the time part of `AValue` is later than 12:00 (PM, or afternoon).

See also: `YearOf` ([670](#)), `IsInLeapYear` ([609](#)), `IsToday` ([612](#)), `IsSameDay` ([611](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program Example4;

{ This program demonstrates the IsPM function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Begin
    WriteLn('Current time is PM : ', IsPM(Now));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.66 IsSameDay

Synopsis: Check if two date/time indications are the same day.

Declaration: `function IsSameDay(const AValue: TDateTime; const ABasis: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSameDay` checks whether `AValue` and `ABasis` have the same date part, and returns `True` if they do, `False` if not.

See also: `Today` ([649](#)), `Yesterday` ([673](#)), `Tomorrow` ([649](#)), `IsToday` ([612](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex21.pp`

---

```

Program Example21;

{ This program demonstrates the IsSameDay function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Var
  I : Integer;
  D : TDateTime;

Begin
  For I:=1 to 3 do
    begin
      D:=Today+Random(3)-1;
      Write(FormatDateTime('dd mmm yyyy "is today : "',D));
      WriteLn(IsSameDay(D,Today));
    end;
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.67 IsSameMonth

Synopsis: Check if 2 dates are in the same month.

**Declaration:** `function IsSameMonth(const AValue: TDateTime; const ABasis: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsSameMonth` will return `True` if the two dates `AValue` and `ABasis` occur in the same year and month. (i.e. if their month and year parts match). Otherwise, `False` is returned.

See also: `IsSameDay` (611), `IsToday` (612), `SameDate` (636)

#### 44.4.68 IsToday

Synopsis: Check whether a given date is today.

**Declaration:** `function IsToday(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsToday` returns `True` if `AValue` is today's date, and `False` otherwise.

See also: `Today` (649), `Yesterday` (673), `Tomorrow` (649), `IsSameDay` (611)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex20.pp`

---

```

Program Example20;

{ This program demonstrates the IsToday function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Begin
  WriteLn( 'Today      : ', IsToday(Today));
  WriteLn( 'Tomorrow   : ', IsToday(Tomorrow));
  WriteLn( 'Yesterday  : ', IsToday(Yesterday));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.69 IsValidDate

**Synopsis:** Check whether a set of values is a valid date indication.

**Declaration:** `function IsValidDate(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsValidDate` returns `True` when the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay` form a valid date indication. If one of the values is not valid (e.g. the day is invalid or does not exist in that particular month), `False` is returned.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

See also: `IsValidTime` (616), `IsValidDateTime` (615), `IsValidDateDay` (613), `IsValidDateWeek` (616), `IsValidDateMonthWeek` (614)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** `Example5;`

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDate function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`Y,M,D : Word;`

**Begin**

`For Y:=2000 to 2004 do`

`For M:=1 to 12 do`

`For D:=1 to 31 do`

`If Not IsValidDate(Y,M,D) then`

`Writeln(D, ' is not a valid day in ', Y, '/', M);`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.70 IsValidDateDay

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given year/day of year combination is a valid date.

**Declaration:** `function IsValidDateDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsValidDateDay` returns `True` if `AYear` and `ADayOfYear` form a valid date indication, or `False` otherwise.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The `ADayOfYear` value is checked to see whether it falls within the valid range of dates for `AYear`.

See also: `IsValidDate` (613), `IsValidTime` (616), `IsValidDateTime` (615), `IsValidDateWeek` (616), `IsValidDateMonthWeek` (614)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex9.pp`

---

**Program** Example9;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1996 to 2004 do

if IsValidDateDay(Y,366) then

WriteLn(Y, ' is a leap year');

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.71 IsValidDateMonthWeek

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given year/month/week/day of the week combination is a valid day

**Declaration:** function IsValidDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IsValidDateMonthWeek returns True if AYear, AMonth, AWeekOfMonth and ADayOfWeek form a valid date indication, or False otherwise.

AYear must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The AWeekOfMonth, ADayOfWeek values are checked to see whether the combination falls within the valid range of weeks for the AYear, AMonth combination.

See also: IsValidDate ([613](#)), IsValidTime ([616](#)), IsValidDateTime ([615](#)), IsValidDateDay ([613](#)), IsValidDate-Week ([616](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Var**

Y,W,D : Word;

B : Boolean;

**Begin**

For Y:=2000 to 2004 do

begin

B:=True;

For W:=4 to 6 do

For D:=1 to 7 do

If B then

begin

B:=IsValidDateMonthWeek(Y,12,W,D);

If Not B then

---

```

        if (D=1) then
            WriteLn('December ',Y,' has exactly ',W,' weeks.')
        else
            WriteLn('December ',Y,' has ',W,' weeks and ',D-1,' days.');
```

end;

End.

---

#### 44.4.72 IsValidDateTime

**Synopsis:** Check whether a set of values is a valid date and time indication.

**Declaration:** function IsValidDateTime(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IsValidTime returns True when the values AYear, AMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecond and AMilliSecond form a valid date and time indication. If one of the values is not valid (e.g. the seconds are larger than 60), False is returned.

AYear must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

See also: IsValidDate (613), IsValidTime (616), IsValidDateDay (613), IsValidDateWeek (616), IsValidDate-MonthWeek (614)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex7.pp

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, Mo, D : Word;  
H, M, S, MS : Word;  
I : Integer;

**Begin**

For I:=1 to 10 do

begin

Y:=2000+Random(5);

Mo:=Random(15);

D:=Random(40);

H:=Random(32);

M:=Random(90);

S:=Random(90);

MS:=Random(1500);

If Not IsValidDateTime(Y, Mo, D, H, M, S, MS) then

WriteLn(Y, '-', Mo, '-', D, ' ', H, ': ', M, ': ', S, '.', MS, ' is not a valid date/time.');

end;

End.

---



**44.4.73 IsValidDateWeek**

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given year/week/day of the week combination is a valid day.

**Declaration:** `function IsValidDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsValidDateWeek` returns `True` if `AYear`, `AWeekOfYear` and `ADayOfWeek` form a valid date indication, or `False` otherwise.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The `ADayOfWeek`, `ADayOfWeek` values are checked to see whether the combination falls within the valid range of weeks for `AYear`.

See also: `IsValidDate` (613), `IsValidTime` (616), `IsValidDateTime` (615), `IsValidDateDay` (613), `IsValidDateMonthWeek` (614)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex10.pp

**Program** Example10;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,W,D : Word;  
B : Boolean;

**Begin**

```
For Y:=2000 to 2004 do
  begin
    B:=True;
    For W:=51 to 54 do
      For D:=1 to 7 do
        If B then
          begin
            B:=IsValidDateWeek(Y,W,D);
            If Not B then
              if (D=1) then
                Writeln(Y, ' has exactly ',W, ' weeks. ')
              else
                Writeln(Y, ' has ',W, ' weeks and ',D-1, ' days. ');
          end;
        end;
      end;
    end;
  end;
```

**End.**

**44.4.74 IsValidTime**

**Synopsis:** Check whether a set of values is a valid time indication.

**Declaration:** `function IsValidTime(const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word;  
const ASecond: Word; const AMilliSecond: Word)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Check whether a set of values is a valid time indication.

#### 44.4.75 JulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Julian date representation to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function JulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `JulianDateToDateTime` converts the Julian `AValue` date/time indication to a regular `TDateTime` date/time indication.

See also: `DateTimeToJulianDate` (584), `TryJulianDateToDateTime` (656), `DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate` (584), `TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime` (656)

#### 44.4.76 LocalTimeToUniversal

Synopsis: Convert local time to UTC time

Declaration: `function LocalTimeToUniversal(LT: TDateTime) : TDateTime`  
`function LocalTimeToUniversal(LT: TDateTime; TZOffset: Integer)`  
`: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `UniversalTimeToLocal` converts a local time indication to a universal time indication: it undoes the `TZOffset` time zone offset from the UT Universal time (UTC). If no `TZOffset` is specified, the local time offset as returned by `GetLocalTimeOffset` (577) is used.

Note that for times in the past or in the future, or for time zones with DST, omitting the `TZOffset` may lead to wrong results, as the current time zone offset is used. Calculation of the correct time zone offset for a given date is very complicated, and outside the scope of this call.

See also: `GetLocalTimeOffset` (577), `UniversalTimeToLocal` (657)

#### 44.4.77 MacTimeStampToUnix

Synopsis: Convert a Mac timestamp to a Unix timestamp

Declaration: `function MacTimeStampToUnix(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `MacTimeStampToUnix` converts the Mac timestamp indication in `AValue` to a UNIX timestamp indication (epoch time)

Errors: None.

See also: `UnixTimeStampToMac` (658), `DateTimeToMac` (584), `MacToDateTime` (617)

#### 44.4.78 MacToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Mac timestamp to a `TDateTime` timestamp

Declaration: `function MacToDateTime(const AValue: Int64) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `MacToDateTime` converts the Mac timestamp indication in `AValue` to a valid `TDateTime` indication.

Errors: None.

See also: [UnixTimeStampToMac \(658\)](#), [DateTimeToMac \(584\)](#), [MacTimeStampToUnix \(617\)](#)

### 44.4.79 MilliSecondOf

Synopsis: Extract the millisecond part from a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOf` returns the second of the minute part of the AValue date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 999.

For an example, see [YearOf \(670\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(670\)](#), [WeekOf \(658\)](#), [MonthOf \(626\)](#), [DayOf \(585\)](#), [HourOf \(600\)](#), [MinuteOf \(622\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(618\)](#)

### 44.4.80 MilliSecondOfDay

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the day

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOfDay` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the [HourOfDay \(601\)](#) function.

See also: [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(620\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMonth \(619\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheWeek \(620\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheHour \(618\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMinute \(619\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheSecond \(619\)](#), [HourOfTheDay \(601\)](#), [MinuteOfTheDay \(622\)](#), [SecondOfTheDay \(639\)](#)

### 44.4.81 MilliSecondOfTheHour

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the hour

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOfTheHour` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the [MinuteOfTheHour \(622\)](#) function.

See also: [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(620\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMonth \(619\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheWeek \(620\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheDay \(618\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheMinute \(619\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheSecond \(619\)](#), [MinuteOfTheHour \(622\)](#), [SecondOfTheHour \(640\)](#)

#### 44.4.82 MilliSecondOfTheMinute

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the minute

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Minute (HH:MM:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `SecondOfTheMinute` (640) function.

See also: `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (620), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (619), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (620), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (618), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (618), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (619), `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` (619), `SecondOfTheMinute` (640)

#### 44.4.83 MilliSecondOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the month (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 on the first of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (658) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (658), `DayOfTheMonth` (586), `HourOfTheMonth` (601), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (623), `SecondOfTheMonth` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (619)

#### 44.4.84 MilliSecondOfTheSecond

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the second

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the second (HH:MM:SS.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:SS.000 will return 0.

See also: `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (620), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (619), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (620), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (618), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (618), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (619), `SecondOfTheMinute` (640)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** `Example46;`

*{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondOfTheSecond function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Second : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheSecond(N));

**End.**

#### 44.4.85 MilliSecondOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** function MilliSecondOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MilliSecondOfTheWeek returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Week (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 on the first of the Week will return 0.

For an example, see the DayOfTheWeek ([586](#)) function.

See also: MilliSecondOfTheYear ([620](#)), MilliSecondOfTheMonth ([619](#)), MilliSecondOfTheDay ([618](#)), MilliSecondOfTheHour ([618](#)), MilliSecondOfTheMinute ([619](#)), MilliSecondOfTheSecond ([619](#)), DayOfTheWeek ([586](#)), HourOfTheWeek ([601](#)), MinuteOfTheWeek ([623](#)), SecondOfTheWeek ([641](#))

#### 44.4.86 MilliSecondOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** function MilliSecondOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Int64

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MilliSecondOfTheYear returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the WeekOfTheYear ([659](#)) function.

See also: WeekOfTheYear ([659](#)), DayOfTheYear ([586](#)), HourOfTheYear ([602](#)), MinuteOfTheYear ([624](#)), SecondOfTheYear ([641](#)), MilliSecondOfTheYear ([620](#))

#### 44.4.87 MilliSecondsBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole milliseconds between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** function MilliSecondsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MilliSecondsBetween returns the number of whole milliseconds between ANow and AThen. This means a fractional part of a millisecond is dropped.

See also: YearsBetween ([671](#)), MonthsBetween ([627](#)), WeeksBetween ([660](#)), DaysBetween ([587](#)), HoursBetween ([602](#)), MinutesBetween ([624](#)), SecondsBetween ([641](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex62.pp

**Program** Example62;

*{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondsBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

Write('Number of milliseconds between ');

Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));

WriteLn(' : ', MilliSecondsBetween(ANow, AThen));

**end**;

**Var**

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

D1:=Now;

D2:=D1-(0.9\*OneMilliSecond);

Test(D1, D2);

D2:=D1-(1.0\*OneMilliSecond);

Test(D1, D2);

D2:=D1-(1.1\*OneMilliSecond);

Test(D1, D2);

D2:=D1-(2.5\*OneMilliSecond);

Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

#### 44.4.88 MilliSecondSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of milliseconds between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** function MilliSecondSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Double

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MilliSecondSpan returns the number of milliseconds between ANow and AThen. Since millisecond is the smallest fraction of a TDateTime indication, the returned number will always be an integer value.

**See also:** YearSpan (672), MonthSpan (627), WeekSpan (662), DaySpan (590), HourSpan (603), MinuteSpan (625), SecondSpan (642), MilliSecondsBetween (620)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex70.pp

**Program** Example70;

*{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```

Write('Number of milliseconds between ');
Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', MilliSecondSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

Begin
  D1:=Now;
  D2:=D1-(0.9*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=D1-(1.0*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=D1-(1.1*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.89 MinuteOf

Synopsis: Extract the minute part from a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function MinuteOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MinuteOf` returns the minute of the hour part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 59.

For an example, see [YearOf \(670\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(670\)](#), [WeekOf \(658\)](#), [MonthOf \(626\)](#), [DayOf \(585\)](#), [HourOf \(600\)](#), [SecondOf \(639\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(618\)](#)

#### 44.4.90 MinuteOfDay

Synopsis: Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the day

Declaration: `function MinuteOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MinuteOfDay` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the [HourOfDay \(601\)](#) function.

See also: [MinuteOfTheYear \(624\)](#), [MinuteOfTheMonth \(623\)](#), [MinuteOfTheWeek \(623\)](#), [MinuteOfTheHour \(622\)](#), [HourOfTheDay \(601\)](#), [SecondOfTheDay \(639\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheDay \(618\)](#)

#### 44.4.91 MinuteOfTheHour

Synopsis: Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the hour

Declaration: `function MinuteOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheHour` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:59 will return 0.

See also: `MinuteOfTheYear` (624), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (623), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (623), `MinuteOfTheDay` (622), `SecondOfTheHour` (640), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (618)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex44.pp`

**Program** `Example44`;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinuteOfTheHour function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`N` : `TDateTime`;

**Begin**

`N:=Now`;

`WriteLn` ( 'Minute of the Hour : ', `MinuteOfTheHour(N)`);

`WriteLn` ( 'Second of the Hour : ', `SecondOfTheHour(N)`);

`WriteLn` ( 'MilliSecond of the Hour : ',  
                    `MilliSecondOfTheHour(N)`);

**End.**

#### 44.4.92 MinuteOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate number of minutes elapsed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheMonth` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Month (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (658) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (658), `DayOfTheMonth` (586), `HourOfTheMonth` (601), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (623), `SecondOfTheMonth` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (619)

#### 44.4.93 MinuteOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheWeek` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the week (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (586) function.



See also: [MinuteOfTheYear \(624\)](#), [MinuteOfTheMonth \(623\)](#), [MinuteOfTheDay \(622\)](#), [MinuteOfTheHour \(622\)](#), [DayOfTheWeek \(586\)](#), [HourOfTheWeek \(601\)](#), [SecondOfTheWeek \(641\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheWeek \(620\)](#)

#### 44.4.94 MinuteOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the year

**Declaration:** `function MinuteOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheYear` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the [WeekOfTheYear \(659\)](#) function.

See also: [WeekOfTheYear \(659\)](#), [DayOfTheYear \(586\)](#), [HourOfTheYear \(602\)](#), [MinuteOfTheYear \(624\)](#), [SecondOfTheYear \(641\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(620\)](#)

#### 44.4.95 MinutesBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole minutes between two `TDateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function MinutesBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MinutesBetween` returns the number of whole minutes between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a minute (seconds, milliseconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: [YearsBetween \(671\)](#), [MonthsBetween \(627\)](#), [WeeksBetween \(660\)](#), [DaysBetween \(587\)](#), [HoursBetween \(602\)](#), [SecondsBetween \(641\)](#), [MillisecondsBetween \(620\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** Example60;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinutesBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

    Write('Number of minutes between ');

    Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));

    WriteLn(' : ', MinutesBetween(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1 := Now;

    D2 := D1 - (59 \* OneSecond);

```

Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(61*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(122*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(306*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(5.4*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.96 MinuteSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of minutes between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function MinuteSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MinuteSpan returns the number of minutes between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a minute.

See also: YearSpan ([672](#)), MonthSpan ([627](#)), WeekSpan ([662](#)), DaySpan ([590](#)), HourSpan ([603](#)), SecondSpan ([642](#)), MilliSecondSpan ([621](#)), MinutesBetween ([624](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex68.pp

---

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinuteSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```

Write('Number of minutes between ');
Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', MinuteSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

**Var**

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(59*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(61*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(122*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(306*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2);

```

```

D2:=D1-(5.4*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.97 ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a modified Julian date representation to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(584\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(617\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(656\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(584\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(656\)](#)

#### 44.4.98 MonthOf

Synopsis: Extract the month from a given date.

Declaration: `function MonthOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MonthOf` returns the month part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 12.

For an example, see [YearOf \(670\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(670\)](#), [DayOf \(585\)](#), [WeekOf \(658\)](#), [HourOf \(600\)](#), [MinuteOf \(622\)](#), [SecondOf \(639\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(618\)](#)

#### 44.4.99 MonthOfTheYear

Synopsis: Extract the month of a `TDateTime` indication.

Declaration: `function MonthOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MonthOfTheYear` extracts the month part of `AValue` and returns it. It is an alias for `MonthOf` ([626](#)), and is provided for completeness only, corresponding to the other `PartOfTheYear` functions.

For an example, see the [WeekOfTheYear \(659\)](#) function.

See also: [MonthOf \(626\)](#), [WeekOfTheYear \(659\)](#), [DayOfTheYear \(586\)](#), [HourOfTheYear \(602\)](#), [MinuteOfTheYear \(624\)](#), [SecondOfTheYear \(641\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(620\)](#)

**44.4.100 MonthsBetween**

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole months between two TDateTime values

**Declaration:** `function MonthsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
  AExact: Boolean) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MonthsBetween returns the number of whole months between ANow and AThen. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 30.4375 per month (average over 4 years). This means the fractional part of a month is dropped.

**See also:** YearsBetween (671), WeeksBetween (660), DaysBetween (587), HoursBetween (602), MinutesBetween (624), SecondsBetween (641), MilliSecondsBetween (620)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex56.pp

---

**Program** Example56;

*{ This program demonstrates the MonthsBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**( 'Number of months between ' );

**Write**( **DateToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr**(ANow) );

**WriteLn**( ' : ', MonthsBetween(ANow, AThen) );

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := Today;

  D2 := Today - 364;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 365;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 366;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 390;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 368;

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := Today - 1000;

  Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

**44.4.101 MonthSpan**

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of months between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function MonthSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
  : Double`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MonthSpan` returns the number of month between `ANow` and `AThen`, including any fractional parts of a month. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 30.4375 per month (average over 4 years).

See also: `YearSpan` (672), `WeekSpan` (662), `DaySpan` (590), `HourSpan` (603), `MinuteSpan` (625), `SecondSpan` (642), `MilliSecondSpan` (621), `MonthsBetween` (627)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex64.pp`

---

**Program** `Example64`;

*{ This program demonstrates the MonthSpan function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);`

**begin**

`Write( 'Number of months between ' );`

`Write( DateToStr( AThen ), ' and ', DateToStr( ANow ) );`

`WriteLn( ' : ', MonthSpan( ANow, AThen ) );`

**end**;

**Var**

`D1, D2 : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`D1 := Today;`

`D2 := Today - 364;`

`Test( D1, D2 );`

`D2 := Today - 365;`

`Test( D1, D2 );`

`D2 := Today - 366;`

`Test( D1, D2 );`

`D2 := Today - 390;`

`Test( D1, D2 );`

`D2 := Today - 368;`

`Test( D1, D2 );`

`D2 := Today - 1000;`

`Test( D1, D2 );`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.102 NthDayOfWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate which occurrence of weekday in the month a given day represents

**Declaration:** `function NthDayOfWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `NthDayOfWeek` returns the occurrence of the weekday of `AValue` in the month. This is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month (e.g. the third Saturday of the month).

See also: `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (594), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` (1633), `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (593), `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (595), `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (652)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex104.pp

---

**Program** Example104;

*{ This program demonstrates the NthDayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**Write**( 'Today is the ', NthDayOfWeek(Today), '-th ' );

**WriteLn**( **formatdateTime**( 'dddd', Today), ' of the month.' );

**End.**

---

### 44.4.103 PeriodBetween

**Synopsis:** Return the period (in years, months, days) between two dates

**Declaration:** `procedure PeriodBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
                                    out Years: Word; out months: Word;  
                                    out days: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PeriodBetween` returns the timespan between 2 dates (`ANow` and `AThen`), expressed as a number of years, months and days in the parameters `Years`, `months` and `days`. Only complete years, months and days are reported.

If `ANow` is before `AThen`, their values are reversed so the result is always positive.

See also: `YearsBetween` (671), `MonthsBetween` (627), `WeeksBetween` (660), `DaysBetween` (587)

### 44.4.104 PreviousDayOfWeek

**Synopsis:** Given a day of the week, return the previous day of the week.

**Declaration:** `function PreviousDayOfWeek (DayOfWeek: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PreviousDayOfWeek` returns the previous day of the week. If the current day is the first day of the week (1) then the last day will be returned (7).

**Remark** Note that the days of the week are in ISO notation, i.e. 1-based.

See also: `Yesterday` (673)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ This program demonstrates the PreviousDayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

    D : Word;

**Begin**

```

    For D:=1 to 7 do
        Writeln('Previous day of ',D,' is : ',PreviousDayOfWeek(D));
    End.

```

---

#### 44.4.105 RecodeDate

Synopsis: Replace date part of a TDateTime value with another date.

Declaration: `function RecodeDate(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `RecodeDate` replaces the date part of the timestamp `AValue` with the date specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`. All other parts (the time part) of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If one of the `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay` values is not within a valid range then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `RecodeYear` ([636](#)), `RecodeMonth` ([634](#)), `RecodeDay` ([631](#)), `RecodeHour` ([632](#)), `RecodeMinute` ([633](#)), `RecodeSecond` ([634](#)), `RecodeDate` ([630](#)), `RecodeTime` ([635](#)), `RecodeDateTime` ([630](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex94.pp

---

**Program** Example94;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

    S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

    S:=**FormatDateTime**(Fmt,RecodeDate(**Now**,2001,1,1));

**Writeln**('This moment on the first of the millenium : ',S);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.106 RecodeDateTime

Synopsis: Replace selected parts of a TDateTime value with other values

Declaration: `function RecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word; const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `RecodeDateTime` replaces selected parts of the timestamp `AValue` with the date/time values specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`. If any of these values equals the predefined constant `RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs` ([578](#)), then the corresponding part of the date/time stamp is left untouched.

**Errors:** If one of the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecondAMilliSecond` is not within a valid range (`RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs` excepted) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(636\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(634\)](#), [RecodeDay \(631\)](#), [RecodeHour \(632\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(633\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(634\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(632\)](#), [RecodeDate \(630\)](#), [RecodeTime \(635\)](#), [TryRecodeDateTime \(656\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex96.pp`

---

**Program** `Example96`;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

**Var**

`S : AnsiString;`

`D : TDateTime ;`

**Begin**

`D:=Now;`

`D:=RecodeDateTime(D,2000,2,RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs,0,0,0,0);`

`S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,D);`

`WriteLn('This moment in february 2000 : ',S);`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.107 RecodeDay

**Synopsis:** Replace day part of a `TDateTime` value with another day.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeDay(const AValue: TDateTime; const ADay: Word)`  
`: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `RecodeDay` replaces the `Day` part of the timestamp `AValue` with `ADay`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `ADay` value is not within a valid range (1 till the number of days in the month) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(636\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(634\)](#), [RecodeHour \(632\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(633\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(634\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(632\)](#), [RecodeDate \(630\)](#), [RecodeTime \(635\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(630\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex89.pp`

---

**Program** `Example89`;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**



---

```

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

Var
    S : AnsiString;

Begin
    S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeDay(Now,1));
    WriteLn('This moment on the first of the month : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.108 RecodeHour

**Synopsis:** Replace hours part of a `TDateTime` value with another hour.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeHour(const AValue: TDateTime; const AHour: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeHour` replaces the Hour part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AHour`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AHour` value is not within a valid range (0..23) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeYear` (636), `RecodeMonth` (634), `RecodeDay` (631), `RecodeMinute` (633), `RecodeSecond` (634), `RecodeMilliSecond` (632), `RecodeDate` (630), `RecodeTime` (635), `RecodeDateTime` (630)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex90.pp`

---

**Program** Example90;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeHour function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**  
     Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**  
     S : AnsiString;

**Begin**  
     S:=**FormatDateTime**(Fmt,RecodeHour(**Now**,0));  
     **WriteLn**('Today, in the first hour : ',S);  
**End.**

---

#### 44.4.109 RecodeMilliSecond

**Synopsis:** Replace milliseconds part of a `TDateTime` value with another millisecond.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime; const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeMilliSecond` replaces the millisecond part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AMilliSecond`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AMilliSecond` value is not within a valid range (0..999) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(636\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(634\)](#), [RecodeDay \(631\)](#), [RecodeHour \(632\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(633\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(634\)](#), [RecodeDate \(630\)](#), [RecodeTime \(635\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(630\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex93.pp

---

**Program** Example93;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMilliSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Var**

    S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

    S := **FormatDateTime**(Fmt, **RecodeMilliSecond**(**Now**, 0));

**WriteLn**('This moment, milliseconds stripped : ', S);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.110 RecodeMinute

**Synopsis:** Replace minutes part of a `TDateTime` value with another minute.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeMinute(const AValue: TDateTime; const AMinute: Word): TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RecodeMinute` replaces the Minute part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AMinute`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AMinute` value is not within a valid range (0..59) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(636\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(634\)](#), [RecodeDay \(631\)](#), [RecodeHour \(632\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(634\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(632\)](#), [RecodeDate \(630\)](#), [RecodeTime \(635\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(630\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex91.pp

---

**Program** Example91;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMinute function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

    S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

```
S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt, RecodeMinute(Now, 0));
WriteLn('This moment in the first minute of the hour: ', S);
```

```
End.
```

---

**44.4.111 RecodeMonth**

Synopsis: Replace month part of a TDateTime value with another month.

Declaration: `function RecodeMonth(const AValue: TDateTime; const AMonth: Word): TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: RecodeMonth replaces the Month part of the timestamp AValue with AMonth. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the AMonth value is not within a valid range (1..12) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: RecodeYear (636), RecodeDay (631), RecodeHour (632), RecodeMinute (633), RecodeSecond (634), RecodeMilliSecond (632), RecodeDate (630), RecodeTime (635), RecodeDateTime (630)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex88.pp

---

**Program** Example88;

```
{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMonth function }
```

```
Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;
```

**Const**

```
Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
```

**Var**

```
S : AnsiString;
```

**Begin**

```
S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt, RecodeMonth(Now, 5));
WriteLn('This moment in May : ', S);
```

```
End.
```

---

**44.4.112 RecodeSecond**

Synopsis: Replace seconds part of a TDateTime value with another second.

Declaration: `function RecodeSecond(const AValue: TDateTime; const ASecond: Word): TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: RecodeSecond replaces the Second part of the timestamp AValue with ASecond. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the ASecond value is not within a valid range (0..59) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(636\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(634\)](#), [RecodeDay \(631\)](#), [RecodeHour \(632\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(633\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(632\)](#), [RecodeDate \(630\)](#), [RecodeTime \(635\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(630\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex92.pp

---

**Program** Example92;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S:=**FormatDateTime**(Fmt, **RecodeSecond**(**Now**, 0));

**WriteLn**('This moment, seconds stripped : ', S);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.113 RecodeTime

**Synopsis:** Replace time part of a TDateTime value with another time.

**Declaration:** function **RecodeTime**(const AValue: TDateTime; const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** **RecodeTime** replaces the time part of the timestamp AValue with the date specified in AHour, AMinute, ASecond and AMilliSecond. All other parts (the date part) of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If one of the values AHour, AMinute, ASecond, AMilliSecond is not within a valid range then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeYear \(636\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(634\)](#), [RecodeDay \(631\)](#), [RecodeHour \(632\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(633\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(634\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(632\)](#), [RecodeDate \(630\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(630\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex95.pp

---

**Program** Example95;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

---

```

S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt, RecodeTime(Now, 8, 0, 0, 0));
WriteLn('Today, 8 AM : ', S);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.114 RecodeYear

Synopsis: Replace year part of a TDateTime value with another year.

Declaration: `function RecodeYear(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `RecodeYear` replaces the year part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AYear`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the `AYear` value is not within a valid range (1..9999) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: [RecodeMonth \(634\)](#), [RecodeDay \(631\)](#), [RecodeHour \(632\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(633\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(634\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(632\)](#), [RecodeDate \(630\)](#), [RecodeTime \(635\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(630\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex87.pp

---

**Program** Example87;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

    S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

    S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt, RecodeYear(Now, 1999));

    WriteLn('This moment in 1999 : ', S);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.115 SameDate

Synopsis: Check whether two TDateTime values have the same date part.

Declaration: `function SameDate(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameDate` compares the date parts of two timestamps `A` and `B` and returns `True` if they are equal, `False` if they are not.

The function simply checks whether [CompareDate \(579\)](#) returns zero.

See also: [CompareDateTime \(580\)](#), [CompareDate \(579\)](#), [CompareTime \(581\)](#), [SameDateTime \(637\)](#), [SameTime \(638\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex102.pp

---

**Program** Example102;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**begin**

    Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is the same date as ');

    WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2), ' : ', SameDate(D1,D2));

**end**;

**Var**

    D,N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D:=Today;

    N:=Now;

    Test(D,D);

    Test(N,N);

    Test(N+1,N);

    Test(N-1,N);

    Test(N+OneSecond,N);

    Test(N-OneSecond,N);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.116 SameDateTime

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTime values have the same date and time parts.

**Declaration:** function SameDateTime(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SameDateTime compares the date/time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns True if they are equal, False if they are not.

The function simply checks whether CompareDateTime (580) returns zero.

See also: CompareDateTime (580), CompareDate (579), CompareTime (581), SameDate (636), SameTime (638)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex101.pp

---

**Program** Example101;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

---

```

Procedure Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

begin
    Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is the same datetime as ');
    WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2), ' : ', SameDateTime(D1,D2));
end;

Var
    D,N : TDateTime;

Begin
    D:=Today;
    N:=Now;
    Test(D,D);
    Test(N,N);
    Test(N+1,N);
    Test(N-1,N);
    Test(N+OneSecond,N);
    Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.117 SameTime

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTime values have the same time part.

**Declaration:** function SameTime(const A: TDateTime; const B: TDateTime) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SameTime compares the time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns True if they are equal, False if they are not.

The function simply checks whether CompareTime (581) returns zero.

**See also:** CompareDateTime (580), CompareDate (579), CompareTime (581), SameDateTime (637), SameDate (636)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex103.pp

---

**Program** Example102;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**begin**

Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is the same time as ');

WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2), ' : ', SameTime(D1,D2));

**end**;

**Var**

D,N : TDateTime;

```

Begin
  D:=Today;
  N:=Now;
  Test(D,D);
  Test(N,N);
  Test(N+1,N);
  Test(N-1,N);
  Test(N+OneSecond,N);
  Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.118 ScanDateTime

**Synopsis:** Scans a string for a TDateTime pattern and returns the date/time

**Declaration:** `function ScanDateTime(const Pattern: string; const s: string; const fmt: TFormatSettings; startpos: Integer) : tdatetime; Overload`  
`function ScanDateTime(const Pattern: string; const s: string; startpos: Integer) : tdatetime; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** ScanDateTime scans string S for the date/time pattern Pattern, starting at position StartPos (default 1). Optionally, the format settings fmt can be specified.

In effect, this function does the opposite of what FormatDateTime (1675) does. The Pattern variable must contain a valid date/time pattern: note that not all possible formatdatetime patterns can be recognized, e.g., hn cannot be detected properly.

**Errors:** In case of an error, a EConvertError (1751) exception is raised.

**See also:** FormatDateTime (1675)

#### 44.4.119 SecondOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the second part from a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** `function SecondOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SecondOf returns the second of the minute part of the AValue date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 59.

For an example, see YearOf (670)

**See also:** YearOf (670), WeekOf (658), MonthOf (626), DayOf (585), HourOf (600), MinuteOf (622), MilliSecondOf (618)

#### 44.4.120 SecondOfDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the day

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default



**Description:** `SecondOfDay` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 return 0.

For an example, see the `HourOfDay` (601) function.

See also: `SecondOfYear` (641), `SecondOfMonth` (641), `SecondOfWeek` (641), `SecondOfTheHour` (640), `SecondOfTheMinute` (640), `HourOfDay` (601), `MinuteOfDay` (622), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (618)

#### 44.4.121 `SecondOfTheHour`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the hour

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheHour` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:00.999 return 0.

For an example, see the `MinuteOfTheHour` (622) function.

See also: `SecondOfYear` (641), `SecondOfMonth` (641), `SecondOfWeek` (641), `SecondOfDay` (639), `SecondOfTheMinute` (640), `MinuteOfTheHour` (622), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (618)

#### 44.4.122 `SecondOfTheMinute`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the minute

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheMinute` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the minute (HH:MM:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:00.999 return 0.

See also: `SecondOfYear` (641), `SecondOfMonth` (641), `SecondOfWeek` (641), `SecondOfDay` (639), `SecondOfTheHour` (640), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (619)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex45.pp`

---

**Program** `Example45`;

*{ This program demonstrates the SecondOfTheMinute function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`N : TDateTime`;

**Begin**

`N:=Now`;

`WriteLn('Second of the Minute : ',SecondOfTheMinute(N));`

`WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Minute : ',`  
`MilliSecondOfTheMinute(N));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.123 SecondOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate number of seconds elapsed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheMonth` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the month (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (658) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (658), `DayOfTheMonth` (586), `HourOfTheMonth` (601), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (623), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (619)

#### 44.4.124 SecondOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheWeek` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the week (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (586) function.

See also: `SecondOfTheYear` (641), `SecondOfTheMonth` (641), `SecondOfTheDay` (639), `SecondOfTheHour` (640), `SecondOfTheMinute` (640), `DayOfTheWeek` (586), `HourOfTheWeek` (601), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (623), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (620)

#### 44.4.125 SecondOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheYear` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:00.999 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (659) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (659), `DayOfTheYear` (586), `HourOfTheYear` (602), `MinuteOfTheYear` (624), `SecondOfTheYear` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (620)

#### 44.4.126 SecondsBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole seconds between two `TDateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function SecondsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondsBetween` returns the number of whole seconds between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a second (milliseconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` ([671](#)), `MonthsBetween` ([627](#)), `WeeksBetween` ([660](#)), `DaysBetween` ([587](#)), `HoursBetween` ([602](#)), `MinutesBetween` ([624](#)), `MillisecondsBetween` ([620](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex61.pp`

---

**Program** `Example61` ;

*{ This program demonstrates the SecondsBetween function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Procedure** `Test` (`ANow`, `AThen` : `TDateTime`) ;

**begin**  
     **Write** ( 'Number of seconds between ' ) ;  
     **Write** ( **TimeToStr** ( `AThen` ) , ' and ' , **TimeToStr** ( `ANow` ) ) ;  
     **WriteLn** ( ' : ' , `SecondsBetween` ( `ANow` , `AThen` ) ) ;  
**end** ;

**Var**  
     `D1`, `D2` : `TDateTime` ;

**Begin**  
     `D1` := **Now** ;  
     `D2` := `D1` - (999 \* `OneMilliSecond`) ;  
     **Test** ( `D1` , `D2` ) ;  
     `D2` := `D1` - (1001 \* `OneMilliSecond`) ;  
     **Test** ( `D1` , `D2` ) ;  
     `D2` := `D1` - (2001 \* `OneMilliSecond`) ;  
     **Test** ( `D1` , `D2` ) ;  
     `D2` := `D1` - (5001 \* `OneMilliSecond`) ;  
     **Test** ( `D1` , `D2` ) ;  
     `D2` := `D1` - (5.4 \* `OneSecond`) ;  
     **Test** ( `D1` , `D2` ) ;  
     `D2` := `D1` - (2.5 \* `OneSecond`) ;  
     **Test** ( `D1` , `D2` ) ;

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.127 SecondSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of seconds between two `TDateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function SecondSpan` (const `ANow` : `TDateTime`; const `AThen` : `TDateTime`)  
                                     : `Double`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SecondSpan` returns the number of seconds between `ANow` and `AThen`, including any fractional parts of a second.

See also: `YearSpan` ([672](#)), `MonthSpan` ([627](#)), `WeekSpan` ([662](#)), `DaySpan` ([590](#)), `HourSpan` ([603](#)), `MinuteSpan` ([625](#)), `MilliSecondSpan` ([621](#)), `SecondsBetween` ([641](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex69.pp`

---

**Program** Example69;

*{ This program demonstrates the SecondSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write( 'Number of seconds between ');

  Write( TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));

  WriteLn( ' : ', SecondSpan(ANow, AThen));

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := Now;

  D2 := D1 - (999 \* OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (1001 \* OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (2001 \* OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (5001 \* OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (5.4 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2 := D1 - (2.5 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.128 StartOfDay

**Synopsis:** Return the start of a day as a TDateTime value, given a day indication

**Declaration:** function StartOfDay(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
                                  const ADay: Word) : TDateTime; Overload  
          function StartOfDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)  
                              : TDateTime; Overload

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfDay returns a TDateTime value with the date/time indication of the start (0:0:0.000) of the day given by AYear, AMonth, ADay.

The day may also be indicated with a AYear, ADayOfYear pair.

See also: StartOfDay (646), StartOfTheWeek (647), StartOfAWeek (644), StartOfAMonth (644), StartOfTheMonth (646), EndOfTheWeek (599), EndOfAWeek (597), EndOfTheYear (600), EndOfAYear (598), EndOfTheMonth (599), EndOfAMonth (596), EndOfTheDay (598), EndOfDay (596)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** Example38;

---

```
{ This program demonstrates the StartOfADay function }
```

```
Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;
```

```
Const
```

```
  Fmt = '"Start of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
```

```
Var
```

```
  Y,M,D : Word;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  Y:=YearOf(Today);
```

```
  M:=MonthOf(Today);
```

```
  D:=DayOf(Today);
```

```
  WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfADay(Y,M,D)));
```

```
  DecodeDateDay(Today, Y, D);
```

```
  WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfADay(Y,D)));
```

```
End.
```

---

#### 44.4.129 StartOfAMonth

Synopsis: Return first date of month, given a year/month pair.

Declaration: `function StartOfAMonth(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word)  
: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfAMonth` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of the month indicated by the `AYear`, `AMonth` pair.

See also: `StartOfTheMonth` (646), `EndOfTheMonth` (599), `EndOfAMonth` (596), `EndOfTheYear` (600), `EndOfAYear` (598), `StartOfAWeek` (644), `StartOfTheWeek` (647)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex30.pp

---

**Program** Example30;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAMonth function }
```

```
Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;
```

```
Const
```

```
  Fmt = '"First day of this month : "dd mmm yyyy';
```

```
Var
```

```
  Y,M : Word;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  Y:=YearOf(Today);
```

```
  M:=MonthOf(Today);
```

```
  WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfAMonth(Y,M)));
```

```
End.
```

---

#### 44.4.130 StartOfAWeek

Synopsis: Return a day of the week, given a year, week and day in the week.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime  
function StartOfAWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StartOfAWeek` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the indicated day of the week indicated by the `AYear`, `AWeek`, `ADayOfWeek` values.

The default value for `ADayOfWeek` is 1.

See also: `StartOfTheWeek` (647), `EndOfTheWeek` (599), `EndOfAWeek` (597), `StartOfAMonth` (644), `EndOfTheYear` (600), `EndOfAYear` (598), `EndOfTheMonth` (599), `EndOfAMonth` (596)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** Example34 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

    Fmt = '"First day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';  
    Fmt2 = '"Second day of this week : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

    Y,W : Word;

**Begin**

    Y:=YearOf(Today);  
    W:=WeekOf(Today);  
    WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt , StartOfAWeek (Y,W)));  
    WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt2 , StartOfAWeek (Y,W,2)));  
**End.**

---

#### 44.4.131 StartOfAYear

**Synopsis:** Return the first day of a given year.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfAYear(const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StartOfAYear` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of the year `AYear` (January 1).

See also: `StartOfTheYear` (647), `EndOfTheYear` (600), `EndOfAYear` (598), `EndOfTheMonth` (599), `EndOfAMonth` (596), `StartOfAWeek` (644), `StartOfTheWeek` (647)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** Example26 ;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

---

```

Const
  Fmt = '"First day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy';

Begin
  WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfAYear (YearOf (Today))));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.132 StartOfTheDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate the start of the day as a TDateTime value, given a moment in the day.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfTheDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfTheDay extracts the date part of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date/time indication of the start (0:0:0.000) of this day.

See also: StartOfADay (643), StartOfTheWeek (647), StartOfAWeek (644), StartOfAMonth (644), StartOfTheMonth (646), EndOfTheWeek (599), EndOfAWeek (597), EndOfTheYear (600), EndOfAYear (598), EndOfTheMonth (599), EndOfAMonth (596), EndOftheDay (598), EndOfADay (596)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Const
  Fmt = '"Start of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

```

```

Begin
  WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheDay (Today)));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.133 StartOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate the first day of the month, given a date in that month.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfTheMonth extracts the year and month parts of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date of the first day of that year and month as the StartOfAMonth (644) function.

See also: StartOfAMonth (644), EndOfTheYear (600), EndOfAYear (598), EndOfTheMonth (599), EndOfAMonth (596), StartOfAWeek (644), StartOfTheWeek (647)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex28.pp

---

**Program** Example28;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "First day of this month : "dd mmmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheMonth (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.134 StartOfTheWeek

Synopsis: Return the first day of the week, given a date.

**Declaration:** function StartOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

**Description:** StartOfTheWeek extracts the year and week parts of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date of the first day of that week as the StartOfAWeek (644) function.

See also: StartOfAWeek (644), EndOfTheWeek (599), EndOfAWeek (597), StartOfAMonth (644), EndOfTheYear (600), EndOfAYear (598), EndOfTheMonth (599), EndOfAMonth (596)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex32.pp

---

**Program** Example32;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "First day of this week : "dd mmmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheWeek (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.135 StartOfTheYear

Synopsis: Return the first day of the year, given a date in this year.

**Declaration:** function StartOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

**Description:** StartOfTheYear extracts the year part of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date of the first day of that year (January 1), as the StartOfAYear (645) function.

See also: StartOfAYear (645), EndOfTheYear (600), EndOfAYear (598)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex24.pp



---

```

Program Example24;

{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheYear function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Const
    Fmt = ' "First day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy ' ;

Begin
    WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfTheYear( Today )));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.136 TimeInRange

**Synopsis:** Checks whether a time value is in a given range

**Declaration:** `function TimeInRange(ATime: TTime; AStartTime: TTime; AEndTime: TTime; AInclusive: Boolean) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TimeInRange` checks whether the value `ATime` lies between `AStartTime` and `AEndTime`, and returns `True` if it is. When `AINclusive` is `True` (the default), then the limits are included. When `AINclusive` is `False`, the limits are excluded. Only the time part of the 3 parameters is considered.

**Errors:** The `AStartTime` value must be before `AEndTime`, but no check is performed.

See also: `DateInRange` ([582](#)), `DateTimeInRange` ([583](#))

#### 44.4.137 TimeOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the time part from a `TDateTime` indication.

**Declaration:** `function TimeOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TimeOf` extracts the time part from `AValue` and returns the result.

Since the `TDateTime` is actually a double with the time part encoded in the fractional part, this operation corresponds to a call to `Frac`.

See also: `DateOf` ([583](#)), `YearOf` ([670](#)), `MonthOf` ([626](#)), `DayOf` ([585](#)), `HourOf` ([600](#)), `MinuteOf` ([622](#)), `SecondOf` ([639](#)), `MilliSecondOf` ([618](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex2.pp`

---

```

Program Example2;

{ This program demonstrates the TimeOf function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Begin
    WriteIn( 'Time is : ', TimeToStr(TimeOf(Now)));
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.138 Today

Synopsis: Return the current date

Declaration: `function Today : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Today` is an alias for the `Date` (1628) function in the `sysutils` (1571) unit.

For an example, see `Yesterday` (673)

See also: `Date` (1628), `Yesterday` (673), `Tomorrow` (649)

#### 44.4.139 Tomorrow

Synopsis: Return the next day

Declaration: `function Tomorrow : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tomorrow` returns tomorrow's date. `Tomorrow` is determined from the system clock, i.e. it is `Today` (649) +1.

See also: `Today` (649), `Yesterday` (673)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19`;

*{ This program demonstrates the Tomorrow function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime( 'Today is " dd mmm yyyy ',Today));`

`WriteLn (FormatDateTime( 'Tomorrow will be " dd mmm yyyy ',Tomorrow));`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.140 TryEncodeDateDay

Synopsis: Encode a year and day of year to a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDateDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word;  
out AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEncodeDateDay` encodes the values `AYear` and `ADayOfYear` to a date value and returns this value in `AValue`.

If the encoding was successful, `True` is returned. `False` is returned if any of the arguments is not valid.

See also: `EncodeDateDay` (594), `EncodeDateTime` (594), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (594), `EncodeDateWeek` (595), `TryEncodeDateTime` (651), `TryEncodeDateMonthWeek` (650), `TryEncodeDateWeek` (651)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex84.pp`

---

**Program** Example84;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, DoY : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateDay(**Now**, Y, DoY);  
**If** TryEncodeDateDay(Y, DoY, TS) **then**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Today is : ', **DateToStr**(TS))  
**else**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Wrong year/day of year indication ');

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.141 TryEncodeDateMonthWeek

Synopsis: Encode a year, month, week of month and day of week to a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
  const AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
  const ADayOfWeek: Word;  
  out AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: TryEncodeDateMonthWeek encodes the values AYear, AMonth, AWeekOfMonth, ADayOfWeek, to a date value and returns this value in AValue.

If the encoding was successful, True is returned, False if any of the arguments is not valid.

See also: DecodeDateMonthWeek ([591](#)), EncodeDateTime ([594](#)), EncodeDateWeek ([595](#)), EncodeDateDay ([594](#)), EncodeDateMonthWeek ([594](#)), TryEncodeDateTime ([651](#)), TryEncodeDateWeek ([651](#)), TryEncodeDateDay ([649](#)), NthDayOfWeek ([628](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex86.pp

---

**Program** Example86;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, M, WoM, Dow : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateMonthWeek(**Now**, Y, M, WoM, Dow);  
**If** TryEncodeDateMonthWeek(Y, M, WoM, Dow, TS) **then**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Today is : ', **DateToStr**(TS))  
**else**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Invalid year/month/week/dow indication ');

**End.**

---

**44.4.142 TryEncodeDateTime**

**Synopsis:** Encode a Year, Month, Day, Hour, minute, seconds, milliseconds tuple to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** `function TryEncodeDateTime(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word; const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word; const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word;  
out AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EncodeDateTime encodes the values AYearAMonth, ADay,AHour, AMinute,ASecond and AMilliSecond to a date/time value and returns this value in AValue.

If the date was encoded successfully, True is returned, False is returned if one of the arguments is not valid.

**See also:** EncodeDateTime (594), EncodeDateMonthWeek (594), EncodeDateWeek (595), EncodeDateDay (594), TryEncodeDateDay (649), TryEncodeDateWeek (651), TryEncodeDateMonthWeek (650)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex80.pp

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Var**

Y,Mo,D,H,Mi,S,MS : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateTime (**Now**, Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS);  
**If** TryEncodeDateTime (Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS, TS) **then**  
    **WriteLn** ( 'Now is : ', **DateTimeToStr** (TS))  
**else**  
    **WriteLn** ( 'Wrong date/time indication ');

**End.**

---

**44.4.143 TryEncodeDateWeek**

**Synopsis:** Encode a year, week and day of week triplet to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** `function TryEncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
out AValue: TDateTime; const ADayOfWeek: Word)  
: Boolean  
function TryEncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
out AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** TryEncodeDateWeek encodes the values AYear, AWeekOfYear and ADayOfWeek to a date value and returns this value in AValue.

If the encoding was successful, True is returned. False is returned if any of the arguments is not valid.

See also: [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(595\)](#), [EncodeDateTime \(594\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(594\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(651\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(650\)](#), [TryEncodeDateDay \(649\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex82.pp

---

**Program** Example82;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,W,Dow : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateWeek(**Now**,Y,W,Dow);  
**If** TryEncodeDateWeek(Y,W,TS,Dow) **then**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Today is : ',**DateToStr**(TS))  
**else**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Invalid date/week indication ');

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.144 TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth

**Synopsis:** Encode a year, month, week, day of week triplet to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** `function TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AYear: Word;  
  const AMonth: Word;  
  const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;  
  const ADayOfWeek: Word;  
  out AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth encodes AYear, AMonth, ADayOfWeek and ANthDayOfWeek to a valid date stamp and returns the result in AValue.

ANthDayOfWeek is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third Saturday of the month.

The function returns `True` if the encoding was successful, `False` if any of the values is not in range.

See also: [NthDayOfWeek \(628\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(594\)](#), [#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek \(1633\)](#), [DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(593\)](#), [EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(595\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex106.pp

---

**Program** Example105;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,M,NDoW,DoW : Word;  
D : TDateTime;

**Begin**

---

```

DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth ( Date , Y,M,NDow,DoW) ;
If TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth (Y,M,NDow,DoW,D) then
  begin
    Write ( DateToStr (D), ' is the ',NDow, '-th ' );
    Writeln ( formatdateTime ( 'dddd',D), ' of the month.' );
  end
else
  Writeln ( 'Invalid year/month/NthDayOfWeek combination' );
End .

```

---

#### 44.4.145 TryEncodeTimeInterval

Synopsis: Try to encode an interval as a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function TryEncodeTimeInterval (Hour: Word; Min: Word; Sec: Word; MSec: Word; out Time: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: TryEncodeTimeInterval encodes a time interval expressed in Hour, Min, Sec, MSec as a TDateTime value and returns the value in Time. It returns True if Min, Sec, MSec contain valid time values (i.e. less than 60, 60 resp. MSec). The number of hours may be larger than 24.

See also: EncodeTimeInterval ([595](#))

#### 44.4.146 TryISO8601ToDate

Synopsis: Attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date/time value to a TDateTime type

Declaration: `function TryISO8601ToDate (const DateString: string; out ADateTime: TDateTime; ReturnUTC: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: TryISO8601ToDate is a Boolean function which attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date/-time value to a TDateTime type.

DateString contains the ISO 8601 date/time value converted in the function. DateString must contain one of the supported ISO 8601 date/time notations supported in the routine. It is separated into date, time, and time zone values, and is converted by calling both the TryISOStrToDateTime and TryISOTZStrToTZOffset functions. See TryISOStrToDateTime ([654](#)) for more information about supported ISO 8601 notations.

ReturnUTC indicates if the native date/time value needs to be adjusted to the UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) time zone. The default value for the argument is True, and causes GetLocalTimeOffset to be called to get and apply the time zone offset for the local computer.

ADateTime contains the native TDateTime value for the converted timestamp adjusted to the UTC time zone when ReturnUTC contains True.

Use DateToISO8601 to convert a native date/time value back to its representation in ISO 8601 notation.

See also: DateToISO8601 ([585](#))

#### 44.4.147 TryISOStrToDate

**Synopsis:** Attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date value to a `TDateTime` type

**Declaration:** `function TryISOStrToDate(const aString: string; out outDate: TDateTime)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TryISOStrToDate` is a `Boolean` function which attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date value in `aString` to a `TDateTime` type. The return value is `True` if the string is successfully converted into a native date value.

`aString` contains the date value converted in the function, and can use one of the following ISO 8601 notations :

- `YYYYMMDD`
- `YYYY-MM-DD`

`outDate` is an output parameter where the converted `TDateTime` value is stored in the function. The return value is `False` (and `outDate` is set to an empty date value) if `aString` cannot be converted in the routine. The time portion of the `TDateTime` value is not used or updated in the function.

Use `TryISOStrToTime` to convert a time value to a native `TDateTime` type.

Use `TryISOStrToDateTime` to convert a string which contains both date and time values to a `TDateTime` type.

See also: `TryISOStrToTime` ([655](#)), `TryISOStrToDateTime` ([654](#))

#### 44.4.148 TryISOStrToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date/time value to a `TDateTime` type

**Declaration:** `function TryISOStrToDateTime(const aString: string;  
out outDateTime: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TryISOStrToDateTime` is a `Boolean` function which attempts to convert an ISO 8601-formatted date/time value to a `TDateTime` type. `aString` contains the date/time value examined in the routine, and can use one of the supported ISO 8601 notations. Internally, `TryISOStrToDateTime` separates the value in `aString` into date and time parts and calls both `TryISOStrToDate` and `TryISOStrToTime`.

`outDateTime` is a `TDateTime` output parameter where the date/time value is stored in the function.

The return value is `True` if `aString` is successfully parsed and converted to a `TDateTime` type. The return value is `False` if `aString` contains a value that cannot be parsed in the function. When the return value is `False`, `outDateTime` is set to `0` (representing an empty date/time value).

Use `TryISOStrToDate` or `TryISOStrToTime` to convert a string using only a date or a time value (respectively).

Use `TryISO8601ToDate` to convert a string value which uses more intricate forms of the ISO 8601 time notation.

See also: `TryISOStrToDate` ([654](#)), `TryISOStrToTime` ([655](#)), `TryISO8601ToDate` ([653](#))

#### 44.4.149 TryISOStrToTime

**Synopsis:** Converts an ISO 8601-formatted time value to a `TDateTime` type

**Declaration:** `function TryISOStrToTime(const aString: string; out outTime: TDateTime)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TryISOStrToTime` is a `Boolean` function which attempts to convert the specified ISO 8601 time value to a `TDateTime` type. `aString` contains the ISO 8601 time value examined in the function, and can use one of the following notations:

- HHNN
- HHNNSS
- HHNNSS.ZZZ
- HH:NN
- HH:NN:SS
- HH:NN:SS.ZZZ

`aString` may contain an optional time zone designation at the end of the string value, like 'Z' for Zulu time zone or a time zone offset expressed using either positive or negative hours and minutes. For example:

- 16:00:00Z
- 12:00:00-04:00

The return value is `True` if the time value in `aString` is successfully converted in the function.

`outTime` is a `TDateTime` type used to store the time value converted in the function. When the return value is `False`, `outTime` contains 0 for an empty time value.

Use `TryISOStrToDate` to convert an ISO 8601 date value to a `TDateTime` type.

Use `TryISOStrToDateTime` to convert a string which contains both date and time values to a `TDateTime` type.

See also: `TryISOStrToDate` (654), `TryISOStrToDateTime` (654)

#### 44.4.150 TryISOTZStrToTZOffset

**Synopsis:** Attempts to convert an ISO 8601 time zone designation to an offset in minutes

**Declaration:** `function TryISOTZStrToTZOffset(const TZ: string; out TZOffset: Integer)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TryISOTZStrToTZOffset` is a `Boolean` function which attempts to convert the ISO 8601 time zone designation to a time zone offset expressed as a positive or negative number of minutes. `TZ` contains the time zone designation examined in the function. It should not contain any other portion of a date/time value using ISO 8601 notation - just the time zone designation.

`TryISOTZStrToTZOffset` recognizes the following values in the `TZ` argument:

**Z** Represents time zone Zulu (short for "Zulu time") as used by the military and in navigation. Refers to UTC (Coordinated Universal Time), formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time.



$\pm$ HHNN or  $\pm$ HH:NN time zone designation expressed as a positive or negative number of hours and minutes for a given time value.

TZOffset is an Integer updated to contains the number of minutes needed to adjust a time value for a given time zone back to UTC (Zulu time). The hour and minute component values in TZ are converted to minutes and complemented (multiplied by -1) to derive the offset value. The derived value in TZOffset is 0 when TZ contains Zulu time, an empty string (""), or cannot be converted successfully.

The return value is True if the time zone designation in TZ is successfully converted to a time zone offset.

Use ISOTZStrToTZOffset to convert the time zone designation and raise an exception for an invalid time zone designation.

See also: ISOTZStrToTZOffset ([577](#))

#### 44.4.151 TryJulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Julian date representation to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: 

```
function TryJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double;
                                out ADateTime: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: Try to convert a Julian date to a regular TDateTime date/time representation.

See also: DateTimeToJulianDate ([584](#)), JulianDateToDateTime ([617](#)), DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate ([584](#)), TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime ([656](#))

#### 44.4.152 TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a modified Julian date representation to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: 

```
function TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double;
                                         out ADateTime: TDateTime)
                                         : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: DateTimeToJulianDate ([584](#)), JulianDateToDateTime ([617](#)), TryJulianDateToDateTime ([656](#)), DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate ([584](#)), ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime ([626](#))

#### 44.4.153 TryRecodeDateTime

Synopsis: Replace selected parts of a TDateTime value with other values

Declaration: 

```
function TryRecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word;
                           const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word;
                           const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word;
                           const ASecond: Word;
                           const AMilliSecond: Word;
                           out AResult: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TryRecodeDateTime` replaces selected parts of the timestamp `AValue` with the date/time values specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`. If any of these values equals the predefined constant `RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs` (578), then the corresponding part of the date/time stamp is left untouched.

The resulting date/time is returned in `AValue`.

The function returns `True` if the encoding was successful. It returns `False` if one of the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` or `AMilliSecond` is not within a valid range.

See also: `RecodeYear` (636), `RecodeMonth` (634), `RecodeDay` (631), `RecodeHour` (632), `RecodeMinute` (633), `RecodeSecond` (634), `RecodeMilliSecond` (632), `RecodeDate` (630), `RecodeTime` (635), `RecodeDateTime` (630)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex97.pp`

---

**Program** `Example97`;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryRecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

**Var**

`S : AnsiString;`

`D : TDateTime ;`

**Begin**

`If TryRecodeDateTime(Now,2000,2,RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs,0,0,0,0,D) then`  
`begin`

`S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,D);`

`WriteLn('This moment in februari 2000 : ',S);`

`end`

`else`

`WriteLn('This moment did/does not exist in februari 2000');`

`End.`

---

#### 44.4.154 UniversalTimeToLocal

**Synopsis:** Convert UTC time to local time

**Declaration:** `function UniversalTimeToLocal(UT: TDateTime) : TDateTime`  
`function UniversalTimeToLocal(UT: TDateTime; TZOffset: Integer)`  
`: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UniversalTimeToLocal` converts a universal time indication to a local time: it applies the `TZOffset` time zone offset to the UT Universal time (UTC). If no `TZOffset` is specified, the local time offset as returned by `GetLocalTimeOffset` (577) is used.

Note that for times in the past or in the future, or for time zones with DST, omitting the `TZOffset` may lead to wrong results, as the current time zone offset is used. Calculation of the correct time zone offset for a given date is very complicated, and outside the scope of this call.

See also: [GetLocalTimeOffset \(577\)](#), [LocalTimeToUniversal \(617\)](#)

#### 44.4.155 UnixTimeStampToMac

Synopsis: Convert Unix Timestamp to a Mac Timestamp

Declaration: `function UnixTimeStampToMac(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnixTimeStampToMac` converts the UNIX epoch time in `AValue` to a valid Mac timestamp indication and returns the result.

Errors: None.

See also: [DateTimeToMac \(584\)](#), [MacToDateTime \(617\)](#), [MacTimeStampToUnix \(617\)](#)

#### 44.4.156 UnixToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert Unix epoch time to a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `function UnixToDateTime(const AValue: Int64; aReturnUTC: Boolean) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnixToDateTime` converts epoch time (seconds elapsed since 1/1/1970) to a `TDateTime` value.

See also: [DateTimeToUnix \(585\)](#)

#### 44.4.157 WeekOf

Synopsis: Extract week (of the year) from a given date.

Declaration: `function WeekOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeekOf` returns the week-of-the-year part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 53.

For an example, see [YearOf \(670\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(670\)](#), [DayOf \(585\)](#), [MonthOf \(626\)](#), [HourOf \(600\)](#), [MinuteOf \(622\)](#), [SecondOf \(639\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(618\)](#)

#### 44.4.158 WeekOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Extract the week of the month (and optionally month and year) from a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `function WeekOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word; Overload  
function WeekOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word;  
out AMonth: Word) : Word; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WeekOfTheMonth` extracts the week of the month from `AValue` and returns it, and optionally returns the year and month as well (in `AYear`, `AMonth` respectively).

**Remark** Note that weeks are numbered from 1 using the ISO 8601 standard, and the day of the week as well. This means that the year and month may not be the same as the year part of the date, since the week may start in the previous year as the first week of the year is the week with at least 4 days in it.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (659), `DayOfTheMonth` (586), `HourOfTheMonth` (601), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (623), `SecondOfTheMonth` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (619)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`N` : `TDateTime`;

**Begin**

`N:=Now`;

`WriteLn` ('Week of the Month : ', `WeekOfTheMonth(N)`);

`WriteLn` ('Day of the Month : ', `DayOfTheMonth(N)`);

`WriteLn` ('Hour of the Month : ', `HourOfTheMonth(N)`);

`WriteLn` ('Minute of the Month : ', `MinuteOfTheMonth(N)`);

`WriteLn` ('Second of the Month : ', `SecondOfTheMonth(N)`);

`WriteLn` ('MilliSecond of the Month : ',  
          `MilliSecondOfTheMonth(N)`);

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.159 WeekOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Extract the week of the year (and optionally year) of a `TDateTime` indication.

**Declaration:** `function WeekOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word; Overload`  
`function WeekOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime; out AYear: Word) : Word`  
`; Overload`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `WeekOfTheYear` extracts the week of the year from `AValue` and returns it, and optionally returns the year as well. It returns the same value as `WeekOf` (658).

**Remark** Note that weeks are numbered from 1 using the ISO 8601 standard, and the day of the week as well. This means that the year may not be the same as the year part of the date, since the week may start in the previous year as the first week of the year is the week with at least 4 days in it.

See also: `WeekOf` (658), `MonthOfTheYear` (626), `DayOfTheYear` (586), `HourOfTheYear` (602), `MinuteOfTheYear` (624), `SecondOfTheYear` (641), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (620)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex40.pp`

---

**Program** `Example40`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```
N:=Now;
WriteLn('Month of the year      : ', MonthOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn('Week of the year       : ', WeekOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn('Day of the year        : ', DayOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn('Hour of the year       : ', HourOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn('Minute of the year      : ', MinuteOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn('Second of the year      : ', SecondOfTheYear(N));
WriteLn('MilliSecond of the year : ',
      MilliSecondOfTheYear(N));
```

**End.**

#### 44.4.160 WeeksBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole weeks between two TDateTime values

**Declaration:** function WeeksBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Integer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** WeeksBetween returns the number of whole weeks between ANow and AThen. This means the fractional part of a Week is dropped.

**See also:** YearsBetween (671), MonthsBetween (627), DaysBetween (587), HoursBetween (602), MinutesBetween (624), SecondsBetween (641), MilliSecondsBetween (620)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex57.pp

**Program** Example57;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```
Write('Number of weeks between ');
Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', WeeksBetween(ANow, AThen));
end;
```

**Var**

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```
D1:=Today;
D2:=Today-7;
Test(D1, D2);
D2:=Today-8;
Test(D1, D2);
```

---

```

D2:=Today-14;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-35;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-36;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-17;
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.161 WeeksInAYear

Synopsis: Return the number of weeks in a given year

Declaration: `function WeeksInAYear(const AYear: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeeksInAYear` returns the number of weeks in the year `AYear`. The return value is either 52 or 53.

**Remark** The first week of the year is determined according to the ISO 8601 standard: It is the first week that has at least 4 days in it, i.e. it includes a Thursday.

See also: `WeeksInYear` ([661](#)), `DaysInYear` ([589](#)), `DaysInAYear` ([588](#)), `DaysInMonth` ([589](#)), `DaysInAMonth` ([588](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** `Example13;`

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksInAYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`Y : Word;`

**Begin**

`For Y:=1992 to 2010 do`

`Writeln(Y, ' has ', WeeksInAYear(Y), ' weeks. ');`

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.162 WeeksInYear

Synopsis: return the number of weeks in the year, given a date

Declaration: `function WeeksInYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeeksInYear` returns the number of weeks in the year part of `AValue`. The return value is either 52 or 53.

**Remark** The first week of the year is determined according to the ISO 8601 standard: It is the first week that has at least 4 days in it, i.e. it includes a Thursday.

See also: [WeeksInAYear \(661\)](#), [DaysInYear \(589\)](#), [DaysInAYear \(588\)](#), [DaysInMonth \(589\)](#), [DaysInAMonth \(588\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex12.pp

---

**Program** Example12;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksInYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

WriteLn(Y, ' has ', WeeksInYear(EncodeDate(Y,2,1)), ' weeks. ');

**End.**

---

### 44.4.163 WeekSpan

Synopsis: Calculate the approximate number of weeks between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** function WeekSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Double

Visibility: default

**Description:** WeekSpan returns the number of weeks between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a week.

See also: [YearSpan \(672\)](#), [MonthSpan \(627\)](#), [DaySpan \(590\)](#), [HourSpan \(603\)](#), [MinuteSpan \(625\)](#), [SecondSpan \(642\)](#), [MilliSecondSpan \(621\)](#), [WeeksBetween \(660\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex65.pp

---

**Program** Example57;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

Write('Number of weeks between ');

Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));

WriteLn(' : ', WeekSpan(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

**Var**

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

D1:=Today;

D2:=Today-7;

Test(D1, D2);

```

D2:=Today-8;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-14;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-35;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-36;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-17;
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.164 WithinPastDays

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of days apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastDays(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const ADays: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastDays` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `ADays` days apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `DaysBetween` (587) function to calculate the difference in days, this means that fractional days do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half days apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (669), `WithinPastMonths` (667), `WithinPastWeeks` (669), `WithinPastHours` (664), `WithinPastMinutes` (666), `WithinPastSeconds` (668), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (665)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex50.pp

---

**Program** Example50;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastDays function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; ADays : Integer);

**begin**

  Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

  Write(' are within ', ADays, ' days: ');

  WriteLn(WithinPastDays(ANow, AThen, ADays));

**end;**

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=Now;

  D2:=Today-23/24;

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  D2:=Today-1;

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  D2:=Today-25/24;

  Test(D1, D2, 1);



```

D2:=Today-26/24;
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=Today-5.4;
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=Today-2.5;
Test(D1,D2,1);
Test(D1,D2,2);
Test(D1,D2,3);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.165 WithinPastHours

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of hours apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastHours(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AHours: Int64) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastHours` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AHours` hours apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `HoursBetween` (602) function to calculate the difference in Hours, this means that fractional hours do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half hours apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (669), `WithinPastMonths` (667), `WithinPastWeeks` (669), `WithinPastDays` (663), `WithinPastMinutes` (666), `WithinPastSeconds` (668), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (665)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex51.pp`

---

**Program** `Example51` ;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastHours function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow,AThen : TDateTime; AHours : Integer);`

**begin**

`Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));`

`Write(' are within ', AHours, ' hours: ');`

`WriteLn( WithinPastHours(ANow, AThen, AHours));`

**end;**

**Var**

`D1,D2 : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`D1:=Now;`

`D2:=D1-(59*OneMinute);`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`D2:=D1-(61*OneMinute);`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`D2:=D1-(122*OneMinute);`

`Test(D1,D2,1);`

`D2:=D1-(306*OneMinute);`

`Test(D1,D2,5);`

```

D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2,1);
Test(D1,D2,2);
Test(D1,D2,3);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.166 WithinPastMilliseconds

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of milliseconds apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastMilliseconds(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AMilliseconds: Int64) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastMilliseconds` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMilliseconds` milliseconds apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `MillisecondsBetween` (620) function to calculate the difference in milliseconds, this means that fractional milliseconds do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half milliseconds apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (669), `WithinPastMonths` (667), `WithinPastWeeks` (669), `WithinPastDays` (663), `WithinPastHours` (664), `WithinPastMinutes` (666), `WithinPastSeconds` (668)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** `Example54`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMilliseconds function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMilliseconds : Integer);`

```

begin
  Write( TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
  Write( ' are within ', AMilliseconds, ' milliseconds: ');
  WriteLn( WithinPastMilliseconds(ANow, AThen, AMilliseconds));
end;

```

**Var**  
D1, D2 : TDateTime;

```

Begin
  D1:=Now;
  D2:=D1-(0.9*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2,1);
  D2:=D1-(1.0*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2,1);
  D2:=D1-(1.1*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2,1);
  D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1,D2,1);

```

```

    Test(D1,D2,2);
    Test(D1,D2,3);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.167 WithinPastMinutes

Synopsis: Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of minutes apart

Declaration: `function WithinPastMinutes(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime; const AMinutes: Int64)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WithinPastMinutes` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMinutes` minutes apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `MinutesBetween` (624) function to calculate the difference in Minutes, this means that fractional minutes do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half minutes apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (669), `WithinPastMonths` (667), `WithinPastWeeks` (669), `WithinPastDays` (663), `WithinPastHours` (664), `WithinPastSeconds` (668), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (665)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex52.pp`

---

**Program** `Example52;`

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMinutes function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMinutes : Integer);`

```

begin
  Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));
  Write(' are within ', AMinutes, ' Minutes: ');
  WriteLn(WithinPastMinutes(ANow, AThen, AMinutes));
end;

```

**Var**

`D1, D2 : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

```

D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(59*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(61*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(122*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(306*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=D1-(5.4*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2,1);
Test(D1,D2,2);

```

```

    Test(D1,D2,3);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.168 WithinPastMonths

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of months apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastMonths(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime; const AMonths: Integer)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastMonths` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMonths` months apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `MonthsBetween` (627) function to calculate the difference in Months, this means that fractional months do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half months apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (669), `WithinPastWeeks` (669), `WithinPastDays` (663), `WithinPastHours` (664), `WithinPastMinutes` (666), `WithinPastSeconds` (668), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (665)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** `Example48;`

```
{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMonths function }
```

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMonths : Integer);`

```
begin
  Write( DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  Write( ' are within ', AMonths, ' months: ');
  Writeln( WithinPastMonths(ANow, AThen, AMonths));
end;
```

**Var**  
`D1, D2 : TDateTime;`

```
Begin
  D1:=Today;
  D2:=Today-364;
  Test(D1,D2,12);
  D2:=Today-365;
  Test(D1,D2,12);
  D2:=Today-366;
  Test(D1,D2,12);
  D2:=Today-390;
  Test(D1,D2,12);
  D2:=Today-368;
  Test(D1,D2,11);
  D2:=Today-1000;
  Test(D1,D2,31);
  Test(D1,D2,32);
  Test(D1,D2,33);
```

---

End.

---

#### 44.4.169 WithinPastSeconds

Synopsis: Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of seconds apart

Declaration: `function WithinPastSeconds(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime; const ASeconds: Int64)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WithinPastSeconds` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `ASeconds` seconds apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `SecondsBetween` (641) function to calculate the difference in seconds, this means that fractional seconds do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half seconds apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (669), `WithinPastMonths` (667), `WithinPastWeeks` (669), `WithinPastDays` (663), `WithinPastHours` (664), `WithinPastMinutes` (666), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (665)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex53.pp

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastSeconds function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; ASeconds : Integer);

**begin**

  Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

  Write(' are within ', ASeconds, ' seconds: ');

  WriteLn(WithinPastSeconds(ANow, AThen, ASeconds));

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1 := Now;

  D2 := D1 - (999 \* OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  D2 := D1 - (1001 \* OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  D2 := D1 - (2001 \* OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  D2 := D1 - (5001 \* OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 5);

  D2 := D1 - (5.4 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 5);

  D2 := D1 - (2.5 \* OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

  Test(D1, D2, 2);

  Test(D1, D2, 3);

**End.**

---

**44.4.170 WithinPastWeeks**

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of weeks apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastWeeks(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AWeeks: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastWeeks` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AWeeks` weeks apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `WeeksBetween` (660) function to calculate the difference in Weeks, this means that fractional Weeks do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half weeks apart, the result will also be `True`

**See also:** `WithinPastYears` (669), `WithinPastMonths` (667), `WithinPastDays` (663), `WithinPastHours` (664), `WithinPastMinutes` (666), `WithinPastSeconds` (668), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (665)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex49.pp`

**Program** Example49;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastWeeks function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AWeeks : Integer);

**begin**

    Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));

    Write(' are within ', AWeeks, ' weeks: ');

    WriteLn(WithinPastWeeks(ANow, AThen, AWeeks));

**end;**

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1 := Today;

    D2 := Today - 7;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 8;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 14;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    D2 := Today - 35;

    Test(D1, D2, 5);

    D2 := Today - 36;

    Test(D1, D2, 5);

    D2 := Today - 17;

    Test(D1, D2, 1);

    Test(D1, D2, 2);

    Test(D1, D2, 3);

**End.**

**44.4.171 WithinPastYears**

**Synopsis:** Check whether two TDateTimes are only a number of years apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastYears(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AYears: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastYears` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AYears` years apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark** Since this function uses the `YearsBetween` (671) function to calculate the difference in years, this means that fractional years do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half years apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastMonths` (667), `WithinPastWeeks` (669), `WithinPastDays` (663), `WithinPastHours` (664), `WithinPastMinutes` (666), `WithinPastSeconds` (668), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (665)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex47.pp`

---

**Program** Example47;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastYears function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AYears : Integer);

**begin**  
    **Write**(**DateToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr**(ANow));  
    **Write**( ' are within ', AYears, ' years: ');  
    **WriteLn**( **WithinPastYears**(ANow, AThen, AYears));  
**end**;

**Var**  
    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**  
    D1 := Today;  
    D2 := Today - 364;  
    Test(D1, D2, 1);  
    D2 := Today - 365;  
    Test(D1, D2, 1);  
    D2 := Today - 366;  
    Test(D1, D2, 1);  
    D2 := Today - 390;  
    Test(D1, D2, 1);  
    D2 := Today - 368;  
    Test(D1, D2, 1);  
    D2 := Today - 1000;  
    Test(D1, D2, 1);  
    Test(D1, D2, 2);  
    Test(D1, D2, 3);  
**End.**

---

#### 44.4.172 YearOf

**Synopsis:** Extract the year from a given date.

**Declaration:** `function YearOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `YearOf` returns the year part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 9999.

See also: `MonthOf` (626), `DayOf` (585), `WeekOf` (658), `HourOf` (600), `MinuteOf` (622), `SecondOf` (639), `MilliSecondOf` (618)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `Example23`;

*{ This program demonstrates the YearOf function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`D` : `TDateTime`;

**Begin**

`D:=Now`;

`WriteLn` ( 'Year : ', `YearOf(D)` );

`WriteLn` ( 'Month : ', `MonthOf(D)` );

`WriteLn` ( 'Day : ', `DayOf(D)` );

`WriteLn` ( 'Week : ', `WeekOf(D)` );

`WriteLn` ( 'Hour : ', `HourOf(D)` );

`WriteLn` ( 'Minute : ', `MinuteOf(D)` );

`WriteLn` ( 'Second : ', `SecondOf(D)` );

`WriteLn` ( 'MilliSecond : ', `MilliSecondOf(D)` );

**End.**

---

#### 44.4.173 YearsBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole years between two `TDateTime` values

**Declaration:** `function YearsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime; AExact: Boolean) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `YearsBetween` returns the number of whole years between `ANow` and `AThen`. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 365.25 per year (average over 4 years). This means the fractional part of a year is dropped.

See also: `MonthsBetween` (627), `WeeksBetween` (660), `DaysBetween` (587), `HoursBetween` (602), `MinutesBetween` (624), `SecondsBetween` (641), `MillisecondsBetween` (620), `YearSpan` (672)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex55.pp`

---

**Program** `Example55`;

*{ This program demonstrates the YearsBetween function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime)`;



---

```

begin
  Write( 'Number of years between ');
  Write( DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn( ' : ', YearsBetween(ANow, AThen));
end;

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

Begin
  D1 := Today;
  D2 := Today - 364;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 365;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 366;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 390;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 368;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 1000;
  Test(D1, D2);
End.

```

---

#### 44.4.174 YearSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of years between two TDateTime values.

**Declaration:** `function YearSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** YearSpan returns the number of years between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a year. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 365.25 per year (average over 4 years).

See also: MonthSpan ([627](#)), WeekSpan ([662](#)), DaySpan ([590](#)), HourSpan ([603](#)), MinuteSpan ([625](#)), SecondSpan ([642](#)), MilliSecondSpan ([621](#)), YearsBetween ([671](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex63.pp

---

**Program** Example63;

*{ This program demonstrates the YearSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

```

begin
  Write( 'Number of years between ');
  Write( DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn( ' : ', YearSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

---

```
Var
  D1,D2 : TDateTime;
```

```
Begin
  D1:=Today;
  D2:=Today-364;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-365;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-366;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-390;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-368;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-1000;
  Test(D1,D2);
End.
```

---

#### 44.4.175 Yesterday

Synopsis: Return the previous day.

Declaration: `function Yesterday : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Yesterday` returns yesterday's date. Yesterday is determined from the system clock, i.e. it is `Today (649) -1`.

See also: `Today (649)`, `Tomorrow (649)`

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** Example18;

*{ This program demonstrates the Yesterday function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```
Begin
  WriteLn(FormatDateTime(' "Today is " dd mmm yyyy ',Today));
  WriteLn(FormatDateTime(' "Yesterday was " dd mmm yyyy ',Yesterday));
End.
```

---

## Chapter 45

# Reference for unit 'Dos'

### 45.1 Used units

Table 45.1: Used units by unit 'Dos'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">137</a>

### 45.2 Overview

The DOS unit gives access to some operating system calls related to files, the file system, date and time. Except for the PalmOS target, this unit is available to all supported platforms.

The unit was first written for Dos by Florian Klaempfl. It was ported to Linux by Mark May and enhanced by Michael Van Canneyt. The Amiga version was ported by Nils Sjöholm.

Under non-DOS systems, some of the functionality is lost, as it is either impossible or meaningless to implement it. Other than that, the functionality is the same for all operating systems.

Because the DOS unit is a Turbo Pascal compatibility unit, it is no longer actively developed: the interface is frozen and it is maintained only for the purpose of porting Turbo Pascal programs. For new development, it is recommended to use the sysutils ([1571](#)) unit instead.

### 45.3 System information

Functions for retrieving and setting general system information such as date and time.

Table 45.2:

Name	Description
DosVersion (1)	Get OS version
GetCBreak (688)	Get setting of control-break handling flag
GetDate (689)	Get system date
GetIntVec (691)	Get interrupt vector status
GetTime (693)	Get system time
GetVerify (693)	Get verify flag
Intr (694)	Execute an interrupt
Keep (694)	Keep process in memory and exit
MSDos (694)	Execute MS-Dos function call
PackTime (695)	Pack time for file time
SetCBreak (695)	Set control-break handling flag
SetDate (696)	Set system date
SetIntVec (697)	Set interrupt vectors
SetTime (697)	Set system time
SetVerify (697)	Set verify flag
SwapVectors (698)	Swap interrupt vectors
UnPackTime (698)	Unpack file time

## 45.4 Process handling

Functions to handle process information and starting new processes.

Table 45.3:

Name	Description
DosExitCode (1)	Exit code of last executed program
EnvCount (684)	Return number of environment variables
EnvStr (684)	Return environment string pair
Exec (685)	Execute program
GetEnv (689)	Return specified environment string

## 45.5 Directory and disk handling

Routines to handle disk information.

Table 45.4:

Name	Description
AddDisk (680)	Add disk to list of disks (UNIX only)
DiskFree (681)	Return size of free disk space
DiskSize (682)	Return total disk size

## 45.6 File handling

Routines to handle files on disk.

Table 45.5:

Name	Description
FExpand (685)	Expand filename to full path
FindClose (685)	Close finfirst/findnext session
FindFirst (686)	Start find of file
FindNext (687)	Find next file
FSearch (687)	Search for file in a path
FSplit (688)	Split filename in parts
GetFAttr (690)	Return file attributes
GetFTime (691)	Return file time
GetLongName (692)	Convert short filename to long filename (DOS only)
GetShortName (692)	Convert long filename to short filename (DOS only)
SetFAttr (696)	Set file attributes
SetFTime (697)	Set file time

## 45.7 File open mode constants.

These constants are used in the `Mode` field of the `TextRec` record. Gives information on the file-mode of the text I/O. For their definitions consult the following table:

Table 45.6: Possible mode constants

Constant	Description	Value
<code>fmclosed</code>	File is closed	<code>\$D7B0</code>
<code>fminput</code>	File is read only	<code>\$D7B1</code>
<code>fmoutput</code>	File is write only	<code>\$D7B2</code>
<code>fminout</code>	File is read and write	<code>\$D7B3</code>

## 45.8 File attributes

The File Attribute constants are used in `FindFirst` (686), `FindNext` (687) to determine what type of special file to search for in addition to normal files. These flags are also used in the `SetFAttr` (696) and `GetFAttr` (690) routines to set and retrieve attributes of files. For their definitions consult `fileattributes` (676).

Table 45.7: Possible file attributes

Constant	Description	Value
readonly	Read-Only file attribute	\$01
hidden	Hidden file attribute	\$02
sysfile	System file attribute	\$04
volumeid	Volume ID file attribute	\$08
directory	Directory file attribute	\$10
archive	Archive file attribute	\$20
anyfile	Match any file attribute	\$3F

## 45.9 Constants, types and variables

### 45.9.1 Constants

`anyfile` = \$3F

Match any file attribute

`archive` = \$20

Archive file attribute

`directory` = \$10

Directory file attribute

`fauxiliary` = \$0010

CPU auxiliary flag. Not used.

`fcarry` = \$0001

CPU carry flag. Not used.

`FileNameLen` = 255

Maximum length of a filename

`fmclosed` = \$D7B0

File is closed

`fminout` = \$D7B3

File is read and write

`fminput` = \$D7B1

File is read only

`fmoutput = $D7B2`

File is write only

`foverflow = $0800`

CPU overflow flag. Not used.

`fparity = $0004`

CPU parity flag. Not used.

`fsign = $0080`

CPU sign flag. Not used.

`fzero = $0040`

CPU zero flag. Not used.

`hidden = $02`

Hidden file attribute

`readonly = $01`

Read-Only file attribute

`sysfile = $04`

System file attribute

`volumeid = $08`

Volume ID file attribute

### **45.9.2 Types**

`ComStr = string`

Command-line string type

`DirStr = string`

Full directory string type.

`ExtStr = string`

Filename extension string type.

```
NameStr = string
```

Full filename string type.

```
PathStr = string
```

Full File path string type.

```
Registers = packed record
case i : Integer of
0: (
  ax : Word;
  f1 : Word;
  bx : Word;
  f2 : Word;
  cx : Word;
  f3 : Word;
  dx : Word;
  f4 : Word;
  bp : Word;
  f5 : Word;
  si : Word;
  f51 : Word;
  di : Word;
  f6 : Word;
  ds : Word;
  f7 : Word;
  es : Word;
  f8 : Word;
  flags : Word;
  fs : Word;
  gs : Word
  ;
);
1: (
  al : Byte;
  ah : Byte;
  f9 : Byte;
  f10 : Byte;
  bl
  : Byte;
  bh : Byte;
  f11 : Byte;
  f12 : Byte;
  cl : Byte;
  ch
  : Byte;
  f13 : Byte;
  f14 : Byte;
  dl : Byte;
  dh : Byte;
```



```
);
  2: (
    eax : LongInt;
    ebx : LongInt;
    ecx : LongInt;
    edx : LongInt
  ;
    ebp : LongInt;
    esi : LongInt;
    edi : LongInt;
  );
end
```

This structure is only defined on a i386 compatible 32-bit platform, and is not used anywhere: it is defined for Turbo Pascal backwards compatibility only.

### 45.9.3 Variables

`DosError` : Integer

The `DosError` variable is used by the procedures in the `Dos` unit to report errors. It can have the following values :

Table 45.8: Dos error codes

Value	Meaning
2	File not found.
3	Path not found.
5	Access denied.
6	Invalid handle.
8	Not enough memory.
10	Invalid environment.
11	Invalid format.
18	No more files.

Other values are possible, but are not documented.

## 45.10 Procedures and functions

### 45.10.1 AddDisk

**Synopsis:** Add disk definition to list if drives (Unix only)

**Declaration:** `function AddDisk(const path: string) : Byte`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AddDisk` adds a filename `S` to the internal list of disks. It is implemented for systems which do not use DOS type drive letters. This list is used to determine which disks to use in the `DiskFree` (681) and `DiskSize` (682) calls. The `DiskFree` (681) and `DiskSize` (682) functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. The names are added sequentially. The `Dos` initialization code presets the first three disks to:

- ' .' for the current drive,
- '/fd0/ .' for the first floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/fd1/ .' for the second floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/' for the first hard disk.

The first call to `AddDisk` will therefore add a name for the second harddisk, The second call for the third drive, and so on until 23 drives have been added (corresponding to drives 'D:' to 'Z:')

Errors: None

See also: `DiskFree` (681), `DiskSize` (682)

### 45.10.2 DiskFree

Synopsis: Get free size on Disk.

Declaration: `function DiskFree(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskFree` returns the number of free bytes on a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy a:, 2 for floppy b:, etc. A value of 0 returns the free space on the current drive.

**Remark** For Unices: The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the `Dos` unit, and have been preset to :

- ' .' for the current drive,
- '/fd0/ .' for the first floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/fd1/ .' for the second floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/' for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk` (680) procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

Errors: -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid drive number is given.

See also: `DiskSize` (682), `AddDisk` (680)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;  
**uses** Dos;

*{ Program to demonstrate the DiskSize and DiskFree function. }*

**begin**  
  **WriteLn**('This partition size has ', **DiskSize**(0), ' bytes');  
  **WriteLn**('Currently ', **DiskFree**(0), ' bytes are free');  
**end.**

---

### 45.10.3 DiskSize

Synopsis: Get total size of disk.

Declaration: `function DiskSize(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskSize` returns the total size (in bytes) of a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy a:, 2 for floppy b:, etc. A value of 0 returns the size of the current drive.

**Remark** For Unix only: The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the Dos unit, and have been preset to :

- ' .' for the current drive,
- '/fd0/ .' for the first floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/fd1/ .' for the second floppy-drive (Linux only).
- '/' for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk` (680) procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

For an example, see `DiskFree` (681).

Errors: -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid drive number is given.

See also: `DiskFree` (681), `AddDisk` (680)

### 45.10.4 DosExitCode

Synopsis: Exit code of last executed program.

Declaration: `function DosExitCode : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosExitCode` contains (in the low byte) the exit-code of a program executed with the `Exec` call.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exec` (685)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the Exec and DosExitCode function. }

begin
  {$IFDEF Unix}
    WriteLn( 'Executing /bin/ls -la ');
    Exec( '/bin/ls ', '-la ');
  {$ELSE}
    WriteLn( 'Executing Dir ');
    Exec( GetEnv( 'COMSPEC' ), '/C dir ');
  {$ENDIF}
  WriteLn( 'Program returned with ExitCode ', Lo(DosExitCode));
end.

```

---

### 45.10.5 DosVersion

Synopsis: Current OS version

Declaration: `function DosVersion : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosVersion` returns the operating system or kernel version. The low byte contains the major version number, while the high byte contains the minor version number.

**Remark** On systems where versions consists of more then two numbers, only the first two numbers will be returned. For example Linux version 2.1.76 will give you `DosVersion` 2.1. Some operating systems, such as FreeBSD, do not have system calls to return the kernel version, in that case a value of 0 will be returned.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex1.pp`

---

```

Program Example1;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the DosVersion function. }

var
    OS      : string[32];
    Version : word;
begin
    {$IFDEF LINUX}
        OS:= 'Linux';
    {$ENDIF}
    {$ifdef FreeBSD}
        OS:= 'FreeBSD';
    {$endif}
    {$ifdef NetBSD}
        OS:= 'NetBSD';
    {$endif}
    {$ifdef Solaris}
        OS:= 'Solaris';
    {$endif}
    {$ifdef QNX}
        OS:= 'QNX';
    {$endif}

    {$IFDEF DOS}
        OS:= 'Dos';
    {$ENDIF}
    Version:=DosVersion;
    WriteLn('Current ',OS,' version is ',Lo(Version),'.',Hi(Version));
end.

```

---

### 45.10.6 DTToUnixDate

Synopsis: Convert a `DateTime` to Unix timestamp

Declaration: `function DTToUnixDate(DT: DateTime) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DTToUnixDate` converts the `DateTime` value in `DT` to a Unix timestamp. It is an internal function, implemented on Unix platforms, and should not be used.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `UnixDateToDT` (698), `PackTime` (695), `UnpackTime` (698), `GetTime` (693), `SetTime` (697)

### 45.10.7 EnvCount

**Synopsis:** Return the number of environment variables

**Declaration:** `function EnvCount : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EnvCount` returns the number of environment variables.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `EnvStr` (684), `GetEnv` (689)

### 45.10.8 EnvStr

**Synopsis:** Return environment variable by index

**Declaration:** `function EnvStr(Index: LongInt) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EnvStr` returns the `Index`-th `Name=Value` pair from the list of environment variables. The index of the first pair is zero.

**Errors:** The length is limited to 255 characters.

**See also:** `EnvCount` (684), `GetEnv` (689)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** Example13;

**uses** Dos;

*{ Program to demonstrate the EnvCount and EnvStr function. }*

**var**

*i* : Longint;

**begin**

    WriteLn('Current Environment is:');

**for** *i*:=1 **to** EnvCount **do**

        WriteLn(EnvStr(*i*));

**end.**

---

### 45.10.9 Exec

Synopsis: Execute another program, and wait for it to finish.

Declaration: `procedure Exec(const path: PathStr; const comline: ComStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exec` executes the program in `Path`, with the options given by `ComLine`. The program name should *not* appear again in `ComLine`, it is specified in `Path`. `Comline` contains only the parameters that are passed to the program.

After the program has terminated, the procedure returns. The Exit value of the program can be consulted with the `DosExitCode` function.

For an example, see `DosExitCode` (1)

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `DosExitCode` (1)

### 45.10.10 FExpand

Synopsis: Expand a relative path to an absolute path

Declaration: `function FExpand(const path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FExpand` takes its argument and expands it to a complete filename, i.e. a filename starting from the root directory of the current drive, prepended with the drive-letter or volume name (when supported).

**Remark** On case sensitive file systems (such as Unix and Linux), the resulting name is left as it is, otherwise it is converted to uppercase.

Errors: `FSplit` (688)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** `Example11`;  
**uses** `Dos`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FExpand function. }*

**begin**

**WriteLn**( 'Expanded Name of this program is ', `FExpand(ParamStr(0))` );  
**end**.

---

### 45.10.11 FindClose

Synopsis: Dispose resources allocated by a `FindFirst` (686)/`FindNext` (687) sequence.

Declaration: `procedure FindClose(var f: SearchRec)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindClose` frees any resources associated with the search record `F`.

This call is needed to free any internal resources allocated by the `FindFirst` (686) or `FindNext` (687) calls.

The Unix implementation of the Dos unit therefore keeps a table of open directories, and when the table is full, closes one of the directories, and reopens another. This system is adequate but slow if you use a lot of `searchrecs`.

So, to speed up the `findfirst/findnext` system, the `FindClose` call was implemented. When you don't need a `searchrec` any more, you can tell this to the Dos unit by issuing a `FindClose` call. The directory which is kept open for this `searchrec` is then closed, and the table slot freed.

**Remark** It is recommended to use the Linux call `Glob` when looking for files on Linux.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `FindFirst` (686), `FindNext` (687)

### 45.10.12 FindFirst

**Synopsis:** Start search for one or more files.

**Declaration:** `procedure FindFirst(const path: PathStr; attr: Word; var f: SearchRec)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindFirst` searches the file specified in `Path`. Normal files, as well as all special files which have the attributes specified in `Attr` will be returned.

It returns a `SearchRec` record for further searching in `F`. `Path` can contain the wildcard characters `?` (matches any single character) and `*` (matches 0 ore more arbitrary characters). In this case `FindFirst` will return the first file which matches the specified criteria. If `DosError` is different from zero, no file(s) matching the criteria was(were) found.

**Remark** On the EMX target, you cannot issue two different `FindFirst` calls. That is, you must close any previous search operation with `FindClose` (685) before starting a new one. Failure to do so will end in a Run-Time Error 6 (Invalid file handle)

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `FindNext` (687), `FindClose` (685)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex7.pp`

---

```

Program Example7;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FindFirst and FindNext function. }

var
    Dir : SearchRec;
begin
    FindFirst( '*.*', archive, Dir);
    WriteLn( 'FileName '+Space(32), 'FileSize ':9);
    while (DosError=0) do
        begin
            WriteLn( Dir.Name+Space(40-Length( Dir.Name)), Dir.Size:9);
            FindNext( Dir);
        end;
    FindClose( Dir);
end.
```

---

### 45.10.13 FindNext

Synopsis: Find next matching file after FindFirst (686)

Declaration: `procedure FindNext (var f: SearchRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindNext` takes as an argument a `SearchRec` from a previous `FindNext` call, or a `FindFirst` call, and tries to find another file which matches the criteria, specified in the `FindFirst` call. If `DosError` is different from zero, no more files matching the criteria were found.

For an example, see `FindFirst` (686).

Errors: `DosError` is used to report errors.

See also: `FindFirst` (686), `FindClose` (685)

### 45.10.14 FSearch

Synopsis: Search a file in searchpath

Declaration: `function FSearch (path: PathStr; dirlist: string) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSearch` searches the file `Path` in all directories listed in `DirList`. The full name of the found file is returned. `DirList` must be a list of directories, separated by semi-colons. When no file is found, an empty string is returned.

**Remark** On Unix systems, `DirList` can also be separated by colons, as is customary on those environments.

Errors: None.

See also: `FExpand` (685)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex10.pp`

---

```

program Example10;

uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }

var s:pathstr;

begin
  s:=FSearch(ParamStr(1),GetEnv('PATH'));
  if s='' then
    WriteLn(ParamStr(1),' not Found in PATH')
  else
    WriteLn(ParamStr(1),' Found in PATH at ',s);
end.

```

---



### 45.10.15 FSplit

Synopsis: Split a full-path filename in parts.

Declaration: `procedure FSplit(path: PathStr; var dir: DirStr; var name: NameStr;  
var ext: ExtStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSplit` splits a full file name into 3 parts : A Path, a Name and an extension (in `ext`.) The extension is taken to be all letters after the *last* dot (.). For Dos, however, an exception is made when `LFNSupport=False`, then the extension is defined as all characters after the *first* dot.

Errors: None.

See also: `FSearch` ([687](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex12.pp`

---

```

program Example12;

uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function. }

var dir: dirstr;
    name: namestr;
    ext: extstr;

begin
    FSplit(ParamStr(1), dir, name, ext);
    WriteLn('Splitted ', ParamStr(1), ' in: ');
    WriteLn('Path      : ', dir);
    WriteLn('Name       : ', name);
    WriteLn('Extension: ', ext);
end.

```

---

### 45.10.16 GetCBreak

Synopsis: Get control-Break flag

Declaration: `procedure GetCBreak(var breakvalue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCBreak` gets the status of CTRL-Break checking under Dos and Amiga. When `BreakValue` is false, then Dos only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to True, then a check is done at every system call.

**Remark** Under non-Dos and non-Amiga operating systems, `BreakValue` always returns True.

Errors: None

See also: `SetCBreak` ([695](#))

### 45.10.17 GetDate

Synopsis: Get the current date

Declaration: `procedure GetDate(var year: Word; var month: Word; var mday: Word;  
var wday: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDate` returns the system's date. `Year` is a number in the range 1980..2099. `mday` is the day of the month, `wday` is the day of the week, starting with Sunday as day 0.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTime` (693), `SetDate` (696)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex2.pp`

---

```

Program Example2;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetDate function. }

const
  DayStr: array [0..6] of string [3] = ( 'Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat' );
  MonthStr: array [1..12] of string [3] = ( 'Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar', 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun',
                                             'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec' );

var
  Year, Month, Day, WDay : word;
begin
  GetDate (Year, Month, Day, WDay);
  WriteLn ( 'Current date' );
  WriteLn ( DayStr[WDay], ', ', Day, ', ', MonthStr[Month], ', ', Year, '. ' );
end.

```

---

### 45.10.18 GetEnv

Synopsis: Get environment variable by name.

Declaration: `function GetEnv(envvar: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Getenv` returns the value of the environment variable `EnvVar`. When there is no environment variable `EnvVar` defined, an empty string is returned.

**Remark** Under some operating systems (such as Unix), case is important when looking for `EnvVar`.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnvCount` (684), `EnvStr` (684)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex14.pp`

---

```

Program Example14;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }

begin

```

---

```
WriteLn( 'Current PATH is ',GetEnv( 'PATH' ));  
end.
```

---

### 45.10.19 GetFAttr

Synopsis: Get file attributes

Declaration: `procedure GetFAttr(var f; var attr: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFAttr` returns the file attributes of the file-variable `f`. `f` can be a untyped or typed file, or of type `Text`. `f` must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be examined with the following constants :

- `ReadOnly`
- `Hidden`
- `SysFile`
- `VolumeId`
- `Directory`
- `Archive`

Under Linux, supported attributes are:

- `Directory`
- `ReadOnly` if the current process doesn't have access to the file.
- `Hidden` for files whose name starts with a dot ( `'.'` ).

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `SetFAttr` ([696](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex8.pp`

---

```
Program Example8;  
uses Dos;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the GetFAttr function. }  
  
var  
  Attr : Word;  
  f     : File;  
begin  
  Assign(f,ParamStr(1));  
  GetFAttr(f,Attr);  
  WriteLn('File ',ParamStr(1),' has attribute ',Attr);  
  if (Attr and archive)<>0 then WriteLn('– Archive');  
  if (Attr and directory)<>0 then WriteLn('– Directory');  
  if (Attr and readonly)<>0 then WriteLn('– Read-Only');  
  if (Attr and sysfile)<>0 then WriteLn('– System');  
  if (Attr and hidden)<>0 then WriteLn('– Hidden');  
end.
```

---

**45.10.20 GetFTime**

Synopsis: Get file last modification time.

Declaration: `procedure GetFTime(var f; var time: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFTime` returns the modification time of a file. This time is encoded and must be decoded with `UnPackTime`. `F` must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `SetFTime` (697), `PackTime` (695), `UnPackTime` (698)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex9.pp`

---

```

Program Example9;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetFTime function. }

Function L0(w:word): string;
var
  s : string;
begin
  Str(w,s);
  if w<10 then
    L0:= '0'+s
  else
    L0:=s;
end;

var
  f      : File;
  Time   : Longint;
  DT     : DateTime;
begin
  if Paramcount>0 then
    Assign(f,ParamStr(1))
  else
    Assign(f,'ex9.pp');
  Reset(f);
  GetFTime(f,Time);
  Close(f);
  UnPackTime(Time,DT);
  Write('File ',ParamStr(1),' is last modified on ');
  Writeln(L0(DT.Month),'-',L0(DT.Day),'-',DT.Year,
    ' at ',L0(DT.Hour),':',L0(DT.Min));
end.

```

---

**45.10.21 GetIntVec**

Synopsis: Get interrupt vector

Declaration: `procedure GetIntVec(intno: Byte; var vector: pointer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetIntVec` returns the address of interrupt vector `IntNo`.

**Remark** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only. Modern systems do not allow low level access to the hardware.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetIntVec` ([697](#))

### 45.10.22 GetLongName

**Synopsis:** Get the long filename of a DOS 8.3 filename.

**Declaration:** `function GetLongName (var p: string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 and Win32 versions of Free Pascal.

`GetLongName` changes the filename `p` to a long filename if the API call to do this is successful. The resulting string is the long file name corresponding to the short filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the API call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

Errors: If the API call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetShortName` ([692](#))

### 45.10.23 GetMsCount

**Synopsis:** Number of milliseconds since a starting point.

**Declaration:** `function GetMsCount : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetMsCount` returns a number of milliseconds elapsed since a certain moment in time. This moment in time is implementation dependent. This function is used for timing purposes: Subtracting the results of 2 subsequent calls to this function returns the number of milliseconds elapsed between the two calls.

This call is not very reliable, it is recommended to use some system specific calls for timings.

See also: `GetTime` ([693](#))

### 45.10.24 GetShortName

**Synopsis:** Get the short (8.3) filename of a long filename.

**Declaration:** `function GetShortName (var p: string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 and Win32 versions of Free Pascal.

`GetShortName` changes the filename `p` to a short filename if the API call to do this is successful. The resulting string is the short file name corresponding to the long filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the API call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

Errors: If the API call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetLongName` ([692](#))

### 45.10.25 GetTime

Synopsis: Return the current time

Declaration: `procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var minute: Word; var second: Word; var sec100: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTime` returns the system's time. `Hour` is on a 24-hour time scale. `sec100` is in hundredth of a second.

**Remark** Certain operating systems (such as Amiga), always set the `sec100` field to zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDate` ([689](#)), `SetTime` ([697](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex3.pp`

---

```

Program Example3;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetTime function. }

Function L0(w: word): string;
var
  s : string;
begin
  Str(w, s);
  if w < 10 then
    L0 := '0' + s
  else
    L0 := s;
end;

var
  Hour, Min, Sec, HSec : word;
begin
  GetTime(Hour, Min, Sec, HSec);
  WriteLn('Current time ');
  WriteLn(L0(Hour), ': ', L0(Min), ': ', L0(Sec));
end.

```

---

### 45.10.26 GetVerify

Synopsis: Get verify flag

Declaration: `procedure GetVerify(var verify: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetVerify` returns the status of the verify flag under Dos. When `Verify` is `True`, then Dos checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If `Verify` is `False`, then data written to disk are not verified.

**Remark** Under non-Dos systems (excluding EMX applications running under vanilla DOS), `Verify` is always `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVerify` ([697](#))

### 45.10.27 Intr

Synopsis: Execute interrupt

**Declaration:** `procedure Intr(intno: Byte; var regs: Registers)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Intr` executes a software interrupt number `IntNo` (must be between 0 and 255), with processor registers set to `Regs`. After the interrupt call returned, the processor registers are saved in `Regs`.

**Remark** Under non-Dos operating systems, this call does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `MSDos` ([694](#))

### 45.10.28 Keep

Synopsis: Terminate and stay resident.

**Declaration:** `procedure Keep(exitcode: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Keep` terminates the program, but stays in memory. This is used for TSR (Terminate Stay Resident) programs which catch some interrupt. `ExitCode` is the same parameter as the `Halt` function takes.

**Remark** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

### 45.10.29 MSDos

Synopsis: Execute MS-DOS system call

**Declaration:** `procedure MSDos(var regs: Registers)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MSDos` executes an operating system call. This is the same as doing a `Intr` call with the interrupt number for an OS call.

**Remark** Under non-Dos operating systems, this call does nothing. On DOS systems, this calls interrupt \$21.

Errors: None.

See also: `Intr` ([694](#))

**45.10.30 PackTime**

Synopsis: Pack DateTime value to a packed-time format.

Declaration: `procedure PackTime(var t: DateTime; var p: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnPackTime` converts the date and time specified in `T` to a packed-time format which can be fed to `SetFTime`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFTime` (697), `FindFirst` (686), `FindNext` (687), `UnPackTime` (698)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program Example4;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the PackTime and UnPackTime functions. }

var
  DT   : DateTime;
  Time : longint;
begin
  with DT do
    begin
      Year:=2008;
      Month:=11;
      Day:=11;
      Hour:=11;
      Min:=11;
      Sec:=11;
    end;
    PackTime(DT, Time);
    WriteLn('Packed Time : ', Time);
    UnPackTime(Time, DT);
    WriteLn('Unpacked Again: ');
    with DT do
      begin
        WriteLn('Year   ', Year);
        WriteLn('Month  ', Month);
        WriteLn('Day    ', Day);
        WriteLn('Hour   ', Hour);
        WriteLn('Min    ', Min);
        WriteLn('Sec    ', Sec);
      end;
    end.

```

---

**45.10.31 SetCBreak**

Synopsis: Set Control-Break flag status

Declaration: `procedure SetCBreak(breakvalue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `SetCBreak` sets the status of CTRL-Break checking. When `BreakValue` is `false`, then Dos only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to `True`, then a check is done at every system call.

**Remark** Under non-Dos and non-Amiga operating systems, this call does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetCBreak` ([688](#))

### 45.10.32 SetDate

**Synopsis:** Set system date

**Declaration:** `procedure SetDate(year: Word; month: Word; day: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetDate` sets the system's internal date. Year is a number between 1980 and 2099.

**Remark** On a Unix machine, there must be root privileges, otherwise this routine will do nothing. On other Unix systems, this call currently does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDate` ([689](#)), `SetTime` ([697](#))

### 45.10.33 SetFAttr

**Synopsis:** Set file attributes

**Declaration:** `procedure SetFAttr(var f; attr: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetFAttr` sets the file attributes of the file-variable `F`. `F` can be a untyped or typed file, or of type `Text`. `F` must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be a sum of the following constants:

- `ReadOnly`
- `Hidden`
- `SysFile`
- `VolumeId`
- `Directory`
- `Archive`

**Remark** Under Unix like systems (such as Linux and BeOS) the call exists, but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `GetFAttr` ([690](#))

#### 45.10.34 SetFTime

Synopsis: Set file modification time.

Declaration: `procedure SetFTime(var f; time: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFTime` sets the modification time of a file, this time is encoded and must be encoded with `PackTime`. `F` must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

**Remark** Under Unix like systems (such as Linux and BeOS) the call exists, but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `GetFTime` (691), `PackTime` (695), `UnPackTime` (698)

#### 45.10.35 SetIntVec

Synopsis: Set interrupt vector

Declaration: `procedure SetIntVec(intno: Byte; vector: pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetIntVec` sets interrupt vector `IntNo` to `Vector`. `Vector` should point to an interrupt procedure.

**Remark** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetIntVec` (691)

#### 45.10.36 SetTime

Synopsis: Set system time

Declaration: `procedure SetTime(hour: Word; minute: Word; second: Word; sec100: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTime` sets the system's internal clock. The `Hour` parameter is on a 24-hour time scale.

**Remark** On a Linux machine, there must be root privileges, otherwise this routine will do nothing. On other Unix systems, this call currently does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTime` (693), `SetDate` (696)

#### 45.10.37 SetVerify

Synopsis: Set verify flag

Declaration: `procedure SetVerify(verify: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetVerify` sets the status of the verify flag under Dos. When `Verify` is `True`, then Dos checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If `Verify` is `False`, then data written to disk are not verified.

**Remark** Under non-Dos operating systems (excluding EMX applications running under vanilla Dos), `Verify` is always `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVerify` ([697](#))

### 45.10.38 SwapVectors

**Synopsis:** Swap interrupt vectors

**Declaration:** `procedure SwapVectors`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SwapVectors` swaps the contents of the internal table of interrupt vectors with the current contents of the interrupt vectors. This is called typically in before and after an `Exec` call.

**Remark** Under certain operating systems, this routine may be implemented as an empty stub.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exec` ([685](#)), `SetIntVec` ([697](#))

### 45.10.39 UnixDateToDt

**Synopsis:** Convert a Unix timestamp to a `DateTime` record

**Declaration:** `procedure UnixDateToDt (SecsPast: LongInt; var Dt: DateTime)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DTToUnixDate` converts the Unix timestamp value in `SecsPast` to a `DateTime` representation in `DT`. It is an internal function, implemented on Unix platforms, and should not be used.

Errors: None.

See also: `DTToUnixDate` ([683](#)), `PackTime` ([695](#)), `UnpackTime` ([698](#)), `GetTime` ([693](#)), `SetTime` ([697](#))

### 45.10.40 UnpackTime

**Synopsis:** Unpack packed file time to a `DateTime` value

**Declaration:** `procedure UnpackTime (p: LongInt; var t: DateTime)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `UnPackTime` converts the file-modification time in `p` to a `DateTime` record. The file-modification time can be returned by `GetFTime`, `FindFirst` or `FindNext` calls.

For an example, see `PackTime` ([695](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetFTime` ([691](#)), `FindFirst` ([686](#)), `FindNext` ([687](#)), `PackTime` ([695](#))

### 45.10.41 weekday

Synopsis: Return the day of the week

Declaration: `function weekday(y: LongInt; m: LongInt; d: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeekDay` returns the day of the week on which the day Y/M/D falls. Sunday is represented by 0, Saturday is 6.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `PackTime` (695), `UnpackTime` (698), `GetTime` (693), `SetTime` (697)

## 45.11 DateTime

```

DateTime = packed record
  Year : Word;
  Month : Word;
  Day : Word
;
  Hour : Word;
  Min : Word;
  Sec : Word;
end

```

The `DateTime` type is used in `PackTime` (695) and `UnPackTime` (698) for setting/reading file times with `GetFTime` (691) and `SetFTime` (697).

## 45.12 SearchRec

```

SearchRec = packed record
  SearchPos : TOff;
  SearchNum : LongInt
;
  DirPtr : Pointer;
  SearchType : Byte;
  SearchAttr : Byte;
  Mode : Word;
  Fill : Array[1..1] of Byte;
  Attr : Byte;
  Time
  : LongInt;
  Size : LongInt;
  Reserved : Word;
  Name : string;
  SearchSpec : string;
  NamePos : Word;
end

```

`SearchRec` is filled by the `FindFirst` (686) call and can be used in subsequent `FindNext` (687) calls to search for files. The structure of this record depends on the platform. Only the following fields are present on all platforms:

**Attr** File attributes.

**Time** File modification time.

**Size** File size

**Name** File name (name part only, no path)

**Mode** File access mode (Linux only)

## Chapter 46

# Reference for unit 'dxeload'

### 46.1 Overview

The `dxeload` unit was implemented by Pierre Mueller for dos, it allows to load a DXE file (an object file with 1 entry point) into memory and return a pointer to the entry point.

It exists only for dos.

### 46.2 Procedures and functions

#### 46.2.1 `dxeload`

Synopsis: Load DXE file in memory

Declaration: `function dxeload(filename: string) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `dxeload` loads the contents of the file `filename` into memory. It performs the necessary relocations in the object code, and returns then a pointer to the entry point of the code.

For an example, see the `emu387` ([705](#)) unit in the RTL.

Errors: If an error occurs during the load or relocations, `Nil` is returned.

## Chapter 47

# Reference for unit 'dynlibs'

### 47.1 Overview

The Dynlibs unit provides support for dynamically loading shared libraries. It is available only on those platforms that support shared libraries. The functionality available here may only be a part of the functionality available on each separate platform, in the interest of portability.

On UNIX platforms, using this unit will cause the program to be linked to the C library, as most shared libraries are implemented in C and the dynamical linker too.

### 47.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 47.2.1 Constants

`NilHandle = System.NilHandle`

Correctly typed Nil handle - returned on error by `LoadLibrary` ([704](#))

`SharedSuffix = System.SharedSuffix`

`SharedSuffix` contains the extension of a shared library (dynamically loadable library) on the current platform. It does not contain the . (dot) character. This can be used to determine the name of a shared library in a platform independent way.

#### 47.2.2 Types

`HModule = TLibHandle`

Alias for `TLibHandle` ([702](#)) type.

`TLibHandle = System.TLibHandle`

`TLibHandle` should be considered an opaque type. It is defined differently on various platforms. The definition shown here depends on the platform for which the documentation was generated.

## 47.3 Procedures and functions

### 47.3.1 FreeLibrary

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Unload a library

Declaration: `function FreeLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeLibrary` provides the same functionality as `UnloadLibrary` (704), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `UnloadLibrary` (704)

### 47.3.2 GetLoadErrorStr

Synopsis: Return a description of the last error during load/get procedure address operations.

Declaration: `function GetLoadErrorStr : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLoadErrorStr` returns a textual description of the last library loading or unloading error, or a call to `GetProcAddress` (703). No other system calls may be made between the load call and the call of `GetLoadErrorStr`.

See also: `LoadLibrary` (704), `GetProcAddress` (703)

### 47.3.3 GetProcAddress

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Get the address of a procedure

Declaration: `function GetProcAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; const ProcName: AnsiString)  
: Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProcAddress` provides the same functionality as `GetProcAddress` (703), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `GetProcAddress` (703)

### 47.3.4 GetProcAddress

Synopsis: Get the address of a procedure or symbol in a dynamic library.

Declaration: `function GetProcAddress(Lib: TLibHandle;  
const ProcName: AnsiString) : Pointer  
function GetProcAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; Ordinal: TOrdinalEntry)  
: Pointer`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `GetProcAddress` returns a pointer to the location in memory of the symbol `ProcName` or ordinal value `Ordinal` in the dynamically loaded library specified by its handle `lib`. If the symbol cannot be found or the handle is invalid, `Nil` is returned.

On Windows, only an exported procedure or function can be searched this way. On Unix platforms the location of any exported symbol can be retrieved this way.

Only windows and OS/2 support getting the address of a function using an ordinal value.

**Errors:** If the symbol cannot be found, `Nil` is returned.

**See also:** `LoadLibrary` (704), `UnLoadLibrary` (704)

### 47.3.5 LoadLibrary

**Synopsis:** Load a dynamic library and return a handle to it.

**Declaration:** `function LoadLibrary(const Name: RawByteString) : TLibHandle`  
`function LoadLibrary(const Name: UnicodeString) : TLibHandle`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LoadLibrary` loads a dynamic library in file `Name` and returns a handle to it. If the library cannot be loaded, `NilHandle` (702) is returned.

No assumptions should be made about the location of the loaded library if a relative pathname is specified. The behaviour is dependent on the platform. Therefore it is best to specify an absolute pathname if possible.

**Errors:** On error, `NilHandle` (702) is returned.

**See also:** `UnLoadLibrary` (704), `GetProcAddress` (703)

### 47.3.6 SafeLoadLibrary

**Synopsis:** Saves the control word and loads a library

**Declaration:** `function SafeLoadLibrary(const Name: RawByteString) : TLibHandle`  
`function SafeLoadLibrary(const Name: UnicodeString) : TLibHandle`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SafeLoadLibrary` saves the FPU control word, and calls `LoadLibrary` (704) with library name `Name`. After that function has returned, the FPU control word is saved again. (only on Intel i386 CPUS).

**See also:** `LoadLibrary` (704)

### 47.3.7 UnloadLibrary

**Synopsis:** Unload a previously loaded library

**Declaration:** `function UnloadLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnloadLibrary` unloads a previously loaded library (specified by the handle `lib`). The call returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** On error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `LoadLibrary` (704), `GetProcAddress` (703)

## Chapter 48

# Reference for unit 'emu387'

### 48.1 Overview

The `emu387` unit was written by Pierre Mueller for dos. It sets up the coprocessor emulation for FPC under dos. It is not necessary to use this unit on other OS platforms because they either simply do not run on a machine without coprocessor, or they provide the coprocessor emulation themselves.

It shouldn't be necessary to use the function in this unit, it should be enough to place this unit in the `uses` clause of your program to enable the coprocessor emulation under dos. The unit initialization code will try and load the coprocessor emulation code and initialize it.

### 48.2 Procedures and functions

#### 48.2.1 `npxsetup`

**Synopsis:** Set up coprocessor emulation.

**Declaration:** `procedure npxsetup(prog_name: string)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `npxsetup` checks whether a coprocessor is found. If not, it loads the file `wmemu387.dxe` into memory and initializes the code in it.

If the environment variable `387` is set to `N`, then the emulation will be loaded, even if there is a coprocessor present. If the variable doesn't exist, or is set to any other value, the unit will try to detect the presence of a coprocessor unit.

The function searches the file `wmemu387.dxe` in the following way:

- 1.If the environment variable `EMU387` is set, then it is assumed to point at the `wmemu387.dxe` file.
- 2.if the environment variable `EMU387` does not exist, then the function will take the path part of `prog_name` and look in that directory for the file `wmemu387.dxe`.

It should never be necessary to call this function, because the initialization code of the unit contains a call to the function with as an argument `paramstr(0)`. This means that you should deliver the file `wmemu387.dxe` together with your program.

**Errors:** If there is an error, an error message is printed to standard error, and the program is halted, since any floating-point code is bound to fail anyhow.

# Chapter 49

## Reference for unit 'errors'

### 49.1 Used units

Table 49.1: Used units by unit 'errors'

Name	Page
unixtype	<a href="#">2057</a>

### 49.2 Overview

The errors unit contains routines to convert a UNIX system call error code to an error message: `StrError` ([708](#)). It is only available on UNIX platforms.

### 49.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 49.3.1 Constants

```
sys_errlist : Array[0..sys_errn-1] of pchar = ('Success', 'Operation not permitted',
, 'No such file or directory', 'No such process', 'Interrupted system call'
, 'I/O error', 'No such device or address', 'Arg list too long', 'Exec format error'
, 'Bad file number', 'No child processes', 'Try again', 'Out of memory'
, 'Permission denied', 'Bad address', 'Block device required', 'Device or resource busy'
, 'File exists', 'Cross-device link', 'No such device', 'Not a directory'
, 'Is a directory', 'Invalid argument', 'File table overflow', 'Too many open files'
, 'Not a typewriter', 'Text (code segment) file busy', 'File too large'
, 'No space left on device', 'Illegal seek', 'Read-only file system'
, 'Too many links', 'Broken pipe', 'Math argument out of domain of function'
, 'Math result not representable', 'Resource deadlock would occur'
, 'File name too long', 'No record locks available', 'Function not implemented'
, 'Directory not empty', 'Too many symbolic links encountered', 'Operation would block'
, 'No message of desired type', 'Identifier removed', 'Channel number out of range'
, 'Level 2 not synchronized', 'Level 3 halted', 'Level 3 reset', 'Link number out of range'
, 'Protocol driver not attached', 'No CSI structure available', 'Level 2 halted'
, 'Invalid exchange', 'Invalid request descriptor', 'Exchange full'
```

```
, 'No anode', 'Invalid request code', 'Invalid slot', 'File locking deadlock error'
, 'Bad font file format', 'Device not a stream', 'No data available'
, 'Timer expired', 'Out of streams resources', 'Machine is not on the network'
, 'Package not installed', 'Object is remote', 'Link has been severed'
, 'Advertise error', 'Srmount error', 'Communication error on send'
, 'Protocol error', 'Multihop attempted', 'RFS specific error', 'Not a data message'
, 'Value too large for defined data type', 'Name not unique on network'
, 'File descriptor in bad state', 'Remote address changed', 'Can not access a needed
, 'Accessing a corrupted shared library', '.lib section in a.out corrupted'
, 'Attempting to link in too many shared libraries', 'Cannot exec a shared library'
, 'Illegal byte sequence', 'Interrupted system call should be restarted'
, 'Streams pipe error', 'Too many users', 'Socket operation on non-socket'
, 'Destination address required', 'Message too long', 'Protocol wrong type for socket'
, 'Protocol not available', 'Protocol not supported', 'Socket type not supported'
, 'Operation not supported on transport endpoint', 'Protocol family not supported'
, 'Address family not supported by protocol', 'Address already in use'
, 'Cannot assign requested address', 'Network is down', 'Network is unreachable'
, 'Network dropped connection because of reset', 'Software caused connection abort'
, 'Connection reset by peer', 'No buffer space available', 'Transport endpoint is
, 'Transport endpoint is not connected', 'Cannot send after transport endpoint shutdown'
, 'Too many references: cannot splice', 'Connection timed out', 'Connection refused'
, 'Host is down', 'No route to host', 'Operation already in progress'
, 'Operation now in progress', 'Stale NFS file handle', 'Structure needs cleaning'
, 'Not a XENIX named type file', 'No XENIX semaphores available',
'Is a named type file', 'Remote I/O error', 'Quota exceeded', 'No medium found'
, 'Wrong medium type')
```

`sys_errn` is an array with then error codes for the current operating system. It should not be used directly, instead use `StrError` (708).

```
sys_errn = 125
```

`sys_errn` is the number of error codes for the current operating system. It should not be used directly, instead use `StrError` (708).

## 49.4 Procedures and functions

### 49.4.1 PError

Synopsis: Print error on standard error output

Declaration: `procedure PError(const s: string; Errno: cint)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PError` will print the error message `S` followed by the `errNo` and the result for `StrError` (`errNo`) for `ErrNo` on standard output.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrError` (708)

### 49.4.2 StrError

Synopsis: Convert an error code to a string

Declaration: `function StrError(err: cint) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrError` will convert the error code `err` to a string.

Errors: If the error code is unknown or out of bounds, an 'Unknown error (err)' string will be returned.

See also: `PError` ([707](#))

## Chapter 50

# Reference for unit 'exeinfo'

### 50.1 Overview

The `exeinfo` unit implements some cross-platform routines to examine the contents of an executable: information about sections, mapping addresses to loaded modules etc.

It is mainly used by the `lineinfo` ([937](#)) and `Infodwrf` ([965](#)) unit to examine the binary for debug info.

### 50.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 50.2.1 Types

### 50.3 Procedures and functions

#### 50.3.1 CloseExeFile

Synopsis: Close a previously opened file.

Declaration: `function CloseExeFile(var e: TExeFile) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseExeFile` closes an executable file image previously opened with `OpenExeFile` ([710](#)), and represented by `e`.

The function returns `True` if the file was closed successfully, or `False` if something went wrong.

Errors: In case of an error, `False` is returned.

See also: `OpenExeFile` ([710](#))

#### 50.3.2 FindExeSection

Synopsis: Find a section in the binary image.

Declaration: `function FindExeSection(var e: TExeFile; const secname: string;  
var secofs: LongInt; var seclen: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindExeSection` examines the binary that was opened with `OpenExeFile` (710) (represented by `e`) and searches for the section named `secname`. If found, the section offset is returned in `secofs` and the section length (in bytes) is returned in `seclen`.

The function returns `True` if the section was found, `False` if not.

See also: `OpenExeFile` (710)

### 50.3.3 GetModuleByAddr

**Synopsis:** Return the module name by address

**Declaration:** `procedure GetModuleByAddr(addr: pointer; var baseaddr: pointer;  
var filename: string)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetModuleByAddr` returns the name of the module that contains address `addr`. If successful, it returns `True` and returns the filename in `FileName` and the base address at which it is loaded in `BaseAddr`.

### 50.3.4 OpenExeFile

**Synopsis:** Open an executable file

**Declaration:** `function OpenExeFile(var e: TExeFile; const fn: string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `OpenExeFile` opens the executable file `fn` and initializes the structure `e` for subsequent calls to routines in the `exeinfo` unit.

The function returns `True` if the file was opened successfully, false otherwise.

See also: `FindExeSection` (709), `CloseExeFile` (709), `ReadDebugLink` (710)

### 50.3.5 ReadDebugLink

**Synopsis:** Read the location of a debug info filename

**Declaration:** `function ReadDebugLink(var e: TExeFile; var dbgfn: string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReadDebugLink` examines the `.gnu_debuglink` section to see if the debug information is stored in an external file. If so, then the name of the file with the debug information is returned in the `dbgfn` parameter.

The function returns `false` if there is no external debug information file, or if the file with debug information does not exist. It is searched next to the binary file or in the current directory.

See also: `OpenExeFile` (710), `CloseExeFile` (709)

## 50.4 TExeFile

```
TExeFile = record
  f : File;
  size : Int64;
  isopen : Boolean;
  nsects : LongInt;
  sechdrofs : ptruint;
  secstrofs : ptruint
;
  processaddress : ptruint;
  FunctionRelative : Boolean;
  ImgOffset
  : ptruint;
  filename : string;
  buf : Array[0..4095] of Byte;
  bufsize : LongInt;
  bufcnt : LongInt;
end
```

TExeFile is a record used in the various calls of this unit. It contains a file descriptor, and various fields that describe the executable.

The structure of TExeFile is opaque, that is, one shouldn't rely on the exactness of this structure, it may change any time in the future.



# Chapter 51

## Reference for unit 'fgl'

### 51.1 Used units

Table 51.1: Used units by unit 'fgl'

Name	Page
sysutils	<a href="#">1571</a>
Types	<a href="#">1872</a>

### 51.2 Overview

The `fgl` unit contains some basic list-related generic classes.

### 51.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 51.3.1 Constants

`MaxGListSize = MaxInt div 1024``deprecated`

`MaxGListSize` is the maximum number of elements in the `TFPGList` ([717](#)) list.

`MaxListSize = Maxint div 16`

`MaxListSize` is the maximum number of elements a list can contain before the memory runs out.

#### 51.3.2 Types

`TFPSListCompareFunc = function(Key1: Pointer; Key2: Pointer) : Integer  
of object`

`TFPSListCompareFunc` is used in the `TFPSList.Sort` ([749](#)) method to compare 2 elements. The list passes 2 pointers to the actual items to the compare function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first key (`key1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second key (`key2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first key (`key1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second key (`key2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the keys are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

## 51.4 EListError

### 51.4.1 Description

`EListError` is the exception used in the `TFPSList` (743) class to indicate errors such as a list index out of bounds, wrong capacity etc.

See also: `TFPSList.Capacity` (749), `TFPSList.Exchange` (746), `TFPSList.Items` (750)

## 51.5 TFPGInterfacedObjectList

### 51.5.1 Description

`TFPGList` can be used to specialize a list for any class type `T` that requires reference counting (all objects that implement `IInterface` or `IUnknown`). It will specialize to a list with the same methods as `TFPSList` (743) or classes `TFPList` (712) or `TFPObjectList`

Classes that implement `IInterface` or `IUnknown` require special care to maintain the reference count. The `TFPGInterfacedObjectList` list provides the necessary functionality to deal with this.

See also: `TFPSList` (743), classes `TFPList` (712)

### 51.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
714	<code>Add</code>	Add new object of class <code>T</code> to the list.
715	<code>AddList</code>	Adds the elements from another list
715	<code>Assign</code>	Copy objects from Source list
714	<code>Create</code>	Instantiate a new interfaced object list.
714	<code>Extract</code>	Extract an item from the list
714	<code>GetEnumerator</code>	Return a list enumerator for <code>T</code>
715	<code>IndexOf</code>	Index of object
715	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new object in the list
716	<code>Remove</code>	Remove an object from the list.
716	<code>Sort</code>	Sort the objects in the list

### 51.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
716	<code>First</code>	rw	First non-nil object
717	<code>Items</code>	rw	Indexed access to objects in the list.
717	<code>Last</code>	rw	Last non- <code>Nil</code> object
717	<code>List</code>	r	Internal list pointer

### 51.5.4 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new interfaced object list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. It will simply call the inherited constructor with the correct item size.

See also: `TFPSList.Destroy` ([744](#))

### 51.5.5 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add new object of class `T` to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new item `Item` of class type `T` to the list and returns the position at which the item was added. `Add` will increase the reference count of the object.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` ([713](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Extract` ([714](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items` ([717](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.IndexOf` ([715](#))

### 51.5.6 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an item from the list

Declaration: `function Extract(const Item: T) : T`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` removes `Item` from the list and returns the removed item, or `Nil` if it was not found.  
The extracted object will not be destroyed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` ([745](#))

### 51.5.7 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return a list enumerator for `T`

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFPGListEnumeratorSpec`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator for the elements in the list. It is a specialized version of `TFPGListEnumerator` ([722](#)).

See also: `TFPGListEnumerator` ([722](#))

### 51.5.8 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Index of object

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the list, or -1 if the object does not appear in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items` (717), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Insert` (715), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add` (714)

### 51.5.9 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new object in the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const Item: T)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a new object (`Item`) in the list at position `Index`. The index is zero based and must be less than `Count` (750).

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items` (717), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add` (714)

### 51.5.10 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy objects from Source list

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TFPGInterfacedObjectList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` clears the list and copies all items in `Source` to the list. The source list must be of the same type as the destination list.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` (745), `TFPGObjectList.Add` (739)

### 51.5.11 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.AddList

Synopsis: Adds the elements from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList(Source: TFPGInterfacedObjectList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all the elements from list `Source` to the current list.

See also: `TFPGList.AddList` (720), `TFPSList.AddList` (748), `TFPGObjectList.AddList` (741), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Add` (714)

### 51.5.12 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the object `Item` from the list, and returns the index of the removed item. If no item was removed, `-1` is returned. Only the first object is removed.

Removing an object from the list may cause the object to be freed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.IndexOf` ([715](#)), `TFPSList.Delete` ([745](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.FreeObjects` ([713](#))

### 51.5.13 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Sort

Synopsis: Sort the objects in the list

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TCompareFunc)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` sorts the elements in the list using the provided `Compare` function. The list passes 2 items to the compare function. The result of this function determines how the items will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first object (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second object (`Item2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first object (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'greater than' the second object (`Item2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- If the function result is zero, the objects are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Sorted` ([743](#))

### 51.5.14 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.First

Synopsis: First non-nil object

Declaration: `Property First : T`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `First` returns the first non-nil object. If no such element is present, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.First` ([751](#)), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Last` ([717](#)), `TFPSList.Pack` ([749](#))

### 51.5.15 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Last

Synopsis: Last non-`Nil` object

Declaration: `Property Last : T`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Last` returns the last non-`Nil` object. If no such element is present, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.First` (716), `TFPSList.Last` (751)

### 51.5.16 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to objects in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: T; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the objects in the list. The objects can be get or set.

The index `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `Count-1` (750).

The previous object at position `Index` may be freed when setting the property, depending on its reference count.

Errors: If an invalid index is used, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750)

### 51.5.17 TFPGInterfacedObjectList.List

Synopsis: Internal list pointer

Declaration: `Property List : PTypeList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` is the internal list of objects. It should not be used directly.

See also: `TFPGInterfacedObjectList.Items` (717)

## 51.6 TFPGList

### 51.6.1 Description

`TFPGList` can be used to specialize a list for any type `T` that does not require reference counting (such as interfaced objects). It will specialize to a list with the same methods as `TFPSList` (743) or `classes.TFPList` (712)

See also: `TFPSList` (743), `classes.TFPList` (712)

### 51.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">718</a>	Add	Add new item of type T to the list.
<a href="#">720</a>	AddList	Adds the elements from another list
<a href="#">720</a>	Assign	Copy elements from Source list
<a href="#">718</a>	Create	Instantiate a new list
<a href="#">719</a>	Extract	Extract an item from the list
<a href="#">719</a>	GetEnumerator	Return a list enumerator for T.
<a href="#">719</a>	IndexOf	Index of item
<a href="#">719</a>	Insert	Insert a new item in the list
<a href="#">718</a>	ItemsManaged	
<a href="#">720</a>	Remove	Remove an item from the list.
<a href="#">720</a>	Sort	Sort the list

### 51.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">721</a>	First	rw	First non-empty item
<a href="#">721</a>	Items	rw	Indexed access to items in the list
<a href="#">721</a>	Last	rw	Last non-empty item
<a href="#">721</a>	List	r	Internal list object

### 51.6.4 TFPGList.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new list

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new list. It will simply call the inherited constructor with the correct item size: `sizeof(T)`.

### 51.6.5 TFPGList.ItemsManaged

Declaration: `class function ItemIsManaged : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: `public`

### 51.6.6 TFPGList.Add

Synopsis: Add new item of type T to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new item `Item` of generic type T to the list and returns the position at which the item was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` ([713](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGList.Extract` ([719](#)), `TFPGList.Items` ([721](#)), `TFPGList.IndexOf` ([719](#))

### 51.6.7 TFPGList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an item from the list

Declaration: `function Extract(const Item: T) : T`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes `Item` from the list and returns the removed item, or an expression equivalent to `T(0)` if it was not found.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (745)

### 51.6.8 TFPGList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return a list enumerator for T.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFPGListEnumeratorSpec`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator for the elements in the list. It is a specialized version of `TFPGListEnumerator` (722).

See also: `TFPGListEnumerator` (722)

### 51.6.9 TFPGList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Index of item

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the list, or -1 if the item does not appear in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGList.Items` (721), `TFPGList.Insert` (719), `TFPSList.Add` (745)

### 51.6.10 TFPGList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new item in the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const Item: T)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a new item in the list at position `Index`. The index is zero based and must be less than `Count` (750).

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGList.Items` (721), `TFPGList.Insert` (719), `TFPSList.Add` (745)



**51.6.11 TFPGList.Assign**

Synopsis: Copy elements from Source list

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TFPGList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` clears the list and copies all items in `Source` to the list. The source list must be of the same type as the destination list.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` ([745](#)), `TFPGList.Add` ([718](#))

**51.6.12 TFPGList.AddList**

Synopsis: Adds the elements from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList(Source: TFPGList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all the elements from list `Source` to the current list.

See also: `TFPGList.Add` ([718](#)), `TFPSList.AddList` ([748](#)), `TFPGObjectList.AddList` ([741](#))

**51.6.13 TFPGList.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove an item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the item `Item` from the list, and returns the index of the removed item. If no item was removed, `-1` is returned. Only the first item is removed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGList.IndexOf` ([719](#))

**51.6.14 TFPGList.Sort**

Synopsis: Sort the list

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TCompareFunc)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` sorts the elements in the list using the provided `Compare` function. The list passes 2 items to the compare function. The result of this function determines how the items will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first item (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second item (`Item2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first item (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'greater than' the second item (`Item2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the items are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

**51.6.15 TFPGList.First**

Synopsis: First non-empty item

Declaration: `Property First : T`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `First` returns the first non-empty item, which means the first item not equal to `T ()`. If no such element is present, `T ()` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.First` (751), `TFPGList.Last` (721)

**51.6.16 TFPGList.Last**

Synopsis: Last non-empty item

Declaration: `Property Last : T`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Last` returns the last non-empty item, which means the last item not equal to `T ()`. If no such element is present, `T ()` is returned.

See also: `TFPGList.First` (721), `TFPSList.Last` (751)

**51.6.17 TFPGList.Items**

Synopsis: Indexed access to items in the list

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: T; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the items in the list. The items can be get or set.

The index `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `Count-1` (750).

Errors: If an invalid index is used, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750)

**51.6.18 TFPGList.List**

Synopsis: Internal list object

Declaration: `Property List : PTypeList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `List` is the internal list of items. It should not be used directly.

See also: `TFPGList.Items` (721)

## 51.7 TFPGListEnumerator

### 51.7.1 Description

`TFPGListEnumerator` is a generic list enumerator. It is used in the `TFPGList` (717) class to implement the enumerator for the list.

Normally there should be no need to instantiate or use this class directly.

See also: `TFPGList` (717)

### 51.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">722</a>	<code>Create</code>	Create a new list enumerator
<a href="#">722</a>	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move to next element in the list

### 51.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">722</a>	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Current enumerated element

### 51.7.4 TFPGListEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new list enumerator

Declaration: `constructor Create (AList: TFPList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is called by the list `AList` to initialize a new enumerator. There should be no need to call this directly.

See also: `TFPGList` (717)

### 51.7.5 TFPGListEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move to next element in the list

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` moves to the next element in the list.

See also: `TFPGListEnumerator.Current` (722)

### 51.7.6 TFPGListEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current enumerated element

Declaration: `Property Current : T`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

**Description:** `Current` returns the currently enumerated element. It is only valid after `TFPGLIEnumerator.MoveNext` (722) was called and returned `True`.

See also: `TFPGLIEnumerator.MoveNext` (722)

## 51.8 TFPGMap

### 51.8.1 Description

`TFPGMap` is a generic map class. It can be used to specialize a map for any key type and data type that do not require manual reference counting: For reference counted interface objects, `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` (728) must be used.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` (728)

### 51.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
724	<code>Add</code>	Add a key and value to the map
724	<code>AddOrSetData</code>	Add data with given or set value if the key already exists.
723	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the map
724	<code>Find</code>	Find item based on key
725	<code>IndexOf</code>	Find index of a key in the list.
725	<code>IndexOfData</code>	Find index of data value in the list.
725	<code>InsertKey</code>	Insert a new key in the list
725	<code>InsertKeyData</code>	Insert a new key with associated data in the list
726	<code>Remove</code>	Remove a key from the list
724	<code>TryGetData</code>	Find data or return default

### 51.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
726	<code>Data</code>	rw	Indexed access to the data in the list
727	<code>KeyData</code>	rw	Access to data based on key
726	<code>Keys</code>	rw	Indexed access to the keys in the list.
727	<code>OnCompare</code>	rw	Alias for <code>OnKeyCompare</code>
728	<code>OnDataCompare</code>	rw	Compare function for data values.
727	<code>OnKeyCompare</code>	rw	Compare function for key values.

### 51.8.4 TFPGMap.Create

**Synopsis:** Create a new instance of the map

**Declaration:** `constructor Create`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` instantiates a new map. It mainly initializes the `TFPSMap` (751) parent with the sized of the key and data.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` (752)

### 51.8.5 TFPGMap.Add

Synopsis: Add a key and value to the map

Declaration: `function Add(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData) : Integer`  
`function Add(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds a new key AKey of generic type TKey with data value AData to the list and returns the position at which the key was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an EListError (713) exception is raised. If Duplicates (755) is set to dupError and a duplicate key is added, an EListError (713) exception is raised.

See also: TFPGMap.Keys (726), TFPGMap.IndexOf (725), TFPGMap.KeyData (727), TFPGMap.Data (726), TFPSMap.Duplicates (755)

### 51.8.6 TFPGMap.Find

Synopsis: Find item based on key

Declaration: `function Find(const AKey: TKey; out Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Find will search the key equal to AKey and return its index in AIndex. The return value of the function is True if an exact match for AKey is found, False otherwise.

The behaviour of Find is undefined if the map is not sorted. For unsorted maps, use IndexOf (725) instead.

See also: TFPGMap.IndexOf (725), TFPGMap.IndexOfData (725)

### 51.8.7 TFPGMap.TryGetData

Synopsis: Find data or return default

Declaration: `function TryGetData(const AKey: TKey; out AData: TData) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: TryGetData will search the map for AKey and return True or False depending on whether the value with the given key was found. If the key was found, the associated value is returned in AData, if it is not found a default value (using Default) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: TFPGMap.Find (724)

### 51.8.8 TFPGMap.AddOrSetData

Synopsis: Add data with given or set value if the key already exists.

Declaration: `procedure AddOrSetData(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: AddOrSetData will check if key AKey already exists. if yes, the value associated with it will be replaced with AData. If the key does not yet exist, it will be added with value AData.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMap.TryGetData` (724), `TFPGMap.Add` (724), `TFPGMap.Find` (724)

### 51.8.9 `TFPGMap.IndexOf`

Synopsis: Find index of a key in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `AKey` in the list, or -1 if the key was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMap.Find` (724), `TFPGMap.IndexOfData` (725)

### 51.8.10 `TFPGMap.IndexOfData`

Synopsis: Find index of data value in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOfData(const AData: TData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfData` returns the index of `AData` in the list, or -1 if the data was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMap.Find` (724), `TFPGMap.IndexOf` (725)

### 51.8.11 `TFPGMap.InsertKey`

Synopsis: Insert a new key in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKey(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMap.InsertKeyData` (725), `TFPGMap.Add` (724), `TFPSMap.Delete` (751), `TFPSMap.Remove` (754)

### 51.8.12 `TFPGMap.InsertKeyData`

Synopsis: Insert a new key with associated data in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKeyData(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey;  
const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` with associated data `AData` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMap.InsertKey` (725), `TFPGMap.Add` (724), `TFPSMap.Delete` (751), `TFPGMap.Remove` (726)

### 51.8.13 TFPGMap.Remove

**Synopsis:** Remove a key from the list

**Declaration:** `function Remove(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Remove` removes the key `AKey` from the list, together with its associated data. The function returns the index of `AKey` prior to removal from the list, or -1 if `AKey` was not present in the list.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TFPGMap.InsertKey` (725), `TFPGMap.InsertKeyData` (725), `TFPGMap.Add` (724), `TFPSMap.Delete` (751)

### 51.8.14 TFPGMap.Keys

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the keys in the list.

**Declaration:** `Property Keys[Index: Integer]: TKey`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Keys` provides indexed access to the key values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Key values can always be read, but can only be written if the list is unsorted.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised. The same exception is raised if a key is written and the list is sorted.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGMap.Data` (726), `TFPGMap.KeyData` (727)

### 51.8.15 TFPGMap.Data

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the data in the list

**Declaration:** `Property Data[Index: Integer]: TData`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Data` provides indexed access to the data values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Data can always be read or written.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGMap.Keys` (726), `TFPGMap.KeyData` (727)

### 51.8.16 TFPGMap.KeyData

Synopsis: Access to data based on key

Declaration: `Property KeyData[AKey: TKey]: TData; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeyData` allows access to the data based on the key value `AKey`. The data can be read and written. When writing, writing using an existing key will overwrite the current data. If it does not exist yet, it will be created. When reading, if the key is not present, an `EListError` (713) will be raised.

Errors: If the key does not exist, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGMap.Keys` (726), `TFPGMap.Data` (726)

### 51.8.17 TFPGMap.OnCompare

Synopsis: Alias for `OnKeyCompare`

Declaration: `Property OnCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCompare` is a deprecated property, use `TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare` (727) instead.

See also: `TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare` (727)

### 51.8.18 TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare

Synopsis: Compare function for key values.

Declaration: `Property OnKeyCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnKeyCompare` can be set to a function that compares key values. The default value for this event is a function that compares keys based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first key (`key1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second key (`key2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first key (`key1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second key (`key2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- If the function result is zero, the keys are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMap.OnDataCompare` (728)



### 51.8.19 TFPGMap.OnDataCompare

Synopsis: Compare function for data values.

Declaration: `Property OnDataCompare : TDataCompareFunc`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnDataCompare` can be set to a function that compares data values. The default value for this event is a function that compares data based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first data item (`Data1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first data item (`Data1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- If the function result is zero, the data items are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMap.OnKeyCompare` ([727](#))

## 51.9 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData

### 51.9.1 Description

`TFPGInterfacedObjectMap` is a generic map class. It can be used to specialize a map for any key type, with associated data type that requires manual reference counting: any type which implements `IInterface`. For non-reference counted objects, `TFPGMap` ([723](#)) should be used.

This map class is entirely equivalent to `TFPGMap` ([723](#)), but operates on data items that require additional reference counting code on the data.

See also: `TFPGMap` ([723](#))

### 51.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">729</a>	<code>Add</code>	Add a key and value to the map
<a href="#">730</a>	<code>AddOrSetData</code>	Add data with given or set value if the key already exists.
<a href="#">729</a>	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the map
<a href="#">729</a>	<code>Find</code>	Find item based on key
<a href="#">730</a>	<code>IndexOf</code>	Find index of a key in the list.
<a href="#">730</a>	<code>IndexOfData</code>	Find index of data value in the list.
<a href="#">731</a>	<code>InsertKey</code>	Insert a new key in the list
<a href="#">731</a>	<code>InsertKeyData</code>	Insert a new key with associated data in the list
<a href="#">731</a>	<code>Remove</code>	Remove a key from the list
<a href="#">730</a>	<code>TryGetData</code>	Find data or return default

### 51.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">732</a>	Data	rw	Indexed access to the data in the list
<a href="#">732</a>	KeyData	rw	Access to data based on key
<a href="#">731</a>	Keys	rw	Indexed access to the keys in the list.
<a href="#">732</a>	OnCompare	rw	Alias for OnKeyCompare
<a href="#">733</a>	OnDataCompare	rw	Compare function for data values.
<a href="#">733</a>	OnKeyCompare	rw	Compare function for key values.

### 51.9.4 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the map

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new map. It mainly initializes the `TFPSMap` ([751](#)) parent with the sized of the key and data.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` ([752](#))

### 51.9.5 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add

Synopsis: Add a key and value to the map

Declaration: `function Add(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData) : Integer`  
`function Add(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new key `AKey` of generic type `TKey` with data value `AData` to the list and returns the position at which the key was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` ([713](#)) exception is raised. If `Duplicates` ([755](#)) is set to `dupError` and a duplicate key is added, an `EListError` ([713](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys` ([731](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf` ([730](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData` ([732](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data` ([732](#)), `TFPS.Duplicates` ([712](#))

### 51.9.6 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find

Synopsis: Find item based on key

Declaration: `function Find(const AKey: TKey; out Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Find` will search the first key smaller than or equal to `AKey` and return its index in `AIndex`. If the key was not found then -1 is returned. The return value of the function is `True` if an exact match for `AKey` is found, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf` ([730](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOfData` ([730](#))

**51.9.7 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.TryGetData**

Synopsis: Find data or return default

Declaration: `function TryGetData(const AKey: TKey; out AData: TData) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryGetData` will search the map for `AKey` and return `True` or `False` depending on whether the value with the given key was found. If the key was found, the associated value is returned in `AData`, if it is not found a default value (using `Default`) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find` ([729](#))

**51.9.8 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.AddOrSetData**

Synopsis: Add data with given or set value if the key already exists.

Declaration: `procedure AddOrSetData(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddOrSetData` will check if key `AKey` already exists. if yes, the value associated with it will be replaced with `AData`. If the key does not yet exist, it will be added with value `AData`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.TryGetData` ([730](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add` ([729](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find` ([729](#))

**51.9.9 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Find index of a key in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `AKey` in the list, or -1 if the key was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find` ([729](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOfData` ([730](#))

**51.9.10 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOfData**

Synopsis: Find index of data value in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOfData(const AData: TData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfData` returns the index of `AData` in the list, or -1 if the data was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Find` ([729](#)), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.IndexOf` ([730](#))

**51.9.11 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKey**

Synopsis: Insert a new key in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKey(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKeyData` (731), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add` (729), `TFPSMapInterfacedObjectData.Delete` (712), `TFPSMapInterfacedObjectData.Remove` (712)

**51.9.12 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKeyData**

Synopsis: Insert a new key with associated data in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKeyData(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey;  
const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` with associated data `AData` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.InsertKey` (731), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Add` (729), `TFPSMapInterfacedObjectData.Delete` (712), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Remove` (731)

**51.9.13 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove a key from the list

Declaration: `function Remove(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the key `AKey` from the list, together with its associated data. The function returns the index of `AKey` prior to removal from the list, or -1 if `AKey` was not present in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMap.InsertKey` (725), `TFPGMap.InsertKeyData` (725), `TFPGMap.Add` (724), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Delete` (728)

**51.9.14 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the keys in the list.

Declaration: `Property Keys[Index: Integer]: TKey`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Keys` provides indexed access to the key values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Key values can always be read, but can only be written if the list is unsorted.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised. The same exception is raised if a key is written and the list is sorted.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data` (732), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData` (732)

### 51.9.15 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data

Synopsis: Indexed access to the data in the list

Declaration: `Property Data[Index: Integer]: TData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` provides indexed access to the data values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Data can always be read or written.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys` (731), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData` (732)

### 51.9.16 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.KeyData

Synopsis: Access to data based on key

Declaration: `Property KeyData[AKey: TKey]: TData; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeyData` allows access to the data based on the key value `AKey`. The data can be read and written. When writing, writing using an existing key will overwrite the current data. If it does not exist yet, it will be created. When reading, if the key is not present, an `EListError` (713) will be raised.

Errors: If the key does not exist, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Keys` (731), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.Data` (732)

### 51.9.17 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnCompare

Synopsis: Alias for `OnKeyCompare`

Declaration: `Property OnCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCompare` is a deprecated property, use `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare` (733) instead.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare` (733)

### 51.9.18 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare

Synopsis: Compare function for key values.

Declaration: `Property OnKeyCompare : TKeyCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnKeyCompare` can be set to a function that compares key values. The default value for this event is a function that compares keys based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first key (`key1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second key (`key2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first key (`key1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second key (`key2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the keys are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnDataCompare` ([733](#))

### 51.9.19 TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnDataCompare

Synopsis: Compare function for data values.

Declaration: `Property OnDataCompare : TDataCompareFunc`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnDataCompare` can be set to a function that compares data values. The default value for this event is a function that compares data based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first data item (`Data1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first data item (`Data1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the data items are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData.OnKeyCompare` ([733](#))

## 51.10 TFPGMapObject

### 51.10.1 Description

`TFPGMapObject` is a generic map class. It can be used to specialize a map for object types, but not objects with automated reference counting: For reference counted interface objects, `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` ([728](#)) must be used.

See also: `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` ([728](#))

**51.10.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">734</a>	Add	Add a key and value to the map
<a href="#">735</a>	AddOrSetData	Add data with given or set value if the key already exists.
<a href="#">734</a>	Create	Create a new instance of the map
<a href="#">735</a>	Find	Find item based on key
<a href="#">735</a>	IndexOf	Find index of a key in the list.
<a href="#">736</a>	IndexOfData	Find index of data value in the list.
<a href="#">736</a>	InsertKey	Insert a new key in the list
<a href="#">736</a>	InsertKeyData	Insert a new key with associated data in the list
<a href="#">736</a>	Remove	Remove a key from the list
<a href="#">735</a>	TryGetData	Find data or return default

**51.10.3 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">737</a>	Data	rw	Indexed access to the data in the list
<a href="#">737</a>	KeyData	rw	Access to data based on key
<a href="#">737</a>	Keys	rw	Indexed access to the keys in the list.
<a href="#">738</a>	OnCompare	rw	Alias for OnKeyCompare
<a href="#">738</a>	OnDataCompare	rw	Compare function for data values.
<a href="#">738</a>	OnKeyCompare	rw	Compare function for key values.

**51.10.4 TFPGMapObject.Create**

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the map

Declaration: `constructor Create(AFreeObjects: Boolean)`  
`constructor Create`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new map. It mainly initializes the `TFPSMap` ([751](#)) parent with the sized of the key and data.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` ([752](#))

**51.10.5 TFPGMapObject.Add**

Synopsis: Add a key and value to the map

Declaration: `function Add(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData) : Integer`  
`function Add(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new key `AKey` of generic type `TKey` with data object `AData` to the list and returns the position at which the key was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` ([713](#)) exception is raised. If `Duplicates` ([755](#)) is set to `dupError` and a duplicate key is added, an `EListError` ([713](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.Keys` ([737](#)), `TFPGMapObject.IndexOf` ([735](#)), `TFPGMapObject.KeyData` ([737](#)), `TFPGMapObject.Data` ([737](#)), `TFPSMap.Duplicates` ([755](#))

### 51.10.6 TFPGMapObject.Find

Synopsis: Find item based on key

Declaration: `function Find(const AKey: TKey; out Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` will search the first key smaller than or equal to `AKey` and return its index in `AIndex`. If the key was not found then -1 is returned. The return value of the function is `True` if an exact match for `AKey` is found, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.IndexOf` (735), `TFPGMapObject.IndexOfData` (736)

### 51.10.7 TFPGMapObject.TryGetData

Synopsis: Find data or return default

Declaration: `function TryGetData(const AKey: TKey; out AData: TData) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryGetData` will search the map for `AKey` and return `True` or `False` depending on whether the value with the given key was found. If the key was found, the associated value is returned in `AData`, if it is not found a default value (using `Default`) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.Find` (735)

### 51.10.8 TFPGMapObject.AddOrSetData

Synopsis: Add data with given or set value if the key already exists.

Declaration: `procedure AddOrSetData(const AKey: TKey; const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddOrSetData` will check if key `AKey` already exists. if yes, the value associated with it will be replaced with `AData`. If the key does not yet exist, it will be added with value `AData`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.TryGetData` (735), `TFPGMapObject.Add` (734), `TFPGMapObject.Find` (735)

### 51.10.9 TFPGMapObject.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find index of a key in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `AKey` in the list, or -1 if the key was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.Find` (735), `TFPGMapObject.IndexOfData` (736)



**51.10.10 TFPGMapObject.IndexOfData**

Synopsis: Find index of data value in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOfData(const AData: TData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfData` returns the index of object `AData` in the list, or -1 if the data was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.Find` (735), `TFPGMapObject.IndexOf` (735)

**51.10.11 TFPGMapObject.InsertKey**

Synopsis: Insert a new key in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKey(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.InsertKeyData` (736), `TFPGMapObject.Add` (734), `TFPSMap.Delete` (751), `TFPSMap.Remove` (754)

**51.10.12 TFPGMapObject.InsertKeyData**

Synopsis: Insert a new key with associated data in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKeyData(Index: Integer; const AKey: TKey;  
const AData: TData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` inserts key `AKey` with associated data `AData` at position `Index` in the list. It is not allowed to insert a key in a sorted list.

Errors: If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, or the list is sorted, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPGMapObject.InsertKey` (736), `TFPGMapObject.Add` (734), `TFPSMap.Delete` (751), `TFPGMapObject.Remove` (736)

**51.10.13 TFPGMapObject.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove a key from the list

Declaration: `function Remove(const AKey: TKey) : Integer`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Remove` removes the key `AKey` from the list, together with its associated data. The function returns the index of `AKey` prior to removal from the list, or -1 if `AKey` was not present in the list.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TFPGMapObject.InsertKey` (736), `TFPGMapObject.InsertKeyData` (736), `TFPGMapObject.Add` (734), `TFPSMap.Delete` (751)

#### 51.10.14 `TFPGMapObject.Keys`

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the keys in the list.

**Declaration:** `Property Keys[Index: Integer]: TKey`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Keys` provides indexed access to the key values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Key values can always be read, but can only be written if the list is unsorted.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised. The same exception is raised if a key is written and the list is sorted.

**See also:** `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGMapObject.Data` (737), `TFPGMapObject.KeyData` (737)

#### 51.10.15 `TFPGMapObject.Data`

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the data in the list

**Declaration:** `Property Data[Index: Integer]: TData`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Data` provides indexed access to the data values in the list. Valid values for `Index` are in the range `[0..Count-1]`. Data can always be read or written.

**Errors:** If the index `AIndex` is out of range `[0..Count-1]`, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGMapObject.Keys` (737), `TFPGMapObject.KeyData` (737)

#### 51.10.16 `TFPGMapObject.KeyData`

**Synopsis:** Access to data based on key

**Declaration:** `Property KeyData[AKey: TKey]: TData; default`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `KeyData` allows access to the data based on the key value `AKey`. The data can be read and written. When writing, writing using an existing key will overwrite the current data. If it does not exist yet, it will be created. When reading, if the key is not present, an `EListError` (713) will be raised.

**Errors:** If the key does not exist, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

**See also:** `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGMapObject.Keys` (737), `TFPGMapObject.Data` (737)

**51.10.17 TFPGMapObject.OnCompare**

Synopsis: Alias for OnKeyCompare

Declaration: Property OnCompare : TKeyCompareFunc

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnCompare is a deprecated property, use TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare (738) instead.

See also: TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare (738)

**51.10.18 TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare**

Synopsis: Compare function for key values.

Declaration: Property OnKeyCompare : TKeyCompareFunc

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnKeyCompare can be set to a function that compares key values. The default value for this event is a function that compares keys based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first key (`key1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second key (`key2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first key (`key1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second key (`key2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the keys are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: TFPGMapObject.OnDataCompare (738)

**51.10.19 TFPGMapObject.OnDataCompare**

Synopsis: Compare function for data values.

Declaration: Property OnDataCompare : TDataCompareFunc

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnDataCompare can be set to a function that compares data values. The default value for this event is a function that compares data based on a byte-by-byte comparison of the memory block. The function must have the following semantics:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first data item (`Data1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first data item (`Data1`) pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second data item (`Data2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- if the function result is zero, the data items are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

See also: TFPGMapObject.OnKeyCompare (738)

## 51.11 TFPGObjectList

### 51.11.1 Description

`TFPGList` can be used to specialize a list for any class type `T` that does not require reference counting (such as interfaced objects). It will specialize to a list with the same methods as `TFPSList` (743) or `classes.TFPList` (712) or `TFPObjectList`

See also: `TFPSList` (743), `classes.TFPList` (712)

### 51.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">739</a>	<code>Add</code>	Add new object of class <code>T</code> to the list.
<a href="#">741</a>	<code>AddList</code>	Adds the elements from another list
<a href="#">741</a>	<code>Assign</code>	Copy objects from Source list
<a href="#">739</a>	<code>Create</code>	Instantiate a new object list.
<a href="#">740</a>	<code>Extract</code>	Extract an item from the list
<a href="#">740</a>	<code>GetEnumerator</code>	Return a list enumerator for <code>T</code> .
<a href="#">740</a>	<code>IndexOf</code>	Index of item
<a href="#">741</a>	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new object in the list
<a href="#">741</a>	<code>Remove</code>	Remove an object from the list.
<a href="#">742</a>	<code>Sort</code>	Sort the objects in the list

### 51.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">742</a>	<code>First</code>	rw	First non-nil item
<a href="#">743</a>	<code>FreeObjects</code>	rw	Does the list own the objects or not?
<a href="#">742</a>	<code>Items</code>	rw	Indexed access to objects in the list.
<a href="#">742</a>	<code>Last</code>	rw	Last non- <code>Nil</code> object
<a href="#">743</a>	<code>List</code>	r	Internal list pointer

### 51.11.4 TFPGObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new object list.

Declaration: `constructor Create(FreeObjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. It will simply call the inherited constructor with the correct item size and will initialize `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (743) with `FreeObjects`.

If `FreeObjects` is true, then the list owns the objects. Freeing or clearing the list will remove all objects from memory by calling the destructor. Deleting or removing an item from the list will also dispose of the element.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (743)

### 51.11.5 TFPGObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add new object of class `T` to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new item `Item` of class type `T` to the list and returns the position at which the item was added.

Errors: If the item could not be added, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.Extract` (740), `TFPGObjectList.Items` (742), `TFPGObjectList.IndexOf` (740)

### 51.11.6 TFPGObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an item from the list

Declaration: `function Extract(const Item: T) : T`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes `Item` from the list and returns the removed item, or `Nil` if it was not found.

The extracted object will not be destroyed even if the list owns the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (745)

### 51.11.7 TFPGObjectList.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return a list enumerator for `T`.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFPGListEnumeratorSpec`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator for the elements in the list. It is a specialized version of `TFPGListEnumerator` (722).

See also: `TFPGListEnumerator` (722)

### 51.11.8 TFPGObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Index of item

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the list, or -1 if the item does not appear in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.Items` (742), `TFPGObjectList.Insert` (741), `TFPGObjectList.Add` (739)

**51.11.9 TFPGObjectList.Insert**

Synopsis: Insert a new object in the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const Item: T)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a new object (`Item`) in the list at position `Index`. The index is zero based and must be less than `Count` (750).

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPGList.Items` (721), `TFPGList.Insert` (719), `TFPSList.Add` (745)

**51.11.10 TFPGObjectList.AddList**

Synopsis: Adds the elements from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList(Source: TFPGObjectList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all the elements from list `Source` to the current list.

See also: `TFPGList.AddList` (720), `TFPSList.AddList` (748), `TFPGObjectList.Add` (739)

**51.11.11 TFPGObjectList.Assign**

Synopsis: Copy objects from Source list

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TFPGObjectList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` clears the list and copies all items in `Source` to the list. The source list must be of the same type as the destination list.

Take care if both the list owns the objects (i.e. have `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (743) set to `True`), this may result to access violations.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` (745), `TFPGObjectList.Add` (739)

**51.11.12 TFPGObjectList.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(const Item: T) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the object `Item` from the list, and returns the index of the removed item. If no item was removed, `-1` is returned. Only the first object is removed.

If the list owns the objects, (`TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (743) is set to `True`) then the object is freed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.IndexOf` (740), `TFPSList.Delete` (745), `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (743)

**51.11.13 TFPGObjectList.Sort**

Synopsis: Sort the objects in the list

Declaration: `procedure Sort (Compare: TCompareFunc)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort` sorts the elements in the list using the provided `Compare` function. The list passes 2 items to the compare function. The result of this function determines how the items will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first object (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'less' than the second object (`Item2`) and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first object (`Item1`) is assumed to be 'greater than' the second object (`Item2`) and will be moved after the second in the list.
- If the function result is zero, the objects are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

Errors: None.

**51.11.14 TFPGObjectList.First**

Synopsis: First non-nil item

Declaration: `Property First : T`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `First` returns the first non-nil item. If no such element is present, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.First` ([751](#)), `TFPGList.Last` ([721](#)), `TFPSList.Pack` ([749](#))

**51.11.15 TFPGObjectList.Last**

Synopsis: Last non-`Nil` object

Declaration: `Property Last : T`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Last` returns the last non-`Nil` object. If no such element is present, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.First` ([742](#)), `TFPSList.Last` ([751](#))

**51.11.16 TFPGObjectList.Items**

Synopsis: Indexed access to objects in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: T; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

**Description:** `Items` provides indexed access to the objects in the list. The objects can be get or set.

The index `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `Count-1` (750).

If the list owns the objects, (`TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (743) is set to `True`) then the previous object at position `Index` is freed when setting the property.

**Errors:** If an invalid index is used, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (743)

### 51.11.17 TFPGObjectList.List

**Synopsis:** Internal list pointer

**Declaration:** `Property List : PTypeList`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `List` is the internal list of objects. It should not be used directly.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.Items` (742)

### 51.11.18 TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects

**Synopsis:** Does the list own the objects or not?

**Declaration:** `Property FreeObjects : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `FreeObjects` indicates whether the list owns the objects or not. If set to `True`, freeing or clearing the list will remove all objects from memory by calling the destructor. Deleting or removing an item from the list will also dispose of the element.

The initial value for this property is set in the constructor and is `True` by default.

See also: `TFPGObjectList.FreeObjects` (743)

## 51.12 TFPSList

### 51.12.1 Description

`TFPSList` can be seen as the generalized equivalent of the classes unit `TFPList` (712) list. It is used as a base class for the `TFPGList` (717), `TFPGMap` (723), `TFPGObjectList` (739), `TFPGInterfaceObjectList` (713) and `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` (728) generic classes.

This list is not meant to be used directly, it is an auxiliary class for the actual generic list classes.

See also: `classes.TFPList` (712), `TFPGMap` (723), `TFPGObjectList` (739), `TFPGInterfacedObjectList` (713), `TFPGMapInterfacedObjectData` (728)



### 51.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">745</a>	Add	Add a new item to the list
<a href="#">748</a>	AddList	Adds the elements from another list
<a href="#">748</a>	Assign	Copy one list to another
<a href="#">745</a>	Clear	Clear the list
<a href="#">744</a>	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TFPSList</code>
<a href="#">745</a>	Delete	Delete an item from the list
<a href="#">746</a>	DeleteRange	Delete a range of elements
<a href="#">744</a>	Destroy	Destroy the list instance.
<a href="#">746</a>	Error	Raise an <code>EListError</code> exception.
<a href="#">746</a>	Exchange	Exchange two items in the list
<a href="#">746</a>	Expand	Expand the capacity of the list
<a href="#">747</a>	Extract	delete an element from the list
<a href="#">747</a>	IndexOf	Search an item in the list
<a href="#">747</a>	Insert	Insert a new item in the list.
<a href="#">745</a>	ItemIsManaged	
<a href="#">748</a>	Move	Moves an item from one position in the list to another.
<a href="#">749</a>	Pack	Remove empty items from the list
<a href="#">748</a>	Remove	Remove the item from the list
<a href="#">749</a>	Sort	Sort the list

### 51.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">749</a>	Capacity	rw	Current capacity of the list
<a href="#">750</a>	Count	rw	Current element count
<a href="#">751</a>	First	rw	Pointer to first non-empty item in the list
<a href="#">750</a>	Items	rw	Items in the list
<a href="#">750</a>	ItemSize	r	Size of the items in the list
<a href="#">751</a>	Last	rw	Pointer to last non-empty item in the list
<a href="#">750</a>	List	r	Internal list pointer

### 51.12.4 TFPSList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFPSList`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AItemSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPSList`, and initializes the item size to `ItemSize`, which defaults to the size of a pointer.

See also: `TFPSList.ItemSize` ([750](#)), `TFPSList.Destroy` ([744](#))

### 51.12.5 TFPSList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the list instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Destroy` clears and cleans up the list instance. Depending on the descendant, this may also remove the items in the list from memory.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` (745)

### 51.12.6 TFPSList.ItemsIsManaged

**Declaration:** `class function ItemIsManaged : Boolean; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

### 51.12.7 TFPSList.Add

**Synopsis:** Add a new item to the list

**Declaration:** `function Add(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Add` adds the item pointed to by `Item` to the list. It is not the pointer `Item` itself which is added to the list, but rather the `TFPSList.ItemSize` (750) bytes of memory to which `Item` is pointing.

The function returns the index of the newly added item.

**Errors:** If the maximum list size is reached, an `EListError` (713) is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (745), `TFPSList.Items` (750), `TFPSList.Clear` (745)

### 51.12.8 TFPSList.Clear

**Synopsis:** Clear the list

**Declaration:** `procedure Clear`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Clear` removes all the items in the list. Depending on the descendent, the list items themselves may be cleared as well.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (745), `TFPSList.Items` (750), `TFPSList.Add` (745)

### 51.12.9 TFPSList.Delete

**Synopsis:** Delete an item from the list

**Declaration:** `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Delete` deletes the item at position `Index` from the list. Depending on the descendent, the list items itself may be cleared as well.

**Errors:** If `Index` is out of bounds, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` (745), `TFPSList.Items` (750), `TFPSList.Add` (745)

### 51.12.10 TFPSList.DeleteRange

Synopsis: Delete a range of elements

Declaration: `procedure DeleteRange(IndexFrom: Integer; IndexTo: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeleteRange` deletes elements from `IndexFrom` till `IndexTo`. Both indexes are zero based, and `IndexTo` must be bigger than `IndexFrom`. Using this method results in less moving of data in memory, and as such is more effective than deleting the elements one by one using `TFPSList.Delete` (745).

Errors: If invalid indexes are specified, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `EListError` (713), `TFPSList.Delete` (745)

### 51.12.11 TFPSList.Error

Synopsis: Raise an `EListError` exception.

Declaration: `class procedure Error(const Msg: string; Data: PtrInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Error` is an auxiliary routine which raises an `EListError` (713) exception formatted from `Msg` and `Data`.

See also: `EListError` (713)

### 51.12.12 TFPSList.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchange two items in the list

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exchange` will exchange 2 items at positions `Index1` and `Index2` in the list.

Errors: If `Index1` or `Index2` are out of bounds, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

### 51.12.13 TFPSList.Expand

Synopsis: Expand the capacity of the list

Declaration: `function Expand : TFPSList`

Visibility: public

Description: `Expand` will expand the capacity of the list, and returns itself.

Errors: If the size will become larger than `MaxListSize` (712) an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `MaxListSize` (712), `TFPSList.Capacity` (749)

**51.12.14 TFPSList.Extract**

Synopsis: delete an element from the list

Declaration: `procedure Extract (Item: Pointer; ResultPtr: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the item pointed to by `Item` from the list. It returns a pointer to the actually removed item from the list. The item is searched using `TFPSList.IndexOf` (747). If the item is not found, `nil` is returned.

Some descendents own the items in the list. `Extract` will not dispose of the item, as `TFPSList.Delete` (745) does.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (745), `TFPSList.Add` (745), `TFPSList.IndexOf` (747)

**51.12.15 TFPSList.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Search an item in the list

Declaration: `function IndexOf (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches in the list for the item pointed to by `Item`, and returns the position (0-based index) of the item in the list, or -1 if it was not found. The items are compared using `sysutils.CompareMem` (712), so an exact memory layout match.

See also: `TFPSList.Extract` (747)

**51.12.16 TFPSList.Insert**

Synopsis: Insert a new item in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; Item: Pointer)`  
`function Insert (Index: Integer) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` comes in 2 overloaded version. The version without `Item` creates a slot for a new item at position `Index` in the list, and returns a pointer to the new slot. The slot will be of size `TFPSList.ItemSize` (750).

The version with `Item` argument will allocate a slot in the list at position `Index` and will copy the item pointed to by `Item` to the slot in the list.

In both cases, `Index` must be 0-based.

Errors: If `Index` is invalid, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Add` (745), `TFPSList.Delete` (745), `TFPSList.Extract` (747)

**51.12.17 TFPSList.Move**

Synopsis: Moves an item from one position in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move (CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the item at position `CurIndex` to position `NewIndex`. This is done by storing the value at position `CurIndex`, deleting the pointer at position `CurIndex`, and reinserting the value at position `NewIndex`

Errors: If `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` are not inside the valid range of indices, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `Exchange` (746)

**51.12.18 TFPSList.Assign**

Synopsis: Copy one list to another

Declaration: `procedure Assign (Obj: TFPSList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` clears the list and will add all items from `Obj` to the list. The items are copied one by one.

Errors: If the `TFPSList.ItemSize` (750) differs for the two lists, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Add` (745)

**51.12.19 TFPSList.AddList**

Synopsis: Adds the elements from another list

Declaration: `procedure AddList (Obj: TFPSList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddList` adds all the elements from list `Obj` to the current list. A check is done that the 2 lists have the same element size.

Errors: If the lists have different element size, an `EListError` (713) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPSList.Add` (745), `EListError` (713)

**51.12.20 TFPSList.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove the item from the list

Declaration: `function Remove (Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` searches `Item` in the list, and deletes it from the list. It returns the index of the item that was removed, or -1 if it was not found. Only the first match is removed.

If a descendent of `TFPSList` owns the object of the list, the item is removed from memory. If this is not desired, then `TFPSList.Extract` (747) must be used instead.

See also: `TFPSList.Extract` (747), `TFPSList.IndexOf` (747)

**51.12.21 TFPSList.Pack**

Synopsis: Remove empty items from the list

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pack` will remove all empty items from the list. An item is considered to be empty if the memory location where the item is stored contains only zero bytes.

See also: `TFPSList.Clear` (745), `TFPSList.Sort` (749)

**51.12.22 TFPSList.Sort**

Synopsis: Sort the list

Declaration: `procedure Sort (Compare: TFPSListCompareFunc)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort` sorts the items in the list. Two pointers are compared by passing them to the `Compare` function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first item is assumed to be 'less' than the second and will be moved before the second item in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first item is assumed to be 'greater than' the second and will be moved after the second item in the list.
- If the function result is zero, the pointers are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

The sort is done using a quicksort algorithm.

See also: `TFPSListCompareFunc` (712)

**51.12.23 TFPSList.Capacity**

Synopsis: Current capacity of the list

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Capacity` is the current capacity (maximum amount of elements) of the list. The list capacity will expand automatically if an item is added and the capacity is reached (i.e. `TFPSList.Count` (750) equals `capacity`). Expanding the list is an expensive operation involving reallocation of memory and moving of list data in memory, so capacity can be set to a large amount to avoid frequent reallocations.

See also: `TFPSList.Count` (750), `TFPSList.Expand` (746), `TFPSList.Items` (750)

**51.12.24 TFPSList.Count**

Synopsis: Current element count

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the current amount of elements in the list. It is initially zero. A valid item index is always a value between zero and `Count-1`.

See also: `TFPSList.Items` (750), `TFPSList.Capacity` (749)

**51.12.25 TFPSList.Items**

Synopsis: Items in the list

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the items in the list, the returned pointers are not the actual list items, but pointers to the elements in the list. The items can be get or set.

When assigning to the `Items` property, the memory area pointed to by the assigned pointer is copied to the list. Exactly `TFPSList.ItemSize` (750) bytes are copied.

The index `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `Count-1` (750).

Errors: If an invalid index is used, an `EListError` (713) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPSList.ItemSize` (750), `TFPSList.Count` (750)

**51.12.26 TFPSList.ItemSize**

Synopsis: Size of the items in the list

Declaration: `Property ItemSize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ItemSize` is the memory size of the items in the list. It is specified in the constructor and cannot be changed during the lifetime of the list.

See also: `TFPSList.Create` (744)

**51.12.27 TFPSList.List**

Synopsis: Internal list pointer

Declaration: `Property List : PByte`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `List` is a pointer to the memory area used for the items in the list. It should not be manipulated.

**51.12.28 TFPSList.First**

Synopsis: Pointer to first non-empty item in the list

Declaration: `Property First : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `First` returns the value of the first non-empty item in the list. An item is considered empty if consists of `TFPSList.ItemSize` (750) zero bytes.

If there are no non-empty items in the list, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.Last` (751), `TFPSList.Pack` (749)

**51.12.29 TFPSList.Last**

Synopsis: Pointer to last non-empty item in the list

Declaration: `Property Last : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Last` returns the value of the last non-empty item in the list. An item is considered empty if consists of `TFPSList.ItemSize` (750) zero bytes.

If there are no non-empty items in the list, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPSList.Last` (751), `TFPSList.Pack` (749)

**51.13 TFPSMap****51.13.1 Description**

`TFPSMap` can be used to create a map for any type `T` that does not require reference counting (such as interfaced objects). It will specialize to a map which is a generalized list with an arbitrary type as the list index (called the key).

This class should normally not be used directly, instead use one of the generic map objects such as `TFPGMap` (723).

See also: `TFPGMap` (723)

**51.13.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
752	Add	Add a key, value pair to the map.
752	Create	Create a new map with given key and data size.
752	Find	Find data using the associated key
753	IndexOf	Index of key pointed to by <code>AKey</code>
753	IndexOfData	Index of data item <code>AData</code>
753	Insert	Insert a new slot for key and associated data item in the list
754	InsertKey	Insert a key in the list
754	InsertKeyData	Insert a key and associated in the list
754	Remove	Remove a key/value pair from the map.
754	Sort	Sort the list according to key



### 51.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">756</a>	Data	rw	Indexed access to the locations of all data items
<a href="#">755</a>	DataSize	r	Size (in bytes) for the data associated with keys
<a href="#">755</a>	Duplicates	rw	What to do with duplicate key values
<a href="#">756</a>	KeyData	rw	Access to data locations using key
<a href="#">756</a>	Keys	rw	Indexed access to the locations of all keys
<a href="#">755</a>	KeySize	r	Size (in bytes) for the key
<a href="#">757</a>	OnDataPtrCompare	rw	Callback to compare 2 data items
<a href="#">757</a>	OnKeyPtrCompare	rw	Callback to compare 2 keys
<a href="#">757</a>	OnPtrCompare	rw	Alias for OnKeyPtrCompare
<a href="#">756</a>	Sorted	rw	Is the map permanently sorted on key ?

### 51.13.4 TFPSMap.Create

Synopsis: Create a new map with given key and data size.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AKeySize: Integer; ADataSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TFPSMap` instance and initializes `TFPSMap.KeySize` ([755](#)) and `TFPSMap.DataSize` ([755](#)) with `AKeySize` and `ADataSize`, respectively. It also initializes the `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` ([757](#)) and `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` ([757](#)) properties to functions that compare memory blocks.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSMap.Destroy` ([751](#)), `TFPSMap.KeySize` ([755](#)), `TFPSMap.DataSize` ([755](#)), `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` ([757](#)), `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` ([757](#))

### 51.13.5 TFPSMap.Add

Synopsis: Add a key, value pair to the map.

Declaration: `function Add(AKey: Pointer; AData: Pointer) : Integer`  
`function Add(AKey: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds the memory pointed to by `AData` to the map using the memory pointed to by `AKey` as the key. If no data is specified, it allocates a slot for `AKey` and returns a pointer to that slot.

Errors: If the maximum amount of values is reached, `Add` will raise an `EListError` ([713](#)) exception.

See also: `TFPSMap.Insert` ([753](#)), `TFPSMap.IndexOf` ([753](#))

### 51.13.6 TFPSMap.Find

Synopsis: Find data using the associated key

Declaration: `function Find(AKey: Pointer; out Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Find` searches for the first key less than or equal to `AKey` and returns its index in the list in `Index`. It returns `True` if an exact match for the key was found. It returns `False` if the key was not found, and `Index` is then set to `-1`.

This function performs a binary search using the key comparing function specified in `OnKeyPtrCompare` (757).

**Errors:** if `OnKeyPtrCompare` is not set, an access violation will occur.

**See also:** `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (757)

### 51.13.7 TFPSMap.IndexOf

**Synopsis:** Index of key pointed to by `AKey`

**Declaration:** `function IndexOf(AKey: Pointer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `IndexOf` returns the index of the element with a key pointed to by `AKey`. It returns `-1` if the key was not found.

If the list is sorted, then a binary search is performed, otherwise a linear search is used to find the key.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TFPSMap.Find` (752), `TFPSMap.IndexOfData` (753), `TFPSMap.Keys` (756), `TFPSMap.Data` (756)

### 51.13.8 TFPSMap.IndexOfData

**Synopsis:** Index of data item `AData`

**Declaration:** `function IndexOfData(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `IndexOfData` returns the index of the element with data pointed to by `AData`. It returns `-1` if the data item was not found. The search is always performed using a linear search.

**See also:** `TFPSMap.Find` (752), `TFPSMap.IndexOf` (753), `TFPSMap.Keys` (756), `TFPSMap.Data` (756)

### 51.13.9 TFPSMap.Insert

**Synopsis:** Insert a new slot for key and associated data item in the list

**Declaration:** `function Insert(Index: Integer) : Pointer`  
`procedure Insert(Index: Integer; out AKey: Pointer; out AData: Pointer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Insert` will allocate a new slot in the list. It returns a pointer to the new slot. If `Akey` and `AData` are given, then they will point to the positions in the slot for the key and data items.

**Errors:** If the maximum amount of values is reached or an invalid index is specified, `Insert` will raise an `EListError` (713) exception.

**See also:** `TFPSMap.Add` (752), `TFPSMap.InsertKey` (754), `TFPSMap.InsertKeyData` (754)

**51.13.10 TFPSMap.InsertKey**

Synopsis: Insert a key in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKey(Index: Integer; AKey: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKey` will allocate a new slot in the list for a key value as pointed to by `AKey`, and copy the key pointed to by `AKey` to the slot.

Errors: If the maximum amount of values is reached or an invalid index is specified, `InsertKey` will raise an `EListError` (713) exception.

See also: `TFPSMap.Add` (752), `TFPSMap.Insert` (753), `TFPSMap.InsertKeyData` (754)

**51.13.11 TFPSMap.InsertKeyData**

Synopsis: Insert a key and associated in the list

Declaration: `procedure InsertKeyData(Index: Integer; AKey: Pointer; AData: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertKeyData` will allocate a new slot in the list for a key value as pointed to by `AKey`, and copy the key pointed to by `AKey` as well as the data pointed to by `AData` to the newly allocated slot.

Errors: If the maximum amount of values is reached or an invalid index is specified, `InsertKeyData` will raise an `EListError` (713) exception.

See also: `TFPSMap.Add` (752), `TFPSMap.Insert` (753), `TFPSMap.InsertKey` (754)

**51.13.12 TFPSMap.Remove**

Synopsis: Remove a key/value pair from the map.

Declaration: `function Remove(AKey: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the key/value pair pointing to by `AKey` from the map. It returns the index of `Akey` prior to removal from the list. If `AKey` was not found, -1 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSList.Delete` (745), `TFPSMap.IndexOf` (753)

**51.13.13 TFPSMap.Sort**

Synopsis: Sort the list according to key

Declaration: `procedure Sort`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` sorts the list according to the key value, using the compare function provided in `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (757)

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (757), `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` (757)

### 51.13.14 TFPSMap.Duplicates

Synopsis: What to do with duplicate key values

Declaration: `Property Duplicates : TDuplicates`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Duplicates` can be set to determine what to do with duplicate key values in the map:

**dupIgnore** Ignore the new item, do not add it to the list.

**dupAccept** Accept duplicates, adding them to the list.

**dupError** Raise an error when an attempt is made to add a duplicate.

The value is ignored if `Sorted` (756) is `False`.

See also: `TFPSMap.Sorted` (756), `types.TDuplicates` (712)

### 51.13.15 TFPSMap.KeySize

Synopsis: Size (in bytes) for the key

Declaration: `Property KeySize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `KeySize` is the size (in bytes) for the keys in the map. This size is initialized during list construction and defaults to the size of a pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` (752), `TFPSMap.DataSize` (755), `TFPSMap.Keys` (756), `TFPSMap.KeyData` (756)

### 51.13.16 TFPSMap.DataSize

Synopsis: Size (in bytes) for the data associated with keys

Declaration: `Property DataSize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DataSize` is the size (in bytes) for the data in the map. This size is initialized during list construction and defaults to the size of a pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.Create` (752), `TFPSMap.KeySize` (755), `TFPSMap.Keys` (756), `TFPSMap.KeyData` (756), `TFPSMap.Data` (756)

**51.13.17 TFPSMap.Keys**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the locations of all keys

Declaration: `Property Keys[Index: Integer]: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Keys` provides indexed access to all keys. It does not return the key, but returns a pointer to the key value. When setting the `Keys` property, a pointer to the key value must be set, and the key value is copied from the pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.KeySize` ([755](#)), `TFPSMap.KeyData` ([756](#)), `TFPSMap.Data` ([756](#))

**51.13.18 TFPSMap.Data**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the locations of all data items

Declaration: `Property Data[Index: Integer]: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` provides indexed access to all data. It does not return the actual data, but returns a pointer to the data. When setting the `Data` property, a pointer to the data value must be set, and the data value is copied from the pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.DataSize` ([755](#)), `TFPSMap.KeyData` ([756](#)), `TFPSMap.Keys` ([756](#))

**51.13.19 TFPSMap.KeyData**

Synopsis: Access to data locations using key

Declaration: `Property KeyData[Key: Pointer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeyData` provides access to the data items, using their key value (as pointed to by `AKey`) as an index. When reading a non-existent key value, `Nil` is returned. If the key is found, a pointer to the associated data's location is returned. When writing, the key pointed to by `Key` is added if it was not present, and the data data is copied from the written pointer.

See also: `TFPSMap.DataSize` ([755](#)), `TFPSMap.KeyData` ([756](#)), `TFPSMap.Data` ([756](#)), `TFPSMap.Keys` ([756](#)), `TFPSMap.KeySize` ([755](#))

**51.13.20 TFPSMap.Sorted**

Synopsis: Is the map permanently sorted on key ?

Declaration: `Property Sorted : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** `Sorted` can be set to `true` to keep the map permanently sorted on key value. The sorting happens using `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (757).

See also: `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (757), `TFPSMap.Sort` (754), `TFPSMap.Duplicates` (755)

### 51.13.21 TFPSMap.OnPtrCompare

**Synopsis:** Alias for `OnKeyPtrCompare`

**Declaration:** `Property OnPtrCompare : TFPSListCompareFunc`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `OnPtrCompare` is a deprecated alias for `OnKeyPtrCompare` (757).

See also: `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (757), `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` (757)

### 51.13.22 TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare

**Synopsis:** Callback to compare 2 keys

**Declaration:** `Property OnKeyPtrCompare : TFPSListCompareFunc`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `OnKeyPtrCompare` is used to compare the values of 2 keys. By default it simply compares the byte values of the key memory block. It can be set to any function that performs another comparison. (e.g. a function that treats the memory blocks as a string pointer and compare the actual strings).

This function is used to sort the list or find a key.

See also: `TFPSListCompareFunc` (712), `TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare` (757), `TFPSMap.Sort` (754), `TFPSMap.Find` (752), `TFPSMap.IndexOf` (753)

### 51.13.23 TFPSMap.OnDataPtrCompare

**Synopsis:** Callback to compare 2 data items

**Declaration:** `Property OnDataPtrCompare : TFPSListCompareFunc`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `OnKeyPtrCompare` is used to compare the values of 2 keys. By default it simply compares the byte values of the key memory block. It can be set to any function that performs another comparison. (e.g. a function that treats the memory blocks as a string pointer and compare the actual strings).

This function is used to find a data item (`IndexOf` (753)).

See also: `TFPSListCompareFunc` (712), `TFPSMap.OnKeyPtrCompare` (757), `TFPSMap.IndexOfData` (753)

## Chapter 52

# Reference for unit 'fpwiderstring'

### 52.1 Used units

Table 52.1: Used units by unit 'fpwiderstring'

Name	Page
unicodedata	<a href="#">1982</a>

### 52.2 Overview

`fpwiderstring` implements Unicode string support for the Free Pascal RTL using native Object Pascal routines. It is meant to be used on operating systems where the operating system does not natively support Unicode transformations and operations.

In general, it is sufficient to include the unit in the uses clause of a program. The initialization code of the unit will set the Unicode string manager of the system unit to the object pascal implementation contained in this unit.

This unit needs Unicode collation and character set tables in order to be able to do its work correctly. These must be registered using the routines of the `unicodedata` ([758](#)) unit: the FPC project distributes some Unicode collation data in `.bco` files which can be loaded using the `LoadCollation` ([1993](#)) routine.

In order for sorting and comparing of strings to work, a collation must be used. The collation in general depends on the internationalization of the application. Since the system unit does not know about collations, the collation must be set in the `fpWideString` unit using the `SetActiveCollation` ([759](#)) function. The collation can be set on a per-thread basis.

New threads get `DefaultCollationName` ([759](#)) as the active collation name.

The `fpwiderstring` unit performs conversions between Unicode and single-byte ansistring conversions (excluding UTF8). Support for various single-byte encodings are based on the `charset` ([758](#)) unit. This unit can be used to load single byte code pages. Various code page units such as `cp895`, `cp932`, `cp950` are provided by the "rtl-unicode" package.

The `fpwiderstring` requires at least the Default Unicode Collation Element Table to be registered (called `DUCET`). The `DUCET` encoding is provided by the `unicodeducet` unit. More information can be found in the `unicodedata` ([758](#)) unit.

## 52.3 Constants, types and variables

### 52.3.1 Variables

`DefaultCollationName` : `UnicodeString` = ''

`DefaultCollationName` is the collation name for new threads. It is empty by default.

## 52.4 Procedures and functions

### 52.4.1 GetActiveCollation

**Synopsis:** Return the currently active collation for the current thread

**Declaration:** `function GetActiveCollation` : `PUCA_DataBook`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetActiveCollation` returns the currently active collation, for the current thread, as set using the `SetActiveCollation` (759) function.

New threads get `DefaultCollationName` (759) as the active collation name. The collation can be changed per thread using the `SetActiveCollation` (759) function.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetActiveCollation` (759), `DefaultCollationName` (759)

### 52.4.2 SetActiveCollation

**Synopsis:** Set the active collation for the current thread.

**Declaration:** `function SetActiveCollation(const AName: UnicodeString)` : `Boolean`  
`function SetActiveCollation(const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook)` : `Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetActiveCollation` sets the collation used in the current thread of the application. This can be done using the name of the collation (`AName`) as registered or in the `unicodedata` (758) unit or using the actual collation data (`ACollation`).

**Errors:** If the collation `AName` was not found, or `ACollation` is nil, then `False` is returned.

**See also:** `GetActiveCollation` (759), `DefaultCollationName` (759)



## Chapter 53

# Reference for unit 'getopts'

### 53.1 Overview

This document describes the GETOPTS unit for Free Pascal. It was written for Linux by Michael Van Canneyt. It now also works for all supported platforms.

The getopts unit provides a mechanism to handle command-line options in a structured way, much like the GNU getopts mechanism. It allows you to define the valid options for your program, and the unit will then parse the command-line options for you, and inform you of any errors.

### 53.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 53.2.1 Constants

`EndOfOptions = #255`

Returned by `getopt` (762), `getlongopts` (761) to indicate that there are no more options.

`No_Argument = 0`

Specifies that a long option does not take an argument.

`Optional_Argument = 2`

Specifies that a long option optionally takes an argument.

`OptSpecifier : Set of Char = ['-']`

Character indicating an option on the command-line.

`Required_Argument = 1`

Specifies that a long option needs an argument.

### 53.2.2 Types

`Orderings = (require_order, permute, return_in_order)`

Table 53.1: Enumeration values for type `Orderings`

Value	Explanation
<code>permute</code>	Change command-line options.
<code>require_order</code>	Don't touch the ordering of the command-line options
<code>return_in_order</code>	Return options in the correct order.

Command-line ordering options.

`POption = ^TOption`

Pointer to `TOption` (765) record.

### 53.2.3 Variables

`OptArg : string`

Set to the argument of an option, if the option needs one.

`OptErr : Boolean`

Indicates whether `getopt()` prints error messages.

`OptInd : LongInt`

when all options have been processed, `optind` is the index of the first non-option parameter. This is a read-only variable. Note that it can become equal to `paramcount+1`.

`OptOpt : Char`

In case of an error, contains the character causing the error.

## 53.3 Procedures and functions

### 53.3.1 GetLongOpts

Synopsis: Return next long option.

Declaration: `function GetLongOpts(ShortOpts: string; LongOpts: POption;  
var Longind: LongInt) : Char`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Returns the next option found on the command-line, taking into account long options as well. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable.

if any of the option definitions in `LongOpts` array has the `Flag` pointer set, then the return value is the null character (`#0` or `char(0)`) and the actual option letter is written in the location pointed to by `Flag`.

`ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. (see [Getopt \(762\)](#) for its description and use) `LongOpts` is a pointer to the first element of an array of `Option` records, the last of which needs a name of zero length.

The function tries to match the names even partially (i.e. `-app` will match e.g. the `append` option), but will report an error in case of ambiguity.

If the option needs an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Required_argument` (1), if the option optionally has an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Optional_argument` (2). If the option needs no argument, set `Has_arg` to zero.

Required arguments can be specified in two ways :

1. Pasted to the option : `-option=value`
2. As a separate argument : `-option value`

Optional arguments can only be specified through the first method.

**Errors:** see [Getopt \(762\)](#).

See also: [Getopt \(762\)](#)

### 53.3.2 GetOpt

**Synopsis:** Get next short option.

**Declaration:** `function GetOpt(ShortOpts: string) : Char`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Returns the next option found on the command-line. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable.

`ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. If a letter is followed by a colon (:), then that option needs an argument. If a letter is followed by 2 colons, the option has an optional argument. If the first character of `shortoptions` is a '+' then options following a non-option are regarded as non-options (standard Unix behavior). If it is a '-', then all non-options are treated as arguments of a option with character `#0`. This is useful for applications that require their options in the exact order as they appear on the command-line. If the first character of `shortoptions` is none of the above, options and non-options are permuted, so all non-options are behind all options. This allows options and non-options to be in random order on the command line.

**Errors:** Errors are reported through giving back a '?' character. `OptOpt` then gives the character which caused the error. If `OptErr` is `True` then `getopt` prints an error-message to `stdout`.

See also: [GetLongOpts \(761\)](#)

**Listing:** `./optex/optex.pp`

---

```

program testopt;

{ Program to depmonstrate the getopt function. }

{
  Valid calls to this program are
  optex —verbose —add me —delete you
  optex —append —create child
  optex -ab -c me -d you
  and so on
}
uses getopt;

var c : char;
    optionindex : Longint;
    theopts : array[1..7] of TOption;

begin
  with theopts[1] do
    begin
      name:= 'add';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[2] do
    begin
      name:= 'append';
      has_arg:=0;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[3] do
    begin
      name:= 'delete';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[4] do
    begin
      name:= 'verbose';
      has_arg:=0;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[5] do
    begin
      name:= 'create';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;
      value:= 'c'
    end;
  with theopts[6] do
    begin
      name:= 'file';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;

```

---

```

    value:=#0;
end;
with theopts[7] do
begin
    name:= '';
    has_arg:=0;
    flag:=nil;
end;
c:=#0;
repeat
    c:=getlongopts('abc:d:012',@theo[1],optionindex);
    case c of
        '1','2','3','4','5','6','7','8','9' :
            begin
                writeln('Got optind : ',c)
            end;
        #0 : begin
                write('Long option : ',theo[optionindex].name);
                if theopts[optionindex].has_arg>0 then
                    writeln(' With value : ',optarg)
                else
                    writeln
                end;
            'a' : writeln('Option a. ');
            'b' : writeln('Option b. ');
            'c' : writeln('Option c : ', optarg);
            'd' : writeln('Option d : ', optarg);
            '?' : writeln('Error with opt : ',optopt);
        end; { case }
    until c=endofoptions;
    if optind<=paramcount then
        begin
            write('Non options : ');
            while optind<=paramcount do
                begin
                    write(paramstr(optind),' ');
                    inc(optind)
                end;
            writeln
        end
    end
end.

```

---

## 53.4 TOption

```

TOption = record
public
    Name : string;
    Has_arg : Integer;
    Flag
    : PChar;
    Value : Char;
    procedure SetOption(const aName: string
    ; AHas_Arg: Integer;
    AFlag: PChar; AValue: Char
    );

```

end

The `TOption` type is used to communicate the long options to `GetLongOpts` (761). The `Name` field is the name of the option. `Has_arg` specifies if the option wants an argument, `Flag` is a pointer to a `char`, which is set to `Value`, if it is non-`nil`.

### 53.4.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">765</a>	<code>SetOption</code>	

### 53.4.2 `TOption.SetOption`

**Declaration:** `procedure SetOption(const aName: string; AHas_Arg: Integer;  
                                  AFlag: PChar; AValue: Char)`

**Visibility:** `public`

## Chapter 54

# Reference for unit 'go32'

### 54.1 Overview

This document describes the GO32 unit for the Free Pascal compiler under dos. It was donated by Thomas Schatzl (tom\_at\_work@geocities.com), for which my thanks. This unit was first written for dos by Florian Klaempfl.

Only the GO32V2 DPMI mode is discussed by me here due to the fact that new applications shouldn't be created with the older GO32V1 model. The go32v2 version is much more advanced and better. Additionally a lot of functions only work in DPMI mode anyway. I hope the following explanations and introductions aren't too confusing at all. If you notice an error or bug send it to the FPC mailing list or directly to me. So let's get started and happy and error free coding I wish you.... Thomas Schatzl, 25. August 1998

### 54.2 Real mode callbacks

The callback mechanism can be thought of as the converse of calling a real mode procedure (i.e. interrupt), which allows your program to pass information to a real mode program, or obtain services from it in a manner that's transparent to the real mode program. In order to make a real mode callback available, you must first get the real mode callback address of your procedure and the selector and offset of a register data structure. This real mode callback address (this is a segment:offset address) can be passed to a real mode program via a software interrupt, a dos memory block or any other convenient mechanism. When the real mode program calls the callback (via a far call), the DPMI host saves the registers contents in the supplied register data structure, switches into protected mode, and enters the callback routine with the following settings:

- interrupts disabled
- %CS : %EIP = 48 bit pointer specified in the original call to `get_rm_callback` ([791](#))
- %DS : %ESI = 48 bit pointer to real mode SS : SP
- %ES : %EDI = 48 bit pointer of real mode register data structure.
- %SS : %ESP = locked protected mode stack
- All other registers undefined

The callback procedure can then extract its parameters from the real mode register data structure and/or copy parameters from the real mode stack to the protected mode stack. Recall that the segment

register fields of the real mode register data structure contain segment or paragraph addresses that are not valid in protected mode. Far pointers passed in the real mode register data structure must be translated to virtual addresses before they can be used with a protected mode program. The callback procedure exits by executing an IRET with the address of the real mode register data structure in `%ES:%EDI`, passing information back to the real mode caller by modifying the contents of the real mode register data structure and/or manipulating the contents of the real mode stack. The callback procedure is responsible for setting the proper address for resumption of real mode execution into the real mode register data structure; typically, this is accomplished by extracting the return address from the real mode stack and placing it into the `%CS:%EIP` fields of the real mode register data structure. After the IRET, the DPMI host switches the CPU back into real mode, loads ALL registers with the contents of the real mode register data structure, and finally returns control to the real mode program. All variables and code touched by the callback procedure MUST be locked to prevent page faults.

See also: `get_rm_callback` (791), `free_rm_callback` (786), `lock_code` (802), `lock_data` (803)

### 54.3 Executing software interrupts

Simply execute a `realintr()` call with the desired interrupt number and the supplied register data structure. But some of these interrupts require you to supply them a pointer to a buffer where they can store data to or obtain data from in memory. These interrupts are real mode functions and so they only can access the first Mb of linear address space, not FPC's data segment. For this reason FPC supplies a pre-initialized dos memory location within the GO32 unit. This buffer is internally used for dos functions too and so it's contents may change when calling other procedures. It's size can be obtained with `tb_size` (813) and it's linear address via `transfer_buffer` (813). Another way is to allocate a completely new dos memory area via the `global_dos_alloc` (798) function for your use and supply its real mode address.

See also: `tb_size` (813), `transfer_buffer` (813), `global_dos_alloc` (798), `global_dos_free` (801), `realintr` (805)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/softint.pp`

---

```
{ Executes a real mode software interrupt

Exactly the interrupt call to get the DOS version.

get DOS version Int 21h / function 30h
Input:
    AH = $30
    AL = $1
Return:
    AL = major version number
    AH = minor version number
}

uses
    go32;

var
    r : treatregs;

begin
    r.ah := $30;
    r.al := $01;
    realintr($21, r);
    Writeln('DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
```



end.

---

**Listing:** ./go32ex/rmpmint.pp

---

*{ This example shows the difference between protected and real mode interrupts; it redirects the protected mode handler to an own handler which returns an impossible function result and calls it afterwards. Then the real mode handler is called directly, to show the difference between the two. }*

*Used Interrupt:*

*get DOS version Int 21h / function 30h*

*Input: AH = \$30*

*AL = \$1*

*Return: AL = major version number*

*AH = minor version number*

*}*

**uses**

crt,  
go32;

**var**

r : trealregs;  
*{ temporary variable used for the protected mode int call }*  
axreg : Word;

oldint21h : tseginfo;

newint21h : tseginfo;

*{ this is our int 21h protected mode interrupt handler. It catches the function call to get the DOS version, all other int 21h calls are redirected to the old handler; it is written in assembly because the old handler can't be called with pascal }*

**procedure** int21h\_handler; **assembler**;

**asm**

cmpw \$0x3001, %ax  
jne .LCallOld  
movw \$0x3112, %ax  
iret

.LCallOld:

ljmp %cs:oldint21h

**end**;

*{ a small helper procedure, which waits for a keypress }*

**procedure** resume;

**begin**

**Writeln**;  
**Write**('— press any key to resume —'); **readkey**;  
**gotoxy**(1, wherey); **clreol**;

**end**;

**begin**

*{ see the text messages for further detail }*  
**clrscr**;  
**Writeln**('Executing real mode interrupt');  
resume;  
r.ah := \$30; r.al := \$01; **realintr**(\$21, r);

---

```

Writeln( 'DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
resume;
Writeln( 'Executing protected mode interrupt without our own',
          ' handler');
Writeln;
asm
    movb $0x30, %ah
    movb $0x01, %al
    int $0x21
    movw %ax, axreg
end;
Writeln( 'DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
resume;
Writeln( 'As you can see the DPML hosts default protected mode',
          ' handler');
Writeln( 'simply redirects it to the real mode handler');
resume;
Writeln( 'Now exchanging the protected mode interrupt with our ',
          ' own handler');
resume;

newint21h.offset := @int21h_handler;
newint21h.segment := get_cs;
get_pm_interrupt($21, oldint21h);
set_pm_interrupt($21, newint21h);

Writeln( 'Executing real mode interrupt again');
resume;
r.ah := $30; r.al := $01; realintr($21, r);
Writeln( 'DOS v', r.al, '.', r.ah, ' detected');
Writeln;
Writeln( 'See, it didn''t change in any way.');
resume;
Writeln( 'Now calling protected mode interrupt');
resume;
asm
    movb $0x30, %ah
    movb $0x01, %al
    int $0x21
    movw %ax, axreg
end;
Writeln( 'DOS v', lo(axreg), '.', hi(axreg), ' detected');
Writeln;
Writeln( 'Now you can see that there''s a distinction between ',
          ' the two ways of calling interrupts...');
set_pm_interrupt($21, oldint21h);
end.

```

---

## 54.4 Software interrupts

Ordinarily, a handler installed with `set_pm_interrupt` (809) only services software interrupts that are executed in protected mode; real mode software interrupts can be redirected by `set_rm_interrupt` (811).

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (811), `get_rm_interrupt` (796), `set_pm_interrupt` (809), `get_pm_interrupt` (791), `lock_data` (803), `lock_code` (802), `enable` (785), `disable` (784), `outportb` (804)

## 54.5 Hardware interrupts

Hardware interrupts are generated by hardware devices when something unusual happens; this could be a keypress or a mouse move or any other action. This is done to minimize CPU time, else the CPU would have to check all installed hardware for data in a big loop (this method is called 'polling') and this would take much time. A standard IBM-PC has two interrupt controllers, that are responsible for these hardware interrupts: both allow up to 8 different interrupt sources (IRQs, interrupt requests). The second controller is connected to the first through IRQ 2 for compatibility reasons, e.g. if controller 1 gets an IRQ 2, he hands the IRQ over to controller 2. Because of this up to 15 different hardware interrupt sources can be handled. IRQ 0 through IRQ 7 are mapped to interrupts 8h to Fh and the second controller (IRQ 8 to 15) is mapped to interrupt 70h to 77h. All of the code and data touched by these handlers **MUST** be locked (via the various locking functions) to avoid page faults at interrupt time. Because hardware interrupts are called (as in real mode) with interrupts disabled, the handler has to enable them before it returns to normal program execution. Additionally a hardware interrupt must send an EOI (end of interrupt) command to the responsible controller; this is accomplished by sending the value 20h to port 20h (for the first controller) or A0h (for the second controller). The following example shows how to redirect the keyboard interrupt.

**Listing:** ./go32ex/keyclick.pp

---

*{ This example demonstrates how to chain to a hardware interrupt.*

*In more detail, it hooks the keyboard interrupt, calls a user procedure which in this case simply turns the PC speaker on and off. Then the old interrupt is called.*

*}*

```
{ $ASMMODE ATT }
{ $MODE FPC }
```

**uses**

```
crt ,
go32;
```

**const**

```
{ keyboard is IRQ 1 -> interrupt 9 }
kbdint = $9;
```

**var**

```
{ holds old PM interrupt handler address }
oldint9_handler : tseginfo;
{ new PM interrupt handler }
newint9_handler : tseginfo;

{ pointer to interrupt handler }
clickproc : pointer;
{ the data segment selector }
backupDS : Word; external name '___v2prt0_ds_alias';
```

```
{ interrupt handler }
```

```
procedure int9_handler; assembler;
```

**asm**

```
cli
{ save all registers, because we don't know which the compiler
uses for the called procedure }
pushl %ds
pushl %es
pushl %fs
```

```

    pushl %gs
    pushal
    { set up to call a FPC procedure }
    movw %cs:backupDS, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds
    movw %ax, %es
    movw dosmemselector, %ax
    movw %ax, %fs
    { call user procedure }
    call *clickproc
    { restore all registers }
    popal
    popl %gs
    popl %fs
    popl %es
    popl %ds
    { note: in go32v2 mode %cs=%ds=%es !!!}
    jmp %cs:oldint9_handler { call old handler }
    { we don't need to do anything more, because the old interrupt
      handler does this for us (send EOI command, iret, sti...) }
end;
{ dummy procedure to retrieve exact length of handler, for locking
and unlocking functions }
procedure int9_dummy; begin end;

{ demo user procedure, simply clicks on every keypress }
procedure clicker;
begin
    sound(500); delay(10); nosound;
end;
{ dummy procedure to retrieve exact length of user procedure for
locking and unlocking functions }
procedure clicker_dummy; begin end;

{ installs our new handler }
procedure install_click;
begin
    clickproc := @clicker;
    { lock used code and data }
    lock_data(clickproc, sizeof(clickproc));
    lock_data(dosmemselector, sizeof(dosmemselector));

    lock_code(@clicker,
        longint(@clicker_dummy) - longint(@clicker));
    lock_code(@int9_handler,
        longint(@int9_dummy) - longint(@int9_handler));
    { fill in new handler's 48 bit pointer }
    newint9_handler.offset := @int9_handler;
    newint9_handler.segment := get_cs;
    { get old PM interrupt handler }
    get_pm_interrupt(kbdint, oldint9_handler);
    { set the new interrupt handler }
    set_pm_interrupt(kbdint, newint9_handler);
end;

{ deinstalls our interrupt handler }
procedure remove_click;
begin

```

---

```

    { set old handler }
    set_pm_interrupt(kbdint, oldint9_handler);
    { unlock used code & data }
    unlock_data(dosmemselector, sizeof(dosmemselector));
    unlock_data(clickproc, sizeof(clickproc));

    unlock_code(@clicker,
                longint(@clicker_dummy)-longint(@clicker));
    unlock_code(@int9_handler,
                longint(@int9_dummy)-longint(@int9_handler));
end;

var
    ch : char;

begin
    install_click;
    Writeln('Enter any message. Press return when finished');
    while (ch <> #13) do begin
        ch := readkey; write(ch);
    end;
    remove_click;
end.

```

---

## 54.6 Disabling interrupts

The GO32 unit provides the two procedures `disable()` and `enable()` to disable and enable all interrupts.

## 54.7 Creating your own interrupt handlers

Interrupt redirection with FPC pascal is done via the `set_pm_interrupt()` for protected mode interrupts or via the `set_rm_interrupt()` for real mode interrupts.

## 54.8 Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts

As mentioned before, there's a distinction between real mode interrupts and protected mode interrupts; the latter are protected mode programs, while the former must be real mode programs. To call a protected mode interrupt handler, an assembly 'int' call must be issued, while the other is called via the `realintr()` or `intr()` function. Consequently, a real mode interrupt then must either reside in dos memory (<1MB) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address via the `get_rm_callback()` function.

## 54.9 Handling interrupts with DPMI

The interrupt functions are real-mode procedures; they normally can't be called in protected mode without the risk of a protection fault. So the DPMI host creates an interrupt descriptor table for the application. Initially all software interrupts (except for int 31h, 2Fh and 21h function 4Ch) or external hardware interrupts are simply directed to a handler that reflects the interrupt in real-mode, i.e. the DPMI host's default handlers switch the CPU to real-mode, issue the interrupt and switch back to

protected mode. The contents of general registers and flags are passed to the real mode handler and the modified registers and flags are returned to the protected mode handler. Segment registers and stack pointer are not passed between modes.

## 54.10 Interrupt redirection

Interrupts are program interruption requests, which in one or another way get to the processor; there's a distinction between software and hardware interrupts. The former are explicitly called by an 'int' instruction and are a bit comparable to normal functions. Hardware interrupts come from external devices like the keyboard or mouse. Functions that handle hardware interrupts are called handlers.

## 54.11 Processor access

These are some functions to access various segment registers (%cs, %ds, %ss) which makes your work a bit easier.

See also: [get\\_cs \(787\)](#), [get\\_ds \(788\)](#), [get\\_ss \(798\)](#)

## 54.12 I/O port access

The I/O port access is done via the various [inportb \(801\)](#), [outportb \(804\)](#) functions which are available. Additionally Free Pascal supports the Turbo Pascal `PORT[]`-arrays but it is by no means recommended to use them, because they're only for compatibility purposes.

See also: [outportb \(804\)](#), [inportb \(801\)](#)

## 54.13 dos memory access

Dos memory is accessed by the predefined `dosmemselector` selector; the GO32 unit additionally provides some functions to help you with standard tasks, like copying memory from heap to dos memory and the likes. Because of this it is strongly recommended to use them, but you are still free to use the provided standard memory accessing functions which use 48 bit pointers. The third, but only thought for compatibility purposes, is using the `mem[]`-arrays. These arrays map the whole 1 Mb dos space. They shouldn't be used within new programs. To convert a segment:offset real mode address to a protected mode linear address you have to multiply the segment by 16 and add its offset. This linear address can be used in combination with the `DOSMEMSELECTOR` variable.

See also: [dosmemget \(775\)](#), [dosmemput \(776\)](#), [dosmemmove \(775\)](#), [dosmemfillchar \(774\)](#), [dosmemfillword \(775\)](#), [seg\\_move \(808\)](#), [seg\\_fillchar \(807\)](#), [seg\\_fillword \(808\)](#)

## 54.14 FPC specialities

The %ds and %es selector MUST always contain the same value or some system routines may crash when called. The %fs selector is preloaded with the `DOSMEMSELECTOR` variable at startup, and it MUST be restored after use, because again FPC relies on this for some functions. Luckily we asm programmers can still use the %gs selector for our own purposes, but for how long ?

See also: [get\\_cs \(787\)](#), [get\\_ds \(788\)](#), [get\\_ss \(798\)](#), [allocate\\_ldt\\_descriptors \(779\)](#), [free\\_ldt\\_descriptor \(785\)](#), [segment\\_to\\_descriptor \(806\)](#), [get\\_next\\_selector\\_increment\\_value \(790\)](#), [get\\_segment\\_base\\_address \(797\)](#), [set\\_segment\\_base\\_address \(811\)](#), [set\\_segment\\_limit \(812\)](#), [create\\_code\\_segment\\_alias\\_descriptor \(783\)](#)

## 54.15 Selectors and descriptors

Descriptors are a bit like real mode segments; they describe (as the name implies) a memory area in protected mode. A descriptor contains information about segment length, its base address and the attributes of it (i.e. type, access rights, ...). These descriptors are stored internally in a so-called descriptor table, which is basically an array of such descriptors. Selectors are roughly an index into this table. Because these 'segments' can be up to 4 GB in size, 32 bits aren't sufficient anymore to describe a single memory location like in real mode. 48 bits are now needed to do this, a 32 bit address and a 16 bit sized selector. The GO32 unit provides the tseginfo record to store such a pointer. But due to the fact that most of the time data is stored and accessed in the %ds selector, FPC assumes that all pointers point to a memory location of this selector. So a single pointer is still only 32 bits in size. This value represents the offset from the data segment base address to this memory location.

## 54.16 What is DPMI

The dos Protected Mode Interface helps you with various aspects of protected mode programming. These are roughly divided into descriptor handling, access to dos memory, management of interrupts and exceptions, calls to real mode functions and other stuff. Additionally it automatically provides swapping to disk for memory intensive applications. A DPMI host (either a Windows dos box or CWSDPMI.EXE) provides these functions for your programs.

## 54.17 Constants, types and variables

### 54.17.1 Constants

```
auxcarryflag = $010
```

Check for auxiliary carry flag in trealregs ([779](#))

```
carryflag = $001
```

Check for carry flag in trealregs ([779](#))

```
directionflag = $400
```

Check for direction flag in trealregs ([779](#))

```
dosmemfillchar : procedure(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt; c
    : Char) = @ dpmi_dosmemfillchar
```

Sets a region of dos memory to a specific byte value.

Parameters:

**seg** real mode segment.

**ofs** real mode offset.

**count** number of bytes to set.

**c** value to set memory to.

Notes: No range check is performed.

```
dosmemfillword : procedure(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt; w
    : Word) = @ dpmi_dosmemfillword
```

Sets a region of dos memory to a specific word value.

Parameters:

**seg** real mode segment.

**ofs** real mode offset.

**count** number of words to set.

**w** value to set memory to.

Notes: No range check is performed.

```
dosmemget : procedure(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt
    ) = @ dpmi_dosmemget
```

Copies data from the dos memory onto the heap.

Parameters:

**seg** source real mode segment.

**ofs** source real mode offset.

**data** destination.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range checking is performed.

For an example, see [global\\_dos\\_alloc \(798\)](#).

```
dosmemmove : procedure(sseg: Word; sofs: Word; dseg: Word; dofs: Word
    ;
    count: LongInt) = @ dpmi_dosmemmove
```

Copies count bytes of data between two dos real mode memory locations.

Parameters:

**sseg** source real mode segment.

**sofs** source real mode offset.

**dseg** destination real mode segment.



**dofs** destination real mode offset.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range check is performed in any way.

```
dosmemput : procedure(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt
  ) = @ dpmi_dosmemput
```

Copies heap data to dos real mode memory.

Parameters:

**seg** destination real mode segment.

**ofs** destination real mode offset.

**data** source.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range checking is performed.

For an example, see `global_dos_alloc` (798).

```
interruptflag = $200
```

Check for interrupt flag in `trealregs` (779)

```
overflowflag = $800
```

Check for overflow flag in `trealregs` (779)

```
parityflag = $004
```

Check for parity flag in `trealregs` (779)

```
rm_dpml = 4
```

`get_run_mode` (796) return value: DPMI (e.g. dos box or 386Max)

```
rm_raw = 1
```

`get_run_mode` (796) return value: raw (without HIMEM)

```
rm_unknown = 0
```

`get_run_mode` (796) return value: Unknown runmode

```
rm_vcpi = 3
```

`get_run_mode` (796) return value: VCPI (with HIMEM and EMM386)

```
rm_xms = 2
```

`get_run_mode` (796) return value: XMS (with HIMEM, without EMM386)

`signflag` = \$080

Check for sign flag in `trealregs` (779)

`trapflag` = \$100

Check for trap flag in `trealregs` (779)

`zeroflag` = \$040

Check for zero flag in `trealregs` (779)

### 54.17.2 Types

`registers` = `trealregs`

Alias for `trealregs` (779)

```
trealregs = record
case Integer of
1: (
    EDI : LongInt;
    ESI : LongInt
    ;
    EBP : LongInt;
    Res : LongInt;
    EBX : LongInt;
    EDX : LongInt
    ;
    ECX : LongInt;
    EAX : LongInt;
    Flags : Word;
    ES : Word;
    DS : Word;
    FS : Word;
    GS : Word;
    IP : Word;
    CS : Word;
    SP : Word;
    SS : Word;
);
2: (
    DI : Word;
    DI2 : Word;
    SI
    : Word;
    SI2 : Word;
    BP : Word;
    BP2 : Word;
    R1 : Word;
```

```
R2
: Word;
BX : Word;
BX2 : Word;
DX : Word;
DX2 : Word;
CX
: Word;
CX2 : Word;
AX : Word;
AX2 : Word;
);
3: (
stuff
: Array[1..4] of LongInt;
BL : Byte;
BH : Byte;
BL2 : Byte
;
BH2 : Byte;
DL : Byte;
DH : Byte;
DL2 : Byte;
DH2 : Byte
;
CL : Byte;
CH : Byte;
CL2 : Byte;
CH2 : Byte;
AL : Byte
;
AH : Byte;
AL2 : Byte;
AH2 : Byte;
);
4: (
RealEDI : LongInt
;
RealESI : LongInt;
RealEBP : LongInt;
RealRES : LongInt;
RealEBX : LongInt;
RealEDX : LongInt;
RealECX : LongInt;
RealEAX
: LongInt;
RealFlags : Word;
RealES : Word;
RealDS : Word;
RealFS : Word;
RealGS : Word;
RealIP : Word;
RealCS : Word
;
```

```

    RealSP : Word;
    RealSS : Word;
);
end

```

The `trealregs` type contains the data structure to pass register values to a interrupt handler or real mode callback.

### 54.17.3 Variables

```
dosmemselector : Word
```

Selector to the dos memory. The whole dos memory is automatically mapped to this single descriptor at startup. This selector is the recommended way to access dos memory.

```
int31error : Word
```

This variable holds the result of a DPMI interrupt call. Any nonzero value must be treated as a critical failure.

## 54.18 Procedures and functions

### 54.18.1 `allocate_ldt_descriptors`

Synopsis: Allocate a number of descriptors

Declaration: `function allocate_ldt_descriptors(count: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a number of new descriptors.

Parameters:

**count:** \specifies the number of requested unique descriptors.

Return value: The base selector.

**Remark** Notes: The descriptors allocated must be initialized by the application with other function calls. This function returns descriptors with a limit and size value set to zero. If more than one descriptor was requested, the function returns a base selector referencing the first of a contiguous array of descriptors. The selector values for subsequent descriptors in the array can be calculated by adding the value returned by the `get_next_selector_increment_value` (790) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `free_ldt_descriptor` (785), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (790), `segment_to_descriptor` (806), `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor` (783), `set_segment_limit` (812), `set_segment_base_address` (811)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/seldes.pp`

---

```

{
  This example demonstrates the usage of descriptors and the effects of
  changing its limit and base address.

```

*In more detail, the program fills the region described by an allocated descriptor in text screen memory with various characters. Before doing this it saves the entire screen contents to the heap and restores it afterwards.*

*Some additional background:*

*The text screen of a VGA card has it's address space at \$B800:0; screen memory is organized in a linear fashion, e.g. the second line comes directly after the first, where each cell occupies 2 bytes of memory (1 byte character data, 1 byte attributes). It is 32 kb in size.*

*Hence the offset of a single memory cell from its origin is:*

$$Y * \text{columns} * 2 + X * 2$$

*where X and Y mark the point and columns is the number of character cells per line*

```

}
{$mode delphi}
uses
    crt ,
    go32;

const
    { screen x and y dimensions }
    maxx = 80;
    maxy = 25;
    { bytes used for every character cell }
    bytespercell = 2;
    { screen size in bytes }
    screensize = maxx * maxy * bytespercell;

    { the linear address of $B800:0 }
    linB8000 = $B800 * 16;

type
    string80 = string[80];

var
    { holds the old screen contents }
    text_save : array[0..screensize-1] of byte;
    { old cursor x and y coordinates }
    text_oldx, text_oldy : Word;

    { selector to the text mode screen }
    text_sel : Word;

    { prints a status message on the first line of the screen and then
    waits for a keypress }
    procedure status(s : string80);
    begin
        gotoxy(1, 1); clrscr; write(s); readkey;
    end;

    { writes some descriptor info on the last 2 lines }
    procedure selinfo(sel : Word);

```

```

begin
  gotoxy(1, 24);
  clreol; writeln('Descriptor base address : $',
    hexstr(get_segment_base_address(sel), 8));
  clreol; write('Descriptor limit : ', get_segment_limit(sel));
end;

{ returns a 2 byte character cell, which includes character data
and its color attributes }
function makechar(ch : char; color : byte) : Word;
begin
  result := byte(ch) or (color shl 8);
end;

begin
  { save original screen contents to variable, this time by using
  seg_move() and the dosmemselector variable }
  seg_move(dosmemselector, linB8000, get_ds, longint(@text_save),
    screensize);
  { additionally we have to save the old screen cursor
  coordinates }
  text_oldx := wherex; text_oldy := wherey;
  { clear the whole screen }
  seg_fillword(dosmemselector, linB8000, screensize div 2,
    makechar(' ', Black or (Black shl 4)));
  { output message }
  status('Creating selector ''text_sel'' to a part of ' +
    'text screen memory');
  { allocate descriptor }
  text_sel := allocate_ldt_descriptors(1);
  { set its base address to the linear address of the text screen
  + the byte size of one line (=maxx * bytespercell * 1) }
  set_segment_base_address(text_sel,
    linB8000 + bytespercell * maxx * 1);
  { the limit is set to the screensize reduced by one (a must be)
  and the number of lines we don't want to have touched (first
  line + lower 2 lines) }
  set_segment_limit(text_sel, screensize - 1 - bytespercell *
    maxx * 3);
  { write descriptor info }
  selinfo(text_sel);

  status('and clearing entire memory selected by ''text_sel'' +
    ' descriptor');
  { fill the entire selected memory with single characters }
  seg_fillword(text_sel, 0, (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
    makechar(' ', LightBlue shl 4));

  status('Notice that only the memory described by the ' +
    'descriptor changed, nothing else');

  status('Now reducing it''s limit and base and setting it''s ' +
    'described memory');
  { set the base address of the descriptor (increase it by the
  byte size of one line) }
  set_segment_base_address(text_sel,
    get_segment_base_address(text_sel) + bytespercell * maxx);
  { decrease the limit by byte size of 2 lines (1 line because

```

---

```

        base address changed, one line on the lower end) }
set_segment_limit(text_sel,
    get_segment_limit(text_sel) - bytespercell * maxx * 2);
{ write descriptor info }
selinfo(text_sel);
status('Notice that the base addr increased by one line but ' +
    'the limit decreased by 2 lines');
status('This should give you the hint that the limit is ' +
    'relative to the base');
{ fill the descriptor area }
seg_fillword(text_sel, 0, (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
    makechar(#176, LightMagenta or Brown shl 4));

status('Now let''s get crazy and copy 10 lines of data from ' +
    'the previously saved screen');
{ copy memory from the data segment to screen }
seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save), text_sel,
    maxx * bytespercell * 2, maxx * bytespercell * 10);

status('At last freeing the descriptor and restoring the old ' +
    'screen contents..');
status('I hope this little program may give you some hints ' +
    'on working with descriptors');
{ free the descriptor so that it can be used for things }
free_ldt_descriptor(text_sel);
{ restore old state }
seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save), dosmemselector,
    linB8000, screensize);
gotoxy(text_oldx, text_oldy);
end.

```

---

## 54.18.2 allocate\_memory\_block

**Synopsis:** Allocate a block of linear memory

**Declaration:** `function allocate_memory_block(size: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Allocates a block of linear memory.

**Parameters:**

**size:**Size of requested linear memory block in bytes.

**Returned values:** blockhandle - the memory handle to this memory block. Linear address of the requested memory.

**Remark** *warning* According to my DPMI docs this function is not implemented correctly. Normally you should also get a blockhandle to this block after successful operation. This handle can then be used to free the memory block afterwards or use this handle for other purposes. Since the function isn't implemented correctly, and doesn't return a blockhandle, the block can't be deallocated and is hence unusable ! This function doesn't allocate any descriptors for this block, it's the applications responsibility to allocate and initialize for accessing this memory.

**Errors:** Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `free_memory_block` (786)

### 54.18.3 copyfromdos

Synopsis: Copy data from DOS to heap

Declaration: `procedure copyfromdos(var addr; len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data from the pre-allocated dos memory transfer buffer to the heap.

Parameters:

**addr** data to copy to.

**len** number of bytes to copy to heap.

Notes: Can only be used in conjunction with the dos memory transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `tb_size` (813), `transfer_buffer` (813), `copytodos` (783)

### 54.18.4 copytodos

Synopsis: Copy data from heap to DOS memory

Declaration: `procedure copytodos(var addr; len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data from heap to the pre-allocated dos memory buffer.

Parameters:

**addr** data to copy from.

**len** number of bytes to copy to dos memory buffer.

Notes: This function fails if you try to copy more bytes than the transfer buffer is in size. It can only be used in conjunction with the transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `tb_size` (813), `transfer_buffer` (813), `copyfromdos` (783)

### 54.18.5 create\_code\_segment\_alias\_descriptor

Synopsis: Create new descriptor from existing descriptor

Declaration: `function create_code_segment_alias_descriptor(seg: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Creates a new descriptor that has the same base and limit as the specified descriptor.

Parameters:

**seg** Descriptor.

Return values: The data selector (alias).

Notes: In effect, the function returns a copy of the descriptor. The descriptor alias returned by this function will not track changes to the original descriptor. In other words, if an alias is created with this function, and the base or limit of the original segment is then changed, the two descriptors will no longer map the same memory.



Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `set_segment_limit` (812), `set_segment_base_address` (811)

### 54.18.6 `disable`

Synopsis: Disable hardware interrupts

Declaration: `procedure disable`

Visibility: default

Description: Disables all hardware interrupts by execution a CLI instruction.

Errors: None.

See also: `enable` (785)

### 54.18.7 `dpmi_dosmemfillchar`

Synopsis: Fill DOS memory with a character

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemfillchar(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt; c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` fills the DOS memory region indicated by `seg,ofs` with `count` characters `c`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmemput` (785), `dpmi_dosmemget` (784), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (785), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (784)

### 54.18.8 `dpmi_dosmemfillword`

Synopsis: Fill DOS memory with a word value

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemfillword(seg: Word; ofs: Word; count: LongInt; w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemfillword` fills the DOS memory region indicated by `seg,ofs` with `count` words `w`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmemput` (785), `dpmi_dosmemget` (784), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (784), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (785)

### 54.18.9 `dpmi_dosmemget`

Synopsis: Move data from DOS memory to DPMI memory

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemget(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemput` moves `count` bytes of data from the DOS memory location indicated by `seg` and `ofs` to DPMI memory indicated by `data`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmemput` (785), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (785), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (784), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (784)

**54.18.10 dpmi\_dosmemmove**

Synopsis: Move DOS memory

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemmove(sseg: Word; sofs: Word; dseg: Word;  
dofs: Word; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemmove` moves `count` bytes from DOS memory `sseg,sofs` to `dseg,dofs`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempnt` (785), `dpmi_dosmemget` (784), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (784), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (784)

**54.18.11 dpmi\_dosmempnt**

Synopsis: Move data from DPPI memory to DOS memory.

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmempnt(seg: Word; ofs: Word; var data; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmempnt` moves `count` bytes of data from `data` to the DOS memory location indicated by `seg` and `ofs`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmemget` (784), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (785), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (784), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (784)

**54.18.12 enable**

Synopsis: Enable hardware interrupts

Declaration: `procedure enable`

Visibility: default

Description: Enables all hardware interrupts by executing a STI instruction.

Errors: None.

See also: `disable` (784)

**54.18.13 free\_ldt\_descriptor**

Synopsis: Free a descriptor

Declaration: `function free_ldt_descriptor(d: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated descriptor.

Parameters:

**des**The descriptor to be freed.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise. Notes: After this call this selector is invalid and must not be used for any memory operations anymore. Each descriptor allocated with `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779) must be freed individually with this function, even if it was previously allocated as a part of a contiguous array of descriptors.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (790)

#### 54.18.14 `free_linear_addr_mapping`

Synopsis: ? No description available

Declaration: `function free_linear_addr_mapping(linear_addr: dword) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

#### 54.18.15 `free_memory_block`

Synopsis: Free allocated memory block

Declaration: `function free_memory_block(blockhandle: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated memory block.

Parameters:

**blockhandle** the handle to the memory area to free.

Return value: `True` if successful, `false` otherwise. Notes: Frees memory that was previously allocated with `allocate_memory_block` (782) . This function doesn't free any descriptors mapped to this block, it's the application's responsibility.

Errors: Check `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `allocate_memory_block` (782)

#### 54.18.16 `free_rm_callback`

Synopsis: Release real mode callback.

Declaration: `function free_rm_callback(var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Releases a real mode callback address that was previously allocated with the `get_rm_callback` (791) function.

Parameters:

**intaddr** real mode address buffer returned by `get_rm_callback` (791) .

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` if not

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (791).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (811), `get_rm_callback` (791)

### 54.18.17 `get_cs`

Synopsis: Get CS selector

Declaration: `function get_cs : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the cs selector.

Return value: The content of the cs segment register.

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (809).

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (788), `get_ss` (798)

### 54.18.18 `get_descriptor_access_right`

Synopsis: Get descriptor's access rights

Declaration: `function get_descriptor_access_right(d: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Gets the access rights of a descriptor.

Parameters:

`d` selector to descriptor.

Return value: Access rights bit field.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `set_descriptor_access_right` (809)

### 54.18.19 `get_dpmi_version`

Synopsis: Return DPPI information

Declaration: `function get_dpmi_version(var version: tdpmiversioninfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_dpmi_version` returns version information (Int \$31 Function \$0400) in `Version` and returns `True` if the information was retrieved successfully, `false` if the call failed.

Errors: The call returns `false` if the information could not be retrieved.

See also: `tdpmiversioninfo` (815)

**54.18.20 get\_ds**

Synopsis: Get DS Selector

Declaration: `function get_ds : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the ds selector.

Return values: The content of the ds segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_cs` (787), `get_ss` (798)

**54.18.21 get\_exception\_handler**

Synopsis: Return current exception handler

Declaration: `function get_exception_handler(e: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_exception_handler` returns the exception handler for exception E in intaddr. It returns True if the call was successful, False if not.

See also: `set_exception_handler` (809), `get_pm_exception_handler` (791)

**54.18.22 get\_linear\_addr**

Synopsis: Convert physical to linear address

Declaration: `function get_linear_addr(phys_addr: dword; size: LongInt) : dword`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a physical address into a linear address.

Parameters:

**phys\_addr** physical address of device.

**size** Size of region to map in bytes.

Return value: Linear address that can be used to access the physical memory. Notes: It's the applications responsibility to allocate and set up a descriptor for access to the memory. This function shouldn't be used to map real mode addresses.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `set_segment_limit` (812), `set_segment_base_address` (811)

**54.18.23 get\_meminfo**

Synopsis: Return information on the available memory

Declaration: `function get_meminfo(var meminfo: tmeminfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns information about the amount of available physical memory, linear address space, and disk space for page swapping.

Parameters:

**meminfo**buffer to fill memory information into.

Return values: Due to an implementation bug this function always returns `False`, but it always succeeds.

**Remark** Notes: Only the first field of the returned structure is guaranteed to contain a valid value. Any fields that are not supported by the DPMI host will be set by the host to `-1` (`0FFFFFFFFH`) to indicate that the information is not available. The size of the pages used by the DPMI host can be obtained with the `get_page_size` (790) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `get_page_size` (790)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/meminfo.pp`

---

```
{ Shows how to obtain memory information via get_meminfo();

notice the checks if any of the returned information is invalid (-1)
}

uses
    go32;

var
    meminfo : tmeminfo;

begin
    get_meminfo(meminfo);
    if (int31error <> 0) then begin
        Writeln('Error getting DPMI memory information... Halting');
        Writeln('DPMI error number : ', int31error);
    end else begin
        with meminfo do begin
            Writeln('Largest available free block : ',
                available_memory div 1024, ' kbytes');
            if (available_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Maximum available unlocked pages : ',
                    available_pages);
            if (available_lockable_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Maximum lockable available pages : ',
                    available_lockable_pages);
            if (linear_space <> -1) then
                Writeln('Linear address space size : ',
                    linear_space*get_page_size div 1024, ' kbytes');
            if (unlocked_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of unlocked pages : ',
                    unlocked_pages);
```

```

        if (available_physical_pages <> -1) then
            Writeln('Total number of free pages : ',
                available_physical_pages);
        if (total_physical_pages <> -1) then
            Writeln('Total number of physical pages : ',
                total_physical_pages);
        if (free_linear_space <> -1) then
            Writeln('Free linear address space : ',
                free_linear_space*get_page_size div 1024,
                ' kbytes');
        if (max_pages_in_paging_file <> -1) then
            Writeln('Maximum size of paging file : ',
                max_pages_in_paging_file*get_page_size div 1024,
                ' kbytes');
    end;
end;
end.

```

---

#### 54.18.24 get\_next\_selector\_increment\_value

Synopsis: Return selector increment value

Declaration: `function get_next_selector_increment_value : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the selector increment value when allocating multiple subsequent descriptors via `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779).

Return value: Selector increment value.

**Remark** Notes: Because `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779) only returns the selector for the first descriptor and so the value returned by this function can be used to calculate the selectors for subsequent descriptors in the array.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `free_ldt_descriptor` (785)

#### 54.18.25 get\_page\_attributes

Synopsis: ? No description available

Declaration: `function get_page_attributes(handle: dword; offset: dword;
 pagecount: dword; buf: pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

#### 54.18.26 get\_page\_size

Synopsis: Return the page size

Declaration: `function get_page_size : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the size of a single memory page.

Return value: Size of a single page in bytes.

**Remark** The returned size is typically 4096 bytes.

For an example, see `get_meminfo` (789).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `get_meminfo` (789)

### 54.18.27 `get_pm_exception_handler`

Synopsis: Get protected mode exception handler

Declaration: `function get_pm_exception_handler(e: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_pm_exception_handler` returns the protected mode exception handler for exception `E` in `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `get_exception_handler` (788), `set_pm_exception_handler` (809)

### 54.18.28 `get_pm_interrupt`

Synopsis: Return protected mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function get_pm_interrupt(vector: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the address of a current protected mode interrupt handler.

Parameters:

**vector** interrupt handler number you want the address to.

**intaddr** buffer to store address.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` if not.

**Remark** The returned address is a protected mode selector:offset address.

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (809).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `set_pm_interrupt` (809), `set_rm_interrupt` (811), `get_rm_interrupt` (796)

### 54.18.29 `get_rm_callback`

Synopsis: Return real mode callback

Declaration: `function get_rm_callback(pm_func: pointer; const reg: trealregs;  
var rmcb: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default



**Description:** Returns a unique real mode `segment : offset` address, known as a "real mode callback," that will transfer control from real mode to a protected mode procedure.

**Parameters:**

**pm\_func** pointer to the protected mode callback function.

**regs** supplied registers structure.

**rmcb** buffer to real mode address of callback function.

**Return values:** True if successful, otherwise False.

**Remark** Callback addresses obtained with this function can be passed by a protected mode program for example to an interrupt handler, device driver, or TSR, so that the real mode program can call procedures within the protected mode program or notify the protected mode program of an event. The contents of the supplied `regs` structure is not valid after function call, but only at the time of the actual callback.

**Errors:** Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `free_rm_callback` (786)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/callback.pp`

---

*{ This program tries to give an example how to install a callback procedure with the help of the GO32 unit.*

*It installs a callback which is supplied by any Microsoft compatible mouse driver; at a specified mouse action this routine is called. This callback must provide the services explained in the docs. The main callback has to be in assembly, because it isn't possible to do these services with pascal alone. But is written as general as possible to provide maximum re-usability for other applications and hence it simply calls a normal pascal user procedure in addition to some initialization and callback service code, so you don't need to hassle around with it too much.*

*Notes to this user procedure :*

*\*) it should not last too long to execute it*

*\*) ALL data and code touched in this proc MUST be locked BEFORE it is called the first time*

*Used software interrupt calls (rough descriptions, only what's used):*

*Int 33h 0000h – Microsoft Mouse driver : Reset mouse*

*Input : AX = 0000h*

*Return : AX = FFFFh if successful*

*BX = number of buttons (if FFFFh then mouse has 2 buttons)*

*Int 33h 0001h – Microsoft Mouse driver : Show mouse cursor*

*Input : AX = 0001h*

*Return : Mouse cursor shown on screen*

*Int 33h 0002h – Microsoft mouse driver : Hide mouse cursor*

*Input : AX = 0002h*

*Return : Hides mouse cursor again*

*Int 33h 000Ch – Microsoft mouse driver : Install user callback*

*Input : AX = 000Ch*

*CX = bit mask which tells the mouse driver at which actions the callback should be called, i.e. if button pressed, mouse moved etc.*

*(In this example it's set to 7Fh so that the callback is called on every action)*

*ES:EDX = pointer to callback procedure to call*

*Note : The registers structure supplied to the callback contains valid mouse data when the handler is called.*

*BX = button state information*

*CX = mouse X coordinates*

*DX = mouse Y coordinates*

*For more detailed information consult any mouse reference or interrupt list.*

}

{ \$CALLING REGISTER }

{ \$ASM MODE ATT }

{ \$MODE FPC }

**uses**

crt,  
go32;

**const**

*{ the mouse interrupt number }*  
mouseint = \$33;

**var**

*{ supplied register structure to the callback }*  
mouse\_regs : trealregs; **external name** '\_\_\_v2prt0\_rmcb\_regs';  
*{ real mode 48 bit pointer to the callback }*  
mouse\_seginfo : tseginfo;

**var**

*{ number of mouse buttons }*  
mouse\_numbuttons : longint;

*{ bit mask for the action which triggered the callback }*  
mouse\_action : word;

*{ current mouse x and y coordinates }*  
mouse\_x, mouse\_y : Word;

*{ button state }*  
mouse\_b : Word;

*{ is an additional user procedure installed }*  
userproc\_installed : Longbool;

*{ length of additional user procedure }*  
userproc\_length : Longint;

*{ pointer to user proc }*  
userproc\_proc : pointer;

*{ callback control handler, calls a user procedure if installed }*

*{ callback control handler, calls a user procedure if installed }*

**procedure** callback\_handler; **assembler**;

**asm**

pushw %ds  
pushl %eax  
movw %es, %ax

```

movw %ax, %ds

{ give control to user procedure if installed }
cmpl $0, USERPROC_INSTALLED
je .LNoCallback
pushal
movw DOSmemSELECTOR, %ax
movw %ax, %fs { set fs for FPC }
call *USERPROC_PROC
popal
.LNoCallback:

popl %eax
popw %ds

pushl %eax
movl (%esi), %eax
movl %eax, %es: 42(%edi) { adjust stack }
addw $4, %es:46(%edi)
popl %eax
iret
end;
{ This dummy is used to obtain the length of the callback control
function. It has to be right after the callback_handler() function.
}
procedure mouse_dummy; begin end;

{ This is the supplied user procedure. In this case we simply
transform the virtual 640x200 mouse coordinate system to a 80x25
text mode coordinate system }
procedure textuserproc;
begin
    { the mouse_regs record contains the real mode registers now }
    mouse_b := mouse_regs.bx;
    mouse_x := (mouse_regs.cx shr 3) + 1;
    mouse_y := (mouse_regs.dx shr 3) + 1;
end;

{ Description : Installs the mouse callback control handler and
handles all necessary mouse related initialization.
Input : userproc – pointer to a user procedure, nil if none
        userproclen – length of user procedure
}
procedure install_mouse(userproc : pointer; userproclen : longint);
var r : trealregs;
begin
    { mouse driver reset }
    r.eax := $0; realintr(mouseint, r);
    if (r.eax <> $FFFF) then begin
        WriteLn('No Microsoft compatible mouse found');
        WriteLn('A Microsoft compatible mouse driver is necessary ',
            'to run this example');
        halt;
    end;
    { obtain number of mouse buttons }
    if (r.bx = $ffff) then mouse_numbuttons := 2
    else mouse_numbuttons := r.bx;
    WriteLn(mouse_numbuttons, ' button Microsoft compatible mouse ',

```

```

        ' found. ');
    { check for additional user procedure, and install it if
      available }
    if (userproc <> nil) then begin
        userproc_proc := userproc;
        userproc_installed := true;
        userproc_length := userproc_len;
        { lock code for user procedure }
        lock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
    end else begin
        { clear variables }
        userproc_proc := nil;
        userproc_length := 0;
        userproc_installed := false;
    end;
    { lock code & data which is touched in the callback handler }
    lock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
    lock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
    lock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
    lock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

    lock_data(userproc_installed, sizeof(userproc_installed));
    lock_data(userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));

    lock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
    lock_data(mouse_seginf, sizeof(mouse_seginf));
    lock_code(@callback_handler,
              longint(@mouse_dummy) - longint(@callback_handler));
    { allocate callback (supply registers structure) }
    get_rm_callback(@callback_handler, mouse_regs, mouse_seginf);
    { install callback }
    r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := $7f;
    r.edx := longint(mouse_seginf.offset);
    r.es := mouse_seginf.segment;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
    { show mouse cursor }
    r.eax := $01;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
end;

procedure remove_mouse;
var
    r : trealregs;
begin
    { hide mouse cursor }
    r.eax := $02; realintr(mouseint, r);
    { remove callback handler }
    r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := 0; r.edx := 0; r.es := 0;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
    { free callback }
    free_rm_callback(mouse_seginf);
    { check if additional userproc is installed, and clean up if
      needed }
    if (userproc_installed) then begin
        unlock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
        userproc_proc := nil;
        userproc_length := 0;
        userproc_installed := false;
    end;
end;

```

```

end;
{ unlock used code & data }
unlock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
unlock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
unlock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
unlock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

unlock_data(userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));
unlock_data(userproc_installed, sizeof(userproc_installed));

unlock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
unlock_data(mouse_seginfo, sizeof(mouse_seginfo));
unlock_code(@callback_handler,
            longint(@mouse_dummy) - longint(@callback_handler));
fillchar(mouse_seginfo, sizeof(mouse_seginfo), 0);
end;

begin
install_mouse(@textuserproc, 400);
Writeln('Press any key to exit...');
while (not keypressed) do begin
    { write mouse state info }
    gotoxy(1, wherey);
    write('MouseX : ', mouse_x:2, ' MouseY : ', mouse_y:2,
          ' Buttons : ', mouse_b:2);

end;
remove_mouse;
end.

```

---

### 54.18.30 get\_rm\_interrupt

Synopsis: Get real mode interrupt vector

Declaration: `function get_rm_interrupt(vector: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the contents of the current machine's real mode interrupt vector for the specified interrupt.

Parameters:

**vector** interrupt vector number.

**intaddr** buffer to store real mode segment:offset address.

Return values: True if successful, False otherwise.

**Remark** The returned address is a real mode segment address, which isn't valid in protected mode.

Errors: Check the `int3!error` (779) variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (811), `set_pm_interrupt` (809), `get_pm_interrupt` (791)

### 54.18.31 get\_run\_mode

Synopsis: Return current run mode

Declaration: `function get_run_mode : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the current mode your application runs with.

Return values: One of the constants used by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_run_mode` (796)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/getrunmd.pp`

---

```
{ Simply write a message according to the current environment }

uses
    go32;

begin
    { depending on the detected environment we simply write
    another message Note: in go32v2 this will always be rm_dpml. }

    case (get_run_mode) of
        rm_unknown :
            WriteLn( 'Unknown environment found' );
        rm_raw      :
            WriteLn( 'You are currently running in raw mode ',
                    '(without HIMEM)' );
        rm_xms      :
            WriteLn( 'You are currently using HIMEM.SYS only' );
        rm_vcpi     :
            WriteLn( 'VCPI server detected. You''re using HIMEM and ',
                    'EMM386' );
        rm_dpml     :
            WriteLn( 'DPML detected. You''re using a DPML host like ',
                    'a windows DOS box or CWSDPML' );

    end;
end.
```

---

### 54.18.32 `get_segment_base_address`

Synopsis: Return base address from descriptor table

Declaration: `function get_segment_base_address(d: Word) : dword`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the 32-bit linear base address from the descriptor table for the specified segment.

Parameters:

**d** selector of the descriptor you want the base address of.

Return values: Linear base address of specified descriptor.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `set_segment_base_address` (811), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `set_segment_limit` (812), `get_segment_limit` (798)

**54.18.33 get\_segment\_limit**

Synopsis: Return segment limits from descriptor

Declaration: `function get_segment_limit(d: Word) : dword`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a descriptors segment limit.

Parameters:

**d**selector.

Return value: Limit of the descriptor in bytes.

Errors: Returns zero if descriptor is invalid.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `set_segment_limit` (812), `set_segment_base_address` (811), `get_segment_base_address` (797)

**54.18.34 get\_ss**

Synopsis: Return SS selector

Declaration: `function get_ss : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the ss selector.

Return values: The content of the ss segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (788), `get_cs` (787)

**54.18.35 global\_dos\_alloc**

Synopsis: Allocate DOS real mode memory

Declaration: `function global_dos_alloc(bytes: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a block of dos real mode memory.

Parameters:

**bytes**size of requested real mode memory.

Return values: The low word of the returned value contains the selector to the allocated dos memory block, the high word the corresponding real mode segment value. The offset value is always zero. This function allocates memory from dos memory pool, i.e. memory below the 1 MB boundary that is controlled by dos. Such memory blocks are typically used to exchange data with real mode programs, TSRs, or device drivers. The function returns both the real mode segment base address of the block and one descriptor that can be used by protected mode applications to access the block. This function should only be used for temporary buffers to get real mode information (e.g. interrupts that need a data structure in ES:(E)DI), because every single block needs a unique selector. The returned selector should only be freed by a `global_dos_free` (801) call.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `global_dos_free` (801)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/buffer.pp`

---

*{ This program demonstrates the usage of DOS real mode memory by executing a software interrupt which needs a buffer to store data into. Because these interrupts are real mode funcs, the buffer must be located in real mode memory space (first MB of memory). Such memory can only be allocated by the `global_dos_alloc()` and `global_dos_free()` functions of the GO32 unit.*

*In more detail this program tries to detect a VESA 2.0 BIOS extension of your graphics card and outputs its version.*

*Here's the necessary interrupt call description:*

*Int 10h 4f00h : VESA BIOS extension installation check  
Input : AX = 4F00h  
        ES:DI = pointer to 512 byte information buffer  
Output : AX = 004Fh if successful  
        ES:DI = pointer to filled buffer*

*Buffer structure : (relevant to this example)*

*must be 'VESA' in the first 4 chars of the buffer to be  
        valid VBE version in the next word*

*Note : to request VBE 2.0 information, the first 4 bytes of the  
        buffer must contain 'VBE2' prior to the interrupt call.*

*(this makes the problem a bit tougher; we first have to copy the  
        buffer with the 'VBE2' id to dos memory...)*

*}*

**uses**

`go32;`

*{The following 2 functions are wrappers to the GO32  
`global_dos_alloc()` and `global_dos_free()` functions to simplify their  
usage }*

*{ Function : `dosalloc` }*

*{ Input : size of a real mode location }*

*{ Output : selector and segment of a real mode location }*

**procedure** `dosalloc`(**var** `selector` : word;  
                    **var** `segment` : word; `size` : longint);

**var**

`res` : longint;

**begin**

*{ try to allocate real mode memory }*

`res := global_dos_alloc(size);`

*{ the lower 16 bits of the result contain the selector to the  
allocated memory block }*

`selector := word(res);`

*{ the upper 16 bits contain the real mode segment address of  
this block; the offset is always 0, so we don't need to return  
this }*



```

        segment := word(res shr 16);
end;

{ Function      : dosfree }
{ Input         : selector of a real mode block }
{ Output        : none }
{ Description   : de-allocates a previously allocated real mode
memory}
procedure dosfree(selector : word);
begin
    { call the GO32 function with the selector }
    global_dos_free(selector);
end;

type
    VBEInfoBuf = packed record
        { contains 'VESA' if successful }
        Signature : array[0..3] of char;
        Version : Word;
        { pad to 512 bytes length }
        reserved : array[0..505] of byte;
    end;

var
    { selector to our real mode buffer }
    selector : Word;
    { real mode segment address of buffer }
    segment : Word;

    { register structure to issue a software interrupt }
    r : trealregs;
    infobuf : VBEInfoBuf;

begin
    { first we reset the registers and infobuf variable }
    fillchar(r, sizeof(r), 0);
    fillchar(infobuf, sizeof(VBEInfoBuf), 0);
    { allocate real mode memory }
    dosalloc(selector, segment, sizeof(VBEInfoBuf));
    { check if an error occurred during allocation }
    if (int31error <> 0) then begin
        Writeln('Error while allocating real mode memory, halting');
        halt;
    end;
    { request VBE 2.0 information, fill out information buffer }
    infobuf.Signature := 'VBE2';
    { copy buffer to the allocated real mode memory }
    dosmemput(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));
    { issue the interrupt; remember : DI = 0 }
    r.ax := $4f00; r.es := segment;
    realintr($10, r);
    { copy buffer to our infobuf variable again }
    dosmemget(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));
    { free allocated real mode memory, because we don't need it
    anymore }
    dosfree(selector);
    { check if interrupt call was successful }
    if (r.ax <> $4f) then begin

```

---

```

        { write message and exit, because the infobuf doesn't contain
          any useful data we could tell the user }
        Writeln('VBE BIOS extension not available, function call ',
                'failed');
        halt;
    end;
    { check if buffer is valid }
    if (infobuf.signature[0] = 'V') and
        (infobuf.signature[1] = 'E') and
        (infobuf.signature[2] = 'S') and
        (infobuf.signature[3] = 'A') then begin
        Writeln('VBE version ', hi(infobuf.version), '.',
                lo(infobuf.version), ' detected');
    end;
end.

```

---

### 54.18.36 global\_dos\_free

Synopsis: Free DOS memory block

Declaration: `function global_dos_free(selector: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated dos memory block.

Parameters:

**selector** selector to the dos memory block.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Remark** The descriptor allocated for the memory block is automatically freed and hence invalid for further use. This function should only be used for memory allocated by `global_dos_alloc` (798).

For an example, see `global_dos_alloc` (798).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `global_dos_alloc` (798)

### 54.18.37 inportb

Synopsis: Read byte from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportb(port: Word) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 byte from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: `outportb` (804), `inportw` (802), `inportl` (802)

**54.18.38 inportl**

Synopsis: Read longint from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportl(port: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 longint from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: [outportb \(804\)](#), [inportb \(801\)](#), [inportw \(802\)](#)

**54.18.39 inportw**

Synopsis: Read word from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportw(port: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 word from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: [outportw \(805\)](#), [inportb \(801\)](#), [inportl \(802\)](#)

**54.18.40 lock\_code**

Synopsis: Lock code memory range

Declaration: `function lock_code(functionaddr: pointer; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory range which is in the code segment selector.

Parameters:

**functionaddr** address of the function to be locked.

**size** size in bytes to be locked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see [get\\_rm\\_callback \(791\)](#).

Errors: Check the `int31error (779)` variable.

See also: [lock\\_linear\\_region \(803\)](#), [lock\\_data \(803\)](#), [unlock\\_linear\\_region \(814\)](#), [unlock\\_data \(814\)](#), [unlock\\_code \(813\)](#)

**54.18.41 lock\_data**

Synopsis: Lock data memory range

Declaration: `function lock_data(var data; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector.

Parameters:

**data** address of data to be locked.

**size** length of data to be locked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (791).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `lock_linear_region` (803), `lock_code` (802), `unlock_linear_region` (814), `unlock_data` (814), `unlock_code` (813)

**54.18.42 lock\_linear\_region**

Synopsis: Lock linear memory region

Declaration: `function lock_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt; size: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory region to prevent swapping of it.

Parameters:

**linearaddr** the linear address of the memory are to be locked.

**size** size in bytes to be locked.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `lock_data` (803), `lock_code` (802), `unlock_linear_region` (814), `unlock_data` (814), `unlock_code` (813)

**54.18.43 map\_device\_in\_memory\_block**

Synopsis: Map a device into program's memory space

Declaration: `function map_device_in_memory_block(handle: dword; offset: dword;  
pagecount: dword; device: dword)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `map_device_in_memory_block` allows to map a device in memory. This function is a direct call of the extender. For more information about it's arguments, see the extender documentation.

**54.18.44 outportb**

Synopsis: Write byte to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportb(port: Word; data: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 byte of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

Errors: None.

See also: `inportb` (801), `outportl` (804), `outportw` (805)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/outport.pp`

---

```
{ This example demonstrates the use of the outport functions.

It simply turns the PC's internal speaker on for 50 ms and off again
}
uses
    crt ,
    go32;

begin
    { turn on speaker }
    outportb($61, $ff);
    { wait a little bit }
    delay(50);
    { turn it off again }
    outportb($61, $0);
end.
```

---

**54.18.45 outportl**

Synopsis: Write longint to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportl(port: Word; data: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 longint of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

For an example, see `outportb` (804).

Errors: None.

See also: `inportl` (802), `outportw` (805), `outportb` (804)

**54.18.46 outportw**

Synopsis: Write word to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportw(port: Word; data: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 word of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

For an example, see `outportb` (804).

Errors: None.

See also: `inportw` (802), `outportl` (804), `outportb` (804)

**54.18.47 realintr**

Synopsis: Simulate interrupt

Declaration: `function realintr(intnr: Word; var regs: trealregs) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Simulates an interrupt in real mode.

Parameters:

**intnr** interrupt number to issue in real mode.

**regs** registers data structure.

Return values: The supplied registers data structure contains the values that were returned by the real mode interrupt. `True` if successful, `False` if not.

**Remark** The function transfers control to the address specified by the real mode interrupt vector of `intnr`. The real mode handler must return by executing an `IRET`.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

**Listing:** `./go32ex/flags.pp`

---

*{ This example demonstrates the use of the flag constants in conjunction with an interrupt call*

*In detail it checks if APM (advanced power management) is available.*

*Int 15h 5300h – APM specification : Installation check*

*Input : AX = 5300h*

*BX = device id of system BIOS (= 0000h)*

*Return : Carry clear if successful*

*AH = major version (BCD)*

*AL = minor version (BCD)*

*}*

---

```

uses
    go32;

var
    r : trealregs;

begin
    { set register values and issue real mode interrupt call }
    r.ax := $5300;
    r.bx := 0;
    realintr($15, r);
    { check if carry clear and write a suited message }
    if ((r.flags and carryflag)=0) then begin
        WriteLn('APM v', (r.ah and $f), '.',
                (r.al shr 4), (r.al and $f), ' detected');
    end else
        WriteLn('APM not present');
end.

```

---

#### 54.18.48 request\_linear\_region

Synopsis: Request linear address region.

Declaration: `function request_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt; size: LongInt; var blockhandle: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `request_linear_region` requests a linear range of addresses of size `Size`, starting at `linearaddr`. If successful, `True` is returned, and a handle to the address region is returned in `blockhandle`.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

#### 54.18.49 segment\_to\_descriptor

Synopsis: Map segment address to descriptor

Declaration: `function segment_to_descriptor(seg: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Maps a real mode segment (paragraph) address onto an descriptor that can be used by a protected mode program to access the same memory.

Parameters:

**seg** the real mode segment you want the descriptor to.

Return values: Descriptor to real mode segment address.

**Remark** The returned descriptors limit will be set to 64 kB. Multiple calls to this function with the same segment address will return the same selector. Descriptors created by this function can never be modified or freed. Programs which need to examine various real mode addresses using the same selector should use the function `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779) and change the base address as necessary.

For an example, see `seg_fillchar` (807).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `free_ldt_descriptor` (785), `set_segment_base_address` (811)

### 54.18.50 `seg_fillchar`

Synopsis: Fill segment with byte value

Declaration: `procedure seg_fillchar(seg: Word; ofs: LongInt; count: LongInt; c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a memory area to a specific value.

Parameters:

**seg** selector to memory area.

**ofs** offset to memory.

**count** number of bytes to set.

**c** byte data which is set.

Return values: None.

Notes: No range check is done in any way.

Errors: None.

See also: `seg_move` (808), `seg_fillword` (808), `dosmemfillchar` (774), `dosmemfillword` (775), `dosmemget` (775), `dosmemput` (776), `dosmemmove` (775)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/vgasel.pp`

---

*{ This example demonstrates the use of the `segment_to_descriptor()` function. }*

*It switches to VGA mode 13h (320x200x256 color), creates a selector to the memory (based at \$A000:0000), clears this memory with color 15 (white) and waits until the enter key is pressed }*

**uses** go32;

**var**

    vgasel : Word;  
    r : trealregs;

**begin**

```
{ set VGA mode 13h }
r.eax := $13; realintr($10, r);
{ allocate descriptor to VGA memory quickly; it could be done
  with allocate_ldt_descriptors() too, but we would have to
  initialize it by ourselves... unlike segment_to_descriptor()
  which automatically sets the limit and the base address
  correctly }
vgasel := segment_to_descriptor($A000);
{ simply fill the screen memory with color 15 }
seg_fillchar(vgasel, 0, 64000, #15);
{ wait for a return press }
readln;
{ back to text mode }
```



---

```

    r.eax := $3; realintr($10, r);
    { don't deallocate vgasel, that can't be done }
end.

```

---

### 54.18.51 seg\_fillword

Synopsis: Fill segment with word value

Declaration: `procedure seg_fillword(seg: Word; ofs: LongInt; count: LongInt; w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a memory area to a specific value.

Parameters:

**seg** selector to memory area.

**ofs** offset to memory.

**count** number of words to set.

**w** word data which is set.

Return values: None.

Notes: No range check is done in any way.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779).

Errors: None.

See also: `seg_move` (808), `seg_fillchar` (807), `dosmemfillchar` (774), `dosmemfillword` (775), `dosmemget` (775), `dosmempu` (776), `dosmemmove` (775)

### 54.18.52 seg\_move

Synopsis: Move data between 2 locations

Declaration: `procedure seg_move(sseg: Word; source: LongInt; dseg: Word; dest: LongInt; count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data between two memory locations.

Parameters:

**sseg** source selector.

**source** source offset.

**dseg** destination selector.

**dest** destination offset.

**count** size in bytes to copy.

Return values: None.

**Remark** Overlapping is only checked if the source selector is equal to the destination selector. No range check is done.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779).

Errors: None.

See also: `seg_fillchar` (807), `seg_fillword` (808), `dosmemfillchar` (774), `dosmemfillword` (775), `dosmemget` (775), `dosmempu` (776), `dosmemmove` (775)

### 54.18.53 set\_descriptor\_access\_right

Synopsis: Set access rights to memory descriptor

Declaration: `function set_descriptor_access_right(d: Word; w: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_descriptor_access_right` sets the access rights for descriptor `d` to `w`

### 54.18.54 set\_exception\_handler

Synopsis: Set exception handler

Declaration: `function set_exception_handler(e: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_exception_handler` sets the exception handler for exception `E` to `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `get_exception_handler` (788), `set_pm_exception_handler` (809)

### 54.18.55 set\_page\_attributes

Synopsis: ? No description available

Declaration: `function set_page_attributes(handle: dword; offset: dword;  
pagecount: dword; buf: pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

### 54.18.56 set\_pm\_exception\_handler

Synopsis: Set protected mode exception handler

Declaration: `function set_pm_exception_handler(e: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_pm_exception_handler` sets the protected mode exception handler for exception `E` to `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `set_exception_handler` (809), `get_pm_exception_handler` (791)

### 54.18.57 set\_pm\_interrupt

Synopsis: Set protected mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function set_pm_interrupt(vector: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the address of the protected mode handler for an interrupt.

Parameters:

**vector** number of protected mode interrupt to set.

**intaddr** selector:offset address to the interrupt vector.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Remark** The address supplied must be a valid `selector:offset` protected mode address.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `get_pm_interrupt` (791), `set_rm_interrupt` (811), `get_rm_interrupt` (796)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/intpm.pp`

---

```
{ This example shows how to redirect a software interrupt by
changing the protected mode handler of the DPMI host.

In more detail it hooks interrupt 1Ch which is called every
time the timer interrupt (int 08) is executed. This is the
preferred way to hook the timer, because int 1Ch is a software
interrupt which doesn't need so much initialization stuff
compared to hooking a hardware interrupt.
}
```

```
uses
    crt ,
    go32;

const
    { interrupt number we want to hook }
    int1c = $1c;

var
    { 48 bit pointer to old interrupt handler }
    oldint1c : tseginfo;
    { 48 bit pointer to new interrupt handler }
    newint1c : tseginfo;

    { increased every time the interrupt is called }
    int1c_counter : Longint;

    { the current data selector }
    int1c_ds : Word; external name '___v2prt0_ds_alias';

{ the actual handler code }
procedure int1c_handler; assembler;
asm
    cli
    { save all registers }
    pushw %ds
    pushw %ax
    { prepare segment registers for FPC procedure }
    movw %cs:int1c_ds, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds
    { simply increase the counter by one }
    incl int1c_counter
    { restore registers }
    popw %ax
    popw %ds
    sti
```

---

```

    iret
end;

var i : Longint;

begin
    { insert right handler data into new handler variable }
    newint1c.offset := @int1c_handler;
    newint1c.segment := get_cs;
    { get the old handler }
    get_pm_interrupt(int1c, oldint1c);
    WriteLn('— Press any key to exit —');
    { set new handler }
    set_pm_interrupt(int1c, newint1c);
    { write the number of interrupts occurred }
    while (not keypressed) do begin
        gotoxy(1, wherey);
        write('Number of interrupts occurred : ', int1c_counter);
    end;
    { restore old handler }
    set_pm_interrupt(int1c, oldint1c);
end.

```

---

#### 54.18.58 set\_rm\_interrupt

Synopsis: Set real mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function set_rm_interrupt(vector: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a real mode interrupt handler.

Parameters:

**vector** the interrupt vector number to set.

**intaddr** address of new interrupt vector.

Return values: True if successful, otherwise False.

**Remark** The address supplied MUST be a real mode segment address, not a `selector:offset` address. So the interrupt handler must either reside in dos memory (below 1 Mb boundary) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address with `get_rm_callback` (791).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `get_rm_interrupt` (796), `set_pm_interrupt` (809), `get_pm_interrupt` (791), `get_rm_callback` (791)

#### 54.18.59 set\_segment\_base\_address

Synopsis: Set descriptor's base address

Declaration: `function set_segment_base_address(d: Word; s: dword) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the 32-bit linear base address of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**dselector.**

**snew** base address of the descriptor.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `get_segment_base_address` (797), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `set_segment_limit` (812), `get_segment_base_address` (797), `get_segment_limit` (798)

### 54.18.60 `set_segment_limit`

Synopsis: Set descriptor limit

Declaration: `function set_segment_limit(d: Word; s: dword) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the limit of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**dselector.**

**snew** limit of the descriptor.

Return values: Returns `True` if successful, else `False`.

**Remark** The new limit specified must be the byte length of the segment - 1. Segment limits bigger than or equal to 1MB must be page aligned, they must have the lower 12 bits set.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (779), `set_segment_base_address` (811), `get_segment_limit` (798), `set_segment_limit` (812)

### 54.18.61 `tb_offset`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer buffer offset

Declaration: `function tb_offset : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `tb_offset` returns the DOS transfer buffer segment.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (813), `tb_segment` (812), `tb_size` (813)

### 54.18.62 `tb_segment`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer buffer segment

Declaration: `function tb_segment : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `tb_segment` returns the DOS transfer buffer segment.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (813), `tb_offset` (812), `tb_size` (813)

### 54.18.63 `tb_size`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer memory buffer size

Declaration: `function tb_size : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the size of the pre-allocated dos memory buffer.

Return values: The size of the pre-allocated dos memory buffer. This block always seems to be 16k in size, but don't rely on this.

Errors: None.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (813), `copyfromdos` (783), `copytodos` (783)

### 54.18.64 `transfer_buffer`

Synopsis: Return offset of DOS transfer buffer

Declaration: `function transfer_buffer : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `transfer_buffer` returns the offset of the transfer buffer.

Errors: None.

See also: `tb_size` (813)

### 54.18.65 `unlock_code`

Synopsis: Unlock code segment

Declaration: `function unlock_code(functionaddr: pointer; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the code segment selector.

Parameters:

**functionaddr** address of function to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (791).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `unlock_linear_region` (814), `unlock_data` (814), `lock_linear_region` (803), `lock_data` (803), `lock_code` (802)

**54.18.66 unlock\_data**

Synopsis: Unlock data segment

Declaration: `function unlock_data(var data; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector.

Parameters:

**data** address of memory to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (791).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `unlock_linear_region` (814), `unlock_code` (813), `lock_linear_region` (803), `lock_data` (803), `lock_code` (802)

**54.18.67 unlock\_linear\_region**

Synopsis: Unlock linear memory region

Declaration: `function unlock_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt; size: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a previously locked linear region range to allow it to be swapped out again if needed.

Parameters:

**linearaddr** linear address of the memory to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (779) variable.

See also: `unlock_data` (814), `unlock_code` (813), `lock_linear_region` (803), `lock_data` (803), `lock_code` (802)

**54.19 tdpmiversioninfo**

```
tdpmiversioninfo = record
  major : Byte;
  minor : Byte;
  flags
    : Word;
  cpu : Byte;
  master_pic : Byte;
  slave_pic : Byte;
end
```

`tdpmiversioninfo` describes the dpmi version information, as returned by `get_dpmi_version` (787). The CPU field can have the following values:

**\$02H** 80286

**\$03H** 80386

**\$04H** 80486

**\$05H-** Newer than 80486

The flags field is a bitmask with the following bits:

**0** 0 for 16 bit DPML, 1 for 32-bit

**1** 0 for virtual 86 mode for reflected interrupts, 1 for return to real mode.

**2** 0 for no virtual memory support, 1 for virtual memory support.

## 54.20 tmeminfo

```
tmeminfo = record
  available_memory : LongInt;
  available_pages
    : LongInt;
  available_lockable_pages : LongInt;
  linear_space
    : LongInt;
  unlocked_pages : LongInt;
  available_physical_pages
    : LongInt;
  total_physical_pages : LongInt;
  free_linear_space
    : LongInt;
  max_pages_in_paging_file : LongInt;
  reserved0 : LongInt
;
  reserved1 : LongInt;
  reserved2 : LongInt;
end
```

`tmeminfo` Holds information about the memory allocation, etc.

**NOTE:** The value of a field is -1 (0ffffffh) if the value is unknown, it's only guaranteed, that `available_memory` contains a valid value. The size of the pages can be determined by the `get_page_size()` function.

## 54.21 tseginfo

```
tseginfo = record
  offset : pointer;
  segment : Word;
end
```



This record is used to store a full 48-bit pointer. This may be either a protected mode selector:offset address or in real mode a segment:offset address, depending on application.

See also: Selectors and descriptors, dos memory access, Interrupt redirection

## Chapter 55

# Reference for unit 'gpm'

### 55.1 Used units

Table 55.1: Used units by unit 'gpm'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">137</a>

### 55.2 Overview

The GPM unit implements an interface to `libgpm`, the console program for mouse handling. This unit was created by Peter Vreman, and is only available on Linux.

When this unit is used, your program is linked to the C libraries, so you must take care of the C library version. Also, it will only work with version 1.17 or higher of the `libgpm` library.

### 55.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 55.3.1 Constants

`GPM_BOT` = 2

Bottom of area.

`GPM_B_LEFT` = 4

Left mouse button identifier.

`GPM_B_MIDDLE` = 2

Middle mouse button identifier.

`GPM_B_RIGHT` = 1

Right mouse button identifier.

GPM\_DOUBLE = 32

Mouse double click event.

GPM\_DOWN = 4

Mouse button down event.

GPM\_DRAG = 2

Mouse drag event.

GPM\_ENTER = 512

Enter area event.

GPM\_HARD = 256

?

GPM\_LEAVE = 1024

Leave area event.

GPM\_LEFT = 4

Left side of area.

GPM\_MAGIC = \$47706D4C

Constant identifying GPM in Gpm\_Open ([824](#)).

GPM\_MFLAG = 128

Motion flag.

GPM\_MOVE = 1

Mouse move event.

GPM\_NODE\_CTL = GPM\_NODE\_DEV

Control socket

GPM\_NODE\_DEV = '/dev/gpmctl'

Device socket filename

GPM\_NODE\_DIR = \_PATH\_VARRUN

Where to write socket.

`GPM_NODE_DIR_MODE = 0775`

Mode of socket.

`GPM_NODE_FIFO = '/dev/gpmdata'`

FIFO name

`GPM_NODE_PID = '/var/run/gpm.pid'`

Name of PID file.

`GPM_RGT = 8`

Right side of area.

`GPM_SINGLE = 16`

Mouse single click event.

`GPM_TOP = 1`

Top of area.

`GPM_TRIPLE = 64`

Mouse triple click event.

`GPM_UP = 8`

Mouse button up event.

`_PATH_DEV = '/dev/'`

Location of `/dev` directory.

`_PATH_VARRUN = '/var/run/'`

Location of run PID files directory.

### 55.3.2 Types

`Pgpmconnect = Pgpm_connect`

Pointer to `TGpmConnect` (820) record.

`Pgpmevent = Pgpm_event`

Pointer to TGpmEvent (820) record

```
Pgpmroi = Pgpm_roi
```

Pointer to TGpmRoi (820) record.

```
Pgpm_connect = ^TGpm_connect
```

Pointer to TGpm\_Connect (827) record.

```
Pgpm_event = ^Tgpm_event
```

Pointer to TGpm\_Event (827) record

```
Pgpm_roi = ^Tgpm_roi
```

Pointer to Tgpm\_roi (828) record.

```
Tgpmconnect = Tgpm_connect
```

Alias for TGpm\_Connect (827) record.

```
TGpmEtype = LongInt
```

Type for event type.

```
Tgpmevent = Tgpm_event
```

Alias for TGPM\_EVent (827) record

```
TGpmHandler = function(var event: Tgpmevent; clientdata: pointer)
    : LongInt
```

Mouse event handler callback.

```
TGpmMargin = LongInt
```

Type to hold area margin.

```
Tgpmroi = Tgpm_roi
```

Alias for TGpm\_roi (828)Record

### 55.3.3 Variables

```
gpm_current_roi : Pgpm_roi
```

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

```
gpm_handler : TGpmHandler
```

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

`gpm_roi : Pgpm_roi`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

`gpm_roi_data : pointer`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

`gpm_roi_handler : TGpmHandler`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

## 55.4 Procedures and functions

### 55.4.1 Gpm\_AnyDouble

Synopsis: Check whether event has double click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyDouble(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnyDouble` returns True if `EventType` contains the `GPM_DOUBLE` flag, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (826), `Gpm_AnySingle` (821), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (826), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (826), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (821)

### 55.4.2 Gpm\_AnySingle

Synopsis: Check whether event has a single click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnySingle(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnySingle` returns True if `EventType` contains the `GPM_SINGLE` flag, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (826), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (821), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (826), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (826), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (821)

### 55.4.3 Gpm\_AnyTriple

Synopsis: Check whether event has a triple click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyTriple(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Gpm_AnySingle` returns `True` if `EventType` contains the `GPM_TRIPLE` flag, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Gpm_StrictSingle` (826), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (821), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (826), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (826), `Gpm_AnySingle` (821)

#### 55.4.4 `gpm_close`

**Synopsis:** Close connection to GPM server.

**Declaration:** `function gpm_close : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Gpm_Close` closes the current connection, and pops the connection stack; this means that the previous connection becomes active again.

The function returns -1 if the current connection is not the last one, and it returns 0 if the current connection is the last one.

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` (823).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Gpm_Open` (824)

#### 55.4.5 `gpm_fitvalues`

**Synopsis:** Change coordinates to fit physical screen.

**Declaration:** `function gpm_fitvalues(var x: LongInt; var y: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Gpm_fitValues` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the visible screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Gpm_FitValuesM` (822)

#### 55.4.6 `gpm_fitvaluesM`

**Synopsis:** Change coordinates to fit margin.

**Declaration:** `function gpm_fitvaluesM(var x: LongInt; var y: LongInt; margin: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Gpm_FitValuesM` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the margin indicated by `margin`. If `margin` is -1, then the values are fitted to the screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Gpm_FitValues` (822)

### 55.4.7 gpm\_getevent

Synopsis: Get event from event queue.

Declaration: `function gpm_getevent(var event: Tgpm_event) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_GetEvent` Reads an event from the file descriptor `gpm_fd`. This file is only for internal use and should never be called by a client application.

It returns 1 on success, and -1 on failure.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `Gpm_GetSnapshot` ([824](#))

**Listing:** `./gpmex/gpmex.pp`

---

```

program gpmex;

{
  Example program to demonstrate the use of the gpm unit.
}

uses gpm;

var
  connect : TGPMConnect;
  event : tgpmevent;

begin
  connect.EventMask:=GPM_MOVE or GPM_DRAG or GPM_DOWN or GPM_UP;
  connect.DefaultMask:=0;
  connect.MinMod:=0;
  connect.MaxMod:=0;
  if Gpm_Open(connect,0)=-1 then
    begin
      WriteLn('No mouse handler present. ');
      Halt(1);
    end;
  WriteLn('Click right button to end. ');
  Repeat
    gpm_getevent(Event);
    With Event do
      begin
        Write('Pos = (',X,',',Y,',') Buttons : (');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_left)<>0 then
          write('left ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_right)<>0 then
          write('right ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_middle)<>0 then
          Write('middle ');
        Write(') Event : ');
        Case EventType and $F of
          GPM_MOVE: write('Move');
          GPM_DRAG: write('Drag');
          GPM_DOWN: write('Down');
          GPM_UP: write('Up');
        end;
      end;
    until Event = GPM_UP;
  end;

```



---

```

        WriteLn ;
    end ;
    Until (Event.Buttons and gpm_b_right) <> 0;
    gpm_close ;
end .

```

---

### 55.4.8 gpm\_getsnapshot

Synopsis: Return servers' current image of mouse state.

Declaration: `function gpm_getsnapshot(eptr: Pgpmevent) : LongInt`  
`function gpm_getsnapshot(var eptr: Tgpmevent) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_GetSnapshot` returns the picture that the server has of the current situation in `Event`. This call will not read the current situation from the mouse file descriptor, but returns a buffered version.

The function returns the number of mouse buttons, or -1 if this information is not available.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_GetEvent` ([823](#))

### 55.4.9 gpm\_lowerroi

Synopsis: Lower a region of interest in the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_lowerroi(which: Pgpm_roi; after: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_LowerRoi` lowers the region of interest which after `after`. If `after` is `Nil`, the region of interest is moved to the bottom of the stack.

The return value is the new top of the region-of-interest stack.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` ([825](#)), `Gpm_PopRoi` ([825](#)), `Gpm_PushRoi` ([825](#))

### 55.4.10 gpm\_open

Synopsis: Open connection to GPM server.

Declaration: `function gpm_open(var conn: Tgpm_connect; flag: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_Open` opens a new connection to the mouse server. The connection is described by the fields of the `conn` record of type `TGPMConnect` ([820](#)).

if `Flag` is 0, then the application only receives events that come from its own terminal device. If it is negative it will receive all events. If the value is positive then it is considered a console number to which to connect.

The return value is -1 on error, or the file descriptor used to communicate with the client. Under an X-Term the return value is -2.

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` ([823](#)).

Errors: On Error, the return value is -1.

See also: [Gpm\\_Open \(824\)](#)

### 55.4.11 gpm\_poproi

Synopsis: Pop region of interest from the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_poproi(which: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_PopRoi` pops the topmost region of interest from the stack. It returns the next element on the stack, or `Nil` if the current element was the last one.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_RaiseRoi \(825\)](#), [Gpm\\_LowerRoi \(824\)](#), [Gpm\\_PushRoi \(825\)](#)

### 55.4.12 gpm\_pushroi

Synopsis: Push region of interest on the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_pushroi(x1: LongInt; y1: LongInt; x2: LongInt;  
y2: LongInt; mask: LongInt; fun: TGpmHandler;  
xtradata: pointer) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_PushRoi` puts a new *region of interest* on the stack. The region of interest is defined by a rectangle described by the corners `(X1, Y1)` and `(X2, Y2)`.

The mask describes which events the handler {fun} will handle; `ExtraData` will be put in the `xtradata` field of the {TGPM\_Roi} record passed to the fun handler.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_RaiseRoi \(825\)](#), [Gpm\\_PopRoi \(825\)](#), [Gpm\\_LowerRoi \(824\)](#)

### 55.4.13 gpm\_raiseroi

Synopsis: Raise region of interest in the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_raiseroi(which: Pgpm_roi; before: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` raises the *region of interest* which till it is on top of region before. If before is nil then the region is put on top of the stack. The returned value is the top of the stack.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_PushRoi \(825\)](#), [Gpm\\_PopRoi \(825\)](#), [Gpm\\_LowerRoi \(824\)](#)

#### 55.4.14 `gpm_repeat`

Synopsis: Check for presence of mouse event.

Declaration: `function gpm_repeat (millisec: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_Repeat` returns 1 if no mouse event arrives in the next `millisec` milliseconds, it returns 0 otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_GetEvent` ([823](#))

#### 55.4.15 `Gpm_StrictDouble`

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a double-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictDouble (EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictDouble` returns true if `EventType` contains only a doubleclick event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` ([826](#)), `Gpm_AnyTriple` ([821](#)), `Gpm_AnyDouble` ([821](#)), `Gpm_StrictTriple` ([826](#)), `Gpm_AnySingle` ([821](#))

#### 55.4.16 `Gpm_StrictSingle`

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a single-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictSingle (EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictDouble` returns True if `EventType` contains only a singleclick event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_AnyTriple` ([821](#)), `Gpm_StrictDouble` ([826](#)), `Gpm_AnyDouble` ([821](#)), `Gpm_StrictTriple` ([826](#)), `Gpm_AnySingle` ([821](#))

#### 55.4.17 `Gpm_StrictTriple`

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a triple-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictTriple (EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictTriple` returns true if `EventType` contains only a triple click event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_AnyTriple` ([821](#)), `Gpm_StrictDouble` ([826](#)), `Gpm_AnyDouble` ([821](#)), `Gpm_StrictSingle` ([826](#)), `Gpm_AnySingle` ([821](#))

## 55.5 Tgpm\_connect

```
Tgpm_connect = record
  eventMask : Word;
  defaultMask : Word;
  minMod : Word;
  maxMod : Word;
  pid : LongInt;
  vc : LongInt;
end
```

GPM server connection information.

## 55.6 Tgpm\_event

```
Tgpm_event = record
  buttons : Byte;
  modifiers : Byte;
  vc : Word
;
  dx : Word;
  dy : Word;
  x : Word;
  y : Word;
  EventType :
  TGpmEtype;
  clicks : LongInt;
  margin : TGpmMargin;
  wdx : Word
;
  wdy : Word;
end
```

Tgpm\_event describes the events that are reported by GPM.

## 55.7 Tgpm\_roi

```
Tgpm_roi = record
  xmin : Integer;
  xmax : Integer;
  ymin : Integer
;
  ymax : Integer;
  minmod : Word;
  maxmod : Word;
  eventmask
  : Word;
  owned : Word;
  handler : TGpmHandler;
  clientdata : pointer
;
end
```

```
prev : Pgpm_roi;  
next : Pgpm_roi;  
end
```

Record used to define regions of interest.

## Chapter 56

# Reference for unit 'Graph'

### 56.1 Overview

This document describes the `GRAPH` unit for Free Pascal, for all platforms. The unit was first written for dos by Florian Klaempfl, but was later completely rewritten by Carl-Eric Codere to be completely portable. The unit is provided for compatibility only: It is recommended to use more modern graphical systems. The graph unit will allow to recompile old programs. They will work to some extent, but if the application has heavy graphical needs, it's recommended to use another set of graphical routines, suited to the platform the program should work on.

### 56.2 Categorized functions: Text and font handling

Functions to set texts on the screen.

Table 56.1:

Name	Description
<code>GetTextSettings</code> ( <a href="#">868</a> )	Get current text settings
<code>InstallUserFont</code> ( <a href="#">871</a> )	Install a new font
<code>OutText</code> ( <a href="#">872</a> )	Write text at current cursor position
<code>OutTextXY</code> ( <a href="#">859</a> )	Write text at coordinates X,Y
<code>RegisterBGIFont</code> ( <a href="#">874</a> )	Register a new font
<code>SetTextJustify</code> ( <a href="#">877</a> )	Set text justification
<code>SetTextStyle</code> ( <a href="#">877</a> )	Set text style
<code>SetUserCharSize</code> ( <a href="#">878</a> )	Set text size
<code>TextHeight</code> ( <a href="#">879</a> )	Calculate height of text
<code>TextWidth</code> ( <a href="#">879</a> )	Calculate width of text

### 56.3 Categorized functions: Filled drawings

Functions for drawing filled regions.

Table 56.2:

Name	Description
Bar3D (861)	Draw a filled 3D-style bar
Bar (861)	Draw a filled rectangle
FloodFill (863)	Fill starting from coordinate
FillEllipse (863)	Draw a filled ellipse
FillPoly (863)	Draw a filled polygon
GetFillPattern (865)	Get current fill pattern
GetFillSettings (865)	Get current fill settings
SetFillPattern (875)	Set current fill pattern
SetFillStyle (875)	Set current fill settings

## 56.4 Categorized functions: Drawing primitives

Functions for simple drawing.

Table 56.3:

Name	Description
Arc (861)	Draw an arc
Circle (858)	Draw a complete circle
DrawPoly (862)	Draw a polygon with N points
Ellipse (863)	Draw an ellipse
GetArcCoords (864)	Get arc coordinates
GetLineSettings (866)	Get current line drawing settings
Line (859)	Draw line between 2 points
LineRel (871)	Draw line relative to current position
LineTo (872)	Draw line from current position to absolute position
MoveRel (872)	Move cursor relative to current position
MoveTo (872)	Move cursor to absolute position
PieSlice (873)	Draw a pie slice
PutPixel (860)	Draw 1 pixel
Rectangle (873)	Draw a non-filled rectangle
Sector (874)	Draw a sector
SetLineStyle (876)	Set current line drawing style

## 56.5 Categorized functions: Color management

All functions related to color management.

Table 56.4:

Name	Description
GetBkColor (858)	Get current background color
GetColor (864)	Get current foreground color
GetDefaultPalette (864)	Get default palette entries
GetMaxColor (866)	Get maximum valid color
GetPaletteSize (868)	Get size of palette for current mode
GetPixel (859)	Get color of selected pixel
GetPalette (868)	Get palette entry
SetAllPalette (860)	Set all colors in palette
SetBkColor (860)	Set background color
SetColor (875)	Set foreground color
SetPalette (877)	Set palette entry
SetRGBPalette (860)	Set palette entry with RGB values

## 56.6 Categorized functions: Screen management

General drawing screen management functions.

Table 56.5:

Name	Description
ClearViewPort (858)	Clear the current viewport
GetImage (858)	Copy image from screen to memory
GetMaxX (867)	Get maximum X coordinate
GetMaxY (867)	Get maximum Y coordinate
GetX (869)	Get current X position
GetY (869)	Get current Y position
ImageSize (859)	Get size of selected image
GetViewSettings (868)	Get current viewport settings
PutImage (859)	Copy image from memory to screen
SetActivePage (860)	Set active video page
SetAspectRatio (874)	Set aspect ratio for drawing routines
SetViewPort (878)	Set current viewport
SetVisualPage (860)	Set visual page
SetWriteMode (879)	Set write mode for screen operations

## 56.7 Categorized functions: Initialization

Initialization of the graphics screen.



Table 56.6:

Name	Description
<code>ClearDevice</code> (861)	Empty the graphics screen
<code>CloseGraph</code> (862)	Finish drawing session, return to text mode
<code>DetectGraph</code> (862)	Detect graphical modes
<code>GetAspectRatio</code> (864)	Get aspect ratio of screen
<code>GetModeRange</code> (867)	Get range of valid modes for current driver
<code>GraphDefaults</code> (1)	Set defaults
<code>GetDriverName</code> (865)	Return name of graphical driver
<code>GetGraphMode</code> (866)	Return current or last used graphics mode
<code>GetMaxMode</code> (866)	Get maximum mode for current driver
<code>GetModeName</code> (867)	Get name of current mode
<code>GraphErrorMsg</code> (1)	String representation of graphical error
<code>GraphResult</code> (1)	Result of last drawing operation
<code>InitGraph</code> (870)	Initialize graphics drivers
<code>InstallUserDriver</code> (871)	Install a new driver
<code>RegisterBGIDriver</code> (873)	Register a new driver
<code>RestoreCRTMode</code> (874)	Go back to text mode
<code>SetGraphMode</code> (876)	Set graphical mode

## 56.8 Target specific issues: Linux

There are several issues on Linux that need to be taken care of:

The Linux version of the `Graph` unit uses the `libvga` library. This library works on the console, not under X.

If you get an error similar to

```
/usr/bin/ld: cannot find -lvga
```

This can mean one of two things: either `libvga` and its development package is not installed properly, or the directory where it is installed is not in the linker path.

To remedy the former, you should install both the `libvga` package and `libvga-devel` package (or compile and install from scratch).

To remedy the latter, you should add the path to the compiler command-line using the `-Fl` option.

Programs using `libvga` need root privileges to run. You can make them `setuid` root with the following command:

```
chown root.root myprogram
chmod u+s myprogram
```

The `libvga` library will give up the root privileges after it is initialized.

there is an experimental version of the Graphics library available that uses GGI to do all the drawing, but it is not well tested. It's called `ggigraph` and is distributed in source form only.

Do not use the CRT unit together with the `Graph` unit: the console may end up in an unusable state. Instead, the `ncurses` unit may function fine.

## 56.9 Target specific issues: DOS

VESA modes (i.e., anything but 320x200x256 and 640x480x16) do not work under most installations of Windows NT, Windows 2000 and Windows XP. They also do not work for some people under Windows 98 and Windows ME, depending on their graphics drivers. However, the graph unit cannot detect this, because no errors are returned from the system. In such cases, the screen simply turns black, or will show garbage.

Nothing can be done about this, the reason is missing or buggy support in the graphics drivers of the operating system.

## 56.10 A word about mode selection

The graph unit was implemented for compatibility with the old Turbo Pascal graph unit. For this reason, the mode constants as they were defined in the Turbo Pascal graph unit are retained.

However, since

1. Video cards have evolved very much
2. Free Pascal runs on multiple platforms

it was decided to implement new mode and graphic driver constants, which are more independent of the specific platform the program runs on.

In this section we give a short explanation of the new mode system. the following drivers were defined:

```
D1bit = 11;
D2bit = 12;
D4bit = 13;
D6bit = 14; { 64 colors Half-brite mode - Amiga }
D8bit = 15;
D12bit = 16; { 4096 color modes HAM mode - Amiga }
D15bit = 17;
D16bit = 18;
D24bit = 19; { not yet supported }
D32bit = 20; { not yet supported }
D64bit = 21; { not yet supported }
```

```
lowNewDriver = 11;
highNewDriver = 21;
```

Each of these drivers specifies a desired color-depth.

The following modes have been defined:

```
detectMode = 30000;
m320x200 = 30001;
m320x256 = 30002; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m320x400 = 30003; { amiga/atari resolution }
m512x384 = 30004; { mac resolution }
m640x200 = 30005; { vga resolution }
m640x256 = 30006; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m640x350 = 30007; { vga resolution }
```

```

m640x400 = 30008;
m640x480 = 30009;
m800x600 = 30010;
m832x624 = 30011; { mac resolution }
m1024x768 = 30012;
m1280x1024 = 30013;
m1600x1200 = 30014;
m2048x1536 = 30015;

lowNewMode = 30001;
highNewMode = 30015;

```

These modes start at 30000 because Borland specified that the mode number should be ascending with increasing X resolution, and the new constants shouldn't interfere with the old ones.

The above constants can be used to set a certain color depth and resolution, as demonstrated in the below example.

If other modes than the ones above are supported by the graphics card, you will not be able to select them with this mechanism.

For this reason, there is also a 'dynamic' mode number, which is assigned at run-time. This number increases with increasing X resolution. It can be queried with the `getmoderange` call. This call will return the range of modes which are valid for a certain graphics driver. The numbers are guaranteed to be consecutive, and can be used to search for a certain resolution, as in the second example below.

Thus, the `getmoderange` function can be used to detect all available modes and drivers, as in the third example below:

**Listing:** ./graphex/inigraph1.pp

---

**Program** inigraph1;

```
{ Program to demonstrate static graphics mode selection }
```

```
uses graph;
```

```
const
```

```
  TheLine = 'We are now in 640 x 480 x 256 colors!'+
            ' (press <Return> to continue)';
```

```
var
```

```
  gd, gm, lo, hi, error, tw, th: integer;
  found: boolean;
```

```
begin
```

```
  { We want an 8 bit mode }
  gd := D8bit;
  gm := m640x480;
  initgraph(gd, gm, '');
  { Make sure you always check graphresult! }
  error := graphResult;
  if (error <> grOk) Then
    begin
      writeln('640x480x256 is not supported!');
      halt(1)
    end;
  { We are now in 640x480x256 }
```

```

setColor(cyan);
rectangle(0,0,getmaxx,getmaxy);
{ Write a nice message in the center of the screen }
setTextStyle(defaultFont,hORIZDIR,1);
tw:=TextWidth(TheLine);
th:=TextHeight(TheLine);
outTextXY((getMaxX - TW) div 2,
          (getMaxY - TH) div 2,TheLine);
{ Wait for return }
readln;
{ Back to text mode }
closegraph;
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./graphex/inigraph2.pp

---

```

Program inigraph2;

{ Program to demonstrate dynamic graphics mode selection }

uses graph;

const
  TheLine = 'We are now in 640 x 480 x 256 colors!'+
            ' (press <Return> to continue)';

var
  th,tw,gd, gm, lo, hi, error: integer;
  found: boolean;

begin
  { We want an 8 bit mode }
  gd := D8bit;
  { Get all available resolutions for this bitdepth }
  getmoderange(gd,lo,hi);
  { If the highest available mode number is -1,
    no resolutions are supported for this bitdepth }
  if hi = -1 then
    begin
      writeln('no 8 bit modes supported!');
      halt;
    end;
  found := false;
  { Search all resolutions for 640x480 }
  for gm := lo to hi do
    begin
      initgraph(gd,gm,'');
      { Make sure you always check graphresult! }
      error := graphResult;
      if (error = grOk) and
        (getmaxx = 639) and (getmaxy = 479) then
        begin
          found := true;
          break;
        end;
    end;
  if not found then
    CloseGraph();
begin

```

```

    writeln('640x480x256 is not supported!');
    halt(1)
end;
{ We are now in 640x480x256 }
setColor(cyan);
rectangle(0,0,getmaxx,getmaxy);
{ Write a nice message in the center of the screen }
setTextStyle(defaultFont, horizDir, 1);
TW:=TextWidth(TheLine);
TH:=TextHeight(TheLine);
outTextXY((getMaxX - TW) div 2,
          (getMaxY - TH) div 2, TheLine);
{ Wait for return }
readln;
{ Back to text mode }
closegraph;
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./graphex/modrange.pp

---

**Program** GetModeRange\_Example;

*{ This program demonstrates how to find all available graph modes }*

**uses** graph;

**const**

*{ Currently, only 4, 8, 15 and 16 bit modes are supported  
but this may change in the future }*  
 gdnames: **array**[D4bit..D16bit] **of string**[6] =  
 ('4 bit', '6 bit', '8 bit', '12 bit', '15 bit', '16 bit');

**procedure** WriteRes(**const** depth : integer);

**var**

tw, th : integer;  
 v, text : **String**;

**begin**

text := 'Current resolution is '; **str**(getmaxx+1, v);  
 text := text + v + 'x'; **str**(getmaxy+1, v);  
 text := text + v + 'x' + gdnames[depth];  
 setTextStyle(defaultFont, horizDir, 1);  
 TW:=TextWidth(text);  
 TH:=TextHeight(text);  
 outTextXY((getMaxX - TW) div 2,  
 (getMaxY - TH) div 2, text);

**end**;

**var**

t: text;  
 line : **string**;  
 gd, c, **low**, **high**, res: integer;

**begin**

assign(t, 'modes.txt');  
**rewrite**(t);  
 close(t);  
**for** gd := D4bit **to** D16bit **do**  
   **begin**  
     *{ Get the available mode numbers for this driver }*

---

```

getModeRange(gd,low,high);
append(t);
write(t,gdnames[gd]);
Writeln(t,': low modenr = ',low,', high modenr = ',high);
close(t);
{ If high is -1,
  no resolutions are supported for this bitdepth }
if high = -1 then
  begin
    append(t);
    writeln(t,' No modes supported!');
    writeln(t);
    close(t);
  end
else
  { Enter all supported resolutions for this bitdepth
    and write their characteristics to the file }
  for c := low to high do
    begin
      append(t);
      writeln(t,' testing mode nr ',c);
      close(t);
      initgraph(gd,c,'');
      res := graphresult;
      append(t);
      { An error occurred when entering the mode? }
      if res <> grok then
        writeln(t,grapherrormsg(res))
      else
        begin
          write(t,'maxx: ',getmaxx,', maxy: ',getmaxy);
          Writeln(t,', maxcolor: ',getmaxcolor);
          closegraph;
          end;
          writeln(t);
          WriteRes(gd);
          close(t);
        end;
      append(t);
      writeln(t);
      close(t);
    end;
  Writeln('All supported modes are listed in modes.txt files');
end.

```

---

## 56.11 Requirements

The unit Graph exports functions and procedures for graphical output. It requires at least a VGA-compatible Card or a VGA-Card with software-driver (min. **512Kb** video memory).

## 56.12 Constants, types and variables

### 56.12.1 Constants

AndPut = 3

Draw operation: use AND

```

AnsiToASCIITransTable : TCharsetTransTable = (#$00, #$01, #$02, #
    $03, #$04, #$05, #$06, #$07, #$08, #$09, #$0a, #$0b, #$0c, #$0d,
    #$0e, #$0f, #$10, #$11, #$12, #$13, #$14, #$15, #$16, #$17, #$18,
    #$19, #$1a, #$1b, #$1c, #$1d, #$1e, #$1f, #$20, #$21, #$22, #$23
    , #$24, #$25, #$26, #$27, #$28, #$29, #$2a, #$2b, #$2c, #$2d, #$2e
    , #$2f, #$30, #$31, #$32, #$33, #$34, #$35, #$36, #$37, #$38, #$39
    , #$3a, #$3b, #$3c, #$3d, #$3e, #$3f, #$40, #$41, #$42, #$43, #$44
    , #$45, #$46, #$47, #$48, #$49, #$4a, #$4b, #$4c, #$4d, #$4e, #$4f
    , #$50, #$51, #$52, #$53, #$54, #$55, #$56, #$57, #$58, #$59, #$5a
    , #$5b, #$5c, #$5d, #$5e, #$5f, #$60, #$61, #$62, #$63, #$64, #$65
    , #$66, #$67, #$68, #$69, #$6a, #$6b, #$6c, #$6d, #$6e, #$6f, #$70
    , #$71, #$72, #$73, #$74, #$75, #$76, #$77, #$78, #$79, #$7a, #$7b
    , #$7c, #$7d, #$7e, #$7f, '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?',
    '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?',
    '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '$ff, $ad
    , $9b, $9c, '?', $9d, '?', '?', '?', '?', $a6, $ae, $aa, '?'
    , '?', '?', $f8, $f1, $fd, '?', '?', $e6, '?', $fa, '?', '?'
    , $a7, $af, $ac, $ab, '?', $a8, '?', '?', '?', '?', $8e, $8f
    , $92, $80, '?', $90, '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', $a5,
    '?', '?', '?', '?', $99, '?', '?', '?', '?', '?', $9a, '?', '?'
    , $e1, $85, $a0, $83, '?', $84, $86, $91, $87, $8a, $82
    , $88, $89, $8d, $a1, $8c, $8b, '?', $a4, $95, $a2, $93
    , '?', $94, $f6, '?', $97, $a3, $96, $81, '?', '?', $98)

```

Default ansi transliteration table.

BkSlashFill = 5

Fill style: Diagonal (backslash) lines

black = 0

Color code: black.

blue = 1

Color code: blue

BoldFont = 10

Font number: Bold font.

BottomText = 0

Vertical text alignment: Align text to bottom

`brown = 6`

Color code: brown

`CenterLn = 2`

Line style: centered line

`CenterText = 1`

Horizontal text alignment: Center text

`CGA = 1`

Graphic driver for CGA cards

`CGAC0 = 0`

CGA Graphic driver mode C0

`CGAC1 = 1`

CGA Graphic driver mode C1

`CGAC2 = 2`

CGA Graphic driver mode C2

`CGAC3 = 3`

CGA Graphic driver mode C3

`CGAHi = 4`

CGA Graphic driver Hi-res mode

`ClipOff = False`

Viewport clipping off

`ClipOn = True`

Viewport clipping on

`CloseDotFill = 11`

Fill style: Closely spaced dotted lines

`CopyPut = 0`

Draw operation: use Copy



CurrentDriver = - 128

Currently used driver

cyan = 3

Color code: Cyan

D12bit = 16

Mode: Depth 12 bit

D15bit = 17

Mode: Depth 15 bit

D16bit = 18

Mode: Depth 16 bit

D1bit = 11

Mode: Depth 1 bit

D24bit = 19

Mode: Depth 24 bit

D2bit = 12

Mode: Depth 2 bit

D32bit = 20

Mode: Depth 32 bit

D4bit = 13

Mode: Depth 4 bit

D64bit = 21

Mode: Depth 64 bit

D6bit = 14

Mode: Depth 6 bit

D8bit = 15

Mode: Depth 8 bit

`darkgray = 8`

Color code: Dark gray

`DashedLn = 3`

Line style: dashed line

`Default = 0`

Default mode

`DefaultFont = 0`

Font number: Normal font

`Detect = 0`

Mode: Detect mode.

`detectMode = 30000`

Mode: Autodetect optimal mode

`DottedLn = 1`

Line style: Dotted line

`DrawTextBackground : Boolean = False`

Should the background of texts be drawn or should it be left untouched ?

`EGA = 3`

Graphic driver for EGA cards

`EGA64 = 4`

Graphic driver for EGA 64 cards

`EGA64Hi = 1`

EGA64 graphic driver high resolution mode

`EGA64Lo = 0`

EGA64 graphic driver low resolution mode

`EGABlack = 0`

Color code: EGA Black

EGABlue = 1

Color code: EGA blue

EGABrown = 20

Color code: EGA brown

EGACyan = 3

Color code: EGA cyan

EGADarkgray = 56

Color code: EGA dark gray

EGAGreen = 2

Color code: EGA green

EGAHi = 1

EGA graphic driver high resolution mode

EGALightblue = 57

Color code: EGA Light blue

EGALightcyan = 59

Color code: EGA Light cyan

EGALightgray = 7

Color code: EGA Light gray

EGALightgreen = 58

Color code: EGA Light green

EGALightmagenta = 61

Color code: EGA light magenta

EGALightred = 60

Color code: EGA light red

EGALo = 0

EGA graphic driver low resolution mode

EGAMagenta = 5

Color code: EGA magenta

EGAMono = 5

Graphic driver for EGA monochrome cards

EGAMonoHi = 3

EGAMono graphic driver high resolution mode

EGARed = 4

Color code: EGA red

EGAWhite = 63

Color code: EGA white

EGAYellow = 62

Color code: EGA yellow

EmptyFill = 0

Fill style: Do not fill

EuroFont = 9

Font number: ?

```
fillpatternTable : Array[0..12] of FillPatternType = (($00, $00,
  $00, $00, $00, $00, $00, $00), ($ff, $ff, $ff, $ff, $ff, $ff, $ff,
  $ff), ($ff, $ff, $00, $00, $ff, $ff, $00, $00), ($01, $02, $04,
  $08, $10, $20, $40, $80), ($07, $0e, $1c, $38, $70, $e0, $c1, $83
  ), ($07, $83, $c1, $e0, $70, $38, $1c, $0e), ($5a, $2d, $96, $4b,
  $a5, $d2, $69, $b4), ($ff, $88, $88, $88, $ff, $88, $88, $88), (
  $18, $24, $42, $81, $81, $42, $24, $18), ($cc, $33, $cc, $33, $cc
  , $33, $cc, $33), ($80, $00, $08, $00, $80, $00, $08, $00), ($88,
  $00, $22, $00, $88, $00, $22, $00), (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0))
```

Table with standard fill patterns

G1024x768x16 = 30

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 16 colors

G1024x768x16M = 25

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 16M colors

G1024x768x16M32 = 36

Mode: Resolution 1024x758, 16M 32-bit colors

G1024x768x256 = 12

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 256 colors

G1024x768x32K = 23

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 32K colors

G1024x768x64K = 24

Mode: Resolution 1024x768, 64K colors

G1152x864x16 = 38

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16 colors

G1152x864x16M = 42

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16M colors

G1152x864x16M32 = 43

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16M 32-bitcolors

G1152x864x256 = 39

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 256 colors

G1152x864x32K = 40

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 32K colors

G1152x864x64K = 41

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 64K colors

G1280x1024x16 = 31

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16 colors

G1280x1024x16M = 28

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16M colors

G1280x1024x16M32 = 37

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16M 32-bit colors

G1280x1024x256 = 13

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 256 colors

G1280x1024x32K = 26

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 32K colors

G1280x1024x64K = 27

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 64K colors

G1600x1200x16 = 44

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16 colors

G1600x1200x16M = 48

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16M colors

G1600x1200x16M32 = 49

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16M 32-bit colors

G1600x1200x256 = 45

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 256 colors

G1600x1200x32K = 46

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 32K colors

G1600x1200x64K = 47

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 64K colors

G320x200x16 = 1

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16 colors

G320x200x16M = 16

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16M colors

G320x200x16M32 = 33

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16M 32-bit colors

G320x200x256 = 5

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 256 colors

G320x200x32K = 14

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 32K colors

G320x200x64K = 15

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 64K colors

G320x240x256 = 6

Mode: Resolution 320x240, 256 colors

G320x400x256 = 7

Mode: Resolution 320x400, 256 colors

G360x480x256 = 8

Mode: Resolution 360x480, 256 colors

G640x200x16 = 2

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x350x16 = 3

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x480x16 = 4

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x480x16M = 19

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 16M colors

G640x480x16M32 = 34

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 16M 32-bit colors

G640x480x2 = 9

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 2 colors

G640x480x256 = 10

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 256 colors

G640x480x32K = 17

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 32K colors

G640x480x64K = 18

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 64K colors

G720x348x2 = 32

Mode: Resolution 720x348, 2 colors

G800x600x16 = 29

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16 colors

G800x600x16M = 22

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16M colors

G800x600x16M32 = 35

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16M 32-bit colors

G800x600x256 = 11

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 256 colors

G800x600x32K = 20

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 32K colors

G800x600x64K = 21

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 64K colors

GothicFont = 4

Font number: Gothic font

GraphStringTransTable : PCharsetTransTable = Nil

Table used when transliterating strings.

green = 2

Color code: green

grError = - 11

Error: Unknown error.

grFileNotFound = - 3

Error: File for driver not found.



`grFontNotFound = - 8`

Error: font description file not found.

`grInvalidDriver = - 4`

Error: Invalid driver specified

`grInvalidFont = - 13`

Error: Invalid font description

`grInvalidFontNum = - 14`

Error: Invalid font number

`grInvalidMode = - 10`

Error: Invalid mode specified.

`grInvalidVersion = - 18`

Error: Invalid version.

`grIOerror = - 12`

Error: Unspecified Input/Output error.

`grNoFloodMem = - 7`

Error: Could not allocate memory for flood operation.

`grNoFontMem = - 9`

Error: Not enough memory to load font.

`grNoInitGraph = - 1`

Error: Graphical system not initialized

`grNoLoadMem = - 5`

Error: Memory error.

`grNoScanMem = - 6`

Error: Could not allocate memory for scan

`grNotDetected = - 2`

Error: Graphics device not detected.

`grOk = 0`

Graphical operation went OK.

`HatchFill = 7`

Fill style: Hatch lines

`HercMono = 7`

Mode: Hercules, mono color

`HercMonoHi = 0`

Mode: Hercules card, monochrome, high resolution

`highNewDriver = 21`

Mode: highest number for new driver

`highNewMode = m2048x1536`

Mode: Highest possible value of the new modes.

`HorizDir = 0`

Text write direction: Horizontal

`InterleaveFill = 9`

Fill style: Interleaving lines

`LCOMFont = 8`

Font number: ?

`LeftText = 0`

Horizontal text alignment: Align text left

`lightblue = 9`

Color code: Light blue

`lightcyan = 11`

Color code: Light cyan

`lightgray = 7`

Color code: Light gray

`lightgreen = 10`

**Color code:** Light green

`lightmagenta = 13`

**Color code:** Light magenta

`lightred = 12`

**Color code:** Light red

`LineFill = 2`

**Fill style:** Fill using horizontal lines

`lowNewDriver = 11`

**Mode:** lowest number for new driver

`lowNewMode = m320x200`

**Mode:** Lowest possible value of the new modes.

`LowRes = 6`

**Mode:** Low resolution.

`LtBkSlashFill = 6`

**Fill style:** Light diagonal (backslash) lines

`LtSlashFill = 3`

**Fill style:** Light diagonal (slash) lines

`m1024x768 = detectMode + 12`

**Mode:** Resolution 1024x768

`m1280x1024 = detectMode + 13`

**Mode:** Resolution 1280x1024

`m1600x1200 = detectMode + 14`

**Mode:** Resolution 1600x1200

`m2048x1536 = detectMode + 15`

**Mode:** Resolution 2048x1536

`m320x200 = detectMode + 1`

**Mode: Resolution 320x200**

`m320x256 = detectMode + 2`

**Mode: Resolution 320x256**

`m320x400 = detectMode + 3`

**Mode: Resolution 320x400**

`m512x384 = detectMode + 4`

**Mode: Resolution 512x384**

`m640x200 = detectMode + 5`

**Mode: Resolution 640x200**

`m640x256 = detectMode + 6`

**Mode: Resolution 640x256**

`m640x350 = detectMode + 7`

**Mode: Resolution 640x350**

`m640x400 = detectMode + 8`

**Mode: Resolution 640x400**

`m640x480 = detectMode + 9`

**Mode: Resolution 640x480**

`m800x600 = detectMode + 10`

**Mode: Resolution 800x600**

`m832x624 = detectMode + 11`

**Mode: Resolution 832x624**

`magenta = 5`

**Color code: Magenta**

`MaxColors = 255`

**Max amount of colors in a palette**

`maxsmallint = high(smallint)`

Maximum value for smallint type

`MCGA = 2`

Graphic driver for MCGA cards

`MCGAC0 = 0`

MCGA Graphic driver mode C0

`MCGAC1 = 1`

MCGA Graphic driver mode C1

`MCGAC2 = 2`

MCGA Graphic driver mode C2

`MCGAC3 = 3`

MCGA Graphic driver mode C3

`MCGAHi = 5`

MCGA Graphic driver high resolution mode

`MCGAMed = 4`

MCGA Graphic driver medium resolution mode

`NormalPut = 0`

Draw operation: Use Normal (copy) operation

`NormWidth = 1`

Line width: Normal width

`NotPut = 4`

Draw operation: use NOT

`OrPut = 2`

Draw operation: use OR

`red = 4`

Color code: Red

```
resolutions : Array[lowNewMode..highNewMode] of TResolutionRec =
  ((x: 320; y: 200), (x: 320; y: 256), (x: 320; y: 400), (x: 512; y:
   : 384), (x: 640; y: 200), (x: 640; y: 256), (x: 640; y: 350), (x:
   640; y: 400), (x: 640; y: 480), (x: 800; y: 600), (x: 832; y: 624
   ), (x: 1024; y: 768), (x: 1280; y: 1024), (x: 1600; y: 1200), (x:
   2048; y: 1536))
```

Array with actual resolutions of the new modes

```
RightText = 2
```

Horizontal text alignment: Align text right

```
SansSerifFont = 3
```

Font number: Sans Serif font

```
ScriptFont = 5
```

Font number: Script font

```
SimpleFont = 6
```

Font number: Simple font

```
SlashFill = 4
```

Fill style: Diagonal (slash) lines

```
SmallFont = 2
```

Font number: Small font

```
SolidFill = 1
```

Fill style: Solid fill.

```
SolidLn = 0
```

Line style: Solid line

```
ThickWidth = 3
```

Line width: double width

```
TopOff = False
```

Top off

```
TopOn = True
```

Top on

TopText = 2

Vertical text alignment: Align text to top

TriplexFont = 1

Font number: Triplex font

TSCRFont = 7

Font number: Terminal font

UserBitLn = 4

Line style: User defined

UserCharSize = 0

User character size

UserFill = 12

Fill style: User-defined fill.

VertDir = 1

Text write direction: Vertical

VESA = 10

Mode: VESA graphics adaptor.

VGA = 9

Mode: VGA graphics adaptor.

VGAHi = 2

Mode: VGA high resolution (640x480)

VGALo = 0

Mode: VGA low resolution (640x200)

VGAMed = 1

Mode: VGA medium resolution (640x350)

white = 15

Color code: White

```
WideDotFill = 10
```

Fill style: Widely spaced dotted lines

```
XHatchFill = 8
```

Fill style: Heavy hatch lines

```
XORPut = 1
```

Draw operation: use XOR

```
yellow = 14
```

Color code: Yellow

### 56.12.2 Types

```
CircleProc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; Radius: Word)
```

Standard circle drawing routine prototype.

```
clrviewproc = procedure
```

Standard clearviewport routine prototype

```
ColorType = Word
```

Color type alias

```
defpixelproc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt)
```

This is the standard putpixel routine used by all function drawing routines, it will use the viewport settings, as well as clip, and use the current foreground color to plot the desired pixel.

```
ellipseproc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; XRadius: Word;
    YRadius: Word; stAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word
    ;
    fp: patternlineproc)
```

Standard ellipse drawing routine prototype.

```
Array = Array[1..8] of Byte
```

Bit pattern used when drawing lines. Set bits are drawn.

```
GetBkColorProc = function : ColorType
```



GetBkColorProc is the procedure prototype for the GetBkColor (858) method handler in TMod-  
eInfo (882). The function should return the color code of the background color.

```
getimageproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt
;
                        Y2: SmallInt; var Bitmap)
```

Standard GetImage (858) procedure prototype.

```
getpixelproc = function(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt) : ColorType
```

Standard pixel fetching routine prototype

```
getrgbpaletteproc = procedure(ColorNum: SmallInt;
var RedValue: SmallInt;
var GreenValue: SmallInt;
                        var
BlueValue: SmallInt)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for GetRGBPalette (859)

```
getscanlineproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt
;
                        var data)
```

This routine is used for FloodFill (863) It returns an entire screen scan line with a word for each pixel  
in the scanline. Also handy for GetImage.

```
graphfreememprc = procedure(var P: Pointer; size: Word)
```

Procedure prototype, used when heap memory is freed by the graph routines.

```
graphgetmemprc = procedure(var P: pointer; size: Word)
```

Procedure prototype, used when heap memory is needed by the graph routines.

```
graph_float = single
```

The platform's preferred floating point size for fast graph operations

```
hlineproc = procedure(x: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y: SmallInt)
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a single horizontal line

```
imagesizeproc = function(X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt
;
                        Y2: SmallInt) : LongInt
```

Standard ImageSize (859) calculation procedure prototype.

```
initmodeproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to initialize a mode.

```
lineproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt;
    Y2: SmallInt)
```

Standard line drawing routine prototype.

```
OutTextXYProc = procedure(x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt;
    const TextString: string)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for OutTextXY (859)

```
patternlineproc = procedure(x1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y: SmallInt
    )
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a patterned line

```
PCharsetTransTable = ^TCharsetTransTable
```

Pointer to TCharsetTransTable (858) array.

```
PModeInfo = ^TModeInfo
```

Pointer to TModeInfo (882) record

```
putimageproc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; var Bitmap;
    BitBlt: Word)
```

Standard PutImage (859) procedure prototype.

```
putpixelproc = procedure(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; Color: ColorType
    )
```

Standard pixel drawing routine prototype

```
restorestateproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to restore the graphical state at a closegraph call.

```
savestateproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to save the graphical state before a mode is set.

```
setactivepageproc = procedure(page: Word)
```

Standard SetActivePage (860) procedure prototype.

```
SetAllPaletteProc = procedure(const Palette: PaletteType)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for SetAllPalette (860)

```
SetBkColorProc = procedure (ColorNum: ColorType)
```

SetBkColorProc is the procedure prototype for the SetBkColor (860) method handler in TMod-  
eInfo (882). The procedure gets passed the color code for the color to set as background color.

```
setrgbpaletteproc = procedure (ColorNum: SmallInt; RedValue: SmallInt
;
                                GreenValue: SmallInt; BlueValue:
                                SmallInt)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for SetRGBPalette (860)

```
setvisualpageproc = procedure (page: Word)
```

Standard SetVisualPage (860) procedure prototype.

```
smallint = - 32768..32767
```

Type redefinition

```
Array = Array[Char] of Char
```

Character transliteration table, with entries for 256 characters

```
vlineproc = procedure (x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt)
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a single vertical line

### 56.12.3 Variables

```
Circle : CircleProc
```

Circle draws a complete circle with center at (X,Y), radius radius.

```
ClearViewPort : clrviewproc
```

Clears the current viewport. The current background color is used as filling color. The pointer is set  
at (0,0).

```
DirectPutPixel : defpixelproc
```

Hook to directly draw a pixel on the screen.

```
GetBkColor : GetBkColorProc
```

GetBkColor returns the current background color (the palette entry).

```
GetImage : getimageproc
```

GetImage Places a copy of the screen area (X1, Y1) to X2, Y2 in BitMap

GetPixel : getpixelproc

GetPixel returns the color of the point at (X, Y)

GetRGBPalette : getrgbpaletteproc

Hook to set a RGB palette entries.

GetScanLine : getscanlineproc

Hook to get a scan line from the screen.

GraphFreeMemPtr : graphfreememprc

Hook to free heap memory.

GraphGetMemPtr : graphgetmemprc

Hook to get heap memory

HLine : hlineproc

Hook to draw a solid horizontal line

ImageSize : imagesizeproc

ImageSize returns the number of bytes needed to store the image in the rectangle defined by (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2).

InternalEllipse : ellipseproc

Hook to draw an ellipse

Line : lineproc

Line draws a line starting from (X1, Y1 to (X2, Y2), in the current line style and color. The current position is put to (X2, Y2)

OutTextXY : OutTextXYProc

OutText puts TextString on the screen, at position (X, Y), using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

PatternLine : patternlineproc

Hook to draw a patterned line

PutImage : putimageproc

PutImage Places the bitmap in Bitmap on the screen at (X1, Y1). How determines how the bitmap will be placed on the screen. Possible values are:

- CopyPut
- XORPut
- ORPut
- AndPut
- NotPut

PutPixel : putpixelproc

Puts a point at (X, Y) using color Color

RestoreVideoState : restorestateproc

Hook to restore a saved video mode

SaveVideoState : savestateproc

Hook to save the current video state

SetActivePage : setactivepageproc

Sets Page as the active page for all graphical output.

SetAllPalette : SetAllPaletteProc

Sets the current palette to Palette. Palette is an untyped variable, usually pointing to a record of type PaletteType

SetBkColor : SetBkColorProc

Sets the background color to Color.

SetRGBPalette : setrgbpaletteproc

SetRGBPalette sets the ColorNr-th entry in the palette to the color with RGB-values Red, Green Blue.

SetVisualPage : setvisualpageproc

SetVisualPage sets the video page to page number Page.

VLine : vlineproc

Hook to draw a solid vertical line

## 56.13 Procedures and functions

### 56.13.1 Arc

Synopsis: Draw part of a circle

Declaration: `procedure Arc(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; StAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word;  
                                Radius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arc` draws part of a circle with center at  $(X, Y)$ , radius `radius`, starting from angle `start`, stopping at angle `stop`. These angles are measured counterclockwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Circle` ([858](#)), `Ellipse` ([863](#)), `GetArcCoords` ([864](#)), `PieSlice` ([873](#)), `Sector` ([874](#))

### 56.13.2 Bar

Synopsis: Draw filled rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Bar(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at  $(X1, Y1)$  and  $(X2, Y2)$  and fills it with the current color and fill-style.

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar3D` ([861](#)), `Rectangle` ([873](#))

### 56.13.3 Bar3D

Synopsis: Draw filled 3-dimensional rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Bar3D(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt;  
                                depth: Word; top: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Bar3d` draws a 3-dimensional `Bar` with corners at  $(X1, Y1)$  and  $(X2, Y2)$  and fills it with the current color and fill-style. `Depth` specifies the number of pixels used to show the depth of the bar.

If `Top` is true; then a 3-dimensional top is drawn.

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar` ([861](#)), `Rectangle` ([873](#))

### 56.13.4 ClearDevice

Synopsis: Clear the complete screen

Declaration: `procedure ClearDevice`

Visibility: default

Description: Clears the graphical screen (with the current background color), and sets the pointer at  $(0, 0)$ .

Errors: None.

See also: [ClearViewPort \(858\)](#), [SetBkColor \(860\)](#)

### 56.13.5 Closegraph

Synopsis: Close graphical system.

Declaration: `procedure Closegraph`

Visibility: default

Description: Closes the graphical system, and restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was activated.

Errors: None.

See also: [InitGraph \(870\)](#)

### 56.13.6 DetectGraph

Synopsis: Detect correct graphical driver to use

Declaration: `procedure DetectGraph(var GraphDriver: SmallInt;  
var GraphMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectGraph` checks the hardware in the PC and determines the driver and screen-modus to be used. These are returned in `Driver` and `Modus`, and can be fed to `InitGraph`. See the `InitGraph` for a list of drivers and modi.

Errors: None.

See also: [InitGraph \(870\)](#)

### 56.13.7 DrawPoly

Synopsis: Draw a polygon

Declaration: `procedure DrawPoly(NumPoints: Word; var polypoints)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DrawPoly` draws a polygon with `NumberOfPoints` corner points, using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType` ([881](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: [Bar \(861\)](#), [Bar3D \(861\)](#), [Rectangle \(873\)](#)

### 56.13.8 Ellipse

Synopsis: Draw an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure Ellipse(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; stAngle: Word;  
EndAngle: Word; XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ellipse` draws part of an ellipse with center at  $(X, Y)$ . `XRadius` and `Yradius` are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. `Start` and `Stop` are the starting and stopping angles of the part of the ellipse. They are measured counterclockwise from the X-axis (3 o'clock is equal to 0 degrees). Only positive angles can be specified.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` (861), `Circle` (858), `FillEllipse` (863)

### 56.13.9 FillEllipse

Synopsis: Draw and fill an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure FillEllipse(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; XRadius: Word;  
YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ellipse` draws an ellipse with center at  $(X, Y)$ . `XRadius` and `Yradius` are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. The ellipse is filled with the current color and fill-style.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` (861), `Circle` (858), `GetArcCoords` (864), `PieSlice` (873), `Sector` (874)

### 56.13.10 FillPoly

Synopsis: Draw, close and fill a polygon

Declaration: `procedure FillPoly(NumPoints: Word; var PolyPoints)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FillPoly` draws a polygon with `NumberOfPoints` corner points and fills it using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar` (861), `Bar3D` (861), `Rectangle` (873)

### 56.13.11 FloodFill

Synopsis: Fill an area with a given color

Declaration: `procedure FloodFill(x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; Border: ColorType)`

Visibility: default

Description: Fills the area containing the point  $(X, Y)$ , bounded by the color `BorderColor`.

Errors: None

See also: `SetColor` (875), `SetBkColor` (860)



### 56.13.12 GetArcCoords

Synopsis: Return coordinates of last drawn arc or ellipse.

Declaration: `procedure GetArcCoords (var ArcCoords: ArcCoordsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetArcCoords` returns the coordinates of the latest `Arc` or `Ellipse` call.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` ([861](#)), `Ellipse` ([863](#))

### 56.13.13 GetAspectRatio

Synopsis: Return screen resolution

Declaration: `procedure GetAspectRatio (var Xasp: Word; var Yasp: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetAspectRatio` determines the effective resolution of the screen. The aspect ration can then be calculated as `Xasp/Yasp`.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([870](#)), `SetAspectRatio` ([874](#))

### 56.13.14 GetColor

Synopsis: Return current drawing color

Declaration: `function GetColor : ColorType`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetColor` returns the current drawing color (the palette entry).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([864](#)), `SetBkColor` ([860](#))

### 56.13.15 GetDefaultPalette

Synopsis: Return default palette

Declaration: `procedure GetDefaultPalette (var Palette: PaletteType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDefaultPalette` returns the current palette in `Palette`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([864](#)), `GetBkColor` ([858](#))

### 56.13.16 GetDirectVideo

Synopsis: Determine whether direct video mode is active.

Declaration: `function GetDirectVideo : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Determine whether direct video mode is active.

### 56.13.17 GetDriverName

Synopsis: Return current driver name

Declaration: `function GetDriverName : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDriverName` returns a string containing the name of the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetModeName` ([867](#)), `InitGraph` ([870](#))

### 56.13.18 GetFillPattern

Synopsis: Return current fill pattern

Declaration: `procedure GetFillPattern(var FillPattern: FillPatternType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFillPattern` returns an array with the current fill-pattern in `FillPattern`

Errors: None

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([875](#))

### 56.13.19 GetFillSettings

Synopsis: Return current fill settings

Declaration: `procedure GetFillSettings(var Fillinfo: FillSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFillSettings` returns the current fill-settings in `FillInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([875](#))

### 56.13.20 GetGraphMode

Synopsis: Get current graphical modus

Declaration: `function GetGraphMode : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetGraphMode` returns the current graphical modus

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([870](#))

### 56.13.21 GetLineSettings

Synopsis: Get current line drawing settings

Declaration: `procedure GetLineSettings (var ActiveLineInfo: LineSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLineSettings` returns the current Line settings in `LineInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLineStyle` ([876](#))

### 56.13.22 GetMaxColor

Synopsis: return maximum number of colors

Declaration: `function GetMaxColor : ColorType`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxColor` returns the maximum color-number which can be set with `SetColor`. Contrary to Turbo Pascal, this color isn't always guaranteed to be white (for instance in 256+ color modes).

Errors: None.

See also: `SetColor` ([875](#)), `GetPaletteSize` ([868](#))

### 56.13.23 GetMaxMode

Synopsis: Return biggest mode for the current driver

Declaration: `function GetMaxMode : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxMode` returns the highest modus for the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([870](#))

#### 56.13.24 GetMaxX

Synopsis: Return maximal X coordinate

Declaration: `function GetMaxX : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxX` returns the maximum horizontal screen length

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxY` ([867](#))

#### 56.13.25 GetMaxY

Synopsis: Return maximal Y coordinate

Declaration: `function GetMaxY : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxY` returns the maximum number of screen lines

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxX` ([867](#))

#### 56.13.26 GetModeName

Synopsis: Return description a modus

Declaration: `function GetModeName (ModeNumber: SmallInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModeName` Returns a string with the name of modus Modus

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDriverName` ([865](#)), `InitGraph` ([870](#))

#### 56.13.27 GetModeRange

Synopsis: Return lowest and highest modus of current driver

Declaration: `procedure GetModeRange (GraphDriver: SmallInt; var LoMode: SmallInt;  
var HiMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModeRange` returns the Lowest and Highest modus of the currently installed driver. If no modes are supported for this driver, `HiModus` will be -1.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([870](#))

### 56.13.28 GetPalette

Synopsis: Return current palette

Declaration: `procedure GetPalette (var Palette: PaletteType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPalette` returns in `Palette` the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPaletteSize` ([868](#)), `SetPalette` ([877](#))

### 56.13.29 GetPaletteSize

Synopsis: Return maximal number of entries in current palette

Declaration: `function GetPaletteSize : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPaletteSize` returns the maximum number of entries in the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPalette` ([868](#)), `SetPalette` ([877](#))

### 56.13.30 GetTextSettings

Synopsis: Return current text style

Declaration: `procedure GetTextSettings (var TextInfo: TextSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTextSettings` returns the current text style settings : The font, direction, size and placement as set with `SetTextStyle` and `SetTextJustify`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetTextStyle` ([877](#)), `SetTextJustify` ([877](#))

### 56.13.31 GetViewSettings

Synopsis: Return current viewport

Declaration: `procedure GetViewSettings (var viewport: ViewPortType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetViewSettings` returns the current viewport and clipping settings in `ViewPort`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` ([878](#))

### 56.13.32 GetX

Synopsis: Return current cursor X position

Declaration: `function GetX : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetX` returns the X-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetY` ([869](#))

### 56.13.33 GetY

Synopsis: Return current cursor Y position

Declaration: `function GetY : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetY` returns the Y-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetX` ([869](#))

### 56.13.34 GraphDefaults

Synopsis: Reset graphical mode to defaults

Declaration: `procedure GraphDefaults`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphDefaults` resets all settings for viewport, palette, foreground and background pattern, line-style and pattern, filling style, filling color and pattern, font, text-placement and text size.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` ([878](#)), `SetFillStyle` ([875](#)), `SetColor` ([875](#)), `SetBkColor` ([860](#)), `SetLineStyle` ([876](#))

### 56.13.35 GraphErrorMsg

Synopsis: Return a description of an error

Declaration: `function GraphErrorMsg(ErrorCode: SmallInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphErrorMsg` returns a string describing the error `Errorcode`. This string can be used to let the user know what went wrong.

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphResult` ([1](#))

**56.13.36 GraphResult**

Synopsis: Result of last graphical operation

Declaration: `function GraphResult : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphResult` returns an error-code for the last graphical operation. If the returned value is zero, all went well. A value different from zero means an error has occurred. besides all operations which draw something on the screen, the following procedures also can produce a `GraphResult` different from zero:

- `InstallUserFont` ([871](#))
- `SetLineStyle` ([876](#))
- `SetWriteMode` ([879](#))
- `SetFillStyle` ([875](#))
- `SetTextJustify` ([877](#))
- `SetGraphMode` ([876](#))
- `SetTextStyle` ([877](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphErrorMsg` ([1](#))

**56.13.37 InitGraph**

Synopsis: Initialize graphical system

Declaration: `procedure InitGraph(var GraphDriver: SmallInt; var GraphMode: SmallInt; const PathToDriver: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitGraph` initializes the graph package. `GraphDriver` has two valid values: `GraphDriver=0` which performs an auto detect and initializes the highest possible mode with the most colors. 1024x768x64K is the highest possible resolution supported by the driver, if you need a higher resolution, you must edit `MODES.PPI`. If you need another mode, then set `GraphDriver` to a value different from zero and `graphmode` to the mode you wish (VESA modes where 640x480x256 is 101h etc.). `PathToDriver` is only needed, if you use the BGI fonts from Borland. Free Pascal does not offer BGI fonts like Borland, these must be obtained separately.

Example code:

```
var
  gd,gm : integer;
  PathToDriver : string;
begin
  gd:=detect; { highest possible resolution }
  gm:=0; { not needed, auto detection }
  PathToDriver:='C:\PP\BGI'; { path to BGI fonts,
                             drivers aren't needed }

  InitGraph(gd,gm,PathToDriver);
  if GraphResult<>grok then
    halt; ..... { whatever you need }
  CloseGraph; { restores the old graphics mode }
end.
```

Errors: None.

See also: Modes ([833](#)), DetectGraph ([862](#)), CloseGraph ([862](#)), GraphResult ([1](#))

### 56.13.38 InstallUserDriver

Synopsis: Install a user driver

Declaration: `function InstallUserDriver (Name: string; AutoDetectPtr: Pointer)  
: SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InstallUserDriver` adds the device-driver `DriverPath` to the list of .BGI drivers. `AutoDetectPtr` is a pointer to a possible auto-detect function.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([870](#)), `InstallUserFont` ([871](#))

### 56.13.39 InstallUserFont

Synopsis: Install a user-defined font

Declaration: `function InstallUserFont (const FontFileName: string) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InstallUserFont` adds the font in `FontPath` to the list of fonts of the .BGI system.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([870](#)), `InstallUserDriver` ([871](#))

### 56.13.40 LineRel

Synopsis: Draw a line starting from current position in given direction

Declaration: `procedure LineRel (Dx: SmallInt; Dy: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineRel` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point (DX, DY) , **relative** to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current Position is set to the endpoint of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `Line` ([859](#)), `LineTo` ([872](#))



### 56.13.41 LineTo

Synopsis: Draw a line starting from current position to a given point

Declaration: `procedure LineTo(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineTo` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point  $(DX, DY)$ , **relative** to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current position is set to the end of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `LineRel` ([871](#)), `Line` ([859](#))

### 56.13.42 MoveRel

Synopsis: Move cursor relative to current position

Declaration: `procedure MoveRel(Dx: SmallInt; Dy: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveRel` moves the pointer to the point  $(DX, DY)$ , relative to the current pointer position

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveTo` ([872](#))

### 56.13.43 MoveTo

Synopsis: Move cursor to absolute position.

Declaration: `procedure MoveTo(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveTo` moves the pointer to the point  $(X, Y)$ .

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveRel` ([872](#))

### 56.13.44 OutText

Synopsis: Write text on the screen at the current location.

Declaration: `procedure OutText(const TextString: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `OutText` puts `TextString` on the screen, at the current pointer position, using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

Errors: None.

See also: `OutTextXY` ([859](#))

### 56.13.45 PieSlice

Synopsis: Draw a pie-slice

Declaration: `procedure PieSlice(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; stangle: SmallInt;  
                                  endAngle: SmallInt; Radius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PieSlice` draws and fills a sector of a circle with center (X, Y) and radius Radius, starting at angle Start and ending at angle Stop.

Errors: None.

See also: Arc ([861](#)), Circle ([858](#)), Sector ([874](#))

### 56.13.46 queryadapterinfo

Synopsis: Function called to retrieve the current video adapter settings.

Declaration: `function queryadapterinfo : PModeInfo`

Visibility: default

### 56.13.47 Rectangle

Synopsis: Draw a rectangle on the screen.

Declaration: `procedure Rectangle(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt;  
                                  y2: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2), using the current color and style.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar ([861](#)), Bar3D ([861](#))

### 56.13.48 RegisterBGIDriver

Synopsis: Register a new BGI driver.

Declaration: `function RegisterBGIDriver(driver: pointer) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: `InstallUserDriver` ([871](#)), `RegisterBGIFont` ([874](#))

### 56.13.49 RegisterBGIfont

Synopsis: Register a new BGI font

Declaration: `function RegisterBGIfont (font: pointer) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: [InstallUserFont \(871\)](#), [RegisterBGIDriver \(873\)](#)

### 56.13.50 RestoreCrtMode

Synopsis: Restore text screen

Declaration: `procedure RestoreCrtMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was started.

To get back to the graph mode you were last in, you can use `SetGraphMode (GetGraphMode)`

Errors: None.

See also: [InitGraph \(870\)](#)

### 56.13.51 Sector

Synopsis: Draw and fill a sector of an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure Sector (x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; StAngle: Word;  
EndAngle: Word; XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sector` draws and fills a sector of an ellipse with center (X, Y) and radii XRadius and YRadius, starting at angle Start and ending at angle Stop.

Errors: None.

See also: [Arc \(861\)](#), [Circle \(858\)](#), [PieSlice \(873\)](#)

### 56.13.52 SetAspectRatio

Synopsis: Set aspect ration of the screen

Declaration: `procedure SetAspectRatio (Xasp: Word; Yasp: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the aspect ratio of the current screen to Xasp/Yasp.

Errors: None

See also: [InitGraph \(870\)](#), [GetAspectRatio \(864\)](#)

### 56.13.53 SetColor

Synopsis: Set foreground drawing color

Declaration: `procedure SetColor (Color: ColorType)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the foreground color to `Color`.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetColor \(864\)](#), [SetBkColor \(860\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(879\)](#)

### 56.13.54 SetDirectVideo

Synopsis: Attempt to enter direct video mode.

Declaration: `procedure SetDirectVideo (DirectAccess: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDirectVideo` attempts to enter direct video mode. In that mode, everything is drawn straight in the video buffer.

### 56.13.55 SetFillPattern

Synopsis: Set drawing fill pattern

Declaration: `procedure SetFillPattern (Pattern: FillPatternType; Color: ColorType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFillPattern` sets the current fill-pattern to `FillPattern`, and the filling color to `Color`. The pattern is an 8x8 raster, corresponding to the 64 bits in `FillPattern`.

Errors: None

See also: [GetFillPattern \(865\)](#), [SetFillStyle \(875\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(879\)](#)

### 56.13.56 SetFillStyle

Synopsis: Set drawing fill style

Declaration: `procedure SetFillStyle (Pattern: Word; Color: ColorType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFillStyle` sets the filling pattern and color to one of the predefined filling patterns. `Pattern` can be one of the following predefined constants :

**EmptyFill** Uses backgroundcolor.

**SolidFill** Uses filling color

**LineFill** Fills with horizontal lines.

**ltSlashFill** Fills with lines from left-under to top-right.

**SlashFill** Idem as previous, thick lines.

**BkSlashFill** Fills with thick lines from left-Top to bottom-right.

**LtBkSlashFill** Idem as previous, normal lines.

**HatchFill** Fills with a hatch-like pattern.

**XHatchFill** Fills with a hatch pattern, rotated 45 degrees.

**InterLeaveFill**

**WideDotFill** Fills with dots, wide spacing.

**CloseDotFill** Fills with dots, narrow spacing.

**UserFill** Fills with a user-defined pattern.

Errors: None.

See also: [SetFillPattern \(875\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(879\)](#)

### 56.13.57 SetGraphMode

Synopsis: Set graphical mode

Declaration: `procedure SetGraphMode (Mode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetGraphMode` sets the graphical mode and clears the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: [InitGraph \(870\)](#)

### 56.13.58 SetLineStyle

Synopsis: Set line drawing style

Declaration: `procedure SetLineStyle (LineStyle: Word; Pattern: Word; Thickness: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLineStyle` sets the drawing style for lines. You can specify a `LineStyle` which is one of the following predefined constants:

**SolidLn** Draws a solid line.

**DottedLn** Draws a dotted line.

**CenterLn** Draws a non-broken centered line.

**DashedLn** Draws a dashed line.

**UserBitLn** Draws a User-defined bit pattern.

If `UserBitLn` is specified then `Pattern` contains the bit pattern. In all another cases, `Pattern` is ignored. The parameter `Width` indicates how thick the line should be. You can specify one of the following predefined constants:

**NormWidth** Normal line width

**ThickWidth** Double line width

Errors: None.

See also: [GetLineSettings \(866\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(879\)](#)

### 56.13.59 SetPalette

Synopsis: Set palette entry using color constant

Declaration: `procedure SetPalette (ColorNum: Word; Color: ShortInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetPalette` changes the `ColorNr`-th entry in the palette to `NewColor`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetAllPalette` ([860](#)), `SetRGBPalette` ([860](#))

### 56.13.60 SetTextJustify

Synopsis: Set text placement style

Declaration: `procedure SetTextJustify (horiz: Word; vert: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextJustify` controls the placement of new text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. `Horizontal` controls horizontal placement, and can be one of the following predefined constants:

**LeftText**Text is set left of the pointer.

**CenterText**Text is set centered horizontally on the pointer.

**RightText**Text is set to the right of the pointer.

`Vertical` controls the vertical placement of the text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. Its value can be one of the following predefined constants :

**BottomText**Text is placed under the pointer.

**CenterText**Text is placed centered vertically on the pointer.

**TopText**Text is placed above the pointer.

Errors: None.

See also: `OutText` ([872](#)), `OutTextXY` ([859](#))

### 56.13.61 SetTextStyle

Synopsis: Set text style

Declaration: `procedure SetTextStyle (font: Word; direction: Word; charsize: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextStyle` controls the style of text to be put on the screen. predefined constants for `Font` are:

**DefaultFont**The default font

**TriplexFont**A special font

**SmallFont**A smaller font

**SansSerifFont**A sans-serif font (like Arial)

**GothicFont**A gothic font

**ScriptFont**A script font

**SimpleFont**A simple font

**TSCRFon**Terminal screen font

**LCOMFont**?

**EuroFont**?

**BoldFont**A bold typeface font

predefined constants for `Direction` are :

**HorizDir**Write horizontal

**VertDir**Write vertical

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTextSettings` ([868](#))

### 56.13.62 SetUserCharSize

Synopsis: Set user character size for vector font

Declaration: `procedure SetUserCharSize (Multx: Word; Divx: Word; Multy: Word;  
Divy: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the width and height of vector-fonts. The horizontal size is given by `Xasp1/Xasp2`, and the vertical size by `Yasp1/Yasp2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetTextStyle` ([877](#))

### 56.13.63 SetViewPort

Synopsis: Set the graphical drawing window

Declaration: `procedure SetViewPort (X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt;  
Y2: SmallInt; Clip: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the current graphical viewport (window) to the rectangle defined by the top-left corner `(X1, Y1)` and the bottom-right corner `(X2, Y2)`. If `Clip` is true, anything drawn outside the viewport (window) will be clipped (i.e. not drawn). Coordinates specified after this call are relative to the top-left corner of the viewport.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetViewSettings` ([868](#))

**56.13.64 SetWriteMode**

Synopsis: Specify binary operation to perform when drawing on screen

Declaration: `procedure SetWriteMode (WriteMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWriteMode` controls the drawing of lines on the screen. It controls the binary operation used when drawing lines on the screen. Mode can be one of the following predefined constants:

**CopyPutDraw** as specified using current bitmask and color

**XORPutDraw** XOR-ing current bitmask and color

Errors: None.

See also: `SetColor` (875), `SetBkColor` (860), `SetLineStyle` (876), `SetFillStyle` (875)

**56.13.65 SetWriteModeEx**

Synopsis: Set write mode (extended version)

Declaration: `procedure SetWriteModeEx (WriteMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWriteModeEx` sets the graph write mode similar to `SetWriteMode` (879) but only if the `WriteMode` is in the range `CopyPut..NotPut`. If the provided value is outside this range, it is not set.

See also: `SetWriteMode` (879)

**56.13.66 TextHeight**

Synopsis: Return height (in pixels) of the given string

Declaration: `function TextHeight (const TextString: string) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextHeight` returns the height (in pixels) of the string `S` in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextWidth` (879)

**56.13.67 TextWidth**

Synopsis: Return width (in pixels) of the given string

Declaration: `function TextWidth (const TextString: string) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextWidth` returns the width (in pixels) of the string `S` in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextHeight` (879)



### 56.14 ArcCoordsType

```
ArcCoordsType = record
  x : SmallInt;
  y : SmallInt;
  xstart :
    SmallInt;
  ystart : SmallInt;
  xend : SmallInt;
  yend : SmallInt
  ;
end
```

Describe the last arc which was drawn on screen

### 56.15 FillSettingsType

```
FillSettingsType = record
  pattern : Word;
  color : ColorType;
end
```

Record describing fill mode

### 56.16 LineSettingsType

```
LineSettingsType = record
  linestyle : Word;
  pattern : Word;
  thickness : Word;
end
```

Record describing current line drawing mode

### 56.17 PaletteType

```
PaletteType = record
  Size : LongInt;
  Colors : Array[0..MaxColors
  ] of RGBRec;
end
```

Record describing palette.

### 56.18 PointType

```
PointType = record
```

```

    x : SmallInt;
    y : SmallInt;
end

```

Record describing a point in a 2 dimensional plane

### 56.19 RGBRec

```

RGBRec = packed record
    Red : SmallInt;
    Green : SmallInt;
    Blue
    : SmallInt;
end

```

Record describing palette RGB color

### 56.20 TextSettingsType

```

TextSettingsType = record
    font : Word;
    direction : Word;
    charsize
    : Word;
    horiz : Word;
    vert : Word;
end

```

Record describing how texts are drawn.

### 56.21 TModeInfo

```

TModeInfo = record
    DriverNumber : SmallInt;
    ModeNumber : SmallInt
    ;
    internModeNumber : SmallInt;
    MaxColor : LongInt;
    PaletteSize
    : LongInt;
    XAspect : Word;
    YAspect : Word;
    MaxX : Word;
    MaxY
    : Word;
    DirectColor : Boolean;
    Hardwarepages : Byte;
    ModeName

```

```

: string;
DirectPutPixel : defpixelproc;
GetPixel : getpixelproc
;
PutPixel : putpixelproc;
SetRGBPalette : setrgbpaletteproc;
GetRGBPalette : getrgbpaletteproc;
SetAllPalette : SetAllPaletteProc
;
SetVisualPage : setvisualpageproc;
SetActivePage : setactivepageproc
;
ClearViewPort : clrviewproc;
PutImage : putimageproc;
GetImage
: getimageproc;
ImageSize : imagesizeproc;
GetScanLine : getscanlineproc
;
Line : lineproc;
InternalEllipse : ellipseproc;
PatternLine
: patternlineproc;
HLine : hlineproc;
VLine : vlineproc;
Circle
: CircleProc;
InitMode : initmodeproc;
OutTextXY : OutTextXYProc
;
SetBKColor : SetBkColorProc;
GetBKColor : GetBkColorProc;
next : PModeInfo;
end

```

Record describing a graphical mode.

## 56.22 TResolutionRec

```

TResolutionRec = record
  x : LongInt;
  y : LongInt;
end

```

Record describing resolution

## 56.23 ViewPortType

```

ViewPortType = record
  x1 : SmallInt;

```

```
y1 : SmallInt;  
x2 : SmallInt  
;  
y2 : SmallInt;  
Clip : Boolean;  
end
```

Record describing a viewport

## Chapter 57

# Reference for unit 'heaptrc'

### 57.1 Overview

This document describes the HEAPTRC unit for Free Pascal. It was written by Pierre Muller. It is system independent, and works on all supported systems.

The HEAPTRC unit can be used to debug your memory allocation/deallocation. It keeps track of the calls to `getmem/freemem`, and, implicitly, of `New/Dispose` statements.

When the program exits, or when you request it explicitly. It displays the total memory used, and then dumps a list of blocks that were allocated but not freed. It also displays where the memory was allocated.

If there are any inconsistencies, such as memory blocks being allocated or freed twice, or a memory block that is released but with wrong size, this will be displayed also.

The information that is stored/displayed can be customized using some constants.

Do not use this unit directly, instead use the `-gh` switch, to let the compiler insert the unit in the `uses` clause.

### 57.2 Controlling HeapTrc with environment variables

The `HeapTrc` unit can be controlled with the `HEAPTRC` environment variable. The contents of this variable controls the initial setting of some constants in the unit. `HEAPTRC` consists of one or more of the following strings, separated by spaces:

**keepreleased** If this string occurs, then the `KeepReleased` (886) variable is set to `True`

**disabled** If this string occurs, then the `UseHeapTrace` (887) variable is set to `False` and the heap trace is disabled. It does not make sense to combine this value with other values.

**nohalt** If this string occurs, then the `HaltOnError` (886) variable is set to `False`, so the program continues executing even in case of a heap error.

**log=filename** If this string occurs, then the output of `heaptrc` is sent to the specified `Filename`. (see also `SetHeapTraceOutput` (890))

The following are valid values for the `HEAPTRC` variable:

```
HEAPTRC=disabled
```

```
HEAPTRC="keepreleased log=heap.log"
HEAPTRC="log=myheap.log nohalt"
```

Note that these strings are case sensitive, and the name of the variable too.

### 57.3 HeapTrc Usage

You must use the `-gh` switch, to let the compiler insert the unit by itself, so you don't have to include it in your `uses` clause. In fact, as of version 3.0.0 you may no longer do so.

The below example shows how to use the `heaptrc` unit.

This is the memory dump shown when running this program in a standard way:

```
Marked memory at 0040FA50 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
  0x00408708
  0x0040CB49
  0x0040C481
Call trace for block 0x0040FA50 size 128
  0x0040CB3D
  0x0040C481
```

If you use the `lineinfo` unit (or use the `-gl` switch) as well, then `heaptrc` will also give you the filenames and line-numbers of the procedures in the backtrace:

```
Marked memory at 00410DA0 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
  0x004094B8
  0x0040D8F9  main,   line 25 of heapex.pp
  0x0040D231
Call trace for block 0x00410DA0 size 128
  0x0040D8ED  main,   line 23 of heapex.pp
  0x0040D231
```

If lines without filename/line-number occur, this means there is a unit which has no debug info included.

**Listing:** `./heapex/heapex.pp`

---

```
Program heapex;

{
  Program used to demonstrate the usage of heaptrc unit
  Compile this program with the -gh command-line option
}

Var P1 : ^Longint;
      P2 : Pointer;
      I : longint;

begin
  {$IF NOT DECLARED(heaptrc)}
  {$ERROR You must compile this program with -gh}
  {$ENDIF}
```

---

```

New(P1);
// causes previous allocation not to be de-allocated
New(P1);
Dispose(P1);
For I:=1 to 10 do
begin
  GetMem (P2,128);
  // When I is even, deallocate block. We loose 5 times 128
  // bytes this way.
  If (I mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);
end;
GetMem(P2,128);
// This will provoke an error and a memory dump
Freemem (P2,64);
end.

```

---

## 57.4 Constants, types and variables

### 57.4.1 Constants

```
add_tail : Boolean = True
```

If `add\_tail` is `True` (the default) then a check is also performed on the memory location just behind the allocated memory.

```
GlobalSkipIfNoLeaks : Boolean = False
```

`GlobalSkipIfNoLeaks` will, when set to `true`, disable the output of the `heaptrc` unit if no memory leaks will be detected, i.e. there will only be output if there were actual memory leaks.

```
HaltOnError : Boolean = True
```

If `HaltOnError` is set to `True` then an illegal call to `FreeMem` will cause the memory manager to execute a `halt (1)` instruction, causing a memory dump. By Default it is set to `True`.

```
HaltOnNotReleased : Boolean = False
```

`HaltOnNotReleased` can be set to `True` to make the `DumpHeap` (888) procedure halt (exit code 203) the program if any memory was not released when the dump is made. If it is `False` (the default) then `DumpHeap` just returns.

```
keepreleased : Boolean = False
```

If `keepreleased` is set to `true`, then a list of freed memory blocks is kept. This is useful if you suspect that the same memory block is released twice. However, this option is very memory intensive, so use it sparingly, and only when it's really necessary.

```
maxprintedblocklength : Integer = 128
```

`maxprintedblocklength` determines the maximum number of bytes written by a memory block dump, as produced when `printleakedblock` (887) or `printfaultyblock` (887) are `true`. If the size of the memory block is larger than this size, then only the first `maxprintedblocklength` will be included in the dump.

```
printfaultyblock : Boolean = False
```

`printfaultyblock` can be set to `True` to print a memory dump of faulty memory blocks (in case a memory override occurs) The block is printed as a series of hexadecimal numbers, representing the bytes in the memory block. At most `maxprintedblocklength` (886) bytes of the memory block will be printed.

```
printleakedblock : Boolean = False
```

`printleakedblock` can be set to `True` to print a memory dump of unreleased blocks when the `heaptrc` unit produces a summary of memory leaks. The block is printed as a series of hexadecimal numbers, representing the bytes in the memory block. At most `maxprintedblocklength` (886) bytes of the memory block will be printed.

```
quicktrace : Boolean = True
```

`Quicktrace` determines whether the memory manager checks whether a block that is about to be released is allocated correctly. This is a rather time consuming search, and slows program execution significantly, so by default it is set to `True`.

```
tail_size : LongInt = sizeof(ptruint)
```

This is the size of the tail block added to every memory block when `add_tail` (886) is `True`.

```
tracesize = 16
```

`Tracesize` specifies how many levels of calls are displayed of the call stack during the memory dump. If you specify `keepreleased:=True` then half the `TraceSize` is reserved for the `GetMem` call stack, and the other half is reserved for the `FreeMem` call stack. For example, the default value of 8 will cause eight levels of call frames to be dumped for the `getmem` call if `keepreleased` is `False`. If `KeepReleased` is `true`, then 4 levels of call frames will be dumped for the `GetMem` call and 4 frames will be dumped for the `FreeMem` call. If you want to change this value, you must recode the `heaptrc` unit.

```
usecrc : Boolean = True
```

If `usecrc` is `True` (the default) then a crc check is performed on locations before and after the allocated memory. This is useful to detect memory overwrites.

```
useheaptrace : Boolean = True
```

This variable must be set at program startup, through the help of an environment variable.

## 57.4.2 Types

```
tdisplayextrainfoProc = procedure(var ptext: text; p: pointer)
```

The `TDisplayExtraInfoType` is a procedural type used in the `SetHeapExtraInfo` (888) call to display a memory location which was previously filled with `TFillExtraInfoProc` (887)

```
tFillExtraInfoProc = procedure(p: pointer)
```

The `TFillExtraInfoProc` is a procedural type used in the `SetHeapExtraInfo` (888) call to fill a memory location with extra data for displaying.



## 57.5 Procedures and functions

### 57.5.1 CheckPointer

**Synopsis:** Check if a pointer is in the address range of the application

**Declaration:** `procedure CheckPointer(p: pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CheckPointer` checks if the pointer is in the address range of the application, more specifically, if it is in the heap. if not, it prints an error and stops the program with aruntime error 204.

### 57.5.2 DumpHeap

**Synopsis:** Dump memory usage report to stderr.

**Declaration:** `procedure DumpHeap`  
`procedure DumpHeap(SkipIfNoLeaks: Boolean)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DumpHeap` dumps to standard output a summary of memory usage. It is called automatically by the `heaptrc` unit when your program exits (by installing an exit procedure), but it can be called at any time.

**Errors:** None.

### 57.5.3 SetHeapExtraInfo

**Synopsis:** Store extra information in blocks.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetHeapExtraInfo(size: ptruint; fillproc: tFillExtraInfoProc;`  
`displayproc: tdisplayextrainfoProc)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** You can use `SetHeapExtraInfo` to store extra info in the blocks that the `heaptrc` unit reserves when tracing `getmem` calls. `Size` indicates the size (in bytes) that the trace mechanism should reserve for your extra information. For each call to `getmem`, `FillProc` will be called, and passed a pointer to the memory reserved.

When dumping the memory summary, the extra info is shown by calling `displayproc` and passing it the memory location which was filled by `fillproc`. It should write the information in readable form to the text file provided in the call to `displayproc`

**Errors:** You can only call `SetHeapExtraInfo` if no memory has been allocated yet. If memory was already allocated prior to the call to `SetHeapExtraInfo`, then an error will be displayed on standard error output, and a `DumpHeap` (888) is executed.

See also: `DumpHeap` (888), `SetHeapTraceOutput` (890)

**Listing:** `./heapex/setinfo.pp`

---

**Program** `heapex`;

*{ Program used to demonstrate the usage of heaptrc unit }*

**Uses** heaptrc;

**Var** P1 : ^Longint;  
       P2 : Pointer;  
       I : longint;  
       Marker : Longint;

**Procedure** SetMarker (P : pointer);

**Type** PLongint = ^Longint;

**begin**  
     PLongint(P)^:=Marker;  
**end**;

**Procedure** Part1;

**begin**  
     *// Blocks allocated here are marked with \$FFAAFFAA = -5570646*  
     Marker := \$FFAAFFAA;  
     New(P1);  
     New(P1);  
     Dispose(P1);  
     For I:=1 to 10 do  
         **begin**  
             GetMem (P2,128);  
             If (I mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);  
         **end**;  
     GetMem(P2,128);  
**end**;

**Procedure** Part2;

**begin**  
     *// Blocks allocated here are marked with \$FAFAFAFA = -84215046*  
     Marker := \$FAFAFAFA;  
     New(P1);  
     New(P1);  
     Dispose(P1);  
     For I:=1 to 10 do  
         **begin**  
             GetMem (P2,128);  
             If (I mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);  
         **end**;  
     GetMem(P2,128);  
**end**;

**begin**  
     SetExtraInfo (SizeOf(Marker), @SetMarker);  
     Writeln ('Part 1');  
     part1;  
     Writeln ('Part 2');  
     part2;  
**end**.

---

### 57.5.4 SetHeapTraceOutput

Synopsis: Specify filename for heap trace output.

Declaration: `procedure SetHeapTraceOutput(const name: string); Overload`  
`procedure SetHeapTraceOutput(var ATextOutput: Text); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetHeapTraceOutput` sets the filename into which heap trace info will be written. By default information is written to standard output, this function allows you to redirect the information to a file with full filename name.

Errors: If the file cannot be written to, errors will occur when writing the trace.

See also: `SetHeapExtraInfo` ([888](#))

## Chapter 58

# Reference for unit 'ipc'

### 58.1 Used units

Table 58.1: Used units by unit 'ipc'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">137</a>
unixtype	<a href="#">2057</a>

### 58.2 Overview

This document describes the IPC unit for Free Pascal. It was written for Linux by Michael Van Canneyt. It gives all the functionality of System V Inter-Process Communication: shared memory, semaphores and messages. It works only on the Linux operating system.

Many constants here are provided for completeness only, and should under normal circumstances not be used by the programmer.

### 58.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 58.3.1 Constants

`IPC_CREAT = 1 shl 9`

Create if key is nonexistent

`IPC_EXCL = 2 shl 9`

fail if key exists

`IPC_INFO = 3`

For ipcs call

`IPC_NOWAIT = 4 shl 9`

return error on wait

IPC\_RMID = 0

Remove resource

IPC\_SET = 1

set ipc\_perm options

IPC\_STAT = 2

get ipc\_perm options

MAX\_SOPS = 5

MSG\_NOERROR = 1 shl 12

Internal Message control code. Do not use

SEM\_A = 2 shl 6

Constant to describe alter permissions on Semaphores

SEM\_GETALL = 6

Semaphore operation: Get all semaphore values

SEM\_GETNCNT = 3

Semaphore operation: Get number of processes waiting for resource.

SEM\_GETPID = 4

Semaphore operation: Get process ID of last operation.

SEM\_GETVAL = 5

Semaphore operation: Get current value of semaphore

SEM\_GETZCNT = 7

Semaphore operation: Get number of processes waiting for semaphores to reach zero

SEM\_R = 4 shl 6

Constant to describe read permissions on Semaphores

SEM\_SETALL = 9

Semaphore operation: Set all semaphore values

```
SEM_SETVAL = 8
```

Semaphore operation: Set semaphore value

```
SEM_UNDO = 1 shl 12
```

Constant for use in semop (905)

```
SHM_LOCK = 11
```

This constant is used in the shmctl (906) call.

```
SHM_R = IPC_R
```

This constant is used in the shmctl (906) call.

```
SHM_RDONLY = 1 shl 12
```

This constant is used in the shmctl (906) call.

```
SHM_RND = 2 shl 12
```

This constant is used in the shmctl (906) call.

```
SHM_UNLOCK = 12
```

This constant is used in the shmctl (906) call.

```
SHM_W = IPC_W
```

This constant is used in the shmctl (906) call.

### 58.3.2 Types

```
key_t = TKey
```

Alias for TKey (894) type

```
msglen_t = culong
```

Message length type

```
msgqnum_t = culong
```

Message queue number type

```
PIPC_Perm = ^TIPC_Perm
```

Pointer to TIPC\_Perm (909) record.

```
PMSG = ^TMSG
```

Pointer to TMSG (909) record

```
PMSGbuf = ^TMSGbuf
```

Pointer to TMsgBuf (909) record

```
PMSQid_ds = ^TMSQid_ds
```

Pointer to TMSQid\_ds (910)

```
PSEM = ^TSEM
```

Pointer to TSEM

```
PSEMbuf = ^TSEMbuf
```

Pointer to Tsembuf (911) record.

```
PSEMid_ds = ^TSEMid_ds
```

Pointer to TSEMid\_ds (911) record.

```
PSEMinfo = ^TSEMinfo
```

Pointer to TSEMinfo (911) record.

```
PSEMun = ^TSEMun
```

Pointer to TSEMun (895) record

```
PShmid_DS = ^TShmid_ds
```

Pointer to TSHMid\_ds (891) record.

```
TKey = cint
```

Type returned by the ftok (895) key generating function.

```
TSEM = record
end
```

TSEM is a semaphore description record. It should be considered opaque, it's structure is highly OS and CPU dependent.

```

TSEMun = record
case cint of
0: (
    val : cint;
);
1: (
    buf : PSEMid_ds
    ;
);
2: (
    arr : PWord;
);
end

```

Record used in `semctl` (899) call.

## 58.4 Procedures and functions

### 58.4.1 `ftok`

Synopsis: Create token from filename

Declaration: `function ftok(Path: pchar; ID: cint) : TKey`

Visibility: default

Description: `ftok` returns a key that can be used in a `semget` (904), `shmget` (908) or `msgget` (898) call to access a new or existing IPC resource.

`Path` is the name of a file in the file system, `ID` is a character of your choice. The `ftok` call does the same as it's C counterpart, so a pascal program and a C program will access the same resource if they use the same `Path` and `ID`.

For an example, see `msgctl` (895), `semctl` (899) or `shmctl` (906).

Errors: `ftok` returns -1 if the file in `Path` doesn't exist.

See also: `semget` (904), `shmget` (908), `msgget` (898)

### 58.4.2 `msgctl`

Synopsis: Perform various operations on a message queue

Declaration: `function msgctl(msqid: cint; cmd: cint; buf: PMSQid_ds) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgctl` performs various operations on the message queue with id `ID`. Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT** In this case, the `msgctl` call fills the `TMSQid_ds` structure with information about the message queue.

**IPC\_SET** In this case, the `msgctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record inside `buf`.

**IPC\_RMID** If this is specified, the message queue will be removed from the system.



buf contains the data that are needed by the call. It can be `Nil` in case the message queue should be removed.

The function returns `True` if success full, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `msgget` (898), `msgsnd` (899), `msgrcv` (898)

**Listing:** `./ipccex/msgtool.pp`

---

```

program msgtool;

Uses ipc,baseunix;

Type
  PMyMsgBuf = ^TMyMsgBuf;
  TMyMsgBuf = record
    mtype : Longint;
    mtext : string[255];
  end;

Procedure DoError (Const Msg : string);

begin
  Writeln (msg,' returned an error : ',fpgeterrno);
  halt(1);
end;

Procedure SendMessage (Id : Longint;
                       Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
                       MType : Longint;
                       Const MText : String);

begin
  Writeln ( 'Sending message. ');
  Buf.mtype:=mtype;
  Buf.Mtext:=mtext;
  If msgsnd (Id ,PMSGBuf (@Buf),256,0)=-1 then
    DoError( 'msgsnd ');
end;

Procedure ReadMessage (ID : Longint;
                       Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
                       MType : longint);

begin
  Writeln ( 'Reading message. ');
  Buf.MType:=MType;
  If msgrcv (ID ,PMSGBuf (@Buf),256,mtype,0)<>-1 then
    Writeln ( 'Type : ',buf.mtype,' Text : ',buf.mtext)
  else
    DoError ( 'msgrcv ');
end;

Procedure RemoveQueue ( ID : Longint);

begin
  If msgctl (id,IPC_RMID,Nil)<>-1 then
    Writeln ( 'Removed Queue with id ',Id);

```

```

end;

Procedure ChangeQueueMode (ID,mode : longint);

Var QueueDS : TMSQid_ds;

begin
  If msgctl (Id,IPC_STAT,@QueueDS)=-1 then
    DoError ('msgctl : stat');
  Writeln ('Old permissions : ',QueueDS.msg_perm.mode);
  QueueDS.msg_perm.mode:=Mode;
  if msgctl (ID,IPC_SET,@QueueDS)=0 then
    Writeln ('New permissions : ',QueueDS.msg_perm.mode)
  else
    DoError ('msgctl : IPC_SET');
end;

procedure usage;

begin
  Writeln ('Usage : msgtool s(end) <type> <text> (max 255 characters)');
  Writeln ('          r(eceive) <type>');
  Writeln ('          d(etele)');
  Writeln ('          m(ode) <decimal mode>');
  halt(1);
end;

Function StrToInt (S : String): longint;

Var M : longint;
    C : Integer;

begin
  val (S,M,C);
  If C<>0 Then DoError ('StrToInt : '+S);
  StrToInt:=M;
end;

Var
  Key : TKey;
  ID : longint;
  Buf : TMyMsgBuf;

const ipckey = '.'#0;

begin
  If Paramcount<1 then Usage;
  key := Ftok (@ipckey[1],ord('M'));
  ID:=msgget(key,IPC_CREAT or 438);
  If ID<0 then DoError ('MsgGet');
  Case upCase(Paramstr(1)[1]) of
    'S' : If ParamCount<>3 then
      Usage
    else
      SendMessage (id,Buf,StrToInt(Paramstr(2)),paramstr(3));
    'R' : If ParamCount<>2 then
      Usage
    else

```

---

```

        ReadMessage (id , buf , strtoint (Paramstr (2)));
'D' : If ParamCount<>1 then
    Usage
else
    RemoveQueue (ID);
'M' : If ParamCount<>2 then
    Usage
else
    ChangeQueueMode (id , strtoint (paramstr (2)));
else
    Usage
end;
end.

```

---

### 58.4.3 msgget

**Synopsis:** Return message queue ID, possibly creating the queue

**Declaration:** `function msgget (key: TKey; msgflg: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `msgget` returns the ID of the message queue described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `msgflg`, a new queue is created.

`msgflg` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

For an example, see `msgctl` ([895](#)).

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `ftok` ([895](#)), `msgsnd` ([899](#)), `msgrcv` ([898](#)), `msgctl` ([895](#))

### 58.4.4 msgrcv

**Synopsis:** Retrieve a message from the queue

**Declaration:** `function msgrcv (msqid: cint; msgp: PMSGbuf; msgsz: size_t; msgtyp: clong; msgflg: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `msgrcv` retrieves a message of type `msgtyp` from the message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgtyp` corresponds to the `mtype` field of the `TMSGbuf` record. The message is stored in the `MSGbuf` structure pointed to by `msgp`.

The `msgflg` parameter can be used to control the behaviour of the `msgrcv` call. It consists of an ORed combination of the following flags:

**0** No special meaning.

**IPC\_NOWAIT**If no messages are available, then the call returns immediately, with the `ENOMSG` error.

**MSG\_NOERROR**If the message size is wrong (too large), no error is generated, instead the message is truncated. Normally, in such cases, the call returns an error (`E2BIG`)

The function returns `True` if the message was received correctly, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `msgctl` (895).

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `msgget` (898), `msgsnd` (899), `msgctl` (895)

### 58.4.5 msgsnd

Synopsis: Send a message to the message queue

Declaration: `function msgsnd(msqid: cint; msgp: PMSGbuf; msgsz: size_t; msgflg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgsnd` sends a message to a message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgp` is a pointer to a message buffer, that should be based on the `TMsgBuf` type. `msgsz` is the size of the message (NOT of the message buffer record !)

The `msgflg` can have a combination of the following values (ORed together):

**0**No special meaning. The message will be written to the queue. If the queue is full, then the process is blocked.

**IPC\_NOWAIT**If the queue is full, then no message is written, and the call returns immediately.

The function returns `True` if the message was sent successfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `msgctl` (895).

Errors: In case of error, the call returns `False`, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `msgget` (898), `msgrcv` (898), `msgctl` (895)

### 58.4.6 semctl

Synopsis: Perform various control operations on a semaphore set

Declaration: `function semctl(semid: cint; semnum: cint; cmd: cint; var arg: TSEMun) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `semctl` performs various operations on the semaphore `semnum` with semaphore set id `ID`.

The `arg` parameter supplies the data needed for each call. This is a variant record that should be filled differently, according to the command:

```
Type
TSEMun = record
  case longint of
    0 : ( val : longint );
    1 : ( buf : PSEMid_ds );
```

```

2 : ( arr : PWord );
3 : ( padbuf : PSeminfo );
4 : ( padpad : pointer );
end;

```

Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMids` record. The `semctl` call fills this `TSEMids` structure with information about the semaphore set.

**IPC\_SET**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMids` record. The `semctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record.

**IPC\_RMID**If this is specified, the semaphore set is removed from the system.

**GETALL**In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be stored. The size of this memory area is `SizeOf(Word) * Number of semaphores in the set`. This call will then fill the memory array with all the values of the semaphores.

**GETNCNT**This will fill the `val` field of the `arg` union with the number of processes waiting for resources.

**GETPID**`semctl` returns the process ID of the process that performed the last `semop` (905) call.

**GETVAL**`semctl` returns the value of the semaphore with number `semnum`.

**GETZCNT**`semctl` returns the number of processes waiting for semaphores that reach value zero.

**SETALL**In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be retrieved from. The size of this memory area is `SizeOf(Word) * Number of semaphores in the set`. This call will then set the values of the semaphores from the memory array.

**SETVAL**This will set the value of semaphore `semnum` to the value in the `val` field of the `arg` parameter.

The function returns -1 on error.

Errors: The function returns -1 on error, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `semget` (904), `semop` (905)

**Listing:** `./ipccx/semtool.pp`

---

```

Program semtool;

{ Program to demonstrate the use of semaphores }

Uses ipc,baseunix;

Const MaxSemValue = 5;

Procedure DoError (Const Msg : String);
var
  error: cint;
begin
  error:=fpgeterrno;
  Writeln ( 'Error : ',msg, ' Code : ',error);

```

```

    Halt(1);
end;

Function getsemval (ID,Member : longint) : longint;

Var S : TSEMun;

begin
    GetSemVal:= SemCtl(id ,member,SEM_GETVAL,S);
end;

Procedure DispVal (ID,member : longint);

begin
    writeln ('Value for member ',member,' is ',GetSemVal(ID,Member));
end;

Function GetMemberCount (ID : Longint) : longint;

Var opts : TSEMun;
    semds : TSEMid_ds;

begin
    opts.buf:=@semds;
    If semctl(Id,0,IPC_STAT,opts)<>-1 then
        GetMemberCount:=semds.sem_nsems
    else
        GetMemberCount:=-1;
end;

Function OpenSem (Key : TKey) : Longint;

begin
    OpenSem:=semget(Key,0,438);
    If OpenSem=-1 then
        DoError ('OpenSem');
end;

Function CreateSem (Key : TKey; Members : Longint) : Longint;

Var Count : Longint;
    Semopts : TSemun;

begin
    // the semmsl constant seems kernel specific
    { If members>semmsl then
        DoError ('Sorry, maximum number of semaphores in set exceeded');
    }
    Writeln ('Trying to create a new semaphore set with ',members,' members. ');
    CreateSem:=semget(key,members,IPC_CREAT or IPC_Excl or 438);
    If CreateSem=-1 then
        DoError ('Semaphore set already exists. ');
    Semopts.val:=MaxSemValue; { Initial value of semaphores }
    For Count:=0 to Members-1 do
        semctl(CreateSem,count,SEM_SETVAL,semopts);
end;

Procedure lockSem (ID,Member: Longint);

```

```
Var lock : TSEMbuf;
```

```
begin
```

```
  With lock do
```

```
    begin
```

```
      sem_num:=0;
```

```
      sem_op:=-1;
```

```
      sem_flg:=IPC_NOWAIT;
```

```
    end;
```

```
    if (member<0) or (member>GetMemberCount(ID)-1) then
```

```
      DoError ( 'semaphore member out of range' );
```

```
    if getsemval(ID,member)=0 then
```

```
      DoError ( 'Semaphore resources exhausted (no lock)' );
```

```
    lock.sem_num:=member;
```

```
    WriteLn ( 'Attempting to lock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID);
```

```
    if semop(Id,@lock,1)=-1 then
```

```
      DoError ( 'Lock failed' )
```

```
    else
```

```
      WriteLn ( 'Semaphore resources decremented by one' );
```

```
      dispval(ID,Member);
```

```
end;
```

```
Procedure UnlockSem (ID,Member: Longint);
```

```
Var Unlock : TSEMbuf;
```

```
begin
```

```
  With Unlock do
```

```
    begin
```

```
      sem_num:=0;
```

```
      sem_op:=1;
```

```
      sem_flg:=IPC_NOWAIT;
```

```
    end;
```

```
    if (member<0) or (member>GetMemberCount(ID)-1) then
```

```
      DoError ( 'semaphore member out of range' );
```

```
    if getsemval(ID,member)=MaxSemValue then
```

```
      DoError ( 'Semaphore not locked' );
```

```
    Unlock.sem_num:=member;
```

```
    WriteLn ( 'Attempting to unlock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID);
```

```
    if semop(Id,@unlock,1)=-1 then
```

```
      DoError ( 'Unlock failed' )
```

```
    else
```

```
      WriteLn ( 'Semaphore resources incremented by one' );
```

```
      dispval(ID,Member);
```

```
end;
```

```
Procedure RemoveSem (ID : longint);
```

```
var S : TSemun;
```

```
begin
```

```
  If semctl(Id,0,IPC_RMID,s)<>-1 then
```

```
    WriteLn ( 'Semaphore removed' )
```

```
  else
```

```
    DoError ( 'Couldn't remove semaphore' );
```

```
end;
```

```

Procedure ChangeMode (ID,Mode : longint);

Var rc : longint;
    opts : TSEMun;
    semds : TSEMid_ds;

begin
    opts.buf:=@semds;
    If not semctl (Id,0,IPC_STAT,opts)<>-1 then
        DoError ('Couldn't stat semaphore');
    Writeln ('Old permissions were : ',semds.sem_perm.mode);
    semds.sem_perm.mode:=mode;
    If semctl(id,0,IPC_SET,opts)<>-1 then
        Writeln ('Set permissions to ',mode)
    else
        DoError ('Couldn't set permissions');
end;

Procedure PrintSem (ID : longint);

Var l,cnt : longint;

begin
    cnt:=getmembercount(ID);
    Writeln ('Semaphore ',ID,' has ',cnt,' Members');
    For l:=0 to cnt-1 Do
        DispVal(id,l);
end;

Procedure USage;

begin
    Writeln ('Usage : semtool c(reate) <count>');
    Writeln ('                l(ock) <member>');
    Writeln ('                u(nlock) <member>');
    Writeln ('                d(etele)');
    Writeln ('                m(ode) <mode>');
    Writeln ('                p(rint)');
    halt(1);
end;

Function StrToInt (S : String): longint;

Var M : longint;
    C : Integer;

begin
    val (S,M,C);
    If C<>0 Then DoError ('StrToInt : '+S);
    StrToInt:=M;
end;

Var Key : TKey;
    ID : Longint;

const ipckey='.#0;

```



---

```

begin
  If ParamCount<1 then USage;
  key:=ftok (@ipckey[1],ORD('s'));
  Case UpCase(Paramstr(1)[1]) of
    'C' : begin
      if paramcount<>2 then usage;
      CreateSem (key, strtoint (paramstr(2)));
      end;
    'L' : begin
      if paramcount<>2 then usage;
      ID:=OpenSem (key);
      LockSem (ID, strtoint (paramstr(2)));
      end;
    'U' : begin
      if paramcount<>2 then usage;
      ID:=OpenSem (key);
      UnLockSem (ID, strtoint (paramstr(2)));
      end;
    'M' : begin
      if paramcount<>2 then usage;
      ID:=OpenSem (key);
      ChangeMode (ID, strtoint (paramstr(2)));
      end;
    'D' : Begin
      ID:=OpenSem(Key);
      RemoveSem(Id);
      end;
    'P' : begin
      ID:=OpenSem(Key);
      PrintSem (Id);
      end;
  else
    Usage
  end;
end.

```

---

### 58.4.7 semget

Synopsis: Return the ID of a semaphore set, possibly creating the set

Declaration: function semget(key: TKey; nsems: cint; semflg: cint) : cint

Visibility: default

Description: msgget returns the ID of the semaphore set described by key. Depending on the flags in semflg, a new queue is created.

semflg can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT**The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL**If used in combination with IPC\_CREAT, causes the call to fail if the set already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new set of semaphores is created, then there will be nsems semaphores in it.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `ftok` (895), `semop` (905), `semctl` (899)

### 58.4.8 semop

Synopsis: Perform semaphore operation.

Declaration: `function semop(semid: cint; sops: PSEMbuf; nsops: cuint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `semop` performs a set of operations on a message queue. `sops` points to an array of type `TSEMbuf`. The array should contain `nsops` elements.

The fields of the `TSEMbuf` (911) structure

```
TSEMbuf = record
  sem_num : word;
  sem_op  : integer;
  sem_flg : integer;
```

should be filled as follows:

**sem\_num**The number of the semaphore in the set on which the operation must be performed.

**sem\_op**The operation to be performed. The operation depends on the sign of `sem_op`: A positive number is simply added to the current value of the semaphore. If 0 (zero) is specified, then the process is suspended until the specified semaphore reaches zero. If a negative number is specified, it is subtracted from the current value of the semaphore. If the value would become negative then the process is suspended until the value becomes big enough, unless `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified in the `sem_flg`.

**sem\_flg**Optional flags: if `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified, then the calling process will never be suspended.

The function returns `True` if the operations were successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `semget` (904), `semctl` (899)

### 58.4.9 shmat

Synopsis: Attach a shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmat(shmid: cint; shmaddr: pointer; shmflg: cint) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmat` attaches a shared memory block with identified `shmid` to the current process. The function returns a pointer to the shared memory block.

If `shmaddr` is `Nil`, then the system chooses a free unmapped memory region, as high up in memory space as possible.

If `shmaddr` is non-nil, and `SHM_RND` is in `shmflg`, then the returned address is `shmaddr`, rounded down to `SHMLBA`. If `SHM_RND` is not specified, then `shmaddr` must be a page-aligned address.

The parameter `shmflg` can be used to control the behaviour of the `shmat` call. It consists of a ORed combination of the following constants:

**SHM\_RND**The suggested address in `shmaddr` is rounded down to `SHMLBA`.

**SHM\_RDONLY**the shared memory is attached for read access only. Otherwise the memory is attached for read-write. The process then needs read-write permissions to access the shared memory.

For an example, see `shmctl` (906).

Errors: If an error occurs, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (908), `shmdt` (908), `shmctl` (906)

### 58.4.10 shmctl

Synopsis: Perform control operations on a shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmctl(shmid: cint; cmd: cint; buf: PShmid_DS) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmctl` performs various operations on the shared memory block identified by identifier `shmid`.

The `buf` parameter points to a `TSHmid_ds` record. The `cmd` parameter is used to pass which operation is to be performed. It can have one of the following values :

**IPC\_STAT**`shmctl` fills the `TSHmid_ds` record that `buf` points to with the available information about the shared memory block.

**IPC\_SET**applies the values in the `ipc_perm` record that `buf` points to, to the shared memory block.

**IPC\_RMID**the shared memory block is destroyed (after all processes to which the block is attached, have detached from it).

If successful, the function returns `True`, `False` otherwise.

Errors: If an error occurs, the function returns `False`, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (908), `shmat` (905), `shmdt` (908)

**Listing:** `./ipcex/shmtool.pp`

---

```

Program shmtool;

uses ipc , strings , Baseunix;

Const SegSize = 100;

var key : Tkey;
    shmid, cntr : longint;
    segptr : pchar;

Procedure USage;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Usage : shmtool w(rite) text' );
  writeln ( '                      r(ead)' );
  writeln ( '                      d(elete)' );
  writeln ( '                      m(ode change) mode' );
  halt(1);
end;

```

```

Procedure Writeshm (ID : Longint; ptr : pchar; S : string);

begin
    strcpy (ptr,s);
end;

Procedure Readshm(ID : longint; ptr : pchar);

begin
    Writeln ('Read : ',ptr);
end;

Procedure removeshm (ID : Longint);

begin
    shmctl (ID,IPC_RMID,Nil);
    writeln ('Shared memory marked for deletion');
end;

Procedure CHangeMode (ID : longint; mode : String);

Var m : word;
    code : integer;
    data : TSHMid_ds;

begin
    val (mode,m,code);
    if code<>0 then
        usage;
    If shmctl (shmId,IPC_STAT,@data)=-1 then
        begin
            writeln ('Error : shmctl : ',fpgeterrno);
            halt(1);
        end;
    writeln ('Old permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
    data.shm_perm.mode:=m;
    If shmctl (shmId,IPC_SET,@data)=-1 then
        begin
            writeln ('Error : shmctl : ',fpgeterrno);
            halt(1);
        end;
    writeln ('New permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
end;

const ftokpath = '.'#0;

begin
    if paramcount<1 then usage;
    key := ftok (pchar(@ftokpath[1]),ord('S'));
    shmId := shmget(key,segsz,IPC_CREAT or IPC_EXCL or 438);
    If shmId=-1 then
        begin
            Writeln ('Shared memory exists. Opening as client');
            shmId := shmget(key,segsz,0);
            If shmId = -1 then
                begin
                    Writeln ('shmget : Error !',fpgeterrno);

```

---

```

        halt(1);
    end
end
else
    Writeln ('Creating new shared memory segment. ');
    segptr:=shmat(shmid,nil,0);
    if longint(segptr)=-1 then
        begin
            Writeln ('Shmat : error !',fpgeterrno);
            halt(1);
        end;
    case upcase(paramstr(1)[1]) of
        'W' : writeshm (shmid,segptr,paramstr(2));
        'R' : readshm (shmid,segptr);
        'D' : removeshm(shmid);
        'M' : changemode (shmid,paramstr(2));
    else
        begin
            writeln (paramstr(1));
            usage;
        end;
    end;
end.

```

---

#### 58.4.11 shmdt

Synopsis: Detach shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmdt(shmaddr: pointer) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmdt` detaches the shared memory at address `shmaddr`. This shared memory block is unavailable to the current process, until it is attached again by a call to `shmat` (905).

The function returns `True` if the memory block was detached successfully, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (908), `shmat` (905), `shmctl` (906)

#### 58.4.12 shmget

Synopsis: Return the ID of a shared memory block, possibly creating it

Declaration: `function shmget(key: TKey; size: size_t; flag: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmget` returns the ID of a shared memory block, described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `flag`, a new memory block is created.

`flag` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new memory block is created, then it will have size `Size` bytes in it.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

## 58.5 TIPC\_Perm

```
TIPC_Perm = record
  key : TKey;
  uid : kernel_uid_t;
  gid : kernel_gid_t
;
  cuid : kernel_uid_t;
  cgid : kernel_gid_t;
  mode : kernel_mode_t
;
  __pad1 : Array[1..4-sizeof(mode_t)] of Byte;
  seq : cushort;
  __pad2 : cushort;
  __unused1 : culong;
  __unused2 : culong;
end
```

`TIPC_Perm` is used in all IPC systems to specify the permissions. It should never be used directly.

## 58.6 TMSG

```
TMSG = record
  msg_next : PMSG;
  msg_type : LongInt;
  msg_spot
  : PChar;
  msg_stime : LongInt;
  msg_ts : Integer;
end
```

Record used in the handling of message queues. Do not use directly.

## 58.7 TMSGbuf

```
TMSGbuf = record
  mtype : clong;
  mtext : Array[0..0] of Char;
end
```

The `TMSGbuf` record is a record containing the data of a record. you should never use this record directly, instead you should make your own record that follows the structure of the `TMSGbuf` record,

but that has a size that is big enough to accommodate your messages. The `mtype` field should always be present, and should always be filled.

## 58.8 TMSGinfo

```
TMSGinfo = record
  msgmax : cint;
  msgmni : cint;
  msgmnb : cint
  ;
  msgtql : cint;
  msgssz : cint;
  msgseg : cint;
end
```

Internal message system record. Do not use directly.

## 58.9 TMSQid\_ds

```
TMSQid_ds = record
  msg_perm : TIPC_Perm;
  msg_first : PMSG;
  msg_last
    : PMSG;
  msg_cbytes : msglen_t;
  msg_qnum : msgqnum_t;
  msg_qbytes
    : msglen_t;
  msg_lspid : pid_t;
  msg_lrpid : pid_t;
  msg_stime
    : time_t;
  msg_pad1 : clong;
  msg_rtime : time_t;
  msg_pad2 :
    clong;
  msg_ctime : time_t;
  msg_pad3 : clong;
  msg_pad4 : Array
    [0..3] of clong;
end
```

This record should never be used directly, it is an internal kernel record. It's fields may change at any time.

## 58.10 TSEMbuf

```
TSEMbuf = record
  sem_num : cushort;
```

```

sem_op : cshort;
sem_flg
: cshort;
end

```

The TSEMbuf record is used in the semop (905) call, and is used to specify which operations you want to do.

### 58.11 TSEMid\_ds

```

TSEMid_ds = record
  sem_perm : TIPC_Perm;
  sem_base : PSEM;
  sem_nsems
: cushort;
  semotime : time_t;
  sem_pad1 : cint;
  sem_ctime
: time_t;
  sem_pad2 : cint;
  sem_pad3 : Array[0..3] of cint;
end

```

Structure returned by the semctl (899) call, contains all data of a semaphore

### 58.12 TSEMinfo

```

TSEMinfo = record
  semmap : cint;
  semmni : cint;
  semmns : cint
;
  semmnu : cint;
  semmsl : cint;
  semopm : cint;
  semume : cint
;
  semusz : cint;
  semvmx : cint;
  semaem : cint;
end

```

Internal semaphore system record. Do not use.

### 58.13 TSHMinfo

```

TSHMinfo = record
  shmmax : cint;

```



```
shmmin : cint;  
shmmni : cint  
;  
shmseg : cint;  
shmall : cint;  
end
```

Record used by the shared memory system, Do not use directly.

## Chapter 59

# Reference for unit 'keyboard'

### 59.1 Overview

The Keyboard unit implements a keyboard access layer which is system independent. It can be used to poll the keyboard state and wait for certain events. Waiting for a keyboard event can be done with the `GetKeyEvent` (926) function, which will return a driver-dependent key event. This key event can be translated to a interpretable event by the `TranslateKeyEvent` (934) function. The result of this function can be used in the other event examining functions.

A custom keyboard driver can be installed using the `SetKeyboardDriver` (933) function. The current keyboard driver can be retrieved using the `GetKeyboardDriver` (925) function. The last section of this chapter demonstrates how to make a keyboard driver.

### 59.2 Unix specific notes

On Unix, applications run on a "terminal", and the application writes to the screen and reads from the keyboard by communicating with the terminal. Unix keyboard handling is mostly backward compatible with the DEC VT100 and VT220 terminals from tens of years ago. The VT100 and VT220 had very different keyboards than today's PC's and this is where the problems start. To make it worse the protocol of both terminals has not been very well designed.

Because of this, the keyboard unit on Unix operating systems does a best effort to provide keyboard functionality. An implementation with full keyboard facilities like on other operating systems is not possible.

The exception is the Linux kernel. The terminal emulation of the Linux kernel is from a PC keyboard viewpoint hopeless as well, but unlike other terminal emulators it is configurable. On the Linux console, the Free Pascal keyboard unit tries to implement full functionality.

Users of applications using the keyboard unit should expect the following:

- Full functionality on the Linux console. It must be the bare console, SSH into another machine will kill the full functionality.
- Limited functionality otherwise.

Notes about Linux full functionality:

- The keyboard is reprogrammed. If the keyboard is for whatever reason not restored in its original state, please load your keymap to reinitialize it.

- Alt+function keys generate keycodes for those keys. To switch virtual consoles, use ctrl+alt+function key.
- Unlike what you're used to with other Unix software, escape works as you intuitively expect, it generates the keycode for an escape key **without a delay**.

The limited functionality does include these quirks:

- Escape must be pressed two times before it has effect.
- On the Linux console, when the users runs the program by logging into another machine:
  - Shift+F1 and Shift+F12 will generate keycodes for F11 and F12.
  - Shift+arrow keys, shift+ins, shift+del, shift+home, shift+end do not work. The same is true about the control and alt combinations.
  - Alt+function keys will switch virtual consoles instead of generating the right key sequences.
  - Ctrl+function keys will generate the keycodes for the function keys without ctrl
- In Xterm:
  - Shift+insert pastes the x clipboard, no keycode will be generated.
- In Konsole:
  - Shift+insert pastes the x clipboard, no keycode will be generated.
  - Shift+arrow keys doesn't work, nor does ctrl+arrow keys

If you have a non-standard terminal, some keys may not work at all. When in limited functionality mode, the user can work around using an escape prefix:

- Esc+1 = F1, Esc+2 = F2.
- Esc before another key is equal to alt+key.

In such cases, if the terminal does output an escape sequence for those keys, please submit a bug report so we can add them.

## 59.3 Writing a keyboard driver

Writing a keyboard driver means that hooks must be created for most of the keyboard unit functions. The `TKeyboardDriver` record contains a field for each of the possible hooks:

```
TKeyboardDriver = Record
  InitDriver : Procedure;
  DoneDriver : Procedure;
  GetKeyEvent : Function : TKeyEvent;
  PollKeyEvent : Function : TKeyEvent;
  GetShiftState : Function : Byte;
  TranslateKeyEvent : Function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent): TKeyEvent;
  TranslateKeyEventUnicode: Function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent): TKeyEvent;
end;
```

The meaning of these hooks is explained below:

**InitDriver** Called to initialize and enable the driver. Guaranteed to be called only once. This should initialize all needed things for the driver.

**DoneDriver** Called to disable and clean up the driver. Guaranteed to be called after a call to `initDriver`. This should clean up all things initialized by `InitDriver`.

**GetKeyEvent** Called by `GetKeyEvent` (926). Must wait for and return the next key event. It should NOT store keys.

**PollKeyEvent** Called by `PollKeyEvent` (931). It must return the next key event if there is one. Should not store keys.

**GetShiftState** Called by `PollShiftStateEvent` (931). Must return the current shift state.

**TranslateKeyEvent** Should translate a raw key event to a correct key event, i.e. should fill in the `shiftstate` and convert function key scancodes to function key keycodes. If the `TranslateKeyEvent` is not filled in, a default translation function will be called which converts the known scancodes from the tables in the previous section to a correct keyevent.

**TranslateKeyEventUnicode** Should translate a key event to a UNICODE key representation.

Strictly speaking, only the `GetKeyEvent` and `PollKeyEvent` hooks must be implemented for the driver to function correctly.

The example unit demonstrates how a keyboard driver can be installed. It takes the installed driver, and hooks into the `GetKeyEvent` function to register and log the key events in a file. This driver can work on top of any other driver, as long as it is inserted in the `uses` clause *after* the real driver unit, and the real driver unit should set the driver record in its initialization section.

Note that with a simple extension of this unit could be used to make a driver that is capable of recording and storing a set of keyboard strokes, and replaying them at a later time, so a 'keyboard macro' capable driver. This driver could sit on top of any other driver.

**Listing:** `./kbdex/logkeys.pp`

---

```
unit logkeys ;

interface

Procedure StartKeyLogging ;
Procedure StopKeyLogging ;
Function IsKeyLogging : Boolean ;
Procedure SetKeyLogFileName (FileName : String) ;

implementation

uses sysutils , keyboard ;

var
    NewKeyBoardDriver ,
    OldKeyBoardDriver : TKeyboardDriver ;
    Active , Logging : Boolean ;
    LogFileName : String ;
    KeyLog : Text ;

Function TimeStamp : String ;
```

```

begin
    TimeStamp:=FormatDateTime( 'hh:nn:ss' ,Time ());
end;

Procedure StartKeyLogging;

begin
    Logging:=True;
    WriteIn(KeyLog,'Start logging keystrokes at: ',TimeStamp);
end;

Procedure StopKeyLogging;

begin
    WriteIn(KeyLog,'Stop logging keystrokes at: ',TimeStamp);
    Logging:=False;
end;

Function IsKeyLogging : Boolean;

begin
    IsKeyLogging:=Logging;
end;

Function LogGetKeyEvent : TKeyEvent;

Var
    K : TKeyEvent;

begin
    K:=OldkeyboardDriver.GetKeyEvent();
    If Logging then
        begin
            Write (KeyLog,TimeStamp,' : Key event: ');
            WriteIn (KeyLog,KeyEventToString(TranslateKeyEvent(K)));
            end;
        LogGetKeyEvent:=K;
    end;

Procedure LogInitKeyBoard;

begin
    OldKeyBoardDriver.InitDriver();
    Assign(KeyLog,logFileName);
    Rewrite(KeyLog);
    Active:=True;
    StartKeyLogging;
end;

Procedure LogDoneKeyBoard;

begin
    StopKeyLogging;
    Close(KeyLog);
    Active:=False;
    OldKeyBoardDriver.DoneDriver();
end;

```

---

```
Procedure SetKeyLogFileName(FileName : String);
```

```
begin
  If Not Active then
    LogFileName:=FileName;
end;
```

**Initialization**

```
  GetKeyBoardDriver(OldKeyBoardDriver);
  NewKeyBoardDriver:=OldKeyBoardDriver;
  NewKeyBoardDriver.GetKeyEvent:=@LogGetKeyEvent;
  NewKeyBoardDriver.InitDriver:=@LogInitKeyboard;
  NewKeyBoardDriver.DoneDriver:=@LogDoneKeyboard;
  LogFileName:= 'keyboard.log';
  Logging:=False;
  SetKeyboardDriver(NewKeyBoardDriver);
end.
```

---

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex9.pp

---

```
program example9;

{ This program demonstrates the logkeys unit }

uses keyboard,logkeys;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  Writeln('Press keys, press "q" to end, "s" toggles logging. ');
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    Writeln('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
    if GetKeyEventChar(K)='s' then
      if IsKeyLogging then
        StopKeyLogging
      else
        StartKeyLogging;
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.
```

---

## 59.4 Keyboard scan codes

Special physical keys are encoded with the DOS scan codes for these keys in the second byte of the TKeyEvent (924) type. A complete list of scan codes can be found in the below table. This is the list of keys that is used by the default key event translation mechanism. When writing a keyboard driver, either these constants should be returned by the various key event functions, or the TranslateKeyEvent hook should be implemented by the driver.

Table 59.1: Key Scancodes

Code	Key	Code	Key	Code	Key
00	NoKey	3D	F3	70	ALT-F9
01	ALT-Esc	3E	F4	71	ALT-F10
02	ALT-Space	3F	F5	72	CTRL-PrtSc
04	CTRL-Ins	40	F6	73	CTRL-Left
05	SHIFT-Ins	41	F7	74	CTRL-Right
06	CTRL-Del	42	F8	75	CTRL-end
07	SHIFT-Del	43	F9	76	CTRL-PgDn
08	ALT-Back	44	F10	77	CTRL-Home
09	ALT-SHIFT-Back	47	Home	78	ALT-1
0F	SHIFT-Tab	48	Up	79	ALT-2
10	ALT-Q	49	PgUp	7A	ALT-3
11	ALT-W	4B	Left	7B	ALT-4
12	ALT-E	4C	Center	7C	ALT-5
13	ALT-R	4D	Right	7D	ALT-6
14	ALT-T	4E	ALT-GrayPlus	7E	ALT-7
15	ALT-Y	4F	end	7F	ALT-8
16	ALT-U	50	Down	80	ALT-9
17	ALT-I	51	PgDn	81	ALT-0
18	ALT-O	52	Ins	82	ALT-Minus
19	ALT-P	53	Del	83	ALT-Equal
1A	ALT-LftBrack	54	SHIFT-F1	84	CTRL-PgUp
1B	ALT-RgtBrack	55	SHIFT-F2	85	F11
1E	ALT-A	56	SHIFT-F3	86	F12
1F	ALT-S	57	SHIFT-F4	87	SHIFT-F11
20	ALT-D	58	SHIFT-F5	88	SHIFT-F12
21	ALT-F	59	SHIFT-F6	89	CTRL-F11
22	ALT-G	5A	SHIFT-F7	8A	CTRL-F12
23	ALT-H	5B	SHIFT-F8	8B	ALT-F11
24	ALT-J	5C	SHIFT-F9	8C	ALT-F12
25	ALT-K	5D	SHIFT-F10	8D	CTRL-Up
26	ALT-L	5E	CTRL-F1	8E	CTRL-Minus
27	ALT-SemiCol	5F	CTRL-F2	8F	CTRL-Center
28	ALT-Quote	60	CTRL-F3	90	CTRL-GreyPlus
29	ALT-OpQuote	61	CTRL-F4	91	CTRL-Down
2B	ALT-BkSlash	62	CTRL-F5	94	CTRL-Tab
2C	ALT-Z	63	CTRL-F6	97	ALT-Home
2D	ALT-X	64	CTRL-F7	98	ALT-Up
2E	ALT-C	65	CTRL-F8	99	ALT-PgUp
2F	ALT-V	66	CTRL-F9	9B	ALT-Left
30	ALT-B	67	CTRL-F10	9D	ALT-Right
31	ALT-N	68	ALT-F1	9F	ALT-end
32	ALT-M	69	ALT-F2	A0	ALT-Down
33	ALT-Comma	6A	ALT-F3	A1	ALT-PgDn
34	ALT-Period	6B	ALT-F4	A2	ALT-Ins
35	ALT-Slash	6C	ALT-F5	A3	ALT-Del
37	ALT-GreyAst	6D	ALT-F6	A5	ALT-Tab
3B	F1	6E	ALT-F7		
3C	F2	6F	ALT-F8		

A list of scan codes for special keys and combinations with the SHIFT, ALT and CTRL keys can be found in the following table: They are for quick reference only.

Table 59.2: Special keys scan codes

Key	Code	SHIFT-Key	CTRL-Key	Alt-Key
NoKey	00			
F1	3B	54	5E	68
F2	3C	55	5F	69
F3	3D	56	60	6A
F4	3E	57	61	6B
F5	3F	58	62	6C
F6	40	59	63	6D
F7	41	5A	64	6E
F8	42	5B	65	6F
F9	43	5C	66	70
F10	44	5D	67	71
F11	85	87	89	8B
F12	86	88	8A	8C
Home	47		77	97
Up	48		8D	98
PgUp	49		84	99
Left	4B		73	9B
Center	4C		8F	
Right	4D		74	9D
end	4F		75	9F
Down	50		91	A0
PgDn	51		76	A1
Ins	52	05	04	A2
Del	53	07	06	A3
Tab	8	0F	94	A5
GreyPlus			90	4E

## 59.5 Constants, types and variables

### 59.5.1 Constants

`AltPrefix : Byte = 0`

Keycode for alternate prefix key for Alt key. Unix Only

`CtrlPrefix : Byte = 0`

Keycode for alternate prefix key for Ctrl key. Unix only

`errKbdBase = 1010`

Base of keyboard routine error reporting constants.

`errKbdInitError = errKbdBase + 0`



Failed to initialize keyboard driver

```
errKbdNotImplemented = errKbdBase + 1
```

Keyboard driver not implemented.

```
kbAlt = 8
```

Alt key modifier

```
kbASCII = $00
```

ASCII code key event

```
kbCtrl = 4
```

Control key modifier

```
kbdApps = $FF17
```

Application key (popup-menu) pressed.

```
kbdDelete = $FF2A
```

Delete key pressed

```
kbdDown = $FF27
```

Arrow down key pressed

```
kbdEnd = $FF26
```

End key pressed

```
kbdF1 = $FF01
```

F1 function key pressed.

```
kbdF10 = $FF0A
```

F10 function key pressed.

```
kbdF11 = $FF0B
```

F12 function key pressed.

```
kbdF12 = $FF0C
```

F12 function key pressed.

```
kbdF13 = $FF0D
```

F13 function key pressed.

kbdF14 = \$FF0E

F14 function key pressed.

kbdF15 = \$FF0F

F15 function key pressed.

kbdF16 = \$FF10

F16 function key pressed.

kbdF17 = \$FF11

F17 function key pressed.

kbdF18 = \$FF12

F18 function key pressed.

kbdF19 = \$FF13

F19 function key pressed.

kbdF2 = \$FF02

F2 function key pressed.

kbdF20 = \$FF14

F20 function key pressed.

kbdF3 = \$FF03

F3 function key pressed.

kbdF4 = \$FF04

F4 function key pressed.

kbdF5 = \$FF05

F5 function key pressed.

kbdF6 = \$FF06

F6 function key pressed.

kbdF7 = \$FF07

F7 function key pressed.

kbdF8 = \$FF08

F8 function key pressed.

kbdF9 = \$FF09

F9 function key pressed.

kbdHome = \$FF20

Home key pressed

kbdInsert = \$FF29

Insert key pressed

kbdLeft = \$FF23

Arrow left key pressed

kbdLWin = \$FF15

Left windows key pressed.

kbdMiddle = \$FF24

Middle key pad key pressed (numerical 5)

kbdPgDn = \$FF28

Page down key pressed

kbdPgUp = \$FF22

Page Up key pressed

kbdRight = \$FF25

Arrow right key pressed

kbdRWin = \$FF16

Right windows key pressed.

kbdUp = \$FF21

Arrow up key pressed

kbFnKey = \$02

function key pressed.

`kbLeftShift = 1`

Left shift key modifier

`kbPhys = $03`

Physical key code event

`kbReleased = $04`

Key release event (not implemented in FPC)

`kbRightShift = 2`

Right shift key modifier

`kbShift = kbLeftShift or kbRightShift`

Shift key modifier

`kbUnicode = $01`

Unicode code key event

`SAnd : string = 'AND'`

This constant is used as the 'And' word in key descriptions. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`ShiftPrefix : Byte = 0`

Keycode for alternate prefix key for Shift key. Unix Only

`SKeyPad : Array[0..($FF2F-kbdHome)] of string = ('Home', 'Up', 'PgUp',  
, 'Left', 'Middle', 'Right', 'End', 'Down', 'PgDn', 'Insert', 'Delete',  
, '', '', '', '', '')`

This constant describes all keypad keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SLeftRight : Array[1..2] of string = ('LEFT', 'RIGHT')`

This constant contains strings to describe left and right keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SScanCode : string = 'Key with scancode '`

This constant contains a string to denote a scancode key event. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SShift : Array[1..3] of string = ('SHIFT', 'CTRL', 'ALT')`

This constant describes the various modifier keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SUnicodeChar : string = 'Unicode character '`

This constant contains a string to denote a Unicode key event. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SUnknownFunctionKey : string = 'Unknown function key : '`

This constant contains a string to denote that an unknown function key was found. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

## 59.5.2 Types

`PTreeElement = ^TTreeElement`

Pointer to `TTreeElement` (936) record

`TKeyEvent = Cardinal`

The `TKeyEvent` type is the base type for all keyboard events.

The key stroke is encoded in the 4 bytes of the `TKeyEvent` type. The various fields of the key stroke encoding can be obtained by typecasting the `TKeyEvent` type to the `TKeyRecord` (935) type.

`Tprocedure = procedure`

Procedure prototype

## 59.6 Procedures and functions

### 59.6.1 DoneKeyboard

Synopsis: Deactivate keyboard driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneKeyboard`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneKeyboard` de-initializes the keyboard interface if the keyboard driver is active. If the keyboard driver is not active, the function does nothing.

This will cause the keyboard driver to clear up any allocated memory, or restores the console or terminal the program was running in to its initial state before the call to `InitKeyBoard` (929). This function should be called on program exit. Failing to do so may leave the terminal or console window in an unusable state. Its exact action depends on the platform on which the program is running.

On Unix the default keyboard driver restores the line ending of `system.output` to #10.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitKeyBoard` (929)

### 59.6.2 FunctionKeyName

**Synopsis:** Return string representation of a function key code.

**Declaration:** `function FunctionKeyName(KeyCode: Word) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FunctionKeyName` returns a string representation of the function key with code `KeyCode`. This can be an actual function key, or one of the cursor movement keys.

**Errors:** In case `KeyCode` does not contain a function code, the `SUnknownFunctionKey` string is returned, appended with the `KeyCode`.

See also: `ShiftStateToString` (933), `KeyEventToString` (930)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FunctionKeyName function. }*

**Uses** keyboard;

**Var**

    K : TKeyEvent;

**begin**

    InitKeyboard;

    WriteLn('Press function keys, press "q" to end.');

    Repeat

        K:=GetKeyEvent;

        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);

        If IsFunctionKey(k) then

            begin

                Write('Got function key : ');

                WriteLn(FunctionKeyName(TkeyRecord(K).KeyCode));

            end;

    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');

    DoneKeyboard;

**end.**

---

### 59.6.3 GetKeyboardDriver

**Synopsis:** Return the current keyboard driver record.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetKeyboardDriver(var Driver: TKeyboardDriver)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetKeyboardDriver` returns in `Driver` the currently active keyboard driver. This function can be used to enhance an existing keyboarddriver.

For more information on getting and setting the keyboard driver `kbddriver` (914).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `SetKeyboardDriver` (933)

### 59.6.4 GetKeyEvent

Synopsis: Get the next raw key event, wait if needed.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEvent` returns the last keyevent if it is available, or waits for one if none is available. A non-blocking version is available in `PollKeyEvent` (931).

The returned key is encoded as a `TKeyEvent` type variable, and is normally the physical key scan code, (the scan code is driver dependent) which can be translated with one of the translation functions `TranslateKeyEvent` (934) or `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` (934). See the types section for a description of how the key is described.

Errors: If no key became available (e.g. when the driver does not support it), 0 is returned.

See also: `PutKeyEvent` (932), `PollKeyEvent` (931), `TranslateKeyEvent` (934), `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` (934)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex1.pp`

---

```

program example1;

{ This program demonstrates the GetKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  Writeln('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    Write('Got key event with ');
    Case GetKeyEventFlags(K) of
      kbASCII      : Writeln('ASCII key');
      kbUnicode    : Writeln('Unicode key');
      kbFnKey      : Writeln('Function key');
      kbPhys       : Writeln('Physical key');
      kbReleased   : Writeln('Released key event');
    end;
    Writeln('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
  Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.
```

---

### 59.6.5 GetKeyEventChar

Synopsis: Get the character key part of a key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventChar(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Char`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetKeyEventChar` returns the charcode part of the given `KeyEvent`, if it contains a translated character key keycode. The charcode is simply the ascii code of the character key that was pressed.

It returns the null character if the key was not a character key, but e.g. a function key.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` (926)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetKeyEventUnicode` (929), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (928), `GetKeyEventFlags` (928), `GetKeyEventCode` (927), `GetKeyEvent` (926)

### 59.6.6 `GetKeyEventCode`

**Synopsis:** Translate function key part of a key event code.

**Declaration:** `function GetKeyEventCode (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetKeyEventCode` returns the translated function keycode part of the given `KeyEvent`, if it contains a translated function key.

If the key pressed was not a function key, the null character is returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetKeyEventUnicode` (929), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (928), `GetKeyEventFlags` (928), `GetKeyEventChar` (926), `GetKeyEvent` (926)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** Example2;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetKeyEventCode function. }*

**Uses** keyboard;

**Var**

K : TKeyEvent;

**begin**

InitKeyBoard;

**WriteLn** ('Press function keys, or press "q" to end.');

**Repeat**

K:=GetKeyEvent;

K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);

**If** (GetKeyEventFlags(K)<>KbfnKey) **then**

**WriteLn** ('Not a function key')

**else**

**begin**

**Write** ('Got key ',GetKeyEventCode(K));

**WriteLn** ('') : ',KeyEventToString(K));

**end**;

**Until** (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q');

DoneKeyboard;

**end**.

---



### 59.6.7 GetKeyEventFlags

Synopsis: Extract the flags from a key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventFlags (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventFlags` returns the flags part of the given `KeyEvent`.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` (926)

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUnicode` (929), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (928), `GetKeyEventCode` (927), `GetKeyEventChar` (926), `GetKeyEvent` (926)

### 59.6.8 GetKeyEventShiftState

Synopsis: Return the current state of the shift keys.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventShiftState (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventShiftState` returns the shift-state values of the given `KeyEvent`. This can be used to detect which of the modifier keys `Shift`, `Alt` or `Ctrl` were pressed. If none were pressed, zero is returned.

Note that this function does not always return expected results; In a UNIX X-Term, the modifier keys do not always work.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUnicode` (929), `GetKeyEventFlags` (928), `GetKeyEventCode` (927), `GetKeyEventChar` (926), `GetKeyEvent` (926)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetKeyEventShiftState function. }*

**Uses** `keyboard`;

**Var**

`K : TKeyEvent;`  
`S : Byte;`

**begin**

`InitKeyBoard;`  
`Write('Press keys combined with CTRL/SHIFT/ALT');`  
`WriteLn(' , or press "q" to end.');`  
**Repeat**  
  `K:=GetKeyEvent;`  
  `K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);`  
  `S:=GetKeyEventShiftState(K);`  
  **If** `(S=0)` **then**  
    `WriteLn('No special keys pressed')`  
  **else**  
    **begin**

---

```

    Writeln( 'Detected special keys : ', ShiftStateToString(K, False));
    Writeln( 'Got key : ', KeyEventToString(K));
    end;
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K) = 'q');
    DoneKeyboard;
end.

```

---

### 59.6.9 GetKeyEventUnicode

Synopsis: Return the Unicode key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventUnicode(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventUnicode` returns the Unicode part of the given `KeyEvent` if it contains a translated Unicode character.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventShiftState` (928), `GetKeyEventFlags` (928), `GetKeyEventCode` (927), `GetKeyEventChar` (926), `GetKeyEvent` (926)

### 59.6.10 InitKeyboard

Synopsis: Initialize the keyboard driver.

Declaration: `procedure InitKeyboard`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitKeyboard` initializes the keyboard driver. If the driver is already active, it does nothing. When the driver is initialized, it will do everything necessary to ensure the functioning of the keyboard, including allocating memory, initializing the terminal etc.

This function should be called once, before using any of the keyboard functions. When it is called, the `DoneKeyboard` (924) function should also be called before exiting the program or changing the keyboard driver with `SetKeyboardDriver` (933).

On Unix, the default keyboard driver sets terminal in raw mode. In raw mode the line feed behaves as an actual linefeed, i.e. the cursor is moved down one line. while the x coordinate does not change. To compensate, the default keyboard sets driver line ending of `system.output` to #13#10.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `DoneKeyboard` (924), `SetKeyboardDriver` (933)

### 59.6.11 IsFunctionKey

Synopsis: Check whether a given event is a function key event.

Declaration: `function IsFunctionKey(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsFunctionKey` returns `True` if the given key event in `KeyEvent` was a function key or not.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetKeyEvent \(926\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex7.pp

---

```

program example1;

{ This program demonstrates the GetKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    If IsFunctionKey(K) then
      WriteLn('Got function key : ',KeyEventToString(K))
    else
      WriteLn('not a function key. ');
  Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.

```

---

### 59.6.12 KeyEventToString

**Synopsis:** Return a string describing the key event.

**Declaration:** `function KeyEventToString(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `KeyEventToString` translates the key event in `KeyEvent` to a human-readable description of the pressed key. It will use the constants described in the constants section to do so.

For an example, see most other functions.

**Errors:** If an unknown key is passed, the scancode is returned, prefixed with the `SScanCode` string.

See also: [FunctionKeyName \(925\)](#), [ShiftStateToString \(933\)](#)

### 59.6.13 KeyPressed

**Synopsis:** Check event queue for key press

**Declaration:** `function KeyPressed : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `KeyPressed` checks the keyboard event queue to see whether a key event is present, and returns `True` if a key event is available. This function simply calls [PollKeyEvent \(931\)](#) and checks for a valid result.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [PollKeyEvent \(931\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(926\)](#)

### 59.6.14 PollKeyEvent

Synopsis: Get next key event, but does not wait.

Declaration: `function PollKeyEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollKeyEvent` checks whether a key event is available, and returns it if one is found. If no event is pending, it returns 0.

Note that this does not remove the key from the pending keys. The key should still be retrieved from the pending key events list with the `GetKeyEvent` (926) function.

Errors: None.

See also: `PutKeyEvent` (932), `GetKeyEvent` (926)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex4.pp`

---

```

program example4;

{ This program demonstrates the PollKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  Writeln('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=PollKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
        writeln;
        Writeln('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
      end
    else
      write(' ');
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.
```

---

### 59.6.15 PollShiftStateEvent

Synopsis: Check current shift state.

Declaration: `function PollShiftStateEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollShiftStateEvent` returns the current shiftstate in a keyevent. This will return 0 if there is no key event pending.

Errors: None.

See also: [PollKeyEvent \(931\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(926\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex6.pp

---

```

program example6;

{ This program demonstrates the PollShiftStateEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=PollKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        K:=PollShiftStateEvent;
        WriteLn('Got shift state : ', ShiftStateToString(K, False));
        // Consume the key.
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
      end
    { else
      write ( '. ' );
    }
    Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
    DoneKeyBoard;
  end.
```

---

### 59.6.16 PutKeyEvent

**Synopsis:** Put a key event in the event queue.

**Declaration:** `procedure PutKeyEvent (KeyEvent : TKeyEvent)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PutKeyEvent` adds the given `KeyEvent` to the input queue. Please note that depending on the implementation this can hold only one value, i.e. when calling `PutKeyEvent` multiple times, only the last pushed key will be remembered.

**Errors:** None

See also: [PollKeyEvent \(931\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(926\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex5.pp

---

```

program example5;

{ This program demonstrates the PutKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K, k2 : TKeyEvent;
```

---

---

```

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys, press "q" to end. ');
  K2:=0;
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        if (k2 mod 2)=0 then
          K2:=K+1
        else
          K2:=0;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
        WriteLn('Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
        if (K2<>0) then
          begin
            PutKeyEvent(k2);
            K2:=TranslateKeyEvent(K2);
            WriteLn('Put key : ',KeyEventToString(K2))
          end
        end
      until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
    DoneKeyBoard;
  end.

```

---

### 59.6.17 SetKeyboardDriver

Synopsis: Set a new keyboard driver.

Declaration: `function SetKeyboardDriver(const Driver: TKeyboardDriver) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetKeyBoardDriver` sets the keyboard driver to `Driver`, if the current keyboard driver is not yet initialized. If the current keyboard driver is initialized, then `SetKeyboardDriver` does nothing. Before setting the driver, the currently active driver should be disabled with a call to `DoneKeyboard` (924).

The function returns `True` if the driver was set, `False` if not.

For more information on setting the keyboard driver, see `kbddriver` (914).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyboardDriver` (925), `DoneKeyboard` (924)

### 59.6.18 ShiftStateToString

Synopsis: Return description of key event shift state

Declaration: `function ShiftStateToString(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent; UseLeftRight: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ShiftStateToString` returns a string description of the shift state of the key event `KeyEvent`. This can be an empty string.

The shift state is described using the strings in the `SShift` constant.

For an example, see `PollShiftStateEvent` (931).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `FunctionKeyName` (925), `KeyEventToString` (930)

### 59.6.19 TranslateKeyEvent

**Synopsis:** Translate raw event to ascii key event

**Declaration:** `function TranslateKeyEvent (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TranslateKeyEvent` performs ASCII translation of the `KeyEvent`. It translates a physical key to a function key if the key is a function key, and translates the physical key to the ordinal of the ascii character if there is an equivalent character key.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` (926)

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` (934)

### 59.6.20 TranslateKeyEventUnicode

**Synopsis:** Translate raw event to UNICODE key event

**Declaration:** `function TranslateKeyEventUnicode (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` performs Unicode translation of the `KeyEvent`. It is not yet implemented for all platforms.

**Errors:** If the function is not yet implemented, then the `ErrorCode` of the `system` unit will be set to `errKbdNotImplemented`

See also: `TranslateKeyEvent` (934)

## 59.7 TKeyboardDriver

```
TKeyboardDriver = record
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver :
  procedure;
  GetKeyEvent : function : TKeyEvent;
  PollKeyEvent
  : function : TKeyEvent;
  GetShiftState : function : Byte;
  TranslateKeyEvent
  : function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent;
```

```

    TranslateKeyEventUnicode
    : function(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent;
end

```

The `TKeyboardDriver` record can be used to install a custom keyboard driver with the `SetKeyboardDriver` (933) function.

The various fields correspond to the different functions of the keyboard unit interface. For more information about this record see `kbddriver` (914)

## 59.8 TKeyEvent

```

TKeyEvent = packed record
    Flags : Byte;
    ShiftState : Byte;
    KeyCode : Word;
end

```

The structure of a `TKeyEvent` structure is explained in the following table:

Table 59.3: Structure of TKeyEvent

Field	Meaning
KeyCode	Depending on <code>flags</code> either the physical representation of a key (under DOS scancode, ASCII code pair), or the
ShiftState	Shift-state when this key was pressed (or shortly after)
Flags	Determine how to interpret <code>KeyCode</code>

The shift-state can be checked using the various shift-state constants, and the flags in the last byte can be checked using one of the `kbASCII`, `kbUnicode`, `kbFnKey`, `kbPhys`, `kbReleased` constants.

If there are two keys returning the same char-code, there's no way to find out which one was pressed (Gray+ and Simple+). If it needs to be known which was pressed, the untranslated keycodes must be used, but these are system dependent. System dependent constants may be defined to cover those, with possibly having the same name (but different value).

## 59.9 TTreeNode

```

TTreeNode = record
    Next : PTreeNode;
    Parent : PTreeNode
    ;
    Child : PTreeNode;
    CanBeTerminal : Boolean;
    char : Byte
    ;
    ScanValue : Byte;
    CharValue : Byte;
    SpecialHandler : Tprocedure
    ;
end

```



`TTreeElement` is used to describe key scancode sequences, and is used to handle special key combinations in `AddSpecialSequence` (??) on UNIX platforms. There should be no need to handle records of this type.

# Chapter 60

## Reference for unit 'lineinfo'

### 60.1 Overview

The `lineinfo` provides a routine that reads the debug information of an executable (if any exists) and returns source code information about this address. It works with `Stabs` debug information. Note that this unit is not thread-safe, and that its behaviour is undefined if multiple threads try to write a backtrace at the same time.

For DWARF debug information, the `Infodwrf` ([965](#)) unit must be used.

### 60.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 60.2.1 Types

```
CodePointer = Pointer
```

`CodePointer` is added for 16-bit dos compatibility.

#### 60.2.2 Variables

```
AllowReuseOfLineInfoData : Boolean = True
```

`AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` can be set to `True` to keep the last opened file open. When regularly creating backtraces (e.g. in a program log), this will significantly speed up operations.

### 60.3 Procedures and functions

#### 60.3.1 CloseStabs

Synopsis: Close stabs info file descriptor

Declaration: `procedure CloseStabs`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `CloseStabs` will close the file descriptor that was used to read STABS debug information. This is useful if `AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` ([937](#)) is used to cache STABS information.

Errors: None.

See also: [AllowReuseOfLineInfoData \(937\)](#)

### 60.3.2 GetLineInfo

Synopsis: Return source line information about an address.

Declaration: `function GetLineInfo(addr: ptruint; var func: string;  
var source: string; var line: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLineInfo` returns source line information about the address `addr`. It searches this information in the stabs debugging information found in the binary: If the file was compiled without debug information, nothing will be returned. Upon successful retrieval of the debug information, `True` is returned, and the `func` parameter is filled with the name of the function in which the address is located. The `source` parameter contains the name of the file in which the function was implemented, and `line` contains the line number in the source file for `addr`.

Errors: If no debug information is found, `False` is returned.

### 60.3.3 StabBackTraceStr

Synopsis: Get a backtrace from an address

Declaration: `function StabBackTraceStr(addr: CodePointer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `StabBackTraceStr` returns a backtrace from a memory address `Addr`.

This is the actual callback for the backtrace handler `System.BackTraceStrFunc (937)`.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetLineInfo \(938\)](#)

# Chapter 61

## Reference for unit 'Linux'

### 61.1 Used units

Table 61.1: Used units by unit 'Linux'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">137</a>
unixtype	<a href="#">2057</a>

### 61.2 Overview

The linux unit contains Linux specific operating system calls.

The platform independent functionality of the FPC 1.0.X version of the linux unit has been split out over the UNIX ([2019](#)), baseunix ([137](#)) and unixutil ([2073](#)) units.

The X86-specific parts have been moved to the X86 ([2153](#)) unit.

### 61.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 61.3.1 Constants

`CAP_AUDIT_CONTROL = 30`

Allow manipulation of kernel auditing features

`CAP_AUDIT_WRITE = 29`

Allow writing to kernel audit log

`CAP_CHOWN = 0`

Perform chown operation

`CAP_DAC_OVERRIDE = 1`

**Bypass file operation (rwx) checks**

`CAP_DAC_READ_SEARCH = 2`

**Bypass file read-only operation checks**

`CAP_FOWNER = 3`

**Bypass owner ID checks**

`CAP_FSETID = 4`

**Do not clear SUID/GUID bits on modified files**

`CAP_FS_MASK = 0xf`

?

`CAP_IPC_LOCK = 14`

**Allow memory locking calls**

`CAP_IPC_OWNER = 15`

**Bypass permission checks on IPC operations**

`CAP_KILL = 5`

**Bypass permission checks for sending signals**

`CAP_LEASE = 28`

**Allow file leases**

`CAP_LINUX_IMMUTABLE = 9`

**Allow setting ext2 file attributes**

`CAP_MKNOD = 27`

**Allow creation of special files through mknod calls**

`CAP_NET_ADMIN = 12`

**Allow network operations (e.g. setting socket options)**

`CAP_NET_BIND_SERVICE = 10`

**Allow binding to ports less than 1024**

`CAP_NET_BROADCAST = 11`

Allow socket broadcast operations

`CAP_NET_RAW = 13`

Allow use of RAW and PACKET sockets

`CAP_SETGID = 6`

Allow GID manipulations

`CAP_SETPCAP = 8`

Allow to set other process' capabilities

`CAP_SETUID = 7`

Allow process ID manipulations

`CAP_SYS_ADMIN = 21`

Allow various system administration calls

`CAP_SYS_BOOT = 22`

Allow reboot calls

`CAP_SYS_CHROOT = 18`

Allow chroot calls.

`CAP_SYS_MODULE = 16`

Allow loading/unloading of kernel modules

`CAP_SYS_NICE = 23`

Allowing raising process and thread priorities

`CAP_SYS_PACCT = 20`

Allow acct calls

`CAP_SYS_PTRACE = 19`

Allow ptrace calls

`CAP_SYS_RAWIO = 17`

Allow raw I/O port operations

`CAP_SYS_RESOURCE = 24`

Allow use of special resources or raising of resource limits

`CAP_SYS_TIME = 25`

Allow system or real-time clock modification

`CAP_SYS_TTY_CONFIG = 26`

Allow vhangup calls

`CLOCKS_MASK = CLOCK_REALTIME or CLOCK_MONOTONIC`

Mask for supported clocks

`CLOCKS_MONO = CLOCK_MONOTONIC`

Monotonic clocks mask

`CLOCK_MONOTONIC = 1`

Monotonic system time since some undetermined start point. Can change if time is set.

`CLOCK_MONOTONIC_COARSE = 6`

Less precise (but faster) version of `CLOCK_MONOTONIC`

`CLOCK_MONOTONIC_RAW = 4`

Like `CLOCK_MONOTONIC`, not subject to NTP adjustments

`CLOCK_PROCESS_CPUTIME_ID = 2`

Process-specific high-resolution timer from the CPU.

`CLOCK_REALTIME = 0`

System wide real-time clock. Can only be set by root.

`CLOCK_REALTIME_COARSE = 5`

Less precise (but faster) version of `CLOCK_REALTIME`

`CLOCK_SGI_CYCLE = 10`

High resolution timer

`CLOCK_THREAD_CPUTIME_ID = 3`

Thread-specific high-resolution timer from the CPU.

`CLONE_CHILD_CLEARTID = $00200000`

Clone option: Erase child thread ID in child memory space when child exits.

`CLONE_CHILD_SETTID = $01000000`

Clone option: Store child thread ID in child memory.

`CLONE_DETACHED = $00400000`

Clone option: Start clone detached.

`CLONE_FILES = $00000400`

Clone (956) option: open files shared between processes

`CLONE_FS = $00000200`

Clone (956) option: fs info shared between processes

`CLONE_NEWNS = $00020000`

Clone options: Start child in new (file system) namespace.

`CLONE_PARENT = $00008000`

Clone options: Set child parent to parent of calling process.

`CLONE_PARENT_SETTID = $00100000`

Clone option: Store child thread ID in memory in both parent and child.

`CLONE_PID = $00001000`

Clone (956) option: PID shared between processes

`CLONE_PTRACE = $00002000`

Clone options: if parent is traced, trace child also

`CLONE_SETTLS = $00080000`

Clone option: The newtls parameter is the TLS descriptor of the child

`CLONE_SIGHAND = $00000800`

Clone (956) option: signal handlers shared between processes

`CLONE_STOPPED = $02000000`

Clone option: Start child in stopped state.

`CLONE_SYSVSEM = $00040000`



Clone option: Caller and child share the same semaphore undo values

CLONE\_THREAD = \$00010000

Clone options: Set child in thread group of calling process.

CLONE\_UNTRACED = \$00800000

Clone option: Do not allow a ptrace call on this clone.

CLONE\_VFORK = \$00004000

Clone options: suspend parent till child execs

CLONE\_VM = \$00000100

Clone (956) option: VM shared between processes

CSIGNAL = \$000000ff

Clone (956) option: Signal mask to be sent at exit

EPOLLERR = \$08

event\_wait error condition on file descriptor

EPOLLET = \$80000000

Set event\_wait edge trigger behaviour on file descriptor

EPOLLHUP = \$10

event\_wait hang up event

EPOLLIN = \$01

event\_wait input file descriptor ready event

EPOLLONESHOT = \$40000000

Set single-shot behaviour on epoll\_wait.

EPOLLOUT = \$04

event\_wait output file descriptor ready event

EPOLLPRI = \$02

event\_wait high priority data available on input file descriptor

EPOLL\_CTL\_ADD = 1

Add filedescriptor to list of events

`EPOLL_CTL_DEL = 2`

Delete event for filedescriptor

`EPOLL_CTL_MOD = 3`

Modify event for filedescriptor

`FUTEX_CMP_REQUEUE = 4`

Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex, but check it's value first

`FUTEX_FD = 2`

Futex option: Associate file descriptor with futex.

`FUTEX_LOCK_PI = 6`

Futex option: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_ADD = 1`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_ANDN = 3`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_EQ = 0`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_GE = 5`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_GT = 4`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_LE = 3`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_LT = 2`

Futex operation: Undocumented

`FUTEX_OP_CMP_NE = 1`

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_OPARG\_SHIFT = 8

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_OR = 2

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_SET = 0

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_OP\_XOR = 4

Futex operation: Undocumented

FUTEX\_REQUEUE = 3

Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex.

FUTEX\_TRYLOCK\_PI = 8

Futex option: Undocumented

FUTEX\_UNLOCK\_PI = 7

Futex option: Undocumented

FUTEX\_WAIT = 0

Futex option: Wait on futex till wake call arrives.

FUTEX\_WAKE = 1

Futex option: wakes any waiting processes on this futex

FUTEX\_WAKE\_OP = 5

Futex option: Undocumented

GIO\_CMAP = \$4B70

IOCTL: Get color palette on VGA+

GIO\_FONT = \$4B60

IOCTL: Get font in expanded form.

GIO\_FONTX = \$4B6B

**IOCTL:** Get font in `consolefontdesc` record.

`GIO_SCRNMAP = $4B40`

**IOCTL:** get screen mapping from kernel

`GIO_UNIMAP = $4B66`

**IOCTL:** get unicode-to-font mapping from kernel

`GIO_UNISCRNMAP = $4B69`

**IOCTL:** get full Unicode screen mapping

`IN_ACCESS = $00000001`

Data was read from file.

`IN_ALL_EVENTS = IN_ACCESS or IN_MODIFY or IN_ATTRIB or IN_CLOSE or  
IN_OPEN or IN_MOVE or IN_CREATE or IN_DELETE or IN_DELETE_SELF or  
IN_MOVE_SELF`

All possible events OR-ed together.

`IN_ATTRIB = $00000004`

File attributes changed.

`IN_CLOEXEC = &02000000`

`IN_CLOEXEC` can be set to indicate that the inotify file handle must be closed on exec.

`IN_CLOSE = IN_CLOSE_WRITE or IN_CLOSE_NOWRITE`

File was closed (read or write)

`IN_CLOSE_NOWRITE = $00000010`

File opened for read was closed

`IN_CLOSE_WRITE = $00000008`

File opened for write was closed

`IN_CREATE = $00000100`

A file was created in the directory.

`IN_DELETE = $00000200`

A file was deleted from the directory.

IN\_DELETE\_SELF = \$00000400

Directory or file under observation was deleted.

IN\_DONT\_FOLLOW = \$02000000

Do not follow symlinks

IN\_IGNORED = \$00008000

Watch was ignored (removed). Only reported.

IN\_ISDIR = \$40000000

Event subject is a directory (reported only)

IN\_MASK\_ADD = \$20000000

Add events to existing watch (OR-ing the sets) if one exists.

IN\_MODIFY = \$00000002

Data was written to file.

IN\_MOVE = IN\_MOVED\_FROM or IN\_MOVED\_TO

File was moved (in or out of directory)

IN\_MOVED\_FROM = \$00000040

File was moved away from watched directory

IN\_MOVED\_TO = \$00000080

File was moved into watched directory

IN\_MOVE\_SELF = \$00000800

Directory or file under observation was moved.

IN\_NONBLOCK = &00004000

IN\_NONBLOCK can be set to indicate that the inotify file handle should not block read operations.

IN\_ONESHOT = \$80000000

Only report one event, then remove the watch.

IN\_ONLYDIR = \$01000000

Only watch filename if it is a directory.

IN\_OPEN = \$00000020

File was opened

IN\_Q\_OVERFLOW = \$00004000

Queue overflowed. Only reported.

IN\_UNMOUNT = \$00002000

File system on which file resides was unmounted. Only reported.

KB\_101 = 2

IOCTL: Keyboard types: 101 keys

KB\_84 = 1

IOCTL: Keyboard types: 84 keys

KB\_OTHER = 3

IOCTL: Keyboard types: other type

KDADDIO = \$4B34

IOCTL: add i/o port as valid

KDDELIO = \$4B35

IOCTL: delete i/o port as valid

KDDISABIO = \$4B37

IOCTL: disable i/o to video board

KDENABIO = \$4B36

IOCTL: enable i/o to video board

KDFONTOP = \$4B72

IOCTL: font operations

KDGETKEYCODE = \$4B4C

IOCTL: read kernel keycode table entry

KDGETLED = \$4B31

IOCTL: return current led state

KDGETMODE = \$4B3B

**IOCTL: get current mode**

KDGKBDIACR = \$4B4A

**IOCTL: read kernel accent table**

KDGKBTYPE = \$4B33

**IOCTL: get keyboard type**

KDMAPDISP = \$4B3C

**IOCTL: map display into address space**

KDMKTONE = \$4B30

**IOCTL: generate tone**

KDSETKEYCODE = \$4B4D

**IOCTL: write kernel keycode table entry**

KDSETLED = \$4B32

**IOCTL: set led state**

KDSETMODE = \$4B3A

**IOCTL: set text/graphics mode**

KDSIGACCEPT = \$4B4E

**IOCTL: accept kbd generated signals**

KDSKBDIACR = \$4B4B

**IOCTL: write kernel accent table**

KDUNMAPDISP = \$4B3D

**IOCTL: unmap display from address space**

KD\_GRAPHICS = 1

**IOCTL: Tty modes: graphics mode**

KD\_TEXT = 0

**IOCTL: Tty modes: Text mode**

KD\_TEXT0 = 2

IOCTL: Tty modes: Text mode (obsolete)

KD\_TEXT1 = 3

IOCTL: Tty modes: Text mode (obsolete)

KIOCSOUND = \$4B2F

IOCTL: start/stop sound generation (0 for off)

LED\_CAP = 4

IOCTL: LED\_CAP : caps lock led

LED\_NUM = 2

IOCTL: LED\_SCR : Num lock led

LED\_SCR = 1

IOCTL: LED\_SCR : scroll lock led

LINUX\_CAPABILITY\_VERSION = \$19980330

Current capability version in use by kernel

MAP\_DENYWRITE = \$800

Read-only

MAP\_EXECUTABLE = \$1000

Memory area is marked as executable

MAP\_GROWSDOWN = \$100

Memory map grows down, like stack

MAP\_LOCKED = \$2000

Memory pages are locked

MAP\_NORESERVE = \$4000

Do not check for reservations

MAX\_CLOCKS = 16

Maximum number of clocks in the system



O\_CLOEXEC = \$80000

Close on exec flag: close file handle on exec call

PIO\_CMAP = \$4B71

IOCTL: Set color palette on VGA+

PIO\_FONT = \$4B61

IOCTL: Use font in expanded form.

PIO\_FONTRESET = \$4B6D

IOCTL: Reset to default font

PIO\_FONTX = \$4B6C

IOCTL: Set font in `consolefontdesc` record.

PIO\_SCRNMAP = \$4B41

IOCTL: put screen mapping table in kernel

PIO\_UNIMAP = \$4B67

IOCTL: put unicode-to-font mapping in kernel

PIO\_UNIMAPCLR = \$4B68

IOCTL: clear table, possibly advise hash algorithm

PIO\_UNISCRNMAP = \$4B6A

IOCTL: set full Unicode screen mapping

POLLMSG = \$0400

Unused in Linux

POLLRDHUP = \$2000

Peer Shutdown/closed writing half of connection

POLLREMOVE = \$1000

Undocumented Linux extension of Poll

SPLICE\_F\_GIFT = 8

Pages spliced in are a gift

`SPLICE_F_MORE = 4`

Expect more data

`SPLICE_F_MOVE = 1`

Move pages instead of copying

`SPLICE_F_NONBLOCK = 2`

Don't block on pipe splicing operations

`SYNC_FILE_RANGE_WAIT_AFTER = 4`

Wait upon write-out of specified pages in the range after performing any write.

`SYNC_FILE_RANGE_WAIT_BEFORE = 1`

Wait for write-out of previously-submitted specified pages before writing more data.

`SYNC_FILE_RANGE_WRITE = 2`

Initiate write of all dirty pages in the specified range.

### 61.3.2 Types

`clockid_t = cint`

Clock id type

```
EPoll_Data = record
case Integer of
0: (
    ptr : pointer;
);
1: (
    fd : cint;
);
2: (
    u32 : cuint;
);
3: (
    u64 : cuint64;
);
end
```

Data structure used in EPOLL IOCTL call.

`PEPoll_Data = ^EPoll_Data`

Pointer to EPoll\_Data (953) record

```
PEpoll_Event = ^EPoll_Event
```

Pointer to EPoll\_Event (963) type

```
Pinotify_event = ^inotify_event
```

Pointer to inotify\_event (963) structure.

```
PSysInfo = ^TSysInfo
```

Pointer to TSysInfo (964) record.

```
Puser_cap_data = ^user_cap_data
```

Pointer to user\_cap\_data (964) record

```
Puser_cap_header = ^user_cap_header
```

Pointer to user\_cap\_header (964) record

```
TCloneFunc = function(args: pointer) : LongInt
```

Clone function prototype.

```
TEPoll_Data = EPoll_Data
```

Alias for EPoll\_Data (953) type

```
TEPoll_Event = EPoll_Event
```

Alias for EPoll\_Event (963) type

## 61.4 Procedures and functions

### 61.4.1 capget

**Synopsis:** Return the capabilities for the indicated thread

**Declaration:** `function capget(header: Puser_cap_header; data: Puser_cap_data) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `capget` returns the capabilities of the indicated thread in `header`. The thread is identified by the process ID, or -1 for all caller (and child) process ID's.

Refer to the Linux man pages (7 capabilities) for more info.

**Errors:** On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned, and `fperno` is set to the error.

See also: `capset` (955)

### 61.4.2 capset

Synopsis: Set the capabilities for the indicated thread

Declaration: `function capset(header: Puser_cap_header; data: Puser_cap_data) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `capset` sets the capabilities of the indicated thread in `header`. The thread is identified by the process ID, or -1 for all caller (and child) process ID's.

Refer to the Linux man pages (7 capabilities) for more info.

Errors: On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned, and `fperrno` is set to the error.

See also: `capget` ([954](#))

### 61.4.3 clock\_getres

Synopsis: Get clock resolution

Declaration: `function clock_getres(clk_id: clockid_t; res: ptimespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `clock_getres` returns the resolution of the clock specified in `clk_id` in the `res` structure. It can be `Nil`. if the clock exists and the resolution can be retrieved, 0 is returned.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `clock_gettime` ([955](#)), `clock_settime` ([955](#))

### 61.4.4 clock\_gettime

Synopsis: Get the time of a clock

Declaration: `function clock_gettime(clk_id: clockid_t; tp: ptimespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `clock_gettime` returns the current time of the clock specified in `clk_id` in the `tp` structure. If the clock exists and the time can be retrieved, 0 is returned.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `clock_getres` ([955](#)), `clock_settime` ([955](#))

### 61.4.5 clock\_settime

Synopsis: Set the time of a clock

Declaration: `function clock_settime(clk_id: clockid_t; tp: ptimespec) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `clock_settime` sets the current time of the clock specified in `clk_id`. The time is specified in the `tp` structure. If the clock exists and the time can be retrieved, 0 is returned. The resolution is truncated to the resolution supported by the specified clock. Note that not all clocks can be set.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `clock_getres` ([955](#)), `clock_gettime` ([955](#))

### 61.4.6 clone

**Synopsis:** Clone current process (create new thread)

**Declaration:** `function clone(func: TCloneFunc; sp: pointer; flags: LongInt; args: pointer) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Clone` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process, just like `FpFork` (185) does. In difference with `Fork`, however, the child process shares some parts of it's execution context with its parent, so it is suitable for the implementation of threads: many instances of a program that share the same memory.

When the child process is created, it starts executing the function `Func`, and passes it `Args`. The return value of `Func` is either the explicit return value of the function, or the exit code of the child process.

The `sp` pointer points to the memory reserved as stack space for the child process. This address should be the top of the memory block to be used as stack.

The `Flags` determine the behaviour of the `Clone` call. The low byte of the `Flags` contains the number of the signal that will be sent to the parent when the child dies. This may be bitwise OR'ed with the following constants:

**CLONE\_VM**Parent and child share the same memory space, including memory (un)mapped with subsequent `mmap` calls.

**CLONE\_FS**Parent and child have the same view of the file system; the `chroot`, `chdir` and `umask` calls affect both processes.

**CLONE\_FILES**the file descriptor table of parent and child is shared.

**CLONE\_SIGHAND**the parent and child share the same table of signal handlers. The signal masks are different, though.

**CLONE\_PID**Parent and child have the same process ID.

`Clone` returns the process ID in the parent process, and -1 if an error occurred.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Too many processes are running.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` (185)

### 61.4.7 epoll\_create

**Synopsis:** Create new `epoll` file descriptor

**Declaration:** `function epoll_create(size: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `epoll_create` creates a new `epoll` file descriptor. The `size` argument indicates to the kernel approximately how many structures should be allocated, but is by no means an upper limit.

On success, a file descriptor is returned that can be used in subsequent `epoll_ctl` (957) or `epoll_wait` (957) calls, and should be closed using the `fpClose` (179) call.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned, and `errno` (188) is set.

See also: `epoll_ctl` (957), `epoll_wait` (957), `fpClose` (179)

### 61.4.8 `epoll_ctl`

Synopsis: Modify an epoll file descriptor

Declaration: `function epoll_ctl(epfd: cint; op: cint; fd: cint; event: PEpoll_Event)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `epoll_ctl` performs the `op` operation on epoll file descriptor `epfd`. The operation will be monitored on file descriptor `fd`, and is optionally controlled by `event`.

`op` can be one of the following values:

**EPOLL\_CTL\_ADD**Add filedescriptor to list of events

**EPOLL\_CTL\_MOD**Modify event for filedescriptor

**EPOLL\_CTL\_DEL**Delete event for filedescriptor

The `events` field in `event_data` is a bitmask of one or more of the following values:

**EPOLLIN**The file is ready for read operations

**EPOLLOUT**The file is ready for write operations.

**EPOLLPRI**Urgent data is available for read operations.

**EPOLLERR**An error condition is signaled on the file descriptor.

**EPOLLHUP**A Hang up happened on the file descriptor.

**EPOLLET**Set the Edge Triggered behaviour for the file descriptor.

**EPOLLONESHOT**Set One-Shot behaviour for the file descriptor. The event will be triggered only once.

Errors: On error -1 is returned, and `errno` is set accordingly.

See also: `epoll_create` ([956](#)), `epoll_wait` ([957](#)), `fpClose` ([179](#))

### 61.4.9 `epoll_wait`

Synopsis: Wait for an event on an epoll file descriptor.

Declaration: `function epoll_wait(epfd: cint; events: PEpoll_Event; maxevents: cint;  
timeout: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `epoll_wait` waits for `timeout` milliseconds for an event to occur on epoll file descriptor `epfd`. If `timeout` is -1, it waits indefinitely, if `timeout` is zero, it does not wait, but returns immediately, even if no events were detected.

On return, data for at most `maxevents` will be returned in the memory pointed to by `events`. The function returns the number of file descriptors for which events were reported. This can be zero if the timeout was reached.

Errors: On error -1 is returned, and `errno` is set accordingly.

See also: `epoll_create` ([956](#)), `epoll_ctl` ([957](#)), `fpClose` ([179](#))

### 61.4.10 fdatasync

**Synopsis:** Synchronize the data in memory with the data on storage device

**Declaration:** `function fdatasync(fd: cint) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fdatasync` does the same as `ffsync` but does not flush the metadata, unless it is vital to the correct reading/writing of the file. In practice, this means that unless the file size changed, the file metadata will not be synced.

See also: `#rtl.unix.fsync` ([2019](#))

### 61.4.11 futex

**Synopsis:** Perform a futex operation

**Declaration:** `function futex(uaddr: pcint; op: cint; val: cint; timeout: ptimespec;  
addr2: pcint; val3: cint) : cint`  
`function futex(var uaddr; op: cint; val: cint; timeout: ptimespec;  
var addr2; val3: cint) : cint`  
`function futex(var uaddr; op: cint; val: cint; var timeout: TTimeSpec;  
var addr2; val3: cint) : cint`  
`function futex(uaddr: pcint; op: cint; val: cint; timeout: ptimespec)  
: cint`  
`function futex(var uaddr; op: cint; val: cint; timeout: ptimespec)  
: cint`  
`function futex(var uaddr; op: cint; val: cint; var timeout: TTimeSpec)  
: cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `futex` performs an operation on a memory futex as described in the kernel manual page for `futex`. The mutex is located at `uaddr`, the operation `op` is one of the following constants:

**FUTEX\_WAIT**Futex option: Wait on futex till wake call arrives.

**FUTEX\_WAKE**Futex option: Wait on futex till wake call arrives.

**FUTEX\_FD**Futex option: Associate file descriptor with futex.

**FUTEX\_REQUEUE**Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex.

**FUTEX\_CMP\_REQUEUE**Futex option: requeue waiting processes on other futex, but check it's value first

The value to check for is indicated in `val`, and a timeout can be specified in `timeout`. The optional arguments `addr2` and `val3` are used only with the `FUTEX_REQUEUE` and `FUTEX_CMP_REQUEUE` operations.

In case of an error, -1 is return. All other return values must be interpreted according to the operation performed.

This call directly interfaces with the Linux kernel, more information can be found in the kernel manual pages.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned. Use `#rtl.baseunix.fpgeterrno` ([188](#)) to get the error code.

### 61.4.12 futex\_op

Synopsis: Futex operation:

Declaration: `function futex_op(op: cint; oparg: cint; cmp: cint; cmparg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FUTEX_OP` Performs an operation on a futex:

```
FUTEX_OP := ((op and $F) shl 28) or
             ((cmp and $F) shl 24) or
             ((oparg and $FFF) shl 12)
             or (cmparg and $FFF);
```

### 61.4.13 inotify\_add\_watch

Synopsis: Add a watch to a notify file descriptor

Declaration: `function inotify_add_watch(fd: cint; name: Pchar; mask: cuint32) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `inotify_add_watch` can be used to add a watch to an initialized inotify file descriptor (`fd`). The file or directory to watch can be specified in the `name` parameter, and the events that must be reported can be specified in `mask`. The following flags can be specified:

- IN\_ACCESS**Data was read from file.
- IN\_MODIFY**Data was written to file.
- IN\_ATTRIB**File attributes changed.
- IN\_CLOSE\_WRITE**File opened for write was closed
- IN\_CLOSE\_NOWRITE**File opened for read was closed
- IN\_CLOSE**File was closed (read or write)
- IN\_OPEN**File was opened
- IN\_MOVED\_FROM**File was moved away from watched directory
- IN\_MOVED\_TO**File was moved into watched directory
- IN\_MOVE**File was moved (in or out of directory)
- IN\_CREATE**A file was created in the directory.
- IN\_DELETE**A file was deleted from the directory.
- IN\_DELETE\_SELF**Directory or file under observation was deleted.
- IN\_MOVE\_SELF**Directory or file under observation was moved.
- IN\_ALL\_EVENTS**All possible events OR-ed together.

These events can be OR-ed with some flags, controlling the behaviour of the watch:

- IN\_ONLYDIR**Only watch filename if it is a directory.
- IN\_ISDIR**Event occurred against directory.
- IN\_DONT\_FOLLOW**Do not follow symlinks
- IN\_MASK\_ADD**Add events to existing watch (OR-ing the sets) if one exists.
- IN\_ONESHOT**Only report one event, then remove the watch.

On return, the function returns a watch descriptor, which will be reported in the `inotify_event` (963) structure's `wd`.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `inotify_init` (960), `inotify_init1` (960), `inotify_rm_watch` (960), `inotify_event` (963)



### 61.4.14 inotify\_init

Synopsis: Initialize a new inotify file descriptor

Declaration: `function inotify_init : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `inotify_init` initializes a new `INotify` file descriptor. No options can be specified. On return, the file descriptor is returned.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information

See also: `inotify_init1` (960), `inotify_add_watch` (959), `inotify_rm_watch` (960)

### 61.4.15 inotify\_init1

Synopsis: Initialize a new inotify file descriptor with extra options.

Declaration: `function inotify_init1(flags: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `inotify_init1` initializes a new `INotify` file descriptor. The following options can be OR-ed and passed in flags:

**IN\_NONBLOCK** Do not block on read

**IN\_CLOEXEC** Inotify close on exec flag.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `inotify_init` (960), `inotify_add_watch` (959), `inotify_rm_watch` (960)

### 61.4.16 inotify\_rm\_watch

Synopsis: Remove watch from Inotify file descriptor.

Declaration: `function inotify_rm_watch(fd: cint; wd: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `inotify_rm_watch` removes watch descriptor `wd` from inotify descriptor `fd`. On success, 0 is returned.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `inotify_init` (960), `inotify_init1` (960), `inotify_add_watch` (959), `inotify_event` (963)

### 61.4.17 sched\_yield

Synopsis: Yield the processor to another thread.

Declaration: `procedure sched_yield`

Visibility: default

Description: `sched_yield` yields the processor to another thread. The current thread is put at the back of its queue. If there is only 1 thread in the application, the thread continues to run. The call always returns zero.

### 61.4.18 setregid

Synopsis: Set Real and Effective Group ID

Declaration: `function setregid(rgid: uid_t; egid: uid_t) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `setregid` sets the real group ID to `rgid` and the effective group ID to `egid`. Passing a value of -1 tells the system not to change that value.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `setreuid` ([961](#))

### 61.4.19 setreuid

Declaration: `function setreuid(ruid: uid_t; euid: uid_t) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `setreuid` sets the real user ID to `ruid` and the effective user ID to `euid`. Passing a value of -1 tells the system not to change that value.

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned. `fpgeterrno` can be used to get more detailed error information.

See also: `setregid` ([961](#))

### 61.4.20 sync\_file\_range

Synopsis: Force committing of data to disk

Declaration: `function sync_file_range(fd: cint; offset: off64_t; nbytes: off64_t; flags: cuint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `sync_file_range` forces the Linux kernel to write any data pages of a specified file (file descriptor `fd`) to disk. The range of the file is specified by the offset `offset` and the number of bytes `nbytes`. `Options` is an OR-ed combination of

**SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_BEFORE** Wait for write-out of previously-submitted specified pages before writing more data.

**SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WRITE** Initiate write of all dirty pages in the specified range.

**SYNC\_FILE\_RANGE\_WAIT\_AFTER** Wait upon write-out of specified pages in the range after performing any write.

If none is specified, the operation does nothing.

Errors: On return -1 is returned and `fperrno` is set to the actual error code. See the Linux man page for more on the error codes.

See also: `fdatasync` ([958](#))

### 61.4.21 Sysinfo

Synopsis: Return kernel system information

Declaration: `function Sysinfo(Info: PSysInfo) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInfo` returns system information in `Info`. Returned information in `Info` includes:

**uptime** Number of seconds since boot.  
**loads** 1, 5 and 15 minute load averages.  
**totalram** total amount of main memory.  
**freeram** amount of free memory.  
**sharedram** amount of shared memory.  
**bufferram** amount of memory used by buffers.  
**totalswap** total amount of swap space.  
**freeswap** amount of free swap space.  
**procs** number of current processes.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpUname` ([224](#))

**Listing:** `./linuxex/ex64.pp`

---

**program** Example64;

*{ Example to demonstrate the SysInfo function.  
Sysinfo is Linux-only. }*

*{ \$ifdef Linux }*

**Uses** Linux;

**Function** Mb(L : Longint) : longint;

**begin**

    Mb:=L **div** (1024\*1024);

**end**;

**Var** Info : TSysInfo;

    D,M,Secs,H : longint;

*{ \$endif }*

**begin**

*{ \$ifdef Linux }*

**If Not** (SysInfo(@Info)=0) **then**

**Halt**(1);

**With** Info **do**

**begin**

            D:=Uptime **div** (3600\*24);

            UpTime:=UpTime **mod** (3600\*24);

            h:=uptime **div** 3600;

            uptime:=uptime **mod** 3600;

            m:=uptime **div** 60;

            secs:=uptime **mod** 60;

---

```

    Writeln('Uptime : ',d,'days, ',h,' hours, ',m,' min, ',secs,' s. ');
    Writeln('Loads : ',Loads[1], '/' ,Loads[2], '/' ,Loads[3]);
    Writeln('Total Ram : ',Mb(totalram), 'Mb. ');
    Writeln('Free Ram : ',Mb.freeram), 'Mb. ');
    Writeln('Shared Ram : ',Mb(sharedram), 'Mb. ');
    Writeln('Buffer Ram : ',Mb(bufferram), 'Mb. ');
    Writeln('Total Swap : ',Mb(totalswap), 'Mb. ');
    Writeln('Free Swap : ',Mb(freeswap), 'Mb. ');
  end;
{$endif}
end.

```

---

## 61.5 EPoll\_Event

```

EPoll_Event = record
  Events : cuint32;
  Data : TEPoll_Data;
end

```

Structure used in `epoll_ctl` ([957](#)) call.

## 61.6 inotify\_event

```

inotify_event = record
  wd : cint;
  mask : cuint32;
  cookie : cuint32
  ;
  len : cuint32;
  name : Char;
end

```

`inotify_event` is the structure used to report changes in a directory. When reading a `inotify` file descriptor, one or more `inotify_event` records can be read from the file descriptor.

## 61.7 TSysInfo

```

TSysInfo = record
  uptime : clong;
  loads : Array[0..2] of culong
  ;
  totalram : culong;
  freeram : culong;
  sharedram : culong;
  bufferram : culong;
  totalswap : culong;
  freeswap : culong;
  procs : cushort;

```

```

    pad : cushort;
    totalhigh : culong;
    freehigh
    : culong;
    mem_unit : cuint;
    _f : Array[0..19-2*sizeof(culong)
    -sizeof(cint)] of cchar;
end

```

Record with system information, used by the SysInfo ([962](#)) call.

## 61.8 user\_cap\_data

```

user_cap_data = record
    effective : cuint32;
    permitted : cuint32
    ;
    inheritable : cuint32;
end

```

`user_cap_data` describes the set of capabilities for the indicated thread.

## 61.9 user\_cap\_header

```

user_cap_header = record
    version : cuint32;
    pid : cint;
end

```

`user_cap_header` describes the root user capabilities for the current thread, as set by `capget` ([954](#)) and `capset` ([955](#))

## Chapter 62

# Reference for unit 'Infodwrf'

### 62.1 Overview

The `Infodwrf` provides a routine that reads the debug information of an executable (if any exists) and returns source code information about this address. It works with DWARF debug information. Note that this unit is not thread-safe, and that its behaviour is undefined if multiple threads try to write a backtrace at the same time.

For stabs debug information, the `lineinfo` ([937](#)) unit must be used.

### 62.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 62.2.1 Types

`CodePointer = Pointer`

`CodePointer` is added for 16-bit dos compatibility.

#### 62.2.2 Variables

`AllowReuseOfLineInfoData : Boolean = True`

`AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` can be set to `True` to keep the last opened file open. When regularly creating backtraces (e.g. in a program log), this will significantly speed up operations.

### 62.3 Procedures and functions

#### 62.3.1 CloseDwarf

Synopsis: Close DWARF info file descriptor

Declaration: `procedure CloseDwarf`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `CloseDwarf` will close the file descriptor that was used to read DWARF debug information. This is useful if `AllowReuseOfLineInfoData` ([965](#)) is used to cache DWARF information.

Errors: None.

See also: [AllowReuseOfLineInfoData \(965\)](#)

### 62.3.2 DwarfBackTraceStr

Synopsis: Get a backtrace from an address

Declaration: `function DwarfBackTraceStr(addr: CodePointer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DwarfBackTraceStr` returns a backtrace from a memory address `Addr`.

This is the actual callback for the backtrace handler `System.BackTraceStrFunc (965)`.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetLineInfo \(966\)](#)

### 62.3.3 GetLineInfo

Synopsis: Return source line information about an address.

Declaration: `function GetLineInfo(addr: codeptruint; var func: string;  
var source: string; var line: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLineInfo` returns source line information about the address `addr`. It searches this information in the DWARF debugging information found in the binary: If the file was compiled without debug information, nothing will be returned. Upon successful retrieval of the debug information, `True` is returned, and the `func` parameter is filled with the name of the function in which the address is located. The `source` parameter contains the name of the file in which the function was implemented, and `line` contains the line number in the source file for `addr`.

Errors: If no debug information is found, `False` is returned.

# Chapter 63

## Reference for unit 'Math'

### 63.1 Used units

Table 63.1: Used units by unit 'Math'

Name	Page
sysutils	<a href="#">1571</a>

### 63.2 Overview

This document describes the `math` unit. The `math` unit was initially written by Florian Klaempfl. It provides mathematical functions which aren't covered by the system unit.

This chapter starts out with a definition of all types and constants that are defined, after which an overview is presented of the available functions, grouped by category, and the last part contains a complete explanation of each function.

The following things must be taken into account when using this unit:

1. This unit is compiled in Object Pascal mode so all `integers` are 32 bit.
2. Some overloaded functions exist for data arrays of integers and floats. When using the address operator (`@`) to pass an array of data to such a function, make sure the address is typecasted to the right type, or turn on the 'typed address operator' feature. failing to do so, will cause the compiler not be able to decide which function you want to call.

### 63.3 Cash flow functions

The cash flow functions in the `math` unit resolve the following equation:

$$FV + PV * q^n + PMT * (q^n - 1) / (q - 1) = 0$$

In this formula, the following variables are present:

**FV** Future value



**PV** Present value

**PMT** Payment per period

**n** Number of payments (number of periods)

**q>** Interest Rate (return rate)

The financial functions FutureValue (985), NumberOfPeriods (1001), Payment (1002), PresentValue (1005) and InterestRate (988) solve this equation for one of the variables, when the other variables are known.

See also: FutureValue (985), NumberOfPeriods (1001), Payment (1002), PresentValue (1005), TPayment-Time (973)

## 63.4 Geometrical functions

Table 63.2:

Name	Description
hypot (987)	Hypotenuse of triangle
norm (1001)	Euclidean norm

## 63.5 Statistical functions

Table 63.3:

Name	Description
mean (995)	Mean of values
meanandstddev (996)	Mean and standard deviation of values
momentskewkurtosis (999)	Moments, skew and kurtosis
popnstddev (1002)	Population standard deviation
popnvariance (1003)	Population variance
randg (1006)	Gaussian distributed random value
stddev (1011)	Standard deviation
sum (1012)	Sum of values
sumofsquares (1013)	Sum of squared values
sumsandsquares (1014)	Sum of values and squared values
totalvariance (1016)	Total variance of values
variance (1017)	variance of values

## 63.6 Number converting

Table 63.4:

Name	Description
<code>ceil</code> (978)	Round to infinity
<code>floor</code> (983)	Round to minus infinity
<code>frexp</code> (985)	Return mantissa and exponent

## 63.7 Exponential and logarithmic functions

Table 63.5:

Name	Description
<code>intpower</code> (989)	Raise float to integer power
<code>ldexp</code> (990)	Calculate $2^x \times \text{float}$
<code>lnxp1</code> (991)	calculate $\log(x+1)$
<code>log10</code> (991)	calculate 10-base log
<code>log2</code> (992)	calculate 2-base log
<code>logn</code> (992)	calculate N-base log
<code>power</code> (1004)	raise float to arbitrary power

## 63.8 Hyperbolic functions

Table 63.6:

Name	Description
<code>arcosh</code> (975)	calculate reverse hyperbolic cosine
<code>arsinh</code> (977)	calculate reverse hyperbolic sine
<code>artanh</code> (977)	calculate reverse hyperbolic tangent
<code>cosh</code> (980)	calculate hyperbolic cosine
<code>sinh</code> (1011)	calculate hyperbolic sine
<code>tanh</code> (1016)	calculate hyperbolic tangent

## 63.9 Trigonometric functions

Table 63.7:

Name	Description
<code>arccos</code> (974)	calculate reverse cosine
<code>arcsin</code> (975)	calculate reverse sine
<code>arctan2</code> (976)	calculate reverse tangent
<code>cotan</code> (980)	calculate cotangent
<code>sincos</code> (1010)	calculate sine and cosine
<code>tan</code> (1015)	calculate tangent

## 63.10 Angle unit conversion

Routines to convert angles between different angle units.

Table 63.8:

Name	Description
<code>cycletorad</code> (981)	convert cycles to radians
<code>degtograd</code> (982)	convert degrees to grads
<code>degtorad</code> (982)	convert degrees to radians
<code>gradtodeg</code> (986)	convert grads to degrees
<code>gradtorad</code> (987)	convert grads to radians
<code>radto cycle</code> (1005)	convert radians to cycles
<code>radtodeg</code> (1005)	convert radians to degrees
<code>radto grad</code> (1006)	convert radians to grads

## 63.11 Min/max determination

Functions to determine the minimum or maximum of numbers:

Table 63.9:

Name	Description
<code>max</code> (993)	Maximum of 2 values
<code>maxIntValue</code> (993)	Maximum of an array of integer values
<code>maxvalue</code> (994)	Maximum of an array of values
<code>min</code> (997)	Minimum of 2 values
<code>minIntValue</code> (997)	Minimum of an array of integer values
<code>minvalue</code> (998)	Minimum of an array of values

## 63.12 Constants, types and variables

### 63.12.1 Constants

`EqualsValue = 0`

Values are the same

`GreaterThanValue = High(TValueRelationship)`

First values is greater than second value

`Infinity = 1.0 / 0.0`

Value is infinity

`LessThanValue = Low(TValueRelationship)`

First value is less than second value

`MaxComp = 9.223372036854775807e+18`

`MaxComp` is the largest value for comp-type variables.

`MaxDouble = 1.7976931348623157e+308`

`MaxDouble` is the largest value for double-type variables.

`MaxExtended = 1.1e+4932`

Maximum value of extended type

`MaxFloat = 0`

Maximum value of float type

`MaxFloat = MaxExtended`

Maximum value of float type

`MaxSingle = 3.4028234664e+38`

`MaxSingle` is the largest value for single-type variables.

`MinComp = - 9.223372036854775807e+18`

`MinComp` is the smallest value for comp-type variables.

`MinDouble = 2.2250738585072014e-308`

`MinDouble` is the smallest value for double-type variables.

```
MinExtended = 3.4e-4932
```

Minimum value (closest to zero) of extended type

```
MinFloat = 0
```

Minimum value (closest to zero) of float type

```
MinFloat = MinExtended
```

Minimum value (closest to zero) of float type

```
MinSingle = 1.1754943508e-38
```

MinSingle is the smallest value for single-type variables.

```
NaN = 0.0 / 0.0
```

Value is Not a Number

```
NegativeValue = Low(TValueSign)
```

Value is negative

```
NegInfinity = (- 1.0) / (0.0)
```

Value is negative (minus) infinity

```
PositiveValue = High(TValueSign)
```

Value is positive

```
ZeroValue = 0
```

Value is zero

### 63.12.2 Types

```
Float = extended
```

All calculations are done with the Float type which is the largest float type available for the current CPU. This allows to recompile the unit with a different float type to obtain a desired precision. The pointer type PFloat (973) is used in functions that accept an array of values of arbitrary length.

```
Float = MaxFloatType
```

All calculations are done with the Float type which is the largest float type available for the current CPU. This allows to recompile the unit with a different float type to obtain a desired precision. The pointer type PFloat (973) is used in functions that accept an array of values of arbitrary length.

```
PFloat = ^Float
```

Pointer to Float (972) type.

`PInteger = ObjPas.PInteger`

Pointer to integer type

`TFPUException = system.TFPUException`

Type describing Floating Point processor exceptions.

`TFPUExceptionMask = system.TFPUExceptionMask`

Type to set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

`TFPUPrecisionMode = system.TFPUPrecisionMode`

Type describing the default precision for the Floating Point processor.

`TFPURoundingMode = system.TFPURoundingMode`

Type describing the rounding mode for the Floating Point processor.

`TPaymentTime = (ptEndOfPeriod,ptStartOfPeriod)`

Table 63.10: Enumeration values for type TPaymentTime

Value	Explanation
ptEndOfPeriod	End of period.
ptStartOfPeriod	Start of period.

Type used in financial (interest) calculations.

`TRoundToRange = - 37..37`

TRoundToRange is the range of valid digits to be used in the RoundTo (1008) function.

`TValueRelationship = - 1..1`

Type to describe relational order between values

`TValueSign = - 1..1`

Type indicating sign of a value

## 63.13 Procedures and functions

### 63.13.1 ArcCos

Synopsis: Return inverse cosine

Declaration: `function ArcCos(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arccos` returns the inverse cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should lie between -1 and 1 (borders included).

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcsin` (975), `arcosh` (975), `arsinh` (977), `artanh` (977)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arccos function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Procedure** `WriteRadDeg(X : float)`;

**begin**

`WriteLn(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')`  
**end**;

**begin**

`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (1));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (sqrt (3)/2));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (sqrt (2)/2));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (1/2));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (0));`  
`WriteRadDeg ( arccos (-1));`

**end.**

---

### 63.13.2 ArcCosh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function ArcCosH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arccosh` returns the inverse hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `arcosh` (975), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `arcosh` (975)

### 63.13.3 ArCosh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function ArCosh(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arcosh` returns the inverse hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should be larger than 1. The `arccosh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `cosh` (980), `sinh` (1011), `arcsin` (975), `arsinh` (977), `artanh` (977), `tanh` (1016)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arcosh function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(`arcosh(1)`);

**WriteLn**(`arcosh(2)`);

**end.**

---

### 63.13.4 ArcSin

Synopsis: Return inverse sine

Declaration: `function ArcSin(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arcsin` returns the inverse sine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should lie between -1 and 1.

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arccos` (974), `arcosh` (975), `arsinh` (977), `artanh` (977)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arcsin function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** WriteRadDeg(X : float);

**begin**

**WriteLn**(X:8:5, ' rad = ', `radtodeg(x):8:5`, ' degrees.')

**end;**

**begin**

    WriteRadDeg (`arcsin(1)`);

    WriteRadDeg (`arcsin(sqrt(3)/2)`);



---

```

WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (sqrt (2)/2));
WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (1/2));
WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (0));
WriteRadDeg ( arcsin (-1));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.5 ArcSinH

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function ArcSinH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arcsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic sine of it's argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `arsinh` (977), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `arsinh` (977)

### 63.13.6 ArcTan2

Synopsis: Return arctangent of (y/x)

Declaration: `function ArcTan2(y: Float; x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arctan2` calculates `arctan(y/x)`, and returns an angle in the correct quadrant. The returned angle will be in the range  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$  radians. The values of `x` and `y` must be between  $-2^{64}$  and  $2^{64}$ , moreover `x` should be different from zero. On Intel systems this function is implemented with the native intel `fpatan` instruction.

See also: `arccos` (974), `arcosh` (975), `arsinh` (977), `artanh` (977)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arctan2 function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** WriteRadDeg(X : float);

**begin**

**WriteLn**(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')

**end**;

**begin**

**WriteRadDeg** ( arctan2 (2,1));

**end**.

---

### 63.13.7 ArcTanH

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function ArcTanH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arcsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic tangent of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `artanh` (977), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `artanh` (977)

### 63.13.8 ArSinH

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function ArSinH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`. The `arcsinh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcosh` (975), `arccos` (974), `arcsin` (975), `artanh` (977)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arsinh function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(`arsinh(0)`);

**WriteLn**(`arsinh(1)`);

**end**.

---

### 63.13.9 ArTanH

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function ArTanH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `artanh` returns the inverse hyperbolic tangent of its argument `x`, where `x` should lie in the interval `[-1,1]`, borders included. The `arctanh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: In case `x` is not in the interval `[-1,1]`, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcosh` (975), `arccos` (974), `arcsin` (975), `artanh` (977)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;

{ Program to demonstrate the artanh function. }

Uses math;

begin
  WriteLn(artanh(0));
  WriteLn(artanh(0.5));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.10 Ceil

Synopsis: Return the lowest integer number greater than or equal to argument

Declaration: `function Ceil(x: Float) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ceil` returns the lowest integer number greater than or equal to `x`. The absolute value of `x` should be less than `maxint`.

Errors: If the absolute value of `x` is larger than `maxint`, an overflow error will occur.

See also: `floor` ([983](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex7.pp`

---

```

Program Example7;

{ Program to demonstrate the Ceil function. }

Uses math;

begin
  WriteLn(Ceil(-3.7)); // should be -3
  WriteLn(Ceil(3.7)); // should be 4
  WriteLn(Ceil(-4.0)); // should be -4
end.

```

---

### 63.13.11 Ceil64

Synopsis: Round to the nearest bigger int64 value

Declaration: `function Ceil64(x: Float) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ceil64` rounds the value `X` to the nearest bigger int64 value. The result is always bigger than `X`.

Errors: None.

See also: `ceil` ([978](#)), `floor64` ([984](#))

### Synopsis: Clear Floating Point Unit exceptions

Visibility: default

### 63.13.13 CompareValue

### Synopsis: Compare 2 values

Visibility: default

**-1**if  $A < B$

**0**if  $A=B$

**1**if  $A > B$ 

See also: TValueRelationship (973)

### 63.13.14 Cosecant

Synopsis: Calculate cosecant

```
Declaration: function Cosecant(x: Float) : Float
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** cosecant calculates the cosecant ( $1/\sin(x)$ ) of its argument  $x$ .

**Errors:** If 0 or 180 degrees is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: secant ([1009](#))

**63.13.15 Cosh**

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function Cosh(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cosh` returns the hyperbolic cosine of it's argument {x}.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcosh` (975), `sinh` (1011), `arsinh` (977)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the cosh function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`WriteLn(Cosh(0));`

`WriteLn(Cosh(1));`

**end.**

---

**63.13.16 Cot**

Synopsis: Alias for `Cotan`

Declaration: `function Cot(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `cot` is an alias for the `cotan` (980) function.

See also: `cotan` (980)

**63.13.17 Cotan**

Synopsis: Return cotangent

Declaration: `function Cotan(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cotan` returns the cotangent of it's argument x. The argument x must be in radians. x should be different from zero.

Errors: If x is zero then a overflow error will occur.

See also: `tanh` (1016)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex9.pp`

---

```

Program Example9;

{ Program to demonstrate the cotan function. }

Uses math;

begin
  writeln(cotan(pi/2));
  Writeln(cotan(pi/3));
  Writeln(cotan(pi/4));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.18 Csc

Synopsis: Alias for cosecant

Declaration: `function Csc(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `csc` is an alias for the cosecant (979) function.

See also: cosecant (979)

### 63.13.19 CycleToRad

Synopsis: Convert cycle angle to radians angle

Declaration: `function CycleToRad(cycle: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cycletorad` transforms it's argument `cycle` (an angle expressed in cycles) to radians. (1 cycle is  $2\pi$  radians).

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` (982), `degtorad` (982), `radtodeg` (1005), `radtograd` (1006), `radtocycle` (1005)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex10.pp`

---

```

Program Example10;

{ Program to demonstrate the cycletorad function. }

Uses math;

begin
  writeln(cos(cycletorad(1/6))); // Should print 1/2
  writeln(cos(cycletorad(1/8))); // should be sqrt(2)/2
end.

```

---

**63.13.20 DegNormalize**

Synopsis: Normalize an angle measured in degrees

Declaration: `function DegNormalize(deg: single) : single`  
`function DegNormalize(deg: Double) : Double`  
`function DegNormalize(deg: extended) : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `DegNormalize` returns the angle `deg` as a positive angle between 0 and 360 degrees.

**63.13.21 DegToGrad**

Synopsis: Convert degree angle to grads angle

Declaration: `function DegToGrad(deg: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Degtograd` transforms it's argument `deg` (an angle in degrees) to grads. (90 degrees is 100 grad.)

Errors: None.

See also: `cycletorad` ([981](#)), `degtorad` ([982](#)), `radtodeg` ([1005](#)), `radtograd` ([1006](#)), `radtocycle` ([1005](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** `Example11`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the degto grad function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**  
`writeln(degtograd(90));`  
`writeln(degtograd(180));`  
`writeln(degtograd(270))`  
**end.**

---

**63.13.22 DegToRad**

Synopsis: Convert degree angle to radians angle.

Declaration: `function DegToRad(deg: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Degtorad` converts it's argument `deg` (an angle in degrees) to radians. (pi radians is 180 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: `cycletorad` ([981](#)), `degtograd` ([982](#)), `radtodeg` ([1005](#)), `radtograd` ([1006](#)), `radtocycle` ([1005](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** Example12;

*{ Program to demonstrate the degtorad function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**  
     **writeln**(degtorad(45));  
     **writeln**(degtorad(90));  
     **writeln**(degtorad(180));  
     **writeln**(degtorad(270));  
     **writeln**(degtorad(360));  
**end.**

---

### 63.13.23 DivMod

Synopsis: Return DIV and MOD of arguments

**Declaration:** procedure DivMod(Dividend: LongInt; Divisor: Word; var Result: Word;  
     var Remainder: Word)  
     procedure DivMod(Dividend: LongInt; Divisor: Word;  
         var Result: SmallInt; var Remainder: SmallInt)  
     procedure DivMod(Dividend: DWord; Divisor: DWord; var Result: DWord;  
         var Remainder: DWord)  
     procedure DivMod(Dividend: LongInt; Divisor: LongInt;  
         var Result: LongInt; var Remainder: LongInt)

Visibility: default

**Description:** DivMod returns Dividend DIV Divisor in Result, and Dividend MOD Divisor in Remainder

### 63.13.24 EnsureRange

Synopsis: Change value to it falls in specified range.

**Declaration:** function EnsureRange(const AValue: Integer; const AMin: Integer;  
     const AMax: Integer) : Integer; Overload  
     function EnsureRange(const AValue: Int64; const AMin: Int64;  
         const AMax: Int64) : Int64; Overload  
     function EnsureRange(const AValue: Double; const AMin: Double;  
         const AMax: Double) : Double; Overload

Visibility: default

**Description:** EnsureRange returns Value if AValue is in the range AMin..AMax. It returns AMin if the value is less than AMin, or AMax if the value is larger than AMax.

See also: InRange ([988](#))

### 63.13.25 Floor

Synopsis: Return the largest integer smaller than or equal to argument

**Declaration:** function Floor(x: Float) : Integer



Visibility: default

Description: `Floor` returns the largest integer smaller than or equal to `x`. The absolute value of `x` should be less than `maxint`.

Errors: If `x` is larger than `maxint`, an overflow will occur.

See also: `ceil` ([978](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** `Example13`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the floor function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`WriteLn (Ceil (-3.7)); // should be -4`

`WriteLn (Ceil (3.7)); // should be 3`

`WriteLn (Ceil (-4.0)); // should be -4`

**end.**

---

### 63.13.26 Floor64

Synopsis: Round to the nearest smaller int64 value

Declaration: `function Floor64(x: Float) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Floor64` rounds the value `x` to the nearest smaller int64 value. The result is always smaller than `x`.

Errors: None.

See also: `floor` ([983](#)), `ceil64` ([978](#))

### 63.13.27 FMod

Synopsis: Floatin point modulo

Declaration: `function FMod(const a: Single; const b: Single) : Single; Overload`  
`function FMod(const a: Double; const b: Double) : Double; Overload`  
`function FMod(const a: Extended; const b: Extended) : Extended`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `FMod` is the floating-point equivalent of the modulo operation `a mod b`. It returns the result of `a-b * Int (a/b)`

Errors: `b` may not be zero, but no check is performed.

**63.13.28 Frexp**

Synopsis: Return mantissa and exponent.

Declaration: `procedure Frexp(X: Float; var Mantissa: Float; var Exponent: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Frexp` returns the mantissa and exponent of its argument `x` in mantissa and exponent.

Errors: None

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ Program to demonstrate the frexp function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** dofexp(**Const** X : extended);

**var** man : extended;  
    **exp**: longint;

**begin**

    man:=0;  
    **exp**:=0;  
    frexp(x,man,**exp**);  
    **write**(x,' has ');  
    **WriteLn**('mantissa ',man,' and exponent ',**exp**);

**end**;

**begin**

    // dofexp(1.00);  
    dofexp(1.02e-1);  
    dofexp(1.03e-2);  
    dofexp(1.02e1);  
    dofexp(1.03e2);

**end**.

---

**63.13.29 FutureValue**

Synopsis: Calculate the future value of an investment.

Declaration: `function FutureValue(ARate: Float; NPeriods: Integer; APayment: Float;  
                                  APresentValue: Float; APaymentTime: TPaymentTime)  
                                  : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `FutureValue` calculates the future value of an investment (FV) in the cash flow formula (see Cash-FlowFunctions (967)) The function result is the future value of an investment of `APresentValue` (PV), where `APayment` (PMT) is invested for `NPeriods` (n) at the rate of `ARate` (q) per period.

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: [InterestRate \(988\)](#), [NumberOfPeriods \(1001\)](#), [Payment \(1002\)](#), [PresentValue \(1005\)](#), [TPaymentTime \(973\)](#), [CashFlowFunctions \(967\)](#)

### 63.13.30 GetExceptionMask

Synopsis: Get the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

Declaration: `function GetExceptionMask : TFPUExceptionMask`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

### 63.13.31 GetPrecisionMode

Synopsis: Return the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

Declaration: `function GetPrecisionMode : TFPUPrecisionMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Return the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

### 63.13.32 GetRoundMode

Synopsis: Return the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

Declaration: `function GetRoundMode : TFPURoundingMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Return the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

### 63.13.33 GradToDeg

Synopsis: Convert grads angle to degrees angle

Declaration: `function GradToDeg(grad: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gradtodeg` converts its argument `grad` (an angle in grads) to degrees. (100 grad is 90 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: [cycletorad \(981\)](#), [degtograd \(982\)](#), [radtodeg \(1005\)](#), [radtograd \(1006\)](#), [radtocycle \(1005\)](#), [gradtorad \(987\)](#)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the gradtodeg function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

---

```

writeln (gradtodeg (100));
writeln (gradtodeg (200));
writeln (gradtodeg (300));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.34 GradToRad

Synopsis: Convert grads angle to radians angle

Declaration: `function GradToRad(grad: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gradtorad` converts its argument `grad` (an angle in grads) to radians. (200 grad is pi degrees).

Errors: None.

See also: `cycletorad` ([981](#)), `degtograd` ([982](#)), `radtodeg` ([1005](#)), `radtograd` ([1006](#)), `radtocycle` ([1005](#)), `gradtodeg` ([986](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

```

{ Program to demonstrate the gradtorad function. }

```

**Uses** `math;`

```

begin
  writeln (gradtorad (100));
  writeln (gradtorad (200));
  writeln (gradtorad (300));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.35 Hypot

Synopsis: Return hypotenuse of triangle

Declaration: `function Hypot(x: Float; y: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hypot` returns the hypotenuse of the triangle where the sides adjacent to the square angle have lengths `x` and `y`. The function uses Pythagoras' rule for this.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

```

{ Program to demonstrate the hypot function. }

```

**Uses** `math;`

```

begin
  WriteLn (hypot (3,4)); // should be 5
end.

```

---

**63.13.36 IfThen**

Synopsis: Return one of two values, depending on a boolean condition

Declaration: 

```
function IfThen(val: Boolean; const iftrue: Integer;
               const iffalse: Integer) : Integer; Overload
function IfThen(val: Boolean; const iftrue: Int64; const iffalse: Int64)
               : Int64; Overload
function IfThen(val: Boolean; const iftrue: Double;
               const iffalse: Double) : Double; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ifthen` returns `iftrue` if `val` is `True`, and `iffalse` if `val` is `False`.

This function can be used in expressions.

**63.13.37 InRange**

Synopsis: Check whether value is in range.

Declaration: 

```
function InRange(const AValue: Integer; const AMin: Integer;
                const AMax: Integer) : Boolean; Overload
function InRange(const AValue: Int64; const AMin: Int64;
                const AMax: Int64) : Boolean; Overload
function InRange(const AValue: Double; const AMin: Double;
                const AMax: Double) : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `InRange` returns `True` if `AValue` is in the range `AMin..AMax`. It returns `False` if `Value` lies outside the specified range.

See also: `EnsureRange` ([983](#))

**63.13.38 InterestRate**

Synopsis: Calculate the interest rate value of an investment

Declaration: 

```
function InterestRate(NPeriods: Integer; APayment: Float;
                    APresentValue: Float; AFutureValue: Float;
                    APaymentTime: TPaymentTime) : Float
```

Visibility: default

Description: `InterestRate` calculates the future value of an investment ( $q$ ) in the cash flow formula (see `CashFlowFunctions` ([967](#))). The function result is the interest rate value in case of a future value `AFutureValue` for an investment of a start value `APresentValue` (PV), where `APayment` (PMT) is invested for `NPeriods` ( $n$ ).

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: `FutureValue` ([985](#)), `NumberOfPeriods` ([1001](#)), `Payment` ([1002](#)), `PresentValue` ([1005](#)), `TPaymentTime` ([973](#)), `CashFlowFunctions` ([967](#))

**63.13.39 IntPower**

Synopsis: Return integer power.

Declaration: `function IntPower(base: Float; const exponent: Integer) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Intpower` returns `base` to the power `exponent`, where `exponent` is an integer value.

Errors: If `base` is zero and the exponent is negative, then an overflow error will occur.

See also: `power` ([1004](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the intpower function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Procedure** `DoIntpower (X : extended; Pow : Integer);`

**begin**

`writeln(X:8:4, '^', Pow:2, ' = ', intpower(X,pow):8:4);`  
**end;**

**begin**

`dointpower(0.0,0);`  
`dointpower(1.0,0);`  
`dointpower(2.0,5);`  
`dointpower(4.0,3);`  
`dointpower(2.0,-1);`  
`dointpower(2.0,-2);`  
`dointpower(-2.0,4);`  
`dointpower(-4.0,3);`

**end.**

---

**63.13.40 IsInfinite**

Synopsis: Check whether value is infinite

Declaration: `function IsInfinite(const d: Single) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsInfinite(const d: Double) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsInfinite(const d: Extended) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsInfinite` returns `True` if the double `d` contains the infinite value.

See also: `IsZero` ([990](#)), `IsInfinite` ([989](#))

**63.13.41 IsNan**

Synopsis: Check whether value is Not a Number

```
Declaration: function IsNan(const d: Single) : Boolean; Overload
            function IsNan(const d: Double) : Boolean; Overload
            function IsNan(const d: Extended) : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsNaN` returns `True` if the double `d` contains Not A Number (a value which cannot be represented correctly in double format).

See also: [IsZero \(990\)](#), [IsInfinite \(989\)](#)

### 63.13.42 IsZero

Synopsis: Check whether value is zero

```

Declaration: function IsZero(const A: Single; Epsilon: Single) : Boolean;   Overload
              function IsZero(const A: Single) : Boolean;   Overload
              function IsZero(const A: Double; Epsilon: Double) : Boolean;   Overload
              function IsZero(const A: Double) : Boolean;   Overload
              function IsZero(const A: Extended; Epsilon: Extended) : Boolean
                  ;   Overload
              function IsZero(const A: Extended) : Boolean;   Overload

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** IsZero checks whether the float value A is zero, up to a precision of Epsilon. It returns True if Abs(A) is less than Epsilon.

The default value for `Epsilon` depends on the type of the argument: it is 1E-4 for `Single`, 1E-12 for `Double` and 1E-16 for `extended`.

See also: [IsNan \(989\)](#), [IsInfinite \(989\)](#), [SameValue \(1008\)](#)

### 63.13.43 Ldexp

Synopsis: Return (2 to the power p) times x

**Declaration:** `function Ldexp(x: Float; const p: Integer) : Float`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Ldexp` returns (2 to the power `p`) times `x`.

Errors: None.

See also: [lnxp1 \(991\)](#), [log10 \(991\)](#), [log2 \(992\)](#), [logn \(992\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex19.pp

---

**Program** Example19;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Idexp function. }
```

**Uses** `math`:

```
begin
  writeln(ldexp(2,4):8:4);
  writeln(ldexp(0.5,3):8:4);
end.
```

**63.13.44 LnXP1**

Synopsis: Return natural logarithm of 1+X

Declaration: `function LnXP1(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Lnxp1` returns the natural logarithm of 1+X. The result is more precise for small values of x. x should be larger than -1.

Errors: If  $x \leq -1$  then an `EInvalidArgument` exception will be raised.

See also: `ldexp` (990), `log10` (991), `log2` (992), `logn` (992)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex20.pp`

**Program** `Example20`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the lnxp1 function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`writeln(lnxp1(0));`  
`writeln(lnxp1(0.5));`  
`writeln(lnxp1(1));`

**end.**

**63.13.45 Log10**

Synopsis: Return 10-Based logarithm.

Declaration: `function Log10(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Log10` returns the 10-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If x is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (990), `lnxp1` (991), `log2` (992), `logn` (992)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex21.pp`

**Program** `Example21`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the log10 function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`Writeln(Log10(10):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(100):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(1000):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(1):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(0.1):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(0.01):8:4);`  
`Writeln(Log10(0.001):8:4);`

**end.**



**63.13.46 Log2**

Synopsis: Return 2-based logarithm

Declaration: `function Log2(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Log2` returns the 2-base logarithm of `X`.

Errors: If `x` is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (990), `lnxp1` (991), `log10` (991), `logn` (992)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** `Example22;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the log2 function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

```

  WriteLn(Log2(2):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(4):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(8):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(1):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(0.5):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(0.25):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log2(0.125):8:4);

```

**end.**

---

**63.13.47 LogN**

Synopsis: Return N-based logarithm.

Declaration: `function LogN(n: Float; x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Logn` returns the n-base logarithm of `X`.

Errors: If `x` is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` (990), `lnxp1` (991), `log10` (991), `log2` (992)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `Example23;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the logn function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

```

  WriteLn(Logn(3,4):8:4);
  WriteLn(Logn(2,4):8:4);
  WriteLn(Logn(6,9):8:4);
  WriteLn(Logn(exp(1),exp(1)):8:4);

```

```

Writeln (Logn(0.5,1):8:4);
Writeln (Logn(0.25,3):8:4);
Writeln (Logn(0.125,5):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.48 Max

Synopsis: Return largest of 2 values

Declaration: `function Max(a: Integer; b: Integer) : Integer; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Int64; b: Int64) : Int64; Overload`  
`function Max(a: QWord; b: QWord) : QWord; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Single; b: Single) : Single; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Double; b: Double) : Double; Overload`  
`function Max(a: Extended; b: Extended) : Extended; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Max` returns the maximum of `Int1` and `Int2`.

Errors: None.

See also: [min \(997\)](#), [maxIntValue \(993\)](#), [maxvalue \(994\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex24.pp

---

**Program** Example24;

*{ Program to demonstrate the max function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

A,B : Cardinal;

**begin**

A:=1;b:=2;

**writeln** (max(a,b));

**end.**

---

### 63.13.49 MaxIntValue

Synopsis: Return largest element in integer array

Declaration: `function MaxIntValue(const Data: Array of Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `MaxIntValue` returns the largest integer out of the `Data` array.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use the [maxvalue \(994\)](#) function instead.

Errors: None.

See also: [maxvalue \(994\)](#), [minvalue \(998\)](#), [minIntValue \(997\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex25.pp

---

**Program** Example25;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MaxIntValue function. }*

*{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }*  
*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**Uses** math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] **of** Integer;

**Var**

I : Integer;  
 ExArray : TExArray;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

**for** I:=**low**(exarray) **to high**(exarray) **do**

    ExArray[I]:=**Random**(I)-**Random**(100);

**WriteLn**(MaxIntValue(ExArray));

**end.**

---

### 63.13.50 MaxValue

Synopsis: Return largest value in array

**Declaration:** function MaxValue(const data: Array of Single) : Single  
 function MaxValue(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Single  
 function MaxValue(const data: Array of Double) : Double  
 function MaxValue(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Double  
 function MaxValue(const data: Array of Extended) : Extended  
 function MaxValue(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Extended  
 function MaxValue(const data: Array of Integer) : Integer  
 function MaxValue(const data: PInteger; const N: Integer) : Integer

Visibility: default

**Description:** Maxvalue returns the largest value in the data array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of N integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: maxIntValue ([993](#)), minvalue ([998](#)), minIntValue ([997](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex26.pp

---

**program** Example26;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MaxValue function. }*

*{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }*  
*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**uses** math;

---

```

var i:1..100;
    f_array:array[1..100] of Float;
    i_array:array[1..100] of Integer;
    Pf_array:Pfloat;
    Pi_array:Pinteger;

begin
    randomize;

    Pf_array:=@f_array[1];
    Pi_array:=@i_array[1];

    for i:=low(f_array) to high(f_array) do
        f_array[i]:=(random-random)*100;
    for i:=low(i_array) to high(i_array) do
        i_array[i]:=random(1)-random(100);

    Writeln('Max Float      : ',MaxValue(f_array):8:4);
    Writeln('Max Float   (b) : ',MaxValue(Pf_array,100):8:4);
    Writeln('Max Integer    : ',MaxValue(i_array):8);
    Writeln('Max Integer (b) : ',MaxValue(Pi_array,100):8);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.51 Mean

Synopsis: Return mean value of array

Declaration: function Mean(const data: Array of Single) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PSingle; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: Array of Double) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PDouble; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: Array of Extended) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PExtended; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PInt64; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: Array of Int64) : Float  
function Mean(const data: PInteger; const N: LongInt) : Float  
function Mean(const data: Array of Integer) : Float

Visibility: default

Description: Mean returns the average value of data. The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: meanandstddev ([996](#)), momentskewkurtosis ([999](#)), sum ([1012](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex27.pp

---

**Program** Example27;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Mean function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
Uses math;

```

**Type**

---

```

TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln ( 'Max      : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Min      : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Mean     : ',Mean(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln ( 'Mean (b) : ',Mean(PExtended(@ExArray[1]),100):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.52 MeanAndStdDev

Synopsis: Return mean and standard deviation of array

Declaration: `procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: Array of Single; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: PSingle; const N: LongInt; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: Array of Double; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: PDouble; const N: LongInt; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: Array of Extended; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`  
`procedure MeanAndStdDev(const data: PExtended; const N: LongInt; var mean: Float; var stddev: Float)`

Visibility: default

Description: `meanandstddev` calculates the mean and standard deviation of data and returns the result in `mean` and `stddev`, respectively. `Stddev` is zero if there is only one value. The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` ([995](#)), `sum` ([1012](#)), `sumofsquares` ([1013](#)), `momentskewkurtosis` ([999](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex28.pp`

---

**Program** Example28;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Meanandstddev function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}

```

**Uses** math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] **of** Extended;

**Var**

```

I : Integer;
ExArray : TExArray;
Mean,stddev : Extended;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
  MeanAndStdDev(ExArray,Mean,StdDev);
  Writeln('Mean      : ',Mean:8:4);
  Writeln('StdDev     : ',StdDev:8:4);
  MeanAndStdDev(@ExArray[1],100,Mean,StdDev);
  Writeln('Mean      (b) : ',Mean:8:4);
  Writeln('StdDev     (b) : ',StdDev:8:4);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.53 Min

Synopsis: Return smallest of two values.

Declaration: function Min(a: Integer; b: Integer) : Integer; Overload  
 function Min(a: Int64; b: Int64) : Int64; Overload  
 function Min(a: QWord; b: QWord) : QWord; Overload  
 function Min(a: Single; b: Single) : Single; Overload  
 function Min(a: Double; b: Double) : Double; Overload  
 function Min(a: Extended; b: Extended) : Extended; Overload

Visibility: default

Description: min returns the smallest value of Int1 and Int2;

Errors: None.

See also: max ([993](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex29.pp

---

**Program** Example29;

*{ Program to demonstrate the min function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

A,B : Cardinal;

**begin**

A:=1;b:=2;

  writeln(min(a,b));

**end.**

---

### 63.13.54 MinIntValue

Synopsis: Return smallest value in integer array

Declaration: function MinIntValue(const Data: Array of Integer) : Integer

Visibility: default

Description: `MinIntValue` returns the smallest value in the `Data` array.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use `minvalue` instead.

Errors: None

See also: `minvalue` (998), `maxIntValue` (993), `maxvalue` (994)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex30.pp`

---

**Program** `Example30`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MinIntValue function. }*

*{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }*  
*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`  
`ExArray : TExArray;`

**begin**

**Randomize**;

**for** `I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray)` **do**  
`ExArray[i]:=Random(I)-Random(100);`

**WriteLn**(`MinIntValue(ExArray)`);

**end.**

---

### 63.13.55 MinValue

Synopsis: Return smallest value in array

**Declaration:**

```
function MinValue(const data: Array of Single) : Single
function MinValue(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Single
function MinValue(const data: Array of Double) : Double
function MinValue(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Double
function MinValue(const data: Array of Extended) : Extended
function MinValue(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Extended
function MinValue(const data: Array of Integer) : Integer
function MinValue(const Data: PInteger; const N: Integer) : Integer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `Minvalue` returns the smallest value in the `data` array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of `N` integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: `maxIntValue` (993), `maxvalue` (994), `minIntValue` (997)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex31.pp

---

```

program Example31 ;

  { Program to demonstrate the MinValue function. }

  { Make sure integer is 32 bit }
  {$mode objfpc}

uses math;

var i:1..100;
    f_array:array[1..100] of Float;
    i_array:array[1..100] of Integer;
    Pf_array:Pfloat;
    Pi_array:Pinteger;

begin
  randomize;

  Pf_array:=@f_array[1];
  Pi_array:=@i_array[1];

  for i:=low(f_array) to high(f_array) do
    f_array[i]:=(random-random)*100;
  for i:=low(i_array) to high(i_array) do
    i_array[i]:=random(1)-random(100);

  Writeln( 'Min Float      : ',MinValue(f_array):8:4);
  Writeln( 'Min Float   (b) : ',MinValue(Pf_array,100):8:4);
  Writeln( 'Min Integer   : ',MinValue(i_array):8);
  Writeln( 'Min Integer (b) : ',MinValue(Pi_array,100):8);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.56 modulus(Float,Float):Float

Synopsis: Floating point modulo

Declaration: `operator mod(const a: Float; const b: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: Modulus is the floating-point equivalent of the modulo operation `a mod b`. It returns the result of

`a-b * Int(a/b)`

Errors: `b` may not be zero, but no check is performed.

See also: [FMod \(984\)](#)

### 63.13.57 MomentSkewKurtosis

Synopsis: Return 4 first moments of distribution

Declaration: `procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: Array of Single;`  
   `out m1: Float; out m2: Float;`  
   `out m3: Float; out m4: Float;`



```

                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: Array of Double;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: Array of Extended;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)
procedure MomentSkewKurtosis(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer;
                                out m1: Float; out m2: Float;
                                out m3: Float; out m4: Float;
                                out skew: Float; out kurtosis: Float)

```

Visibility: default

Description: `momentskewkurtosis` calculates the 4 first moments of the distribution of value in data and returns them in `m1,m2,m3` and `m4`, as well as the skew and kurtosis.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` ([995](#)), `meanandstddev` ([996](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex32.pp`

---

```

program Example32;

{ Program to demonstrate the momentskewkurtosis function. }

uses math;

var distarray: array[1..1000] of float;
    l: longint;
    m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis: float;

begin
    randomize;
    for l:=low(distarray) to high(distarray) do
        distarray[l]:=random;
    momentskewkurtosis(DistArray,m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis);

    Writeln ('1st moment : ',m1:8:6);
    Writeln ('2nd moment : ',m2:8:6);
    Writeln ('3rd moment : ',m3:8:6);
    Writeln ('4th moment : ',m4:8:6);
    Writeln ('Skew      : ',skew:8:6);
    Writeln ('kurtosis   : ',kurtosis:8:6);
end.

```

---

**63.13.58 Norm**

Synopsis: Return Euclidean norm

Declaration: `function Norm(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function Norm(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Norm` calculates the Euclidean norm of the array of data. This equals `sqrt (sumofsquares (data) )`.

The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `sumofsquares` ([1013](#))

Listing: `./mathex/ex33.pp`

---

```
program Example33;

{ Program to demonstrate the norm function. }

uses math;

var v:array[1..10] of Float;
    l:1..10;

begin
  for l:=low(v) to high(v) do
    v[l]:=random;
  writeln (norm(v));
end.
```

---

**63.13.59 NumberOfPeriods**

Synopsis: Calculate the number of periods for an investment

Declaration: `function NumberOfPeriods(ARate: Float; APayment: Float;`  
`APresentValue: Float; AFutureValue: Float;`  
`APaymentTime: TPaymentTime) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `NumberOfPeriods` calculates the number of periods (n) needed to obtain future value of an investment in the cash flow formula (see `CashFlowFunctions` ([967](#))). The function result is the number of periods a payment `APayment` (PMT) must be paid in order to obtain a future value `AFutureValue` for an investment of a start value `APresentValue` (PV), where `APayment` (PMT) is invested at a rate `ARate` (q).

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` `NumberOfPeriods` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: `FutureValue` ([985](#)), `InterestRate` ([988](#)), `Payment` ([1002](#)), `PresentValue` ([1005](#)), `TPaymentTime` ([973](#)), `CashFlowFunctions` ([967](#))

**63.13.60 Payment**

Synopsis: Calculate the payment for an investment

Declaration: `function Payment (ARate: Float; NPeriods: Integer; APresentValue: Float; AFutureValue: Float; APaymentTime: TPaymentTime) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Payment` calculates the amount that must be paid (PMT) during number of periods (n) needed to obtain future value of an investment in the cash flow formula (see `CashFlowFunctions` (967)). The function result is the amount (PMT) that must be paid in order to obtain a future value `AFutureValue` for an investment of a start value `APresentValue` (PV), where the amount must be paid `NPeriods` (PMT) and the interest rate is `ARate` (q).

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` `NumberOfPeriods` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: `FutureValue` (985), `InterestRate` (988), `NumberOfPeriods` (1001), `PresentValue` (1005), `TPaymentTime` (973), `CashFlowFunctions` (967)

**63.13.61 PopnStdDev**

Synopsis: Return Population standard deviation

Declaration: `function PopnStdDev(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function PopnStdDev(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function PopnStdDev(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function PopnStdDev(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function PopnStdDev(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function PopnStdDev(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Popnstddev` returns the square root of the population variance of the values in the `Data` array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `popnvariance` (1003), `mean` (995), `meanandstddev` (996), `stddev` (1011), `momentskewkurtosis` (999)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex35.pp`

**Program** `Example35;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the PopnStdDev function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** `Math;`

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`

---

```

ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln('Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Pop. stddev.    : ',PopnStdDev(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Pop. stddev. (b) : ',PopnStdDev(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.62 PopnVariance

Synopsis: Return population variance

Declaration: function PopnVariance(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float  
 function PopnVariance(const data: Array of Single) : Float  
 function PopnVariance(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float  
 function PopnVariance(const data: Array of Double) : Float  
 function PopnVariance(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float  
 function PopnVariance(const data: Array of Extended) : Float

Visibility: default

Description: Popnvariance the population variance of the values in the Data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: popnstddev ([1002](#)), mean ([995](#)), meanandstddev ([996](#)), stddev ([1011](#)), momentskewkurtosis ([999](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the PopnVariance function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}

```

**Uses** math;

**Var**

```

  I : Integer;
  ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;

```

**begin**

```

  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
  Writeln('Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Pop. var.       : ',PopnVariance(ExArray):8:4);
  Writeln('Pop. var. (b) : ',PopnVariance(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
end.

```

---

**63.13.63 Power**

Synopsis: Return real power.

Declaration: `function Power(base: Float; exponent: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `power` raises `base` to the power `power`. This is equivalent to `exp (power*ln (base) )`. Therefore `base` should be non-negative.

Errors: Any number of floating point math exceptions may be raised, if they are not masked by `SetExceptionMask` (1009).

See also: `intpower` (989)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `Example34`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the power function. }*

**Uses** `Math`;

**procedure** `dopower(x,y : float);`

**begin**

`writeln(x:8:6, '^', y:8:6, ' = ', power(x,y):8:6)`  
**end**;

**begin**

`dopower(2,2);`  
`dopower(2,-2);`  
`dopower(2,0.0);`  
**end**.

---

**63.13.64 power(Float,Float):Float**

Synopsis: Raise base to the power exponent

Declaration: `operator *(bas: Float; expo: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Power` raises `base` to the power `exponent`, i.e., it calculates  $\text{base}^{\text{exponent}}$ .

**63.13.65 power(Int64,Int64):Int64**

Synopsis: Raise base to the power exponent

Declaration: `operator *(bas: Int64; expo: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Power` raises `base` to the power `exponent`, i.e., it calculates  $\text{base}^{\text{exponent}}$ .

### 63.13.66 PresentValue

Synopsis: Calculate the present value given the future value of an investment.

Declaration: `function PresentValue (ARate: Float; NPeriods: Integer; APayment: Float;  
AFutureValue: Float; APaymentTime: TPaymentTime)  
: Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `PresentValue` calculates the present (start) value of an investment (PV) in the cash flow formula (see `CashFlowFunctions` (967)). The function result is the start value of an investment, when the future value is `AFutureValue` (FV) and `APayment` (PMT) is invested for `NPeriods` (n) at the rate of `ARate` (q) per period.

The `APaymentTime` parameter determines whether the investment (payment) is an ordinary annuity or an annuity due: `ptEndOfPeriod` must be used if payments are at the end of each period. If the payments are at the beginning of the periode, `ptStartOfPeriod` must be used.

See also: `FutureValue` (985), `InterestRate` (988), `NumberOfPeriods` (1001), `Payment` (1002), `TPaymentTime` (973), `CashFlowFunctions` (967)

### 63.13.67 RadToCycle

Synopsis: Convert radians angle to cycle angle

Declaration: `function RadToCycle (rad: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `RadtoCycle` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in cycles.  
(1 cycle equals 2 pi radians)

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` (982), `degtorad` (982), `radtodeg` (1005), `radtograd` (1006), `cycletorad` (981)

Listing: `./mathex/ex37.pp`

Program `Example37`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the radtoCycle function. }
```

Uses `math`;

begin

```
  writeln ( radtoCycle (2*pi) :8:6 );
```

```
  writeln ( radtoCycle (pi) :8:6 );
```

```
  writeln ( radtoCycle (pi/2) :8:6 );
```

end.

### 63.13.68 RadToDeg

Synopsis: Convert radians angle to degrees angle

Declaration: `function RadToDeg (rad: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Radtodeg` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in degrees. (180 degrees equals pi radians)

**Errors:** None.

See also: `degtograd` ([982](#)), `degtorad` ([982](#)), `radtocycle` ([1005](#)), `radtoegrad` ([1006](#)), `cycletorad` ([981](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex38.pp`

---

**Program** `Example38`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtodeg function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`writeln (radtodeg (2*pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtodeg (pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtodeg (pi/2):8:6);`

**end.**

---

### 63.13.69 RadToGrad

**Synopsis:** Convert radians angle to grads angle

**Declaration:** `function RadToGrad(rad: Float) : Float`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Radtodeg` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in grads. (200 grads equals pi radians)

**Errors:** None.

See also: `degtograd` ([982](#)), `degtorad` ([982](#)), `radtocycle` ([1005](#)), `radtodeg` ([1005](#)), `cycletorad` ([981](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** `Example39`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtoegrad function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`writeln (radtoegrad (2*pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtoegrad (pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtoegrad (pi/2):8:6);`

**end.**

---

### 63.13.70 RandG

**Synopsis:** Return gaussian distributed random number.

**Declaration:** `function RandG(mean: Float; stddev: Float) : Float`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `randg` returns a random number which - when produced in large quantities - has a Gaussian distribution with mean `mean` and standarddeviation `stddev`.

Errors: None.

See also: [mean \(995\)](#), [stddev \(1011\)](#), [meanandstddev \(996\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex40.pp

---

**Program Example40 :**

```
{ Program to demonstrate the randg function. }
```

**Uses Math :**

**Var**

```

I : Integer;
ExArray : Array[1..10000] of Float;
Mean,stddev : Float;

```

**begin**

```

Randomize;
for i:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[i]:=Randg(1,0.2);
MeanAndStdDev(ExArray,Mean,StdDev);
WriteIn( 'Mean      : ',Mean:8:4);
WriteIn( 'StdDev    : ',StdDev:8:4);

```

### 63.13.71 RandomFrom

**Synopsis:** Return a random element of an array of numbers

```

Declaration: function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array of Double) : Double; Overload
                function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array of Integer) : Integer
                                ; Overload
                function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array of Int64) : Int64; Overload

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** RandomFrom returns a random element from the array AValues. The return value has the same type as the type of the array elements.

See also: `#rtl.system.Random` (1488), `RandomRange` (1007)

### 63.13.72 RandomRange

### Synopsis: Return a random number in a range

```
Declaration: function RandomRange(const aFrom: Integer; const aTo: Integer) : Integer
            function RandomRange(const aFrom: Int64; const aTo: Int64) : Int64
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RandomRange` returns a random value in the range `AFrom` to `ATo`. `AFrom` and `ATo` do not need to be in increasing order. The upper border is not included in the generated value, but the lower border is.

See also: `#rtl.system.Random` (1488), `RandomFrom` (1007)



### 63.13.73 RoundTo

Synopsis: Round to the specified number of digits

Declaration: `function RoundTo(const AValue: Double; const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Double`  
`function RoundTo(const AValue: Extended; const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Extended`  
`function RoundTo(const AValue: Single; const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Single`

Visibility: default

Description: `RoundTo` rounds the specified float `AValue` to the specified number of digits and returns the result. This result is accurate to "10 to the power `Digits`". It uses the standard `Round` function for this.

Errors: An exception may occur if the value `AValue` is not inside a valid integer (or `Int64`) range.

See also: `TRoundToRange` (973), `SimpleRoundTo` (1010), `SetRoundMode` (1009), `TFPURoundingMode` (973)

### 63.13.74 SameValue

Synopsis: Check whether 2 float values are the same

Declaration: `function SameValue(const A: Extended; const B: Extended) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Double; const B: Double) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Single; const B: Single) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Extended; const B: Extended; Epsilon: Extended) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Double; const B: Double; Epsilon: Double) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function SameValue(const A: Single; const B: Single; Epsilon: Single) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameValue` returns `True` if the floating-point values `A` and `B` are the same, i.e. whether the absolute value of their difference is smaller than `Epsilon`. If their difference is larger, then `False` is returned.

If unspecified, the default value for `Epsilon` is 0.0.

See also: `MinFloat` (972), `IsZero` (990)

### 63.13.75 Sec

Synopsis: Alias for `secant`

Declaration: `function Sec(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `sec` is an alias for the `secant` (1009) function.

See also: `secant` (1009)

### 63.13.76 Secant

Synopsis: Calculate secant

Declaration: `function Secant (x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Secant` calculates the secant ( $1/\cos(x)$ ) of its argument `x`.

Errors: If 90 or 270 degrees is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: cosecant ([979](#))

### 63.13.77 SetExceptionMask

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

Declaration: `function SetExceptionMask(const Mask: TFPUExceptionMask)  
: TFPUExceptionMask`

Visibility: default

Description: Set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

### 63.13.78 SetPrecisionMode

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

Declaration: `function SetPrecisionMode(const Precision: TFPUPrecisionMode)  
: TFPUPrecisionMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Set the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

### 63.13.79 SetRoundMode

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

Declaration: `function SetRoundMode(const RoundMode: TFPUroundingMode)  
: TFPUroundingMode`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetRoundMode` sets the floating point unit rounding mode.

**rmNearestRound** to nearest integer

**rmDownRound** to biggest integer smaller than value.

**rmUpRound** to smallest integer larger than value

**rmTruncate** Cut off fractional part

See also: `GetRoundMode` ([986](#)), `TFPUroundingMode` ([973](#))

### 63.13.80 Sign

Synopsis: Return sign of argument

Declaration: `function Sign(const AValue: Integer) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Int64) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Single) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Double) : TValueSign; Overload`  
`function Sign(const AValue: Extended) : TValueSign; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sign` returns the sign of it's argument, which can be an Integer, 64 bit integer, or a double. The returned value is an integer which is -1, 0 or 1, and can be used to do further calculations with.

### 63.13.81 SimpleRoundTo

Synopsis: Round to the specified number of digits (rounding up if needed)

Declaration: `function SimpleRoundTo(const AValue: Single;`  
`const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Single`  
`function SimpleRoundTo(const AValue: Double;`  
`const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Double`  
`function SimpleRoundTo(const AValue: Extended;`  
`const Digits: TRoundToRange) : Extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `SimpleRoundTo` rounds the specified float `AValue` to the specified number of digits using symmetric arithmetic rounding (rounding up for positive or down for negative) and returns the result. This result is accurate to "10 to the power `Digits`". It uses the standard `Round` function for this.

Errors: An exception may occur if the value `AValue` is not inside a valid integer (or `Int64`) range.

See also: `TRoundToRange` ([973](#)), `RoundTo` ([1008](#))

### 63.13.82 SinCos

Synopsis: Return sine and cosine of argument

Declaration: `procedure SinCos(theta: single; out sinus: single; out cosinus: single)`  
`procedure SinCos(theta: Double; out sinus: Double; out cosinus: Double)`  
`procedure SinCos(theta: extended; out sinus: extended;`  
`out cosinus: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SinCos` calculates the sine and cosine of the angle `theta`, and returns the result in `sinus` and `cosinus`.

On Intel hardware, This calculation will be faster than making 2 calls to calculate the sine and cosine separately.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcsin` ([975](#)), `arccos` ([974](#))

Listing: `./mathex/ex41.pp`

---

```

Program Example41;

{ Program to demonstrate the sincos function. }

Uses math;

Procedure dosincos(Angle : Float);

Var
  Sine, Cosine : Float;

begin
  sincos(angle, sine, cosine);
  Write( 'Angle : ', Angle:8:6);
  Write( ' Sine : ', sine:8:6);
  Write( ' Cosine : ', cosine:8:6);
end;

begin
  dosincos(pi);
  dosincos(pi/2);
  dosincos(pi/3);
  dosincos(pi/4);
  dosincos(pi/6);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.83 SinH

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function SinH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sinh` returns the hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`.

See also: `cosh` ([980](#)), `arsinh` ([977](#)), `tanh` ([1016](#)), `artanh` ([977](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex42.pp`

---

```

Program Example42;

{ Program to demonstrate the sinh function. }

Uses math;

begin
  writeln(sinh(0));
  writeln(sinh(1));
  writeln(sinh(-1));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.84 StdDev

Synopsis: Return standard deviation of data

**Declaration:** `function StdDev(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function StdDev(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Stddev returns the standard deviation of the values in Data. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: mean (995), meanandstddev (996), variance (1017), totalvariance (1016)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the stddev function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** Math;

**Var**

```
l : Integer;
ExArray : Array[1..10000] of Float;
```

**begin**

```
  Randomize;
```

```
  for l:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
```

```
    ExArray[l]:=Randg(1,0.2);
```

```
  WriteIn('StdDev      : ',StdDev(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  WriteIn('StdDev (b) : ',StdDev(@ExArray[1],10000):8:4);
```

```
end.
```

---

### 63.13.85 Sum

**Synopsis:** Return sum of values

**Declaration:** `function Sum(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: PSingle; const N: LongInt) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: PDouble; const N: LongInt) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function Sum(const data: PExtended; const N: LongInt) : Float`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Sum returns the sum of the values in the data array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `sumofsquares` ([1013](#)), `sumsandsquares` ([1014](#)), `totalvariance` ([1016](#)), `variance` ([1017](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex44.pp`

**Program** `Example44`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Sum function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** `math`;

**Var**

```
l : 1..100;
ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;
```

**begin**

**Randomize**;

```
for l:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
```

```
  ExArray[l]:= (Random-Random)*100;
```

```
WriteIn ( 'Max      : ', MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
WriteIn ( 'Min      : ', MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
WriteIn ( 'Sum      : ', Sum(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
WriteIn ( 'Sum (b)  : ', Sum(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
```

**end.**

### 63.13.86 SumInt

**Synopsis:** Return the sum of an array of integers

**Declaration:**

```
function SumInt(const data: PInt64; const N: LongInt) : Int64
function SumInt(const data: Array of Int64) : Int64
function SumInt(const data: PInteger; const N: LongInt) : Int64
function SumInt(const data: Array of Integer) : Int64
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SumInt` returns the sum of the N integers in the Data array, where this can be an open array or a pointer to an array.

**Errors:** An overflow may occur.

### 63.13.87 SumOfSquares

**Synopsis:** Return sum of squares of values

**Declaration:**

```
function SumOfSquares(const data: Array of Single) : Float
function SumOfSquares(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float
function SumOfSquares(const data: Array of Double) : Float
function SumOfSquares(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float
function SumOfSquares(const data: Array of Extended) : Float
function SumOfSquares(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `sumofsquares` returns the sum of the squares of the values in the data array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: [sum \(1012\)](#), [sumsandsquares \(1014\)](#), [totalvariance \(1016\)](#), [variance \(1017\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex45.pp

---

**Program** Example45;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** math;

**Var**

```
  I : 1..100;
  ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;
```

**begin**

```
  Randomize;
```

```
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
```

```
    ExArray[I]:= (Random-Random)*100;
```

```
  Writeln('Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  Writeln('Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  Writeln('Sum squares    : ',SumOfSquares(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
  Writeln('Sum squares (b) : ',SumOfSquares(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
```

```
end.
```

---

### 63.13.88 SumsAndSquares

Synopsis: Return sum and sum of squares of values.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: Array of Single; var sum: Float;
                        var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer;
                        var sum: Float; var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: Array of Double; var sum: Float;
                        var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer;
                        var sum: Float; var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: Array of Extended; var sum: Float;
                        var sumofsquares: Float)
procedure SumsAndSquares(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer;
                        var sum: Float; var sumofsquares: Float)
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** sumsandsquares calculates the sum of the values and the sum of the squares of the values in the data array and returns the results in sum and sumofsquares.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: [sum \(1012\)](#), [sumofsquares \(1013\)](#), [totalvariance \(1016\)](#), [variance \(1017\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex46.pp

---

**Program** Example45;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** math;

**Var**

```
l : 1..100;
ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;
s,ss : float;
```

**begin**

**Randomize**;

```
for l:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
```

```
  ExArray[l]:=(Random-Random)*100;
```

```
WriteIn( 'Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
WriteIn( 'Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
```

```
SumsAndSquares(ExArray,S,SS);
```

```
WriteIn( 'Sum           : ',S:8:4);
```

```
WriteIn( 'Sum squares    : ',SS:8:4);
```

```
SumsAndSquares(@ExArray[1],100,S,SS);
```

```
WriteIn( 'Sum (b)       : ',S:8:4);
```

```
WriteIn( 'Sum squares (b) : ',SS:8:4);
```

**end.**

---

### 63.13.89 Tan

Synopsis: Return tangent

Declaration: `function Tan(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: Tan returns the tangent of x. The argument x must be in radians.

Errors: If x (normalized) is pi/2 or 3pi/2 then an overflow will occur.

See also: tanh ([1016](#)), arcsin ([975](#)), sincos ([1010](#)), arccos ([974](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex47.pp

---

**Program** Example47;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Tan function. }
```

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** DoTan(Angle : Float);

**begin**

```
Write( 'Angle : ',RadToDeg(Angle):8:6);
```

```
WriteIn( 'Tangent : ',Tan(Angle):8:6);
```

**end**;

**begin**



---

```

DoTan(0);
DoTan(Pi);
DoTan(Pi/3);
DoTan(Pi/4);
DoTan(Pi/6);
end.

```

---

### 63.13.90 TanH

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function TanH(x: Float) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: Tanh returns the hyperbolic tangent of x.

Errors: None.

See also: arcsin ([975](#)), sincos ([1010](#)), arccos ([974](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Tanh function. }*

**Uses** math;

```

begin
  writeln(tanh(0));
  writeln(tanh(1));
  writeln(tanh(-1));
end.

```

---

### 63.13.91 TotalVariance

Synopsis: Return total variance of values

Declaration: `function TotalVariance(const data: Array of Single) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: Array of Double) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: Array of Extended) : Float`  
`function TotalVariance(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float`

Visibility: default

Description: TotalVariance returns the total variance of the values in the data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: variance ([1017](#)), stddev ([1011](#)), mean ([995](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex49.pp

**Program** Example49;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the TotalVariance function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] of Float;

**Var**

I : Integer;  
ExArray : TExArray;  
TV : float;

**begin**

```
Randomize;
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
TV:=TotalVariance(ExArray);
WriteLn('Total variance      : ',TV:8:4);
TV:=TotalVariance(@ExArray[1],100);
WriteLn('Total Variance (b) : ',TV:8:4);
```

**end.**

### 63.13.92 Variance

Synopsis: Return variance of values

**Declaration:**

```
function Variance(const data: Array of Single) : Float
function Variance(const data: PSingle; const N: Integer) : Float
function Variance(const data: Array of Double) : Float
function Variance(const data: PDouble; const N: Integer) : Float
function Variance(const data: Array of Extended) : Float
function Variance(const data: PExtended; const N: Integer) : Float
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** Variance returns the variance of the values in the data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: totalvariance ([1016](#)), stddev ([1011](#)), mean ([995](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex50.pp

**Program** Example50;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Variance function. }
{ @ should return typed pointer }
{$T+}
```

**Uses** math;

**Var**

```

I : 1..100;
ExArray : Array[1..100] of Float;
V : float;

```

**begin**

```

  Randomize;
  for I:=low(ExArray) to high(ExArray) do
    ExArray[I] := (Random-Random)*100;
  V:=Variance(ExArray);
  WriteLn( 'Variance      : ',V:8:4);
  V:=Variance(@ExArray[1],100);
  WriteLn( 'Variance (b) : ',V:8:4);

```

**end.**

---

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex51.pp

---

**Program** Example51;

```

{
  Program to demonstrate the Variance function.
  It demonstrates the absence of large errors in the calculation.
}

```

**Uses** math;

**const**

```

  Size = 1000000;
```

**var**

```

dataS: array of Single;
dataD: array of Double;
dataE: array of Extended;
i,n: longint;

```

**begin**

```

  WriteLn( 'Each run should return a value near unity. ');
  WriteLn( 'Single: ');
  SetLength( dataS, Size );
  for n := 1 to 4 do
    begin
      for i := 0 to Size - 1 do
        begin
          dataS[i] := 10000000 + RandG(0,1);
        end;
      WriteLn( Math.Variance( dataS ):5:3 );
    end;

```

```

  WriteLn( 'Double: ');
  SetLength( dataD, Size );
  for n := 1 to 4 do
    begin
      for i := 0 to Size - 1 do
        begin
          dataD[i] := 10000000000000000 + RandG(0,1);
        end;
      WriteLn( Math.Variance( dataD ):5:3 );
    end;

```

```
end;  
  
WriteLn( 'Extended: ' );  
SetLength( dataE, Size );  
for n := 1 to 4 do  
begin  
  for i := 0 to Size - 1 do  
  begin  
    dataE[i] := 1000000000000000000 + RandG(0,1);  
  end;  
  WriteLn( Math.Variance( dataE ):5:3 );  
end;  
end.
```

---

## 63.14 EInvalidArgument

### 63.14.1 Description

Exception raised when invalid arguments are passed to a function.

## Chapter 64

# Reference for unit 'matrix'

### 64.1 Overview

The unit `matrix` is a unit that provides objects for the common two, three and four dimensional vectors matrices. These vectors and matrices are very common in computer graphics and are often implemented from scratch by programmers while every implementation provides exactly the same functionality.

It makes therefore sense to provide this functionality in the runtime library. This eliminates the need for programmers to reinvent the wheel and also allows libraries that use matrix operations to become more compatible.

The matrix unit does not provide n-dimensional matrices. The functionality needs of a general matrix unit varies from application to application; one can think of reduced memory usage tricks for matrices that only have data around the diagonal etc., desire for parallelization etc. etc. It is believed that programmers that do use n-dimensional matrices would not necessarily benefit from such a unit in the runtime library.

Design goals:

- Provide common dimensions, two three and four.
- Provide multiple floating point precisions, single, double, extended.
- Simple trivial binary representation; it is possible to typecast vectors into other implementations that use the same trivial representation.
- No dynamic memory management in the background. It must be possible to write expressions like `matrix A * B * C` without worrying about memory management.

Design decisions:

- Class object model is ruled out. The objects object model, without virtual methods, is suitable.
- Operator overloading is a good way to allow programmers to write matrix expressions.
- 3 dimensions \* 3 precision means 9 vector and 9 matrix objects. Macro's have been used in the source to take care of this.

## 64.2 Constants, types and variables

### 64.2.1 Types

`Array = Array[0..1,0..1] of Double`

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

`Array = Array[0..1,0..1] of extended`

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

`Array = Array[0..1,0..1] of single`

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

`Array = Array[0..2,0..2] of Double`

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

`Array = Array[0..2,0..2] of extended`

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

`Array = Array[0..2,0..2] of single`

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

`Array = Array[0..3,0..3] of Double`

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..3,0..3] of extended
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..3,0..3] of single
```

This is the matrix internal data for a matrix. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own matrix type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..1] of Double
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..1] of extended
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..1] of single
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..2] of Double
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..2] of extended
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..2] of single
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..3] of Double
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..3] of extended
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

```
Array = Array[0..3] of single
```

This is the vector internal data for a vector. It uses a simple array structure so data from other libraries that define their own vector type as a simple array structure can simply be moved to and from this data, or typecasted into it. As this is the only field in the object, the object itself can be used just as fine for typecasting purposes etc.

## 64.3 Procedures and functions

### 64.3.1 `add(Tmatrix2_double,Double):Tmatrix2_double`

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix2_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

### 64.3.2 `add(Tmatrix2_double,Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix2_double`

Synopsis: Add two two-dimensional double precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix2_double; const m2: Tmatrix2_double)  
: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional double precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.



**64.3.3 add(Tmatrix2\_extended,extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.4 add(Tmatrix2\_extended,Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add two two-dimensional extended precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix2_extended; const m2: Tmatrix2_extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional extended precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.3.5 add(Tmatrix2\_single,single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.6 add(Tmatrix2\_single,Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Add two two-dimensional single precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix2_single; const m2: Tmatrix2_single)  
: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional single precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.3.7 add(Tmatrix3\_double,Double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.8 add(Tmatrix3\_double,Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Add two three-dimensional double precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix3_double; const m2: Tmatrix3_double)  
: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional double precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.3.9 add(Tmatrix3\_extended,extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.10 add(Tmatrix3\_extended,Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add two three-dimensional extended precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix3_extended; const m2: Tmatrix3_extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional extended precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.3.11 add(Tmatrix3\_single,single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.12 add(Tmatrix3\_single,Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Add two three-dimensional single precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix3_single; const m2: Tmatrix3_single)  
: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional single precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.3.13 add(Tmatrix4\_double,Double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.14 add(Tmatrix4\_double,Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Add two four-dimensional double precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix4_double; const m2: Tmatrix4_double)  
: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional double precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.3.15 add(Tmatrix4\_extended,extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.16 add(Tmatrix4\_extended,Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add two four-dimensional extended precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended; const m2: Tmatrix4_extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional extended precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.3.17 add(Tmatrix4\_single,single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator +(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a matrix. The scalar is added to all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.18 add(Tmatrix4\_single,Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Add two four-dimensional single precision matrices together.

Declaration: `operator +(const m1: Tmatrix4_single; const m2: Tmatrix4_single)  
: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional single precision matrices together. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices added together.

**64.3.19 add(Tvector2\_double,Double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_double; y: Double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.20 add(Tvector2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Add two-dimensional double precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_double; const y: Tvector2_double)  
: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with double precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.21 add(Tvector2\_extended,extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_extended; y: extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.22 add(Tvector2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add two-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_extended; const y: Tvector2_extended)  
: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with extended precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.23 add(Tvector2\_single,single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_single; y: single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.24 add(Tvector2\_single,Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Add two-dimensional single precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector2_single; const y: Tvector2_single)  
: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.25 add(Tvector3\_double,Double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_double; y: Double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.26 add(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Add three-dimensional double precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional vectors with double precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.27 add(Tvector3\_extended,extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_extended; y: extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.28 add(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add three-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional vectors with extended precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.29 add(Tvector3\_single,single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_single; y: single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.30 add(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Add three-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two three-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.31 add(Tvector4\_double,Double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_double; y: Double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.32 add(Tvector4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Add four-dimensional double precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_double; const y: Tvector4_double)  
: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.33 add(Tvector4\_extended,extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_extended; y: extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.34 add(Tvector4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add four-dimensional extended precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_extended; const y: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two two-dimensional vectors with extended precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.35 add(Tvector4\_single,single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_single; y: single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add a scalar value to a vector. The scalar is added to all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.36 add(Tvector4\_single,Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Add four-dimensional single precision vectors together

Declaration: `operator +(const x: Tvector4_single; const y: Tvector4_single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to add two four-dimensional vectors with single precision together. The result is a new vector which consists of the sums of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.37 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.38 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.39 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.40 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.41 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.42 assign(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix4_double`



Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 64.3.43 `assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix4_extended`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

### 64.3.44 `assign(Tmatrix2_double):Tmatrix4_single`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

### 64.3.45 `assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_double`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional two with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 64.3.46 `assign(Tmatrix2_extended):Tmatrix2_single`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.47 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.48 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.49 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.50 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.51 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.52 assign(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0 and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.53 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**64.3.54 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.55 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.56 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.57 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.58 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.59 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.60 assign(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The extra fields are set to 0.

**64.3.61 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.62 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.63 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.64 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.65 assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.3.66 **assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix4_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

#### 64.3.67 **assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix4\_extended**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix4_extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

#### 64.3.68 **assign(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix4\_single**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix4_single`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.3.69 **assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix2\_double**

**Synopsis:** Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

**Declaration:** `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix2_double`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.70 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.71 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.72 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.73 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.74 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.75 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.76 assign(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.77 assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.78 assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix2_extended`



Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 64.3.79 **assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 64.3.80 **assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

### 64.3.81 **assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

### 64.3.82 **assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**64.3.83 assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.84 assign(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected.

**64.3.85 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.86 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.87 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost in the conversion.

**64.3.88 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.89 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.90 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.91 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.92 assign(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

### 64.3.93 **assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost in the conversion.

### 64.3.94 **assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 64.3.95 **assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost in the conversion.

### 64.3.96 **assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.97 assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.98 assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.99 assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**64.3.100 assign(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision matrix to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.101 assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 64.3.102 **assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 64.3.103 **assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 64.3.104 **assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

### 64.3.105 **assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.106 assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional matrix with single precision is expected. The surplus fields are thrown away.

**64.3.107 assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with double precision is expected.

**64.3.108 assign(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision matrix to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional matrix with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional matrix with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.109 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of double precision vector to extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with double precision values wherever an extended precision vector is expected.

**64.3.110 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of double precision vector to single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with double precision values wherever a single precision vector is expected, at the cost of loosing some precision.

**64.3.111 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.3.112 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.3.113 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.3.114 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.3.115 assign(Tvector2\_double):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector4_extended`



Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

### 64.3.116 `assign(Tvector2_double):Tvector4_single`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_double) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

### 64.3.117 `assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_double`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of extended precision vector to double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with extended precision values wherever a double precision vector is expected, at the cost of loosing some precision.

### 64.3.118 `assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector2_single`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of extended precision vector to single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with extended precision values wherever a single precision vector is expected, at the cost of loosing some precision.

### 64.3.119 `assign(Tvector2_extended):Tvector3_double`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.3.120 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.3.121 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.3.122 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.3.123 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.3.124 assign(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion and the third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.3.125 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of single precision vector to double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with single precision values wherever a double precision vector is expected.

**64.3.126 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of single precision vector to extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a vector with single precision values wherever an extended precision vector is expected.

**64.3.127 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.3.128 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.3.129 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is set to 0.0.

**64.3.130 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.3.131 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.3.132 assign(Tvector2\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of two-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector2_single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a two-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are set to 0.0.

**64.3.133 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**64.3.134 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**64.3.135 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.136 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.137 assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.3.138 **assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

#### 64.3.139 **assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

#### 64.3.140 **assign(Tvector3\_double):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_double) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0 and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

#### 64.3.141 **assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.142 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**64.3.143 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away and some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.144 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.145 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some precision is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.146 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.147 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**64.3.148 assign(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0 and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.149 assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

**64.3.150 assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector2_extended`



Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

### 64.3.151 `assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector2_single`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third dimension is thrown away.

### 64.3.152 `assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector3_double`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected.

### 64.3.153 `assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector3_extended`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

### 64.3.154 `assign(Tvector3_single):Tvector4_double`

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**64.3.155 assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**64.3.156 assign(Tvector3\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of three-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector3_single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a three-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is set to 0.

**64.3.157 assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.3.158 assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.3.159 assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 64.3.160 **assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

### 64.3.161 **assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

### 64.3.162 **assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

### 64.3.163 **assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.164 assign(Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional double precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_double) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with double precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.165 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.166 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.3.167 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.168 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.169 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.3.170 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away and some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.171 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.172 assign(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional extended precision vector to four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with extended precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. Some accuracy is lost because of the conversion.

**64.3.173 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.3.174 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.3.175 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a two-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The third and fourth dimensions are thrown away.

**64.3.176 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with double precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

**64.3.177 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

**64.3.178 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a three-dimensional vector with single precision is expected. The fourth dimension is thrown away.

**64.3.179 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with double precision is expected.

**64.3.180 assign(Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Allow assignment of four-dimensional single precision vector to four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator :=(const v: Tvector4_single) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to use a four-dimensional vector with single precision values wherever a four-dimensional vector with extended precision is expected.

**64.3.181 divide(Tmatrix2\_double,Double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix2_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.182 divide(Tmatrix2\_extended,extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const x: extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.183 divide(Tmatrix2\_single,single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.184 divide(Tmatrix3\_double,Double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.185 divide(Tmatrix3\_extended,extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const x: extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.



**64.3.186 divide(Tmatrix3\_single,single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.187 divide(Tmatrix4\_double,Double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.188 divide(Tmatrix4\_extended,extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const x: extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.189 divide(Tmatrix4\_single,single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a matrix by a scalar. All elements in the matrix are divided by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.190 divide(Tvector2\_double,Double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector2_double; y: Double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.191 divide(Tvector2\_extended,extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector2_extended; y: extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.192 divide(Tvector2\_single,single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a two-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector2_single; y: single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.193 divide(Tvector3\_double,Double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a three-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector3_double; y: Double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.194 divide(Tvector3\_extended,extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a three-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector3_extended; y: extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.195 divide(Tvector3\_single,single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a three-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector3_single; y: single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.196 divide(Tvector4\_double,Double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Divide a four-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector4_double; y: Double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.197 divide(Tvector4\_extended,extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Divide a four-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector4_extended; y: extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.198 divide(Tvector4\_single,single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Divide a four-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator /(const x: Tvector4_single; y: single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to divide a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is divided by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.199 multiply(Tmatrix2\_double,Double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional double precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.200 multiply(Tmatrix2\_double,Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of two two-dimensional double precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix2_double; const m2: Tmatrix2_double)  
: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.201 multiply(Tmatrix2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of a two-dimensional double precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_double; const v: Tvector2_double)  
: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a two-dimensional double precision matrices with a two dimensional double precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.202 multiply(Tmatrix2\_extended,extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional extended precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.203 multiply(Tmatrix2\_extended,Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of two two-dimensional extended precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix2_extended; const m2: Tmatrix2_extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.204 multiply(Tmatrix2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of a two-dimensional extended precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const v: Tvector2_extended)  
: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a two-dimensional extended precision matrices with a two dimensional extended precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.205 multiply(Tmatrix2\_single,single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.206 multiply(Tmatrix2\_single,Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of two two-dimensional single precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix2_single; const m2: Tmatrix2_single)  
: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.207 multiply(Tmatrix2\_single,Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of a two-dimensional single precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const v: Tvector2_single)  
: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a two-dimensional single precision matrices with a two dimensional single precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.208 multiply(Tmatrix3\_double,Double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional double precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.209 multiply(Tmatrix3\_double,Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of two three-dimensional double precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix3_double; const m2: Tmatrix3_double)  
: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.210 multiply(Tmatrix3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of a three-dimensional double precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const v: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a three-dimensional double precision matrices with a three dimensional double precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.211 multiply(Tmatrix3\_extended,extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional extended precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.212 multiply(Tmatrix3\_extended,Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of two three-dimensional extended precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix3_extended; const m2: Tmatrix3_extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.213 multiply(Tmatrix3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of a three-dimensional extended precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const v: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a three-dimensional extended precision matrices with a three dimensional extended precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.214 multiply(Tmatrix3\_single,single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.215 multiply(Tmatrix3\_single,Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of two three-dimensional single precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix3_single; const m2: Tmatrix3_single)  
: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.216 multiply(Tmatrix3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of a three-dimensional single precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const v: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a three-dimensional single precision matrices with a three dimensional single precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.217 multiply(Tmatrix4\_double,Double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional double precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.218 multiply(Tmatrix4\_double,Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of two four-dimensional double precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix4_double; const m2: Tmatrix4_double)  
: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.219 multiply(Tmatrix4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Give product of a four-dimensional double precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const v: Tvector4_double)  
: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a four-dimensional double precision matrices with a four dimensional double precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.220 multiply(Tmatrix4\_extended,extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional extended precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.221 multiply(Tmatrix4\_extended,Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of two four-dimensional extended precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended; const m2: Tmatrix4_extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.222 multiply(Tmatrix4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Give product of a four-dimensional extended precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const v: Tvector4_extended)  
: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a four-dimensional extended precision matrices with a four dimensional extended precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.



**64.3.223 multiply(Tmatrix4\_single,single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional single precision matrix by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a matrix with a scalar. All elements in the matrix are multiplied by the scalar, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.224 multiply(Tmatrix4\_single,Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of two four-dimensional single precision matrices

Declaration: `operator *(const m1: Tmatrix4_single; const m2: Tmatrix4_single)  
: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply two two-dimensional single precision matrices. A new matrix is returned which is the product of both matrices. The product is calculated using the well known matrix multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.225 multiply(Tmatrix4\_single,Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Give product of a four-dimensional single precision matrix and vector

Declaration: `operator *(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const v: Tvector4_single)  
: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a four-dimensional single precision matrices with a four dimensional single precision vector. A new vector is returned which is the product of the matrix and the vector. The product is calculated using the well known matrix-vector multiplication algorithm.

**64.3.226 multiply(Tvector2\_double,Double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_double; y: Double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.227 multiply(Tvector2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_double; const y: Tvector2_double)  
: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.3.228 multiply(Tvector2\_extended,extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_extended; y: extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.229 multiply(Tvector2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_extended; const y: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.3.230 multiply(Tvector2\_single,single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a two-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_single; y: single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.231 multiply(Tvector2\_single,Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector2_single; const y: Tvector2_single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.3.232 multiply(Tvector3\_double,Double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_double; y: Double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.233 multiply(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.3.234 multiply(Tvector3\_extended,extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_extended; y: extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.235 multiply(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.3.236 multiply(Tvector3\_single,single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a three-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_single; y: single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.237 multiply(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.3.238 multiply(Tvector4\_double,Double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional double precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_double; y: Double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.239 multiply(Tvector4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_double; const y: Tvector4_double)  
: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.3.240 multiply(Tvector4\_extended,extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional extended precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_extended; y: extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.241 multiply(Tvector4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_extended; const y: Tvector4_extended)  
: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.3.242 multiply(Tvector4\_single,single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply a four-dimensional single precision vector by a scalar

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_single; y: single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to multiply a vector by a scalar value. Each vector element is multiplied by the scalar value; the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.243 multiply(Tvector4\_single,Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Multiply two vectors element wise

Declaration: `operator *(const x: Tvector4_single; const y: Tvector4_single)  
: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns a vector that contains the element by element multiplication of the two multiplied vectors.

**64.3.244 negative(Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional double precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix2_double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.3.245 negative(Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional extended precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix2_extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.3.246 negative(Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional single precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.3.247 negative(Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional double precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.3.248 negative(Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional extended precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.3.249 negative(Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional single precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.3.250 negative(Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional double precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.3.251 negative(Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional extended precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.3.252 negative(Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional single precision matrix.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a matrix with all elements negated.

**64.3.253 negative(Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.3.254 negative(Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.3.255 negative(Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Negate two-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.3.256 negative(Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.3.257 negative(Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.3.258 negative(Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Negate three-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.3.259 negative(Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.3.260 negative(Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.3.261 negative(Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Negate four-dimensional vector.

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operation returns a vector in the opposite direction of the vector that is passed. In order to do so, all values in the vector are negated.

**64.3.262 power(Tvector2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Double**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector2_double; const y: Tvector2_double) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.3.263 power(Tvector2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):extended**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector2_extended; const y: Tvector2_extended)  
: extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.3.264 power(Tvector2\_single,Tvector2\_single):single**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector2_single; const y: Tvector2_single) : single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.



**64.3.265 power(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Double**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.3.266 power(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):extended**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.3.267 power(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):single**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single) : single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.3.268 power(Tvector4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Double**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector4_double; const y: Tvector4_double) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.3.269 power(Tvector4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):extended**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector4_extended; const y: Tvector4_extended)  
: extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.3.270 power(Tvector4\_single,Tvector4\_single):single**

Synopsis: Calculate the internal product of two vectors.

Declaration: `operator ** (const x: Tvector4_single; const y: Tvector4_single) : single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the internal product of the two vectors, that is, the elements of the two vectors are element-wise multiplied, and then added together.

**64.3.271 subtract(Tmatrix2\_double,Double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar to two-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator - (const m: Tmatrix2_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.272 subtract(Tmatrix2\_double,Tmatrix2\_double):Tmatrix2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract a two-dimensional double precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator - (const m1: Tmatrix2_double; const m2: Tmatrix2_double)  
: Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a two-dimensional double precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.3.273 subtract(Tmatrix2\_extended,extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to two-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator - (const m: Tmatrix2_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.274 subtract(Tmatrix2\_extended,Tmatrix2\_extended):Tmatrix2\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract a two-dimensional extended precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator - (const m1: Tmatrix2_extended; const m2: Tmatrix2_extended)  
: Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a two-dimensional extended precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.3.275 subtract(Tmatrix2\_single,single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar to two-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix2_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.276 subtract(Tmatrix2\_single,Tmatrix2\_single):Tmatrix2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract a two-dimensional single precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix2_single; const m2: Tmatrix2_single)  
: Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a two-dimensional single precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.3.277 subtract(Tmatrix3\_double,Double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix3_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.278 subtract(Tmatrix3\_double,Tmatrix3\_double):Tmatrix3\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract a three-dimensional double precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_double; const m2: Tmatrix3_double)  
: Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a three-dimensional double precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.3.279 subtract(Tmatrix3\_extended,extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix3_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.280 subtract(Tmatrix3\_extended,Tmatrix3\_extended):Tmatrix3\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract a three-dimensional extended precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_extended; const m2: Tmatrix3_extended)  
: Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a three-dimensional extended precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.3.281 subtract(Tmatrix3\_single,single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to three-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix3_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.282 subtract(Tmatrix3\_single,Tmatrix3\_single):Tmatrix3\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract a three-dimensional single precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix3_single; const m2: Tmatrix3_single)  
: Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a three-dimensional single precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.3.283 subtract(Tmatrix4\_double,Double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional double precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix4_double; const x: Double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.284 subtract(Tmatrix4\_double,Tmatrix4\_double):Tmatrix4\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract a four-dimensional double precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_double; const m2: Tmatrix4_double)  
: Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a four-dimensional double precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.3.285 subtract(Tmatrix4\_extended,extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional extended precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix4_extended; const x: extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.286 subtract(Tmatrix4\_extended,Tmatrix4\_extended):Tmatrix4\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract a four-dimensional extended precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_extended; const m2: Tmatrix4_extended)  
: Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a four-dimensional extended precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.3.287 subtract(Tmatrix4\_single,single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Add scalar to four-dimensional single precision matrix

Declaration: `operator -(const m: Tmatrix4_single; const x: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a matrix. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the matrix, the result is returned as a new matrix.

**64.3.288 subtract(Tmatrix4\_single,Tmatrix4\_single):Tmatrix4\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract a four-dimensional single precision matrix from another.

Declaration: `operator -(const m1: Tmatrix4_single; const m2: Tmatrix4_single)  
: Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a four-dimensional single precision matrix from another. A new matrix is returned with all elements of the two matrices subtracted from each other.

**64.3.289 subtract(Tvector2\_double,Double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from two-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_double; y: Double) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.290 subtract(Tvector2\_double,Tvector2\_double):Tvector2\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract two-dimensional double precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_double; const y: Tvector2_double)  
: Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with double precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.291 subtract(Tvector2\_extended,extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from two-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_extended; y: extended) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.292 subtract(Tvector2\_extended,Tvector2\_extended):Tvector2\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract two-dimensional extended precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_extended; const y: Tvector2_extended)  
: Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with extended precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.293 subtract(Tvector2\_single,single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from two-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_single; y: single) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.294 subtract(Tvector2\_single,Tvector2\_single):Tvector2\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract two-dimensional single precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector2_single; const y: Tvector2_single)  
: Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with single precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.295 subtract(Tvector3\_double,Double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from three-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_double; y: Double) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.296 subtract(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract three-dimensional double precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two two-dimensional vectors with double precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.297 subtract(Tvector3\_extended,extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from three-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_extended; y: extended) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.298 subtract(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract three-dimensional extended precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two three-dimensional vectors with extended precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.299 subtract(Tvector3\_single,single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from three-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_single; y: single) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.300 subtract(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract three-dimensional single precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two three-dimensional vectors with single precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.301 subtract(Tvector4\_double,Double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from four-dimensional double precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_double; y: Double) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.302 subtract(Tvector4\_double,Tvector4\_double):Tvector4\_double**

Synopsis: Subtract four-dimensional double precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_double; const y: Tvector4_double)  
: Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two four-dimensional vectors with double precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.303 subtract(Tvector4\_extended,extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from four-dimensional extended precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_extended; y: extended) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.304 subtract(Tvector4\_extended,Tvector4\_extended):Tvector4\_extended**

Synopsis: Subtract four-dimensional extended precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_extended; const y: Tvector4_extended)  
: Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two four-dimensional vectors with extended precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.



**64.3.305 subtract(Tvector4\_single,single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract scalar from four-dimensional single precision vector

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_single; y: single) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract a scalar value from a vector. The scalar is subtracted from all elements of the vector, the result is returned as a new vector.

**64.3.306 subtract(Tvector4\_single,Tvector4\_single):Tvector4\_single**

Synopsis: Subtract four-dimensional single precision vectors from each other

Declaration: `operator -(const x: Tvector4_single; const y: Tvector4_single)  
: Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows you to subtract two four-dimensional vectors with single precision from each other. The result is a new vector which consists of the difference of the individual elements of the two vectors.

**64.3.307 symmetricaldifference(Tvector3\_double,Tvector3\_double):Tvector3\_double**

Synopsis: Calculate the external product of two three-dimensional vectors

Declaration: `operator ><(const x: Tvector3_double; const y: Tvector3_double)  
: Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the external product of two three dimensional vector. It is a vector orthonormal to the two multiplied vectors. The length of that vector is equal to the surface area of a parallelogram with the two vectors as sides.

The external product is often used to get a vector orthonormal to two other vectors, but of a predefined length. In order to do so, the result vector from the external product, is divided by its length, and then multiplied by the desired size.

**64.3.308 symmetricaldifference(Tvector3\_extended,Tvector3\_extended):Tvector3\_extended**

Synopsis: Calculate the external product of two three-dimensional vectors

Declaration: `operator ><(const x: Tvector3_extended; const y: Tvector3_extended)  
: Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the external product of two three dimensional vector. It is a vector orthonormal to the two multiplied vectors. The length of that vector is equal to the surface area of a parallelogram with the two vectors as sides.

The external product is often used to get a vector orthonormal to two other vectors, but of a predefined length. In order to do so, the result vector from the external product, is divided by its length, and then multiplied by the desired size.

**64.3.309 symmetricaldifference(Tvector3\_single,Tvector3\_single):Tvector3\_single**

Synopsis: Calculate the external product of two three-dimensional vectors

Declaration: `operator ><(const x: Tvector3_single; const y: Tvector3_single)  
: Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator returns the external product of two three dimensional vector. It is a vector orthonormal to the two multiplied vectors. The length of that vector is equal to the surface area of a parallelogram with the two vectors as sides.

The external product is often used to get a vector orthonormal to two other vectors, but of a predefined length. In order to do so, the result vector from the external product, is divided by its length, and then multiplied by the desired size.

**64.4 Tmatrix2\_double****64.4.1 Description**

The `Tmatrix2_double` object provides a matrix of 2\*2 double precision scalars.

**64.4.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1090</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">1090</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1090</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1090</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1089</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">1089</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1091</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">1090</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1090</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1091</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

**64.4.3 Tmatrix2\_double.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.4.4 Tmatrix2\_double.init\_identity**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.4.5 Tmatrix2\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: Double; ab: Double; ba: Double; bb: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.4.6 Tmatrix2\_double.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.4.7 Tmatrix2\_double.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.4.8 Tmatrix2\_double.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector2_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.4.9 Tmatrix2\_double.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector2_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.4.10 Tmatrix2\_double.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 64.4.11 Tmatrix2\_double.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(Adeterminant: Double) : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 64.4.12 Tmatrix2\_double.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix2_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.5 Tmatrix2\_extended

### 64.5.1 Description

The `Tmatrix2_extended` object provides a matrix of 2\*2 extended precision scalars.

### 64.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1093</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">1092</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1092</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1092</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1092</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">1091</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1093</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">1092</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1092</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1093</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 64.5.3 Tmatrix2\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

#### 64.5.4 Tmatrix2\_extended.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

#### 64.5.5 Tmatrix2\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: extended; ab: extended; ba: extended; bb: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

#### 64.5.6 Tmatrix2\_extended.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

#### 64.5.7 Tmatrix2\_extended.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

#### 64.5.8 Tmatrix2\_extended.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector2_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

#### 64.5.9 Tmatrix2\_extended.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector2_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.5.10 Tmatrix2\_extended.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 64.5.11 Tmatrix2\_extended.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse (Adeterminant: extended) : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 64.5.12 Tmatrix2\_extended.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix2_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.6 Tmatrix2\_single

### 64.6.1 Description

The `Tmatrix2_single` object provides a matrix of 2\*2 single precision scalars.

### 64.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1095</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">1094</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1094</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1094</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1094</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">1094</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1095</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">1094</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1095</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1095</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

**64.6.3 Tmatrix2\_single.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.6.4 Tmatrix2\_single.init\_identity**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

**64.6.5 Tmatrix2\_single.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: single; ab: single; ba: single; bb: single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

**64.6.6 Tmatrix2\_single.get\_column**

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.6.7 Tmatrix2\_single.get\_row**

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

**64.6.8 Tmatrix2\_single.set\_column**

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector2_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.6.9 Tmatrix2\_single.set\_row**

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector2_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

**64.6.10 Tmatrix2\_single.determinant**

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

**64.6.11 Tmatrix2\_single.inverse**

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A: Tmatrix2_single) : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

**64.6.12 Tmatrix2\_single.transpose**

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix2_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

**64.7 Tmatrix3\_double****64.7.1 Description**

The `Tmatrix3_double` object provides a matrix of 3\*3 double precision scalars.



### 64.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1097</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">1096</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1097</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1096</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1096</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">1096</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1097</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">1097</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1097</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1097</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 64.7.3 Tmatrix3\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.7.4 Tmatrix3\_double.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.7.5 Tmatrix3\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: Double; ab: Double; ac: Double; ba: Double; bb: Double; bc: Double; ca: Double; cb: Double; cc: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.7.6 Tmatrix3\_double.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.7.7 Tmatrix3\_double.get\_row**

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

**64.7.8 Tmatrix3\_double.set\_column**

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector3_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.7.9 Tmatrix3\_double.set\_row**

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector3_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

**64.7.10 Tmatrix3\_double.determinant**

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

**64.7.11 Tmatrix3\_double.inverse**

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A_determinant: Double) : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix3_double.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

**64.7.12 Tmatrix3\_double.transpose**

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix3_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the *x* and *y* coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.8 Tmatrix3\_extended

### 64.8.1 Description

The `Tmatrix3_extended` object provides a matrix of 3\*3 extended precision scalars.

### 64.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1099</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">1099</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1099</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1098</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1098</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">1098</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1099</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">1099</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets r-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1099</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1100</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 64.8.3 Tmatrix3\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.8.4 Tmatrix3\_extended.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.8.5 Tmatrix3\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: extended; ab: extended; ac: extended;  
ba: extended; bb: extended; bc: extended; ca: extended;  
cb: extended; cc: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.8.6 Tmatrix3\_extended.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.8.7 Tmatrix3\_extended.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.8.8 Tmatrix3\_extended.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector3_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.8.9 Tmatrix3\_extended.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector3_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.8.10 Tmatrix3\_extended.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 64.8.11 Tmatrix3\_extended.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(Adeterminant: extended) : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix3_extended.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 64.8.12 Tmatrix3\_extended.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix3_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.9 Tmatrix3\_single

### 64.9.1 Description

The `Tmatrix3_single` object provides a matrix of 3\*3 single precision scalars.

### 64.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1102</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">1101</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1101</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1101</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1100</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">1100</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1102</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">1101</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1101</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1102</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 64.9.3 Tmatrix3\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.9.4 Tmatrix3\_single.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.9.5 Tmatrix3\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: single; ab: single; ac: single; ba: single;  
bb: single; bc: single; ca: single; cb: single;  
cc: single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.9.6 Tmatrix3\_single.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.9.7 Tmatrix3\_single.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.9.8 Tmatrix3\_single.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector3_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.9.9 Tmatrix3\_single.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector3_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.9.10 Tmatrix3\_single.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix.

### 64.9.11 Tmatrix3\_single.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(Adeterminant: single) : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix3_single.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter.

### 64.9.12 Tmatrix3\_single.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix3_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.10 Tmatrix4\_double

### 64.10.1 Description

The `Tmatrix4_double` object provides a matrix of 4\*4 double precision scalars.

### 64.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1104</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">1103</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1103</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1103</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1103</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">1103</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1104</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">1104</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1104</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1104</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

**64.10.3 Tmatrix4\_double.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.10.4 Tmatrix4\_double.init\_identity**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

**64.10.5 Tmatrix4\_double.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: Double; ab: Double; ac: Double; ad: Double;  
ba: Double; bb: Double; bc: Double; bd: Double;  
ca: Double; cb: Double; cc: Double; cd: Double;  
da: Double; db: Double; dc: Double; dd: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

**64.10.6 Tmatrix4\_double.get\_column**

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.10.7 Tmatrix4\_double.get\_row**

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.



### 64.10.8 Tmatrix4\_double.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector4_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.10.9 Tmatrix4\_double.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector4_double)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.10.10 Tmatrix4\_double.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix. Note: Calculating the determinant of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.10.11 Tmatrix4\_double.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(A: Tmatrix4_double) : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix4_double.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter. Note: Calculating the inverse of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.10.12 Tmatrix4\_double.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix4_double`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_double.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.11 Tmatrix4\_extended

### 64.11.1 Description

The Tmatrix4\_extended object provides a matrix of 4\*4 extended precision scalars.

### 64.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1106	determinant	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
1106	get\_column	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
1106	get\_row	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
1105	init	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
1105	init\_identity	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
1105	init\_zero	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
1107	inverse	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
1106	set\_column	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
1106	set\_row	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
1107	transpose	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 64.11.3 Tmatrix4\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.11.4 Tmatrix4\_extended.init\_identity

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

### 64.11.5 Tmatrix4\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: extended; ab: extended; ac: extended;  
ad: extended; ba: extended; bb: extended; bc: extended;  
bd: extended; ca: extended; cb: extended; cc: extended;  
cd: extended; da: extended; db: extended; dc: extended;  
dd: extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

### 64.11.6 Tmatrix4\_extended.get\_column

Synopsis: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *c*-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.11.7 Tmatrix4\_extended.get\_row

Synopsis: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the *r*-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.11.8 Tmatrix4\_extended.set\_column

Synopsis: Sets *c*-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector4_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *c*-th column of the matrix with vector *v*. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.11.9 Tmatrix4\_extended.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets *r*-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector4_extended)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the *r*-th row of the matrix with vector *v*. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.11.10 Tmatrix4\_extended.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix. Note: Calculating the determinant of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.11.11 Tmatrix4\_extended.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse (Adeterminant: extended) : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix4_extended.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter. Note: Calculating the inverse of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.11.12 Tmatrix4\_extended.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix4_extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_extended.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.12 Tmatrix4\_single

### 64.12.1 Description

The `Tmatrix4_single` object provides a matrix of 4\*4 single precision scalars.

### 64.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1109</a>	<code>determinant</code>	Calculates the determinant of the matrix.
<a href="#">1108</a>	<code>get\_column</code>	Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1108</a>	<code>get\_row</code>	Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.
<a href="#">1108</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1108</a>	<code>init\_identity</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.
<a href="#">1107</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1109</a>	<code>inverse</code>	Calculates the inverse of the matrix.
<a href="#">1108</a>	<code>set\_column</code>	Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1109</a>	<code>set\_row</code>	Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.
<a href="#">1109</a>	<code>transpose</code>	Returns the transposition of the matrix.

### 64.12.3 Tmatrix4\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.12.4 Tmatrix4\_single.init\_identity**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix.

Declaration: `constructor init_identity`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix and sets its elements to the identity matrix, that is, elements to 1 on the left-upper to right-lower diagonal, the rest zero.

**64.12.5 Tmatrix4\_single.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(aa: single; ab: single; ac: single; ad: single;  
ba: single; bb: single; bc: single; bd: single;  
ca: single; cb: single; cc: single; cd: single;  
da: single; db: single; dc: single; dd: single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initializes the matrix, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor. The order of the values is left to right, then top to bottom.

**64.12.6 Tmatrix4\_single.get\_column**

Synopsis: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_column(c: Byte) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the c-th column of the matrix as vector. The column numbering starts at 0.

**64.12.7 Tmatrix4\_single.get\_row**

Synopsis: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector.

Declaration: `function get_row(r: Byte) : Tvector4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the r-th row of the matrix as vector. The row numbering starts at 0.

**64.12.8 Tmatrix4\_single.set\_column**

Synopsis: Sets c-th column of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_column(c: Byte; const v: Tvector4_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the c-th column of the matrix with vector v. The column numbering starts at 0.

### 64.12.9 Tmatrix4\_single.set\_row

Synopsis: Sets r-th row of the matrix with a vector.

Declaration: `procedure set_row(r: Byte; const v: Tvector4_single)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the r-th row of the matrix with vector v. The row numbering starts at 0.

### 64.12.10 Tmatrix4\_single.determinant

Synopsis: Calculates the determinant of the matrix.

Declaration: `function determinant : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the determinant of the matrix. Note: Calculating the determinant of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.12.11 Tmatrix4\_single.inverse

Synopsis: Calculates the inverse of the matrix.

Declaration: `function inverse(Adeterminant: single) : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix4_single.inverse` returns a new matrix that is the inverse of the matrix. You must pass the determinant of the matrix as parameter. Note: Calculating the inverse of a 4\*4 matrix requires quite a few operations.

### 64.12.12 Tmatrix4\_single.transpose

Synopsis: Returns the transposition of the matrix.

Declaration: `function transpose : Tmatrix4_single`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tmatrix2_single.transpose` returns a new matrix that is the transposition of the matrix, that is, the matrix with the x and y coordinates of the values swapped.

## 64.13 Tvector2\_double

### 64.13.1 Description

The `Tvector2_double` object provides a vector of two double precision scalars.

### 64.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1110</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1110</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">1110</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1110</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">1110</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 64.13.3 `Tvector2_double.init_zero`

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.13.4 `Tvector2_double.init_one`

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.13.5 `Tvector2_double.init`

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: Double; b: Double)`

Visibility: default

### 64.13.6 `Tvector2_double.length`

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1110](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.13.7 `Tvector2_double.squared_length`

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2`.

## 64.14 Tvector2\_extended

### 64.14.1 Description

The `Tvector2_extended` object provides a vector of two extended precision scalars.

### 64.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1111</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1111</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">1111</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1111</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">1112</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 64.14.3 Tvector2\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.14.4 Tvector2\_extended.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.14.5 Tvector2\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: extended; b: extended)`

Visibility: default

### 64.14.6 Tvector2\_extended.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1112](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.



### 64.14.7 Tvector2\_extended.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2`.

## 64.15 Tvector2\_single

### 64.15.1 Description

The `Tvector2_single` object provides a vector of two single precision scalars.

### 64.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1112</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1112</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">1112</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1113</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">1113</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 64.15.3 Tvector2\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.15.4 Tvector2\_single.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.15.5 Tvector2\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: single; b: single)`

Visibility: default

### 64.15.6 Tvector2\_single.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` (1113) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.15.7 Tvector2\_single.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2`.

## 64.16 Tvector3\_double

### 64.16.1 Description

The `Tvector3_double` object provides a vector of three double precision scalars.

### 64.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1114</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1113</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">1113</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1114</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">1114</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 64.16.3 Tvector3\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.16.4 Tvector3\_double.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.16.5 Tvector3\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: Double; b: Double; c: Double)`

Visibility: default

### 64.16.6 Tvector3\_double.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1114](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.16.7 Tvector3\_double.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2`.

## 64.17 Tvector3\_extended

### 64.17.1 Description

The `Tvector3_extended` object provides a vector of three extended precision scalars.

### 64.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1115</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1115</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">1114</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1115</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">1115</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 64.17.3 Tvector3\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.17.4 Tvector3\_extended.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.17.5 Tvector3\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: extended; b: extended; c: extended)`

Visibility: default

### 64.17.6 Tvector3\_extended.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` (1115) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.17.7 Tvector3\_extended.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2`.

## 64.18 Tvector3\_single

### 64.18.1 Description

The `Tvector3_single` object provides a vector of three single precision scalars.

### 64.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1116</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1116</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">1116</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1116</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">1116</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

**64.18.3 Tvector3\_single.init\_zero**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

**64.18.4 Tvector3\_single.init\_one**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

**64.18.5 Tvector3\_single.init**

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: single; b: single; c: single)`

Visibility: default

**64.18.6 Tvector3\_single.length**

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector:  $\text{length} = \sqrt{\text{data}[0]**2 + \text{data}[1]**2 + \text{data}[2]**2}$ . Try to use `squared_length` ([1116](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

**64.18.7 Tvector3\_single.squared\_length**

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector:  $\text{squared\_length} = \text{data}[0]**2 + \text{data}[1]**2 + \text{data}[2]**2$ .

**64.19 Tvector4\_double****64.19.1 Description**

The `Tvector4_double` object provides a vector of four double precision scalars.

### 64.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1117</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1117</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">1117</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1117</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">1117</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 64.19.3 Tvector4\_double.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.19.4 Tvector4\_double.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.19.5 Tvector4\_double.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: Double; b: Double; c: Double; d: Double)`

Visibility: default

### 64.19.6 Tvector4\_double.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1117](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.19.7 Tvector4\_double.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2`.

## 64.20 Tvector4\_extended

### 64.20.1 Description

The `Tvector4_extended` object provides a vector of four extended precision scalars.

### 64.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1118</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1118</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">1118</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1118</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">1119</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 64.20.3 Tvector4\_extended.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.20.4 Tvector4\_extended.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.20.5 Tvector4\_extended.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: extended; b: extended; c: extended; d: extended)`

Visibility: default

### 64.20.6 Tvector4\_extended.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1119](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.20.7 Tvector4\_extended.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : extended`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2`.

## 64.21 Tvector4\_single

### 64.21.1 Description

The `Tvector4_single` object provides a vector of four single precision scalars.

### 64.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1119</a>	<code>init</code>	Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.
<a href="#">1119</a>	<code>init\_one</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one
<a href="#">1119</a>	<code>init\_zero</code>	Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero
<a href="#">1120</a>	<code>length</code>	Calculates the length of the vector.
<a href="#">1120</a>	<code>squared\_length</code>	Calculates the squared length of the vector.

### 64.21.3 Tvector4\_single.init\_zero

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to zero

Declaration: `constructor init_zero`

Visibility: default

### 64.21.4 Tvector4\_single.init\_one

Synopsis: Initializes the vector and sets its elements to one

Declaration: `constructor init_one`

Visibility: default

### 64.21.5 Tvector4\_single.init

Synopsis: Initializes the vector, setting its elements to the values passed to the constructor.

Declaration: `constructor init(a: single; b: single; c: single; d: single)`

Visibility: default



### 64.21.6 Tvector4\_single.length

Synopsis: Calculates the length of the vector.

Declaration: `function length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the length of the vector: `length=sqrt(data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2)`. Try to use `squared_length` ([1120](#)) if you are able to, as it is faster.

### 64.21.7 Tvector4\_single.squared\_length

Synopsis: Calculates the squared length of the vector.

Declaration: `function squared_length : single`

Visibility: default

Description: Calculate the squared length of the vector: `squared_length=data[0]**2+data[1]**2+data[2]**2+data[3]**2`.

# Chapter 65

## Reference for unit 'mmx'

### 65.1 Overview

This document describes the MMX unit. This unit allows you to use the MMX capabilities of the Free Pascal compiler. It was written by Florian Klaempfl for the I386 processor. It should work on all platforms that use the Intel processor.

### 65.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 65.2.1 Constants

```
is_amd_3d_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_amd_3d_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_amd_3d_dsp_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_amd_3d_dsp_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D DSP extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_amd_3d_mmx_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_amd_3d_mmx_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D MMX extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_mmx_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_mmx_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has MMX extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_sse2_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_sse2_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the SSE2 extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_sse_cpu : Boolean = False
```

The `is_sse_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the SSE extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

### 65.2.2 Types

`pmmxbyte = ^tmmxbyte`

Pointer to `tmmxbyte` (1122) array type

`pmmxcardinal = ^tmmxcardinal`

Pointer to `tmmxcardinal` (1122) array type

`pmmxinteger = ^tmmxinteger`

Pointer to `tmmxinteger` (1122) array type

`pmmxlongint = ^tmmxlongint`

Pointer to `tmmxlongint` (1122) array type

`pmmxshortint = ^tmmxshortint`

Pointer to `tmmxshortint` (1122) array type

`pmmxsingle = ^tmmxsingle`

Pointer to `tmmxsingle` (1122) array type

`pmmxword = ^tmmxword`

Pointer to `tmmxword` (1122) array type

`Array = Array[0..7] of Byte`

Array of bytes, 64 bits in size

`Array = Array[0..1] of Cardinal`

Array of cardinals, 64 bits in size

`Array = Array[0..3] of Integer`

Array of integers, 64 bits in size

`Array = Array[0..1] of LongInt`

Array of longint, 64 bits in size

`Array = Array[0..7] of ShortInt`

Array of shortints, 64 bits in size

`Array = Array[0..1] of single`

Array of singles, 64 bits in size

`Array = Array[0..3] of Word`

Array of words, 64 bits in size

## 65.3 Procedures and functions

### 65.3.1 emms

Synopsis: Reset floating point registers

Declaration: `procedure emms`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Emms` sets all floating point registers to empty. This procedure must be called after you have used any MMX instructions, if you want to use floating point arithmetic. If you just want to move floating point data around, it isn't necessary to call this function, the compiler doesn't use the FPU registers when moving data. Only when doing calculations, you should use this function. The following code demonstrates this:

```
Program MMXDemo;
uses mmx;
var
  d : double;
  a : array[0..10000] of double;
  i : longint;
begin
  d:=1.0;
  {$mmx+}
  { floating point data is used, but we do _no_ arithmetic }
  for i:=0 to 10000 do
    a[i]:=d; { this is done with 64 bit moves }
  {$mmx-}
  emms; { clear fpu }
  { now we can do floating point arithmetic again }
end.
```

See also: `femms` ([1123](#))

### 65.3.2 femms

Synopsis: Reset floating point registers - AMD version

Declaration: `procedure femms`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `femms` executes the `femms` assembler instruction for AMD processors. it is not supported by all assemblers, hence it is coded as byte codes.

See also: `emms` ([1123](#))

## Chapter 66

# Reference for unit 'Mouse'

### 66.1 Overview

The `Mouse` unit implements a platform independent mouse handling interface. It is implemented identically on all platforms supported by Free Pascal and can be enhanced with custom drivers, should this be needed. It is intended to be used only in text-based screens, for instance in conjunction with the keyboard and video unit. No support for graphical screens is implemented, and there are (currently) no plans to implement this.

### 66.2 Writing a custom mouse driver

The `mouse` unit has support for adding a custom mouse driver. This can be used to add support for mice not supported by the standard Free Pascal driver, but also to enhance an existing driver for instance to log mouse events or to implement a record and playback function.

The following unit shows how a mouse driver can be enhanced by adding some logging capabilities to the driver.

**Listing:** `./mouseex/logmouse.pp`

---

```
unit logmouse ;

interface

Procedure StartMouseLogging ;
Procedure StopMouseLogging ;
Function IsMouseLogging : Boolean ;
Procedure SetMouseLogFileName ( FileName : String ) ;

implementation

uses sysutils , Mouse ;

var
    NewMouseDriver ,
    OldMouseDriver : TMouseDriver ;
    Active , Logging : Boolean ;
    LogFileName : String ;
    MouseLog : Text ;
```

```

Function TimeStamp : String;

begin
  TimeStamp:=FormatDateTime( 'hh:nn:ss ',Time());
end;

Procedure StartMouseLogging;

begin
  Logging:=True;
  WriteIn(MouseLog,'Start logging mouse events at: ',TimeStamp);
end;

Procedure StopMouseLogging;

begin
  WriteIn(MouseLog,'Stop logging mouse events at: ',TimeStamp);
  Logging:=False;
end;

Function IsMouseLogging : Boolean;

begin
  IsMouseLogging:=Logging;
end;

Procedure LogGetMouseEvent(Var Event : TMouseEvent);

Var
  M : TMouseEvent;

begin
  OldMouseDriver.GetMouseEvent(M);
  If Logging then
    begin
      Write(MouseLog,TimeStamp,' : Mouse ');
      With M do
        begin
          Case Action of
            MouseActionDown : Write(MouseLog,'down');
            MouseActionUp   : Write(MouseLog,'up');
            MouseActionMove  : Write(MouseLog,'move');
          end;
        Write(MouseLog,' event at ',X,', ',Y);
        If (Buttons<>0) then
          begin
            Write(MouseLog,' for buttons: ');
            If (Buttons and MouseLeftbutton)<>0 then
              Write(MouseLog,'Left ');
            If (Buttons and MouseRightbutton)<>0 then
              Write(MouseLog,'Right ');
            If (Buttons and MouseMiddlebutton)<>0 then
              Write(MouseLog,'Middle ');
            end;
          WriteIn(MouseLog);
        end;
      end;
    end;

```

```

end;

Procedure LogInitMouse;

begin
  OldMouseDriver.InitDriver();
  Assign(MouseLog, logFileName);
  Rewrite(MouseLog);
  Active := True;
  StartMouseLogging;
end;

Procedure LogDoneMouse;

begin
  StopMouseLogging;
  Close(MouseLog);
  Active := False;
  OldMouseDriver.DoneDriver();
end;

Procedure SetMouseLogFileName(FileName : String);

begin
  If Not Active then
    LogFileName := FileName;
  end;

Initialization
  GetMouseDriver(OldMouseDriver);
  NewMouseDriver := OldMouseDriver;
  NewMouseDriver.GetMouseEvent := @LogGetMouseEvent;
  NewMouseDriver.InitDriver := @LogInitMouse;
  NewMouseDriver.DoneDriver := @LogDoneMouse;
  LogFileName := 'Mouse.log';
  Logging := False;
  SetMouseDriver(NewMouseDriver);
end.

```

---

## 66.3 Constants, types and variables

### 66.3.1 Constants

```
errMouseBase = 1030
```

Base for mouse error codes.

```
errMouseInitError = errMouseBase + 0
```

Mouse initialization error

```
errMouseNotImplemented = errMouseBase + 1
```

Mouse driver not implemented.

MouseDown = \$0001

Mouse button down event signal.

MouseMove = \$0004

Mouse cursor move event signal.

MouseUp = \$0002

Mouse button up event signal.

MouseButton4 = \$08

4th mouse button event

MouseButton5 = \$10

5th mouse button event

MouseEventBufSize = 16

The mouse unit has a mechanism to buffer mouse events. This constant defines the size of the event buffer.

MouseLeftButton = \$01

Left mouse button event.

MouseMiddleButton = \$04

Middle mouse button event.

MouseRightButton = \$02

Right mouse button event.

### 66.3.2 Types

PMouseEvent = ^TMouseEvent

Pointer to TMouseEvent ([1135](#)) record.

### 66.3.3 Variables

MouseButtons : Byte

This variable keeps track of the last known mouse button state. Do not use.

MouseIntFlag : Byte



This variable keeps track of the last known internal mouse state. Do not use.

MouseWhereX : Word

This variable keeps track of the last known cursor position. Do not use.

MouseWhereY : Word

This variable keeps track of the last known cursor position. Do not use.

## 66.4 Procedures and functions

### 66.4.1 DetectMouse

Synopsis: Detect the presence of a mouse.

Declaration: `function DetectMouse : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectMouse` detects whether a mouse is attached to the system or not. If there is no mouse, then zero is returned. If a mouse is attached, then the number of mouse buttons is returned.

This function should be called after the mouse driver was initialized.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitMouse` ([1132](#)), `DoneMouse` ([1128](#))

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the DetectMouse function. }*

**Uses** `mouse`;

**Var**

Buttons : Byte;

**begin**

InitMouse;

Buttons:=DetectMouse;

**If** Buttons=0 **then**

**Writeln**( 'No mouse present. ' )

**else**

**Writeln**( 'Found mouse with ',Buttons, ' buttons. ' );

DoneMouse;

**end.**

---

### 66.4.2 DoneMouse

Synopsis: Deinitialize mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneMouse`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DoneMouse` De-initializes the mouse driver. It cleans up any memory allocated when the mouse was initialized, or removes possible mouse hooks from memory. The mouse functions will not work after `DoneMouse` was called. If `DoneMouse` is called a second time, it will exit at once. `InitMouse` should be called before `DoneMouse` can be called again.

For an example, see most other mouse functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `DetectMouse` ([1128](#)), `InitMouse` ([1132](#))

### 66.4.3 GetMouseButtons

**Synopsis:** Get the state of the mouse buttons

**Declaration:** `function GetMouseButtons : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetMouseButtons` returns the current button state of the mouse, i.e. it returns a or-ed combination of the following constants:

**MouseLeftButton** When the left mouse button is held down.

**MouseRightButton** When the right mouse button is held down.

**MouseMiddleButton** When the middle mouse button is held down.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` ([1130](#)), `GetMouseX` ([1130](#)), `GetMouseY` ([1131](#))

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetMouseButtons function. }*

**Uses** `mouse;`

**begin**

`InitMouse;`

`WriteLn('Press right mouse button to exit program');`

`While (GetMouseButtons<>MouseRightButton) do ;`

`DoneMouse;`

**end.**

---

### 66.4.4 GetMouseDriver

**Synopsis:** Get a copy of the currently active mouse driver.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetMouseDriver(var Driver: TMouseDriver)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetMouseDriver` returns the currently set mouse driver. It can be used to retrieve the current mouse driver, and override certain callbacks.

A more detailed explanation about getting and setting mouse drivers can be found in `mousedrv` (1124).

For an example, see the section on writing a custom mouse driver, `mousedrv` (1124)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetMouseDriver` (1133)

### 66.4.5 GetMouseEvent

**Synopsis:** Get next mouse event from the queue.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetMouseEvent (var MouseEvent : TMouseEvent)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetMouseEvent` returns the next mouse event (a movement, button press or button release), and waits for one if none is available in the queue.

Some mouse drivers can implement a mouse event queue which can hold multiple events till they are fetched. Others don't, and in that case, a one-event queue is implemented for use with `PollMouseEvent` (1132).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetMouseButtons` (1129), `GetMouseX` (1130), `GetMouseY` (1131)

### 66.4.6 GetMouseX

**Synopsis:** Query the current horizontal position of the mouse cursor.

**Declaration:** `function GetMouseX : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetMouseX` returns the current X position of the mouse. X is measured in characters, starting at 0 for the left side of the screen.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetMouseButtons` (1129), `GetMouseEvent` (1130), `GetMouseY` (1131)

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetMouseX, GetMouseY functions. }*

**Uses** mouse;

**Var**

X, Y : Word;

**begin**

InitMouse;

WriteLn('Move mouse cursor to square 10,10 to end');

---

```

Repeat
  X:=GetMouseX;
  Y:=GetMouseY;
  WriteLn( 'X,Y= ( ',X, ', ',Y, ' ) ' );
Until (X=9) and (Y=9);
DoneMouse;
end.

```

---

### 66.4.7 GetMouseY

Synopsis: Query the current vertical position of the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `function GetMouseY : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseY` returns the current Y position of the mouse. Y is measured in characters, starting at 0 for the top of the screen.

For an example, see `GetMouseX` ([1130](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseButtons` ([1129](#)), `GetMouseEvent` ([1130](#)), `GetMouseX` ([1130](#))

### 66.4.8 HideMouse

Synopsis: Hide the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `procedure HideMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: `HideMouse` hides the mouse cursor. This may or may not be implemented on all systems, and depends on the driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `ShowMouse` ([1134](#))

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** `Example5;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the HideMouse function. }*

**Uses** `mouse;`

**Var**

`Event : TMouseEvent;`  
`Visible : Boolean;`

**begin**

`InitMouse;`  
`ShowMouse;`  
`Visible:=True;`  
`WriteLn('Press left mouse button to hide/show, right button quits');`  
**Repeat**

---

```

GetMouseEvent(Event);
With Event do
  If (Buttons=MouseLeftbutton) and
    (Action=MouseDown) then
    begin
      If Visible then
        HideMouse;
      else
        ShowMouse;
        Visible:=Not Visible;
      end;
    Until (Event.Buttons=MouseRightButton) and
      (Event.Action=MouseDown);
  DoneMouse;
end.

```

---

### 66.4.9 InitMouse

Synopsis: Initialize the FPC mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure InitMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitMouse` initializes the mouse driver. This will allocate any data structures needed for the mouse to function. All mouse functions can be used after a call to `InitMouse`.

A call to `InitMouse` must always be followed by a call to `DoneMouse` (1128) at program exit. Failing to do so may leave the mouse in an unusable state, or may result in memory leaks.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `DoneMouse` (1128), `DetectMouse` (1128)

### 66.4.10 PollMouseEvent

Synopsis: Query next mouse event. Do not wait if none available.

Declaration: `function PollMouseEvent(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollMouseEvent` checks whether a mouse event is available, and returns it in `MouseEvent` if one is found. The function result is `True` in that case. If no mouse event is pending, the function result is `False`, and the contents of `MouseEvent` is undefined.

Note that after a call to `PollMouseEvent`, the event should still be removed from the mouse event queue with a call to `GetMouseEvent`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` (1130), `PutMouseEvent` (1133)

### 66.4.11 PutMouseEvent

Synopsis: Put a mouse event in the event queue.

Declaration: `procedure PutMouseEvent (const MouseEvent: TMouseEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutMouseEvent` adds `MouseEvent` to the input queue. The next call to `GetMouseEvent` (1130) or `PollMouseEvent` will then return `MouseEvent`.

Please note that depending on the implementation the mouse event queue can hold only one value.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` (1130), `PollMouseEvent` (1132)

### 66.4.12 SetMouseDriver

Synopsis: Set a new mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure SetMouseDriver (const Driver: TMouseDriver)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMouseDriver` sets the mouse driver to `Driver`. This function should be called before `InitMouse` (1132) is called, or after `DoneMouse` is called. If it is called after the mouse has been initialized, it does nothing.

For more information on setting the mouse driver, `mousedrv` (1124).

For an example, see `mousedrv` (1124)

See also: `InitMouse` (1132), `DoneMouse` (1128), `GetMouseDriver` (1129)

### 66.4.13 SetMouseXY

Synopsis: Set the mouse cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure SetMouseXY (x: Word; y: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMouseXY` places the mouse cursor on `X`, `Y`. `X` and `Y` are zero based character coordinates: 0, 0 is the top-left corner of the screen, and the position is in character cells (i.e. not in pixels).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseX` (1130), `GetMouseY` (1131)

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetMouseXY function. }*

**Uses** `mouse`;

**begin**

`InitMouse`;

`WriteLn('Click right mouse button to quit.');`

---

```

SetMouseXY(40,12);
Repeat
  WriteLn(GetMouseX, ', ', GetMouseY);
  If (GetMouseX>70) then
    SetMouseXY(10,GetMouseY);
  If (GetMouseY>20) then
    SetMouseXY(GetMouseX,5);
  Until (GetMouseButtons=MouseRightButton);
DoneMouse;
end.

```

---

#### 66.4.14 ShowMouse

Synopsis: Show the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `procedure ShowMouse`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ShowMouse` shows the mouse cursor if it was previously hidden. The capability to hide or show the mouse cursor depends on the driver.

For an example, see `HideMouse` ([1131](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `HideMouse` ([1131](#))

### 66.5 TMouseDriver

```

TMouseDriver = record
  UseDefaultQueue : Boolean;
  InitDriver :
  procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure;
  DetectMouse : function : Byte
  ;
  ShowMouse : procedure;
  HideMouse : procedure;
  GetMouseX :
  function : Word;
  GetMouseY : function : Word;
  GetMouseButtons
  : function : Word;
  SetMouseXY : procedure(x: Word; y: Word);
  GetMouseEvent : procedure(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent);
  PollMouseEvent
  : function(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent) : Boolean;
  PutMouseEvent
  : procedure(const MouseEvent: TMouseEvent);
end

```

The `TMouseDriver` record is used to implement a mouse driver in the `SetMouseDriver` ([1133](#)) function. Its fields must be filled in before calling the `SetMouseDriver` ([1133](#)) function.

## 66.6 TMouseEvent

```
TMouseEvent = packed record
  buttons : Word;
  x : Word;
  y : Word
;
  Action : Word;
end
```

The `TMouseEvent` is the central type of the mouse unit, it is used to describe all mouse events.

The `Buttons` field describes which buttons were down when the event occurred. The `x`, `y` fields describe where the event occurred on the screen. The `Action` describes what action was going on when the event occurred. The `Buttons` and `Action` field can be examined using the constants defined in the unit interface.



## Chapter 67

# Reference for unit 'Objects'

### 67.1 Overview

This document documents the `objects` unit. The unit was implemented by many people, and was mainly taken from the FreeVision sources. It has been ported to all supported platforms.

The methods and fields that are in a `Private` part of an object declaration have been left out of this documentation.

### 67.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 67.2.1 Constants

`coIndexError = - 1`

Collection list error: Index out of range

`coOverflow = - 2`

Collection list error: Overflow

`DefaultTPCompatible : Boolean = False`

`DefaultTPCompatible` is used to initialize `tstream.tpcompatible` (??).

`MaxBytes = 16384`

Maximum data size (in bytes)

`MaxCollectionSize = MaxBytes div SizeOf(Pointer)`

Maximum collection size (in items)

`MaxPtrs = MaxBytes div SizeOf(Pointer)`

Maximum data size (in pointers)

MaxReadBytes = \$7fffffff

Maximum data that can be read from a stream (not used)

MaxTPCompatibleCollectionSize = 65520 div 4

Maximum collection size (in items, same value as in TP)

MaxWords = MaxBytes div SizeOf(Word)

Maximum data size (in words)

```
RCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 50; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf(TCollection
    )); Load: @ TCollection.Load; Store: @ TCollection.Store; Next: Nil
    )
```

Default stream record for the TCollection (1153) object.

```
RStrCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 69; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf
    (TStrCollection)); Load: @ TStrCollection.Load; Store: @ TStrCollection
    .Store; Next: Nil)
```

Default stream record for the TStrCollection (1193) object.

```
RStringCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 51; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf
    (TStringCollection)); Load: @ TStringCollection.Load; Store: @ TStringCollection
    .Store; Next: Nil)
```

Default stream record for the TStringCollection (1203) object.

```
RStringList : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 52; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf(TStringList
    )); Load: @ TStringList.Load; Store: Nil; Next: Nil)
```

Default stream record for the TStringList (1205) object.

```
RStrListMaker : TStreamRec = (ObjType: 52; VmtLink: Ofs(^ TypeOf(TStrListMaker
    )); Load: Nil; Store: @ TStrListMaker.Store; Next: Nil)
```

Default stream record for the TStrListMaker (1207) object.

stCreate = \$3C00

Stream initialization mode: Create new file

stError = - 1

Stream error codes: Access error

stGetError = - 5

Stream error codes: Get object error

`stInitError = - 2`

Stream error codes: Initialize error

`stOk = 0`

Stream error codes: No error

`stOpen = $3D02`

Stream initialization mode: Read/write access

`stOpenError = - 8`

Stream error codes: Error opening stream

`stOpenRead = $3D00`

Stream initialization mode: Read access only

`stOpenWrite = $3D01`

Stream initialization mode: Write access only

`stPutError = - 6`

Stream error codes: Put object error

`stReadError = - 3`

Stream error codes: Stream read error

`StreamError : CodePointer = Nil`

Pointer to default stream error handler.

`stSeekError = - 7`

Stream error codes: Seek error in stream

`stWriteError = - 4`

Stream error codes: Stream write error

`vmtHeaderSize = 8`

Size of the VMT header in an object (not used).

### 67.2.2 Types

`Array = Array[0..255] of Char`

Filename - null terminated array of characters.

`FNameStr = String`

Filename - shortstring version.

`PBufStream = ^TBufStream`

Pointer to TBufStream (1149) object.

`PByteArray = ^TByteArray`

Pointer to TByteArray (1141)

`PCharSet = ^TCharSet`

Pointer to TCharSet (1141).

`PCollection = ^TCollection`

Pointer to TCollection (1153) object.

`PDosStream = ^TDosStream`

Pointer to TDosStream (1168) object.

`PItemList = ^TItemList`

Pointer to TItemList (1141) object.

`PMemoryStream = ^TMemoryStream`

Pointer to TMemoryStream (1173) object.

`PObject = ^TObject`

Pointer to TObject (1175) object.

`PPoint = ^TPoint`

Pointer to TPoint (1177) record.

`PPointerArray = ^TPointerArray`

Pointer to TPointerArray (1141)

`PRect = ^TRect`

Pointer to TRect (1177) object.

PResourceCollection = ^TResourceCollection

Pointer to TResourceCollection (1183) object.

PResourceFile = ^TResourceFile

Pointer to TResourceFile (1184) object.

PSortedCollection = ^TSortedCollection

Pointer to TSortedCollection (1187) object.

PStrCollection = ^TStrCollection

Pointer to TStrCollection (1193) object.

PStream = ^TStream

Pointer type to TStream (1195)

PStreamRec = ^TStreamRec

Pointer to TStreamRec (1149)

PStrIndex = ^TStrIndex

Pointer to TStrIndex (1141) array.

PString = PShortString

Pointer to a shortstring.

PStringCollection = ^TStringCollection

Pointer to TStringCollection (1203) object.

PStringList = ^TStringList

Pointer to TStringList (1205) object.

PStrListMaker = ^TStrListMaker

Pointer to TStrListMaker (1207) object.

PUnSortedStrCollection = ^TUnSortedStrCollection

Pointer to TUnSortedStrCollection (1208) object.

PWordArray = ^TWordArray

Pointer to TWordArray ([1141](#))

`Sw_Integer = LongInt`

Alias for longint

`Sw_Word = Cardinal`

Alias for Cardinal

`Array = Array[0..MaxBytes-1] of Byte`

Array with maximum allowed number of bytes.

`TCharSet = Set of Char`

Generic set of characters type.

`Array = Array[0..MaxCollectionSize-1] of Pointer`

Pointer array type used in a TCollection ([1153](#))

`Array = Array[0..MaxPtrs-1] of Pointer`

Array with maximum allowed number of pointers

`Array = Array[0..9999] of TStrIndexRec`

Pointer array type used in a TStringList ([1205](#))

`Array = Array[0..MaxWords-1] of Word`

Array with maximum allowed number of words.

### 67.2.3 Variables

`invalidhandle : THandle`

Value for invalid handle. Initial value for file stream handles or when the stream is closed.

## 67.3 Procedures and functions

### 67.3.1 Abstract

Synopsis: Abstract error handler.

Declaration: `procedure Abstract`

Visibility: default

Description: When implementing abstract methods, do not declare them as `abstract`. Instead, define them simply as `virtual`. In the implementation of such abstract methods, call the `Abstract` procedure. This allows explicit control of what happens when an abstract method is called.

The current implementation of `Abstract` terminates the program with a run-time error 211.

Errors: None.

### 67.3.2 CallPointerConstructor

Synopsis: Call a constructor with a pointer argument.

Declaration: `function CallPointerConstructor(Ctor: codepointer; Obj: pointer;  
VMT: pointer; Param1: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidConstructor` calls the constructor of an object. `Ctor` is the address of the constructor, `Obj` is a pointer to the instance. If it is `Nil`, then a new instance is allocated. `VMT` is a pointer to the object's VMT. `Param1` is passed to the constructor. The return value is a pointer to the instance.

Note that this can only be used on constructors that require a pointer as the sole argument. It can also be used to call a constructor with a single argument by reference.

Errors: If the constructor expects other arguments than a pointer, the stack may be corrupted.

See also: `CallVoidConstructor` (1143), `CallPointerMethod` (1142), `CallVoidLocal` (1143), `CallPointerLocal` (1142), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1144), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1143)

### 67.3.3 CallPointerLocal

Synopsis: Call a local nested function with a pointer argument

Declaration: `function CallPointerLocal(Func: codepointer; Frame: Pointer;  
Param1: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallPointerLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping function. It passes `Param1` to the local function.

Errors: If the local function expects other parameters than a pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerMethod` (1142), `CallVoidMethod` (1144), `CallVoidLocal` (1143), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1144), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1143), `CallVoidConstructor` (1143), `CallPointerConstructor` (1142)

### 67.3.4 CallPointerMethod

Synopsis: Call a method with a single pointer argument

Declaration: `function CallPointerMethod(Method: codepointer; Obj: pointer;  
Param1: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallPointerMethod` calls the method with address `Method` for instance `Obj`. It passes `Param1` to the method as the single argument. It returns a pointer to the instance.

Errors: If the method expects other parameters than a single pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallVoidMethod` (1144), `CallVoidLocal` (1143), `CallPointerLocal` (1142), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1144), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1143), `CallVoidConstructor` (1143), `CallPointerConstructor` (1142)

### 67.3.5 CallPointerMethodLocal

**Synopsis:** Call a local procedure of a method with a pointer argument

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerMethodLocal(Func: codepointer; Frame: Pointer;  
Obj: pointer; Param1: pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallPointerMethodLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping method. It passes `Param1` to the local function.

**Errors:** If the local function expects other parameters than a pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

**See also:** `CallPointerMethod` (1142), `CallVoidMethod` (1144), `CallPointerLocal` (1142), `CallVoidLocal` (1143), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1144), `CallVoidConstructor` (1143), `CallPointerConstructor` (1142)

### 67.3.6 CallVoidConstructor

**Synopsis:** Call a constructor with no arguments

**Declaration:** `function CallVoidConstructor(Ctor: codepointer; Obj: pointer;  
VMT: pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallVoidConstructor` calls the constructor of an object. `Ctor` is the address of the constructor, `Obj` is a pointer to the instance. If it is `Nil`, then a new instance is allocated. `VMT` is a pointer to the object's VMT. The return value is a pointer to the instance.

Note that this can only be used on constructors that require no arguments.

**Errors:** If the constructor expects arguments, the stack may be corrupted.

**See also:** `CallPointerConstructor` (1142), `CallPointerMethod` (1142), `CallVoidLocal` (1143), `CallPointerLocal` (1142), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1144), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1143)

### 67.3.7 CallVoidLocal

**Synopsis:** Call a local nested procedure.

**Declaration:** `function CallVoidLocal(Func: codepointer; Frame: Pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallVoidLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping function.

**Errors:** If the local function expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

**See also:** `CallPointerMethod` (1142), `CallVoidMethod` (1144), `CallPointerLocal` (1142), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1144), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1143), `CallVoidConstructor` (1143), `CallPointerConstructor` (1142)



### 67.3.8 CallVoidMethod

Synopsis: Call an object method

Declaration: `function CallVoidMethod(Method: codepointer; Obj: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidMethod` calls the method with address `Method` for instance `Obj`. It returns a pointer to the instance.

Errors: If the method expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerMethod` (1142), `CallVoidLocal` (1143), `CallPointerLocal` (1142), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (1144), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1143), `CallVoidConstructor` (1143), `CallPointerConstructor` (1142)

### 67.3.9 CallVoidMethodLocal

Synopsis: Call a local procedure of a method

Declaration: `function CallVoidMethodLocal(Func: codepointer; Frame: Pointer; Obj: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidMethodLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping method.

Errors: If the local function expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerMethod` (1142), `CallVoidMethod` (1144), `CallPointerLocal` (1142), `CallVoidLocal` (1143), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (1143), `CallVoidConstructor` (1143), `CallPointerConstructor` (1142)

### 67.3.10 DisposeStr

Synopsis: Dispose of a shortstring which was allocated on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeStr(P: PString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeStr` removes a dynamically allocated string from the heap.

For an example, see `NewStr` (1145).

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` (1145), `SetStr` (1148)

### 67.3.11 LongDiv

Synopsis: Overflow safe divide

Declaration: `function LongDiv(X: LongInt; Y: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `LongDiv` divides `X` by `Y`. The result is of type `Integer` instead of type `Longint`, as you would get normally.

Errors: If Y is zero, a run-time error will be generated.

See also: LongMul ([1145](#))

### 67.3.12 LongMul

Synopsis: Overflow safe multiply.

Declaration: `function LongMul(X: Integer; Y: Integer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: LongMul multiplies X with Y. The result is of type LongInt. This avoids possible overflow errors you would normally get when multiplying X and Y that are too big.

Errors: None.

See also: LongDiv ([1144](#))

### 67.3.13 NewStr

Synopsis: Allocate a copy of a shortstring on the heap.

Declaration: `function NewStr(const S: string) : PString`

Visibility: default

Description: NewStr makes a copy of the string S on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy. If the string is empty then Nil is returned.

The allocated memory is not based on the declared size of the string passed to NewStr, but is based on the actual length of the string.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an 'out of memory' error will occur.

See also: DisposeStr ([1144](#)), SetStr ([1148](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex40.pp

---

```

Program ex40;

{ Program to demonstrate the NewStr function }

Uses Objects;

Var S : String;
    P : PString;

begin
  S := 'Some really cute string';
  P := NewStr(S);
  If P^ <> S then
    Writeln ('Oh-oh... Something is wrong !!');
  DisposeStr(P);
end.

```

---

### 67.3.14 RegisterObjects

Synopsis: Register standard objects.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterObjects`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `RegisterObjects` registers the following objects for streaming:

1. `TCollection`, see `TCollection` (1153).
2. `TStringCollection`, see `TStringCollection` (1203).
3. `TStrCollection`, see `TStrCollection` (1193).

Errors: None.

See also: `RegisterType` (1146)

### 67.3.15 RegisterType

Synopsis: Register new object for streaming.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterType (var S: TStreamRec)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `RegisterType` registers a new type for streaming. An object cannot be streamed unless it has been registered first. The stream record `S` needs to have the following fields set:

**ObjType:** `Sw_Word` This should be a unique identifier. Each possible type should have it's own identifier.

**VmtLink:** `pointer` This should contain a pointer to the VMT (Virtual Method Table) of the object you try to register.

**Load :** `Pointer` is a pointer to a method that initializes an instance of that object, and reads the initial values from a stream. This method should accept as it's sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

**Store:** `Pointer` is a pointer to a method that stores an instance of the object to a stream. This method should accept as it's sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

The VMT of the object can be retrieved with the following expression:

```
VmtLink: ofs (TypeOf (MyType) ^) ;
```

Errors: In case of error (if a object with the same `ObjType`) is already registered), run-time error 212 occurs.

**Listing:** `./objectex/myobject.pp`

---

```
Unit MyObject;
```

```
Interface
```

```
Uses Objects;
```

```
Type
```

```

PMyObject = ^TMyObject;
TMyObject = Object(TObject)
  Field : Longint;
  Constructor Init;
  Constructor Load (Var Stream : TStream);
  Destructor Done;
  Procedure Store (Var Stream : TStream);
  Function GetField : Longint;
  Procedure SetField (Value : Longint);
end;

```

### Implementation

```

Constructor TMyobject.Init;

begin
  Inherited Init;
  Field := -1;
end;

Constructor TMyobject.Load (Var Stream : TStream);

begin
  Stream.Read(Field, Sizeof(Field));
end;

Destructor TMyObject.Done;

begin
end;

Function TMyObject.GetField : Longint;

begin
  GetField := Field;
end;

Procedure TMyObject.SetField (Value : Longint);

begin
  Field := Value;
end;

Procedure TMyObject.Store (Var Stream : TStream);

begin
  Stream.Write(Field, SizeOf(Field));
end;

Const MyObjectRec : TStreamRec = (
  Objtype : 666;
  vmtlink : Ofs(TypeOf(TMyObject)^);
  Load : @TMyObject.Load;
  Store : @TMyObject.Store;
);

begin
  RegisterObjects;

```

```
RegisterType (MyObjectRec);
end.
```

---

### 67.3.16 SetStr

Synopsis: Allocate a copy of a shortstring on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure SetStr(var p: PString; const s: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetStr` makes a copy of the string `S` on the heap and returns the pointer to this copy in `P`. If `P` pointed to another string (i.e. was not `Nil`, the memory is released first. Contrary to `NewStr` (1145), if the string is empty then a pointer to an empty string is returned.

The allocated memory is not based on the declared size of the string passed to `NewStr`, but is based on the actual length of the string.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an 'out of memory' error will occur.

See also: `DisposeStr` (1144), `NewStr` (1145)

## 67.4 LongRec

```
LongRec = packed record
  Hi : Word;
  Lo : Word;
end
```

Record describing a longint (in Words)

## 67.5 PtrRec

```
PtrRec = packed record
  Ofs : Word;
  Seg : Word;
end
```

Record describing a pointer to a memory location.

## 67.6 TStreamRec

```
TStreamRec = packed record
  ObjType : Sw_Word;
  VmtLink : pointer
;
  Load : CodePointer;
  Store : CodePointer;
```

```

    Next : PStreamRec
;
end

```

TStreamRec is used by the Objects unit streaming mechanism: when an object is registered, a TStreamRec record is added to a list of records. This list is used when objects need to be streamed from/streamed to a stream. It contains all the information needed to stream the object.

## 67.7 TStrIndexRec

```

TStrIndexRec = packed record
    Key : Sw_Word;
    Count : Word;
    Offset
    : Word;
end

```

Record type used in a TStringList ([1205](#)) to store the strings

## 67.8 WordRec

```

WordRec = packed record
    Hi : Byte;
    Lo : Byte;
end

```

Record describing a Word (in bytes)

## 67.9 TBufStream

### 67.9.1 Description

Bufstream implements a buffered file stream. That is, all data written to the stream is written to memory first. Only when the buffer is full, or on explicit request, the data is written to disk.

Also, when reading from the stream, first the buffer is checked if there is any unread data in it. If so, this is read first. If not the buffer is filled again, and then the data is read from the buffer.

The size of the buffer is fixed and is set when constructing the file.

This is useful if you need heavy throughput for your stream, because it speeds up operations.

### 67.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1151</a>	Close	Flush data and Close the file.
<a href="#">1150</a>	Done	Close the file and cleans up the instance.
<a href="#">1151</a>	Flush	FLush data from buffer, and write it to stream.
<a href="#">1150</a>	Init	Initialize an instance of <code>TBufStream</code> and open the file.
<a href="#">1152</a>	Open	Open the file if it is closed.
<a href="#">1153</a>	Read	Read data from the file to a buffer in memory.
<a href="#">1152</a>	Seek	Set current position in file.
<a href="#">1152</a>	Truncate	Flush buffer, and truncate the file at current position.
<a href="#">1153</a>	Write	Write data to the file from a buffer in memory.

### 67.9.3 TBufStream.Init

**Synopsis:** Initialize an instance of `TBufStream` and open the file.

**Declaration:** `constructor Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word; Size: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Init` instantiates an instance of `TBufStream`. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in `FileName`. The `Mode` parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate**Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead**Read access only.

**stOpenWrite**Write access only.

**stOpenRead** and write access.

The `Size` parameter determines the size of the buffer that will be created. It should be different from zero.

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` ([1151](#)).

**Errors:** On error, `Status` is set to `stInitError`, and `ErrorInfo` is set to the dos error code.

See also: `TDosStream.Init` ([1169](#)), `TBufStream.Done` ([1150](#))

### 67.9.4 TBufStream.Done

**Synopsis:** Close the file and cleans up the instance.

**Declaration:** `destructor Done; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Done` flushes and closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of `TBufStream`.

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` ([1151](#)).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TDosStream.Done` ([1169](#)), `TBufStream.Init` ([1150](#)), `TBufStream.Close` ([1151](#))

### 67.9.5 TBufStream.Close

Synopsis: Flush data and Close the file.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Close` flushes and closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` (1150) it does not clean up the instance of `TBufStream`

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` (1151).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (1199), `TBufStream.Init` (1150), `TBufStream.Done` (1150)

### 67.9.6 TBufStream.Flush

Synopsis: FLush data from buffer, and write it to stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: When the stream is in write mode, the contents of the buffer are written to disk, and the buffer position is set to zero. When the stream is in read mode, the buffer position is set to zero.

Errors: Write errors may occur if the file was in write mode. see `Write` (1153) for more info on the errors.

See also: `TStream.Close` (1199), `TBufStream.Init` (1150), `TBufStream.Done` (1150)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `ex15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Flush method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
       `P : PString;`  
       `S : PBufStream; { Only one with Flush implemented. }`

**begin**

```

  L:= 'Some constant string';
  { Buffer size of 100 }
  S:=New(PBufStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate, 100));
  WriteLn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  { At this moment, there is no data on disk yet. }
  S^.Flush;
  { Now there is. }
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  { Close calls flush first }
  S^.Close;
  WriteLn ('Closed stream. File handle is ', S^.Handle);
  S^.Open (stOpenRead);
  P:=S^.ReadStr;
  L:=P^;
```



---

```

DisposeStr(P);
WriteLn ('Read "',L,'" from stream with handle ',S^.Handle);
S^.Close;
Dispose (S,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.9.7 TBufStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Flush buffer, and truncate the file at current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to flush the buffer, and then truncates the stream size to the current file position.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1170](#)).

Errors: Errors can be those of `Flush` ([1151](#)) or `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1170](#)).

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([1200](#)), `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1170](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([1197](#))

### 67.9.8 TBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set current position in file.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

For an example, see `TStream.Seek` ([1201](#));

Errors: In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1201](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([1197](#))

### 67.9.9 TBufStream.Open

Synopsis: Open the file if it is closed.

Declaration: `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` ([1151](#)) call.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` ([1171](#)).

Errors: If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` ([1199](#)), `TBufStream.Close` ([1151](#))

### 67.9.10 TBufStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Read data from the file to a buffer in memory.

**Declaration:** `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Read` will read `Count` bytes from the stream and place them in `Buf`.

`Read` will first try to read the data from the stream's internal buffer. If insufficient data is available, the buffer will be filled before continuing to read. This process is repeated until all needed data has been read.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` ([1202](#)).

**Errors:** In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StReadError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: `TStream.Read` ([1202](#)), `TBufStream.Write` ([1153](#))

### 67.9.11 TBufStream.Write

**Synopsis:** Write data to the file from a buffer in memory.

**Declaration:** `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Write` will write `Count` bytes from `Buf` and place them in the stream.

`Write` will first try to write the data to the stream's internal buffer. When the internal buffer is full, then the contents will be written to disk. This process is repeated until all data has been written.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` ([1202](#)).

**Errors:** In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StWriteError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error.

See also: `TStream.Write` ([1202](#)), `TBufStream.Read` ([1153](#))

## 67.10 TCollection

### 67.10.1 Description

The `TCollection` object manages a collection of pointers or objects. It also provides a series of methods to manipulate these pointers or objects.

Whether or not objects are used depends on the kind of calls you use. All kinds come in 2 flavors, one for objects, one for pointers.

**67.10.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1155</a>	At	Return the item at a certain index.
<a href="#">1164</a>	AtDelete	Delete item at certain position.
<a href="#">1163</a>	AtFree	Free an item at the indicates position, calling it's destructor.
<a href="#">1167</a>	AtInsert	Insert an element at a certain position in the collection.
<a href="#">1166</a>	AtPut	Set collection item, overwriting an existing value.
<a href="#">1162</a>	Delete	Delete an item from the collection, but does not destroy it.
<a href="#">1161</a>	DeleteAll	Delete all elements from the collection. Objects are not destroyed.
<a href="#">1155</a>	Done	Clean up collection, release all memory.
<a href="#">1166</a>	Error	Set error code.
<a href="#">1158</a>	FirstThat	Return first item which matches a test.
<a href="#">1165</a>	ForEach	Execute procedure for each item in the list.
<a href="#">1161</a>	Free	Free item from collection, calling it's destructor.
<a href="#">1160</a>	FreeAll	Release all objects from the collection.
<a href="#">1164</a>	FreeItem	Destroy a non-nil item.
<a href="#">1157</a>	GetItem	Read one item off the stream.
<a href="#">1156</a>	IndexOf	Find the position of a certain item.
<a href="#">1154</a>	Init	Instantiate a new collection.
<a href="#">1162</a>	Insert	Insert a new item in the collection at the end.
<a href="#">1157</a>	LastThat	Return last item which matches a test.
<a href="#">1154</a>	Load	Initialize a new collection and load collection from a stream.
<a href="#">1159</a>	Pack	Remove all >Nil pointers from the collection.
<a href="#">1168</a>	PutItem	Put one item on the stream
<a href="#">1166</a>	SetLimit	Set maximum number of elements in the collection.
<a href="#">1168</a>	Store	Write collection to a stream.

**67.10.3 TCollection.Init**

Synopsis: Instantiate a new collection.

Declaration: `constructor Init (ALimit: Sw_Integer; ADelta: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` initializes a new instance of a collection. It sets the (initial) maximum number of items in the collection to `ALimit`. `ADelta` is the increase size : The number of memory places that will be allocated in case `ALimit` is reached, and another element is added to the collection.

For an example, see `TCollection.ForEach` ([1165](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Load` ([1154](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([1155](#))

**67.10.4 TCollection.Load**

Synopsis: Initialize a new collection and load collection from a stream.

Declaration: `constructor Load (var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Load` initializes a new instance of a collection. It reads from stream `S` the item count, the item limit count, and the increase size. After that, it reads the specified number of items from the stream.

Errors: Errors returned can be those of `GetItem` ([1157](#)).

See also: `TCollection.Init` ([1154](#)), `TCollection.GetItem` ([1157](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([1155](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex22.pp

---

```

Program ex22;

  { Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Load method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;
      S : PMemoryStream;

begin
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(100-I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
    WriteLn ('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects ');
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(1000,10));
  C^.Store(S^);
  C^.FreeAll;
  // Dispose(C, Done);
  S^.Seek(0);
  C^.Load(S^);
  WriteLn ('Read ', C^.Count, ' objects from stream. ');
  Dispose(S, Done);
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### 67.10.5 TCollection.Done

Synopsis: Clean up collection, release all memory.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Done` frees all objects in the collection, and then releases all memory occupied by the instance.

For an example, see `TCollection.ForEach` ([1165](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Init` ([1154](#)), `TCollection.FreeAll` ([1160](#))

### 67.10.6 TCollection.At

Synopsis: Return the item at a certain index.

Declaration: `function At(Index: Sw_Integer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `At` returns the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is less than zero or larger than the number of items in the collection, see `TCollection.Error` is called with `coIndexError` and `Index` as arguments, resulting in a run-time error.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` ([1162](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex23.pp

---

```

Program ex23;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.At method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

begin
    C:=New(PCollection, Init(100,10));
    For I:=1 to 100 do
        begin
            M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
            M^.SetField(100-I);
            C^.Insert(M);
        end;
    For I:=0 to C^.Count-1 do
        begin
            M:=C^.At(I);
            Writeln ('Object ', i, ' has field : ', M^.GetField);
        end;
    C^.FreeAll;
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### 67.10.7 TCollection.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find the position of a certain item.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the collection. If `Item` isn't present in the collection, -1 is returned.

Errors: If the item is not present, -1 is returned.

See also: `TCollection.At` ([1155](#)), `TCollection.GetItem` ([1157](#)), `TCollection.Insert` ([1162](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex24.pp

---

```

Program ex24;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.IndexOf method }
```

---

---

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

```

Var C : PCollection;
      M, Keep : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PCollection , Init(100,10));
  Keep:=Nil;
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      If Random<0.1 then
        Keep:=M;
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  If Keep=Nil then
    begin
      Writeln('Please run again. No object selected');
      Halt(1);
    end;
  Writeln('Selected object has field : ', Keep^.GetField);
  Write('Selected object has index : ', C^.IndexOf(Keep));
  Writeln(' should match it's field. ');
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.10.8 TCollection.GetItem

**Synopsis:** Read one item off the stream.

**Declaration:** function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetItem reads a single item off the stream S, and returns a pointer to this item. This method is used internally by the Load method, and should not be used directly.

**Errors:** Possible errors are the ones from TStream.Get ([1195](#)).

**See also:** TStream.Get ([1195](#)), TCollection.Store ([1168](#))

### 67.10.9 TCollection.LastThat

**Synopsis:** Return last item which matches a test.

**Declaration:** function LastThat(Test: CodePointer) : Pointer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function returns the last item in the collection for which Test returns a non-nil result. Test is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TCollection.FirstThat` ([1158](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex25.pp

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Foreach method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
    If P^.GetField < 56 then
        CheckField := 1
    else
        CheckField := 0;
    end;

begin
    C := New(PCollection, Init(100, 10));
    For I := 1 to 100 do
        begin
            M := New(PMyObject, Init);
            M^.SetField(I);
            C^.Insert(M);
        end;
    Writeln ('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects');
    Writeln ('Last one for which Field < 56 has index (should be 54) : ',
        C^.IndexOf(C^.LastThat(@CheckField)));
    C^.FreeAll;
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### 67.10.10 TCollection.FirstThat

Synopsis: Return first item which matches a test.

Declaration: `function FirstThat(Test: CodePointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: This function returns the first item in the collection for which `Test` returns a non-nil result. `Test` is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.LastThat` ([1157](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex26.pp

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }
```

---

```

Uses Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
  If P^.GetField>56 then
    Checkfield:=1
  else
    CheckField:=0;
end;

begin
  C:=New(PCollection,Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject,Init);
      M^.SetField(I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  Writeln ('Inserted ',C^.Count,' objects ');
  Writeln ('first one for which Field>56 has index (should be 56) : ',
    C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat(@CheckField)));
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.10.11 TCollection.Pack

Synopsis: Remove all >Nil pointers from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: default

Description: Pack removes all Nil pointers from the collection, and adjusts Count to reflect this change. No memory is freed as a result of this call. In order to free any memory, you can call SetLimit with an argument of Count after a call to Pack.

Errors: None.

See also: TCollection.SetLimit ([1166](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex26.pp

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }

Uses Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

```



```

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
  If P^.GetField>56 then
    Checkfield:=1
  else
    CheckField:=0;
end;

begin
  C:=New(PCollection , Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init );
      M^.SetField(I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  Writeln ( 'Inserted ',C^.Count,' objects ');
  Writeln ( 'first one for which Field>56 has index (should be 56) : ',
    C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat(@CheckField)));
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.10.12 TCollection.FreeAll

Synopsis: Release all objects from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure FreeAll`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeAll` calls the destructor of each object in the collection. It doesn't release any memory occupied by the collection itself, but it does set `Count` to zero.

See also: `TCollection.DeleteAll` ([1161](#)), `TCollection.FreeItem` ([1164](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex28.pp`

---

```

Program ex28;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FreeAll method }

Uses Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection , Init(120,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init );
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;

```

---

```

    end;
    Writeln ( 'Added 100 Items. ');
    C^.FreeAll;
    Writeln ( 'Freed all objects. ');
    Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.10.13 TCollection.DeleteAll

Synopsis: Delete all elements from the collection. Objects are not destroyed.

Declaration: `procedure DeleteAll`

Visibility: default

Description: `DeleteAll` deletes all elements from the collection. It just sets the `Count` variable to zero. Contrary to `FreeAll` (1160), `DeleteAll` doesn't call the destructor of the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeAll` (1160), `TCollection.Delete` (1162)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** `ex29`;

```

{
  Program to demonstrate the TCollection.DeleteAll method
  Compare with example 28, where FreeAll is used.
}

```

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; { For *TMyObject* definition and registration }

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

```

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  Writeln ( 'Added 100 Items. ');
  C^.DeleteAll;
  Writeln ( 'Deleted all objects. ');
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.10.14 TCollection.Free

Synopsis: Free item from collection, calling it's destructor.

**Declaration:** `procedure Free(Item: Pointer)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Free` Deletes `Item` from the collection, and calls the destructor `Done` of the object.

**Errors:** If the `Item` is not in the collection, `Error` will be called with `coIndexError`.

**See also:** `TCollection.FreeItem` ([1164](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex30.pp`

---

**Program** `ex30`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Free method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**begin**  
     **Randomize**;  
     `C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));`  
     **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
       **begin**  
         `M:=New(PMyObject, Init);`  
         `M^.SetField(I-1);`  
         `C^.Insert(M);`  
       **end**;  
     **WriteLn** ( 'Added 100 Items. ' );  
     **With** `C^ do`  
       **While** `Count>0 do Free(At(Count-1));`  
     **WriteLn** ( 'Freed all objects. ' );  
     **Dispose**(`C, Done`);  
**end.**

---

### 67.10.15 TCollection.Insert

**Synopsis:** Insert a new item in the collection at the end.

**Declaration:** `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Insert` inserts `Item` in the collection. `TCollection` inserts this item at the end, but descendent objects may insert it at another place.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TCollection.AtInsert` ([1167](#)), `TCollection.AtPut` ([1166](#))

### 67.10.16 TCollection.Delete

**Synopsis:** Delete an item from the collection, but does not destroy it.

**Declaration:** `procedure Delete(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delete` deletes `Item` from the collection. It doesn't call the item's destructor, though. For this the `Free` (1161) call is provided.

Errors: If the `Item` is not in the collection, `Error` will be called with `coIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.AtDelete` (1164), `TCollection.Free` (1161)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex31.pp

---

```

Program ex31;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Delete method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  Writeln ( 'Added 100 Items. ' );
  With C^ do
    While Count>0 do Delete(At(Count-1));
  Writeln ( 'Freed all objects' );
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.
```

---

### 67.10.17 TCollection.AtFree

Synopsis: Free an item at the indicates position, calling it's destructor.

Declaration: `procedure AtFree(Index: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AtFree` deletes the item at position `Index` in the collection, and calls the item's destructor if it is not `Nil`.

Errors: If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (1166) is called with `CoIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.Free` (1161), `TCollection.AtDelete` (1164)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex32.pp

---

```

Program ex32;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtFree method }
```

---

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

```
Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PCollection , Init(120,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  WriteLn ( 'Added 100 Items' );
  With C^ do
    While Count>0 do AtFree(Count-1);
  WriteLn ( 'Freed all objects.' );
  Dispose(C,Done);
end.
```

---

### 67.10.18 TCollection.FreeItem

**Synopsis:** Destroy a non-nil item.

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FreeItem calls the destructor of Item if it is not nil.

**Remark** This function is used internally by the TCollection object, and should not be called directly.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** TCollection.Free ([1161](#)), TCollection.AtFree ([1163](#))

### 67.10.19 TCollection.AtDelete

**Synopsis:** Delete item at certain position.

**Declaration:** `procedure AtDelete(Index: Sw_Integer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** AtDelete deletes the pointer at position Index in the collection. It doesn't call the object's destructor.

**Errors:** If Index isn't valid then Error ([1166](#)) is called with CoIndexError.

**See also:** TCollection.Delete ([1162](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex33.pp

---

```

Program ex33;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Delete method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
  WriteLn ('Added 100 Items. ');
  With C^ do
    While Count>0 do Delete(Count-1);
  WriteLn ('Freed all objects. ');
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.10.20 TCollection.ForEach

Synopsis: Execute procedure for each item in the list.

Declaration: `procedure ForEach(Action: CodePointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ForEach` calls `Action` for each element in the collection, and passes the element as an argument to `Action`.

`Action` is a procedural type variable that accepts a pointer as an argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FirstThat` ([1158](#)), `TCollection.LastThat` ([1157](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex21.pp

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.ForEach method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);

begin

```

---

```

    WriteLn ( 'Field : ', P^.GetField );
end;

begin
  C:=New( PCollection , Init(100,10));
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(100-I);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
    WriteLn ( 'Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects ');
  C^.ForEach( @PrintField );
  C^.FreeAll;
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.10.21 TCollection.SetLimit

Synopsis: Set maximum number of elements in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure SetLimit(ALimit: Sw_Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLimit` sets the maximum number of elements in the collection. `ALimit` must not be less than `Count`, and should not be larger than `MaxCollectionSize`

For an example, see Pack ([1159](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Init` ([1154](#))

### 67.10.22 TCollection.Error

Synopsis: Set error code.

Declaration: `procedure Error(Code: Integer; Info: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` is called by the various `TCollection` methods in case of an error condition. The default behaviour is to make a call to `RunError` with an error of `212-Code`.

This method can be overridden by descendent objects to implement a different error-handling.

See also: `Abstract` ([1141](#))

### 67.10.23 TCollection.AtPut

Synopsis: Set collection item, overwriting an existing value.

Declaration: `procedure AtPut(Index: Sw_Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AtPut` sets the element at position `Index` in the collection to `Item`. Any previous value is overwritten.

For an example, see `Pack` (1159).

**Errors:** If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (1166) is called with `CoIndexError`.

### 67.10.24 TCollection.AtInsert

**Synopsis:** Insert an element at a certain position in the collection.

**Declaration:** `procedure AtInsert(Index: Sw_Integer; Item: Pointer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AtInsert` inserts `Item` in the collection at position `Index`, shifting all elements by one position. In case the current limit is reached, the collection will try to expand with a call to `SetLimit`

**Errors:** If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (1166) is called with `CoIndexError`. If the collection fails to expand, then `coOverflow` is passed to `Error`.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` (1162)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `ex34`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtInsert method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**Procedure** `PrintField` (`Dummy`: `Pointer`; `P` : `PMyObject`);

**begin**  
     `WriteLn` ( 'Field : ', `P`^.`GetField` );  
**end**;

**begin**  
     `Randomize`;  
     `C`:=`New`(`PCollection`, `Init`(120,10));  
     `WriteLn` ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );  
     **For** `I`:=1 **to** 100 **do**  
         **begin**  
             `M`:=`New`(`PMyObject`, `Init` );  
             `M`^.`SetField`(`I`-1);  
             **If** `I`=1 **then**  
                 `C`^.`Insert`(`M`)  
             **else**  
                 **With** `C`^ **do**  
                     `AtInsert`(`Random`(`Count`), `M`);  
             **end**;  
             `WriteLn` ( 'Values : ' );  
             `C`^.`Foreach`(`@PrintField`);  
             `Dispose`(`C`, `Done`);  
         **end**.  
**end**.

---



### 67.10.25 TCollection.Store

Synopsis: Write collection to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection to the stream `S`. It does this by writing the current `Count`, `Limit` and `Delta` to the stream, and then writing each item to the stream.

The contents of the stream are then suitable for instantiating another collection with `Load` ([1154](#)).

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` ([1154](#)).

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Put` ([1200](#)).

See also: `TCollection.Load` ([1154](#)), `TCollection.PutItem` ([1168](#))

### 67.10.26 TCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Put one item on the stream

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes `Item` to stream `S`. This method is used internally by the `TCollection` object, and should not be called directly.

Errors: Errors are those returned by `TStream.Put` ([1200](#)).

See also: `Store` ([1168](#)), `GetItem` ([1157](#))

## 67.11 TDosStream

### 67.11.1 Description

`TDosStream` is a stream that stores its contents in a file. it overrides a couple of methods of `TStream` ([1195](#)) for this.

In addition to the fields inherited from `TStream` (see `TStream` ([1195](#))), there are some extra fields, that describe the file. (mainly the name and the OS file handle)

No buffering in memory is done when using `TDosStream`. All data are written directly to the file. For a stream that buffers in memory, see `TBufStream` ([1149](#)).

### 67.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1169</a>	<code>Close</code>	Close the file.
<a href="#">1169</a>	<code>Done</code>	Closes the file and cleans up the instance.
<a href="#">1169</a>	<code>Init</code>	Instantiate a new instance of <code>TDosStream</code> .
<a href="#">1171</a>	<code>Open</code>	Open the file stream
<a href="#">1172</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the stream to a buffer.
<a href="#">1170</a>	<code>Seek</code>	Set file position.
<a href="#">1170</a>	<code>Truncate</code>	Truncate the file on the current position.
<a href="#">1172</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write data from a buffer to the stream.

### 67.11.3 TDosStream.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of TDosStream.

Declaration: `constructor Init (FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates an instance of `TDosStream`. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in `FileName`. The `Mode` parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate**Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead**Read access only.

**stOpenWrite**Write access only.

**stOpenRead** and write access.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` (1170).

Errors: On error, `Status` (??) is set to `stInitError`, and `ErrorInfo` is set to the dos error code.

See also: `TDosStream.Done` (1169)

### 67.11.4 TDosStream.Done

Synopsis: Closes the file and cleans up the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of `TDosStream`.  
for an example, see e.g. `TDosStream.Truncate` (1170).

Errors: None.

See also: `TDosStream.Init` (1169), `TDosStream.Close` (1169)

### 67.11.5 TDosStream.Close

Synopsis: Close the file.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` (1169) it does not clean up the instance of `TDosStream`

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (1171).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (1199), `TDosStream.Init` (1169), `TDosStream.Done` (1169)

### 67.11.6 TDosStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Truncate the file on the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to truncate the stream size to the current file position.

Errors: If an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stError` and `ErrorInfo` is set to the OS error code.

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([1200](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([1197](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `ex16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Truncate method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
       `P : PString;`  
       `S : PDosStream; { Only one with Truncate implemented. }`

**begin**

```

L:= 'Some constant string';
{ Buffer size of 100 }
S:=New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
Writeln ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.WriteStr(@L);
S^.WriteStr(@L);
{ Close calls flush first }
S^.Close;
S^.Open (stOpen);
Writeln ('Size of stream is : ', S^.GetSize);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
Writeln ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.Truncate;
Writeln ('Truncated stream. Size is : ', S^.GetSize);
S^.Close;
Dispose (S, Done);

```

**end.**

---

### 67.11.7 TDosStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set file position.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

**Errors:** In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1201](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([1197](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `ex17`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Seek method }*

**Uses** `Objects`;

**Var** `L : String`;  
       `Marker : Word`;  
       `P : PString`;  
       `S : PDosStream`;

**begin**  
   `L := 'Some constant string';`  
   *{ Buffer size of 100 }*  
   `S := New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));`  
   `WriteLn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream.');`  
   `S^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `Marker := S^.GetPos;`  
   `WriteLn ('Set marker at ', Marker);`  
   `L := 'Some other constant String';`  
   `WriteLn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream.');`  
   `S^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `S^.Close;`  
   `S^.Open(stOpenRead);`  
   `WriteLn ('Size of stream is : ', S^.GetSize);`  
   `WriteLn ('Seeking to marker');`  
   `S^.Seek(Marker);`  
   `P := S^.ReadStr;`  
   `L := P^;`  
   `DisposeStr(P);`  
   `WriteLn ('Read "', L, '" from stream.');`  
   `S^.Close;`  
   `Dispose (S, Done);`  
**end.**

---

### 67.11.8 TDosStream.Open

**Synopsis:** Open the file stream

**Declaration:** `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` ([1169](#)) call.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` ([1199](#)), `TDosStream.Close` ([1169](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex14.pp

---

```

Program ex14;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Close method }

Uses Objects;

Var L : String;
    P : PString;
    S : PDosStream; { Only one with Close implemented. }

begin
    L:= 'Some constant string';
    S:=New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
    WriteIn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
    S^.WriteStr(@L);
    S^.Close;
    WriteIn ('Closed stream. File handle is ', S^.Handle);
    S^.Open (stOpenRead);
    P:=S^.ReadStr;
    L:=P^;
    DisposeStr(P);
    WriteIn ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
    S^.Close;
    Dispose (S, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.11.9 TDosStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Read data from the stream to a buffer.

**Declaration:** `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** If the Stream is open and the stream status is stOK then Read will read Count bytes from the stream and place them in Buf.

For an example, see TStream.Read ([1202](#)).

**Errors:** In case of an error, Status is set to StReadError, and ErrorInfo gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: TStream.Read ([1202](#)), TDosStream.Write ([1172](#))

### 67.11.10 TDosStream.Write

**Synopsis:** Write data from a buffer to the stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** If the Stream is open and the stream status is stOK then Write will write Count bytes from Buf and place them in the stream.

For an example, see TStream.Read ([1202](#)).

**Errors:** In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StWriteError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error.

See also: `TStream.Write` ([1202](#)), `TDosStream.Read` ([1172](#))

## 67.12 TMemoryStream

### 67.12.1 Description

The `TMemoryStream` object implements a stream that stores it's data in memory. The data is stored on the heap, with the possibility to specify the maximum amount of data, and the size of the memory blocks being used.

See also: `TStream` ([1195](#))

### 67.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1173</a>	<code>Done</code>	Clean up memory and destroy the object instance.
<a href="#">1173</a>	<code>Init</code>	Initialize memory stream, reserves memory for stream data.
<a href="#">1174</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the stream to a location in memory.
<a href="#">1174</a>	<code>Truncate</code>	Set the stream size to the current position.
<a href="#">1175</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the stream.

### 67.12.3 TMemoryStream.Init

**Synopsis:** Initialize memory stream, reserves memory for stream data.

**Declaration:** constructor `Init(ALimit: LongInt; ABlockSize: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Init` instantiates a new `TMemoryStream` object. The `memorystreamobject` will initially allocate at least `ALimit` bytes memory, divided into memory blocks of size `ABlockSize`. The number of blocks needed to get to `ALimit` bytes is rounded up.

By default, the number of blocks is 1, and the size of a block is 8192. This is selected if you specify 0 as the `blocksize`.

For an example, see e.g `TStream.CopyFrom` ([1203](#)).

**Errors:** If the stream cannot allocate the initial memory needed for the memory blocks, then the stream's status is set to `stInitError`.

See also: `TMemoryStream.Done` ([1173](#))

### 67.12.4 TMemoryStream.Done

**Synopsis:** Clean up memory and destroy the object instance.

**Declaration:** destructor `Done; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Done` releases the memory blocks used by the stream, and then cleans up the memory used by the stream object itself.

For an example, see e.g `TStream.CopyFrom` ([1203](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: TMemoryStream.Init ([1173](#))

### 67.12.5 TMemoryStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Set the stream size to the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` sets the size of the memory stream equal to the current position. It de-allocates any memory-blocks that are no longer needed, so that the new size of the stream is the current position in the stream, rounded up to the first multiple of the stream blocksize.

Errors: If an error occurs during memory de-allocation, the stream's status is set to `stError`

See also: TStream.Truncate ([1200](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `ex20;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TMemoryStream.Truncate method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
       `P : PString;`  
       `S : PMemoryStream;`  
       `I : Longint;`

**begin**  
   `L:= 'Some constant string';`  
   *{ Buffer size of 100 }*  
   `S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(1000,100));`  
   `Writeln ( 'Writing 100 times "',L,'" to stream.');`  
   **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
     `S^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `Writeln ( 'Finished.');`  
   `S^.Seek(100);`  
   `S^.Truncate;`  
   `Writeln ( 'Truncated at byte 100.');`  
   `Dispose (S,Done);`  
   `Writeln ( 'Finished.');`  
**end.**

---

### 67.12.6 TMemoryStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream to a location in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Read` reads `Count` bytes from the stream to `Buf`. It updates the position of the stream.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` ([1202](#)).

Errors: If there is not enough data available, no data is read, and the stream's status is set to `stReadError`.

See also: `TStream.Read` ([1202](#)), `TMemoryStream.Write` ([1175](#))

### 67.12.7 TMemoryStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Write copies `Count` bytes from `Buf` to the stream. It updates the position of the stream.

If not enough memory is available to hold the extra `Count` bytes, then the stream will try to expand, by allocating as much blocks with size `BlkSize` (as specified in the constructor call `Init` ([1173](#))) as needed.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` ([1202](#)).

Errors: If the stream cannot allocate more memory, then the status is set to `stWriteError`

See also: `TStream.Write` ([1202](#)), `TMemoryStream.Read` ([1174](#))

## 67.13 TObject

### 67.13.1 Description

This type serves as the basic object for all other objects in the `Objects` unit.

### 67.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1176</a>	<code>Done</code>	Destroy an object.
<a href="#">1176</a>	<code>Free</code>	Destroy an object and release all memory.
<a href="#">1175</a>	<code>Init</code>	Construct (initialize) a new object
<a href="#">1176</a>	<code>Is\_Object</code>	Check whether a pointer points to an object.

### 67.13.3 TObject.Init

Synopsis: Construct (initialize) a new object

Declaration: `constructor Init`

Visibility: default

Description: Instantiates a new object of type `TObject`. It fills the instance up with `Zero` bytes.

For an example, see `Free` ([1176](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Free` ([1176](#)), `TObject.Done` ([1176](#))



### 67.13.4 TObject.Free

Synopsis: Destroy an object and release all memory.

Declaration: `procedure Free`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Free` calls the destructor of the object, and releases the memory occupied by the instance of the object.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `self` is `nil` and whether the object is indeed allocated on the heap.

See also: `TObject.Init` (1175), `TObject.Done` (1176)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex7.pp`

---

```

program ex7;

  { Program to demonstrate the TObject.Free call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : PObject;

begin
  // Allocate memory for object.
  O:=New(PObject, Init);
  // Free memory of object.
  O^.free;
end.

```

---

### 67.13.5 TObject.Is\_Object

Synopsis: Check whether a pointer points to an object.

Declaration: `function Is_Object(P: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Is_Object` returns `True` if the pointer `P` points to an instance of a `TObject` descendent, it returns `false` otherwise.

### 67.13.6 TObject.Done

Synopsis: Destroy an object.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Done`, the destructor of `TObject` does nothing. It is mainly intended to be used in the `TObject.Free` (1176) method.

The destructor `Done` does not free the memory occupied by the object.

Errors: None.

See also: TObject.Free ([1176](#)), TObject.Init ([1175](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex8.pp

---

```

program ex8;

{ Program to demonstrate the TObject.Done call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : PObject;

begin
    // Allocate memory for object.
    O:=New(PObject, Init);
    O^.Done;
end.
```

---

## 67.14 TPoint

### 67.14.1 Description

Record describing a point in a 2 dimensional plane.

## 67.15 TRect

### 67.15.1 Description

Describes a rectangular region in a plane.

#### 67.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1182</a>	Assign	Set rectangle corners.
<a href="#">1179</a>	Contains	Determine if a point is inside the rectangle
<a href="#">1179</a>	Copy	Copy cornerpoints from another rectangle.
<a href="#">1177</a>	Empty	Is the surface of the rectangle zero
<a href="#">1178</a>	Equals	Do the corners of the rectangles match
<a href="#">1182</a>	Grow	Expand rectangle with certain size.
<a href="#">1180</a>	Intersect	Reduce rectangle to intersection with another rectangle
<a href="#">1181</a>	Move	Move rectangle along a vector.
<a href="#">1180</a>	Union	Enlarges rectangle to encompass another rectangle.

### 67.15.3 TRect.Empty

**Synopsis:** Is the surface of the rectangle zero

**Declaration:** function Empty : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Empty returns True if the rectangle defined by the corner points A, B has zero or negative surface.

Errors: None.

See also: TRect.Equals ([1178](#)), TRect.Contains ([1179](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program ex1;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Empty }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect : TRect;
    P : TPoint;

begin
  With ARect.A do
    begin
      X:=10;
      Y:=10;
    end;
  With ARect.B do
    begin
      X:=20;
      Y:=20;
    end;
  { Offset B by (5,5) }
  With BRect.A do
    begin
      X:=15;
      Y:=15;
    end;
  With BRect.B do
    begin
      X:=25;
      Y:=25;
    end;
  { Point }
  With P do
    begin
      X:=15;
      Y:=15;
    end;
  Writeln ( 'A empty : ',ARect.Empty);
  Writeln ( 'B empty : ',BRect.Empty);
  Writeln ( 'A Equals B : ',ARect.Equals(BRect));
  Writeln ( 'A Contains (15,15) : ',ARect.Contains(P));
end.
```

---

#### 67.15.4 TRect.Equals

Synopsis: Do the corners of the rectangles match

Declaration: `function Equals(R: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Equals` returns `True` if the rectangle has the same corner points A, B as the rectangle R, and `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `TRect.Empty` (1177)

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRect.Empty` (1177), `TRect.Contains` (1179)

### 67.15.5 TRect.Contains

**Synopsis:** Determine if a point is inside the rectangle

**Declaration:** `function Contains(P: TPoint) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Contains` returns `True` if the point P is contained in the rectangle (including borders), `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRect.Intersect` (1180), `TRect.Equals` (1178)

### 67.15.6 TRect.Copy

**Synopsis:** Copy cornerpoints from another rectangle.

**Declaration:** `procedure Copy(R: TRect)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Assigns the rectangle R to the object. After the call to `Copy`, the rectangle R has been copied to the object that invoked `Copy`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRect.Assign` (1182)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `ex2`;

*{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Copy }*

**Uses** `objects`;

**Var** `ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect`;

**begin**

`ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);`

`BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);`

`CRect.Copy(ARect);`

**If** `ARect.Equals(CRect)` **Then**

**WriteLn** ( 'ARect equals CRect' )

**Else**

**WriteLn** ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !' );

**end.**

---

### 67.15.7 TRect.Union

Synopsis: Enlarges rectangle to encompass another rectangle.

Declaration: `procedure Union(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Union` enlarges the current rectangle so that it becomes the union of the current rectangle with the rectangle `R`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Intersect` ([1180](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `ex3`;

*{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Union }*

**Uses** `objects`;

**Var** `ARect, BRect, CRect` : `TRect`;

**begin**

`ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);`

`BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);`

*{ CRect is union of ARect and BRect }*

`CRect.Assign(10,10,25,25);`

*{ Calculate it explicitly }*

`ARect.Union(BRect);`

**If** `ARect.Equals(CRect)` **Then**

`Writeln ('ARect equals CRect')`

**Else**

`Writeln ('ARect does not equal CRect !');`

**end.**

---

### 67.15.8 TRect.Intersect

Synopsis: Reduce rectangle to intersection with another rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Intersect(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Intersect` makes the intersection of the current rectangle with `R`. If the intersection is empty, then the rectangle is set to the empty rectangle at coordinate (0,0).

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Union` ([1180](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program ex4;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Intersect }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect,CRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);
  { CRect is intersection of ARect and BRect }
  CRect.Assign(15,15,20,20);
  { Calculate it explicitly }
  ARect.Intersect(BRect);
  If ARect.Equals(CRect) Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect equals CRect' )
  Else
    Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !' );
  BRect.Assign(25,25,30,30);
  ARect.Intersect(BRect);
  If ARect.Empty Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect is empty' );
end.

```

---

### 67.15.9 TRect.Move

Synopsis: Move rectangle along a vector.

Declaration: `procedure Move(ADX: Sw_Integer; ADY: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Move` moves the current rectangle along a vector with components (ADX, ADY) . It adds ADX to the X-coordinate of both corner points, and ADY to both end points.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Grow` ([1182](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex5.pp

---

```

Program ex5;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Move }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  ARect.Move(5,5);
  // Brect should be where new ARect is.
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);

```

---

```

If ARect.Equals(BRect) Then
  Writeln ( 'ARect equals BRect' )
Else
  Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal BRect !' );
end.

```

---

### 67.15.10 TRect.Grow

Synopsis: Expand rectangle with certain size.

Declaration: `procedure Grow(ADX: Sw_Integer; ADY: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Grow` expands the rectangle with an amount `ADX` in the X direction (both on the left and right side of the rectangle, thus adding a length  $2*ADX$  to the width of the rectangle), and an amount `ADY` in the Y direction (both on the top and the bottom side of the rectangle, adding a length  $2*ADY$  to the height of the rectangle).

`ADX` and `ADY` can be negative. If the resulting rectangle is empty, it is set to the empty rectangle at `(0,0)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Move` ([1181](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex6.pp`

---

```

Program ex6;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Grow }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  ARect.Grow(5,5);
  // Brect should be where new ARect is.
  BRect.Assign(5,5,25,25);
  If ARect.Equals(BRect) Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect equals BRect' )
  Else
    Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal BRect !' );
end.

```

---

### 67.15.11 TRect.Assign

Synopsis: Set rectangle corners.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(XA: Sw_Integer; YA: Sw_Integer; XB: Sw_Integer; YB: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Assign sets the corner points of the rectangle to (XA, YA) and (Xb, Yb).

For an example, see TRect.Copy ([1179](#)).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** TRect.Copy ([1179](#))

## 67.16 TResourceCollection

### 67.16.1 Description

A TResourceCollection manages a collection of resource names. It stores the position and the size of a resource, as well as the name of the resource. It stores these items in records that look like this:

```
TYPE
  TResourceItem = packed RECORD
    Posn: LongInt;
    Size: LongInt;
    Key : String;
  End;
  PResourceItem = ^TResourceItem;
```

It overrides some methods of TStringCollection in order to accomplish this.

**Remark** Remark that the TResourceCollection manages the names of the resources and their associated positions and sizes, it doesn't manage the resources themselves.

### 67.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1184</a>	FreeItem	Release memory occupied by item.
<a href="#">1184</a>	GetItem	Read an item from the stream.
<a href="#">1183</a>	KeyOf	Return the key of an item in the collection.
<a href="#">1184</a>	PutItem	Write an item to the stream.

### 67.16.3 TResourceCollection.KeyOf

**Synopsis:** Return the key of an item in the collection.

**Declaration:** function KeyOf(Item: Pointer) : Pointer; Virtual

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** KeyOf returns the key of an item in the collection. For resources, the key is a pointer to the string with the resource name.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** TStringCollection.Compare ([1204](#))



### 67.16.4 TResourceCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read an item from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a resource item from the stream `S`. It reads the position, size and name from the stream, in that order. It DOES NOT read the resource itself from the stream.

The resulting item is not inserted in the collection. This call is mainly for internal use by the `TCollection.Load (1154)` method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Read (1202)`

See also: `TCollection.Load (1154)`, `TStream.Read (1202)`

### 67.16.5 TResourceCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Release memory occupied by item.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeItem` releases the memory occupied by `Item`. It de-allocates the name, and then the resource item record.

It does NOT remove the item from the collection.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem (1164)`

### 67.16.6 TResourceCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write an item to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes `Item` to the stream `S`. It does this by writing the position and size and name of the resource item to the stream.

This method is used primarily by the `Store (1168)` method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Write (1202)`.

See also: `TCollection.Store (1168)`

## 67.17 TResourceFile

### 67.17.1 Description

`TResourceFile (1184)` represents the resources in a binary file image.

**67.17.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1185</a>	Count	Number of resources in the file
<a href="#">1187</a>	Delete	Delete a resource from the file
<a href="#">1185</a>	Done	Destroy the instance and remove it from memory.
<a href="#">1186</a>	Flush	Writes the resources to the stream.
<a href="#">1186</a>	Get	Return a resource by key name.
<a href="#">1185</a>	Init	Instantiate a new instance.
<a href="#">1186</a>	KeyAt	Return the key of the item at a certain position.
<a href="#">1187</a>	Put	Set a resource by key name.
<a href="#">1186</a>	SwitchTo	Write resources to a new stream.

**67.17.3 TResourceFile.Init**

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance.

Declaration: `constructor Init (AStream: PStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates a new instance of a `TResourceFile` object. If `AStream` is not nil then it is considered as a stream describing an executable image on disk.

`Init` will try to position the stream on the start of the resources section, and read all resources from the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Done` ([1185](#))

**67.17.4 TResourceFile.Done**

Synopsis: Destroy the instance and remove it from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` cleans up the instance of the `TResourceFile` Object. If `Stream` was specified at initialization, then `Stream` is disposed of too.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Init` ([1185](#))

**67.17.5 TResourceFile.Count**

Synopsis: Number of resources in the file

Declaration: `function Count : Sw_Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Count` returns the number of resources. If no resources were read, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Init` ([1185](#))

### 67.17.6 TResourceFile.KeyAt

Synopsis: Return the key of the item at a certain position.

Declaration: `function KeyAt (I: Sw_Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyAt` returns the key (the name) of the `I`-th resource.

Errors: In case `I` is invalid, `TCollection.Error` will be executed.

See also: `TResourceFile.Get` ([1186](#))

### 67.17.7 TResourceFile.Get

Synopsis: Return a resource by key name.

Declaration: `function Get (Key: string) : PObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get` returns a pointer to a instance of a resource identified by `Key`. If `Key` cannot be found in the list of resources, then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Get`

### 67.17.8 TResourceFile.SwitchTo

Synopsis: Write resources to a new stream.

Declaration: `function SwitchTo (AStream: PStream; Pack: Boolean) : PStream`

Visibility: default

Description: `SwitchTo` switches to a new stream to hold the resources in. `AStream` will be the new stream after the call to `SwitchTo`.

If `Pack` is true, then all the known resources will be copied from the current stream to the new stream (`AStream`). If `Pack` is False, then only the current resource is copied.

The return value is the value of the original stream: `Stream`.

The `Modified` flag is set as a consequence of this call.

Errors: Errors returned can be those of `TStream.Read` ([1202](#)) and `TStream.Write` ([1202](#)).

See also: `TResourceFile.Flush` ([1186](#))

### 67.17.9 TResourceFile.Flush

Synopsis: Writes the resources to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: default

Description: If the `Modified` flag is set to `True`, then `Flush` writes the resources to the stream `Stream`. It sets the `Modified` flag to true after that.

Errors: Errors can be those by `TStream.Seek` ([1201](#)) and `TStream.Write` ([1202](#)).

See also: `TResourceFile.SwitchTo` ([1186](#))

### 67.17.10 TResourceFile.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a resource from the file

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Key: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delete` deletes the resource identified by `Key` from the collection. It sets the `Modified` flag to `true`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Flush` ([1186](#))

### 67.17.11 TResourceFile.Put

Synopsis: Set a resource by key name.

Declaration: `procedure Put(Item: PObject; Key: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` sets the resource identified by `Key` to `Item`. If no such resource exists, a new one is created. The item is written to the stream.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Put` ([1200](#)) and `TStream.Seek`

See also: `Get` ([1186](#))

## 67.18 TSortedCollection

### 67.18.1 Description

`TSortedCollection` is an abstract class, implementing a sorted collection. You should never use an instance of `TSortedCollection` directly, instead you should declare a descendent type, and override the `Compare` ([1189](#)) method.

Because the collection is ordered, `TSortedCollection` overrides some `TCollection` methods, to provide faster routines for lookup.

The `Compare` ([1189](#)) method decides how elements in the collection should be ordered. Since `TCollection` has no way of knowing how to order pointers, you must override the compare method.

Additionally, `TCollection` provides a means to filter out duplicates. if you set `Duplicates` to `False` (the default) then duplicates will not be allowed.

The example below defines a descendent of `TSortedCollection` which is used in the examples.

**67.18.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1189</a>	Compare	Compare two items in the collection.
<a href="#">1189</a>	IndexOf	Return index of an item in the collection.
<a href="#">1188</a>	Init	Instantiates a new instance of a <code>TSortedCollection</code>
<a href="#">1191</a>	Insert	Insert new item in collection.
<a href="#">1188</a>	KeyOf	Return the key of an item
<a href="#">1188</a>	Load	Instantiates a new instance of a <code>TSortedCollection</code> and loads it from stream.
<a href="#">1190</a>	Search	Search for item with given key.
<a href="#">1192</a>	Store	Write the collection to the stream.

**67.18.3 TSortedCollection.Init**

Synopsis: Instantiates a new instance of a `TSortedCollection`

Declaration: `constructor Init (ALimit: Sw_Integer; ADelta: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` calls the inherited constructor (see `TCollection.Init` ([1154](#))) and sets the `Duplicates` flag to false.

You should not call this method directly, since `TSortedCollection` is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the `inherited` keyword.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Load` ([1188](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([1155](#))

**67.18.4 TSortedCollection.Load**

Synopsis: Instantiates a new instance of a `TSortedCollection` and loads it from stream.

Declaration: `constructor Load (var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Load` calls the inherited constructor (see `TCollection.Load` ([1154](#))) and reads the `Duplicates` flag from the stream..

You should not call this method directly, since `TSortedCollection` is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the `inherited` keyword.

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` ([1154](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Init` ([1188](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([1155](#))

**67.18.5 TSortedCollection.KeyOf**

Synopsis: Return the key of an item

Declaration: `function KeyOf (Item: Pointer) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `KeyOf` returns the key associated with `Item`. `TSortedCollection` returns the item itself as the key, descendent objects can override this method to calculate a (unique) key based on the item passed (such as hash values).

`Keys` are used to sort the objects, they are used to search and sort the items in the collection. If descendent types override this method then it allows possibly for faster search/sort methods based on keys rather than on the objects themselves.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.IndexOf` ([1189](#)), `TSortedCollection.Compare` ([1189](#))

### 67.18.6 TSortedCollection.IndexOf

**Synopsis:** Return index of an item in the collection.

**Declaration:** `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the collection. It searches for the object based on it's key. If duplicates are allowed, then it returns the index of last object that matches `Item`.

In case `Item` is not found in the collection, -1 is returned.

For an example, see `TCollection.IndexOf` ([1156](#))

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.Search` ([1190](#)), `TSortedCollection.Compare` ([1189](#))

### 67.18.7 TSortedCollection.Compare

**Synopsis:** Compare two items in the collection.

**Declaration:** `function Compare(Key1: Pointer; Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Compare` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects in order to compare two items in the collection. This method is used in the `Search` ([1190](#)) method and in the `Insert` ([1191](#)) method to determine the ordering of the objects.

The function should compare the two keys of items and return the following function results:

**Result < 0** If `Key1` is logically before `Key2` (`Key1 < Key2`)

**Result = 0** If `Key1` and `Key2` are equal. (`Key1 = Key2`)

**Result > 0** If `Key1` is logically after `Key2` (`Key1 > Key2`)

**Errors:** An 'abstract run-time error' will be generated if you call `TSortedCollection.Compare` directly.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.IndexOf` ([1189](#)), `TSortedCollection.Search` ([1190](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/mysortc.pp`

---

**Unit** MySortC;

**Interface**

**Uses** Objects;

**Type**

```

PMySortedCollection = ^TMySortedCollection;
TMySortedCollection = Object(TSortedCollection)
    Function Compare (Key1,Key2 : Pointer): Sw_integer; virtual;
    end;

```

**Implementation**

**Uses** MyObject;

**Function** TMySortedCollection.Compare (Key1,Key2 : Pointer) :sw\_integer;

**begin**

```

    Compare:=PMyobject(Key1)^.GetField - PMyObject(Key2)^.GetField;

```

**end**;

**end**.

---

### 67.18.8 TSortedCollection.Search

Synopsis: Search for item with given key.

Declaration: `function Search(Key: Pointer; var Index: Sw_Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Search looks for the item with key Key and returns the position of the item (if present) in the collection in Index.

Instead of a linear search as TCollection does, TSortedCollection uses a binary search based on the keys of the objects. It uses the Compare (1189) function to implement this search.

If the item is found, Search returns True, otherwise False is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: TCollection.IndexOf (1156)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** ex36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject, MySortC;

*{ For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PSortedCollection;

    M : PMyObject;

    I : Longint;

**Procedure** PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);

```

begin
  Writeln ( 'Field : ', P^.GetField );
end;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PMySortedCollection, Init(120,10));
  C^.Duplicates:=True;
  Writeln ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(Random(100));
      C^.Insert(M)
    end;
  M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
  Repeat;
    Write ( 'Value to search for (-1 stops) : ' );
    read ( I );
    If I<>-1 then
      begin
        M^.SetField(i);
        If Not C^.Search (M,I) then
          Writeln ( 'No such value found' )
        else
          begin
            Write ( 'Value ', PMyObject(C^.At(I))^ .GetField );
            Writeln ( ' present at position ', I );
          end;
      end;
    Until I=-1;
    Dispose (M, Done );
    Dispose (C, Done );
  end.

```

---

### 67.18.9 TSortedCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert new item in collection.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts an item in the collection at the correct position, such that the collection is ordered at all times. You should never use `Atinsert` ([1167](#)), since then the collection ordering is not guaranteed.

If `Item` is already present in the collection, and `Duplicates` is `False`, the item will not be inserted.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.AtInsert` ([1167](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex35.pp`



---

```

Program ex35;

{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }

Uses Objects, MyObject, MySortC;
      { For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }

Var C : PSortedCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Field : ', P^.GetField );
end;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PMySortedCollection, Init(120,10));
  WriteLn ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New( PMyObject, Init );
      M^.SetField( Random(100));
      C^.Insert(M)
    end;
  WriteLn ( 'Values : ' );
  C^.Foreach( @PrintField );
  Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.18.10 TSortedCollection.Store

Synopsis: Write the collection to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection to the stream `S`. It does this by calling the inherited `TCollection.Store` ([1168](#)), and then writing the `Duplicates` flag to the stream.

After a `Store`, the collection can be loaded from the stream with the constructor `Load` ([1188](#))

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` ([1154](#)).

Errors: Errors can be those of `TStream.Put` ([1200](#)).

See also: `TSortedCollection.Load` ([1188](#))

## 67.19 TStrCollection

### 67.19.1 Description

The `TStrCollection` object manages a sorted collection of null-terminated strings (pchar strings). To this end, it overrides the `Compare` (1189) method of `TSortedCollection`, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

### 67.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1193</a>	<code>Compare</code>	Compare two strings in the collection.
<a href="#">1194</a>	<code>FreeItem</code>	Free null-terminated string from the collection.
<a href="#">1194</a>	<code>GetItem</code>	Read a null-terminated string from the stream.
<a href="#">1194</a>	<code>PutItem</code>	Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

### 67.19.3 TStrCollection.Compare

Synopsis: Compare two strings in the collection.

Declaration: `function Compare(Key1: Pointer; Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStrCollection` overrides the `Compare` function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns

-1 if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.

0 if the two strings are equal.

1 if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Compare` (1189)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex38.pp`

**Program** `ex38;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStrCollection.Compare method }*

**Uses** `Objects, Strings;`

**Var** `C : PStrCollection;`

`S : String;`

`I : longint;`

`P : Pchar;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`C:=New(PStrCollection, Init(120,10));`

`C^.Duplicates:=True; { Duplicates allowed }`

`WriteLn('Inserting 100 records at random places.');`

**For** `I:=1 to 100 do`

`begin`

`Str(Random(100),S);`

---

```

S:= 'String with value '+S;
P:= StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);
C^.Insert(StrPCopy(P,S));
end;
For I:=0 to 98 do
  With C^ do
    If Compare (At(I),At(I+1))=0 then
      Writeln ('Duplicate string found at position ',I);
    Dispose(C,Done);
  end.

```

---

#### 67.19.4 TStrCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read a null-terminated string from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a null-terminated string from the stream `S` and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

Errors: The errors returned are those of `TStream.StrRead` ([1196](#)).

See also: `TStrCollection.PutItem` ([1194](#))

#### 67.19.5 TStrCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Free null-terminated string from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStrCollection` overrides `FreeItem` so that the string pointed to by `Item` is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` ([1164](#))

#### 67.19.6 TStrCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes the string pointed to by `Item` to the stream `S`.

This method is primarily used in the `Load` and `Store` methods, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Errors are those of `TStream.StrWrite` ([1201](#)).

See also: `TStrCollection.GetItem` ([1194](#))

## 67.20 TStream

### 67.20.1 Description

The `TStream` object is the ancestor for all streaming objects, i.e. objects that have the capability to store and retrieve data.

It defines a number of methods that are common to all objects that implement streaming, many of them are virtual, and are only implemented in the descendent types.

Programs should not instantiate objects of type `TStream` directly, but instead instantiate a descendant type, such as `TDosStream`, `TMemoryStream`.

See also: `PStream` ([1140](#)), `TDosStream` ([1168](#)), `TMemoryStream` ([1173](#))

### 67.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1199</a>	<code>Close</code>	Close the stream
<a href="#">1203</a>	<code>CopyFrom</code>	Copy data from another stream.
<a href="#">1201</a>	<code>Error</code>	Set stream status
<a href="#">1200</a>	<code>Flush</code>	Flush the stream data from the buffer, if any.
<a href="#">1195</a>	<code>Get</code>	Read an object definition from the stream.
<a href="#">1197</a>	<code>GetPos</code>	Return current position in the stream
<a href="#">1197</a>	<code>GetSize</code>	Return the size of the stream.
<a href="#">1195</a>	<code>Init</code>	Constructor for <code>TStream</code> instance
<a href="#">1199</a>	<code>Open</code>	Open the stream
<a href="#">1200</a>	<code>Put</code>	Write an object to the stream.
<a href="#">1202</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read data from stream to buffer.
<a href="#">1198</a>	<code>ReadStr</code>	Read a shortstring from the stream.
<a href="#">1199</a>	<code>Reset</code>	Reset the stream
<a href="#">1201</a>	<code>Seek</code>	Set stream position.
<a href="#">1196</a>	<code>StrRead</code>	Read a null-terminated string from the stream.
<a href="#">1201</a>	<code>StrWrite</code>	Write a null-terminated string to the stream.
<a href="#">1200</a>	<code>Truncate</code>	Truncate the stream size on current position.
<a href="#">1202</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write a number of bytes to the stream.
<a href="#">1201</a>	<code>WriteStr</code>	Write a pascal string to the stream.

### 67.20.3 TStream.Init

Synopsis: Constructor for `TStream` instance

Declaration: `constructor Init`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Init` initializes a `TStream` instance. Descendent streams should always call the inherited `Init`.

### 67.20.4 TStream.Get

Synopsis: Read an object definition from the stream.

Declaration: `function Get : PObject`

Visibility: `default`

**Description:** `Get` reads an object definition from a stream, and returns a pointer to an instance of this object.

**Errors:** On error, `TStream.Status` (??) is set, and `NIL` is returned.

See also: `TStream.Put` ([1200](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex9.pp`

---

**Program** `ex9`;

*{ Program to demonstrate TStream.Get and TStream.Put }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ Definition and registration of TMyObject }*

**Var** `Obj : PMyObject`;  
       `S : PStream`;

**begin**

```

Obj:=New(PMyObject, Init);
Obj^.SetField($1111);
WriteLn ('Field value : ', Obj^.GetField);
{ Since Stream is an abstract type, we instantiate a TMemoryStream }
S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
S^.Put(Obj);
WriteLn ('Disposing object');
S^.Seek(0);
Dispose(Obj, Done);
WriteLn ('Reading object');
Obj:=PMyObject(S^.Get);
WriteLn ('Field Value : ', Obj^.GetField);
Dispose(Obj, Done);

```

**end.**

---

### 67.20.5 TStream.StrRead

**Synopsis:** Read a null-terminated string from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function StrRead : PChar`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `StrRead` reads a string from the stream, allocates memory for it, and returns a pointer to a null-terminated copy of the string on the heap.

**Errors:** On error, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TStream.StrWrite` ([1201](#)), `TStream.ReadStr` ([1198](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex10.pp`

---

**Program** `ex10`;

```

{
Program to demonstrate the TStream.StrRead TStream.StrWrite functions
}

```

**Uses** `objects`;

---

```

Var P : PChar;
      S : PStream;

begin
  P:= 'Constant Pchar string';
  Writeln ('Writing to stream : "',P,'"');
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  S^.StrWrite(P);
  S^.Seek(0);
  P:= Nil;
  P:=S^.StrRead;
  Dispose (S,Done);
  Writeln ('Read from stream : "',P,'"');
  Freemem(P, Strlen(P)+1);
end.

```

---

### 67.20.6 TStream.GetPos

Synopsis: Return current position in the stream

Declaration: `function GetPos : LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOk`, `GetPos` returns the current position in the stream. Otherwise it returns `-1`

Errors: `-1` is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1201](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([1197](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex11.pp`

---

```

Program ex11;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetPos function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
      S : PStream;

begin
  L:= 'Some kind of string';
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  Writeln ('Stream position before write : ',S^.GetPos);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  Writeln ('Stream position after write : ',S^.GetPos);
  Dispose(S,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.20.7 TStream.GetSize

Synopsis: Return the size of the stream.

Declaration: `function GetSize : LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOk` then `GetSize` returns the size of the stream, otherwise it returns `-1`.

Errors: `-1` is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1201](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([1197](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex12.pp

---

```
Program ex12;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetSize function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L := 'Some kind of string';
  S := New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  WriteLn ('Stream size before write: ', S^.GetSize);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  WriteLn ('Stream size after write: ', S^.GetSize);
  Dispose(S, Done);
end.
```

---

### 67.20.8 TStream.ReadStr

Synopsis: Read a shortstring from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadStr : PString`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadStr` reads a string from the stream, copies it to the heap and returns a pointer to this copy. The string is saved as a pascal string, and hence is NOT null terminated.

Errors: On error (e.g. not enough memory), `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TStream.StrRead` ([1196](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex13.pp

---

```
Program ex13;

{
  Program to demonstrate the TStream.ReadStr TStream.WriteStr functions
}

Uses objects;

Var P : PString;
    L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
```

---

```

L:= 'Constant string line';
WriteIn ('Writing to stream : "',L,'"');
S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
S^.WriteStr(@L);
S^.Seek(0);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
DisPose (S,Done);
WriteIn ('Read from stream : "',L,'"');
end.

```

---

### 67.20.9 TStream.Open

Synopsis: Open the stream

Declaration: `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Open` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since opening a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` ([1171](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` ([1199](#)), `TStream.Reset` ([1199](#))

### 67.20.10 TStream.Close

Synopsis: Close the stream

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since Closing a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

for an example, see `TDosStream.Open` ([1171](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Open` ([1199](#)), `TStream.Reset` ([1199](#))

### 67.20.11 TStream.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: default

Description: `Reset` sets the stream's status to 0, as well as the `ErrorInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Open` ([1199](#)), `TStream.Close` ([1199](#))



### 67.20.12 TStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flush the stream data from the buffer, if any.

Declaration: `procedure Flush; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Flush` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to tell streams that implement a buffer to clear the buffer.

for an example, see `TBufStream.Flush` ([1151](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([1200](#))

### 67.20.13 TStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Truncate the stream size on current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` is an abstract procedure that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to truncate the size of the stream to the current file position.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` ([1170](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([1201](#))

### 67.20.14 TStream.Put

Synopsis: Write an object to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Put (P: PObject)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` writes the object pointed to by `P`. `P` should be non-nil. The object type must have been registered with `RegisterType` ([1146](#)).

After the object has been written, it can be read again with `Get` ([1195](#)).

For an example, see `TStream.Get` ([1195](#));

Errors: No check is done whether `P` is `Nil` or not. Passing `Nil` will cause a run-time error 216 to be generated. If the object has not been registered, the status of the stream will be set to `stPutError`.

See also: `TStream.Get` ([1195](#))

**67.20.15 TStream.StrWrite**

Synopsis: Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure StrWrite(P: PChar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrWrite` writes the null-terminated string `P` to the stream. `P` can only be 65355 bytes long.

For an example, see `TStream.StrRead` ([1196](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.WriteString` ([1201](#)), `TStream.StrRead` ([1196](#)), `TStream.ReadStr` ([1198](#))

**67.20.16 TStream.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a pascal string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteStr(P: PString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrWrite` writes the pascal string pointed to by `P` to the stream.

For an example, see `TStream.ReadStr` ([1198](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.StrWrite` ([1201](#)), `TStream.StrRead` ([1196](#)), `TStream.ReadStr` ([1198](#))

**67.20.17 TStream.Seek**

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the position to `Pos`. This position is counted from the beginning, and is zero based. (i.e. `seek(0)` sets the position pointer on the first byte of the stream)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Seek` ([1170](#)).

Errors: If `Pos` is larger than the stream size, `Status` is set to `StSeekError`.

See also: `TStream.GetPos` ([1197](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([1197](#))

**67.20.18 TStream.Error**

Synopsis: Set stream status

Declaration: `procedure Error(Code: Integer; Info: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` sets the stream's status to `Code` and `ErrorInfo` to `Info`. If the `StreamError` procedural variable is set, `Error` executes it, passing `Self` as an argument.

This method should not be called directly from a program. It is intended to be used in descendent objects.

Errors: None.

**67.20.19 TStream.Read**

Synopsis: Read data from stream to buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Read is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Read reads Count bytes from the stream into Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count. Buf must be large enough to contain Count bytes.

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf is large enough to contain Count bytes.

See also: TStream.Write (1202), TStream.ReadStr (1198), TStream.StrRead (1196)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex18.pp

---

```

program ex18;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Read method }

Uses Objects;

Var Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..1000] of Byte;
    I : longint;
    S : PMemoryStream;

begin
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        Buf1[I]:=Random(1000);
    Buf2:=Buf1;
    S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
    S^.Write(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
    S^.Seek(0);
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        Buf1[I]:=0;
    S^.Read(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        If Buf1[I]<>Buf2[I] then
            WriteLn('Buffer differs at position ',I);
    Dispose(S,Done);
end.

```

---

**67.20.20 TStream.Write**

Synopsis: Write a number of bytes to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Write is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Write writes Count bytes to the stream from Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count.

For an example, see TStream.Read (1202).

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf actually contains Count bytes.

See also: TStream.Read (1202), TStream.WriteString (1201), TStream.StrWrite (1201)

### 67.20.21 TStream.CopyFrom

Synopsis: Copy data from another stream.

Declaration: `procedure CopyFrom(var S: TStream; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CopyFrom` reads `Count` bytes from stream `S` and stores them in the current stream. It uses the `Read` (1202) method to read the data, and the `Write` (1202) method to write in the current stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `Read` (1202), `Write` (1202)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `ex19;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.CopyFrom function }*

**Uses** `objects;`

**Var** `P : PString;`  
       `L : String;`  
       `S1,S2 : PStream;`

**begin**  
   `L:= 'Constant string line';`  
   `Writeln ('Writing to stream 1 : ',L, '');`  
   `S1:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));`  
   `S2:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));`  
   `S1^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `S1^.Seek(0);`  
   `Writeln ('Copying contents of stream 1 to stream 2');`  
   `S2^.Copyfrom(S1^,S1^.GetSize);`  
   `S2^.Seek(0);`  
   `P:=S2^.ReadStr;`  
   `L:=P^;`  
   `DisposeStr(P);`  
   `Dispose (S1,Done);`  
   `Dispose (S2,Done);`  
   `Writeln ('Read from stream 2 : ',L, '');`  
**end.**

---

## 67.21 TStringCollection

### 67.21.1 Description

The `TStringCollection` object manages a sorted collection of pascal strings. To this end, it overrides the `Compare` (1189) method of `TSortedCollection`, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

**67.21.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1204</a>	Compare	Compare two strings in the collection.
<a href="#">1205</a>	FreeItem	Dispose a string in the collection from memory.
<a href="#">1204</a>	GetItem	Get string from the stream.
<a href="#">1205</a>	PutItem	Write a string to the stream.

**67.21.3 TStringCollection.GetItem**

Synopsis: Get string from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a string from the stream `S` and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

Errors: The errors returned are those of `TStream.ReadStr` ([1198](#)).

See also: `TStringCollection.PutItem` ([1205](#))

**67.21.4 TStringCollection.Compare**

Synopsis: Compare two strings in the collection.

Declaration: `function Compare(Key1: Pointer; Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStringCollection` overrides the `Compare` function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns the following results:

-1 if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.

0 if the two strings are equal.

1 if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Compare` ([1189](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex37.pp`

---

**Program** `ex37`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStringCollection.Compare method }*

**Uses** `Objects`;

**Var** `C : PStringCollection;`  
`S : String;`  
`I : longint;`

**begin**  
`Randomize;`

---

```

C:=New(PStringCollection, Init(120,10));
C^.Duplicates:=True; { Duplicates allowed }
WriteLn ('Inserting 100 records at random places. ');
For I:=1 to 100 do
  begin
    Str(Random(100),S);
    S:='String with value '+S;
    C^.Insert(NewStr(S));
  end;
For I:=0 to 98 do
  With C^ do
    If Compare (At(i),At(I+1))=0 then
      WriteLn ('Duplicate string found at position ',i);
Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 67.21.5 TStringCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Dispose a string in the collection from memory.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStringCollection` overrides `FreeItem` so that the string pointed to by `Item` is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` ([1164](#))

### 67.21.6 TStringCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes the string pointed to by `Item` to the stream `S`.

This method is primarily used in the `Load` and `Store` methods, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Errors are those of `TStream.WriteString` ([1201](#)).

See also: `TStringCollection.GetItem` ([1204](#))

## 67.22 TStringList

### 67.22.1 Description

A `TStringList` object can be used to read a collection of strings stored in a stream. If you register this object with the `RegisterType` ([1146](#)) function, you cannot register the `TStrListMaker` object.

**67.22.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1206</a>	Done	Clean up the instance
<a href="#">1206</a>	Get	Return a string by key name
<a href="#">1206</a>	Load	Load stringlist from stream.

**67.22.3 TStringList.Load**

Synopsis: Load stringlist from stream.

Declaration: `constructor Load(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Load` constructor reads the `TStringList` object from the stream `S`. It also reads the descriptions of the strings from the stream. The string descriptions are stored as an array of `TStrIndexrec` records, where each record describes a string on the stream. These records are kept in memory.

Errors: If an error occurs, a stream error is triggered.

See also: `TStringList.Done` ([1206](#))

**67.22.4 TStringList.Done**

Synopsis: Clean up the instance

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Done` destructor frees the memory occupied by the string descriptions, and destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: `Load` ([1206](#)), `TObject.Done` ([1176](#))

**67.22.5 TStringList.Get**

Synopsis: Return a string by key name

Declaration: `function Get(Key: Sw_Word) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get` reads the string with key `Key` from the list of strings on the stream, and returns this string. If there is no string with such a key, an empty string is returned.

Errors: If no string with key `Key` is found, an empty string is returned. A stream error may result if the stream doesn't contain the needed strings.

See also: `TStrListMaker.Put` ([1207](#))

## 67.23 TStrListMaker

### 67.23.1 Description

The `TStrListMaker` object can be used to generate a stream with strings, which can be read with the `TStringList` object. If you register this object with the `RegisterType` (1146) function, you cannot register the `TStringList` object.

### 67.23.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1207</a>	<code>Done</code>	Clean up the instance and free all related memory.
<a href="#">1207</a>	<code>Init</code>	Instantiate a new instance of <code>TStrListMaker</code>
<a href="#">1207</a>	<code>Put</code>	Add a new string to the list with associated key.
<a href="#">1208</a>	<code>Store</code>	Write the strings to the stream.

### 67.23.3 TStrListMaker.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of `TStrListMaker`

Declaration: constructor `Init (AStrSize: Sw_Word; AIndexSize: Sw_Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Init` constructor creates a new instance of the `TstrListMaker` object. It allocates `AStrSize` bytes on the heap to hold all the strings you wish to store. It also allocates enough room for `AIndexSize` key description entries (of the type `TStrIndexrec`).

`AStrSize` must be large enough to contain all the strings you wish to store. If not enough memory is allocated, other memory will be overwritten. The same is true for `AIndexSize` : maximally `AIndexSize` strings can be written to the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Init` (1175), `TStrListMaker.Done` (1207)

### 67.23.4 TStrListMaker.Done

Synopsis: Clean up the instance and free all related memory.

Declaration: destructor `Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Done` destructor de-allocates the memory for the index description records and the string data, and then destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Done` (1176), `TStrListMaker.Init` (1207)

### 67.23.5 TStrListMaker.Put

Synopsis: Add a new string to the list with associated key.

Declaration: procedure `Put (Key: Sw_Word; S: string)`



Visibility: default

Description: `Put` adds the string `S` with key `Key` to the collection of strings. This action doesn't write the string to a stream. To write the strings to the stream, see the `Store` (1208) method.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStrListMaker.Store` (1208)

### 67.23.6 TStrListMaker.Store

Synopsis: Write the strings to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection of strings to the stream `S`. The collection can then be read with the `TStringList` object.

Errors: A stream error may occur when writing the strings to the stream.

See also: `TStringList.Load` (1206), `TStrListMaker.Put` (1207)

## 67.24 TUnSortedStrCollection

### 67.24.1 Description

The `TUnSortedStrCollection` object manages an unsorted list of strings. To this end, it overrides the `TSortedCollection.Insert` (1191) method to add strings at the end of the collection, rather than in the alphabetically correct position.

Take care, the `Search` (1190) and `IndexOf` (1156) methods will not work on an unsorted string collection.

### 67.24.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1208</a>	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new string in the collection.

### 67.24.3 TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new string in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts a string at the end of the collection, instead of on its alphabetical place, resulting in an unsorted collection of strings.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` (1162)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex39.pp`

---

```
Program ex39;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the TUnsortedStrCollection.Insert method }  
  
Uses Objects, Strings;  
  
Var C : PUnsortedStrCollection;  
      S : String;  
      I : longint;  
      P : Pchar;  
  
begin  
  Randomize;  
  C:=New(PUnsortedStrCollection, Init(120,10));  
  Writeln ('Inserting 100 records at random places. ');  
  For I:=1 to 100 do  
    begin  
      Str(Random(100),S);  
      S:= 'String with value ' + S;  
      C^. Insert(NewStr(S));  
    end;  
  For I:=0 to 99 do  
    Writeln (I:2, ': ', PString(C^. At(i))^ );  
  Dispose(C, Done);  
end.
```

---

## Chapter 68

# Reference for unit 'objpas'

### 68.1 Overview

The `objpas` unit is meant for compatibility with Object Pascal as implemented by Delphi. The unit is loaded automatically by the Free Pascal compiler whenever the `Delphi` or `objfpc` mode is entered, either through the command line switches `-Sd` or `-Sh` or with the `{ $MODE DELPHI }` or `{ $MODE OBJFPC }` directives.

It redefines some basic pascal types, introduces some functions for compatibility with Delphi's system unit, and introduces some methods for the management of the resource string tables.

### 68.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 68.2.1 Constants

`MaxInt = MaxLongint`

Maximum value for Integer ([1210](#)) type.

#### 68.2.2 Types

`FixedInt = Int32`

`FixedInt` is provided for Delphi compatibility.

`FixedUInt = UInt32`

`FixedUInt` is provided for Delphi compatibility.

`Integer = LongInt`

In OBJPAS mode and in DELPHI mode, an `Integer` has a size of 32 bit. In TP or regular FPC mode, an integer is 16 bit.

`Array = Array[0..$effffff] of Integer`

Generic array of integer ([1210](#))

`PInteger = ^Integer`

Pointer to Integer (1210) type.

`PIntegerArray = ^IntegerArray`

Pointer to TIntegerArray (1211) type.

`Array = Array[0..512*1024*1024-2] of Pointer`

Generic Array of pointers.

`PPointerArray = ^PointerArray`

Pointer to PointerArray (1211)

`PString = PAnsiString`

Pointer to ansistring type.

`TEndian = (Little, Big)`

Table 68.1: Enumeration values for type TEndian

Value	Explanation
Big	Big endian byte order
Little	Little endian byte order

TEndian describes the endianness of a computer architecture.

`TIntegerArray = IntegerArray`

Alias for IntegerArray (1210)

`TPointerArray = PointerArray`

Alias for PointerArray (1211)

## Chapter 69

# Reference for unit 'ports'

### 69.1 Overview

The ports unit implements the `port` constructs found in Turbo Pascal. It uses classes and default array properties to do this.

The unit exists on Linux, OS/2 and Dos. It is implemented only for compatibility with Turbo Pascal. Its usage is discouraged, because using ports is not portable programming, and the operating system may not even allow it (for instance Windows).

Under Linux, your program must be run as root, or the `IOPerm` call must be set in order to set appropriate permissions on the port access.

### 69.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 69.2.1 Variables

`port : tport`

Default instance of type `TPort` ([1213](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
port[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the integer 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type `tport`

`portb : tport`

Default instance of type `TPort` ([1213](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portb[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the byte 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type `tport`

```
portl : tportl
```

Default instance of type TPortL (1214). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portl[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the longint 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

```
portw : tportw
```

Default instance of type TPortW (1214). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portw[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the word 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

## 69.3 tport

### 69.3.1 Description

The TPort type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

See also: port (1212), TPortW (1214), TPortL (1214)

### 69.3.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1213</a>	pp	rw	Access integer-sized port by port number

### 69.3.3 tport.pp

Synopsis: Access integer-sized port by port number

Declaration: `Property pp[w: Word]: Byte; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Access integer-sized port by port number

## 69.4 tportl

### 69.4.1 Description

The `TPortL` type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

See also: `portw` ([1213](#)), `TPort` ([1213](#)), `TPortL` ([1214](#))

### 69.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1214</a>	pp	rw	Access Longint-sized port by port number

### 69.4.3 tportl.pp

Synopsis: Access Longint-sized port by port number

Declaration: `Property pp[w: Word]: LongInt; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Access Longint-sized port by port number

## 69.5 tportw

### 69.5.1 Description

The `TPortW` type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

See also: `portw` ([1213](#)), `TPort` ([1213](#)), `TPortL` ([1214](#))

### 69.5.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1214</a>	pp	rw	Access word-sized port by port number

### 69.5.3 tportw.pp

Synopsis: Access word-sized port by port number

Declaration: `Property pp[w: Word]: Word; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Access word-sized port by port number

## Chapter 70

# Reference for unit 'printer'

### 70.1 Overview

This chapter describes the `printer` unit for Free Pascal. It was written for DOS by Florian Klaempfl, and it was written for Linux by Michael Van Canneyt, and has been ported to Windows and OS/2 as well. Its basic functionality is the same for all supported systems, although there are minor differences on Linux and UNIX.

### 70.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 70.2.1 Variables

`Lst` : `text`

`Lst` is the standard printing device.

On Linux, `Lst` is set up using `AssignLst ('/tmp/PID.lst')`.

### 70.3 Procedures and functions

#### 70.3.1 AssignLst

Synopsis: Assign text file to printing device

Declaration: `procedure AssignLst (var F: text; ToFile: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignLst` assigns to `F` a printing device - *UNIX only*. `ToFile` is a string with the following form:

- `|filename options'`: This sets up a pipe with the program filename, with the given options, such as in the `popen()` call.
- `'filename'`: Prints to file filename. Filename can contain the string 'PID' (No Quotes), which will be replaced by the PID of your program. When closing `lst`, the file will be sent to `lpr` and deleted. (`lpr` should be in `PATH`)
- `{'filename|'}`: Same as previous, only the file is *not* sent to `lpr`, nor is it deleted. (useful for opening `/dev/printer` or for later printing)



See also: `lst` ([1215](#))

**Listing:** `./printex/printex.pp`

---

```

program testprn;

uses printer;

var i : integer;
    f : text;

begin
  writeln ('Test of printer unit');
  writeln ('Writing to lst...');
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln (lst, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13);
  close (lst);
  writeln ('Done. ');
  {$ifdef Unix}
  writeln ('Writing to pipe...');
  assignlst (f, '|/usr/bin/lpr -m');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln (f, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13);
  close (f);
  writeln ('Done. ')
  {$endif}
end.

```

---

### 70.3.2 InitPrinter

Synopsis: Initialize the printer

Declaration: `procedure InitPrinter(const PrinterName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initialize the printer

### 70.3.3 IsLstAvailable

Synopsis: Determine whether printer is available.

Declaration: `function IsLstAvailable : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Determine whether printer is available.

## Chapter 71

# Reference for unit 'sharemem'

### 71.1 Overview

`sharemem` implements a shared memory manager. Including this unit will replace the standard memory manager with a memory manager which uses shared memory. This means the memory allocated by this unit can be managed by a program and a DLL if they both use the shared memory manager: it allows, amongst other things, to pass ansistrings or Unicode strings from a program to a DLL and vice versa.

This unit does not implement any routines: all actions to replace the memory manager are performed in the initialization section of the unit. The unit should be placed as the first unit in a program or DLL's uses section, memory corruption may occur if the unit is not placed first.

This unit requires the `fpcmemdll.dll` library to be distributed with both program and dll that use this unit. This DLL is distributed with the windows Free Pascal distribution.

# Chapter 72

## Reference for unit 'Sockets'

### 72.1 Overview

This document describes the SOCKETS unit for Free Pascal. it was written for Linux by Michael Van Canneyt, and ported to Windows by Florian Klaempfl.

### 72.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 72.2.1 Constants

`AF_APPLETALK = 5`

Address family Appletalk DDP

`AF_ASH = 18`

Address family: Ash

`AF_ATMPVC = 8`

Address family: ATM PVCs

`AF_ATMSVC = 20`

Address family: ATM SVCs

`AF_AX25 = 3`

Address family Amateur Radio AX.25

`AF_BLUETOOTH = 31`

Address family: Bluetooth sockets

`AF_BRIDGE = 7`

Address family Multiprotocol bridge

AF\_DECnet = 12

Address family: Reserved for DECnet project.

AF\_ECONET = 19

Address family: Acorn Econet

AF\_INET = 2

Address family Internet IP Protocol

AF\_INET6 = 10

Address family IP version 6

AF\_IPX = 4

Address family Novell IPX

AF\_IRDA = 23

Address family: IRDA sockets

AF\_KEY = 15

Address family: PF\_KEY key management API

AF\_LLC = 26

Address family: Linux LLC

AF\_LOCAL = 1

Address family: Unix socket

AF\_MAX = 32

Address family Maximum value

AF\_NETBEUI = 13

Address family: Reserved for 802.2LLC project

AF\_NETLINK = 16

Address family: ?

AF\_NETROM = 6

Address family Amateur radio NetROM

`AF_PACKET = 17`

Address family: Packet family

`AF_PPPOX = 24`

Address family: PPPoX sockets

`AF_ROSE = 11`

Address family: Amateur Radio X.25 PLP

`AF_ROUTE = AF_NETLINK`

Address family: Alias to emulate 4.4BSD.

`AF_SECURITY = 14`

Address family: Security callback pseudo AF

`AF_SNA = 22`

Address family: Linux SNA project

`AF_TIPC = 30`

Address family: TIPC sockets

`AF_UNIX = 1`

Address family Unix domain sockets

`AF_UNSPEC = 0`

Address family Not specified

`AF_WANPIPE = 25`

Address family: Wanpipe API Sockets

`AF_X25 = 9`

Address family Reserved for X.25 project

`EsockADDRINUSE = ESysEADDRINUSE`

`EsockADDRINUSE` is the error reported by `fpBind` ([1247](#)) when the socket is already in use.

`EsockEACCESS = ESysEAcces`

**Access forbidden error**

`EsockEBADF = EsysEBADF`

**Alias: bad file descriptor**

`EsockEFAULT = EsysEFAULT`

**Alias: an error occurred**

`EsockEINTR = EsysEINTR`

**Alias : operation interrupted**

`EsockEINVAL = EsysEINVAL`

**Alias: Invalid value specified**

`EsockEMFILE = EsysEmfile`

**Error code ?**

`EsockEMSGSIZE = EsysEMsgSize`

**Wrong message size error**

`EsockENOBUFS = EsysENoBufs`

**No buffer space available error**

`EsockENOTCONN = EsysENotConn`

**Not connected error**

`EsockENOTSOCK = EsysENotSock`

**File descriptor is not a socket error**

`EsockEPROTONOSUPPORT = EsysEProtoNoSupport`

**Protocol not supported error**

`EsockEWOULDBLOCK = EsysEWouldBlock`

**Operation would block error**

`INADDR_ANY = CARDINAL(0)`

**A bitmask matching any IP address on the local machine.**

`INADDR_NONE = CARDINAL($FFFFFFFF)`

A bitmask matching no valid IP address

IPPROTO\_AH = 51

authentication header.

IPPROTO\_COMP = 108

Compression Header Protocol.

IPPROTO\_DSTOPTS = 60

IPv6 destination options.

IPPROTO\_EGP = 8

Exterior Gateway Protocol.

IPPROTO\_ENCAP = 98

Encapsulation Header.

IPPROTO\_ESP = 50

encapsulating security payload.

IPPROTO\_FRAGMENT = 44

IPv6 fragmentation header.

IPPROTO\_GRE = 47

General Routing Encapsulation.

IPPROTO\_HOPOPTS = 0

IPv6 Hop-by-Hop options.

IPPROTO\_ICMP = 1

Internet Control Message Protocol.

IPPROTO\_ICMPV6 = 58

ICMPv6.

IPPROTO\_IDP = 22

XNS IDP protocol.

IPPROTO\_IGMP = 2

Internet Group Management Protocol.

IPPROTO\_IP = 0

Dummy protocol for TCP.

IPPROTO\_IPIP = 4

IPIP tunnels (older KA9Q tunnels use 94).

IPPROTO\_IPV6 = 41

IPv6 header.

IPPROTO\_MAX = 255

Maximum value for IPPROTO options

IPPROTO\_MTP = 92

Multicast Transport Protocol.

IPPROTO\_NONE = 59

IPv6 no next header.

IPPROTO\_PIM = 103

Protocol Independent Multicast.

IPPROTO\_PUP = 12

PUP protocol.

IPPROTO\_RAW = 255

Raw IP packets.

IPPROTO\_ROUTING = 43

IPv6 routing header.

IPPROTO\_RSVP = 46

Reservation Protocol.

IPPROTO\_SCTP = 132

Stream Control Transmission Protocol.

IPPROTO\_TCP = 6



Transmission Control Protocol.

IPPROTO\_TP = 29

SO Transport Protocol Class 4.

IPPROTO\_UDP = 17

User Datagram Protocol.

IPV6\_ADDRFORM = 1

Change the IPV6 address into a different address family. Deprecated

IPV6\_ADD\_MEMBERSHIP = IPV6\_JOIN\_GROUP

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_AUTHHDR = 10

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Deliver authentication header messages

IPV6\_CHECKSUM = 7

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_DROP\_MEMBERSHIP = IPV6\_LEAVE\_GROUP

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_DSTOPTS = 4

Deliver destination option control messages

IPV6\_HOPLIMIT = 8

Deliver an integer containing the HOP count

IPV6\_HOPOPTS = 3

Deliver hop option control messages

IPV6\_IPSEC\_POLICY = 34

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_JOIN\_ANYCAST = 27

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_JOIN\_GROUP = 20

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control membership (join group) in multicast groups

IPV6\_LEAVE\_ANYCAST = 28

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_LEAVE\_GROUP = 21

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control membership (leave group)in multicast groups

IPV6\_MTU = 24

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set the MTU for the socket

IPV6\_MTU\_DISCOVER = 23

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set Control path MTU Discovery on the socket

IPV6\_MULTICAST\_HOPS = 18

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set the multicast hop limit.

IPV6\_MULTICAST\_IF = 17

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set device for multicast packages on the socket.

IPV6\_MULTICAST\_LOOP = 19

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control whether socket sees multicast packages that it has sent itself

IPV6\_NEXTHOP = 9

sendmsg: set next hop for IPV6 datagram

IPV6\_PKTINFO = 2

Change delivery options for incoming IPV6 datagrams

IPV6\_PKTOPTIONS = 6

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_PMTUDISC\_DO = 2

Always DF.

IPV6\_PMTUDISC\_DONT = 0

Never send DF frames.

IPV6\_PMTUDISC\_WANT = 1

Use per route hints.

IPV6\_RECVERR = 25

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Control receiving of asynchronous error options

IPV6\_ROUTER\_ALERT = 22

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set Pass all forwarded packets containing router alert option

IPV6\_RTHDR = 5

Deliver routing header control messages

IPV6\_RTHDR\_LOOSE = 0

Hop doesn't need to be neighbour.

IPV6\_RTHDR\_STRICT = 1

Hop must be a neighbour.

IPV6\_RTHDR\_TYPE\_0 = 0

IPv6 Routing header type 0.

IPV6\_RXDSTOPTS = IPV6\_DSTOPTS

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_RXHOPOPTS = IPV6\_HOPOPTS

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_RXSRCRT = IPV6\_RTHDR

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IPV6\_UNICAST\_HOPS = 16

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Get/Set unicast hop limit

IPV6\_V6ONLY = 26

GetSockOpt/SetSockopt: Handle IPV6 connections only

IPV6\_XFRM\_POLICY = 35

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

IP\_ADD\_MEMBERSHIP = 35

**add an IP group membership**

IP\_ADD\_SOURCE\_MEMBERSHIP = 39

**join source group**

IP\_BLOCK\_SOURCE = 38

**block data from source**

IP\_DEFAULT\_MULTICAST\_LOOP = 1

**Undocumented ?**

IP\_DEFAULT\_MULTICAST\_TTL = 1

**Undocumented ?**

IP\_DROP\_MEMBERSHIP = 36

**drop an IP group membership**

IP\_DROP\_SOURCE\_MEMBERSHIP = 40

**leave source group**

IP\_HDRINCL = 3

**Header is included with data.**

IP\_MAX\_MEMBERSHIPS = 20

**Maximum group memberships for multicast messages**

IP\_MSFILTER = 41

**Undocumented ?**

IP\_MTU\_DISCOVER = 10

**Undocumented ?**

IP\_MULTICAST\_IF = 32

**set/get IP multicast i/f**

IP\_MULTICAST\_LOOP = 34

**set/get IP multicast loopback**

IP\_MULTICAST\_TTL = 33

set/get IP multicast ttl

IP\_OPTIONS = 4

IP per-packet options.

IP\_PKTINFO = 8

Undocumented ?

IP\_PKTOPTIONS = 9

Undocumented ?

IP\_PMTUDISC = 10

Undocumented ?

IP\_PMTUDISC\_DO = 2

Always DF.

IP\_PMTUDISC\_DONT = 0

Never send DF frames.

IP\_PMTUDISC\_WANT = 1

Use per route hints.

IP\_RECVERR = 11

Undocumented ?

IP\_RECVOPTS = 6

Receive all IP options w/datagram.

IP\_RECVRETOPTS = IP\_RETOPTS

Receive IP options for response.

IP\_RECVTOS = 13

Undocumented ?

IP\_RECVTTL = 12

Undocumented ?

IP\_RETOPTS = 7

Set/get IP per-packet options.

IP\_ROUTER\_ALERT = 5

Undocumented ?

IP\_TOS = 1

IP type of service and precedence.

IP\_TTL = 2

IP time to live.

IP\_UNBLOCK\_SOURCE = 37

unblock data from source

MCAST\_BLOCK\_SOURCE = 43

block from given group

MCAST\_EXCLUDE = 0

Undocumented ?

MCAST\_INCLUDE = 1

Undocumented ?

MCAST\_JOIN\_GROUP = 42

join any-source group

MCAST\_JOIN\_SOURCE\_GROUP = 46

join source-spec group

MCAST\_LEAVE\_GROUP = 45

leave any-source group

MCAST\_LEAVE\_SOURCE\_GROUP = 47

leave source-spec group

MCAST\_MSFILTER = 48

Undocumented ?

MCAST\_UNBLOCK\_SOURCE = 44

unblock from given group

MSG\_CONFIRM = \$0800

Send flags: Conform connection

MSG\_CTRUNC = \$0008

Receive flags: Control Data was discarded (buffer too small)

MSG\_DONTROUTE = \$0004

Send flags: don't use gateway

MSG\_DONTWAIT = \$0040

Receive flags: Non-blocking operation request.

MSG\_EOF = MSG\_FIN

Alias for MSG\_FIN

MSG\_EOR = \$0080

Receive flags: End of record

MSG\_ERRQUEUE = \$2000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_FIN = \$0200

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_MORE = \$8000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_NOSIGNAL = \$4000

Receive flags: Suppress SIG\_PIPE signal.

MSG\_OOB = \$0001

Receive flags: receive out-of-band data.

MSG\_PEEK = \$0002

Receive flags: peek at data, don't remove from buffer.

MSG\_PROXY = \$0010

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_RST = \$1000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_SYN = \$0400

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_TRUNC = \$0020

Receive flags: packet Data was discarded (buffer too small)

MSG\_TRYHARD = MSG\_DONTROUTE

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_WAITALL = \$0100

Receive flags: Wait till operation completed.

NoAddress : in\_addr = (s\_addr: 0)

Constant indicating invalid (no) network address.

NoAddress6 : in6\_addr = (u6\_addr16: (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0))

Constant indicating invalid (no) IPV6 network address.

NoNet : in\_addr = (s\_addr: 0)

Constant indicating invalid (no) network address.

NoNet6 : in6\_addr = (u6\_addr16: (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0))

Constant indicating invalid (no) IPV6 network address.

PF\_APPLETALK = AF\_APPLETALK

Protocol family: Appletalk DDP

PF\_ASH = AF\_ASH

Protocol family: Ash

PF\_ATMPVC = AF\_ATMPVC

Protocol family: ATM PVCs

PF\_ATMSVC = AF\_ATMSVC



Protocol family: ATM SVCs

PF\_AX25 = AF\_AX25

Protocol family: Amateur Radio AX.25

PF\_BLUETOOTH = AF\_BLUETOOTH

Protocol family: Bluetooth sockets

PF\_BRIDGE = AF\_BRIDGE

Protocol family: Multiprotocol bridge

PF\_DECnet = AF\_DECnet

Protocol Family: DECNET project

PF\_ECONET = AF\_ECONET

Protocol family: Acorn Econet

PF\_INET = AF\_INET

Protocol family: Internet IP Protocol

PF\_INET6 = AF\_INET6

Protocol family: IP version 6

PF\_IPX = AF\_IPX

Protocol family: Novell IPX

PF\_IRDA = AF\_IRDA

Protocol family: IRDA sockets

PF\_KEY = AF\_KEY

Protocol family: Key management API

PF\_LLC = AF\_LLC

Protocol family: Linux LLC

PF\_LOCAL = AF\_LOCAL

Protocol family: Unix socket

PF\_MAX = AF\_MAX

Protocol family: Maximum value

PF\_NETBEUI = AF\_NETBEUI

Protocol family: Reserved for 802.2LLC project

PF\_NETLINK = AF\_NETLINK

Protocol family: ?

PF\_NETROM = AF\_NETROM

Protocol family: Amateur radio NetROM

PF\_PACKET = AF\_PACKET

Protocol family: Packet family

PF\_PPPOX = AF\_PPPOX

Protocol family: PPPoX sockets

PF\_ROSE = AF\_ROSE

Protocol family: Amateur Radio X.25 PLP

PF\_ROUTE = AF\_ROUTE

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_SECURITY = AF\_SECURITY

Protocol family: Security callback pseudo PF

PF\_SNA = AF\_SNA

Protocol Family: Linux SNA project

PF\_TIPC = AF\_TIPC

Protocol family: TIPC sockets

PF\_UNIX = AF\_UNIX

Protocol family: Unix domain sockets

PF\_UNSPEC = AF\_UNSPEC

Protocol family: Unspecified

PF\_WANPIPE = AF\_WANPIPE

Protocol family: Wanpipe API Sockets

PF\_X25 = AF\_X25

Protocol family: Reserved for X.25 project

SCM\_SRCRT = IPV6\_RXSRCRT

Undocumented Getsockopt option ?

SCM\_TIMESTAMP = SO\_TIMESTAMP

Socket option: ?

SHUT\_RD = 0

Shutdown read part of full duplex socket

SHUT\_RDWR = 2

Shutdown read and write part of full duplex socket

SHUT\_WR = 1

Shutdown write part of full duplex socket

SOCK\_DGRAM = 2

Type of socket: datagram (conn.less) socket (UDP)

SOCK\_MAXADDRLLEN = 255

Maximum socket address length for Bind ([1244](#)) call.

SOCK\_RAW = 3

Type of socket: raw socket

SOCK\_RDM = 4

Type of socket: reliably-delivered message

SOCK\_SEQPACKET = 5

Type of socket: sequential packet socket

SOCK\_STREAM = 1

Type of socket: stream (connection) type socket (TCP)

SOL\_ICMPV6 = 58

Socket level values for IPv6: ICMPV6

SOL\_IP = 0

Undocumented ?

SOL\_IPV6 = 41

Socket level values for IPv6: IPV6

SOL\_SOCKET = 1

Socket option level: Socket level

SOMAXCONN = 128

Maximum queue length specifiable by listen.

SO\_ACCEPTCONN = 30

Socket option: ?

SO\_ATTACH\_FILTER = 26

Socket option: ?

SO\_BINDTODEVICE = 25

Socket option: ?

SO\_BROADCAST = 6

Socket option: Broadcast

SO\_BSDCOMPAT = 14

Socket option: ?

SO\_DEBUG = 1

Socket option level: debug

SO\_DETACH\_FILTER = 27

Socket option: ?

SO\_DONTROUTE = 5

Socket option: Don't route

SO\_ERROR = 4

Socket option: Error

SO\_KEEPAIVE = 9

Socket option: keep alive

SO\_LINGER = 13

Socket option: ?

SO\_NO\_CHECK = 11

Socket option: ?

SO\_OOINLINE = 10

Socket option: ?

SO\_PASSCRED = 16

Socket option: ?

SO\_PEERCREC = 17

Socket option: ?

SO\_PEERNAME = 28

Socket option: ?

SO\_PRIORITY = 12

Socket option: ?

SO\_RCVBUF = 8

Socket option: receive buffer

SO\_RCVLOWAT = 18

Socket option: ?

SO\_RCVTIMEO = 20

Socket option: ?

SO\_REUSEADDR = 2

Socket option: Reuse address

SO\_SECURITY\_AUTHENTICATION = 22

Socket option: ?

SO\_SECURITY\_ENCRYPTION\_NETWORK = 24

Socket option: ?

SO\_SECURITY\_ENCRYPTION\_TRANSPORT = 23

Socket option: ?

SO\_SNDBUF = 7

Socket option: Send buffer

SO\_SNDLOWAT = 19

Socket option: ?

SO\_SNDTIMEO = 21

Socket option: ?

SO\_TIMESTAMP = 29

Socket option: ?

SO\_TYPE = 3

Socket option: Type

S\_IN = 0

Input socket in socket pair.

S\_OUT = 1

Output socket in socket pair

TCP\_CONGESTION = 13

Get/set the congestion-control algorithm for this socket

TCP\_CORK = 3

Get/Set CORK algorithm: Send only complete packets

TCP\_DEFER\_ACCEPT = 9

Get/Set deferred accept on server socket

TCP\_INFO = 11

Get TCP connection information (Linux only)

TCP\_KEEPCNT = 6

Get/Set retry count for unacknowledged KEEPALIVE transmissions.

TCP\_KEEPIDLE = 4

Get/Set inactivity interval between KEEPALIVE transmissions.

TCP\_KEEPINTVL = 5

Get/Set retry interval for unacknowledged KEEPALIVE transmissions.

TCP\_LINGER2 = 8

Get/Set Linger2 flag

TCP\_MAXSEG = 2

Get/Set Maximum segment size

TCP\_MD5SIG = 14

Get/Set TCP MD5 signature option

TCP\_NODELAY = 1

Get/Set No delay flag: disable Nagle algorithm

TCP\_QUICKACK = 12

Get/Set quick ACK packet option.

TCP\_SYNCNT = 7

Get/Set number of SYN packets to send before giving up on connection establishment

TCP\_WINDOW\_CLAMP = 10

Get/Set maximum packet size

UDP\_CORK = 1

Get/Set UDP CORK algorithm on datagram sockets

UDP\_ENCAP = 100

Get/Set UDP encapsulation flag for IPSec datagram sockets

UDP\_ENCAP\_ESPINUDP = 2

? Undocumented datagram option, IPSec related

UDP\_ENCAP\_ESPINUDP\_NON\_IKE = 1

? Undocumented datagram option, IPSec related

UDP\_ENCAP\_L2TPINUDP = 3

? Undocumented datagram option, IPSec related

### 72.2.2 Types

```
in6_addr = packed record
case Byte of
0: (
  u6_addr8 : Array[0..15
    ] of Byte;
);
1: (
  u6_addr16 : Array[0..7] of Word;
);
2: (
  u6_addr32
    : Array[0..3] of Cardinal;
);
3: (
  s6_addr8 : Array[0..15] of ShortInt
    ;
);
4: (
  s6_addr : Array[0..15] of ShortInt;
);
5: (
  s6_addr16
    : Array[0..7] of SmallInt;
);
6: (
  s6_addr32 : Array[0..3] of LongInt
    ;
);
end
```

Record used to describe a general IPV6 address.

```
in_addr = packed record
case Boolean of
True: (
  s_addr : cuint32
    ;
);
False: (
  s_bytes : packed Array[1..4] of Byte;
);
end
```



General inet socket address.

`PIn6Addr = pin6_addr`

Pointer to `in6_addr` (1239) type.

`pin6_addr = ^in6_addr`

Pointer to `Tin6_addr` (1241)

`PInAddr = pin_addr`

Alias for `pin_addr` (1240)

`PInetSockAddr = psockaddr_in`

Pointer to `sockaddr_in` (1260)

`PInetSockAddr6 = psockaddr_in6`

Pointer to `sockaddr_in6` (1260) type

`pin_addr = ^in_addr`

Pointer to `in_addr` (1240) record.

`plinger = ^linger`

Pointer to `linger` (1260) type.

`psockaddr = ^sockaddr`

Pointer to `TSockAddr` (1241)

`PSockAddr6 = ^TSockAddr6`

`PSockAddr6` is a pointer to a record of type `TSockAddr6` (1242).

`psockaddr_in = ^sockaddr_in`

Pointer to `sockaddr_in` (1260)

`psockaddr_in6 = ^sockaddr_in6`

Pointer to `sockaddr_in6` (1260)

`psockaddr_un = ^sockaddr_un`

Pointer to `sockaddr_un` (1261) type.

`sa_family_t = cushort`

## Address family type

```

sockaddr = packed record
case Integer of
0: (
    sa_family : sa_family_t
    ;
    sa_data : packed Array[0..13] of cuint8;
);
1: (
    sin_family
    : sa_family_t;
    sin_port : cushort;
    sin_addr : in_addr;
    sin_zero
    : packed Array[0..7] of cuint8;
);
end

```

sockaddr is used to store a general socket address for the FPBind (1247), FPRecv (1251) and FPSend (1252) calls.

TIn6Addr = in6\_addr

Alias for in6\_addr (1239) type.

Tin6\_addr = in6\_addr

Alias for sockaddr\_in6 (1260)

TInAddr = in\_addr

Alias for in\_addr (1240) record type.

TInetSockAddr = sockaddr\_in

Alias for sockaddr\_in (1260)

TInetSockAddr6 = sockaddr\_in6

Alias for sockaddr\_in6 (1260)

TIn\_addr = in\_addr

Alias for in\_addr (1240) record type.

TLinger = linger

Alias for linger (1260)

TSockAddr = sockaddr

`TSockAddr6 = sockaddr_in6`

`TSockAddr6` is an alias for `sockaddr6_in` (1218)

`Array = Array[1..2] of LongInt`

Type returned by the `FPSocketPair` (1255) call.

`Tsocket = LongInt`

Alias for easy kylix porting

`TSockLen = BaseUnix.TSocklen`

The actual type of `TSockLen` depends on the platform.

`Array = Array[0..1] of LongInt`

Array of sockets, used in `FPSocketPair` (1255) call.

## 72.3 Procedures and functions

### 72.3.1 Accept

**Synopsis:** Accept a connection from a socket (deprecated).

**Declaration:**

```
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: TInetSockAddr;
               var SockIn: File; var SockOut: File) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: TInetSockAddr;
               var SockIn: text; var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: string; var SockIn: text;
               var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt; var addr: string; var SockIn: File;
               var SockOut: File) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Accept` accepts a connection from a socket `Sock`, which was listening for a connection. If a connection is accepted, a file descriptor is returned. On error `-1` is returned. The returned socket may NOT be used to accept more connections. The original socket remains open.

The `Accept` call fills the address of the connecting entity in `Addr`, and sets its length in `AddrLen`. `Addr` should be pointing to enough space, and `AddrLen` should be set to the amount of space available, prior to the call.

The alternate forms of the `Accept` (1242) command, with the `Text` or `File` parameters are equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Accept` (1242) function and the `Sock2Text` (1258) or `Sock2File` (1258) functions. These functions return `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** On error, `-1` is returned, and errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF** (1221) The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK** (1221) The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP** The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

**ESockEFAULT (1221)**Addr points outside your address space.

**ESockEWOULDBLOCK (1221)**The requested operation would block the process.

See also: FPListen (1251), Connect (1244), FPCConnect (1248), FPBind (1247)

**Listing:** ./sockex/socksvr.pp

---

```

Program server;

{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Server Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
{$mode fpc}
uses Sockets;

Var
  FromName : string;
  Buffer    : string[255];
  S         : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;
  SAddr     : TInetSockAddr;

procedure perror (const S:string);
begin
  writeln (S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;

begin
  S:=fpSocket (AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
  if SocketError<>0 then
    PError ( 'Server : Socket : ' );
  SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 50000 in network order }
  SAddr.sin_port:=htons(5000);
  SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=0;
  if fpBind(S, @SAddr, sizeof(saddr))=-1 then
    PError ( 'Server : Bind : ' );
  if fpListen (S, 1)=-1 then
    PError ( 'Server : Listen : ' );
  Writeln('Waiting for Connect from Client, run now sock_cli in an other tty');
  if Accept(S, FromName, Sin, Sout) then
    PError ( 'Server : Accept : '+fromname);
  Reset(Sin);
  Rewrite(Sout);
  Writeln(Sout, 'Message From Server');
  Flush(Sout);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      Readln(Sin, Buffer);
      Writeln('Server : read : ', buffer);
    end;
end.

```

---

### 72.3.2 Bind

Synopsis: Alias for `fpBind`.

Declaration: `function Bind(Sock: LongInt; const addr: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Bind` is an alias for `fpBind` (1247) which binds to either a socket struct (`Addr`) or a string indicating a UNIX socket file (UNIX socket).

This function is deprecated, use `fpBind` instead.

See also: `FPBind` (1247)

### 72.3.3 CloseSocket

Synopsis: Closes a socket handle.

Declaration: `function CloseSocket(Sock: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseSocket` closes a socket handle. It returns 0 if the socket was closed successfully, -1 if it failed.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FPSocket` (1254)

### 72.3.4 Connect

Synopsis: Open a connection to a server socket (deprecated).

Declaration: `function Connect(Sock: LongInt; const addr: TInetSockAddr;  
                               var SockIn: text; var SockOut: text) : Boolean  
 function Connect(Sock: LongInt; const addr: TInetSockAddr;  
                               var SockIn: File; var SockOut: File) : Boolean  
 function Connect(Sock: LongInt; const addr: string; var SockIn: text;  
                               var SockOut: text) : Boolean  
 function Connect(Sock: LongInt; const addr: string; var SockIn: File;  
                               var SockOut: File) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Connect` opens a connection to a peer, whose address is described by `Addr`. `AddrLen` contains the length of the address. The type of `Addr` depends on the kind of connection you're trying to make, but is generally one of `TSockAddr` or `TUnixSockAddr`.

The forms of the `Connect` (1244) command with the `Text` or `File` arguments are equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Connect` function and the `Sock2Text` (1258) or `Sock2File` (1258) functions. These functions return `True` if success full, `False` otherwise.

The `Connect` function returns a file descriptor if the call was success full, -1 in case of error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and errors are reported in `SocketError`.

See also: `FPListen` (1251), `FPBind` (1247), `Accept` (1242), `FPAccept` (1246)

**Listing:** `./sockex/sockcli.pp`

---

**Program** Client;

```
{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Client Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
```

**uses** Sockets;

```
procedure PError(const S : string);
begin
  writeln(S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;
```

**Var**

```
SAddr    : TInetSockAddr;
Buffer    : string [255];
S         : Longint;
Sin, Sout : Text;
i         : integer;
```

**begin**

```
S:=fpSocket (AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
if s=-1 then
  PError('Client : Socket : ');
SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
{ port 50000 in network order }
SAddr.sin_port:=htons(5000);
{ localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=HostToNet((127 shl 24) or 1);
if not Connect (S, SAddr, Sin, Sout) then
  PError('Client : Connect : ');
Reset(Sin);
ReWrite(Sout);
Buffer:='This is a textstring sent by the Client.';
for i:=1 to 10 do
  Writeln(Sout, Buffer);
Flush(Sout);
Readln(Sin, Buffer);
WriteLn(Buffer);
Close(sout);
```

**end.**

---

**Listing:** ./sockex/pfinger.pp

---

**program** pfinger;

**uses** sockets, errors;

**Var**

```
Addr : TInetSockAddr;
S : Longint;
Sin, Sout : Text;
Line : string;
```

---

```

begin
  Addr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 79 in network order }
  Addr.sin_port:=79 shl 8;
  { localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
  Addr.sin_addr.s_addr:=((1 shl 24) or 127);
  S:=fpSocket(AF_INET,SOCK_STREAM,0);
  If Not Connect (S,ADDR,SIN,SOUT) Then
    begin
      Writeln ('Couldn't connect to localhost');
      Writeln ('Socket error : ',strerror(SocketError));
      halt(1);
    end;
  rewrite (sout);
  reset(sin);
  writeln (sout,paramstr(1));
  flush(sout);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      readln (Sin,line);
      writeln (line);
    end;
  fpShutdown(s,2);
  close (sin);
  close (sout);
end.

```

---

### 72.3.5 fpaccept

Synopsis: Accept a connection from a socket.

Declaration: `function fpaccept(s: cint; addrx: psockaddr; addrlen: psocklen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Accept` accepts a connection from a socket `S`, which was listening for a connection. If a connection is accepted, a file descriptor is returned (positive number). On error `-1` is returned. The returned socket may NOT be used to accept more connections. The original socket remains open.

The `Accept` call fills the address of the connecting entity in `Addrx`, and sets its length in `Addrlen`. `Addrx` should be pointing to enough space, and `Addrlen` should be set to the amount of space available, prior to the call.

Errors: On error, `-1` is returned, and errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1221)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1221)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP**The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

**ESockEFAULT (1221)**`Addr` points outside your address space.

**ESockEWOULDBLOCK (1221)**The requested operation would block the process.

See also: `fpListen` (1251), `fpConnect` (1248), `fpBind` (1247)

**Listing:** `./sockex/socksvr.pp`

---

```

Program server;

{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Server Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
{$mode fpc}
uses Sockets;

Var
  FromName : string;
  Buffer   : string[255];
  S        : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;
  SAddr    : TInetSockAddr;

procedure perror (const S:string);
begin
  writeln (S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;

begin
  S:=fpSocket (AF_INET, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
  if SocketError<>0 then
    Perror ('Server : Socket : ');
  SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 50000 in network order }
  SAddr.sin_port:=htons(5000);
  SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=0;
  if fpBind(S, @SAddr, sizeof(saddr))=-1 then
    Perror ('Server : Bind : ');
  if fpListen (S, 1)=-1 then
    Perror ('Server : Listen : ');
  Writeln ('Waiting for Connect from Client, run now sock_cli in an other tty');
  if Accept(S, FromName, Sin, Sout) then
    Perror ('Server : Accept : '+fromname);
  Reset(Sin);
  ReWrite(Sout);
  Writeln (Sout, 'Message From Server');
  Flush(SOut);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      Readln(Sin, Buffer);
      Writeln('Server : read : ', buffer);
    end;
end.

```

---

### 72.3.6 fpbind

Synopsis: Bind a socket to an address.

Declaration: `function fpbind(s: cint; addrx: psockaddr; addrlen: TSockLen) : cint`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `fpBind` binds the socket `s` to address `Addrx`. `Addrx` has length `AddrLen`. The function returns 0 if the call was successful, -1 if not.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `SocketError` and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1221)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockEINVAL (1221)**The socket is already bound to an address,

**ESockEACCESS (1221)**Address is protected and you don't have permission to open it.

More errors can be found in the Unix man pages.

See also: `FPSocket` (1254)

### 72.3.7 fpconnect

**Synopsis:** Open a connection to a server socket.

**Declaration:** `function fpconnect(s: cint; name: psockaddr; namelen: TSockLen) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpConnect` uses the socket `s` to open a connection to a peer, whose address is described by `Name`. `NameLen` contains the length of the address. The type of `Name` depends on the kind of connection you are trying to make, but is generally one of `TSockAddr` or `TUnixSockAddr`.

The `fpConnect` function returns zero if the call was success full, -1 in case of error.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned and errors are reported in `SocketError`.

See also: `fpListen` (1251), `fpBind` (1247), `fpAccept` (1246)

**Listing:** `./sockex/sockcli.pp`

---

**Program** Client;

```
{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Client Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
```

**uses** Sockets;

```
procedure PError(const S : string);
begin
  writeln(S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;
```

**Var**

```
SAddr    : TInetSockAddr;
Buffer   : string [255];
S        : Longint;
Sin, Sout : Text;
i        : integer;
```

**begin**

```

S:=fpSocket (AF_INET,SOCK_STREAM,0);
if s=-1 then
  Perror('Client : Socket : ');
SAddr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
{ port 50000 in network order }
SAddr.sin_port:=htons(5000);
{ localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
SAddr.sin_addr.s_addr:=HostToNet((127 shl 24) or 1);
if not Connect (S,SAddr,Sin,Sout) then
  PError('Client : Connect : ');
Reset(Sin);
ReWrite(Sout);
Buffer:='This is a textstring sent by the Client.';
for i:=1 to 10 do
  Writeln(Sout, Buffer);
Flush(Sout);
Readln(Sin, Buffer);
WriteLn( Buffer);
Close(sout);
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./sockex/pfinger.pp

---

```

program pfinger;

uses sockets , errors ;

Var
  Addr : TInetSockAddr;
  S : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;
  Line : string;

begin
  Addr.sin_family:=AF_INET;
  { port 79 in network order }
  Addr.sin_port:=79 shl 8;
  { localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
  Addr.sin_addr.s_addr:=((1 shl 24) or 127);
  S:=fpSocket(AF_INET,SOCK_STREAM,0);
  If Not Connect (S,ADDR,SIN,SOUT) Then
    begin
      Writeln ('Couldn't connect to localhost');
      Writeln ('Socket error : ',strerror(SocketError));
      halt(1);
    end;
  rewrite (sout);
  reset(sin);
  writeln (sout, paramstr(1));
  flush(sout);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      readln (Sin, line);
      writeln (line);
    end;
  fpShutdown(s,2);
  close (sin);
  close (sout);
end.

```

### 72.3.8 fpgetpeername

Synopsis: Return the name (address) of the connected peer.

Declaration: `function fpgetpeername(s: cint; name: psockaddr; namelen: psocklen)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpGetPeerName` returns the name of the entity connected to the specified socket `S`. The Socket must be connected for this call to work.

Name should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in `Namelen`. When the function returns successfully, Name will be filled with the name, and Name will be set to the length of Name.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1221)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOBUFFS (1221)**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1221)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1221)**Addr points outside your address space.

**ESockENOTCONN (1221)**The socket isn't connected.

See also: `fpConnect` (1248), `fpSocket` (1254)

### 72.3.9 fpgetsockname

Synopsis: Return name of socket.

Declaration: `function fpgetsockname(s: cint; name: psockaddr; namelen: psocklen)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpGetSockName` returns the current name of the specified socket `S`. Name should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in `Namelen`. When the function returns successfully, Name will be filled with the name, and `Namelen` will be set to the length of Name.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1221)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOBUFFS (1221)**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1221)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1221)**Addr points outside your address space.

See also: `fpBind` (1247)

### 72.3.10 fpgetsockopt

Synopsis: Get current socket options

Declaration: `function fpgetsockopt(s: cint; level: cint; optname: cint;  
optval: pointer; optlen: psocklen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpGetSockOpt` gets the connection option `optname`, for socket `S`. The socket may be obtained from different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET** From the socket itself.

**XXX** set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

The options are stored in the memory location pointed to by `optval`. `optlen` should point to the initial length of `optval`, and on return will contain the actual length of the stored data.

On success, 0 is returned. On Error, -1 is returned.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1221)** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1221)** The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1221)** `OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: `fpSetSockOpt` (1253)

### 72.3.11 fplisten

Synopsis: Listen for connections on a socket.

Declaration: `function fplisten(s: cint; backlog: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpListen` listens for up to `backlog` connections from socket `S`. The socket `S` must be of type `SOCK_STREAM` or `Sock_SEQPACKET`.

The function returns 0 if a connection was accepted, -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1221)** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1221)** The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP** The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

See also: `fpSocket` (1254), `fpBind` (1247), `fpConnect` (1248)

### 72.3.12 fprecv

Synopsis: Receive data on socket

Declaration: `function fprecv(s: cint; buf: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint)  
: ssize_t`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `fpRecv` reads at most `len` bytes from socket `S` into address `buf`. The socket must be in a connected state. `Flags` can be one of the following:

- 1**Process out-of band data.
- 4**Bypass routing, use a direct interface.
- ??**Wait for full request or report an error.

The function returns the number of bytes actually read from the socket, or -1 if a detectable error occurred.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

- ESockEBADF (1221)**The socket descriptor is invalid.
- ESockENOTCONN (1221)**The socket isn't connected.
- ESockENOTSOCK (1221)**The descriptor is not a socket.
- ESockEFAULT (1221)**The address is outside your address space.
- ESockEMSGSIZE (1221)**The message cannot be sent atomically.
- ESockEWOULDBLOCK (1221)**The requested operation would block the process.
- ESockENOBUFS (1221)**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: `FPSend` (1252)

### 72.3.13 `fprecvfrom`

**Synopsis:** Receive data from an unconnected socket

**Declaration:** `function fprecvfrom(s: cint; buf: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint; from: psockaddr; fromlen: psocklen) : ssize_t`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpRecvFrom` receives data in buffer `Buf` with maximum length `Len` from socket `S`. Receipt is controlled by options in `Flags`. The location pointed to by `from` will be filled with the address from the sender, and its length will be stored in `fromlen`. The function returns the number of bytes received, or -1 on error. `AddrLen`.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `fpSocket` (1254), `frecv` (1251)

### 72.3.14 `fpsend`

**Synopsis:** Send data through socket

**Declaration:** `function fpsend(s: cint; msg: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint) : ssize_t`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpSend` sends `Len` bytes starting from address `Msg` to socket `S`. `S` must be in a connected state. Options can be passed in `Flags`.

The function returns the number of bytes sent, or -1 if a detectable error occurred.

`Flags` can be one of the following:

**1**Process out-of band data.

**4**Bypass routing, use a direct interface.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1221)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1221)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1221)**The address is outside your address space.

**ESockEMSGSIZE (1221)**The message cannot be sent atomically.

**ESockEWOULDBLOCK (1221)**The requested operation would block the process.

**ESockENOBUFS (1221)**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: `fpRecv` (1251)

### 72.3.15 `fpsendto`

Synopsis: Send data through an unconnected socket to an address.

Declaration: `function fpSendto(s: cint; msg: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint; tox: psockaddr; tolen: TSocketLen) : ssize_t`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSendto` sends data from buffer `Msg` with length `len` through socket `S` with options `Flags`. The data is sent to address `tox`, which has length `tolen`

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `fpSocket` (1254), `fpSend` (1252), `fpRecvFrom` (1252)

### 72.3.16 `fpsetsockopt`

Synopsis: Set socket options.

Declaration: `function fpSetsockopt(s: cint; level: cint; optname: cint; optval: pointer; optlen: TSocketLen) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetSockOpt` sets the connection options for socket `S`. The socket may be manipulated at different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET**To manipulate the socket itself.

**XXX**set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

The actual option is stored in a buffer pointed to by `optval`, with length `optlen`.

For more information on this call, refer to the UNIX manual page `setsockopt`

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEBADF (1221)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1221)**The descriptor is not a socket.

**ESockEFAULT (1221)**`OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: `fpGetSockOpt` (1251)

### 72.3.17 fpshutdown

Synopsis: Close one end of full duplex connection.

Declaration: `function fpshutdown(s: cint; how: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpShutDown` closes one end of a full duplex socket connection, described by `S`. The parameter `How` determines how the connection will be shut down, and can be one of the following:

**0**Further receives are disallowed.

**1**Further sends are disallowed.

**2**Sending nor receiving are allowed.

On success, the function returns 0, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: `SocketError` is used to report errors, and includes the following:

**ESockEBADF (1221)**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**ESockENOTCONN (1221)**The socket isn't connected.

**ESockENOTSOCK (1221)**The descriptor is not a socket.

See also: `fpSocket` (1254), `fpConnect` (1248)

### 72.3.18 fpsocket

Synopsis: Create new socket

Declaration: `function fpsocket(domain: cint; xtype: cint; protocol: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSocket` creates a new socket in domain `Domain`, from type `xType` using protocol `Protocol`. The `Domain`, `Socket` type and `Protocol` can be specified using predefined constants (see the section on constants for available constants) If successful, the function returns a socket descriptor, which can be passed to a subsequent `fpBind` (1247) call. If unsuccessfully, the function returns -1.

for an example, see `Accept` (1242).

Errors: Errors are returned in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**ESockEPROTONOSUPPORT (1221)**The protocol type or the specified protocol is not supported within this domain.

**ESockEMFILE (1221)**The per-process descriptor table is full.

**SYS\_ENFILE**The system file table is full.

**ESockEACCESS (1221)**Permission to create a socket of the specified type and/or protocol is denied.

**ESockENOBUFS (1221)**Insufficient buffer space is available. The socket cannot be created until sufficient resources are freed.

See also: `FPSocketPair` (1255)

### 72.3.19 fpsocketpair

Synopsis: Create socket pair.

Declaration: `function fpsocketpair(d: cint; xtype: cint; protocol: cint; sv: pcint)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSocketPair` creates 2 sockets in domain `D`, from type `xType` and using protocol `Protocol`. The pair is returned in `sv`, and they are indistinguishable. The function returns -1 upon error and 0 upon success.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and are the same as in `FPSocket` ([1254](#))

See also: `Str2UnixSockAddr` ([1259](#))

### 72.3.20 HostAddrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a host address to a string.

Declaration: `function HostAddrToStr(Entry: in_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostAddrToStr` converts the host address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form (a dotted quad).

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr` ([1256](#)), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1256](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1259](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1259](#))

### 72.3.21 HostAddrToStr6

Synopsis: Convert a IPV6 host address to a string representation.

Declaration: `function HostAddrToStr6(Entry: Tin6_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostAddrToStr6` converts the IPV6 host address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form.

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr6` ([1256](#)), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1256](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1259](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1259](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([1259](#))

### 72.3.22 HostToNet

Synopsis: Convert a host address to a network address

Declaration: `function HostToNet(Host: in_addr) : in_addr  
function HostToNet(Host: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostToNet` converts a host address to a network address. It takes care of endianness of the host machine. The address can be specified as a dotted quad or as a longint.

Errors: None.

See also: `NetToHost` ([1257](#)), `NToHS` ([1257](#)), `HToNS` ([1256](#)), `ShortHostToNet` ([1257](#)), `ShortNetToHost` ([1258](#))



### 72.3.23 htonl

Synopsis: Convert long integer from host ordered to network ordered

Declaration: `function htonl(host: Cardinal) : Cardinal; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `htonl` makes sure that the bytes in `host` are ordered in the correct way for sending over the network and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htons` ([1256](#)), `ntohl` ([1257](#)), `ntohs` ([1257](#))

### 72.3.24 htons

Synopsis: Convert short integer from host ordered to network ordered

Declaration: `function htons(host: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `htons` makes sure that the bytes in `host` are ordered in the correct way for sending over the network and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` ([1256](#)), `ntohl` ([1257](#)), `ntohs` ([1257](#))

### 72.3.25 NetAddrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a network address to a string.

Declaration: `function NetAddrToStr(Entry: in_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NetAddrToStr` converts the network address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form (a dotted quad).

See also: `HostAddrToStr` ([1255](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1259](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1259](#))

### 72.3.26 NetAddrToStr6

Synopsis: Convert a IPV6 network address to a string.

Declaration: `function NetAddrToStr6(Entry: Tin6_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NetAddrToStr6` converts the IPV6 network address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form.

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr6` ([1256](#)), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1256](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1259](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1259](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([1259](#))

### 72.3.27 NetToHost

**Synopsis:** Convert a network address to a host address.

**Declaration:** `function NetToHost (Net: in_addr) : in_addr`  
`function NetToHost (Net: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NetToHost` converts a network address to a host address. It takes care of endianness of the host machine. The address can be specified as a dotted quad or as a longint.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `HostToNet` ([1255](#)), `NToHS` ([1257](#)), `HToNS` ([1256](#)), `ShortHostToNet` ([1257](#)), `ShortNetToHost` ([1258](#))

### 72.3.28 NToHI

**Synopsis:** Convert long integer from network ordered to host ordered

**Declaration:** `function NToHI (Net: Cardinal) : Cardinal; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ntohs` makes sure that the bytes in `Net`, received from the network, are ordered in the correct way for handling by the host machine, and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` ([1256](#)), `htons` ([1256](#)), `ntohs` ([1257](#))

### 72.3.29 NToHs

**Synopsis:** Convert short integer from network ordered to host ordered

**Declaration:** `function NToHs (Net: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ntohs` makes sure that the bytes in `Net`, received from the network, are ordered in the correct way for handling by the host machine, and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` ([1256](#)), `htons` ([1256](#)), `ntohl` ([1257](#))

### 72.3.30 ShortHostToNet

**Synopsis:** Convert a host port number to a network port number

**Declaration:** `function ShortHostToNet (Host: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ShortHostToNet` converts a host port number to a network port number. It takes care of endianness of the host machine.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ShortNetToHost` ([1258](#)), `HostToNet` ([1255](#)), `NToHS` ([1257](#)), `HToNS` ([1256](#))

**72.3.31 ShortNetToHost**

Synopsis: Convert a network port number to a host port number

Declaration: `function ShortNetToHost (Net: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShortNetToHost` converts a network port number to a host port number. It takes care of endianness of the host machine.

Errors: None.

See also: `ShortNetToHost` ([1258](#)), `HostToNet` ([1255](#)), `NToHS` ([1257](#)), `HToNS` ([1256](#))

**72.3.32 Sock2File**

Synopsis: Convert socket to untyped file descriptors

Declaration: `procedure Sock2File (Sock: LongInt; var SockIn: File; var SockOut: File)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sock2File` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `File`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

Errors: None.

See also: `FPSocket` ([1254](#)), `Sock2Text` ([1258](#))

**72.3.33 Sock2Text**

Synopsis: Convert socket to text file descriptors

Declaration: `procedure Sock2Text (Sock: LongInt; var SockIn: Text; var SockOut: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sock2Text` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `Text`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

Errors: None.

See also: `FPSocket` ([1254](#)), `Sock2File` ([1258](#))

**72.3.34 socketerror**

Synopsis: Contains the error code for the last socket operation.

Declaration: `function socketerror : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `SocketError` contains the error code for the last socket operation. It can be examined to return the last socket error.

### 72.3.35 Str2UnixSockAddr

Synopsis: Convert path to TUnixSockAddr ([1261](#))

Declaration: `procedure Str2UnixSockAddr(const addr: string; var t: TUnixSockAddr;  
var len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Str2UnixSockAddr` transforms a Unix socket address in a string to a `TUnixSockAddr` structure which can be passed to the `Bind` ([1244](#)) call.

Errors: None.

See also: `FPSocket` ([1254](#)), `FPBind` ([1247](#))

### 72.3.36 StrToHostAddr

Synopsis: Convert a string to a host address.

Declaration: `function StrToHostAddr(IP: AnsiString) : in_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToHostAddr` converts the string representation in `IP` to a host address and returns the host address.

Errors: On error, the host address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1256](#)), `HostAddrToStr` ([1255](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([1259](#))

### 72.3.37 StrToHostAddr6

Synopsis: Convert a string to a IPV6 host address.

Declaration: `function StrToHostAddr6(IP: string) : Tin6_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToHostAddr6` converts the string representation in `IP` to a IPV6 host address and returns the host address.

Errors: On error, the address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr6` ([1256](#)), `HostAddrToStr6` ([1255](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1259](#))

### 72.3.38 StrToNetAddr

Synopsis: Convert a string to a network address.

Declaration: `function StrToNetAddr(IP: AnsiString) : in_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToNetAddr` converts the string representation in `IP` to a network address and returns the network address.

Errors: On error, the network address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([1256](#)), `HostAddrToStr` ([1255](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([1259](#))

### 72.3.39 StrToNetAddr6

Synopsis: Convert a string to a IPV6 network address

Declaration: `function StrToNetAddr6(IP: AnsiString) : Tin6_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToNetAddr6` converts the string representation in `IP` to a IPV6 network address and returns the network address.

Errors: On error, the address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr6` ([1256](#)), `HostAddrToStr6` ([1255](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([1259](#))

## 72.4 linger

```

linger = packed record
  l_onoff : cint;
  l_linger : cint;
end

```

This record is used in the `fpsetsockopt` ([1253](#)) call to specify linger options.

## 72.5 sockaddr\_in

```

sockaddr_in = packed record
  sin_family : sa_family_t;
  sin_port
    : cushort;
  sin_addr : in_addr;
  xpad : Array[0..7] of Char;
end

```

`sockaddr_in` is used to store a INET socket address for the `FPBind` ([1247](#)), `FPRecv` ([1251](#)) and `FPSend` ([1252](#)) calls.

## 72.6 sockaddr\_in6

```

sockaddr_in6 = packed record
  sin6_family : sa_family_t;
  sin6_port
    : cuint16;
  sin6_flowinfo : cuint32;
  sin6_addr : in6_addr;
  sin6_scope_id
    : cuint32;
end

```

Alias for `sockaddr_in6` ([1260](#))

## 72.7 sockaddr\_un

```
sockaddr_un = packed record
  sun_family : sa_family_t;
  sun_path
    : Array[0..107] of Char;
end
```

`sockaddr_un` is used to store a UNIX socket address for the `FPBind` ([1247](#)), `FPRecv` ([1251](#)) and `FPSend` ([1252](#)) calls.

## 72.8 TUnixSockAddr

```
TUnixSockAddr = packed record
  family : sa_family_t;
  path : Array
    [0..107] of Char;
end
```

Alias for `sockaddr_un` ([1261](#))

# Chapter 73

## Reference for unit 'Strings'

### 73.1 Overview

This chapter describes the `STRINGS` unit for Free Pascal. This unit is system independent, and therefore works on all supported platforms.

### 73.2 Procedures and functions

#### 73.2.1 `stralloc`

Synopsis: Allocate memory for a new null-terminated string on the heap

Declaration: `function stralloc(L: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a string with length `Len`, terminating `#0` included, and returns a pointer to it.

Errors: If there is not enough memory, a run-time error occurs.

See also: `StrNew` ([1271](#)), `StrPCopy` ([1272](#))

#### 73.2.2 `strcat`

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings.

Declaration: `function strcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Attaches `Source` to `Dest` and returns `Dest`.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCat` ([1267](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex11.pp`

---

```

Program Example11;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrCat function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar String.';

Var P2 : PChar;

begin
  P2:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)*2+1);
  StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2=P1 }
  StrCat (P2,P1);                { Append P2 once more }
  Writeln ('P2 : ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
end.

```

---

### 73.2.3 strcmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case sensitive.

Declaration: `function strcmp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative SizeInt when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive SizeInt when S1>S2.

For an example, see StrLComp ([1268](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp ([1268](#)), StrIComp ([1266](#)), StrLComp ([1269](#))

### 73.2.4 strcpy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Copy the null terminated string in Source to Dest, and returns a pointer to Dest. Dest needs enough room to contain Source, i.e. StrLen(Source)+1 bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrPCopy ([1272](#)), StrLCopy ([1268](#)), StrECopy ([1264](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex4.pp



---

```

Program Example4;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrCopy function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P)+1);
  STrCopy (PP,P);
  If StrComp (PP,P)<>0 then
    Writeln ('Oh-oh problems...')
  else
    Writeln ('All is well : PP=',PP);
  StrDispose(PP);
end.

```

---

### 73.2.5 strdispose

Synopsis: disposes of a null-terminated string on the heap

Declaration: `procedure strdispose(p: pchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: Removes the string in P from the heap and releases the memory.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([1271](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex17.pp

---

```

Program Example17;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrDispose function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

var P2 : PChar;

begin
  P2:=StrNew (P1);
  Writeln ('P2 : ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
end.

```

---

### 73.2.6 strecopy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, return a pointer to the end.

**Declaration:** `function strecopy(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Copies the Null-terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to the end (i.e. the terminating Null-character) of the copied string.

**Errors:** No length checking is performed.

**See also:** `StrLCopy` ([1268](#)), `StrCopy` ([1263](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrECopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

**Var** PP : PChar;

**begin**

PP:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P)+1);

**If** Longint(StrECopy(PP,P)) – Longint(PP) <> StrLen(P) **then**

    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')

**else**

    Writeln('PP= ',PP);

    StrDispose(PP);

**end.**

---

### 73.2.7 strend

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to the end of a null-terminated string

**Declaration:** `function strend(p: pchar) : pchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Returns a pointer to the end of P. (i.e. to the terminating null-character.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `StrLen` ([1269](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrEnd function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

**begin**

**If** Longint(StrEnd(P)) – Longint(P) <> StrLen(P) **then**

    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')

---

```

    else
      WriteLn ( 'All is well..' );
    end.

```

---

### 73.2.8 stricmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function stricmp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when `S1<S2`.
- 0 when `S1=S2`.
- A positive `SizeInt` when `S1>S2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` ([1268](#)), `StrComp` ([1263](#)), `StrLComp` ([1269](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

```

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';
      P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

```

```

Var L : Longint;

```

```

begin
  Write ( 'P1 and P2 are ');
  If StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 then write ( 'NOT ');
  write ( 'equal. The first ');
  L:=1;
  While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);
  dec(L);
  WriteLn (L, ' characters are the same. ');
end.

```

---

### 73.2.9 stripos

Synopsis: Return the position of a substring in a string, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function stripos(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `stripos` returns the position of `str2` in `str1`. It searches in a case-insensitive manner, and if it finds a match, it returns a pointer to the location of the match. If no match is found, `Nil` is returned.

**Errors:** No checks are done on the validity of the pointers, and the pointers are assumed to point to a properly null-terminated string. If either of these conditions are not met, a run-time error may follow.

See also: `striscan` ([1267](#)), `strpos` ([1273](#))

### 73.2.10 `striscan`

**Synopsis:** Scan a string for a character, case-insensitive

**Declaration:** `function striscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `striscan` does the same as `strscan` ([1274](#)) but compares the characters case-insensitively. It returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character `c` in the null-terminated string `p`, or `Nil` if `c` is not present in the string.

See also: `strscan` ([1274](#)), `striscan` ([1273](#))

### 73.2.11 `strlcat`

**Synopsis:** Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings, with length boundary.

**Declaration:** `function strlcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar; l: SizeInt) : pchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Adds `L` characters from `Source` to `Dest`, and adds a terminating null-character. Returns `Dest`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `StrCat` ([1262](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCat function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = '1234567890';`

**Var** `P2 : PChar;`

**begin**

`P2:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)*2+1);`

`P2^:=#0; { Zero length }`

`StrCat (P2,P1);`

`StrLCat (P2,P1,5);`

`Writeln ( 'P2 = ',P2);`

`StrDispose(P2)`

**end.**

---

### 73.2.12 strlcomp

**Synopsis:** Compare limited number of characters of 2 null-terminated strings

**Declaration:** `function strcmp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar; l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Compares maximum `L` characters of the null-terminated strings `S1` and `S2`. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when  $S1 < S2$ .
- 0 when  $S1 = S2$ .
- A positive `SizeInt` when  $S1 > S2$ .

Errors: None.

See also: [StrComp \(1263\)](#), [StrIComp \(1266\)](#), [StrLComp \(1269\)](#)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }
```

```
Const P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';
      P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';
```

```
Var L : Longint;
```

```
begin
  Write ( 'P1 and P2 are ');
  If StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 then write ( 'NOT ');
  write ( 'equal. The first ');
  L:=1;
  While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);
  dec(L);
  WriteLn (L, ' characters are the same. ');
end.
```

### 73.2.13 strlcopy

**Synopsis:** Copy a null-terminated string, limited in length.

```
Declaration: function strcpy(dest: pchar; source: pchar; maxlen: SizeInt) : pchar
                ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** Copies MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and makes Dest a null terminated string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrCopy (1263), StrECopy (1264)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex5.pp

---

```

Program Example5;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCopy function. }

Const P : PChar = '123456789ABCDEF';

var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc(11);
  WriteLn ( 'First 10 characters of P : ',StrLCopy (PP,P,10));
  StrDispose(PP);
end.

```

---

### 73.2.14 strlen

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strlen(p: pchar) : sizeint`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string P. If P equals Nil, then zero (0) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([1271](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program Example1;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLen function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a constant pchar string';

begin
  WriteLn ( 'P          : ',p);
  WriteLn ( 'length(P) : ',StrLen(P));
end.

```

---

### 73.2.15 strlicomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters in 2 null-terminated strings, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function strlicomp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar; l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative `SizeInt` when  $S1 < S2$ .
- 0 when  $S1 = S2$ .
- A positive `SizeInt` when  $S1 > S2$ .

For an example, see `StrIComp` ([1266](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` ([1268](#)), `StrComp` ([1263](#)), `StrIComp` ([1266](#))

### 73.2.16 `strlower`

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function strlower(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts `P` to an all-lowercase string. Returns `P`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrUpper` ([1274](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `Example14`;

**Uses** `strings`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLower and StrUpper functions. }*

**Const**

`P1 : PChar = 'THIS IS AN UPPERCASE PCHAR STRING';`  
`P2 : PChar = 'this is a lowercase string';`

**begin**

`P1 := StrNew(P1);`  
`P2 := strNew(P2);`  
`WriteLn ('Uppercase : ', StrUpper(P2));`  
`StrLower(P1);`  
`WriteLn ('Lowercase : ', P1);`  
`StrDispose(P1);`  
`StrDispose(P2);`

**end.**

---

### 73.2.17 `strmove`

Synopsis: Move a null-terminated string to new location.

Declaration: `function strmove(dest: pchar; source: pchar; l: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies `MaxLen` characters from `Source` to `Dest`. No terminating null-character is copied. Returns `Dest`

Errors: None.

See also: StrLCopy ([1268](#)), StrCopy ([1263](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrMove function. }*

**Const** P1 : PCHAR = 'This is a pchar string.';

**Var** P2 : Pchar;

**begin**

  P2:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)+1);

**StrMove** (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); *{ P2:=P1 }*

**Writeln** ( 'P2 = ',P2);

**StrDispose**(P2);

**end.**

---

### 73.2.18 strnew

Synopsis: Allocate room for new null-terminated string.

Declaration: function strnew(p: pchar) : pchar

Visibility: default

Description: Copies P to the Heap, and returns a pointer to the copy.

Errors: Returns Nil if no memory was available for the copy.

See also: StrCopy ([1263](#)), StrDispose ([1264](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrNew function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

**var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

  P2:=StrNew (P1);

**If** P1=P2 **then**

**writeln** ( 'This can''t be happening... ')

**else**

**writeln** ( 'P2 : ',P2);

**StrDispose**(P2);

**end.**

---



**73.2.19 strpas**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to a shortstring.

Declaration: `function strpas(p: pchar) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in P to a Pascal string, and returns this string. The string is truncated at 255 characters.

Errors: None.

See also: StrPCopy ([1272](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex3.pp

---

**Program** Example3;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPas function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string';

**var** S : **string**;

**begin**

    S:=StrPas (P);

    WriteLn ('S : ',S);

**end.**

---

**73.2.20 strcpy**

Synopsis: Copy a pascal string to a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(d: pchar; const s: string) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the Pascal string in S to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to D. D needs enough room to contain the string Source, i.e. Length(S)+1 bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrPas ([1272](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex2.pp

---

**Program** Example2;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPCopy function. }*

**Const** S = 'This is a normal string.';

**Var** P : Pchar;

---

```

begin
  p:= StrAlloc (length(S)+1);
  if StrPCopy (P,S)<>P then
    Writeln ('This is impossible !!')
  else
    writeln (P);
    StrDispose(P);
end.

```

---

### 73.2.21 strpos

Synopsis: Search for a null-terminated substring in a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strpos(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of S2 in S1. If S2 does not occur in S1, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan ([1274](#)), StrRScan ([1274](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex15.pp

---

**Program** Example15;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPos function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PChar string.';  
           S : PChar = 'is';

**begin**  
     Writeln ('Position of ''is'' in P : ',sizeint(StrPos(P,S))-sizeint(P));  
**end.**

---

### 73.2.22 strriscan

Synopsis: Scan a string reversely for a character, case-insensitive

Declaration: `function strriscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `strriscan` does the same as `strrscan` ([1274](#)) but compares the characters case-insensitively. It returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character `c` in the null-terminated string `p`, or Nil if `c` is not present in the string.

See also: `strrscan` ([1274](#)), `striscan` ([1267](#))

**73.2.23 strscan**

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

For an example, see StrScan ([1274](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan ([1274](#)), StrPos ([1273](#))

**73.2.24 strscan**

Synopsis: Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrRScan ([1274](#)), StrPos ([1273](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrScan and StrRScan functions. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';  
           S : Char = 's' ;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from first 's' : ', **StrScan**(P,s));

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from last 's' : ', **StrRScan**(P,s));

**end.**

---

**73.2.25 strupper**

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-uppercase

Declaration: `function strupper(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts P to an all-uppercase string. Returns P.

For an example, see StrLower ([1270](#))

Errors: None.

See also: StrLower ([1270](#))

# Chapter 74

## Reference for unit 'StrUtils'

### 74.1 Used units

Table 74.1: Used units by unit 'StrUtils'

Name	Page
sysutils	<a href="#">1571</a>
Types	<a href="#">1872</a>

### 74.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 74.2.1 Resource strings

```
SErrAmountStrings =  
    'Amount of search and replace strings don''t match'
```

Error message used in stringsreplace function

```
SInvalidRomanNumeral = '%s is not a valid Roman numeral'
```

Error string shown in exception raised when invalid roman numeral is encountered

#### 74.2.2 Constants

```
AnsiResemblesProc : TCompareTextProc = @ SoundexProc
```

This procedural variable is standard set to SoundexProc ([1306](#)) but can be overridden with a user-defined algorithm. This algorithm should return True if AText resembles AOtherText, or False otherwise. The standard routine compares the soundexes of the two strings and returns True if they are equal.

```
Brackets = ['(', ')', '[', ']', '{', '}']
```

Set of characters that contain all possible bracket characters

```
DigitChars = ['0'..'9']
```

Set of digit characters

```
ResemblesProc : TCompareTextProc = @ SoundexProc
```

`ResemblesProc` is a procedure variable which can be set to compare 2 string. It is similar to `AnsiResemblesProc` (1275), and by default is set to the `SoundExProc` (1306) function.

```
StdSwitchChars = ['-','/']
```

Standard characters for the `SwitchChars` argument of `GetCmdLineArg` (1291).

```
StdWordDelims = [#0..' ', ',', '.', ';', '/', '\', ':', "'", '"',
  , ''] + Brackets
```

Standard word delimiter values.

```
WordDelimiters : Set of Char = [#0..#255] - ['a'..'z', 'A'..'Z', '1'
  ..'9', '0']
```

Standard word delimiters, used in the `SearchBuf` (1304) call.

### 74.2.3 Types

```
Array = Array of SizeInt
```

`SizeIntArray` is an auxiliary type used in `StringReplace` (1307)

```
TCompareTextProc = function(const AText: string; const AOther: string
  )
  : Boolean
```

Function prototype for comparing two string in `AnsiResemblesText` (1282)

```
Array = Array of RawByteString
```

```
TRomanConversionStrictness = (rcsStrict, rcsRelaxed, rcsDontCare)
```

Table 74.2: Enumeration values for type `TRomanConversionStrictness`

Value	Explanation
<code>rcsDontCare</code>	Do not check correctness
<code>rcsRelaxed</code>	Like <code>rcsStrict</code> but allow more than 3 consecutive identical letters.
<code>rcsStrict</code>	Only accept correct roman numerals.

`TRomanConversionStrictness` is an enumerated type that can be used to decide how to react to invalid roman numerals.

**rcsStrict** Strict adherence to roman numerals. Up to 3 consecutive identical letters. No negative numbers. Ordering must be correct.

**rcsRelaxed** Same as `rcsStrict` but allow more than 3 consecutive identical letters.

**rcsDontCare** Do not check validity at all

`TSoundexIntLength = 1..8`

Range of allowed integer soundex lengths.

`TSoundexLength = 1..MaxInt`

Range of allowed soundex lengths.

`TStringReplaceAlgorithm = (sraDefault, sraManySmall, sraBoyerMoore)`

Table 74.3: Enumeration values for type `TStringReplaceAlgorithm`

Value	Explanation
<code>sraBoyerMoore</code>	Use a Boyer-Moore search algorithm
<code>sraDefault</code>	Use the <code>sysutils</code> algorithm, which does a straightforward linear search and replace
<code>sraManySmall</code>	Use an approach which is suitable for a string with many occurrences of the same small text

`TStringReplaceAlgorithm` enumerates the available algorithms to `StringReplace` ([1307](#))

**sraDefault** Use the `sysutils` algorithm, which does a straightforward linear search and replace

**sraManySmall** Use an approach which is suitable for a string with many occurrences of the same small text

**sraBoyerMoore** Use a Boyer-Moore search algorithm

Depending on the kind of data that is being treated, one or the other of these algorithms may produce faster results.

`TStringSeachOption = TStringSearchOption`

There is an typo error in the original Borland `StrUtils` unit. This type just refers to the correct `TStringSearchOption` ([1277](#)) and is provided for compatibility only.

`TStringSearchOption = (soDown, soMatchCase, soWholeWord)`

Table 74.4: Enumeration values for type `TStringSearchOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>soDown</code>	Search in down direction.
<code>soMatchCase</code>	Match case
<code>soWholeWord</code>	Search whole words only.

Possible options for `SearchBuf` ([1304](#)) call.

TStringSearchOptions = Set of TStringSearchOption

Set of options for SearchBuf ([1304](#)) call.

Array = Array of UnicodeString

## 74.3 Procedures and functions

### 74.3.1 AddChar

Synopsis: Add characters to the left of a string till a certain length

Declaration: `function AddChar(C: Char; const S: string; N: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddChar` adds characters (C) to the left of S till the length N is reached, and returns the resulting string. If the length of S is already equal to or larger than N, then no characters are added. The resulting string can be thought of as a right-aligned version of S, with length N.

Errors: None

See also: `AddCharR` ([1278](#)), `PadLeft` ([1298](#)), `PadRight` ([1299](#)), `PadCenter` ([1298](#))

### 74.3.2 AddCharR

Synopsis: Add chars at the end of a string till it reaches a certain length

Declaration: `function AddCharR(C: Char; const S: string; N: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddCharR` adds characters (C) to the right of S till the length N is reached, and returns the resulting string. If the length of S is already equal to or larger than N, then no characters are added. The resulting string can be thought of as a left-aligned version of S, with length N.

Errors: None

See also: `AddChar` ([1278](#))

### 74.3.3 AnsiContainsStr

Synopsis: Checks whether a string contains a given substring

Declaration: `function AnsiContainsStr(const AText: string; const ASubText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiContainsString` checks whether AText contains ASubText, and returns True if this is the case, or returns False otherwise. The search is performed case-sensitive.

Errors: None

See also: `AnsiContainsText` ([1279](#)), `AnsiEndsStr` ([1279](#)), `AnsiIndexStr` ([1279](#)), `AnsiStartsStr` ([1283](#))

### 74.3.4 AnsiContainsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string contains a certain substring, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function AnsiContainsText(const AText: string; const ASubText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiContainsString` checks whether `AText` contains `ASubText`, and returns `True` if this is the case, or returns `False` otherwise. The search is performed case-insensitive.

See also: `AnsiContainsStr` ([1278](#)), `AnsiEndsText` ([1279](#)), `AnsiIndexText` ([1280](#)), `AnsiStartsText` ([1283](#))

### 74.3.5 AnsiEndsStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string ends with a certain substring

Declaration: `function AnsiEndsStr(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiEndsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it ends with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-sensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals the length of `AText` minus the length of `ASubText` plus one.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiEndsText` ([1279](#)), `AnsiStartsStr` ([1283](#)), `AnsiIndexStr` ([1279](#)), `AnsiContainsStr` ([1278](#))

### 74.3.6 AnsiEndsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string ends with a certain substring, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function AnsiEndsText(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiEndsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it ends with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-insensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals the length of `AText` minus the length of `ASubText` plus one.

Errors: None

See also: `AnsiStartsText` ([1283](#)), `AnsiEndsStr` ([1279](#)), `AnsiIndexText` ([1280](#)), `AnsiContainsText` ([1279](#))

### 74.3.7 AnsiIndexStr

Synopsis: Searches, observing case, for a string in an array of strings.

Declaration: `function AnsiIndexStr(const AText: string;  
const AValues: Array of string) : Integer`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the `AValues` array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiIndexText` (1280), `AnsiMatchStr` (1280), `AnsiMatchText` (1281)

### 74.3.8 `AnsiIndexText`

**Synopsis:** Searches, case insensitive, for a string in an array of strings.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiIndexText(const AText: string;  
const AValues: Array of string) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiIndexText` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the `AValues` array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched ignoring case.

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `AnsiIndexStr` (1279), `AnsiMatchStr` (1280), `IndexStr` (1293), `MatchStr` (1296), `AnsiMatchText` (1281)

### 74.3.9 `AnsiLeftStr`

**Synopsis:** Copies a number of characters starting at the left of a string

**Declaration:** `function AnsiLeftStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiLeftStr` returns the `ACount` leftmost characters from `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes. This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `LeftStr` function.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiMidStr` (1281), `AnsiRightStr` (1283), `LeftStr` (1295), `RightStr` (1302), `MidStr` (1296), `LeftBStr` (1295), `RightBStr` (1302), `MidBStr` (1296)

### 74.3.10 `AnsiMatchStr`

**Synopsis:** Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, observing case.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiMatchStr(const AText: string;  
const AValues: Array of string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiMatchStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

This function simply calls `AnsiIndexStr` (1279) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

### 74.3.11 AnsiMatchText

Synopsis: Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, disregarding case.

Declaration: `function AnsiMatchText(const AText: string;  
const AValues: Array of string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched ignoring case.

This function simply calls `AnsiIndexText` (1280) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

### 74.3.12 AnsiMidStr

Synopsis: Returns a number of characters copied from a given location in a string

Declaration: `function AnsiMidStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AStart: SizeInt;  
const ACount: SizeInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiMidStr` returns `ACount` characters from `AText`, starting at position `AStart`. If `AStart+ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` (starting from `AStart`) will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes.

This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `MidStr` function.

Errors: None

See also: `AnsiLeftStr` (1280), `AnsiRightStr` (1283), `LeftStr` (1295), `RightStr` (1302), `MidStr` (1296), `LeftBStr` (1295), `RightBStr` (1302), `MidBStr` (1296)

### 74.3.13 AnsiProperCase

Synopsis: Pretty-Print a string: make lowercase and capitalize first letters of words

Declaration: `function AnsiProperCase(const S: string; const WordDelims: TSysCharSet)  
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiProperCase` converts `S` to an all lowercase string, but capitalizes the first letter of every word in the string, and returns the resulting string. When searching for words, the characters in `WordDelimiters` are used to determine the boundaries of words. The constant `StdWordDelims` (1276) can be used for this.

### 74.3.14 AnsiReplaceStr

Synopsis: Search and replace all occurrences of a string, case sensitive.

Declaration: `function AnsiReplaceStr(const AText: string; const AFromText: string;  
const AToText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiReplaceString` searches `AText` for all occurrences of the string `AFromText` and replaces them with `AToText`, and returns the resulting string. The search is performed observing case.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiReplaceText` ([1282](#)), `SearchBuf` ([1304](#))

### 74.3.15 `AnsiReplaceText`

**Synopsis:** Search and replace all occurrences of a string, case insensitive.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiReplaceText(const AText: string; const AFromText: string; const AToText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiReplaceString` searches `AText` for all occurrences of the string `AFromText` and replaces them with `AToText`, and returns the resulting string. The search is performed ignoring case.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiReplaceStr` ([1281](#)), `SearchBuf` ([1304](#))

### 74.3.16 `AnsiResemblesText`

**Synopsis:** Check whether 2 strings resemble each other.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiResemblesText(const AText: string; const AOther: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiResemblesText` will check whether `AnsiResemblesProc` ([1275](#)) is set. If it is not set, `False` is returned. If it is set, `AText` and `AOtherText` are passed to it and its result is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiResemblesProc` ([1275](#)), `SoundexProc` ([1306](#))

### 74.3.17 `AnsiReverseString`

**Synopsis:** Reverse the letters in a string.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiReverseString(const AText: AnsiString) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiReverseString` returns a string with all characters of `AText` in reverse order. if the result of this function equals `AText`, `AText` is called an anagram.

Errors: None.

### 74.3.18 AnsiRightStr

Synopsis: Copies a number of characters starting at the right of a string

Declaration: `function AnsiRightStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLeftStr` returns the `ACount` rightmost characters from `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes.

This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `RightStr` function.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLeftStr` (1280), `AnsiMidStr` (1281), `LeftStr` (1295), `RightStr` (1302), `MidStr` (1296), `LeftBStr` (1295), `RightBStr` (1302), `MidBStr` (1296)

### 74.3.19 AnsiStartsStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string starts with a given substring, observing case

Declaration: `function AnsiStartsStr(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStartsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it starts with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-sensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals 1.

See also: `AnsiEndsStr` (1279), `AnsiStartsStr` (1283), `AnsiIndexStr` (1279), `AnsiContainsStr` (1278)

### 74.3.20 AnsiStartsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string starts with a given substring, ignoring case

Declaration: `function AnsiStartsText(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStartsText` checks `AText` to see whether it starts with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-insensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals 1.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiEndsText` (1279), `AnsiStartsStr` (1283), `AnsiIndexText` (1280), `AnsiContainsText` (1279)

### 74.3.21 BinToHex

Synopsis: Convert a binary buffer to a hexadecimal string

Declaration: `procedure BinToHex(BinValue: PChar; HexValue: PChar;  
BinBufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `BinToHex` converts the byte values in `BinValue` to a string consisting of 2-character hexadecimal strings in `HexValue`. `BufSize` specifies the length of `BinValue`, which means that `HexValue` must have size  $2 * \text{BufSize}$ .

For example a buffer containing the byte values 255 and 0 will be converted to FF00.

**Errors:** No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `HexToBin` ([1292](#))

### 74.3.22 ContainsStr

**Synopsis:** Check whether one text contains another (case sensitive)

**Declaration:** `function ContainsStr(const AText: string; const ASubText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ContainsStr` is an alias for `AnsiContainsStr` ([1278](#))

See also: `AnsiContainsStr` ([1278](#))

### 74.3.23 ContainsText

**Synopsis:** Check whether one text contains another (case insensitive)

**Declaration:** `function ContainsText(const AText: string; const ASubText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ContainsText` is an alias for `AnsiContainsText` ([1279](#))

See also: `AnsiContainsText` ([1279](#))

### 74.3.24 Copy2Space

**Synopsis:** Returns all characters in a string till the first space character (not included).

**Declaration:** `function Copy2Space(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Copy2Space` determines the position of the first space in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The space character itself is not included in the result string. The string `S` is left untouched. If there is no space in `S`, then the whole string `S` is returned.

This function simply calls `Copy2Symb` ([1285](#)) with the space (ASCII code 32) as the symbol argument.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Copy2Symb` ([1285](#)), `Copy2SpaceDel` ([1285](#))

### 74.3.25 Copy2SpaceDel

**Synopsis:** Deletes and returns all characters in a string till the first space character (not included).

**Declaration:** `function Copy2SpaceDel(var S: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Copy2SpaceDel` determines the position of the first space in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The space character itself is not included in the result string. All returned characters, including the space, are deleted from the string `S`, after which it is right-trimmed. If there is no space in `S`, then the whole string `S` is returned, and `S` itself is emptied.

This function simply calls `Copy2SymbDel` (1285) with the space (ASCII code 32) as the symbol argument.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Copy2SymbDel` (1285), `Copy2Space` (1284)

### 74.3.26 Copy2Symb

**Synopsis:** Returns all characters in a string till a given character (not included).

**Declaration:** `function Copy2Symb(const S: string; Symb: Char) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Copy2Symb` determines the position of the first occurrence of `Symb` in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The `Symb` character itself is not included in the result string. The string `S` is left untouched. If `Symb` does not appear in `S`, then the whole of `S` is returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Copy2Space` (1284), `Copy2SymbDel` (1285)

### 74.3.27 Copy2SymbDel

**Synopsis:** Deletes and returns all characters in a string till a given character (not included).

**Declaration:** `function Copy2SymbDel(var S: string; Symb: Char) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Copy2SymbDel` determines the position of the first occurrence of `Symb` in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The `Symb` character itself is not included in the result string. All returned characters and the `Symb` character, are deleted from the string `S`, after which it is right-trimmed. If `Symb` does not appear in `S`, then the whole of `S` is returned, and `S` itself is emptied.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Copy2SpaceDel` (1285), `Copy2Symb` (1285)

### 74.3.28 Dec2Numb

Synopsis: Convert a decimal number to a string representation, using given a base.

Declaration: `function Dec2Numb(N: LongInt; Len: Byte; Base: Byte) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dec2Numb` converts `N` to its representation using base `Base`. `N` must be a positive integer. The resulting string is left-padded with zeroes till it has length `Len`. `Base` must be in the range 2-36 to be meaningful, but no checking on this is performed.

Errors: If `Base` is out of range, the resulting string will contain unreadable (non-alphanumeric) characters.

See also: `Hex2Dec` ([1291](#)), `IntToBin` ([1293](#)), `intToRoman` ([1294](#)), `RomanToInt` ([1303](#))

### 74.3.29 DecodeSoundexInt

Synopsis: Decodes the integer representation of a soundex code and returns the original soundex code.

Declaration: `function DecodeSoundexInt(AValue: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeSoundexInt` converts the integer value `AValue` to a soundex string. It performs the reverse operation of the `SoundexInt` ([1305](#)) function. The result is the soundex string corresponding to `AValue`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SoundexInt` ([1305](#)), `DecodeSoundexWord` ([1286](#)), `Soundex` ([1305](#))

### 74.3.30 DecodeSoundexWord

Synopsis: Decodes the word-sized representation of a soundex code and returns the original soundex code.

Declaration: `function DecodeSoundexWord(AValue: Word) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeSoundexWord` converts the integer value `AValue` to a soundex string. It performs the reverse operation of the `SoundexWord` ([1306](#)) function. The result is the soundex string corresponding to `AValue`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SoundexInt` ([1305](#)), `DecodeSoundexInt` ([1286](#)), `Soundex` ([1305](#))

### 74.3.31 DelChars

Synopsis: Delete all occurrences of a given character from a string.

Declaration: `function DelChars(const S: string; Chr: Char) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelChars` returns a copy of `S` with all `Chr` characters removed from it.

Errors: None.

See also: `DelSpace` ([1287](#)), `DelSpace1` ([1287](#))

### 74.3.32 DelSpace

Synopsis: Delete all occurrences of a space from a string.

Declaration: `function DelSpace(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelSpace` returns a copy of `S` with all spaces (ASCII code 32) removed from it.

Errors: None.

See also: `DelChars` ([1286](#)), `DelSpace1` ([1287](#))

### 74.3.33 DelSpace1

Synopsis: Reduces sequences of space characters to 1 space character.

Declaration: `function DelSpace1(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelSpace1` returns a copy of `S` with all sequences of spaces reduced to 1 space.

Errors: None.

See also: `DelChars` ([1286](#)), `DelSpace` ([1287](#))

### 74.3.34 DupeString

Synopsis: Creates and concatenates N copies of a string

Declaration: `function DupeString(const AText: string; ACount: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DupeString` returns a string consisting of `ACount` concatenations of `AText`. Thus

```
DupeString('1234567890', 3);
```

will produce a string

```
'1234567890123456789012345678901234567890'
```

Errors: None.

### 74.3.35 EndsStr

Synopsis: Check whether one string ends with another

Declaration: `function EndsStr(const ASubText: string; const AText: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartsText` checks whether `aText` ends with `aSubText` and returns `True` if it does. i.e. it returns true if the last characters of `aText` are `aSubText`. It follows that the length of `aText` must be at least the length of `aSubText`. The comparison is made case-sensitive. If you wish to compare case-insensitively, use `EndsText` ([1288](#)) instead.

See also: `AnsiEndsStr` ([1279](#)), `EndsText` ([1288](#)), `StartsText` ([1307](#))



### 74.3.36 EndsText

Synopsis: Check whether one text ends with another

Declaration: `function EndsText(const ASubText: string; const AText: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartsText` checks whether `aText` ends with `aSubText` and returns `True` if it does. i.e. it returns `true` if the last characters of `aText` are `aSubText`. It follows that the length of `aText` must be at least the length of `aSubText`. The comparison is made case-insensitive. If you wish to compare case-sensitively, use `EndsStr` (1287) instead.

See also: `AnsiEndsStr` (1279), `EndsStr` (1287), `StartsText` (1307)

### 74.3.37 ExtractDelimited

Synopsis: Extract the N-th delimited part from a string.

Declaration: `function ExtractDelimited(N: Integer; const S: string;  
const Delims: TSysCharSet) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractDelimited` extracts the N-th part from the string `S`. The set of characters in `Delims` are used to mark part boundaries. When a delimiter is encountered, a new part is started and the old part is ended. Another way of stating this is that any (possibly empty) series of characters not in `Delims`, situated between 2 characters in `Delims`, it is considered as piece of a part. This means that if 2 delimiter characters appear next to each other, there is an empty part between it. If an N-th part cannot be found, an empty string is returned. However, unlike `ExtractWord` (1289), an empty string is a valid return value, i.e. a part can be empty.

The predefined constant `StdWordDelims` (1276) can be used for the `Delims` argument. The predefined constant `Brackets` (1275) would be better suited the `Delims` argument e.g. in case factors in a mathematical expression are searched.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractSubStr` (1288), `ExtractWord` (1289), `ExtractWordPos` (1289)

### 74.3.38 ExtractSubstr

Synopsis: Extract a word from a string, starting at a given position in the string.

Declaration: `function ExtractSubstr(const S: string; var Pos: Integer;  
const Delims: TSysCharSet) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractSubStr` returns all characters from `S` starting at position `Pos` till the first character in `Delims`, or till the end of `S` is reached. The delimiter character is not included in the result. `Pos` is then updated to point to the next first non-delimiter character in `S`. If `Pos` is larger than the Length of `S`, an empty string is returned.

The predefined constant `StdWordDelims` (1276) can be used for the `Delims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractDelimited` (1288), `ExtractWord` (1289), `ExtractWordPos` (1289)

### 74.3.39 ExtractWord

Synopsis: Extract the N-th word out of a string.

Declaration: `function ExtractWord(N: Integer; const S: string;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractWord` extracts the N-th word from the string `S`. The set of characters in `WordDelims` are used to mark word boundaries. A word is defined as any non-empty sequence of characters which are not present in `WordDelims`: if a character is not in `WordDelims`, it is considered as part of a word. If an N-th word cannot be found, an empty string is returned.

Unlike `ExtractDelimited` (1288), an empty string is not a valid return value, i.e. is not a word. If an empty string is returned, the index `N` was out of range.

The predefined constant `StdWordDelims` (1276) can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractWordPos` (1289), `ExtractSubStr` (1288), `ExtractDelimited` (1288), `IsWordPresent` (1295), `WordCount` (1310), `WordPosition` (1310)

### 74.3.40 ExtractWordPos

Synopsis: Extract a word from a string, and return the position where it was located in the string.

Declaration: `function ExtractWordPos(N: Integer; const S: string;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet; out Pos: Integer)  
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractWordPos` extracts the N-th word from the string `S` and returns the position of this word in `Pos`. The set of characters in `WordDelims` are used to mark word boundaries. A word is defined as any non-empty sequence of characters which are not present in `WordDelims`: if a character is not in `WordDelims`, it is considered as part of a word. If an N-th word cannot be found, an empty string is returned and `Pos` is zero.

Unlike `ExtractDelimited` (1288), an empty string is not a valid return value, i.e. is not a word. If an empty string is returned, the index `N` was out of range.

The predefined constant `StdWordDelims` (1276) can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractWord` (1289), `ExtractSubStr` (1288), `IsWordPresent` (1295), `WordCount` (1310), `WordPosition` (1310)

### 74.3.41 FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive

Synopsis: Find case-sensitive matches of a string using a Boyer-Moore algorithm

Declaration: `function FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive(const S: PChar;  
const OldPattern: PChar;  
const SSize: SizeInt;  
const OldPatternSize: SizeInt;  
out aMatches: SizeIntArray;  
const aMatchAll: Boolean)`

```

                                : Boolean
function FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive(const S: string;
                                const OldPattern: string;
                                out aMatches: SizeIntArray;
                                const aMatchAll: Boolean)
                                : Boolean

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive` finds occurrences of `OldPattern` (with length `OldPatternSize`) in `S` (with length `SSize`). The search is performed case-insensitively, and all (zero based) positions are reported in `aMatches`. If `aMatchAll` is `True`, all positions will be reported. If `aMatchAll` is `False`, only the first position is reported.

Errors: None.

See also: `FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive` ([1290](#)), `StringReplace` ([1307](#))

### 74.3.42 FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive

**Synopsis:** Find case-sensitive matches of a string using a Boyer-Moore algorithm

**Declaration:**

```

function FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive(const S: PChar;
                                const OldPattern: PChar;
                                const SSize: SizeInt;
                                const OldPatternSize: SizeInt;
                                out aMatches: SizeIntArray;
                                const aMatchAll: Boolean)
                                : Boolean
function FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive(const S: string;
                                const OldPattern: string;
                                out aMatches: SizeIntArray;
                                const aMatchAll: Boolean)
                                : Boolean

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseSensitive` finds occurrences of `OldPattern` (with length `OldPatternSize`) in `S` (with length `SSize`). The search is performed case-sensitively, and all (zero based) positions are reported in `aMatches`. If `aMatchAll` is `True`, all positions will be reported. If `aMatchAll` is `False`, only the first position is reported.

Errors: None.

See also: `FindMatchesBoyerMooreCaseInsensitive` ([1289](#)), `StringReplace` ([1307](#))

### 74.3.43 FindPart

**Synopsis:** Search for a substring in a string, using wildcards.

**Declaration:**

```

function FindPart(const HelpWilds: string; const InputStr: string)
                : SizeInt

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindPart` searches the string `InputStr` and returns the first string that matches the wildcards specification in `HelpWilds`. If no match is found, an empty string is returned. Currently, the only valid wildcards is the "?" character.

Errors: None.

See also: [SearchBuf \(1304\)](#)

### 74.3.44 GetCmdLineArg

Synopsis: Returns the command-line argument following the given switch.

Declaration: `function GetCmdLineArg(const Switch: string; SwitchChars: TSysCharSet)  
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCmdLineArg` returns the value for the `Switch` option on the command-line, if any is given. Command-line arguments are considered switches if they start with one of the characters in the `SwitchChars` set. The value is the command-line argument following the switch command-line argument.

Gnu-style (long) Options of the form `switch=value` are not supported.

The `StdSwitchChars` ([1276](#)) constant can be used as value for the `SwitchChars` parameter.

Errors: The `GetCmdLineArg` does not check whether the value of the option does not start with a switch character. i.e.

```
myprogram -option1 -option2
```

will result in "-option2" as the result of the `GetCmdLineArg` call for `option1`.

See also: `StdSwitchChars` ([1276](#))

### 74.3.45 Hex2Dec

Synopsis: Converts a hexadecimal string to a decimal value

Declaration: `function Hex2Dec(const S: string) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hex2Dec` converts the hexadecimal value in the string `S` to its decimal value. Unlike the standard `Valor StrToInt` functions, there need not be a \$ sign in front of the hexadecimal value to indicate that it is indeed a hexadecimal value.

Errors: If `S` does not contain a valid hexadecimal value, an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: `Dec2Numb` ([1286](#)), `IntToBin` ([1293](#)), `intToRoman` ([1294](#)), `RomanToInt` ([1303](#))

### 74.3.46 Hex2Dec64

Synopsis: Convert hexadecimal value to 64-bit integer

Declaration: `function Hex2Dec64(const S: string) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hex2Dec64` converts the hexadecimal number in `S` to a 64-bit value and returns the result. It is equivalent to `StrToInt('$'+S)`.

See also: `Hex2Dec` ([1291](#))

### 74.3.47 HexToBin

Synopsis: Convert a hexadecimal string to a binary buffer

Declaration: `function HexToBin(HexValue: PChar; BinValue: PChar; BinBufSize: Integer)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexToBin` scans the hexadecimal string representation in `HexValue` and transforms every 2 character hexadecimal number to a byte and stores it in `BinValue`. The buffer size is the size of the binary buffer. Scanning will stop if the size of the binary buffer is reached or when an invalid character is encountered. The return value is the number of stored bytes.

Errors: No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `BinToHex` ([1283](#))

### 74.3.48 IfThen

Synopsis: Returns one of two strings, depending on a boolean expression

Declaration: `function IfThen(AValue: Boolean; const ATrue: string;  
const AFalse: string) : string; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `IfThen` returns `ATrue` if `AValue` is `True`, and returns `AFalse` if `AValue` is `false`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiMatchStr` ([1280](#)), `AnsiMatchText` ([1281](#))

### 74.3.49 in(string,):Boolean

Synopsis: Check presence of string in an array of strings

Declaration: `operator in(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This is the (string) operator equivalent of `IndexStr` ([1293](#))

See also: `IndexStr` ([1293](#))

### 74.3.50 in(UnicodeString,):Boolean

Synopsis: Check presence of string in an array of strings

Declaration: `operator in(const AText: UnicodeString;  
const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This is the (unicode string) operator equivalent of `IndexStr` ([1293](#))

See also: `IndexStr` ([1293](#))

### 74.3.51 IndexStr

Synopsis: Searches, observing case, for a string in an array of strings.

Declaration: 

```
function IndexStr(const AText: UnicodeString;
                  const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Integer
function IndexStr(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)
                  : Integer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexStr` matches `AText` against each Unicode string in `AValues`. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the `AValues` array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiIndexText` ([1280](#)), `MatchStr` ([1296](#)), `AnsiIndexStr` ([1279](#))

### 74.3.52 IndexText

Synopsis: Index of text in a list of values

Declaration: 

```
function IndexText(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)
                  : Integer
function IndexText(const AText: UnicodeString;
                  const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Integer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `MatchText` returns the index of the string in the array `aValues` that matches `aText`. The comparison is done case insensitively. If you wish to compare case sensitively, use `IndexStr` ([1293](#)) instead.

See also: `IndexStr` ([1293](#)), `MatchText` ([1296](#)), `AnsiIndexText` ([1280](#))

### 74.3.53 IntToBin

Synopsis: Converts an integer to a binary string representation, inserting spaces at fixed locations.

Declaration: 

```
function IntToBin(Value: LongInt; Digits: Integer; Spaces: Integer)
                  : string
function IntToBin(Value: LongInt; Digits: Integer) : string
function intToBin(Value: Int64; Digits: Integer) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToBin` converts `Value` to a string with its binary (base 2) representation. The resulting string contains at least `Digits` digits, with spaces inserted every `Spaces` digits. `Spaces` should be a nonzero value. If `Digits` is larger than 32, it is truncated to 32.

Errors: If `spaces` is zero, a division by zero error will occur.

See also: `Hex2Dec` ([1291](#)), `IntToRoman` ([1294](#))

### 74.3.54 IntToRoman

Synopsis: Represent an integer with roman numerals

Declaration: `function IntToRoman(Value: LongInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToRoman` converts `Value` to a string with the Roman representation of `Value`. Number up to 1 million can be represented this way.

Errors: None.

See also: `RomanToInt` ([1303](#)), `Hex2Dec` ([1291](#)), `IntToBin` ([1293](#))

### 74.3.55 IsEmptyStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string is empty, disregarding whitespace characters

Declaration: `function IsEmptyStr(const S: string; const EmptyChars: TSysCharSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsEmptyStr` returns `True` if the string `S` only contains characters whitespace characters, all characters in `EmptyChars` are considered whitespace characters. If a character not present in `EmptyChars` is found in `S`, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `IsWild` ([1294](#)), `FindPart` ([1290](#)), `IsWordPresent` ([1295](#))

### 74.3.56 IsWild

Synopsis: Check whether a string matches a wildcard search expression.

Declaration: `function IsWild(InputStr: string; Wilds: string; IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsWild` checks `InputStr` for the presence of the `Wilds` string. `Wilds` may contain "?" and "\*" wildcard characters, which have their usual meaning: "\*" matches any series of characters, possibly empty. "?" matches any single character. The function returns `True` if a string is found that matches `Wilds`, `False` otherwise.

If `IgnoreCase` is `True`, the non-wildcard characters are matched case insensitively. If it is `False`, case is observed when searching.

Errors: None.

See also: `SearchBuf` ([1304](#)), `FindPart` ([1290](#))

### 74.3.57 IsWordPresent

Synopsis: Check for the presence of a word in a string.

Declaration: `function IsWordPresent(const W: string; const S: string;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsWordPresent` checks for the presence of the word `W` in the string `S`. Words are delimited by the characters found in `WordDelims`. The function returns `True` if a match is found, `False` otherwise. The search is performed case sensitive.

This function is equivalent to the `SearchBuf` (1304) function with the `soWholeWords` option specified.

Errors: None.

See also: `SearchBuf` (1304)

### 74.3.58 LeftBStr

Synopsis: Copies Count characters starting at the left of a string.

Declaration: `function LeftBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteCount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `LeftBStr` returns a string containing the leftmost `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText`. If `AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftStr` (1295), `AnsiLeftStr` (1280), `RightBStr` (1302), `MidBStr` (1296)

### 74.3.59 LeftStr

Synopsis: Copies Count characters starting at the left of a string.

Declaration: `function LeftStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString  
function LeftStr(const AText: WideString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: WideString`

Visibility: default

Description: `LeftStr` returns a string containing the leftmost `ACount` characters from the string `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText`, only as many characters as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftBStr` (1295), `AnsiLeftStr` (1280), `RightStr` (1302), `MidStr` (1296)



### 74.3.60 MatchStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, observing case.

Declaration: 

```
function MatchStr(const AText: UnicodeString;
                  const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Boolean
function MatchStr(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)
                  : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `MatchStr` matches `AText` against each Unicode string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

This function simply calls `IndexStr` (1293) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

### 74.3.61 MatchText

Synopsis: Check if a string is in a list of values

Declaration: 

```
function MatchText(const AText: string; const AValues: Array of string)
                  : Boolean
function MatchText(const AText: UnicodeString;
                  const AValues: Array of UnicodeString) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `MatchText` returns `True` if `aText` equals one of the strings in `aValues`. The comparison is done case insensitively. If you wish to compare case sensitively, use `MatchStr` (1296) instead.

See also: `MatchStr` (1296), `AnsiMatchText` (1281), `IndexText` (1293)

### 74.3.62 MidBStr

Synopsis: Copies a number of characters starting at a given position in a string.

Declaration: 

```
function MidBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteStart: SizeInt;
                 const AByteCount: SizeInt) : AnsiString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `MidBStr` returns a string containing the first `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText` starting at position `AByteStart`. If `AByteStart+AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned. If `AByteStart` is less than 1 or larger than the length of `AText`, then no characters are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftBStr` (1295), `AnsiMidStr` (1281), `RightBStr` (1302), `MidStr` (1296)

### 74.3.63 MidStr

Synopsis: Copies a number of characters starting at a given position in a string.

Declaration: 

```
function MidStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AStart: SizeInt;
                const ACount: SizeInt) : AnsiString
function MidStr(const AText: WideString; const AStart: SizeInt;
                const ACount: SizeInt) : WideString
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MidStr` returns a string containing the first `ACount` bytes from the string `AText` starting at position `AStart`. If `AStart+ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText`, only as many characters as available are returned. If `AStart` is less than 1 or larger than the length of `AText`, then no characters are returned.

This function is equivalent to the standard `Copy` function, and is provided for completeness only.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftStr` ([1295](#)), `AnsiMidStr` ([1281](#)), `RightStr` ([1302](#)), `MidBStr` ([1296](#))

### 74.3.64 NaturalCompareText

Synopsis: Compare using natural sort

**Declaration:**

```
function NaturalCompareText(const S1: string; const S2: string)
    : Integer
function NaturalCompareText(const Str1: string; const Str2: string;
    const ADecSeparator: Char;
    const AThousandSeparator: Char) : Integer
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `NaturalCompareText` will compare 2 strings and return one of the following values:

**-1**If `S1` comes before `S2`

**0**If `S1` equals `S2`

**1**If `S1` comes after `S2`

When `S1` and `S2` are integer or floating point values, the actual values are compared. Thus '12' will come after '2'. If either of the values is not a valid integer or floating point values, the strings are compared case insensitively as texts using `CompareText` ([1625](#))

A decimal separator and thousands separator can optionally be specified in `ADecSeparator`, `AThousandSeparator`. If none are specified, the defaults from the system unit will be used.

See also: `CompareText` ([1275](#))

### 74.3.65 NPos

Synopsis: Returns the position of the N-th occurrence of a substring in a string.

**Declaration:**

```
function NPos(const C: string; S: string; N: Integer) : SizeInt
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `NPos` checks `S` for the position of the N-th occurrence of `C`. If `C` occurs less than `N` times in `S`, or does not occur in `S` at all, 0 is returned. If `N` is less than 1, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `WordPosition` ([1310](#)), `FindPart` ([1290](#))

### 74.3.66 Numb2Dec

Synopsis: Converts a string representation of a number to its numerical value, given a certain base.

Declaration: `function Numb2Dec(S: string; Base: Byte) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Numb2Dec` converts the number in string `S` to a decimal value. It assumes the number is represented using `Base` as the base. No checking is performed to see whether `S` contains a valid number using base `Base`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Hex2Dec` ([1291](#)), `Numb2USA` ([1298](#))

### 74.3.67 Numb2USA

Synopsis: Insert thousand separators.

Declaration: `function Numb2USA(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Numb2USA` inserts thousand separators in the string `S` at the places where they are supposed to be, i.e. every 3 digits. The string `S` should contain a valid integer number, i.e. no digital number. No checking on this is done.

Errors: None.

### 74.3.68 PadCenter

Synopsis: Pad the string to a certain length, so the string is centered.

Declaration: `function PadCenter(const S: string; Len: SizeInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadCenter` add spaces to the left and right of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the number of spaces to add is odd, then the extra space will be added at the end. If the string `S` has length equal to or larger than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is.

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([1298](#)), `PadRight` ([1299](#)), `AddChar` ([1278](#)), `AddCharR` ([1278](#))

### 74.3.69 PadLeft

Synopsis: Add spaces to the left of a string till a certain length is reached.

Declaration: `function PadLeft(const S: string; N: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadLeft` add spaces to the left of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the string `S` has length equal to or larger than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is. The resulting string is `S`, right-justified on length `Len`.

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([1298](#)), `PadCenter` ([1298](#)), `AddChar` ([1278](#)), `AddCharR` ([1278](#))

### 74.3.70 PadRight

Synopsis: Add spaces to the right of a string till a certain length is reached.

Declaration: `function PadRight(const S: string; N: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadRight` add spaces to the right of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the string `S` has length equal to or larger than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is. The resulting string is `S`, left-justified on length `Len`.

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([1298](#)), `PadCenter` ([1298](#)), `AddChar` ([1278](#)), `AddCharR` ([1278](#))

### 74.3.71 PosEx

Synopsis: Search for the occurrence of a character in a string, starting at a certain position.

Declaration: `function PosEx(const SubStr: string; const S: string; Offset: SizeUInt) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(const SubStr: string; const S: string) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(c: Char; const S: string; Offset: SizeUInt) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(const SubStr: UnicodeString; const S: UnicodeString; Offset: SizeUInt) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(c: WideChar; const S: UnicodeString; Offset: SizeUInt) : SizeInt`  
`function PosEx(const SubStr: UnicodeString; const S: UnicodeString) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `PosEx` returns the position of the first occurrence of the character `C` or the substring `SubStr` in the string `S`, starting the search at position `Offset` (default 1). If `C` or `SubStr` does not occur in `S` after the given `Offset`, zero is returned. The position `Offset` is also searched.

Errors: None.

See also: `NPos` ([1297](#)), `AnsiContainsText` ([1279](#)), `AnsiContainsStr` ([1278](#))

### 74.3.72 PosSet

Synopsis: Return the position in a string of any character out of a set of characters

Declaration: `function PosSet(const c: TSysCharSet; const s: ansistring) : SizeInt`  
`function PosSet(const c: string; const s: ansistring) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `PosSet` returns the position in `s` of the first found character which is in the set `c`. If none of the characters in `c` is found in `s`, then 0 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `PosEx` ([1299](#)), `PosSetEx` ([1300](#)), `#rtl.system.pos` ([1485](#)), `RPosEx` ([1304](#))

### 74.3.73 PosSetEx

Synopsis: Return the position in a string of any character out of a set of characters, starting at a certain position

Declaration: `function PosSetEx(const c: TSysCharSet; const s: ansistring;  
count: Integer) : SizeInt  
function PosSetEx(const c: string; const s: ansistring; count: Integer)  
: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `PosSetEx` returns the position in `s` of the first found character which is in the set `c`, and starts searching at character position `Count`. If none of the characters in `c` is found in `s`, then 0 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `PosEx` ([1299](#)), `PosSet` ([1299](#)), `#rtl.system.pos` ([1485](#)), `RPosEx` ([1304](#))

### 74.3.74 RandomFrom

Synopsis: Choose a random string from an array of strings.

Declaration: `function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array of string) : string; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `RandomFrom` picks at random a valid index in the array `AValues` and returns the string at that position in the array.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiMatchStr` ([1280](#)), `AnsiMatchText` ([1281](#))

### 74.3.75 Removeleadingchars

Synopsis: Remove any leading characters in a set from a string

Declaration: `procedure Removeleadingchars(var S: AnsiString; const CSet: TSysCharSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Removeleadingchars` removes any starting characters from `S` that appear in the set `CSet`. It stops removing characters as soon as a character not in `CSet` is encountered. This is similar in behaviour to `TrimLeft` ([1731](#)) which used whitespace as the set.

Errors: None.

See also: `TrimLeft` ([1731](#)), `RemoveTrailingChars` ([1301](#)), `RemovePadChars` ([1300](#)), `TrimLeftSet` ([1309](#))

### 74.3.76 RemovePadChars

Synopsis: Remove any trailing or leading characters in a set from a string

Declaration: `procedure RemovePadChars(var S: AnsiString; const CSet: TSysCharSet)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RemovePadChars` removes any leading trailing characters from `S` that appear in the set `CSet`, i.e. it starts with the last character and works its way to the start of the string, and it stops removing characters as soon as a character not in `CSet` is encountered. Then the same procedure is repeated starting from the beginning of the string. This is similar in behaviour to `Trim` (1731) which used whitespace as the set.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Trim` (1731), `RemoveLeadingChars` (1300), `RemoveTrailingChars` (1301), `TrimSet` (1310), `TrimLeftSet` (1309), `TrimRightSet` (1309)

### 74.3.77 RemoveTrailingChars

**Synopsis:** Remove any trailing characters in a set from a string

**Declaration:** `procedure RemoveTrailingChars(var S: AnsiString;  
const CSet: TSysCharSet)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RemoveTrailingChars` removes any trailing characters from `S` that appear in the set `CSet`, i.e. it starts with the last character and works its way to the start of the string. It stops removing characters as soon as a character not in `CSet` is encountered. This is similar in behaviour to `TrimRight` (1732) which used whitespace as the set.

**See also:** `TrimRight` (1731), `RemoveLeadingChars` (1300), `TrimRightSet` (1309)

### 74.3.78 ReplaceStr

**Synopsis:** Replace strings case-sensitively

**Declaration:** `function ReplaceStr(const AText: string; const AFromText: string;  
const AToText: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReplaceStr` is a utility function that scans `AText` and replaces all occurrences of `AFromText` with `AToText` and returns the resulting string. It simply calls `StringReplace` (1707) with the appropriate options.

**See also:** `StringReplace` (1707), `ReplaceText` (1301)

### 74.3.79 ReplaceText

**Synopsis:** Replace strings case-insensitively

**Declaration:** `function ReplaceText(const AText: string; const AFromText: string;  
const AToText: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReplaceText` is a utility function that scans `AText` and replaces all occurrences of `AFromText` (case insensitive) with `AToText` and returns the resulting string. It simply calls `StringReplace` (1707) with the appropriate options.

**See also:** `StringReplace` (1707), `ReplaceText` (1301)

### 74.3.80 ResemblesText

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings resemble each other

Declaration: `function ResemblesText(const AText: string; const AOther: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ResemblesText` is an alias for `AnsiResemblesText` ([1282](#))

See also: `AnsiResemblesText` ([1282](#))

### 74.3.81 ReverseString

Synopsis: Reverse characters in a string

Declaration: `function ReverseString(const AText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReverseString` returns a string, made up of the characters in string `AText`, in reverse order.

Errors: None.

See also: `RandomFrom` ([1300](#))

### 74.3.82 RightBStr

Synopsis: Copy a given number of characters (bytes), counting from the right of a string.

Declaration: `function RightBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteCount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `RightBStr` returns a string containing the rightmost `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText`.  
If `AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftBStr` ([1295](#)), `AnsiRightStr` ([1283](#)), `RightStr` ([1302](#)), `MidBStr` ([1296](#))

### 74.3.83 RightStr

Synopsis: Copy a given number of characters, counting from the right of a string.

Declaration: `function RightStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: AnsiString  
function RightStr(const AText: WideString; const ACount: SizeInt)  
: WideString`

Visibility: default

Description: `RightStr` returns a string containing the rightmost `ACount` characters from the string `AText`.  
If `ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText`, only as many characters as available are returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftStr` ([1295](#)), `AnsiRightStr` ([1283](#)), `RightBStr` ([1302](#)), `MidStr` ([1296](#))

### 74.3.84 RomanToInt

**Synopsis:** Convert a string with a Roman number to it's decimal value.

**Declaration:** `function RomanToInt(const S: string;  
                                  Strictness: TRomanConversionStrictness) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RomanToInt` returns the decimal equivalent of the Roman numerals in the string `S`. Invalid characters are dropped from `S`. A negative numeral is supported as well. The level of error checking is determined by the `strictness` parameter, the values are described in the type `TRomanConversionStrictness` (1276).

**Errors:** On error, a `EConvertError` (1275) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TRomanConversionStrictness` (1276), `IntToRoman` (1294), `Hex2Dec` (1291), `Numb2Dec` (1298)

### 74.3.85 RomanToIntDef

**Synopsis:** Convert a roman numeral to an integer value

**Declaration:** `function RomanToIntDef(const S: string; const ADefault: LongInt;  
                                  Strictness: TRomanConversionStrictness) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RomanToInt` converts the roman numeral in `S` to an integer and returns the integer value. The strictness of the conversion algorithm is determined by `Strictness`. If the conversion fails, `ADefault` is returned.

**See also:** `TRomanConversionStrictness` (1276), `TryRomanToInt` (1310), `RomanToInt` (1303), `IntToRoman` (1294)

### 74.3.86 RPos

**Synopsis:** Find last occurrence of substring or character in a string

**Declaration:** `function RPos(c: Char; const S: AnsiString) : SizeInt; Overload  
function RPos(const Substr: AnsiString; const Source: AnsiString)  
                  : SizeInt; Overload  
function RPos(c: Unicodechar; const S: UnicodeString) : SizeInt  
                  ; Overload  
function RPos(const Substr: UnicodeString; const Source: UnicodeString)  
                  : SizeInt; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RPos` looks in `S` for the character `C` or the string `SubStr`. It starts looking at the end of the string, and searches towards the beginning of the string. If a match is found, it returns the position of the match.

**See also:** `RPosEx` (1304)



### 74.3.87 RPosex

**Synopsis:** Find last occurrence substring or character in a string, starting at a certain position

**Declaration:**

```
function RPosEX(C: Char; const S: AnsiString; offs: Cardinal) : SizeInt
    ; Overload
function RPosex(const Substr: AnsiString; const Source: AnsiString;
    offs: Cardinal) : SizeInt; Overload
function RPosEX(C: Unicodechar; const S: UnicodeString; offs: Cardinal)
    : SizeInt; Overload
function RPosex(const Substr: UnicodeString;
    const Source: UnicodeString; offs: Cardinal) : SizeInt
    ; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** RPos looks in S for the character C or the string SubStr. It starts looking at position Offs (counted from the start of the string), and searches towards the beginning of the string. If a match is found, it returns the position of the match.

See also: RPos ([1303](#))

### 74.3.88 SearchBuf

**Synopsis:** Search a buffer for a certain string.

**Declaration:**

```
function SearchBuf(Buf: PChar; BufLen: SizeInt; SelStart: SizeInt;
    SelLength: SizeInt; SearchString: string;
    Options: TStringSearchOptions) : PChar
function SearchBuf(Buf: PChar; BufLen: SizeInt; SelStart: SizeInt;
    SelLength: SizeInt; SearchString: string) : PChar
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SearchBuf searches the buffer Buf for the occurrence of SearchString. At most Buflen characters are searched, and the search is started at SelStart+SelLength. If a match is found, a pointer to the position of the match is returned. The parameter Options ([1277](#)) specifies how the search is conducted. It is a set of the following options:

Table 74.5:

Option	Effect
soDown	Searches forward, starting at the end of the selection. Default is searching up
soMatchCase	Observe case when searching. Default is to ignore case.
soWholeWord	Match only whole words. Default also returns parts of words

The standard constant WordDelimiters ([1276](#)) is used to mark the boundaries of words.

The SelStart parameter is zero based.

**Errors:** Buflen must be the real length of the string, no checking on this is performed.

See also: FindPart ([1290](#)), ExtractWord ([1289](#)), ExtractWordPos ([1289](#)), ExtractSubStr ([1288](#)), IsWordPresent ([1295](#))

### 74.3.89 Soundex

Synopsis: Compute the soundex of a string

Declaration: `function Soundex(const AText: string; ALength: TSoundexLength) : string`  
`function Soundex(const AText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Soundex` computes a soundex code for `AText`. The resulting code will at most have `ALength` characters. The soundex code is computed according to the US system of soundex computing, which may result in inaccurate results in other languages.

Note that `AText` may not contain null characters.

Errors: None.

See also: `SoundexCompare` (1305), `SoundexInt` (1305), `SoundexProc` (1306), `SoundexWord` (1306), `SoundexSimilar` (1306)

### 74.3.90 SoundexCompare

Synopsis: Compare soundex values of 2 strings.

Declaration: `function SoundexCompare(const AText: string; const AOther: string;`  
`ALength: TSoundexLength) : Integer`  
`function SoundexCompare(const AText: string; const AOther: string)`  
`: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexCompare` computes the soundex codes of `AText` and `AOther` and feeds these to `CompareText`. It will return -1 if the soundex code of `AText` is less than the soundex code of `AOther`, 0 if they are equal, and 1 if the code of `AOther` is larger than the code of `AText`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Soundex` (1305), `SoundexInt` (1305), `SoundexProc` (1306), `SoundexWord` (1306), `SoundexSimilar` (1306)

### 74.3.91 SoundexInt

Synopsis: Soundex value as an integer.

Declaration: `function SoundexInt(const AText: string; ALength: TSoundexIntLength)`  
`: Integer`  
`function SoundexInt(const AText: string) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexInt` computes the `Soundex` (1305) code (with length `ALength`, default 4) of `AText`, and converts the code to an integer value.

Errors: None.

See also: `Soundex` (1305), `SoundexCompare` (1305), `SoundexProc` (1306), `SoundexWord` (1306), `SoundexSimilar` (1306)

### 74.3.92 SoundexProc

Synopsis: Default AnsiResemblesText implementation.

Declaration: `function SoundexProc(const AText: string; const AOther: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexProc` is the standard implementation for the `AnsiResemblesText` (1282) procedure: By default, `AnsiResemblesProc` is set to this function. It compares the soundex codes of `AOther` and `AText` and returns `True` if they are equal, or `False` if they are not.

Errors: None.

See also: `Soundex` (1305), `SoundexCompare` (1305), `SoundexInt` (1305), `SoundexWord` (1306), `SoundexSimilar` (1306)

### 74.3.93 SoundexSimilar

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings have equal soundex values

Declaration: `function SoundexSimilar(const AText: string; const AOther: string;  
ALength: TSoundexLength) : Boolean  
function SoundexSimilar(const AText: string; const AOther: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexSimilar` returns `True` if the soundex codes (with length `ALength`) of `AText` and `AOther` are equal, and `False` if they are not.

Errors: None.

See also: `Soundex` (1305), `SoundexCompare` (1305), `SoundexInt` (1305), `SoundexProc` (1306), `SoundexWord` (1306), `Soundex` (1305)

### 74.3.94 SoundexWord

Synopsis: Calculate a word-sized soundex value

Declaration: `function SoundexWord(const AText: string) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexInt` computes the `Soundex` (1305) code (with length 4) of `AText`, and converts the code to a word-sized value.

`AText` may not contain null characters.

Errors: None.

See also: `Soundex` (1305), `SoundexCompare` (1305), `SoundexInt` (1305), `SoundexProc` (1306), `SoundexSimilar` (1306)

### 74.3.95 SplitCommandLine

Declaration: `function SplitCommandLine(S: RawByteString) : TRawByteStringArray  
function SplitCommandLine(S: UnicodeString) : TUnicodeStringArray`

Visibility: default

### 74.3.96 SplitString

Synopsis: Split a string in words

Declaration: `function SplitString(const S: string; const Delimiters: string)  
: TStringDynArray`

Visibility: default

Description: `SplitString` will split the string (`S`) using the characters in `Delimiters` as separator characters. The result contains all words separated by one of the characters in `Delimiters`.

This function is a simplified wrapper around `TStringHelper.Split` ([1275](#)).

See also: `TStringHelper.Split` ([1275](#))

### 74.3.97 StartsStr

Synopsis: Check whether one string starts with another

Declaration: `function StartsStr(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartsText` checks whether `aText` starts with `aSubText` and returns `True` if it does. i.e. it returns true if the first characters of `aText` are `aSubText`. It follows that the length of `aText` must be at least the length of `aSubText`. The comparison is made case-sensitive. If you wish to compare case-insensitively, use `StartsText` ([1307](#)) instead.

See also: `AnsiStartsStr` ([1283](#)), `EndsStr` ([1287](#)), `StartsText` ([1307](#))

### 74.3.98 StartsText

Synopsis: Check whether one text starts with another

Declaration: `function StartsText(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartsText` checks whether `aText` starts with `aSubText` and returns `True` if it does. i.e. it returns true if the first characters of `aText` are `aSubText`. It follows that the length of `aText` must be at least the length of `aSubText`. The comparison is made case-insensitive. If you wish to compare case-sensitively, use `StartsStr` ([1307](#)) instead.

See also: `AnsiStartsText` ([1283](#)), `EndsText` ([1288](#)), `StartsStr` ([1307](#))

### 74.3.99 StringReplace

Synopsis: Optimized search-and-replace algorithm

Declaration: `function StringReplace(const S: string; const OldPattern: string;  
const NewPattern: string; Flags: TReplaceFlags;  
out aCount: Integer;  
Algorithm: TStringReplaceAlgorithm) : string  
; Overload  
function StringReplace(const S: string; const OldPattern: string;`

```

        const NewPattern: string; Flags: TReplaceFlags;
        Algorithm: TStringReplaceAlgorithm) : string
        ; Overload
function StringReplace(const S: unicodestring;
        const OldPattern: unicodestring;
        const NewPattern: unicodestring;
        Flags: TReplaceFlags) : unicodestring; Overload
function StringReplace(const S: wstring;
        const OldPattern: wstring;
        const NewPattern: wstring;
        Flags: TReplaceFlags) : wstring; Overload

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringReplace` replaces one or all occurrences of `OldPattern` with `NewPattern` in the string `S`. The behaviour is controlled by `Flags` and the search mechanism may be optimized using `Algorithm`. A list of possible algorithms is specified in `TStringReplaceAlgorithm` (1277).

For ansistrings, this is an optimized version of the `SysUtils.StringReplace` (1707) algorithm. For wstrings or unicodestrings, the algorithm parameter is ignored and the default mechanism in `sysutils` is always used.

Errors: None.

See also: `SysUtils.StringReplace` (1707), `TStringReplaceAlgorithm` (1277)

### 74.3.100 StringsReplace

**Synopsis:** Replace occurrences of a set of strings to another set of strings

**Declaration:** `function StringsReplace(const S: string; OldPattern: Array of string; NewPattern: Array of string; Flags: TReplaceFlags) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringsReplace` scans `S` for the occurrence of one of the strings in `OldPattern` and replaces it with the corresponding string in `NewPattern`. It takes into account `Flags`, which has the same meaning as in `StringReplace` (1707).

Corresponding strings are matched by location: the `N`-th string in `OldPattern` is replaced by the `N`-th string in `NewPattern`. Note that this means that the number of strings in both arrays must be the same.

Errors: If the number of strings in both arrays is different, then an exception is raised.

See also: `StringReplace` (1707), `TReplaceFlags` (1595)

### 74.3.101 StuffString

**Synopsis:** Replace part of a string with another string.

**Declaration:** `function StuffString(const AText: string; AStart: Cardinal; ALength: Cardinal; const ASubText: string) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StuffString` returns a copy of `AText` with the segment starting at `AStart` with length `ALength`, replaced with the string `ASubText`. Basically it deletes the segment of `Atext` and inserts the new text in it's place.

**Errors:** No checking on the validity of the `AStart` and `ALength` parameters is done. Providing invalid values may result in access violation errors.

See also: [FindPart \(1290\)](#), [DelChars \(1286\)](#), [DelSpace \(1287\)](#), [ExtractSubStr \(1288\)](#), [DupeString \(1287\)](#)

### 74.3.102 Tab2Space

**Synopsis:** Convert tab characters to a number of spaces

**Declaration:** `function Tab2Space(const S: string; Numb: Byte) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Tab2Space` returns a copy of `S` with all tab characters (ASCII character 9) converted to `Numb` spaces.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [StuffString \(1308\)](#), [FindPart \(1290\)](#), [ExtractWord \(1289\)](#), [DelChars \(1286\)](#), [DelSpace \(1287\)](#), [DelSpace1 \(1287\)](#), [DupeString \(1287\)](#)

### 74.3.103 TrimLeftSet

**Synopsis:** Remove any leading characters in a set from a string and returns the result

**Declaration:** `function TrimLeftSet(const S: string; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TrimLeftSet` performs the same action as [RemoveLeadingChars \(1300\)](#), but returns the resulting string.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [TrimLeft \(1731\)](#), [RemoveLeadingChars \(1300\)](#), [RemoveTrailingChars \(1301\)](#), [RemovePadChars \(1300\)](#), [TrimSet \(1310\)](#), [TrimRightSet \(1309\)](#)

### 74.3.104 TrimRightSet

**Synopsis:** Remove any trailing characters in a set from a string and returns the result

**Declaration:** `function TrimRightSet(const S: string; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TrimLeftSet` performs the same action as [RemoveTrailingChars \(1301\)](#), but returns the resulting string.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [TrimRight \(1732\)](#), [RemoveLeadingChars \(1300\)](#), [RemoveTrailingChars \(1301\)](#), [RemovePadChars \(1300\)](#), [TrimSet \(1310\)](#), [TrimLeftSet \(1309\)](#)

### 74.3.105 TrimSet

Synopsis: Remove any leading or trailing characters in a set from a string and returns the result

Declaration: `function TrimSet(const S: string; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `TrimSet` performs the same action as `RemovePadChars` (1300), but returns the resulting string.

Errors: None.

See also: `Trim` (1731), `RemoveLeadingChars` (1300), `RemoveTrailingChars` (1301), `RemovePadChars` (1300), `TrimRightSet` (1309), `TrimLeftSet` (1309)

### 74.3.106 TryRomanToInt

Synopsis: Try to convert a roman numeral to an integer value.

Declaration: `function TryRomanToInt(S: string; out N: LongInt;  
Strictness: TRomanConversionStrictness) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryRomanToInt` will try to convert the roman numeral in `S` to an integer and returns the integer value in `N`. The strictness of the conversion algorithm is determined by `Strictness`. If the conversion succeeds, then `True` is returned, or else `False`.

See also: `TRomanConversionStrictness` (1276), `RomanToIntDef` (1303), `RomanToInt` (1303), `IntToRoman` (1294)

### 74.3.107 WordCount

Synopsis: Count the number of words in a string.

Declaration: `function WordCount(const S: string; const WordDelims: TSysCharSet)  
: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WordCount` returns the number of words in the string `S`. A word is a non-empty string of characters bounded by one of the characters in `WordDelims`.

The predefined `StdWordDelims` (1276) constant can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `WordPosition` (1310), `StdWordDelims` (1276), `ExtractWord` (1289), `ExtractWordPos` (1289)

### 74.3.108 WordPosition

Synopsis: Search position of Nth word in a string.

Declaration: `function WordPosition(const N: Integer; const S: string;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WordPosition` returns the position (in characters) of the N-th word in the string S. A word is a non-empty string of characters bounded by one of the characters in `WordDelims`. If N is out of range, zero is returned.

The predefined `StdWordDelims` (1276) constant can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `WordCount` (1310), `StdWordDelims` (1276), `ExtractWord` (1289), `ExtractWordPos` (1289)

### 74.3.109 XorDecode

**Synopsis:** Decode a string encoded with `XorEncode` (1311)

**Declaration:** `function XorDecode(const Key: string; const Source: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `XorDecode` decodes `Source` and returns the original string that was encrypted using `XorEncode` (1311) with key `Key`. If a different key is used than the key used to encode the string, the result will be unreadable.

**Errors:** If the string `Source` is not a valid `XorEncode` result (e.g. contains non-numerical characters), then a `EConversionError` exception will be raised.

**See also:** `XorEncode` (1311), `XorString` (1311)

### 74.3.110 XorEncode

**Synopsis:** Encode a string by XOR-ing its characters using characters of a given key, representing the result as hex values.

**Declaration:** `function XorEncode(const Key: string; const Source: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `XorEncode` encodes the string `Source` by XOR-ing each character in `Source` with the corresponding character in `Key` (repeating `Key` as often as necessary) and representing the resulting ASCII code as a hexadecimal number (of length 2). The result is therefore twice as long as the original string, and every 2 bytes represent an ASCII code.

Feeding the resulting string with the same key `Key` to the `XorDecode` (1311) function will result in the original `Source` string.

This function can be used e.g. to trivially encode a password in a configuration file.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `XorDecode` (1311), `XorString` (1311), `Hex2Dec` (1291)

### 74.3.111 XorString

**Synopsis:** Encode a string by XOR-ing its characters using characters of a given key.

**Declaration:** `function XorString(const Key: ShortString; const Src: ShortString)  
: ShortString`

**Visibility:** default



**Description:** `XorString` encodes the string `Src` by XOR-ing each character in `Source` with the corresponding character in `Key`, repeating `Key` as often as necessary. The resulting string may contain unreadable characters and may even contain null characters. For this reason it may be a better idea to use the `XorEncode` ([1311](#)) function instead, which will represent each resulting ASCII code as a hexadecimal number (of length 2).

Feeding the result again to `XorString` with the same `Key`, will result in the original string `Src`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `XorEncode` ([1311](#)), `XorDecode` ([1311](#))

## Chapter 75

# Reference for unit 'System'

### 75.1 Overview

The system unit contains the standard supported functions of Free Pascal. It is the same for all platforms. Basically it is the same as the system unit provided with Borland or Turbo Pascal.

Functions are listed in alphabetical order. Arguments of functions or procedures that are optional are put between square brackets.

The predefined constants and variables are listed in the first section. The second section contains an overview of all functions, grouped by functionality, and the last section contains the supported functions and procedures.

### 75.2 Unicode and codepage support

The system unit works with Short-, Ansi-, and UnicodeString routines for all string related operations.

Ansistrings are code-page aware, which means that code page information is associated with them. For most routines, the support for converting these code pages is natural. For some routines, care must be taken when converting from codepage-aware strings to widestring.

The codepage conversion support is influenced by the following variables:

Table 75.1:

Name	Description
DefaultSystemCodePage ( <a href="#">1390</a> )	Actual code page to use when CP_ACP ( <a href="#">1319</a> ) is encountered
DefaultUnicodeCodePage ( <a href="#">1390</a> )	Code page for new Unicode strings
DefaultFileSystemCodePage ( <a href="#">1389</a> )	Codepage to use when sending strings to single-byte OS file system routines.
DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage ( <a href="#">1389</a> )	Codepage to use when receiving strings from single-byte OS file system routines.

The windows code page identifiers are used. There are 3 special codepage identifiers:

Table 75.2:

Name	Description
CP_ACP (1319)	Currently set default system codepage
CP_OEMCP (1320)	OEM (console) code page (only on windows)
CP_NONE (1320)	Indicates absence of code page information for a string
DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage (1389)	

The following routines may perform code page conversions:

Table 75.3:

Name	Description
LowerCase (1476)	Return lowercase version of a string.
UpCase (1534)	Convert a string to all uppercase.
GetDir (1445)	Return the current directory
MkDir (1477)	Create a new directory.
ChDir (1410)	Change current working directory.
RmDir (1496)	Remove directory when empty.
Assign (1398)	Assign a name to a file
Erase (1431)	Delete a file from disk
Rename (1494)	Rename file on disk
Read (1489)	Read from a text file into variable
ReadLn (1491)	Read from a text file into variable and goto next line
Write (1541)	Write variable to a text file
WriteLn (1542)	Write variable to a text file and append newline
ReadStr (1491)	Read variables from a string
WriteStr (1543)	Write variables to a string
Insert (1464)	Insert one string or dynamic array in another.
Copy (1418)	Copy part of a string.
Delete (1422)	Delete elements (characters) from a string or dynamic array.
SetString (1510)	Set length of a string and copy buffer.

All these routines exist also in Unicode versions.

Note that for conversion of codepages and Unicode strings, a Unicode manager must be present. On windows, the system is used for this. On Unix, one of the fpwdestring or cwstring units must be used.

### 75.3 Miscellaneous functions

Functions that do not belong in one of the other categories.

Table 75.4:

Name	Description
Assert ( <a href="#">1398</a> )	Conditionally abort program with error
Break ( <a href="#">1406</a> )	Abort current loop
Continue ( <a href="#">1417</a> )	Next cycle in current loop
Exclude ( <a href="#">1432</a> )	Exclude an element from a set
Exit ( <a href="#">1433</a> )	Exit current function or procedure
Include ( <a href="#">1457</a> )	Include an element into a set
LongJump ( <a href="#">1476</a> )	Jump to execution point
Ord ( <a href="#">1483</a> )	Return ordinal value of enumerated type
Pred ( <a href="#">1487</a> )	Return previous value of ordinal type
SetJump ( <a href="#">1506</a> )	Mark execution point for jump
SizeOf ( <a href="#">1514</a> )	Return size of variable or type
Succ ( <a href="#">1523</a> )	Return next value of ordinal type

## 75.4 Operating System functions

Functions that are connected to the operating system.

Table 75.5:

Name	Description
Chdir ( <a href="#">1410</a> )	Change working directory
Getdir ( <a href="#">1445</a> )	Return current working directory
Halt ( <a href="#">1453</a> )	Halt program execution
Paramcount ( <a href="#">1484</a> )	Number of parameters with which program was called
Paramstr ( <a href="#">1484</a> )	Retrieve parameters with which program was called
Mkdir ( <a href="#">1477</a> )	Make a directory
Rmdir ( <a href="#">1496</a> )	Remove a directory
Runerror ( <a href="#">1501</a> )	Abort program execution with error condition

## 75.5 String handling

All things connected to string handling.

Table 75.6:

Name	Description
BinStr (1404)	Construct binary representation of integer
Chr (1410)	Convert ASCII code to character
Concat (1416)	Concatenate two strings
Copy (1418)	Copy part of a string
Delete (1422)	Delete part of a string
HexStr (1453)	Construct hexadecimal representation of integer
Insert (1464)	Insert one string in another
Length (1470)	Return length of string
Lowercase (1476)	Convert string to all-lowercase
OctStr (1481)	Construct octal representation of integer
Pos (1485)	Calculate position of one string in another
SetLength (1507)	Set length of a string
SetString (1510)	Set contents and length of a string or dynamic array
Str (1518)	Convert number to string representation
StringOfChar (1520)	Create string consisting of a number of characters
Ucase (1534)	Convert string to all-uppercase
Val (1537)	Convert string to number

## 75.6 Mathematical routines

Functions connected to calculating and converting numbers.

Table 75.7:

Name	Description
Abs (1393)	Calculate absolute value
Arctan (1397)	Calculate inverse tangent
Cos (1419)	Calculate cosine of angle
Dec (1420)	Decrease value of variable
Exp (1435)	Exponentiate
Frac (1443)	Return fractional part of floating point value
Hi (1454)	Return high byte/word of value
Inc (1456)	Increase value of variable
Int (1465)	Calculate integer part of floating point value
Ln (1472)	Calculate logarithm
Lo (1473)	Return low byte/word of value
Odd (1482)	Is a value odd or even ?
Pi (1485)	Return the value of pi
Random (1488)	Generate random number
Randomize (1489)	Initialize random number generator
Round (1499)	Round floating point value to nearest integer number
Sin (1514)	Calculate sine of angle
Sqr (1516)	Calculate the square of a value
Sqrt (1517)	Calculate the square root of a value
Swap (1523)	Swap high and low bytes/words of a variable
Trunc (1529)	Truncate a floating point value

## 75.7 Memory management functions

Functions concerning memory issues.

Table 75.8:

Name	Description
Addr (1395)	Return address of variable
Assigned (1401)	Check if a pointer is valid
CompareByte (1411)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CompareChar (1412)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CompareDWord (1414)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CompareWord (1415)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CSeg (1420)	Return code segment
Dispose (1423)	Free dynamically allocated memory
DSeg (1425)	Return data segment
FillByte (1437)	Fill memory region with 8-bit pattern
FillChar (1438)	Fill memory region with certain character
FillDWord (1439)	Fill memory region with 32-bit pattern
FillQWord (??)	Fill memory region with 64-bit pattern
FillWord (1439)	Fill memory region with 16-bit pattern
Freemem (1443)	Release allocated memory
Getmem (1446)	Allocate new memory
GetMemoryManager (1447)	Return current memory manager
High (1455)	Return highest index of open array or enumerated
IndexByte (1457)	Find byte-sized value in a memory range
IndexChar (1458)	Find char-sized value in a memory range
IndexDWord (1459)	Find DWord-sized (32-bit) value in a memory range
IndexQWord (1460)	Find QWord-sized value in a memory range
IndexWord (1460)	Find word-sized value in a memory range
IsMemoryManagerSet (1469)	Is the memory manager set
MemSize (1477)	Get size of allocation
Low (1476)	Return lowest index of open array or enumerated
Move (1478)	Move data from one location in memory to another
MoveChar0 (1479)	Move data till first zero character
New (1480)	Dynamically allocate memory for variable
Ofs (1482)	Return offset of variable
Ptr (1487)	Combine segment and offset to pointer
ReAllocMem (1493)	Resize a memory block on the heap
Seg (1505)	Return segment
SetMemoryManager (1508)	Set a memory manager
Sptr (1516)	Return current stack pointer
SSeg (1517)	Return stack segment register value

## 75.8 File handling functions

Functions concerning input and output from and to file.

Table 75.9:

Name	Description
Append (1396)	Open a file in append mode
Assign (1398)	Assign a name to a file
Blockread (1404)	Read data from a file into memory
Blockwrite (1405)	Write data from memory to a file
Close (1411)	Close a file
Eof (1429)	Check for end of file
Eoln (1430)	Check for end of line
Erase (1431)	Delete file from disk
Filepos (1436)	Position in file
Filesize (1437)	Size of file
Flush (1442)	Write file buffers to disk
IOresult (1467)	Return result of last file IO operation
Read (1489)	Read from file into variable
Readln (1491)	Read from file into variable and goto next line
Rename (1494)	Rename file on disk
Reset (1494)	Open file for reading
Rewrite (1495)	Open file for writing
Seek (1503)	Set file position
SeekEof (1504)	Set file position to end of file
SeekEoln (1505)	Set file position to end of line
SetTextBuf (1510)	Set size of file buffer
Truncate (1530)	Truncate the file at position
Write (1541)	Write variable to file
WriteLn (1542)	Write variable to file and append newline

## 75.9 Run-Time Error behaviour

The system unit handles errors by default by generating a run-time error, and halting the program with an exit code equal to the run-time error number.

This behaviour changes when the SysUtils (1571) unit is used. In that case, all run-time errors are converted to exceptions: most run-time errors have their own exception class.

If these exceptions are caught, the program code decides what to do with it. If the exception is not caught, the program will exit through the default exception handler.

When the system unit documentation refers to run-time errors, the above should be kept in mind.

## 75.10 Constants, types and variables

### 75.10.1 Constants

```
AbstractErrorProc : TAbstractErrorProc = Nil
```

If set, the `AbstractErrorProc` constant is used when an abstract error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: A stack dump is performed, and the program exits with error code 211.

The `SysUtils` unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
AllFilesMask = '*'
```

AllFilesMask is the wildcard that can be used to return all files in a directory. Do not assume that this is '\*' or '\*.\*' based on the platform only. The actual value on DOS/Windows based systems can be influenced by e.g. LFNSupport ([1334](#)).

```
AllowDirectorySeparators : Set of Char = ['\', '/']
```

AllowDirectorySeparators is the set of characters which are considered directory separators by the RTL units. By default, this is set to the most common directory separators: forward slash and backslash, so routines will work in a cross-platform manner, no matter which character was used:

```
AllowDirectorySeparators : set of char = ['\','/'];
```

If a more strict behaviour is desired, then AllowDirectorySeparators can be set to the only character allowed on the current operating system, and all RTL routines that handle filenames (splitting filenames, extracting parts of the filename and so on) will use that character only.

```
AllowDriveSeparators : Set of Char = []
```

AllowDriveSeparators are the characters which are considered to separate the drive part from the directory part in a filename. This will be an empty set on systems that do not support drive letters. Other systems (Dos, Windows and OS/2) will have the colon (:) character as the only member of this set.

```
AssertErrorProc : TAssertErrorProc = @ SysAssert
```

If set, the AbstractErrorProc constant is used when an assert error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: The assertion error message is printed, together with the location of the assertion, and A stack dump is performed, and the program exits with error code 227.

The SysUtils unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
BacktraceStrFunc : TBacktraceStrFunc = @ SysBacktraceStr
```

This handler is called to get a standard format for the backtrace routine.

```
CatchAllExceptions = PtrInt(- 1)
```

Mask indicating all exception kinds

```
cExceptionFrame = 1
```

cExceptionFrame indicates an except frame.

```
cFinalizeFrame = 2
```

cFinalizeFrame indicates a finally frame.

```
CP_ACP = 0
```

CP\_ACP is the default Windows codepage identifier.



`CP_ASCII = 20127`

`CP_ASCII` is the Windows ASCII encoding codepage identifier.

`CP_NONE = $FFFF`

`CP_NONE` is used when no code page information is available.

`CP_OEMCP = 1`

`CP_ACP` is the default Windows OEM (MS-DOS) codepage identifier.

`CP_UTF16 = 1200`

`CP_UTF16` is the default Windows Unicode codepage identifier (little endian).

`CP_UTF16BE = 1201`

`CP_UTF16BE` is the Windows Unicode codepage identifier (big endian).

`CP_UTF7 = 65000`

`CP_UTF7` is the Windows Unicode 7-Bit encoding codepage identifier.

`CP_UTF8 = 65001`

`CP_UTF8` is the Windows Unicode 8-Bit encoding codepage identifier.

`CtrlZMarksEOF : Boolean = False`

`CtrlZMarksEOF` indicates whether on this system, an CTRL-Z character (ordinal 26) in a file marks the end of the file. This is `False` on most systems apart from DOS and Windows.

To get DOS/Windows-compatible behaviour, this constant can be set to `True`

`DefaultStackSize = 4 * 1024 * 1024`

Default size for a new thread's stack (4MiB by default).

`DefaultTextLineBreakStyle : TTextLineBreakStyle = tlbsLF`

`DefaultTextLineBreakStyle` contains the default OS setting for the `TTextLineBreakStyle` (1375) type. It is initialized by the system unit, and is used to determine the default line ending when writing to text files.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

`DirectorySeparator = '/'`

`DirectorySeparator` is the character used by the current operating system to separate directory parts in a pathname. This constant is system dependent, and should not be set.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
DriveSeparator = ''
```

On systems that support drive letters, the `DriveSeparator` constant denotes the character that separates the drive indicator from the directory part in a filename path.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
ErrorAddr : CodePointer = Nil
```

Address where the last error occurred.

```
ErrorCode : Word = 0
```

Last error code.

```
ErrorProc : TErrorProc = Nil
```

If set, the `ErrorProc` constant is used when a run-time error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: a stack dump is performed, and the program exits with the indicated error code.

The `SysUtils` unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
ExceptClsProc : Pointer = Nil
```

`ExceptClsProc` is used in SEH (Structured Exception Support) to convert OS exception information to FPC exception classes when filtering exceptions. It is set e.g. by the `sysutils` unit. If it is not set, the exception is not handled.

```
ExceptObjProc : Pointer = Nil
```

`ExceptObjProc` is used in SEH (Structured Exception Support) to convert OS exception information to FPC exceptions. It is set e.g. by the `sysutils` unit. If it is not set, a run-time error results when OS exceptions are intercepted.

```
ExceptProc : TExceptProc = Nil
```

This constant points to the current exception handling procedure. This routine is called when an unhandled exception occurs, i.e. an exception that is not stopped by an `except` block.

If the handler is not set, the RTL will emit a run-time error 217 when an unhandled exception occurs.

It is set by the `sysutils` ([1571](#)) unit.

```
ExitProc : CodePointer = Nil
```

Exit procedure pointer.

```
ExtensionSeparator = '.'
```

`ExtensionSeparator` is the character which separates the filename from the file extension. On all current platforms, this is the `.` (dot) character. All RTL filename handling routines use this constant.

`E_NOINTERFACE = HRESULT($80004002)`

Interface call result: Error: not an interface

`E_NOTIMPL = HRESULT($80004001)`

Interface call result: Interface not implemented

`E_UNEXPECTED = HRESULT($8000FFFF)`

Interface call result: Unexpected error

`FileMode : Byte = 2`

Default file mode for untyped files.

`FileNameCasePreserving : Boolean = True`

`FileNameCasePreserving` is `True` if case of letters in file and directory entries is preserved and may be later retrieved exactly as supplied when creating or renaming these entries. Note that this may depend on the file system: Unix operating systems that access a DOS or Windows partition will have this constant set to true, but when writing to the DOS partition, all letters may be automatically converted to uppercase.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

`FileNameCaseSensitive : Boolean = True`

`FileNameCaseSensitive` is `True` if case is important when using filenames on the current OS. In this case, the OS will treat files with different cased names as different files. Note that this may depend on the file system: Unix operating systems that access a DOS or Windows partition will have this constant set to true, but when writing to the DOS partition, the casing is ignored.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

`filerecnamelength = 255`

`filerecnamelength` is the maximum filename size for untyped files.

`float_flag_denormal = exDenormalized`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: ?

`float_flag_divbyzero = exZeroDivide`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Division by zero error

`float_flag_inexact = exPrecision`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: ?

`float_flag_invalid = exInvalidOp`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Invalid operation error

`float_flag_overflow = exOverflow`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Overflow error

`float_flag_underflow = exUnderflow`

IEC/IEEE floating-point exception flag: Underflow error

`float_round_down = rmDown`

Round down

`float_round_nearest_even = rmNearest`

Round to nearest even number

`float_round_to_zero = rmTruncate`

Round in the direction of zero (down for positive, up for negative)

`float_round_up = rmUp`

Round up

`fmAppend = $D7B4`

File mode: File is open for writing, appending to the end.

`fmClosed = $D7B0`

File mode: File is closed.

`fmInOut = $D7B3`

File mode: File is open for reading and writing.

`fmInput = $D7B1`

File mode: File is open for reading.

`fmOutput = $D7B2`

File mode: File is open for writing.

`FPC_EXCEPTION = 1`

`FPC_EXCEPTION` is a constant describing a type of exception.

fpc\_in\_abs\_long = 64

Internal ABS function

fpc\_in\_abs\_real = 127

FPC compiler internal procedure index: abs (real)

fpc\_in\_addr\_x = 42

FPC compiler internal procedure index: addr

fpc\_in\_aligned\_x = 80

FPC compiler internal procedure index: aligned

fpc\_in\_and\_assign\_x\_y = 86

fpc\_in\_arctan\_real = 130

FPC compiler internal procedure index: arctan (real)

fpc\_in\_assert\_x\_y = 41

FPC compiler internal procedure index: assert

fpc\_in\_assigned\_x = 19

FPC compiler internal procedure index: assigned

fpc\_in\_bitsizeof\_x = 61

FPC compiler internal procedure index: bitsizeof

fpc\_in\_box\_x = 77

FPC compiler internal procedure index: box

fpc\_in\_break = 39

FPC compiler internal procedure index: break

fpc\_in\_bsf\_x = 74

FPC compiler internal procedure index: bsf\_x

fpc\_in\_bsr\_x = 75

FPC compiler internal procedure index: bsr\_x

fpc\_in\_chr\_byte = 7

FPC compiler internal procedure index: chr

fpc\_in\_concat\_x = 18

FPC compiler internal procedure index: concat

fpc\_in\_const\_abs = 101

FPC compiler internal procedure index: abs

fpc\_in\_const\_odd = 102

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

fpc\_in\_const\_ptr = 103

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

fpc\_in\_const\_sqr = 100

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

fpc\_in\_const\_swap\_long = 105

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (long)

fpc\_in\_const\_swap\_qword = 108

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (qword)

fpc\_in\_const\_swap\_word = 104

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (word)

fpc\_in\_continue = 40

FPC compiler internal procedure index: continue

fpc\_in\_copy\_x = 49

FPC compiler internal procedure index: copy

fpc\_in\_cos\_real = 125

FPC compiler internal procedure index: cos (real)

fpc\_in\_cpu\_first = 10000

`fpc_in_cycle` = 52

FPC compiler internal procedure index: cycle

`fpc_in_dec_x` = 36

FPC compiler internal procedure index: dec

`fpc_in_default_x` = 76

FPC compiler internal procedure index: default

`fpc_in_delete_x_y_z` = 83

`fpc_in_dispose_x` = 47

FPC compiler internal procedure index: dispose

`fpc_in_exclude_x_y` = 38

FPC compiler internal procedure index: exclude

`fpc_in_exit` = 48

FPC compiler internal procedure index: exit

`fpc_in_exp_real` = 124

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_exp_real`

`fpc_in_faraddr_x` = 97

`fpc_in_fillchar_x` = 55

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_fillchar_x`

`fpc_in_finalize_x` = 45

FPC compiler internal procedure index: finalize

`fpc_in_fma_double` = 134

FPC compiler internal procedure index: fma (double)

`fpc_in_fma_extended` = 135

FPC compiler internal procedure index: fma (extended)

`fpc_in_fma_float128` = 136

FPC compiler internal procedure index: fma (float 128)

`fpc_in_fma_single = 133`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: fma (single)

`fpc_in_frac_real = 122`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_frac_real`

`fpc_in_get_caller_addr = 57`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_get_caller_addr`

`fpc_in_get_caller_frame = 58`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_get_caller_frame`

`fpc_in_get_frame = 56`

FPC internal compiler routine: `in_get_frame`

`fpc_in_high_x = 28`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: high

`fpc_in_hi_long = 4`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (long)

`fpc_in_hi_qword = 107`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (qword)

`fpc_in_hi_word = 2`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (word)

`fpc_in_include_x_y = 37`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: include

`fpc_in_inc_x = 35`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: inc

`fpc_in_initialize_x = 50`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: initialize

`fpc_in_insert_x_y_z = 82`



fpc\_in\_int\_real = 123

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_int\_real

fpc\_in\_leave = 51

FPC compiler internal procedure index: leave

fpc\_in\_length\_string = 6

FPC compiler internal procedure index: length

fpc\_in\_ln\_real = 131

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ln (real)

fpc\_in\_low\_x = 27

FPC compiler internal procedure index: low

fpc\_in\_lo\_long = 3

FPC compiler internal procedure index: lo (long)

fpc\_in\_lo\_qword = 106

FPC compiler internal procedure index: lo (qword)

fpc\_in\_lo\_word = 1

FPC compiler internal procedure index: lo (word)

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpeqb = 200

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpeqd = 202

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpeqw = 201

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpgtb = 203

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmpgtd = 205

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_mmx\_pcmptw = 204

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

fpc\_in\_move\_x = 54

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_move\_x

fpc\_in\_neg\_assign\_x = 94

fpc\_in\_new\_x = 46

FPC compiler internal procedure index: new

fpc\_in\_not\_assign\_x = 95

fpc\_in\_ofs\_x = 21

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ofs

fpc\_in\_ord\_x = 5

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ord

fpc\_in\_or\_assign\_x\_y = 87

fpc\_in\_pack\_x\_y\_z = 59

FPC compiler internal procedure index: pack

fpc\_in\_pi\_real = 126

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_pi\_real

fpc\_in\_popcnt\_x = 79

FPC compiler internal procedure index: popcnt

fpc\_in\_pred\_x = 30

FPC compiler internal procedure index: pred

fpc\_in\_prefetch\_var = 109

FPC compiler internal procedure index: prefetch

fpc\_in\_readln\_x = 17

FPC compiler internal procedure index: readln

fpc\_in\_readstr\_x = 63

Internal read string procedure

fpc\_in\_read\_x = 16

FPC compiler internal procedure index: read

fpc\_in\_reset\_typedfile = 32

FPC compiler internal procedure index: reset

fpc\_in\_reset\_typedfile\_name = 84

fpc\_in\_reset\_x = 25

FPC compiler internal procedure index: reset

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_typedfile = 33

FPC compiler internal procedure index: rewrite

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_typedfile\_name = 85

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_x = 26

FPC compiler internal procedure index: rewrite

fpc\_in\_rol\_assign\_x\_y = 92

fpc\_in\_rol\_x = 67

fpc\_in\_rol\_x\_x = 68

fpc\_in\_ror\_assign\_x\_y = 93

fpc\_in\_ror\_x = 65

fpc\_in\_ror\_x\_x = 66

fpc\_in\_round\_real = 121

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_round\_real

fpc\_in\_sar\_assign\_x\_y = 89

fpc\_in\_sar\_x = 73

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sar\_x

fpc\_in\_sar\_x\_y = 72

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sar\_x\_y

fpc\_in\_seg\_x = 29

FPC compiler internal procedure index: seg

fpc\_in\_setlength\_x = 44

FPC compiler internal procedure index: setlength

fpc\_in\_setstring\_x\_y\_z = 81

FPC compiler internal procedure index: setstring

fpc\_in\_settextbuf\_file\_x = 34

FPC compiler internal procedure index: settextbuf

fpc\_in\_shl\_assign\_x\_y = 90

fpc\_in\_shr\_assign\_x\_y = 91

fpc\_in\_sin\_real = 132

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sin (real)

fpc\_in\_sizeof\_x = 22

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sizeof

fpc\_in\_slice = 53

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_slice

fpc\_in\_sqrt\_real = 129

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqrt (real)

fpc\_in\_sqr\_real = 128

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr (real)

fpc\_in\_str\_x\_string = 20

FPC compiler internal procedure index: str

`fpc_in_succ_x = 31`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: succ

`fpc_in_trunc_real = 120`

FPC internal compiler routine: in\_trunc\_real

`fpc_in_typeinfo_x = 43`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: typeinfo

`fpc_in_typeof_x = 23`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: typeof

`fpc_in_unbox_x_y = 78`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: unbox

`fpc_in_unpack_x_y_z = 60`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: unpack

`fpc_in_val_x = 24`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: val

`fpc_in_writeln_x = 15`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: writeln

`fpc_in_writestr_x = 62`

Internal write string procedure

`fpc_in_write_x = 14`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: write

`fpc_in_x86_cli = fpc_in_cpu_first + 6`

`fpc_in_x86_get_cs = fpc_in_cpu_first + 8`

`fpc_in_x86_get_ds = fpc_in_cpu_first + 10`

`fpc_in_x86_get_es = fpc_in_cpu_first + 11`

`fpc_in_x86_get_fs = fpc_in_cpu_first + 12`

`fpc_in_x86_get_gs = fpc_in_cpu_first + 13`

`fpc_in_x86_get_ss = fpc_in_cpu_first + 9`

`fpc_in_x86_inportb = fpc_in_cpu_first`

`fpc_in_x86_inportl = fpc_in_cpu_first + 2`

`fpc_in_x86_inportw = fpc_in_cpu_first + 1`

`fpc_in_x86_outportb = fpc_in_cpu_first + 3`

`fpc_in_x86_outportl = fpc_in_cpu_first + 5`

`fpc_in_x86_outportw = fpc_in_cpu_first + 4`

`fpc_in_x86_sti = fpc_in_cpu_first + 7`

`fpc_in_xor_assign_x_y = 88`

`fpc_objc_encode_x = 71`

`fpc_objc_protocol_x = 70`

`fpc_objc_selector_x = 69`

`growheapsize1 : PtrUInt = 256 * 1024`

**Grow rate for block less than 256 Kb.**

`growheapsize2 : PtrUInt = 1024 * 1024`

**Grow rate for block larger than 256 Kb.**

`growheapsize_small : PtrUInt = 32 * 1024`

**Fixed size small blocks grow rate**

`has_mmx_support : Boolean = False`

CPU has mmx support

```
has_sse2_support : Boolean = False
```

CPU has sse2 support?

```
has_sse3_support : Boolean = False
```

CPU has sse3 support?

```
has_sse_support : Boolean = False
```

CPU has SSE support ?

```
InitProc : CodePointer = Nil
```

`InitProc` is a routine that can be called after all units were initialized. It can be set by units to execute code that can be initialized after all units were initialized.

**Remark** When setting the value of `InitProc`, the previous value should always be saved, and called when the installed initialization routine has finished executing.

```
IObjectInstance : TGuid =  
  '{D91C9AF4-3C93-420F-A303-BF5BA82BFD23}'
```

`IObjectInstance` is an internal GUID, which should not be used in end-user code. It is used in the `as` operator.

```
IsMultiThread : longbool = False
```

Indicates whether more than one thread is running in the application.

```
LFNSupport = True
```

`LFNSupport` determines whether the current OS supports long file names, i.e. filenames that are not of the form 8.3 as on ancient DOS systems. If the value of this constant is `True` then long filenames are supported. If it is false, then not.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
LineEnding = #10
```

`LineEnding` is a constant which contains the current line-ending character. This character is system dependent, and is initialized by the system. It should not be set.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
maxExitCode = 255
```

`maxExitCode` is the maximum value for the `Halt` ([1453](#)) call.

`MaxInt = maxsmallint`

Maximum integer value.

`MaxKeptOSChunks : DWord = 4`

`MaxKeptOSChunks` tells the heap manager how many free chunks of OS-allocated memory it should keep in memory. When freeing memory, it can happen that a memory block obtained from the OS is completely free. If more than `MaxKeptOSChunks` such blocks are free, then the heap manager will return them to the OS, to reduce memory requirements.

`MaxLongint = $7fffffff`

Maximum longint value.

`MaxPathLen = 1024`

This constant is system dependent.

`MaxSIntValue = High(ValSInt)`

Maximum String-size value.

`MaxSmallint = 32767`

Maximum smallint value.

`MaxUIntValue = High(ValUInt)`

Maximum unsigned integer value.

`Max_Frame_Dump : Word = 8`

Maximum number of frames to show in error frame dump.

`ModuleIsCpp : Boolean = False`

`ModuleIsCpp` is always false for FPC programs, it is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

`ModuleIsLib : Boolean = False`

`ModuleIsLib` is set by the compiler when linking a library, program or package, and determines whether the current module is a library (or package) (`True`) or program (`False`).

`ModuleIsPackage : Boolean = False`

`ModuleIsLib` is set by the compiler when linking a library, program or package, and determines whether the current module is a package (`True`) or a library or program (`False`).

`NilHandle = TLibHandle(0)`



Correctly typed Nil handle - returned on error by LoadLibrary ([1473](#))

```
PathSeparator = ':'
```

`PathSeparator` is the character used commonly on the current operating system to separate paths in a list of paths, such as the `PATH` environment variable.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
RaiseMaxFrameCount : LongInt = 16
```

Maximum number of frames to include in TExceptObject ([1364](#))

```
RaiseProc : TExceptProc = Nil
```

Procedure to raise an exception.

```
RT_ACCELERATOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE(9)
```

Constant identifying an accelerator resource

```
RT_ANICURSOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE(21)
```

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "animated cursor".

```
RT_ANIICON = MAKEINTRESOURCE(22)
```

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "animated icon".

```
RT_BITMAP = MAKEINTRESOURCE(2)
```

Constant identifying a bitmap resource

```
RT_CURSOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE(1)
```

Constant identifying a cursor resource

```
RT_DIALOG = MAKEINTRESOURCE(5)
```

Constant identifying a dialog resource

```
RT_FONT = MAKEINTRESOURCE(8)
```

Constant identifying a font resource

```
RT_FONTDIR = MAKEINTRESOURCE(7)
```

Constant identifying a font directory resource

```
RT_GROUP_CURSOR = MAKEINTRESOURCE(12)
```

Constant identifying a group cursor resource

```
RT_GROUP_ICON = MAKEINTRESOURCE(14)
```

Constant identifying a group icon resource

```
RT_HTML = MAKEINTRESOURCE(23)
```

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "HTML data".

```
RT_ICON = MAKEINTRESOURCE(3)
```

Constant identifying an icon resource

```
RT_MANIFEST = MAKEINTRESOURCE(24)
```

This constant can be used to specify a resource of type "Manifest".

```
RT_MENU = MAKEINTRESOURCE(4)
```

Constant identifying a menu resource

```
RT_MESSAGE_TABLE = MAKEINTRESOURCE(11)
```

Constant identifying a message data resource

```
RT_RC_DATA = MAKEINTRESOURCE(10)
```

Constant identifying a binary data resource

```
RT_STRING = MAKEINTRESOURCE(6)
```

Constant identifying a string table resource

```
RT_VERSION = MAKEINTRESOURCE(16)
```

Constant identifying a version info resource

```
RuntimeErrorExitCodes : Array[TRuntimeError] of Byte = (0, 203, 204
, 200, 201, 215, 207, 200, 205, 206, 219, 216, 218, 217, 202, 220
, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 227, 212, 228, 229, 233, 234, 235, 236
)
```

This array is used by the [Error \(1432\)](#) routine to convert a [TRuntimeError \(1372\)](#) enumeration type to a process exit code.

```
SafeCallErrorProc : TSafeCallErrorProc = Nil
```

`SafeCallErrorProc` is a Handler called in case of a safecall calling convention error. `Error` is the error number (passed by the Windows operating system) and `Addr` is the address where the error occurred.

```
SharedSuffix = 'so'
```

Shared library suffix for the current platform

```
sLineBreak = LineEnding
```

sLineBreak is an alias for LineEnding ([1334](#)) and is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
StackError : Boolean = False
```

Indicate whether there was a stack error.

```
StdErrorHandle = 2
```

Value of the OS handle for the standard error-output file.

```
StdInputHandle = 0
```

Value of the OS handle for the standard input file.

```
StdOutputHandle = 1
```

Value of the OS handle for the standard output file.

```
S_FALSE = 1
```

Interface call result: Not OK

```
S_OK = 0
```

Interface call result: OK

```
Test8086 : Byte = 2
```

This constant will only exist on Intel CPU platforms.

```
Test8087 : Byte = 3
```

This constant will only exist on Intel CPU platforms.

```
TextRecBufSize = 256
```

TextRecBufSize is the default buffer size for text files. The actual buffer can be set to another size using SetTextBuf ([1510](#)).

```
TextRecNameLength = 256
```

TextRecNameLength is the maximum filename size for text files.

`ThreadingAlreadyUsed : Boolean = False`

Internal constant for the threading system. Don't use.

`tkAnsiChar = tkChar`

`tkAnsiChar` is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkChar` ([1377](#))

`tkAnsiString = tkAString`

`tkAnsiString` is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkAString` ([1377](#))

`tkShortString = tkSString`

`tkShortString` is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkSString` ([1377](#))

`tkUnicodeString = tkUString`

`tkUnicodeString` is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkUString` ([1377](#))

`tkWideChar = tkWChar`

`tkWideChar` is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkUChar` ([1377](#))

`tkWideString = tkWString`

`tkWideString` is an alias for `TTypeKind.tkWString` ([1377](#))

`UnusedHandle = - 1`

Value indicating an unused file handle (as reported by the OS).

`VarAddRefProc : procedure(var v: tvardata) = Nil`

Callback to increase reference count of a variant.

`varany = $101`

Variant type: Any

`vararray = $2000`

Variant type: variant Array

`varboolean = 11`

Variant type: Boolean type

`varbyref = $4000`

Variant type: By reference

`varbyte = 17`

Variant type: Byte (8 bit)

`VarClearProc : procedure(var v: tvardata) = Nil`

Callback to clear a variant.

`VarCopyProc : procedure(var d: tvardata; const s: tvardata) = Nil`

Callback to copy a variant

`varcurrency = 6`

Variant type: Currency

`vardate = 7`

Variant type: Date

`vardecimal = 14`

Variant type: Decimal (BCD)

`vardispatch = 9`

Variant type: dispatch interface

`vardouble = 5`

Variant type: Double float

`vareempty = 0`

Variant type: Empty variant

`varerror = 10`

Variant type: Error type

`varint64 = 20`

Variant type: Integer (64-Bit)

`varinteger = 3`

Variant type: Integer (32-bit)

`varlongword = 19`

Variant type: Word (32 bit)

`varnull = 1`

Variant type: Null ([1481](#)) variant

`varolestr = 8`

Variant type: OLE string (widerstring)

`varqword = 21`

Variant type: Word (64-bit)

`varrecord = 36`

Record variant type

`varshortint = 16`

Variant type: Shortint (16 bit)

`varsingle = 4`

Variant type: Single float

`varsmallint = 2`

Variant type: smallint (8 bit)

`varstrarg = $48`

Variant type: String

`varstring = $100`

Variant type: String

`VarToLStrProc : procedure(var d: AnsiString; const s: tvardata) =  
    Nil`

Callback to convert a variant to a ansistring.

`VarToWStrProc : procedure(var d: WideString; const s: tvardata) =  
    Nil`

Callback to convert a variant to a widerstring.

`vartypemask = $fff`

Variant type: Mask to extract type

`varuint64 = varqword`

`varuint64` denotes an unsigned 64-bit value in a variant. It is one of the values found in the `VType` field of the variant record `tvardata` ([1382](#)).

`varunknown` = 13

Variant type: Unknown

`varustrarg` = \$49

`varustrarg` denotes a Unicode string argument in `DispInvoke` call. It will be converted to `varustring` in a variant.

`varustring` = \$102

`varustring` denotes a Unicode string value in a variant. It is one of the values found in the `VType` field of the variant record `tvardata` ([1382](#)).

`varvariant` = 12

Variant type: Variant (arrays only)

`varword` = 18

Variant type: Word (16 bit)

`varword64` = `varqword`

Variant type: Word (64-bit)

`vmtAfterConstruction` = `vmtMethodStart` + `sizeof(codepointer)` \* 5

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtAutoTable` = `vmtParent` + `sizeof(pointer)` \* 7

VMt layout: ?

`vmtBeforeDestruction` = `vmtMethodStart` + `sizeof(codepointer)` \* 6

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtClassName` = `vmtParent` + `sizeof(pointer)`

VMt Layout: location of class name.

`vmtDefaultHandler` = `vmtMethodStart` + `sizeof(codepointer)` \* 4

VMt Layout: ?

`vmtDefaultHandlerStr` = `vmtMethodStart` + `sizeof(codepointer)` \* 7

VMT Layout: ?

```
vmtDestroy = vmtMethodStart
```

VMT Layout: Location of destructor pointer.

```
vmtDispatch = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 8
```

vmtDispatch is the offset from the VMT start, in bytes to the dispatch table for a class. The dispatch table is used when dispatching messages in TObjec.Dispatch (1567)

```
vmtDispatchStr = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 9
```

vmtDispatchStr is the offset from the VMT start, in bytes to the dispatch table for a class. The dispatch table is used when dispatching messages in TObjec.DispatchStr (1567)

```
vmtDynamicTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 2
```

VMT Layout: location of dynamic methods table.

```
vmtEquals = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 10
```

vmtEquals contains the offset from the VMT start, of the location of the TObjec.Equals (1569) method pointer.

```
vmtFieldTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 4
```

VMT Layout: Location of fields table.

```
vmtFreeInstance = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 2
```

VMT Layout: location of FreeInstance method.

```
vmtGetHashCode = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 11
```

vmtGetHashCode contains the offset from the VMT start, of the location of the TObjec.GetHashCode (1570) method pointer.

```
vmtInitTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 6
```

VMT Layout: ?

```
vmtInstanceSize = 0
```

VMT Layout: Location of class instance size in VMT

```
vmtIntfTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 8
```

VMT layout: Interface table

```
vmtMethodStart = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 10
```



VMT layout: start of method table.

```
vmtMethodTable = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 3
```

VMT Layout: Method table start.

```
vmtMsgStrPtr = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 9
```

VMT layout: message strings table.

```
vmtNewInstance = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer)
```

VMT Layout: location of NewInstance method.

```
vmtParent = sizeof(SizeInt) * 2
```

VMT Layout: location of pointer to parent VMT.

```
vmtSafeCallException = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 3
```

VMT Layout: ?

```
vmtToString = vmtMethodStart + sizeof(codepointer) * 12
```

vmtToString contains the offset from the VMT start, of the location of the TObjct.ToString (1570) method pointer.

```
vmtTypeInfo = vmtParent + sizeof(pointer) * 5
```

VMT Layout: Location of class type information.

```
vtAnsiString = 11
```

TVarRec type: Ansistring

```
vtBoolean = 1
```

TVarRec type: Boolean

```
vtChar = 2
```

TVarRec type: Char

```
vtClass = 8
```

TVarRec type: Class type

```
vtCurrency = 12
```

TVarRec type: Currency

vtExtended = 3

TVarRec type: Extended

vtInt64 = 16

TVarRec type: Int64 (signed 64-bit integer)

vtInteger = 0

TVarRec type: Integer

vtInterface = 14

TVarRec type: Interface

vtObject = 7

TVarRec type: Object instance

vtPChar = 6

TVarRec type: PChar

vtPointer = 5

TVarRec type: pointer

vtPWideChar = 10

TVarRec type: PWideChar

vtQWord = 17

TVarRec type: QWord (unsigned 64-bit integer)

vtString = 4

TVarRec type: String

vtUnicodeString = 18

vtUnicodeString denotes a Unicode string argument in the array of const. The TVarRec.VUnicodeString field will contain the actual value.

vtVariant = 13

TVarRec type: Variant

vtWideChar = 9

TVarRec type: Widechar

vtWideString = 15

TVarRec type: WideString

### 75.10.2 Types

`AnsiChar = Char`

Alias for 1-byte sized char.

`Byte = 0..255`

An unsigned 8-bits integer

`Cardinal = LongWord`

An unsigned 32-bits integer.

`Char = #0..#255`

`Char` is the basic ANSI character type, with a range of `[#0..#255]`.

`CodePointer = Pointer`

`CodePointer` is used in 8/16-bit targets to indicate pointers to code segments. On all other platforms this equals `Pointer`.

`CodePtrInt = PtrInt`

`CodePtrInt` is a signed integer with the same size as `CodePointer` ([1346](#))

`CodePtrUInt = PtrUInt`

`CodePtrUInt` is an unsigned integer with the same size as `CodePointer` ([1346](#))

`Comp = Int64`

`DWord = LongWord`

An unsigned 32-bits integer

```
EnumResLangProc = function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
    ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;
    IDLanguage: Word; lParam: PtrInt) :
    LongBool
```

`EnumResNameProcs` used in the `EnumResourceLanguages` ([1428](#)) call. It is called for all languages for a resource of the specified type and name, and is passed the `ModuleHandle`, `ResourceName`, `ResourceName` and `IDLanguage` values for each language encountered for the specified resource. Additionally, the `lParam` parameter from the `EnumResourceLanguages` is passed unaltered.

```
EnumResNameProc = function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
    ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;
    lParam: PtrInt) : LongBool
```

EnumResNameProcs used in the EnumResourceNames (1429) call. It is called for all resources of the specified type, and is passed the ModuleHandle, ResourceType, ResourceName values for each resource encountered. Additionally, the lParam parameter from the EnumResourceNames is passed unaltered.

```
EnumResTypeProc = function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
    ResourceType: PChar; lParam: PtrInt)
    : LongBool
```

EnumResTypeProc is used in the EnumResourceTypes (1429) call. It is called for all resources, and is passed the ModuleHandle, ResourceType values for each resource encountered. Additionally, the lParam parameter from the EnumResourceTypes is passed unaltered.

```
FileRec = record
public
    Handle : THandle;
    Mode : LongInt;
    RecSize
        : SizeInt;
    _private : Array[1..3*SizeOf(SizeInt)+5*SizeOf(pointer
    )] of Byte;
    UserData : Array[1..32] of Byte;
    name : Array[0..filerecnamelength
    ] of TFileTextRecChar;
end
```

FileRec is the underlying type used in untyped files. It should be treated as opaque and never manipulated directly.

```
HGLOBAL = PtrUInt
```

This is an opaque type.

```
HMODULE = PtrUInt
```

This is an opaque type.

```
HRESULT = LongInt
```

32-Bit signed integer.

```
IInterface = IUnknown
```

IInterface is the basic interface from which all COM style interfaces descend.

```
Int16 = SmallInt
```

A signed 16-bits integer

```
Int32 = LongInt
```

A signed 32-bits integer

```
Int64 = - 9223372036854775808..9223372036854775807
```

Int64 is a 64-bit, signed integer type, with range [-9223372036854775808..9223372036854775807].

```
Int8 = ShortInt
```

A signed 8-bits integer

```
Integer = SmallInt
```

The system unit defines `Integer` as a signed 16-bit integer. But when DELPHI or OBJFPC mode are active, then the `objpas` unit redefines `Integer` as a 32-bit integer.

**Remark** Note that due to the way the language modes are implemented, if you refer to `integer` with the fully qualified name `System.Integer`, you will still get a 16-bit integer.

```
Array = Array[0..$ffffff] of Integer
```

Generic array of integer.

```
IntPtr = PtrInt
```

A signed integer with the same size in bytes as pointer

```
jmp_buf = packed record
public
    ebx : LongInt;
    esi : LongInt;
    edi : LongInt;
    bp  : Pointer;
    sp  : Pointer;
    pc  : Pointer;
end
```

Record type to store processor information.

```
Longint = - 2147483648..2147483647
```

A signed 32-bits integer

```
Longword = 0..4294967295
```

The base 32-bit unsigned type. See the reference manual for more details

```
MAKEINTRESOURCE = PChar
```

Alias for the `PChar` ([1350](#)) type.

```
MarshaledAString = PAnsiChar
```

Alias for `PAnsiChar`

`MarshaledString = PWideChar`

Alias for `PWideChar`

`NativeInt = PtrInt`

`NativeInt` is defined for Delphi compatibility. It is a signed integer with the size of a pointer, so 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, 64-bit on 64-bit platforms. It is advisable to use unsigned variants of this type. See `PtrInt` for details.

`NativeUInt = PtrUInt`

`NativeUInt` is defined for Delphi compatibility. It is an unsigned integer with the size of a pointer, so 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, 64-bit on 64-bit platforms.

`OpaquePointer = POpaqueData`

Type alias for `POpaqueData`

`PAnsiChar = PChar`

Alias for `PChar` ([1350](#)) type.

`PAnsiString = ^AnsiString`

Pointer to an `ansistring` type.

`PBoolean = ^Boolean`

Pointer to a `Boolean` type.

`PBoolean16 = ^Boolean16`

`PBoolean32 = ^Boolean32`

`PBoolean64 = ^Boolean64`

`PBoolean8 = ^Boolean8`

`PByte = ^Byte`

Pointer to byte ([1346](#)) type

`PByteBool = ^ByteBool`

`pcallldesc = ^tcallldesc`

Pointer to TCallDesc (1360) record.

```
PCardinal = ^Cardinal
```

Pointer to Cardinal (1346) type

```
PChar = ^Char
```

Or the same as a pointer to an array of char. See the reference manual for more information about this type.

```
PClass = ^TClass
```

Pointer to TClass (1360)

```
PCodePointer = ^CodePointer
```

PCodePointer is a typed pointer to CodePointer (1346).

```
PCurrency = ^Currency
```

Pointer to currency type.

```
PDate = ^TDateTime
```

Pointer to a TDateTime (1361) type.

```
PDateTime = ^TDateTime
```

Pointer to Tdatetime

```
PDispatch = ^IDispatch
```

Pointer to IDispatch (1552) interface type

```
pdispdesc = ^tdispdesc
```

Pointer to tdispdesc (1361) record

```
PDouble = ^Double
```

Pointer to double-sized float value.

```
PDWord = ^DWord
```

Pointer to DWord (1346) type

```
pdynarrayindex = ^tdynarrayindex
```

Pointer to tdynarrayindex (1362) type.

`pdynarraytypeinfo = ^tdynarraytypeinfo`

Pointer to TDynArrayTypeInfo (1362) type.

`PError = ^TError`

Pointer to an Error (1432) type.

`PEventState = pointer`

Pointer to EventState, which is an opaque type.

`PExceptAddr = ^TExceptAddr`

PExceptAddr is a pointer to PExceptAddr (1351)

`PExceptObject = ^TExceptObject`

Pointer to Exception handler procedural type TExceptProc (1364)

`PExtended = ^Extended`

Pointer to extended-sized float value.

`PFileTextRecChar = ^TFileTextRecChar`

PFileTextRecChar is a typed pointer to TFileTextRecChar (1365).

`PGuid = ^TGuid`

Pointer to TGUID (1368) type.

`PInt16 = PSmallInt`

Pointer to Int16 (1347) type

`PInt32 = PLongint`

Pointer to Int32 (1347) type

`PInt64 = ^Int64`

Pointer to Int64 type

`PInt8 = PShortInt`

Pointer to Int8 (1348) type

`PInteger = ^Integer`

Pointer to integer (1348) type



`PIntegerArray = ^IntegerArray`

Pointer to IntegerArray (1348) type

`PInterface = PUnknown`

Pointer to IInterface (1347) interface

`pinterfaceentry = ^tinterfaceentry`

Pointer to tinterfaceentry (1547) record.

`pinterfacetable = ^tinterfacetable`

Pointer to tinterfacetable (1369) record.

`PIntPtr = PPtrInt`

Pointer to IntPtr (1348) type

`PJump_buf = ^jmp_buf`

Pointer to jmp\_buf (1348) record

`PLongBool = ^LongBool`

Pointer to a LongBool type.

`PLongint = ^LongInt`

Pointer to Longint (1348) type

`PLongWord = ^LongWord`

Pointer to LongWord type

`PMarshaledAString = ^PAnsiChar`

Pointer to PWideChar

`PMarshaledString = ^PWideChar`

Pointer to PWideChar

`PMemoryManager = ^TMemoryManager`

Pointer to TMemoryManager (1370) record

`PMethod = ^TMethod`

Pointer to method

`PMsgStrTable = ^TMsgStrTable`

Pointer to array of TMsgStrTable (1370) records.

`PNativeInt = ^NativeInt`

Pointer to NativeInt (1349) type

`PNativeUInt = ^NativeUInt`

Pointer to NativeInt (1349) type

`Array = Array[0..512*1024*1024-2] of Pointer`

Generic pointer array.

`POleVariant = ^OleVariant`

Pointer to OleVariant type.

`POpaqueData = ^TOpaqueData`

POpaqueData represents a pointer to data for which the internal structure must not be known. You can make type aliases from this pointer.

`PPAnsiChar = PPChar`

Alias for PPChar (1353) type.

`PPByte = ^PByte`

PPByte is a pointer to a PByte (1349) type.

`PPChar = ^PChar`

Pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings.

`PPCharArray = ^TPCharArray`

Pointer to TPCharArray (1370) type.

`PPCodePointer = ^PCodePointer`

PPCodePointer is a typed pointer to PCodePointer (1350).

`PPDispatch = ^PDispatch`

Pointer to PDispatch (1350) pointer type

`PPDouble = ^PDouble`

PPDouble is a pointer to a PDouble (1350) type.

ppdynarraytypeinfo = ^pdynarraytypeinfo

**Pointer to pdynarraytypeinfo**

PPLongint = ^PLongint

PPLongint is a pointer to a PLongint (1352) type.

PPPointer = ^Pointer

**Pointer to a pointer type.**

PPPointerArray = ^PointerArray

**Pointer to PointerArray (1353) type**

PPPAnsiChar = PPPChar

PPPAnsiChar is a typed pointer to PPAnsichar (1353).

PPPChar = ^PPChar

PPPChar is a pointer to a PPChar (1353)

PPPPointer = ^PPPointer

**Pointer to a PPointer (1354) type.**

PPPWideChar = ^PPWideChar

PPPWideChar is a pointer to a PPWideChar (1355) type.

PPPtrInt = ^PtrInt

**Pointer to PtrInt (1356) type.**

PPPtrUInt = ^PtrUInt

**Pointer to unsigned integer of pointer size**

PPUnknown = ^PUnknown

**Pointer to untyped pointer**

PPVmt = ^PVmt

**Pointer to PVMT pointer.**

PPWideChar = ^PWideChar

Pointer to link id="PWideChar"> type.

```
PQWord = ^QWord
```

Pointer to QWord type

```
PQWordBool = ^QWordBool
```

```
PRawByteString = ^RawByteString
```

Pointer to RawByteString

```
PRTLCriticalSection = ^RTLCriticalSection
```

Pointer to #rtl.system.RTLCriticalSection (1372) type.

```
PRTLEvent = pointer
```

Pointer to RTLEvent, which is an opaque type.

```
PShortInt = ^ShortInt
```

Pointer to shortint (1358) type

```
PShortString = ^ShortString
```

Pointer to a shortstring type.

```
PSingle = ^Single
```

Pointer to single-sized float value.

```
PSizeInt = ^SizeInt
```

Pointer to a SizeInt (1359) type

```
PSizeUInt = ^SizeUInt
```

PSizeUInt64 is a pointer to a SizeUInt (1359), an unsigned integer of architecture-dependent size.

```
PSmallInt = ^SmallInt
```

Pointer to smallint (1359) type

```
pstringmessagetable = ^TStringMessageTable
```

Pointer to TStringMessageTable (1374) record.

```
PText = ^Text
```

Pointer to text file.

```
PtrInt = LongInt
```

PtInt is a signed integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. PInt is considered harmful and should almost never be used in actual code, because pointers are normally unsigned. For example, consider the following code:

```
getmem(p,2048);           {Assume the address of p becomes $7ffffff0.}
q:=pointer(pInt(p)+1024);  {Overflow error.}
writeln(q>p);             {Incorrect answer.}
```

PInt might have a valid use when two pointers are subtracted from each other if it is unknown which pointer has the largest address. However, even in this case pInt causes trouble in case the distance is larger than high(pInt) and must be used with great care.

The introduction of the pInt type was a mistake. Please use ptrint ([1356](#)) instead.

```
PtrUInt = DWord
```

PtrUInt is an unsigned integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. When using integers which will be cast to pointers and vice versa, use this type, never the regular Cardinal type.

```
PUCS2Char = PWideChar
```

Pointer to UCS2Char ([1387](#)) character.

```
PUCS4Char = ^UCS4Char
```

Pointer to UCS4Char ([1387](#))

```
PUCS4CharArray = ^TUCS4CharArray
```

Pointer to array of UCS4Char ([1387](#)) characters.

```
PUInt16 = PWord
```

Pointer to UInt16 ([1387](#)) type

```
PUInt32 = PDWord
```

Pointer to UInt32 ([1388](#)) type

```
PUInt64 = ^UInt64
```

PUInt64 is a pointer to a UInt64 ([1388](#)), an unsigned 64-bit integer.

```
PUInt8 = PByte
```

Pointer to UInt8 ([1388](#)) type

```
PUIntPtr = PPtrUInt
```

Pointer to UIntPtr (1388) type

```
PUnicodeChar = ^UnicodeChar
```

PUnicodeChar is a pointer to a Unicode character, just like PChar is a pointer to a Char ansi-string character.

```
PUnicodeString = ^UnicodeString
```

PUnicodeString is a pointer to a UnicodeString string.

```
PUnknown = ^IUnknown
```

Untyped pointer

```
PUTF8Char = PAnsiChar
```

Pointer to UTF8Char

```
PUTF8String = ^UTF8String
```

Pointer to UTF8String (1388)

```
pvararray = ^tvararray
```

Pointer to TVarArray (1379) type.

```
pvararraybound = ^tvararraybound
```

Pointer to tvararraybound (1379) type.

```
pvararrayboundarray = ^tvararrayboundarray
```

Pointer to tvararrayboundarray (1379) type.

```
pvararraycoorarray = ^tvararraycoorarray
```

Pointer to tvararraycoorarray (1379) type.

```
pvardata = ^tvardata
```

Pointer to TVarData (1382) record.

```
PVariant = ^Variant
```

Pointer to Variant type.

```
pvariantmanager = ^tvariantmanager
```

Pointer to TVariantManager (1384) record.

`PVarRec = ^TVarRec`

Pointer to TVarRec (1387) type.

`PVmt = ^TVmt`

Pointer to TVMT (1552) record

`PWideChar = ^WideChar`

Pointer to WChar (1388).

`PWideString = ^WideString`

Pointer to widestring type

`PWord = ^Word`

Pointer to word (1388) type

`PWordBool = ^WordBool`

Pointer to a WordBool type.

`QWord = 0..18446744073709551615`

QWord is a 64-bit, unsigned integer type, with range [0..18446744073709551615].

`RawByteString = ansistring`

RawByteString is a single-byte character string which does not have any codepage associated with it.

This means that assigning a single-byte character string to this kind of string will not change the codepage of the string.

Inversely, when assigning a RawByteString to a single-byte string, the codepage of the destination is simply set to the codepage of the rawbytestring: no codepage conversion happens, the reference count is simply increased.

`Real = Double`

Alias for real type

`Array = Array[0..5] of Byte`

TP compatible real type (6 bytes) definition

`Shortint = - 128..127`

A signed 8-bits integer

`SizeInt = LongInt`

`SizeInt` is used to describe sizes of structures in FPC using a signed integer. The actual type of this type depends on the architecture: its size reflects the maximum addressable memory on the current architecture, thus it is 64-bit on 64-bit platforms, 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, and 16 bit on 16 bit platforms.

`SizeUInt = DWord`

`SizeUInt` is used to describe sizes of structures in FPC using an unsigned integer. The actual type of this type depends on the architecture: its size reflects the maximum addressable memory on the current architecture, thus it is 64-bit on 64-bit platforms, 32-bit on 32-bit platforms, and 16 bit on 16 bit platforms.

`Smallint = - 32768..32767`

A signed 16-bits integer

`TAbstractErrorProc = procedure`

Abstract error handler procedural type.

`TAllocateThreadVarsHandler = procedure`

Threadvar allocation callback type for `TThreadManager` ([1376](#)).

`TAnsiChar = Char`

Alias for 1-byte sized char.

```
TAssertErrorProc = procedure(const msg: ShortString;
    const fname: ShortString; lineno: LongInt;
    erroraddr: pointer)
```

Assert error handler procedural type.

`TBacktraceStrFunc = function(Addr: CodePointer) : ShortString`

Type for formatting of backtrace dump.

```
TBasicEventCreateHandler = function(EventAttributes: Pointer;
    AManualReset: Boolean;
    InitialState: Boolean;
    const Name: ansistring)
    : PEventState
```

callback type for creating eventstate in `TThreadManager` ([1376](#)).

`TBasicEventHandler = procedure(state: PEventState)`

Generic callback type for handling eventstate in `TThreadManager` ([1376](#)).



```
TBasicEventWaitForHandler = function(timeout: Cardinal;
    state: PEventState) : LongInt
```

Wait for basic event callback type for TThreadManager (1376).

```
TBeginThreadHandler = function(sa: Pointer; stacksize: PtrUInt;
    ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer
    ;
    creationFlags: DWord;
    var ThreadId: TThreadID) : TThreadID
```

Callback for thread start in TThreadManager (1376).

```
Array = Array of SizeInt
```

Dynamic array of integer.

```
tcalldesc = packed record
public
    calltype : Byte;
    argcount : Byte
    ;
    namedargcount : Byte;
    argtypes : Array[0..255] of Byte;
end
```

tcalldesc is used to encode the arguments to a dispatch call to an OLE dual interface. It is used on windows only. It describes the arguments to a call.

```
TClass = Class of TObject
```

Class of TObject (1560).

```
TCompareOption = (coIgnoreCase)
```

Table 75.10: Enumeration values for type TCompareOption

Value	Explanation
coIgnoreCase	Ignore case (usually identical to coLingIgnoreCase)

TCompareOption indicates how 2 strings should be compared. This option is used in the WideString-Manager (1387) implementation when comparing 2 strings. The following options exist:

Ignore case linguistically (usually identical to coIgnoreCase)

Ignore diacritic characters

Ignore case (usually identical to coLingIgnoreCase)

Corresponding hiragana and katakana characters compare as equal.

Corresponding hiragana and katakana characters compare as equal.

Ignore nonspace characters (usually identical to `coLingIgnoreDiacritic`)

Ignore symbols and punctuation characters

Ignore half-width and full width characters (used in Chinese and Japanese)

Use linguistic rules for casing, instead of file system rules

Treat digits as numbers (20 before 120)

Handle punctuation as symbols

Not all platforms will support all possibilities.

`TCompareOptions` = Set of `TCompareOption`

`TCompareOptions` is simply a set of `TCompareOption` (1360) enumeration values.

`TCriticalSectionHandler` = procedure(var cs)

Generic callback type for critical section handling in `TThreadManager` (1376).

`TCriticalSectionHandlerTryEnter` = function(var cs) : LongInt

`TCriticalSectionHandlerTryEnter` is the function prototype for the `TryEnterCriticalSection` (1530) function, in the `TThreadManager` (1376) record's `TryEnterCriticalSection` field.

`TCtrlBreakHandler` = function(CtrlBreak: Boolean) : Boolean

`TCtrlBreakHandler` is the prototype for the CTRL-C handler. If `CtrlBreak` is `True` then Ctrl-Break was hit, otherwise CTRL-C was hit. The handlers should return `True` to signal that the key-combination was handled. If `False` is returned, then default handling will be used, which by default means an exception will be raised if the `sysutils` unit is used.

`TDate` = `TDateTime`

`TDate` is defined for Delphi compatibility. This type is deprecated, use `TDateTime` (1361) instead.

`TDateTime` = `Double`

Encoded Date-Time type.

```
tdispdesc = packed record
public
    dispid : LongInt;
    restype : Byte
    ;
    calldesc : tcalldesc;
end
```

`tcalldesc` is used to encode a dispatch call to an OLE dispatch interface. It is used on windows only. It describes the dispatch call call.

```
tdynarrayindex = SizeInt
```

A variable of type `tdynarrayindex` will always have the correct size, suitable for serving as an index in a dynamic array.

```
tdynarraytypeinfo = packed record
public
  kind : TTypeKind;
  namelen
    : Byte;
  elesize : SizeInt;
  eletype : ppdynarraytypeinfo;
  vartype
    : LongInt;
end
```

`tdynarraytypeinfo` describes the structure of a multi-dimensional dynamic array. It is used in the `DynArraySetLength` ([1427](#)) call.

```
TDynLibsManager = record
public
  LoadLibraryU : TLoadLibraryUHandler
  ;
  LoadLibraryA : TLoadLibraryAHandler;
  GetProcAddress : TGetProcAddressHandler
  ;
  GetProcAddressOrdinal : TGetProcAddressOrdinalHandler;
  UnloadLibrary
    : TUnloadLibraryHandler;
  GetLoadErrorStr : TGetLoadErrorStrHandler
  ;
end
```

`TDynLibsManager` contains all the callbacks needed to load and manage dynamic libraries. The system unit does not contain dynamic loading library support on all supported platforms. Like the unicode string support, heap support and thread support, support for loading dynamic libraries is pluggable. This record contains the necessary callbacks that the system unit needs to implement loading of dynamic libraries (needed for example for run-time package support).

Including the `dynlibs` ([702](#)) unit will enable support for dynamically loadable libraries on all platforms that support this.

```
TEndThreadHandler = procedure(ExitCode: DWord)
```

Callback for thread end in `TThreadManager` ([1376](#)).

```
TEntryInformation = record
public
  InitFinalTable : Pointer;
  ThreadvarTablesTable
    : Pointer;
  ResourceStringTables : Pointer;
  ResStrInitTables
```

```

    : Pointer;
  ResLocation : Pointer;
  PascalMain : procedure;
  valgrind_used
    : Boolean;
  OS : TEntryInformationOS;
end

```

TEntryInformation is used to initialize a Free Pascal program or library. Under normal circumstances, there should be no need to use this structure directly: it is used by the system unit and special linking units.

```

TEntryInformationOS = record
public
  argc : LongInt;
  argv : PPChar
  ;
  envp : PPChar;
  stkptr : pointer;
  stklen : SizeUInt;
  haltproc
    : procedure(e: LongInt);
end

```

TEntryInformationOS represents executable entry information for the current OS. This structure is OS dependent.

```
TError = LongInt
```

Error type, used in variants.

```

TErrorProc = procedure(ErrNo: LongInt; Address: CodePointer;
  Frame: Pointer)

```

Standard error handler procedural type.

```

TExceptAddr = record
public
  buf : PJump_buf;
  next : PExceptAddr
  ;
  frametype : LongInt;
end

```

TExceptAddr describes an exception frame on the exception address frame stack. It is used in structured stack exception handling.

```

TExceptObject = record
public
  FObject : TObject;
  Addr : CodePointer
  ;

```

```

Next : PExceptObject;
refcount : LongInt;
Framecount : LongInt
;
Frames : PCodePointer;
end

```

TExceptObject is the exception description record which is found on the exception stack.

```

TExceptProc = procedure(Obj: TObject; Addr: CodePointer;
    FrameCount: LongInt; Frame: PCodePointer)

```

Exception handler procedural type

```

Array = Array[0..TextRecBufSize-1] of AnsiChar

```

TextBuf is a type for the default buffer used in TextRec (1364).

```

TextFile = Text

```

Alias for Text file type.

```

TextRec = record
public
    Handle : THandle;
    Mode : LongInt;
    bufsize
    : SizeInt;
    _private : SizeInt;
    bufpos : SizeInt;
    bufend : SizeInt
    ;
    bufptr : ^TextBuf;
    openfunc : CodePointer;
    inoutfunc : CodePointer
    ;
    flushfunc : CodePointer;
    closefunc : CodePointer;
    UserData
    : Array[1..32] of Byte;
    name : Array[0..textrecnamelength-1] of
    TFileTextRecChar;
    LineEnd : TLineEndStr;
    buffer : TextBuf;
end

```

TextRec is the underlying type used in text files. It should be treated as opaque and never manipulated directly.

```

TFileTextRecChar = UnicodeChar

```

TFileTextRecChar is the type of character used in TextRec (1364) or FileRec (1347) file types. It is an alias type, depending on platform and RTL compilation flags. No assumptions should be made on the actual character type.

```
TFloatSpecial = (fsZero, fsNZero, fsDenormal, fsNDenormal, fsPositive
,
                fsNegative, fsInf, fsNInf, fsNaN, fsInvalidOp)
```

Table 75.11: Enumeration values for type TFloatSpecial

Value	Explanation
fsDenormal	Denormal value
fsInf	Infinity
fsInvalidOp	Invalid operation
fsNaN	Not a number
fsNDenormal	Negative enormal value
fsNegative	Negative value
fsNInf	Negative infinity
fsNZero	Negative zero
fsPositive	Positive value
fsZero	Zero

TFloatSpecial enumerates a series of floating point value properties.

```
TFPCHeapStatus = record
public
    MaxHeapSize : PtrUInt;
    MaxHeapUsed
    : PtrUInt;
    CurrHeapSize : PtrUInt;
    CurrHeapUsed : PtrUInt;
    CurrHeapFree : PtrUInt;
end
```

TFPCHeapStatus describes the state of the FPC heap manager. This is not equivalent to the THeapStatus (1368) record defined by Delphi, which contains information not meaningful for the FPC heap manager. The heap status can be retrieved by the GetFPCHeapStatus (1446) call.

```
TFPResourceHandle = PtrUInt
```

TFPResourceHandle represents a handle to a binary resource and is used in the various resource calls. Its actual type and size may differ across platforms.

```
TFPResourceHGLOBAL = PtrUInt
```

TFPResourceHGLOBAL represents a handle to the global module containing a resource. It is used in the various resource calls. It is an opaque type: its actual type and size may differ across platforms.

```
TFPResourceHMODULE = PtrUInt
```

TFPResourceHMODULE represents a module (library, executable, other) in which a resource is located. It is used in the various resource calls. It is an opaque type: its actual type and size may differ across platforms.

```
TFPUException = (exInvalidOp, exDenormalized, exZeroDivide, exOverflow
,
exUnderflow, exPrecision)
```

Table 75.12: Enumeration values for type TFPException

Value	Explanation
exDenormalized	
exInvalidOp	Invalid operation error
exOverflow	Float overflow error
exPrecision	Precision error
exUnderflow	Float underflow error
exZeroDivide	Division by zero error.

TFPUException describes what floating point errors raise exceptions. It has been moved here from the Math unit.

TFPUExceptionMask = Set of TFPException

TFPUExceptionMask is a set of TFPException constants

```
TFPUPrecisionMode = (pmSingle, pmReserved, pmDouble, pmExtended)
```

Table 75.13: Enumeration values for type TFPUPrecisionMode

Value	Explanation
pmDouble	Double-type precision
pmExtended	Extended-type precision
pmReserved	?
pmSingle	Single-type precision

TFPUPrecisionMode describes the possible default precisions for the software Floating Point math routines. It has been moved here from the math unit.

```
TFPURoundingMode = (rmNearest, rmDown, rmUp, rmTruncate)
```

Table 75.14: Enumeration values for type TFPURoundingMode

Value	Explanation
rmDown	Round to biggest integer smaller than value.
rmNearest	Round to nearest integer
rmTruncate	Cut off fractional part
rmUp	Round to smallest integer larger than value

TFPURoundingMode enumerates the possible values for software floating point math rounding. It has been moved here from the math unit.

TGetCurrentThreadIdHandler = function : TThreadId

Callback type for retrieving thread ID in TThreadManager (1376).

TGetLoadErrorStrHandler = function : string

TGetLoadErrorStrHandler is the type for the GetLoadErrorStr call using ansistring names in the TDynLibsManager (1362) dynamic library loading manager.

TGetProcAddressHandler = function(Lib: TLibHandle;  
const ProcName: AnsiString) : Pointer

TGetProcAddressHandler is the type for the GetProcAddress call using ansistring names in the TDynLibsManager (1362) dynamic library loading manager.

TGetProcAddressOrdinalHandler = function(Lib: TLibHandle;  
Ordinal: TOrdinalEntry)  
: Pointer

TGetProcAddressOrdinalHandler is the type for the GetProcAddressOrdinal call using ansistring names in the TDynLibsManager (1362) dynamic library loading manager.

```
TGuid = packed record
case Integer of
1: (
public
  Data1 : DWord
  ;
  Data2 : Word;
  Data3 : Word;
  Data4 : Array[0..7] of Byte;
);
2: (
public
  D1 : DWord;
  D2 : Word;
  D3 : Word;
  D4 : Array
    [0..7] of Byte;
);
3: (
public
  time_low : DWord;
  time_mid : Word
  ;
  time_hi_and_version : Word;
  clock_seq_hi_and_reserved : Byte
  ;
  clock_seq_low : Byte;
  node : Array[0..5] of Byte;
);
end
```



Standard GUID representation type.

`THandle = LongInt`

This type should be considered opaque. It is used to describe file and other handles.

```
THeapStatus = record
public
  TotalAddrSpace : Cardinal;
  TotalUncommitted
  : Cardinal;
  TotalCommitted : Cardinal;
  TotalAllocated : Cardinal
  ;
  TotalFree : Cardinal;
  FreeSmall : Cardinal;
  FreeBig : Cardinal
  ;
  Unused : Cardinal;
  Overhead : Cardinal;
  HeapErrorCode : Cardinal
  ;
end
```

`THeapStatus` is the record describing the current heap status. It is returned by the `GetHeapStatus` (1446) call.

`TInitThreadVarHandler = procedure (var offset: DWord; size: DWord)`

Threadvar initialization callback type for `TThreadManager` (1376).

`TInterfacedClass = Class of TInterfacedObject`

`TInterfacedClass` is a descendent of

```
tinterfaceentrytype = (etStandard, etVirtualMethodResult,
  etStaticMethodResult, etFieldValue,
  etVirtualMethodClass, etStaticMethodClass,
  etFieldValueClass)
```

Table 75.15: Enumeration values for type `tinterfaceentrytype`

Value	Explanation
<code>etFieldValue</code>	Field value
<code>etFieldValueClass</code>	Interface provided by a class field
<code>etStandard</code>	Standard entry
<code>etStaticMethodClass</code>	Interface provided by a static class method
<code>etStaticMethodResult</code>	Static method
<code>etVirtualMethodClass</code>	Interface provided by a virtual class method
<code>etVirtualMethodResult</code>	Virtual method

This is an internal type for the compiler to encode calls to dispatch interfaces.

```

tinterfacetable = record
public
  EntryCount : SizeUInt;
  Entries
    : Array[0..0] of tinterfaceentry;
end

```

Record to store list of interfaces of a class.

```
TLibHandle = PtrInt
```

TLibHandle should be considered an opaque type. It is defined differently on various platforms. The definition shown here depends on the platform for which the documentation was generated.

```
TLineEndStr = string
```

TLineEndStr is an alias for the actual line ending string type, used in TextRec (1364). It should be treated as opaque.

```

TLoadLibraryAHandler = function(const Name: RawByteString) :
  TLibHandle

```

TLoadLibraryAHandler is the type for the loadlibrary call using ansistring names in the TDynLibsManager (1362) dynamic library loading manager.

```

TLoadLibraryUHandler = function(const Name: UnicodeString) :
  TLibHandle

```

TLoadLibraryUHandler is the type for the loadlibrary call using unicode names in the TDynLibsManager (1362) dynamic library loading manager.

```

TMemoryManager = record
public
  NeedLock : Boolean;
  Getmem : function
    (Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer;
  Freemem : function(p: pointer) : PtrUInt
  ;
  FreememSize : function(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : PtrUInt;
  AllocMem : function(Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer;
  ReAllocMem : function
    (var p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer;
  MemSize : function(p
    : pointer) : PtrUInt;
  InitThread : procedure;
  DoneThread : procedure
  ;
  RelocateHeap : procedure;
  GetHeapStatus : function : THeapStatus
  ;
  GetFPCHeapStatus : function : TFPCHeapStatus;
end

```

TMemoryManager describes the memory manager. For more information about the memory manager, see the programmer's reference.

```
TMethod = record
public
  Code : CodePointer;
  Data : Pointer;
end
```

TMethod describes a general method pointer, and is used in Run-Time Type Information handling.

```
TMsgStrTable = record
public
  name : PShortString;
  method : CodePointer
;
end
```

Record used in string message handler table.

```
TOpaqueData = record
end
```

TOpaqueData represents data for which the internal structure must not be known. It is mostly useful for the pointer definition POpaqueData ([1353](#)).

```
TOrdinalEntry = SizeUInt
```

Ordinal of entry point (windows only)

```
packed Array = Array[0..(MaxLongintdivSizeOf(PChar))-1] of PChar
```

Array of PChar

```
TProcedure = procedure
```

Simple procedural type.

```
TReleaseThreadVarsHandler = procedure
```

Threadvar release callback type for TThreadManager ([1376](#)).

```
TRelocateThreadVarHandler = function(offset: DWord) : pointer
```

Threadvar relocation callback type for TThreadManager ([1376](#)).

```
TResourceHandle = PtrUInt
```

This is an opaque type.

```

TResourceManager = record
public
  HINSTANCEFunc : function : TFPResourceHMODULE
  ;
  EnumResourceTypesFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE
  ; EnumFunc: EnumResTypeProc;
    lParam: PtrInt) : LongBool
  ;
  EnumResourceNamesFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE
  ; ResourceType: PChar;
    EnumFunc: EnumResNameProc; lParam
  : PtrInt) : LongBool;
  EnumResourceLanguagesFunc : function(ModuleHandle
  : TFPResourceHMODULE; ResourceType: PChar;
    ResourceName
  : PChar; EnumFunc: EnumResLangProc; lParam: PtrInt)
  :
  LongBool;
  FindResourceFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE
  ; ResourceName: PChar;
    ResourceType: PChar) : TFPResourceHandle
  ;
  FindResourceExFunc : function(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE
  ; ResourceType: PChar;
    ResourceName: PChar; Language:
  Word) : TFPResourceHandle;
  LoadResourceFunc : function(ModuleHandle
  : TFPResourceHMODULE; ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle)
  :
  TFPResourceHGLOBAL;
  SizeofResourceFunc : function(ModuleHandle
  : TFPResourceHMODULE; ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle)
  :
  LongWord;
  LockResourceFunc : function(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL
  ) : Pointer;
  UnlockResourceFunc : function(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL
  ) : LongBool;
  FreeResourceFunc : function(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL
  ) : LongBool;
end

```

TResourceManager is the record describing the resource manager. Depending on the kind of resources (internal, external), another resource managing handler is installed by the system. The resource manager record is used by all resource handling functions to do the actual work: for each function in the API, a handler function is available. People wishing to implement their own resource manager, must implement all handler functions in their implementation.

As soon as resources are used, the compiler will install a resource manager, depending on the platform, this may be an internal or an external resource manager.

```
TRTLCREATEEventHandler = function : PRTLEvent
```

Callback type for creating a TRTLEvent type in TThreadManager ([1376](#)).

TRTLCRITICALSECTION = Opaque type

TRTLCriticalSection represents a critical section (a mutex). This is an opaque type, it can differ from operating system to operating system. No assumptions should be made about it's structure or contents.

TRTLEventHandler = procedure (AEvent: PRTLEvent)

Generic TRTLEvent handling type for TThreadManager ([1376](#)).

TRTLEventHandlerTimeout = procedure (AEvent: PRTLEvent; timeout: LongInt  
)

TRTLEvent timeout handling type for TThreadManager ([1376](#)).

trtlmethod = procedure of object

Callback type for synchronization event.

```
TRuntimeError = (reNone, reOutOfMemory, reInvalidPtr, reDivByZero,
  reRangeError, reIntOverflow, reInvalidOp, reZeroDivide
  ,
    reOverflow, reUnderflow, reInvalidCast, reAccessViolation
  ,
    rePrivInstruction, reControlBreak, reStackOverflow
  ,
    reVarTypeCast, reVarInvalidOp, reVarDispatch,
  reVarArrayCreate, reVarNotArray, reVarArrayBounds,
  reAssertionFailed, reExternalException, reIntfCastError
  ,
    reSafeCallError, reQuit, reCodesetConversion,
  reNoDynLibsSupport, reThreadError)
```

Table 75.16: Enumeration values for type TRuntimeError

Value	Explanation
reAccessViolation	Access Violation
reAssertionFailed	Assertion failed error
reCodesetConversion	Code set conversion error
reControlBreak	User pressed CTRL-C
reDivByZero	Division by zero error
reExternalException	An external exception occurred
reIntfCastError	Interface typecast error
reIntOverflow	Integer overflow error
reInvalidCast	Invalid (class) typecast error
reInvalidOp	Invalid operation error
reInvalidPtr	Invalid pointer error
reNoDynLibsSupport	Runtime error if no dynamic library support is available
reNone	No error
reOutOfMemory	Out of memory error
reOverflow	Overflow error
rePrivInstruction	Privileged instruction error
reQuit	Quit signal error
reRangeError	Range check error
reSafeCallError	Safecall (IDispInterface) error
reStackOverflow	Stack overflow error
reThreadError	Runtime error if no thread support is available
reUnderflow	Underflow error
reVarArrayBounds	Variant array bounds error
reVarArrayCreate	Variant array creation error
reVarDispatch	Variant Dispatch error.
reVarInvalidOp	Invalid variant operation error
reVarNotArray	Variant is not an array error.
reVarTypeCast	Invalid typecase from variant
reZeroDivide	Division by zero error

TRuntimeError is used in the Error (1432) procedure to indicate what kind of error should be reported.

```
TSafeCallErrorProc = procedure(error: HRESULT; addr: pointer)
```

Prototype of a safecall error handler routine. Error is the error number (passed by the Windows operating system) and Addr is the address where the error occurred.

```
TSemaphoreDestroyHandler = procedure(const sem: Pointer)
```

TSemaphoreDestroyHandler is the function prototype to destroy an existing semaphore, as returned by (ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit). It is used by the thread manager (ThreadManager.SemaphoreDest

```
TSemaphorePostHandler = procedure(const sem: Pointer)
```

TSemaphorePostHandler is the function prototype to post an event to the semaphore. It should handle a pointer as returned by the ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit procedure. it's used by the thread manager ThreadManager.SemaphorePost.

```
TSemaphoreWaitHandler = procedure(const sem: Pointer)
```

TSemaphoreWaitHandler is the function prototype to wait on an event on the semaphore (which should be posted to the semaphore with `ThreadManager.SemaphorePost`). It should handle a pointer as returned by the `ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit` procedure. it's used by the thread manager `ThreadManager.SemaphoreWait`.

```
TSempahoreInitHandler = function : Pointer
```

TSempahoreInitHandler is the function prototype for initializing a semaphore. It is used by the thread manager (`ThreadManager.SemaphoreInit`) to create semaphores. The function should return a pointer, usable by the other semaphore functions of the thread manager.

```
TStandardCodePageEnum = (scpAnsi, scpConsoleInput, scpConsoleOutput
,
                        scpFileSystemSingleByte)
```

Table 75.17: Enumeration values for type TStandardCodePageEnum

Value	Explanation
scpAnsi	Ansi codepage (CP_ACP)
scpConsoleInput	Console input codepage
scpConsoleOutput	Console output codepage
scpFileSystemSingleByte	File system single byte codepage.

TStandardCodePageEnum describes several types of standard used codepages, which can be queried by the unicode string manager `TUnicodeStringManager` ([1379](#)).

```
TStringMessageTable = record
public
    count : LongInt;
    msgstrtable
    : Array[0..0] of TMsgStrTable;
end
```

Record used to describe the string messages handled by a class. It consists of a count, followed by an array of `TMsgStrTable` ([1370](#)) records.

```
TSystemCodePage = Word
```

TSystemCodePage is a type used to indicate code pages. It should be treated as an opaque type.

```
TTextBuf = TextBuf
```

TTextBuf is an alias for TextBuf

```
TTextLineBreakStyle = (tlbsLF, tlbsCRLF, tlbsCR)
```

Table 75.18: Enumeration values for type TTextLineBreakStyle

Value	Explanation
tlbsCR	Carriage-return (#13, Mac-OS style)
tlbsCRLF	Carriage-return, line-feed (#13#30, Windows style)
tlbsLF	Line-feed only (#10, Unix style)

Text line break style. (end of line character)

```
TThreadFunc = function(parameter: pointer) : PtrInt
```

Thread function prototype

```
TThreadGetPriorityHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID) :
    LongInt
```

Callback type for thread priority getting in TThreadManager (1376).

```
TThreadHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord
```

Generic thread handler callback for TThreadManager (1376).

```
TThreadID = PtrUInt
```

This is an opaque type, it can differ from operating system to operating system.

```
TThreadManager = record
public
    InitManager : function : Boolean
    ;
    DoneManager : function : Boolean;
    BeginThread : TBeginThreadHandler
    ;
    EndThread : TEndThreadHandler;
    SuspendThread : TThreadHandler
    ;
    ResumeThread : TThreadHandler;
    KillThread : TThreadHandler;
    CloseThread : TThreadHandler;
    ThreadSwitch : TThreadSwitchHandler
    ;
    WaitForThreadTerminate : TWaitForThreadTerminateHandler;
    ThreadSetPriority
    : TThreadSetPriorityHandler;
    ThreadGetPriority : TThreadGetPriorityHandler
    ;
    GetCurrentThreadId : TGetCurrentThreadIdHandler;
    InitCriticalSection
    : TCriticalSectionHandler;
    DoneCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler
    ;
```



```

EnterCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
TryEnterCriticalSection
: TCriticalSectionHandlerTryEnter;
LeaveCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler
;
InitThreadVar : TInitThreadVarHandler;
RelocateThreadVar : TRelocateThreadVarHandler
;
AllocateThreadVars : TAllocateThreadVarsHandler;
ReleaseThreadVars
: TReleaseThreadVarsHandler;
BasicEventCreate : TBasicEventCreateHandler
;
BasicEventDestroy : TBasicEventHandler;
BasicEventResetEvent
: TBasicEventHandler;
BasicEventSetEvent : TBasicEventHandler;
BasicEventWaitFor : TBasicEventWaitForHandler;
RTLEventCreate
: TRTLCreateEventHandler;
RTLEventDestroy : TRTLEventHandler;
RTLEventSetEvent : TRTLEventHandler;
RTLEventResetEvent : TRTLEventHandler
;
RTLEventWaitFor : TRTLEventHandler;
RTLEventWaitForTimeout
: TRTLEventHandlerTimeout;
end

```

`TThreadManager` is a record that contains all callbacks needed for the thread handling routines of the Free Pascal Run-Time Library. The thread manager can be set by the `SetThreadManager` (1512) procedure, and the current thread manager can be retrieved with the `GetThreadManager` (1449) procedure.

The Windows RTL will set the thread manager automatically to a system thread manager, based on the Windows threading routines. Unix operating systems provide a unit `cthreads` which implements threads based on the C library POSIX thread routines. It is not included by default, because it would make the system unit dependent on the C library.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

```

TThreadSetPriorityHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID;
  Prio: LongInt) : Boolean

```

Callback type for thread priority setting in `TThreadManager` (1376).

```

TThreadSwitchHandler = procedure

```

Callback type for thread switch in `TThreadManager` (1376).

```

TTime = TDateTime

```

`TTime` is defined for Delphi compatibility. This type is deprecated, use `TDateTime` (1361) instead.

```
TTypeKind = (tkUnknown,tkInteger,tkChar,tkEnumeration,tkFloat,tkSet
,
tkMethod,tkSString,tkLString,tkAString,tkWString,tkVariant
,
tkArray,tkRecord,tkInterface,tkClass,tkObject,tkWChar
,
tkBool,tkInt64,tkQWord,tkDynArray,tkInterfaceRaw,tkProcVar
,
tkUString,tkUChar,tkHelper,tkFile,tkClassRef,tkPointer
)
```

Table 75.19: Enumeration values for type TTypeKind

Value	Explanation
tkArray	Array property.
tkAString	Ansistring property.
tkBool	Boolean property.
tkChar	Char property.
tkClass	Class property.
tkClassRef	Class reference type
tkDynArray	Dynamic array property.
tkEnumeration	Enumeration type property.
tkFile	File type
tkFloat	Float property.
tkHelper	Helper type
tkInt64	Int64 property.
tkInteger	Integer property.
tkInterface	Interface property.
tkInterfaceRaw	Raw interface property.
tkLString	Longstring property.
tkMethod	Method property.
tkObject	Object property.
tkPointer	Generic pointer type
tkProcVar	Procedural variable
tkQWord	QWord property.
tkRecord	Record property.
tkSet	Set property.
tkSString	Shortstring property.
tkUChar	Unicode character
tkUnknown	Unknown property type.
tkUString	Unicode string
tkVariant	Variant property.
tkWChar	Widechar property.
tkWString	Widestring property.

Type of a property or value.

Array = Array[0..\$efffffff] of UCS4Char

Array of UCS4Char (1387) characters.

```

TUnicodeStringManager = record
public
  Wide2AnsiMoveProc : procedure
    (source: PWideChar; var dest: RawByteString;
     cp: TSystemCodePage
    ; len: SizeInt);
  Ansi2WideMoveProc : procedure(source: PChar; cp
    : TSystemCodePage; var dest: widestring;
     len: SizeInt
    );
  UpperWideStringProc : function(const S: WideString) : WideString
    ;
  LowerWideStringProc : function(const S: WideString) : WideString
    ;
  CompareWideStringProc : function(const s1: WideString; const s2
    : WideString;
     Options: TCompareOptions) : PtrInt;
  CharLengthPCharProc
    : function(const Str: PChar) : PtrInt;
  CodePointLengthProc : function
    (const Str: PChar; MaxLookAead: PtrInt) : PtrInt;
  UpperAnsiStringProc
    : function(const s: ansistring) : ansistring;
  LowerAnsiStringProc
    : function(const s: ansistring) : ansistring;
  CompareStrAnsiStringProc
    : function(const S1: ansistring; const S2: ansistring) : PtrInt;
  CompareTextAnsiStringProc : function(const S1: ansistring; const
    S2: ansistring) : PtrInt;
  StrCompAnsiStringProc : function(S1:
    PChar; S2: PChar) : PtrInt;
  StrICompAnsiStringProc : function(S1
    : PChar; S2: PChar) : PtrInt;
  StrLCompAnsiStringProc : function
    (S1: PChar; S2: PChar; MaxLen: PtrUInt) : PtrInt;
  StrLICompAnsiStringProc
    : function(S1: PChar; S2: PChar; MaxLen: PtrUInt) : PtrInt;
  StrLowerAnsiStringProc
    : function(Str: PChar) : PChar;
  StrUpperAnsiStringProc : function
    (Str: PChar) : PChar;
  ThreadInitProc : procedure;
  ThreadFiniProc
    : procedure;
  Unicode2AnsiMoveProc : procedure(source: PUnicodeChar
    ; var dest: RawByteString;
     cp: TSystemCodePage; len:
    SizeInt);
  Ansi2UnicodeMoveProc : procedure(source: PChar; cp: TSystemCodePage
    ; var dest: unicodestring;
     len: SizeInt);
  UpperUnicodeStringProc
    : function(const S: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString;
  LowerUnicodeStringProc

```

```

: function(const S: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString;
CompareUnicodeStringProc
: function(const s1: UnicodeString; const s2: UnicodeString;
Options: TCompareOptions) : PtrInt;
GetStandardCodePageProc
: function(const stdcp: TStandardCodePageEnum) : TSystemCodePage
;
end

```

TUnicodeStringManager is currently the same as the TUnicodeStringManager (1379) manager record. It performs the same functions: converting Unicode strings to ansistrings and vice-versa, performing uppercase to lowercase transformations and comparing strings.

```
TUnloadLibraryHandler = function(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean
```

TUnloadLibraryHandler is the type for the UnloadLibrary call using ansistring names in the TDynLibsManager (1362) dynamic library loading manager.

```

tvararray = record
public
  dimcount : Word;
  flags : Word;
  elementsize
  : LongInt;
  lockcount : LongInt;
  data : pointer;
  bounds : tvararrayboundarray
;
end

```

tvararray is a record describing a variant array. It contains some general data, followed by a number of TVarArrayBound (1379) records equal to the number of dimensions in the array (dimcount).

```

tvararraybound = record
public
  elementcount : LongInt;
  lowbound
  : LongInt;
end

```

tvararraybound is used to describe one dimension in a variant array.

```
Array = Array[0..0] of tvararraybound
```

array of tvararraybound (1379) records.

```
Array = Array[0..0] of LongInt
```

Array of variant array coordinates

```

tvardata = packed record
public

```

```
    vtype : tvartype;
case Integer of
  0: (
public
  res1 : Word;
case Integer of
  0: (
public
  res2 : Word
  ;
  res3 : Word;
case Word of
varsmallint: (
public
  vsmallint :
  SmallInt;
);
varinteger: (
public
  vinteger : LongInt;
);
varsingle
  : (
public
  vsingle : single;
);
vardouble: (
public
  vdouble :
  Double;
);
vardate: (
public
  vdate : TDateTime;
);
varcurrency
  : (
public
  vcurrency : currency;
);
varolestr: (
public
  volestr
  : PWideChar;
);
vardispatch: (
public
  vdispatch : pointer;
);
varerror
  : (
public
  verror : HRESULT;
);
```

```
varboolean: (  
public  
    vboolean  
        : wordbool;  
);  
varunknown: (  
public  
    vunknown : pointer;  
);  
varshortint  
    : (  
public  
    vshortint : ShortInt;  
);  
varbyte: (  
public  
    vbyte :  
        Byte;  
);  
varword: (  
public  
    vword : Word;  
);  
varlongword: (  
public  
    vlongword : DWord;  
);  
varint64: (  
public  
    vint64 : Int64;  
);  
varqword  
    : (  
public  
    vqword : QWord;  
);  
varword64: (  
public  
    vword64 : QWord  
    ;  
);  
varstring: (  
public  
    vstring : pointer;  
);  
varany: (  
public  
    vany : pointer;  
);  
vararray: (  
public  
    varray : pvararray;  
);  
varbyref: (  

```

```

public
  vpointer : pointer;
);
varrecord: (
public
  vrecord : pointer;
  precinfo : pointer;
);
);
1: (
public
  vlongs
    : Array[0..2] of LongInt;
);
);
1: (
public
  vwords : Array[0..6
    ] of Word;
);
2: (
public
  vbytes : Array[0..13] of Byte;
);
end

```

TVarData is a record representation of a variant. It contains the internal structure of a variant and is handled by the various variant handling routines.

```

tvariantmanager = record
public
  varoint : function(const v: variant
    ) : LongInt;
  varoint64 : function(const v: variant) : Int64;
  varoword64 : function(const v: variant) : QWord;
  vartobool : function
    (const v: variant) : Boolean;
  vartoreal : function(const v: variant
    ) : extended;
  vartotdatetime : function(const v: variant) : TDateTime
    ;
  vartocurr : function(const v: variant) : currency;
  vartopstr
    : procedure(var s; const v: variant);
  vartolstr : procedure(var
    s: ansistring; const v: variant);
  vartowstr : procedure(var s:
    widestring; const v: variant);
  vartointf : procedure(var intf:
    IInterface; const v: variant);
  vartodisp : procedure(var disp:
    IDispatch; const v: variant);
  vartodynarray : procedure(var dynarr

```

```

: pointer; const v: variant; typeinfo: pointer);
varfrombool : procedure
(var dest: variant; const source: Boolean);
varfromint : procedure
(var dest: variant; const source: LongInt;
    const Range
: LongInt);
varfromint64 : procedure(var dest: variant; const source
: Int64);
varfromword64 : procedure(var dest: variant; const source
: QWord);
varfromreal : procedure(var dest: variant; const source
: extended);
varfromdatetime : procedure(var dest: Variant; const
source: TDateTime);
varfromcurr : procedure(var dest: Variant;
const source: Currency);
varfrompstr : procedure(var dest: variant
; const source: ShortString);
varfromlstr : procedure(var dest:
variant; const source: ansistring);
varfromwstr : procedure(var
dest: variant; const source: WideString);
varfromintf : procedure
(var dest: variant; const source: IInterface);
varfromdisp : procedure
(var dest: variant; const source: IDispatch);
varfromdynarray :
procedure(var dest: variant; const source: pointer; typeinfo: pointer
);
olevarfrompstr : procedure(var dest: olevariant; const source
: shortstring);
olevarfromlstr : procedure(var dest: olevariant
; const source: ansistring);
olevarfromvar : procedure(var dest
: olevariant; const source: variant);
olevarfromint : procedure
(var dest: olevariant; const source: Int64;
    const range
: ShortInt);
varop : procedure(var left: variant; const right: variant
; opcode: tvarop);
cmpop : function(const left: variant; const right
: variant;
    const opcode: tvarop) : Boolean;
varneg
: procedure(var v: variant);
varnot : procedure(var v: variant)
;
varinit : procedure(var v: variant);
varclear : procedure(var
v: variant);
varaddref : procedure(var v: variant);
varcopy

```



```

: procedure(var dest: variant; const source: variant);
varcast
: procedure(var dest: variant; const source: variant; vartype: LongInt
);
varcastole : procedure(var dest: variant; const source: variant
; vartype: LongInt);
dispinvoke : procedure(dest: pvardata; var
source: tvardata; calldesc: pcalldesc;
        params: pointer
);
vararrayredim : procedure(var a: variant; highbound: SizeInt
);
vararrayget : function(const a: variant; indexcount: SizeInt
; indices: PLongint)
        : variant;
vararrayput : procedure
(var a: variant; const value: variant; indexcount: SizeInt;
indices: PLongint);
writevariant : function(var t: text
; const v: variant; width: LongInt) : Pointer;
write0Variant : function
(var t: text; const v: Variant) : Pointer;
end

```

TVariantManager describes the variant manager as expected by the SetVariantManager (1513) call.

```

tvarop = (opadd,opsubtract,opmultiply,opdivide,opintdivide,opmodulus
,
        opshiftleft,opshiftright,opand,opor,opxor,opcompare,opnegate
,
        opnot,opcmpeq,opcmpne,opcmplt,opcmple,opcmpgt,opcmpge
,oppower)

```

Table 75.20: Enumeration values for type tvarop

Value	Explanation
opadd	Variant operation: Addition.
opand	Variant operation: Binary AND operation
opcmpeq	Variant operation: Compare equal.
opcmpge	Variant operation: Compare larger than or equal
opcmpgt	Variant operation: Compare larger than
opcmple	Variant operation: Compare less than or equal to
opcmplt	Variant operation: Compare less than.
opcmpne	Variant operation: Compare not equal
opcompare	Variant operation: Compare
opdivide	Variant operation: division
opintdivide	Variant operation: integer divide
opmodulus	Variant operation: Modulus
opmultiply	Variant operation: multiplication
opnegate	Variant operation: negation.
opnot	Variant operation: Binary NOT operation.
opor	Variant operation: Binary OR operation
oppower	Variant operation: Power
opshiftright	Variant operation: Shift left
opshiftright	Variant operation: Shift right
opsubtract	Variant operation: Subtraction
opxor	Variant operation: binary XOR operation.

tvarop describes a variant operation. It is mainly used for the variant manager to implement the various conversions and mathematical operations on a variant.

```

TVarRec = record
case VType : SizeInt of
vtInteger: (
public
  VInteger
  : LongInt;
);
vtBoolean: (
public
  VBoolean : Boolean;
);
vtChar
  : (
public
  VChar : Char;
);
vtWideChar: (
public
  VWideChar : WideChar
  ;
);
vtExtended: (
public
  VExtended : PExtended;

```

```
);  
vtString: (  
    public  
    VString : PShortString;  
);  
vtPointer: (  
    public  
    VPointer  
    : Pointer;  
);  
vtPChar: (  
    public  
    VPChar : PAnsiChar;  
);  
vtObject  
    : (  
    public  
    VObject : TObject;  
);  
vtClass: (  
    public  
    VClass : TClass  
    ;  
);  
vtPWideChar: (  
    public  
    VPWideChar : PWideChar;  
);  
vtAnsiString  
    : (  
    public  
    VAnsiString : Pointer;  
);  
vtCurrency: (  
    public  
    VCurrency  
    : PCurrency;  
);  
vtVariant: (  
    public  
    VVariant : PVariant;  
);  
vtInterface  
    : (  
    public  
    VInterface : Pointer;  
);  
vtWideString: (  
    public  
    VWideString  
    : Pointer;  
);  
vtInt64: (  
    public
```

```

    VInt64 : PInt64;
);
vtUnicodeString
    : (
public
    VUnicodeString : Pointer;
);
vtQWord: (
public
    VQWord
    : PQWord;
);
end

```

TVarRec is a record generated by the compiler for each element in a array of const call. The procedure that receives the constant array receives an array of TVarRec elements, with lower bound zero and high bound equal to the number of elements in the array minus one (as returned by High(Args))

```
tvartype = Word
```

Type with size of variant type.

```

TWaitForThreadTerminateHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID
;
                                     TimeoutMs: LongInt)
: DWord

```

Callback type for thread termination in TThreadManager ([1376](#)).

```
TWideStringManager = TUnicodeStringManager
```

TWideStringManager contains the definition of the widestring manager.

```
UCS2Char = WideChar
```

UCS2 Unicode character.

```
UCS4Char =
```

UCS Unicode character (unsigned 32 bit word)

```
Array = Array of UCS4Char
```

String of UCS4Char ([1387](#)) characters.

```
UInt16 = Word
```

An unsigned 16-bits integer

```
UInt32 = Cardinal
```

An unsigned 32-bits integer

`UInt64 = QWord`

Unsigned 64-bit integer

`UInt8 = Byte`

An unsigned 8-bits integer

`UIntPtr = PtrUInt`

Alias for `PtrUInt` (1356) type for compatibility with later Delphi versions.

`UnicodeChar = WideChar`

`UnicodeChar` is a single character from a `UnicodeString`. It equals `WideChar` in all respects.

`UnicodeString = UnicodeString`

`UnicodeString` is a string of `WideChars`. The main difference with `WideString` is that `unicode-string` is reference counted, and `WideString` is not reference counted on Windows.

`UTF8Char = AnsiChar`

`UTF8Char` is provided for completeness, a type alias for `AnsiChar`.

`UTF8String = ansistring`

UTF-8 Unicode (Ansi) string.

`ValSInt = LongInt`

Integer with the same size as the return code of the `Val` (1537) function.

`ValUInt = Cardinal`

Integer with the same size as the return code of the `Val` (1537) function.

`WChar = WideChar`

Wide char (16-bit sized char)

`WideChar = #$0000..#$FFFF`

This type is the base unit for all two byte character types, like `UnicodeString` (1388) and `WideString` (1388)

`WideString = WideString`

`WideString` is an alias for `UnicodeString` on UNIX. On windows, it is a different type which has no reference counting.

`Word = 0..65535`

An unsigned 16-bits integer

### 75.10.3 Variables

`argc` : `LongInt`; external 'operatingsystem\_parameter\_argc'

`argc` contains the number of command-line arguments passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`argv` : `PPChar`; external 'operatingsystem\_parameter\_argv'

`argv` contains a pointer to a nil-terminated array of null-terminated strings, containing the command-line arguments passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`DefaultFileSystemCodePage` : `TSystemCodePage`

`DefaultFileSystemCodePage` determines the code page to which file/path names are translated before they are passed to OS API calls, if the RTL uses a single byte OS API for this purpose on the current platform.

This code page is also used for intermediate operations on file paths inside the RTL before making OS API calls.

This variable does not exist in Delphi, and has been introduced in FPC to make it possible to change the value of `DefaultSystemCodePage` without breaking RTL interfaces with the OS file system API calls.

The initial value of this variable depends on the platform:

- Windows: UTF-8, because the RTL uses UTF-16 OS API calls (so no data is lost in intermediate operations).
- OS X and iOS: UTF-8 (as defined by Apple)
- Unix (excluding OS X and iOS): equals `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390). This is because the encoding of file names is undefined on Unix platforms: it is an untyped array of bytes that can be interpreted in any way; Specifically, it is not guaranteed to be valid UTF-8.
- Other platforms: same as `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390).

The value of this variable may be changed using the `SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage` (1509) procedure.

**Remark** The Unix/OS X/iOS settings only apply in case the `cwstring` widestring manager is installed, otherwise `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` will have the same value as `DefaultSystemCodePage` after program startup.

`DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage` : `TSystemCodePage`

`DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage` determines the code page to which file/path names are translated before they are returned from `RawByteString` (1358) file/path RTL routines.

Examples include the file/path names returned by the `RawByteString` versions of `SysUtils.FindFirst` (1313) and `GetDir` (1445).

The main reason for its existence is to enable the RTL to provide backward compatibility with earlier versions of FPC, as these always returned strings encoded in whatever the OS' single byte API used (normally `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390)).

The initial value of this variable depends on the platform:

- Windows: `DefaultSystemCodePage`, for backward compatibility.
- OS X and iOS: UTF-8, for backward compatibility. It was already always UTF-8 in the past, since that's what the OS file APIs returned, and the data was never converted.
- Other Unixes: `DefaultSystemCodePage`, for the same reason as `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` (1389). Setting this to a different value than `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` is a bad idea on these platforms, since any code page conversion can corrupt these strings as their initial encoding is unknown.
- Other platforms: same as `DefaultSystemCodePage`.

The value of this variable can be set using the `SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage` (1509) call.

`DefaultSystemCodePage` : `TSystemCodePage`

`DefaultSystemCodePage` is used to determine how `CP_ACP` is interpreted; it is what the program considers to be the current system codepage.

It is initialized to the default system codepage.

- On windows, this is the result of the `GetACP` operating call, which returns the Windows ANSI code page.
- On iOS, this is UTF-8
- on other Unixes this will be based on the currently set `LANG` or `LC_CTYPE` environment variables. Normally this is UTF-8, but that is not guaranteed to be the case.
- For all other platforms it is set to `CP_ACP`, as these platforms currently do not support multiple code pages, and are hardcoded to use their OS-specific code page in all cases.

The `DefaultSystemCodePage` value may be set using `SetMultiByteConversionCodePage` (1509). That means that it is not a good idea to use its value to determine the real OS "default system code page".

Note that if you change `DefaultSystemCodePage`, you should call `TEncoding.FreeEncodings` to free the encodings that were created. They will be recreated with the correct (new) `DefaultSystemCodePage`.

`DefaultUnicodeCodePage` : `TSystemCodePage`

`DefaultUnicodeCodePage` is the unicode code page for a new unicode string. On most platforms, this is `CP_UTF16` (1320).

`DispCallByIDProc` : `CodePointer`

`VarDispProc` is called by the compiler if it needs to perform an interface call from a variant which contains a dispatch interface. For instance, the following call:

```
Var
  V : OleVariant;
begin
  (V as IWord).OpenDocument('c:\temp\mydoc.doc');
end;
```

where `IWord` is a dispatch interface is encoded by the compiler and passed to `DispCallByIDProc`. This pointer must be set by a routine that calls the OS COM handling routines.

`envp : PPChar; external 'operatingsystem_parameter_envp'`

`envp` contains a pointer to a nil-terminated array of null-terminated strings, containing the environment variables passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`ErrOutput : Text`

`ErrOutput` is provided for Delphi compatibility.

`ExitCode : LongInt; public 'operatingsystem_result'`

Exit code for the program, will be communicated to the OS on exit.

`FirstDotAtFileNameStartIsExtension : Boolean = False`

`FirstDotAtFileNameStartIsExtension` determines what happens if a filename starts with a dot (.) character. If `True`, then the whole file name will be treated as extension. If `False`, then the extension is empty.

`InOutRes : Word`

`InOutRes` contains the result of the last I/O operation using one of the file I/O routines. When I/O checks are enabled, this variable is checked and if it is nonzero, a runtime error is raised.

Although it is a variable for historical reasons, it is not meant to be written to by user code, outside of routines that implement some form of file I/O.

`Input : Text`

Standard input text file.

`IsConsole : Boolean; public 'operatingsystem_isconsole' = False`

`True` for console applications, `False` for GUI applications.

`IsLibrary : Boolean; public 'operatingsystem_islibrary' = False`

`True` if the current module is a library. Otherwise module is an executable

`mem : Array[0..$7fffffff-1] of Byte`

`mem` is an array of bytes, representing the computer's memory. This array is available only when compiling for the Dos Go32V2 target. Its use is not recommended, and it is not even available on other platforms.

`meml : Array[0..($7fffffffdivsizeof(longint))-1] of LongInt`

`memw` is an array of longints, representing the computer's memory as 32-bit signed integers. This array is available only when compiling for the Dos Go32V2 target. Its use is not recommended, and it is not even available on other platforms.



`memw : Array[0..($7fffffffdivsizeof(word))-1] of Word`

`memw` is an array of words, representing the computer's memory as 2-byte words. This array is available only when compiling for the Dos Go32V2 target. Its use is not recommended, and it is not even available on other platforms.

`NoErrMsg : Boolean = Falseplatform`

Unused, for Delphi compatibility

`Output : Text`

Standard output text file.

`RandSeed : Cardinal`

Seed for Random (1488) function.

`ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails : Boolean`

`ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails` describes what happens if there is no more memory available from the operating system. If set to `True` the memory manager will return `Nil`. If set to `False` then a run-time error will occur.

`softfloat_exception_flags : TFPUEExceptionMask`

Current soft float exception flags

`softfloat_exception_mask : TFPUEExceptionMask`

Current soft float exception mask

`softfloat_rounding_mode : TFPURoundingMode`

`softfloat_rounding_mode` determines how the software floating-point emulation routines do the rounding. The value can be one of the following:

**`float_round_nearest_even`** Round to nearest even number

**`float_round_down`** Round down

**`float_round_up`** Round up

**`float_round_to_zero`** Round in the direction of zero (down for positive, up for negative)

`StackBottom : Pointer`

Current stack bottom.

`StackLength : SizeUInt`

Maximum stack length.

`StdErr : Text`

Standard diagnostic output text file.

`StdOut : Text`

Alias for Output ([1392](#)).

`ThreadID : TThreadID`

Current Thread ID.

`UTF8CompareLocale : TSystemCodePage`

`UTF8CompareLocale` is currently present for Delphi compatibility only, it is not used in FPC code.

`widestringmanager : TUnicodeStringManager`

Contains the current widestring manager. Do not use directly.

`WriteErrorsToStdErr : Boolean = True`

`WriteErrorsToStdErr` can be set to `True` to write error messages (run-time errors, exceptions) to `StdErr` instead of to standard output. This is the default behaviour. When set to `False`, error message will be written to standard output.

## 75.11 Procedures and functions

### 75.11.1 Abs

Synopsis: Calculate absolute value

Declaration: `function Abs(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Abs(l: Int64) : Int64`  
`function Abs(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Abs` returns the absolute value of a variable. The result of the function has the same type as its argument, which can be any numerical type.

Errors: None.

See also: Round ([1499](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Abs function. }*

**Var**

`r : real;`

---

```

    i : integer;

begin
    r:=abs(-1.0);    { r:=1.0 }
    i:=abs(-21);     { i:=21 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.2 AbstractError

Synopsis: Generate an abstract error.

Declaration: `procedure AbstractError`

Visibility: default

Description: `AbstractError` generates an abstract error (run-time error 211). If the `AbstractErrorProc` ([1318](#)) constant is set, it will be called instead.

Errors: This routine causes a run-time error 211.

See also: `AbstractErrorProc` ([1318](#))

### 75.11.3 AcquireExceptionObject

Synopsis: Obtain a reference to the current exception object

Declaration: `function AcquireExceptionObject : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AcquireExceptionObject` returns the current exception object. It raises the reference count of the exception object, so it will not be freed. Calling this method is only valid within an except block.

The effect of this function is countered by re-raising an exception via `raise`;

To make sure that the exception object is released when it is no longer needed, `ReleaseExceptionObject` ([1493](#)) must be called when the reference is no longer needed.

Errors: If there is no current exception, a run-time error 231 will occur.

See also: `ReleaseExceptionObject` ([1493](#))

### 75.11.4 add(variant,variant):variant

Synopsis: Implement addition (+) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator +(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the addition + operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opadd`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator -(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#))

### 75.11.5 AddExitProc

Synopsis: Add an exit procedure to the exit procedure chain.

Declaration: `procedure AddExitProc(Proc: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddExitProc` adds `Proc` to the exit procedure chain. At program exit, all procedures added in this way will be called in reverse order.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExitProc` ([1321](#))

### 75.11.6 Addr

Synopsis: Return address of a variable

Declaration: `function Addr(X: TAnytype) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Addr` returns a pointer to its argument, which can be any type, or a function or procedure name. The returned pointer isn't typed. The same result can be obtained by the `@` operator, which can return a typed pointer (see the programmer's guide).

Errors: None

See also: `SizeOf` ([1514](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Addr function. }*

**Const** `Zero : integer = 0;`

**Var** `p : pointer;`  
`i : Integer;`

**begin**

`p:=Addr(p);`      *{ P points to itself }*

`p:=Addr(i);`      *{ P points to i }*

`p:=Addr(Zero);`   *{ P points to 'Zero' }*

**end.**

---

### 75.11.7 Align

Synopsis: Return aligned version of an address

Declaration: `function Align(Addr: PtrUInt; Alignment: PtrUInt) : PtrUInt`  
`function Align(Addr: Pointer; Alignment: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Align` returns `Address`, aligned to `Alignment` bytes.

Errors: None.

### 75.11.8 AllocMem

Synopsis: Allocate and clear memory.

Declaration: `function AllocMem(Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AllocMem` calls `getmem GetMem` ([1446](#)), and clears the allocated memory, i.e. the allocated memory is filled with `Size` zero bytes.

See also: `GetMem` ([1446](#))

### 75.11.9 AnsiToUtf8

Synopsis: Convert ansi string to UTF-8 string

Declaration: `function AnsiToUtf8(const s: RawByteString) : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiToUtf8` converts the ansistring `S` to a UTF-8 format, that is, it converts the string from whatever codepage is currently in use, to UTF-8.

The current codepage is fetched from the system, if internationalization support is enabled. It can be UTF-8, in which case the function simply returns `S`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Utf8toAnsi` ([1536](#))

### 75.11.10 Append

Synopsis: Open a file in append mode

Declaration: `procedure Append(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Append` opens an existing file in append mode. Any data written to `F` will be appended to the file. Only text files can be opened in append mode. After a call to `Append`, the file `F` becomes write-only. File sharing is not taken into account when calling `Append`.

Errors: If the file doesn't exist when appending, a run-time error will be generated. This behaviour has changed on Windows and Linux platforms, where in versions prior to 1.0.6, the file would be created in append mode.

See also: `Rewrite` ([1495](#)), `Close` ([1411](#)), `Reset` ([1494](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex3.pp`

**Program** `Example3`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Append function. }*

**Var** `f` : text;

**begin**

  Assign (`f`, 'test.txt');

  Rewrite (`f`); *{ file is opened for write , and emptied }*

---

```

WriteIn (F, 'This is the first line of text.txt');
close (f);
Append(f);           { file is opened for write , but NOT emptied.
                       any text written to it is appended.}
WriteIn (f, 'This is the second line of text.txt');
close (f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.11 ArcTan

Synopsis: Calculate inverse tangent

Declaration: `function ArcTan(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `ArcTan` returns the Arctangent of X, which can be any Real type. The resulting angle is in radial units.

Errors: None

See also: `Sin` ([1514](#)), `Cos` ([1419](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program Example4;

{ Program to demonstrate the ArcTan function. }

Var R : Real;

begin
  R:=ArcTan(0);      { R:=0 }
  R:=ArcTan(1)/pi;   { R:=0.25 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.12 ArrayStringToPPchar

Synopsis: Convert an array of string to an array of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function ArrayStringToPPchar(const S: Array of AnsiString;
 reserveentries: LongInt) : PPChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `ArrayStringToPPchar` creates an array of null-terminated strings that point to strings which are the same as the strings in the array S. The function returns a pointer to this array. The array and the strings it contains must be disposed of after being used, because it they are allocated on the heap.

The `ReserveEntries` parameter tells `ArrayStringToPPchar` to allocate room at the end of the array for another `ReserveEntries` entries.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an error may occur.

See also: `StringToPPChar` ([1521](#))

**75.11.13 Assert**

Synopsis: Check validity of a given condition.

Declaration: `procedure Assert (Expr: Boolean)`  
`procedure Assert (Expr: Boolean; const Msg: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: With assertions on, `Assert` tests if `expr` is false, and if so, aborts the application with a Runtime error 227 and an optional error message in `msg`. If `expr` is true, program execution continues normally. If assertions are not enabled at compile time, this routine does nothing, and no code is generated for the `Assert` call. Enabling and disabling assertions at compile time is done via the `\$C` or `\$ASSERTIONS` compiler switches. These are global switches. The default behavior of the `assert` call can be changed by setting a new handler in the `AssertErrorProc` variable. `Sysutils` overrides the default handler to raise a `EAssertionFailed` exception.

Errors: None.

See also: `Halt` ([1453](#)), `Runerror` ([1501](#))

**75.11.14 Assign**

Synopsis: Assign a name to a file

Declaration: `procedure Assign(out f: File; const Name: ShortString)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File; const Name: UnicodeString)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: File; const Name: RawByteString)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const Name: shortstring)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const Name: unicodestring)`  
`procedure Assign(out f: TypedFile; const Name: RawByteString)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const s: shortstring)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const s: unicodestring)`  
`procedure Assign(out t: Text; const s: RawByteString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Assign` assigns a name to `F`, which can be any file type. This call doesn't open the file, it just assigns a name to a file variable, and marks the file as closed.

Note that the filename (including path) can be only 255 characters long.

Errors: None.

See also: `Reset` ([1494](#)), `Rewrite` ([1495](#)), `Append` ([1396](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** `Example5;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Assign function. }*

**Var** `F : text;`

```

begin
  Assign (F, '');
  Rewrite (f);
  { The following can be put in any file by redirecting it
    from the command line. }
  Writeln (f, 'This goes to standard output !');
  Close (f);
  Assign (F, 'Test.txt');
  rewrite (f);
  writeln (f, 'This doesn't go to standard output !');
  close (f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.15 assign(olevariant):Real

Synopsis: Assign an ole-variant to a real-precision float

Declaration: operator :=(const source: olevariant) : Real

Visibility: default

### 75.11.16 assign(olevariant):single

Synopsis: Assign an ole-variant to a single-precision float

Declaration: operator :=(const source: olevariant) : single

Visibility: default

### 75.11.17 assign(olevariant):UnicodeString

Synopsis: Assign an ole-variant to a unicode string

Declaration: operator :=(const source: olevariant) : UnicodeString

Visibility: default

### 75.11.18 assign(Real):olevariant

Synopsis: Assign a real-precision float to an ole-variant

Declaration: operator :=(const source: Real) : olevariant

Visibility: default

### 75.11.19 assign(Real):variant

Synopsis: Assign a real-precision float to a variant

Declaration: operator :=(const source: Real) : variant

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a double-precision value.



### 75.11.20 **assign(single):olevariant**

Synopsis: Assign a single-precision float to an ole-variant

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: single) : olevariant`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.21 **assign(single):variant**

Synopsis: Assign a single-precision float to a variant

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: single) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a double-precision value

### 75.11.22 **assign(UCS4String):variant**

Synopsis: Assign UCS4String to a variant, performing the necessary conversions

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: UCS4String) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a widestring.

### 75.11.23 **assign(UnicodeString):olevariant**

Synopsis: Assign a unicodestring to an ole-variant

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: UnicodeString) : olevariant`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.24 **assign(UnicodeString):variant**

Synopsis: Assign UnicodeString to a variant, performing the necessary conversions

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: UnicodeString) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a widestring.

### 75.11.25 **assign(UTF8String):variant**

Synopsis: Assign an UTF-8 string to a variant, performing the necessary conversions

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: UTF8String) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The resulting variant is a widestring.

**75.11.26 assign(variant):Real**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to a real-precision float

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : Real`

Visibility: default

**75.11.27 assign(variant):single**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to a single-precision float

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : single`

Visibility: default

**75.11.28 assign(variant):unicodestring**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to a unicodestring

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : unicodestring`

Visibility: default

**75.11.29 assign(variant):UTF8String**

Synopsis: Assign a variant to an UTF8String

Declaration: `operator :=(const source: variant) : UTF8String`

Visibility: default

**75.11.30 Assigned**

Synopsis: Check if a pointer is valid

Declaration: `function Assigned(P: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Assigned` returns `True` if `P` is non-nil and returns `False` if `P` is nil. The main use of `Assigned` is that Procedural variables, method variables and class-type variables also can be passed to `Assigned`.

Errors: None

See also: `New` ([1480](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex96.pp`

---

**Program** `Example96`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Assigned function. }*

**Var** `P : Pointer;`

**begin**

**If Not Assigned(P) then**

---

```

    Writeln ('Pointer is initially NIL');
    P:=@P;
    If Not Assigned(P) then
        Writeln('Internal inconsistency')
    else
        Writeln('All is well in FPC')
end.

```

---

### 75.11.31 BasicEventCreate

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `function BasicEventCreate(EventAttributes: Pointer;  
   AManualReset: Boolean; InitialState: Boolean;  
   const Name: ansistring) : PEventState`

Visibility: default

Description: `BasicEventCreate` is obsolete, use `RTLEventCreate` ([1500](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1500](#))

### 75.11.32 BasicEventDestroy

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure BasicEventDestroy(state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventdestroy` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventDestroy` ([1500](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventDestroy` ([1500](#))

### 75.11.33 BasicEventResetEvent

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure BasicEventResetEvent(state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventResetEvent` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1501](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1501](#))

### 75.11.34 BasicEventSetEvent

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure BasicEventSetEvent(state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventSetEvent` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1501](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1501](#))

**75.11.35 BasicEventWaitFor**

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `function BasicEventWaitFor(Timeout: Cardinal; state: PEventState)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventwaitfor` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1501](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1501](#))

**75.11.36 BeginThread**

Synopsis: Start a new thread.

Declaration: `function BeginThread(sa: Pointer; stacksize: SizeUInt;  
ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;  
creationFlags: DWord; var ThreadId: TThreadID)  
: TThreadID`  
`function BeginThread(ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc) : TThreadID`  
`function BeginThread(ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer)  
: TThreadID`  
`function BeginThread(ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;  
var ThreadId: TThreadID) : TThreadID`  
`function BeginThread(ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc; p: pointer;  
var ThreadId: TThreadID; const stacksize: SizeUInt)  
: TThreadID`

Visibility: default

Description: `BeginThread` starts a new thread and executes `ThreadFunction` in the new thread. If `P` is specified, then it is passed to `ThreadFunction`. If `ThreadId` is specified, it is filled with the thread ID of the newly started thread. If `StackSize` is specified, it is set as the stack size for the new thread. If none is specified, a default stack size of 4MiB is used.

The function returns the thread handle (or ID, on some other operating systems like Linux or OS/2) on success, or 0 if an error occurred. Note that the thread ID and handle are the same on Unix processes, and that the thread ID and thread handle are different on windows systems.

Errors: On error, the value "0" is returned.

See also: `EndThread` ([1427](#))

**75.11.37 BEtoN**

Synopsis: Convert Big Endian-ordered integer to Native-ordered integer

Declaration: `function BEtoN(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt`  
`function BEtoN(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function BEtoN(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function BEtoN(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function BEtoN(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`  
`function BEtoN(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** BEToN will rearrange the bytes in a Big-Endian number to the native order for the current processor. That is, for a big-endian processor, it will do nothing, and for a little-endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes.

See also: LEtoN ([1472](#)), NtoBE ([1480](#)), NtoLE ([1480](#))

### 75.11.38 BinStr

**Synopsis:** Convert integer to string with binary representation.

**Declaration:**

```
function BinStr(Val: LongInt; cnt: Byte) : shortstring
function BinStr(Val: Int64; cnt: Byte) : shortstring
function BinStr(Val: QWord; cnt: Byte) : shortstring
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** BinStr returns a string with the binary representation of Value. The string has at most cnt characters. (i.e. only the cnt rightmost bits are taken into account) To have a complete representation of any longint-type value, 32 bits are needed, i.e. cnt=32

**Errors:** None.

See also: Str ([1518](#)), Val ([1537](#)), HexStr ([1453](#)), OctStr ([1481](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex82.pp

---

**Program** example82;

*{ Program to demonstrate the BinStr function }*

**Const** Value = 45678;

**Var** I : longint;

**begin**

**For** I:=8 **to** 20 **do**

**WriteLn** ( BinStr(Value,I):20);

**end.**

---

### 75.11.39 BlockRead

**Synopsis:** Read data from an untyped file into memory

**Declaration:**

```
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Int64;
var Result: Int64)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: LongInt;
var Result: LongInt)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Cardinal;
var Result: Cardinal)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Word; var Result: Word)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Word;
var Result: Integer)
procedure BlockRead(var f: File; var Buf; count: Int64)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Blockread` reads `count` or less records from file `F`. A record is a block of bytes with size specified by the `Rewrite` (1495) or `Reset` (1494) statement. The result is placed in `Buffer`, which must contain enough room for `Count` records. The function cannot read partial records. If `Result` is specified, it contains the number of records actually read. If `Result` isn't specified, and less than `Count` records were read, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled by the `{SI}` switch.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Blockwrite` (1405), `Close` (1411), `Reset` (1494), `Assign` (1398)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex6.pp`

**Program** `Example6`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the BlockRead and BlockWrite functions. }*

```

Var Fin, fout : File;
    NumRead, NumWritten : Word;
    Buf : Array[1..2048] of byte;
    Total : Longint;

begin
    Assign (Fin, Paramstr(1));
    Assign (Fout, Paramstr(2));
    Reset (Fin, 1);
    Rewrite (Fout, 1);
    Total := 0;
    Repeat
        BlockRead (Fin, buf, Sizeof(buf), NumRead);
        BlockWrite (Fout, Buf, NumRead, NumWritten);
        inc (Total, NumWritten);
    Until (NumRead = 0) or (NumWritten <> NumRead);
    Write ('Copied ', Total, ' bytes from file ', paramstr(1));
    Writeln (' to file ', paramstr(2));
    close(fin);
    close(fout);
end.

```

#### 75.11.40 BlockWrite

**Synopsis:** Write data from memory to an untyped file

**Declaration:**

```

procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: Int64;
    var Result: Int64)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: LongInt;
    var Result: LongInt)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: Cardinal;
    var Result: Cardinal)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: Word;
    var Result: Word)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: Word;
    var Result: Integer)
procedure BlockWrite(var f: File; const Buf; Count: LongInt)

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BlockWrite` writes `count` records from `buffer` to the file `F`. A record is a block of bytes with size specified by the `Rewrite` (1495) or `Reset` (1494) statement. If the records couldn't be written to disk, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled by the `{ $I }` switch.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `{ $I }` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{ $I- }` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Blockread` (1404), `Close` (1411), `Rewrite` (1495), `Assign` (1398)

### 75.11.41 Break

**Synopsis:** Exit current loop construct.

**Declaration:** `procedure Break`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Break` jumps to the statement following the end of the current repetitive statement. The code between the `Break` call and the end of the repetitive statement is skipped. The condition of the repetitive statement is NOT evaluated.

This can be used with `For`, `var{repeat}` and `While` statements.

Note that although `Break` is a compiler intrinsic (i.e. is treated specially) it is defined as a procedure in the system unit, and hence can be redefined.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Continue` (1417), `Exit` (1433)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex87.pp`

---

**Program** `Example87`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Break function. }*

```

Var I : longint;

begin
  I:=0;
  While I<10 Do
    begin
      Inc(I);
      If I>5 Then
        Break;
      Writeln (i);
    end;
  I:=0;
  Repeat
    Inc(I);
    If I>5 Then
      Break;
    Writeln (i);
  Until I>=10;
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      If I>5 Then
        Break;
      Writeln (i);
    end;
end.
```

---

**Listing:** ./refex/ex121.pp

---

```

{
  Example 121:
  Continue, break and exit are system procedures.
  They can be redefined
}

procedure continue;

begin
  WriteLn( 'Continue' );
end;

Procedure Exit;

begin
  WriteLn( 'exit' );
end;

Procedure Break;

begin
  WriteLn( 'Break' );
end;

begin
  Repeat
    Continue;
    Break;
    exit;
  Until True;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.42 BsfByte

**Synopsis:** Return the position of the rightmost set bit in an 8-bit value

**Declaration:** `function BsfByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** BsfByte scans the byte AValue, starting at position 0 (rightmost position) and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: BsrByte ([1408](#)), BsfWord ([1408](#)), BsfDWord ([1407](#)), BsfQWord ([1408](#))

### 75.11.43 BsfDWord

**Synopsis:** Return the position of the rightmost set bit in a 32-bit value

**Declaration:** `function BsfDWord(const AValue: DWord) : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default



**Description:** `BsfDWord` scans the `DWord AValue`, starting at position 0 (rightmost position) , and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1407](#)), `BsfWord` ([1408](#)), `BsrDWord` ([1408](#)), `BsfQWord` ([1408](#))

#### 75.11.44 BsfQWord

**Synopsis:** Return the position of the rightmost set bit in a 64-bit value

**Declaration:** `function BsfQWord(const AValue: QWord) : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BsfQWord` scans the `QWord AValue`, starting at position 0 (rightmost position) , and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1407](#)), `BsfWord` ([1408](#)), `BsfDWord` ([1407](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1409](#))

#### 75.11.45 BsfWord

**Synopsis:** Return the position of the rightmost set bit in a 16-bit value

**Declaration:** `function BsfWord(const AValue: Word) : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BsfWord` scans the `word AValue`, starting at position 0 (rightmost position) , and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1407](#)), `BsrWord` ([1409](#)), `BsfDWord` ([1407](#)), `BsfQWord` ([1408](#))

#### 75.11.46 BsrByte

**Synopsis:** Return the position of the leftmost set bit in an 8-bit value

**Declaration:** `function BsrByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BsfByte` scans the `byte AValue`, starting at the leftmost position and working towards position 0, and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1407](#)), `BsrWord` ([1409](#)), `BsrDWord` ([1408](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1409](#))

#### 75.11.47 BsrDWord

**Synopsis:** Return the position of the leftmost set bit in a 32-bit value

**Declaration:** `function BsrDWord(const AValue: DWord) : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BsrDWord` scans the `DWord AValue`, starting at the leftmost position and working towards position 0, and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsrByte` ([1408](#)), `BsrWord` ([1409](#)), `BsfDWord` ([1407](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1409](#))

#### 75.11.48 BsrQWord

**Synopsis:** Return the position of the leftmost set bit in a 64-bit value

**Declaration:** `function BsrQWord(const AValue: QWord) : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BsfQWord` scans the `QWord AValue`, starting at the leftmost position and working towards position 0, and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsfByte` ([1407](#)), `BsfWord` ([1408](#)), `BsfDWord` ([1407](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1409](#))

#### 75.11.49 BsrWord

**Synopsis:** Return the position of the leftmost set bit in a 16-bit value

**Declaration:** `function BsrWord(const AValue: Word) : Cardinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BsrWord` scans the word `AValue`, starting at the leftmost position and working towards position 0, and returns the index of the first set bit. The position is measured from the 0-th, rightmost bit.

When the input is 0, the result is 255 (unsigned equivalent of -1).

See also: `BsrByte` ([1408](#)), `BsfWord` ([1408](#)), `BsrDWord` ([1408](#)), `BsrQWord` ([1409](#))

#### 75.11.50 CaptureBacktrace

**Synopsis:** Return stack trace

**Declaration:** `function CaptureBacktrace(skipframes: SizeInt; count: SizeInt; frames: PCodePointer) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CaptureBacktrace` will fill the array pointed to by `frames` with the addresses of a backtrace. It will skip `skipframes` frames, and will write at most `count` addresses. Frames must point to enough memory to hold the stacktrace, which is `count*sizeof(codepointer)` bytes.

See also: `Get_pc_addr` ([1452](#)), `get_caller_stackinfo` ([1451](#)), `get_caller_addr` ([1451](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1451](#))

### 75.11.51 ChDir

Synopsis: Change current working directory.

Declaration: `procedure ChDir(const s: shortstring); Overload`  
`procedure ChDir(const s: RawByteString); Overload`  
`procedure ChDir(const s: unicodestring); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Chdir` changes the working directory of the process to `S`.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Mkdir` ([1477](#)), `Rmdir` ([1496](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the ChDir function. }*

```
begin
  { $I- }
  ChDir (ParamStr(1));
  if IOResult <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Cannot change to directory : ', paramstr (1));
end.
```

---

### 75.11.52 Chr

Synopsis: Convert byte value to character value

Declaration: `function Chr(b: Byte) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: `Chr` returns the character which has ASCII value `X`.

Historical note:

Originally, Pascal did not have typecasts and `chr` was a necessary function in order to do certain operations on ASCII values of characters. With the arrival of typecasting a generic approach became possible, making `chr` mostly obsolete. However, `chr` is not considered deprecated and remains in wide use today.

Errors: None.

See also: `Ord` ([1483](#)), `Str` ([1518](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chr function. }*

```
begin
  Write (chr(10),chr(13)); { The same effect as Writeln; }
end.
```

---

### 75.11.53 Close

Synopsis: Close a file

Declaration: `procedure Close(var f: File)`  
`procedure Close(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` flushes the buffer of the file `F` and closes `F`. After a call to `Close`, data can no longer be read from or written to `F`. To reopen a file closed with `Close`, it isn't necessary to assign the file again. A call to `Reset` (1494) or `Rewrite` (1495) is sufficient.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Assign` (1398), `Reset` (1494), `Rewrite` (1495), `Flush` (1442)

Listing: `./refex/ex9.pp`

Program `Example9`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Close function. }*

**Var** `F` : `text`;

**begin**

`Assign` (`f`, 'Test.txt');

**ReWrite** (`F`);

**WriteIn** (`F`, 'Some text written to Test.txt');

`close` (`f`); *{ Flushes contents of buffer to disk,*  
*closes the file. Omitting this may*  
*cause data NOT to be written to disk. }*

**end.**

### 75.11.54 CloseThread

Synopsis: Close a thread and free up resources used by the thread

Declaration: `function CloseThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseThread` must be called on any thread started with `BeginThread` (1403). It must be called after the thread has ended (either by exiting the thread function or after calling `EndThread` (1427)).

Errors: If no threadmanager is installed, an exception may be raised or runtime error 232 may occur if no exceptions are used.

See also: `BeginThread` (1403), `EndThread` (1427)

### 75.11.55 CompareByte

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte

Declaration: `function CompareByte(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** CompareByte compares two memory regions buf1,buf2 on a byte-per-byte basis for a total of len bytes.

The function returns one of the following values:

**less than 0** if buf1 and buf2 contain different bytes in the first len bytes, and the first such byte is smaller in buf1 than the byte at the same position in buf2.

**0** if the first len bytes in buf1 and buf2 are equal.

**greater than 0** if buf1 and buf2 contain different bytes in the first len bytes, and the first such byte is larger in buf1 than the byte at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareChar ([1412](#)), CompareChar0 ([1414](#)), CompareWord ([1415](#)), CompareDWord ([1414](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex99.pp

---

**Program** Example99;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareByte function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;

**Var**

    Buf1,Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** byte;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

    Write('First ',Len,' positions are ');  
    **if** CompareByte(Buf1,Buf2,Len)<>0 **then**  
        Write('NOT ');  
        Writeln('equal');  
    **end**;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** ArraySize **do**  
        **begin**  
            Buf1[I]:= I;  
            **If** I<=HalfArraySize **Then**  
                Buf2[I]:= I  
            **else**  
                Buf2[I]:= HalfArraySize-I;  
            **end**;  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);  
    **end**.

---

### 75.11.56 CompareChar

Synopsis: compare 2 memory buffers character per character

**Declaration:** `function CompareChar(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CompareChar` compares two memory regions `buf1`, `buf2` on a character-per-character basis for a total of `len` characters.

The `CompareChar0` variant compares `len` bytes, or until a zero character is found.

The function returns one of the following values:

-If `buf1` and `buf2` contain different characters in the first `len` positions, and the first such character is smaller in `buf1` than the character at the same position in `buf2`.

0If the first `len` characters in `buf1` and `buf2` are equal.

1If `buf1` and `buf2` contain different characters in the first `len` positions, and the first such character is larger in `buf1` than the character at the same position in `buf2`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `CompareByte` (1411), `CompareChar0` (1414), `CompareWord` (1415), `CompareDWord` (1414)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex100.pp`

---

**Program** `Example100`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareChar function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize = 100;`  
`HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;`

**Var**

`Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..ArraySize] of char;`  
`I : longint;`

**Procedure** `CheckPos(Len : Longint);`

**Begin**

`Write('First ', Len, ' characters are ');`  
`if CompareChar(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 then`  
`Write('NOT ');`  
`Writeln('equal');`  
`end;`

**Procedure** `CheckNullPos(Len : Longint);`

**Begin**

`Write('First ', Len, ' non-null characters are ');`  
`if CompareChar0(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 then`  
`Write('NOT ');`  
`Writeln('equal');`  
`end;`

**begin**

`For I:=1 to ArraySize do`  
`begin`  
`Buf1[I]:=chr(I);`  
`If I<=HalfArraySize Then`  
`Buf2[I]:=chr(I)`

```

    else
        Buf2[i] := chr(HalfArraySize - 1);
    end;
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize);
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize + 1);
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);
    For i := 1 to 4 do
        begin
            buf1[Random(ArraySize) + 1] := Chr(0);
            buf2[Random(ArraySize) + 1] := Chr(0);
        end;
    Randomize;
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize div 2);
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize);
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize + 1);
    CheckNullPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.57 CompareChar0

Synopsis: Compare two buffers character by character till a null-character is reached.

Declaration: `function CompareChar0(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareChar0 compares 2 buffers buf1 and buf2 for a maximum length of len or till a null character is reached in either buffer. The result depends on the contents of the buffers:

< 0 If buf1 contains a character less than the corresponding character in buf2.  
 0 If both buffers are equal  
 > 0 If buf1 contains a character greater than the corresponding character in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareByte ([1411](#)), CompareChar ([1412](#)), CompareDWord ([1414](#)), CompareWord ([1415](#))

### 75.11.58 CompareDWord

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers DWord per DWord

Declaration: `function CompareDWord(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareDWord compares two memory regions buf1, buf2 on a DWord-per-DWord basis for a total of len DWords. (A DWord is 4 bytes).

The function returns one of the following values:

-1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different DWords in the first len DWords, and the first such DWord is smaller in buf1 than the DWord at the same position in buf2.  
 0 if the first len DWords in buf1 and buf2 are equal.  
 1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different DWords in the first len DWords, and the first such DWord is larger in buf1 than the DWord at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareChar ([1412](#)), CompareByte ([1411](#)), CompareWord ([1415](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex101.pp

---

**Program** Example101;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareDWord function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize **Div** 2;

**Var**

    Buf1, Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** Dword;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

**Write**( 'First ', Len, ' DWords are ' );  
    **if** CompareDWord(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 **then**  
        **Write**( 'NOT ' );  
    **Writeln**( 'equal' );  
**end**;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** ArraySize **do**  
        **begin**  
            Buf1[I]:=I;  
            **If** I<=HalfArraySize **Then**  
                Buf2[I]:=I  
            **else**  
                Buf2[I]:=HalfArraySize-I;  
            **end**;  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize **div** 2);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize **Div** 2);  
    **end**.

---

### 75.11.59 CompareWord

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers word per word

Declaration: function CompareWord(const buf1; const buf2; len: SizeInt) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: CompareWord compares two memory regions buf1, buf2 on a Word-per-Word basis for a total of len Words. (A Word is 2 bytes).

The function returns one of the following values:

- 1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different Words in the first len Words, and the first such Word is smaller in buf1 than the Word at the same position in buf2.



**0**if the first `len` Words in `buf1` and `buf2` are equal.

**1**if `buf1` and `buf2` contain different Words in the first `len` Words, and the first such Word is larger in `buf1` than the Word at the same position in `buf2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `CompareChar` ([1412](#)), `CompareByte` ([1411](#)), `CompareDWord` ([1414](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex102.pp`

---

**Program** `Example102`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareWord function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize` = 100;  
`HalfArraySize` = `ArraySize Div 2`;

**Var**

`Buf1, Buf2` : **Array**[1..`ArraySize`] **of** `Word`;  
`l` : `longint`;

**Procedure** `CheckPos`(`Len` : `Longint`);

**Begin**

`Write`( 'First ', `Len`, ' words are ');  
**if** `CompareWord`(`Buf1`, `Buf2`, `Len`)<>0 **then**  
    `Write`( 'NOT ');  
    `Writeln`( 'equal ');  
**end**;

**begin**

**For** `l`:=1 **to** `ArraySize` **do**  
    **begin**  
        `Buf1[l]`:= `l`;  
        **if** `l`<=`HalfArraySize` **Then**  
            `Buf2[l]`:= `l`  
        **else**  
            `Buf2[l]`:= `HalfArraySize-l`;  
        **end**;  
        `CheckPos`(`HalfArraySize div 2`);  
        `CheckPos`(`HalfArraySize`);  
        `CheckPos`(`HalfArraySize+1`);  
        `CheckPos`(`HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2`);  
    **end**;  
**end**.

---

### 75.11.60 Concat

Synopsis: Append one string to another.

Declaration: `function Concat(const S1: string; const S2: string; const S3: string;  
                                  const Sn: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Concat` concatenates the strings `S1, S2` etc. to one long string. The resulting string is truncated at a length of 255 bytes. The same operation can be performed with the `+` operation.

Errors: None.

See also: Copy ([1418](#)), Delete ([1422](#)), Insert ([1464](#)), Pos ([1485](#)), Length ([1470](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Concat function. }
Var
  S : String;

begin
  S:=Concat('This can be done', ' Easier ', 'with the + operator !');
end.
```

---

### 75.11.61 Continue

Synopsis: Continue with next loop cycle.

Declaration: `procedure Continue`

Visibility: default

Description: `Continue` jumps to the end of the current repetitive statement. The code between the `Continue` call and the end of the repetitive statement is skipped. The condition of the repetitive statement is then checked again.

This can be used with `For`, `repeat` and `While` statements.

Note that although `Continue` is a compiler intrinsic (i.e. is treated specially) it is defined as an identifier in the system unit, hence it can be redefined.

Errors: None.

See also: Break ([1406](#)), Exit ([1433](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex86.pp

---

**Program** Example86;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Continue function. }

Var I : longint;

begin
  I:=0;
  While I<10 Do
    begin
      Inc(I);
      If I<5 Then
        Continue;
      Writeln (i);
    end;
  I:=0;
  Repeat
    Inc(I);
    If I<5 Then
      Continue;
```

```

    Writeln (i);
  Until i>=10;
  For i:=1 to 10 do
  begin
    If i<5 Then
      Continue;
    Writeln (i);
  end;
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./refex/ex121.pp

---

```

{
  Example 121:
  Continue, break and exit are system procedures.
  They can be redefined
}

```

```

procedure continue;

```

```

begin
  Writeln('Continue');
end;

```

```

Procedure Exit;

```

```

begin
  Writeln('exit');
end;

```

```

Procedure Break;

```

```

begin
  Writeln('Break');
end;

```

```

begin
  Repeat
    Continue;
    Break;
    exit;
  Until True;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.62 Copy

Synopsis: Copy part of a string.

**Declaration:** function Copy(S: AStringType; Index: SizeInt; Count: SizeInt) : string  
 function Copy(A: DynArrayType; Index: SizeInt; Count: SizeInt)  
                   : DynArray

Visibility: default

**Description:** Copy returns a string which is a copy of the Count characters in S, starting at position Index. If Count is larger than the length of the string S, the result is truncated. If Index is larger than the length of the string S, then an empty string is returned. Index is 1-based.

For dynamic arrays, `Copy` returns a new dynamic array of the same type as the original one, and copies `Count` elements from the old array, starting at the position in `Index`.

In Delphi mode, the `Count` argument can be omitted. In that case, the string (or dynamic array) is copied from the position `Index` till the end of the string or array.

Errors: None.

See also: [Delete \(1422\)](#), [Insert \(1464\)](#), [Pos \(1485\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Copy function. }*

**Var** S,T : **String**;

**begin**

T:= '1234567' ;

S:=**Copy** (T,1,2);     { S:= '12'     }

S:=**Copy** (T,4,2);     { S:= '45'     }

S:=**Copy** (T,4,8);     { S:= '4567'   }

**end.**

---

### 75.11.63 CopyArray

Synopsis: Copy managed-type elements in array

**Declaration:** `procedure CopyArray(dest: Pointer; source: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer; count: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CopyArray` copies `count` elements containing managed types from the array pointed to by `source` to the array pointed to by `dest`. For this, it uses the type information of the elements as specified in `typeinfo`.

Under normal circumstances, this procedure should not be used, it is called automatically by the compiler when an array-typed variables are assigned to each other.

See also: [InitializeArray \(1463\)](#), [FinalizeArray \(1440\)](#), [DynArraySize \(1427\)](#), [DynArrayClear \(1426\)](#), [DynArrayDim \(1426\)](#), [DynArrayBounds \(1426\)](#)

### 75.11.64 Cos

Synopsis: Calculate cosine of angle

**Declaration:** `function Cos(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Cos` returns the cosine of `X`, where `X` is an angle, in radians. If the absolute value of the argument is larger than  $2\hat{6}3$ , then the result is undefined.

Errors: None.

See also: [Arctan \(1397\)](#), [Sin \(1514\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex12.pp

---

```

Program Example12;

{ Program to demonstrate the Cos function. }

Var R : Real;

begin
  R:=Cos(Pi);      { R:=-1 }
  R:=Cos(Pi/2);    { R:=0  }
  R:=Cos(0);       { R:=1  }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.65 CSeg

Synopsis: Return code segment

Declaration: `function CSeg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `CSeg` returns the Code segment register. In Free Pascal, it returns always a zero, since Free Pascal is a 32/64 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: `DSeg` ([1425](#)), `Seg` ([1505](#)), `Ofs` ([1482](#)), `Ptr` ([1487](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex13.pp

---

```

Program Example13;

{ Program to demonstrate the CSeg function. }

var W : word;

begin
  W:=CSeg; {W:=0, provided for compatibility,
           FPC is 32 bit.}
end.

```

---

### 75.11.66 Dec

Synopsis: Decrease value of variable

Declaration: `procedure Dec(var X: TOrdinal)`  
`procedure Dec(var X: TOrdinal; Decrement: TOrdinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dec` decreases the value of `X` with `Decrement`. If `Decrement` isn't specified, then 1 is taken as a default.

Errors: A range check can occur, or an underflow error, if an attempt is made to decrease `X` below its minimum value.

See also: [Inc \(1456\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex14.pp

---

```

Program Example14;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dec function. }

Var
  I  : Integer;
  L  : Longint;
  W  : Word;
  B  : Byte;
  Si : ShortInt;

begin
  I:=1;
  L:=2;
  W:=3;
  B:=4;
  Si:=5;
  Dec (i);    { i:=0 }
  Dec (L,2);  { L:=0 }
  Dec (W,2);  { W:=1 }
  Dec (B,-2); { B:=6 }
  Dec (Si,0); { Si:=5 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.67 Default

Synopsis: Return Default initialized value

**Declaration:** `function Default(const T: AnyType) : AnyType`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Default` is a compiler intrinsic: it returns for every type `T` a default value. In essence, this is a block of memory that is zeroed out. It can be used to correctly initialize any type, and more importantly, a managed type. It also works using a generic type template.

This function cannot be used on any of the file types or complex types that contain a file type.

See also: [TypeInfo \(1531\)](#), [Initialize \(1461\)](#), [Finalize \(1440\)](#)

### 75.11.68 DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove

Synopsis: Standard widestring manager callback

**Declaration:** `procedure DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove(source: PChar; cp: TSystemCodePage;  
var dest: unicodestring; len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DefaultAnsi2UnicodeMove` is the standard callback used for the widestring manager when an ansistring must be converted to a unicodestring. It simply copies over all characters from the ansistring to the unicodestring, no conversion whatsoever is performed.

**75.11.69 DefaultAnsi2WideMove**

Synopsis: Standard implementation of Ansi to Widestring conversion routine

Declaration: `procedure DefaultAnsi2WideMove(source: PChar; cp: TSystemCodePage;  
var dest: widestring; len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultAnsi2WideMove` simply copies each character of the null-terminated ansi-string `Source` to the corresponding `WideChar` in `Dest`. At most `Len` characters will be copied.

Errors: None.

See also: `DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove` ([1422](#))

**75.11.70 DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove**

Synopsis: Standard widestring manager callback

Declaration: `procedure DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove(source: PUnicodeChar;  
var dest: RawByteString;  
cp: TSystemCodePage; len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultUnicode2AnsiMove` is the standard callback used for the widestring manager when a Unicode string must be converted to an ansistring. It replaces all words with value < 256 with their value as ASCII code.

Errors: None.

See also: `WidestringManager` ([1393](#))

**75.11.71 Delete**

Synopsis: Delete elements (characters) from a string or dynamic array.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(var S: string; const Index: Integer;  
const Count: Integer)  
procedure Delete(var A: DynArrayType; const Index: Integer;  
const Count: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delete` removes `Count` characters from string `S`, starting at position `Index`. `Index` is 1-based. All characters after the deleted characters are shifted `Count` positions to the left, and the length of the string is adjusted.

For dynamic arrays, `Delete` removes `Count` elements from the array `A`, starting at position `Index`. `Index` is 0-based. All elements after the deleted elements are shifted `Count` positions to the left, and the length of the array is adjusted.

If the sum of `Index` and `Count` exceeds the length of the string or array, `Delete` removes the end of the string or array, starting at `Index`.

If `Index` is less than 1 or greater than the length of the string or array, or if `Count` is negative or zero, `Delete` does nothing.

See also: `Copy` ([1418](#)), `Pos` ([1485](#)), `Insert` ([1464](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex15.pp

---

```
Program Example15;

{ Program to demonstrate the Delete function. }

Var
  S : String;

begin
  S := 'This is not easy !';
  Delete (S,9,4); { S := 'This is easy !' }
end.
```

---

### 75.11.72 Dispose

**Synopsis:** Free dynamically allocated memory

**Declaration:** `procedure Dispose(P: Pointer)`  
`procedure Dispose(P: TypedPointer; Des: TProcedure)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form `Dispose` releases the memory allocated with a call to `New` (1480). The pointer `P` must be typed. The released memory is returned to the heap.

The second form of `Dispose` accepts as a first parameter a pointer to an object type, and as a second parameter the name of a destructor of this object. The destructor will be called, and the memory allocated for the object will be freed.

**Errors:** An runtime error will occur if the pointer doesn't point to a location in the heap.

**See also:** `New` (1480), `Getmem` (1446), `Freemem` (1443)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex16.pp

---

```
Program Example16;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dispose and New functions. }

Type SS = String[20];

  AnObj = Object
    I : integer;
    Constructor Init;
    Destructor Done;
    end;

Var
  P : ^SS;
  T : ^AnObj;

Constructor Anobj.Init;

begin
  WriteLn ('Initializing an instance of AnObj !');
end;
```

---



---

```

Destructor AnObj.Done;

begin
  WriteIn ('Destroying an instance of AnObj !');
end;

begin
  New (P);
  P^:= 'Hello , World !';
  Dispose (P);
  { P is undefined from here on !}
  New(T, Init);
  T^.i:=0;
  Dispose (T, Done);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.73 divide(variant,variant):variant

Synopsis: Implement division (/) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator /(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the division / operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opDivide`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator `*(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#))

### 75.11.74 DoneCriticalSection

Synopsis: Clean up a critical section.

Declaration: `procedure DoneCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneCriticalSection` cleans up the critical section CS. After a call to `DoneCriticalSection`, the critical section can no longer be used with `EnterCriticalSection` ([1428](#)) or `LeaveCriticalSection` ([1470](#)), unless it is again initialized with `InitCriticalSection` ([1461](#))

See also: `InitCriticalSection` ([1461](#)), `EnterCriticalSection` ([1428](#)), `LeaveCriticalSection` ([1470](#))

### 75.11.75 DoneThread

Synopsis: End the current thread

Declaration: `procedure DoneThread`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneThread` should be used to end the current thread. It performs the necessary housekeeping before actually ending the thread. Using the operating system calls to end the thread may result in data corruption or memory leaks.

See also: `BeginThread` ([1403](#))

**75.11.76 DSeg**

Synopsis: Return data segment

Declaration: `function DSeg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DSeg` returns the data segment register. In Free Pascal, it returns always a zero, since Free Pascal is a 32/64 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: `CSeg` ([1420](#)), `Seg` ([1505](#)), `Ofs` ([1482](#)), `Ptr` ([1487](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the DSeg function. }*

**Var**

`W : Word;`

**begin**

`W:=DSeg; {W:=0, This function is provided for compatibility,  
FPC is a 32 bit compiler.}`

**end.**

---

**75.11.77 DumpExceptionBacktrace**

Synopsis: Create backtrace

Declaration: `procedure DumpExceptionBacktrace(var f: text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DumpExceptionBackTrace` writes a backtrace of the current exception to the file `f`. If no exception is currently being raised, nothing is written. As much frames as available are written. If debug info is available, then file names and line numbers will be written as well.

Errors: No check is done to see whether `f` is opened for writing.

See also: `dump_stack` ([1425](#))

**75.11.78 Dump\_Stack**

Synopsis: Dump stack to the given text file.

Declaration: `procedure Dump_Stack(var f: text; fp: pointer; addr: CodePointer)`  
`procedure Dump_Stack(var f: text; skipframes: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dump_Stack` prints a stack dump to the file `f`, with base frame pointer `bp`

Errors: The file `f` must be opened for writing or an error will occur.

See also: `get_caller_addr` ([1451](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1451](#)), `get_frame` ([1452](#))

**75.11.79 DynArrayBounds**

Synopsis: Return the bounds of the dynamic array

Declaration: `function DynArrayBounds(a: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer) : TBoundArray`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayBounds` returns the bounds of all the dimensions of the dynamic array `a` with type information `typeInfo`.

The result is an array (zero-based) with the maximum valid index for each dimension in the array: the lower bound is not present in the result, it is always zero.

See also: `InitializeArray` (1463), `FinalizeArray` (1440), `CopyArray` (1419), `DynArraySize` (1427), `DynArrayClear` (1426), `DynArrayDim` (1426)

**75.11.80 DynArrayClear**

Synopsis: Clears a dynamic array

Declaration: `procedure DynArrayClear(var a: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayClear` clears the array (`a`) using its type info (`typeInfo`). It is equal to setting the length to zero.

See also: `InitializeArray` (1463), `FinalizeArray` (1440), `CopyArray` (1419), `DynArraySize` (1427), `DynArrayDim` (1426), `DynArrayBounds` (1426)

**75.11.81 DynArrayDim**

Synopsis: Return the number of dimensions in a dynamic array

Declaration: `function DynArrayDim(typeInfo: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayDim` returns the number of dimensions in a dynamic array, using the type information (`typeInfo`) of the array.

See also: `InitializeArray` (1463), `FinalizeArray` (1440), `CopyArray` (1419), `DynArraySize` (1427), `DynArrayClear` (1426), `DynArrayBounds` (1426)

**75.11.82 DynArrayIndex**

Synopsis: Return pointer to indicated element

Declaration: `function DynArrayIndex(a: Pointer; const indices: Array of SizeInt; typeInfo: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayIndex` returns a pointer to the element indicated by `indices` in dynamic array `a` with type information `typeInfo`. The length of `indices` must equal the number of dimensions of the array (as returned by `DynArrayDim` (1426)).

**Errors:** No bounds checking is performed, it is therefor possible to get an access violation if one of the indexes is out of range.

See also: [InitializeArray \(1463\)](#), [FinalizeArray \(1440\)](#), [CopyArray \(1419\)](#), [DynArraySize \(1427\)](#), [DynArrayClear \(1426\)](#), [DynArrayBounds \(1426\)](#), [DynArrayDim \(1426\)](#), [IsDynArrayRectangular \(1469\)](#)

### 75.11.83 DynArraySetLength

**Synopsis:** Set the length of a dynamic array

**Declaration:** `procedure DynArraySetLength(var a: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer;  
dimCnt: SizeInt; lengthVec: PSizeInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DynArraySetLength` sets the length of the dynamic array `a` to the first `dimCnt` lengths specified in the array `lengthVec`. The dynamic array type is described in `typeInfo` which points to a record of type `TDynArrayTypeInfo` ([1362](#))

It should never be necessary to call this function directly, the standard `SetLength` ([1507](#)) function should be used instead.

**Errors:** If an invalid pointer is specified, an error may occur.

See also: `SetLength` ([1507](#)), `tdynarraytypeinfo` ([1362](#))

### 75.11.84 DynArraySize

**Synopsis:** Return length of dynamic array

**Declaration:** `function DynArraySize(a: pointer) : tdynarrayindex`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DynArraySize` gets the number of elements in the array (`a`) the result is equal to `Length` ([1470](#)) for dynamic arrays.

See also: `InitializeArray` ([1463](#)), `FinalizeArray` ([1440](#)), `CopyArray` ([1419](#)), `DynArrayClear` ([1426](#)), `DynArrayDim` ([1426](#)), `DynArrayBounds` ([1426](#))

### 75.11.85 EmptyMethod

**Synopsis:** Empty method alias

**Declaration:** `procedure EmptyMethod`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EmptyMethod` is meant for the compiler only. It should not be used directly.

### 75.11.86 EndThread

**Synopsis:** End the current thread.

**Declaration:** `procedure EndThread(ExitCode: DWord)  
procedure EndThread`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EndThread` ends the current thread. If `ExitCode` is supplied, it is returned as the exit code for the thread to a function waiting for the thread to terminate (`WaitForThreadTerminate` (1539)). If it is omitted, zero is used.

This function does not return.

See also: `WaitForThreadTerminate` (1539), `BeginThread` (1403)

### 75.11.87 EnterCriticalSection

**Synopsis:** Enter a critical section

**Declaration:** `procedure EnterCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EnterCriticalSection` will suspend the current thread if another thread has currently entered the critical section. When the other thread has left the critical section (through `LeaveCriticalSection` (1470)), the current thread resumes execution. The result is that only 1 thread is executing code which is protected by a `EnterCriticalSection` and `LeaveCriticalSection` pair.

The critical section must have been initialized with `InitCriticalSection` (1461) prior to a call to `EnterCriticalSection`.

A call to `EnterCriticalSection` must always be matched by a call to `LeaveCriticalSection` (1470). To avoid problems, it is best to include the code to be execute in a `try...finally` block, as follows:

```
EnterCriticalSection(Section);
Try
    // Code to be protected goes here.
Finally
    LeaveCriticalSection(Section);
end;
```

For performance reasons it is best to limit the code between the entering and leaving of a critical section as short as possible.

See also: `InitCriticalSection` (1461), `DoneCriticalSection` (1424), `LeaveCriticalSection` (1470)

### 75.11.88 EnumResourceLanguages

**Synopsis:** Enumerate available languages for a resource of given type and name

**Declaration:** `function EnumResourceLanguages(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;  
EnumFunc: EnumResLangProc; lParam: PtrInt)  
: LongBool`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `EnumResourceLanguages` enumerates the available languages for a resource of given `ResourceName` and type `ResourceType` in the module `ModuleHandle`. For each language available, it calls `EnumFunc` and passes it `ModuleHandle`, the type of the resource `ResourceType`, the name of the resource `ResourceName`, the language ID, and `lParam`. It returns `False` if no resources are available for the specified resource type and module, or `True` if there are resources available.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `EnumResourceTypes` (1429), `EnumResourceNames` (1429), `EnumResourceLanguages` (1428)

### 75.11.89 EnumResourceNames

Synopsis: Enumerate available resource names for a specified resource type

Declaration: `function EnumResourceNames (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResourceType: PChar;  
EnumFunc: EnumResNameProc; lParam: PtrInt)  
: LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnumResourceNames` enumerates the names of all resources of type `ResourceType` in the module `ModuleHandle`. For each resource available it calls `EnumFunc` and passes it `ModuleHandle`, the type of the resource `ResourceType`, the name of the resource, and `lParam`. It returns `False` if no resources are available for the specified resource type and module, or `True` if there are resources available.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnumResourceTypes` ([1429](#)), `EnumResourceLanguages` ([1428](#))

### 75.11.90 EnumResourceTypes

Synopsis: Enumerate available resource types

Declaration: `function EnumResourceTypes (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
EnumFunc: EnumResTypeProc; lParam: PtrInt)  
: LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnumResourceTypes` enumerates the types of all resources in the module `ModuleHandle`. For each resource available it calls `EnumFunc` and passes it `ModuleHandle`, the type of the resource, and `lParam`. It returns `False` if no resources are available for the specified module, or `True` if there are resources available.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnumResourceNames` ([1429](#)), `EnumResourceLanguages` ([1428](#))

### 75.11.91 EOF

Synopsis: Check for end of file

Declaration: `function EOF (var f: File) : Boolean  
function EOF (var t: Text) : Boolean  
function EOF : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Eof` returns `True` if the file-pointer has reached the end of the file, or if the file is empty. In all other cases `Eof` returns `False`. If no file `F` is specified, standard input is assumed.

Note that calling this function may cause your program to wait: to determine whether you are at EOF, it is necessary to read data. If the file descriptor is not a real file (for instance for standard input or sockets), then this call may seem to hang the program while it is waiting for data to appear or for the file descriptor to be closed.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Eof` ([1430](#)), `Assign` ([1398](#)), `Reset` ([1494](#)), `Rewrite` ([1495](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Eof function. }

Var T1,T2 : text;
      C : Char;

begin
  { Set file to read from. Empty means from standard input. }
  assign (t1,paramstr(1));
  reset (t1);
  { Set file to write to. Empty means to standard output. }
  assign (t2,paramstr(2));
  rewrite (t2);
  While not eof(t1) do
    begin
      read (t1,C);
      write (t2,C);
    end;
    Close (t1);
    Close (t2);
end.
```

---

### 75.11.92 EOLn

Synopsis: Check for end of line

Declaration: `function EOLn(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function EOLn : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `EoLn` returns `True` if the file pointer has reached the end of a line, which is demarcated by a line-feed character (ASCII value 10), or if the end of the file is reached. In all other cases `EoLn` returns `False`. If no file `F` is specified, standard input is assumed. It can only be used on files of type `Text`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Eof` ([1429](#)), `Assign` ([1398](#)), `Reset` ([1494](#)), `Rewrite` ([1495](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Eoln function. }

begin
  { This program waits for keyboard input. }
  { It will print True when an empty line is put in ,
    and false when you type a non-empty line.
    It will only stop when you press enter. }
```

---

```

While not Eoln do
  Writeln (eoln);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.93 equal(variant,variant):Boolean

Synopsis: Implement = (equality) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator =(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the equality (=) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opcmpeq`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator <(variant, variant): boolean ([1313](#))

### 75.11.94 Erase

Synopsis: Delete a file from disk

Declaration: `procedure Erase(var f: File)`  
`procedure Erase(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Erase` removes an unopened file from disk. The file should be assigned with `Assign`, but not opened with `Reset` or `Rewrite`

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Assign` ([1398](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `Example20;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Erase function. }*

**Var** `F : Text;`

**begin**

*{ Create a file with a line of text in it }*

`Assign (F, 'test.txt');`

`Rewrite (F);`

`Writeln (F, 'Try and find this when I 'm finished !');`

`close (f);`

*{ Now remove the file }*

`Erase (f);`

**end.**

---



**75.11.95 Error**

Synopsis: Generate run-time error

Declaration: `procedure Error(RunTimeError: TRuntimeError)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` generates a run-time error with an exit code corresponding to `RunTimeError`. This function is implemented for Delphi compatibility, and is not used by the Free Pascal Run-Time Library.

See also: `RunError` ([1501](#)), `Halt` ([1453](#))

**75.11.96 Exclude**

Synopsis: Exclude element from a set if it is present.

Declaration: `procedure Exclude(var S: TSetType; E: TSetElement)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exclude` removes `E` from the set `S` if it is included in the set. `E` should be of the same type as the base type of the set `S`.

Thus, the two following statements do the same thing:

```
S:=S-[E];
Exclude(S,E);
```

Errors: If the type of the element `E` is not equal to the base type of the set `S`, the compiler will generate an error.

See also: `Include` ([1457](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex111.pp`

---

```
program Example111;

{ Program to demonstrate the Include/Exclude functions }

Type
  TEnumA = (aOne,aTwo,aThree);
  TEnumAs = Set of TEnumA;

Var
  SA : TEnumAs;

Procedure PrintSet(S : TEnumAs);

var
  B : Boolean;

procedure DoEI(A : TEnumA; Desc : String);

begin
  If A in S then
    begin
      If B then
        Write(' ');
```

```

        B:= True ;
        Write ( Desc );
    end;
end;

begin
    Write ( ' [ ' );
    B:= False ;
    DoEl(aOne, 'aOne' );
    DoEl(aTwo, 'aTwo' );
    DoEl(aThree, 'aThree' );
    WriteLn ( ' ] ' )
end;

begin
    SA:= [];
    Include (SA,aOne);
    PrintSet (SA);
    Include (SA,aThree);
    PrintSet (SA);
    Exclude (SA,aOne);
    PrintSet (SA);
    Exclude (SA,aTwo);
    PrintSet (SA);
    Exclude (SA,aThree);
    PrintSet (SA);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.97 Exit

Synopsis: Exit current subroutine.

Declaration: `procedure Exit(const X: TAnyType)`  
`procedure Exit`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exit` exits the current subroutine, and returns control to the calling routine. If invoked in the main program routine, exit stops the program. The optional argument `X` allows to specify a return value, in the case `Exit` is invoked in a function. The function result will then be equal to `X`.

In Object Pascal or Delphi modes, if the `Exit` statement is surrounded by one or more `Try .. Finally` constructs, the `Finally` blocks are executed, which means that if the finally blocks are used to free resources, then these resources will also be freed when `Exit` is called.

Note that although `Exit` is a compiler intrinsic (i.e. is treated specially) it is defined as an identifier in the system unit, hence it can be redefined.

Errors: None.

See also: `Halt` ([1453](#))

Listing: `./refex/ex21.pp`

---

Program Example21 ;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Exit function. }
```

```

Procedure DoAnExit (Yes : Boolean);

{ This procedure demonstrates the normal Exit }

begin
  Writeln ('Hello from DoAnExit !');
  If Yes then
    begin
      Writeln ('Bailing out early. ');
      exit;
    end;
  Writeln ('Continuing to the end. ');
end;

Function Positive (Which : Integer) : Boolean;

{ This function demonstrates the extra FPC feature of Exit :
  You can specify a return value for the function }

begin
  if Which > 0 then
    exit (True)
  else
    exit (False);
end;

begin
  { This call will go to the end }
  DoAnExit (False);
  { This call will bail out early }
  DoAnExit (True);
  if Positive (-1) then
    Writeln ('The compiler is nuts, -1 is not positive. ')
  else
    Writeln ('The compiler is not so bad, -1 seems to be negative. ');
end.

```

---

**Listing:** ./refex/ex121.pp

---

```

{
  Example 121:
  Continue, break and exit are system procedures.
  They can be redefined
}

procedure continue;

begin
  Writeln('Continue');
end;

Procedure Exit;

begin
  Writeln('exit');
end;

Procedure Break;

```

---

```

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Break' );
end;

begin
  Repeat
    Continue;
    Break;
    exit;
  Until True;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.98 Exp

Synopsis: Exponentiate

Declaration: `function Exp(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exp` returns the exponent of X, i.e. the number e to the power X.

Errors: None.

See also: `Ln` ([1472](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Exp function. }*

```

begin
  WriteLn (Exp(1):8:2); { Should print 2.72 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.99 Fail

Synopsis: Fail a constructor

Declaration: `procedure Fail`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fail` can be used in a constructor for an object or class. It will exit the constructor at once, and the memory allocated for the constructor is freed. This mean that for objects allocated with `New` ([1480](#)), the resulting pointer is `Nil` and for classes, the object instance will be `Nil`.

See also: `TypeOf` ([1531](#)), `New` ([1480](#)), `Initialize` ([1461](#)), `Finalize` ([1440](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex116.pp`

---

**program** testfail;

*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**Type**

```

TMyClass = Class
  Constructor Create;
end;

Constructor TMyClass.Create;

begin
  Fail;
end;

var
  M : TMyClass;

begin
  M:=TMyClass.Create;
  WriteIn('M is nil : ',Not Assigned(M));
end.

```

---

### 75.11.100 FilePos

Synopsis: Get position in file

Declaration: `function FilePos(var f: File) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `FilePos` returns the current record position of the file-pointer in file `F`. It cannot be invoked with a file of type `Text`. A compiler error will be generated if this is attempted. Untyped files have a default record size of 128, if the second parameter to `Reset` ([1494](#)) isn't specified.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Filesize` ([1437](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `Example23;`

```

{ Program to demonstrate the FilePos function. }

Var F : File of Longint;
    L,FP : longint;

begin
  { Fill a file with data :
    Each position contains the position ! }
  Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite (F);
  For L:=0 to 100 do
    begin
      FP:=FilePos(F);
      Write (F,FP);
    end;
  Close (F);
  Reset (F);
  { If all goes well, nothing is displayed here. }

```

---

```

While not (Eof(F)) do
  begin
    FP:=FilePos (F);
    Read (F,L);
    if L<>FP then
      Writeln ('Something wrong: Got ',l,' on pos ',FP);
    end;
    Close (F);
    Erase (f);
  end.

```

---

### 75.11.101 FileSize

Synopsis: Size of file

Declaration: `function FileSize(var f: File) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Filesize` returns the total number of records in file `F`. It cannot be invoked with a file of type `Text`. (under Linux and Unix, this also means that it cannot be invoked on pipes). If `F` is empty, 0 is returned. Untyped files have a default record size of 128, if the second parameter to `Reset` ([1494](#)) isn't specified.

Note that the file must be open for this function to return a result.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Filepos` ([1436](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** Example24;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FileSize function. }*

```

Var F : File Of byte;
    L : File Of Longint;

```

```

begin
  Assign (F,paramstr(1));
  Reset (F);
  Writeln ('File size in bytes : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (F);
  Assign (L,paramstr (1));
  Reset (L);
  Writeln ('File size in Longints : ',FileSize(L));
  Close (f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.102 FillByte

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 8-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillByte(var x; count: SizeInt; value: Byte)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FillByte` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` bytes with value equal to `Value`. This is useful for quickly zeroing out a memory location. When the size of the memory location to be filled out is a multiple of 2 bytes, it is better to use `Fillword` ([1439](#)), and if it is a multiple of 4 bytes it is better to use `FillDWord` ([1439](#)), these routines are optimized for their respective sizes.

**Errors:** No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `Fillchar` ([1438](#)), `FillDWord` ([1439](#)), `Fillword` ([1439](#)), `Move` ([1478](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex103.pp`

---

**Program** `Example103`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillByte function. }*

```

Var S : String[10];
      I : Byte;

begin
  For i:=10 downto 0 do
    begin
      { Fill S with i bytes }
      FillByte (S,SizeOf(S),32);
      { Set Length }
      SetLength(S,I);
      Writeln (s,'*');
    end;
  end.
```

---

### 75.11.103 FillChar

**Synopsis:** Fill memory region with certain character

**Declaration:** `procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Boolean)`  
`procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Char)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Fillchar` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` bytes or characters with value equal to `Value`.

**Errors:** No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `Fillword` ([1439](#)), `Move` ([1478](#)), `FillByte` ([1437](#)), `FillDWord` ([1439](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillChar function. }*

```

Var S : String[10];
      I : Byte;
begin
  For i:=10 downto 0 do
```

```

begin
  { Fill S with i spaces }
  FillChar (S, SizeOf(S), ' ');
  { Set Length }
  SetLength(S, I);
  Writeln (s, '*');
end;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.104 FillDWord

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 32-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillDWord(var x; count: SizeInt; value: DWord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FillDWord` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` `DWords` with value equal to `Value`. A `DWord` is 4 bytes in size.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `FillByte` ([1437](#)), `FillChar` ([1438](#)), `FillWord` ([1439](#)), `Move` ([1478](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex104.pp`

**Program** `Example104`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillDWord function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize = 1000;`

**Var**

`S : Array [1..ArraySize] of DWord;`  
`I : longint;`

**begin**

`FillDWord(S, ArraySize, 0);`

**For** `I:=1 to ArraySize do`

**If** `S[I]<>0 then`

`Writeln('Position ', I, ' not zeroed out');`

**end.**

---

### 75.11.105 FillWord

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 16-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillWord(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FillWord` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` words with value equal to `Value`. A word is 2 bytes in size.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.



See also: [Fillchar \(1438\)](#), [Move \(1478\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillWord function. }*

**Var** W : **Array**[1..100] **of** Word;

**begin**

*{ Quick initialization of array W }*

FillWord(W,100,0);

**end.**

---

### 75.11.106 Finalize

**Synopsis:** Finalize (clean up) memory block using RTTI

**Declaration:** `procedure Finalize(var T: TAnyType; ACount: SizeInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Finalize` is a compiler intrinsic: it cleans up (finalizes) a memory area T for any kind of managed variable. Finalizing means decreasing reference counts where necessary and generally zeroing out the memory area. It performs the opposite operation of `initialize` ([1461](#)).

The optional `ACount` parameter can be used to finalize an array of values.

For examples, see `initialize` ([1461](#)).

See also: `initialize` ([1461](#)), `Default` ([1421](#)), `TypeInfo` ([1531](#))

### 75.11.107 FinalizeArray

**Synopsis:** Finalize managed-type elements in array

**Declaration:** `procedure FinalizeArray(p: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer; count: SizeInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FinalizeArray` dereferences and clears managed types in the array pointed to by p. For this, it uses the type information of the elements as specified in `typeinfo`.

Under normal circumstances, this procedure should not be used, it is called automatically by the compiler when an array-typed variable containing managed types goes out of scope.

See also: `InitializeArray` ([1463](#)), `CopyArray` ([1419](#)), `DynArraySize` ([1427](#)), `DynArrayClear` ([1426](#)), `DynArrayDim` ([1426](#)), `DynArrayBounds` ([1426](#))

### 75.11.108 FindResource

**Synopsis:** Locate a resource and return a handle to it.

**Declaration:** `function FindResource(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
                            ResourceName: PChar; ResourceType: PChar)  
                            : TFPResourceHandle`  
`function FindResource(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;`

```
const ResourceName: AnsiString;
const ResourceType: AnsiString) : TFPResourceHandle
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** FindResource searches for a resource with name ResourceName and of type ResourceType in the executable or library identified by ModuleHandle. It returns a TResourceHandle which can be used to load the resource with LoadResource (1474).

**Errors:** None. In case the resource was not found, 0 is returned.

**See also:** FreeResource (1444), LoadResource (1474), SizeofResource (1515), LockResource (1474), UnlockResource (1534), FreeResource (1444)

### 75.11.109 FindResourceEx

**Synopsis:** Find a resource based on type, name, language

**Declaration:**

```
function FindResourceEx(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
    ResourceType: PChar; ResourceName: PChar;
    Language: Word) : TFPResourceHandle
function FindResourceEx(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;
    const ResourceType: AnsiString;
    const ResourceName: AnsiString; Language: Word)
    : TFPResourceHandle
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** FindResourceEx looks in module ModuleHandle for a resource of type ResourceType and name ResourceName with language ID Language. Both ResourceName and ResourceName can be specified as a null-terminated array of characters, or as an AnsiString.

If the requested language/sublanguage is not found, then the search is conducted

- 1.with only primary language.
- 2.with the neutral language (LANG\_NEUTRAL)
- 3.with the English language

If none of these has returned a match, then the first available language is returned.

If a match is found, a handle to the resource is returned. If none is found, an empty handle (nil or 0) is returned.

**Errors:** None.

### 75.11.110 float\_raise

**Synopsis:** Raise floating point exception

**Declaration:**

```
procedure float_raise(i: TFPUEException)
procedure float_raise(i: TFPUEExceptionMask)
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** float\_raise raises the floating point exceptions specified by softfloat\_exception\_flags (1392).

**See also:** softfloat\_exception\_flags (1392), softfloat\_exception\_mask (1392)

**75.11.111 Flush**

Synopsis: Write file buffers to disk

Declaration: `procedure Flush(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Flush` empties the internal buffer of an opened file `F` and writes the contents to disk. The file is **not** closed as a result of this call.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Close` ([1411](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex26.pp`

**Program** `Example26`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Flush function. }*

**Var** `F : Text`;

**begin**

*{ Assign F to standard output }*

`Assign (F, '');`

**Rewrite** (`F`);

**Writeln** (`F`, 'This line is written first , but appears later !');

*{ At this point the text is in the internal pascal buffer ,  
and not yet written to standard output }*

**Writeln** ('This line appears first , but is written later !');

*{ A writeln to 'output' always causes a flush – so this text is  
written to screen }*

**Flush** (`f`);

*{ At this point , the text written to F is written to screen. }*

**Write** (`F`, 'Finishing ');

`Close (f);` *{ Closing a file always causes a flush first }*

**Writeln** ('off.');

**end.**

**75.11.112 FlushThread**

Synopsis: Flush all standard files

Declaration: `procedure FlushThread`

Visibility: default

Description: `FlushThread` flushes any buffers from standard file descriptors such as standard input/output/error. It should normally not be called by user code, but is executed when a thread exits.

See also: `EndThread` ([1427](#))

**75.11.113 FMADouble**

Synopsis: Internal function, do not use

Declaration: `function FMADouble(d1: Double; d2: Double; d3: Double) : Double`

Visibility: default

**75.11.114 FMASingle**

Synopsis: Internal function, do not use

Declaration: `function FMASingle(s1: single; s2: single; s3: single) : single`

Visibility: default

**75.11.115 Frac**

Synopsis: Return fractional part of floating point value.

Declaration: `function Frac(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Frac` returns the non-integer part of X.

Errors: None.

See also: `Round` ([1499](#)), `Int` ([1465](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Frac function. }*

**Var** `R : Real;`

**begin**

`WriteLn (Frac (123.456):0:3); { Prints 0.456 }`

`WriteLn (Frac (-123.456):0:3); { Prints -0.456 }`

**end.**

---

**75.11.116 FreeLibrary**

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Unload a library

Declaration: `function FreeLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeLibrary` provides the same functionality as `UnloadLibrary` ([1534](#)), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `UnloadLibrary` ([1534](#))

**75.11.117 Freemem**

Synopsis: Release allocated memory

Declaration: `procedure Freemem(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function Freemem(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FreeMem` releases the memory occupied by the pointer `P`, of size `Count` (in bytes), and returns it to the heap. `P` should point to the memory allocated to a dynamic variable.

**Errors:** An error will occur when `P` doesn't point to the heap.

**See also:** `Getmem` ([1446](#)), `New` ([1480](#)), `Dispose` ([1423](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex28.pp`

---

**Program** `Example28`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FreeMem and GetMem functions. }*

**Var** `P` : `Pointer`;  
       `MM` : `Longint`;

**begin**  
     *{ Get memory for P }*  
     `GetMem` (`P`,80);  
     `FillChar` (`P`<sup>^</sup>,80,' ');  
     `FreeMem` (`P`,80);  
**end.**

---

### 75.11.118 FreeMemory

**Synopsis:** Alias for `FreeMem` ([1443](#))

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeMemory(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
                   `function FreeMemory(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `FreeMemory` is an alias for `FreeMem` ([1443](#)).

**See also:** `FreeMem` ([1443](#))

### 75.11.119 FreeResource

**Synopsis:** Free a loaded resource

**Declaration:** `function FreeResource(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : LongBool`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `FreeResource` unloads the resource identified by `ResData` from memory. The resource must have been loaded by `LoadResource` ([1474](#)). It returns `True` if the operation was successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** On error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `FindResource` ([1440](#)), `LoadResource` ([1474](#)), `SizeofResource` ([1515](#)), `LockResource` ([1474](#)), `UnlockResource` ([1534](#)), `FreeResource` ([1444](#))

**75.11.120 GetCpuCount**

Synopsis: Return the number of cores on the system

Declaration: `function GetCpuCount : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCpuCount` returns the number of CPU cores on the system. Whether these are physically separate CPUs or cores on a single CPU is deliberately undefined.

See also: `CpuCount` ([1313](#))

**75.11.121 GetCurrentThreadId**

Synopsis: Return the id of the currently running thread.

Declaration: `function GetCurrentThreadId : TThreadId`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCurrentThreadId` returns the ID of the currently running thread. It can be used in calls such as `KillThread` ([1470](#)) or `ThreadSetPriority` ([1528](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `KillThread` ([1470](#)), `ThreadSetPriority` ([1528](#))

**75.11.122 GetDir**

Synopsis: Return the current directory

Declaration: `procedure GetDir(drivenr: Byte; var dir: shortstring); Overload`  
`procedure GetDir(drivenr: Byte; var dir: RawByteString); Overload`  
`procedure GetDir(drivenr: Byte; var dir: unicodestring); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDir` returns in `dir` the current directory on the drive `drivenr`, where {`drivenr`} is 1 for the first floppy drive, 3 for the first hard disk etc. A value of 0 returns the directory on the current disk. On Linux and Unix systems, `drivenr` is ignored, as there is only one directory tree.

Errors: An error is returned under dos, if the drive requested isn't ready.

See also: `ChDir` ([1410](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex29.pp`

**Program** `Example29;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDir function. }*

**Var** `S : String;`

**begin**

`GetDir (0,S);`

`WriteLn ('Current directory is : ',S);`

**end.**

### 75.11.123 GetDynLibsManager

Synopsis: Return currently active dynamic library support handler

Declaration: `procedure GetDynLibsManager (var Manager: TDynLibsManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDynLibsManager` returns the currently active dynamic library support handler. This handler has normally been set by inclusion of the `#rtl.dynlibs` (702) unit.

See also: `#rtl.dynlibs` (702), `SetDynLibsManager` (1506)

### 75.11.124 GetFPCHeapStatus

Synopsis: Return FPC heap manager status information

Declaration: `function GetFPCHeapStatus : TFPCHeapStatus`

Visibility: default

Description: Return FPC heap manager status information

### 75.11.125 GetHeapStatus

Synopsis: Return the memory manager heap status.

Declaration: `function GetHeapStatus : THeapStatus`

Visibility: default

### 75.11.126 GetLoadErrorStr

Synopsis: Return an error describing the last library loading error

Declaration: `function GetLoadErrorStr : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLoadErrorStr` returns an error string describing the last library loading error. This function must be called before any other OS calls are performed.

Errors: None.

See also: `LoadLibrary` (1473), `SafeLoadLibrary` (1502)

### 75.11.127 GetMem

Synopsis: Allocate new memory on the heap

Declaration: `procedure Getmem(out p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function GetMem(size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Getmem` reserves `Size` bytes memory on the heap, and returns a pointer to this memory in `p`. What happens if no more memory is available, depends on the value of the variable `ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails` (1392): if the variable is `True` then `Nil` is returned. If the variable is `False`, a run-time error is generated. The default value is `False`, so by default an error is generated.

The newly allocated memory is not initialized in any way, and may contain garbage data. It must be cleared with a call to `FillChar` (1438) or `FillWord` (1439).

For an example, see `Freemem` (1443).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Freemem` (1443), `Dispose` (1423), `New` (1480), `returnnilifgrowheapfails` (1392), `MemSize` (1477)

### 75.11.128 `GetMemory`

**Synopsis:** Alias for `GetMem` (1446)

**Declaration:** `procedure Getmemory(out p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt)`  
`function GetMemory(size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Getmemory` is an alias for `GetMem` (1446).

**See also:** `GetMem` (1446)

### 75.11.129 `GetMemoryManager`

**Synopsis:** Return current memory manager

**Declaration:** `procedure GetMemoryManager(var MemMgr: TMemoryManager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetMemoryManager` stores the current Memory Manager record in `MemMgr`.

For an example, see the programmer's guide.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetMemoryManager` (1508), `IsMemoryManagerSet` (1469)

### 75.11.130 `GetProcAddress`

**Synopsis:** For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Get the address of a procedure

**Declaration:** `function GetProcAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; const ProcName: AnsiString)`  
`: Pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetProcAddress` provides the same functionality as `GetProcedureAddress` (1448), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.



**75.11.131 GetProcedureAddress**

Synopsis: Get the address of a procedure or symbol in a dynamic library.

Declaration: 

```
function GetProcedureAddress(Lib: TLibHandle;
                           const ProcName: AnsiString) : Pointer
function GetProcedureAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; Ordinal: TOrdinalEntry)
                           : Pointer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProcedureAddress` returns a pointer to the location in memory of the symbol `ProcName` or ordinal value `Ordinal` in the dynamically loaded library specified by its handle `lib`. If the symbol cannot be found or the handle is invalid, `Nil` is returned.

On Windows, only an exported procedure or function can be searched this way. On Unix platforms the location of any exported symbol can be retrieved this way.

Only windows and OS/2 support getting the address of a function using an ordinal value.

Errors: If the symbol cannot be found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `LoadLibrary` ([1473](#)), `UnLoadLibrary` ([1534](#))

**75.11.132 GetProcessID**

Synopsis: Get the current process ID

Declaration: 

```
function GetProcessID : SizeUInt
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProcessID` returns the current process ID. The meaning of the return value of this call is system dependent.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetThreadID` ([1449](#))

**75.11.133 GetResourceManager**

Synopsis: Return the currently active resource manager

Declaration: 

```
procedure GetResourceManager(var Manager: TResourceManager)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetResourceManager` returns the currently active resource manager record in `Manager`. There is always an active resource manager record.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceManager` ([1371](#)), `SetResourceManager` ([1510](#))

**75.11.134 GetTextCodePage**

Synopsis: Get the codepage used in a text file.

Declaration: `function GetTextCodePage (var T: Text) : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTextCodePage` returns the codepage that the text file `T` uses. All strings written to the file will be converted to the indicated codepage. By default, the codepage is set to `CP_ACP`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextRec` ([1364](#)), `SetTextCodePage` ([1511](#))

**75.11.135 GetThreadID**

Synopsis: Get the current Thread ID.

Declaration: `function GetThreadID : TThreadID`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetThreadID` returns the current process ID. The meaning of the return value of this call is system dependent.

See also: `GetProcessID` ([1448](#))

**75.11.136 GetThreadManager**

Synopsis: Return the current thread manager

Declaration: `function GetThreadManager (var TM: TThreadManager) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetThreadManager` returns the currently used thread manager in `TM`.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

See also: `SetThreadManager` ([1512](#)), `TThreadManager` ([1376](#))

**75.11.137 GetTypeKind**

Synopsis: Return type kind for a type

Declaration: `function GetTypeKind (const T: AnyType) : TTypeKind`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTypeKind` is a compiler intrinsic: it returns the type kind for the type `T`. In difference with the `TypeInfo` ([1531](#)), if no type information was yet generated for the type, this statement will not ensure that the type information is available: the compiler knows the correct value, and will directly insert it into the code as a constant.

See also: `Default` ([1421](#)), `TypeInfo` ([1531](#)), `TypeOf` ([1531](#)), `Initialize` ([1461](#)), `Finalize` ([1440](#))

**75.11.138 GetUnicodeStringManager**

**Synopsis:** Return a copy of the currently active UnicodeString manager.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetUnicodeStringManager(var Manager: TUnicodeStringManager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetUnicodeStringManager` returns a copy of the currently active Unicode string manager in `Old`

UnicodeStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a `UnicodeStringManager` record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom unicodestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `SetUnicodeStringManager` ([1512](#)), `TUnicodeStringManager` ([1379](#))

**75.11.139 GetVariantManager**

**Synopsis:** Return the current variant manager.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetVariantManager(var VarMgr: tvariantmanager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetVariantManager` returns the current variant manager in `varmgr`.

See also: `SetVariantManager` ([1513](#))

**75.11.140 GetWideStringManager**

**Synopsis:** Return a copy of the currently active widestring manager.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetWideStringManager(var Manager: TUnicodeStringManager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetWideStringManager` returns a copy of the currently active heap manager in `Old`

WideStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a `WideString` manager record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom widestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `SetWideStringManager` ([1513](#)), `TWideStringManager` ([1387](#))

**75.11.141 get\_caller\_addr**

Synopsis: Return the address of the caller.

Declaration: `function get_caller_addr(framebp: pointer; addr: CodePointer)  
: CodePointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_caller_frame` returns a pointer to address ( the return address) of the caller of the routine which has as frame `framebp`.

See also: `get_frame` ([1452](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1451](#)), `Dump_Stack` ([1425](#))

**75.11.142 get\_caller\_frame**

Synopsis: Return the frame pointer of the caller

Declaration: `function get_caller_frame(framebp: pointer; addr: CodePointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_caller_frame` returns a pointer to the frame of the caller of the routine which has as frame `framebp`.

See also: `get_caller_addr` ([1451](#)), `get_frame` ([1452](#)), `Dump_Stack` ([1425](#))

**75.11.143 get\_caller\_stackinfo**

Synopsis: Return caller stack infomation

Declaration: `procedure get_caller_stackinfo(var framebp: pointer;  
var addr: CodePointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_caller_stackinfo` returns caller address in `addr` and frame base pointer in `framebp`.

See also: `CaptureBacktrace` ([1409](#)), `Get_pc_addr` ([1452](#)), `get_caller_addr` ([1451](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1451](#))

**75.11.144 get\_cmdline**

Synopsis: Return the command-line as a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function get_cmdline : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_cmdline` returns the complete command-line as a null-terminated string. It is not recommended to use this function, since it builds a complete value from the actual command-line arguments. Instead, `ParamCount` ([1484](#)) and `ParamStr` ([1484](#)) should be used.

See also: `ParamCount` ([1484](#)), `ParamStr` ([1484](#))

### 75.11.145 **get\_frame**

Synopsis: Return the current frame

Declaration: `function get_frame : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_frame` returns a pointer to the current stack frame.

See also: `get_caller_addr` ([1451](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1451](#))

### 75.11.146 **Get\_pc\_addr**

Synopsis: Get Program Counter address

Declaration: `function Get_pc_addr : CodePointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get_pc_addr` returns the program counter address (current execution address).

See also: `CaptureBacktrace` ([1409](#)), `get_caller_stackinfo` ([1451](#)), `get_caller_addr` ([1451](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1451](#))

### 75.11.147 **greaterthan(variant,variant):Boolean**

Synopsis: Implement > (greater than) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator >(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the "greater than" comparison (>) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opcmpgt`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator <(variant, variant): boolean` ([1313](#))

### 75.11.148 **greaterthanorequal(variant,variant):Boolean**

Synopsis: Implement >= (greater than or equal) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator >=(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the "greater than or equal" comparison (>=) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opcmpge`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator <(variant, variant): boolean` ([1313](#))

**75.11.149 Halt**

Synopsis: Stop program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Halt (errnum: LongInt)`  
`procedure Halt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Halt` stops program execution and returns control to the calling program. The optional argument `Errnum` specifies an exit value. If omitted, zero is returned.

Note that this skips any try/finally (implicit or explicit) or try/except blocks, thus may result in memory leaks. Finalization sections of units will be executed.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exit` ([1433](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex30.pp`

---

**Program** `Example30;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Halt function. }*

```
begin
  Writeln ('Before Halt. ');
  Halt (1); { Stop with exit code 1 }
  Writeln ('After Halt doesn't get executed. ');
end.
```

---

**75.11.150 HexStr**

Synopsis: Convert integer value to string with hexadecimal representation.

Declaration: `function HexStr (Val: LongInt; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function HexStr (Val: Int64; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function HexStr (Val: QWord; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function HexStr (Val: Pointer) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexStr` returns a string with the hexadecimal representation of `Value`. The string has exactly `cnt` characters. (i.e. only the `cnt` rightmost nibbles are taken into account) To have a complete representation of a `Longint`-type value, 8 nibbles are needed, i.e. `cnt=8`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Str` ([1518](#)), `Val` ([1537](#)), `BinStr` ([1404](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex81.pp`

---

**Program** `example81;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the HexStr function }*

**Const** `Value = 45678;`

**Var** `l : longint;`

---

```

begin
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    Writeln (HexStr(Value,I));
end.

```

---

### 75.11.151 Hi

Synopsis: Return high byte/word/nibble of value.

Declaration:

```

function Hi(b: Byte) : Byte
function Hi(i: Integer) : Byte
function Hi(w: Word) : Byte
function Hi(l: LongInt) : Word
function Hi(l: DWord) : Word
function Hi(i: Int64) : DWord
function Hi(q: QWord) : DWord

```

Visibility: default

Description: `Hi` returns the high nibble, byte or word or longword from `X`, depending on the size of `X`.

Table 75.21:

Size	Return value
8	Byte, High nibble
16	Byte, High byte
32	Word, High word
64	Cardinal, High DWord

Note that in Delphi or TP, this function always treats its argument as if it was a `Word`, so the results may differ from FPC.

Errors: None.

See also: `Lo` ([1473](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex31.pp`

---

**Program** Example31;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Hi function. }*

**var**

```

L : Longint;
W : Word;
B : Byte;

```

**begin**

```

L:=1 Shl 16;    { = $10000 }
W:=1 Shl 8;     { = $100 }
B:=1 Shl 4;     { = $10 }
Writeln (Hi(L)); { Prints 1 }
Writeln (Hi(W)); { Prints 1 }

```

---

```

WriteLn (Hi(B)); { Prints 1 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.152 High

Synopsis: Return highest index of open array or enumerated

Declaration: `function High(Arg: TypeOrVariable) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: The return value of `High` depends on it's argument:

- 1.If the argument is an ordinal type, `High` returns the highest value in the range of the given ordinal type.
- 2.If the argument is an array type or an array type variable then `High` returns the highest possible value of it's index. For dynamic arrays, it returns the same as `Length -1`, meaning that it reports -1 for empty arrays.
- 3.If the argument is an open array identifier in a function or procedure, then `High` returns the highest index of the array, as if the array has a zero-based index. If the array is empty, then -1 is returned.
- 4.If the argument is a set type then it returns the highest value of the underlying ordinal type.

The return type is always the same type as the type of the argument (This can lead to some nasty surprises!).

Errors: None.

See also: [Low \(1476\)](#), [Ord \(1483\)](#), [Pred \(1487\)](#), [Succ \(1523\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex80.pp`

---

**Program** `example80;`

*{ Example to demonstrate the High and Low functions. }*

```

Type TEnum = ( North, East, South, West );
      TRange = 14..55;
      TArray = Array [2..10] of Longint;

```

```

Function Average (Row : Array of Longint) : Real;

```

```

Var I : longint;
     Temp : Real;

```

```

begin
  Temp := Row[0];
  For I := 1 to High(Row) do
    Temp := Temp + Row[I];
  Average := Temp / (High(Row)+1);
end;

```

```

Var A : TEnum;
     B : TRange;
     C : TArray;

```



```

    I : longint;

begin
  Writeln ('TEnum goes from : ', Ord(Low(TEnum)), ' to ', Ord(high(TEnum)), '.');
  Writeln ('A goes from : ', Ord(Low(A)), ' to ', Ord(high(A)), '.');
  Writeln ('TRange goes from : ', Ord(Low(TRange)), ' to ', Ord(high(TRange)), '.');
  Writeln ('B goes from : ', Ord(Low(B)), ' to ', Ord(high(B)), '.');
  Writeln ('TArray index goes from : ', Ord(Low(TArray)), ' to ', Ord(high(TArray)), '.');
  Writeln ('C index goes from : ', Low(C), ' to ', high(C), '.');
  For I:=Low(C) to High(C) do
    C[i]:=I;
  Writeln ('Average : ', Average(c));
  Write ('Type of return value is always same as type of argument:');
  Writeln (high(high(word)));
end.

```

---

### 75.11.153 HINSTANCE

Synopsis: Windows compatibility type for use in resources

Declaration: `function HINSTANCE : TFPResourceHMODULE`

Visibility: default

Description: This is an opaque type.

### 75.11.154 Inc

Synopsis: Increase value of integer variable

Declaration: `procedure Inc(var X: TOrdinal)`  
`procedure Inc(var X: TOrdinal; Increment: TOrdinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Inc` increases the value of `X` with `Increment`. If `Increment` isn't specified, then 1 is taken as a default.

Errors: If range checking is on, then a range check can occur, or an overflow error, when an attempt is made to increase `X` over its maximum value.

See also: `Dec` ([1420](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex32.pp`

---

**Program** Example32;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Inc function. }*

**Const**

```

C : Cardinal = 1;
L : Longint  = 1;
I : Integer  = 1;
W : Word     = 1;
B : Byte     = 1;
SI : ShortInt = 1;
CH : Char    = 'A';

```

---

```

begin
  Inc (C);      { C:=2    }
  Inc (L,5);    { L:=6    }
  Inc (I,-3);   { I:=-2   }
  Inc (W,3);    { W:=4    }
  Inc (B,100);  { B:=101  }
  Inc (SI,-3);  { SI:=-2  }
  Inc (CH,1);   { ch:='B' }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.155 Include

Synopsis: Include element in set if it was not yet present.

Declaration: `procedure Include(var S: TSetType; E: TSetElement)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Include` includes `E` in the set `S` if it is not yet part of the set. `E` should be of the same type as the base type of the set `S`.

Thus, the two following statements do the same thing:

```

S:=S+[E];
Include(S,E);

```

For an example, see `Exclude` ([1432](#))

Errors: If the type of the element `E` is not equal to the base type of the set `S`, the compiler will generate an error.

See also: `Exclude` ([1432](#))

### 75.11.156 IndexByte

Synopsis: Search for a byte in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexByte(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Byte) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexByte` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the byte `b` and returns it's position if it found one. If `b` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexChar` ([1458](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1459](#)), `IndexWord` ([1460](#)), `CompareByte` ([1411](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex105.pp`

---

**Program** `Example105;`

```

{ Program to demonstrate the IndexByte function. }

```

**Const**

```

  ArraySize = 256;

```

```

    MaxValue = 256;

Var
    Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Byte;
    I,J : longint;
    K : Byte;

begin
    Randomize;
    For I:=1 To ArraySize do
        Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);
    For I:=1 to 10 do
        begin
            K:=Random(MaxValue);
            J:=IndexByte(Buffer,ArraySize,K);
            if J=-1 then
                Writeln('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')
            else
                Writeln('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');
            end;
        end.

```

---

### 75.11.157 IndexChar

Synopsis: Search for a character in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexChar(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Char) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexChar` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the character `b` and returns it's position if it found one. If `b` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based. The `IndexChar0` variant stops looking if a null character is found, and returns -1 in that case.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1457](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1459](#)), `IndexWord` ([1460](#)), `CompareChar` ([1412](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex108.pp`

---

**Program** Example108;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexChar function. }*

**Const**

```

    ArraySize = 1000;
    MaxValue = 26;

```

**Var**

```

    Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Char;
    I,J : longint;
    K : Char;

```

**begin**

```

    Randomize;
    For I:=1 To ArraySize do
        Buffer[I]:=chr(Ord('A')+Random(MaxValue));
    For I:=1 to 10 do

```

---

```

begin
K:=chr(Ord('A')+Random(MaxValue));
J:=IndexChar(Buffer,ArraySize,K);
if J=-1 then
  WriteLn('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')
else
  WriteLn('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');
end;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.158 IndexChar0

Synopsis: Return index of a character in null-terminated array of char.

Declaration: `function IndexChar0(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Char) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexChar0` returns the index of the character `b` in the null-terminated array `Buf`. At most `len` characters will be searched, or the null character if it is encountered first. If the character is not found, -1 is returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1457](#)), `IndexChar` ([1458](#)), `IndexWord` ([1460](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1459](#)), `CompareChar0` ([1414](#))

### 75.11.159 IndexDWord

Synopsis: Search for a DWord value in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexDWord(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: DWord) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexDWord` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the DWord `DW` and returns it's position if it found one. If `DW` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1457](#)), `IndexChar` ([1458](#)), `IndexWord` ([1460](#)), `CompareDWord` ([1414](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex106.pp`

---

**Program** `Example106;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexDWord function. }*

**Const**

```

  ArraySize = 1000;
  MaxValue = 1000;

```

**Var**

```

  Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of DWord;
  I,J : longint;
  K : DWord;

```

**begin**

```

  Randomize;

```

---

```

For I:=1 To ArraySize do
  Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);
For I:=1 to 10 do
  begin
    K:=Random(MaxValue);
    J:=IndexDWord(Buffer, ArraySize, K);
    if J=-1 then
      WriteLn('Value ', K, ' was not found in buffer.')
    else
      WriteLn('Found ', K, ' at position ', J, ' in buffer');
    end;
  end;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.160 IndexQWord

Synopsis: Return the position of a QWord in a memory range

Declaration: `function IndexQWord(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: QWord) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexQWord` checks the first `len` qwords starting at `Buf`, and returns the position (zero-based) of `b`. If `b` does not appear in the first `len` qwords, then -1 is returned.

Note that the search is done on QWord boundaries, but that the address of `buf` need not be on a QWord boundary.

Errors: No check is done to see whether the indicated memory range is valid. If it is not, a run-error or exception may be triggered.

See also: `IndexDWord` ([1459](#))

### 75.11.161 Indexword

Synopsis: Search for a WORD value in a memory range.

Declaration: `function Indexword(const buf; len: SizeInt; b: Word) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexWord` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the Word `W` and returns it's position if it found one. If `W` is not found then -1 is returned.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexByte` ([1457](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1459](#)), `IndexChar` ([1458](#)), `CompareWord` ([1415](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex107.pp`

---

**Program** `Example107;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexWord function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize = 1000;`  
    `MaxValue = 1000;`

**Var**

```

Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Word;
I,J : longint;
K : Word;

begin
  Randomize;
  For I:=1 To ArraySize do
    Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      K:=Random(MaxValue);
      J:=IndexWord(Buffer,ArraySize,K);
      if J=-1 then
        WriteLn('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')
      else
        WriteLn('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');
      end;
    end.

```

---

### 75.11.162 InitCriticalSection

Synopsis: Initialize a critical section

Declaration: `procedure InitCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION)`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitCriticalSection` initializes a critical section CS for use. Before using a critical section with `EnterCriticalSection` (1428) or `LeaveCriticalSection` (1470) the critical section should be initialized with `InitCriticalSection`.

When a critical section is no longer used, it should be disposed of with `DoneCriticalSection` (1424)

See also: `DoneCriticalSection` (1424), `EnterCriticalSection` (1428), `LeaveCriticalSection` (1470)

### 75.11.163 Initialize

Synopsis: Initialize memory block using RTTI

Declaration: `procedure Initialize(var T: TAnyType; ACount: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Initialize` is a compiler intrinsic: it initializes a memory area T for any kind of managed variable. Initializing means zeroing out the memory area. In this sense it is close in functionality to `Default` (1421), but `Default` requires an already initialized variable. It performs the opposite operation of `finalize` (1440), which should be used to clean up the memory block when it is no longer needed.

The optional `ACount` parameter can be used to initialize an array. It then specifies the number of elements in the array.

See also: `finalize` (1440), `Default` (1421), `TypeInfo` (1531)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex117.pp`

---

```

{
    This example demonstrates the use of the Initialize and Finalize functions
    used to initialize (and clean up) any RTTI-enabled data not allocated with
    New or Create.
}

{$mode objfpc}
{$h+} // use ansistrings, they need to be initialized.
Type
    PData = ^TData;
    TData = record
        Street, City, Zip, Country, Tel: String;
        StreetNumber : Integer;
    end;

var
    Data: PData;

begin
    // Do not use New.
    GetMem(Data, SizeOf(TData));
    Try
        { Initialize the structure in memory, using Run-Time Type Information }
        Initialize(Data^);
        { Assign some string data to the ansistring contents.
          Note that this only works because the record was zeroed out by Initialize }
        Data^.Street := 'Sesame Street';
        Data^.City := 'Heaven';
        Data^.Zip := '7777777';
        Data^.Country := 'Spain';
        Data^.StreetNumber := 3;
    Finally
        { Clean up the record contents.
          Again, the structure of the record is detected through
          Run-time Type Information }
        Finalize(Data^);
        FreeMem(Data);
    end;
end.
```

---

**Listing:** ./refex/ex118.pp

---

```

{
    This example demonstrates the use of the Initialize and Finalize functions
    used to initialize (and clean up) any RTTI-enabled data not allocated with
    New or Create.
}

{$mode objfpc}
{$h+} // use ansistrings, they need to be initialized.
Type
    PData = ^TData;
    TData = record
        Street, City, Zip, Country, Tel: String;
        StreetNumber : Integer;
    end;

var
```

---

```

Data: PData;

begin
  // We use the fact that a pointer is also usable as an array.
  GetMem(Data, SizeOf(TData)*2);
  Try
    { Initialize the structure in memory, using Run-Time Type Information }
    Initialize(Data^, 2);
    { Assign some string data to the ansistring contents.
      Note that this only works because the record was zeroed out by Initialize }
    Data[0].Street:= 'Sesame Street';
    Data[0].City:= 'Heaven';
    Data[0].Zip:= '7777777';
    Data[0].Country:= 'Spain';
    Data[0].StreetNumber:= 3;
    // Second, well known street
    Data[1].Street:= 'Wall Street';
    Data[1].City:= 'New York';
    Data[1].Zip:= '10005';
    Data[1].Country:= 'USA';
    Data[1].StreetNumber:= 11;
  Finally
    { Clean up the record contents.
      Again, the structure of the record is detected through
      Run-time Type Information }
    Finalize(Data^);
    FreeMem(Data);
  end;
end.

```

---

### 75.11.164 InitializeArray

Synopsis: Initialize managed-type elements in array

Declaration: `procedure InitializeArray(p: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer; count: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitializeArray` initializes managed types in the array pointed to by `p`. For this, it uses the type information of the elements as specified in `typeInfo`.

Under normal circumstances, this procedure should not be used, it is called automatically by the compiler when an array-typed variable is declared and the array contains elements with managed types.

See also: `FinalizeArray` ([1440](#)), `CopyArray` ([1419](#))

### 75.11.165 InitThread

Synopsis: Initialize a thread

Declaration: `procedure InitThread(stklen: SizeUInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Do not use, this is used internally by the thread manager.



**75.11.166 InitThreadVars**

Synopsis: Initialize threadvars

Declaration: `procedure InitThreadVars (RelocProc: TRelocateThreadVarHandler)`

Visibility: default

Description: This routine should be called when threading is started. It is called by the compiler and should never be called manually, only from a thread manager.

Errors: None.

See also: TThreadManager ([1376](#))

**75.11.167 Insert**

Synopsis: Insert one string or dynamic array in another.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (const source: string; var S: string;  
                              const Index: Integer)  
          procedure Insert (const source: DynArrayType; var S: DynArrayType;  
                              const Index: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts string `Source` in string `S`, at position `Index`, shifting all characters after `Index` to the right. The resulting string is truncated at 255 characters, if needed. (i.e. for shortstrings)

`Index` is a 1-based index. if `Index` is less than 1, the insert of `Source` happens at the start of the string, as if the value 1 was specified.

If the value of `Index` is larger than the length of the string `S`, `Source` is appended to the string `S`.

For dynamic arrays, `Insert` inserts the elements of array `Source` in array `S`, at position `Index`, shifting all elements after `Index` to the right.

`Index` is a 0-based index. if `Index` is less than 0, the insert of `Source` happens at position 0.

If the value of `Index` is larger than the length of the array `S`, `Source` is appended to the array `S`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Delete` ([1422](#)), `Copy` ([1418](#)), `Pos` ([1485](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Insert function. }*

**Var** `S : String`;

**begin**

`S := 'Free Pascal is difficult to use !';`

`Insert ('NOT ', S, pos('difficult', S));`

`writeln (s);`

**end.**

---

**75.11.168 Int**

Synopsis: Calculate integer part of floating point value.

Declaration: `function Int(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Int` returns the integer part of any Real X, as a Real.

Errors: None.

See also: `Frac` ([1443](#)), `Round` ([1499](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex34.pp`

**Program** `Example34;`

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Int function. }

begin
  Writeln (Int(123.456):0:1); { Prints 123.0 }
  Writeln (Int(-123.456):0:1); { Prints -123.0 }
end.
```

---

**75.11.169 intdivide(variant,variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement `div` (integer division) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator div(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the integer division `Div` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opintdivide`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator mod(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#))

**75.11.170 InterlockedCompareExchange**

Synopsis: Conditional exchange

Declaration: `function InterlockedCompareExchange(var Target: LongInt;  
   NewValue: LongInt;  
   Comperand: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function InterlockedCompareExchange(var Target: Pointer;  
   NewValue: Pointer;  
   Comperand: Pointer) : Pointer`  
`function InterlockedCompareExchange(var Target: Cardinal;  
   NewValue: Cardinal;  
   Comperand: Cardinal) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `InterlockedCompareExchange` does an compare-and-exchange operation on the specified values in a thread-safe way. The function compares `Target` and `Comparand` and exchanges `Target` with `NewValue` if `Target` and `Comparand` are equal. It returns the old value of `Target`. This is done in a thread-safe way, i.e., only one processor is accessing the `Target` variable at a time.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `InterLockedDecrement` ([1466](#)), `InterLockedIncrement` ([1467](#)), `InterLockedExchange` ([1466](#)), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` ([1467](#))

### 75.11.171 InterlockedCompareExchangePointer

**Synopsis:** Compare pointers in an atomic operation

**Declaration:**

```
function InterlockedCompareExchangePointer(var Target: Pointer;
                                           NewValue: Pointer;
                                           Comperand: Pointer) : Pointer
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InterlockedCompareExchangePointer` compares `Comparand` with `Target`. if they are equal, replaces `Target` with `NewValue`. This is done in a single atomic operation.

**See also:** `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1465](#))

### 75.11.172 InterlockedDecrement

**Synopsis:** Thread-safe decrement

**Declaration:**

```
function InterlockedDecrement(var Target: LongInt) : LongInt
function InterlockedDecrement(var Target: Pointer) : Pointer
function InterlockedDecrement(var Target: Cardinal) : Cardinal
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InterLockedDecrement` decrements `Target` with 1 and returns the result. This is done in a thread-safe way. (i.e. only one processor is accessing the variable at a time).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `InterLockedIncrement` ([1467](#)), `InterLockedExchange` ([1466](#)), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` ([1467](#)), `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1465](#))

### 75.11.173 InterlockedExchange

**Synopsis:** Exchange 2 integers in a thread-safe way

**Declaration:**

```
function InterlockedExchange(var Target: LongInt; Source: LongInt)
                           : LongInt
function InterlockedExchange(var Target: Pointer; Source: Pointer)
                           : Pointer
function InterlockedExchange(var Target: Cardinal; Source: Cardinal)
                           : Cardinal
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InterLockedExchange` stores `Source` in `Target` and returns the old value of `Target`. This is done in a thread-safe way, i.e., only one processor is accessing the `Target` variable at a time.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `InterLockedDecrement` ([1466](#)), `InterLockedIncrement` ([1467](#)), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` ([1467](#)), `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1465](#))

### 75.11.174 `InterlockedExchangeAdd`

**Synopsis:** Thread-safe add and exchange of 2 values

**Declaration:**

```
function InterlockedExchangeAdd(var Target: LongInt; Source: LongInt)
    : LongInt
function InterlockedExchangeAdd(var Target: Pointer; Source: Pointer)
    : Pointer
function InterlockedExchangeAdd(var Target: Cardinal; Source: Cardinal)
    : Cardinal
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InterLockedExchangeAdd` adds to `Target` the value of `Source` in a thread-safe way, and returns the old value of `Target`. This is done in a thread-safe way, i.e., only one processor is accessing the `Target` variable at a time.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `InterLockedDecrement` ([1466](#)), `InterLockedIncrement` ([1467](#)), `InterLockedExchange` ([1466](#)), `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1465](#))

### 75.11.175 `InterlockedIncrement`

**Synopsis:** Thread-safe increment

**Declaration:**

```
function InterlockedIncrement(var Target: LongInt) : LongInt
function InterlockedIncrement(var Target: Pointer) : Pointer
function InterlockedIncrement(var Target: Cardinal) : Cardinal
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InterLockedIncrement` increments `Target` with 1 and returns the result. This is done in a thread-safe way (i.e. only one processor is accessing the variable at a time).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `InterLockedDecrement` ([1466](#)), `InterLockedExchange` ([1466](#)), `InterLockedExchangeAdd` ([1467](#)), `InterlockedCompareExchange` ([1465](#))

### 75.11.176 `IOResult`

**Synopsis:** Return result of last file IO operation

**Declaration:** `function IOResult : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IOresult` contains the result of any input/output call, when the `{\$_i-}` compiler directive is active, disabling IO checking. When the flag is read, it is reset to zero. If `IOresult` is zero, the operation completed successfully. If non-zero, an error occurred. The following errors can occur:

dos errors :

- 2**File not found.
- 3**Path not found.
- 4**Too many open files.
- 5**Access denied.
- 6**Invalid file handle.
- 12**Invalid file-access mode.
- 15**Invalid disk number.
- 16**Cannot remove current directory.
- 17**Cannot rename across volumes.

I/O errors :

- 100**Error when reading from disk.
- 101**Error when writing to disk.
- 102**File not assigned.
- 103**File not open.
- 104**File not opened for input.
- 105**File not opened for output.
- 106**Invalid number.

Fatal errors :

- 150**Disk is write protected.
- 151**Unknown device.
- 152**Drive not ready.
- 153**Unknown command.
- 154**CRC check failed.
- 155**Invalid drive specified..
- 156**Seek error on disk.
- 157**Invalid media type.
- 158**Sector not found.
- 159**Printer out of paper.
- 160**Error when writing to device.
- 161**Error when reading from device.
- 162**Hardware failure.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./refex/ex35.pp`

---

```

Program Example35;

{ Program to demonstrate the IOResult function. }

Var F : text;

begin
  Assign (f,paramstr(1));
  {$i-}
  Reset (f);
  {$i+}
  If IOResult<>0 then
    writeln ('File ',paramstr(1),' doesn't exist')
  else
    writeln ('File ',paramstr(1),' exists');
end.

```

---

### 75.11.177 IsDynArrayRectangular

**Synopsis:** Check whether all dimensions have the same size

**Declaration:** `function IsDynArrayRectangular(a: Pointer; typeInfo: Pointer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsDynArrayRectangular` returns `True` if all dimensions of the dynamic array `a` with type information `typeinfo` have the same bounds. It returns `True` if the array is empty.

**See also:** `InitializeArray` ([1463](#)), `FinalizeArray` ([1440](#)), `CopyArray` ([1419](#)), `DynArraySize` ([1427](#)), `DynArrayClear` ([1426](#)), `DynArrayBounds` ([1426](#)), `DynArrayDim` ([1426](#))

### 75.11.178 IsMemoryManagerSet

**Synopsis:** Is the memory manager set

**Declaration:** `function IsMemoryManagerSet : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsMemoryManagerSet` will return `True` if the memory manager has been set to another value than the system heap manager, it will return `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetMemoryManager` ([1508](#)), `GetMemoryManager` ([1447](#))

### 75.11.179 Is\_IntResource

**Synopsis:** Check whether a resource is an internal resource

**Declaration:** `function Is_IntResource(aStr: PChar) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Is_IntResource` returns `True` if the resource type is internal (system predefined) resource or false if it is a user-defined resource type.

**Errors:** None.

### 75.11.180 KillThread

Synopsis: Kill a running thread

Declaration: `function KillThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `KillThread` causes a running thread to be aborted. The thread is identified by its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

See also: `WaitForThreadTerminate` ([1539](#)), `EndThread` ([1427](#)), `SuspendThread` ([1523](#))

### 75.11.181 LeaveCriticalSection

Synopsis: Leave a critical section

Declaration: `procedure LeaveCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LeaveCriticalSection` signals that the current thread is exiting the critical section CS it has entered with `EnterCriticalSection` ([1428](#)).

The critical section must have been initialized with `InitCriticalSection` ([1461](#)) prior to a call to `EnterCriticalSection` and `LeaveCriticalSection`.

See also: `InitCriticalSection` ([1461](#)), `DoneCriticalSection` ([1424](#)), `EnterCriticalSection` ([1428](#))

### 75.11.182 leftshift(variant,variant):variant

Synopsis: Implement binary `shl` operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator shl(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the `shl` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opshiftright`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator shr(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#))

### 75.11.183 Length

Synopsis: Returns length of a string or array.

Declaration: `function Length(S: AStringType) : SizeInt`  
`function Length(A: DynArrayType) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Length` returns the length of the string or array `S`, which is limited to 255 for shortstrings. If the string `S` is empty, 0 is returned.

*Note:* The length of the string `S` is stored in `S[0]` for shortstrings only. The `Length` function should always be used on ansistrings and widestrings.

For dynamic or static arrays, the function returns the number of elements in the array.

`Length` also supports arguments of type `PChar` and `PWideChar`, in which case it is identical to the `StrLen` and `WStrLen` functions, respectively. In this case, the function actually calculates the length of the null-terminated string, and its execution time is proportional to the string length because the terminating null character is searched through a linear scan.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Pos` ([1485](#)), `SetLength` ([1507](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** `Example36`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Length function. }*

**type**

`somebytes = array [6..10] of byte;`  
`somewords = array [3..10] of word;`

**Var**

`S : String;`  
`I : Integer;`  
`bytes : somebytes;`  
`words : somewords;`

**begin**

`S:= '';`  
**for** `i:=1 to 10 do`  
  **begin**  
    `S:=S+ '* ';`  
    **WriteLn** (`Length(S):2, ' : ',S`);  
  **end;**  
  **WriteLn** (`'Bytes : ',length(bytes)`);  
  **WriteLn** (`'Words : ',length(words)`);

**end.**

---

### 75.11.184 `lessthan(variant,variant):Boolean`

**Synopsis:** Implement `<` (less than) operation on variants.

**Declaration:** `operator <(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The implementation of the "less than" comparison (`<`) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opcmlt`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator >(variant, variant): boolean` ([1313](#))



**75.11.185 lessthanorequal(variant,variant):Boolean**

Synopsis: Implement <= (less than or equal) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator <=(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the "less than or equal" comparison (<=) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opcmlpe`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator <(variant, variant): boolean ([1313](#))

**75.11.186 LEtoN**

Synopsis: Convert Little Endian-ordered integer to Native-ordered integer

Declaration: `function LEtoN(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt`  
`function LEtoN(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function LEtoN(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function LEtoN(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function LEtoN(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`  
`function LEtoN(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `LEtoN` will rearrange the bytes in a Little-Endian number to the native order for the current processor. That is, for a little-endian processor, it will do nothing, and for a big-endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes.

See also: `BEtoN` ([1403](#)), `NtoBE` ([1480](#)), `NtoLE` ([1480](#))

**75.11.187 Ln**

Synopsis: Calculate logarithm

Declaration: `function Ln(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ln` returns the natural logarithm of the Real parameter X. X must be positive.

Errors: An run-time error will occur when X is negative.

See also: `Exp` ([1435](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex37.pp`

---

**Program** `Example37;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ln function. }*

```
begin
  Writeln (Ln(1));      { Prints 0 }
  Writeln (Ln(Exp(1))); { Prints 1 }
end.
```

---

**75.11.188 Lo**

Synopsis: Return low nibble/byte/word of value.

Declaration: `function Lo(B: Byte) : Byte`  
`function Lo(i: Integer) : Byte`  
`function Lo(w: Word) : Byte`  
`function Lo(l: LongInt) : Word`  
`function Lo(l: DWord) : Word`  
`function Lo(i: Int64) : DWord`  
`function Lo(q: QWord) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `Lo` returns the high nibble, byte or word or longword from `X`, depending on the size of `X`.

Table 75.22:

Size	Return value
8	Byte, low nibble
16	Byte, low byte
32	Word, low word
64	Cardinal, low DWord

Errors: None.

See also: `Ord` ([1483](#)), `Chr` ([1410](#)), `Hi` ([1454](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex38.pp`

---

**Program** `Example38`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Lo function. }*

```

Var L : Longint;
      W : Word;
      B : Byte;
begin
  L:=(1 Shl 16) + (1 Shl 4); { $10010 }
  Writeln (Lo(L));          { Prints 16 }
  W:=(1 Shl 8) + (1 Shl 4); { $110 }
  Writeln (Lo(W));          { Prints 16 }
  B:=$EF;
  Writeln (Lo(B));          { Prints 15 }
end.

```

---

**75.11.189 LoadLibrary**

Synopsis: Load a dynamic library and return a handle to it.

Declaration: `function LoadLibrary(const Name: RawByteString) : TLibHandle`  
`function LoadLibrary(const Name: UnicodeString) : TLibHandle`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `LoadLibrary` loads a dynamic library in `file Name` and returns a handle to it. If the library cannot be loaded, `NilHandle` (1336) is returned.

No assumptions should be made about the location of the loaded library if a relative pathname is specified. The behaviour is dependent on the platform. Therefore it is best to specify an absolute pathname if possible.

**Errors:** On error, `NilHandle` (1336) is returned.

**See also:** `UnloadLibrary` (1534), `GetProcAddress` (1448)

### 75.11.190 LoadResource

**Synopsis:** Load a resource for use

**Declaration:** `function LoadResource (ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle) : TFPResourceHGLOBAL`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LoadResource` loads a resource identified by `ResHandle` from a module identified by `ModuleHandle` into memory. It returns a handle to the resource.

Loaded resources must be unloaded again using the `FreeResource` (1444) function.

**Errors:** On error, 0 is returned.

**See also:** `FindResource` (1440), `FreeResource` (1444), `SizeofResource` (1515), `LockResource` (1474), `UnlockResource` (1534), `FreeResource` (1444)

### 75.11.191 LockResource

**Synopsis:** Lock a resource

**Declaration:** `function LockResource (ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : Pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LockResource` locks a resource previously loaded by `LoadResource` into memory. This means that any attempt to modify the resource will fail while it is locked. The function returns a pointer to the resource location in memory.

The resource can be freed again using the `UnlockResource` (1534) function.

**Errors:** if the function fails, `Nil` is returned.

**See also:** `FindResource` (1440), `FreeResource` (1444), `SizeofResource` (1515), `LoadResource` (1474), `UnlockResource` (1534), `FreeResource` (1444)

### 75.11.192 logicaland(variant,variant):variant

**Synopsis:** Implement logical/binary and operation on variants

**Declaration:** `operator and (const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The implementation of the `and` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opand`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

**See also:** operator `or(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#)), operator `xor(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#)), operator `not(variant): variant` ([1313](#))

### 75.11.193 `logicalnot(variant):variant`

**Synopsis:** Implement logical/binary `not` operation on variants

**Declaration:** `operator not(const op: variant) : variant`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** The implementation of the `not` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opnot`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

**See also:** operator `and(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#)), operator `or(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#)), operator `xor(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#))

### 75.11.194 `logicalor(variant,variant):variant`

**Synopsis:** Implement logical/binary `or` operation on variants

**Declaration:** `operator or(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** The implementation of the `or` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opor`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

**See also:** operator `and(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#)), operator `xor(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#)), operator `not(variant): variant` ([1313](#))

### 75.11.195 `logicalxor(variant,variant):variant`

**Synopsis:** Implement logical/binary `xor` operation on variants

**Declaration:** `operator xor(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** The implementation of the `xor` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opxor`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

**See also:** operator `or(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#)), operator `and(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#)), operator `not(variant): variant` ([1313](#))

**75.11.196 longjmp**

Synopsis: Jump to address.

Declaration: `procedure longjmp(var S: jmp_buf; value: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LongJump` jumps to the address in the `envjmp_buf`, and restores the registers that were stored in it at the corresponding `SetJump` (1506) call. In effect, program flow will continue at the `SetJump` call, which will return `value` instead of 0. If a value equal to zero is passed, it will be converted to 1 before passing it on. The call will not return, so it must be used with extreme care. This can be used for error recovery, for instance when a segmentation fault occurred.

For an example, see `SetJump` (1506)

Errors: None.

See also: `SetJump` (1506)

**75.11.197 Low**

Synopsis: Return lowest index of open array or enumerated

Declaration: `function Low(Arg: TypeOrVariable) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: The return value of `Low` depends on it's argument:

- 1.If the argument is an ordinal type, `Low` returns the lowest value in the range of the given ordinal type.
- 2.If the argument is an array type or an array type variable then `Low` returns the lowest possible value of it's index.
- 3.If the argument is an open array identifier in a function or procedure, then `Low` returns the lowest element of the array, which is always zero.
- 4.If the argument is a set type then it returns the lowest value of the underlying ordinal type.

The return type is always the same type as the type of the argument.

for an example, see `High` (1455).

Errors: None.

See also: `High` (1455), `Ord` (1483), `Pred` (1487), `Succ` (1523)

**75.11.198 LowerCase**

Synopsis: Return lowercase version of a string.

Declaration: `function LowerCase(const s: shortstring) : shortstring; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(c: Char) : Char; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(const s: ansistring) : ansistring`  
`function LowerCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`  
`function LowerCase(c: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Lowercase` returns the lowercase version of its argument `C`. If its argument is a string, then the complete string is converted to lowercase. The type of the returned value is the same as the type of the argument.

`Lowercase` does not change the number of characters (or bytes) in an ansistring.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Uppcase` ([1534](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex73.pp`

---

```

program Example73;

{ Program to demonstrate the Lowercase function. }

var c:char;

begin
  for c:= 'A' to 'Z' do
    write(lowercase(c));
  Writeln;
  Writeln(Lowercase( 'ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ' ));
end.
```

---

### 75.11.199 MakeLangID

**Synopsis:** Create a language ID

**Declaration:** `function MakeLangID(primary: Word; sub: Word) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MakeLangID` creates a language ID from the `primary` and `sub` language IDs.

### 75.11.200 MemSize

**Synopsis:** Return the size of a memory block.

**Declaration:** `function MemSize(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MemSize` returns the size of a memory block on the heap.

**Errors:** Passing an invalid pointer may lead to run-time errors (access violations).

**See also:** `GetMem` ([1446](#)), `FreeMem` ([1443](#))

### 75.11.201 Mkdir

**Synopsis:** Create a new directory.

**Declaration:** `procedure Mkdir(const s: shortstring); Overload`  
`procedure Mkdir(const s: RawByteString); Overload`  
`procedure Mkdir(const s: unicodestring); Overload`

**Visibility:** default

Description: `Mkdir` creates a new directory `S`.

For an example, see `Rmdir` ([1496](#)).

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Chdir` ([1410](#)), `Rmdir` ([1496](#))

### 75.11.202 `modulus(variant,variant):variant`

Synopsis: Implement `mod` (modulo) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator mod(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: `default`

Description: The implementation of the modulo `Mod` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opModulus`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator div(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#))

### 75.11.203 `Move`

Synopsis: Move data from one location in memory to another

Declaration: `procedure Move(const source; var dest; count: SizeInt)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Move` moves `Count` bytes from `Source` to `Dest`.

Errors: If either `Dest` or `Source` is outside the accessible memory for the process, then a run-time error will be generated.

See also: `Fillword` ([1439](#)), `Fillchar` ([1438](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex42.pp`

---

**Program** `Example42`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Move function. }*

**Var** `S1,S2 : String [30];`

**begin**

`S1:= 'Hello World !';`

`S2:= 'Bye, bye !';`

`Move (S1,S2,Sizeof(S1));`

`Writeln (S2);`

**end.**

---

**75.11.204 MoveChar0**

Synopsis: Move data till first zero character

Declaration: `procedure MoveChar0(const buf1; var buf2; len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveChar0` moves `Count` bytes from `buf1` to `buf2`, and stops moving if a zero character is found.

Errors: No checking is done to see if `Count` stays within the memory allocated to the process.

See also: `Move` ([1478](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex109.pp`

**Program** `Example109;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the MoveChar0 function. }*

**Var**

`Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..80] of char;`  
`l : longint;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`For l:=low(buf1) to high(buf1) do`

`Buf1[l]:=chr(Random(16)+Ord('A'));`

`WriteLn('Original buffer');`

`writeln(Buf1);`

`Buf1[Random(80)+1]:=#0;`

`MoveChar0(Buf1, Buf2, 80);`

`WriteLn('Randomly zero-terminated Buffer');`

`WriteLn(Buf2);`

**end.**

**75.11.205 multiply(variant,variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement multiplication (\*) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator *(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the multiplication \* operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opMultiply`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator /(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#))

**75.11.206 negative(variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement - (unary minus, negation) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator -(const op: variant) : variant`



Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the unary minus (−) operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `varNeg`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator `-(variant, variant)`: variant ([1313](#))

### 75.11.207 New

Synopsis: Dynamically allocate memory for variable

Declaration: `procedure New(var P: Pointer)`  
`procedure New(var P: Pointer; Cons: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: `New` allocates a new instance of the type pointed to by `P`, and puts the address in `P`. If `P` is an object, then it is possible to specify the name of the constructor with which the instance will be created.

The newly allocated memory is not initialized in any way, and may contain garbage data. It must be cleared with a call to `FillChar` ([1438](#)) or `FillWord` ([1439](#)).

For an example, see `Dispose` ([1423](#)).

Errors: What happens if no more memory is available, depends on the value of the variable `ReturnNilIfGrowHeapfails` ([1392](#)): if the variable is `True` then `Nil` is returned. If the variable is `False`, a run-time error is generated.

See also: `Dispose` ([1423](#)), `Freemem` ([1443](#)), `Getmem` ([1446](#)), `ReturnNilIfGrowHeapfails` ([1392](#))

### 75.11.208 NtoBE

Synopsis: Convert Native-ordered integer to a Big Endian-ordered integer

Declaration: `function NtoBE(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`  
`function NtoBE(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `NtoBE` will rearrange the bytes in a natively-ordered number to the Big-Endian order. That is, for a Little-Endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes and for a big-endian processor, it will do nothing.

See also: `BEtoN` ([1403](#)), `LEtoN` ([1472](#)), `NtoLE` ([1480](#))

### 75.11.209 NtoLE

Synopsis: Convert Native-ordered integer to a Little Endian-ordered integer

**Declaration:** `function NtoLE(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`  
`function NtoLE(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NtoLE` will rearrange the bytes in a natively-ordered number to the little-Endian order. That is, for a Big-Endian processor, it will invert the order of the bytes and for a Little-Endian processor, it will do nothing.

See also: `BEtoN` ([1403](#)), `LEtoN` ([1472](#)), `NtoBE` ([1480](#))

### 75.11.210 Null

**Synopsis:** Null variant

**Declaration:** `function Null : Variant`

**Visibility:** default

### 75.11.211 OctStr

**Synopsis:** Convert integer to a string with octal representation.

**Declaration:** `function OctStr(Val: LongInt; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function OctStr(Val: Int64; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function OctStr(Val: QWord; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `OctStr` returns a string with the octal representation of `Value`. The string has exactly `cnt` characters.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Str` ([1518](#)), `Val` ([1537](#)), `BinStr` ([1404](#)), `HexStr` ([1453](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex112.pp`

---

```

Program example112;

{ Program to demonstrate the OctStr function }

Const Value = 45678;

Var I : longint;

begin
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    Writeln (OctStr(Value, I));
  For I:=1 to 16 do
    Writeln (OctStr(I, 3));
end.

```

---

**75.11.212 Odd**

Synopsis: Is a value odd or even ?

Declaration: `function Odd(l: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Odd(l: LongWord) : Boolean`  
`function Odd(l: Int64) : Boolean`  
`function Odd(l: QWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Odd returns True if X is odd, or False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: Abs ([1393](#)), Ord ([1483](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example43;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Odd function. }*

```
begin
  If Odd(1) Then
    Writeln ('Everything OK with 1 !');
  If Not Odd(2) Then
    Writeln ('Everything OK with 2 !');
end.
```

---

**75.11.213 Ofs**

Synopsis: Return offset of a variable.

Declaration: `function Ofs(var X) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Ofs returns the offset of the address of a variable. This function is only supported for compatibility. In Free Pascal, it returns always the complete address of the variable, since Free Pascal is a 32/64 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: DSeg ([1425](#)), CSeg ([1420](#)), Seg ([1505](#)), Ptr ([1487](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex44.pp

---

**Program** Example44;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ofs function. }*

**Var** W : Pointer;

```
begin
  W:=Pointer(Ofs(W)); { W contains its own offset. }
end.
```

---

**75.11.214 Ord**

Synopsis: Return ordinal value of an ordinal type.

Declaration: `function Ord(X: TOrdinal) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ord` returns the Ordinal value of a ordinal-type variable `X`.

Historical note:

Originally, Pascal did not have typecasts and `ord` was a necessary function in order to do certain operations on non-integer ordinal types. With the arrival of typecasting a generic approach became possible, making `ord` mostly obsolete. However `ord` is not considered deprecated and remains in wide use today.

Errors: None.

See also: `Chr` ([1410](#)), `Succ` ([1523](#)), `Pred` ([1487](#)), `High` ([1455](#)), `Low` ([1476](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex45.pp`

**Program** `Example45;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ord, Pred, Succ functions. }*

**Type**

`TEnum = (Zero, One, Two, Three, Four);`

**Var**

`X : Longint;`

`Y : TEnum;`

**begin**

`X:=125;`

`WriteLn (Ord(X)); { Prints 125 }`

`X:=Pred(X);`

`WriteLn (Ord(X)); { prints 124 }`

`Y:= One;`

`WriteLn (Ord(y)); { Prints 1 }`

`Y:=Succ(Y);`

`WriteLn (Ord(Y)); { Prints 2 }`

**end.**

**75.11.215 Pack**

Synopsis: Create packed array from normal array

Declaration: `procedure Pack(const A: UnpackedArrayType; StartIndex: TIndexType;  
out Z: PackedArrayType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Pack` will copy the elements of an unpacked array (`A`) to a packed array (`Z`). It will start the copy at the index denoted by `StartIndex`. The type of the index variable `StartIndex` must match the type of the index of `A`. The elements are always transferred to the beginning of the packed array `Z`. (i.e. it starts at `Low(Z)`).

Obviously, the type of the elements of the arrays `A` and `Z` must match.

See also: `unpack` ([1534](#))

**75.11.216 ParamCount**

Synopsis: Return number of command-line parameters passed to the program.

Declaration: `function ParamCount : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Paramcount` returns the number of command-line arguments. If no arguments were given to the running program, 0 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Paramstr` ([1484](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex46.pp`

**Program** `Example46`;

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the ParamCount and ParamStr functions. }
Var
  I : Longint;

begin
  Writeln (paramstr(0), ' : Got ', ParamCount, ' command-line parameters: ');
  For i:=1 to ParamCount do
    Writeln (ParamStr (i));
end.
```

---

**75.11.217 ParamStr**

Synopsis: Return value of a command-line argument.

Declaration: `function ParamStr(l: LongInt) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `Paramstr` returns the L-th command-line argument. L must be between 0 and `Paramcount`, these values included. The zeroth argument is the path and file name with which the program was started.

The command-line parameters will be truncated to a length of 255, even though the operating system may support bigger command-lines. The `Objpascal` unit (used in `objfpc` or `delphi` mode) defines versions of `Paramstr` which return the full-length command-line arguments, using `ansistrings`.

In the interest of portability, the `ParamStr` function tries to behave the same on all operating systems: like the original `ParamStr` function in Turbo Pascal. This means even on Unix, `paramstr(0)` returns the full path to the program executable. A notable exception is Mac OS X, where the returned value depends on how the application was started. It may be that just the name of the application is returned (in case of a command-line launch), so it is best to avoid using it on that platform.

In general, it's a bad idea to rely on the location of the binary. Often, this goes against best OS practices. Configuration data should (or can) not be stored next to the binary, but on designated locations. What locations these are, is very much operating system dependent. Therefore, `ParamStr(0)` should be used with care.

For an example, see `Paramcount` ([1484](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `Paramcount` ([1484](#))

### 75.11.218 Pi

Synopsis: Return the value of PI.

Declaration: `function Pi : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Pi` returns the value of Pi (3.1415926535897932385).

Errors: None.

See also: `Cos` ([1419](#)), `Sin` ([1514](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex47.pp`

---

**Program** `Example47;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Pi function. }*

```
begin
  Writeln (Pi);           {3.1415926}
  Writeln (Sin(Pi));
end.
```

---

### 75.11.219 PopCnt

Synopsis: Count number of set bits

Declaration: `function PopCnt(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`  
`function PopCnt(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function PopCnt(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function PopCnt(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `PopCnt` (population count) counts the number of set bits in `AValue`.

### 75.11.220 Pos

Synopsis: Search for substring in a string.

Declaration: `function Pos(const substr: shortstring; const s: shortstring;`  
`Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function Pos(C: Char; const s: shortstring; Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function Pos(const Substr: ShortString; const Source: RawByteString;`  
`Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function Pos(const substr: shortstring; c: Char; Offset: SizeInt)`  
`: SizeInt`  
`function Pos(const Substr: RawByteString; const Source: RawByteString;`  
`Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function Pos(c: AnsiChar; const s: RawByteString; Offset: SizeInt)`  
`: SizeInt`  
`function Pos(const Substr: UnicodeString; const Source: UnicodeString;`  
`Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function Pos(c: Char; const s: UnicodeString; Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function Pos(c: UnicodeChar; const s: UnicodeString; Offset: SizeInt)`

```

        : SizeInt
function Pos(const c: RawByteString; const s: UnicodeString;
            Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt
function Pos(const c: UnicodeString; const s: RawByteString;
            Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt
function Pos(const c: ShortString; const s: UnicodeString;
            Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt
function Pos(const Substr: WideString; const Source: WideString;
            Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: Char; const s: WideString; Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt
function Pos(c: WideChar; const s: WideString; Offset: SizeInt)
        : SizeInt
function Pos(c: WideChar; const s: RawByteString; Offset: SizeInt)
        : SizeInt
function Pos(const c: RawByteString; const s: WideString;
            Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt
function Pos(const c: WideString; const s: RawByteString;
            Offset: SizeInt) : SizeInt
function Pos(const c: ShortString; const s: WideString; Offset: SizeInt)
        : SizeInt
function Pos(c: Char; const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(s: ShortString; const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(const a: AnsiString; const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(const w: WideString; const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(const w: UnicodeString; const v: Variant) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const c: Char) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const s: ShortString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const a: AnsiString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const w: WideString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v: Variant; const w: UnicodeString) : SizeInt
function Pos(const v1: Variant; const v2: Variant) : SizeInt

```

Visibility: default

Description: Pos returns the index of Substr in S, if S contains Substr. In case Substr isn't found, 0 is returned. The search is case-sensitive.

Errors: None

See also: Length ([1470](#)), Copy ([1418](#)), Delete ([1422](#)), Insert ([1464](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Pos function. }*

**Var**

S : String;

**begin**

S:= 'The first space in this sentence is at position : ';

WriteLn (S,pos(' ',S));

S:= 'The last letter of the alphabet doesn't appear in this sentence ';

If (Pos ('Z',S)=0) and (Pos('z',S)=0) then

WriteLn (S);

**end.**

---

**75.11.221 power(variant,variant):variant**

Synopsis: Implement power (\*\*) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator ** (const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the power \*\* operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opPower`.

Errors: Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator `*(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#))

**75.11.222 Pred**

Synopsis: Return previous element for an ordinal type.

Declaration: `function Pred(X: TOrdinal) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Pred` returns the element that precedes the element that was passed to it. If it is applied to the first value of the ordinal type, and the program was compiled with range checking on (`{ $R+ }`), then a run-time error will be generated.

For an example, see `Ord` ([1483](#))

Errors: Run-time error 201 is generated when the result is out of range.

See also: `Ord` ([1483](#)), `Succ` ([1523](#)), `High` ([1455](#)), `Low` ([1476](#))

**75.11.223 Prefetch**

Synopsis: Prefetch a memory location

Declaration: `procedure Prefetch(const mem)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Prefetch` can be used to optimize the CPU behaviour by already loading a memory location. It is mainly used as a hint for those processors that support it.

Errors: None.

**75.11.224 Ptr**

Synopsis: Combine segment and offset to pointer

Declaration: `function Ptr(sel: LongInt; off: LongInt) : farpointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ptr` returns a pointer, pointing to the address specified by segment `Sel` and offset `Off`.

**Remark**

1. In the 32/64-bit flat-memory model supported by Free Pascal, this function is obsolete.



2.The returned address is simply the offset.

Errors: None.

See also: Addr ([1395](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex59.pp

---

**Program** Example59;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ptr (compatibility) function. }*

**type** pString = ^String;

**Var** P : pString;  
S : String;

**begin**

S:= 'Hello , World !';  
P:=pString (Ptr (Seg(S), Longint (Ofs(S))));  
*{P now points to S !}*  
WriteLn (P^);

**end.**

---

### 75.11.225 RaiseList

Synopsis: List of currently raised exceptions.

Declaration: function RaiseList : PExceptObject

Visibility: default

Description: RaiseList returns a pointer to the list of currently raised exceptions (i.e. a pointer to the first exception block).

### 75.11.226 Random

Synopsis: Generate random number

Declaration: function Random(l: LongInt) : LongInt  
function Random(l: Int64) : Int64  
function Random : extended

Visibility: default

Description: Random returns a random number larger or equal to 0 and strictly less than L. For negative values of L the behaviour is undefined. If the argument L is omitted, a Real number between 0 and 1 is returned (0 included, 1 excluded).

**Remark** The Free Pascal implementation of the Random routine uses a Mersenne Twister algorithm to simulate randomness. This implementation has a better statistical distribution than for example a Linear Congruential generator algorithm, but is considerably slower than the latter. If speed is an issue, then alternate random number generators should be considered.

Note that the fact that a Mersenne Twister is used is an implementation detail, which can be changed at any point. The only guarantee Random() offers is that setting randseed to particular value will result in the same sequence of random numbers in a particular version the RTL. A newer version of the RTL may result in a different sequence for the same randseed.

Errors: None.

See also: Randomize ([1489](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex49.pp

---

**Program** Example49;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Random and Randomize functions. }*

**Var** I, Count, guess : Longint;  
R : Real;

**begin**

Randomize; *{ This way we generate a new sequence every time  
the program is run }*

Count:=0;

**For** i:=1 **to** 1000 **do**

**If** Random>0.5 **then inc**(Count);

**WriteIn** ( 'Generated ', Count, ' numbers > 0.5 ' );

**WriteIn** ( 'out of 1000 generated numbers.' );

    count:=0;

**For** i:=1 **to** 5 **do**

**begin**

**write** ( 'Guess a number between 1 and 5 : ' );

**readIn**(Guess);

**If** Guess=Random(5)+1 **then inc**(count);

**end**;

**WriteIn** ( 'You guessed ', Count, ' out of 5 correct.' );

**end.**

---

### 75.11.227 Randomize

Synopsis: Initialize random number generator

Declaration: `procedure Randomize`

Visibility: default

Description: Randomize initializes the random number generator of Free Pascal, by giving a value to Randseed, calculated with the system clock.

For an example, see Random ([1488](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: Random ([1488](#))

### 75.11.228 Read

Synopsis: Read from a text file into variable

Declaration: `procedure Read(var F: Text; Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure Read(Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Read` reads one or more values from a file `F`, and stores the result in `V1`, `V2`, etc.; If no file `F` is specified, then standard input is read. If `F` is of type `Text`, then the variables `V1`, `V2` etc. must be of type `Char`, `Integer`, `Real`, `String`. If `F` is a typed file, then each of the variables must be of the type specified in the declaration of `F`. Untyped files are not allowed as an argument.

In earlier versions of FPC, it was also allowed to read `Pchar` null-terminated strings, but this has been removed, since there is no buffer checking possible.

**Errors:** If no data is available, empty values are returned (0 for ordinal values, empty strings for string values)

See also: `ReadLn` ([1491](#)), `Blockread` ([1404](#)), `Write` ([1541](#)), `Blockwrite` ([1405](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex50.pp`

---

**Program** `Example50`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Read(Ln) function. }
```

---

```
Var S : String;
    C : Char;
    F : File of char;

begin
  Assign (F, 'ex50.pp');
  Reset (F);
  C:= 'A';
  Writeln ('The characters before the first space in ex50.pp are : ');
  While not Eof(f) and (C<>' ') do
    Begin
      Read (F,C);
      Write (C);
    end;
  Writeln;
  Close (F);
  Writeln ('Type some words. An empty line ends the program. ');
  repeat
    ReadLn (S);
  until S= '';
end.
```

---

### 75.11.229 ReadBarrier

**Synopsis:** Memory Read Barrier

**Declaration:** `procedure ReadBarrier`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `ReadBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a read barrier in the CPU: all memory reads before the instruction will be finished before this instruction, before memory reads after the instruction occur.

See also: `ReadDependencyBarrier` ([1491](#)), `ReadWriteBarrier` ([1492](#)), `WriteBarrier` ([1542](#))

**75.11.230 ReadDependencyBarrier**

Synopsis: Memory Read Dependency Barrier

Declaration: `procedure ReadDependencyBarrier`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadDependencyBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a read barrier in the CPU: all memory reads (loads) depending on previous loads are separate from the ones following the instruction.

See also: `ReadBarrier` ([1490](#)), `ReadWriteBarrier` ([1492](#)), `WriteBarrier` ([1542](#))

**75.11.231 ReadLn**

Synopsis: Read from a text file into variable and goto next line

Declaration: `procedure ReadLn(var F: Text; Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure ReadLn(Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Read` reads one or more values from a file `F`, and stores the result in `V1`, `V2`, etc. After that it goes to the next line in the file. The end of the line is marked by any of the supported line ending styles, independent of the platform on which the code is running (supported line ending styles are CRLF, LF or CR). The end-of-line marker is not considered part of the line and is ignored.

If no file `F` is specified, then standard input is read. The variables `V1`, `V2` etc. must be of type `Char`, `Integer`, `Real`, `String` or `PChar`.

For an example, see `Read` ([1489](#)).

Errors: If no data is available, empty values are returned (0 for ordinal values, empty strings for string values)

See also: `Read` ([1489](#)), `Blockread` ([1404](#)), `Write` ([1541](#)), `Blockwrite` ([1405](#))

**75.11.232 ReadStr**

Synopsis: Read variables from a string

Declaration: `procedure ReadStr(const S: string; Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadStr` behaves like `Read` ([1489](#)), except that it reads its input from the string variable `S` instead of a file. Semantically, the `ReadStr` call is equivalent to writing the string to a file using the `Write` call, and then reading them into the various arguments `Arg` using the `Read` call from the same file:

```
var
  F : Text;
begin
  Rewrite(F);
  Write(F, S);
  Close(F);
  Reset(F);
  Read(F, Args);
  Close(F);
end;
```

Obviously, the `ReadStr` call does not use a temporary file.

`ReadStr` is defined in the ISO Extended Pascal standard. More information on the allowed arguments and the behaviour of the arguments can be found in the description of `Read` ([1489](#)).

See also: `Read` ([1489](#)), `WriteStr` ([1543](#)), `Write` ([1541](#))

### 75.11.233 ReadWriteBarrier

Synopsis: Memory read/write barrier

Declaration: `procedure ReadWriteBarrier`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWriteBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a read/write barrier in the CPU: both read (Loads) and write (stores) operations before and after the barrier are separate.

See also: `ReadBarrier` ([1490](#)), `ReadDependencyBarrier` ([1491](#)), `WriteBarrier` ([1542](#))

### 75.11.234 Real2Double

Synopsis: Convert Turbo Pascal style real to double.

Declaration: `function Real2Double(r: Real48) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Real2Double` function converts a Turbo Pascal style real (6 bytes long) to a native Free Pascal double type. It can be used e.g. to read old binary TP files with FPC and convert them to Free Pascal binary files.

Note that the assignment operator has been overloaded so a `Real48` type can be assigned directly to a double or extended.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./refex/ex110.pp`

---

```

program Example110;

{ Program to demonstrate the Real2Double function. }

Var
  i : integer;
  R : Real48;
  D : Double;
  E : Extended;
  F : File of Real48;

begin
  Assign(F, 'reals.dat');
  Reset(f);
  For i:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      Read(F,R);
      D:=Real2Double(R);
      Writeln('Real ',i,' : ',D);
      D:=R;
    
```

---

```

    Writeln('Real (direct to double) ',i,' : ',D);
    E:=R;
    Writeln('Real (direct to Extended) ',i,' : ',E);
    end;
    Close(f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.235 ReAllocMem

Synopsis: Re-allocate memory on the heap

Declaration: `function ReAllocMem(var p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReAllocMem` resizes the memory pointed to by `P` so it has size `Size`. The value of `P` may change during this operation. The contents of the memory pointed to by `P` (if any) will be copied to the new location, but may be truncated if the newly allocated memory block is smaller in size. If a larger block is allocated, only the used memory is initialized, extra memory will not be zeroed out.

Note that `P` may be `nil`, in that case the behaviour of `ReAllocMem` is equivalent to `Getmem`.

See also: `GetMem` ([1446](#)), `FreeMem` ([1443](#))

### 75.11.236 ReAllocMemory

Synopsis: Alias for `ReAllocMem` ([1493](#))

Declaration: `function ReAllocMemory(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReAllocMemory` is an alias for `ReAllocMem` ([1493](#)).

See also: `ReAllocMem` ([1493](#))

### 75.11.237 ReleaseExceptionObject

Synopsis: Decrease the reference count of the current exception object.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseExceptionObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReleaseExceptionObject` decreases the reference count of the current exception object. This should be called whenever a reference to the exception object was obtained via the `AcquireExceptionObject` ([1394](#)) call.

Calling this method is only valid within an `except` block.

Errors: If there is no current exception object, a run-time error 231 will occur.

See also: `AcquireExceptionObject` ([1394](#))

**75.11.238 Rename**

Synopsis: Rename file on disk

Declaration: `procedure Rename(var f: File; const s: ShortString)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; const s: UnicodeString)`  
`procedure Rename(var f: File; const s: RawByteString)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const s: shortstring)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const p: PAnsiChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const c: AnsiChar)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const s: unicodestring)`  
`procedure Rename(var t: Text; const s: RawByteString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rename` changes the name of the assigned file `F` to `S`. `F` must be assigned, but not opened.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Erase` ([1431](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex77.pp`

---

**Program** `Example77`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Rename function. }
Var F : Text;

begin
  Assign (F,paramstr(1));
  Rename (F,paramstr(2));
end.
```

---

**75.11.239 Reset**

Synopsis: Open file for reading

Declaration: `procedure Reset(var f: File; l: LongInt)`  
`procedure Reset(var f: File)`  
`procedure Reset(var f: TypedFile)`  
`procedure Reset(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Reset` opens a file `F` for reading. `F` can be any file type. If `F` is a text file, or refers to standard I/O (e.g. `”) then it is opened read-only, otherwise it is opened using the mode specified in filemode.`

If `F` is an untyped file, the record size can be specified in the optional parameter `L`. A default value of 128 is used.

File sharing is not taken into account when calling `Reset`.

Note that the path can be only 255 characters long.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: Rewrite ([1495](#)), Assign ([1398](#)), Close ([1411](#)), Append ([1396](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex51.pp

---

```

Program Example51 ;

{ Program to demonstrate the Reset function. }

Function FileExists (Name : String) : boolean;

Var F : File ;

begin
  {$i-}
  Assign (F,Name);
  Reset (F);
  {$I+}
  FileExists := (IoResult=0) and (Name<>' ');
  if FileExists then
    Close (f);
end;

begin
  If FileExists (Paramstr(1)) then
    Writeln ('File found')
  else
    Writeln ('File NOT found');
end.

```

---

### 75.11.240 ResumeThread

Synopsis: Resume a suspended thread.

Declaration: `function ResumeThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: ResumeThread causes a suspended thread (using SuspendThread ([1523](#))) to resume it's execution. The thread is identified with it's handle or ID threadHandle.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

See also: SuspendThread ([1523](#)), KillThread ([1470](#))

### 75.11.241 Rewrite

Synopsis: Open file for writing

Declaration: `procedure Rewrite(var f: File; l: LongInt)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var f: File)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var f: TypedFile)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `Rewrite` opens a file `F` for writing. `F` can be any file type. If `F` is an untyped or typed file, then it is opened for reading and writing. If `F` is an untyped file, the record size can be specified in the optional parameter `L`. Default a value of 128 is used. if `Rewrite` finds a file with the same name as `F`, this file is truncated to length 0. If it doesn't find such a file, a new file is created.

Contrary to Turbo Pascal, Free Pascal opens the file with mode `fmoutput`. If it should be opened in `fminout` mode, an extra call to `Reset` (1494) is needed.

File sharing is not taken into account when calling `Rewrite`.

Note that the path can be only 255 characters long.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Reset` (1494), `Assign` (1398), `Close` (1411), `Flush` (1442), `Append` (1396)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex52.pp`

---

**Program** `Example52`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Rewrite function. }*

**Var** `F : File`;  
       `l : longint`;

**begin**

`Assign (F, 'Test.tmp');`  
   *{ Create the file. Recordsize is 4 }*  
   `Rewrite (F, Sizeof(l));`  
   **For** `l:=1 to 10 do`  
     `BlockWrite (F,l,1);`  
   `close (f);`  
   *{ F contains now a binary representation of*  
     *10 longints going from 1 to 10 }*

**end.**

---

### 75.11.242 `rightshift(variant,variant):variant`

**Synopsis:** Implement binary `shr` operation on variants.

**Declaration:** `operator shr(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The implementation of the `shr` operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opshiftright`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: `operator shl(variant, variant): variant` (1313)

### 75.11.243 `RmDir`

**Synopsis:** Remove directory when empty.

**Declaration:** `procedure RmDir(const s: shortstring); Overload`  
       `procedure RmDir(const s: RawByteString); Overload`  
       `procedure RmDir(const s: unicodestring); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rmdir` removes the directory `S`.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Chdir` ([1410](#)), `Mkdir` ([1477](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex53.pp`

---

**Program** `Example53`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Mkdir and Rmdir functions. }*

**Const** `D : String[8] = 'TEST.DIR';`

**Var** `S : String;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ('Making directory ',D);`

`Mkdir (D);`

`WriteLn ('Changing directory to ',D);`

`ChDir (D);`

`GetDir (0,S);`

`WriteLn ('Current Directory is : ',S);`

`WriteLn ('Going back');`

`ChDir ('..');`

`WriteLn ('Removing directory ',D);`

`Rmdir (D);`

**end.**

---

### 75.11.244 RolByte

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a byte value to the left

Declaration: `function RolByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`

`function RolByte(const AValue: Byte; const Dist: Byte) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `RolByte` rotates the bits of the byte `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the left. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RorByte` ([1498](#)), `RolWord` ([1498](#)), `RolDWord` ([1497](#)), `RolQWord` ([1498](#))

### 75.11.245 RolDWord

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a DWord (cardinal) value to the left

Declaration: `function RolDWord(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`

`function RolDWord(const AValue: DWord; const Dist: Byte) : DWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RolDWord` rotates the bits of the `DWord` (cardinal) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the left. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1497](#)), `RolWord` ([1498](#)), `RorDWord` ([1499](#)), `RolQWord` ([1498](#))

### 75.11.246 `RolQWord`

**Synopsis:** Rotate bits of a `QWord` (64-bit) value to the left

**Declaration:** `function RolQWord(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`  
`function RolQWord(const AValue: QWord; const Dist: Byte) : QWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RorQWord` rotates the bits of the `QWord` (64-bit) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the left. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1497](#)), `RolWord` ([1498](#)), `RolDWord` ([1497](#)), `RorQWord` ([1499](#))

### 75.11.247 `RolWord`

**Synopsis:** Rotate bits of a word value to the left

**Declaration:** `function RolWord(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function RolWord(const AValue: Word; const Dist: Byte) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RolWord` rotates the bits of the word `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1497](#)), `RorWord` ([1499](#)), `RolDWord` ([1497](#)), `RolQWord` ([1498](#))

### 75.11.248 `RorByte`

**Synopsis:** Rotate bits of a byte value to the right

**Declaration:** `function RorByte(const AValue: Byte) : Byte`  
`function RorByte(const AValue: Byte; const Dist: Byte) : Byte`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RorByte` rotates the bits of the byte `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RolByte` ([1497](#)), `RorWord` ([1499](#)), `RorDWord` ([1499](#)), `RorQWord` ([1499](#))

**75.11.249 RorDWord**

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a DWord (cardinal) value to the right

Declaration: `function RorDWord(const AValue: DWord) : DWord`  
`function RorDWord(const AValue: DWord; const Dist: Byte) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorDWord` rotates the bits of the DWord (cardinal) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RorByte` (1498), `RolDWord` (1497), `RorWord` (1499), `RorQWord` (1499)

**75.11.250 RorQWord**

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a QWord (64-bit) value to the right

Declaration: `function RorQWord(const AValue: QWord) : QWord`  
`function RorQWord(const AValue: QWord; const Dist: Byte) : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorQWord` rotates the bits of the QWord (64-bit) `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RorByte` (1498), `RorWord` (1499), `RorDWord` (1499), `RolQWord` (1498)

**75.11.251 RorWord**

Synopsis: Rotate bits of a word value to the right

Declaration: `function RorWord(const AValue: Word) : Word`  
`function RorWord(const AValue: Word; const Dist: Byte) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `RorWord` rotates the bits of the word `AValue` with `Dist` positions to the right. If `Dist` is not specified, then 1 is assumed.

Errors: None.

See also: `RorByte` (1498), `RolWord` (1498), `RorDWord` (1499), `RorQWord` (1499)

**75.11.252 Round**

Synopsis: Round floating point value to nearest integer number.

Declaration: `function Round(d: ValReal) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Round` rounds `X` to the closest integer, which may be bigger or smaller than `X`.

In the case of .5, the algorithm uses "banker's rounding": .5 values are always rounded towards the even number.

Errors: None.

See also: [Frac \(1443\)](#), [Int \(1465\)](#), [Trunc \(1529\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex54.pp

**Program** Example54;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Round function. }*

**begin**

```

WriteIn (Round(1234.56)); { Prints 1235 }
WriteIn (Round(-1234.56)); { Prints -1235 }
WriteIn (Round(12.3456)); { Prints 12 }
WriteIn (Round(-12.3456)); { Prints -12 }
WriteIn (Round(2.5)); { Prints 2 (down) }
WriteIn (Round(3.5)); { Prints 4 (up) }

```

**end.**

### 75.11.253 RTLEventCreate

**Synopsis:** Create a new RTL event

**Declaration:** `function RTLEventCreate : PRTLEvent`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RTLEventCreate` creates and initializes a new RTL event. RTL events are used to notify other threads that a certain condition is met, and to notify other threads of condition changes (conditional variables).

The function returns an initialized RTL event, which must be disposed of with `RTLEventdestroy` ([1500](#))

`RTLEvent` is used mainly for the `synchronize` method.

See also: `RTLEventDestroy` ([1500](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1501](#)), `RTLEventReSetEvent` ([1501](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1501](#))

### 75.11.254 RTLEventDestroy

**Synopsis:** Destroy a RTL Event

**Declaration:** `procedure RTLEventDestroy(state: PRTLEvent)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RTLeventdestroy` destroys the RTL event `State`. After a call to `RTLeventdestroy`, the `State` RTL event may no longer be used.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1500](#)), `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1501](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1501](#))

### 75.11.255 RTLEventResetEvent

Synopsis: Reset an event

Declaration: `procedure RTLEventResetEvent (state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLEventResetEvent` resets the event: this should be used to undo the signaled state of an event. Resetting an event that is not set (or was already reset) has no effect.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1500](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1500](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1501](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1501](#))

### 75.11.256 RTLEventSetEvent

Synopsis: Notify threads of the event.

Declaration: `procedure RTLEventSetEvent (state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLEventSetEvent` notifies other threads which are listening, that the event has occurred.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1500](#)), `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1501](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1500](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1501](#))

### 75.11.257 RTLEventWaitFor

Synopsis: Wait for an event.

Declaration: `procedure RTLEventWaitFor (state: PRTLEvent)`  
`procedure RTLEventWaitFor (state: PRTLEvent; timeout: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLEventWaitFor` suspends the thread till the event occurs. The event will occur when another thread calls `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1501](#)) on `State`.

By default, the thread will be suspended indefinitely. However, if `TimeOut` is specified, then the thread will resume after timeout milliseconds have elapsed.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1500](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1500](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1501](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1501](#))

### 75.11.258 RunError

Synopsis: Generate a run-time error.

Declaration: `procedure RunError (w: Word)`  
`procedure RunError`

Visibility: default

Description: `RunError` stops the execution of the program, and generates a run-time error `ErrorCode`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exit` ([1433](#)), `Halt` ([1453](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex55.pp

**Program** Example55;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the RunError function. }

begin
  { The program will stop and emit a run-error 106 }
  RunError (106);
end.
```

### 75.11.259 SafeLoadLibrary

Synopsis: Load a library safely

**Declaration:** `function SafeLoadLibrary(const Name: RawByteString) : TLibHandle`  
`function SafeLoadLibrary(const Name: UnicodeString) : TLibHandle`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SafeLoadLibrary` calls `LoadLibrary` ([1473](#)) but restores the current FPU control word and exception mask to their current value after the library was loaded, thus preventing the loaded library initialization code from modifying their current values.

See also: `LoadLibrary` ([1473](#))

### 75.11.260 SarInt64

Synopsis: 64-bit Shift Arithmetic Right

**Declaration:** `function SarInt64(const AValue: Int64) : Int64`  
`function SarInt64(const AValue: Int64; Shift: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SarInt64` performs an arithmetic right shift for `Shift` positions on a 64-bit integer `AValue` and returns the result. `Shift` is optional, and is 1 by default. The difference with the regular `Shr` shift operation is that the leftmost bit is preserved during the shift operation.

See also: `SarShortInt` ([1503](#)), `SarSmallInt` ([1503](#)), `SarLongInt` ([1502](#))

### 75.11.261 SarLongint

Synopsis: 32-bit Shift Arithmetic Right

**Declaration:** `function SarLongint(const AValue: LongInt; const Shift: Byte) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SarLongint` performs an arithmetic right shift for `Shift` positions on a 32-bit integer `AValue` and returns the result. `Shift` is optional, and is 1 by default. The difference with the regular `Shr` shift operation is that the leftmost bit is preserved during the shift operation.

See also: `SarShortInt` ([1503](#)), `SarSmallInt` ([1503](#)), `SarInt64` ([1502](#))

**75.11.262 SarShortint**

Synopsis: 8-bit Shift Arithmetic Right

Declaration: `function SarShortint(const AValue: ShortInt; const Shift: Byte)  
: ShortInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SarShortint` performs an arithmetic right shift for `Shift` positions on an 8-bit integer `AValue` and returns the result. `Shift` is optional, and is 1 by default. The difference with the regular `Shr` shift operation is that the leftmost bit is preserved during the shift operation.

See also: `SarSmallint` (1503), `SarLongint` (1502), `SarInt64` (1502)

**75.11.263 SarSmallint**

Synopsis: 16-bit Shift Arithmetic Right

Declaration: `function SarSmallint(const AValue: SmallInt; const Shift: Byte)  
: SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SarSmallint` performs an arithmetic right shift for `Shift` positions on an 16-bit integer `AValue` and returns the result. `Shift` is optional, and is 1 by default. The difference with the regular `Shr` shift operation is that the leftmost bit is preserved during the shift operation.

See also: `SarShortint` (1503), `SarLongint` (1502), `SarInt64` (1502)

**75.11.264 Seek**

Synopsis: Set file position

Declaration: `procedure Seek(var f: File; Pos: Int64)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the file-pointer for file `F` to record `Nr. Count`. The first record in a file has `Count=0`. `F` can be any file type, except `Text`. If `F` is an untyped file, with no record size specified in `Reset` (1494) or `Rewrite` (1495), 128 is assumed.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Eof` (1429), `SeekEof` (1504), `SeekEoln` (1505)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex56.pp`

**Program** `Example56;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Seek function. }*

**Var**

`F : File;  
I, J : longint;`

**begin**

*{ Create a file and fill it with data }*



---

```

Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
Rewrite(F); { Create file }
Close(f);
FileMode:=2;
ReSet (F, Sizeof(i)); { Opened read/write }
For I:=0 to 10 do
  BlockWrite (F,I,1);
  { Go Back to the begining of the file }
Seek(F,0);
For I:=0 to 10 do
  begin
    BlockRead (F,J,1);
    If J<>I then
      WriteLn ('Error: expected ',i,', got ',j);
    end;
  end;
Close (f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.265 SeekEOF

Synopsis: Set file position to end of file

Declaration: `function SeekEOF(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function SeekEOF : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekEof` returns `True` is the file-pointer is at the end of the file. It ignores all whitespace. Calling this function has the effect that the file-position is advanced until the first non-whitespace character or the end-of-file marker is reached.

If the end-of-file marker is reached, `True` is returned. Otherwise, `False` is returned.

If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard `Input` is assumed.

**Remark** The `SeekEOF` function can only be used on real textfiles: when assigning the file to other kinds of (virtual) text files, the function may fail, although it will perform a number of tests to guard against wrong usage.

Errors: A run-time error is generated if the file `F` isn't opened.

See also: `Eof` ([1429](#)), `SeekEoln` ([1505](#)), `Seek` ([1503](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex57.pp`

---

**Program** `Example57`;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the SeekEof function. }
Var C : Char;

begin
  { this will print all characters from standard input except
    Whitespace characters. }
  While Not SeekEof do
    begin
      Read (C);
      Write (C);
    end;
end.

```

---

**75.11.266 SeekEOLn**

Synopsis: Set file position to end of line

Declaration: `function SeekEOLn(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function SeekEOLn : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekEOLn` returns `True` if the file-pointer is at the end of the current line. It ignores all whitespace. Calling this function has the effect that the file-position is advanced until the first non-whitespace character or the end-of-line marker is reached. If the end-of-line marker is reached, `True` is returned. Otherwise, `False` is returned. The end-of-line marker is defined as `#10`, the `LineFeed` character. If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard `Input` is assumed.

Errors: A run-time error is generated if the file `F` isn't opened.

See also: `Eof` ([1429](#)), `SeekEof` ([1504](#)), `Seek` ([1503](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** `Example58`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SeekEOLn function. }
Var
  C : Char;

begin
  { This will read the first line of standard output and print
  all characters except whitespace. }
  While not SeekEOLn do
    Begin
      Read (c);
      Write (c);
    end;
end.
```

---

**75.11.267 Seg**

Synopsis: Return segment

Declaration: `function Seg(var X) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seg` returns the segment of the address of a variable. This function is only supported for compatibility. In Free Pascal, it returns always 0, since Free Pascal uses a flat 32/64 bit memory model. In such a memory model segments have no meaning.

Errors: None.

See also: `DSeg` ([1425](#)), `CSeg` ([1420](#)), `Ofs` ([1482](#)), `Ptr` ([1487](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** `Example60`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Seg function. }
Var
```

```

W : Word;

begin
  W:=Seg(W);  { W contains its own Segment}
end.

```

---

### 75.11.268 SetCodePage

Synopsis: Set the codepage of a string

Declaration: `procedure SetCodePage(var s: RawByteString; CodePage: TSystemCodePage; Convert: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCodePage` sets the codepage of a string `S` to `CodePage`. If `Convert` is `True` then the string will be transcoded to the new codepage. The resulting string will have reference count 1.

See also: `StringCodePage` ([1519](#))

### 75.11.269 SetDynLibsManager

Synopsis: Set a new handler for dynamic library support

Declaration: `procedure SetDynLibsManager(const New: TDynLibsManager)`  
`procedure SetDynLibsManager(const New: TDynLibsManager;`  
`var Old: TDynLibsManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDynLibsManager` sets the handler for dynamic library support to `New`. Optionally, it returns the currently active handler in `Old`.

This is the routine used by the `#rtl.dynlibs` ([702](#)) unit to set the default handler.

See also: `#rtl.dynlibs` ([702](#)), `GetDynLibsManager` ([1446](#))

### 75.11.270 Setjmp

Synopsis: Save current execution point.

Declaration: `function Setjmp(var S: jmp_buf) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJmp` fills `env` with the necessary data for a jump back to the point where it was called. It returns zero if called in this way. If the function returns nonzero, then it means that a call to `LongJmp` ([1476](#)) with `env` as an argument was made somewhere in the program.

Errors: None.

See also: `LongJmp` ([1476](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex79.pp`

---

```

program example79;

{ Program to demonstrate the setjmp, longjmp functions }

procedure dojmp(var env : jmp_buf; value : longint);

begin
    value:=2;
    Writeln ('Going to jump !');
    { This will return to the setjmp call,
      and return value instead of 0 }
    longjmp(env,value);
end;

var env : jmp_buf;

begin
    if setjmp(env)=0 then
        begin
            writeln ('Passed first time. ');
            dojmp(env,2);
        end
    else
        writeln ('Passed second time. ');
    end.

```

---

### 75.11.271 SetLength

Synopsis: Set length of a string or dynamic array.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetLength(var S: AStringType; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetLength(var A: DynArrayType; Len: SizeInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetLength` for strings sets the length of the string `S` to `Len`. `S` can be an `ansistring`, a short string or a `widestring`. For `ShortStrings`, `Len` can maximally be 255. For `AnsiStrings` it can have any value. For `AnsiString` strings, `SetLength` **must** be used to set the length of the string.

In the case of a dynamic array `A`, `SetLength` sets the number of elements. The elements are numbered from index 0, so the count runs from 0 to `Len-1`. If Zero is specified, the array is cleared and removed from memory.

In case the length is set to a smaller length than the current one, the existing elements (characters in case of a string) are kept.

In case the length is set to a larger length than the current one, the new elements are zeroed out for a dynamic array. For a string, the string is zero-terminated at the correct length.

Note that `SetLength` is governed by the Copy-On-Write principle for strings and dynamic arrays: the reference count after a call to `SetLength` will be 1 (except when the length is zero, then the array is removed from memory).

For multi-dimensional arrays, `SetLength` can be used to specify all dimensions at once:

```

Var
    arr : Array of Array of Integer;

```

```
begin
  SetLength(arr, 10, 20);
end;
```

This will create a dynamic array with 10 elements, where each element in itself is a dynamic array of 20 elements. `SetLength` will of course always create "rectangular" arrays: all elements will have the same size.

```
Var
  arr : Array of Integer;

begin
  SetLength(arr, 0);
end;
```

After this, `arr` is `Nil`.

Errors: None.

See also: [Length \(1470\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex85.pp`

---

**Program** `Example85`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetLength function. }*

**Var** `S : String`;

```
begin
  Setlength(S, 100);
  FillChar(S[1], 100, #32);
  Writeln ('"', S, '"');
end.
```

---

### 75.11.272 SetMemoryManager

Synopsis: Set a memory manager

**Declaration:** `procedure SetMemoryManager(const MemMgr: TMemoryManager)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetMemoryManager` sets the current memory manager record to `MemMgr`.

For an example, see the programmer's guide.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetMemoryManager \(1447\)](#), [IsMemoryManagerSet \(1469\)](#)

**75.11.273 SetMultiByteConversionCodePage**

Synopsis: Set codepage for conversions from multi-byte strings to single-byte strings

Declaration: `procedure SetMultiByteConversionCodePage (CodePage: TSystemCodePage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMultiByteConversionCodePage` sets `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390) to `CodePage`. The effect of this change is that the default codepage used to translate multi-byte (UTF-16) strings to single-byte codepage-aware strings changes, and code page conversions will be done to the new codepage.

Do not set `DefaultSystemCodePage` directly, as additional actions may need to be done when changing the code page.

When the `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390) changes and you use the `TEncoding` classes, you must call `TEncoding.FreeEncodings` (1784) to regenerate the default encoding using the new code page.

See also: `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390), `SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage` (1509), `SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage` (1509)

**75.11.274 SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage**

Synopsis: Set codepage used when passing strings to OS single-byte file system APIs

Declaration: `procedure SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage (CodePage: TSystemCodePage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage` sets the codepage used in single-byte OS file system APIs to `CodePage`. The effect of this change is that the default codepage used to translate multi-byte (UTF-16) strings to single-byte codepage-aware strings used in File system APIs changes, and strings passed to the codepage-aware file system APIs will be passed using the new codepage.

This constant is not used if the file system API of the OS is multi-byte (such as on Windows).

Do not set `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` directly, as additional actions may need to be done when changing the code page.

See also: `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` (1389), `SetMultiByteConversionCodePage` (1509), `SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage` (1509)

**75.11.275 SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage**

Synopsis: Set codepage used when interpreting strings from OS single-byte file system APIs

Declaration: `procedure SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage (CodePage: TSystemCodePage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMultiByteRTLFileSystemCodePage` sets the codepage used to interpret strings returned by single-byte OS file system APIs to `CodePage`.

The effect of this change is that the default codepage used to translate single byte strings obtained from the OS to single-byte codepage-aware strings or multi-byte strings changes, and strings obtained from the codepage-aware file system APIs will be interpreted using the new codepage.

his constant is not used if the file system API of the OS is multi-byte (such as on Windows).

Do not set `DefaultRTLFileSystemCodePage` directly, as additional actions may need to be done when changing the code page.

See also: [SetMultiByteFileSystemCodePage \(1509\)](#), [SetMultiByteConversionCodePage \(1509\)](#), [SetMultiByteRTL-FileSystemCodePage \(1509\)](#)

### 75.11.276 SetResourceManager

Synopsis: Set the resource manager

Declaration: `procedure SetResourceManager(const New: TResourceManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetResourceManager` sets the active resource manager to `Manager`. After a call to `SetResourceManager`, the functions in the `Manager` record will be used to handle resources.

Note that it is not supported to change resource managers on-the-fly: any resources or information about resources obtained should be discarded prior to a call to `SetResourceManager`. Typically, `SetResourceManager` should be called once, at program startup.

Errors: None.

See also: [TResourceManager \(1371\)](#), [GetResourceManager \(1448\)](#)

### 75.11.277 SetString

Synopsis: Set length of a string and copy buffer.

Declaration: `procedure SetString(out S: AnsiString; Buf: PAnsiChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: AnsiString; Buf: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: Shortstring; Buf: PChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: UnicodeString; Buf: PUnicodeChar;`  
`Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: UnicodeString; Buf: PChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: WideString; Buf: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(out S: WideString; Buf: PChar; Len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetString` sets the length of the string `S` to `Len` and if `Buf` is non-nil, copies `Len` characters from `Buf` into `S`. `S` can be an ansistring, a short string or a widestring. For `ShortStrings`, `Len` can maximally be 255.

Errors: None.

See also: [SetLength \(1507\)](#)

### 75.11.278 SetTextBuf

Synopsis: Set size of text file internal buffer

Declaration: `procedure SetTextBuf(var f: Text; var Buf)`  
`procedure SetTextBuf(var f: Text; var Buf; Size: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetTextBuf` assigns an I/O buffer to a text file. The new buffer is located at `Buf` and is `Size` bytes long. If `Size` is omitted, then `SizeOf (Buf)` is assumed. The standard buffer of any text file is 128 bytes long. For heavy I/O operations this may prove too slow. The `SetTextBuf` procedure allows to set a bigger buffer for the I/O of the application, thus reducing the number of system calls, and thus reducing the load on the system resources. The maximum size of the newly assigned buffer is 65355 bytes.

#### Remark

- Never assign a new buffer to an opened file. A new buffer can be assigned immediately after a call to `Rewrite` (1495), `Reset` (1494) or `Append`, but not after the file was read from/written to. This may cause loss of data. If a new buffer must be assigned after read/write operations have been performed, the file should be flushed first. This will ensure that the current buffer is emptied.
- Take care that the assigned buffer is always valid. If a local variable is assigned as a buffer, then after the program exits the local program block, the buffer will no longer be valid, and stack problems may occur.

**Errors:** No checking on `Size` is done.

See also: `Assign` (1398), `Reset` (1494), `Rewrite` (1495), `Append` (1396)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex61.pp`

**Program** `Example61` ;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetTextBuf function. }*

**Var**

`Fin, Fout : Text;`  
`Ch : Char;`  
`Bufin, Bufout : Array[1..10000] of byte;`

**begin**

`Assign (Fin, paramstr(1));`  
`Reset (Fin);`  
`Assign (Fout, paramstr(2));`  
`Rewrite (Fout);`  
*{ This is harmless before IO has begun }*  
*{ Try this program again on a big file ,*  
*after commenting out the following 2*  
*lines and recompiling it. }*

`SetTextBuf (Fin, Bufin);`

`SetTextBuf (Fout, Bufout);`

`While not eof(Fin) do`

`begin`

`Read (Fin, ch);`

`write (Fout, ch);`

`end;`

`Close (Fin);`

`Close (Fout);`

`end.`

### 75.11.279 SetTextCodePage

**Synopsis:** Set the codepage used in a text file.



**Declaration:** `procedure SetTextCodePage (var T: Text; CodePage: TSystemCodePage)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetTextCodePage` sets the codepage that the text file `T` uses. All strings written to the file will be converted to the indicated codepage. By default, the codepage is set to `CP_ACP`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TextRec` ([1364](#)), `GetTextCodePage` ([1449](#))

### 75.11.280 SetTextLineEnding

**Synopsis:** Set the end-of-line character for the given text file.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetTextLineEnding (var f: Text; Ending: string)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetTextLineEnding` sets the end-of-line character for the text file `F` to `Ending`. By default, this is the string indicated by `DefaultTextLineBreakStyle` ([1320](#)).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `DefaultTextLineBreakStyle` ([1320](#)), `TTextLineBreakStyle` ([1375](#))

### 75.11.281 SetThreadManager

**Synopsis:** Set the thread manager, optionally return the current thread manager.

**Declaration:** `function SetThreadManager (const NewTM: TThreadManager;  
var OldTM: TThreadManager) : Boolean  
function SetThreadManager (const NewTM: TThreadManager) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetThreadManager` sets the thread manager to `NewTM`. If `OldTM` is given, `SetThreadManager` uses it to return the previously used thread manager.

The function returns `True` if the threadmanager was set successfully, `False` if an error occurred.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

**Errors:** If an error occurred cleaning up the previous manager, or an error occurred initializing the new manager, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `GetThreadManager` ([1449](#)), `TThreadManager` ([1376](#))

### 75.11.282 SetUnicodeStringManager

**Synopsis:** Set the unicodestring manager

**Declaration:** `procedure SetUnicodeStringManager (const New: TUnicodeStringManager)  
procedure SetUnicodeStringManager (const New: TUnicodeStringManager;  
var Old: TUnicodeStringManager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetUnicodeStringManager` sets the current unicodestring manager to `New`. Optionally, it returns the currently active widestring manager in `Old`.

UnicodeStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a UnicodeString manager record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom unicodestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `TUnicodeStringManager` ([1379](#))

### 75.11.283 SetVariantManager

**Synopsis:** Set the current variant manager.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetVariantManager(const VarMgr: tvariantmanager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetVariantManager` sets the variant manager to `varmgr`.

See also: `GetVariantManager` ([1450](#))

### 75.11.284 SetWideStringManager

**Synopsis:** Set the widestring manager

**Declaration:** `procedure SetWideStringManager(const New: TUnicodeStringManager)`  
`procedure SetWideStringManager(const New: TUnicodeStringManager;`  
`var Old: TUnicodeStringManager)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetWideStringManager` sets the current widestring manager to `New`. Optionally, it returns the currently active widestring manager in `Old`.

WideStrings are implemented in different ways on different platforms. Therefore, the Free Pascal Runtime library has no fixed implementation of widestring routines. Instead, it defines a WideString manager record, with callbacks that can be set to an implementation which is most efficient on the current platform. On windows, standard Windows routines will be used. On Unix and Linux, an implementation based on the C library is available (in unit `cwstring`).

It is possible to implement a custom widestring manager, optimized for the current application, without having to recompile the complete Run-Time Library.

See also: `TWideStringManager` ([1387](#))

### 75.11.285 ShortCompareText

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 shortstrings

**Declaration:** `function ShortCompareText(const S1: shortstring; const S2: shortstring)`  
`: SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** ShortCompareText compares two shortstrings, S1 and S2, and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0if S1>S2.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not take internationalization settings into account, it simply compares ASCII values.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareText ([1625](#))

### 75.11.286 Sin

**Synopsis:** Calculate sine of angle

**Declaration:** function Sin(d: ValReal) : ValReal

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Sin returns the sine of its argument X, where X is an angle in radians. If the absolute value of the argument is larger than 2<sup>63</sup>, then the result is undefined.

Errors: None.

See also: Cos ([1419](#)), Pi ([1485](#)), Exp ([1435](#)), Ln ([1472](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex62.pp

---

**Program** Example62;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Sin function. }*

```
begin
  WriteLn (Sin(Pi):0:1); { Prints 0.0 }
  WriteLn (Sin(Pi/2):0:1); { Prints 1.0 }
end.
```

---

### 75.11.287 SizeOf

**Synopsis:** Return size of a variable or type.

**Declaration:** function SizeOf(X: TAnyType) : LongInt

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SizeOf returns the size, in bytes, of any variable or type-identifier.

**Remark** This isn't really a RTL function. Its result is calculated at compile-time, and hard-coded in the executable.

Errors: None.

See also: Addr ([1395](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex63.pp

---

**Program** Example63;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SizeOf function. }
Var
  I : Longint;
  S : String [10];

begin
  WriteLn (SizeOf(I)); { Prints 4 }
  WriteLn (SizeOf(S)); { Prints 11 }
end.
```

---

### 75.11.288 SizeofResource

**Synopsis:** Return the size of a particular resource

**Declaration:** `function SizeofResource(ModuleHandle: TFPResourceHMODULE;  
ResHandle: TFPResourceHandle) : LongWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SizeOfResource` returns the size of the resource identified by `ResHandle` in module identified by `ModuleHandle`. `ResHandle` should be obtained from a call to `LoadResource` ([1474](#))

**Errors:** In case of an error, 0 is returned.

**See also:** `FindResource` ([1440](#)), `FreeResource` ([1444](#)), `LoadResource` ([1474](#)), `LockResource` ([1474](#)), `UnlockResource` ([1534](#)), `FreeResource` ([1444](#))

### 75.11.289 Slice

**Synopsis:** Return part of an array

**Declaration:** `function Slice(const A: ArrayType; ACount: Integer) : ArrayType2`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Slice` returns the first `ACount` elements from the array `A`. It returns an array with the same element type as `A`, but this array is not assignment compatible to any other array, and can therefor only be used in open array arguments to functions.

**See also:** `Length` ([1470](#)), `SetLength` ([1507](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex113.pp`

---

**Program** Example113;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Slice function. }

procedure ShowArray(const A: array of Integer);
var
  I: Integer;
begin
  for I := Low(A) to High(A) do
    WriteLn(I, ' : ', A[I]);
end;
```

---

```
begin
  ShowArray( Slice ([1,2,3,4],2));
end.
```

---

### 75.11.290 Space

Synopsis: Return a string of spaces

Declaration: `function Space(b: Byte) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `Space` returns a shortstring with length B, consisting of spaces.

See also: `StringOfChar` ([1520](#))

### 75.11.291 SPtr

Synopsis: Return current stack pointer

Declaration: `function SPtr : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sptr` returns the current stack pointer.

Errors: None.

See also: `SSeg` ([1517](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex64.pp`

---

```
program Example64;

{ Program to demonstrate the sptr function. }

var p: ptruint;

begin
  p:=ofs(stackbottom); { P Contains now the current stack position. }
end.
```

---

### 75.11.292 Sqr

Synopsis: Calculate the square of a value.

Declaration: `function Sqr(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Sqr(l: Int64) : Int64`  
`function Sqr(l: QWord) : QWord`  
`function Sqr(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sqr` returns the square of its argument X.

Errors: None.

See also: Sqrt ([1517](#)), Ln ([1472](#)), Exp ([1435](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex65.pp

---

**Program** Example65;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Sqr function. }
Var i : Integer;

begin
  For i:=1 to 10 do
    writeln (Sqr(i):3);
  end.
```

---

### 75.11.293 Sqrt

Synopsis: Calculate the square root of a value

Declaration: `function Sqrt(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: Sqrt returns the square root of its argument X, which must be positive.

Errors: If X is negative, then a run-time error is generated.

See also: Sqr ([1516](#)), Ln ([1472](#)), Exp ([1435](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex66.pp

---

**Program** Example66;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Sqrt function. }

begin
  Writeln (Sqrt(4):0:3); { Prints 2.000 }
  Writeln (Sqrt(2):0:3); { Prints 1.414 }
end.
```

---

### 75.11.294 SSeg

Synopsis: Return stack segment register value.

Declaration: `function SSeg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: SSeg returns the Stack Segment. This function is only supported for compatibility reasons, as SPtr returns the correct contents of the stackpointer.

Errors: None.

See also: SPtr ([1516](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex67.pp

---

**Program** Example67;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SSeg function. }
Var W : Longint;

begin
  W:=SSeg;
end.
```

---

### 75.11.295 StackTop

Synopsis: Top location of the stack.

Declaration: function StackTop : Pointer

Visibility: default

Description: StackTop contains the top of the stack for the current process. It is used to check the heap on some operating systems, and is set by the system unit initialization code. Do not use or modify this value.

See also: StackBottom ([1392](#)), StackLength ([1392](#))

### 75.11.296 Str

Synopsis: Convert a numerical or enumeration value to a string.

Declaration: procedure Str(var X: TNumericType; var S: string)

Visibility: default

Description: Str returns a string which represents the value of X. X can be any numerical or enumerated type. The actual declaration of Str is not according to pascal syntax, and should be

```
procedure Str(var X: TNumericType[:NumPlaces[:Decimals]];var S: String)
```

Where the optional NumPlaces and Decimals specifiers control the formatting of the string: NumPlaces gives the total width of the string, and Decimals the number of decimals after the decimal separator char.

Str can also be used to convert an enumerated type value to a string representation of the declared enumeration value. That means that the following will work:

```
Type
  TMyEnum = (OnE);

Var
  S : String;
begin
  Str(one, s);
  Writeln(S);
end.
```

This will write OnE on the screen, which is consistent with the following - equivalent - program:

```

Type
  TMyEnum = (OnE);

Var
  S : String;
  E : TMyEnum;
begin
  E:=one;
  Str(E,s);
  Writeln(S);
end.

```

For scoped enumerated types, only the value is written, which means the following program will have the same output:

```

{$SCOPEENUMS+}
Type
  TMyEnum = (OnE);

Var
  S : String;

begin
  Str(one, s);
  Writeln(S);
end.

```

Errors: None.

See also: Val ([1537](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex68.pp

---

**Program** Example68;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Str function. }*

**Var** S : **String**;

**Function** IntToStr (I : Longint) : **String**;

**Var** S : **String**;

**begin**

**Str** (I,S);

  IntToStr:=S;

**end**;

**begin**

  S:='\*'+IntToStr(-233)+'\*';

**Writeln** (S);

**end**.

---

### 75.11.297 StringCodePage

Synopsis: Get the code page of a string



**Declaration:** `function StringCodePage(const S: RawByteString) : TSystemCodePage  
; Overload  
function StringCodePage(const S: UnicodeString) : TSystemCodePage  
; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StringCodePage` returns the code page of a string (S), regardless of the string type. It accesses the internal structures of the string to retrieve this information. For an empty string, `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390) is returned.

**See also:** `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390), `StringElementSize` (1520), `StringRefCount` (1521), `SetCodePage` (1506)

### 75.11.298 StringElementSize

**Synopsis:** Get the character size of a string.

**Declaration:** `function StringElementSize(const S: RawByteString) : Word; Overload  
function StringElementSize(const S: UnicodeString) : Word; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StringCodePage` returns the character size of a string (S), regardless of the string type. It accesses the internal structures of the string to retrieve this information. For an empty string, `SizeOf(AnsiChar)` (normally 1) is returned.

**See also:** `StringCodePage` (1519), `StringRefCount` (1521)

### 75.11.299 StringOfChar

**Synopsis:** Return a string consisting of 1 character repeated N times.

**Declaration:** `function StringOfChar(c: AnsiChar; l: SizeInt) : AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StringOfChar` creates a new `String` of length `l` and fills it with the character `c`.

It is equivalent to the following calls:

```
SetLength(StringOfChar, l);  
FillChar(Pointer(StringOfChar)^, Length(StringOfChar), c);
```

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetLength` (1507)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex97.pp`

---

**Program** Example97;

`{ $H+ }`

`{ Program to demonstrate the StringOfChar function. }`

`Var S : String;`

```
begin
  S:=StringOfChar(' ',40)+'Aligned at column 41.';
  Writeln(s);
end.
```

---

### 75.11.300 StringRefCount

Synopsis: Get the reference count of a string

Declaration: `function StringRefCount(const S: RawByteString) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function StringRefCount(const S: UnicodeString) : SizeInt; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringRefCount` returns the reference count of a string (S), regardless of the string type. It accesses the internal structures of the string to retrieve this information. For an empty string, 0 is returned.

See also: `StringCodePage` ([1519](#)), `StringElementSize` ([1520](#))

### 75.11.301 StringToPPChar

Synopsis: Split string in list of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function StringToPPChar(var S: AnsiString; ReserveEntries: Integer)`  
`: PPChar`  
`function StringToPPChar(S: PChar; ReserveEntries: Integer) : PPChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToPPChar` splits the string S in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of pchars that point to the first letters of the words in S. This array is terminated by a `Nil` pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of `PChar`; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function is only available on certain platforms.

Errors: None.

See also: `ArrayStringToPPchar` ([1397](#))

### 75.11.302 StringToUnicodeChar

Synopsis: Convert an ansistring to a null-terminated array of Unicode characters.

Declaration: `function StringToUnicodeChar(const Src: RawByteString;`  
`Dest: PUnicodeChar; DestSize: SizeInt)`  
`: PUnicodeChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToUnicodeChar` converts the ansistring S to a unicodestring and places the result in `Dest`. The size of the memory location pointed to by `Dest` must be given in `DestSize`. If the result string is longer than the available size, the result string will be truncated.

The function always returns `Dest`.

Errors: No check is performed to see whether `Dest` points to a valid memory location.

See also: [UnicodeCharToString \(1532\)](#), [UnicodeCharLenToString \(1532\)](#)

### 75.11.303 StringToWideChar

Synopsis: Convert a string to an array of widechars.

Declaration: `function StringToWideChar(const Src: RawByteString; Dest: PWideChar; DestSize: SizeInt) : PWideChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToWideChar` converts a single-byte-character string `Src` to a null-terminated array of `WideChars`. The destination for this array is pointed to by `Dest`, and contains room for at least `DestSize` widechars.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `Dest`.

See also: [WideCharToString \(1540\)](#), [WideCharToStrVar \(1541\)](#), [WideCharLenToStrVar \(1540\)](#), [WideCharLenToString \(1540\)](#)

### 75.11.304 StrLen

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function StrLen(p: PChar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string `P`.

Errors: None.

### 75.11.305 StrPas

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to a shortstring.

Declaration: `function StrPas(p: PChar) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in `P` to a Pascal string, and returns this string. The string is truncated at 255 characters.

Errors: None.

### 75.11.306 subtract(variant,variant):variant

Synopsis: Implement subtraction (–) operation on variants.

Declaration: `operator -(const op1: variant; const op2: variant) : variant`

Visibility: default

Description: The implementation of the subtraction – operation is delegated to the variant manager with operation `opSubtract`.

**Errors:** Execution of this operator may result in an exception if no variant manager is installed or if the types of the operand are not suitable for the operation.

See also: operator `-(variant, variant): variant` ([1313](#))

### 75.11.307 Succ

**Synopsis:** Return next element of ordinal type.

**Declaration:** `function Succ(X: TOrdinal) : TOrdinal`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Succ` returns the element that succeeds the element that was passed to it. If it is applied to the last value of the ordinal type, and the program was compiled with range checking on (`{ $R+ }`), then a run-time error will be generated.

for an example, see `Ord` ([1483](#)).

**Errors:** Run-time error 201 is generated when the result is out of range.

See also: `Ord` ([1483](#)), `Pred` ([1487](#)), `High` ([1455](#)), `Low` ([1476](#))

### 75.11.308 SuspendThread

**Synopsis:** Suspend a running thread.

**Declaration:** `function SuspendThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SuspendThread` suspends a running thread. The thread is identified with its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

**Errors:** If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

See also: `ResumeThread` ([1495](#)), `KillThread` ([1470](#))

### 75.11.309 Swap

**Synopsis:** Swap high and low bytes/words of a variable

**Declaration:** `function Swap(X: Word) : Word`  
`function Swap(X: Integer) : Integer`  
`function Swap(X: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Swap(X: Cardinal) : Cardinal`  
`function Swap(X: QWord) : QWord`  
`function Swap(X: Int64) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Swap` swaps the high and low order bytes of `X` if `X` is of type `Word` or `Integer`, or swaps the high and low order words of `X` if `X` is of type `Longint` or `Cardinal`. The return type is the type of `X`

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Lo` ([1473](#)), `Hi` ([1454](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex69.pp

**Program** Example69;

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Swap function. }
Var W : Word;
    L : Longint;

begin
    W:=$1234;
    W:=Swap(W);
    if W<>$3412 then
        writeln ('Error when swapping word !');
    L:=$12345678;
    L:=Swap(L);
    if L<>$56781234 then
        writeln ('Error when swapping Longint !');
end.
```

---

### 75.11.310 SwapEndian

**Synopsis:** Swap endianness of the argument

**Declaration:** function SwapEndian(const AValue: SmallInt) : SmallInt  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: Word) : Word  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: LongInt) : LongInt  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: DWord) : DWord  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: Int64) : Int64  
function SwapEndian(const AValue: QWord) : QWord

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SwapEndian will swap the endianness of the bytes in its argument.

**Errors:** None.

See also: hi ([1454](#)), lo ([1473](#)), swap ([1523](#)), BEToN ([1403](#)), NToBE ([1480](#)), NToLE ([1480](#)), LEToN ([1472](#))

### 75.11.311 SysAllocMem

**Synopsis:** System memory manager: Allocate memory

**Declaration:** function SysAllocMem(size: PtrUInt) : Pointer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SysFreeMem is the system memory manager implementation for AllocMem ([1396](#))

See also: AllocMem ([1396](#))

### 75.11.312 SysAssert

**Synopsis:** Standard Assert failure implementation

**Declaration:** procedure SysAssert(const Msg: ShortString; const FName: ShortString;  
LineNo: LongInt; ErrorAddr: Pointer)

Visibility: default

Description: `SysAssert` is the standard implementation of the assertion failed code. It is the default value of the `AssertErrorProc` constant. It will print the assert message `Msg` together with the filename `FName` and linenumber `LineNo` to standard error output (`StdErr`) and will halt the program with exit code 227. The error address `ErrorAddr` is ignored.

See also: `AssertErrorProc` ([1319](#))

### 75.11.313 SysBacktraceStr

Synopsis: Format an address suitable for inclusion in a backtrace

Declaration: `function SysBacktraceStr(Addr: CodePointer) : ShortString`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysBackTraceStr` will create a string representation of the address `Addr`, suitable for inclusion in a stack backtrace.

Errors: None.

### 75.11.314 SysFlushStdIO

Synopsis: Flush all standard IO file descriptors

Declaration: `procedure SysFlushStdIO`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFlushStdIO` calls `flush` ([1442](#)) on all standard file descriptors: `output` ([1392](#)), `stdout` ([1393](#)), `stderr` ([1393](#)), `erroutput` ([1391](#))

See also: `output` ([1392](#)), `stdout` ([1393](#)), `stderr` ([1393](#)), `erroutput` ([1391](#)), `flush` ([1442](#))

### 75.11.315 SysFreemem

Synopsis: System memory manager free routine.

Declaration: `function SysFreemem(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeem` is the system memory manager implementation for `FreeMem` ([1443](#))

See also: `FreeMem` ([1443](#))

### 75.11.316 SysFreememSize

Synopsis: System memory manager free routine.

Declaration: `function SysFreememSize(p: pointer; Size: PtrUInt) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeSize` is the system memory manager implementation for `FreeMem` ([1443](#))

See also: `MemSize` ([1477](#))

### 75.11.317 SysGetFPCHeapStatus

Synopsis: Return the status of the FPC heapmanager

Declaration: `function SysGetFPCHeapStatus : TFPCHeapStatus`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetFPCHeapStatus` returns the status of the default FPC heapmanager. It is set as the default value of the corresponding `GetFPCHeapStatus` (1446) function.

Errors: None. The result of this function is bogus information if the current heapmanager is not the standard FPC heapmanager.

See also: `GetFPCHeapStatus` (1446)

### 75.11.318 SysGetHeapStatus

Synopsis: System implementation of `GetHeapStatus` (1446)

Declaration: `function SysGetHeapStatus : THeapStatus`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetHeapStatus` is the system implementation of the `GetHeapStatus` (1446) call.

See also: `GetHeapStatus` (1446)

### 75.11.319 SysGetmem

Synopsis: System memory manager memory allocator.

Declaration: `function SysGetmem(Size: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetmem` is the system memory manager implementation for `GetMem` (1446)

See also: `GetMem` (1446), `GetMemory` (1447)

### 75.11.320 SysInitExceptions

Synopsis: Initialize exceptions.

Declaration: `procedure SysInitExceptions`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitExceptions` initializes the exception system. This procedure should never be called directly, it is taken care of by the RTL.

### 75.11.321 SysInitFPU

Synopsis: Initialize the FPU

Declaration: `procedure SysInitFPU`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitFPU` initializes (resets) the floating point unit, if one is available. It is called for instance when a new thread is started.

See also: `BeginThread` ([1403](#))

### 75.11.322 SysInitStdIO

Synopsis: Initialize standard input and output.

Declaration: `procedure SysInitStdIO`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitStdIO` initializes the standard input and output files: `Output` ([1392](#)), `Input` ([1391](#)) and `StdErr` ([1393](#)). This routine is called by the initialization code of the system unit, there should be no need to call it directly.

### 75.11.323 SysMemSize

Synopsis: System memory manager: free size.

Declaration: `function SysMemSize(p: pointer) : PtrUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeMemSize` is the system memory manager implementation for `MemSize` ([1477](#))

See also: `MemSize` ([1477](#))

### 75.11.324 SysReAllocMem

Synopsis: System memory manager: Reallocate memory

Declaration: `function SysReAllocMem(var p: pointer; size: PtrUInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysReallocMem` is a help routine for the system memory manager implementation for `ReAllocMem` ([1493](#)).

See also: `ReAllocMem` ([1493](#))

### 75.11.325 SysResetFPU

Synopsis: Reset the floating point unit.

Declaration: `procedure SysResetFPU`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysResetFPU` resets the floating point unit. There should normally be no need to call this unit; the compiler itself takes care of this.



### 75.11.326 SysSetCtrlBreakHandler

Synopsis: System CTRL-C handler

Declaration: `function SysSetCtrlBreakHandler (Handler: TCtrlBreakHandler)  
: TCtrlBreakHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysSetCtrlBreakHandler` sets the CTRL-C handler to the `Handler` callback, and returns the previous value of the handler.

See also: `TCtrlBreakHandler` ([1361](#))

### 75.11.327 SysTryResizeMem

Synopsis: System memory manager: attempt to resize memory.

Declaration: `function SysTryResizeMem (var p: pointer; size: PtrUInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysTryResizeMem` is a help routine for the system memory manager implementation for `ReAllocMem` ([1493](#)), `SysReAllocMem` ([1527](#))

See also: `SysReAllocMem` ([1527](#)), `ReAllocMem` ([1493](#))

### 75.11.328 ThreadGetPriority

Synopsis: Return the priority of a thread.

Declaration: `function ThreadGetPriority (threadHandle: TThreadID) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadGetPriority` returns the priority of thread `TThreadID` to `Prio`. The returned priority is a value between -15 and 15.

Errors: None.

See also: `ThreadSetPriority` ([1528](#))

### 75.11.329 ThreadSetPriority

Synopsis: Set the priority of a thread.

Declaration: `function ThreadSetPriority (threadHandle: TThreadID; Prio: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadSetPriority` sets the priority of thread `TThreadID` to `Prio`. Priority is a value between -15 and 15.

Errors: None.

See also: `ThreadGetPriority` ([1528](#))

### 75.11.330 ThreadSwitch

Synopsis: Signal possibility of thread switch

Declaration: `procedure ThreadSwitch`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadSwitch` signals the operating system that the thread should be suspended and that another thread should be executed.

This call is a hint only, and may be ignored.

See also: `SuspendThread` ([1523](#)), `ResumeThread` ([1495](#)), `KillThread` ([1470](#))

### 75.11.331 ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName

Synopsis: Convert string to encoding for use in single-byte file system API

Declaration: `function ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName(const Str: UnicodeString)  
: RawByteString  
function ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName  
(const arr: Array of WideChar)  
: RawByteString  
function ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName(const Str: RawByteString)  
: RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToSingleByteFileSystemEncodedFileName` converts the argument (`Str` or `Arr`) to a single-byte string, encoded using the codepage used by the single-byte file system API.

This routine is simply an auxiliary routine, which converts the argument to a single-byte string using `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` ([1389](#)) as a codepage.

See also: `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` ([1389](#))

### 75.11.332 Trunc

Synopsis: Truncate a floating point value.

Declaration: `function Trunc(d: ValReal) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Trunc` returns the integer part of `X`, which is always smaller than (or equal to) `X` in absolute value.

Errors: None.

See also: `Frac` ([1443](#)), `Int` ([1465](#)), `Round` ([1499](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex70.pp`

---

**Program** `Example70;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Trunc function. }*

**begin**

**WriteLn** (**Trunc**(123.456)); *{ Prints 123 }*  
**WriteLn** (**Trunc**(-123.456)); *{ Prints -123 }*

---

```

Writeln (Trunc(12.3456)); { Prints 12 }
Writeln (Trunc(-12.3456)); { Prints -12 }
end.

```

---

### 75.11.333 Truncate

Synopsis: Truncate the file at position

Declaration: `procedure Truncate(var F: File)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` truncates the (opened) file `F` at the current file position.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `{SI}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `{SI-}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Append` ([1396](#)), `Filepos` ([1436](#)), `Seek` ([1503](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex71.pp`

---

**Program** Example71;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Truncate function. }*

```

Var F : File of longint;
    I,L : Longint;

```

```

begin
  Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite (F);
  For I:=1 to 10 Do
    Write (F,I);
  Writeln ('Filesize before Truncate : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (f);
  Reset (F);
  Repeat
    Read (F,I);
  Until i=5;
  Truncate (F);
  Writeln ('Filesize after Truncate : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (f);
end.

```

---

### 75.11.334 TryEnterCriticalSection

Synopsis: Try entering a critical section

Declaration: `function TryEnterCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCRITICALSECTION) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEnterCriticalSection` attempts to enter critical section `cs`. It returns at once. The return value is zero if another thread owns the critical section, or nonzero if the current thread already owns or successfully obtained the critical section.

**75.11.335 TypeInfo**

Synopsis: Return pointer to type information for type

Declaration: `function TypeInfo(const T: AnyType) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeInfo` is a compiler intrinsic: it returns a pointer to the generated type information (RTTI) for the type `T`. If no type information was yet generated for the type, this statement will ensure that type information is available, i.e. the result is always non-nil.

See also: [Default \(1421\)](#), [TypeOf \(1531\)](#), [GetTypeKind \(1449\)](#), [Initialize \(1461\)](#), [Finalize \(1440\)](#)

**75.11.336 TypeOf**

Synopsis: Return pointer to VMT of an object

Declaration: `function TypeOf(T: TObjectType) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeOf` is a compiler intrinsic: it returns a pointer to the VMT of the object type `T`.

See also: [Default \(1421\)](#), [TypeInfo \(1531\)](#), [GetTypeKind \(1449\)](#)

**75.11.337 UCS4StringToUnicodeString**

Synopsis: Convert a UCS-4 encoded string to a Unicode string

Declaration: `function UCS4StringToUnicodeString(const s: UCS4String) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UCS4StringToUnicodeString` converts the UCS-4 encoded string `S` to a Unicode string and returns the resulting string.

This function requires the widestring manager.

See also: [UnicodeStringToUCS4String \(1533\)](#)

**75.11.338 UCS4StringToWideString**

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function UCS4StringToWideString(const s: UCS4String) : WideString`

Visibility: default

Description:

**75.11.339 Unassigned**

Synopsis: Unassigned variant.

Declaration: `function Unassigned : Variant`

Visibility: default

**75.11.340 UnicodeCharLenToString**

Synopsis: Convert a memory buffer with Unicode characters to a unicodestring

Declaration: `function UnicodeCharLenToString(S: PUnicodeChar; Len: SizeInt)  
: UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharLenToString` converts the Unicode characters in buffer `S` with at most `len` bytes length, to a unicodestring and returns the result.

This function requires the use of a widestring manager.

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` or length `len` are valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` ([1521](#)), `UnicodeCharToString` ([1532](#))

**75.11.341 UnicodeCharLenToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a memory buffer with Unicode characters to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure UnicodeCharLenToStrVar(Src: PUnicodeChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: UnicodeString)  
procedure UnicodeCharLenToStrVar(Src: PUnicodeChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharLenToString` converts the Unicode characters in buffer `S` with at most `len` bytes length, to an ansistring and returns the result in `Dest`

This function does the same as `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1532](#)).

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` or length `len` are valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` ([1521](#)), `UnicodeCharToString` ([1532](#)), `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1532](#)), `UnicodeCharToStrVar` ([1533](#))

**75.11.342 UnicodeCharToString**

Synopsis: Convert Unicode character to string

Declaration: `function UnicodeCharToString(S: PUnicodeChar) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharToString` converts a null-word-terminated array of Unicode characters in `S` to a Unicode string value. It simply calls `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1532](#)) with the length of the string `S`.

This function requires the use of a widestring manager.

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` is valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` ([1521](#)), `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1532](#)), `WidestringManager` ([1393](#))

**75.11.343 UnicodeCharToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated memory buffer with Unicode characters to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure UnicodeCharToStrVar(S: PUnicodeChar; out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeCharLenToString` converts the Unicode characters in buffer `S` up to the first null word, to an ansistring and returns the result in `Dest`

This function does the same as `UnicodeCharToString` ([1532](#)).

Errors: No checking is done to see if the pointer `S` is valid.

See also: `StringToUnicodeChar` ([1521](#)), `UnicodeCharToString` ([1532](#)), `UnicodeCharLenToString` ([1532](#)), `UnicodeCharToString` ([1532](#))

**75.11.344 UnicodeStringToUCS4String**

Synopsis: Convert a Unicode string to a UCS-4 string.

Declaration: `function UnicodeStringToUCS4String(const s: UnicodeString) : UCS4String`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeStringToUCS4String` converts a Unicode string `S` to a UCS-4 encoded string, and returns the resulting string.

This function requires the widestring manager.

See also: `UCS4StringToUnicodeString` ([1531](#))

**75.11.345 UnicodeToUtf8**

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function UnicodeToUtf8(Dest: PChar; Source: PUnicodeChar;  
MaxBytes: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
function UnicodeToUtf8(Dest: PChar; MaxDestBytes: SizeUInt;  
Source: PUnicodeChar; SourceChars: SizeUInt)  
: SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

Description:

**75.11.346 UniqueString**

Synopsis: Make sure reference count of string is 1

Declaration: `procedure UniqueString(var S: RawByteString)  
procedure UniqueString(var S: UnicodeString)  
procedure UniqueString(var S: WideString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UniqueString` ensures that the ansistring `S` has reference count 1. It makes a copy of `S` if this is necessary, and returns the copy in `S`

Errors: None.

**75.11.347 UnloadLibrary**

Synopsis: Unload a previously loaded library

Declaration: `function UnloadLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnloadLibrary` unloads a previously loaded library (specified by the handle `lib`). The call returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `LoadLibrary` ([1473](#)), `GetProcAddress` ([1448](#))

**75.11.348 UnlockResource**

Synopsis: Unlock a previously locked resource

Declaration: `function UnlockResource(ResData: TFPResourceHGLOBAL) : LongBool`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnlockResource` unlocks a previously locked resource. Note that this function does not exist on windows, it's only needed on other platforms.

Errors: The function returns `False` if it failed.

See also: `FindResource` ([1440](#)), `FreeResource` ([1444](#)), `SizeofResource` ([1515](#)), `LoadResource` ([1474](#)), `lockResource` ([1474](#)), `FreeResource` ([1444](#))

**75.11.349 UnPack**

Synopsis: Create unpacked array from packed array

Declaration: `procedure UnPack(const Z: PackedArrayType; out A: UnpackedArrayType;  
                                  StartIndex: TIndexType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnPack` will copy the elements of a packed array (`Z`) to an unpacked array (`A`). All elements in `Z` are copied to `A`, starting at index `StartIndex` in `A`. The type of the index variable `StartIndex` must match the type of the index of `A`.

Obviously, the type of the elements of the arrays `A` and `Z` must match.

See also: `Pack` ([1483](#))

**75.11.350 UpCase**

Synopsis: Convert a string to all uppercase.

Declaration: `function UpCase(const s: shortstring) : shortstring  
              function UpCase(c: Char) : Char  
              function UpCase(const s: ansistring) : ansistring  
              function UpCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString  
              function UpCase(c: UnicodeChar) : UnicodeChar  
              function UpCase(const s: WideString) : WideString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UpCase` returns the uppercase version of its argument `C`. If its argument is a string, then the complete string is converted to uppercase. The type of the returned value is the same as the type of the argument.

`UpCase` does not change the number of characters in the string.

Errors: None.

See also: `Lowercase` ([1476](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex72.pp`

---

```

program Example72;

{ Program to demonstrate the upcase function. }

var c:char;

begin
  for c:= 'a' to 'z' do
    write(upcase(c));
  Writeln;
  { This doesn't work in TP, but it does in Free Pascal }
  Writeln(upcase( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz '));
end.
```

---

### 75.11.351 Utf8CodePointLen

**Synopsis:** Length of an UTF-8 codepoint.

**Declaration:** `function Utf8CodePointLen(P: PAnsiChar; MaxLookAhead: SizeInt; IncludeCombiningDiacriticalMarks: Boolean) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Utf8CodePointLen` returns the length of the UTF-8 codepoint starting at the beginning of `P`. It will look at at most `MaxLookAhead` bytes to do create this codepoint. If `IncludeCombiningDiacriticalMarks` is true, combining diacritical marks trailing the first codepoint (which itself can also be such a mark) will be considered to be part of the codepoint.

If the function returns a value  $> 0$ , then this is the number of bytes occupied by the codepoint and, if requested, the trailing combining diacritical marks. If the result  $= 0$ , this means that all bytes within the requested `MaxLookAhead` could be part of a single valid codepoint and, if requested, its trailing diacritical marks, but that the codepoint is incomplete and more bytes need to be looked at. If the result is  $< 0$ , then the function determined that the codepoint was invalid after processing the number of bytes equal to the absolute value of the function result.

If `IncludeCombiningDiacriticalMarks` is True, then

- If the function processes all `MaxLookAhead` bytes, it will return the value `MaxLookAhead` rather than 0, even though in theory more combining diacritical marks might follow if more bytes would be looked at. Therefore, in order to ascertain that all combining diacritical marks are processed, pass all bytes at once to this function.



- If an invalid sequence is detected while processing a potential combining diacritical mark after a valid codepoint has been found already, the function will return the length of this valid codepoint (plus that of any preceding valid combining diacritical marks) as a positive value. The idea is that this invalid sequence at the end is by definition not a combining diacritical mark (since all of those are valid sequences) and hence should not render the preceding codepoint invalid.

Errors: None.

### 75.11.352 UTF8Decode

Synopsis: Convert an UTF-8 encoded ansistring to a unicodestring

Declaration: `function UTF8Decode(const s: RawByteString) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UTF8Decode` converts the UTF-8 encoded ansistring *S* to a unicodestring and returns the resulting string. It calls the low-level `Utf8ToUnicode` (1537) function to do the actual work.

See also: `UTF8Encode` (1536), `Utf8ToAnsi` (1536), `SetWideStringManager` (1513), `Utf8ToUnicode` (1537)

### 75.11.353 UTF8Encode

Synopsis: Convert a widestring or unicodestring to an UTF-8 encoded ansistring

Declaration: `function UTF8Encode(const s: RawByteString) : RawByteString`  
`function UTF8Encode(const s: UnicodeString) : RawByteString`  
`function UTF8Encode(const s: WideString) : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `UTF8Encode` converts an ansistring or widestring *S* to the equivalent UTF-8 encoded Unicode string and returns this resulting string. It calls the low-level `UnicodeToUTF8` (1533) function to do the actual work.

The resulting string has code page `CP_UTF8`.

See also: `UTF8Decode` (1536), `Utf8ToAnsi` (1536), `UnicodeToUtf8` (1533), `SetWideStringManager` (1513)

### 75.11.354 Utf8ToAnsi

Synopsis: Convert a UTF-8 encoded Unicode string to an ansistring

Declaration: `function Utf8ToAnsi(const s: RawByteString) : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `Utf8ToAnsi` converts an utf8-encode Unicode string to an ansistring. It converts the string to a widestring and then converts the widestring to an ansistring.

For this function to work, a widestring manager must be installed.

See also: `UTF8Encode` (1536), `UTF8Decode` (1536), `SetWideStringManager` (1513)

**75.11.355 UTF8ToString**

Synopsis: Convert UTF8 to Unicode String

Declaration: `function UTF8ToString(const s: RawByteString) : UnicodeString`  
`function UTF8ToString(const S: ShortString) : unicodestring`  
`function UTF8ToString(const S: PAnsiChar) : unicodestring`  
`function UTF8ToString(const S: Array of AnsiChar) : unicodestring`  
`function UTF8ToString(const S: Array of Byte) : unicodestring`

Visibility: default

Description: `UTF8ToString` converts a UTF8 single byte string to a UTF16 encoded unicodestring. The source string `S` is interpreted as an array of UTF8 characters.

**75.11.356 Utf8ToUnicode**

Synopsis: Convert a buffer with UTF-8 characters to widestring characters

Declaration: `function Utf8ToUnicode(Dest: PUnicodeChar; Source: PChar;`  
`MaxChars: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function Utf8ToUnicode(Dest: PUnicodeChar; MaxDestChars: SizeUInt;`  
`Source: PChar; SourceBytes: SizeUInt) : SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Utf8ToUnicode` converts the buffer in `Source` with a length of `SourceBytes` or for a maximum length of `MaxChars` (or `MaxDestChars`) widestring characters to the buffer pointed to by `Dest`.

The function returns the number of copied widestring characters.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `UTF8Encode` ([1536](#)), `UTF8Decode` ([1536](#)), `Utf8ToAnsi` ([1536](#)), `SetWideStringManager` ([1513](#))

**75.11.357 Val**

Synopsis: Calculate numerical/enumerated value of a string.

Declaration: `procedure Val(const S: string; var V; var Code: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Val` converts the value represented in the string `S` to a numerical value or an enumerated value, and stores this value in the variable `V`, which can be of type `Longint`, `Real` and `Byte` or any enumerated type. If the conversion isn't successful, then the parameter `Code` contains the index of the character in `S` which prevented the conversion. The string `S` is allowed to contain spaces in the beginning.

The string `S` can contain a number in decimal, hexadecimal, binary or octal format, as described in the language reference. For enumerated values, the string must be the name of the enumerated value. The name is searched case insensitively.

For hexadecimal values, the prefix `'0x'` or `'x'` (case insensitive) may be used as well.

The conversion to enumerated exists only as of version 2.3.1 (or later) of the compiler.

Errors: If the conversion doesn't succeed, the value of `Code` indicates the position where the conversion went wrong. The value of `V` is then undefined.

See also: [Str \(1518\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex74.pp

---

**Program** Example74;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Val function. }
Var I, Code : Integer;

begin
  Val (ParamStr (1),I,Code);
  If Code<>0 then
    WriteLn ('Error at position ',code,' : ',Paramstr(1)[Code])
  else
    WriteLn ('Value : ',I);
end.
```

---

### 75.11.358 VarArrayGet

**Synopsis:** Get a value from a single cell of a variant array

**Declaration:** `function VarArrayGet(const A: Variant; const Indices: Array of LongInt) : Variant`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayGet` returns the value in the variant array `A` at the location indicated by `Indices`. Thus the statement

```
B:=VarArrayGet (A, [2, 1]);
```

is equivalent to

```
B:=A[2, 1];
```

The difference is that the previous is usable when the amount of indices is not known at compile time.

**Errors:** If the number of indices is wrong (or out of range) an exception may be raised.

See also: `VarArrayPut` ([1538](#))

### 75.11.359 VarArrayPut

**Synopsis:** Put a value in a single cell of a variant array

**Declaration:** `procedure VarArrayPut(var A: Variant; const Value: Variant; const Indices: Array of LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayPut` puts `Value` in the variant array `A` at the location indicated by `Indices`. Thus the statement

```
VarArrayPut (A, B, [2, 1]);
```

is equivalent to

```
A[2, 1] := B;
```

The difference is that the previous is usable when the amount of indices is not known at compile time.

**Errors:** If the number of indices is wrong (or out of range) an exception may be raised.

See also: `VarArrayGet` ([1538](#))

### 75.11.360 `VarArrayRedim`

**Synopsis:** Redimension a variant array

**Declaration:** `procedure VarArrayRedim(var A: Variant; HighBound: SizeInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayRedim` re-sizes the first dimension of the variant array `A`, giving it a new high bound `HighBound`. Obviously, `A` must be a variant array for this function to work.

### 75.11.361 `VarCast`

**Synopsis:** Cast a variant to a certain type

**Declaration:** `procedure VarCast(var dest: variant; const source: variant;  
vartype: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarCast` converts the variant in `Source` to the type indicated in `VarType` and returns the result in `dest`. The `VarType` must be one of the predefined `VarNNN` constants.

**Errors:** If the conversion is not possible because the value cannot be correctly casted, then a run-time error or an exception may occur.

### 75.11.362 `WaitForThreadTerminate`

**Synopsis:** Wait for a thread to terminate.

**Declaration:** `function WaitForThreadTerminate(threadHandle: TThreadID;  
TimeoutMs: LongInt) : DWord`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WaitForThreadTerminate` waits for a thread to finish its execution. The thread is identified by its handle or ID `threadHandle`. If the thread does not exit within `TimeoutMs` milliseconds, the function will return with an error value.

The function returns the exit code of the thread.

Not all platforms support the timeout parameter: the Unix platforms (with threads support based on pthreads) do not support timeout, and will wait indefinitely for the thread to exit.

See also: `EndThread` ([1427](#)), `KillThread` ([1470](#))

**75.11.363 WideCharLenToString**

Synopsis: Convert a length-limited array of widechar to an unicodestring

Declaration: `function WideCharLenToString(S: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharLenToString` converts at most `Len` widecharacters from the null-terminated widechar array `S` to an unicodestring, and returns the unicodestring.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `S`. Passing an invalid pointer may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` (1522), `WideCharToString` (1540), `WideCharToStrVar` (1541), `WideCharLenToStrVar` (1540)

**75.11.364 WideCharLenToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a length-limited array of widechar to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure WideCharLenToStrVar(Src: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: UnicodeString)  
procedure WideCharLenToStrVar(Src: PWideChar; Len: SizeInt;  
out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharLenToString` converts at most `Len` widecharacters from the null-terminated widechar array `Src` to an ansistring or Unicode string, and returns the resulting in `Dest`.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `Src`. Passing an invalid pointer may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` (1522), `WideCharToString` (1540), `WideCharToStrVar` (1541), `WideCharLenToString` (1540)

**75.11.365 WideCharToString**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated array of widechar to an unicodestring

Declaration: `function WideCharToString(S: PWideChar) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharToString` converts the null-terminated widechar array `S` to an unicodestring, and returns the unicodestring.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `Src`. Passing an invalid pointer, or an improperly terminated array may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` (1522), `WideCharToStrVar` (1541), `WideCharLenToStrVar` (1540), `WideCharLenToString` (1540)

**75.11.366 WideCharToStrVar**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated array of widechar to an ansistring

Declaration: `procedure WideCharToStrVar(S: PWideChar; out Dest: UnicodeString)`  
`procedure WideCharToStrVar(S: PWideChar; out Dest: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCharToString` converts the null-terminated widechar array `S` to an ansistring or Unicode string, and returns the resulting string in `Dest`.

Errors: No validity checking is performed on `S`. Passing an invalid pointer, or an improperly terminated array may lead to access violations.

See also: `StringToWideChar` ([1522](#)), `WideCharToString` ([1540](#)), `WideCharLenToStrVar` ([1540](#)), `WideCharLenToString` ([1540](#))

**75.11.367 WideStringToUCS4String**

Synopsis: Convert a widestring to a UCS-4 encoded string.

Declaration: `function WideStringToUCS4String(const s: WideString) : UCS4String`

Visibility: default

Description: Convert a widestring to a UCS-4 encoded string.

**75.11.368 Write**

Synopsis: Write variable to a text file

Declaration: `procedure Write(V1: Type1)`  
`procedure Write(V1: Type1; V2: type2)`  
`procedure Write(V1: Type1; V2: Type2; V3: Type3)`  
`procedure Write(var F: Text; V1: Type1)`  
`procedure Write(var F: Text; V1: Type1; V2: type2)`  
`procedure Write(var F: Text; V1: Type1; V2: Type2; V3: Type3)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Write` writes the contents of the variables `V1`, `V2`, `V3` etc. to the file `F`. `F` can be a typed file, or a Text file. If `F` is a typed file, then the variables `V1`, `V2` etc. must be of the same type as the type in the declaration of `F`. Untyped files are not allowed.

The `Write` command accepts an arbitrary number of arguments. The `V1`, `V2`, `V3` in the declaration here are in fact just samples, the actual number may be much higher. The types of arguments (`Type1` etc.) are limited to the following types:

- Any character type.
- Any string type (including `pchar`).
- Any ordinal type (integer, enumerated).
- The `Int64` and `QWord` type.
- Any floating-point type (such as `double`, `single`, `extended`).

If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard output is assumed. If `F` is of type `Text`, then the necessary conversions are done such that the output of the variables is in human-readable format. This conversion is done for all numerical types. Strings are printed exactly as they are in memory, as well as `PChar` types.

The format of the numerical conversions can be influenced through the following modifiers: `OutputVariable: NumChars [: Decimals]` This will print the value of `OutputVariable` with a minimum of `NumChars` characters, from which `Decimals` are reserved for the decimals. If the number cannot be represented with `NumChars` characters, `NumChars` will be increased, until the representation fits. If the representation requires less than `NumChars` characters then the output is filled up with spaces, to the left of the generated string, thus resulting in a right-aligned representation. If no formatting is specified, then the number is written using its natural length, with nothing in front of it if it's positive, and a minus sign if it's negative. Real numbers are, by default, written in scientific notation.

**Remark** When writing string variables, no codepage conversions are done. The string is copied as-is to the file descriptor. In particular, for console output, it is the programmer's responsibility to make sure that the codepage of the string matches the codepage of the console.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `{SI}` switch.

See also: `WriteLn` ([1542](#)), `Read` ([1489](#)), `ReadLn` ([1491](#)), `Blockwrite` ([1405](#))

### 75.11.369 WriteBarrier

Synopsis: Memory write barrier

Declaration: `procedure WriteBarrier`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteBarrier` is a low-level instruction to force a write barrier in the CPU: write (store) operations before and after the barrier are separate.

See also: `ReadBarrier` ([1490](#)), `ReadDependencyBarrier` ([1491](#)), `ReadWriteBarrier` ([1492](#))

### 75.11.370 WriteLn

Synopsis: Write variable to a text file and append newline

Declaration: `procedure WriteLn(V1: Type1)`  
`procedure WriteLn(V1: Type1; V2: type2)`  
`procedure WriteLn(V1: Type1; V2: Type2; V3: Type3)`  
`procedure WriteLn(var F: Text; V1: Type1)`  
`procedure WriteLn(var F: Text; V1: Type1; V2: type2)`  
`procedure WriteLn(var F: Text; V1: Type1; V2: Type2; V3: Type3)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteLn` does the same as `Write` ([1541](#)) for text files, and emits a Carriage Return - LineFeed character pair after that. If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard output is assumed. If no variables are specified, a newline character sequence is emitted, resulting in a new line in the file `F`.

**Remark** The newline character is determined by the `slinebreak` ([1338](#)) constant.

**Remark** When writing string variables, no codepage conversions are done. The string is copied as-is to the file descriptor. In particular, for console output, it is the programmer's responsibility to make sure that the codepage of the string matches the codepage of the console.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `{SI}` switch.

See also: [Write \(1541\)](#), [Read \(1489\)](#), [Readln \(1491\)](#), [Blockwrite \(1405\)](#), [slinebreak \(1338\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex75.pp`

---

**Program** `Example75;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Write(ln) function. }

Var
  F : File of Longint;
  L : Longint;

begin
  Write ('This is on the first line ! '); { No CR/LF pair! }
  Writeln ('And this too...');
  Writeln ('But this is already on the second line...');
  Assign (f, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite (f);
  For L:=1 to 10 do
    write (F,L); { No writeln allowed here ! }
  Close (f);
end.
```

---

### 75.11.371 WriteStr

**Synopsis:** Write variables to a string

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteStr(out S: string; Args: Arguments)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WriteStr` behaves like [Write \(1541\)](#), except that it stores its output in the string variable `S` instead of a file. Semantically, the `WriteStr` call is equivalent to writing the arguments to a file using the `Write` call, and then reading them into `S` using the `Read` call from the same file:

```
var
  F : Text;
begin
  Rewrite (F);
  Write (F,Args);
  Close (F);
  Reset (F);
  Read (F,S);
  Close (F);
end;
```

Obviously, the `WriteStr` call does not use a temporary file.

`WriteStr` is defined in the ISO Extended Pascal standard. More information on the allowed arguments and the possible formatting can be found in the description of [Write \(1541\)](#).

See also: [Write \(1541\)](#), [ReadStr \(1491\)](#), [Read \(1489\)](#)



## 75.12 TDoubleRec

```

TDoubleRec = packed record
private
  Bias = $3FF;
  function GetExp
    : QWord;
  procedure SetExp(e: QWord);
  function GetSign : Boolean
    ;
  procedure SetSign(s: Boolean);
  function GetFrac : QWord;
  procedure
    SetFrac(e: QWord);
public
  function Mantissa(IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean
    ) : QWord;
  function Fraction : ValReal;
  function Exponent : LongInt
    ;
  property Sign : Boolean;
  property Exp : QWord;
  property Frac
    : QWord;
  function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial;
  procedure BuildUp
    (const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;
     const _Exponent: LongInt);
case Byte of
0: (
public
  Bytes : Array
    [0..7] of Byte;
);
1: (
public
  Words : Array[0..3] of Word;
);
2
  : (
public
  Data : QWord;
);
3: (
public
  Value : Double;
);
end

```

TDoubleRec models the memory layout of a double value when using software floating point math.

**75.12.1 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1546</a>	BuildUp	Build a double value
<a href="#">1545</a>	Exponent	Exponent of the floating point value
<a href="#">1545</a>	Fraction	Fraction of the floating point value
<a href="#">1545</a>	Mantissa	Mantissa of the floating point value
<a href="#">1546</a>	SpecialType	Is the floating point value special ?

**75.12.2 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1546</a>	Exp	rw	Exponent bitpattern representation
<a href="#">1547</a>	Frac	rw	Fractional part of double
<a href="#">1546</a>	Sign	rw	Sign of the floating point value

**75.12.3 TDoubleRec.Mantissa**

Synopsis: Mantissa of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Mantissa(IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean) : QWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `Mantissa` returns the Mantissa part (significand bitpattern without hidden bit) of the floating point value.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Fraction` ([1545](#)), `TDoubleRec.Exponent` ([1545](#)), `TDoubleRec.SpecialType` ([1546](#))

**75.12.4 TDoubleRec.Fraction**

Synopsis: Fraction of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Fraction : ValReal`

Visibility: public

Description: `Fraction` returns the fraction (value after decimal) of the floating point value.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Mantissa` ([1545](#)), `TDoubleRec.Exponent` ([1545](#)), `TDoubleRec.SpecialType` ([1546](#))

**75.12.5 TDoubleRec.Exponent**

Synopsis: Exponent of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Exponent : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exponent` returns the exponent ( $X$  in  $m \times 2^X$  representation) of the floating point value.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Fraction` ([1545](#)), `TDoubleRec.Mantissa` ([1545](#)), `TDoubleRec.SpecialType` ([1546](#))

### 75.12.6 TDoubleRec.SpecialType

Synopsis: Is the floating point value special ?

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: public

Description: `SpecialType` returns special characteristics of the floating point value, if any. See `TFloatSpecial` (1365) for an explanation of the various special values.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Fraction` (1545), `TDoubleRec.Mantissa` (1545), `TDoubleRec.Exponent` (1545), `TFloatSpecial` (1365)

### 75.12.7 TDoubleRec.BuildUp

Synopsis: Build a double value

Declaration: `procedure BuildUp(const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;  
const _Exponent: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Buildup` will build a double value from the given `_Sign`, `_Mantissa` and `_Exponent`.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Mantissa` (1545), `TDoubleRec.Sign` (1546), `TDoubleRec.Exp` (1546)

### 75.12.8 TDoubleRec.Sign

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

### 75.12.9 TDoubleRec.Exp

Synopsis: Exponent bitpattern representation

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` returns the internal bit representation of the exponent of the floating point value.

See also: `TDoubleRec.Sign` (1546), `TDoubleRec.Exponent` (1545)

**75.12.10 TDoubleRec.Frac**

Synopsis: Fractional part of double

Declaration: `Property Frac : QWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Frac` is the fractional part of the `Double`. This is the bit pattern representing the fractional part including the preceding 1. (The mantissa is that bit pattern without the preceding 1)

See also: `Frac` ([1443](#))

**75.13 tinterfaceentry**

```
tinterfaceentry = record
private
    function GetIID : PGuid;
    function
        GetIIDStr : PShortString;
public
    property IID : PGuid;
    property
        IIDStr : PShortString;
        IIDRef : ^PGuid;
        VTable : Pointer;
case
    Integer of
1: (
public
    IOffset : SizeUInt;
);
2: (
public
    IOffsetAsCodePtr
        : CodePointer;
    IIDStrRef : ^PShortString;
    IType : tinterfaceentrytype
    ;
);
end
```

`tinterfaceentry` is used to store the list of Interfaces of a class. This list is stored as an array of `tinterfaceentry` records.

**75.13.1 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1548</a>	<code>IID</code>	<code>r</code>	Unique GUID for this interface.
<a href="#">1548</a>	<code>IIDStr</code>	<code>r</code>	Pointer to GUID string. Always assigned for COM.

**75.13.2 tinterfaceentry.IID**

Synopsis: Unique GUID for this interface.

Declaration: Property IID : PGuid

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**75.13.3 tinterfaceentry.IIDStr**

Synopsis: Pointer to GUID string. Always assigned for COM.

Declaration: Property IIDStr : PShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**75.14 TSingleRec**

```

TSingleRec = packed record
private
    Bias = $7F;
    function GetExp
    : QWord;
    procedure SetExp(e: QWord);
    function GetSign : Boolean
    ;
    procedure SetSign(s: Boolean);
    function GetFrac : QWord;
    procedure
    SetFrac(e: QWord);
public
    function Mantissa(IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean
    ) : QWord;
    function Fraction : ValReal;
    function Exponent : LongInt
    ;
    property Sign : Boolean;
    property Exp : QWord;
    property Frac
    : QWord;
    function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial;
    procedure BuildUp
    (const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;
    const _Exponent: LongInt);
case Byte of
0: (
public
    Bytes : Array
    [0..3] of Byte;
);

```

```

1: (
public
  Words : Array[0..1] of Word;
);
2
  : (
public
  Data : DWord;
);
3: (
public
  Value : Single;
);
end

```

TsingleRec models the memory layout of a double value when using software floating point math.

### 75.14.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1550</a>	BuildUp	
<a href="#">1550</a>	Exponent	Exponent of the floating point value
<a href="#">1549</a>	Fraction	Fraction of the floating point value
<a href="#">1549</a>	Mantissa	Mantissa of the floating point value
<a href="#">1550</a>	SpecialType	Is the floating point value special ?

### 75.14.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1550</a>	Exp	rw	Exponent bitpattern representation
<a href="#">1551</a>	Frac	rw	Fractional part of single
<a href="#">1550</a>	Sign	rw	Sign of the floating point value

### 75.14.3 TSingleRec.Mantissa

Synopsis: Mantissa of the floating point value

Declaration: function Mantissa(IncludeHiddenBit: Boolean) : QWord

Visibility: public

Description: Mantissa returns the Mantissa part (significand bitpattern without hidden bit) of the floating point value.

See also: TsingleRec.Fraction ([1549](#)), TsingleRec.Exponent ([1550](#)), TsingleRec.SpecialType ([1550](#))

### 75.14.4 TSingleRec.Fraction

Synopsis: Fraction of the floating point value

Declaration: function Fraction : ValReal

Visibility: public

Description: `Fraction` returns the fraction (after decimal) of the floating point value.

See also: `TsingleRec.Mantissa` ([1549](#)), `TsingleRec.Exponent` ([1550](#)), `TsingleRec.SpecialType` ([1550](#))

### 75.14.5 TSingleRec.Exponent

Synopsis: Exponent of the floating point value

Declaration: `function Exponent : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exponent` returns the exponent ( $X$  in  $m \times 2^X$  representation) of the floating point value.

See also: `TsingleRec.Fraction` ([1549](#)), `TsingleRec.Mantissa` ([1549](#)), `TsingleRec.SpecialType` ([1550](#))

### 75.14.6 TSingleRec.SpecialType

Synopsis: Is the floating point value special ?

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: public

Description: `SpecialType` returns special characteristics of the floating point value, if any. See `TFloatSpecial` ([1365](#)) for an explanation of the various special values.

See also: `TsingleRec.Fraction` ([1549](#)), `TsingleRec.Mantissa` ([1549](#)), `TsingleRec.Exponent` ([1550](#)), `TFloatSpecial` ([1365](#))

### 75.14.7 TSingleRec.BuildUp

Declaration: `procedure BuildUp(const _Sign: Boolean; const _Mantissa: QWord;  
const _Exponent: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

### 75.14.8 TSingleRec.Sign

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

### 75.14.9 TSingleRec.Exp

Synopsis: Exponent bitpattern representation

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` returns the internal bit representation of the exponent of the floating point value.

See also: `TsingleRec.Sign` ([1550](#)), `TsingleRec.Exponent` ([1550](#))

**75.14.10 TSingleRec.Frac**

Synopsis: Fractional part of single

Declaration: `Property Frac : QWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Frac` is the fractional part of the `Single`. This is the bit pattern representing the fractional part including the preceding 1. (The mantissa is that bit pattern without the preceding 1)

See also: `Frac` ([1443](#))

**75.15 TVmt**

```

TVmt = record
public
  vInstanceSize : SizeInt;
  vInstanceSize2
    : SizeInt;
  vParentRef : PPVmt;
  vClassName : PShortString;
  vDynamicTable
    : Pointer;
  vMethodTable : Pointer;
  vFieldTable : Pointer;
  vTypeInfo
    : Pointer;
  vInitTable : Pointer;
  vAutoTable : Pointer;
  vIntfTable
    : pinterfacetable;
  vMsgStrPtr : pstringmessagetable;
  vDestroy
    : CodePointer;
  vNewInstance : CodePointer;
  vFreeInstance : CodePointer
  ;
  vSafeCallException : CodePointer;
  vDefaultHandler : CodePointer
  ;
  vAfterConstruction : CodePointer;
  vBeforeDestruction : CodePointer
  ;
  vDefaultHandlerStr : CodePointer;
  vDispatch : CodePointer;
  vDispatchStr : CodePointer;
  vEquals : CodePointer;
  vGetHashCode
    : CodePointer;
  vToString : CodePointer;
private
  function GetvParent

```



```

    : PVmt;
public
    property vParent : PVmt;
end

```

TVMT is a record describing the VMT of a class. It's various fields represent the available information in the VMT, as far as it is common to all classes.

### 75.15.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1552</a>	vParent	r	Pointer to parent VMT

### 75.15.2 TVmt.vParent

Synopsis: Pointer to parent VMT

Declaration: `Property vParent : PVmt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 75.16 IDispatch

### 75.16.1 Description

IDispatch is the pascal definition of the Windows Dispatch interface definition.

See also: IUnknown ([1556](#))

### 75.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1553</a>	GetIDsOfNames	Return IDs of named procedures
<a href="#">1552</a>	GetTypeInfo	Return type information about properties
<a href="#">1552</a>	GetTypeInfoCount	Return number of properties.
<a href="#">1553</a>	Invoke	Invoke a dispatch method

### 75.16.3 IDispatch.GetTypeInfoCount

Synopsis: Return number of properties.

Declaration: `function GetTypeInfoCount(out count: LongInt) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

### 75.16.4 IDispatch.GetTypeInfo

Synopsis: Return type information about properties

Declaration: `function GetTypeInfo(Index: LongInt; LocaleID: LongInt; out TypeInfo) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

### 75.16.5 IDispatch.GetIDsOfNames

Synopsis: Return IDs of named procedures

Declaration: `function GetIDsOfNames(const iid: TGuid; names: Pointer;  
NameCount: LongInt; LocaleID: LongInt;  
DispIDs: Pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: Return the ID of a procedure.

### 75.16.6 IDispatch.Invoke

Synopsis: Invoke a dispatch method

Declaration: `function Invoke(DispID: LongInt; const iid: TGuid; LocaleID: LongInt;  
Flags: Word; var params; VarResult: pointer;  
ExcepInfo: pointer; ArgErr: pointer) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

## 75.17 IEnumerable

### 75.17.1 Description

`IEnumerable` can be used to get an enumerator from a class. If a class implements `IEnumerable`, it can return an enumerator interface `IEnumerator` ([1554](#)).

See also: `IEnumerator` ([1554](#))

### 75.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1553</a>	<code>GetEnumerator</code>	Return an enumerator interface for this class

### 75.17.3 IEnumerable.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return an enumerator interface for this class

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : IEnumerator`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns a new `IEnumerator` ([1554](#)) interface for this class. This is called by the compiler whenever a `for in` loop is encountered in the source code to retrieve the enumerator instance.

See also: `IEnumerator` ([1554](#))

## 75.18 IEnumerator

### 75.18.1 Description

`IEnumerator` is the interface needed by the `For ... in ...` language construct, when operating on classes. It contains all methods that the compiler needs to implement a loop.

A `for in` loop like the following:

```
For O in MyObject do
  begin
    // do things
  end;
```

is treated by the compiler as equivalent to the following code:

```
Var
  I : IEnumerator;
  O : TObject;

begin
  I:=MyObject.GetEnumerator;
  While I.MoveNext do
    begin
      O:=I.GetCurrent;
      // Do things
    end;
end.
```

Any class that implements the `IEnumerable` interface must be able to return an `IEnumerator` instance for the compiler to use in a `For in` loop.

See also: `IEnumerable` ([1553](#))

### 75.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1554</a>	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Returns the current element in the iteration cycle
<a href="#">1555</a>	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move to the next value
<a href="#">1555</a>	<code>Reset</code>	Reset the pointer

### 75.18.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1555</a>	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Return the current item

### 75.18.4 IEnumerator.GetCurrent

**Synopsis:** Returns the current element in the iteration cycle

**Declaration:** `function GetCurrent : TObject`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetCurrent` should return the object instance representing the current value in the `for in` loop. `GetCurrent` will always be called immediately after `IEnumerator.MoveNext` (1555) returned `True`.

**Remark** The actual return type of the interface should not necessarily be `TObject`, it can be any type. The compiler will check the actual return type with the type of the loop variable, and they should match.

See also: `IEnumerator.MoveNext` (1555), `IEnumerator.Reset` (1555)

### 75.18.5 IEnumerator.MoveNext

**Synopsis:** Move to the next value

**Declaration:** `function MoveNext : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MoveNext` should move the current item pointer to the next available item. It should return `True` if an item is available, `False` if no more items are available. The first time it is called It will be called at the beginning of the `for` loop, so it should position the enumerator on the first value (if there is one). After `MoveNext` has returned `True`, `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1554) will be called to retrieve the item.

See also: `IEnumerator.Reset` (1555), `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1554)

### 75.18.6 IEnumerator.Reset

**Synopsis:** Reset the pointer

**Declaration:** `procedure Reset`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Reset` can be implemented to put the pointer at the start of the list. It is not mandatory to implement this method, the compiler does not use it.

See also: `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1554), `IEnumerator.MoveNext` (1555)

### 75.18.7 IEnumerator.Current

**Synopsis:** Return the current item

**Declaration:** `Property Current : TObject`

**Visibility:** default

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `Current` simply is the redefinition of `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1554) as a property. It is read-only.

See also: `IEnumerator.GetCurrent` (1554), `IEnumerator.MoveNext` (1555)

## 75.19 IInvokable

### 75.19.1 Description

`IInvokable` is a descendent of `IInterface` (1347), compiled in the `{ $M+ }` state, so Run-Time Type Information (RTTI) is generated for it.

See also: `IDispatch` (1552), `IInterface` (1347)

## 75.20 IUnknown

### 75.20.1 Description

`IUnknown` is defined by windows. It's the basic interface which all COM objects must implement. The definition does not contain any code.

See also: `IInterface` (1347), `IDispatch` (1552), `IInvokable` (1556)

### 75.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1556</a>	<code>QueryInterface</code>	Return pointer to VMT table of interface
<a href="#">1556</a>	<code>\_AddRef</code>	Increase reference count of the interface
<a href="#">1556</a>	<code>\_Release</code>	Decrease reference count of the interface

### 75.20.3 IUnknown.QueryInterface

Synopsis: Return pointer to VMT table of interface

Declaration: `function QueryInterface(const iid: TGuid; out obj) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

### 75.20.4 IUnknown.\_AddRef

Synopsis: Increase reference count of the interface

Declaration: `function _AddRef : LongInt`

Visibility: default

See also: `IUnknown._Release` (1556)

### 75.20.5 IUnknown.\_Release

Synopsis: Decrease reference count of the interface

Declaration: `function _Release : LongInt`

Visibility: default

See also: `IUnknown._AddRef` (1556)

## 75.21 TAggregatedObject

### 75.21.1 Description

TAggregatedObject implements an object whose lifetime is governed by an external object (or interface). It does not implement the IUnknown interface by itself, but delegates all methods to the controller object, as exposed in the Controller (1557) property. In effect, the reference count of the aggregated object is the same as that of its controller, and additionally, all interfaces of the controller are exposed by the aggregated object.

Note that the aggregated object maintains a non-counted reference to the controller.

Aggregated objects should be used when using delegation to implement reference counted objects: the delegated interfaces can be implemented safely by TAggregatedObject descendents.

See also: Create (1557), Controller (1557)

### 75.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1557</a>	Create	Create a new instance of TAggregatedObject

### 75.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1557</a>	Controller	r	Controlling instance

### 75.21.4 TAggregatedObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TAggregatedObject

Declaration: `constructor Create(const aController: IUnknown)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TAggregatedObject on the heap, and stores a reference to aController, so it can be exposed in the Controller (1557) property.

Errors: If not enough memory is present on the heap, an exception will be raised. If the aController is Nil, exceptions will occur when any of the TAggregatedObject methods (actually, the IUnknown methods) are used.

See also: Controller (1557)

### 75.21.5 TAggregatedObject.Controller

Synopsis: Controlling instance

Declaration: `Property Controller : IUnknown`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Controller exposes the controlling object, with all interfaces it has.

The value of the controller is set when the TAggregatedObject instance is created.

See also: TAggregatedObject.Create (1557)

## 75.22 TContainedObject

### 75.22.1 Description

TContainedObject is the base class for contained objects, i.e. objects that do not implement a reference counting mechanism themselves, but are owned by some other object which handles the reference counting mechanism. It implements the IUnknown interface and, more specifically, the QueryInterface method of IUnknown.

See also: IInterface ([1347](#))

### 75.22.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">1347</a>	IInterface	Basic interface for all COM based interfaces

## 75.23 TInterfacedObject

### 75.23.1 Description

TInterfacedObject is a descendent of TObject ([1560](#)) which implements the IUnknown ([1556](#)) interface. It can be used as a base class for all classes which need reference counting.

See also: IUnknown ([1556](#)), TObject ([1560](#))

### 75.23.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">1556</a>	IUnknown	Basic interface for all COM-based interfaces

### 75.23.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1559</a>	AfterConstruction	Handle reference count properly.
<a href="#">1559</a>	BeforeDestruction	Check reference count.
<a href="#">1558</a>	destroy	Destroy interfaced object
<a href="#">1559</a>	NewInstance	Create a new instance

### 75.23.4 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1559</a>	RefCount	r	Return the current reference count

### 75.23.5 TInterfacedObject.destroy

Synopsis: Destroy interfaced object

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroy overrides the default destructor to clean up: it explicitly sets all counters to zero.

See also: IUnknown.\_Release ([1556](#))

### 75.23.6 TInterfacedObject.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Handle reference count properly.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AfterConstruction` overrides the basic method in `TObject` and adds some additional reference count handling.

Errors: None.

See also: `BeforeDestruction` ([1559](#))

### 75.23.7 TInterfacedObject.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis: Check reference count.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AfterConstruction` overrides the basic method in `TObject` and adds a reference count check: if the reference count is not zero, an error occurs.

Errors: A runtime-error 204 will be generated if the reference count is nonzero when the object is destroyed.

See also: `AfterConstruction` ([1559](#))

### 75.23.8 TInterfacedObject.NewInstance

Synopsis: Create a new instance

Declaration: `class function NewInstance : TObject; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewInstance` initializes a new instance of `TInterfacedObject` ([1558](#))

Errors: None.

### 75.23.9 TInterfacedObject.RefCount

Synopsis: Return the current reference count

Declaration: `Property RefCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RefCount` returns the current reference count. This reference count cannot be manipulated, except through the methods of `IUnknown` ([1556](#)). When it reaches zero, the class instance is destroyed.

See also: `IUnknown` ([1556](#))



## 75.24 TObject

### 75.24.1 Description

TObject is the parent root class for all classes in Object Pascal. If a class has no parent class explicitly declared, it is dependent on TObject. TObject introduces class methods that deal with the class' type information, and contains all necessary methods to create an instance at runtime, and to dispatch messages to the correct method (both string and integer messages).

See also: TClass ([1360](#))

### 75.24.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1566</a>	AfterConstruction	Method called after the constructor was called.
<a href="#">1566</a>	BeforeDestruction	Method called before the destructor is called.
<a href="#">1563</a>	ClassInfo	Return a pointer to the type information for this class.
<a href="#">1564</a>	ClassName	Return the current class name.
<a href="#">1564</a>	ClassNameIs	Check whether the class name equals the given name.
<a href="#">1564</a>	ClassParent	Return the parent class.
<a href="#">1563</a>	ClassType	Return a "class of" pointer for the current class
<a href="#">1563</a>	CleanupInstance	Finalize the class instance.
<a href="#">1561</a>	Create	TObject Constructor
<a href="#">1562</a>	DefaultHandler	Default handler for integer message handlers.
<a href="#">1566</a>	DefaultHandlerStr	Default handler for string messages.
<a href="#">1561</a>	Destroy	TObject destructor.
<a href="#">1567</a>	Dispatch	Dispatch an integer message
<a href="#">1567</a>	DispatchStr	Dispatch a string message.
<a href="#">1569</a>	Equals	Check if two objects are equal.
<a href="#">1566</a>	FieldAddress	Return the address of a field.
<a href="#">1562</a>	Free	Check for Nil and call destructor.
<a href="#">1562</a>	FreeInstance	Clean up instance and free the memory reserved for the instance.
<a href="#">1570</a>	GetHashCode	Return a hash code for the object
<a href="#">1567</a>	GetInterface	Return a reference to an interface
<a href="#">1568</a>	GetInterfaceByStr	Return an interface based on its GUID
<a href="#">1568</a>	GetInterfaceEntry	Return the interface table entry by GUID
<a href="#">1568</a>	GetInterfaceEntryByStr	Return the interface table entry by string
<a href="#">1569</a>	GetInterfaceTable	Return a pointer to the table of implemented interfaces for a class
<a href="#">1568</a>	GetInterfaceWeak	Get a reference to an interface, not increasing the reference count
<a href="#">1565</a>	InheritsFrom	Check whether class is an ancestor.
<a href="#">1563</a>	InitInstance	Initialize a new class instance.
<a href="#">1564</a>	InstanceSize	Return the size of an instance.
<a href="#">1565</a>	MethodAddress	Return the address of a method
<a href="#">1565</a>	MethodName	Return the name of a method.
<a href="#">1561</a>	newinstance	Allocate memory on the heap for a new instance
<a href="#">1569</a>	QualifiedClassName	Fully qualified classname
<a href="#">1562</a>	SafeCallException	Handle exception object
<a href="#">1565</a>	StringMessageTable	Return a pointer to the string message table.
<a href="#">1570</a>	ToString	Return a string representation for the object
<a href="#">1569</a>	UnitName	Unit name

### 75.24.3 TObject.Create

Synopsis: TObject Constructor

Declaration: constructor Create

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TObject. Currently it does nothing (except allocating memory for the new instance).

Note that allocating the memory for the object instance happens in hidden code generated as part of every constructor, not only in TObject.Create. The hidden code calls NewInstance (1561).

See also: Destroy (1561)

### 75.24.4 TObject.Destroy

Synopsis: TObject destructor.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy is the destructor of TObject. It will clean up the memory assigned to the instance. Descendent classes should override destroy if they want to do additional clean-up. No other destructor should be implemented.

It is bad programming practice to call Destroy directly. It is better to call the Free (1562) method, because that one will check first if Self is different from Nil.

To clean up an instance and reset the reference to the instance, it is best to use the FreeAndNil (1677) function.

See also: Create (1561), Free (1562)

### 75.24.5 TObject.newinstance

Synopsis: Allocate memory on the heap for a new instance

Declaration: class function newInstance : TObject; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: NewInstance allocates memory on the heap for a new instance of the current class. If the memory was allocated, the class will be initialized by a call to InitInstance (1563). The function returns the newly initialized instance.

This method can be overridden to implement e.g. object pooling. Note that the method is responsible for correctly initializing the object, i.e. zeroing out the new instance.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, a Nil pointer may be returned, or an exception may be raised.

See also: Create (1561), InitInstance (1563), InstanceSize (1564), FreeInstance (1562)

### 75.24.6 TObject.FreeInstance

Synopsis: Clean up instance and free the memory reserved for the instance.

Declaration: `procedure FreeInstance; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeInstance` cleans up an instance of the current class, and releases the heap memory occupied by the class instance.

See also: `Destroy` ([1561](#)), `InitInstance` ([1563](#)), `NewInstance` ([1561](#))

### 75.24.7 TObject.SafeCallException

Synopsis: Handle exception object

Declaration: `function SafeCallException(exceptobject: TObject;  
exceptaddr: CodePointer) : HRESULT; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SafeCallException` should be overridden to handle exceptions in a method marked with the `savecall` directive. The implementation in `TObject` simply returns zero.

### 75.24.8 TObject.DefaultHandler

Synopsis: Default handler for integer message handlers.

Declaration: `procedure DefaultHandler(var message); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DefaultHandler` is the default handler for messages. If a message has an unknown message ID (i.e. does not appear in the table with integer message handlers), then it will be passed to `DefaultHandler` by the `Dispatch` ([1567](#)) method.

See also: `Dispatch` ([1567](#)), `DefaultHandlerStr` ([1566](#))

### 75.24.9 TObject.Free

Synopsis: Check for `Nil` and call destructor.

Declaration: `procedure Free`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Free` will check the `Self` pointer and calls `Destroy` ([1561](#)) if it is different from `Nil`. This is a safer method than calling `Destroy` directly. If a reference to the object must be reset as well (a recommended technique), then the function `FreeAndNil` ([1677](#)) should be called.

Errors: None.

See also: `Destroy` ([1561](#)), `FreeAndNil` ([1677](#))

### 75.24.10 TObject.InitInstance

Synopsis: Initialize a new class instance.

Declaration: `class function InitInstance(instance: pointer) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `InitInstance` initializes the memory pointer to by `Instance`. This means that the VMT is initialized, and the interface pointers are set up correctly. The function returns the newly initialized instance.

See also: `NewInstance` ([1561](#)), `Create` ([1561](#))

### 75.24.11 TObject.CleanupInstance

Synopsis: Finalize the class instance.

Declaration: `procedure CleanupInstance`

Visibility: public

Description: `CleanupInstance` finalizes the instance, i.e. takes care of all reference counted objects, by decreasing their reference count by 1, and freeing them if their count reaches zero.

Normally, `CleanupInstance` should never be called, it is called automatically when the object is freed with it's constructor.

Errors: None.

See also: `Destroy` ([1561](#)), `Free` ([1562](#)), `InitInstance` ([1563](#))

### 75.24.12 TObject.ClassType

Synopsis: Return a "class of" pointer for the current class

Declaration: `class function ClassType : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassType` returns a `TClass` ([1360](#)) class type reference for the current class.

See also: `TClass` ([1360](#)), `ClassInfo` ([1563](#)), `ClassName` ([1564](#))

### 75.24.13 TObject.ClassInfo

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the type information for this class.

Declaration: `class function ClassInfo : pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassInfo` returns a pointer to the type information for this class. This pointer can be used in the various type information routines.

**75.24.14 TObject.ClassName**

Synopsis: Return the current class name.

Declaration: `class function ClassName : shortstring`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassName` returns the class name for the current class, in all-uppercase letters. To check for the class name, use the `ClassNameIs` (1564) class method.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClassInfo` (1563), `ClassType` (1563), `ClassNameIs` (1564)

**75.24.15 TObject.ClassNameIs**

Synopsis: Check whether the class name equals the given name.

Declaration: `class function ClassNameIs(const name: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassNameIs` checks whether `Name` equals the class name. It takes of case sensitivity, i.e. it converts both names to uppercase before comparing.

See also: `ClassInfo` (1563), `ClassType` (1563), `ClassName` (1564)

**75.24.16 TObject.ClassParent**

Synopsis: Return the parent class.

Declaration: `class function ClassParent : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassParent` returns the class of the parent class of the current class. This is always different from `Nil`, except for `TObject`.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClassInfo` (1563), `ClassType` (1563), `ClassNameIs` (1564)

**75.24.17 TObject.InstanceSize**

Synopsis: Return the size of an instance.

Declaration: `class function InstanceSize : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `InstanceSize` returns the number of bytes an instance takes in memory. This is Just the memory occupied by the class structure, and does not take into account any additional memory that might be allocated by the constructor of the class.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitInstance` (1563), `ClassName` (1564), `ClassInfo` (1563), `ClassType` (1563)

### 75.24.18 TObject.InheritsFrom

Synopsis: Check whether class is an ancestor.

Declaration: `class function InheritsFrom(aClass: TClass) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `InheritsFrom` returns `True` if `AClass` is an ancestor class from the current class, and returns `false` if it is not.

See also: `ClassName` (1564), `ClassInfo` (1563), `ClassType` (1563), `TClass` (1360)

### 75.24.19 TObject.StringMessageTable

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the string message table.

Declaration: `class function StringMessageTable : pstringmessagetable`

Visibility: public

Description: `StringMessageTable` returns a pointer to the string message table, which can be used to look up methods for dispatching a string message. It is used by the `DispatchStr` (1567) method.

Errors: If there are no string message handlers, `nil` is returned.

See also: `DispatchStr` (1567), `Dispatch` (1567)

### 75.24.20 TObject.MethodAddress

Synopsis: Return the address of a method

Declaration: `class function MethodAddress(const name: shortstring) : CodePointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `MethodAddress` returns the address of a method, searching the method by its name. The `Name` parameter specifies which method should be taken. The search is conducted in a case-insensitive manner.

Errors: If no matching method is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `MethodName` (1565), `FieldAddress` (1566)

### 75.24.21 TObject.MethodName

Synopsis: Return the name of a method.

Declaration: `class function MethodName(address: CodePointer) : shortstring`

Visibility: public

Description: `MethodName` searches the VMT for a method with the specified address and returns the name of the method.

Errors: If no method with the matching address is found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `MethodAddress` (1565), `FieldAddress` (1566)

**75.24.22 TObject.FieldAddress**

Synopsis: Return the address of a field.

Declaration: `function FieldAddress(const name: shortstring) : pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FieldAddress` returns the address of the field with name `name`. The address is the address of the field in the current class instance.

Errors: If no field with the specified name is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `MethodAddress` ([1565](#)), `MethodName` ([1565](#))

**75.24.23 TObject.AfterConstruction**

Synopsis: Method called after the constructor was called.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `AfterConstruction` is a method called after the constructor was called. It does nothing in the implementation of `TObject` and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific behaviour that is executed after the constructor has finished executing. (for instance, call an event handler)

Errors: None.

See also: `BeforeDestruction` ([1566](#)), `Create` ([1561](#))

**75.24.24 TObject.BeforeDestruction**

Synopsis: Method called before the destructor is called.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `BeforeDestruction` is a method called before the destructor is called. It does nothing in the implementation of `TObject` and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific behaviour that is executed before the destructor has finished executing. (for instance, call an event handler)

Errors: None.

See also: `AfterConstruction` ([1566](#)), `Destroy` ([1561](#)), `Free` ([1562](#))

**75.24.25 TObject.DefaultHandlerStr**

Synopsis: Default handler for string messages.

Declaration: `procedure DefaultHandlerStr(var message); Virtual`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `DefaultHandlerStr` is called for string messages which have no handler associated with them in the string message handler table. The implementation of `DefaultHandlerStr` in `TObject` does nothing and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific message handling behaviour.

See also: `DispatchStr` ([1567](#)), `Dispatch` ([1567](#)), `DefaultHandler` ([1562](#))

### 75.24.26 TObject.Dispatch

**Synopsis:** Dispatch an integer message

**Declaration:** `procedure Dispatch(var message); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Dispatch` looks in the message handler table for a handler that handles `message`. The message is identified by the first dword (cardinal) in the message structure.

If no matching message handler is found, the message is passed to the `DefaultHandler` ([1562](#)) method, which can be overridden by descendent classes to add custom handling of messages.

See also: `DispatchStr` ([1567](#)), `DefaultHandler` ([1562](#))

### 75.24.27 TObject.DispatchStr

**Synopsis:** Dispatch a string message.

**Declaration:** `procedure DispatchStr(var message); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `DispatchStr` extracts the message identifier from `Message` and checks the message handler table to see if a handler for the message is found, and calls the handler, passing along the message.

If no handler is found, the default `DefaultHandlerStr` ([1566](#)) is called.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `DefaultHandlerStr` ([1566](#)), `Dispatch` ([1567](#)), `DefaultHandler` ([1562](#))

### 75.24.28 TObject.GetInterface

**Synopsis:** Return a reference to an interface

**Declaration:** `function GetInterface(const iid: TGuid; out obj) : Boolean`  
`function GetInterface(const iidstr: shortstring; out obj) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `GetInterface` scans the interface tables and returns a reference to the interface `iid`. The reference is stored in `Obj` which should be an interface reference. It returns `True` if the interface was found, `False` if not.

The reference count of the interface is increased by this call.

**Errors:** If no interface was found, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetInterfaceByStr` ([1568](#))



### 75.24.29 TObject.GetInterfaceByStr

Synopsis: Return an interface based on its GUID

Declaration: `function GetInterfaceByStr(const iidstr: shortstring; out obj) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceByStr` returns in `obj` a pointer to the interface identified by `iidstr`. The function returns `True` if the interface is indeed implemented by the class, or `False` otherwise.

The `iidstr` is the unique GUID by which the interface was declared.

Errors: The function returns false if the requested interface is not implemented.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceEntry` (1568), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr` (1568)

### 75.24.30 TObject.GetInterfaceWeak

Synopsis: Get a reference to an interface, not increasing the reference count

Declaration: `function GetInterfaceWeak(const iid: TGuid; out obj) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceWeak` performs the same function as `GetInterface` (1567), but unlike the latter, it will not increase the reference count of the interface.

See also: `TObject.GetInterface` (1567)

### 75.24.31 TObject.GetInterfaceEntry

Synopsis: Return the interface table entry by GUID

Declaration: `class function GetInterfaceEntry(const iid: TGuid) : pinterfaceentry`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceEntry` returns the internal interface table entry for the interface identified by `iid` (the GUID used in the declaration of the interface). If the interface is not implemented by the class, the function returns `Nil`.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` (1568), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr` (1568)

### 75.24.32 TObject.GetInterfaceEntryByStr

Synopsis: Return the interface table entry by string

Declaration: `class function GetInterfaceEntryByStr(const iidstr: shortstring)  
: pinterfaceentry`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceEntryByStr` returns the internal interface table entry for the interface identified by `iidstr` (A string representation of the GUID used in the declaration of the interface). If the interface is not implemented by the class, the function returns `Nil`.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` (1568), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntry` (1568)

### 75.24.33 TObject.GetInterfaceTable

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the table of implemented interfaces for a class

Declaration: `class function GetInterfaceTable : pinterfacetable`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetInterfaceTable` returns a pointer to the internal table of implemented interfaces for a class. The result will always point to a valid address, if the class implements no interfaces the `EntryCount` field of the interface table will be zero.

See also: `TObject.GetInterfaceByStr` ([1568](#)), `TObject.GetInterfaceEntry` ([1568](#))

### 75.24.34 TObject.UnitName

Synopsis: Unit name

Declaration: `class function UnitName : ansistring`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnitName` returns the unit name in which the class was defined. The name is obtained from the class definition data the compiler generates for each class.

### 75.24.35 TObject.QualifiedClassName

Synopsis: Fully qualified classname

Declaration: `class function QualifiedClassName : ansistring`

Visibility: public

Description: `QualifiedClassName` is the classname `TObject.ClassName` ([1564](#)) prepended with the unit name `TObject.UnitName` ([1569](#)) of the unit in which the class is defined. As such, this is a unique name for each class in the program.

See also: `TObject.ClassName` ([1564](#)), `TObject.UnitName` ([1569](#))

### 75.24.36 TObject.Equals

Synopsis: Check if two objects are equal.

Declaration: `function Equals(Obj: TObject) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Equals` returns `True` if the object instance pointer (`Self`) equals the instance pointer `Obj`.  
Descendent classes can override to check properties etc. in case the instance pointers are different.

See also: `TObject.GetHashCode` ([1570](#)), `TObject.ToString` ([1570](#))

### 75.24.37 TObject.GetHashCode

Synopsis: Return a hash code for the object

Declaration: `function GetHashCode : PtrInt; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetHashCode` should return a hash code for the object. By default, the numerical (integer) address of `Self` is returned.

Descendent classes can use this to generate better suitable values to be used in a hash table.

See also: `TObject.ToString` ([1570](#)), `TObject.Equals` ([1569](#))

### 75.24.38 TObject.ToString

Synopsis: Return a string representation for the object

Declaration: `function ToString : ansistring; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToString` returns by default the class name of the object. It is useful during sending of debug messages.

Descendent classes can override this method to give a better description of the object than just the class name.

See also: `TObject.GetHashCode` ([1570](#)), `TObject.Equals` ([1569](#))

## Chapter 76

# Reference for unit 'sysutils'

### 76.1 Used units

Table 76.1: Used units by unit 'sysutils'

Name	Page
errors	<a href="#">706</a>
sysconst	??
Unix	<a href="#">2019</a>
unixtype	<a href="#">2057</a>

### 76.2 Overview

This documentation describes the `sysutils` unit. The `sysutils` unit was started by Gertjan Schouten, and completed by Michael Van Canneyt. It aims to be compatible to the Delphi `sysutils` unit, but in contrast with the latter, it is designed to work on multiple platforms. It is implemented on all supported platforms.

### 76.3 Type Helpers for basic types

The `sysutils` unit contains type helpers for basic language types: boolean, ordinals (shortint, smallint, byte, word, integer, cardinal, int64, wqord, nativeint, nativeuint), strings, floating-point and GUID values. They can be used as-is, or they can be descended from to form your own type helpers.

See also: `TGuidHelper` ([1797](#)), `TStringHelper` ([1836](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1771](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1821](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1833](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1867](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1775](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1802](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1799](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1818](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1811](#)), `TBooleanHelper` ([1768](#)), `TByteBoolHelper` ([1770](#)), `TWordBoolHelper` ([1866](#)), `TLongBoolHelper` ([1805](#)), `TSingleHelper` ([1827](#)), `TDoubleHelper` ([1778](#)), `TExtendedHelper` ([1791](#))

## 76.4 Localization support

Localization support depends on various constants and structures being initialized correctly. On Windows and OS/2 this is done automatically: a widestring manager is installed by default which helps taking care of the current locale when performing various operations on strings. The various internationalization settings (date/time format, currency, language etc) are also initialized correctly on these platforms.

On Unixes, the widestring support is in a separate unit: `cwstring`, which loads the various needed functions from the C library. It should be added manually to the `uses` clause of your program. No internationalization (or localisation) settings are applied by this unit, these must be initialized separately by including the `locale` unit in the `uses` clause of your program.

## 76.5 Unicode and codepage awareness

The many functions that deal with filenames in the `sysutils` routines have been changed from `AnsiString` to `RawByteString` so they do not perform implicit codepage conversions to the ANSI code page. At the same time, overloaded versions that accept a Unicode string have been created.

For routines that access actual OS functions using single-byte string APIs, the strings are converted to ensure that the OS routine receives a string with the correct encoding when using single-byte strings. This encoding is normally the `DefaultFileSystemCodePage` (1389) encoding.

On systems with a Unicode I/O API (2-byte strings), the native API is used, meaning that Unicode strings will be passed on as-is, but single-byte strings will be converted (implicitly) to Unicode.

The following is a minimal list of functions that have been changed and duplicated:

Table 76.2:

Name	Description
<code>FileCreate</code> (1649)	Create a new file and return a handle to it.
<code>FileOpen</code> (1654)	Open an existing file and return a file handle
<code>FileExists</code> (1651)	Check whether a particular file exists in the file system.
<code>DirectoryExists</code> (1635)	Check whether a directory exists in the file system.
<code>FileSetDate</code> (1658)	Set the date of a file.
<code>FileGetAttr</code> (1652)	Return attributes of a file.
<code>FileSetAttr</code> (1657)	Set the attributes of a file.
<code>DeleteFile</code> (1635)	Delete a file from the file system.
<code>RenameFile</code> (1696)	Rename a file.
<code>FileSearch</code> (1655)	Search for a file in a path.
<code>ExeSearch</code> (1642)	Search for an executable
<code>FindFirst</code> (1660)	Start a file search and return a findhandle
<code>FindNext</code> (1661)	Find the next entry in a findhandle.
<code>FindClose</code> (1659)	Close a find handle
<code>FileIsReadOnly</code> (1654)	Check whether a file is read-only.
<code>GetCurrentDir</code> (1679)	Return the current working directory of the application.
<code>SetCurrentDir</code> (1699)	Set the current directory of the application.

The following functions do not interact with the OS, but may nevertheless change the codepage of the strings involved in their operation:

Table 76.3:

Name	Description
ChangeFileExt (1622)	Change the extension of a filename.
ExtractFilePath (1646)	Extract the path from a filename.
ExtractFileDrive (1645)	Extract the drive part from a filename.
ExtractFileName (1646)	Extract the filename part from a full path filename.
ExtractFileExt (1646)	Return the extension from a filename.
ExtractFileDir (1645)	Extract the drive and directory part of a filename.
ExtractShortPathName (1647)	Returns a 8.3 path name
ExpandFileName (1643)	Expand a relative filename to an absolute filename.
ExpandFileNameCase (1643)	Expand a filename entered as case insensitive to the full path as stored on the disk.
ExtractRelativepath (1647)	Extract a relative path from a filename, given a base directory.
ExpandUNCFileName (1644)	Expand a relative filename to an absolute UNC filename.
IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter (1687)	Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.
IncludeTrailingBackslash (1687)	Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.
ExcludeTrailingBackslash (1641)	Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.
ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter (1641)	Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.
IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter (1686)	Prepend a path delimiter if there is not already one.
ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter (1640)	Strip the leading path delimiter of a path
IsPathDelimiter (1691)	Is the character at the given position a pathdelimiter ?
DoDirSeparators (1637)	Convert known directory separators to the current directory separator.
SetDirSeparators (1700)	Set the directory separators to the known directory separators.
GetDirs (1680)	Return a list of directory names from a path.
ConcatPaths (1626)	Concatenate an array of paths to form a single path
GetEnvironmentVariable (1681)	Return the value of an environment variable.

## 76.6 Miscellaneous conversion routines

Functions for various conversions.

Table 76.4:

Name	Description
BCDToInt (1619)	Convert BCD number to integer
CompareMem (1623)	Compare two memory regions
FloatToStrF (1663)	Convert float to formatted string
FloatToStr (1662)	Convert float to string
FloatToText (1665)	Convert float to string
FormatFloat (1676)	Format a floating point value
GetDirs (1680)	Split string in list of directories
IntToHex (1688)	return hexadecimal representation of integer
IntToStr (1689)	return decimal representation of integer
StrToIntDef (1723)	Convert string to integer with default value
StrToInt (1722)	Convert string to integer
StrToFloat (1721)	Convert string to float
TextToFloat (1728)	Convert null-terminated string to float

## 76.7 Date/time routines

Functions for date and time handling.

Table 76.5:

Name	Description
<code>DateTimeToFileDate</code> (1629)	Convert <code>DateTime</code> type to file date
<code>DateTimeToStr</code> (1629)	Construct string representation of <code>DateTime</code>
<code>DateTimeToString</code> (1630)	Construct string representation of <code>DateTime</code>
<code>DateTimeToSystemTime</code> (1631)	Convert <code>DateTime</code> to system time
<code>DateTimeToTimeStamp</code> (1632)	Convert <code>DateTime</code> to timestamp
<code>DateToStr</code> (1632)	Construct string representation of date
<code>Date</code> (1628)	Get current date
<code>DayOfWeek</code> (1633)	Get day of week
<code>DecodeDate</code> (1633)	Decode <code>DateTime</code> to year month and day
<code>DecodeTime</code> (1634)	Decode <code>DateTime</code> to hours, minutes and seconds
<code>EncodeDate</code> (1638)	Encode year, day and month to <code>DateTime</code>
<code>EncodeTime</code> (1638)	Encode hours, minutes and seconds to <code>DateTime</code>
<code>FormatDateTime</code> (1675)	Return string representation of <code>DateTime</code>
<code>IncMonth</code> (1687)	Add 1 to month
<code>IsLeapYear</code> (1690)	Determine if year is leap year
<code>MSecsToTimeStamp</code> (1694)	Convert nr of milliseconds to timestamp
<code>Now</code> (1695)	Get current date and time
<code>StrToDateTime</code> (1719)	Convert string to <code>DateTime</code>
<code>StrToDate</code> (1717)	Convert string to date
<code>StrToTime</code> (1724)	Convert string to time
<code>SystemTimeToDateTime</code> (1727)	Convert system time to datetime
<code>TimeStampToDateTime</code> (1729)	Convert time stamp to <code>DateTime</code>
<code>TimeStampToMSecs</code> (1730)	Convert <code>TimeStamp</code> to number of milliseconds
<code>TimeToStr</code> (1730)	return string representation of <code>Time</code>
<code>Time</code> (1729)	Get current time

## 76.8 File Name handling routines

Functions for file manipulation.

Table 76.6:

Name	Description
<a href="#">AnsiCompareFileName (1604)</a>	Compare 2 filenames
<a href="#">AnsiLowerCaseFileName (1609)</a>	Create lowercase filename
<a href="#">AnsiUpperCaseFileName (1617)</a>	Create uppercase filename
<a href="#">AddDisk (1603)</a>	Add disk to list of disk drives
<a href="#">ChangeFileExt (1622)</a>	Change extension of file name
<a href="#">CreateDir (1626)</a>	Create a directory
<a href="#">DeleteFile (1635)</a>	Delete a file
<a href="#">DiskFree (1636)</a>	Free space on disk
<a href="#">DiskSize (1636)</a>	Total size of disk
<a href="#">ExpandFileName (1643)</a>	Create full file name
<a href="#">ExpandFileNameCase (1643)</a>	Create full file name case insensitively
<a href="#">ExpandUNCFileName (1644)</a>	Create full UNC file name
<a href="#">ExtractFileDir (1645)</a>	Extract drive and directory part of filename
<a href="#">ExtractFileDrive (1645)</a>	Extract drive part of filename
<a href="#">ExtractFileExt (1646)</a>	Extract extension part of filename
<a href="#">ExtractFileName (1646)</a>	Extract name part of filename
<a href="#">ExtractFilePath (1646)</a>	Extract path part of filename
<a href="#">ExtractRelativePath (1647)</a>	Construct relative path between two files
<a href="#">FileAge (1648)</a>	Return file age
<a href="#">FileDateToDateTime (1650)</a>	Convert file date to system date
<a href="#">FileExists (1651)</a>	Determine whether a file exists on disk
<a href="#">FileGetAttr (1652)</a>	Get attributes of file
<a href="#">FileGetDate (1653)</a>	Get date of last file modification
<a href="#">FileSearch (1655)</a>	Search for file in path
<a href="#">FileSetAttr (1657)</a>	Get file attributes
<a href="#">FileSetDate (1658)</a>	Get file dates
<a href="#">FindFirst (1660)</a>	Start finding a file
<a href="#">FindNext (1661)</a>	Find next file
<a href="#">GetCurrentDir (1679)</a>	Return current working directory
<a href="#">RemoveDir (1696)</a>	Remove a directory from disk
<a href="#">RenameFile (1696)</a>	Rename a file on disk
<a href="#">SameFileName (1698)</a>	Check whether 2 filenames are the same
<a href="#">SetCurrentDir (1699)</a>	Set current working directory
<a href="#">SetDirSeparators (1700)</a>	Set directory separator characters
<a href="#">FindClose (1659)</a>	Stop searching a file
<a href="#">DoDirSeparators (1637)</a>	Replace directory separator characters

## 76.9 File input/output routines

Functions for reading/writing to file.



Table 76.7:

Name	Description
FileCreate (1649)	Create a file and return handle
FileOpen (1654)	Open file and return handle
FileRead (1655)	Read from file
FileSeek (1656)	Set file position
FileTruncate (1658)	Truncate file length
FileWrite (1658)	Write to file
FileClose (1648)	Close file handle

## 76.10 PChar related functions

Most PChar functions are the same as their counterparts in the STRINGS unit. The following functions are the same :

1. StrCat (1702) : Concatenates two PChar strings.
2. StrComp (1703) : Compares two PChar strings.
3. StrCopy (1704) : Copies a PChar string.
4. StrECopy (1705) : Copies a PChar string and returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
5. StrEnd (1705) : Returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
6. StrLComp (1706) : Case insensitive compare of 2 PChar strings.
7. StrLCat (1708) : Appends at most L characters from one PChar to another PChar.
8. StrLComp (1709) : Case sensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.
9. StrLCopy (1710) : Copies at most L characters from one PChar to another.
10. StrLen (1710) : Returns the length (exclusive terminating null byte) of a PChar string.
11. StrLComp (1711) : Case insensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.
12. StrLower (1712) : Converts a PChar to all lowercase letters.
13. StrMove (1712) : Moves one PChar to another.
14. StrNew (1713) : Makes a copy of a PChar on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy.
15. StrPos (1715) : Returns the position of one PChar string in another?
16. StrRScan (1715) : returns a pointer to the last occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
17. StrScan (1716) : returns a pointer to the first occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
18. StrUpper (1726) : Converts a PChar to all uppercase letters.

The subsequent functions are different from their counterparts in STRINGS, although the same examples can be used.

## 76.11 Date and time formatting characters

Various date and time formatting routines accept a format string to format the date and or time. The following characters can be used to control the date and time formatting:

**c** Formats date using `shortdateformat` and formats time using `longtimeformat` if the time is not zero.

**f** Same as **c**, but adds the time even if it is zero.

**d** day of month

**dd** day of month (leading zero)

**ddd** day of week (abbreviation)

**dddd** day of week (full)

**dddddd** `shortdateformat`

**ddddddd** `longdateformat`

**m** month or minutes if preceded by **h** or **hh** specifiers.

**mm** month or minutes if preceded by **h** or **hh** specifiers, with leading zero.

**mmm** month (abbreviation)

**mmmm** month (full)

**y** year (2 digits)

**yy** year (two digits)

**yyyy** year (with century)

**h** hour

**hh** hour (leading zero)

**n** minute

**nn** minute (leading zero)

**s** second

**ss** second (leading zero)

**t** `shorttimeformat`

**tt** `longtimeformat`

**am/pm** use 12 hour clock and display am and pm accordingly

**a/p** use 12 hour clock and display a and p accordingly

**/** insert date separator

**:** insert time separator

**"xx"** literal text

**'xx'** literal text

**z** milliseconds

**zzz** milliseconds(leading zero)

**[h ]** hours including the hours of the full days (i.e. can be > 24).

**[hh ]** hours with leading zero, including the hours of the full days (i.e. can be > 24)

**[n ]** minutes including the minutes of the full hours and days

**[nn ]** minutes with leading zero, including the minutes of the full hours and days

**[s ]** seconds including the seconds of the full minutes, hours and days.

**[ss ]** seconds with leading zero, including the seconds of the full minutes, hours and days.

The forms in square brackets are only allowed if the `fdoInterval` (1592) option is included in the `Options` argument of `FormatDateTime`.

The date and time separators are taken from the `DefaultFormatSettings` (1599) record, unless a `TFormatSettings` (1593) record is passed to the `FormatDateTime` (1675) function.

Note that to include any of the above characters literally in the result string, they must be enclosed in double quotes.

See also: `DefaultFormatSettings` (1599), `TFormatSettings` (1593), `FormatDateTime` (1675), `TFormatDateTimeOption` (1592)

## 76.12 Formatting strings

Functions for formatting strings.

Table 76.8:

Name	Description
<code>AdjustLineBreaks</code> (1604)	Convert line breaks to line breaks for system
<code>FormatBuf</code> (1674)	Format a buffer
<code>Format</code> (1668)	Format arguments in string
<code>FmtStr</code> (1667)	Format buffer
<code>QuotedStr</code> (1695)	Quote a string
<code>StrFmt</code> (1706)	Format arguments in a string
<code>StrLFmt</code> (1711)	Format maximum L characters in a string
<code>TrimLeft</code> (1731)	Remove whitespace at the left of a string
<code>TrimRight</code> (1732)	Remove whitespace at the right of a string
<code>Trim</code> (1731)	Remove whitespace at both ends of a string

## 76.13 String functions

Functions for handling strings.

Table 76.9:

Name	Description
<a href="#">AnsiCompareStr (1605)</a>	Compare two strings
<a href="#">AnsiCompareText (1606)</a>	Compare two strings, case insensitive
<a href="#">AnsiExtractQuotedStr (1607)</a>	Removes quotes from string
<a href="#">AnsiLastChar (1608)</a>	Get last character of string
<a href="#">AnsiLowerCase (1608)</a>	Convert string to all-lowercase
<a href="#">AnsiQuotedStr (1609)</a>	Quotes a string
<a href="#">AnsiStrComp (1610)</a>	Compare strings case-sensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrIComp (1611)</a>	Compare strings case-insensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrLComp (1613)</a>	Compare L characters of strings case sensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrLIComp (1613)</a>	Compare L characters of strings case insensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrLastChar (1612)</a>	Get last character of string
<a href="#">AnsiStrLower (1614)</a>	Convert string to all-lowercase
<a href="#">AnsiStrUpper (1616)</a>	Convert string to all-uppercase
<a href="#">AnsiUpperCase (1616)</a>	Convert string to all-uppercase
<a href="#">AppendStr (1617)</a>	Append 2 strings
<a href="#">AssignStr (1618)</a>	Assign value of strings on heap
<a href="#">CompareStr (1624)</a>	Compare two strings case sensitive
<a href="#">CompareText (1625)</a>	Compare two strings case insensitive
<a href="#">DisposeStr (1637)</a>	Remove string from heap
<a href="#">IsValidIdent (1691)</a>	Is string a valid pascal identifier
<a href="#">LastDelimiter (1692)</a>	Last occurrence of character in a string
<a href="#">LeftStr (1692)</a>	Get first N characters of a string
<a href="#">LoadStr (1693)</a>	Load string from resources
<a href="#">LowerCase (1693)</a>	Convert string to all-lowercase
<a href="#">NewStr (1694)</a>	Allocate new string on heap
<a href="#">RightStr (1698)</a>	Get last N characters of a string
<a href="#">StrAlloc (1701)</a>	Allocate memory for string
<a href="#">StrBufSize (1702)</a>	Reserve memory for a string
<a href="#">StrDispose (1704)</a>	Remove string from heap
<a href="#">StrPas (1714)</a>	Convert PChar to pascal string
<a href="#">StrPCopy (1714)</a>	Copy pascal string
<a href="#">StrPLCopy (1715)</a>	Copy N bytes of pascal string
<a href="#">UpperCase (1741)</a>	Convert string to all-uppercase

## 76.14 Constants, types and variables

### 76.14.1 Constants

`ConfigExtension : string = '.cfg'`

`ConfigExtension` is the default extension used by the `GetAppConfigFile (1679)` call. It can be set to any valid extension for the current OS.

`CPUEndian = TEndian.Big`

`CPUEndian` describes whether the current CPU is little or big endian.

`DateDelta = 693594`

Days between 1/1/0001 and 12/31/1899

`DriveDelim = DriveSeparator`

`DriveDelim` refers to the system unit's `DriveSeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`EmptyStr : string = ''`

Empty String Constant

`EmptyWideStr : WideString = ''`

Empty wide string.

`faAnyFile = $000001FF`

Use this attribute in the `FindFirst` (1660) call to find all matching files.

`faArchive = $00000020`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file has the archive bit set. Used in `TSearchRec` (1595) and `FindFirst` (1660)

`faCompressed = $00000800platform`

`faTemporary` can be returned by `FindFirst` (1660) or `FindNext` (1661) to indicate that a returned file is compressed (on file systems that support this).

`faDirectory = $00000010`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is a directory. Used in `TSearchRec` (1595) and `FindFirst` (1660)

`faEncrypted = $00004000platform`

`faEncrypted` can be returned by `FindFirst` (1660) or `FindNext` (1661) to indicate that a returned file is encrypted (on file systems that support this).

`faHidden = $00000002platform`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is read-only. Used in `TSearchRec` (1595) and `FindFirst` (1660)

`faNormal = $00000080`

`faNormal` can be used in `FindFirst` (1660) to indicate that normal files must be included in the result.

`faReadOnly = $00000001`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is read-only. Used in `TSearchRec` (1595) and `FindFirst` (1660)

`faSymLink = $00000400platform`

`faSymLink` means the file (as returned e.g. by `FindFirst (1660)/FindNext (1661)`), is a symlink. It's ignored under Windows.

`faSysFile = $00000004platform`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is a system file. Used in `TSearchRec (1595)` and `FindFirst (1660)`

`faTemporary = $00000100platform`

`faTemporary` can be returned by `FindFirst (1660)` or `FindNext (1661)` to indicate that a returned file is a temporary file.

`faVirtual = $00010000platform`

`faVirtual` can be returned by `FindFirst (1660)` or `FindNext (1661)` to indicate that a returned file is virtual (on file systems that support this).

`faVolumeId = $00000008deprecated; platform`

Attribute of a file, meaning the entry contains the volume ID. Used in `TSearchRec (1595)` and `FindFirst (1660)`

`feInvalidHandle : THandle = THandle(- 1)`

`feInvalidHandle` is the return value of `FileOpen (1654)` in case of an error.

`fmOpenRead = $0000`

`fmOpenRead` is used in the `FileOpen (1654)` call to open a file in read-only mode.

`fmOpenReadWrite = $0002`

`fmOpenReadWrite` is used in the `FileOpen (1654)` call to open a file in read-write mode.

`fmOpenWrite = $0001`

`fmOpenWrite` is used in the `FileOpen (1654)` call to open a file in write-only mode.

`fmShareCompat = $0000`

`fmOpenShareCompat` is used in the `FileOpen (1654)` call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite (1581)`, `fmOpenRead (1581)` or `fmOpenWrite (1581)`, to open a file in a sharing modus that is equivalent to sharing implemented in MS-DOS.

`fmShareDenyNone = $0040`

`fmShareDenyNone` is used in the `FileOpen (1654)` call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite (1581)`, `fmOpenRead (1581)` or `fmOpenWrite (1581)`, to open a file so other processes can read/write the file as well.

```
fmShareDenyRead = $0030
```

`fmOpenShareRead` is used in the `FileOpen` (1654) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1581), `fmOpenRead` (1581) or `fmOpenWrite` (1581), to open a file so other processes cannot read from it.

This constant only works on Windows, because other operating systems do not support this constants.

```
fmShareDenyWrite = $0020
```

`fmOpenShareDenyWrite` is used in the `FileOpen` (1654) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1581), `fmOpenRead` (1581) or `fmOpenWrite` (1581), to open a file so other processes cannot write to it, they can only read.

```
fmShareExclusive = $0010
```

`fmOpenShareExclusive` is used in the `FileOpen` (1654) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1581), `fmOpenRead` (1581) or `fmOpenWrite` (1581), to open a file exclusively.

```
fsFromBeginning = 0
```

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1656) call that a seek operation should be started at the start of the file.

```
fsFromCurrent = 1
```

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1656) call that a seek operation should be started at the current position in the file.

```
fsFromEnd = 2
```

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1656) call that a seek operation should be started at the last position in the file.

```
GUID_NULL : TGuid = '{00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000}'
```

**NULL GUID constant**

```
HexDisplayPrefix : string = '$'
```

`HexDisplayPrefix` is used by the formatting routines to indicate that the number which follows the prefix is in Hexadecimal notation.

```
HoursPerDay = 24
```

**Number of hours in a day.**

```
JulianEpoch = TDateTime(- 2415018.5)
```

**Starting point of the Julian calendar**

```
LeadBytes : Set of Char = []
```

LeadBytes contains the set of bytes that serve as lead byte in a MBCS string.

MaxCurrency : Currency = 922337203685477.5807

**Maximum currency value**

MaxDateTime : TDateTime = 2958465.999999999

**Maximum TDateTime value.**

MAX\_PATH = MaxPathLen

MAX\_PATH is the maximum number of characters that a filename (including path) can contain on the current operating system.

MinCurrency : Currency = - 922337203685477.5808

**Minimum Currency value**

MinDateTime : TDateTime = - 693593.999999999

**Minimum TDateTime value.**

MinsPerDay = HoursPerDay \* MinsPerHour

**Number of minutes per day.**

MinsPerHour = 60

**Number of minutes per hour.**

MonthDays : Array[Boolean] of TDayTable = ((31, 28, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31), (31, 29, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31))

Array with number of days in the months for leap and non-leap years.

MSecsPerDay = SecsPerDay \* MSecsPerSec

**Number of milliseconds per day**

MSecsPerSec = 1000

**Number of milliseconds per second**

NullStr : PString = @ EmptyStr

**Pointer to an empty string**

PathDelim = DirectorySeparator



`PathDelim` refers to the system unit's `DirectorySeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`PathSep = PathSeparator`

`PathSep` refers to the system unit's `PathSeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`pfBCB4Produced = $08000000`

Not used in Free Pascal.

`pfDelphi4Produced = $0C000000`

Not used in Free Pascal.

`pfDesignOnly = $00000002`

Package is a design-time only package

`pfExeModule = $00000000`

Package is an executable

`pfIgnoreDupUnits = $00000008`

Ignore duplicate units in package

`pfLibraryModule = $80000000`

Package is a library

`pfModuleTypeMask = $C0000000`

Mask for module type flags

`pfNeverBuild = $00000001`

Never-build flag was specified when compiling package

`pfPackageModule = $40000000`

Package is a real package (not exe)

`pfProducerMask = $0C000000`

Mask for producer flags

`pfProducerUndefined = $04000000`

Not used in Free Pascal.

`pfRunOnly = $00000004`

Package is a run-time only package

`pfV3Produced = $00000000`

Not used in Free Pascal.

`RTL_SIGBUS = 4`

Bus error signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGDEFAULT = - 1`

Default signal handler (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGFPE = 1`

Floating Point Error signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGILL = 3`

Illegal instruction signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGINT = 0`

INTERRUPT signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGLAST = RTL_SIGQUIT`

Last signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGQUIT = 5`

QUIT signal number (Unix only)

`RTL_SIGSEGV = 2`

Segmentation fault signal number (Unix only)

`SecsPerDay = MinsPerDay * SecsPerMin`

Number of seconds per day

`SecsPerHour = SecsPerMin * MinsPerHour`

`SecsPerMin = 60`

Number of seconds per minute

```
SwitchChars = ['/ ', '-']
```

The characters in this set will be used by the FindCmdLineSwitch (1659) function to determine whether a command-line argument is a switch (an option) or a value. If the first character of an argument is in SwitchChars, it will be considered an option or switch.

```
SysConfigDir : string = ''
```

SysConfigDir is the default system configuration directory. It is set at application startup by the sysutils initialization routines.

This directory may be returned by the GetAppConfigDir (1678) call on some systems.

```
ufImplicitUnit = $10
```

Unit was implicitly imported into package (did not appear in package contains list)

```
ufMainUnit = $01
```

Unit is the main unit of the package

```
ufOrgWeakUnit = $08
```

Unit is the original weak packaged unit

```
ufPackageUnit = $02
```

Unit is a packaged unit (appeared in package contains list)

```
ufWeakPackageUnit = ufPackageUnit or ufWeakUnit
```

Weak (original or not) packaged unit

```
ufWeakUnit = $04
```

Unit is a weak packaged unit

```
UnixDateDelta = Trunc(UnixEpoch)
```

Number of days between 1.1.1900 and 1.1.1970

```
UnixEpoch = JulianEpoch + TDateTime(2440587.5)
```

Starting point of the unix calendar (1/1/1970)

## 76.14.2 Types

```
EHeapException = EHeapMemoryError
```

EHeapMemoryError is raised when an error occurs in the heap management routines.

ExceptClass = Class of Exception

ExceptClass is a [Exception \(1758\)](#) class reference.

```
Int128Rec = packed record
case Integer of
0: (
public
  Hi : QWord
  ;
  Lo : QWord;
);
1: (
public
  DWords : Array[0..3] of DWord;
)
  ;
2: (
public
  Words : Array[0..7] of Word;
);
3: (
public
  Bytes
    : Array[0..15] of Byte;
);
end
```

Int128Rec is a record defining a 128-bit integer. It is made up of 2 QWords or 4 DWords or 8 words or 16 bytes.

```
Int64Rec = packed record
case Integer of
0: (
public
  Hi : Cardinal
  ;
  Lo : Cardinal;
);
1: (
public
  Words : Array[0..3] of Word;
);
2: (
public
  Bytes : Array[0..7] of Byte;
);
end
```

Int64Rec can be used to extract the parts of a Int64: the high and low cardinal, or a zero-based array of 4 words, or a zero based array of 8 bytes. Note that the meaning of the High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

LongRec = packed record

```

case Integer of
0: (
public
  Hi : Word;
  Lo : Word;
);
1: (
public
  Bytes : Array[0..3] of Byte;
);
end

```

LongRec can be used to extract the parts of an long Integer: the high and low word, or the 4 separate bytes as a zero-based array of bytes. Note that the meaning (or ordering) of High and Low parts are different on various CPUs, and may differ from what is shown in the declaration: the ordering depends on the endianness of the CPU.

```

OWordRec = packed record
case Integer of
0: (
public
  Hi : QWord
  ;
  Lo : QWord;
);
1: (
public
  DWords : Array[0..3] of DWord;
)
;
2: (
public
  Words : Array[0..7] of Word;
);
3: (
public
  Bytes
    : Array[0..15] of Byte;
);
end

```

OWordRec is a record defining a 128-bit integer. It is made up of 2 QWords or 4 DWords or 8 words or 16 bytes.

```
PByteArray = ^TByteArray
```

Generic pointer to TByteArray ([1589](#)). Use to access memory regions as a byte array.

```
PDayTable = ^TDayTable
```

Pointer to TDayTable type.

PString = ObjPas.PString

Pointer to a anistring

PSysCharSet = ^TSysCharSet

Pointer to TSysCharSet (1596) type.

PWordarray = ^TWordArray

Generic pointer to TWordArray (1597). Use to access memory regions as a word array.

Array<T> = Array of T

TArray is a generic array. It can be used to define dynamic arrays in generic functions or classes.

This definition is provided for Delphi compatibility only, it is not needed in Free Pascal, where 2 array types are equal if their element types are equal.

TBeepHandler = procedure

TBeepHandler is the prototype used by the OnBeep (1600) handler. This in turn is called by the Beep (1619) call to actually implement the beep functionality. The call takes no arguments.

Array = Array[0..32767] of Byte

TByteArray is a generic array definition, mostly for use as a base type of the PByteArray (1588) type.

TByteBitIndex = 0..7

Array = Array of Byte

TBytes defines a dynamic array of bytes. This can be used to typecast e.g. strings to manipulate them byte for byte.

TCardinalBitIndex = 0..31

Array = Array of Char

TCharArray is a dynamic array of characters.

TCompareOption = system.TCompareOption

TCompareOption is an alias for System.TCompareOption (1360).

TCompareOptions = system.TCompareOptions

TCompareOptions is an alias for System.TCompareOptions (1361).

`TCreateGUIDFunc = function(out GUID: TGUID) : Integer`

`TCreateGUIDFunc` is the prototype for a GUID creation handler. On return, the `GUID` argument should contain a new (unique) GUID. The return value of the function should be zero for success, nonzero for failure.

`Array = Array[1..12] of Word`

Array of day names.

`TEndian = ObjPas.TEndian`

`TEndian` indicates whether the platform is little endian (LSB first), or big endian (MSB first).

`TEventType = (etCustom, etInfo, etWarning, etError, etDebug)`

Table 76.10: Enumeration values for type `TEventType`

Value	Explanation
<code>etCustom</code>	Custom log event, with application-specific meaning
<code>etDebug</code>	Debug message.
<code>etError</code>	Error condition message
<code>etInfo</code>	General information event message
<code>etWarning</code>	Warning message

`TEventType` is a type to be used by logging mechanisms (in particular, the `TCustomApplication` and `TEventLog` classes. It can be used to filter events, and write only certain types of event to the event log.

`TEventTypes = Set of TEventType`

`TEventTypes` is a set type of `TEventType`, defined for convenience. It is used in the custom application classes for logging purposes.

`TExecuteFlags= Set of (ExecInheritsHandles)`

Table 76.11: Enumeration values for type

Value	Explanation
<code>ExecInheritsHandles</code>	The new process inherits all (file) handles owned by the current process

`TExecuteFlags` is a set of flags to influence the behaviour of the `ExecuteProcess` ([1642](#)) call.

`TFileName = string`

`TFileName` is used in the `TSearchRec` ([1595](#)) definition.

```
TFilenameCaseMatch = (mkNone, mkExactMatch, mkSingleMatch, mkAmbiguous
)
```

Table 76.12: Enumeration values for type TFilenameCaseMatch

Value	Explanation
mkAmbiguous	More than one file will match the filename in a case-insensitive way
mkExactMatch	The filename can be used to refer to a file on the system (findFirst will find it).
mkNone	No file was found
mkSingleMatch	Exactly one match was found, but case didn't match.

TFilenameCaseMatch describes how ExpandFileNameCase (1643) found the file.

```
TFilenameCaseMatch = (mkNone, mkExactMatch, mkSingleMatch, mkAmbiguous
)
```

Table 76.13: Enumeration values for type TFilenameCaseMatch

Value	Explanation
mkAmbiguous	More than one file will match the filename in a case-insensitive way
mkExactMatch	The filename can be used to refer to a file on the system (findFirst will find it).
mkNone	No file was found
mkSingleMatch	Exactly one match was found, but case didn't match.

TFilenameCaseMatch describes how ExpandFileNameCase (1643) found the file.

```
TFileRec = FileRec
```

Alias for FileRec (1571) for Delphi compatibility.

```
TFileSearchOption = (sfoImplicitCurrentDir, sfoStripQuotes)
```

Table 76.14: Enumeration values for type TFileSearchOption

Value	Explanation
sfoImplicitCurrentDir	Always search the current directory first, even if it is not specified.
sfoStripQuotes	Strip quotes from the components in the search path.

TFileSearchOption enumerates the options that can be used in the FileSearch call to control the behaviour of the search mechanism

```
TFileSearchOptions = Set of TFileSearchOption
```

TFileSearchOptions is a set of TFileSearchOption (1591) values, used in the FileSearch (1655) call when searching for files.



```
TFloatFormat = (ffGeneral, ffExponent, ffFixed, ffNumber, ffCurrency)
```

Table 76.15: Enumeration values for type TFloatFormat

Value	Explanation
ffCurrency	Monetary format.
ffExponent	Scientific format.
ffFixed	Fixed point format.
ffGeneral	General number format.
ffNumber	Fixed point format with thousand separator

TFloatFormat is used to determine how a float value should be formatted in the FloatToText (1665) function.

```
TFloatRec = record
public
  Exponent : Integer;
  Negative : Boolean
;
  Digits : Array[0..18] of Char;
end
```

TFloatRec is used to describe a floating point value by the FloatToDecimal (1662) function.

```
TFloatValue = (fvExtended, fvCurrency, fvSingle, fvReal, fvDouble, fvComp
)
```

Table 76.16: Enumeration values for type TFloatValue

Value	Explanation
fvComp	Comp value
fvCurrency	Currency value
fvDouble	Double value
fvExtended	Extended value
fvReal	Real value
fvSingle	Single value

TFloatValue determines which kind of value should be returned in the (untyped) buffer used by the TextToFloat (1728) function.

```
TFormatDateTimeOption = (fdoInterval)
```

Table 76.17: Enumeration values for type TFormatDateTimeOption

Value	Explanation
fdoInterval	Format the time as an interval, 24+hours are presented as such

TFormatDateTimeOption enumerates possible options to the FormatDateTime (1675) routine.

TFormatDateTimeOptions = Set of TFormatDateTimeOption

TFormatDateTimeOptions is a set of TFormatDateTimeOptions (1593), and is used in the last argument of FormatDateTime (1675)

```
TFormatSettings = record
public
  CurrencyFormat : Byte;
  NegCurrFormat
    : Byte;
  ThousandSeparator : Char;
  DecimalSeparator : Char;
  CurrencyDecimals : Byte;
  DateSeparator : Char;
  TimeSeparator
    : Char;
  ListSeparator : Char;
  CurrencyString : string;
  ShortDateFormat
    : string;
  LongDateFormat : string;
  TimeAMString : string;
  TimePMString
    : string;
  ShortTimeFormat : string;
  LongTimeFormat : string;
  ShortMonthNames : TMonthNameArray;
  LongMonthNames : TMonthNameArray
    ;
  ShortDayNames : TWeekNameArray;
  LongDayNames : TWeekNameArray
    ;
  TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow : Word;
end
```

TFormatSettings is a record that contains a copy of all variables which determine formatting in the various string formatting routines. It is used to pass local copies of these values to the various formatting routines in a thread-safe way.

TGetAppNameEvent = function : string

This callback type is used by the OnGetApplicationName (1601) to return an alternative application name.

TGetTempDirEvent = function(Global: Boolean) : string

Function prototype for OnGetTempDir (1601) handler.

```
TGetTempFileEvent = function(const Dir: string; const Prefix: string
)
    : string
```

Function prototype for OnGetTempFile (1601) handler.

```
TGetVendorNameEvent = function : string
```

TGetVendorNameEvent is the function prototype for the OnGetVendorName (1601) callback, used by the VendorName (1742) function.

```
THandle = System.THandle
```

THandle refers to the definition of THandle in the system unit, and is provided for backward compatibility only.

```
TInt64BitIndex = 0..63
```

```
TIntegerBitIndex = 0..31
```

```
TIntegerSet = Set of
```

TIntegerSet is a generic integer subrange set definition whose size fits in a single integer.

```
TLocaleOptions = (loInvariantLocale, loUserLocale)
```

Table 76.18: Enumeration values for type TLocaleOptions

Value	Explanation
loInvariantLocale	
loUserLocale	

```
TLongIntBitIndex = TIntegerBitIndex
```

```
TMbcsByteType = (mbSingleByte, mbLeadByte, mbTrailByte)
```

Table 76.19: Enumeration values for type TMbcsByteType

Value	Explanation
mbLeadByte	Uses lead-byte
mbSingleByte	Single bytes
mbTrailByte	Uses trailing byte

Type of multi-byte character set.

```
Array = Array[1..12] of string
```

TMonthNameArray is used in the month long and short name arrays.

```
TProcedure = procedure
```

TProcedure is a general definition of a procedural callback.

TQwordBitIndex = 0..63

TReplaceFlags= Set of (rfReplaceAll, rfIgnoreCase)

Table 76.20: Enumeration values for type

Value	Explanation
rfIgnoreCase	Search case insensitive.
rfReplaceAll	Replace all occurrences of the search string with the replacement string.

TReplaceFlags determines the behaviour of the StringReplace (1707) function.

TSearchRec = TRawbyteSearchRec

TSearchRec is a search handle description record. It is initialized by a call to FindFirst (1660) and can be used to do subsequent calls to FindNext (1661). It contains the result of these function calls. It must be used to close the search sequence with a call to FindClose (1659).

**Remark** Not all fields of this record should be used. Some of the fields are for internal use only. (PathOnly for example, is only provided for Kylix compatibility)

TShortIntBitIndex = 0..7

TSignalState = (ssNotHooked, ssHooked, ssOverridden)

Table 76.21: Enumeration values for type TSignalState

Value	Explanation
ssHooked	A signal handler is set by the RTL code for the signal.
ssNotHooked	No signal handler is set for the signal.
ssOverridden	A signal handler was set for the signal by third-party code.

TSignalState indicates the state of a signal handler in a unix system for a particular signal.

TSmallIntBitIndex = 0..15

Array = Array of string

TStringArray is a dynamic array of strings.

TStringBuilder = TANSISTRINGBUILDER

TStringSplitOptions = (None, ExcludeEmpty)

Table 76.22: Enumeration values for type TStringSplitOptions

Value	Explanation
ExcludeEmpty	Do not include empty strings in the result.
None	No options specified. The default

TStringSplitOptions describes the possible options for TStringHelper.Split ([1853](#)).

TSymLinkRec = TRawbyteSymLinkRec

TSysCharSet = Set of AnsiChar

Generic set of characters type.

```
TSysLocale = record
public
  DefaultLCID : Integer;
  PriLangID :
    Integer;
  SubLangID : Integer;
case Byte of
1: (
public
  FarEast
    : Boolean;
  MiddleEast : Boolean;
);
2: (
public
  MBCS : Boolean
    ;
  RightToLeft : Boolean;
);
end
```

TSysLocale describes the current locale. If Fareast or MBCS is True, then the current locale uses a Multi-Byte Character Set. If MiddleEast or RightToLeft is True then words and sentences are read from right to left.

```
TSystemTime = record
public
  Year : Word;
  Month : Word;
  Day
    : Word;
  DayOfWeek : Word;
  Hour : Word;
  Minute : Word;
  Second
    : Word;
  MilliSecond : Word;
end
```

The System time structure contains the date/time in a human-understandable format.

```
TTerminateProc = function : Boolean
```

TTerminateProc is the procedural type which should be used when adding exit procedures.

```
TTextRec = TextRec
```

Alias for TextRec (1571) for Delphi compatibility.

```
TTimeStamp = record
public
    Time : LongInt;
    Date : LongInt;
end
```

TTimeStamp contains a timestamp, with the date and time parts specified as separate TDateTime values.

```
Array = Array of UnicodeChar
```

TUnicodeCharArray is a definition of an array of UnicodeChar elements.

```
TUseBoolStrs = (False, True)
```

Table 76.23: Enumeration values for type TUseBoolStrs

Value	Explanation
False	Numerical values should be used (0 and 1)
True	String representations should be used.

TUseBoolStrs is an enumerated type which indicates whether bool strs must be used when converting boolean to strings.

```
Array = Array[1..7] of string
```

TWeekNameArray is used in the day long and short name arrays.

```
Array = Array[0..16383] of Word
```

TWordArray is a generic array definition, mostly for use as a base type of the PWordArray (1589) type.

```
TWordBitIndex = 0..15
```

```
WordRec = packed record
public
    Hi : Byte;
    Lo : Byte;
end
```

LongRec can be used to extract the parts of a word: the high and low byte. Note that the meaning of the High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

### 76.14.3 Variables

`CurrencyDecimals` : `Bytedeprecated`

`CurrencyDecimals` is the number of decimals to be used when formatting a currency. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.CurrencyFormat` (1599) instead.

`CurrencyFormat` : `Bytedeprecated`

`CurrencyFormat` is the default format string for positive currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.CurrencyFormat` (1599) instead.

`CurrencyString` : `stringdeprecated`

`CurrencyString` is the currency symbol for the current locale. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.CurrencyString` (1599) instead.

`DateSeparator` : `Chardeprecated`

`DateSeparator` is the character used by various date/time conversion routines as the character that separates the day from the month and the month from the year in a date notation. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.DateSeparator` (1599) instead.

`DecimalSeparator` : `Chardeprecated`

`DecimalSeparator` is used to display the decimal symbol in floating point numbers or currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.DecimalSeparator` (1599) instead.

```
DefaultFormatSettings : TFormatSettings = (CurrencyFormat: 1; NegCurrFormat
    : 5; ThousandSeparator: ','; DecimalSeparator: '.'; CurrencyDecimals
    : 2; DateSeparator: '-'; TimeSeparator: ':'; ListSeparator: ','; CurrencyString
    : '$'; ShortDateFormat: 'd/m/y'; LongDateFormat: 'dd' ' ' 'mmmm' ' ' 'yyyy'
    ; TimeAMString: 'AM'; TimePMString: 'PM'; ShortTimeFormat: 'hh:nn'
    ; LongTimeFormat: 'hh:nn:ss'; ShortMonthNames: ('Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar'
    , 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun', 'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec');
    LongMonthNames: ('January', 'February', 'March', 'April', 'May',
    'June', 'July', 'August', 'September', 'October', 'November', 'December'
    ); ShortDayNames: ('Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat'
    ); LongDayNames: ('Sunday', 'Monday', 'Tuesday', 'Wednesday', 'Thursday'
    , 'Friday', 'Saturday'); TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow: 50)
```

`DefaultFormatSettings` contains the default settings for all type of formatting constants. If no thread-specific values are specified when a formatting function is called, this record is used as a default.

All other formatting constants refer to the fields of this variable using absolute addressing.

`FalseBoolStrs` : Array of string

`FalseBoolStrs` contains the strings that will result in a `False` return value by `StrToBool` (1716).

`FormatSettings` : `TFormatSettings`

`FormatSettings` is provided for Delphi compatibility, and refers to the `DefaultFormatSettings` (1599) variable.

`ListSeparator` : `Char` deprecated

`ListSeparator` is the character used in lists of values. It is locale dependent.

`LongDateFormat` : string deprecated

`LongDateFormat` contains a template to format a date in a long format. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.LongDateFormat` (1599) instead.

`LongDayNames` : `TWeekNameArray` deprecated

`LongDayNames` is an array with the full names of days. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

The array is indexed by values as returned by the `DayOfWeek` function.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.LongDayNames` (1599) instead.

`LongMonthNames` : `TMonthNameArray` deprecated

`LongMonthNames` is an array with the full names of months. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.LongMonthNames` (1599) instead.

`LongTimeFormat` : string deprecated

`LongTimeFormat` contains a template to format a time in full notation. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.LongTimeFormat` (1599) instead.

`NegCurrFormat` : `Byte` deprecated



`CurrencyFormat` is the default format string for negative currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default:

- 0** Left parenthesis, currency symbol, amount, right parenthesis. Ex: (\$1.2)
- 1** Negative sign, currency symbol, amount. Ex: -\$1.2
- 2** Monetary symbol, negative sign, amount. Ex: \$-1.2
- 3** Monetary symbol, amount, negative sign. Ex: \$1.2-
- 4** Left parenthesis, amount, currency symbol, right parenthesis. Ex: (1.2\$)
- 5** Negative sign, amount, currency symbol. Ex: -1.2\$
- 5 6** Amount, negative sign, currency symbol. Ex: 1.2-\$
- 5 7** Amount, currency symbol, negative sign. Ex: 1.2\$-
- 5 8** Negative sign, amount, space, currency symbol (as #5, adding a space before the currency symbol). Ex: -1.2 \$
- 9** Negative sign, currency symbol, space, amount (as #1, adding a space after the currency symbol). Ex: -\$ 1.2
- 10** Amount, space, currency symbol, negative sign (as #7, adding a space before the currency symbol). Ex: 1.2 \$-
- 11** Monetary symbol, space, amount, negative sign (as #3, adding a space after the currency symbol). Ex: \$ 1.2-
- 12** Monetary symbol, space, negative sign, amount (as #2, adding a space after the currency symbol). Ex: \$ -1.2
- 13** Amount, negative sign, space, currency symbol (as #6, adding a space before the currency symbol). Ex: 1.2- \$
- 14** Left parenthesis, currency symbol, space, amount, right parenthesis (as #0, adding a space after the currency symbol). Ex: (\$ 1.2)
- 15** Left parenthesis, amount, space, currency symbol, right parenthesis (as ##4, adding a space before the currency symbol). Ex: (1.2 \$)

`OnBeep` : `TBeepHandler` = `Nil`

`OnBeep` is called whenever `Beep` is called. `Beep` contains no implementation to actually produce a beep, since there is no way to implement beep in a meaningful way for all possible implementations.

`OnCreateGUID` : `TCreateGUIDFunc` = `Nil`

`OnCreateGUID` can be set to point to a custom routine that creates GUID values. If set, the `CreateGUID` (1627) function will use it to obtain a GUID value. If it is not set, a default implementation using random values will be used to create the unique value. The function should return a valid GUID in the GUID parameter, and should return zero in case of success.

`OnGetApplicationName` : `TGetAppNameEvent`

By default, the configuration file routines `GetAppConfigDir` (1678) and `GetAppConfigFile` (1679) use a default application name to construct a directory or filename. This callback can be used to provide an alternative application name.

Since the result of this callback will be used to construct a filename, care should be taken that the returned name does not contain directory separator characters or characters that cannot appear in a filename.

`OnGetTempDir` : `TGetTempDirEvent`

`OnGetTempDir` can be used to provide custom behaviour for the `GetTempDir` (1683) function. Note that the returned name should have a trailing directory delimiter character.

`OnGetTempFile` : `TGetTempFileEvent`

`OnGetTempDir` can be used to provide custom behaviour for the `GetTempFileName` (1684) function. Note that the values for `Prefix` and `Dir` should be observed.

`OnGetVendorName` : `TGetVendorNameEvent`

`OnGetVendorName` must be set in order for `VendorName` (1742) to return a value. It will then be used in `GetAppConfigDir` (1678) and `GetAppConfigFile` (1679) to determine the configuration directory. Set it to a callback that returns the actual vendor name for the application.

`OnShowException` : `procedure(Msg: ShortString)`

`OnShowException` is the callback that `ShowException` (1700) uses to display a message in a GUI application. For GUI applications, this variable should always be set. Note that no memory may be available when this callback is called, so the callback should already have all resources it needs, when the callback is set.

`ShortDateFormat` : `stringdeprecated`

`ShortDateFormat` contains a template to format a date in a short format. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ShortDateFormat` (1599) instead.

`ShortDayNames` : `TWeekNameArraydeprecated`

`ShortDayNames` is an array with the abbreviated names of days. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

The array is indexed by values as returned by the `DayOfWeek` function.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ShortDayNames` (1599) instead.

`ShortMonthNames` : `TMonthNameArraydeprecated`

`ShortMonthNames` is an array with the abbreviated names of months. It is used by the date formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ShortMonthNames` (1599) instead.

`ShortTimeFormat` : `stringdeprecated`

`ShortTimeFormat` contains a template to format a time in a short notation. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ShortTimeFormat` ([1599](#)) instead.

`SysLocale` : `TSysLocale`

`SysLocale` is initialized by the initialization code of the `SysUtils` unit. For an explanation of the fields, see `TSysLocale` ([1596](#))

`ThousandSeparator` : `Chardeprecated`

`ThousandSeparator` is used to separate groups of thousands in floating point numbers or currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.ThousandSeparator` ([1599](#)) instead.

`TimeAMString` : `stringdeprecated`

`TimeAMString` is used to display the AM symbol in the time formatting routines. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.TimeAMString` ([1599](#)) instead.

`TimePMString` : `stringdeprecated`

`TimePMString` is used to display the PM symbol in the time formatting routines. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

This constant is deprecated. You should use `DefaultFormatSettings.TimePMString` ([1599](#)) instead.

`TimeSeparator` : `Chardeprecated`

`TimeSeparator` is used by the time formatting routines to separate the hours from the minutes and the minutes from the seconds. It is used by the time formatting routines. The initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit initialize this string with a value conforming to the regional preferences of the user or system regional default.

`TrueBoolStrs` : `Array of string`

`TrueBoolStrs` contains the strings that will result in a `True` return value by `StrToBool` ([1716](#)).

`TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow` : `Word`

Window to determine what century 2 digit years are in.

## 76.15 Procedures and functions

### 76.15.1 AbandonSignalHandler

Synopsis: Abandon the signal handler

Declaration: `procedure AbandonSignalHandler(RtlSigNum: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AbandonSignalHandler` tells the system routines that they should not re-install the signal handler for signal `RtlSigNum` under any circumstances. Normally, signal handlers are re-set when they are called. If `AbandonSignalHandler` has been called for a signal that is handled by the system code, the signal will not be re-set again.

### 76.15.2 Abort

Synopsis: Abort program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Abort`

Visibility: default

Description: `Abort` raises an `EAbort` (1749) exception.

See also: `EAbort` (1749)

### 76.15.3 AddDisk

Synopsis: Add a disk to the list of known disks (Unix only)

Declaration: `function AddDisk(const path: string) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: On Unix-like platforms both the `DiskFree` (1636) and `DiskSize` (1636) functions need a file on the specified drive, since is required for the `statfs` system call.

These filenames are set in `drivestr[0..26]`, and the first 4 have been preset to :

**Disk 0** ' . ' default drive - hence current directory is used.

**Disk 1** ' /fd0/ . ' floppy drive 1.

**Disk 2** ' /fd1/ . ' floppy drive 2.

**Disk 3** ' / ' C: equivalent of DOS is the root partition.

Drives 4..26 can be set by your own applications with the `AddDisk` call.

The `AddDisk` call adds `Path` to the names of drive files, and returns the number of the disk that corresponds to this drive. If you add more than 21 drives, the count is wrapped to 4.

Errors: None.

See also: `DiskFree` (1636), `DiskSize` (1636)

### 76.15.4 AddTerminateProc

Synopsis: Add a procedure to the exit chain.

Declaration: `procedure AddTerminateProc(TermProc: TTerminateProc)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddTerminateProc` adds `TermProc` to the list of exit procedures. When the program exits, the list of exit procedures is run over, and all procedures are called one by one, in the reverse order that they were added to the exit chain.

Errors: If no memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TTerminateProc` ([1597](#)), `CallTerminateProcs` ([1621](#))

### 76.15.5 AdjustLineBreaks

Synopsis: Convert possible line-endings to the currently valid line ending.

Declaration: `function AdjustLineBreaks(const S: string) : string`  
`function AdjustLineBreaks(const S: string; Style: TTextLineBreakStyle)`  
`: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AdjustLineBreaks` will change all occurrences of `#13` and `#10` characters with the correct line-ending characters for the current platform. This is `#13#10` on Windows and Dos. On Unix-like platforms, this is `#10` and for Mac OS X it is `#13`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareStr` ([1605](#)), `AnsiCompareText` ([1606](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** `Example48;`

*{ This program demonstrates the AdjustLineBreaks function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Const**

`S = 'This is a string'#13'with embedded'#10'linefeed and'+`  
`#13'CR characters';`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (AdjustLineBreaks(S));`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.6 AnsiCompareFileName

Synopsis: Compare 2 filenames.

Declaration: `function AnsiCompareFileName(const S1: string; const S2: string)`  
`: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiCompareFileName` compares 2 filenames `S1` and `S2`, and returns

< 0 if `S1`<`S2`.  
 = 0 if `S1`=`S2`.  
 > 0 if `S1`>`S2`.

The function actually checks `FileNameCaseSensitive` and returns the result of `AnsiCompareStr` (1605) or `AnsiCompareText` (1606) depending on whether `FileNameCaseSensitive` is `True` or `False`

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiCompareStr` (1605), `AnsiCompareText` (1606), `AnsiLowerCaseFileName` (1609)

### 76.15.7 AnsiCompareStr

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 ansistrings, case sensitive, ignoring accents characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiCompareStr(const S1: string; const S2: string) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiCompareStr` compares two strings and returns the following result:

< 0 if `S1`<`S2`.  
 0 if `S1`=`S2`.  
 > 0 if `S1`>`S2`.

The comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `AnsiCompareText` (1606), the comparison is case sensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AdjustLineBreaks` (1604), `AnsiCompareText` (1606)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** Example49;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareStr function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=**AnsiCompareStr**(S1,S2);  
  **Write** ( ' ',S1, ' is ' );  
  **If** R<0 **then**  
    **write** ( 'less than ' )  
  **else If** R=0 **then**  
    **Write** ( 'equal to ' )

---

```

    else
        Write ( 'larger than ');
    WriteLn ( '', S2, '' );
end;

Begin
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'one string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One tall string ');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.8 AnsiCompareText

Synopsis: Compare 2 ansistrings, case insensitive, ignoring accents characters.

Declaration: `function AnsiCompareText(const S1: string; const S2: string) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiCompareText` compares two strings and returns the following result:

```

<0if S1<S2.
0if S1=S2.
>0if S1>S2.

```

the comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `AnsiCompareStr` (1605), the comparison is case insensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AdjustLineBreaks` (1604), `AnsiCompareText` (1606)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex50.pp`

---

**Program** Example49;

```

{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareText function }
{$H+}

```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

```

begin
    R:=AnsiCompareText(S1,S2);
    Write ( '', S1, ' is ');
    If R<0 then
        write ( 'less than ')
    else If R=0 then
        Write ( 'equal to ')
    else

```

---

```

    Write ( 'larger than ');
    Writeln ( '""', S2, '""');
end;

Begin
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'one string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One string ');
    Testit( 'One string ', 'One tall string ');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.9 AnsiDequotedStr

Synopsis: Extract string without quotes

Declaration: `function AnsiDequotedStr(const S: string; AQuote: Char) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiDequotedStr` is, similar to `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1607), a method to extract a string that was quoted using `AnsiQuotedStr` (1609). The string `S` must start and end with the quote character `AQuote` (they will be removed from the result) and all double occurrences of the quote character `AQuote` will be reduced to a single quote character.

Errors: If the string does not start and end with the quote character or has length less than 2, the original string is returned.

See also: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1607), `AnsiQuotedStr` (1609)

### 76.15.10 AnsiExtractQuotedStr

Synopsis: Removes the first quoted string from a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiExtractQuotedStr(var Src: PChar; Quote: Char) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` returns the first quoted string in `Src`, and deletes the result from `Src`. The resulting string has with `Quote` characters removed from the beginning and end of the string (if they are present), and double `Quote` characters replaced by a single `Quote` characters. As such, it reverses the action of `AnsiQuotedStr` (1609).

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiQuotedStr` (1609)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex51.pp`

---

```

Program Example51;
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiQuotedStr function }
Uses sysutils;

Var
    S : AnsiString;
    P : PChar;

Begin

```



---

```

S:= 'He said "Hello" and walked on';
P:= Pchar(S);
S:= AnsiQuotedStr(P, '"');
Writeln (S);
P:= Pchar(S);
Writeln (AnsiExtractQuotedStr(P, '"'));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.11 AnsiLastChar

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to the last character of a string.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiLastChar(const S: string) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** This function returns a pointer to the last character of S.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets. If none is installed, this function is the same as `@S[Length[S]]`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiStrLastChar` ([1612](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex52.pp`

---

**Program** Example52;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLastChar function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;  
L : Longint;

**Begin**

```

S:= 'This is an ansistring.';
Writeln ('Last character of S is : ',AnsiLastChar(S));
L:= Longint(AnsiLastChar(S))-Longint(@S[1])+1;
Writeln ('Length of S is : ',L);

```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.12 AnsiLowerCase

**Synopsis:** Return a lowercase version of a string.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiLowerCase(const s: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiLowerCase` converts the string S to lowercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiUpperCase \(1616\)](#), [AnsiStrLower \(1614\)](#), [AnsiStrUpper \(1616\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex53.pp

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLowerCase function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**  
  WriteLn (S, ' → ', AnsiLowerCase(S))  
**end**;

**Begin**  
  Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');  
  Testit('Some mixed STring');  
  Testit('a lowercase string');  
**End**.

---

### 76.15.13 AnsiLowerCaseFileName

Synopsis: Convert filename to lowercase.

**Declaration:** function AnsiLowerCaseFileName(const s: string) : string

Visibility: default

**Description:** AnsiLowerCaseFileName simply returns the result of

`AnsiLowerCase(S);`

See also: [AnsiLowerCase \(1608\)](#), [AnsiCompareFileName \(1604\)](#), [AnsiUpperCaseFileName \(1617\)](#)

### 76.15.14 AnsiPos

Synopsis: Return Position of one ansistring in another.

**Declaration:** function AnsiPos(const substr: string; const s: string) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** AnsiPos does the same as the standard Pos function.

See also: [AnsiStrPos \(1615\)](#), [AnsiStrScan \(1615\)](#), [AnsiStrRScan \(1615\)](#)

### 76.15.15 AnsiQuotedStr

Synopsis: Return a quoted version of a string.

**Declaration:** function AnsiQuotedStr(const S: string; Quote: Char) : string

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiQuotedString` quotes the string `S` and returns the result. This means that it puts the `Quote` character at both the beginning and end of the string and replaces any occurrence of `Quote` in `S` with 2 `Quote` characters. The action of `AnsiQuotedString` can be reversed by `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1607).

For an example, see `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1607)

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1607)

### 76.15.16 `AnsiSameStr`

**Synopsis:** Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case sensitive)

**Declaration:** `function AnsiSameStr(const s1: string; const s2: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SameText` calls `AnsiCompareStr` (1605) with `S1` and `S2` as parameters and returns `True` if the result of that call is zero, or `False` otherwise.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareStr` (1605), `SameText` (1699), `AnsiSameText` (1610)

### 76.15.17 `AnsiSameText`

**Synopsis:** Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case insensitive)

**Declaration:** `function AnsiSameText(const s1: string; const s2: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SameText` calls `AnsiCompareText` (1606) with `S1` and `S2` as parameters and returns `True` if the result of that call is zero, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` (1606), `SameText` (1699), `AnsiSameStr` (1610)

### 76.15.18 `AnsiStrComp`

**Synopsis:** Compare two null-terminated strings. Case sensitive.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrComp(S1: PChar; S2: PChar) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiStrComp` compares 2 `PChar` strings, and returns the following result:

```
<0 if S1<S2.
0 if S1=S2.
>0 if S1>S2.
```

The comparison of the two strings is case-sensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareText \(1606\)](#), [AnsiCompareStr \(1605\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex54.pp

---

**Program** Example54;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:= AnsiStrComp(S1,S2);

**Write** ( '',S1,' is ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than '

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to '

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ');

**WriteLn** ( '',S2,' ');

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string');

  Testit('One string','one string');

  Testit('One string','One string');

  Testit('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.19 AnsiStrIComp

Synopsis: Compare two null-terminated strings. Case insensitive.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrIComp(S1: PChar; S2: PChar) : Integer

Visibility: default

**Description:** AnsiStrIComp compares 2 PChar strings, and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0if S1>S2.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareText \(1606\)](#), [AnsiCompareStr \(1605\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex55.pp

---

**Program** Example55;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrlComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:= AnsiStrlComp (S1,S2);

**Write** ( '',S1,' is ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ');

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ');

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ');

**WriteLn** ( '',S2,' ');

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string');

  Testit('One string','one string');

  Testit('One string','One string');

  Testit('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.20 AnsiStrLastChar

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to the last character of a string.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrLastChar(Str: PChar) : PChar

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Return a pointer to the last character of the null-terminated string.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets. If none is installed, this function is the same as @S[Length[S]].

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareText \(1606\)](#), [AnsiCompareStr \(1605\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex56.pp

---

**Program** Example56;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLComp function }*

---

```

Uses sysutils;

Procedure TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar; L : longint);

Var R : Longint;

begin
  R:=AnsiStrLComp(S1,S2,L);
  Write ( 'First ',L,' characters of "',S1,'" are ');
  If R<0 then
    write ( 'less than ' )
  else If R=0 then
    Write ( 'equal to ' )
  else
    Write ( 'larger than ' );
  WriteLn ( 'those of "',S2,'" ');
end;

Begin
  Testit( 'One string ', 'One smaller string ',255);
  Testit( 'One string ', 'One String ',4);
  Testit( 'One string ', '1 string ',0);
  Testit( 'One string ', 'One string. ',9);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.21 AnsiStrLComp

**Synopsis:** Compare a limited number of characters of 2 strings

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrLComp(S1: PChar; S2: PChar; MaxLen: SizeUInt) : Integer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** AnsiStrLComp functions the same as AnsiStrComp (1610), but compares at most MaxLen characters. If the first MaxLen characters in both strings are the same, then zero is returned.

Note that this function processes embedded null characters, treating them as a normal character.

**Errors:** None.

See also: AnsiStrComp (1610), AnsiStrIComp (1611), AnsiStrLComp (1613)

### 76.15.22 AnsiStrLIComp

**Synopsis:** Compares a given number of characters of a string, case insensitive.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrLIComp(S1: PChar; S2: PChar; MaxLen: SizeUInt) : Integer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** AnsiStrLIComp compares the first Maxlen characters of 2 PChar strings, S1 and S2, and returns the following result:

```

<0if S1<S2.
0if S1=S2.
>0if S1>S2.

```

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` (1606), `AnsiCompareStr` (1605)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex57.pp

---

**Program** Example57;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLIComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : PChar; L : longint);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

R:=AnsiStrLIComp(S1,S2,L);

**Write** ('First ',L,' characters of "',S1,'" are ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ('less than ');

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ('equal to ');

**else**

**Write** ('larger than ');

**WriteLn** ('those of "',S2,'"');

**end**;

**Begin**

Testit('One string','One smaller string',255);

Testit('ONE STRING','one String',4);

Testit('One string','1 STRING',0);

Testit('One STRING','one string.',9);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.23 AnsiStrLower

**Synopsis:** Convert a null-terminated string to all-lowercase characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrLower(Str: PChar) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrLower` converts the `PChar` `Str` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting `pchar`.

Note that `Str` itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of `AnsiLowerCase` (1608). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrUpper` (1616), `AnsiLowerCase` (1608)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex59.pp

**Program** Example59;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLower function }*

**Uses** sysutils , strings ;

**Procedure** Testit (S : PChar);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (S, ' → ', AnsiStrLower(**StrNew**(S)))

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');

  Testit('Some mixed STring');

  Testit('a lowercase string');

**End.**

#### 76.15.24 AnsiStrPos

**Synopsis:** Return position of one null-terminated substring in another

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrPos(str: PChar; substr: PChar) : PChar

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** AnsiStrPos returns a pointer to the first occurrence of SubStr in Str. If SubStr does not occur in Str then Nil is returned.

**Errors:** An access violation may occur if either Str or SubStr point to invalid memory.

**See also:** AnsiPos ([1609](#)), AnsiStrScan ([1615](#)), AnsiStrRScan ([1615](#))

#### 76.15.25 AnsiStrRScan

**Synopsis:** Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrRScan(Str: PChar; Chr: Char) : PChar

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** AnsiStrPos returns a pointer to the *last* occurrence of the character Chr in Str. If Chr does not occur in Str then Nil is returned.

**Errors:** An access violation may occur if Str points to invalid memory.

**See also:** AnsiPos ([1609](#)), AnsiStrScan ([1615](#)), AnsiStrPos ([1615](#))

#### 76.15.26 AnsiStrScan

**Synopsis:** Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrScan(Str: PChar; Chr: Char) : PChar

**Visibility:** default



**Description:** `AnsiStrPos` returns a pointer to the *first* occurrence of the character `Chr` in `Str`. If `Chr` does not occur in `Str` then `Nil` is returned.

**Errors:** An access violation may occur if `Str` points to invalid memory.

**See also:** `AnsiPos` ([1609](#)), `AnsiStrScan` ([1615](#)), `AnsiStrPos` ([1615](#))

### 76.15.27 AnsiStrUpper

**Synopsis:** Convert a null-terminated string to all-uppercase characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrUpper(Str: PChar) : PChar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrUpper` converts the `PCharStr` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. Note that `Str` itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of `AnsiUpperCase` ([1616](#)). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiUpperCase` ([1616](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1614](#)), `AnsiLowerCase` ([1608](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex60.pp`

**Program** `Example60`;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrUpper function }*

**Uses** `sysutils` , `strings`;

**Procedure** `Testit` (`S : PChar`);

**begin**

`WriteLn` (`S`, ' → ', `AnsiStrUpper(StrNew(S))`)

**end**;

**Begin**

`Testit` ('AN UPPERCASE STRING');

`Testit` ('Some mixed STring');

`Testit` ('a lowercase string');

**End.**

### 76.15.28 AnsiUpperCase

**Synopsis:** Return an uppercase version of a string, taking into account special characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiUpperCase(const s: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiUpperCase` converts the string `S` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** A widestring manager must be installed in order for this function to work correctly with various character sets.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrUpper` ([1616](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1614](#)), `AnsiLowerCase` ([1608](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex61.pp`

---

**Program** `Example60`;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiUpperCase function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `Testit (S : String)`;

**begin**

`WriteLn (S, ' -> ', AnsiUpperCase(S))`  
**end**;

**Begin**

`Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');`  
`Testit('Some mixed STring');`  
`Testit('a lowercase string');`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.29 AnsiUpperCaseFileName

**Synopsis:** Convert filename to uppercase.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiUpperCaseFileName(const s: string) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiUpperCaseFileName` simply returns the result of

`AnsiUpperCase(S);`

See also: `AnsiUpperCase` ([1616](#)), `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1604](#)), `AnsiLowerCaseFileName` ([1609](#))

### 76.15.30 AppendStr

**Synopsis:** Append one ansistring to another.

**Declaration:** `procedure AppendStr(var Dest: string; const S: string)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AppendStr` appends `S` to `Dest`.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only, since it is completely equivalent to `Dest := Dest+S`.

Errors: None.

See also: [AssignStr \(1618\)](#), [NewStr \(1694\)](#), [DisposeStr \(1637\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex62.pp

---

```

Program Example62;

{ This program demonstrates the AppendStr function }

Uses sysutils;

Var S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:= 'This is an ';
  AppendStr(S, 'AnsiString ');
  WriteLn ('S = "', S, '"');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.31 ApplicationName

Synopsis: Return a default application name

Declaration: `function ApplicationName : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ApplicationName` returns the name of the current application. Standard this is equal to the filename part minus extension of `ParamStr(0)`, but it can be customized by setting the `OnGetApplicationName (1601)` callback.

Note that the returned value is only the name portion. It does not contain any path or file extension.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetAppConfigDir \(1678\)](#), [OnGetApplicationName \(1601\)](#), [GetAppConfigFile \(1679\)](#), [ConfigExtension \(1579\)](#)

### 76.15.32 AssignStr

Synopsis: Assigns an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `procedure AssignStr(var P: PString; const S: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignStr` allocates `S` to `P`. The old value of `P` is disposed of.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. `AnsiStrings` are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.

Errors: None.

See also: [NewStr \(1694\)](#), [AppendStr \(1617\)](#), [DisposeStr \(1637\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex63.pp

---

**Program** Example63;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AssignStr function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** P : PString;

**Begin**

```
P:=NewStr('A first AnsiString');
WriteLn ('Before: P = "',P^,'"');
AssignStr(P,'A Second ansistring');
WriteLn ('After : P = "',P^,'"');
DisposeStr(P);
```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.33 BCDToInt

Synopsis: Convert a BCD coded integer to a normal integer.

Declaration: `function BCDToInt(Value: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: BCDToInt converts a BCD coded integer to a normal integer.

Errors: None.

See also: StrToInt ([1722](#)), IntToStr ([1689](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex64.pp

---

**Program** Example64;

```
{ This program demonstrates the BCDToInt function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit ( L : longint);

**begin**

```
WriteLn (L, ' → ',BCDToInt(L));
```

**end;**

**Begin**

```
Testit(10);
Testit(100);
Testit(23);
```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.34 Beep

Synopsis: Sound the system bell.

Declaration: `procedure Beep`

Visibility: default

Description: Beep sounds the system bell, if one is available. The actual beep is produced by the OnBeep ([1600](#)) callback. The Sysutils unit itself contains no implementation of this call.

### 76.15.35 BoolToStr

Synopsis: Convert a boolean value to a string.

Declaration: 

```
function BoolToStr(B: Boolean; UseBoolStrs: Boolean) : string
function BoolToStr(B: Boolean; const TrueS: string;
const FalseS: string) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: BoolToStr converts the boolean B to one of the strings ' TRUE' or ' FALSE'

Errors: None.

See also: StrToBool ([1716](#))

### 76.15.36 ByteLength

Synopsis: Length (in bytes) of a unicodestring

Declaration: 

```
function ByteLength(const S: UnicodeString) : Integer
```

Visibility: default

Description: ByteLength returns the length of a unicodestring in bytes. This equals the character length of the string (Length ([1571](#))) multiplied by the number of bytes per character (2).

See also: Length ([1571](#))

### 76.15.37 BytesOf

Synopsis: Return the bytes in a string

Declaration: 

```
function BytesOf(const Val: RawByteString) : TBytes
function BytesOf(const Val: AnsiChar) : TBytes
function BytesOf(const Val: UnicodeString) : TBytes; Overload
function BytesOf(const Val: WideChar) : TBytes; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: BytesOf returns a copy of the string's content as an array of bytes. For an empty string, zero bytes are returned (i.e. length (BytesOf (S) ) =0).

See also: TBytes ([1589](#))

### 76.15.38 ByteToCharIndex

Synopsis: Convert a character index in Bytes to an Index in characters

Declaration: 

```
function ByteToCharIndex(const S: string; Index: SizeInt) : SizeInt
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ByteToCharIndex` returns the index (in characters) of the `Index`-th byte in `S`.

**Errors:** This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

**See also:** `CharToByteLen` ([1622](#)), `ByteToCharLen` ([1621](#))

### 76.15.39 ByteToCharLen

**Synopsis:** Convert a length in bytes to a length in characters.

**Declaration:** `function ByteToCharLen(const S: string; MaxLen: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ByteToCharLen` returns the number of bytes in `S`, but limits the result to `MaxLen`

**Errors:** This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

**See also:** `CharToByteLen` ([1622](#)), `ByteToCharIndex` ([1620](#))

### 76.15.40 ByteType

**Synopsis:** Return the type of byte in an ansistring for a multi-byte character set

**Declaration:** `function ByteType(const S: string; Index: SizeUInt) : TMbcsByteType`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ByteType` returns the type of byte in the ansistring `S` at (1-based) position `Index`.

**Errors:** No checking on the index is performed.

**See also:** `TMbcsByteType` ([1594](#)), `StrByteType` ([1702](#))

### 76.15.41 CallTerminateProcs

**Synopsis:** Call the exit chain procedures.

**Declaration:** `function CallTerminateProcs : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallTerminateProcs` is run on program exit. It executes all terminate procedures that were added to the exit chain with `AddTerminateProc` ([1604](#)), and does this in reverse order.

**Errors:** If one of the exit procedure raises an exception, it is *not* caught, and the remaining exit procedures will not be executed.

**See also:** `TTerminateProc` ([1597](#)), `AddTerminateProc` ([1604](#))

**76.15.42 ChangeFileExt**

Synopsis: Change the extension of a filename.

Declaration: 

```
function ChangeFileExt(const FileName: UNICODESTRING;
                      const Extension: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING
function ChangeFileExt(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING;
                      const Extension: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ChangeFileExt` changes the file extension in `FileName` to `Extension`. The extension `Extension` includes the starting `.` (dot). The previous extension of `FileName` are all characters after the last `.`, the `.` character included.

If `FileName` doesn't have an extension, `Extension` is just appended.

Errors: None.

See also: [ExtractFileExt \(1646\)](#), [ExtractFileName \(1646\)](#), [ExtractFilePath \(1646\)](#), [ExpandFileName \(1643\)](#)

**76.15.43 CharInSet**

Synopsis: Check whether a char is in a set of characters

Declaration: 

```
function CharInSet(Ch: AnsiChar; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : Boolean
function CharInSet(Ch: WideChar; const CSet: TSysCharSet) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `CharInSet` returns `True` if `Ch` matches one of the characters in `CSet`, it returns `False` otherwise. It is equivalent to

```
Ch in CSet
```

Later versions of this function may take `WideChar` into account.

**76.15.44 CharToByteLen**

Synopsis: Convert a length in characters to a length in bytes.

Declaration: 

```
function CharToByteLen(const S: string; MaxLen: SizeInt) : SizeInt
```

Visibility: default

Description: `CharToByteLen` returns the number of bytes in `S`, but limits the result to `MaxLen`

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: [ByteToCharLen \(1621\)](#), [ByteToCharIndex \(1620\)](#)

**76.15.45 CheckOSError**

Declaration: 

```
procedure CheckOSError(LastError: Integer)
```

Visibility: default

### 76.15.46 CodePageNameToCodePage

Synopsis: Return a numeric identifier for the codepage.

Declaration: `function CodePageNameToCodePage(const cpname: AnsiString)  
: TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: default

Description: `CodePageNameToCodePage` returns the code page number for the specified codepage `cpname`.

Errors: If the code page is not found in the list of code pages, \$FFFF is returned.

See also: `CodePageToCodePageName` ([1623](#))

### 76.15.47 CodePageToCodePageName

Synopsis: Convert a numeric codepage identifier to a codepage name

Declaration: `function CodePageToCodePageName(cp: TSystemCodePage) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `CodePageToCodePageName` returns the name of the codepage `cp`.

Errors: If no matching codepage is found in the list of codepages, an empty string is returned.

See also: `CodePageNameToCodePage` ([1623](#))

### 76.15.48 CompareMem

Synopsis: Compare two memory areas.

Declaration: `function CompareMem(P1: Pointer; P2: Pointer; Length: PtrUInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareMem` compares, byte by byte, 2 memory areas pointed to by `P1` and `P2`, for a length of `L` bytes.

The function returns `True` if all `L` bytes are the same, and `False` otherwise.

### 76.15.49 CompareMemRange

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory locations

Declaration: `function CompareMemRange(P1: Pointer; P2: Pointer; Length: PtrUInt)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareMemRange` compares the 2 memory locations pointed to by `P1` and `P2` byte per byte. It stops comparing after `Length` bytes have been compared, or when it has encountered 2 different bytes. The result is then

>0 if a byte in range `P1` was found that is bigger than the corresponding byte in range `P2`.

0 if all bytes in range `P1` are the same as the corresponding bytes in range `P2`.

<0 if a byte in range `P1` was found that is less than the corresponding byte in range `P2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SameText` ([1699](#))







### 76.15.52 ComposeDateTime

Synopsis: Add a date and time

Declaration: `function ComposeDateTime(Date: TDateTime; Time: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `ComposeDateTime` correctly adds Date and Time, also for dates before 1899-12-31. For dates after this date, it is just the mathematical addition.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.dateutils.EncodeDateTime` ([594](#))

### 76.15.53 ConcatPaths

Synopsis: Concatenate an array of paths to form a single path

Declaration: `function ConcatPaths(const Paths: Array of UNICODESTRING)  
: UNICODESTRING  
function ConcatPaths(const Paths: Array of RAWBYTESTRING)  
: RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConcatPaths` will concatenate the different path components in `Paths` to a single path. It will insert directory separators between the various components of the path as needed. No directory separators will be added to the beginning or the end of the path, and none will be taken away.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` ([1687](#)), `IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter` ([1686](#)), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` ([1641](#)), `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` ([1687](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex96.pp`

---

```

program ex96;

  { This program demonstrates the Concatpaths function }

uses sysutils;

begin
  // will write /this/path/more/levels/
  WriteLn(ConcatPaths(['this', 'path', 'more/levels/']));
  // will write this/path/more/levels/
  WriteLn(ConcatPaths(['this', 'path', 'more/levels/']));
  // will write this/path/more/levels
  WriteLn(ConcatPaths(['this', 'path', 'more/levels']));
end.

```

---

### 76.15.54 CreateDir

Synopsis: Create a new directory

Declaration: `function CreateDir(const NewDir: RawByteString) : Boolean  
function CreateDir(const NewDir: UnicodeString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CreateDir` creates a new directory with name `NewDir`. If the directory doesn't contain an absolute path, then the directory is created below the current working directory.

The function returns `True` if the directory was successfully created, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** In case of an error, the function returns `False`.

See also: `RemoveDir` ([1696](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex26.pp`

**Program** `Example26`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the CreateDir and RemoveDir functions }
{ Run this program twice in the same directory }
```

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

```
  If Not DirectoryExists('NewDir') then
    If Not CreateDir('NewDir') Then
      WriteLn('Failed to create directory !')
    else
      WriteLn('Created "NewDir" directory')
  Else
    If Not RemoveDir('NewDir') Then
      WriteLn('Failed to remove directory !')
    else
      WriteLn('Removed "NewDir" directory');
```

**End.**

### 76.15.55 CreateGUID

**Synopsis:** Create a new GUID

**Declaration:** `function CreateGUID(out GUID: TGUID) : Integer`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `CreateGUID` can be called to create a new GUID (Globally Unique Identifier) value. The function returns the new GUID value in `GUID` and returns zero in case the GUID was created successfully. If no GUID was created, a nonzero error code is returned.

The default mechanism for creating a new GUID is system dependent. If operating system support is available, it is used. If none is available, a default implementation using random numbers is used.

The `OnCreateGUID` callback can be set to hook a custom mechanism behind the `CreateGUID` function. This can be used to let the GUID be created by an external GUID creation library.

**Errors:** On error, a nonzero return value is returned.

See also: `GUIDCase` ([1685](#)), `IsEqualGUID` ([1690](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1708](#)), `TryStringToGUID` ([1734](#)), `GUIDToString` ([1685](#))

### 76.15.56 CurrentYear

**Synopsis:** Return the current year

**Declaration:** `function CurrentYear : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `CurrentYear` returns the current year as a 4-digit number.

Errors: None.

See also: [Date \(1628\)](#), [Time \(1729\)](#), [Now \(1695\)](#)

### 76.15.57 CurrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a currency value to a string.

Declaration: 

```
function CurrToStr(Value: Currency) : string
function CurrToStr(Value: Currency;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `CurrToStr` will convert a currency value to a string with a maximum of 15 digits, and precision 2. Calling `CurrToStr` is equivalent to calling `FloatToStrF` ([1663](#)):

```
FloatToStrF(Value, ffNumber, 15, 2);
```

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStrF` ([1663](#)), `StrToCurr` ([1717](#))

### 76.15.58 CurrToStrF

Synopsis: Format a currency to a string

Declaration: 

```
function CurrToStrF(Value: Currency; Format: TFloatFormat;
                    Digits: Integer) : string
function CurrToStrF(Value: Currency; Format: TFloatFormat;
                    Digits: Integer;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `CurrToStrF` formats the currency `Value` according to the value in `Format`, using the number of digits specified in `Digits`, and a precision of 19. This function simply calls `FloatToStrF` ([1663](#)).

See also: `FloatToStrF` ([1663](#))

### 76.15.59 Date

Synopsis: Return the current date.

Declaration: 

```
function Date : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `Date` returns the current date in `TDateTime` format.

Errors: None.

See also: [Time \(1729\)](#), [Now \(1695\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program Example1;

{ This program demonstrates the Date function }

uses sysutils;

Var YY,MM,DD : Word;

Begin
  WriteLn ('Date : ',Date);
  DeCodeDate (Date,YY,MM,DD);
  WriteLn (format ('Date is (DD/MM/YY): %d/%d/%d ',[dd,mm,yy]));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.60 DateTimeToFileDate

**Synopsis:** Convert a `TDateTime` value to a file age (integer)

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToFileDate(DateTime: TDateTime) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToFileDate` function converts a date/time indication in `TDateTime` format to a file-date function, such as returned for instance by the `FileAge` (1648) function.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Time` (1729), `Date` (1628), `FileDateToDateTime` (1650), `DateTimeToSystemTime` (1631), `DateTimeToTimeStamp` (1632)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex2.pp

---

```

Program Example2;

{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToFileDate function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  WriteLn ('FileTime of now would be: ',DateTimeToFileDate (Now));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.61 DateTimeToStr

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a string using a predefined format.

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToStr(DateTime: TDateTime; ForceTimeIfZero: Boolean) : string`  
`function DateTimeToStr(DateTime: TDateTime;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings;`  
`ForceTimeIfZero: Boolean) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToStr` returns a string representation of `DateTime` using the formatting specified in `ShortDateFormat` and `LongTimeFormat`. It corresponds to a call to `FormatDateTime('c', DateTime)` (see `formatchars` (1577)).

Note that if the time part is 0 (i.e. midnight), no time is appended.

Errors: None.

See also: `FormatDateTime` (1675), `DefaultFormatSettings` (1599)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn ('Today is : ', DateTimeToStr(Now));`

`WriteLn ('Today is : ', FormatDateTime('c', Now));`

**End.**

---

## 76.15.62 DateTimeToString

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a string with a given format.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure DateTimeToString(out Result: string; const FormatStr: string;
                           const DateTime: TDateTime;
                           Options: TFormatDateTimeOptions)
procedure DateTimeToString(out Result: string; const FormatStr: string;
                           const DateTime: TDateTime;
                           const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings;
                           Options: TFormatDateTimeOptions)
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DateTimeToString` returns in `Result` a string representation of `DateTime` using the formatting specified in `FormatStr`.

for a list of characters that can be used in the `FormatStr` formatting string, see `formatchars` (1577).

Note that for 'c', if the time part is 0 (i.e. midnight), no time is appended.

Errors: In case a wrong formatting character is found, an `EConvertError` (1751) is raised.

See also: `FormatDateTime` (1675), `formatchars` (1577), `EConvertError` (1751)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToString function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `today (Fmt : string);`

---

```

Var S : AnsiString;

begin
    DateTimeToString (S,Fmt,Date);
    Writeln (S);
end;

Procedure Now (Fmt : string);

Var S : AnsiString;

begin
    DateTimeToString (S,Fmt,Time);
    Writeln (S);
end;

Begin
    Today ( '"Today is "dddd dd mmmm y' );
    Today ( '"Today is "d mmm yy' );
    Today ( '"Today is "d/mmm/yy' );
    Now ( '''The time is 'am/pmh:n:s' );
    Now ( '''The time is 'hh:nn:ssam/pm' );
    Now ( '''The time is 'tt' );
End.

```

---

### 76.15.63 DateTimeToSystemTime

**Synopsis:** Converts a TDateTime value to a systemtime structure.

**Declaration:** `procedure DateTimeToSystemTime(DateTime: TDateTime;  
out SystemTime: TSystemTime)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DateTimeToSystemTime converts a date/time pair in DateTime, with TDateTime format to a system time SystemTime.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** DateTimeToFileDate ([1629](#)), SystemTimeToDateTime ([1727](#)), DateTimeToTimeStamp ([1632](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToSystemTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ST : TSystemTime;

**Begin**  
 DateTimeToSystemTime(**Now**,ST);  
**With** St **do**  
   **begin**  
     **Writeln** ( 'Today is ',year,'/',month,'/',Day);  
     **Writeln** ( 'The time is ',Hour,':',minute,':',Second,'.',',MilliSecond);  
   **end**;



---

End.

---

### 76.15.64 DateTimeToTimeStamp

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a `TimeStamp` structure.

**Declaration:** `function DateTimeToTimeStamp (DateTime: TDateTime) : TTimeStamp`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateTimeToSystemTime` converts a date/time pair in `DateTime`, with `TDateTime` format to a `TTimeStamp` format.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `DateTimeToFileDate` ([1629](#)), `SystemTimeToDateTime` ([1727](#)), `DateTimeToSystemTime` ([1631](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToTimeStamp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** TS : TTimeStamp;

**Begin**

TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp (Now);

**With** TS **do**

**begin**

  WriteLn ('Now is ',time,' millisecond past midnight');

  WriteLn ('Today is ',Date,' days past 1/1/0001');

**end;**

**End.**

---

### 76.15.65 DateToStr

**Synopsis:** Converts a `TDateTime` value to a date string with a predefined format.

**Declaration:** `function DateToStr (Date: TDateTime) : string`

`function DateToStr (Date: TDateTime;`

`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DateToStr` converts `Date` to a string representation. It uses `ShortDateFormat` as it's formatting string. It is hence completely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime ('dddd', Date)`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TimeToStr` ([1730](#)), `DateTimeToStr` ([1629](#)), `FormatDateTime` ([1675](#)), `StrToDate` ([1717](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** (**Format** ( 'Today is: %s' ,[**DateToStr**(**Date**)]));

**End.**

---

### 76.15.66 DayOfWeek

**Synopsis:** Returns the day of the week.

**Declaration:** `function DayOfWeek(DateTime: TDateTime) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DayOfWeek` returns the day of the week from `DateTime`. Sunday is counted as day 1, Saturday is counted as day 7. The result of `DayOfWeek` can serve as an index to the `LongDayNames` constant array, to retrieve the name of the day.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Date` ([1628](#)), `DateToStr` ([1632](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ This program demonstrates the DayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** ( 'Today' 's day is ' ,LongDayNames[**DayOfWeek**(**Date**)]);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.67 DecodeDate

**Synopsis:** Decode a `TDateTime` to a year,month,day triplet

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDate(Date: TDateTime; out Year: Word; out Month: Word; out Day: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DecodeDate` decodes the Year, Month and Day stored in `Date`, and returns them in the Year, Month and Day variables.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `EncodeDate` ([1638](#)), `DecodeTime` ([1634](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex9.pp

---

```

Program Example9;

{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDate function }

Uses sysutils;

Var YY,MM,DD : Word;

Begin
    DecodeDate( Date ,YY,MM,DD);
    WriteLn ( Format ( 'Today is %d/%d/%d' ,[dd,mm,yy] ));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.68 DecodeDateFully

**Synopsis:** Decode a date with additional date of the week.

**Declaration:** `function DecodeDateFully(const DateTime: TDateTime; out Year: Word; out Month: Word; out Day: Word; out DOW: Word) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DecodeDateFully`, like `DecodeDate` ([1633](#)), decodes `DateTime` in its parts and returns these in `Year`, `Month`, `Day` but in addition returns the day of the week in `DOW`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `EncodeDate` ([1638](#)), `TryEncodeDate` ([1733](#)), `DecodeDate` ([1633](#))

### 76.15.69 DecodeTime

**Synopsis:** Decode a `TDateTime` to a hour,minute,second,millisec quartet

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeTime(Time: TDateTime; out Hour: Word; out Minute: Word; out Second: Word; out MilliSecond: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DecodeTime` decodes the hours, minutes, second and milliseconds stored in `Time`, and returns them in the `Hour`, `Minute` and `Second` and `MilliSecond` variables.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `EncodeTime` ([1638](#)), `DecodeDate` ([1633](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex10.pp`

---

```

Program Example10;

{ This program demonstrates the DecodeTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Var HH,MM,SS,MS: Word;

Begin

```

---

```

DecodeTime(Time,HH,MM,SS,MS);
WriteLn (format('The time is %d:%d:%d.%d',[hh,mm,ss,ms]));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.70 DeleteFile

Synopsis: Delete a file from the file system.

Declaration: `function DeleteFile(const FileName: UnicodeString) : Boolean`  
`function DeleteFile(const FileName: RawByteString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `DeleteFile` deletes file `FileName` from disk. The function returns `True` if the file was successfully removed, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `FileCreate` ([1649](#)), `FileExists` ([1651](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex31.pp`

---

**Program** `Example31`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DeleteFile function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var**

Line : **String**;  
 F,I : **Longint**;

**Begin**

F:= `FileCreate` ('test.txt');  
 Line:= 'Some string line.'#10;  
**For** I:=1 **to** 10 **do**  
   `FileWrite` (F,Line[1],**Length**(Line));  
**FileClose**(F);  
**DeleteFile**('test.txt');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.71 DirectoryExists

Synopsis: Check whether a directory exists in the file system.

Declaration: `function DirectoryExists(const Directory: UnicodeString;`  
`FollowLink: Boolean) : Boolean`  
`function DirectoryExists(const Directory: RawByteString;`  
`FollowLink: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `DirectoryExists` checks whether `Directory` exists in the file system and is actually a directory. If this is the case, the function returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned.

See also: `FileExists` ([1651](#))

**76.15.72 DiskFree**

Synopsis: Return the amount of free disk space

Declaration: `function DiskFree(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskFree` returns the free space (in bytes) on disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

- 0** for the current drive.
- 1** for the first floppy drive.
- 2** for the second floppy drive.
- 3** for the first hard-disk partition.
- 4-26** for all other drives and partitions.

**Remark** Under Linux, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the dos one, since the file system is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` and `DiskSize` (1636) functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` (1603).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `DiskSize` (1636), `AddDisk` (1603)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex27.pp`

**Program** `Example27`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DiskFree function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

```
Write ('Size of current disk      : ', DiskSize(0));
WriteLn (' (= ', DiskSize(0) div 1024, 'k) ');
Write ('Free space of current disk : ', DiskFree(0));
WriteLn (' (= ', DiskFree(0) div 1024, 'k) ');
```

**End.**

**76.15.73 DiskSize**

Synopsis: Return the total amount of disk space.

Declaration: `function DiskSize(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskSize` returns the size (in bytes) of disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

- 0** for the current drive.
- 1** for the first floppy drive.
- 2** for the second floppy drive.
- 3** for the first hard-disk partition.
- 4-26** for all other drives and partitions.

**Remark** Under Linux, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the dos one, since the file system is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` (1636) and `DiskSize` functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` (1603)

For an example, see `DiskFree` (1636).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `DiskFree` (1636), `AddDisk` (1603)

### 76.15.74 DisposeStr

Synopsis: Dispose an ansistring from the heap.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeStr(S: PString); Overload`  
`procedure DisposeStr(S: PShortString); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeStr` removes the dynamically allocated string `S` from the heap, and releases the occupied memory.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. `AnsiStrings` are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.

For an example, see `DisposeStr` (1637).

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` (1694), `AppendStr` (1617), `AssignStr` (1618)

### 76.15.75 DoDirSeparators

Synopsis: Convert known directory separators to the current directory separator.

Declaration: `procedure DoDirSeparators(var FileName: UNICODESTRING)`  
`procedure DoDirSeparators(var FileName: RAWBYTESTRING)`

Visibility: default

Description: This function replaces all known directory separators in `FileName` to the directory separator character for the current system. The list of known separators is specified in the `AllowDirectorySeparators` (1319) constant.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1646), `ExtractFilePath` (1646)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex32.pp

**Program** Example32;

```
{ This program demonstrates the DoDirSeparators function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (F : String);

---

```

begin
  Writeln ( 'Before : ',F);
  DoDirSeparators (F);
  Writeln ( 'After  : ',F);
end;

Begin
  Testit (GetCurrentDir);
  Testit ( 'c:\pp\bin\win32' );
  Testit ( '/usr/lib/fpc' );
  Testit ( '\usr\lib\fpcc' );
End.

```

---

### 76.15.76 EncodeDate

Synopsis: Encode a Year,Month,Day to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function EncodeDate(Year: Word; Month: Word; Day: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: EncodeDate encodes the Year, Month and Day variables to a date in TDateTime format. It does the opposite of the DecodeDate (1633) procedure.

The parameters must lie within valid ranges (boundaries included):

**Year** must be between 1 and 9999.

**Month** must be within the range 1-12.

**Day** must be between 1 and 31.

Errors: In case one of the parameters is out of its valid range, an EConvertError (1751) exception is raised.

See also: EncodeTime (1638), DecodeDate (1633)

**Listing:** ./sysutext/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ This program demonstrates the EncodeDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** YY,MM,DD : Word;

**Begin**

**DecodeDate** ( Date,YY,MM,DD);

**WriteLn** ( 'Today is : ',**FormatDateTime** ( 'dd mmm yyyy ',**EncodeDate**(YY,Mm,Dd)));

**End.**

---

### 76.15.77 EncodeTime

Synopsis: Encode a Hour,Min,Sec,millisecond to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function EncodeTime(Hour: Word; Minute: Word; Second: Word; MilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `EncodeTime` encodes the `Hour`, `Minute`, `Second`, `MilliSecond` variables to a `TDateTime` format result. It does the opposite of the `DecodeTime` (1634) procedure.

The parameters must have a valid range (boundaries included):

**Hour** must be between 0 and 23.

**Minute**, **second** must both be between 0 and 59.

**Millisecond** must be between 0 and 999.

**Errors:** In case one of the parameters is out of its valid range, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: `EncodeDate` (1638), `DecodeTime` (1634)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12`;

*{ This program demonstrates the EncodeTime function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `Hh,MM,SS,MS` : `Word`;

**Begin**

`DecodeTime` (`Time`, `Hh`, `MM`, `SS`, `MS`);

`WriteLn` ( 'Present Time is : ', `FormatDateTime` ( 'hh:mm:ss', `EncodeTime` (`HH`, `MM`, `SS`, `MS`) ) );

**End.**

---

### 76.15.78 ExceptAddr

**Synopsis:** Current exception address.

**Declaration:** `function ExceptAddr` : `CodePointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExceptAddr` returns the address from the currently treated exception object when an exception is raised, and the stack is unwound.

See also: `ExceptObject` (1640), `ExceptionErrorMessage` (1640), `ShowException` (1700)

### 76.15.79 ExceptFrameCount

**Synopsis:** Number of frames included in an exception backtrace

**Declaration:** `function ExceptFrameCount` : `LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExceptFrameCount` returns the number of frames that are included in an exception stack frame backtrace. The function returns 0 if there is currently no exception being handled. (i.e. it only makes sense to call this function in an `finally..end` or `except..end` block.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `ExceptFrames` (1640), `ExceptAddr` (1639), `ExceptObject` (1640), `#rtl.system.ExceptProc` (1321)



### 76.15.80 ExceptFrames

### Synopsis: Return the current exception stack frames

**Declaration:** `function ExceptFrames : PCodePointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExceptFrames` returns the current list frames on the exception stack. If there is no exception in progress, `Nil` is returned.

See also: [ExceptFrameCount \(1639\)](#), [ExceptAddr \(1639\)](#), [ExceptObject \(1640\)](#), [#rtl.system.ExceptProc \(1321\)](#)

## 76.15.81 **ExceptionErrorMessage**

**Synopsis:** Return a message describing the exception.

[illegible]

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExceptionHandlerMessage` creates a string that describes the exception object `ExceptObject` at address `ExceptAddr`. It can be used to display exception messages. The string will be stored in the memory pointed to by `Buffer`, and will at most have `Size` characters.

The routine checks whether `ExceptObject` is a `Exception` (1758) object or not, and adapts the output accordingly.

See also: [ExceptObject \(1640\)](#), [ExceptAddr \(1639\)](#), [ShowException \(1700\)](#)

## 76.15.82 ExceptObject

Synopsis: Current Exception object.

**Declaration:** `function ExceptObject : TObject`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExceptObject` returns the currently treated exception object when an exception is raised, and the stack is unwound.

**Errors:** If there is no exception, the function returns `Nil`

See also: [ExceptAddr \(1639\)](#), [ExceptionErrorMessage \(1640\)](#), [ShowException \(1700\)](#)

### 76.15.83 ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter

### Synopsis: Strip the leading path delimiter of a path

```
Declaration: function ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
                                     : UNICODESTRING
function ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
                                     : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter` will remove any path delimiter on the first position of `Path` if there is one. if there is none (or the path is empty), it is left untouched.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1687), `IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter` (1686), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1641), `ConcatPaths` (1626)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex95.pp`

**Program** `Example95`;

*{ This program demonstrates the `IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter` function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

```
// Will print "/this/path"
WriteLn(IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter('this/path'));
// The same result
WriteLn(IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter('/this/path'));
End.
```

### 76.15.84 ExcludeTrailingBackslash

**Synopsis:** Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.

**Declaration:**

```
function ExcludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
    : UNICODESTRING
function ExcludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
    : RAWBYTESTRING
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExcludeTrailingBackslash` is provided for backwards compatibility with Delphi. Use `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1641) instead.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1687), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1641), `PathDelim` (1584), `IsPathDelimiter` (1691)

### 76.15.85 ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter

**Synopsis:** Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.

**Declaration:**

```
function ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
    : UNICODESTRING
function ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
    : RAWBYTESTRING
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` removes the trailing path delimiter character (`PathDelim` (1584)) from `Path` if it is present, and returns the result.

See also: `ExcludeTrailingBackslash` (1641), `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1687), `PathDelim` (1584), `IsPathDelimiter` (1691)

**76.15.86 ExecuteProcess**

Synopsis: Execute another process (program).

Declaration: `function ExecuteProcess(const Path: RawByteString;  
                                       const ComLine: RawByteString;  
                                       Flags: TExecuteFlags) : Integer`  
`function ExecuteProcess(const Path: RawByteString;  
                                       const ComLine: Array of RawByteString;  
                                       Flags: TExecuteFlags) : Integer`  
`function ExecuteProcess(const Path: UnicodeString;  
                                       const ComLine: UnicodeString;  
                                       Flags: TExecuteFlags) : Integer`  
`function ExecuteProcess(const Path: UnicodeString;  
                                       const ComLine: Array of UnicodeString;  
                                       Flags: TExecuteFlags) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExecuteProcess` will execute the program in `Path`, passing it the arguments in `ComLine`. `ExecuteProcess` will then wait for the program to finish, and will return the exit code of the executed program. In case `ComLine` is a single string, it will be split out in an array of strings, taking into account common whitespace and quote rules.

The program specified in `Path` is not searched in the searchpath specified in the `PATH` environment variable, so the full path to the executable must be specified in `Path`, although some operating systems may perform this search anyway (notably, windows)

`Flags` can be used to control the passing of file handles: if `ExecInheritsHandles` is included, the file handles of the current process will be passed on to the newly executed process.

Errors: In case the program could not be executed or an other error occurs, an `EOSError` (1755) exception will be raised.

See also: `TExecuteFlags` (1590), `EOSError` (1755)

**76.15.87 ExeSearch**

Synopsis: Search for an executable

Declaration: `function ExeSearch(const Name: UnicodeString;  
                                       const DirList: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`  
`function ExeSearch(const Name: RawByteString;  
                                       const DirList: RawByteString) : RawByteString`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExeSearch` searches for an executable `Name` in the list of directories `DirList` (a list of directories, separator by `PathSeparator` (1336)). If the current OS also searches implicitly in the current working directory, the current directory is searched in the first place.

If the executable is found, then the full path of the executable is returned. If it is not found, an empty string is returned.

No check is performed whether the found file is actually executable.

See also: `FileSearch` (1655)

### 76.15.88 ExpandFileName

Synopsis: Expand a relative filename to an absolute filename.

Declaration: `function ExpandFileName(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExpandFileName(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExpandFileName` expands the filename to an absolute filename. It changes all directory separator characters to the one appropriate for the system first.

If an empty filename is passed, it is expanded to the current directory.

If `BasePath` is not passed, the current directory is used as base path.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExpandFileNameCase` (1643), `ExtractFileName` (1646), `ExtractFilePath` (1646), `ExtractFileDir` (1645), `ExtractFileDrive` (1645), `ExtractFileExt` (1646), `ExtractRelativePath` (1647)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33;`

*{ This program demonstrates the ExpandFileName function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Procedure** `Testit (F : String);`

**begin**  
    `WriteLn (F, ' expands to : ', ExpandFileName(F));`  
**end;**

**Begin**  
    `Testit('ex33.pp');`  
    `Testit(ParamStr(0));`  
    `Testit('/pp/bin/win32/ppc386');`  
    `Testit('\pp\bin\win32\ppc386');`  
    `Testit('.');`  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.89 ExpandFileNameCase

Synopsis: Expand a filename entered as case insensitive to the full path as stored on the disk.

Declaration: `function ExpandFileNameCase(const FileName: UNICODESTRING;`  
                                    `out MatchFound: TFilenameCaseMatch)`  
                                    `: UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExpandFileNameCase(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING;`  
                                    `out MatchFound: TFilenameCaseMatch)`  
                                    `: RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: On case insensitive platforms, `ExpandFileNameCase` behaves similarly to `ExpandFileName` (1643) except for the fact that it returns the final part of the path with the same case of letters as found on the disk (if it exists - otherwise the case equals the one provided on input). On case sensitive



### 76.15.91 ExtractFileDir

Synopsis: Extract the drive and directory part of a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileDir(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFileDir(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileDir` returns only the directory part of `FileName`, including a drive letter. The directory name has NO ending directory separator, in difference with `ExtractFilePath` (1646).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1646), `ExtractFilePath` (1646), `ExtractFileDir` (1645), `ExtractFileDrive` (1645), `ExtractFileExt` (1646), `ExtractRelativePath` (1647)

Listing: `./sysutex/ex34.pp`

Program `Example34`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the ExtractFileName function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `Testit(F : String)`;

**begin**

```
  WriteLn ( 'FileName      : ', F);
  WriteLn ( 'Has Name      : ', ExtractFileName(F));
  WriteLn ( 'Has Path      : ', ExtractFilePath(F));
  WriteLn ( 'Has Extension : ', ExtractFileExt(F));
  WriteLn ( 'Has Directory : ', ExtractFileDir(F));
  WriteLn ( 'Has Drive     : ', ExtractFileDrive(F));
```

**end**;

**Begin**

```
  Testit (Paramstr(0));
  Testit ( '/usr/local/bin/mysqld' );
  Testit ( 'c:\pp\bin\win32\ppc386.exe' );
  Testit ( '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386.exe' );
```

**End.**

### 76.15.92 ExtractFileDrive

Synopsis: Extract the drive part from a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileDrive(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFileDrive(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `Extracts` the drive letter from a filename. Note that some operating systems do not support drive letters.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1645).

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1646), `ExtractFilePath` (1646), `ExtractFileDir` (1645), `ExtractFileDrive` (1645), `ExtractFileExt` (1646), `ExtractRelativePath` (1647)

### 76.15.93 ExtractFileExt

**Synopsis:** Return the extension from a filename.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractFileExt(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFileExt(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractFileExt` returns the extension (including the `.` (dot) character) of `FileName`.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1645).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ChangeFileExt` (1622), `ExtractFileName` (1646), `ExtractFilePath` (1646), `ExtractFileDir` (1645), `ExtractFileDrive` (1645), `ExtractFileExt` (1646), `ExtractRelativePath` (1647)

### 76.15.94 ExtractFileName

**Synopsis:** Extract the filename part from a full path filename.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractFileName(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFileName(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractFileName` returns the filename part from `FileName`. The filename consists of all characters after the last directory separator character (`'/'` or `'\'`) or drive letter.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` (1646) and `ExtractFileName`.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1645).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ExtractFileName` (1646), `ExtractFilePath` (1646), `ExtractFileDir` (1645), `ExtractFileDrive` (1645), `ExtractFileExt` (1646), `ExtractRelativePath` (1647)

### 76.15.95 ExtractFilePath

**Synopsis:** Extract the path from a filename.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractFilePath(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function ExtractFilePath(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractFilePath` returns the path part (including drive letter) from `FileName`. The path consists of all characters before the last directory separator character (`'/'` or `'\'`), including the directory separator itself. In case there is only a drive letter, that will be returned.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` and `ExtractFileName` (1646).

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1645).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ExtractFileName` (1646), `ExtractFilePath` (1646), `ExtractFileDir` (1645), `ExtractFileDrive` (1645), `ExtractFileExt` (1646), `ExtractRelativePath` (1647)

**76.15.96 ExtractRelativePath**

Synopsis: Extract a relative path from a filename, given a base directory.

Declaration: 

```
function ExtractRelativePath(const BaseName: UNICODESTRING;
                           const DestName: UNICODESTRING)
                           : UNICODESTRING
function ExtractRelativePath(const BaseName: RAWBYTESTRING;
                           const DestName: RAWBYTESTRING)
                           : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractRelativePath` constructs a relative path to go from `BaseName` to `DestName`. If `DestName` is on another drive (Not on Unix-like platforms) then the whole `Destname` is returned.

Note that directories must end on a path delimiter for this function to work correctly. If not, the last part is stripped and treated as a file name.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1646), `ExtractFilePath` (1646), `ExtractFileDir` (1645), `ExtractFileDrive` (1645), `ExtractFileExt` (1646)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ This program demonstrates the ExtractRelativePath function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (FromDir, ToDir : **String**);

**begin**

**Write** ( 'From "', FromDir, '" to "', ToDir, '" via " ');

**WriteLn** ( ExtractRelativePath(FromDir, ToDir), '" ');

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit ( '/pp/src/compiler/', '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386/' );

    Testit ( '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386/', '/pp/src/compiler/' );

    Testit ( '/pp/bin/win32/', '/pp/src/compiler/ppcx386/' );

    Testit ( '/pp/bin/win32/', '/pp/src/compiler/ppcx386' );

    Testit ( 'e:/pp/bin/win32/ppc386/', 'd:/pp/src/compiler/' );

    Testit ( 'e:\pp\bin\win32\ppc386/', 'd:\pp\src\compiler/' );

    Testit ( 'C:\FPC\3.0.2\ ', 'C:\FPC\3.0.2\ ' );

    Testit ( 'C:\FPC\3.0.2\ ', 'C:\FPC\3.0.4 rc1\ ' );

    Testit ( 'Q:\ ', 'Q:\FPC\3.0.4 rc1\ ' );

**End.**

---

**76.15.97 ExtractShortPathName**

Synopsis: Returns a 8.3 path name

Declaration: 

```
function ExtractShortPathName(const FileName: UNICODESTRING)
                           : UNICODESTRING
```



```
function ExtractShortPathName(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING)
    : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExtractShortPathName` returns a 8.3 compliant filename that represents the same file as `FileName`. On platforms other than windows, this is `FileName` itself.

See also: `ExtractFilePath` (1646), `ExtractFileName` (1646)

### 76.15.98 FileAge

**Synopsis:** Return the timestamp of a file.

**Declaration:**

```
function FileAge(const FileName: UnicodeString) : LongInt
function FileAge(const FileName: UnicodeString;
    out FileDateTime: TDateTime; FollowLink: Boolean)
    : Boolean
function FileAge(const FileName: RawByteString;
    out FileDateTime: TDateTime; FollowLink: Boolean)
    : Boolean
function FileAge(const FileName: RawByteString) : LongInt
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileAge` returns the last modification time of file `FileName`. The `FileDate` format can be transformed to `TDateTime` format with the `FileDateToDateTime` (1650) function.

Fileage cannot be used on directories, it will return -1 if `FileName` indicates a directory.

**Errors:** In case of errors, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileDateToDateTime` (1650), `FileExists` (1651), `FileGetAttr` (1652)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileAge function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : TDateTime;  
fa : Longint;

**Begin**

```
fa := FileAge( 'ex36.pp' );
If Fa < -1 then
begin
S := FileDateToDateTime( fa );
WriteLn ( 'I'm from ', DateTimeToStr(S))
end;
```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.99 FileClose

**Synopsis:** Close a file handle.

**Declaration:** `procedure FileClose(Handle: THandle)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileClose` closes the file handle `Handle`. After this call, attempting to read or write from the handle will result in an error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1649)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FileCreate` (1649), `FileWrite` (1658), `FileOpen` (1654), `FileRead` (1655), `FileTruncate` (1658), `FileSeek` (1656)

### 76.15.100 FileCreate

**Synopsis:** Create a new file and return a handle to it.

**Declaration:**

```
function FileCreate(const FileName: UnicodeString) : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: UnicodeString; Rights: Integer)
    : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: UnicodeString; ShareMode: Integer;
    Rights: Integer) : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: RawByteString) : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: RawByteString; Rights: Integer)
    : THandle
function FileCreate(const FileName: RawByteString; ShareMode: Integer;
    Rights: Integer) : THandle
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileCreate` creates a new file with name `FileName` on the disk and returns a file handle which can be used to read or write from the file with the `FileRead` (1655) and `FileWrite` (1658) functions.

If a file with name `FileName` already existed on the disk, it is overwritten.

The `ShareMode` parameter determines how file sharing is handled for the new file. It can have one or more of the following values, OR-ed together:

Table 76.24:

Name	Description
<code>fmShareCompat</code>	Open file in DOS share-compatibility mode
<code>fmShareDenyNone</code>	Do not lock file.
<code>fmShareDenyRead</code>	Lock file so other processes cannot read.
<code>fmShareDenyWrite</code>	Lock file so other processes can only read.
<code>fmShareExclusive</code>	Lock file for exclusive use

The optional `Rights` parameter only has an effect under UNIX, where it can be used to set the mode (read, write, execute, sticky bit, setgid and setuid flags) of the created file to the specified custom value. On other platforms, the `Rights` parameter is ignored.

**Errors:** If an error occurs (e.g. disk full or non-existent path), the function returns `THandle(-1)`.

**See also:** `FileClose` (1648), `FileWrite` (1658), `FileOpen` (1654), `FileRead` (1655), `FileTruncate` (1658), `FileSeek` (1656)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex37.pp

**Program** Example37;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileCreate/FileSeek/FileReed/FileTruncate functions }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** I,J,F : Longint;

**Begin**

```
F:=FileCreate ('test.dat');
If F=-1 then
  Halt(1);
For I:=0 to 100 do
  FileWrite(F,I,SizeOf(i));
FileClose(f);
F:=FileOpen ('test.dat',fmOpenRead);
For I:=0 to 100 do
  begin
    FileRead (F,J,SizeOf(J));
    If J<>I then
      Writeln ('Mismatch at file position ',I)
    end;
FileSeek(F,0,fsFromBeginning);
Randomize;
Repeat
  FileSeek(F,Random(100)*4,fsFromBeginning);
  FileRead (F,J,SizeOf(J));
  Writeln ('Random read : ',J);
Until J>80;
FileClose(F);
F:=FileOpen('test.dat',fmOpenWrite);
I:=50*SizeOf(Longint);
If FileTruncate(F,I) then
  Writeln('Successfully truncated file to ',I,' bytes.');
```

**FileClose(F);**

**End.**

### 76.15.101 FileDateToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a FileDate value to a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** function FileDateToDateTime(Filedate: LongInt) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FileDateToDateTime converts the date/time encoded in filedate to a TDateTime encoded form. It can be used to convert date/time values returned by the FileAge (1648) or FindFirst (1660)/FindNext (1661) functions to TDateTime form.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** DateTimeToFileDate (1629)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex13.pp

---

```

Program Example13;

{ This program demonstrates the FileDateToDateTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Var
    ThisAge : Longint;

Begin
    Write ( 'ex13.pp created on : ');
    ThisAge := FileAge ( 'ex13.pp' );
    Writeln ( DateTimeToStr ( FileDateToDateTime ( ThisAge ) ) );
End.

```

---

### 76.15.102 FileExists

**Synopsis:** Check whether a particular file exists in the file system.

**Declaration:**

```

function FileExists(const FileName: UnicodeString; FollowLink: Boolean)
    : Boolean
function FileExists(const FileName: RawByteString; FollowLink: Boolean)
    : Boolean

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FileExists` returns `True` if a file with name `FileName` exists on the disk, `False` otherwise. On windows, this function will return `False` if a directory is passed as `FileName`. On Unixes, passing a directory name will result in `True`. The rationale is that on UNIX, a directory is a file as well.

Note that this function accepts a single filename as an argument, without wildcards. To check for the existence of multiple files, see the `FindFirst` (1660) function.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `FindFirst` (1660), `FileAge` (1648), `FileGetAttr` (1652), `FileSetAttr` (1657)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex38.pp

---

```

Program Example38;

{ This program demonstrates the FileExists function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
    If FileExists ( ParamStr ( 0 ) ) Then
        Writeln ( 'All is well, I seem to exist.' );
End.

```

---

### 76.15.103 FileFlush

**Declaration:**

```

function FileFlush(Handle: THandle) : Boolean

```

**Visibility:** default

**76.15.104 FileGetAttr**

Synopsis: Return attributes of a file.

Declaration: `function FileGetAttr(const FileName: UnicodeString) : LongInt`  
`function FileGetAttr(const FileName: RawByteString) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileGetAttr` returns the attribute settings of file `FileName`. The attribute is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**faReadOnly**The file is read-only.

**faHidden**The file is hidden. (On UNIX, this means that the filename starts with a dot)

**faSysFile**The file is a system file (On UNIX, this means that the file is a character, block or FIFO file).

**faVolumeId**Volume Label. Only for DOS/Windows on a plain FAT (not VFAT or Fat32) file system.

**faDirectory**File is a directory.

**faArchive**file should be archived. Not possible on Unix

Errors: In case of error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileSetAttr` ([1657](#)), `FileAge` ([1648](#)), `FileGetDate` ([1653](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex40.pp`

**Program** Example40;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileGetAttr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (**Name** : **String**);

**Var** F : Longint;

**Begin**

**F := FileGetAttr (Name);**

**If** F <> -1 **then**

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Testing : ',Name);

**If** (F and faReadOnly) <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is ReadOnly');

**If** (F and faHidden) <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is hidden');

**If** (F and faSysFile) <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a system file');

**If** (F and faVolumeId) <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a disk label');

**If** (F and faArchive) <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is artchive file');

**If** (F and faDirectory) <> 0 **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a directory');

**end**

**else**

**Writeln** ( 'Error reading attributes of ',Name);

**end;**

```

begin
  testit ('ex40.pp');
  testit (ParamStr(0));
  testit ('. ');
  testit ('/ ');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.105 FileGetDate

Synopsis: Return the file time of an opened file.

Declaration: `function FileGetDate(Handle: THandle) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileGetdate` returns the filetime of the opened file with file handle `Handle`. It is the same as `FileAge` (1648), with this difference that `FileAge` only needs the file name, while `FileGetDate` needs an open file handle.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileAge` (1648)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex39.pp

---

**Program** Example39;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileGetDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** F,D : Longint;

**Begin**

```

  F:=FileCreate('test.dat');
  D:=FileGetDate(F);
  WriteLn('File created on ',DateTimeToStr(FileDateToDateTime(D)));
  FileClose(F);
  DeleteFile('test.dat');

```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.106 FileGetSymLinkTarget

```

Declaration: function FileGetSymLinkTarget(const FileName: UnicodeString;
                                          out SymLinkRec: TUnicodeSymLinkRec)
                                          : Boolean

function FileGetSymLinkTarget(const FileName: UnicodeString;
                              out TargetName: UnicodeString) : Boolean
function FileGetSymLinkTarget(const FileName: RawByteString;
                              out SymLinkRec: TRawbyteSymLinkRec)
                              : Boolean
function FileGetSymLinkTarget(const FileName: RawByteString;
                              out TargetName: RawByteString) : Boolean

```

Visibility: default

### 76.15.107 FileIsReadOnly

Synopsis: Check whether a file is read-only.

Declaration: `function FileIsReadOnly(const FileName: UnicodeString) : Boolean`  
`function FileIsReadOnly(const FileName: RawByteString) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileIsReadOnly` checks whether `FileName` exists in the file system and is a read-only file. If this is the case, the function returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned.

See also: `FileExists` ([1651](#))

### 76.15.108 FileOpen

Synopsis: Open an existing file and return a file handle

Declaration: `function FileOpen(const FileName: unicodestring; Mode: Integer)`  
`: THandle`  
`function FileOpen(const FileName: RawByteString; Mode: Integer)`  
`: THandle`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileOpen` opens a file with name `FileName` with mode `Mode`. `Mode` can be one of the following constants:

**fmOpenReadOnly** Open file in read-only mode

**fmOpenWriteOpen** Open file in write-only mode

**fmOpenReadWriteOpen** Open file in read/write mode.

Under Windows and Unix, the above mode can be or-ed with one of the following sharing/locking flags:

**fmShareCompatOpen** Open file in DOS share-compatibility mode

**fmShareExclusiveLock** file for exclusive use

**fmShareDenyWriteLock** file so other processes can only read.

**fmShareDenyReadLock** file so other processes cannot read.

**fmShareDenyNone** Do not lock file.

If the file has been successfully opened, it can be read from or written to (depending on the `Mode` parameter) with the `FileRead` ([1655](#)) and `FileWrite` functions.

**Remark** Remark that you cannot open a file if it doesn't exist yet, i.e. it will not be created for you. If you want to create a new file, or overwrite an old one, use the `FileCreate` ([1649](#)) function.

There are some limitations to the sharing modes.

- 1.Sharing modes are only available on Unix and Windows platforms.
- 2.Unix only support sharing modes as of 2.4.0.
- 3.`fmShareDenyRead` only works under Windows at this time, and will always result in an error on Unix platforms because its file locking APIs do not support this concept.

4. File locking is advisory on Unix platforms. This means that the locks are only checked when a file is opened using a file locking mode. In other cases, existing locks are simply ignored. In particular, this means that `fmShareDenyNone` has no effect under Unix, because this can only be implemented as “use no locking” on those platforms. As a result, opening a file using this mode will always succeed under Unix as far as the locking is concerned, even if the file has already been opened using `fmShareExclusive`.

5. Under Solaris, closing a single file handle associated with a file will result in all locks on that file (even via other handles) being destroyed due to the behaviour of the underlying API (`fcntl`). Because of the same reason, on Solaris you cannot use `fmShareDenyWrite` in combination with `fmOpenWrite`, nor `fmShareExclusive` in combination with `fmOpenRead` although both work with `fmOpenReadWrite`.

For an example, see [FileCreate \(1649\)](#)

Errors: On Error, `THandle (-1)` is returned.

See also: [fmOpenRead \(1581\)](#), [fmOpenWrite \(1581\)](#), [fmOpenReadWrite \(1581\)](#), [fmShareDenyWrite \(1582\)](#), [fmShareExclusive \(1582\)](#), [fmShareDenyRead \(1582\)](#), [fmShareDenyNone \(1581\)](#), [fmShareCompat \(1581\)](#), [FileClose \(1648\)](#), [FileWrite \(1658\)](#), [FileCreate \(1649\)](#), [FileRead \(1655\)](#), [FileTruncate \(1658\)](#), [FileSeek \(1656\)](#)

### 76.15.109 FileRead

Synopsis: Read data from a file handle in a buffer.

Declaration: `function FileRead(Handle: THandle; out Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileRead` reads `Count` bytes from file-handle `Handle` and stores them into `Buffer`. `Buffer` must be at least `Count` bytes long. No checking on this is performed, so be careful not to overwrite any memory. `Handle` must be the result of a [FileOpen \(1654\)](#) call.

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 on error.

For an example, see [FileCreate \(1649\)](#)

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: [FileClose \(1648\)](#), [FileWrite \(1658\)](#), [FileCreate \(1649\)](#), [FileOpen \(1654\)](#), [FileTruncate \(1658\)](#), [FileSeek \(1656\)](#)

### 76.15.110 FileSearch

Synopsis: Search for a file in a path.

Declaration: `function FileSearch(const Name: UnicodeString;  
                          const DirList: UnicodeString;  
                          Options: TFileSearchOptions) : UnicodeString  
function FileSearch(const Name: UnicodeString;  
                          const DirList: UnicodeString;  
                          ImplicitCurrentDir: Boolean) : UnicodeString  
function FileSearch(const Name: RawByteString;  
                          const DirList: RawByteString;  
                          Options: TFileSearchOptions) : RawByteString  
function FileSearch(const Name: RawByteString;  
                          const DirList: RawByteString;  
                          ImplicitCurrentDir: Boolean) : RawByteString`



Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileSearch` looks for the file `Name` in `DirList`, where `dirlist` is a list of directories, separated by semicolons or colons. It returns the full filename of the first match found. The optional `Options` parameter may be specified to influence the behaviour of the search algorithm. It is a set of the following options:

**sfoImplicitCurrentDir** Always search the current directory first, even if it is not specified.

**sfoStripQuotes** Strip quotes from the components in the search path.

A deprecated form of the function allowed to specify using the boolean `ImplicitCurrentDir` parameter whether the current directory was searched implicitly or not. By default, the current directory is searched.

**Errors:** On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ExpandFileName` (1643), `FindFirst` (1660)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FileSearch function. }*

**Uses** `Sysutils`;

**Const**

```
{ $ifdef unix }
  FN = 'find';
  P = './bin:/usr/bin';
{ $else }
  FN = 'find.exe';
  P = 'c:\dos;c:\windows;c:\windows\system;c:\windows\system32';
{ $endif }
```

**begin**

```
  WriteLn ('find is in : ', FileSearch (FN,P));
end.
```

---

### 76.15.111 FileSeek

**Synopsis:** Set the current file position on a file handle.

**Declaration:**

```
function FileSeek(Handle: THandle; FOffset: LongInt; Origin: LongInt)
    : LongInt
function FileSeek(Handle: THandle; FOffset: Int64; Origin: LongInt)
    : Int64
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileSeek` sets the file pointer on position `Offset`, starting from `Origin`. `Origin` can be one of the following values:

**fsFromBeginning** `Offset` is relative to the first byte of the file. This position is zero-based. i.e. the first byte is at offset 0.

**fsFromCurrent** `Offset` is relative to the current position.

**fsFromEnd***Offset* is relative to the end of the file. This means that *Offset* can only be zero or negative in this case.

If successful, the function returns the new file position, relative to the beginning of the file.

**Remark** The above mentioned constants do not exist in Delphi.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: [FileClose \(1648\)](#), [FileWrite \(1658\)](#), [FileCreate \(1649\)](#), [FileOpen \(1654\)](#), [FileRead \(1655\)](#), [FileTruncate \(1658\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex37.pp

**Program** Example37;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileCreate/FileSeek/FileReed/FileTruncate functions }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** I,J,F : Longint;

**Begin**

```

F:=FileCreate ('test.dat');
If F=-1 then
  Halt(1);
For I:=0 to 100 do
  FileWrite(F,I,SizeOf(i));
FileClose(f);
F:=FileOpen ('test.dat',fmOpenRead);
For I:=0 to 100 do
  begin
    FileRead (F,J,SizeOf(J));
    If J<>I then
      Writeln ('Mismatch at file position ',I)
    end;
  FileSeek(F,0,fsFromBeginning);
  Randomize;
  Repeat
    FileSeek(F,Random(100)*4,fsFromBeginning);
    FileRead (F,J,SizeOf(J));
    Writeln ('Random read : ',j);
  Until J>80;
  FileClose(F);
  F:=FileOpen('test.dat',fmOpenWrite);
  I:=50*SizeOf(Longint);
  If FileTruncate(F,I) then
    Writeln('Successfully truncated file to ',I,' bytes.');
```

**FileClose**(F);

**End.**

### 76.15.112 FileSetAttr

Synopsis: Set the attributes of a file.

**Declaration:** function FileSetAttr(const Filename: UnicodeString; Attr: LongInt)  
: LongInt  
function FileSetAttr(const Filename: RawByteString; Attr: LongInt)  
: LongInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileSetAttr` sets the attributes of `FileName` to `Attr`. If the function was successful, 0 is returned, -1 otherwise. `Attr` can be set to an OR-ed combination of the predefined `faXXX` constants.

This function is not implemented on Unixes.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned (always on Unixes).

**See also:** `FileGetAttr` ([1652](#)), `FileGetDate` ([1653](#)), `FileSetDate` ([1658](#))

### 76.15.113 FileSetDate

**Synopsis:** Set the date of a file.

**Declaration:**

```
function FileSetDate(const FileName: UnicodeString; Age: LongInt)
    : LongInt
function FileSetDate(const FileName: RawByteString; Age: LongInt)
    : LongInt
function FileSetDate(Handle: THandle; Age: LongInt) : LongInt
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileSetDate` sets the file date of the open file with handle `Handle` or to `Age`, where `Age` is a DOS date-and-time stamp value.

Alternatively, the filename may be specified with the `FileName` argument. This variant of the call is mandatory on Unixes, since there is no OS support for setting a file timestamp based on a handle. (the handle may not be a real file at all).

The function returns zero if successful.

**Errors:** On Unix, the handle variant always returns -1, since this is impossible to implement. On Windows and DOS, a negative error code is returned.

### 76.15.114 FileTruncate

**Synopsis:** Truncate an open file to a given size.

**Declaration:** `function FileTruncate(Handle: THandle; Size: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileTruncate` truncates the file with handle `Handle` to `Size` bytes. The file must have been opened for writing prior to this call. The function returns `True` is successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `FileCreate` ([1649](#)).

**Errors:** On error, the function returns `False`.

**See also:** `FileClose` ([1648](#)), `FileWrite` ([1658](#)), `FileCreate` ([1649](#)), `FileOpen` ([1654](#)), `FileRead` ([1655](#)), `FileSeek` ([1656](#))

### 76.15.115 FileWrite

**Synopsis:** Write data from a buffer to a given file handle.

**Declaration:**

```
function FileWrite(Handle: THandle; const Buffer; Count: LongInt)
    : LongInt
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileWrite` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the file with handle `Handle`. Prior to this call, the file must have been opened for writing. `Buffer` must be at least `Count` bytes large, or a memory access error may occur.

The function returns the number of bytes written, or -1 in case of an error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1649).

**Errors:** In case of error, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `FileClose` (1648), `FileCreate` (1649), `FileOpen` (1654), `FileRead` (1655), `FileTruncate` (1658), `FileSeek` (1656)

### 76.15.116 FindClose

**Synopsis:** Close a find handle

**Declaration:** `procedure FindClose(var F: TUnicodeSearchRec)`  
`procedure FindClose(var F: TRawbyteSearchRec)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindClose` ends a series of `FindFirst` (1660)/`FindNext` (1661) calls, and frees any memory used by these calls. It is *absolutely* necessary to do this call, or huge memory losses may occur.

For an example, see `FindFirst` (1660).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FindFirst` (1660), `FindNext` (1661)

### 76.15.117 FindCmdLineSwitch

**Synopsis:** Check whether a certain switch is present on the command-line.

**Declaration:** `function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: string;`  
`const Chars: TSysCharSet; IgnoreCase: Boolean)`  
`: Boolean`  
`function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: string; IgnoreCase: Boolean)`  
`: Boolean`  
`function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindCmdLineSwitch` will check all command-line arguments for the presence of the option `Switch`. It will return `True` if it was found, `False` otherwise. Characters that appear in `Chars` (default is `SwitchChars` (1586)) are assumed to indicate an option (switch). If the parameter `IgnoreCase` is `True`, case will be ignored when looking for the switch. Default is to search case sensitive.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SwitchChars` (1586)

**76.15.118 FindFirst**

Synopsis: Start a file search and return a findhandle

Declaration: `function FindFirst(const Path: UnicodeString; Attr: LongInt;  
                                  out Rslt: TUnicodeSearchRec) : LongInt  
          function FindFirst(const Path: RawByteString; Attr: LongInt;  
                                  out Rslt: TRawbyteSearchRec) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindFirst` looks for files that match the name (possibly with wildcards) in `Path` and extra attributes `Attr`. It then fills up the `Rslt` record with data gathered about the file. It returns 0 if a file matching the specified criteria is found, a nonzero value (-1 on Unix-like platforms) otherwise.

`Attr` is an or-ed combination of the following constants:

**faAnyFile** Find any file (this is a combination of the other flags).

**faReadOnly** The file is read-only.

**faHidden** The file is hidden. (On UNIX, this means that the filename starts with a dot)

**faSysFile** The file is a system file (On unix, this means that the file is a character, block or FIFO file).

**faVolumeId** Drive volume Label. Not possible under unix, and on Windows-like systems, this works only for plan FAT (not Fat32 or VFAT) file systems.

**faDirectory** File is a directory.

**faArchive** file needs to be archived. Not possible on Unix

It is a common misconception that `Attr` specifies a set of attributes which must be matched in order for a file to be included in the list. This is not so: The value of `Attr` specifies *additional* attributes, this means that the returned files are either normal files or have an attribute which is present in `Attr`.

Specifically: specifying `faDirectory` as a value for `Attr` does not mean that only directories will be returned. Normal files *and* directories will be returned.

The `Rslt` record can be fed to subsequent calls to `FindNext`, in order to find other files matching the specifications.

**Remark** A successful `FindFirst` call must *always* be followed by a `FindClose` (1659) call with the same `Rslt` record. Failure to do so will result in memory leaks. If the findfirst call failed (i.e. returned a nonzero handle) there is no need to call `FindClose`.

Errors: On error the function returns -1 on Unix-like platforms, a nonzero error code on Windows.

See also: `FindClose` (1659), `FindNext` (1661)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example43;

*{ This program demonstrates the FindFirst function }*

**Uses** SysUtils;

**Var** Info : TSearchRec;  
      Count : Longint;

**Begin**  
  Count:=0;  
  **If** FindFirst ( '\*',faAnyFile ,Info)=0 **then**  
    **begin**

---

```

Repeat
  Inc(Count);
  With Info do
    begin
      If (Attr and faDirectory) = faDirectory then
        Write('Dir : ');
        WriteLn (Name:40,Size:15);
      end;
    Until FindNext(info)<>0;
    FindClose(Info);
  end;
  WriteLn ('Finished search. Found ',Count,' matches');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.119 FindNext

Synopsis: Find the next entry in a findhandle.

Declaration: `function FindNext(var Rslt: TUnicodeSearchRec) : LongInt`  
`function FindNext(var Rslt: TRawbyteSearchRec) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindNext` finds a next occurrence of a search sequence initiated by `FindFirst`. If another record matching the criteria in `Rslt` is found, 0 is returned, a nonzero constant is returned otherwise.

**Remark** The last `FindNext` call must *always* be followed by a `FindClose` call with the same `Rslt` record. Failure to do so will result in memory loss.

For an example, see `FindFirst` ([1660](#))

Errors: On error (no more file is found), a nonzero constant is returned.

See also: `FindFirst` ([1660](#)), `FindClose` ([1659](#))

### 76.15.120 FloattoCurr

Synopsis: Convert a float to a Currency value.

Declaration: `function FloattoCurr(const Value: Extended) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToCurr` converts the `Value` floating point value to a `Currency` value. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of currencies (determined by `MinCurrency` ([1583](#)) and `MaxCurrency` ([1583](#))). If not, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

Errors: If `Value` is out of range, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `EConvertError` ([1751](#)), `TryFloatToCurr` ([1733](#)), `MinCurrency` ([1583](#)), `MaxCurrency` ([1583](#))

### 76.15.121 FloatToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a float to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function FloatToDateTime(const Value: Extended) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FloatToDateTime` converts the `Value` floating point value to a `TDateTime` value. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of dates (determined by `MinDateTime` (1583) and `MaxDateTime` (1583)). If not, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

**Errors:** If `Value` is out of range, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

**See also:** `EConvertError` (1751), `MinDateTime` (1583), `MaxDateTime` (1583)

### 76.15.122 FloatToDecimal

**Synopsis:** Convert a float value to a `TFloatRec` value.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure FloatToDecimal(out Result: TFloatRec; const Value;
                        ValueType: TFloatValue; Precision: Integer;
                        Decimals: Integer)
procedure FloatToDecimal(out Result: TFloatRec; Value: Extended;
                        Precision: Integer; Decimals: Integer)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FloatToDecimal` converts the float `Value` to a float description in the `ResultTFloatRec` (1592) format. It will store `Precision` digits in the `Digits` field, of which at most `Decimal` decimals.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TFloatRec` (1592)

### 76.15.123 FloatToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert a float value to a string using a fixed format.

**Declaration:**

```
function FloatToStr(Value: Extended) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Extended;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Double) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Double;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Single) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Single;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Currency) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Currency;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Comp) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Comp; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
                    : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Int64) : string
function FloatToStr(Value: Int64; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
                    : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FloatToStr` converts the floating point variable `Value` to a string representation. It will choose the shortest possible notation of the two following formats:

**Fixed format** will represent the string in fixed notation,

**Decimal format** will represent the string in scientific notation.

More information on these formats can be found in `FloatToStrF` (1663). `FloatToStr` is completely equivalent to the following call:

```
FloatToStrF(Value, ffGeneral, 15, 0);
```

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStrF` (1663), `FormatFloat` (1676), `StrToFloat` (1721)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex67.pp

---

**Program** Example67;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (Value, ' -> ', **FloatToStr**(Value));

**WriteLn** (-Value, ' -> ', **FloatToStr**(-Value));

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit (0.0);

    Testit (1.1);

    Testit (1.1e-3);

    Testit (1.1e-20);

    Testit (1.1e-200);

    Testit (1.1e+3);

    Testit (1.1e+20);

    Testit (1.1e+200);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.124 FloatToStrF

**Synopsis:** Convert a float value to a string using a given format.

**Declaration:**

```
function FloatToStrF(Value: Extended; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Extended; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Double; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Double; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Single; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Single; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
```



```

        const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Comp; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Comp; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Currency; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Currency; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Int64; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : string
function FloatToStrF(Value: Int64; format: TFloatFormat;
    Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FloatToStrF` converts the floating point number value to a string representation, according to the settings of the parameters `Format`, `Precision` and `Digits`.

The meaning of the `Precision` and `Digits` parameter depends on the `Format` parameter. The format is controlled mainly by the `Format` parameter. It can have one of the following values:

**ffcurrency**Money format. Value is converted to a string using the global variables `CurrencyString`, `CurrencyFormat` and `NegCurrFormat`. The `Digits` parameter specifies the number of digits following the decimal point and should be in the range -1 to 18. If `Digits` equals -1, `CurrencyDecimals` is assumed. The `Precision` parameter is ignored.

**ffExponent**Scientific format. Value is converted to a string using scientific notation: 1 digit before the decimal point, possibly preceded by a minus sign if `Value` is negative. The number of digits after the decimal point is controlled by `Precision` and must lie in the range 0 to 15.

**ffFixed**Fixed point format. Value is converted to a string using fixed point notation. The result is composed of all digits of the integer part of `Value`, preceded by a minus sign if `Value` is negative. Following the integer part is `DecimalSeparator` and then the fractional part of `Value`, rounded off to `Digits` numbers. If the number is too large then the result will be in scientific notation.

**ffGeneral**General number format. The argument is converted to a string using `ffExponent` or `ffFixed` format, depending on which one gives the shortest string. There will be no trailing zeroes. If `Value` is less than 0.00001 or if the number of decimals left of the decimal point is larger than `Precision` then scientific notation is used, and `Digits` is the minimum number of digits in the exponent. Otherwise `Digits` is ignored.

**ffnumber**Is the same as `ffFixed`, except that thousand separators are inserted in the resulting string.

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1662), `FloatToText` (1665)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex68.pp`

**Program** `Example68`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }
```

---

```

Uses sysutils;

Const Fmt : Array [TFloatFormat] of string[10] =
    ('general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency');

Procedure Testit (Value : Extended);

Var I, J : longint;
    FF : TFloatFormat;

begin
    For I:=5 to 15 do
        For J:=1 to 4 do
            For FF:=ffgeneral to ffcurrency do
                begin
                    Write (Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt : ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');
                    Writeln (FloatToStrf(Value, FF, I, J));
                    Write (-Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt : ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');
                    Writeln (FloatToStrf(-Value, FF, I, J));
                end;
            end;
        end;
    end;

Begin
    Testit (1.1);
    Testit (1.1E1);
    Testit (1.1E-1);
    Testit (1.1E5);
    Testit (1.1E-5);
    Testit (1.1E10);
    Testit (1.1E-10);
    Testit (1.1E15);
    Testit (1.1E-15);
    Testit (1.1E100);
    Testit (1.1E-100);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.125 FloatToText

**Synopsis:** Return a string representation of a float, with a given format.

**Declaration:**

```

function FloatToText(Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended;
    format: TFloatFormat; Precision: Integer;
    Digits: Integer) : LongInt
function FloatToText(Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended;
    format: TFloatFormat; Precision: Integer;
    Digits: Integer;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : LongInt

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FloatToText converts the floating point variable Value to a string representation and stores it in Buffer. The conversion is governed by format, Precision and Digits. more information on these parameters can be found in FloatToStrF ([1663](#)). Buffer should point to enough space to hold the result. No checking on this is performed.

The result is the number of characters that was copied in Buffer.

**Errors:** None.

See also: FloatToStr ([1662](#)), FloatToStrF ([1663](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex69.pp

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const** Fmt : **Array** [TFloatFormat] **of** **string**[10] =  
     ('general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency');

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**Var** I, J : longint;  
     FF : TFloatFormat;  
     S : ShortString;

**begin**

**For** I:=5 **to** 15 **do**

**For** J:=1 **to** 4 **do**

**For** FF:=ffgeneral **to** ffcurrency **do**

**begin**

**Write** (Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt : ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');

                    SetLength(S, **FloatToText** (@S[1], Value, FF, I, J));

**Writeln** (S);

**Write** (-Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt : ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');

                    SetLength(S, **FloatToText** (@S[1], -Value, FF, I, J));

**Writeln** (S);

**end**;

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit (1.1);

    Testit (1.1E1);

    Testit (1.1E-1);

    Testit (1.1E5);

    Testit (1.1E-5);

    Testit (1.1E10);

    Testit (1.1E-10);

    Testit (1.1E15);

    Testit (1.1E-15);

    Testit (1.1E100);

    Testit (1.1E-100);

**End.**

### 76.15.126 FloatToTextFmt

**Synopsis:** Convert a float value to a string using a given mask.

**Declaration:** function FloatToTextFmt(Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended; format: PChar;  
                                     FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Integer  
     function FloatToTextFmt(Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended; format: PChar)  
                                     : Integer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FloatToTextFmt` returns a textual representation of `Value` in the memory location pointed to by `Buffer`. It uses the formatting specification in `Format` to do this. The return value is the number of characters that were written in the buffer.

For a list of valid formatting characters, see `FormatFloat` ([1676](#))

**Errors:** No length checking is performed on the buffer. The buffer should point to enough memory to hold the complete string. If this is not the case, an access violation may occur.

See also: `FormatFloat` ([1676](#))

### 76.15.127 `FmtStr`

**Synopsis:** Format a string with given arguments.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure FmtStr(var Res: string; const Fmt: string;
                 const args: Array of const)
procedure FmtStr(var Res: string; const Fmt: string;
                 const args: Array of const;
                 const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FmtStr` calls `Format` ([1668](#)) with `Fmt` and `Args` as arguments, and stores the result in `Res`. For more information on how the resulting string is composed, see `Format` ([1668](#)).

**Errors:** In case of error, a `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Format` ([1668](#)), `FormatBuf` ([1674](#)), `EConvertError` ([1751](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex70.pp`

---

**Program** `Example70`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FmtStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `S` : `AnsiString`;

**Begin**

`S := ''`;

`FmtStr` (`S`, 'For some nice examples of fomattting see %s.', ['Format']);

`Writeln` (`S`);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.128 `ForceDirectories`

**Synopsis:** Create a chain of directories

**Declaration:**

```
function ForceDirectories(const Dir: RawByteString) : Boolean
function ForceDirectories(const Dir: UnicodeString) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ForceDirectories` tries to create any missing directories in `Dir` till the whole path in `Dir` exists. It returns `True` if `Dir` already existed or was created successfully. If it failed to create any of the parts, `False` is returned.

**76.15.129 Format**

**Synopsis:** Format a string with given arguments.

**Declaration:** `function Format(const Fmt: string; const Args: Array of const) : string`  
`function Format(const Fmt: string; const Args: Array of const;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Format replaces all placeholders in `Fmt` with the arguments passed in `Args` and returns the resulting string. A placeholder looks as follows:

```
'%' [[Index] ':' ] ['-' ] [Width] ['.' Precision] ArgType
```

elements between single quotes must be typed as shown without the quotes, and elements between square brackets [ ] are optional. The meaning of the different elements are shown below:

'%' starts the placeholder. If you want to insert a literal % character, then you must insert two of them : %%.

**Index** ':' takes the `Index`-th element in the argument array as the element to insert. If `index` is omitted, then the zeroth argument is taken.

'-' tells Format to left-align the inserted text. The default behaviour is to right-align inserted text. This can only take effect if the `Width` element is also specified.

**Width** the inserted string must have at least `Width` characters. If not, the inserted string will be padded with spaces. By default, the string is left-padded, resulting in a right-aligned string. This behaviour can be changed by the usage of the '-' character.

'.' **Precision** Indicates the precision to be used when converting the argument. The exact meaning of this parameter depends on `ArgType`.

The `Index`, `Width` and `Precision` parameters can be replaced by \*, in which case their value will be read from the next element in the `Args` array. This value must be an integer, or an `EConvertError (1751)` exception will be raised.

The argument type is determined from `ArgType`. It can have one of the following values (case insensitive):

**D** Decimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be an integer. The argument is converted to a decimal string. If precision is specified, then the string will have at least `Precision` digits in it. If needed, the string is (left) padded with zeroes.

**E** Scientific format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a Floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using scientific notation, using `FloatToStrF (1663)`, where the optional precision is used to specify the total number of decimals. (default a value of 15 is used). The exponent is formatted using maximally 3 digits.

In short, the `E` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffexponent, Precision, 3)
```

**F** Fixed point format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string, using fixed notation (see `FloatToStrF (1663)`). `Precision` indicates the number of digits following the decimal point.

In short, the `F` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffFixed, ffixed, 9999, Precision)
```

**G**General number format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using fixed point notation or scientific notation, depending on which gives the shortest result. `Precision` is used to determine the number of digits after the decimal point.

In short, the `G` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffGeneral, Precision, 3)
```

**M**Currency format. the next argument in the `Args` array must be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using currency notation. This means that fixed-point notation is used, but that the currency symbol is appended. If precision is specified, then then it overrides the `CurrencyDecimals` global variable used in the `FloatToStrF` (1663)

In short, the `M` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF (Argument, ffCurrency, 9999, Precision)
```

**N**Number format. This is the same as fixed point format, except that thousand separators are inserted in the resulting string.

**P**Pointer format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a pointer (typed or untyped). The pointer value is converted to a string of length 8, representing the hexadecimal value of the pointer.

**S**String format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a string. The argument is simply copied to the result string. If `Precision` is specified, then only `Precision` characters are copied to the result string.

**U**Unsigned decimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be an unsigned integer. The argument is converted to a decimal string. If precision is specified, then the string will have at least `Precision` digits in it. If needed, the string is (left) padded with zeroes.

**X**hexadecimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be an integer. The argument is converted to a hexadecimal string with just enough characters to contain the value of the integer. If `Precision` is specified then the resulting hexadecimal representation will have at least `Precision` characters in it (with a maximum value of 32).

**Errors:** In case of error, an `EConvertError` exception is raised. Possible errors are:

- 1.Errors in the format specifiers.
- 2.The next argument is not of the type needed by a specifier.
- 3.The number of arguments is not sufficient for all format specifiers.

See also: `FormatBuf` (1674), `EConvertError` (1751)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex71.pp`

---

**Program** `example71`;

```
{ $mode objfpc }
```

```
{ This program demonstrates the Format function }
```

**Uses** `sysutils`;

```
Var P : Pointer;
      fmt, S : string;
```

```
{ Expected output:
  [%d] => [10]
```

```

        [%%] => [%]
        [%10d] => [          10]
        [%4d] => [0010]
        [%10.4d] => [          0010]
        [%0:d] => [10]
        [%0:10d] => [          10]
        [%0:10.4d] => [          0010]
        [%0:-10d] => [10          ]
        [%0:-10.4d] => [0010          ]
        [%-*.d] => [00010]
    }
Procedure TestInteger;
begin
    Try
        Fmt:='[%d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%%]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        ffmt:='[%4d]';S:=Format (ffmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%10.4d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:10.4d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:-10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:-10.4d]';S:=Format (fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%-*.d]';S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    except
        On E : Exception do
            begin
                Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
            end;
    end;
    writeln ('Press enter');
    readln;
end;

{ Expected output:
    [%x] => [A]
    [%10x] => [          A]
    [%10.4x] => [          000A]
    [%0:x] => [A]
    [%0:10x] => [          A]
    [%0:10.4x] => [          000A]
    [%0:-10x] => [A          ]
    [%0:-10.4x] => [000A          ]
    [%-*.x] => [0000A]
}
Procedure TestHexaDecimal;
begin
    try
        Fmt:='[%x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%10x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%10.4x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:10x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:10.4x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:-10x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%0:-10.4x]';S:=Format (fmt,[10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:='[%-*.x]';S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,10]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    
```

```

except
  On E : Exception do
    begin
      WriteLn ( 'Exception caught : ', E.Message );
    end;
end;
writeln ( 'Press enter' );
readln;
end;

{ Expected output:
  [0x%p] => [0x0012D687]
  [0x%10p] => [0x 0012D687]
  [0x%10.4p] => [0x 0012D687]
  [0x%0:p] => [0x0012D687]
  [0x%0:10p] => [0x 0012D687]
  [0x%0:10.4p] => [0x 0012D687]
  [0x%0:-10p] => [0x0012D687 ]
  [0x%0:-10.4p] => [0x0012D687 ]
  [%-*.p] => [0012D687]
}

Procedure TestPointer;
begin
  P := Pointer(1234567);
  try
    Fmt := '[0x%p]'; S := Format (Fmt, [P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[0x%10p]'; S := Format (Fmt, [P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[0x%10.4p]'; S := Format (Fmt, [P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[0x%0:p]'; S := Format (Fmt, [P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[0x%0:10p]'; S := Format (Fmt, [P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[0x%0:10.4p]'; S := Format (Fmt, [P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[0x%0:-10p]'; S := Format (Fmt, [P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[0x%0:-10.4p]'; S := Format (Fmt, [P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[%-*.p]'; S := Format (Fmt, [4, 5, P]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        WriteLn ( 'Exception caught : ', E.Message );
      end;
    end;
    writeln ( 'Press enter' );
    readln;
  end;

{ Expected output:
  [%s] => [This is a string]
  [%0:s] => [This is a string]
  [%0:18s] => [ This is a string]
  [%0:-18s] => [This is a string ]
  [%0:18.12s] => [ This is a st
  [%-*.s] => [This is a st ]
}

Procedure TestString;
begin
  try
    Fmt := '[%s]'; S := Format (Fmt, ['This is a string']); Writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[%0:s]'; S := Format (Fmt, ['This is a string']); Writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt := '[%0:18s]'; S := Format (Fmt, ['This is a string']); Writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
  
```



```

    fmt:='[%0:-18s]';s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']);Writeln(fmt:12,'=> ',s);
    fmt:='[%0:18.12s]';s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']);Writeln(fmt:12,'=> ',s);
    fmt:='[%-*.*s]';s:=Format(fmt,[18,12,'This is a string']);Writeln(fmt:12,'=> ',s);
except
  On E : Exception do
    begin
      Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
    end;
end;
writeln ('Press enter');
readln;
end;

```

{ Expected output:

```

    [%e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%10e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%10.4e] => [1.234E+000]
    [%0:e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%0:10e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%0:10.4e] => [1.234E+000]
    [%0:-10e] => [1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%0:-10.4e] => [1.234E+000]
    [%-*.*e] => [1.2340E+000]
}

```

**Procedure** TestExponential;

```

begin
  Try
    Fmt:='[%e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10e]';S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4e]';S:=Format (fmt,[1.234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.*e]';S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,1.234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
except
  On E : Exception do
    begin
      Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
    end;
end;
writeln ('Press enter');
readln;
end;

```

{ Expected output:

```

    [%e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%10.4e] => [-1.234E+000]
    [%0:e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%0:10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%0:10.4e] => [-1.234E+000]
    [%0:-10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E+000]
    [%0:-10.4e] => [-1.234E+000]
    [%-*.*e] => [-1.2340E+000]
}

```

**Procedure** TestNegativeExponential;

```

begin
  Try
    Fmt:= '[%e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%10e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%10.4e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10.4e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10.4e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%-*.e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [4, 5, -1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ('Exception caught : ', E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  writeln ('Press enter');
  readln;
end;

{ Expected output:
  [%e] => [1.2340000000000000E-002]
  [%10e] => [1.2340000000000000E-002]
  [%10.4e] => [1.234E-002]
  [%0:e] => [1.2340000000000000E-002]
  [%0:10e] => [1.2340000000000000E-002]
  [%0:10.4e] => [1.234E-002]
  [%0:-10e] => [1.2300000000000000E-002]
  [%0:-10.4e] => [1.234E-002]
  [%-*.e] => [1.2340E-002]
}

Procedure TestSmallExponential;
begin
  Try
    Fmt:= '[%e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%10e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%10.4e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10.4e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [0.0123]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10.4e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
    Fmt:= '[%-*.e]'; S:= Format (Fmt, [4, 5, 0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ', s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ('Exception caught : ', E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  writeln ('Press enter');
  readln;
end;

{ Expected output:
  [%e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
  [%10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
  [%10.4e] => [-1.234E-002]
}

```

```

    [%0:e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%0:10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%0:10.4e] => [-1.234E-002]
    [%0:-10e] => [-1.2340000000000000E-002]
    [%0:-10.4e] => [-1.234E-002]
    [%-*.e] => [-1.2340E-002]
}
Procedure TestSmallNegExponential;
begin
    Try
        Fmt:= '%e' ;S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%10e' ;S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%10.4e' ;S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:e' ;S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:10e' ;S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:10.4e' ;S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:-10e' ;S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:-10.4e' ;S:=Format (fmt,[-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%-*.e' ;S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,-0.01234]);writeln (Fmt:12,' => ',s);
    except
        On E : Exception do
            begin
                Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
            end;
        end;
        writeln ('Press enter');
        readln;
    end;

begin
    TestInteger;
    TestHexadecimal;
    TestPointer;
    teststring;
    TestExponential;
    TestNegativeExponential;
    TestSmallExponential;
    TestSmallNegExponential;
end.

```

### 76.15.130 FormatBuf

**Synopsis:** Format a string with given arguments and store the result in a buffer.

**Declaration:**

```

function FormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
    fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const)
    : Cardinal
function FormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
    fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Cardinal

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FormatBuf calls Format (1668) and stores the result in Buf.

See also: Format (1668)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex72.pp

---

**Program** Example72;

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatBuf function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var**

S : ShortString;

**Const**

Fmt : ShortString = 'For some nice examples of fomatting see %s.';

**Begin**

S:= '';

SetLength(S, **FormatBuf** (S[1], 255, Fmt[1], **Length**(Fmt), [ 'Format' ]));

**WriteLn** (S);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.131 FormatCurr

**Synopsis:** Format a currency

**Declaration:** function FormatCurr(const Format: string; Value: Currency) : string  
 function FormatCurr(const Format: string; Value: Currency;  
                   const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FormatCurr formats the currency Value according to the formatting rule in the Format parameter, and returns the resulting string.

For an explanation of the formatting characters usable in the Format parameter, see FormatFloat (1676).

See also: FormatFloat (1676), FloatToText (1665)

### 76.15.132 FormatDateTime

**Synopsis:** Return a string representation of a TDateTime value with a given format.

**Declaration:** function FormatDateTime(const FormatStr: string; DateTime: TDateTime;  
                                   Options: TFormatDateTimeOptions) : string  
 function FormatDateTime(const FormatStr: string; DateTime: TDateTime;  
                           const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings;  
                           Options: TFormatDateTimeOptions) : string

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FormatDateTime formats the date and time encoded in DateTime according to the formatting given in FormatStr. The complete list of formatting characters can be found in formatchars (1577).

**Errors:** On error (such as an invalid character in the formatting string), and EConvertError (1751) exception is raised.

See also: [DateTimeToStr \(1629\)](#), [DateToStr \(1632\)](#), [TimeToStr \(1730\)](#), [StrToDateTime \(1719\)](#), [EConvertError \(1751\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatDateTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ThisMoment : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  ThisMoment:=Now;

**WriteLn** ( 'Now : ', **FormatDateTime** ( 'hh:nn ', ThisMoment ));

**WriteLn** ( 'Now : ', **FormatDateTime** ( 'DD MM YYYY', ThisMoment ));

**WriteLn** ( 'Now : ', **FormatDateTime** ( 'c', ThisMoment ));

**End.**

---

### 76.15.133 FormatFloat

**Synopsis:** Format a float according to a certain mask.

**Declaration:** `function FormatFloat(const Format: string; Value: Extended) : string`  
`function FormatFloat(const Format: string; Value: Extended;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FormatFloat` formats the floating-point value given by `Value` using the format specifications in `Format`. The format specifier can give format specifications for positive, negative or zero values (separated by a semicolon).

If the format specifier is empty or the value needs more than 18 digits to be correctly represented, the result is formatted with a call to `FloatToStrF` ([1663](#)) with the `ffGeneral` format option.

The following format specifiers are supported:

**0** is a digit place holder. If there is a corresponding digit in the value being formatted, then it replaces the 0. If not, the 0 is left as-is.

**#** is also a digit place holder. If there is a corresponding digit in the value being formatted, then it replaces the #. If not, it is removed. by a space.

**.** determines the location of the decimal point. Only the first '.' character is taken into account. If the value contains digits after the decimal point, then it is replaced by the value of the `DecimalSeparator` character.

**,** determines the use of the thousand separator character in the output string. If the format string contains one or more ',' characters, then thousand separators will be used. The `ThousandSeparator` character is used.

**E+** determines the use of scientific notation. If 'E+' or 'E-' (or their lowercase counterparts) are present then scientific notation is used. The number of digits in the output string is determined by the number of 0 characters after the 'E+'

**;** This character separates sections for positive, negative, and zero numbers in the format string.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, an exception is raised.

See also: FloatToStr ([1662](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex89.pp

**Program** Example89;

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatFloat function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const**

```
NrFormat=9;
FormatStrings : Array[1..NrFormat] of string = (
    ' ',
    '0',
    '0.00',
    '#.##',
    '#.##0.00',
    '#.##0.00;(#.##0.00)',
    '#.##0.00;;Zero',
    '0.000E+00',
    '#.###E-0');
NrValue = 5;
FormatValues : Array[1..NrValue] of Double =
    (1234,-1234,0.5,0,-0.5);

Width  = 12;
FWidth = 20;
```

**Var**

```
I,J : Integer;
S : String;
```

**begin**

```
Write('Format':FWidth);
For I:=1 to NrValue do
    Write(FormatValues[I]:Width:2);
WriteLn;
For I:=1 to NrFormat do
    begin
        Write(FormatStrings[I]:FWidth);
        For J:=1 to NrValue do
            begin
                S:=FormatFloat(FormatStrings[I],FormatValues[J]);
                Write(S:Width);
            end;
        WriteLn;
    end;
```

**End.**

### 76.15.134 FreeAndNil

Synopsis: Free object if needed, and set object reference to Nil

Declaration: procedure FreeAndNil(var obj)

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FreeAndNil` will free the object in `Obj` and will set the reference in `Obj` to `Nil`. The reference is set to `Nil` first, so if an exception occurs in the destructor of the object, the reference will be `Nil` anyway.

**Errors:** Exceptions that occur during the destruction of `Obj` are not caught.

### 76.15.135 FreeMemAndNil

**Synopsis:** Free the heap memory pointed to by a pointer and set pointer to nil.

**Declaration:** `procedure FreeMemAndNil(var p)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FreeMemAndNil` will free the memory pointed to by `P` and will set `P` to `Nil`. Note that this function is not type safe; the programmer is responsible for ensuring that this function is called with a correct pointer parameter. Failure to do so may result in run-time errors.

See also: `FreeAndNil` ([1677](#))

### 76.15.136 GetAppConfigDir

**Synopsis:** Return the appropriate directory for the application's configuration files.

**Declaration:** `function GetAppConfigDir(Global: Boolean) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetAppConfigDir` returns the name of a directory in which the application should store its configuration files on the current OS. If the parameter `Global` is `True` then the directory returned is a global directory, i.e. valid for all users on the system. If the parameter `Global` is false, then the directory is specific for the user who is executing the program. On systems that do not support multi-user environments, these two directories may be the same.

The directory which is returned is the name of the directory where the application is supposed to store files. This does not mean that the directory exists, or that the user can write in this directory (especially if `Global=True`). It just returns the name of the appropriate location. Also note that the returned name always contains an ending path delimiter.

On systems where the operating system provides a call to determine this location, this call will be used. On systems where there is no such call, an algorithm is used which reflects common practice on that system.

The application name is deduced from the binary name via the `ApplicationName` ([1618](#)) call, but can be configured by means of the `OnGetApplicationName` ([1601](#)) callback.

If `VendorName` ([1742](#)) is not-empty, then `VendorName` will also be inserted before the application-specific directory.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `GetAppConfigFile` ([1679](#)), `ApplicationName` ([1618](#)), `OnGetApplicationName` ([1601](#)), `CreateDir` ([1626](#)), `SysConfigDir` ([1586](#)), `VendorName` ([1742](#))

**76.15.137 GetAppConfigFile**

**Synopsis:** Return an appropriate name for an application configuration file.

**Declaration:** `function GetAppConfigFile(Global: Boolean) : string`  
`function GetAppConfigFile(Global: Boolean; SubDir: Boolean) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetAppConfigFile` returns the name of a file in which the application can store its configuration parameters. The exact name and location of the file depends on the customs of the operating system.

The `Global` parameter determines whether it is a global configuration file (value `True`) or a personal configuration file (value `False`).

The parameter `SubDir`, in case it is set to `True`, will insert the name of a directory before the filename. This can be used in case the application needs to store other data than configuration data in an application-specific directory. Default behaviour is to set this to `False`.

Note that on Windows, even when `SubDir` is `False`, a subdirectory is created for the application configuration files, as per the windows specifications. Specifying `true` will create a subdirectory of the application settings subdirectory.

The default file extension of the returned file is: `.cfg`

No assumptions should be made about the existence or writeability of this file, or the directory where the file should reside. It is best to call `ForceDirectories` (1667) prior to opening a file with the resulting filename.

On systems where the operating system provides a call to determine the location of configuration files, this call will be used. On systems where there is no such call, an algorithm is used which reflects common practice on that system.

The application name is deduced from the binary name via the `ApplicationName` (1618) call, but can be configured by means of the `OnGetApplicationName` (1601) callback.

If `VendorName` (1742) is not-empty, then `VendorName` will be inserted in the path for the config file directory.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetAppConfigDir` (1678), `OnGetApplicationName` (1601), `ApplicationName` (1618), `CreateDir` (1626), `ConfigExtension` (1579), `SysConfigDir` (1586), `VendorName` (1742)

**76.15.138 GetCurrentDir**

**Synopsis:** Return the current working directory of the application.

**Declaration:** `function GetCurrentDir : AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetCurrentDir` returns the current working directory.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetCurrentDir` (1699), `DiskFree` (1636), `DiskSize` (1636)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex28.pp`



---

```

Program Example28;

{ This program demonstrates the GetCurrentDir function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  WriteLn ( 'Current Directory is : ',GetCurrentDir);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.139 GetDirs

**Synopsis:** Return a list of directory names from a path.

**Declaration:**

```

function GetDirs(var DirName: UNICODESTRING;
                 var Dirs: Array of PUNICODECHAR) : LongInt
function GetDirs(var DirName: RAWBYTESTRING;
                 var Dirs: Array of PANSICHAR) : LongInt

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetDirs splits DirName in a null-byte separated list of directory names, Dirs is an array of PChars, pointing to these directory names. The function returns the number of directories found, or -1 if none were found. DirName must contain only OSDirSeparator as Directory separator chars.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** ExtractRelativePath ([1647](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex45.pp

---

```

Program Example45;

{ This program demonstrates the GetDirs function }
{$H+}

Uses sysutils;

Var Dirs : Array[0..127] of pchar;
      I,Count : longint;
      Dir,NewDir : String;

Begin
  Dir:=GetCurrentDir;
  WriteLn ( 'Dir : ',Dir);
  NewDir:='';
  count:=GetDirs(Dir, Dirs);
  For I:=0 to Count-1 do
    begin
      NewDir:=NewDir+' / '+StrPas( Dirs[I]);
      WriteLn (NewDir);
    end;
End.

```

---

**76.15.140 GetDriveIDFromLetter**

Synopsis: Return the drive ID based on a drive letter

Declaration: `function GetDriveIDFromLetter(const ADrive: RawByteString) : Byte`  
`function GetDriveIDFromLetter(const ADrive: UnicodeString) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDriveIDFromLetter` returns the drive ID based on a drive letter. The drive ID can then be used in the `DiskSize` (1636) and `DiskFree` (1636) calls.

See also: `DiskSize` (1636), `DiskFree` (1636)

**76.15.141 GetEnvironmentString**

Synopsis: Return an environment variable by index.

Declaration: `function GetEnvironmentString(Index: Integer) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnvironmentString` returns the `Index`-th environment variable. The index is 1 based, and is bounded from above by the result of `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1681).

For an example, `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1681).

**Remark** Note that on Windows, environment strings can start with an equal sign (=). This is a trick used to pass the current working directory to a newly created process. In this case, extracting the variable name as the characters before the first equal sign will result in an empty name.

Errors: If there is no environment, an empty string is returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentVariable` (1681), `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1681)

**76.15.142 GetEnvironmentVariable**

Synopsis: Return the value of an environment variable.

Declaration: `function GetEnvironmentVariable(const EnvVar: AnsiString) : AnsiString`  
`function GetEnvironmentVariable(const EnvVar: UnicodeString)`  
`: UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnvironmentVariable` returns the value of the `EnvVar` environment variable. If the specified variable does not exist or `EnvVar` is empty, an empty string is returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentString` (1681), `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1681)

**76.15.143 GetEnvironmentVariableCount**

Synopsis: Return the number of variables in the environment.

Declaration: `function GetEnvironmentVariableCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` returns the number of variables in the environment. The number is 1 based, but the result may be zero if there are no environment variables.

Errors: If there is no environment, -1 may be returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentString` ([1681](#)), `GetEnvironmentVariable` ([1681](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex92.pp

---

```
{ $h+ }
program example92;

{ This program demonstrates the
  GetEnvironmentVariableCount function }

uses sysutils;

Var
  I : Integer;

begin
  For I:=1 to GetEnvironmentVariableCount do
    WriteLn(i:3, ' : ', GetEnvironmentString(i));
end.
```

---

#### 76.15.144 GetFileHandle

Synopsis: Extract OS handle from an untyped file or text file.

**Declaration:** `function GetFileHandle(var f: File) : THandle`  
`function GetFileHandle(var f: Text) : THandle`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetFileHandle` returns the operating system handle for the file descriptor F. It can be used in various file operations which are not directly supported by the pascal language.

#### 76.15.145 GetLastOSError

Synopsis: Return the last code from the OS.

**Declaration:** `function GetLastOSError : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetLastOSError` returns the error code from the last operating system call. It does not reset this code. In general, it should be called when an operating system call reported an error condition. In that case, `GetLastOSError` gives extended information about the error.

No assumptions should be made about the resetting of the error code by subsequent OS calls. This may be platform dependent.

See also: `RaiseLastOSError` ([1696](#))

#### 76.15.146 GetLocalTime

Synopsis: Get the local time.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetLocalTime(var SystemTime: TSystemTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLocalTime` returns the system time in a `TSystemTime` (1597) format.

Errors: None.

See also: `Now` (1695), `Date` (1628), `Time` (1729), `TSystemTime` (1597)

### 76.15.147 `GetLocalTimeOffset`

Synopsis: Return local timezone offset

Declaration: `function GetLocalTimeOffset : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLocalTimeOffset` returns the local timezone offset in minutes. This is the difference between UTC time and local time:

```
UTC = LocalTime + GetLocalTimeOffset
```

Note that on Linux/Unix, this information may be inaccurate around the DST time changes (for optimization). In that case, the `unix.ReReadLocalTime` (2049) unit must be used to re-initialize the timezone information.

See also: `unix.ReReadLocalTime` (2049), `Date` (1628), `Time` (1729), `Now` (1695)

### 76.15.148 `GetModuleName`

Synopsis: Return the name of the current module

Declaration: `function GetModuleName(Module: HMODULE) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModuleName` returns the name of the current module. On windows, this is the name of the executable when executed in an executable, or the name of the library when executed in a library.

On all other platforms, the result is always empty, since they provide no such functionality.

### 76.15.149 `GetTempDir`

Synopsis: Return name of system's temporary directory

Declaration: `function GetTempDir(Global: Boolean) : string`  
`function GetTempDir : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTempDir` returns the temporary directory of the system. If `Global` is `True` (the default value) it returns the system temporary directory, if it is `False` then a directory private to the user is returned. The returned name will end with a directory delimiter character.

These directories may be the same. No guarantee is made that this directory exists or is writeable by the user.

The `OnGetTempDir` (1601) handler may be set to provide custom handling of this routine: One could implement callbacks which take into consideration frameworks like KDE or GNOME, and return a different value from the default system implementation.

Errors: On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: `OnGetTempDir` (1601), `GetTempFileName` (1684)

**76.15.150 GetTempFileName**

Synopsis: Return the name of a temporary file.

Declaration: `function GetTempFileName(const Dir: string; const Prefix: string)  
: string  
function GetTempFileName : string  
function GetTempFileName(Dir: PChar; Prefix: PChar; uUnique: DWORD;  
TempFileName: PChar) : DWORD`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTempFileName` returns the name of a temporary file in directory `Dir`. The name of the file starts with `Prefix`.

If `Dir` is empty, the value returned by `GetTempDir` is used, and if `Prefix` is empty, 'TMP' is used.

The `OnGetTempFile` (1601) handler may be set to provide custom handling of this routine: One could implement callbacks which take into consideration frameworks like KDE or GNOME, and return a different value from the default system implementation.

Errors: On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: `GetTempDir` (1683), `OnGetTempFile` (1601)

**76.15.151 GetTickCount**

Synopsis: Get tick count (32-bit, deprecated)

Declaration: `function GetTickCount : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTickCount` returns an increasing clock tick count in milliseconds. It is useful for time measurements, but no assumptions should be made as to the interval between the ticks. This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use `GetTickCount64` (1684) instead.

See also: `GetTickCount64` (1684), `Now` (1695), `Time` (1729), `Sleep` (1700)

**76.15.152 GetTickCount64**

Synopsis: Get tick count (64-bit)

Declaration: `function GetTickCount64 : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTickCount64` returns an increasing clock tick count in milliseconds. It is useful for time measurements, but no assumptions should be made as to the interval between the ticks.

See also: `Now` (1695), `Time` (1729), `Sleep` (1700)

**76.15.153 GetUserDir**

Synopsis: Returns the current user's home directory.

Declaration: `function GetUserDir : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetUserDir` returns the home directory of the current user. On Unix-like systems (that includes Mac OS X), this is the value of the HOME environment variable. On Windows, this is the PROFILE special folder. On all other platforms, the application installation directory is returned.

If non-empty, it contains a trailing path delimiter.

See also: `GetAppConfigDir` ([1678](#))

**76.15.154 GuidCase**

Synopsis: Return the index of a GUID in an array of GUID values

Declaration: `function GuidCase(const GUID: TGUID; const List: Array of TGuid)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GuidCase` returns the index of GUID in the array `List`, where 0 denotes the first element in the list. If GUID is not present in the list, -1 is returned.

See also: `IsEqualGUID` ([1690](#))

**76.15.155 GUIDToString**

Synopsis: Convert a TGUID to a string representation.

Declaration: `function GUIDToString(const GUID: TGUID) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GUIDToString` converts the GUID identifier in `GUID` to a string representation in the form

`{XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX}`

Where each X is a hexadecimal digit.

Errors: None.

See also: `Supports` ([1726](#)), `#rtl.system.TGUID` ([1368](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1708](#)), `IsEqualGuid` ([1690](#))

**76.15.156 HashName**

Synopsis: Calculate a hash from a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function HashName(Name: PAnsiChar) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `HashName` calculates a hash value from a null terminated string. The hash value is calculated in such a way that it returns the same value for strings that only differ in case.

**76.15.157 HookSignal**

Synopsis: Hook a specified signal

Declaration: `procedure HookSignal(RtlSigNum: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `HookSignal` installs the RTL default signal handler for signal `RtlSigNum`. It does not check whether the signal is already handled, and should therefor only be called if `InquireSignal` returns `ssNotHooked`.

**76.15.158 IncAMonth**

Synopsis: Increase a date with a certain amount of months

Declaration: `procedure IncAMonth(var Year: Word; var Month: Word; var Day: Word; NumberOfMonths: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncAMonth` increases the date as specified by `Year`, `Month`, `Day` with `NumberOfMonths`. It takes care of the number of days in a month when calculating the result.

This function does the same as `IncMonth` (1687), but operates on an already decoded date.

See also: `IncMonth` (1687)

**76.15.159 IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter**

Synopsis: Prepend a path delimiter if there is not already one.

Declaration: `function IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING): UNICODESTRING`  
`function IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING): RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter` will insert a path delimiter (`#rtl.system.DirectorySeparator` (1320)) in the first position of `Path`, if there is not already a directory separator at that position. It will return the resulting string. If the path is empty, a `DirectorySeparator` character is returned.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1687), `ExcludeLeadingPathDelimiter` (1640), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1641), `ConcatPaths` (1626)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex94.pp`

---

**Program** `Example94`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncludeLeadingPathDelimiter function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**  
**End.**

---

**76.15.160 IncludeTrailingBackslash**

Synopsis: Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: 

```
function IncludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
                                : UNICODESTRING
function IncludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
                                : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeTrailingBackslash` is provided for backwards compatibility with Delphi. Use `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1687) instead.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1687), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1641), `PathDelim` (1584), `IsPathDelimiter` (1691)

**76.15.161 IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter**

Synopsis: Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: 

```
function IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING)
                                    : UNICODESTRING
function IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING)
                                    : RAWBYTESTRING
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` adds a trailing path delimiter character (`PathDelim` (1584)) to `Path` if none is present yet, and returns the result.

If `Path` is empty, a path delimiter is returned, for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `IncludeTrailingBackslash` (1687), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1641), `PathDelim` (1584), `IsPathDelimiter` (1691)

**76.15.162 IncMonth**

Synopsis: Increases the month in a `TDateTime` value with a given amount.

Declaration: 

```
function IncMonth(const DateTime: TDateTime; NumberOfMonths: Integer)
                : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IncMonth` increases the month number in `DateTime` with `NumberOfMonths`. It wraps the result as to get a month between 1 and 12, and updates the year accordingly. `NumberOfMonths` can be negative, and can be larger than 12 (in absolute value).

Errors: None.

See also: `Date` (1628), `Time` (1729), `Now` (1695)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex15.pp



---

```

Program Example15;

{ This program demonstrates the IncMonth function }

Uses sysutils;

Var ThisDay : TDateTime;

Begin
  ThisDay := Date;
  WriteLn ( 'ThisDay : ', DateToStr ( ThisDay ));
  WriteLn ( '6 months ago : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , - 6 ));
  WriteLn ( '6 months from now : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 6 ));
  WriteLn ( '12 months ago : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , - 12 ));
  WriteLn ( '12 months from now : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 12 ));
  WriteLn ( '18 months ago : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , - 18 ));
  WriteLn ( '18 months from now : ', DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 18 ));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.163 InquireSignal

**Synopsis:** Check whether a signal handler is set (unix only)

**Declaration:** `function InquireSignal(RtlSigNum: Integer) : TSignalState`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RtlSigNum` will check whether the signal `RtlSigNum` is being handled, and by whom. It returns a `TSignalState` result to report the state of the signal, which can be one of the following values:

**ssNotHooked** No signal handler is set for the signal.

**ssHooked** A signal handler is set by the RTL code for the signal.

**ssOverridden** A signal handler was set for the signal by third-party code.

This routine works by resetting the signal handlers, so it is risky to call.

### 76.15.164 IntToHex

**Synopsis:** Convert an integer value to a hexadecimal string.

**Declaration:** `function IntToHex(Value: LongInt; Digits: Integer) : string`  
`function IntToHex(Value: Int64; Digits: Integer) : string`  
`function IntToHex(Value: QWord; Digits: Integer) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IntToHex` converts `Value` to a hexadecimal string representation. The result will contain at least `Digits` characters. If `Digits` is less than the needed number of characters, the string will NOT be truncated. If `Digits` is larger than the needed number of characters, the result is padded with zeroes.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `IntToStr` ([1689](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex73.pp

---

**Program** Example73;

*{ This program demonstrates the IntToHex function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** I : longint;

**Begin**

**For** I:=0 to 31 **do**

**begin**

**WriteLn** (IntToHex(1 shl I,8));

**WriteLn** (IntToHex(15 shl I,8))

**end**;

**End.**

---

### 76.15.165 IntToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert an integer value to a decimal string.

**Declaration:** function IntToStr(Value: LongInt) : string  
                   function IntToStr(Value: Int64) : string  
                   function IntToStr(Value: QWord) : string

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IntToStr converts Value to its string representation. The resulting string has only as much characters as needed to represent the value. If the value is negative a minus sign is prepended to the string.

**Errors:** None.

See also: IntToHex ([1688](#)), StrToInt ([1722](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex74.pp

---

**Program** Example74;

*{ This program demonstrates the IntToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** I : longint;

**Begin**

**For** I:=0 to 31 **do**

**begin**

**WriteLn** (IntToStr(1 shl I));

**WriteLn** (IntToStr(15 shl I));

**end**;

**End.**

---

**76.15.166 IsDelimiter**

Synopsis: Check whether a given string is a delimiter character.

Declaration: `function IsDelimiter(const Delimiters: string; const S: string;  
Index: SizeInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsDelimiter` checks whether the `Index`-th character in the string `S` is a delimiter character as passed in `Delimiters`. If `Index` is out of range, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LastDelimiter` ([1692](#))

**76.15.167 IsEqualGUID**

Synopsis: Check whether two TGUID variables are equal.

Declaration: `function IsEqualGUID(const guid1: TGUID; const guid2: TGUID) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsEqualGUID` checks whether `guid1` and `guid2` are equal, and returns `True` if this is the case, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `Supports` ([1726](#)), `#rtl.system.TGUID` ([1368](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1708](#)), `GuidToString` ([1685](#))

**76.15.168 IsLeadChar**

Declaration: `function IsLeadChar(C: AnsiChar) : Boolean; Overload  
function IsLeadChar(B: Byte) : Boolean; Overload  
function IsLeadChar(Ch: WideChar) : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

**76.15.169 IsLeapYear**

Synopsis: Determine whether a year is a leap year.

Declaration: `function IsLeapYear(Year: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsLeapYear` returns `True` if `Year` is a leap year, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `IncMonth` ([1687](#)), `Date` ([1628](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ This program demonstrates the IsLeapYear function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

---

```

Var YY,MM,dd : Word;

Procedure TestYear (Y : Word);

begin
    WriteLn (Y, ' is leap year : ', IsLeapYear(Y));
end;

Begin
    DeCodeDate (Date, YY, mm, dd);
    TestYear(yy);
    TestYear(2000);
    TestYear(1900);
    TestYear(1600);
    TestYear(1992);
    TestYear(1995);
End.

```

---

### 76.15.170 IsPathDelimiter

Synopsis: Is the character at the given position a pathdelimiter ?

**Declaration:** `function IsPathDelimiter(const Path: UNICODESTRING; Index: Integer) : Boolean`  
`function IsPathDelimiter(const Path: RAWBYTESTRING; Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsPathDelimiter` returns `True` if the character at position `Index` equals `PathDelim` ([1584](#)), i.e. if it is a path delimiter character for the current platform.

**Errors:** `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` ([1687](#)) `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` ([1641](#)) `PathDelim` ([1584](#))

### 76.15.171 IsValidIdent

Synopsis: Check whether a string is a valid identifier name.

**Declaration:** `function IsValidIdent(const Ident: string; AllowDots: Boolean; StrictDots: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsValidIdent` returns `True` if `Ident` can be used as a component name. It returns `False` otherwise. `Ident` must consist of a letter or underscore, followed by a combination of letters, numbers or underscores to be a valid identifier.

**Errors:** None.

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex75.pp`

---

**Program** Example75;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidIdent function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

---

```

Procedure Testit (S : String);

begin
  Write ( ''' , S, '" is ');
  If not IsValidIdent(S) then
    Write ('NOT ');
    WriteLn ('a valid identifier');
end;

Begin
  Testit ('_MyObj');
  Testit ('My__Obj1');
  Testit ('My_1_Obj');
  Testit ('1MyObject');
  Testit ('My@Object');
  Testit ('M123');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.172 LastDelimiter

Synopsis: Return the last occurrence of a set of delimiters in a string.

Declaration: `function LastDelimiter(const Delimiters: string; const S: string) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `LastDelimiter` returns the *last* occurrence of any character in the set `Delimiters` in the string `S`.

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex88.pp

---

**Program** example88;

*{ This program demonstrates the LastDelimiter function }*

**uses** SysUtils;

```

begin
  WriteLn (LastDelimiter ('\\.: ', 'c:\filename.ext'));
end.

```

---

### 76.15.173 LeftStr

Synopsis: Return a number of characters starting at the left of a string.

Declaration: `function LeftStr(const S: string; Count: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `LeftStr` returns the `Count` leftmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy (S, 1, Count)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `RightStr` ([1698](#)), `TrimLeft` ([1731](#)), `TrimRight` ([1732](#)), `Trim` ([1731](#))

---

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

*{ This program demonstrates the LeftStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

```
WriteLn (LeftStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',20));
WriteLn (LeftStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',15));
WriteLn (LeftStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',1));
WriteLn (LeftStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',200));
```

**End.**

---

### 76.15.174 LoadStr

Synopsis: Load a string from the resource tables.

Declaration: `function LoadStr(Ident: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is not yet implemented. resources are not yet supported.

### 76.15.175 LowerCase

Synopsis: Return a lowercase version of a string.

Declaration: `function LowerCase(const s: string) : string; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(const s: string; LocaleOptions: TLocaleOptions)`  
`: string; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(const V: variant) : string; Overload`  
`function LowerCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `LowerCase` returns the lowercase equivalent of `S`. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the lowercase function of the system unit, and is provided for compatibility only.

`Lowercase` does not change the number of characters (or bytes) in an ansistring or shortstring.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLowerCase` ([1608](#)), `UpperCase` ([1741](#)), `AnsiUpperCase` ([1616](#))

---

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex77.pp

---

**Program** Example77;

*{ This program demonstrates the LowerCase function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

```
WriteLn (LowerCase('THIS WILL COME out all LoWeRcAsE !'));
```

**End.**

---

**76.15.176 MSecsToTimeStamp**

Synopsis: Convert a number of milliseconds to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function MSecsToTimeStamp(MSecs: Comp) : TTimeStamp`

Visibility: default

Description: `MSecsToTimeStamp` converts the given number of milliseconds to a `TTimeStamp` date/time notation.

Use `TTimeStamp` variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

Errors: None.

See also: `TimeStampToMSecs` ([1730](#)), `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1632](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

*{ This program demonstrates the MSecsToTimeStamp function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `MS : Comp;`  
       `TS : TTimeStamp;`  
       `DT : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp(Now);`  
    `WriteLn ('Now in days since 1/1/0001 : ',TS.Date);`  
    `WriteLn ('Now in millisecs since midnight : ',TS.Time);`  
    `MS:=TimeStampToMSecs(TS);`  
    `WriteLn ('Now in millisecs since 1/1/0001 : ',MS);`  
    `MS:=MS-1000*3600*2;`  
    `TS:=MSecsToTimeStamp(MS);`  
    `DT:=TimeStampToDateTime(TS);`  
    `WriteLn ('Now minus 1 day : ',DateTimeToStr(DT));`

**End.**

---

**76.15.177 NewStr**

Synopsis: Allocate a new ansistring on the heap.

Declaration: `function NewStr(const S: string) : PString; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `NewStr` assigns a new dynamic string on the heap, copies `S` into it, and returns a pointer to the newly assigned string.

This function is obsolete, and shouldn't be used any more. The `AnsiString` mechanism also allocates ansistrings on the heap, and should be preferred over this mechanism.

For an example, see `AssignStr` ([1618](#)).

Errors: If not enough memory is present, an `EOutOfMemory` exception will be raised.

See also: `AssignStr` ([1618](#)), `DisposeStr` ([1637](#))

**76.15.178 Now**

Synopsis: Returns the current date and time.

Declaration: `function Now : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Now` returns the current date and time. It is equivalent to `Date+Time`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Date` ([1628](#)), `Time` ([1729](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ This program demonstrates the Now function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Now : ', DateTimeToStr (Now) );`

**End.**

---

**76.15.179 OutOfMemoryError**

Synopsis: Raise an `EOutOfMemory` exception

Declaration: `procedure OutOfMemoryError`

Visibility: default

Description: `OutOfMemoryError` raises an `EOutOfMemory` ([1756](#)) exception, with an exception object that has been allocated on the heap at program startup. The program should never create an `EOutOfMemory` ([1756](#)) exception, but always call this routine.

See also: `EOutOfMemory` ([1756](#))

**76.15.180 QuotedStr**

Synopsis: Return a quotes version of a string.

Declaration: `function QuotedStr(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `QuotedStr` returns the string `S`, quoted with single quotes. This means that `S` is enclosed in single quotes, and every single quote in `S` is doubled. It is equivalent to a call to `AnsiQuotedStr(s, '"')`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiQuotedStr` ([1609](#)), `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` ([1607](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex78.pp`



---

```

Program Example78;

{ This program demonstrates the QuotedStr function }

Uses sysutils;

Var S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:= 'He said ''Hello'' and walked on';
  WriteLn (S);
  WriteLn ( ' becomes' );
  WriteLn (QuotedStr(S));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.181 RaiseLastError

**Synopsis:** Raise an exception with the last Operating System error code.

**Declaration:** `procedure RaiseLastError; Overload`  
`procedure RaiseLastError(LastError: Integer); Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RaiseLastError` raises an `EOSError` ([1755](#)) exception with the error code returned by `GetLastError`. If the Error code is nonzero, then the corresponding error message will be returned. If the error code is zero, a standard message will be returned.

**Errors:** This procedure may not be implemented on all platforms. If it is not, then a normal Exception ([1758](#)) will be raised.

**See also:** `EOSError` ([1755](#)), `GetLastError` ([1682](#)), Exception ([1758](#))

### 76.15.182 RemoveDir

**Synopsis:** Remove a directory from the file system.

**Declaration:** `function RemoveDir(const Dir: RawByteString) : Boolean`  
`function RemoveDir(const Dir: UnicodeString) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RemoveDir` removes directory `Dir` from the disk. If the directory is not absolute, it is appended to the current working directory.

For an example, see `CreateDir` ([1626](#)).

**Errors:** In case of error (e.g. the directory isn't empty) the function returns `False`. If successful, `True` is returned.

### 76.15.183 RenameFile

**Synopsis:** Rename a file.

**Declaration:** `function RenameFile(const OldName: UnicodeString;  
const NewName: UnicodeString) : Boolean  
function RenameFile(const OldName: RawByteString;  
const NewName: RawByteString) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RenameFile` renames a file from `OldName` to `NewName`. The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise. For safety, the new name must be a full path specification, including the directory, otherwise it will be assumed to be a filename relative to the current working directory. *Remark:* The implementation of `RenameFile` relies on the underlying OS's support for renaming/-moving a file. Whether or not a file can be renamed across disks or partitions depends entirely on the OS. On unix-like OS-es, the rename function will fail when used across partitions. On Windows, it will work.

**Errors:** On Error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `DeleteFile` ([1635](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex44.pp`

**Program** `Example44;`

*{ This program demonstrates the RenameFile function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `F : Longint;  
S : String;`

**Begin**

`S:= 'Some short file.';  
F:= FileCreate ( 'test.dap' );  
FileWrite(F,S[1],Length(S));  
FileClose(F);  
If RenameFile ( 'test.dap', 'test.dat' ) then  
WriteLn ( 'Successfully renamed files.' );`

**End.**

### 76.15.184 ReplaceDate

**Synopsis:** Replace the date part of a date/time stamp

**Declaration:** `procedure ReplaceDate(var DateTime: TDateTime; const NewDate: TDateTime)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReplaceDate` replaces the date part of `DateTime` with `NewDate`. The time part is left unchanged.

**See also:** `ReplaceTime` ([1697](#))

### 76.15.185 ReplaceTime

**Synopsis:** Replace the time part

**Declaration:** `procedure ReplaceTime(var dateTime: TDateTime; NewTime: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReplaceTime` replaces the time part in `dateTime` with `NewTime`. The date part remains untouched.

### 76.15.186 RightStr

Synopsis: Return a number of characters from a string, starting at the end.

Declaration: `function RightStr(const S: string; Count: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `RightStr` returns the `Count` rightmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy (S, Length (S) + 1 - Count, Count)`.

If `Count` is larger than the actual length of `S` only the real length will be used.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftStr` ([1692](#)), `Trim` ([1731](#)), `TrimLeft` ([1731](#)), `TrimRight` ([1732](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex79.pp`

---

**Program** `Example79;`

*{ This program demonstrates the RightStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

**WriteLn** (`RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz', 20)`);

**WriteLn** (`RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz', 15)`);

**WriteLn** (`RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz', 1)`);

**WriteLn** (`RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz', 200)`);

**End.**

---

### 76.15.187 SafeLoadLibrary

Synopsis: Load a library safely

Declaration: `function SafeLoadLibrary(const FileName: AnsiString; ErrorMode: DWord)  
: HMODULE`

Visibility: default

Description: `SafeLoadLibrary` saves and restores some registers before and after issuing a call to `LoadLibrary`.

Errors: None.

### 76.15.188 SameFileName

Synopsis: Are two filenames referring to the same file ?

Declaration: `function SameFileName(const S1: string; const S2: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameFileName` returns `True` if calling `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1604](#)) with arguments `S1` and `S2` returns 0, and returns `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1604](#))

## 76.15.189 SameStr

**Synopsis:** Check whether 2 strings are the same, case insensitive

```
Declaration: function SameStr(const s1: string; const s2: string) : Boolean
                ; Overload
function SameStr(const s1: string; const s2: string;
                LocaleOptions: TLocaleOptions) : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** SameStr checks whether S1 and S2 are the same. This is equivalent to checking that CompareStr (1624) returns 0.

Errors: None.

See also: [CompareStr \(1624\)](#)

## 76.15.190 SameText

**Synopsis:** Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case insensitive)

```
Declaration: function SameText(const s1: string; const s2: string) : Boolean
                ; Overload
    function SameText(const s1: string; const s2: string;
                        LocaleOptions: TLocaleOptions) : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** SameText calls CompareText (1625) with S1 and S2 as parameters and returns True if the result of that call is zero, or False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [CompareText \(1625\)](#), [AnsiSameText \(1610\)](#), [AnsiSameStr \(1610\)](#)

## 76.15.191 SetCurrentDir

**Synopsis:** Set the current directory of the application.

```
Declaration: function SetCurrentDir(const NewDir: RawByteString) : Boolean
             function SetCurrentDir(const NewDir: UnicodeString) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetCurrentDir` sets the current working directory of your program to `NewDir`. It returns `True` if the function was successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** In case of error, `False` is returned.

See also: [GetCurrentDir \(1679\)](#)

**76.15.192 SetDirSeparators**

Synopsis: Set the directory separators to the known directory separators.

Declaration: `function SetDirSeparators(const FileName: UNICODESTRING) : UNICODESTRING`  
`function SetDirSeparators(const FileName: RAWBYTESTRING) : RAWBYTESTRING`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDirSeparators` returns `FileName` with all possible `DirSeparators` replaced by `OSDirSeparator`.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExpandFileName` (1643), `ExtractFilePath` (1646), `ExtractFileDir` (1645)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex47.pp`

---

**Program** `Example47`;

*{ This program demonstrates the SetDirSeparators function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** (`SetDirSeparators(' /pp\bin\win32\ppc386 ')`);

**End.**

---

**76.15.193 ShowException**

Synopsis: Show the current exception to the user.

Declaration: `procedure ShowException(ExceptObject: TObject; ExceptAddr: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShowException` shows a message stating that a `ExceptObject` was raised at address `ExceptAddr`.

It uses `ExceptionErrorMessage` (1640) to create the message, and is aware of the fact whether the application is a console application or a GUI application. For a console application, the message is written to standard error output. For a GUI application, `OnShowException` (1601) is executed.

Errors: If, for a GUI application, `OnShowException` (1601) is not set, no message will be displayed to the user.

The exception message can be at most 255 characters long: It is possible that no memory can be allocated on the heap, so ansistrings are not available, so a shortstring is used to display the message.

See also: `ExceptObject` (1640), `ExceptAddr` (1639), `ExceptionErrorMessage` (1640)

**76.15.194 Sleep**

Synopsis: Suspend execution of a program for a certain time.

Declaration: `procedure Sleep(milliseconds: Cardinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sleep` suspends the execution of the program for the specified number of milliseconds (`milliseconds`).

After the specified period has expired, program execution resumes.

**Remark** The indicated time is not exact, i.e. it is a minimum time. No guarantees are made as to the exact duration of the suspension.

**76.15.195 SScanf**

Synopsis: Scan a string for substrings and return the substrings

Declaration: `function SScanf(const s: string; const fmt: string;  
const Pointers: Array of Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SScanF` scans the string `S` for the elements specified in `Fmt`, and returns the elements in the pointers in `Pointers`. The `Fmt` can contain placeholders of the form `%X` where `X` can be one of the following characters:

**d**Placeholder for a decimal number.

**f**Placeholder for a floating point number (an extended)

**s**Placeholder for a string of arbitrary length.

**c**Placeholder for a single character

The `Pointers` array contains a list of pointers, each pointer should point to a memory location of a type that corresponds to the type of placeholder in that position:

**d**A pointer to an integer.

**f**A pointer to an extended.

**s**A pointer to an ansistring.

**c**A pointer to a single character.

Errors: No error checking is performed on the type of the memory location.

See also: `Format` ([1668](#))

**76.15.196 StrAlloc**

Synopsis: Allocate a null-terminated string on the heap.

Declaration: `function StrAlloc(Size: Cardinal) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a string with length `Len`, terminating `#0` included, and returns a pointer to it.

Additionally, `StrAlloc` allocates 4 extra bytes to store the size of the allocated memory. Therefore this function is NOT compatible with the `StrAlloc` ([1262](#)) function of the `Strings` unit.

For an example, see `StrBufSize` ([1702](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `StrBufSize` ([1702](#)), `StrDispose` ([1704](#)), `StrAlloc` ([1262](#))

**76.15.197 StrBufSize**

Synopsis: Return the size of a null-terminated string allocated on the heap.

Declaration: `function StrBufSize(Str: PChar) : Cardinal`  
`function StrBufSize(str: pwidechar) : Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrBufSize` returns the memory allocated for `Str`. This function ONLY gives the correct result if `Str` was allocated using `StrAlloc` (1701).

Errors: If no more memory is available, a runtime error occurs.

See also: `StrAlloc` (1701), `StrDispose` (1704)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** `Example46`;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrBufSize function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Const** `S = 'Some nice string'`;

**Var** `P : Pchar`;

**Begin**

`P := StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);`  
`StrPCopy(P,S);`  
`Write (P, ' has length ',length(S));`  
`WriteLn (' and buffer size ',StrBufSize(P));`  
`StrDispose(P);`

**End.**

---

**76.15.198 StrByteType**

Synopsis: Return the type of byte in a null-terminated string for a multi-byte character set

Declaration: `function StrByteType(Str: PChar; Index: SizeUInt) : TMBcsByteType`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrByteType` returns the type of byte in the null-terminated string `Str` at (0-based) position `Index`.

Errors: No checking on the index is performed.

See also: `TMBcsByteType` (1594), `ByteType` (1621)

**76.15.199 strcat**

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings.

Declaration: `function strcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strcat(dest: pwidechar; source: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Attaches Source to Dest and returns Dest.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrLCat ([1708](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCat function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar String.';

**Var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

P2:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)\*2+1);

StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2=P1 }

StrCat (P2,P1); { Append P2 once more }

Writeln ('P2 : ',P2);

StrDispose(P2);

**end.**

---

### 76.15.200 StrCharLength

Synopsis: Return the length of a null-terminated string in characters.

Declaration: function StrCharLength(const Str: PChar) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: StrCharLength returns the length of the null-terminated string Str (a widestring) in characters (not in bytes). It uses the widestring manager to do this.

### 76.15.201 strcmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case sensitive.

Declaration: function strcmp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : SizeInt  
function strcmp(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

For an example, see StrLComp ([1709](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp ([1709](#)), StrIComp ([1706](#)), StrLComp ([1711](#))



**76.15.202 StrCopy**

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar; Overload`  
`function StrCopy(Dest: PWideChar; Source: PWideChar) : PWideChar`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Copy the null terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain `Source`, i.e. `StrLen(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1714](#)), `StrLCopy` ([1710](#)), `StrECopy` ([1705](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4`;

**Uses** `strings`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCopy function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.'`;

**var** `PP : PChar`;

**begin**

`PP:= StrAlloc ( StrLen (P)+1);`

`STrCopy (PP,P);`

`If StrComp (PP,P)<>0 then`

`Writeln ( 'Oh-oh problems... '`

`else`

`Writeln ( 'All is well : PP=',PP);`

`StrDispose(PP);`

**end.**

---

**76.15.203 StrDispose**

Synopsis: Dispose of a null-terminated string on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure StrDispose(Str: PChar)`  
`procedure StrDispose(str: pwidechar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrDispose` frees any memory allocated for `Str`. This function will only function correctly if `Str` has been allocated on the heap, for example using `StrAlloc` ([1701](#)) or `StrNew` ([1713](#)) from the `SysUtils` unit.

For an example, see `StrBufSize` ([1702](#)).

Errors: If an invalid pointer is passed, or a pointer not allocated with `StrAlloc`, an error may occur.

See also: `StrBufSize` ([1702](#)), `StrAlloc` ([1701](#)), `StrNew` ([1713](#))

**76.15.204 strcpy**

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, return a pointer to the end.

Declaration: `function strcpy(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strcpy(dest: pwidechar; source: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies the Null-terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to the end (i.e. the terminating Null-character) of the copied string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCopy` ([1710](#)), `StrCopy` ([1704](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** `Example6;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrECopy function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';`

**Var** `PP : PChar;`

**begin**

`PP:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P)+1);`

`If Longint(StrECopy(PP,P))-Longint(PP)<>StrLen(P) then`  
`Writeln('Something is wrong here !')`

`else`

`Writeln ('PP= ',PP);`

`StrDispose(PP);`

**end.**

---

**76.15.205 strend**

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the end of a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strend(p: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strend(p: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the end of `P`. (i.e. to the terminating null-character.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLen` ([1710](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example6;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrEnd function. }*

```

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

begin
  If Longint(StrEnd(P)) - Longint(P) <> StrLen(P) then
    WriteLn('Something is wrong here !')
  else
    WriteLn('All is well..');
end.

```

---

### 76.15.206 StrFmt

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments, store the result in a buffer.

**Declaration:** function StrFmt(Buffer: PChar; Fmt: PChar; const args: Array of const)  
: PChar  
function StrFmt(Buffer: PChar; Fmt: PChar; const Args: Array of const;  
const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : PChar

Visibility: default

**Description:** StrFmt will format fmt with Args, as the Format (1668) function does, and it will store the result in Buffer. The function returns Buffer. Buffer should point to enough space to contain the whole result.

**Errors:** for a list of errors, see Format (1668).

See also: StrLFmt (1711), FmtStr (1667), Format (1668), FormatBuf (1674)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex80.pp

---

**Program** Example80;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

SetLength(S,80);

WriteLn (StrFmt (@S[1], 'For some nice examples of fomattting see %s.', ['Format']));  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.207 stricmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case insensitive.

**Declaration:** function stricmp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : SizeInt  
function stricmp(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1 < S2.

- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp ([1709](#)), StrComp ([1703](#)), StrLComp ([1711](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';  
           P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

**Var** L : Longint;

**begin**

**Write** ( 'P1 and P2 are ');  
  **If** StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 **then write** ( 'NOT ');  
  **write** ( 'equal. The first ');  
  L:=1;  
  **While** StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 **do inc** (L);  
  **dec**(L);  
  **WriteLn** (L, ' characters are the same.');

**end.**

---

### 76.15.208 StringOf

Synopsis: Create a Unicode string from an array of bytes

**Declaration:** function StringOf(const Bytes: TBytes) : UnicodeString

Visibility: default

**Description:** StringOf converts an array of bytes (Bytes) to a Unicode string. It interprets the bytes as a single-byte string, using the default codepage.

To create a string where the bytes are interpreted as wide chars, use WideStringOf ([1745](#)) instead.

Errors: None.

See also: WideBytesOf ([1742](#)), WideStringOf ([1745](#))

### 76.15.209 StringReplace

Synopsis: Replace occurrences of one substring with another in a string.

**Declaration:** function StringReplace(const S: string; const OldPattern: string;  
                                   const NewPattern: string; Flags: TReplaceFlags;  
                                   out aCount: Integer) : string  
 function StringReplace(const S: string; const OldPattern: string;  
                                   const NewPattern: string; Flags: TReplaceFlags)  
                                   : string

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringReplace` searches the string `S` for occurrences of the string `OldPattern` and, if it is found, replaces it with `NewPattern`. It returns the resulting string. The behaviour of `StringReplace` can be tuned with `Flags`, which is of type `TReplaceFlags` (1595). Standard behaviour is to replace only the first occurrence of `OldPattern`, and to search case sensitively.

Errors: None.

See also: `TReplaceFlags` (1595), `WideStringReplace` (1746)

### 76.15.210 StringToGUID

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a native `TGUID` type.

**Declaration:** `function StringToGUID(const S: string) : TGUID`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringToGUID` converts the string `S` to a valid GUID. The string `S` should be of the form

```
{XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX}
```

Where each `X` is a hexadecimal digit. The dashes and braces are required.

Errors: In case `S` contains an invalid GUID representation, a `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: `Supports` (1726), `#rtl.system.TGUID` (1368), `GUIDToString` (1685), `IsEqualGuid` (1690)

### 76.15.211 strlcat

**Synopsis:** Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings, with length boundary.

**Declaration:** `function strlcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar; l: SizeInt) : pchar`  
`function strlcat(dest: pwidechar; source: pwidechar; l: SizeInt)`  
`: pwidechar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Adds `MaxLen` characters from `Source` to `Dest`, and adds a terminating null-character. Returns `Dest`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrCat` (1702)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCat function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = '1234567890';`

**Var** `P2 : PChar;`

---

```

begin
  P2:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)*2+1);
  P2^:=#0; { Zero length }
  StrCat (P2,P1);
  StrLCat (P2,P1,5);
  WriteLn ('P2 = ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2)
end.

```

---

### 76.15.212 strlcomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters of 2 null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function strlcomp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar; l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function strlcomp(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar; l: SizeInt)`  
`: SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrComp ([1703](#)), StrIComp ([1706](#)), StrLComp ([1711](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';  
 P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

**Var** L : Longint;

```

begin
  Write ('P1 and P2 are ');
  If StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 then write ('NOT ');
  write ('equal. The first ');
  L:=1;
  While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);
  dec(L);
  WriteLn (L,' characters are the same.');
```

---

end.

**76.15.213 StrLCopy**

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, limited in length.

Declaration: `function strlcopy(dest: pchar; source: pchar; maxlen: SizeInt) : pchar`  
                   `; Overload`  
                   `function StrLCopy(Dest: PWideChar; Source: PWideChar; MaxLen: SizeInt)`  
                   `: PWideChar; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and makes Dest a null terminated string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrCopy ([1704](#)), StrECopy ([1705](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = '123456789ABCDEF';

**var** PP : PChar;

**begin**

  PP:= StrAlloc(11);

**WriteLn** ('First 10 characters of P : ',StrLCopy (PP,P,10));

**StrDispose**(PP);

**end.**

---

**76.15.214 StrLen**

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strlen(p: pchar) : sizeint; Overload`  
                   `function StrLen(p: pwidechar) : sizeint; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string P. If P equals Nil then zero (0) is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([1713](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex1.pp

---

**Program** Example1;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLen function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a constant pchar string';

---

```
begin
  WriteLn ('P          : ',p);
  WriteLn ('length(P) : ',StrLen(P));
end.
```

---

### 76.15.215 StrLFmt

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments, but with limited length.

Declaration: `function StrLFmt(Buffer: PChar; Maxlen: Cardinal; Fmt: PChar; const args: Array of const) : Pchar`  
`function StrLFmt(Buffer: PChar; Maxlen: Cardinal; Fmt: PChar; const args: Array of const; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrLFmt` will format `fmt` with `Args`, as the `Format` (1668) function does, and it will store maximally `Maxlen` characters of the result in `Buffer`. The function returns `Buffer`. `Buffer` should point to enough space to contain `MaxLen` characters.

Errors: for a list of errors, see `Format` (1668).

See also: `StrFmt` (1706), `FmtStr` (1667), `Format` (1668), `FormatBuf` (1674)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex81.pp`

---

**Program** `Example80`;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `S` : `AnsiString`;

**Begin**

`SetLength(S,80)`;

`WriteLn (StrLFmt (@S[1],80,'For some nice examples of fomattting see %s.',['Format']))`;

**End.**

---

### 76.15.216 strlicomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters in 2 null-terminated strings, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function strlicomp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar; l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`function strlicomp(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar; l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum `L` characters of the null-terminated strings `S1` and `S2`, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative `Longint` when `S1<S2`.



- 0 when  $S1=S2$ .
- A positive `Longint` when  $S1>S2$ .

For an example, see `StrIComp` ([1706](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` ([1709](#)), `StrComp` ([1703](#)), `StrIComp` ([1706](#))

### 76.15.217 `strlower`

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function strlower(p: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strlower(p: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts `P` to an all-lowercase string. Returns `P`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrUpper` ([1726](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `Example14`;

**Uses** `strings`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLower and StrUpper functions. }*

**Const**

`P1 : PChar = 'THIS IS AN UPPERCASE PCHAR STRING';`  
`P2 : PChar = 'this is a lowercase string';`

**begin**

`P1:=StrNew(P1);`  
`P2:=strNew(P2);`  
`WriteLn ('Uppercase : ',StrUpper(P2));`  
`StrLower(P1);`  
`WriteLn ('Lowercase : ',P1);`  
`StrDispose(P1);`  
`StrDispose(P2);`

**end.**

---

### 76.15.218 `StrMove`

Synopsis: Move a null-terminated string to new location.

Declaration: `function strmove(dest: pchar; source: pchar; l: SizeInt) : pchar`  
`; Overload`  
`function StrMove(dest: PWideChar; source: PWideChar; l: SizeInt)`  
`: PWideChar; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Copies `MaxLen` characters from `Source` to `Dest`. No terminating null-character is copied. Returns `Dest`

**Errors:** None.

See also: `StrLCopy` ([1710](#)), `StrCopy` ([1704](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex10.pp`

---

**Program** `Example10`;

**Uses** `strings`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrMove function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PCHAR = 'This is a pchar string.'`;

**Var** `P2 : Pchar`;

**begin**

`P2:=StrAlloc(StrLen(P1)+1);`

`StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2:=P1 }`

`Writeln ('P2 = ',P2);`

`StrDispose(P2);`

**end.**

---

### 76.15.219 **strnew**

**Synopsis:** Allocate room for new null-terminated string.

**Declaration:** `function strnew(p: pchar) : pchar; Overload`  
`function strnew(p: PWideChar) : PWideChar; Overload`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** Copies `P` to the Heap, and returns a pointer to the copy.

**Errors:** Returns `Nil` if no memory was available for the copy.

See also: `StrCopy` ([1704](#)), `StrDispose` ([1704](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16`;

**Uses** `strings`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrNew function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string'`;

**var** `P2 : PChar`;

**begin**

`P2:=StrNew (P1);`

**If** `P1=P2` **then**

`writeln ('This can''t be happening...')`

---

```

else
  writeln ( 'P2 : ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
end.

```

---

### 76.15.220 StrNextChar

Synopsis: Returns a pointer to the location of the next empty character in a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function StrNextChar(const Str: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrNextChar` returns a pointer to the null-character that terminates the string `Str`

Errors: if `Str` is not properly terminated, an access violation may occur.

### 76.15.221 StrPas

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to an ansistring.

Declaration: `function StrPas(Str: PChar) : string; Overload`  
`function StrPas(Str: PWideChar) : UnicodeString; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in `Str` to an `Ansistring`, and returns this string. This string is NOT truncated at 255 characters as is the system unit's version.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1714](#)), `StrPLCopy` ([1715](#))

### 76.15.222 StrPCopy

Synopsis: Copy an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function StrPCopy(Dest: PChar; const Source: string) : PChar; Overload`  
`function StrPCopy(Dest: PWideChar; const Source: UnicodeString)`  
`: PWideChar; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrPCopy` Converts the `Ansistring` in `Source` to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to `Dest`.  
`Dest` needs enough room to contain the string `Source`, i.e. `Length(Source) + 1` bytes.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `Dest` points to enough memory to contain `Source`.

See also: `StrPLCopy` ([1715](#)), `StrPas` ([1714](#))

**76.15.223 StrPLCopy**

Synopsis: Copy a limited number of characters from an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function StrPLCopy(Dest: PChar; const Source: string; MaxLen: SizeUInt)  
: PChar; Overload  
function StrPLCopy(Dest: PWideChar; const Source: UnicodeString;  
MaxLen: SizeUInt) : PWideChar; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrPLCopy` Converts maximally `MaxLen` characters of the Ansistring in `Source` to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain the characters.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether `Dest` points to enough memory to contain `L` characters of `Source`.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1714](#))

**76.15.224 strpos**

Synopsis: Find position of one null-terminated substring in another.

Declaration: `function strpos(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : pchar  
function strpos(str1: pwidechar; str2: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of `S2` in `S1`. If `S2` does not occur in `S1`, returns `Nil`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrScan` ([1716](#)), `StrRScan` ([1715](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPos function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PChar string.';`  
`S : Pchar = 'is';`

**begin**

`WriteLn ('Position of ''is'' in P : ', sizeint(StrPos(P,S)) - sizeint(P));`  
**end.**

---

**76.15.225 strscan**

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar  
function strscan(p: pwidechar; c: WideChar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character *C* in the null-terminated string *P*. If *C* does not occur, returns *Nil*.

For an example, see [StrScan \(1716\)](#).

**Errors:** None.

See also: [StrScan \(1716\)](#), [StrPos \(1715\)](#)

### 76.15.226 StrScan

**Synopsis:** Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

**Declaration:** `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar; Overload`  
`function StrScan(P: PWideChar; C: WideChar) : PWideChar; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character *C* in the null-terminated string *P*. If *C* does not occur, returns *Nil*.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [StrRScan \(1715\)](#), [StrPos \(1715\)](#)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** Example13;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrScan and StrRScan functions. }*

**Const** *P* : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';  
*S* : Char = 's' ;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from first ''s'' : ', **StrScan**(*P*, *s*));

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from last ''s'' : ', **StrRScan**(*P*, *s*));

**end.**

---

### 76.15.227 StrToBool

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function StrToBool(const S: string) : Boolean`  
`function StrToBool(const S: string;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToBool` will convert the string *S* to a boolean value. The string *S* can contain one of 'True', 'False' (case is ignored) or a numerical value. If it contains a numerical value, 0 is converted to False, all other values result in True. If the string *S* contains no valid boolean, then an `EConvertError (1751)` exception is raised.

**Errors:** On error, an `EConvertError (1751)` exception is raised.

See also: [BoolToStr \(1620\)](#)

**76.15.228 StrToBoolDef**

Synopsis: Convert string to boolean value, returning default in case of error

Declaration: `function StrToBoolDef(const S: string; Default: Boolean) : Boolean`  
`function StrToBoolDef(const S: string; Default: Boolean;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToBoolDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a boolean value, and returns the boolean value in case of success. In case `S` does not contain a valid boolean string, `Default` is returned.

See also: `StrToBool` ([1716](#)), `TryStrToBool` ([1734](#))

**76.15.229 StrToCurr**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a currency value

Declaration: `function StrToCurr(const S: string) : Currency`  
`function StrToCurr(const S: string;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToCurr` converts a string to a currency value and returns the value. The string should contain a valid currency amount, without currency symbol. If the conversion fails, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

Errors: On error, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `CurrToStr` ([1628](#)), `StrToCurrDef` ([1717](#))

**76.15.230 StrToCurrDef**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a currency value, using a default value

Declaration: `function StrToCurrDef(const S: string; Default: Currency) : Currency`  
`function StrToCurrDef(const S: string; Default: Currency;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToCurrDef` converts a string to a currency value and returns the value. The string should contain a valid currency amount, without currency symbol. If the conversion fails, the fallback `Default` value is returned.

Errors: On error, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `CurrToStr` ([1628](#)), `StrToCurr` ([1717](#))

**76.15.231 StrToDate**

Synopsis: Convert a date string to a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:**

```
function StrToDate(const S: ShortString) : TDateTime
function StrToDate(const S: AnsiString) : TDateTime
function StrToDate(const S: ShortString; separator: Char) : TDateTime
function StrToDate(const S: AnsiString; separator: Char) : TDateTime
function StrToDate(const S: string; FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
    : TDateTime
function StrToDate(const S: ShortString; const useformat: string;
    separator: Char) : TDateTime
function StrToDate(const S: AnsiString; const useformat: string;
    separator: Char) : TDateTime
function StrToDate(const S: PChar; Len: Integer;
    const useformat: string; separator: Char) : TDateTime
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToDate` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date value. The Date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the `ShortDateFormat` variable.

**Errors:** On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: `StrToTime` (1724), `DateToStr` (1632), `TimeToStr` (1730), `EConvertError` (1751)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex19.pp

---

**Program** Example19;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestStr (S : String);

**begin**

    WriteLn (S, ' : ', DateToStr(StrToDate(S)));  
**end**;

**Begin**

    WriteLn ( 'ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat );  
    TestStr (DateToTimeToStr (Date));  
    TestStr ( '05'+DateSeparator+'05'+DateSeparator+'1999' );  
    TestStr ( '5'+DateSeparator+'5' );  
    TestStr ( '5' );  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.232 StrToDateDef

**Synopsis:** Convert string to date, returning a default value

**Declaration:**

```
function StrToDateDef(const S: ShortString; const Defvalue: TDateTime)
    : TDateTime
function StrToDateDef(const S: ShortString; const Defvalue: TDateTime;
    separator: Char) : TDateTime
```

```
function StrToDateDef(const S: AnsiString; const Defvalue: TDateTime)
    : TDateTime
function StrToDateDef(const S: AnsiString; const Defvalue: TDateTime;
    separator: Char) : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToDateDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a valid `TDateTime` date value, and returns `DefValue` if `S` does not contain a valid date indication.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrToDate` ([1717](#)), `TryStrToDate` ([1735](#)), `StrToTimeDef` ([1725](#))

### 76.15.233 StrToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a date/time string to a `TDateTime` value.

```
Declaration: function StrToDateTime(const S: AnsiString) : TDateTime
function StrToDateTime(const s: ShortString;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : TDateTime
function StrToDateTime(const s: AnsiString;
    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToDateTime` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date and time value. The date and time parts must be separated by a space.

For the date part, the same restrictions apply as for the `StrToDate` ([1717](#)) function: The Date must consist of 1 to three numbers, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the 3 numbers (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the `ShortDateFormat` variable.

Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `StrToDate` ([1717](#)), `StrToTime` ([1724](#)), `DateTimeToStr` ([1629](#)), `EConvertError` ([1751](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `Example20`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StrToDateTime function }
```

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `TestStr` (`S` : **String**);

**begin**

```
    WriteLn (S, ' : ', DateTimeToStr(StrToDateTime(S)));
end;
```

**Begin**

```
    WriteLn ( 'ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat );
    TestStr(DateTimeToStr(Now));
```



```

TestStr( '05-05-1999 15:50 ' );
TestStr( '5-5 13:30 ' );
TestStr( '5 1:30PM' );
End.

```

---

### 76.15.234 StrToDateTimeDef

**Synopsis:** Convert string to date/time, returning a default value

**Declaration:**

```

function StrToDateTimeDef(const S: ShortString;
                          const Defvalue: TDateTime) : TDateTime
function StrToDateTimeDef(const S: AnsiString;
                          const Defvalue: TDateTime) : TDateTime
function StrToDateTimeDef(const S: AnsiString;
                          const Defvalue: TDateTime;
                          const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
                          : TDateTime

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToDateTimeDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a valid `TDateTime` date and time value, and returns `DefValue` if `S` does not contain a valid date-time indication.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `StrToTimeDef` ([1725](#)), `StrToDateDef` ([1718](#)), `TryStrToDateTime` ([1735](#)), `StrToDateTime` ([1719](#))

### 76.15.235 StrToDWord

**Synopsis:** Convert string to DWord (cardinal)

**Declaration:**

```

function StrToDWord(const s: string) : DWord

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToDWord` will convert the string `S` to a `DWord` value, and returns the value.

**Errors:** In case the string `S` is not a valid number, or is a value outside the `DWord` range, an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TryStrToDWord` ([1736](#)), `StrToDWordDef` ([1720](#))

### 76.15.236 StrToDWordDef

**Synopsis:** Convert string to DWord (cardinal), using default

**Declaration:**

```

function StrToDWordDef(const S: string; Default: DWord) : DWord

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToDWordDef` will try to convert the string `S` to a `DWord` value. If the conversion was successful, it returns the value.

If the conversion failed, the fallback value in `Default` is returned.

See also: `TryStrToDWord` ([1736](#)), `StrToDWord` ([1720](#))

**76.15.237 StrToFloat**

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a floating-point value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToFloat(const S: string) : Extended`  
`function StrToFloat(const S: string;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToFloat` converts the string `S` to a floating point value. `S` should contain a valid string representation of a floating point value (either in decimal or scientific notation). The `thousandseparator` character may however not be used.

Up to and including version 2.2.2 of the compiler, if the string contains a decimal value, then the decimal separator character can either be a `'.'` or the value of the `DecimalSeparator` variable.

As of version 2.3.1, the string may contain only the `DecimalSeparator` character. The dot (`'.'`) can no longer be used instead of the `DecimalSeparator`.

**Errors:** If the string `S` doesn't contain a valid floating point string, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TextToFloat` ([1728](#)), `FloatToStr` ([1662](#)), `FormatFloat` ([1676](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex90.pp`

**Program** `Example90;`

```
{ This program demonstrates the StrToFloat function }
{$mode objfpc}
{$h+ }
```

**Uses** `SysUtils;`

**Const**

```
NrValues = 5;
TestStr : Array[1..NrValues] of string =
    ('1,1', '-0,2', '1,2E-4', '0', '1E4');
```

**Procedure** `Testit;`

**Var**

```
I : Integer;
E : Extended;
```

**begin**

```
Writeln('Using DecimalSeparator : ', DecimalSeparator);
For I:=1 to NrValues do
begin
Writeln('Converting : ', TestStr[I]);
Try
E:=StrToFloat(TestStr[I]);
Writeln('Converted value : ', E);
except
On E : Exception do
Writeln('Exception when converting : ', E.Message);
end;
end;
end;
```

**Begin**

```

DecimalSeparator:= ',';
Testit;
DecimalSeparator:= '.';
Testit;
End.

```

---

### 76.15.238 StrToFloatDef

Synopsis: Convert a string to a float, with a default value.

Declaration: `function StrToFloatDef(const S: string; const Default: Extended) : Extended`  
`function StrToFloatDef(const S: string; const Default: Extended; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToFloatDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a floating point value, and returns this value. If the conversion fails for some reason, the value `Default` is returned instead.

Errors: None. On error, the `Default` value is returned.

### 76.15.239 StrToInt

Synopsis: Convert a string to an integer value.

Declaration: `function StrToInt(const s: string) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToInt` will convert the string `Sto` to an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then an `EConvertError` (1751) is raised.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

The string `S` can contain a number in decimal, hexadecimal, binary or octal format, as described in the language reference. For enumerated values, the string must be the name of the enumerated value. The name is searched case insensitively.

For hexadecimal values, the prefix '0x' or 'x' (case insensitive) may be used as well.

Errors: In case of error, an `EConvertError` is raised.

See also: `IntToStr` (1689), `StrToIntDef` (1723), `EConvertError` (1751)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex82.pp

---

**Program** Example82;

*{ \$mode objfpc }*

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

```

WriteLn ( StrToInt( '1234' ));
WriteLn ( StrToInt( '-1234' ));

```

---

```

Writeln (StrToInt('0'));
Try
  Writeln (StrToInt('12345678901234567890'));
except
  On E : EConvertError do
    Writeln ('Invalid number encountered');
end;
End.

```

---

#### 76.15.240 StrToInt64

Synopsis: Convert a string to an Int64 value.

Declaration: `function StrToInt64(const s: string) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToInt64` converts the string `S` to a Int64 value, and returns this value. The string can only contain numerical characters, and optionally a minus sign as the first character. Whitespace is not allowed.

Hexadecimal values (starting with the \$ character) are supported.

Errors: On error, a `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TryStrToInt64` ([1737](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1723](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1736](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1723](#))

#### 76.15.241 StrToInt64Def

Synopsis: Convert a string to an Int64 value, with a default value

Declaration: `function StrToInt64Def(const S: string; Default: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToInt64Def` tries to convert the string `S` to a Int64 value, and returns this value. If the conversion fails for some reason, the value `Default` is returned instead.

Errors: None. On error, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `StrToInt64` ([1723](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1737](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1736](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1723](#))

#### 76.15.242 StrToIntDef

Synopsis: Convert a string to an integer value, with a default value.

Declaration: `function StrToIntDef(const S: string; Default: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToIntDef` will convert a string to an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then `Default` is returned.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

Errors: None.

See also: `IntToStr` ([1689](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex83.pp

**Program** Example82;

```
{ $mode objfpc }

{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  WriteLn ( StrToIntDef( '1234', 0 ));
  WriteLn ( StrToIntDef( '-1234', 0 ));
  WriteLn ( StrToIntDef( '0', 0 ));
  Try
    WriteLn ( StrToIntDef( '12345678901234567890', 0 ));
  except
    On E : EConvertError do
      WriteLn ( 'Invalid number encountered' );
  end;
End.
```

### 76.15.243 StrToQWord

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a QWord.

**Declaration:** function StrToQWord(const s: string) : QWord

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** TryStrToQWord converts the string S to a valid QWord (unsigned 64-bit) value, and returns the result.

**Errors:** If the string S does not contain a valid QWord value, a EConvertError ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

**See also:** TryStrToQWord ([1737](#)), StrToQWordDef ([1724](#)), StrToInt64 ([1723](#)), StrToInt ([1722](#))

### 76.15.244 StrToQWordDef

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a QWord, returning a default value in case of failure.

**Declaration:** function StrToQWordDef(const S: string; Default: QWord) : QWord

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StrToQWordDef tries to convert the string S to a valid QWord (unsigned 64-bit) value, and returns the result. If the conversion fails, the function returns the value passed in Def.

**See also:** StrToQWord ([1724](#)), TryStrToQWord ([1737](#)), StrToInt64Def ([1723](#)), StrToIntDef ([1723](#))

### 76.15.245 StrToTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a time string to a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** function StrToTime(const S: Shortstring) : TDateTime  
 function StrToTime(const S: Ansistring) : TDateTime  
 function StrToTime(const S: ShortString; separator: Char) : TDateTime

```

function StrToTime(const S: AnsiString; separator: Char) : TDateTime
function StrToTime(const S: string; FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
    : TDateTime
function StrToTime(const S: PChar; Len: Integer; separator: Char)
    : TDateTime

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToTime` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` time value. The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

**Errors:** On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `StrToDate` ([1717](#)), `StrToDateTime` ([1719](#)), `TimeToStr` ([1730](#)), `EConvertError` ([1751](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** Example21;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestStr (S : **String**);

**begin**

    WriteLn (S, ' : ', TimeToStr(StrToTime(S)));  
**end**;

**Begin**

    teststr (TimeToStr(Time));  
    teststr ('12:00');  
    teststr ('15:30');  
    teststr ('3:30PM');

**End.**

---

### 76.15.246 StrToTimeDef

**Synopsis:** Convert string to time, returning a default value

**Declaration:**

```

function StrToTimeDef(const S: ShortString; const Defvalue: TDateTime)
    : TDateTime
function StrToTimeDef(const S: ShortString; const Defvalue: TDateTime;
    separator: Char) : TDateTime
function StrToTimeDef(const S: AnsiString; const Defvalue: TDateTime)
    : TDateTime
function StrToTimeDef(const S: AnsiString; const Defvalue: TDateTime;
    separator: Char) : TDateTime

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToTimeDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a valid `TDateTime` time value, and returns `DefValue` if `S` does not contain a valid time indication.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `StrToTime` ([1724](#)), `TryStrToTime` ([1737](#)), `StrToDateDef` ([1718](#))

### 76.15.247 StrToUInt64

**Declaration:** `function StrToUInt64(const s: string) : UInt64`

Visibility: default

### 76.15.248 StrToUInt64Def

**Declaration:** `function StrToUInt64Def(const S: string; Default: UInt64) : UInt64`

Visibility: default

### 76.15.249 strupper

**Synopsis:** Convert null-terminated string to all-uppercase

**Declaration:** `function strupper(p: pchar) : pchar`  
`function strupper(p: pwidechar) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Converts P to an all-uppercase string. Returns P.

For an example, see [StrLower \(1712\)](#)

Errors: None.

See also: [StrLower \(1712\)](#)

### 76.15.250 Supports

**Synopsis:** Check whether a class or given interface supports an interface

**Declaration:** `function Supports(const Instance: IInterface; const AClass: TClass;  
out Obj) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function Supports(const Instance: IInterface; const IID: TGUID;  
out Intf) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function Supports(const Instance: TObject; const IID: TGUID; out Intf)  
: Boolean; Overload`  
`function Supports(const Instance: TObject; const IID: Shortstring;  
out Intf) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function Supports(const Instance: IInterface; const AClass: TClass)  
: Boolean; Overload`  
`function Supports(const Instance: IInterface; const IID: TGUID)  
: Boolean; Overload`  
`function Supports(const Instance: TObject; const IID: TGUID) : Boolean  
; Overload`  
`function Supports(const Instance: TObject; const IID: Shortstring)  
: Boolean; Overload`  
`function Supports(const AClass: TClass; const IID: TGUID) : Boolean  
; Overload`  
`function Supports(const AClass: TClass; const IID: Shortstring)  
: Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Supports checks whether Instance supports the interface identified by IID. It returns True if it is supported, False. Optionally, a pointer to the interface is returned to Intf.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** StringToGUID ([1708](#))

### 76.15.251 SysErrorMessage

**Synopsis:** Format a system error message.

**Declaration:** function SysErrorMessage(ErrorCode: Integer) : string

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SysErrorMessage returns a string that describes the operating system error code ErrorCode.

**Errors:** This routine may not be implemented on all platforms.

**See also:** EOSError ([1755](#))

### 76.15.252 SystemTimeToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a system time to a TDateTime value.

**Declaration:** function SystemTimeToDateTime(const SystemTime: TSystemTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SystemTimeToDateTime converts a TSystemTime record to a TDateTime style date/time indication.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** DateTimeToSystemTime ([1631](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ This program demonstrates the SystemTimeToDateTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** ST : TSystemTime;

**Begin**

DateTimeToSystemTime(**Now**,ST);

**With** St **do**

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Today is ',year,'/',month,'/',Day);

**WriteLn** ( 'The time is ',Hour,':',minute,':',Second,'.',',MilliSecond);

**end;**

**WriteLn** ( 'Converted : ',DateTimeToStr(SystemTimeToDateTime(ST)));

**End.**

---



**76.15.253 TextToFloat**

**Synopsis:** Convert a buffer to a float value.

**Declaration:**

```
function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; out Value: Extended) : Boolean
function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; out Value: Extended;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean
function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; out Value; ValueType: TFloatValue)
                    : Boolean
function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; out Value; ValueType: TFloatValue;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TextToFloat` converts the string in `Buffer` to a floating point value. `Buffer` should contain a valid string representation of a floating point value (either in decimal or scientific notation).

If the buffer contains a decimal value, then the decimal separator character must be the value of the `DecimalSeparator` variable.

**Remark** Note that this behaviour has changed, earlier implementations also allowed the use of '.' in addition to the decimal separator character.

The function returns `True` if the conversion was successful.

**Errors:** If there is an invalid character in the buffer, then the function returns `False`

See also: `StrToFloat` ([1721](#)), `FloatToStr` ([1662](#)), `FormatFloat` ([1676](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex91.pp`

**Program** `Example91`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the TextToFloat function }
{$mode objfpc}
{$h+ }
```

**Uses** `SysUtils`;

**Const**

```
NrValues = 5;
TestStr : Array[1..NrValues] of pchar =
    ('1,1 ', '-0,2 ', '1,2E-4 ', '0 ', '1E4 ');
```

**Procedure** `Testit`;

**Var**

```
I : Integer;
E : Extended;
```

**begin**

```
  Writeln('Using DecimalSeparator : ', DecimalSeparator);
  For I:=1 to NrValues do
    begin
      Writeln('Converting : ', TestStr[I]);
      If TextToFloat(TestStr[I], E) then
        Writeln('Converted value : ', E)
      else
        Writeln('Unable to convert value. ');
      end;
```

**end**;

---

```

Begin
  DecimalSeparator:= ',';
  Testit;
  DecimalSeparator:= '.';
  Testit;
End.

```

---

### 76.15.254 Time

Synopsis: Returns the current time.

Declaration: `function Time : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Time` returns the current time in `TDateTime` format. The date part of the `TDateTimeValue` is set to zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `Now` ([1695](#)), `Date` ([1628](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex23.pp`

---

```

Program Example23;

{ This program demonstrates the Time function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  WriteLn ( 'The time is : ', TimeToStr(Time));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.255 TimeStampToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a `TimeStamp` value to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function TimeStampToDateTime(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `TimeStampToDateTime` converts `TimeStamp` to a `TDateTime` format variable. It is the inverse operation of `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1632](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1632](#)), `TimeStampToMSecs` ([1730](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex24.pp`

---

```

Program Example24;

{ This program demonstrates the TimeStampToDateTime function }

Uses sysutils;

```

---

---

```

Var TS : TTimeStamp;
      DT : TDateTime;

Begin
  TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp (Now);
  With TS do
    begin
      WriteLn ('Now is ',time, ' millisecond past midnight');
      WriteLn ('Today is ',Date, ' days past 1/1/0001');
    end;
  DT:=TimeStampToDateTime(TS);
  WriteLn ('Together this is : ',DateTimeToStr(DT));
End.

```

---

### 76.15.256 TimeStampToMSecs

**Synopsis:** Converts a timestamp to a number of milliseconds.

**Declaration:** `function TimeStampToMSecs(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp) : comp`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TimeStampToMSecs` converts `TimeStamp` to the number of milliseconds since 1/1/0001.

Use `TTimeStamp` variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

For an example, see `MSecsToTimeStamp` ([1694](#)).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `MSecsToTimeStamp` ([1694](#)), `TimeStampToDateTime` ([1729](#))

### 76.15.257 TimeToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert a `TDateTime` time to a string using a predefined format.

**Declaration:** `function TimeToStr(Time: TDateTime) : string`  
`function TimeToStr(Time: TDateTime;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TimeToStr` converts the time in `Time` to a string. It uses the `LongTimeFormat` variable to see what formatting needs to be applied. It is therefor entirely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime('tt', Time)` call.

**Errors:** None.

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25;`

*{ This program demonstrates the TimeToStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**  
  `WriteLn ('The current time is : ',TimeToStr(Time));`  
**End.**

---

**76.15.258 Trim**

Synopsis: Trim whitespace from the ends of a string.

Declaration: `function Trim(const S: string) : string`  
`function Trim(const S: widestring) : widestring`  
`function Trim(const S: unicodestring) : unicodestring`

Visibility: default

Description: Trim strips blank characters (spaces and control characters) at the beginning and end of S and returns the resulting string. All characters with ordinal values less than or equal to 32 (a space) are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: TrimLeft ([1731](#)), TrimRight ([1732](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex84.pp

---

**Program** Example84;

*{ This program demonstrates the Trim function }*

**Uses** sysutils;  
 {\$H+}

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**  
   **WriteLn** ( ' ', Trim(S), ' ' );  
**end**;

**Begin**  
   Testit ( ' ha ha what gets lost ? ' );  
   Testit (#10#13'haha ' );  
   Testit ( ' ' );  
**End.**

---

**76.15.259 TrimLeft**

Synopsis: Trim whitespace from the beginning of a string.

Declaration: `function TrimLeft(const S: string) : string`  
`function TrimLeft(const S: widestring) : widestring`  
`function TrimLeft(const S: unicodestring) : unicodestring`

Visibility: default

Description: Trim strips blank characters (spaces and control characters) at the beginning of S and returns the resulting string. All characters with ordinal values less than or equal to 32 (a space) are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: Trim ([1731](#)), TrimRight ([1732](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex85.pp

---

**Program** Example85;

*{ This program demonstrates the TrimLeft function }*

**Uses** sysutils;  
{ \$H+ }

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**  
    **WriteLn** ( ' ', TrimLeft(S), ' ' );  
**end**;

**Begin**  
    Testit ( ' ha ha what gets lost ? ' );  
    Testit (#10#13'haha ' );  
    Testit ( ' ' );  
**End.**

---

### 76.15.260 TrimRight

**Synopsis:** Trim whitespace from the end of a string.

**Declaration:** function TrimRight(const S: string) : string  
                  function TrimRight(const S: widestring) : widestring  
                  function TrimRight(const S: unicodestring) : unicodestring

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Trim strips blank characters (spaces and control characters) at the end of S and returns the resulting string. All characters with ordinal values less than or equal to 32 (a space) are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: Trim ([1731](#)), TrimLeft ([1731](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex86.pp

---

**Program** Example86;

*{ This program demonstrates the TrimRight function }*

**Uses** sysutils;  
{ \$H+ }

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**  
    **WriteLn** ( ' ', TrimRight(S), ' ' );  
**end**;

**Begin**  
    Testit ( ' ha ha what gets lost ? ' );  
    Testit (#10#13'haha ' );

---

```

    Testit ( '          ');
End.

```

---

### 76.15.261 TryEncodeDate

Synopsis: Try to encode a date, and indicate success.

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDate(Year: Word; Month: Word; Day: Word;  
out Date: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEncodeDate` will check the validity of the Year, Month and Day arguments, and if they are all valid, then they will be encoded as a `TDateTime` value and returned in `Date`. The function will return `True` in this case. If an invalid argument is passed, then `False` will be returned.

Errors: None. If an error occurs during the encoding, `False` is returned.

See also: `EncodeDate` ([1638](#)), `DecodeDateFully` ([1634](#)), `DecodeDate` ([1633](#)), `TryEncodeTime` ([1733](#))

### 76.15.262 TryEncodeTime

Synopsis: Try to encode a time, and indicate success.

Declaration: `function TryEncodeTime(Hour: Word; Min: Word; Sec: Word; MSec: Word;  
out Time: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryEncodeTime` will check the validity of the Hour, Min, Sec and MSec arguments, and will encode them in a `TDateTime` value which is returned in `Time`. If the arguments are valid, then `True` is returned, otherwise `False` is returned.

Errors: None. If an error occurs during the encoding, `False` is returned.

See also: `EncodeTime` ([1638](#)), `DecodeTime` ([1634](#)), `TryEncodeDate` ([1733](#))

### 76.15.263 TryFloatToCurr

Synopsis: Try to convert a float value to a currency value and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryFloatToCurr(const Value: Extended; var AResult: Currency)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryFloatToCurr` tries convert the `Value` floating point value to a `Currency` value. If successful, the function returns `True` and the resulting currency value is returned in `AResult`. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of currencies (determined by `MinCurrency` ([1583](#)) and `MaxCurrency` ([1583](#))). If not, `False` is returned.

Errors: If `Value` is out of range, `False` is returned.

See also: `FloatToCurr` ([1661](#)), `MinCurrency` ([1583](#)), `MaxCurrency` ([1583](#))

**76.15.264 TryStringToGUID**

Synopsis: Try to transform a string to a GUID

Declaration: `function TryStringToGUID(const S: string; out Guid: TGUID) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStringToGUID` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TGUID` value, returned in `GUID`. It returns `True` if the conversion succeeds, and `False` if the string `S` does not contain a valid GUID notation. The string `S` must be 38 characters long, must start with `{` and end on `}`, and contain a valid GUID string (hex number grouped using 8-4-4-4-12 digits).

Errors: In case `S` does not contain a valid GUID number, `False` is returned.

See also: `StringToGUID` ([1708](#))

**76.15.265 TryStrToBool**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a boolean value

Declaration: `function TryStrToBool(const S: string; out Value: Boolean) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToBool(const S: string; out Value: Boolean;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToBool` tries to convert the string `S` to a boolean value, and returns this value in `Value`. In this case, the function returns `True`. If `S` does not contain a valid boolean string, the function returns `False`, and the contents of `Value` is undetermined.

Valid boolean string constants are in the `FalseBoolStrs` ([1599](#)) (for `False` values) and `TrueBoolStrs` ([1602](#)) (for `True` values) variables.

See also: `StrToBool` ([1716](#)), `StrToBoolDef` ([1717](#))

**76.15.266 TryStrToCurr**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a currency

Declaration: `function TryStrToCurr(const S: string; out Value: Currency) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToCurr(const S: string; out Value: Currency;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToCurr` converts the string `S` to a currency value and returns the value in `Value`. The function returns `True` if it was successful, `False` if not. This is contrary to `StrToCurr` ([1717](#)), which raises an exception when the conversion fails.

The function takes into account locale information.

See also: `StrToCurr` ([1717](#)), `TextToFloat` ([1728](#))

**76.15.267 TryStrToDate**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string with a date indication to a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function TryStrToDate(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime; separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime; separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime; const useformat: string; separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime; const useformat: string; separator: Char) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDate(const S: string; out Value: TDateTime; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToDate` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date value, and stores the date in `Value`. The Date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the `ShortDateFormat` variable.

The function returns `True` if the string contained a valid date indication, `False` otherwise.

See also: `StrToDate` (1717), `StrToTime` (1724), `TryStrToTime` (1737), `TryStrToDateTime` (1735), `DateToStr` (1632), `TimeToStr` (1730)

**76.15.268 TryStrToDateTime**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string with date/time indication to a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function TryStrToDateTime(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDateTime(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToDateTime(const S: string; out Value: TDateTime; const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToDateTime` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date and time value, and stores the result in `Value`. The date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month (This is *not* supported in Delphi). The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

The function returns `True` if the string contained a valid date and time indication, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TryStrToDate` (1735), `TryStrToTime` (1737), `StrToDateTime` (1719), `StrToTime` (1724), `DateToStr` (1632), `TimeToStr` (1730)



**76.15.269 TryStrToDWord**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to DWord (cardinal)

Declaration: `function TryStrToDWord(const s: string; out D: DWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToDWord` will try to convert the string `S` to a `DWord` value. It returns `True` if the conversion was successful, and in that case returns the value in `D`.

If the conversion failed or the value was outside of the valid range for `DWord` values, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToDWord` ([1720](#)), `StrToDWordDef` ([1720](#))

**76.15.270 TryStrToFloat**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a float.

Declaration: `function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Single) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Single;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Double) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Double;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Extended) : Boolean`  
`function TryStrToFloat(const S: string; out Value: Extended;`  
`const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToFloat` tries to convert the string `S` to a floating point value, and stores the result in `Value`. It returns `True` if the operation was successful, and `False` if it failed. This operation takes into account the system settings for floating point representations.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToFloat` ([1721](#))

**76.15.271 TryStrToInt**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to an integer, and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryStrToInt(const s: string; out i: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToInt` tries to convert the string `S` to an integer, and returns `True` if this was successful. In that case the converted integer is returned in `I`. If the conversion failed, (an invalid string, or the value is out of range) then `False` is returned.

Errors: None. On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToInt` ([1722](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1737](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1723](#)), `StrToInt64` ([1723](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1723](#))

**76.15.272 TryStrToInt64**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to an int64 value, and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryStrToInt64(const s: string; out i: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToInt64` tries to convert the string `S` to a `Int64` value, and returns this value in `I` if successful. If the conversion was successful, the function result is `True`, or `False` otherwise. The string can only contain numerical characters, and optionally a minus sign as the first character. Whitespace is not allowed.

Hexadecimal values (starting with the `$` character) are supported.

Errors: None. On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `StrToInt64` ([1723](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1723](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1736](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1723](#))

**76.15.273 TryStrToQWord**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a QWord value, and report on success

Declaration: `function TryStrToQWord(const s: string; out Q: QWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToQWord` tries to convert the string `S` to a valid `QWord` (unsigned 64-bit) value, and stores the result in `I`. If the conversion fails, the function returns `False`, else it returns `True`.

See also: `StrToQWord` ([1724](#)), `StrToQWordDef` ([1724](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1737](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1736](#))

**76.15.274 TryStrToTime**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string with a time indication to a `TDateTime` value

```
Declaration: function TryStrToTime(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime)
              : Boolean
function TryStrToTime(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime)
              : Boolean
function TryStrToTime(const S: ShortString; out Value: TDateTime;
                      separator: Char) : Boolean
function TryStrToTime(const S: AnsiString; out Value: TDateTime;
                      separator: Char) : Boolean
function TryStrToTime(const S: string; out Value: TDateTime;
                      const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToTime` tries to convert the string `S` to a `TDateTime` time value, and stores the result in `Value`. The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

The function returns `True` if the string contained a valid time indication, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TryStrToDate` ([1735](#)), `TryStrToDateTime` ([1735](#)), `StrToDate` ([1717](#)), `StrToTime` ([1724](#)), `DateToStr` ([1632](#)), `TimeToStr` ([1730](#))

### 76.15.275 TryStrToUInt64

**Declaration:** `function TryStrToUInt64(const s: string; out u: UInt64) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

### 76.15.276 UIntToStr

**Declaration:** `function UIntToStr(Value: QWord) : string`  
`function UIntToStr(Value: Cardinal) : string`

**Visibility:** default

### 76.15.277 UnhookSignal

**Synopsis:** UnHook a specified signal

**Declaration:** `procedure UnhookSignal(RtlSigNum: Integer; OnlyIfHooked: Boolean)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnhookSignal` de-installs the RTL default signal handler for signal `RtlSigNum`. If `OnlyIfHooked` is `True` then `UnhookSignal` will first check if the signal was hooked by the RTL routines, and has not been overridden since.

### 76.15.278 UnicodeCompareStr

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 Unicode strings

**Declaration:** `function UnicodeCompareStr(const s1: UnicodeString;`  
`const s2: UnicodeString) : PtrInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeCompareStr` compares 2 Unicode strings `S1` and `S2` in a case sensitive manner. The result of the function is

`< 0` If `S1 < S2`

`0` If `S1 = S2`

`> 0` If `S1 > S2`

This function relies on a widestring manager to perform the actual comparison, as it will take into account various equivalent code points: it is not a simple byte-by-byte comparison.

See also: `UnicodeCompareText` ([1738](#)), `CompareStr` ([1624](#)), `CompareText` ([1625](#)), `UnicodeSameStr` ([1740](#))

### 76.15.279 UnicodeCompareText

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 strings case insensitively

**Declaration:** `function UnicodeCompareText(const s1: UnicodeString;`  
`const s2: UnicodeString) : PtrInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeCompareText` compares 2 Unicode strings `S1` and `S2`, ignoring case. The result of the function is

< 0 If `S1 < S2`

0 If `S1 = S2`

> 0 If `S1 > S2`

This function relies on a widestring manager to perform the actual comparison, as it will take into account various equivalent code points: it is not a simple byte-by-byte comparison.

See also: `UnicodeCompareText` (1738), `CompareStr` (1624), `CompareText` (1625), `UnicodeSameStr` (1740)

### 76.15.280 UnicodeFmtStr

**Synopsis:** Format a string with given arguments, procedural version.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure UnicodeFmtStr(var Res: UnicodeString;
                        const Fmt: UnicodeString;
                        const args: Array of const)
procedure UnicodeFmtStr(var Res: UnicodeString;
                        const Fmt: UnicodeString;
                        const args: Array of const;
                        const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeFmtStr` calls `UnicodeFormat` (1739) with `Fmt` and `Args` as arguments, and stores the result in `Res`. For more information on how the resulting string is composed, see `UnicodeFormat` (1739).

**Errors:** In case of error, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: `UnicodeFormat` (1739), `UnicodeFormatBuf` (1740)

### 76.15.281 UnicodeFormat

**Synopsis:** Format Unicode string

**Declaration:**

```
function UnicodeFormat(const Fmt: UnicodeString;
                       const Args: Array of const) : UnicodeString
function UnicodeFormat(const Fmt: UnicodeString;
                       const Args: Array of const;
                       const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
                       : UnicodeString
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeFormat` is the Unicode equivalent of `Format` (1668). It follows the same rules and uses the same formatting strings.

**Errors:** In case of error, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: `Format` (1668), `UnicodeFormatBuf` (1740)

**76.15.282 UnicodeFormatBuf**

Synopsis: Format a Unicode string with given arguments and store the result in a unicodebuffer.

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeFormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
                           fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const)
                           : Cardinal
function UnicodeFormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
                           fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const;
                           const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
                           : Cardinal
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeFormatBuf` is the Unicode equivalent of `FormatBuf` (1674). It follows the same rules and uses the same formatting st

Errors: In case of error, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: `FormatBuf` (1674), `UnicodeFormat` (1739)

**76.15.283 UnicodeLowerCase**

Synopsis: Return lowercase version of a string

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeLowerCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeLowerCase` returns an all-lowercase version of the unicodestring S. It relies on the Unicode manager to do so.

See also: `UnicodeUpperCase` (1741), `UpperCase` (1741), `LowerCase` (1693)

**76.15.284 UnicodeSameStr**

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings are equal

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeSameStr(const s1: UnicodeString;
                        const s2: UnicodeString) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeSameStr` checks whether the Unicode strings S1 and S2 are equal, case sensitively. The function returns `True` if the strings are equal, `False` if they are not. This function relies on a widestring manager to perform the actual comparison, as it will take into account various equivalent code points: it is not a simple byte-by-byte comparison.

See also: `UnicodeCompareText` (1738), `CompareStr` (1624), `CompareText` (1625), `UnicodeSameText` (1740), `SameStr` (1699)

**76.15.285 UnicodeSameText**

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings are the same, ignoring case

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeSameText(const s1: UnicodeString;
                        const s2: UnicodeString) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UnicodeSameText` checks whether the Unicode strings `S1` and `S2` are equal, ignoring case. The function returns `True` if the strings are equal, `False` if they are not. This function relies on a widestring manager to perform the actual comparison, as it will take into account various equivalent code points: it is not a simple byte-by-byte comparison.

See also: `UnicodeCompareText` (1738), `CompareStr` (1624), `CompareText` (1625), `UnicodeSameStr` (1740), `SameText` (1699)

### 76.15.286 UnicodeStringReplace

**Synopsis:** Replace one occurrence of a string with another

**Declaration:**

```
function UnicodeStringReplace(const S: UnicodeString;
                             const OldPattern: UnicodeString;
                             const NewPattern: UnicodeString;
                             Flags: TReplaceFlags) : UnicodeString
function UnicodeStringReplace(const S: UnicodeString;
                             const OldPattern: UnicodeString;
                             const NewPattern: UnicodeString;
                             Flags: TReplaceFlags; out aCount: Integer)
                             : UnicodeString
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UnicodeStringReplace` is the Unicode version of `StringReplace` (1707); it follows the same rules and has the same behaviour, but operates on Unicode strings instead of ansistrings.

See also: `StringReplace` (1707)

### 76.15.287 UnicodeUpperCase

**Synopsis:** Return uppercase version of a string

**Declaration:** `function UnicodeUpperCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UnicodeUpperCase` returns an all-uppercase version of the unicodestring `S`. It relies on the Unicode manager to do so.

See also: `UnicodeLowerCase` (1740), `LowerCase` (1693), `UpperCase` (1741)

### 76.15.288 UpperCase

**Synopsis:** Return an uppercase version of a string.

**Declaration:**

```
function UpperCase(const s: string) : string; Overload
function UpperCase(const s: string; LocaleOptions: TLocaleOptions)
                  : string; Overload
function UpperCase(const s: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `UpperCase` returns the uppercase equivalent of S. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the `UpCase` function of the system unit, and is provided for compatibility only.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiLowerCase` ([1608](#)), `LowerCase` ([1693](#)), `AnsiUpperCase` ([1616](#))

---

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex87.pp`

**Program** `Example87;`

*{ This program demonstrates the UpperCase function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn (UpperCase('this will come OUT ALL uPpErCaSe !'));`

**End.**

---

### 76.15.289 VendorName

**Synopsis:** Return Application vendor Name

**Declaration:** `function VendorName : string`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `VendorName` returns the application vendor name. In order to set the application vendor name, the `OnGetVendorName` ([1601](#)) event must be set, and an appropriate return value must be returned. The Vendor name is used in `GetAppConfigDir` ([1678](#)) and `GetAppConfigFile` ([1679](#)) to determine the configuration directory.

**Errors:** If `OnGetVendorName` ([1601](#)) is not set, an empty string is returned.

**See also:** `OnGetVendorName` ([1601](#)), `GetAppConfigDir` ([1678](#)), `GetAppConfigFile` ([1679](#))

### 76.15.290 WideBytesOf

**Synopsis:** Returns the contents of a widestring as an array of bytes

**Declaration:** `function WideBytesOf(const Value: UnicodeString) : TBytes`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `WideBytesOf` returns the contents of the widestring `Value` as an array of bytes. The array will have as length twice the length of the wide string, as each wide character contains 2 bytes.

**See also:** `StringOf` ([1707](#))

### 76.15.291 WideCompareStr

**Synopsis:** Compare two widestrings (case sensitive)

**Declaration:** `function WideCompareStr(const s1: WideString; const s2: WideString)  
: PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCompareStr` compares two widestrings and returns the following result:

```
< 0 if S1 < S2.
0 if S1 = S2.
> 0 if S1 > S2.
```

The comparison takes into account wide characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `WideCompareText` (1743), the comparison is case sensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideCompareText` (1743), `WideSameStr` (1745), `WideSameText` (1745)

### 76.15.292 WideCompareText

Synopsis: Compare two widestrings (ignoring case).

Declaration: 

```
function WideCompareText(const s1: WideString; const s2: WideString)
                        : PtrInt
```

Visibility: default

Description: `WideCompareStr` compares two widestrings and returns the following result:

```
< 0 if S1 < S2.
0 if S1 = S2.
> 0 if S1 > S2.
```

The comparison takes into account wide characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `WideCompareStr` (1742), the comparison is case insensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideCompareStr` (1742), `WideSameStr` (1745), `WideSameText` (1745)

### 76.15.293 WideFmtStr

Synopsis: Widestring format

Declaration: 

```
procedure WideFmtStr(var Res: WideString; const Fmt: WideString;
                    const args: Array of const)
procedure WideFmtStr(var Res: WideString; const Fmt: WideString;
                    const args: Array of const;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFmtStr` formats `Args` according to the format string in `Fmt` and returns the resulting string in `Res`.

See also: `WideFormat` (1744), `WideFormatBuf` (1744), `Format` (1668)



**76.15.294 WideFormat**

Synopsis: Format a wide string.

Declaration: 

```
function WideFormat(const Fmt: WideString; const Args: Array of const)
                    : WideString
function WideFormat(const Fmt: WideString; const Args: Array of const;
                    const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : WideString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFormat` does the same as `Format` (1668) but accepts as a formatting string a `Widestring`. The resulting string is also a `Widestring`.

For more information about the used formatting characters, see the `Format` (1668) string.

See also: `Format` (1668)

**76.15.295 WideFormatBuf**

Synopsis: Format widestring in a buffer.

Declaration: 

```
function WideFormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
                       fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const)
                       : Cardinal
function WideFormatBuf(var Buffer; BufLen: Cardinal; const Fmt;
                       fmtLen: Cardinal; const Args: Array of const;
                       const FormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Cardinal
```

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFormatBuf` calls simply `WideFormat` (1744) with `Fmt` (with length `FmtLen` bytes) and stores maximum `BufLen` bytes in the buffer `buf`. It returns the number of copied bytes.

See also: `WideFmtStr` (1743), `WideFormat` (1744), `Format` (1668), `FormatBuf` (1674)

**76.15.296 WideLowerCase**

Synopsis: Change a widestring to all-lowercase.

Declaration: 

```
function WideLowerCase(const s: WideString) : WideString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `WideLowerCase` converts the string `S` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** On Unix-like platforms, a widestring manager must be installed for this function to work correctly.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideUpperCase` (1746)

**76.15.297 WideStringStr**

Synopsis: Check whether two wstrings are the same (case sensitive)

Declaration: `function WideStringStr(const s1: WideString; const s2: WideString)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideSameStr` returns `True` if `WideCompareStr` (1742) returns 0 (zero), i.e. when `S1` and `S2` are the same string (taking into account case).

See also: `WideSameText` (1745), `WideCompareStr` (1742), `WideCompareText` (1743), `AnsiSameStr` (1610)

**76.15.298 WideStringText**

Synopsis: Check whether two wstrings are the same (ignoring case)

Declaration: `function WideStringText(const s1: WideString; const s2: WideString)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideSameText` returns `True` if `WideCompareText` (1743) returns 0 (zero), i.e. when `S1` and `S2` are the same string (taking into account case).

See also: `WideSameStr` (1745), `WideCompareStr` (1742), `WideCompareText` (1743), `AnsiSameText` (1610)

**76.15.299 WideStringAlloc**

Synopsis: Allocate a null-terminated wstring on the heap.

Declaration: `function WideStringAlloc(size: Cardinal) : pwidechar`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideStrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a wstring with length `Len`, (terminating `#0#0` included), and returns a pointer to it.

Additionally, `WideStrAlloc` allocates 4 extra bytes to store the size of the allocated memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrBufSize` (1702), `StrDispose` (1704), `StrAlloc` (1262)

**76.15.300 WideStringOf**

Synopsis: Create Unicode string from array of bytes

Declaration: `function WideStringOf(const Value: TBytes) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideStringOf` converts an array of bytes (`Bytes`) to a Unicode string. It considers each pair of bytes in the array as a single wide char. The array should have an even length. If the length is uneven, the last byte will be ignored.

This function performs the opposite operation of `BytesOf` (1620).

To create a string where the bytes are interpreted as `ansichars`, use `StringOf` (1707) instead.

See also: `StringOf` (1707), `WideBytesOf` (1742), `BytesOf` (1620)

### 76.15.301 WideStringReplace

**Synopsis:** Replace occurrences of one substring with another in a widestring.

**Declaration:**

```
function WideStringReplace(const S: WideString;
                           const OldPattern: WideString;
                           const NewPattern: WideString;
                           Flags: TReplaceFlags) : WideString
function WideStringReplace(const S: WideString;
                           const OldPattern: WideString;
                           const NewPattern: WideString;
                           Flags: TReplaceFlags; out aCount: Integer)
                           : WideString
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** WideStringReplace searches the string *S* for occurrences of the string *OldPattern* and, if it is found, replaces it with *NewPattern*. It returns the resulting string. The behaviour of *StringReplace* can be tuned with *Flags*, which is of type *TReplaceFlags* (1595). Standard behaviour is to replace only the first occurrence of *OldPattern*, and to search case sensitively.

**Errors:** None.

See also: *TReplaceFlags* (1595), *StringReplace* (1707)

### 76.15.302 WideUpperCase

**Synopsis:** Change a widestring to all-uppercase.

**Declaration:**

```
function WideUpperCase(const s: WideString) : WideString
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** WideUpperCase converts the string *S* to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark** On Unix-like platforms, a widestring manager must be installed for this function to work correctly.

**Errors:** None.

See also: *WideLowerCase* (1744)

### 76.15.303 WrapText

**Synopsis:** Word-wrap a text.

**Declaration:**

```
function WrapText(const Line: string; const BreakStr: string;
                  const BreakChars: TSysCharSet; MaxCol: Integer)
                  : string
function WrapText(const Line: string; MaxCol: Integer) : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** WrapText does a wordwrap at column *MaxCol* of the string in *Line*. It breaks the string only at characters which are in *BreakChars* (default whitespace and hyphen) and inserts then the string *BreakStr* (default the lineending character for the current OS).

Portions of text that are between single or double quotes will be considered single words and the text will not be broken between the quotes.

See also: *StringReplace* (1707)

## 76.16 TRawbyteSearchRec

```
TRawbyteSearchRec = record
public
    Time : LongInt;
    Size : Int64
    ;
    Attr : LongInt;
    Name : RawByteString;
    ExcludeAttr : LongInt
    ;
    FindHandle : THandle;
private
    function GetTimeStamp : TDateTime
    ;
public
    property TimeStamp : TDateTime;
end
```

TRawbyteSearchRec is a search handle description record using single-byte strings. It is initialized by a call to FindFirst (1660) and can be used to do subsequent calls to FindNext (1661). It contains the result of these function calls. It must be used to close the search sequence with a call to FindClose (1659).

**Remark** Not all fields of this record should be used. Some of the fields are for internal use only. (PathOnly for example, is only provided for Kylix compatibility)

**Remark** Note that for files with Unicode filenames this is a converted value from the Unicode filename. Depending on the codepage, this may or may not be a correct rendering of the correct Unicode filename.

### 76.16.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1747</a>	TimeStamp	r	

### 76.16.2 TRawbyteSearchRec.TimeStamp

Declaration: Property TimeStamp : TDateTime

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 76.17 TRawbyteSymLinkRec

```
TRawbyteSymLinkRec = record
public
    TargetName : RawByteString;
    Size : Int64;
    Attr : LongInt;
private
    function GetTimeStamp
```

```

    : TDateTime;
public
    property TimeStamp : TDateTime;
end

```

### 76.17.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1748</a>	TimeStamp	r	

### 76.17.2 TRawbyteSymLinkRec.TimeStamp

Declaration: Property TimeStamp : TDateTime

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 76.18 TUnicodeSearchRec

```

TUnicodeSearchRec = record
public
    Time : LongInt;
    Size : Int64
    ;
    Attr : LongInt;
    Name : UnicodeString;
    ExcludeAttr : LongInt
    ;
    FindHandle : THandle;
private
    function GetTimeStamp : TDateTime
    ;
public
    property TimeStamp : TDateTime;
end

```

TRawbyteSearchRec is a search handle description record using multi-byte strings. It is initialized by a call to [FindFirst \(1660\)](#) and can be used to do subsequent calls to [FindNext \(1661\)](#). It contains the result of these function calls. It must be used to close the search sequence with a call to [FindClose \(1659\)](#).

**Remark** Not all fields of this record should be used. Some of the fields are for internal use only. ([PathOnly](#) for example, is only provided for Kylix compatibility)

### 76.18.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1749</a>	TimeStamp	r	

### 76.18.2 TUnicodeSearchRec.TimeStamp

Declaration: Property TimeStamp : TDateTime

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 76.19 TUnicodeSymLinkRec

```
TUnicodeSymLinkRec = record
public
  TargetName : UnicodeString;
  Attr : LongInt;
  Size : Int64;
private
  function GetTimeStamp
    : TDateTime;
public
  property TimeStamp : TDateTime;
end
```

### 76.19.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1749</a>	TimeStamp	r	

### 76.19.2 TUnicodeSymLinkRec.TimeStamp

Declaration: Property TimeStamp : TDateTime

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 76.20 EAbort

### 76.20.1 Description

`EAbort` is raised by the `Abort` ([1603](#)) procedure. It is not displayed in GUI applications, and serves only to immediately abort the current procedure, and return control to the main program loop.

See also: `Abort` ([1603](#))

## 76.21 EAbstractError

### 76.21.1 Description

`EAbstractError` is raised when an abstract error occurs, i.e. when an unimplemented abstract method is called.

## 76.22 EAccessViolation

### 76.22.1 Description

`EAccessViolation` is raised when the OS reports an Access Violation, i.e. when invalid memory is accessed.

See also: `EObjectCheck` ([1755](#))

## 76.23 EArgumentException

### 76.23.1 Description

`EArgumentException` is raised by many character conversion/handling routines to indicate an erroneous argument was passed to the function (usually indicating an invalid codepoint in a Unicode string).

See also: `EArgumentOutOfRangeException` ([1750](#))

## 76.24 EArgumentNilException

### 76.24.1 Description

`EArgumentNilException` is an exception raised when an argument is `Nil` when it should not be `Nil`.

This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` ([1758](#))

## 76.25 EArgumentOutOfRangeException

### 76.25.1 Description

`EArgumentOutOfRangeException` is raised by many character conversion/handling routines to indicate an erroneous argument was passed to the function (indicating an invalid character index in a Unicode string).

See also: `EArgumentException` ([1750](#))

## 76.26 EAssertionFailed

### 76.26.1 Description

`EAssertionFailed` is raised when an application that is compiled with assertions, encounters an invalid assertion.

## 76.27 EBusError

### 76.27.1 Description

`EBusError` is raised in case of a bus error.

## 76.28 EControlC

### 76.28.1 Description

`EControlC` is raised when the user has pressed CTRL-C in a console application.

## 76.29 EConvertError

### 76.29.1 Description

`EConvertError` is raised by the various conversion routines in the `SysUtils` unit. The message will contain more specific error information.

## 76.30 EDirectoryNotFoundException

### 76.30.1 Description

`EDirectoryNotFoundException` is an exception raised when a directory is referenced that does not exist.

This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` ([1758](#)), `EFileNotFoundException` ([1752](#)), `EPathNotFoundException` ([1756](#)), `EPathTooLongException` ([1756](#))

## 76.31 EDivByZero

### 76.31.1 Description

`EDivByZero` is used when the operating system or CPU signals a division by zero error.

## 76.32 EEncodingError

### 76.32.1 Description

`EEncodingError` is the exception classed used by the `TEncoding` class to indicate errors.

See also: `TEncoding` ([1784](#))



## 76.33 EExternal

### 76.33.1 Description

`EExternal` is the base exception for all external exceptions, as reported by the CPU or operating system, as opposed to internal exceptions, which are raised by the program itself. The `SysUtils` unit converts all operating system errors to descendents of `EExternal`.

See also: `EIntError` ([1753](#)), `EExternal` ([1752](#)), `EMathError` ([1754](#)), `EExternalException` ([1752](#)), `EAccessViolation` ([1750](#)), `EPrivilege` ([1757](#)), `EStackOverflow` ([1757](#)), `EControlC` ([1751](#))

## 76.34 EExternalException

### 76.34.1 Description

`EExternalException` is raised when an external routine raises an exception.

See also: `EExternal` ([1752](#))

## 76.35 EFileNotFoundException

### 76.35.1 Description

`EFileNotFoundException` is an exception raised when a file is referenced that does not exist. This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` ([1758](#)), `EPathNotFoundException` ([1756](#)), `EDirectoryNotFoundException` ([1751](#)), `EPathTooLongException` ([1756](#))

## 76.36 EFormatError

### 76.36.1 Description

`EFormatError` is raised in case of an error in one of the various `Format` ([1668](#)) functions.

See also: `Format` ([1668](#))

## 76.37 EHeapMemoryError

### 76.37.1 Description

`EHeapMemoryError` is raised when an error occurs in heap (dynamically allocated) memory.

See also: `EHeapException` ([1586](#)), `EOutOfMemory` ([1756](#)), `EInvalidPointer` ([1754](#))

### 76.37.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1753</a>	<code>FreeInstance</code>	Free the exception instance

### 76.37.3 EHeapMemoryError.FreeInstance

Synopsis: Free the exception instance

Declaration: `procedure FreeInstance; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeInstance` checks whether the exception instance may be freed prior to calling the inherited `FreeInstance`. The exception is only freed in case of normal program shutdown, if a heap error occurred, the exception instance is not freed.

## 76.38 EInOutError

### 76.38.1 Description

`EInOutError` is raised when a IO routine of Free Pascal returns an error. The error is converted to an `EInOutError` only if the input/output checking feature of FPC is turned on. The error code of the input/output operation is returned in `ErrorCode` (??).

See also: `EInOutError.ErrorCode` (??)

## 76.39 EIntError

### 76.39.1 Description

`EIntError` is used when the operating system or CPU signals an integer operation error, e.g., an overflow.

## 76.40 EIntfCastError

### 76.40.1 Description

`EIntfCastError` is raised when an invalid interface cast is encountered.

See also: `EInvalidCast` ([1753](#))

## 76.41 EIntOverflow

### 76.41.1 Description

`EIntOverflow` is used when the operating system or CPU signals a integer overflow error.

See also: `EIntError` ([1753](#)), `EDivByZero` ([1751](#)), `ERangeError` ([1757](#))

## 76.42 EInvalidCast

### 76.42.1 Description

`EInvalidCast` is raised when an invalid typecast error (using the `as` operator) is encountered.

See also: `EIntfCastError` ([1753](#))

## 76.43 EInvalidContainer

### 76.43.1 Description

EInvalidContainer is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 76.44 EInvalidInsert

### 76.44.1 Description

EInvalidInsert is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 76.45 EInvalidOp

### 76.45.1 Description

EInvalidOp is raised when an invalid operation is encountered.

## 76.46 EInvalidOpException

## 76.47 EInvalidPointer

### 76.47.1 Description

EInvalidPointer is raised when an invalid heap pointer is used.

See also: EHeapException ([1586](#)), EHeapMemoryError ([1752](#)), EOutOfMemory ([1756](#))

## 76.48 EMathError

### 76.48.1 Description

EMathError is used when the operating system or CPU signals a floating point overflow error.

See also: EIntError ([1753](#)), EIntOverflow ([1753](#)), EDivByZero ([1751](#)), ERangeError ([1757](#))

## 76.49 ENoConstructException

### 76.49.1 Description

ENoConstructException is the exception raised when an instance of type TCharacter is being created. The TCharacter class only contains static methods, no instances of this class should be instantiated.

## 76.50 ENoDynLibsSupport

## 76.51 ENoThreadSupport

### 76.51.1 Description

`ENoThreadSupport` is raised when some thread routines are invoked, and thread support was not enabled when the program was compiled.

## 76.52 ENotImplemented

### 76.52.1 Description

`ENotImplemented` can be used to raise an exception when a particular call had been defined, but was not implemented.

## 76.53 ENotSupportedException

### 76.53.1 Description

`ENotSupportedException` is an exception raised when a function or procedure is not supported for a certain platform.

This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: [Exception \(1758\)](#)

## 76.54 ENoWideStringSupport

### 76.54.1 Description

`ENoWideStringSupport` is the exception raised when a run-time 233 occurs, i.e. when widestring routines are called and the application does not contain widestring support.

## 76.55 EObjectCheck

### 76.55.1 Description

`EObjectCheck` is raised when the `-CR` (check object references) command-line option or `{ $OBJECTCHECKS ON }` directive is in effect and a `Nil` reference to an object or class was encountered.

See also: [EAccessViolation \(1750\)](#)

## 76.56 EOSError

### 76.56.1 Description

`EOSError` is raised when some Operating System call fails. The `ErrorCode` (??) property contains the operating system error code.

See also: `EOSError.ErrorCode` (??)

## 76.57 EOutOfMemory

### 76.57.1 Description

`EOutOfMemory` occurs when memory can no longer be allocated on the heap. An instance of `EOutOfMemory` is allocated on the heap at program startup, so it is available when needed.

See also: `EHeapException` ([1586](#)), `EHeapMemoryError` ([1752](#)), `EInvalidPointer` ([1754](#))

## 76.58 EOverflow

### 76.58.1 Description

`EOverflow` occurs when a float operation overflows. (i.e. result is too big to represent).

See also: `EIntError` ([1753](#)), `EIntOverflow` ([1753](#)), `EDivByZero` ([1751](#)), `ERangeError` ([1757](#)), `EUnderFlow` ([1758](#))

## 76.59 EPackageError

### 76.59.1 Description

`EPackageError` is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 76.60 EPathNotFoundException

### 76.60.1 Description

`EPathNotFoundException` is an exception raised when a path is referenced that does not exist. This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` ([1758](#)), `EFileNotFoundException` ([1752](#)), `EDirectoryNotFoundException` ([1751](#)), `EPathTooLongException` ([1756](#))

## 76.61 EPathTooLongException

### 76.61.1 Description

`EPathTooLongException` is an exception raised when a pathname argument is longer than the allowed pathname length for files.

This exception class is provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not actually used in FPC.

See also: `Exception` ([1758](#)), `EFileNotFoundException` ([1752](#)), `EDirectoryNotFoundException` ([1751](#)), `EPathNotFoundException` ([1756](#))

## 76.62 EPrivilege

### 76.62.1 Description

EPrivilege is raised when the OS reports that an invalid instruction was executed.

## 76.63 EProgrammerNotFound

## 76.64 EPropReadOnly

### 76.64.1 Description

EPropReadOnly is raised when an attempt is made to write to a read-only property.

## 76.65 EPropWriteOnly

### 76.65.1 Description

EPropWriteOnly is raised when an attempt is made to read from a write-only property.

See also: EPropReadOnly ([1757](#))

## 76.66 ERangeError

### 76.66.1 Description

ERangeError is raised by the Free Pascal runtime library if range checking is on, and a range check error occurs.

See also: EIntError ([1753](#)), EDivByZero ([1751](#)), EIntOverflow ([1753](#))

## 76.67 ESafecallException

### 76.67.1 Description

ESafecallException is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 76.68 ESigQuit

## 76.69 EStackOverflow

### 76.69.1 Description

EStackOverflow occurs when the stack has grown too big (e.g. by infinite recursion).

## 76.70 EThreadError

## 76.71 EUnderflow

### 76.71.1 Description

EOverflow occurs when a float operation underflows (i.e. result is too small to represent).

See also: EIntError ([1753](#)), EIntOverflow ([1753](#)), EDivByZero ([1751](#)), ERangeError ([1757](#)), EOverflow ([1756](#))

## 76.72 EVariantError

### 76.72.1 Description

EVariantError is raised by the internal variant routines.

### 76.72.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1758</a>	CreateCode	Create an instance of EVariantError with a particular error code.

### 76.72.3 EVariantError.CreateCode

Synopsis: Create an instance of EVariantError with a particular error code.

Declaration: constructor CreateCode (Code: LongInt)

Visibility: default

Description: CreateCode calls the inherited constructor, and sets the ErrCode (??) property to Code.

See also: ErrCode (??)

## 76.73 Exception

### 76.73.1 Description

Exception is the base class for all exception handling routines in the RTL and FCL. While it is possible to raise an exception with any class descending from TObject, it is recommended to use Exception as the basis of exception class objects: the Exception class introduces properties to associate a message and a help context with the exception being raised. What is more, the SysUtils unit sets the necessary hooks to catch and display unhandled exceptions: in such cases, the message displayed to the end user, will be the message stored in the exception class.

See also: ExceptObject ([1640](#)), ExceptAddr ([1639](#)), ExceptionErrorMessage ([1640](#)), ShowException ([1700](#)), Abort ([1603](#))

**76.73.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1759</a>	Create	Constructs a new exception object with a given message.
<a href="#">1759</a>	CreateFmt	Constructs a new exception object and formats a new message.
<a href="#">1760</a>	CreateFmtHelp	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message
<a href="#">1760</a>	CreateHelp	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context.
<a href="#">1759</a>	CreateRes	Constructs a new exception object and gets the message from a resource.
<a href="#">1760</a>	CreateResFmt	Constructs a new exception object and formats the message from a resource.
<a href="#">1761</a>	CreateResFmtHelp	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message from a resource
<a href="#">1760</a>	CreateResHelp	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and gets the message from a resource
<a href="#">1761</a>	ToString	Nicely formatted version of the exception message

**76.73.3 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1761</a>	HelpContext	rw	Help context associated with the exception.
<a href="#">1761</a>	Message	rw	Message associated with the exception.

**76.73.4 Exception.Create**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object with a given message.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const msg: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.CreateFmt` ([1759](#)), `Exception.Message` ([1761](#))

**76.73.5 Exception.CreateFmt**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and formats a new message.

Declaration: `constructor CreateFmt(const msg: string; const args: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.Create` ([1759](#)), `Exception.Message` ([1761](#)), `Format` ([1668](#))

**76.73.6 Exception.CreateRes**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and gets the message from a resource.

Declaration: `constructor CreateRes(ResString: PString)`

Visibility: `public`



Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1759), `Exception.CreateFmt` (1759), `Exception.CreateResFmt` (1760), `Exception.Message` (1761)

### 76.73.7 `Exception.CreateResFmt`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and formats the message from a resource.

Declaration: `constructor CreateResFmt(ResString: PString; const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateResFmt` does the same as `CreateFmt` (1759), but fetches the message from the resource string `ResString`.

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1759), `Exception.CreateFmt` (1759), `Exception.CreateRes` (1759), `Exception.Message` (1761)

### 76.73.8 `Exception.CreateHelp`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context.

Declaration: `constructor CreateHelp(const Msg: string; AHelpContext: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateHelp` does the same as the `Create` (1759) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1761) property.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1759)

### 76.73.9 `Exception.CreateFmtHelp`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message

Declaration: `constructor CreateFmtHelp(const Msg: string;  
const Args: Array of const;  
AHelpContext: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateFmtHelp` does the same as the `CreateFmt` (1759) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1761) property.

See also: `Exception.CreateFmt` (1759)

### 76.73.10 `Exception.CreateResHelp`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and gets the message from a resource

Declaration: `constructor CreateResHelp(ResString: PString; AHelpContext: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateResHelp` does the same as the `CreateRes` (1759) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1761) property.

See also: `Exception.CreateRes` (1759)

**76.73.11 Exception.CreateResFmtHelp**

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message from a resource

Declaration: `constructor CreateResFmtHelp (ResString: PString;  
const Args: Array of const;  
AHelpContext: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateResFmtHelp` does the same as the `CreateResFmt` (1760) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1761) property.

See also: `Exception.CreateResFmt` (1760)

**76.73.12 Exception.ToString**

Synopsis: Nicely formatted version of the exception message

Declaration: `function ToString : string; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` overrides the `ToString` method to return a concatenation of classname and `Exception.Message` (1761).

See also: `Exception.Message` (1761)

**76.73.13 Exception.HelpContext**

Synopsis: Help context associated with the exception.

Declaration: `Property HelpContext : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HelpContext` is the help context associated with the exception, and can be used to provide context-sensitive help when the exception error message is displayed. It should be set in the exception constructor.

See also: `Exception.CreateHelp` (1760), `Exception.Message` (1761)

**76.73.14 Exception.Message**

Synopsis: Message associated with the exception.

Declaration: `Property Message : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Message` provides additional information about the exception. It is shown to the user in e.g. the `ShowException` (1700) routine, and should be set in the constructor when the exception is raised.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1759), `Exception.HelpContext` (1761)

## 76.74 EZeroDivide

### 76.74.1 Description

EZeroDivide occurs when a float division by zero occurs.

See also: EIntError (1753), EIntOverflow (1753), EDivByZero (1751), ERangeError (1757)

## 76.75 IReadWriteSync

### 76.75.1 Description

IReadWriteSync is an interface for synchronizing read/write operations. Writers are always guaranteed to have exclusive access: readers may or may not have simultaneous access, depending on the implementation.

### 76.75.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1762</a>	BeginRead	Start a read operation.
<a href="#">1763</a>	BeginWrite	Start a write operation.
<a href="#">1762</a>	EndRead	End a read operation
<a href="#">1763</a>	EndWrite	End a write operation.

### 76.75.3 IReadWriteSync.BeginRead

Synopsis: Start a read operation.

Declaration: `procedure BeginRead`

Visibility: default

Description: `BeginRead` indicates that a read operation is about to be started. If a write operation is in progress, then the call will block until the write operation finished. Depending on the implementation the call may also block if another read operation is in progress.

After `BeginRead`, any write operation started with `BeginWrite` (1763) will block until `EndRead` (1762) is called.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` (1762), `IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite` (1763), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` (1763)

### 76.75.4 IReadWriteSync.EndRead

Synopsis: End a read operation

Declaration: `procedure EndRead`

Visibility: default

Description: `EndRead` signals the end of a read operation. If there was any blocked write operation, that will be unblocked by a call to `EndRead`.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` (1762), `IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite` (1763), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` (1763)

### 76.75.5 IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite

Synopsis: Start a write operation.

Declaration: `function BeginWrite : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `BeginWrite` signals the begin of a write operation. This call will block if any other read or write operation is currently in progress. It will resume only after all other read or write operations have finished.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1762](#)), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1763](#)), `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` ([1762](#))

### 76.75.6 IReadWriteSync.EndWrite

Synopsis: End a write operation.

Declaration: `procedure EndWrite`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `EndWrite` signals the end of a write operation. After the call to `EndWrite` any other read or write operations can start.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1762](#)), `IReadWriteSync.EndWrite` ([1763](#)), `IReadWriteSync.BeginRead` ([1762](#))

## 76.76 TANSISTRINGBUILDER

### 76.76.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1764</a>	<code>Append</code>	
<a href="#">1764</a>	<code>AppendFormat</code>	
<a href="#">1764</a>	<code>AppendLine</code>	
<a href="#">1765</a>	<code>Clear</code>	
<a href="#">1765</a>	<code>CopyTo</code>	
<a href="#">1764</a>	<code>Create</code>	
<a href="#">1765</a>	<code>EnsureCapacity</code>	
<a href="#">1765</a>	<code>Equals</code>	
<a href="#">1765</a>	<code>Insert</code>	
<a href="#">1766</a>	<code>Remove</code>	
<a href="#">1766</a>	<code>Replace</code>	
<a href="#">1766</a>	<code>ToString</code>	

### 76.76.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1767</a>	<code>Capacity</code>	<code>rw</code>	
<a href="#">1766</a>	<code>Chars</code>	<code>rw</code>	
<a href="#">1767</a>	<code>Length</code>	<code>rw</code>	
<a href="#">1767</a>	<code>MaxCapacity</code>	<code>r</code>	

**76.76.3 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Create****Declaration:** constructor Create

```

constructor Create(aCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: ANSISTRING)
constructor Create(aCapacity: Integer; aMaxCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: ANSISTRING; aCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: ANSISTRING; StartIndex: Integer;
                  aLength: Integer; aCapacity: Integer)

```

Visibility: public

**76.76.4 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Append****Declaration:** function Append(const AValue: Boolean) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

```

function Append(const AValue: Byte) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ANSICHAR) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Currency) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Double) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: SmallInt) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: LongInt) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Int64) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: TObject) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ShortInt) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Single) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: UInt64) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Array of ANSICHAR) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Word) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Cardinal) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: PANSICHAR) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: RawByteString) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ANSICHAR; RepeatCount: Integer)
    : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Array of ANSICHAR; StartIndex: Integer;
                SBCharCount: Integer) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ANSISTRING; StartIndex: Integer;
                Count: Integer) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const Fmt: ANSISTRING; const Args: Array of const)
    : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

```

Visibility: public

**76.76.5 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.AppendFormat****Declaration:** function AppendFormat(const Fmt: ANSISTRING; const Args: Array of const) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

**76.76.6 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.AppendLine****Declaration:** function AppendLine : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

```

function AppendLine(const AValue: RawByteString) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

```

Visibility: public

### 76.76.7 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Clear

Declaration: procedure Clear

Visibility: public

### 76.76.8 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.CopyTo

[illegible]

Visibility: public

### 76.76.9 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.EnsureCapacity

**Declaration:** `function EnsureCapacity(aCapacity: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

### 76.76.10 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Equals

```
Declaration: function Equals(StringBuilder: TANSISTRINGBUILDER) : Boolean
                ; Reintroduce
```

Visibility: public

## 76.76.11 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Insert

```

Declaration: function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Boolean)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Byte) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ANSICHAR)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Currency)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Double)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: SmallInt)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: LongInt)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Array of ANSICHAR)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Int64)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: TObject)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ShortInt)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Single)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ANSISTRING)
                : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

```

```
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Word) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Cardinal)
    : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: UInt64)
    : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ANSISTRING;
    const aRepeatCount: Integer) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Array of ANSICHAR;
    startIndex: Integer; SBCharCount: Integer)
    : TANSISTRINGBUILDER
```

Visibility: public

### 76.76.12 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Remove

Declaration: function Remove(StartIndex: Integer; RemLength: Integer)  
: TANSISTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.76.13 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Replace

Declaration: function Replace(const OldChar: ANSICHAR; const NewChar: ANSICHAR)  
: TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldChar: ANSICHAR; const NewChar: ANSICHAR;  
StartIndex: Integer; Count: Integer)  
: TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldValue: RAWBYTESTRING;  
const NewValue: RAWBYTESTRING) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldValue: RAWBYTESTRING;  
const NewValue: RAWBYTESTRING; StartIndex: Integer;  
Count: Integer) : TANSISTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.76.14 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.ToString

Declaration: function ToString : ANSISTRING; Override  
function ToString(aStartIndex: Integer; aLength: Integer) : ANSISTRING  
; Reintroduce

Visibility: public

### 76.76.15 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Chars

Declaration: Property Chars[index: Integer]: ANSICHAR; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**76.76.16 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Length**

Declaration: `Property Length : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

**76.76.17 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.Capacity**

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

**76.76.18 TANSISTRINGBUILDER.MaxCapacity**

Declaration: `Property MaxCapacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

**76.77 TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding****76.77.1 Description**

`TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` is the encoding class used to represent the UTF-16 big-endian encoding.

See also: `TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` ([1767](#)), `TUTF7Encoding` ([1863](#)), `TMBCSEncoding` ([1807](#)), `TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` ([1767](#))

**76.77.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1767</a>	<code>Clone</code>	Clone a <code>TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding</code> instance
<a href="#">1768</a>	<code>GetPreamble</code>	Return BOM marker bytes

**76.77.3 TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding.Clone**

Synopsis: Clone a `TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` instance

Declaration: `function Clone : TEncoding; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TEncoding.Clone` ([1785](#)) to provide a clone of the `TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` instance.

See also: `TEncoding.Clone` ([1785](#))



### 76.77.4 TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding.GetPreamble

Synopsis: Return BOM marker bytes

Declaration: `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetPreamble` overrides `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1787) to return the 2 UTF-16 BOM Marker bytes (\$FF,\$FE).

See also: `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1787)

## 76.78 TBooleanHelper

### 76.78.1 Description

`TBooleanHelper` is a helper type for the `Boolean` type. It contains mostly conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` (1836), `TShortIntHelper` (1821), `TSmallIntHelper` (1833), `TWordHelper` (1867), `TCardinalHelper` (1775), `TIntegerHelper` (1802), `TInt64Helper` (1799), `TQWordHelper` (1818), `TNativeIntHelper` (1811), `TByteHelper` (1771), `TByteBoolHelper` (1770), `TWordBoolHelper` (1866), `TLongBoolHelper` (1805)

### 76.78.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1768</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert string value to boolean value.
<a href="#">1768</a>	<code>Size</code>	Return the size (in bytes) of the
<a href="#">1769</a>	<code>ToInteger</code>	Convert to an integer value
<a href="#">1769</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert a boolean value to string.
<a href="#">1769</a>	<code>TryToParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a boolean value

### 76.78.3 TBooleanHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert string value to boolean value.

Declaration: `class function Parse(const S: string) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Parse` attempts to convert the string `S` to a boolean value. It uses the `StrToBool` (1716) function to perform the conversion.

Errors: If `S` does not contain a valid string representation, then an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: `TBooleanHelper.TryToParse` (1769), `TBooleanHelper.ToString` (1769), `TBooleanHelper.ToInteger` (1769)

### 76.78.4 TBooleanHelper.Size

Synopsis: Return the size (in bytes) of the

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in bytes) of the boolean value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf (Boolean)`.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1514](#))

### 76.78.5 TBooleanHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a boolean value to string.

Declaration: 

```
class function ToString(const AValue: Boolean;
                        UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload
                        ; Static
function ToString(UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class method version, convert the `AValue` boolean to a string representation. In the function method version the boolean value itself (`Self`) will be converted.

If the `UseBoolStrs` parameter equals `TUseBoolStrs.True`, then the string representation will use the boolean strings `BoolStrs` ([1571](#)). The default value for `UseBoolStrs` is `TUseBoolStrs.False`.

The conversion is done using the `BoolToStr` ([1620](#)) function.

See also: `BoolStrs` ([1571](#)), `BoolToStr` ([1620](#))

### 76.78.6 TBooleanHelper.TryParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a boolean value

Declaration: 

```
class function TryParse(const S: string; out AValue: Boolean)
                        : Boolean; Static
```

Visibility: public

Description: `TryParse` will attempt to convert the string `S` to a boolean value. If the attempt is successful, `True` is returned, and the actual value is returned in `AValue`. If the attempt failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TBooleanHelper.Parse` ([1768](#)), `TBooleanHelper.ToString` ([1769](#))

### 76.78.7 TBooleanHelper.ToInteger

Synopsis: Convert to an integer value

Declaration: 

```
function ToInteger : Integer
```

Visibility: public

Description: `ToInteger` will return the boolean value, typecasted to `Integer`.

See also: `TBooleanHelper.ToString` ([1769](#))

## 76.79 TByteBoolHelper

### 76.79.1 Description

TByteBoolHelper is a helper type for the ByteBool type. It contains mostly conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: TStringHelper ([1836](#)), TShortIntHelper ([1821](#)), TSmallIntHelper ([1833](#)), TWordHelper ([1867](#)), TCardinalHelper ([1775](#)), TIntegerHelper ([1802](#)), TInt64Helper ([1799](#)), TQWordHelper ([1818](#)), TNativeIntHelper ([1811](#)), TByteHelper ([1771](#)), TByteBoolHelper ([1770](#)), TWordBoolHelper ([1866](#)), TLongBoolHelper ([1805](#))

### 76.79.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1770</a>	Parse	Convert string value to ByteBool value.
<a href="#">1770</a>	Size	Return the size (in bytes) of the
<a href="#">1771</a>	ToInteger	Convert to an integer value
<a href="#">1770</a>	ToString	Convert a ByteBool value to string.
<a href="#">1771</a>	TryToParse	Try to convert a string to a ByteBool value

### 76.79.3 TByteBoolHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert string value to ByteBool value.

Declaration: `class function Parse(const S: string) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: Parse attempts to convert the string S to a ByteBool value. It uses the StrToBool ([1716](#)) function to perform the conversion.

Errors: If S does not contain a valid string representation, then an EConvertError ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: TByteBoolHelper.TryToParse ([1771](#)), TByteBoolHelper.ToString ([1770](#)), TByteBoolHelper.ToInteger ([1771](#))

### 76.79.4 TByteBoolHelper.Size

Synopsis: Return the size (in bytes) of the

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: Size returns the size (in bytes) of the ByteBool value. This is equivalent to SizeOf(ByteBool).

See also: SizeOf ([1514](#))

### 76.79.5 TByteBoolHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a ByteBool value to string.

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Boolean;  
                                  UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload  
                                  ; Static  
function ToString(UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class method version, convert the `AValue` `ByteBool` to a string representation. In the function method version the `ByteBool` value itself (`Self`) will be converted.

If the `UseBoolStrs` parameter equals `TUseBoolStrs.True`, then the string representation will use the `ByteBool` strings `BoolStrs` (1571). The default value for `UseBoolStrs` is `TUseBoolStrs.False`.

The conversion is done using the BoolToStr (1620) function.

See also: BoolStrs (1571), BoolToStr (1620)

### 76.79.6 TByteBoolHelper.TryToParse

### Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a ByteBool value

```
Declaration: class function TryToParse(const S: string; out AValue: Boolean)
                                     : Boolean; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** TryToParse will attempt to convert the string *S* to a ByteBool value. If the attempt is successful, True is returned, and the actual value is returned in AValue. If the attempt failed, False is returned.

See also: [TByteBoolHelper.Parse \(1770\)](#), [TByteBoolHelper.ToString \(1770\)](#)

### 76.79.7 TByteBoolHelper.ToInteger

Synopsis: Convert to an integer value

```
Declaration: function ToInteger : Integer
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToInteger` will return the `ByteBool` value, typecasted to `Integer`.

See also: [TByteBoolHelper.ToString \(1770\)](#)

## 76.80 TByteHelper

### 76.80.1 Description

TByteHelper contains some auxiliary routines for a byte-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: TStringHelper (1836), TShortIntHelper (1821), TSmallIntHelper (1833), TWordHelper (1867), TCardinalHelper (1775), TIntegerHelper (1802), TInt64Helper (1799), TQWordHelper (1818), TNativeIntHelper (1811), TNativeUIntHelper (1815)

**76.80.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1774</a>	ClearBit	
<a href="#">1772</a>	Parse	Convert from a string
<a href="#">1774</a>	SetBit	
<a href="#">1772</a>	Size	Size, in bytes, of the byte value
<a href="#">1775</a>	TestBit	
<a href="#">1774</a>	ToBinString	
<a href="#">1773</a>	ToBoolean	Convert to a boolean value
<a href="#">1773</a>	ToDouble	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1773</a>	ToExtended	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1775</a>	ToggleBit	
<a href="#">1774</a>	ToHexString	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
<a href="#">1774</a>	ToSingle	Convert to a single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1772</a>	ToString	Convert the value to string
<a href="#">1773</a>	TryParse	Try to convert a string to a byte, report success or failure

**76.80.3 TByteHelper.Parse**

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Byte; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a byte value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1722](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

Errors: If the string does not contain a valid byte value, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToString` ([1772](#)), `TByteHelper.TryParse` ([1773](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#))

**76.80.4 TByteHelper.Size**

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the byte value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in bytes) of the byte value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Byte)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1514](#))

**76.80.5 TByteHelper.ToString**

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Byte) : string; Overload; Static`  
`function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the byte value itself is used. The `IntToStr` (1689) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TByteHelper.Parse` (1772), `IntToStr` (1689)

### 76.80.6 TByteHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a byte, report success or failure

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Byte)  
: Boolean; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a byte, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the byte is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` (1571) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TByteHelper.Parse` (1772), `Val` (1537)

### 76.80.7 TByteHelper.ToBoolean

**Synopsis:** Convert to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` converts the byte value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToSingle` (1774), `TByteHelper.ToDouble` (1773), `TByteHelper.ToExtended` (1773), `TByteHelper.ToString` (1772), `TByteHelper.ToHexString` (1774)

### 76.80.8 TByteHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert to a double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToDouble : Double`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the byte value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToBoolean` (1773), `TByteHelper.ToExtended` (1773), `TByteHelper.ToSingle` (1774), `TByteHelper.ToString` (1772), `TByteHelper.ToHexString` (1774)

### 76.80.9 TByteHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToExtended : Extended`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the byte value to an extended-sized floating point value

See also: `TByteHelper.ToBoolean` ([1773](#)), `TByteHelper.ToSingle` ([1774](#)), `TByteHelper.ToDouble` ([1773](#)), `TByteHelper.ToString` ([1772](#)), `TByteHelper.ToHexString` ([1774](#))

#### 76.80.10 `TByteHelper.ToBinString`

**Declaration:** `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

#### 76.80.11 `TByteHelper.ToHexString`

**Synopsis:** Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

**Declaration:** `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToHexString` converts the byte value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToBoolean` ([1773](#)), `TByteHelper.ToSingle` ([1774](#)), `TByteHelper.ToDouble` ([1773](#)), `TByteHelper.ToString` ([1772](#)), `TByteHelper.ToExtended` ([1773](#))

#### 76.80.12 `TByteHelper.ToSingle`

**Synopsis:** Convert to an single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToSingle` converts the byte value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TByteHelper.ToBoolean` ([1773](#)), `TByteHelper.ToDouble` ([1773](#)), `TByteHelper.ToExtended` ([1773](#)), `TByteHelper.ToString` ([1772](#)), `TByteHelper.ToHexString` ([1774](#))

#### 76.80.13 `TByteHelper.SetBit`

**Declaration:** `function SetBit(const Index: TByteBitIndex) : Byte`

Visibility: public

#### 76.80.14 `TByteHelper.ClearBit`

**Declaration:** `function ClearBit(const Index: TByteBitIndex) : Byte`

Visibility: public

### 76.80.15 TByteHelper.ToggleBit

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TByteBitIndex) : Byte`

Visibility: public

### 76.80.16 TByteHelper.TestBit

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TByteBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

## 76.81 TCardinalHelper

### 76.81.1 Description

`TCardinalHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a Cardinal-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1836](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1821](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1833](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1867](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1771](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1802](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1799](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1818](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1811](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper` ([1815](#))

### 76.81.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1778</a>	<code>ClearBit</code>	
<a href="#">1775</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert from a string
<a href="#">1778</a>	<code>SetBit</code>	
<a href="#">1776</a>	<code>Size</code>	Size, in bytes, of the Cardinal value
<a href="#">1778</a>	<code>TestBit</code>	
<a href="#">1777</a>	<code>ToBinString</code>	
<a href="#">1776</a>	<code>ToBoolean</code>	Convert to a boolean value
<a href="#">1777</a>	<code>ToDouble</code>	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1777</a>	<code>ToExtended</code>	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1778</a>	<code>ToggleBit</code>	
<a href="#">1777</a>	<code>ToHexString</code>	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
<a href="#">1777</a>	<code>ToSingle</code>	Convert to a single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1776</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert the value to string
<a href="#">1776</a>	<code>TryParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a Cardinal, report success or failure

### 76.81.3 TCardinalHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Cardinal; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a Cardinal value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1722](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

Errors: If the string does not contain a valid Cardinal value, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToString` ([1776](#)), `TCardinalHelper.TryParse` ([1776](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#))





### 76.81.8 TCardinalHelper.ToDouble

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the Cardinal value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean` ([1776](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToExtended` ([1777](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToSingle` ([1777](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToString` ([1776](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToHexString` ([1777](#))

### 76.81.9 TCardinalHelper.ToExtended

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the Cardinal value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean` ([1776](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToSingle` ([1777](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToDouble` ([1777](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToString` ([1776](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToHexString` ([1777](#))

### 76.81.10 TCardinalHelper.ToBinString

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

### 76.81.11 TCardinalHelper.ToHexString

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToHexString` converts the Cardinal value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean` ([1776](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToSingle` ([1777](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToDouble` ([1777](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToString` ([1776](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToExtended` ([1777](#))

### 76.81.12 TCardinalHelper.ToSingle

Synopsis: Convert to a single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the Cardinal value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TCardinalHelper.ToBoolean` ([1776](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToDouble` ([1777](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToExtended` ([1777](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToString` ([1776](#)), `TCardinalHelper.ToHexString` ([1777](#))

**76.81.13 TCardinalHelper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TCardinalBitIndex) : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

**76.81.14 TCardinalHelper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TCardinalBitIndex) : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

**76.81.15 TCardinalHelper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TCardinalBitIndex) : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

**76.81.16 TCardinalHelper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TCardinalBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**76.82 TDoubleHelper****76.82.1 Description**

`TDoubleHelper` is the helper type for the Double-sized floating point type. It contains some conversion methods, as well as access to the low-level structure of the floating-point representation of a Double.

See also: `TDoubleHelper` ([1778](#)), `TExtendedHelper` ([1791](#))

**76.82.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1781</a>	<code>BuildUp</code>	Build a Double-sized floating point from its composing parts
<a href="#">1782</a>	<code>Exponent</code>	Exponent of the floating-point value
<a href="#">1782</a>	<code>Fraction</code>	Fraction of the floating-point value
<a href="#">1779</a>	<code>IsInfinity</code>	Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.
<a href="#">1779</a>	<code>IsNan</code>	Check whether a value equals NaN.
<a href="#">1779</a>	<code>IsNegativeInfinity</code>	Check whether a value is negative infinity.
<a href="#">1780</a>	<code>IsPositiveInfinity</code>	Check whether a value is positive infinity.
<a href="#">1782</a>	<code>Mantissa</code>	Mantissa of the floating-point
<a href="#">1780</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert a string to a floating point value
<a href="#">1780</a>	<code>Size</code>	Size (in bytes) of a Double-sized floating point value.
<a href="#">1783</a>	<code>SpecialType</code>	Return the type of the Double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1780</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert a Double-sized floating point value to a string
<a href="#">1781</a>	<code>TryParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a Double-sized floating point value.

### 76.82.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1783</a>	Bytes	rw	Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value
<a href="#">1784</a>	Exp	rw	The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.
<a href="#">1784</a>	Frac	rw	Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.
<a href="#">1783</a>	Sign	rw	Sign of the floating point value
<a href="#">1783</a>	Words	rw	Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value

## 76.82.4 TDoubleHelper.IsInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.

```
Declaration: class function IsInfinity(const AValue: Double) : Boolean;   Overload
                ; Static
                function IsInfinity : Boolean;   Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsInfinity` checks whether a Double-sized floating point value represents a positive or negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: [TDoubleHelper.IsNan \(1779\)](#), [TDoubleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity \(1780\)](#), [TDoubleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity \(1779\)](#)

## 76.82.5 TDoubleHelper.IsNan

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value equals NaN.

```
Declaration: class function IsNan(const AValue: Double) : Boolean; Overload; Static
            function IsNan : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsNaN` checks whether a Double-sized floating point value is NaN (Not a Number). If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: [TDoubleHelper.IsInfinity \(1779\)](#), [TDoubleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity \(1780\)](#), [TDoubleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity \(1779\)](#)

### 76.82.6 TDoubleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is negative infinity.

```
Declaration: class function IsNegativeInfinity(const AValue: Double) : Boolean
                ; Overload; Static
                function IsNegativeInfinity : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IsNegativeInfinity` checks whether a Double-sized floating point value represents a negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: TDoubleHelper.IsNan ([1779](#)), TDoubleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity ([1780](#)), TDoubleHelper.IsInfinity ([1779](#))

### 76.82.7 TDoubleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity

Synopsis: Check whether a value is positive infinity.

Declaration: `class function IsPositiveInfinity(const AValue: Double) : Boolean  
; Overload; Static  
function IsPositiveInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsPositiveInfinity` checks whether a Double-sized floating point value represents a positive infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.IsNan` (1779), `TDoubleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` (1779), `TDoubleHelper.IsInfinity` (1779)

### 76.82.8 TDoubleHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert a string to a floating point value

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Double; Overload; Static  
class function Parse(const AString: string;  
const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Double  
; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will try to convert `AString` to a Double-sized floating point value. It will take into account internationalization settings. (it uses `FloatToStr`).

Errors: If the string `AString` is not a valid floating-point value, a `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1662), `TDoubleHelper.ToString` (1780), `TDoubleHelper.TryParse` (1781)

### 76.82.9 TDoubleHelper.Size

Synopsis: Size (in bytes) of a Double-sized floating point value.

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` is the size (in bytes) of a Double-sized floating point value. It is equivalent to calling `SizeOf(Double)`.

See also: `SizeOf` (1514)

### 76.82.10 TDoubleHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a Double-sized floating point value to a string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Double) : string; Overload  
; Static  
class function ToString(const AValue: Double;  
const AFormat: TFloatFormat;  
const APrecision: Integer;  
const ADigits: Integer) : string; Overload`

```

; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Double;
                        const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
                        const APrecision: Integer;
                        const ADigits: Integer;
                        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Double;
                        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload; Static
function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
                  const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer)
: string; Overload
function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
                  const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer;
                  const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload
function ToString(const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload
function ToString : string; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will convert `AValue` (or `Self` in the plain method version) to a string. Optionally `FormatSettings` can be specified, to be able to specify the decimal separator character to use.

Additionally, a precision `APrecision` and number of digits `ADigits` can be specified, in conjunction with a `AFormat` parameter to specify the form in which the floating-point value must be represented. (see `TFloatFormat` (1592) for an explanation of the various values). In this case, `FloatToStrF` (1663) is used to format the value. In the absence of these parameters, `FloatToStr` (1662) is called.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1662), `FloatToStrF` (1663), `TFloatFormat` (1592)

### 76.82.11 TDoubleHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a Double-sized floating point value.

```

Declaration: class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Double)
: Boolean; Overload; Static
class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Double;
                        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean
; Overload; Static

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a Double-sized floating point value and reports `True` if the conversion was successful. In that case the parsed value is returned in `AValue`.

If the conversion failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Parse` (1780), `TDoubleHelper.ToString` (1780)

### 76.82.12 TDoubleHelper.BuildUp

**Synopsis:** Build a Double-sized floating point from its composing parts

**Declaration:** `procedure BuildUp(const ASignFlag: Boolean; const AMantissa: QWord;  
const AExponent: Integer)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `BuildUp` will compose a Double-sized floating point value from the sign `ASignFlag`, mantissa `AMantissa` and exponent `AExponent`. It simply sets the `Sign` (1783), `Exp` (1784) and `Frac` (1784) properties in 1 call.

See also: `TDDoubleHelper.Sign` (1783), `TDDoubleHelper.Exp` (1784), `TDDoubleHelper.Frac` (1784)

### 76.82.13 TDoubleHelper.Exponent

**Synopsis:** Exponent of the floating-point value

**Declaration:** `function Exponent : Integer`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Exponent` is the value  $X$  in the representation of the floating-point value in  $m \cdot 2^X$ , i.e. the exponent.

See also: `TDDoubleHelper.Sign` (1783), `TDDoubleHelper.Exp` (1784), `TDDoubleHelper.Frac` (1784), `TDDoubleHelper.Fraction` (1782), `TDDoubleHelper.Mantissa` (1782)

### 76.82.14 TDoubleHelper.Fraction

**Synopsis:** Fraction of the floating-point value

**Declaration:** `function Fraction : Extended`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Fraction` is the decimal part of the floating-point value.

See also: `TDDoubleHelper.Sign` (1783), `TDDoubleHelper.Exp` (1784), `TDDoubleHelper.Exponent` (1782), `TDDoubleHelper.Frac` (1784), `TDDoubleHelper.Mantissa` (1782)

### 76.82.15 TDoubleHelper.Mantissa

**Synopsis:** Mantissa of the floating-point

**Declaration:** `function Mantissa : QWord`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Mantissa` is the value of the significand without the hidden bit. This means it the plain bit pattern as it is stored in memory.

See also: `TDDoubleHelper.Sign` (1783), `TDDoubleHelper.Exp` (1784), `TDDoubleHelper.Exponent` (1782), `TDDoubleHelper.Frac` (1784), `TDDoubleHelper.Fraction` (1782)

**76.82.16 TDoubleHelper.SpecialType**

Synopsis: Return the type of the Double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: public

Description: `SpecialType` checks whether the Double-sized floating point value equals one of several special values, and returns an enumerated value describing which value this is. See `TFloatSpecial` ([1571](#)) for an explanation of the possible values.

See also: `TFloatSpecial` ([1571](#))

**76.82.17 TDoubleHelper.Bytes**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Bytes[AIndex: Cardinal]: Byte`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Bytes` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the Double-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to `Size-1`.

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Words` ([1783](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Size` ([1780](#))

**76.82.18 TDoubleHelper.Words**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Words[AIndex: Cardinal]: Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Words` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the Double-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to  $(\text{Size}-1) \div 2$ .

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Bytes` ([1783](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Size` ([1780](#))

**76.82.19 TDoubleHelper.Sign**

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Sign` returns `True` if the sign bit of the value is set (i.e. it is a negative value) or `False` if it is not set (i.e. it is a positive value).

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Bytes` ([1783](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Exp` ([1784](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Frac` ([1784](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Mantissa` ([1782](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Fraction` ([1782](#)), `TDoubleHelper.Exponent` ([1782](#))



### 76.82.20 TDoubleHelper.Exp

Synopsis: The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` is the internal representation of the Exponent (1782).

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Bytes` (1783), `TDoubleHelper.Sign` (1783), `TDoubleHelper.Frac` (1784), `TDoubleHelper.Mantissa` (1782), `TDoubleHelper.Fraction` (1782), `TDoubleHelper.Exponent` (1782)

### 76.82.21 TDoubleHelper.Frac

Synopsis: Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.

Declaration: `Property Frac : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Frac` is the bit pattern representing the fractional part (significand) including the preceding 1 (the hidden bit).

See also: `TDoubleHelper.Bytes` (1783), `TDoubleHelper.Sign` (1783), `TDoubleHelper.Exp` (1784), `TDoubleHelper.Mantissa` (1782), `TDoubleHelper.Fraction` (1782), `TDoubleHelper.Exponent` (1782)

## 76.83 TEncoding

### 76.83.1 Description

`TEncoding` is a mostly abstract class that contains various methods to deal with different encodings in single- and double-byte strings. In practice, one instance of a descendent of this class for each needed encoding can be instantiated and used. The class contains several class methods and properties to create such instances, and has several often-used instances available as class properties, in particular the default encoding.

When using encodings (and in particular `TEncoding.Default` (1789) or `TEncoding.ANSI` (1789)), if the `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390) changes, you should call `TEncoding.FreeEncodings` (1784) to regenerate the encodings.

See also: `TEncoding.ANSI` (1789), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1789), `TEncoding.Default` (1789), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1789), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1790)

**76.83.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1785</a>	Clone	Clone a TEncoding instance
<a href="#">1785</a>	Convert	Convert an array of bytes from one encoding to another
<a href="#">1786</a>	GetBufferEncoding	Attempt to guess the encoding of a buffer
<a href="#">1786</a>	GetEncoding	Get an encoding instance for a given codepage.
<a href="#">1787</a>	GetMaxByteCount	Returns the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string
<a href="#">1787</a>	GetMaxCharCount	Return the maximum number of characters that can be represented in a number of bytes
<a href="#">1787</a>	GetPreamble	Return the BOM Marker used by the encoding
<a href="#">1788</a>	GetString	Return a string based on an array of bytes
<a href="#">1786</a>	IsStandardEncoding	Check if the encoding is one of the standard encodings

**76.83.3 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1789</a>	ANSI	r	Ansi encoding instance
<a href="#">1789</a>	ASCII	r	ASCII encoding instance
<a href="#">1789</a>	BigEndianUnicode	r	Big-endian Unicode (UTF16BE) encoding instance
<a href="#">1788</a>	CodePage	r	Codepage for this encoding
<a href="#">1789</a>	Default	r	Default codepage
<a href="#">1788</a>	EncodingName	r	Name of this encoding
<a href="#">1788</a>	IsSingleByte	r	Is the encoding a single-byte encoding or not ?
<a href="#">1790</a>	SystemEncoding	r	
<a href="#">1790</a>	Unicode	r	UTF16 encoding instance
<a href="#">1790</a>	UTF7	r	UTF7 encoding instance
<a href="#">1790</a>	UTF8	r	UTF8 encoding instance

**76.83.4 TEncoding.Clone**

Synopsis: Clone a TEncoding instance

Declaration: `function Clone : TEncoding; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Clone creates a copy of a TEncoding instance. This method returns Nil in TEncoding and must be implemented in descendent classes.

See also: TEncoding.Create ([1784](#))

**76.83.5 TEncoding.Convert**

Synopsis: Convert an array of bytes from one encoding to another

Declaration: `class function Convert(Source: TEncoding; Destination: TEncoding;  
const Bytes: TBytes) : TBytes; Overload  
class function Convert(Source: TEncoding; Destination: TEncoding;  
const Bytes: TBytes; StartIndex: Integer;  
Count: Integer) : TBytes; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** Convert will convert the bytes in Bytes from encoding Source to encoding Destination and returns the converted bytes as an array. If StartIndex and Count are specified, the conversion starts at (zero-based) index StartIndex, and only Count bytes will be converted.

See also: TEncoding.GetBytes (1784), TEncoding.GetChars (1784)

### 76.83.6 TEncoding.IsStandardEncoding

**Synopsis:** Check if the encoding is one of the standard encodings

**Declaration:** `class function IsStandardEncoding(AEncoding: TEncoding) : Boolean  
; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** IsStandardEncoding will return True is one of the standard encoding instances TEncoding.ANSI (1789), TEncoding.ASCII (1789), TEncoding.Default (1789), TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode (1789), TEncoding.Unicode (1790), TEncoding.UTF7 (1790) or TEncoding.UTF8 (1790). Otherwise it returns False.

See also: TEncoding.ANSI (1789), TEncoding.ASCII (1789), TEncoding.Default (1789), TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode (1789), TEncoding.Unicode (1790), TEncoding.UTF7 (1790), TEncoding.UTF8 (1790)

### 76.83.7 TEncoding.GetBufferEncoding

**Synopsis:** Attempt to guess the encoding of a buffer

**Declaration:** `class function GetBufferEncoding(const Buffer: TBytes;  
var AEncoding: TEncoding) : Integer  
; Overload; Static  
class function GetBufferEncoding(const Buffer: TBytes;  
var AEncoding: TEncoding;  
ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding) : Integer  
; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** GetBufferEncoding checks the BOM marker of an array of bytes Buffer, and returns the found encoding in AEncoding. Only the TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode (1789) TEncoding.Unicode (1790) and TEncoding.UTF8 (1790) encodings will be tried.

If AEncoding is non-Nil on entry, it will be used to check the BOM marker with. No other encoding will be tried in that case.

If ADefaultEncoding is specified, it will be returned in case no match was found.

The function returns the number of bytes in the BOM Marker.

See also: TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode (1789), TEncoding.Unicode (1790), TEncoding.UTF8 (1790), TEncoding.GetPreamble (1787)

### 76.83.8 TEncoding.GetEncoding

**Synopsis:** Get an encoding instance for a given codepage.

**Declaration:** `class function GetEncoding(CodePage: Integer) : TEncoding; Overload  
; Static  
class function GetEncoding(const EncodingName: UnicodeString)  
: TEncoding; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `GetEncoding` will return an instance of `TEncoding` for the given codepage `CodePage`. The codepage can also be specified by name `EncodingName`. The returned instance is an appropriate descendent of `TEncoding` and needs to be freed by the caller.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` ([1857](#)), `TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` ([1767](#)), `TUTF8Encoding` ([1864](#)), `TUTF7Encoding` ([1863](#)), `TMBCSEncoding` ([1807](#))

### 76.83.9 TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount

**Synopsis:** Returns the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string

**Declaration:** `function GetMaxByteCount(CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Virtual`  
`; Abstract`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `GetMaxByteCount` returns the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string of `CharCount` characters in the given encoding.

This is an abstract method, implemented by descendents of `TEncoding`.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` ([1787](#))

### 76.83.10 TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount

**Synopsis:** Return the maximum number of characters that can be represented in a number of bytes

**Declaration:** `function GetMaxCharCount(ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Virtual`  
`; Abstract`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `GetMaxCharCount` returns the theoretical maximum number of characters that can be represented in a buffer of length `ByteCount` in the given encoding. Note that the actual number of characters that can be represented may well be much less and depends on the encoding and the actual characters.

This is an abstract method, implemented by descendents of `TEncoding`.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` ([1787](#))

### 76.83.11 TEncoding.GetPreamble

**Synopsis:** Return the BOM Marker used by the encoding

**Declaration:** `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `GetPreamble` returns the BOM marker bytes used by the encoding. This is only meaningful for the UTF8 and Unicode encodings, for all other encodings there is no BOM Marker.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` ([1857](#)), `TBigEndianUnicodeEncoding` ([1767](#)), `TUTF8Encoding` ([1864](#))

### 76.83.12 TEncoding.GetString

Synopsis: Return a string based on an array of bytes

Declaration: `function GetString(const Bytes: TBytes) : UnicodeString; Overload`  
`function GetString(const Bytes: TBytes; ByteIndex: Integer;`  
`ByteCount: Integer) : UnicodeString; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetString` will return a Unicode string, created from the bytes in the `Bytes` array. The bytes array will be interpreted according to the encoding which the `TEncoding` represents.

If `ByteIndex` and `ByteCount` are specified, only the `ByteCount` bytes starting at position `ByteIndex` will be converted.

Errors: In case of invalid bytes, an `EEncodingError` exception may be raised.

### 76.83.13 TEncoding.CodePage

Synopsis: Codepage for this encoding

Declaration: `Property CodePage : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CodePage` is the numerical codepage for this encoding. It is a number as used in the Windows codepage registry.

See also: `TEncoding.EncodingName` ([1788](#))

### 76.83.14 TEncoding.EncodingName

Synopsis: Name of this encoding

Declaration: `Property EncodingName : UnicodeString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `EncodingName` is the name for this encoding. It's based on the windows name for the encoding and is calculated from the codepage.

See also: `TEncoding.CodePage` ([1788](#))

### 76.83.15 TEncoding.IsSingleByte

Synopsis: Is the encoding a single-byte encoding or not ?

Declaration: `Property IsSingleByte : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `IsSingleByte` determines whether an encoding is single-byte or not. It is `false` for all standard encodings.

### 76.83.16 TEncoding.ANSI

Synopsis: Ansi encoding instance

Declaration: `Property ANSI : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ANSI` is the ANSI codepage encoding instance, it is the default single-byte string codepage on windows (as returned by `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1571)). This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1789), `TEncoding.Default` (1789), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1789), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1790)

### 76.83.17 TEncoding.ASCII

Synopsis: ASCII encoding instance

Declaration: `Property ASCII : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ASCII` is the ASCII codepage (`CP_ASCII`) encoding instance. This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: `TEncoding.ANSI` (1789), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1789), `TEncoding.Default` (1789), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1789), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1790)

### 76.83.18 TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode

Synopsis: Big-endian Unicode (UTF16BE) encoding instance

Declaration: `Property BigEndianUnicode : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `BigEndianUnicode` is the Big-endian Unicode encoding instance (`CP_UTF16BE`) This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ANSI` (1789), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1789), `TEncoding.Default` (1789), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1790)

### 76.83.19 TEncoding.Default

Synopsis: Default codepage

Declaration: `Property Default : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**Description:** `Default` is the default encoding instance (it equals the ANSI codepage). This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

if the `DefaultSystemCodePage` (1390) changes, you should call `TEncoding.FreeEncodings` (1784) to regenerate the default encoding using the new code page.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ANSI` (1789), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1789), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1789), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1790)

### 76.83.20 `TEncoding.SystemEncoding`

**Declaration:** `Property SystemEncoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 76.83.21 `TEncoding.Unicode`

Synopsis: UTF16 encoding instance

**Declaration:** `Property Unicode : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**Description:** `Unicode` is the Big-endian Unicode encoding instance (CP\_UTF16) This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ANSI` (1789), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1789), `TEncoding.Default` (1789), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1789), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF7` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1790)

### 76.83.22 `TEncoding.UTF7`

Synopsis: UTF7 encoding instance

**Declaration:** `Property UTF7 : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**Description:** `UTF7` is the UTF7 encoding instance (CP\_UTF7) This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), `TEncoding.ANSI` (1789), `TEncoding.ASCII` (1789), `TEncoding.Default` (1789), `TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode` (1789), `TEncoding.Unicode` (1790), `TEncoding.UTF8` (1790)

### 76.83.23 `TEncoding.UTF8`

Synopsis: UTF8 encoding instance

**Declaration:** `Property UTF8 : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**Description:** UTF8 is the UTF7 encoding instance (CP\_UTF7) This instance is created and maintained by the system, it should not be freed.

See also: (??), TEncoding.ANSI ([1789](#)), TEncoding.ASCII ([1789](#)), TEncoding.Default ([1789](#)), TEncoding.BigEndianUnicode ([1789](#)), TEncoding.Unicode ([1790](#)), TEncoding.UTF7 ([1790](#))

## 76.84 TExtendedHelper

### 76.84.1 Description

TExtendedHelper is the helper type for the Extended-sized floating point type. It contains some conversion methods, as well as access to the low-level structure of the floating-point representation of a Extended.

See also: TDoubleHelper ([1778](#)), TExtendedHelper ([1791](#))

### 76.84.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1794</a>	BuildUp	Build a Extended-sized floating point from its composing parts
<a href="#">1795</a>	Exponent	Exponent of the floating-point value
<a href="#">1795</a>	Fraction	Fraction of the floating-point value
<a href="#">1793</a>	IsInfinity	Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.
<a href="#">1793</a>	IsNan	Check whether a value equals NaN.
<a href="#">1793</a>	IsNegativeInfinity	Check whether a value is negative infinity.
<a href="#">1794</a>	IsPositiveInfinity	Check whether a value is positive infinity.
<a href="#">1795</a>	Mantissa	Mantissa of the floating-point
<a href="#">1792</a>	Parse	Convert a string to a floating point value
<a href="#">1794</a>	Size	Size (in bytes) of a Extended-sized floating point value.
<a href="#">1795</a>	SpecialType	Return the type of the Extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1791</a>	ToString	Convert a Extended-sized floating point value to a string
<a href="#">1792</a>	TryParse	Try to convert a string to a Extended-sized floating point value.

### 76.84.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1796</a>	Bytes	rw	Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value
<a href="#">1796</a>	Exp	rw	The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.
<a href="#">1797</a>	Frac	rw	Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.
<a href="#">1796</a>	Sign	rw	Sign of the floating point value
<a href="#">1796</a>	Words	rw	Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value

### 76.84.4 TExtendedHelper.ToString

**Synopsis:** Convert a Extended-sized floating point value to a string

**Declaration:**

```
class function ToString(const AValue: Extended) : string; Overload
; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Extended;
const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
; Overload; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Extended;
```



```

        const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
        const APrecision: Integer;
        const ADigits: Integer) : string; Overload
        ; Static
class function ToString(const AValue: Extended;
        const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
        const APrecision: Integer;
        const ADigits: Integer;
        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
        ; Overload; Static
function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
        const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer)
        : string; Overload
function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;
        const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer;
        const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
        ; Overload
function ToString(const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
        ; Overload
function ToString : string; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will convert `AValue` (or `Self` in the plain method version) to a string. Optionally `FormatSettings` can be specified, to be able to specify the decimal separator character to use.

Additionally, a precision `APrecision` and number of digits `ADigits` can be specified, in conjunction with a `AFormat` parameter to specify the form in which the floating-point value must be represented. (see `TFloatFormat` (1592) for an explanation of the various values). In this case, `FloatToStrF` (1663) is used to format the value. In the absence of these parameters, `FloatToStr` (1662) is called.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1662), `FloatToStrF` (1663), `TFloatFormat` (1592)

### 76.84.5 TExtendedHelper.Parse

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a floating point value

```

Declaration: class function Parse(const AString: string) : Extended; Overload
                ; Static
class function Parse(const AString: string;
                const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Extended
                ; Overload; Static

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Parse` will try to convert `AString` to a `Extended`-sized floating point value. It will take into account internationalization settings. (it uses `FloatToStr`).

**Errors:** If the string `AString` is not a valid floating-point value, a `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1662), `TExtendedHelper.ToString` (1791), `TExtendedHelper.TryParse` (1792)

### 76.84.6 TExtendedHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a `Extended`-sized floating point value.

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Extended) : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Extended; const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `Extended`-sized floating point value and reports `True` if the conversion was successful. In that case the parsed value is returned in `AValue`. If the conversion failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Parse` ([1792](#)), `TExtendedHelper.ToString` ([1791](#))

### 76.84.7 TExtendedHelper.IsNan

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value equals NaN.

**Declaration:** `class function IsNan(const AValue: Extended) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsNan : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsNan` checks whether a `Extended`-sized floating point value is NaN (Not a Number). If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.IsInfinity` ([1793](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1794](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` ([1793](#))

### 76.84.8 TExtendedHelper.IsInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsInfinity(const AValue: Extended) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function IsInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsInfinity` checks whether a `Extended`-sized floating point value represents a positive or negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.IsNan` ([1793](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` ([1794](#)), `TExtendedHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` ([1793](#))

### 76.84.9 TExtendedHelper.IsNegativeInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is negative infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsNegativeInfinity(const AValue: Extended) : Boolean`  
`function IsNegativeInfinity : Boolean; Overload; Static`  
`function IsNegativeInfinity : Boolean; Overload`



**76.84.13 TExtendedHelper.Exponent**

Synopsis: Exponent of the floating-point value

Declaration: `function Exponent : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exponent` is the value  $X$  in the representation of the floating-point value in  $m \cdot 2^X$ , i.e. the exponent.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Sign` (1796), `TExtendedHelper.Exp` (1796), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` (1797), `TExtendedHelper.Fraction` (1795), `TExtendedHelper.Mantissa` (1795)

**76.84.14 TExtendedHelper.Fraction**

Synopsis: Fraction of the floating-point value

Declaration: `function Fraction : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `Fraction` is the decimal part of the floating-point value.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Sign` (1796), `TExtendedHelper.Exp` (1796), `TExtendedHelper.Exponent` (1795), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` (1797), `TExtendedHelper.Mantissa` (1795)

**76.84.15 TExtendedHelper.Mantissa**

Synopsis: Mantissa of the floating-point

Declaration: `function Mantissa : QWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `Mantissa` is the value of the significand without the hidden bit. This means it the plain bit pattern as it is stored in memory.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Sign` (1796), `TExtendedHelper.Exp` (1796), `TExtendedHelper.Exponent` (1795), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` (1797), `TExtendedHelper.Fraction` (1795)

**76.84.16 TExtendedHelper.SpecialType**

Synopsis: Return the type of the Extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

Visibility: public

Description: `SpecialType` checks whether the Extended-sized floating point value equals one of several special values, and returns an enumerated value describing which value this is. See `TFloatSpecial` (1571) for an explanation of the possible values.

See also: `TFloatSpecial` (1571)

**76.84.17 TExtendedHelper.Bytes**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Bytes[AIndex: Cardinal]: Byte`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Bytes` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the Extended-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to `Size-1`.

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Words` ([1796](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Size` ([1794](#))

**76.84.18 TExtendedHelper.Words**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Words[AIndex: Cardinal]: Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Words` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the Extended-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to  $(\text{Size}-1) \div 2$ .

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Bytes` ([1796](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Size` ([1794](#))

**76.84.19 TExtendedHelper.Sign**

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Sign` returns `True` if the sign bit of the value is set (i.e. it is a negative value) or `False` if it is not set (i.e. it is a positive value).

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Bytes` ([1796](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Exp` ([1796](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` ([1797](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Mantissa` ([1795](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Fraction` ([1795](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Exponent` ([1795](#))

**76.84.20 TExtendedHelper.Exp**

Synopsis: The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` is the internal representation of the Exponent ([1795](#)).

See also: `TExtendedHelper.Bytes` ([1796](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Sign` ([1796](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Frac` ([1797](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Mantissa` ([1795](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Fraction` ([1795](#)), `TExtendedHelper.Exponent` ([1795](#))

## 76.84.21 TExtendedHelper.Frac

Synopsis: Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.

Declaration: Property Frac : QWord

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Frac` is the bit pattern representing the fractional part (significand) including the preceding 1 (the hidden bit).

See also: TExtendedHelper.Bytes (1796), TExtendedHelper.Sign (1796), TExtendedHelper.Exp (1796), TExtendedHelper.Mantissa (1795), TExtendedHelper.Fraction (1795), TExtendedHelper.Exponent (1795)

## 76.85 TGuidHelper

### 76.85.1 Description

TGUIDHelper provides various methods for a TGUID (1571) type.

See also: TGUID ([1571](#))

## 76.85.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1797</a>	Create	Initialize a <code>TGUID</code> instance from data.
<a href="#">1798</a>	NewGuid	Create a new <code>GUID</code>
<a href="#">1798</a>	ToByteArray	Convert to array of bytes
<a href="#">1798</a>	ToString	Convert to string

### 76.85.3 TGuidHelper.Create

**Synopsis:** Initialize a TGUID instance from data.

```

Declaration: class function Create(const Data; BigEndian: Boolean) : TGUID; Overload
            ; Static
class function Create(const Data: Array of Byte; AStartIndex: Cardinal;
                    BigEndian: Boolean) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(const Data; DataEndian: TEndian) : TGUID
            ; Overload; Static
class function Create(const B: TBytes; DataEndian: TEndian) : TGUID
            ; Overload; Static
class function Create(const B: TBytes; AStartIndex: Cardinal;
                    DataEndian: TEndian) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(const S: string) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(A: Integer; B: SmallInt; C: SmallInt;
                    const D: TBytes) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(A: Integer; B: SmallInt; C: SmallInt; D: Byte;
                    E: Byte; F: Byte; G: Byte; H: Byte; I: Byte;
                    J: Byte; K: Byte) : TGUID; Overload; Static
class function Create(A: Cardinal; B: Word; C: Word; D: Byte; E: Byte;
                    F: Byte; G: Byte; H: Byte; I: Byte; J: Byte;
                    K: Byte) : TGUID; Overload; Static

```

Visibility: default

Description: `Create` will initialize a `TGUID` ([1571](#)) from byte data. The byte-data can come in different forms

**Data** can be a plain buffer. The GUID Data will be read from the buffer (`SizeOf(TGUID)` bytes), according to the `BigEndian` argument.

**Data** can be an array of bytes. `SizeOf(TGUID)` bytes will be read from the array, starting at index `StartIndex` (default 0). The GUID Data will be read according to the `BigEndian` argument.

**Scan** can be a string containing a string representation of the GUID, which is converted using `StringToGUID` ([1708](#)).

**A,B,C,D (optionally E,F,G,H,I,J,K)** where the arguments are simply the various components of the GUID.

See also: `TGUID` ([1571](#)), `StringToGUID` ([1708](#))

#### 76.85.4 TGuidHelper.NewGuid

Synopsis: Create a new GUID

Declaration: `class function NewGuid : TGUID; Static`

Visibility: default

Description: `NewGUID` creates and returns a new (??) using `CreateGUID` ([1627](#))

See also: `CreateGUID` ([1627](#))

#### 76.85.5 TGuidHelper.ToByteArray

Synopsis: Convert to array of bytes

Declaration: `function ToByteArray(DataEndian: TEndian) : TBytes`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToByteArray` converts the `TGUID` to an array of bytes (of length `SizeOf(TGUID)`). The bytes will be ordered according to `DataEndian`.

See also: `TGUIDHelper.ToString` ([1798](#)), `TGUIDHelper.Create` ([1797](#))

#### 76.85.6 TGuidHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert to string

Declaration: `function ToString(SkipBrackets: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ToString` will convert the `TGUID` to a string representation, using `GUIDToString` ([1685](#))

See also: `GUIDToString` ([1685](#))

## 76.86 TInt64Helper

### 76.86.1 Description

`TInt64Helper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `Int64`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1836](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1821](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1833](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1867](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1775](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1802](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1771](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1818](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1811](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper` ([1815](#))

### 76.86.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1802</a>	<code>ClearBit</code>	
<a href="#">1799</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert from a string
<a href="#">1801</a>	<code>SetBit</code>	
<a href="#">1799</a>	<code>Size</code>	Size, in bytes, of the <code>Int64</code> value
<a href="#">1802</a>	<code>TestBit</code>	
<a href="#">1801</a>	<code>ToBinString</code>	
<a href="#">1800</a>	<code>ToBoolean</code>	Convert to a boolean value
<a href="#">1800</a>	<code>ToDouble</code>	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1801</a>	<code>ToExtended</code>	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1802</a>	<code>ToggleBit</code>	
<a href="#">1801</a>	<code>ToHexString</code>	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
<a href="#">1801</a>	<code>ToSingle</code>	Convert to a single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1800</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert the value to string
<a href="#">1800</a>	<code>TryParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a <code>Int64</code> , report success or failure

### 76.86.3 TInt64Helper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Int64; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `Int64` value. It uses the `StrToInt64` ([1723](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

Errors: If the string does not contain a valid `Int64` value, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToString` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.TryParse` ([1800](#)), `StrToInt64` ([1723](#))

### 76.86.4 TInt64Helper.Size

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the `Int64` value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in `Int64`s) of the `Int64` value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Int64)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1514](#))



### 76.86.5 TInt64Helper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Int64) : string; Overload  
; Static  
function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the `Int64` value itself is used. The `IntToStr` ([1689](#)) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TInt64Helper.Parse` ([1799](#)), `IntToStr` ([1689](#))

### 76.86.6 TInt64Helper.TryParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a `Int64`, report success or failure

Declaration: `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Int64)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `Int64`, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the `Int64` is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` ([1571](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TInt64Helper.Parse` ([1799](#)), `Val` ([1537](#))

### 76.86.7 TInt64Helper.ToBoolean

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the `Int64` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToSingle` ([1801](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToDouble` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToExtended` ([1801](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToString` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToHexString` ([1801](#))

### 76.86.8 TInt64Helper.ToDouble

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `Int64` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToBoolean` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToExtended` ([1801](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToSingle` ([1801](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToString` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToHexString` ([1801](#))

### 76.86.9 TInt64Helper.ToExtended

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `Int64` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToBoolean` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToSingle` ([1801](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToDouble` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToString` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToHexString` ([1801](#))

### 76.86.10 TInt64Helper.ToBinString

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

### 76.86.11 TInt64Helper.ToHexString

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `Int64` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToBoolean` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToSingle` ([1801](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToDouble` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToString` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToExtended` ([1801](#))

### 76.86.12 TInt64Helper.ToSingle

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the `Int64` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TInt64Helper.ToBoolean` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToDouble` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToExtended` ([1801](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToString` ([1800](#)), `TInt64Helper.ToHexString` ([1801](#))

### 76.86.13 TInt64Helper.SetBit

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TInt64BitIndex) : Int64`

Visibility: public

**76.86.14 TInt64Helper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TInt64BitIndex) : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

**76.86.15 TInt64Helper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TInt64BitIndex) : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

**76.86.16 TInt64Helper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TInt64BitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

**76.87 TIntegerHelper****76.87.1 Description**

`TIntegerHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a Integer-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1836](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1821](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1833](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1867](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1775](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1771](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1799](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1818](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1811](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper` ([1815](#))

**76.87.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1805</a>	<code>ClearBit</code>	
<a href="#">1803</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert from a string
<a href="#">1805</a>	<code>SetBit</code>	
<a href="#">1802</a>	<code>Size</code>	Size, in bytes, of the Integer value
<a href="#">1805</a>	<code>TestBit</code>	
<a href="#">1804</a>	<code>ToBinString</code>	
<a href="#">1804</a>	<code>ToBoolean</code>	Convert to a boolean value
<a href="#">1804</a>	<code>ToDouble</code>	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1804</a>	<code>ToExtended</code>	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1805</a>	<code>ToggleBit</code>	
<a href="#">1804</a>	<code>ToHexString</code>	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
<a href="#">1805</a>	<code>ToSingle</code>	Convert to a single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1803</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert the value to string
<a href="#">1803</a>	<code>TryParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a Integer, report success or failure

**76.87.3 TIntegerHelper.Size**

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the Integer value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Size` returns the size (in Integers) of the Integer value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Integer)`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SizeOf \(1514\)](#)

### 76.87.4 TIntegerHelper.ToString

### Synopsis: Convert the value to string

```
Declaration: class function ToString(const AValue: Integer) : string; Overload
              ; Static
              function ToString : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** ToString will, in the class function variant of this method, convert AValue to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of ToString, the Integer value itself is used. The IntToStr (1689) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: [TIntegerHelper.Parse \(1803\)](#), [IntToStr \(1689\)](#)

### 76.87.5 TIntegerHelper.Parse

### Synopsis: Convert from a string

```
Declaration: class function Parse(const AString: string) : Integer; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Parse will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `Integer` value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1722](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

**Errors:** If the string does not contain a valid Integer value, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: [TIntegerHelper.ToString \(1803\)](#), [TIntegerHelper.TryParse \(1803\)](#), [StrToInt \(1722\)](#)

### 76.87.6 TIntegerHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a Integer, report success or failure

```
Declaration: class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Integer)
                                         : Boolean; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** TryParse attempts to convert the string AString to a Integer, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then True is returned, and the actual value of the Integer is returned in AValue.

It uses the `val (1571)` function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: [TIntegerHelper.Parse \(1803\)](#), [Val \(1537\)](#)

### 76.87.7 TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the `Integer` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToSingle` (1805), `TIntegerHelper.ToDouble` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToExtended` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` (1803), `TIntegerHelper.ToHexString` (1804)

### 76.87.8 TIntegerHelper.ToDouble

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `Integer` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToExtended` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToSingle` (1805), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` (1803), `TIntegerHelper.ToHexString` (1804)

### 76.87.9 TIntegerHelper.ToExtended

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `Integer` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToSingle` (1805), `TIntegerHelper.ToDouble` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` (1803), `TIntegerHelper.ToHexString` (1804)

### 76.87.10 TIntegerHelper.ToBinString

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

### 76.87.11 TIntegerHelper.ToHexString

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `Integer` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToSingle` (1805), `TIntegerHelper.ToDouble` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` (1803), `TIntegerHelper.ToExtended` (1804)

**76.87.12 TIntegerHelper.ToSingle**

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the Integer value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TIntegerHelper.ToBoolean` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToDouble` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToExtended` (1804), `TIntegerHelper.ToString` (1803), `TIntegerHelper.ToHexString` (1804)

**76.87.13 TIntegerHelper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TIntegerBitIndex) : Integer`

Visibility: public

**76.87.14 TIntegerHelper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TIntegerBitIndex) : Integer`

Visibility: public

**76.87.15 TIntegerHelper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TIntegerBitIndex) : Integer`

Visibility: public

**76.87.16 TIntegerHelper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TIntegerBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**76.88 TLongBoolHelper****76.88.1 Description**

`TLongBoolHelper` is a helper type for the `LongBool` type. It contains mostly conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` (1836), `TShortIntHelper` (1821), `TSmallIntHelper` (1833), `TWordHelper` (1867), `TCardinalHelper` (1775), `TIntegerHelper` (1802), `TInt64Helper` (1799), `TQWordHelper` (1818), `TNativeIntHelper` (1811), `TByteHelper` (1771), `TByteBoolHelper` (1770), `TWordBoolHelper` (1866), `TLongBoolHelper` (1805)

**76.88.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1806</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert string value to LongBool value.
<a href="#">1806</a>	<code>Size</code>	Return the size (in bytes) of the
<a href="#">1807</a>	<code>ToInteger</code>	Convert to an integer value
<a href="#">1806</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert a LongBool value to string.
<a href="#">1807</a>	<code>TryToParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a LongBool value

**76.88.3 TLongBoolHelper.Parse**

**Synopsis:** Convert string value to LongBool value.

**Declaration:** `class function Parse(const S: string) : Boolean; Static`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Parse` attempts to convert the string `S` to a LongBool value. It uses the `StrToBool` ([1716](#)) function to perform the conversion.

**Errors:** If `S` does not contain a valid string representation, then an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TLongBoolHelper.TryToParse` ([1807](#)), `TLongBoolHelper.ToString` ([1806](#)), `TLongBoolHelper.ToInteger` ([1807](#))

**76.88.4 TLongBoolHelper.Size**

**Synopsis:** Return the size (in bytes) of the

**Declaration:** `class function Size : Integer; Static`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Size` returns the size (in bytes) of the LongBool value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(LongBool)`.

**See also:** `SizeOf` ([1514](#))

**76.88.5 TLongBoolHelper.ToString**

**Synopsis:** Convert a LongBool value to string.

**Declaration:** `class function ToString(const AValue: Boolean;  
UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload  
; Static  
function ToString(UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class method version, convert the `AValue` LongBool to a string representation. In the function method version the LongBool value itself (`Self`) will be converted.

If the `UseBoolStrs` parameter equals `TUseBoolStrs.True`, then the string representation will use the LongBool strings `BoolStrs` ([1571](#)). The default value for `UseBoolStrs` is `TUseBoolStrs.False`.

The conversion is done using the `BoolToStr` ([1620](#)) function.

**See also:** `BoolStrs` ([1571](#)), `BoolToStr` ([1620](#))

### 76.88.6 TLongBoolHelper.TryToParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a LongBool value

Declaration: `class function TryToParse(const S: string; out AValue: Boolean)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryToParse` will attempt to convert the string `S` to a LongBool value. If the attempt is successful, `True` is returned, and the actual value is returned in `AValue`. If the attempt failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TLongBoolHelper.Parse` ([1806](#)), `TLongBoolHelper.ToString` ([1806](#))

### 76.88.7 TLongBoolHelper.ToInteger

Synopsis: Convert to an integer value

Declaration: `function ToInteger : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToInteger` will return the LongBool value, typecasted to `Integer`.

See also: `TLongBoolHelper.ToString` ([1806](#))

## 76.89 TMBCSEncoding

### 76.89.1 Description

`TMBCSEncoding` is the encoding class used for most of the encodings, except the actual Unicode encodings. The codepage is specified during creation, and is by default the system codepage.

The name is somewhat misleading, since the MBCS is also used for single-byte encodings.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` ([1857](#)), `TUTF8Encoding` ([1864](#)), `TUTF7Encoding` ([1863](#)), `TBigendianUnicodeEncoding` ([1767](#))

### 76.89.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1808</a>	<code>Clone</code>	Clone a <code>TMBCSEncoding</code> instance
<a href="#">1807</a>	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a multi-byte character set encoding
<a href="#">1808</a>	<code>GetMaxByteCount</code>	Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string
<a href="#">1808</a>	<code>GetMaxCharCount</code>	Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes
<a href="#">1808</a>	<code>GetPreamble</code>	Return BOM marker bytes

### 76.89.3 TMBCSEncoding.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a multi-byte character set encoding

Declaration: `constructor Create; Virtual; Overload  
constructor Create(ACodePage: Integer); Virtual; Overload  
constructor Create(ACodePage: Integer; MBToWCharFlags: Integer;  
WCharToMBFlags: Integer); Virtual; Overload`



Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the multi-byte character set encoding. The `ACodePage` parameter is optional, and defaults to `DefaultSystemCodePage` ([1571](#)).

The `MBToWCharFlags` and `WCharToMBFlags` parameters are stored but are otherwise unused in the Free Pascal implementation of `TMBCSEncoding`

#### 76.89.4 `TMBCSEncoding.Clone`

Synopsis: Clone a `TMBCSEncoding` instance

Declaration: `function Clone : TEncoding; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` overrides `TEncoding.Clone` ([1785](#)) to provide a clone of the `TMBCSEncoding` instance.

See also: `TEncoding.Clone` ([1785](#))

#### 76.89.5 `TMBCSEncoding.GetMaxByteCount`

Synopsis: Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string

Declaration: `function GetMaxByteCount(CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetMaxByteCount` overrides `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` ([1787](#)) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` ([1787](#))

#### 76.89.6 `TMBCSEncoding.GetMaxCharCount`

Synopsis: Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes

Declaration: `function GetMaxCharCount(ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetMaxCharCount` overrides `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` ([1787](#)) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` ([1787](#))

#### 76.89.7 `TMBCSEncoding.GetPreamble`

Synopsis: Return BOM marker bytes

Declaration: `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetPreamble` overrides `TEncoding.GetPreamble` ([1787](#)) to return the BOM Marker bytes (none, for this implementation).

See also: `TEncoding.GetPreamble` ([1787](#))

## 76.90 TMREWException

## 76.91 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer

### 76.91.1 Description

`TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer` is a default implementation of the `IReadWriteSync` (1762) interface. It uses a single mutex to protect access to the read/write resource, resulting in a single thread having access to the resource.

See also: `IReadWriteSync` (1762)

### 76.91.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
1762	<code>IReadWriteSync</code>	Read/Write synchronizer

### 76.91.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1810	<code>Beginread</code>	Request read access to the resource
1810	<code>Beginwrite</code>	Request write access to the resource.
1809	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer</code> class
1810	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the <code>TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer</code> instance
1811	<code>Endread</code>	Release read access to the resource
1810	<code>Endwrite</code>	Release write access to the resource

### 76.91.4 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1811	<code>RevisionLevel</code>	r	
1811	<code>WriterThreadID</code>	r	

### 76.91.5 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Create

**Synopsis:** Create a new instance of the `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer` class

**Declaration:** `constructor Create; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` creates a new instance of `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer`. It initializes a `TRTLCriticalSection`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TRTLCriticalSection` (1372)

### 76.91.6 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Create destroys the instance of TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer. It frees the TRTLCriticalSection it initialized, and calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: None.

See also: TRTLCriticalSection ([1372](#))

### 76.91.7 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginwrite

Synopsis: Request write access to the resource.

Declaration: `function Beginwrite : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Beginwrite is the implementation of IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite. It simply enters the critical section, and returns True.

Errors: None.

See also: IReadWriteSync.BeginWrite ([1763](#)), EndWrite ([1810](#))

### 76.91.8 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endwrite

Synopsis: Release write access to the resource

Declaration: `procedure Endwrite`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Beginwrite is the implementation of IReadWriteSync.EndWrite. It simply leaves the critical section.

Errors: None.

See also: IReadWriteSync.EndWrite ([1763](#)), BeginWrite ([1810](#))

### 76.91.9 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Beginread

Synopsis: Request read access to the resource

Declaration: `procedure Beginread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: BeginRead is the implementation of IReadWriteSync.BeginRead. It simply attempts to enter the critical section.

Errors: None.

See also: IReadWriteSync.BeginRead ([1762](#)), EndRead ([1811](#))

### 76.91.10 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.Endread

Synopsis: Release read access to the resource

Declaration: `procedure Endread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndRead` is the implementation of `IReadWriteSync.EndRead`. It simply leaves the critical section.

Errors: None.

See also: `IReadWriteSync.EndRead` ([1762](#)), `BeginRead` ([1810](#))

### 76.91.11 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.RevisionLevel

Declaration: `Property RevisionLevel : Cardinal`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

### 76.91.12 TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer.WriterThreadID

Declaration: `Property WriterThreadID : TThreadID`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

## 76.92 TNativeIntHelper

### 76.92.1 Description

`TNativeIntHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `NativeInt`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1836](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1821](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1833](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1867](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1775](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1802](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1799](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1818](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1811](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1771](#))

Page	Method	Description
------	--------	-------------

Page	Member	Description
1814	ClearBit	
1812	Parse	Convert from a string
1814	SetBit	
1812	Size	Size, in bytes, of the NativeInt value
1815	TestBit	
1814	ToBinString	
1813	ToBoolean	Convert to a boolean value
1813	ToDouble	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
1813	ToExtended	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
1815	ToggleBit	
1814	ToHexString	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
1814	ToSingle	Convert to an single-sized floating point value
1812	ToString	Convert the value to string
1813	TryParse	Try to convert a string to a NativeInt, report success or failure

- Convert from a string

function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

TN : I-II-1      F.C. : (1919)    TN : I-II-1      F.D. : (1919)    S.F.I. : (1739)

- Size, in bytes, of the NativeInt value

Copyright © 2004 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved. This publication is registered at the U.S. Copyright Office.

- Convert the value to string

```

    ; Static
function ToString : string; Overload

```

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the `NativeInt` value itself is used. The `IntToStr` (1689) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.Parse` (1812), `IntToStr` (1689)

### 76.92.6 TNativeIntHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a `NativeInt`, report success or failure

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: NativeInt) : Boolean; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `NativeInt`, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the `NativeInt` is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` (1571) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.Parse` (1812), `Val` (1537)

### 76.92.7 TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean

**Synopsis:** Convert to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` converts the `NativeInt` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle` (1814), `TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble` (1813), `TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended` (1813), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` (1812), `TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString` (1814)

### 76.92.8 TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert to a double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToDouble : Double`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `NativeInt` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1813), `TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended` (1813), `TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle` (1814), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` (1812), `TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString` (1814)

### 76.92.9 TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToExtended : Extended`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `NativeInt` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

**See also:** `TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1813](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1814](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1813](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` ([1812](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1814](#))

### 76.92.10 TNativeIntHelper.ToBinString

**Declaration:** `function ToBinString : string`

**Visibility:** `public`

### 76.92.11 TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString

**Synopsis:** Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

**Declaration:** `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ToHexString` converts the `NativeInt` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

**See also:** `TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1813](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1814](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1813](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` ([1812](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended` ([1813](#))

### 76.92.12 TNativeIntHelper.ToSingle

**Synopsis:** Convert to an single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToSingle : Single`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ToSingle` converts the `NativeInt` value to a single-sized floating point value.

**See also:** `TNativeIntHelper.ToBoolean` ([1813](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1813](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToExtended` ([1813](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToString` ([1812](#)), `TNativeIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1814](#))

### 76.92.13 TNativeIntHelper.SetBit

**Declaration:** `function SetBit(const Index: TNativeIntBitIndex) : NativeInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

### 76.92.14 TNativeIntHelper.ClearBit

**Declaration:** `function ClearBit(const Index: TNativeIntBitIndex) : NativeInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.92.15 TNativeIntHelper.ToggleBit**

**Declaration:** `function ToggleBit(const Index: TNativeIntBitIndex) : NativeInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.92.16 TNativeIntHelper.TestBit**

**Declaration:** `function TestBit(const Index: TNativeIntBitIndex) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.93 TNativeUIntHelper****76.93.1 Description**

`NativeUInt` contains some auxiliary routines for a `NativeUInt`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1836](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1821](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1833](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1867](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1775](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1802](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1799](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1818](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1811](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1771](#))

**76.93.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1818</a>	<code>ClearBit</code>	
<a href="#">1815</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert from a string
<a href="#">1818</a>	<code>SetBit</code>	
<a href="#">1816</a>	<code>Size</code>	Size, in bytes, of the <code>NativeUInt</code> value
<a href="#">1818</a>	<code>TestBit</code>	
<a href="#">1817</a>	<code>ToBinString</code>	
<a href="#">1816</a>	<code>ToBoolean</code>	Convert to a boolean value
<a href="#">1817</a>	<code>ToDouble</code>	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1817</a>	<code>ToExtended</code>	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1818</a>	<code>ToggleBit</code>	
<a href="#">1817</a>	<code>ToHexString</code>	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
<a href="#">1817</a>	<code>ToSingle</code>	Convert to a single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1816</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert the value to string
<a href="#">1816</a>	<code>TryParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a <code>NativeUInt</code> , report success or failure

**76.93.3 TNativeUIntHelper.Parse**

**Synopsis:** Convert from a string

**Declaration:** `class function Parse(const AString: string) : NativeUInt; Static`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `NativeUInt` value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1722](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

**Errors:** If the string does not contain a valid `NativeUInt` value, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` ([1816](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper.TryParse` ([1816](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#))



**76.93.4 TNativeUIntHelper.Size**

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the NativeUInt value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in NativeUInts) of the NativeUInt value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf (NativeUInt)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1514](#))

**76.93.5 TNativeUIntHelper.ToString**

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: NativeUInt) : string; Overload  
; Static  
function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the NativeUInt value itself is used. The `IntToStr` ([1689](#)) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.Parse` ([1815](#)), `IntToStr` ([1689](#))

**76.93.6 TNativeUIntHelper.TryParse**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a NativeUInt, report success or failure

Declaration: `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: NativeUInt)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a NativeUInt, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the NativeUInt is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` ([1571](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.Parse` ([1815](#)), `Val` ([1537](#))

**76.93.7 TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean**

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the NativeUInt value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1817](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1817](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended` ([1817](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` ([1816](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1817](#))

**76.93.8 TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble**

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `NativeUInt` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1816), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended` (1817), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle` (1817), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` (1816), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString` (1817)

**76.93.9 TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended**

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `NativeUInt` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1816), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle` (1817), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble` (1817), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` (1816), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString` (1817)

**76.93.10 TNativeUIntHelper.ToBinString**

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: `public`

**76.93.11 TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString**

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `NativeUInt` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1816), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle` (1817), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble` (1817), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` (1816), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended` (1817)

**76.93.12 TNativeUIntHelper.ToSingle**

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToSingle` converts the `NativeUInt` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TNativeUIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1816), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToDouble` (1817), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToExtended` (1817), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToString` (1816), `TNativeUIntHelper.ToHexString` (1817)

**76.93.13 TNativeUIntHelper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TNativeUIntBitIndex) : NativeUInt`

Visibility: public

**76.93.14 TNativeUIntHelper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TNativeUIntBitIndex) : NativeUInt`

Visibility: public

**76.93.15 TNativeUIntHelper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TNativeUIntBitIndex) : NativeUInt`

Visibility: public

**76.93.16 TNativeUIntHelper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TNativeUIntBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**76.94 TQWordHelper****76.94.1 Description**

`TQWordHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `QWord`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1836](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1821](#)), `TSmallIntHelper` ([1833](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1867](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1775](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1802](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1799](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1771](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1811](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper` ([1815](#))

**76.94.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1821</a>	<code>ClearBit</code>	
<a href="#">1819</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert from a string
<a href="#">1821</a>	<code>SetBit</code>	
<a href="#">1819</a>	<code>Size</code>	Size, in bytes, of the <code>QWord</code> value
<a href="#">1821</a>	<code>TestBit</code>	
<a href="#">1820</a>	<code>ToBinString</code>	
<a href="#">1820</a>	<code>ToBoolean</code>	Convert to a boolean value
<a href="#">1820</a>	<code>ToDouble</code>	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1820</a>	<code>ToExtended</code>	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1821</a>	<code>ToggleBit</code>	
<a href="#">1820</a>	<code>ToHexString</code>	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
<a href="#">1821</a>	<code>ToSingle</code>	Convert to a single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1819</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert the value to string
<a href="#">1819</a>	<code>TryParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a <code>QWord</code> , report success or failure

### 76.94.3 TQWordHelper.Parse

### Synopsis: Convert from a string

**Declaration:** `class function Parse(const AString: string) : QWord; Static`

Visibility: public

**Description:** Parse will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `QWord` value. It uses the `StrToQWord` (1724) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

**Errors:** If the string does not contain a valid QWord value, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception is raised.

See also: [TQWordHelper.ToString \(1819\)](#), [TQWordHelper.TryParse \(1819\)](#), [StrToQWord \(1724\)](#)

#### 76.94.4 TQWordHelper.Size

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the OWord value

```
Declaration: class function Size : Integer; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Size` returns the size (in QWords) of the QWord value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(QWord)`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SizeOf \(1514\)](#)

### 76.94.5 TQWordHelper.ToString

### Synopsis: Convert the value to string

```
Declaration: class function ToString(const AValue: QWord) : string; Overload
                ; Static
                function ToString : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** ToString will, in the class function variant of this method, convert AValue to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of ToString, the QWord value itself is used. The IntToStr (1689) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: [TQWordHelper.Parse \(1819\)](#), [IntToStr \(1689\)](#)

### 76.94.6 TQWordHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a QWord, report success or failure

```
Declaration: class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: QWord)
                                     : Boolean; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** TryParse attempts to convert the string AString to a QWord, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then True is returned, and the actual value of the QWord is returned in AValue.

It uses the `val (1571)` function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: [TQWordHelper.Parse \(1819\)](#), [Val \(1537\)](#)

### 76.94.7 TQWordHelper.ToBoolean

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the `QWord` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1821](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1820](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1820](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToString` ([1819](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToHexString` ([1820](#))

### 76.94.8 TQWordHelper.ToDouble

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `QWord` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1820](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1820](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1821](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToString` ([1819](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToHexString` ([1820](#))

### 76.94.9 TQWordHelper.ToExtended

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `QWord` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1820](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1821](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1820](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToString` ([1819](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToHexString` ([1820](#))

### 76.94.10 TQWordHelper.ToBinString

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: `public`

### 76.94.11 TQWordHelper.ToHexString

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `QWord` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1820](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1821](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1820](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToString` ([1819](#)), `TQWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1820](#))

**76.94.12 TQWordHelper.ToSingle**

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the `QWord` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TQWordHelper.ToBoolean` (1820), `TQWordHelper.ToDouble` (1820), `TQWordHelper.ToExtended` (1820), `TQWordHelper.ToString` (1819), `TQWordHelper.ToHexString` (1820)

**76.94.13 TQWordHelper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TQwordBitIndex) : QWord`

Visibility: public

**76.94.14 TQWordHelper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TQwordBitIndex) : QWord`

Visibility: public

**76.94.15 TQWordHelper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TQwordBitIndex) : QWord`

Visibility: public

**76.94.16 TQWordHelper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TQwordBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**76.95 TShortIntHelper****76.95.1 Description**

`TShortIntHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `ShortInt`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` (1836), `TByteHelper` (1771), `TSmallIntHelper` (1833), `TWordHelper` (1867), `TCardinalHelper` (1775), `TIntegerHelper` (1802), `TInt64Helper` (1799), `TQWordHelper` (1818), `TNativeIntHelper` (1811), `TNativeUIntHelper` (1815)

## 76.95.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1824</a>	ClearBit	
<a href="#">1822</a>	Parse	Convert from a string
<a href="#">1824</a>	SetBit	
<a href="#">1822</a>	Size	Size, in bytes, of the ShortInt value
<a href="#">1825</a>	TestBit	
<a href="#">1824</a>	ToBinString	
<a href="#">1823</a>	ToBoolean	Convert to a boolean value
<a href="#">1823</a>	ToDouble	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1823</a>	ToExtended	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1825</a>	ToggleBit	
<a href="#">1824</a>	ToHexString	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
<a href="#">1824</a>	ToSingle	Convert to an single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1822</a>	ToString	Convert the value to string
<a href="#">1823</a>	TryParse	Try to convert a string to a ShortInt, report success or failure

### 76.95.3 TShortIntHelper.Parse

### Synopsis: Convert from a string

```
Declaration: class function Parse(const AString: string) : ShortInt; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Parse will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `ShortInt` value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1722](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

**Errors:** If the string does not contain a valid ShortInt value, an EConvertError (1751) exception is raised.

See also: [TShortIntHelper.ToString \(1822\)](#), [TShortIntHelper.TryParse \(1823\)](#), [StrToInt \(1722\)](#)

#### 76.95.4 TShortIntHelper.Size

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the ShortInt value

```
Declaration: class function Size : Integer; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Size` returns the size (in `ShortInt`s) of the `ShortInt` value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Byte)`.

Errors: None.

See also: [SizeOf \(1514\)](#)

### 76.95.5 TShortIntHelper.ToString

### Synopsis: Convert the value to string

```
Declaration: class function ToString(const AValue: ShortInt) : string; Overload
                ; Static
                function ToString : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the `ShortInt` value itself is used. The `IntToStr` (1689) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.Parse` (1822), `IntToStr` (1689)

### 76.95.6 TShortIntHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a `ShortInt`, report success or failure

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: ShortInt) : Boolean; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `ShortInt`, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the `ShortInt` is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` (1571) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.Parse` (1822), `Val` (1537)

### 76.95.7 TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean

**Synopsis:** Convert to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` converts the `ShortInt` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToSingle` (1824), `TShortIntHelper.ToDouble` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToExtended` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` (1822), `TShortIntHelper.ToHexString` (1824)

### 76.95.8 TShortIntHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert to a double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToDouble : Double`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `ShortInt` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToExtended` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToSingle` (1824), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` (1822), `TShortIntHelper.ToHexString` (1824)

### 76.95.9 TShortIntHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToExtended : Extended`

**Visibility:** public



Description: `ToDouble` converts the `ShortInt` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToSingle` (1824), `TShortIntHelper.ToDouble` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` (1822), `TShortIntHelper.ToHexString` (1824)

#### 76.95.10 TShortIntHelper.ToBinString

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: `public`

#### 76.95.11 TShortIntHelper.ToHexString

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `ShortInt` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToSingle` (1824), `TShortIntHelper.ToDouble` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` (1822), `TShortIntHelper.ToExtended` (1823)

#### 76.95.12 TShortIntHelper.ToSingle

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ToSingle` converts the `ShortInt` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TShortIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToDouble` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToExtended` (1823), `TShortIntHelper.ToString` (1822), `TShortIntHelper.ToHexString` (1824)

#### 76.95.13 TShortIntHelper.SetBit

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TShortIntBitIndex) : ShortInt`

Visibility: `public`

#### 76.95.14 TShortIntHelper.ClearBit

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TShortIntBitIndex) : ShortInt`

Visibility: `public`

**76.95.15 TShortIntHelper.ToggleBit**

**Declaration:** `function ToggleBit(const Index: TShortIntBitIndex) : ShortInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.95.16 TShortIntHelper.TestBit**

**Declaration:** `function TestBit(const Index: TShortIntBitIndex) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `public`

**76.96 TSimpleRWSync****76.96.1 Description**

`TSimpleRWSync` implements a simple read/write locking mechanism. It controls access to an object: only a single thread is allowed access to an object for either read or write operations.

Access is controlled through a single critical section.

See also: `TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer` ([1809](#))

**76.96.2 Interfaces overview**

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">1762</a>	<code>IReadWriteSync</code>	Read/Write synchronizer

**76.96.3 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1826</a>	<code>Beginread</code>	Acquire a read lock
<a href="#">1826</a>	<code>Beginwrite</code>	Acquire a write lock
<a href="#">1825</a>	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TSimpleRWSync</code>
<a href="#">1826</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Removes the <code>TSimpleRWSync</code> instance from memory
<a href="#">1827</a>	<code>Endread</code>	Release the read lock
<a href="#">1826</a>	<code>Endwrite</code>	Release the write lock

**76.96.4 TSimpleRWSync.Create**

**Synopsis:** Create a new instance of `TSimpleRWSync`

**Declaration:** `constructor Create; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Create` allocates a new instance of `TSimpleRWSync` and initializes the critical section for use in the various methods.

See also: `TSimpleRWSync.Destroy` ([1826](#))

### 76.96.5 TSimpleRWSync.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the TSimpleRWSync instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` releases the critical section and removes the TSimpleRWSync instance from memory.

See also: TSimpleRWSync.Create ([1825](#))

### 76.96.6 TSimpleRWSync.Beginwrite

Synopsis: Acquire a write lock

Declaration: `function Beginwrite : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Beginwrite` waits till all other threads have released their read or write locks on the object, and then acquires a write lock on the object.

See also: TSimpleRWSync.BeginRead ([1826](#)), TSimpleRWSync.EndWrite ([1826](#))

### 76.96.7 TSimpleRWSync.Endwrite

Synopsis: Release the write lock

Declaration: `procedure Endwrite`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndWrite` releases the current threads lock on the object, allowing other threads to acquire a read or write lock on the object.

See also: TSimpleRWSync.BeginWrite ([1826](#)), TSimpleRWSync.EndRead ([1827](#))

### 76.96.8 TSimpleRWSync.Beginread

Synopsis: Acquire a read lock

Declaration: `procedure Beginread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeginRead` waits till all other threads have released their read or write locks on the object, and then acquires a read lock on the object.

See also: TSimpleRWSync.BeginWrite ([1826](#)), TSimpleRWSync.EndRead ([1827](#))

### 76.96.9 TSimpleRWSync.Endread

Synopsis: Release the read lock

Declaration: `procedure Endread`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndRead` releases the current threads read lock on the object, allowing other threads to acquire a read or write lock on the object.

See also: `TSimpleRWSync.BeginRead` ([1826](#)), `TSimpleRWSync.EndWrite` ([1826](#))

## 76.97 TSingleHelper

### 76.97.1 Description

`TSingleHelper` is the helper type for the single-sized floating point type. It contains some conversion methods, as well as access to the low-level structure of the floating-point representation of a single.

See also: `TDoubleHelper` ([1778](#)), `TExtendedHelper` ([1791](#))

### 76.97.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1830</a>	<code>BuildUp</code>	Build a single-sized floating point from its composing parts
<a href="#">1830</a>	<code>Exponent</code>	Exponent of the floating-point value
<a href="#">1831</a>	<code>Fraction</code>	Fraction of the floating-point value
<a href="#">1828</a>	<code>IsInfinity</code>	Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.
<a href="#">1827</a>	<code>IsNan</code>	Check whether a value equals NaN.
<a href="#">1828</a>	<code>IsNegativeInfinity</code>	Check whether a value is negative infinity.
<a href="#">1828</a>	<code>IsPositiveInfinity</code>	Check whether a value is positive infinity.
<a href="#">1831</a>	<code>Mantissa</code>	Mantissa of the floating-point
<a href="#">1829</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert a string to a floating point value
<a href="#">1829</a>	<code>Size</code>	Size (in bytes) of a single-sized floating point value.
<a href="#">1831</a>	<code>SpecialType</code>	Return the type of the single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1829</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert a single-sized floating point value to a string
<a href="#">1830</a>	<code>TryParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a single-sized floating point value.

### 76.97.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1831</a>	<code>Bytes</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value
<a href="#">1832</a>	<code>Exp</code>	<code>rw</code>	The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.
<a href="#">1832</a>	<code>Frac</code>	<code>rw</code>	Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.
<a href="#">1832</a>	<code>Sign</code>	<code>rw</code>	Sign of the floating point value
<a href="#">1832</a>	<code>Words</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value

### 76.97.4 TSingleHelper.IsNan

Synopsis: Check whether a value equals NaN.

**Declaration:** `class function IsNan(const AValue: Single) : Boolean; Overload; Static  
function IsNan : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsNan` checks whether a single-sized floating point value is NaN (Not a Number). If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

**See also:** `TSingleHelper.IsInfinity` (1828), `TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` (1828), `TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` (1828)

### 76.97.5 TSingleHelper.IsInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is positive or negative infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsInfinity(const AValue: Single) : Boolean; Overload  
; Static  
function IsInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsInfinity` checks whether a single-sized floating point value represents a positive or negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

**See also:** `TSingleHelper.IsNan` (1827), `TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` (1828), `TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` (1828)

### 76.97.6 TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is negative infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsNegativeInfinity(const AValue: Single) : Boolean  
; Overload; Static  
function IsNegativeInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsNegativeInfinity` checks whether a single-sized floating point value represents a negative infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

**See also:** `TSingleHelper.IsNan` (1827), `TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity` (1828), `TSingleHelper.IsInfinity` (1828)

### 76.97.7 TSingleHelper.IsPositiveInfinity

**Synopsis:** Check whether a value is positive infinity.

**Declaration:** `class function IsPositiveInfinity(const AValue: Single) : Boolean  
; Overload; Static  
function IsPositiveInfinity : Boolean; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IsPositiveInfinity` checks whether a single-sized floating point value represents a positive infinity. If so, it returns `True`. When the class function version is used, the value can be specified using `AValue`. In the method version, the used value is `(Self)`.

**See also:** `TSingleHelper.IsNan` (1827), `TSingleHelper.IsNegativeInfinity` (1828), `TSingleHelper.IsInfinity` (1828)

**76.97.8 TSingleHelper.Parse**

Synopsis: Convert a string to a floating point value

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Single; Overload; Static`  
`class function Parse(const AString: string;`  
`const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Single`  
`; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will try to convert `AString` to a single-sized floating point value. It will take into account internationalization settings. (it uses `FloatToStr`).

Errors: If the string `AString` is not a valid floating-point value, a `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `FloatToStr` ([1662](#)), `TSingleHelper.ToString` ([1829](#)), `TSingleHelper.TryParse` ([1830](#))

**76.97.9 TSingleHelper.Size**

Synopsis: Size (in bytes) of a single-sized floating point value.

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` is the size (in bytes) of a single-sized floating point value. It is equivalent to calling `SizeOf(Single)`.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1514](#))

**76.97.10 TSingleHelper.ToString**

Synopsis: Convert a single-sized floating point value to a string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Single) : string; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function ToString(const AValue: Single;`  
`const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`  
`; Overload; Static`  
`class function ToString(const AValue: Single;`  
`const AFormat: TFloatFormat;`  
`const APrecision: Integer;`  
`const ADigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function ToString(const AValue: Single;`  
`const AFormat: TFloatFormat;`  
`const APrecision: Integer;`  
`const ADigits: Integer;`  
`const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`  
`; Overload; Static`  
`function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;`  
`const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer)`  
`: string; Overload`  
`function ToString(const AFormat: TFloatFormat;`  
`const APrecision: Integer; const ADigits: Integer;`  
`const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string`  
`; Overload`

```
function ToString(const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : string
    ; Overload
function ToString : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** ToString will convert AValue (or Self in the plain method version) to a string. Optionally FormatSettings can be specified, to be able to specify the decimal separator character to use.

Additionally, a precision APrecision and number of digits ADigits can be specified, in conjunction with a AFormat parameter to specify the form in which the floating-point value must be represented. (see TFloatFormat (1592) for an explanation of the various values). In this case, FloatToStrF (1663) is used to format the value. In the absence of these parameters, FloatToStr (1662) is called.

See also: FloatToStr (1662), FloatToStrF (1663), TFloatFormat (1592)

### 76.97.11 TSingleHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a single-sized floating point value.

```
Declaration: class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Single)
    : Boolean; Overload; Static
class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Single;
    const AFormatSettings: TFormatSettings) : Boolean
    ; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** TryParse attempts to convert the string AString to a single-sized floating point value and reports True if the conversion was successful. In that case the parsed value is returned in AValue.

If the conversion failed, False is returned.

See also: TSingleHelper.Parse (1829), TSingleHelper.ToString (1829)

### 76.97.12 TSingleHelper.BuildUp

**Synopsis:** Build a single-sized floating point from its composing parts

```
Declaration: procedure BuildUp(const ASignFlag: Boolean; const AMantissa: QWord;
    const AExponent: Integer)
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** BuildUp will compose a single-sized floating point value from the sign ASignFlag, mantissa AMantissa and exponent AExponent. It simply sets the Sign (1832), Exp (1832) and Frac (1832) properties in 1 call.

See also: TSingleHelper.Sign (1832), TSingleHelper.Exp (1832), TSingleHelper.Frac (1832)

### 76.97.13 TSingleHelper.Exponent

**Synopsis:** Exponent of the floating-point value

```
Declaration: function Exponent : Integer
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Exponent` is the value  $X$  in the representation of the floating-point value in  $m \times 2^X$ , i.e. the exponent.

See also: `TSingleHelper.Sign` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exp` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Frac` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Fraction` ([1831](#)), `TSingleHelper.Mantissa` ([1831](#))

#### 76.97.14 TSingleHelper.Fraction

**Synopsis:** Fraction of the floating-point value

**Declaration:** `function Fraction : Extended`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Fraction` is the decimal part of the floating-point value.

See also: `TSingleHelper.Sign` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exp` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exponent` ([1830](#)), `TSingleHelper.Frac` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Mantissa` ([1831](#))

#### 76.97.15 TSingleHelper.Mantissa

**Synopsis:** Mantissa of the floating-point

**Declaration:** `function Mantissa : QWord`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Mantissa` is the value of the significant without the hidden bit. This means it the plain bit pattern as it is stored in memory.

See also: `TSingleHelper.Sign` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exp` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Exponent` ([1830](#)), `TSingleHelper.Frac` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Fraction` ([1831](#))

#### 76.97.16 TSingleHelper.SpecialType

**Synopsis:** Return the type of the single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function SpecialType : TFloatSpecial`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `SpecialType` checks whether the single-sized floating point value equals one of several special values, and returns an enumerated value describing which value this is. See `TFloatSpecial` ([1571](#)) for an explanation of the possible values.

See also: `TFloatSpecial` ([1571](#))

#### 76.97.17 TSingleHelper.Bytes

**Synopsis:** Indexed access to the individual bytes of the floating point value

**Declaration:** `Property Bytes[AIndex: Cardinal]: Byte`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `Bytes` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the single-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to `Size-1`.

See also: `TSingleHelper.Words` ([1832](#)), `TSingleHelper.Size` ([1829](#))



**76.97.18 TSingleHelper.Words**

Synopsis: Indexed access to the words that make up the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Words[AIndex: Cardinal]: Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Words` can be used to get or set the various bytes that make up the single-sized floating point value. The index runs from 0 to  $(\text{Size}-1) \div 2$ .

See also: `TSingleHelper.Bytes` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Size` (1829)

**76.97.19 TSingleHelper.Sign**

Synopsis: Sign of the floating point value

Declaration: `Property Sign : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Sign` returns `True` if the sign bit of the value is set (i.e. it is a negative value) or `False` if it is not set (i.e. it is a positive value).

See also: `TSingleHelper.Bytes` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Exp` (1832), `TSingleHelper.Frac` (1832), `TSingleHelper.Mantissa` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Fraction` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Exponent` (1830)

**76.97.20 TSingleHelper.Exp**

Synopsis: The bit pattern of the exponent as stored in memory.

Declaration: `Property Exp : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Exp` is the internal representation of the Exponent (1830).

See also: `TSingleHelper.Bytes` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Sign` (1832), `TSingleHelper.Frac` (1832), `TSingleHelper.Mantissa` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Fraction` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Exponent` (1830)

**76.97.21 TSingleHelper.Frac**

Synopsis: Bitpattern that makes up the fractional part.

Declaration: `Property Frac : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Frac` is the bit pattern representing the fractional part (significand) including the preceding 1 (the hidden bit).

See also: `TSingleHelper.Bytes` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Sign` (1832), `TSingleHelper.Exp` (1832), `TSingleHelper.Mantissa` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Fraction` (1831), `TSingleHelper.Exponent` (1830)

## 76.98 TSmallIntHelper

### 76.98.1 Description

`TSmallIntHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `SmallInt`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` ([1836](#)), `TShortIntHelper` ([1821](#)), `TByteHelper` ([1771](#)), `TWordHelper` ([1867](#)), `TCardinalHelper` ([1775](#)), `TIntegerHelper` ([1802](#)), `TInt64Helper` ([1799](#)), `TQWordHelper` ([1818](#)), `TNativeIntHelper` ([1811](#)), `TNativeUIntHelper` ([1815](#))

### 76.98.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1836</a>	<code>ClearBit</code>	
<a href="#">1833</a>	<code>Parse</code>	Convert from a string
<a href="#">1835</a>	<code>SetBit</code>	
<a href="#">1833</a>	<code>Size</code>	Size, in bytes, of the <code>SmallInt</code> value
<a href="#">1836</a>	<code>TestBit</code>	
<a href="#">1834</a>	<code>ToBinString</code>	
<a href="#">1834</a>	<code>ToBoolean</code>	Convert to a boolean value
<a href="#">1835</a>	<code>ToDouble</code>	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1835</a>	<code>ToExtended</code>	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1836</a>	<code>ToggleBit</code>	
<a href="#">1835</a>	<code>ToHexString</code>	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
<a href="#">1835</a>	<code>ToSingle</code>	Convert to a single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1834</a>	<code>ToString</code>	Convert the value to string
<a href="#">1834</a>	<code>TryParse</code>	Try to convert a string to a <code>SmallInt</code> , report success or failure

### 76.98.3 TSmallIntHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : SmallInt; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `SmallInt` value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1722](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

Errors: If the string does not contain a valid `SmallInt` value, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` ([1834](#)), `TSmallIntHelper.TryParse` ([1834](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#))

### 76.98.4 TSmallIntHelper.Size

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the `SmallInt` value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in `SmallInt`s) of the `SmallInt` value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(SmallInt)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1514](#))

**76.98.5 TSmallIntHelper.ToString**

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: SmallInt) : string; Overload  
; Static  
function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the `SmallInt` value itself is used. The `IntToStr` ([1689](#)) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.Parse` ([1833](#)), `IntToStr` ([1689](#))

**76.98.6 TSmallIntHelper.TryParse**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a `SmallInt`, report success or failure

Declaration: `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: SmallInt)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `SmallInt`, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the `SmallInt` is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` ([1571](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.Parse` ([1833](#)), `Val` ([1537](#))

**76.98.7 TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean**

Synopsis: Convert to a boolean value

Declaration: `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToBoolean` converts the `SmallInt` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle` ([1835](#)), `TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble` ([1835](#)), `TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended` ([1835](#)), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` ([1834](#)), `TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString` ([1835](#))

**76.98.8 TSmallIntHelper.ToBinString**

Declaration: `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

**76.98.9 TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString**

Synopsis: Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

Declaration: `function ToHexString : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToHexString` converts the `SmallInt` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1834), `TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle` (1835), `TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble` (1835), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` (1834), `TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended` (1835)

**76.98.10 TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle**

Synopsis: Convert to an single-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToSingle` converts the `SmallInt` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1834), `TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble` (1835), `TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended` (1835), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` (1834), `TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString` (1835)

**76.98.11 TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble**

Synopsis: Convert to a double-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToDouble : Double`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `SmallInt` value to a double-sized floating point value

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1834), `TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended` (1835), `TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle` (1835), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` (1834), `TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString` (1835)

**76.98.12 TSmallIntHelper.ToExtended**

Synopsis: Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

Declaration: `function ToExtended : Extended`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToDouble` converts the `SmallInt` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TSmallIntHelper.ToBoolean` (1834), `TSmallIntHelper.ToSingle` (1835), `TSmallIntHelper.ToDouble` (1835), `TSmallIntHelper.ToString` (1834), `TSmallIntHelper.ToHexString` (1835)

**76.98.13 TSmallIntHelper.SetBit**

Declaration: `function SetBit(const Index: TSmallIntBitIndex) : SmallInt`

Visibility: public

#### **76.98.14 TSmallIntHelper.ClearBit**

Declaration: `function ClearBit(const Index: TSmallIntBitIndex) : SmallInt`

Visibility: `public`

#### **76.98.15 TSmallIntHelper.ToggleBit**

Declaration: `function ToggleBit(const Index: TSmallIntBitIndex) : SmallInt`

Visibility: `public`

#### **76.98.16 TSmallIntHelper.TestBit**

Declaration: `function TestBit(const Index: TSmallIntBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

### **76.99 TStringHelper**

#### **76.99.1 Description**

`TStringHelper` adds various helper routines to the string type. These are mostly conversion routines, and some formatting routines.

For similarity to C-like languages, all the indexes in these helper routines are zero based.

See also: `TGUIDHelper` ([1797](#))



**76.99.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
1839	Compare	Compare 2 strings
1840	CompareOrdinal	Compare 2 strings byte for byte
1840	CompareText	Compare 2 strings case insensitively.
1846	CompareTo	Compare string to another
1846	Contains	Check if the string contains another
1840	Copy	Return a unique copy of a string
1846	CopyTo	Copy part of the string to an array of characters
1846	CountChar	Count the occurrences of a character
1841	Create	Create a new string
1847	DeQuotedString	Return a dequoted version of the string
1841	EndsText	Check if one string is the ending of another.
1847	EndsWith	Check if the string is ended by another.
1841	Equals	Check if 2 strings are equal
1842	Format	Format a string using provided arguments.
1847	GetHashCode	Get a hash code for the string
1847	IndexOf	Find the position (index) of a string or character
1848	IndexOfAny	Find the position (index) of any string or character in a list.
1849	IndexOfAnyUnquoted	Find the position (index) of any string or character in a list.
1848	IndexOfUnQuoted	Index of string, skipping quoted parts.
1849	Insert	Insert a string at a given position
1850	IsDelimiter	Check whether a character at a given position is a delimiter
1850	IsEmpty	Check whether the string is empty.
1842	IsNullOrEmpty	Check if a string is empty
1842	IsNullOrWhiteSpace	Check if a string is empty or contains only whitespace characters.
1842	Join	Join a series of strings, separated using a given separator
1850	LastDelimiter	Return the last position of one of a series of delimiters
1850	LastIndexOf	Find the last position (index) of a string or character
1851	LastIndexOfAny	Find the last position (index) of any string or character in a list.
1843	LowerCase	Return the lowercase version of a string.
1851	PadLeft	Pad the string on the left with an indicated character
1852	PadRight	Pad the string on the right with an indicated character
1843	Parse	Return a string representation of the argument
1852	QuotedString	Return a quoted version of the string
1852	Remove	Remove a number of characters from the string
1853	Replace	Replace occurrences of one string with another.
1853	Split	Split a string in a number of parts
1854	StartsWith	Check if one string starts with another
1854	Substring	Return a part of the string
1843	ToBoolean	Convert string to boolean
1855	ToCharArray	Return the string as an array of characters.
1844	ToDouble	Convert string to double-sized floating point value
1844	ToExtended	Convert string to extended-sized floating point value
1844	ToInt64	Convert string to 64-bit signed integer
1845	ToInteger	Convert string to 32-bit signed integer
1855	ToLower	Convert to lowercase
1855	ToLowerInvariant	Convert to lowercase
1845	ToSingle	Convert string to single-sized floating point value
1855	ToUpper	Convert to uppercase.
1856	ToUpperInvariant	Convert to uppercase
1856	Trim	Strips a set of trim characters from the beginning and end of the string.
1857	TrimEnd	Alias for TrimRight
1856	TrimLeft	Strips a set of trim characters from the beginning of the string.
1856	TrimRight	Strips a set of trim characters from the end of the string.
1857	TrimStart	Alias for TrimLeft
1845	UpperCase	Return uppercase version of a string

**76.99.3 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1857</a>	Chars	r	Zero-based Indexed access to the characters in the string.
<a href="#">1857</a>	Length	r	Return the length of the string

**76.99.4 TStringHelper.Compare**

Synopsis: Compare 2 strings

Declaration:

```

class function Compare(const A: string; const B: string) : Integer
    ; Overload; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; const B: string;
    IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Integer; Overload; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; const B: string;
    Options: TCompareOptions) : Integer; Overload
    ; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; IndexA: SizeInt;
    const B: string; IndexB: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt)
    : Integer; Overload; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; IndexA: SizeInt;
    const B: string; IndexB: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt;
    IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Integer; Overload; Static
class function Compare(const A: string; IndexA: SizeInt;
    const B: string; IndexB: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt;
    Options: TCompareOptions) : Integer; Overload
    ; Static

```

Visibility: public

Description: Compare compares strings A and B. It returns the following result:

- 0 if the strings are equal
- a negative number if  $A < B$
- a positive number if  $A > B$

The comparison can be influenced by using the appropriate overloaded version of the function.

- If the `IndexA` and `IndexB` parameters are present, the comparison starts at character index `IndexA` and `IndexB`. The indexes are zero-based.
- If the `ALen` parameters is present, then only the first `ALen` characters are compared. If not enough characters are present in either A or B, the comparison will include only as much characters as are present.
- If `IgnoreCase` is present and used, it determines whether the comparison is done case-sensitively. This form is deprecated, it is recommended to use the `AOptions` parameter and to include `coIgnoreCase`.
- The `AOptions` argument can be used to specify additional options. See `TCompareOption` ([1360](#)) for a list of possible values in this set.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStringHelper.CompareOrdinal` ([1840](#)), `TCompareOption` ([1360](#)), `TStringHelper.CompareTo` ([1846](#))



### 76.99.5 TStringHelper.CompareOrdinal

Synopsis: Compare 2 strings byte for byte

Declaration: `class function CompareOrdinal(const A: string; const B: string) : Integer; Overload; Static`  
`class function CompareOrdinal(const A: string; IndexA: SizeInt; const B: string; IndexB: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt) : Integer; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `CompareOrdinal` compares 2 strings A and B bitwise. It is faster than a regular compare, but offers less options.

- 0 if the strings are equal
- a negative number if  $A < B$
- a positive number if  $A > B$

Optionally, a zero-based starting index for the compare can be given for each of the strings: `IndexA` and `IndexB`. In this case a maximum amount of characters (`ALen`) to be compared must also be specified.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStringHelper.Compare` ([1839](#)), `TStringHelper.CompareTo` ([1846](#))

### 76.99.6 TStringHelper.CompareText

Synopsis: Compare 2 strings case insensitively.

Declaration: `class function CompareText(const A: string; const B: string) : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `CompareText` simply calls `SysUtils` ([1625](#)) with the 2 passed arguments.

Errors: None.

See also: `SysUtils` ([1625](#)), `TStringHelper.CompareTo` ([1846](#))

### 76.99.7 TStringHelper.Copy

Synopsis: Return a unique copy of a string

Declaration: `class function Copy(const Str: string) : string; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Copy` will copy the string on which it operates, and makes sure the result has reference count 1.

See also: `UniqueString` ([1571](#))

### 76.99.8 TStringHelper.Create

### Synopsis: Create a new string

```
Declaration: class function Create(AChar: Char; ACount: SizeInt) : string; Overload
              ; Static
class function Create(const AValue: Array of Char) : string; Overload
              ; Static
class function Create(const AValue: Array of Char; StartIndex: SizeInt;
              ALen: SizeInt) : string; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `Create` returns a new string with an initial value based on the passed arguments:

- A character (AChar) and a count (ACount, in which case a string is returned of the specified length, filled with AChar).
- An array of characters AValue. The returned string will have the same length as the array, and the characters will be copied from the elements in the array. Optionally, a starting index StartIndex (zero based) and length ALen can be specified, in which case the string will contain at most ALen characters, which will have been copied starting at index StartIndex.

Errors: None.

See also: [StringOfChar \(1571\)](#)

### 76.99.9 TStringHelper.EndsText

**Synopsis:** Check if one string is the ending of another.

```
Declaration: class function EndsText(const ASubText: string; const AText: string)
           : Boolean; Static
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `EndsText` returns `True` if `AText` ends on `SubText`, i.e. whether the last characters in `AText` are the ones found in `SubText`. The comparison is done case insensitively.

See also: [CompareText \(1625\)](#), [TStringHelper.EndsWith \(1847\)](#)

### 76.99.10 TStringHelper.Equals

Synopsis: Check if 2 strings are equal

```
Declaration: class function Equals(const a: string; const b: string) : Boolean
                ; Overload; Static
                function Equals(const AValue: string) : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Equals returns True if A=B, false otherwise.

See also: [CompareText \(1625\)](#), [TStringHelper.Compare \(1839\)](#)

**76.99.11 TStringHelper.Format**

Synopsis: Format a string using provided arguments.

Declaration: `class function Format(const AFormat: string; const args: Array of const) : string; Overload; Static`  
`function Format(const args: Array of const) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Format` just calls `Sysutils.Format` ([1668](#)), passing on `AFormat` and `Args`. If `AFormat` is omitted, the string itself is used as the formatting string.

See also: `Sysutils.Format` ([1668](#))

**76.99.12 TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmpty**

Synopsis: Check if a string is empty

Declaration: `class function IsNullOrEmpty(const AValue: string) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsNullOrEmpty` returns `True` if string `A` has length 0.

See also: `System.Length` ([1571](#)), `TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmptyWhiteSpace` ([1842](#))

**76.99.13 TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmptyWhiteSpace**

Synopsis: Check if a string is empty or contains only whitespace characters.

Declaration: `class function IsNullOrEmptyWhiteSpace(const AValue: string) : Boolean`  
`; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsNullOrEmpty` returns `True` if string `A` has length 0 or contains only whitespace characters (characters with ASCII code 32 or less).

See also: `TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmpty` ([1842](#)), `Trim` ([1731](#))

**76.99.14 TStringHelper.Join**

Synopsis: Join a series of strings, separated using a given separator

Declaration: `class function Join(const Separator: string;`  
`const Values: Array of const) : string; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function Join(const Separator: string;`  
`const Values: Array of string) : string; Overload`  
`; Static`  
`class function Join(const Separator: string;`  
`const Values: Array of string; StartIndex: SizeInt;`  
`ACount: SizeInt) : string; Overload; Static`

Visibility: public

In case an array of strings is passed on, a start index `StartIndex` and element count `ACount` can be passed on as well.

See also: [TStringHelper.Split \(1853\)](#)

**Synopsis:** Return the lowercase version of a string.

Visibility: public

See also: `sysutils.LowerCase` ([1693](#))

**Synopsis:** Return a string representation of the argument

Visibility: public

**Integer** the result is formatted using `IntToStr` (1689).

### Synopsis: Convert string to boolean

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` returns the contents of the string `S` as a boolean (if possible). It uses `StrToBool` (1716) to convert the value to a boolean.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to a boolean, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToBool` (1716), `EConvertError` (1751), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1845), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1845)

### 76.99.18 TStringHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert string to double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `class function ToDouble(const S: string) : Double; Overload; Static  
function ToDouble : Double; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` returns the contents of the string `S` as a Double-sized floating point value (if possible). It uses `StrToFloat` (1721) to convert the value to a floating point value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to a floating point value, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToFloat` (1721), `EConvertError` (1751), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1843), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1845), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1845)

### 76.99.19 TStringHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert string to extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `class function ToExtended(const S: string) : Extended; Overload  
; Static  
function ToExtended : Extended; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToExtended` returns the contents of the string `S` as a Extended-sized floating point value (if possible). It uses `StrToFloat` (1721) to convert the value to a floating point value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to a floating point value, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToFloat` (1721), `EConvertError` (1751), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1843), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1845), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1845)

### 76.99.20 TStringHelper.ToInt64

**Synopsis:** Convert string to 64-bit signed integer

**Declaration:** `class function ToInt64(const S: string) : Int64; Overload; Static  
function ToInt64 : Int64; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToInt64` returns the contents of the string `S` as a 64-bit signed integer value (if possible). It uses `StrToInt64` (1723) to convert the value to an 64-bit sized integer value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to an integer value, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToInt64` (1723), `EConvertError` (1751), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1843), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1845), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1845)

### 76.99.21 `TStringHelper.ToInteger`

**Synopsis:** Convert string to 32-bit signed integer

**Declaration:** `class function ToInteger(const S: string) : Integer; Overload; Static  
function ToInteger : Integer; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToInteger` returns the contents of the string `S` as a 32-bit signed integer value (if possible). It uses `StrToInt64` (1723) to convert the value to an 64-bit sized integer value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to an integer value, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToInt64` (1723), `EConvertError` (1751), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1843), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToSingle` (1845)

### 76.99.22 `TStringHelper.ToSingle`

**Synopsis:** Convert string to single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `class function ToSingle(const S: string) : Single; Overload; Static  
function ToSingle : Single; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToSingle` returns the contents of the string `S` as a single-sized floating point value (if possible). It uses `StrToFloat` (1721) to convert the value to a floating point value.

**Errors:** If the string contains a value that cannot be translated to a floating point value, an `EConvertError` (1751) exception may be raised.

**See also:** `StrToFloat` (1721), `EConvertError` (1751), `TStringHelper.ToBoolean` (1843), `TStringHelper.ToDouble` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInt64` (1844), `TStringHelper.ToInteger` (1845), `TStringHelper.ToExtended` (1844)

### 76.99.23 `TStringHelper.UpperCase`

**Synopsis:** Return uppercase version of a string

**Declaration:** `class function UpperCase(const S: string) : string; Overload; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `UpperCase` returns an uppercase version of the string `S`.

**See also:** `#rtl.sysutils.UpperCase` (1741)

**76.99.24 TStringHelper.CompareTo**

Synopsis: Compare string to another

Declaration: `function CompareTo(const B: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `CompareTo` will compare the string value to the string B. It returns the following result:

- 0 if the strings are equal
- a negative number if `Self < B`
- a positive number if `Self > B`

The `StrComp` (1703) function is used for this.

See also: `TStringHelper.Compare` (1839), `TStringHelper.CompareOrdinal` (1840), `StrComp` (1703)

**76.99.25 TStringHelper.Contains**

Synopsis: Check is the string contains another

Declaration: `function Contains(const AValue: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Contains` returns `True` if the string value contains `AValue`, i.e. it returns `Pos(Self, AValue) > 0`.

See also: `Pos` (1485)

**76.99.26 TStringHelper.CopyTo**

Synopsis: Copy part of the string to an array of characters

Declaration: `procedure CopyTo(SourceIndex: SizeInt; var destination: Array of Char;  
DestinationIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyTo` copies at most `ACount` characters from the source string (`Self`) to the array `Destination`, starting at (zero based) index `SourceIndex`. The characters are copied to the array starting at position `DestinationIndex` (zero based).

See also: `Copy` (1418)

**76.99.27 TStringHelper.CountChar**

Synopsis: Count the occurrences of a character

Declaration: `function CountChar(const C: Char) : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `CountChar` returns the number of occurrences of `C` in the string (`Self`).

See also: `TStringHelper.IndexOf` (1847), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` (1848)

**76.99.28 TStringHelper.DeQuotedString**

Synopsis: Return a dequoted version of the string

Declaration: `function DeQuotedString : string; Overload`  
`function DeQuotedString(const AQuoteChar: Char) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeQuotedString` will return a dequoted version of the string (`Self`), where the quote character is `AQuoteChar` (default: a single quote `'`). The string must start and end with the quote character, or it is returned as-is. Any double occurrences of the quote character `AQuoteChar` will be returned as a single quote.

See also: `AnsiQuotedString` ([1571](#)), `AnsiExtractQuotedString` ([1571](#))

**76.99.29 TStringHelper.EndsWith**

Synopsis: Check if the string is ended by another.

Declaration: `function EndsWith(const AValue: string) : Boolean; Overload`  
`function EndsWith(const AValue: string; IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Boolean`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `EndsWith` returns `True` if the string (`Self`) ends on `AValue`, i.e. whether the last characters in `Self` are the ones found in `AValue`. The comparison is done case insensitively depending on the `IgnoreCase` argument (which is false by default).

See also: `CompareText` ([1625](#)), `TStringHelper.EndsWithText` ([1841](#))

**76.99.30 TStringHelper.GetHashCode**

Synopsis: Get a hash code for the string

Declaration: `function GetHashCode : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetHashCode` returns a hash value for the string (`Self`).

**76.99.31 TStringHelper.IndexOf**

Synopsis: Find the position (index) of a string or character

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AValue: Char) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(const AValue: string) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(AValue: Char; StartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(const AValue: string; StartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt`  
`; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(AValue: Char; StartIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt)`  
`: SizeInt; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(const AValue: string; StartIndex: SizeInt;`  
`ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload`

Visibility: public



**Description:** `IndexOf` returns the zero-based index of `AValue` in the string (`Self`). The value to search for can be a character or string (`AValue`).

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying zero.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying the amount of remaining characters.

See also: `Pos` ([1485](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnQuoted` ([1848](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` ([1848](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` ([1849](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` ([1850](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` ([1851](#))

### 76.99.32 TStringHelper.IndexOfUnQuoted

**Synopsis:** Index of string, skipping quoted parts.

**Declaration:**

```
function IndexOfUnQuoted(const AValue: string; StartQuote: Char;
                        EndQuote: Char; StartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt
; Overload
```

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IndexOfUnQuoted` will return the zero-based index of `AValue` in the string (`Self`), but disregards any quoted parts in the string. A quoted part is determined by a starting `StartQuote` and end-quote character `EndQuote`. The search starts at (zero-based) position `StartIndex`, which is by default 0.

See also: `Pos` ([1485](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` ([1847](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` ([1848](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` ([1849](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` ([1850](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` ([1851](#))

### 76.99.33 TStringHelper.IndexOfAny

**Synopsis:** Find the position (index) of any string or character in a list.

**Declaration:**

```
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char; StartIndex: SizeInt)
: SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char; StartIndex: SizeInt;
                    ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of string) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of string; StartIndex: SizeInt)
: SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of string; StartIndex: SizeInt;
                    ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of string; StartIndex: SizeInt;
                    ACount: SizeInt; out AMatch: SizeInt) : SizeInt
; Overload
```

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `IndexOfAny` returns the zero-based index of the first matching element in an array of characters or strings (`AnyOf`).

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero-based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying zero.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying the amount of remaining characters.

If `AMatch` is specified, on successful return it will contain the index of the element in the array that contains the found match.

See also: `Pos` (1485), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` (1847), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnquoted` (1848), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` (1849), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` (1850), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` (1851)

### 76.99.34 TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted

Synopsis: Find the position (index) of any string or character in a list.

**Declaration:**

```
function IndexOfAnyUnquoted(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
                           StartQuote: Char; EndQuote: Char) : SizeInt
                           ; Overload
function IndexOfAnyUnquoted(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
                           StartQuote: Char; EndQuote: Char;
                           StartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAnyUnquoted(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
                           StartQuote: Char; EndQuote: Char;
                           StartIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt)
                           : SizeInt; Overload
function IndexOfAnyUnquoted(const AnyOf: Array of string;
                           StartQuote: Char; EndQuote: Char;
                           StartIndex: SizeInt; out Matched: SizeInt)
                           : SizeInt; Overload
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `IndexOfAnyUnquoted` returns the zero-based index of the first matching element in an array of characters or strings (`AnyOf`), but disregards any quoted parts in the string. A quoted part is determined by a starting `StartQuote` and end-quote character `EndQuote`.

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero-based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying zero.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying the amount of remaining characters.

If `AMatch` is specified, on successful return it will contain the index of the element in the array that contains the found match.

See also: `Pos` (1485), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` (1847), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnquoted` (1848), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` (1848), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` (1850), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` (1851)

### 76.99.35 TStringHelper.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a string at a given position

**Declaration:**

```
function Insert(StartIndex: SizeInt; const AValue: string) : string
```

Visibility: public

**Description:** Insert inserts the string AValue in a string (Self) at the (zero-based) position StartIndex. It returns the resulting string (Self). If StartIndex is less than zero, it is set to zero. If StartIndex is higher than the length, AValue is appended to the string.

See also: Insert ([1464](#))

### 76.99.36 TStringHelper.IsDelimiter

**Synopsis:** Check whether a character at a given position is a delimiter

**Declaration:** function IsDelimiter(const Delimiters: string; Index: SizeInt) : Boolean

Visibility: public

**Description:** IsDelimiter returns True if the character at (zero-based) position Index is one of the delimiter characters in Delimiters. If Index is out of range, False is returned.

See also: IsDelimiter ([1690](#))

### 76.99.37 TStringHelper.IsEmpty

**Synopsis:** Check whether the string is empty.

**Declaration:** function IsEmpty : Boolean

Visibility: public

**Description:** IsEmpty returns True if the string has length zero.

See also: TStringHelper.IsNullOrEmpty ([1842](#)), TStringHelper.Length ([1857](#)), Length ([1470](#))

### 76.99.38 TStringHelper.LastDelimiter

**Synopsis:** Return the last position of one of a series of delimiters

**Declaration:** function LastDelimiter(const Delims: string) : SizeInt

Visibility: public

**Description:** LastDelimiter searches the string backwards for an occurrence of one of the characters in Delims, and returns the corresponding (zero-based) index in the string. If no occurrence is found, -1 is returned.

See also: TStringHelper.isDelimiter ([1850](#)), TStringHelper.IndexOf ([1847](#)), TStringHelper.IndexOfAny ([1848](#)), TStringHelper.LastIndexOf ([1850](#)), TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny ([1851](#))

### 76.99.39 TStringHelper.LastIndexOf

**Synopsis:** Find the last position (index) of a string or character

**Declaration:** function LastIndexOf(AValue: Char) : SizeInt; Overload  
 function LastIndexOf(const AValue: string) : SizeInt; Overload  
 function LastIndexOf(AValue: Char; AStartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt  
 ; Overload  
 function LastIndexOf(const AValue: string; AStartIndex: SizeInt)

```

        : SizeInt; Overload
function LastIndexOf(AValue: Char; AStartIndex: SizeInt;
        ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function LastIndexOf(const AValue: string; AStartIndex: SizeInt;
        ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `LastIndexOf` returns the zero-based index of the last occurrence of `AValue` in the string (`Self`). The value to search for can be a character or string (`AValue`).

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character and proceeds towards the beginning of the string. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying `length-1`.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying `StartIndex+1`.

See also: `Pos` ([1485](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnquoted` ([1848](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` ([1848](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` ([1849](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` ([1847](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny` ([1851](#))

#### 76.99.40 TStringHelper.LastIndexOfAny

**Synopsis:** Find the last position (index) of any string or character in a list.

```

Declaration: function LastIndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char) : SizeInt; Overload
function LastIndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
        AStartIndex: SizeInt) : SizeInt; Overload
function LastIndexOfAny(const AnyOf: Array of Char;
        AStartIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt) : SizeInt
; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `LastIndexOfAny` returns the zero-based index of the first matching element in an array of characters or strings (`AnyOf`).

if no match is found, -1 is returned.

The search can be refined by specifying a (zero-based) index `StartIndex`. When specified, the search will start at the given character and proceeds to the start of the string. Not specifying this option is equivalent to specifying `Length-1`.

If `ACount` is given, at most `ACount` characters in the source string will be considered for the search. This count includes the starting character. Not specifying this argument is equivalent to specifying `StartIndex+1`.

See also: `Pos` ([1485](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOf` ([1847](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfUnquoted` ([1848](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted` ([1849](#)), `TStringHelper.LastIndexOf` ([1850](#)), `TStringHelper.IndexOfAny` ([1848](#))

#### 76.99.41 TStringHelper.PadLeft

**Synopsis:** Pad the string on the left with an indicated character

```

Declaration: function PadLeft(ATotalWidth: SizeInt) : string; Overload
function PadLeft(ATotalWidth: SizeInt; PaddingChar: Char) : string
; Overload

```

Visibility: public

Description: `PadLeft` pads the string (`Self`) on the left (i.e. at the beginning) till it reaches length `ATotalWidth` with character `PaddingChar`. If `PaddingChar` is omitted, a space is used.

See also: `TStringHelper.PadRight` ([1852](#))

### 76.99.42 `TStringHelper.PadRight`

Synopsis: Pad the string on the right with an indicated character

Declaration: 

```
function PadRight(ATotalWidth: SizeInt) : string; Overload
function PadRight(ATotalWidth: SizeInt; PaddingChar: Char) : string
; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `PadLeft` pads the string (`Self`) on the right (i.e. at the end) till it reaches length `ATotalWidth` with character `PaddingChar`. If `PaddingChar` is omitted, a space is used.

See also: `TStringHelper.PadLeft` ([1851](#))

### 76.99.43 `TStringHelper.QuotedString`

Synopsis: Return a quoted version of the string

Declaration: 

```
function QuotedString : string; Overload
function QuotedString(const AQuoteChar: Char) : string; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `QuotedString` returns a quoted version of the string (`Self`). The quote character is specified in `AQuoteChar`, which by default is the double quote (`"`). Any existing quote characters occurrences will be doubled.

See also: `QuotedStr` ([1695](#)), `AnsiQuotedStr` ([1609](#))

### 76.99.44 `TStringHelper.Remove`

Synopsis: Remove a number of characters from the string

Declaration: 

```
function Remove(StartIndex: SizeInt) : string; Overload
function Remove(StartIndex: SizeInt; ACount: SizeInt) : string
; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `ACount` characters from the string, starting at (zero-based) index `StartIndex`. If `ACount` is omitted, all remaining characters are removed.

See also: `Delete` ([1422](#)), `TStringHelper.Replace` ([1853](#)), `TStringHelper.Insert` ([1849](#))

**76.99.45 TStringHelper.Replace**

Synopsis: Replace occurrences of one string with another.

**Declaration:** function Replace(OldChar: Char; NewChar: Char) : string; Overload  
 function Replace(OldChar: Char; NewChar: Char;  
                   ReplaceFlags: TReplaceFlags) : string; Overload  
 function Replace(const OldValue: string; const NewValue: string)  
                   : string; Overload  
 function Replace(const OldValue: string; const NewValue: string;  
                   ReplaceFlags: TReplaceFlags) : string; Overload

Visibility: public

**Description:** Replace will replace occurrences of OldChar with NewChar or OldValue with NewValue.

If rfReplaceAll is in the ReplaceFlags, then all occurrences will be replaced, otherwise only the first occurrence is replaced.

If rfCaseInsensitive is in the ReplaceFlags, then the search for OldChar or OldValue is performed ignoring case.

See also: StringReplace ([1707](#)), TReplaceFlags ([1595](#))

**76.99.46 TStringHelper.Split**

Synopsis: Split a string in a number of parts

**Declaration:** function Split(const Separators: Array of Char) : TStringArray  
                   ; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; ACount: SizeInt)  
                   : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; ACount: SizeInt;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of string) : TStringArray  
                   ; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of string; ACount: SizeInt)  
                   : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of string;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of string; ACount: SizeInt;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuote: Char)  
                   : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuoteStart: Char;  
                   AQuoteEnd: Char) : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuoteStart: Char;  
                   AQuoteEnd: Char; Options: TStringSplitOptions)  
                   : TStringArray; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuoteStart: Char;  
                   AQuoteEnd: Char; ACount: SizeInt) : TStringArray  
                   ; Overload  
 function Split(const Separators: Array of Char; AQuoteStart: Char;  
                   AQuoteEnd: Char; ACount: SizeInt;  
                   Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload

```

function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuote: Char)
    : TStringArray; Overload
function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuoteStart: Char;
    AQuoteEnd: Char) : TStringArray; Overload
function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuoteStart: Char;
    AQuoteEnd: Char; Options: TStringSplitOptions)
    : TStringArray; Overload
function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuoteStart: Char;
    AQuoteEnd: Char; ACount: SizeInt) : TStringArray
    ; Overload
function Split(const Separators: Array of string; AQuoteStart: Char;
    AQuoteEnd: Char; ACount: SizeInt;
    Options: TStringSplitOptions) : TStringArray; Overload

```

Visibility: public

Description: Split will split the string (Self) using Separators as separator characters.

If ACount is supplied, then at most ACount strings will be included in the result. The default behaviour is to supply all strings.

if Options contains ExcludeEmpty then no empty strings will be included in the result. Empty strings may be included if multiple successive separator characters are found in the source string, but not for the last character: If the last characters is a separator string, the 'empty string' behind it is not added to the result.

If AQuoteStart and AQuoteEnd are supplied, then no splitting will be performed between AQuoteStart and AQuoteEnd characters.

See also: TStringHelper.Join ([1842](#)), TStringHelper.IndexOfAny ([1848](#)), TStringHelper.IndexOfAnyUnquoted ([1849](#))

### 76.99.47 TStringHelper.StartsWith

Synopsis: Check if one string starts with another

```

Declaration: function StartsWith(const AValue: string) : Boolean; Overload
function StartsWith(const AValue: string; IgnoreCase: Boolean) : Boolean
    ; Overload

```

Visibility: public

Description: StartsWith will return True if the first characters of the string (Self) equal the string AValue.

If IgnoreCase is True, then the comparison is done case insensitive. The default is to compare strings case sensitively.

See also: TStringHelper.EndsWith ([1847](#))

### 76.99.48 TStringHelper.Substring

Synopsis: Return a part of the string

```

Declaration: function Substring(AStartIndex: SizeInt) : string; Overload
function Substring(AStartIndex: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt) : string
    ; Overload

```

Visibility: public

**Description:** `SubString` returns the portion of the string starting at (zero-based) index `AStartIndex` with length `ALen`. If `ALen` is omitted, then all remaining characters are returned.

See also: `TStringHelper.Insert` (1849), `Copy` (1418), `TStringHelper.ToCharArray` (1855)

### 76.99.49 `TStringHelper.ToCharArray`

**Synopsis:** Return the string as an array of characters.

**Declaration:** `function ToCharArray : TCharArray; Overload`  
`function ToCharArray(AStartIndex: SizeInt; ALen: SizeInt) : TCharArray`  
`; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToCharArray` returns part of the string (`Self`) as an array of characters. The characters are copied starting at (zero-based) index `AStartIndex` and at most `ALen` characters are copied. If `AStartIndex` and `ALen` are omitted, all the characters are returned.

**Errors:** If `AStartIndex` is less than zero, an `EAccessViolation` (1750) exception may be raised.

See also: `TStringHelper.Substring` (1854), `TStringHelper.Insert` (1849), `Copy` (1418)

### 76.99.50 `TStringHelper.ToLower`

**Synopsis:** Convert to lowercase

**Declaration:** `function ToLower : string; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToLower` returns a lowercase version of the string.

See also: `TStringHelper.LowerCase` (1843), `TStringHelper.ToUpper` (1855), `TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant` (1856)

### 76.99.51 `TStringHelper.ToLowerInvariant`

**Synopsis:** Convert to lowercase

**Declaration:** `function ToLowerInvariant : string`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToLowerInvariant` is equal to `TStringHelper.ToLower` (1855)

See also: `TStringHelper.ToLower` (1855), `TStringHelper.ToUpper` (1855), `TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant` (1856)

### 76.99.52 `TStringHelper.ToUpper`

**Synopsis:** Convert to uppercase.

**Declaration:** `function ToUpper : string; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `>ToUpper` returns an uppercase version of the string.

See also: `TStringHelper.ToLower` (1855), `TStringHelper.ToLowerInvariant` (1855), `TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant` (1856)



**76.99.53 TStringHelper.ToUpperInvariant**

Synopsis: Convert to uppercase

Declaration: `function ToUpperInvariant : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToUpperInvariant` is equal to `TStringHelper.ToUpper` (1855)

See also: `TStringHelper.ToLower` (1855), `TStringHelper.ToLowerInvariant` (1855), `TStringHelper.ToUpper` (1855)

**76.99.54 TStringHelper.Trim**

Synopsis: Strips a set of trim characters from the beginning and end of the string.

Declaration: `function Trim : string; Overload`  
`function Trim(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Trim` returns the string (`Self`), removing all characters occurring in `ATrimChars` from the start and end of the string. If `ATrimChars` is not specified, all characters with ASCII code 32 or lower are assumed.

See also: `Trim` (1731), `TStringHelper.TrimLeft` (1856), `TStringHelper.TrimRight` (1856)

**76.99.55 TStringHelper.TrimLeft**

Synopsis: Strips a set of trim characters from the beginning of the string.

Declaration: `function TrimLeft : string; Overload`  
`function TrimLeft(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Trim` returns the string (`Self`), removing all characters occurring in `ATrimChars` from the start of the string. If `ATrimChars` is not specified, all characters with ASCII code 32 or lower are assumed.

See also: `TrimLeft` (1731), `TStringHelper.Trim` (1856), `TStringHelper.TrimRight` (1856)

**76.99.56 TStringHelper.TrimRight**

Synopsis: Strips a set of trim characters from the end of the string.

Declaration: `function TrimRight : string; Overload`  
`function TrimRight(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Trim` returns the string (`Self`), removing all characters occurring in `ATrimChars` from the end of the string. If `ATrimChars` is not specified, all characters with ASCII code 32 or lower are assumed.

See also: `Trim` (1731), `TStringHelper.Trim` (1856), `TStringHelper.TrimLeft` (1856)

### 76.99.57 TStringHelper.TrimEnd

Synopsis: Alias for TrimRight

Declaration: `function TrimEnd(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: TrimEnd is an alias for TStringHelper.TrimRight ([1856](#))

See also: TStringHelper.TrimRight ([1856](#)), TStringHelper.TrimStart ([1857](#))

### 76.99.58 TStringHelper.TrimStart

Synopsis: Alias for TrimLeft

Declaration: `function TrimStart(const ATrimChars: Array of Char) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: TrimStart is an alias for TStringHelper.TrimLeft ([1856](#))

See also: TStringHelper.TrimEnd ([1857](#)), TStringHelper.TrimLeft ([1856](#))

### 76.99.59 TStringHelper.Chars

Synopsis: Zero-based Indexed access to the characters in the string.

Declaration: `Property Chars[AIndex: SizeInt]: Char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Chars provides zero-based indexed access to the characters in the string. The first character is at index 0, the last at Length-1.

See also: TStringHelper.Length ([1857](#))

### 76.99.60 TStringHelper.Length

Synopsis: Return the length of the string

Declaration: `Property Length : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Length returns the length (in bytes for single-byte strings) of the string.

See also: Length ([1470](#))

## 76.100 TUnicodeEncoding

### 76.100.1 Description

TUnicodeEncoding is the encoding class used to represent the UTF-16 encoding.

See also: TUnicodeEncoding ([1857](#)), TUTF7Encoding ([1863](#)), TMBCSEncoding ([1807](#)), TBigendianUnicodeEncoding ([1767](#))

**76.100.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1858</a>	Clone	Clone a TUnicodeEncoding instance
<a href="#">1858</a>	Create	Create a new instance of the TUnicodeEncoding class
<a href="#">1858</a>	GetMaxByteCount	Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string
<a href="#">1858</a>	GetMaxCharCount	Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes
<a href="#">1859</a>	GetPreamble	Return BOM marker bytes

**76.100.3 TUnicodeEncoding.Create**

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TUnicodeEncoding class

Declaration: constructor Create; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of the TUnicodeEncoding class and sets the codepage to CP\_UTF16.

See also: TEncoding.CodePage ([1788](#)), TEncoding ([1784](#))

**76.100.4 TUnicodeEncoding.Clone**

Synopsis: Clone a TUnicodeEncoding instance

Declaration: function Clone : TEncoding; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Clone overrides TEncoding.Clone ([1785](#)) to provide a clone of the TUnicodeEncoding instance.

See also: TEncoding.Clone ([1785](#))

**76.100.5 TUnicodeEncoding.GetMaxByteCount**

Synopsis: Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string

Declaration: function GetMaxByteCount(CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Override

Visibility: public

Description: GetMaxByteCount overrides TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount ([1787](#)) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount ([1787](#))

**76.100.6 TUnicodeEncoding.GetMaxCharCount**

Synopsis: Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes

Declaration: function GetMaxCharCount(ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Override

Visibility: public

Description: GetMaxCharCount overrides TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount ([1787](#)) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount ([1787](#))

### 76.100.7 TUnicodeEncoding.GetPreamble

Synopsis: Return BOM marker bytes

Declaration: `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetPreamble` overrides `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1787) to return the 2 UTF-16 BOM Marker bytes (\$FF,\$FE).

See also: `TEncoding.GetPreamble` (1787)

## 76.101 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

### 76.101.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1859</a>	<code>Append</code>	
<a href="#">1860</a>	<code>AppendFormat</code>	
<a href="#">1860</a>	<code>AppendLine</code>	
<a href="#">1860</a>	<code>Clear</code>	
<a href="#">1860</a>	<code>CopyTo</code>	
<a href="#">1859</a>	<code>Create</code>	
<a href="#">1861</a>	<code>EnsureCapacity</code>	
<a href="#">1861</a>	<code>Equals</code>	
<a href="#">1861</a>	<code>Insert</code>	
<a href="#">1862</a>	<code>Remove</code>	
<a href="#">1862</a>	<code>Replace</code>	
<a href="#">1862</a>	<code>ToString</code>	

### 76.101.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1863</a>	<code>Capacity</code>	<code>rw</code>	
<a href="#">1862</a>	<code>Chars</code>	<code>rw</code>	
<a href="#">1862</a>	<code>Length</code>	<code>rw</code>	
<a href="#">1863</a>	<code>MaxCapacity</code>	<code>r</code>	

### 76.101.3 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create`

```

constructor Create(aCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: UNICODESTRING)
constructor Create(aCapacity: Integer; aMaxCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: UNICODESTRING; aCapacity: Integer)
constructor Create(const AValue: UNICODESTRING; StartIndex: Integer;
                  aLength: Integer; aCapacity: Integer)

```

Visibility: `public`

### 76.101.4 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Append

Declaration: `function Append(const AValue: Boolean) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER`

```

function Append(const AValue: Byte) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: WideChar) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Currency) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Double) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: SmallInt) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: LongInt) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Int64) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: TObject) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: ShortInt) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Single) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: UInt64) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Array of WideChar) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Word) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Cardinal) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: PWIDECHAR) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: UNICODESTRING) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: RawByteString) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: WideChar; RepeatCount: Integer)
    : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: Array of WideChar; StartIndex: Integer;
    SBCharCount: Integer) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const AValue: UNICODESTRING; StartIndex: Integer;
    Count: Integer) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER
function Append(const Fmt: UNICODESTRING; const Args: Array of const)
    : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

```

Visibility: public

### 76.101.5 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.AppendFormat

Declaration: function AppendFormat(const Fmt: UNICODESTRING;  
const Args: Array of const) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.6 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.AppendLine

Declaration: function AppendLine : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function AppendLine(const AValue: RawByteString) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.7 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Clear

Declaration: procedure Clear

Visibility: public

### 76.101.8 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.CopyTo

Declaration: procedure CopyTo(SourceIndex: Integer;  
var Destination: Array of WideChar;  
DestinationIndex: Integer; Count: Integer)

Visibility: public

### 76.101.9 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.EnsureCapacity

Declaration: function EnsureCapacity(aCapacity: Integer) : Integer

Visibility: public

### 76.101.10 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Equals

Declaration: function Equals(StringBuilder: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER) : Boolean  
; Reintroduce

Visibility: public

### 76.101.11 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Insert

Declaration: function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Boolean)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Byte)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: WideChar)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Currency)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Double)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: SmallInt)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: LongInt)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Array of WideChar)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Int64)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: TObject)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: ShortInt)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Single)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: UNICODESTRING)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Word)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Cardinal)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: UInt64)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: UNICODESTRING;  
const aRepeatCount: Integer) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Insert(Index: Integer; const AValue: Array of WideChar;  
startIndex: Integer; SBCharCount: Integer)

: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.12 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Remove

Declaration: function Remove(StartIndex: Integer; RemLength: Integer)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.13 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Replace

Declaration: function Replace(const OldChar: WideChar; const NewChar: WideChar)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldChar: WideChar; const NewChar: WideChar;  
StartIndex: Integer; Count: Integer)  
: TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldValue: UNICODESTRING;  
const NewValue: UNICODESTRING) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER  
function Replace(const OldValue: UNICODESTRING;  
const NewValue: UNICODESTRING; StartIndex: Integer;  
Count: Integer) : TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER

Visibility: public

### 76.101.14 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.ToString

Declaration: function ToString : UNICODESTRING  
function ToString(aStartIndex: Integer; aLength: Integer)  
: UNICODESTRING; Reintroduce

Visibility: public

### 76.101.15 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Chars

Declaration: Property Chars[index: Integer]: WideChar; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

### 76.101.16 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Length

Declaration: Property Length : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**76.101.17 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.Capacity**

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

**76.101.18 TUNICODESTRINGBUILDER.MaxCapacity**

Declaration: `Property MaxCapacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

**76.102 TUTF7Encoding****76.102.1 Description**

`TUTF7Encoding` is the encoding class used to represent the UTF7 encoding. This encoding is not so often used, and the class is provided mostly for completeness.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` ([1857](#)), `TUTF8Encoding` ([1864](#)), `TMBCSEncoding` ([1807](#)), `TBigendianUnicodeEncoding` ([1767](#))

**76.102.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1863</a>	<code>Clone</code>	Clone a <code>TUTF7Encoding</code> instance
<a href="#">1863</a>	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TUTF7Encoding</code> class
<a href="#">1864</a>	<code>GetMaxByteCount</code>	Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string
<a href="#">1864</a>	<code>GetMaxCharCount</code>	Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes

**76.102.3 TUTF7Encoding.Create**

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TUTF7Encoding` class

Declaration: `constructor Create; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TUTF7Encoding` class and sets the codepage to `CP_UTF7`.

See also: `TEncoding.CodePage` ([1788](#)), `TEncoding` ([1784](#))

**76.102.4 TUTF7Encoding.Clone**

Synopsis: Clone a `TUTF7Encoding` instance

Declaration: `function Clone : TEncoding; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TEncoding.Clone` ([1785](#)) to provide a clone of the `TUTF7Encoding` instance.

See also: `TEncoding.Clone` ([1785](#))



### 76.102.5 TUTF7Encoding.GetMaxByteCount

Synopsis: Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string

Declaration: `function GetMaxByteCount (CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetMaxByteCount` overrides `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` (1787) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount` (1787)

### 76.102.6 TUTF7Encoding.GetMaxCharCount

Synopsis: Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes

Declaration: `function GetMaxCharCount (ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetMaxCharCount` overrides `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` (1787) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: `TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount` (1787)

## 76.103 TUTF8Encoding

### 76.103.1 Description

`TUTF8Encoding` is the encoding class used to represent the UTF-8 encoding.

See also: `TUnicodeEncoding` (1857), `TUTF7Encoding` (1863), `TMBCSEncoding` (1807), `TBigendianUnicodeEncoding` (1767)

### 76.103.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1865</a>	<code>Clone</code>	Clone a <code>TUTF8Encoding</code> instance
<a href="#">1864</a>	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TUTF8Encoding</code> class
<a href="#">1865</a>	<code>GetMaxByteCount</code>	Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string
<a href="#">1865</a>	<code>GetMaxCharCount</code>	Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes
<a href="#">1865</a>	<code>GetPreamble</code>	Return BOM marker bytes

### 76.103.3 TUTF8Encoding.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TUTF8Encoding` class

Declaration: `constructor Create; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TUTF8Encoding` class and sets the codepage to `CP_UTF8`.

See also: `TEncoding.CodePage` (1788), `TEncoding` (1784)

#### 76.103.4 TUTF8Encoding.Clone

Synopsis: Clone a TUTF8Encoding instance

Declaration: `function Clone : TEncoding; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Clone overrides TEncoding.Clone (1785) to provide a clone of the TUTF8Encoding instance.

See also: TEncoding.Clone (1785)

#### 76.103.5 TUTF8Encoding.GetMaxByteCount

Synopsis: Return max number of bytes needed to represent a string

Declaration: `function GetMaxByteCount(CharCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: GetMaxByteCount overrides TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount (1787) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: TEncoding.GetMaxByteCount (1787)

#### 76.103.6 TUTF8Encoding.GetMaxCharCount

Synopsis: Return max number of characters that can be represented by an array of bytes

Declaration: `function GetMaxCharCount(ByteCount: Integer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: GetMaxCharCount overrides TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount (1787) to return the maximum number of bytes needed to represent a string.

See also: TEncoding.GetMaxCharCount (1787)

#### 76.103.7 TUTF8Encoding.GetPreamble

Synopsis: Return BOM marker bytes

Declaration: `function GetPreamble : TBytes; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: GetPreamble overrides TEncoding.GetPreamble (1787) to return the 3 UTF8 BOM Marker bytes (\$EF,\$BB,\$BF).

See also: TEncoding.GetPreamble (1787)

## 76.104 TWordBoolHelper

### 76.104.1 Description

TWordBoolHelper is a helper type for the WordBool type. It contains mostly conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: TStringHelper ([1836](#)), TShortIntHelper ([1821](#)), TSmallIntHelper ([1833](#)), TWordHelper ([1867](#)), TCardinalHelper ([1775](#)), TIntegerHelper ([1802](#)), TInt64Helper ([1799](#)), TQWordHelper ([1818](#)), TNativeIntHelper ([1811](#)), TByteHelper ([1771](#)), TByteBoolHelper ([1770](#)), TWordBoolHelper ([1866](#)), TLongBoolHelper ([1805](#))

### 76.104.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1866</a>	Parse	Convert string value to WordBool value.
<a href="#">1866</a>	Size	Return the size (in bytes) of the
<a href="#">1867</a>	ToInteger	Convert to an integer value
<a href="#">1866</a>	ToString	Convert a WordBool value to string.
<a href="#">1867</a>	TryToParse	Try to convert a string to a WordBool value

### 76.104.3 TWordBoolHelper.Parse

Synopsis: Convert string value to WordBool value.

Declaration: `class function Parse(const S: string) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: Parse attempts to convert the string S to a WordBool value. It uses the StrToBool ([1716](#)) function to perform the conversion.

Errors: If S does not contain a valid string representation, then an EConvertError ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: TWordBoolHelper.TryToParse ([1867](#)), TWordBoolHelper.ToString ([1866](#)), TWordBoolHelper.ToInteger ([1867](#))

### 76.104.4 TWordBoolHelper.Size

Synopsis: Return the size (in bytes) of the

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: Size returns the size (in bytes) of the WordBool value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(WordBool)`.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1514](#))

### 76.104.5 TWordBoolHelper.ToString

Synopsis: Convert a WordBool value to string.

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Boolean;  
                                  UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload  
                                  ; Static  
function ToString(UseBoolStrs: TUseBoolStrs) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToString` will, in the class method version, convert the `AValue WordBool` to a string representation. In the function method version the `WordBool` value itself (`Self`) will be converted.

If the `UseBoolStrs` parameter equals `TUseBoolStrs.True`, then the string representation will use the `WordBool` strings `BoolStrs` (1571). The default value for `UseBoolStrs` is `TUseBoolStrs.False`.

The conversion is done using the `BoolToStr` (1620) function.

See also: `BoolStrs` (1571), `BoolToStr` (1620)

### 76.104.6 TWordBoolHelper.TryToParse

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a `WordBool` value

Declaration: `class function TryToParse(const S: string; out AValue: Boolean)  
: Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `TryToParse` will attempt to convert the string `S` to a `WordBool` value. If the attempt is successful, `True` is returned, and the actual value is returned in `AValue`. If the attempt failed, `False` is returned.

See also: `TWordBoolHelper.Parse` (1866), `TWordBoolHelper.ToString` (1866)

### 76.104.7 TWordBoolHelper.ToInteger

Synopsis: Convert to an integer value

Declaration: `function ToInteger : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ToInteger` will return the `WordBool` value, typecasted to `Integer`.

See also: `TWordBoolHelper.ToString` (1866)

## 76.105 TWordHelper

### 76.105.1 Description

`TWordHelper` contains some auxiliary routines for a `Word`-typed ordinal value. It consists mainly of conversion routines to and from other types.

See also: `TStringHelper` (1836), `TShortIntHelper` (1821), `TSmallIntHelper` (1833), `TByteHelper` (1771), `TCardinalHelper` (1775), `TIntegerHelper` (1802), `TInt64Helper` (1799), `TQWordHelper` (1818), `TNativeIntHelper` (1811), `TNativeUIntHelper` (1815)

**76.105.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1870</a>	ClearBit	
<a href="#">1868</a>	Parse	Convert from a string
<a href="#">1870</a>	SetBit	
<a href="#">1868</a>	Size	Size, in bytes, of the Word value
<a href="#">1871</a>	TestBit	
<a href="#">1870</a>	ToBinString	
<a href="#">1869</a>	ToBoolean	Convert to a boolean value
<a href="#">1869</a>	ToDouble	Convert to a double-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1869</a>	ToExtended	Convert to an extended-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1871</a>	ToggleBit	
<a href="#">1870</a>	ToHexString	Convert to a hexadecimal string representation
<a href="#">1870</a>	ToSingle	Convert to a single-sized floating point value
<a href="#">1868</a>	ToString	Convert the value to string
<a href="#">1869</a>	TryParse	Try to convert a string to a Word, report success or failure

**76.105.3 TWordHelper.Parse**

Synopsis: Convert from a string

Declaration: `class function Parse(const AString: string) : Word; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Parse` will attempt to convert the string `AString` to a `Word` value. It uses the `StrToInt` ([1722](#)) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

Errors: If the string does not contain a valid `Word` value, an `EConvertError` ([1751](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToString` ([1868](#)), `TWordHelper.TryParse` ([1869](#)), `StrToInt` ([1722](#))

**76.105.4 TWordHelper.Size**

Synopsis: Size, in bytes, of the Word value

Declaration: `class function Size : Integer; Static`

Visibility: public

Description: `Size` returns the size (in Words) of the `Word` value. This is equivalent to `SizeOf(Word)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SizeOf` ([1514](#))

**76.105.5 TWordHelper.ToString**

Synopsis: Convert the value to string

Declaration: `class function ToString(const AValue: Word) : string; Overload; Static`  
`function ToString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToString` will, in the class function variant of this method, convert `AValue` to a string representation. In the regular method overloaded version of `ToString`, the `Word` value itself is used. The `IntToStr` (1689) function is used to do the conversion.

See also: `TWordHelper.Parse` (1868), `IntToStr` (1689)

### 76.105.6 TWordHelper.TryParse

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to a `Word`, report success or failure

**Declaration:** `class function TryParse(const AString: string; out AValue: Word)  
: Boolean; Static`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `TryParse` attempts to convert the string `AString` to a `Word`, and reports the success of the attempt. If the attempt is successful, then `True` is returned, and the actual value of the `Word` is returned in `AValue`.

It uses the `val` (1571) function to perform the conversion, so no localization is taken into account.

See also: `TWordHelper.Parse` (1868), `Val` (1537)

### 76.105.7 TWordHelper.ToBoolean

**Synopsis:** Convert to a boolean value

**Declaration:** `function ToBoolean : Boolean`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToBoolean` converts the `Word` value to a boolean: it returns `True` if the value is nonzero, `False` if it is zero.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToSingle` (1870), `TWordHelper.ToDouble` (1869), `TWordHelper.ToExtended` (1869), `TWordHelper.ToString` (1868), `TWordHelper.ToHexString` (1870)

### 76.105.8 TWordHelper.ToDouble

**Synopsis:** Convert to a double-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToDouble : Double`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `Word` value to a double-sized floating point value.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToBoolean` (1869), `TWordHelper.ToExtended` (1869), `TWordHelper.ToSingle` (1870), `TWordHelper.ToString` (1868), `TWordHelper.ToHexString` (1870)

### 76.105.9 TWordHelper.ToExtended

**Synopsis:** Convert to an extended-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToExtended : Extended`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `ToDouble` converts the `Word` value to an extended-sized floating point value.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1869](#)), `TWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1870](#)), `TWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1869](#)), `TWordHelper.ToString` ([1868](#)), `TWordHelper.HexString` ([1870](#))

### 76.105.10 `TWordHelper.ToBinString`

**Declaration:** `function ToBinString : string`

Visibility: public

### 76.105.11 `TWordHelper.HexString`

**Synopsis:** Convert to a hexadecimal string representation

**Declaration:** `function ToHexString(const AMinDigits: Integer) : string; Overload`  
`function ToHexString : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToHexString` converts the `Word` value to a hexadecimal string representation. The `AMinDigits` argument specifies the minimal number of characters in the resulting string. The string will be left-padded with zeroes if the representation contains less than `AMinDigits` characters.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1869](#)), `TWordHelper.ToSingle` ([1870](#)), `TWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1869](#)), `TWordHelper.ToString` ([1868](#)), `TWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1869](#))

### 76.105.12 `TWordHelper.ToSingle`

**Synopsis:** Convert to an single-sized floating point value

**Declaration:** `function ToSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `ToSingle` converts the `Word` value to a single-sized floating point value.

See also: `TWordHelper.ToBoolean` ([1869](#)), `TWordHelper.ToDouble` ([1869](#)), `TWordHelper.ToExtended` ([1869](#)), `TWordHelper.ToString` ([1868](#)), `TWordHelper.HexString` ([1870](#))

### 76.105.13 `TWordHelper.SetBit`

**Declaration:** `function SetBit(const Index: TWordBitIndex) : Word`

Visibility: public

### 76.105.14 `TWordHelper.ClearBit`

**Declaration:** `function ClearBit(const Index: TWordBitIndex) : Word`

Visibility: public

### **76.105.15 TWordHelper.ToggleBit**

**Declaration:** `function ToggleBit(const Index: TWordBitIndex) : Word`

Visibility: public

### **76.105.16 TWordHelper.TestBit**

**Declaration:** `function TestBit(const Index: TWordBitIndex) : Boolean`

Visibility: public



## Chapter 77

# Reference for unit 'Types'

### 77.1 Overview

Starting with D6, types from Windows specific units that were needed in Kylix were extracted to this unit. So it mostly contains type of Windows origin that are needed in the VCL framework.

### 77.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 77.2.1 Constants

`E_FAIL = HRESULT($80004005)`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`E_INVALIDARG = HRESULT($80070057)`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`GUID_NULL : TGUID = '{00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000}'`

`GUID_NULL` is the definition of the NULL (empty) GUID.

`LOCK_EXCLUSIVE = 2`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`LOCK_ONLYONCE = 4`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`LOCK_WRITE = 1`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

`STATFLAG_DEFAULT = 0`

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STATFLAG\_NONAME = 1

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STATFLAG\_NOOPEN = 2

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STGTY\_LOCKBYTES = 3

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STGTY\_PROPERTY = 4

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STGTY\_STORAGE = 1

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STGTY\_STREAM = 2

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_ABNORMALAPIEXIT = HRESULT(\$800300FA)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_ACCESSDENIED = HRESULT(\$80030005)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_BADBASEADDRESS = HRESULT(\$80030110)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_CANTSAVE = HRESULT(\$80030103)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_DISKISWRITEPROTECTED = HRESULT(\$80030013)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_DOCFILECORRUPT = HRESULT(\$80030109)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_EXTANTMARSHALLINGS = HRESULT(\$80030108)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_FILEALREADYEXISTS = HRESULT(\$80030050)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_FILENOTFOUND = HRESULT(\$80030002)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INCOMPLETE = HRESULT(\$80030201)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INSUFFICIENTMEMORY = HRESULT(\$80030008)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INUSE = HRESULT(\$80030100)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDFLAG = HRESULT(\$800300FF)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDFUNCTION = HRESULT(\$80030001)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDHANDLE = HRESULT(\$80030006)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDHEADER = HRESULT(\$800300FB)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDNAME = HRESULT(\$800300FC)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDPARAMETER = HRESULT(\$80030057)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_INVALIDPOINTER = HRESULT(\$80030009)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_LOCKVIOLATION = HRESULT(\$80030021)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_MEDIUMFULL = HRESULT(\$80030070)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_NOMOREFILES = HRESULT(\$80030012)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_NOTCURRENT = HRESULT(\$80030101)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_OLDDLL = HRESULT(\$80030105)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_OLDFORMAT = HRESULT(\$80030104)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_PATHNOTFOUND = HRESULT(\$80030003)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_PROPSETMISMATCHED = HRESULT(\$800300F0)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_READFAULT = HRESULT(\$8003001E)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_REVERTED = HRESULT(\$80030102)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_SEEKERROR = HRESULT(\$80030019)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_SHAREREQUIRED = HRESULT(\$80030106)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_SHAREVIOLATION = HRESULT(\$80030020)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_TERMINATED = HRESULT(\$80030202)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_TOOMANYOPENFILES = HRESULT(\$80030004)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_UNIMPLEMENTEDFUNCTION = HRESULT(\$800300FE)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_UNKNOWN = HRESULT(\$800300FD)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_E\_WRITEFAULT = HRESULT(\$8003001D)

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_S\_BLOCK = \$00030201

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_S\_CONVERTED = \$00030200

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_S\_MONITORING = \$00030203

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STG\_S\_RETRYNOW = \$00030202

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STREAM\_SEEK\_CUR = 1

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STREAM\_SEEK\_END = 2

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

STREAM\_SEEK\_SET = 0

Defined for Delphi compatibility, this should not be used.

### 77.2.2 Types

`ArgList = Pointer`

`ArgList` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

`DWORD = LongWord`

Alias for cardinal type

`FILETIME = _FILETIME`

Alias for the `_FILETIME` type

`Largeint = Int64`

`Largeint` is an alias for the `Int64` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`LargeUint = QWord`

`LargeUint` is an alias for the `QWord` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`LARGE_INT = Largeint`

`LARGE_INT` is an alias for the `Int64` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`LARGE_UINT = LargeUint`

`LARGE_UINT` is an alias for the `QWord` type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PByte = System.PByte`

`PByte` is defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PCLSID = PGUID`

`PCLSID` is a pointer to a `TCLSID` type.

`PDisplay = Pointer`

`PDisplay` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

`PDouble = System.PDouble`

`PDouble` is defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

`PDWord = ^DWORD`

PWord is equivalent to the PCardinal type.

PEvent = Pointer

PEvent is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

PFileTime = ^TFileTime

**Pointer to TFileTime type**

PLargeInt = ^Largeint

PLargeInt is an alias for the PInt64 type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

PLargeuint = ^LargeUint

PLargeUint is an alias for the PQWord type defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

PLongint = System.PLongint

PLongint is defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

PoleStr = PWideChar

PoleStr is a pointer to a (double) null-terminated array of ToleChar characters.

PPoint = ^TPoint

PPoint is a typed pointer to the TPoint (1887) type.

PPoleStr = ^PoleStr

PPoleStr is a typed pointer to a PoleStr variable.

PRect = ^TRect

PRect is a typed pointer to the TRect (1895) type.

PSize = ^TSize

PSize is a typed pointer to the TSize (1900) type.

PSmallInt = System.PSmallInt

PSmallInt is defined in the system unit. This is an alias for Delphi/Kylix compatibility.

PSmallPoint = ^TSmallPoint

PSmallPoint is a typed pointer to the TSmallPoint (1882) record.

PStatStg = ^TStatStg

Pointer to TStatStg record.

PXrmOptionDescRec = ^TXrmOptionDescRec

PXrmOptionDescRec is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

Region = Pointer

Region is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

STATSTG = TStatStg

Alias for the TStatStg type.

TagPoint = TPoint deprecated

tagPOINT is a simple alias for TPoint ([1887](#))

TagSize = TSize deprecated

tagSize is an alias for the TSize ([1900](#)) type.

```
tagSTATSTG = record
public
  pwcsName : POleStr;
  dwType : DWORD
  ;
  cbSize : LARGE_UINT;
  mtime : TFileTime;
  ctime : TFileTime
  ;
  atime : TFileTime;
  grfMode : DWORD;
  grfLocksSupported : DWORD
  ;
  clsid : TCLSID;
  grfStateBits : DWORD;
  reserved : DWORD;
end
```

tagSTATSTG is used in the IStream.Stat ([1906](#)) call. It describes a storage medium (typically a file).

Array = Array[0..3] of LongInt

Array = Array of Boolean

TBooleanDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of booleans.



Array = Array of Byte

TByteDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (8-bit, unsigned) bytes.

Array = Array of Cardinal

TCardinalDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (32-bit, unsigned) cardinals.

TCLSID = TGUID

TCLSID is an alias for the #rtl.system.TGUID (1368) type.

Array = Array of Comp

Array = Array of currency

TDirection = (FromBeginning, FromEnd)

Table 77.1: Enumeration values for type TDirection

Value	Explanation
FromBeginning	
FromEnd	

Array = Array of Double

TSoubleDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of doubles. (regular floating point type)

TDuplicates = (dupIgnore, dupAccept, dupError)

Table 77.2: Enumeration values for type TDuplicates

Value	Explanation
dupAccept	Accept duplicates, adding them to the list.
dupError	Raise an error when an attempt is made to add a duplicate.
dupIgnore	Ignore the new item, do not add it to the list.

TDuplicates can be used to indicate how a list structure acts on the addition of a duplicate item to the list.

**dupIgnore** Ignore the new item, do not add it to the list.

**dupAccept** Accept duplicates, adding them to the list.

**dupError** Raise an error when an attempt is made to add a duplicate.

`TEndian = Objpas.TEndian`

`Array = Array of Extended`

`TFileTime = _FILETIME`

Alias for the `_FILETIME` type

`Array = Array of Int64`

`TInt64DynArray` is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (64-bit, signed) `int64s`.

`Array = Array of Integer`

`TIntegerDynArray` is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (32-bit, signed) integers.

`TListCallback = procedure(data: pointer; arg: pointer) of object`

`TListCallback` is the prototype for a `Foreach` operation on a list. It will be called with as `Data` the pointer in the list, and `Arg` will contain the extra user data added to the `Foreach` call. It can be used in methods of objects; for a version that can be used as a global procedure, see `TListStaticCallback` ([1881](#))

`TListStaticCallback = procedure(data: pointer; arg: pointer)`

`TListStaticCallback` is the prototype for a `Foreach` operation on a list. It will be called with as `Data` the pointer in the list, and `Arg` will contain the extra user data added to the `Foreach` call. It can be used in plain procedures; for a version that can be used as a method, see `TListCallback` ([1881](#))

`Array = Array of LongWord`

`TLongWordDynArray` is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (32-bit, unsigned) `LongWords`.

`Array = Array of TObject`

`TOLEChar = WideChar`

`TOLEChar` is an alias for the `WideChar` type, defined in the system unit.

`Array = Array of Pointer`

Dynamic array of untyped pointers

`Array = Array of QWord`

`TQWordDynArray` is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (64-bit, unsigned) `QWords`.

Array = Array of ShortInt

TShortintDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (8-bit, signed) shortints.

Array = Array of Single

TSingleDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of singles. (smallest floating point type)

Array = Array of SmallInt

TSmallintDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (16-bit, unsigned) integers.

```
TSmallPoint = packed record
public
  X : SmallInt;
  Y : SmallInt
;
end
```

TSmallPoint defines a point in a 2-dimensional plane, just like TPoint (1887), but the coordinates have a smaller range: The coordinates are smallints (16-bit, signed) and they run from -MaxSmallInt to maxSmallint.

TSplitRectType = (srLeft, srRight, srTop, srBottom)

Table 77.3: Enumeration values for type TSplitRectType

Value	Explanation
srBottom	
srLeft	
srRight	
srTop	

TStatStg = tagSTATSTG

TStatStg is a record type describing a storage medium. It is uses in the IStream.Stat (1906) function.

Array = Array of AnsiString

TStringDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of Ansistrings.

TValueRelationship = - 1..1

Array = Array of WideString

TWideStringDynArray is a standard definition of a dynamical array of WideStrings.

`Array = Array of Word`

`TWordDynArray` is a standard definition of a dynamical array of (16-bit, unsigned) words.

`TXrmOptionDescRec = record`  
`end`

`TXrmOptionDescRec` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

`Widget = Pointer`

`Widget` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

`WidgetClass = Pointer`

`WidgetClass` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

`XrmOptionDescRec = TXrmOptionDescRec`

`XrmOptionDescRec` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

`_FILETIME = packed record`  
`public`  
    `dwLowDateTime : DWORD;`  
    `dwHighDateTime`  
        `: DWORD;`  
`end`

`_FILETIME` describes a file time stamp. It is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used except when implementing or accessing the `IStream` interface. The `TDateTime` type should be used instead.

## 77.3 Procedures and functions

### 77.3.1 Bounds

**Synopsis:** Create a rectangle, given a position and size

**Declaration:** `function Bounds(ALeft: Integer; ATop: Integer; AWidth: Integer;  
                                  AHeight: Integer) : TRect`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Bounds` returns a `TRect` structure with the indicated position (`Left=ALeft` and `Top=ATop`) and size (`Right=ALeft+AWidth` and `Bottom=ATop+AHeight`)

**See also:** `Rect` ([1886](#)), `PtInRect` ([1885](#)), `IntersectRect` ([1884](#)), `UnionRect` ([1886](#))

### 77.3.2 CenterPoint

Synopsis: Return the center point of a rectangle

Declaration: `function CenterPoint(const Rect: TRect) : TPoint`

Visibility: default

Description: `CenterPoint` returns the center point of the rectangle `Rect`.

See also: `PtinRect` (1885), `IntersectRect` (1884), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `InflateRect` (1884), `Size` (1886), `IsRectEmpty` (1885)

### 77.3.3 EqualRect

Synopsis: Check if two rectangles are equal.

Declaration: `function EqualRect(const r1: TRect; const r2: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `EqualRect` returns `True` if the rectangles `R1` and `R2` are equal (i.e. have the position and size). If the rectangles differ, the function returns `False`

See also: `Rect` (1886), `Bounds` (1883), `PtinRect` (1885), `IntersectRect` (1884), `UnionRect` (1886), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `InflateRect` (1884), `Size` (1886)

### 77.3.4 InflateRect

Synopsis: Increase the rectangle in size, keeping it centered

Declaration: `function InflateRect(var Rect: TRect; dx: Integer; dy: Integer)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InflateRect` inflates the rectangle horizontally with `dx` pixels on each side, and vertically with `dy` pixels, thus keeping its center point on the same location. It returns `true` if the operation was successfully, `False` if it was not (only possible if the address of `Rect` is `Nil`).

See also: `PtinRect` (1885), `IntersectRect` (1884), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `CenterPoint` (1884), `Size` (1886), `IsRectEmpty` (1885)

### 77.3.5 IntersectRect

Synopsis: Return the intersection of 2 rectangles

Declaration: `function IntersectRect(var Rect: TRect; const R1: TRect;  
const R2: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntersectRect` returns the intersection of the 2 rectangles `R1` and `R2` in `Rect`. It returns `True` if the 2 rectangles have an intersection, otherwise `False` is returned, and `Rect` is filled with zero.

See also: `PtinRect` (1885), `UnionRect` (1886), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `InflateRect` (1884), `Size` (1886)

### 77.3.6 IsRectEmpty

Synopsis: Check whether a rectangle is empty

Declaration: `function IsRectEmpty(const Rect: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsRectEmpty` returns true if the rectangle is empty, i.e. has a zero or negative width or height.

See also: `PtinRect` (1885), `IntersectRect` (1884), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `InflateRect` (1884), `Size` (1886)

### 77.3.7 OffsetRect

Synopsis: Offset the rectangle

Declaration: `function OffsetRect(var Rect: TRect; DX: Integer; DY: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `OffsetRect` offsets the rectangle `Rect` by a horizontal distance `DX` and a vertical distance `DY`. The operation returns `True` if the operation was successful, `false` if it was not (only possible if the address of `Rect` is `Nil`).

See also: `PtinRect` (1885), `IntersectRect` (1884), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `InflateRect` (1884), `Size` (1886), `IsRectEmpty` (1885)

### 77.3.8 Point

Synopsis: Create a point

Declaration: `function Point(x: Integer; y: Integer) : TPoint`

Visibility: default

Description: `Point` returns a `TPoint` structure with the given position (`X`, `Y`).

See also: `Rect` (1886), `PtinRect` (1885)

### 77.3.9 PtinRect

Synopsis: Check whether a point is inside a rectangle.

Declaration: `function PtinRect(const Rect: TRect; const p: TPoint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PtinRect` returns `True` if `p` is located inside `Rect`, and `False` if it is located outside the rectangle.

**Remark** Note that the bottom, right edges are not considered part of the rectangle, therefore a point located on one of these edges will not be considered part of the rectangle, meaning that for a record (10,10,100,100) the point (90,100) will not be considered part of the record, but 90, 10 will be.

See also: `IntersectRect` (1884), `UnionRect` (1886), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `InflateRect` (1884), `Size` (1886)

### 77.3.10 Rect

Synopsis: Create a rectangle record

Declaration: `function Rect (Left: Integer; Top: Integer; Right: Integer;  
Bottom: Integer) : TRect`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rect` returns a rectangle structure with the 4 members `Left`, `Top`, `Right` and `Bottom` as passed in the arguments.

See also: `Bounds` (1883), `PtInRect` (1885), `IntersectRect` (1884), `UnionRect` (1886), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `InflateRect` (1884), `Size` (1886)

### 77.3.11 Size

Synopsis: Return the size of the rectangle

Declaration: `function Size (AWidth: Integer; AHeight: Integer) : TSize`  
`function Size (const ARect: TRect) : TSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `Size` returns a `TSize` record with the indicated `AWidth`, `AHeight`. In the case `ARect` is passed, the width and height are calculated (taking into account that the right, bottom are not considered part of the rectangle).

See also: `PtInRect` (1885), `IntersectRect` (1884), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `InflateRect` (1884), `CenterPoint` (1884), `IsRectEmpty` (1885)

### 77.3.12 UnionRect

Synopsis: Return the union of 2 rectangles.

Declaration: `function UnionRect (var Rect: TRect; const R1: TRect; const R2: TRect)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnionRect` returns the rectangle that encompasses both `R1` and `R2` in `Rect`. It returns `True` if the resulting rectangle is not empty, `False` if the result is an empty rectangle (in which case the result is filled with zeroes)

See also: `PtInRect` (1885), `IntersectRect` (1884), `IsRectEmpty` (1885), `OffsetRect` (1885), `InflateRect` (1884), `Size` (1886)

## 77.4 TPoint

```
TPoint = packed record
public
  X : LongInt;
  Y : LongInt;
class
  function Zero : TPoint; Static;
  function Add(const apt: TPoint
```

```

) : TPoint;
function Distance(const apt: TPoint) : ValReal;
function
IsZero : Boolean;
function Subtract(const apt: TPoint) : TPoint
;
SetLocation;
Offset;
class function PointInCircle(const apt
: TPoint; const acenter: TPoint;
const
aradius: Integer) : Boolean; Static;
TPoint.class operator =(const
apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint)
: Boolean
;
TPoint.class operator <>(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint
)
: Boolean;
TPoint.class operator +
(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint) : TPoint;
TPoint.class
operator -(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint) : TPoint;
TPoint
.class operator :=(const aspt: TSmallPoint) : TPoint;
TPoint.class
operator explicit(const apt: TPoint) : TSmallPoint;
end

```

TPoint is a generic definition of a point in a 2-dimensional discrete plane, where X indicates the horizontal position, and Y the vertical position (positions usually measured in pixels), and 0, 0 is the origin of the plane.

Usually, the origin is the upper-left corner of the screen, with Y increasing as one moves further down the screen - this is opposite to the mathematical view where Y increases as one moves upwards.

The coordinates are integers, (32-bit, signed) so the coordinate system runs from -MaxInt to MaxInt.



**77.4.1 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1888</a>	Add	
<a href="#">1889</a>	add(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint	
<a href="#">1889</a>	assign(TSmallPoint):TPoint	
<a href="#">1888</a>	Distance	
<a href="#">1889</a>	equal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean	
<a href="#">1889</a>	explicit(TPoint):TSmallPoint	
<a href="#">1888</a>	IsZero	
<a href="#">1889</a>	notequal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean	
<a href="#">1889</a>	Offset	
<a href="#">1889</a>	PointInCircle	
<a href="#">1888</a>	SetLocation	
<a href="#">1888</a>	Subtract	
<a href="#">1889</a>	subtract(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint	
<a href="#">1888</a>	Zero	

**77.4.2 TPoint.Zero**

Declaration: `class function Zero : TPoint; Static`

Visibility: `public`

**77.4.3 TPoint.Add**

Declaration: `function Add(const apt: TPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

**77.4.4 TPoint.Distance**

Declaration: `function Distance(const apt: TPoint) : ValReal`

Visibility: `public`

**77.4.5 TPoint.IsZero**

Declaration: `function IsZero : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

**77.4.6 TPoint.Subtract**

Declaration: `function Subtract(const apt: TPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

**77.4.7 TPoint.SetLocation**

Declaration: `procedure SetLocation(const apt: TPoint)`  
`procedure SetLocation(ax: LongInt; ay: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

#### 77.4.8 TPoint.Offset

Declaration: `procedure Offset(const apt: TPoint)`  
`procedure Offset(dx: LongInt; dy: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

#### 77.4.9 TPoint.PointInCircle

Declaration: `class function PointInCircle(const apt: TPoint; const acenter: TPoint;`  
`const aradius: Integer) : Boolean; Static`

Visibility: public

#### 77.4.10 TPoint.equal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator =(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: public

#### 77.4.11 TPoint.notequal(TPoint,TPoint):Boolean

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator <>(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: public

#### 77.4.12 TPoint.add(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator +(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: public

#### 77.4.13 TPoint.subtract(TPoint,TPoint):TPoint

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator -(const apt1: TPoint; const apt2: TPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: public

#### 77.4.14 TPoint.assign(TSmallPoint):TPoint

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator :=(const aspt: TSmallPoint) : TPoint`

Visibility: public

#### 77.4.15 TPoint.explicit(TPoint):TSmallPoint

Declaration: `TPoint.class operator explicit(const apt: TPoint) : TSmallPoint`

Visibility: public

**77.5 TPointF**

```

TPointF = packed record
public
  x : Single;
  y : Single;
  Add;
  function Distance(const apt: TPointF) : Single;
  function DotProduct
    (const apt: TPointF) : Single;
  function IsZero : Boolean;
  Subtract
;
  SetLocation;
  Offset;
  function Scale(afactor: Single) : TPointF
;
  function Ceiling : TPoint;
  function Truncate : TPoint;
  function
    Floor : TPoint;
  function Round : TPoint;
  function Length : Single
;
  Create;
  TPointF.class operator =(const apt1: TPointF; const
    apt2: TPointF)
                        : Boolean;
  TPointF.class
  operator <>(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
    : Boolean;
  TPointF.class operator +(const apt1
    : TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
                        : TPointF
;
  TPointF.class operator -(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF
    )
                        : TPointF;
  TPointF.class operator
    -(const apt1: TPointF) : TPointF;
  TPointF.class operator *(const
    apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
                        :
    Single;
  TPointF.class operator *(const apt1: TPointF; afactor:
    single) : TPointF;
  TPointF.class operator *(afactor: single; const
    apt1: TPointF) : TPointF;
end

```

**77.5.1 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1891</a>	Add	
<a href="#">1893</a>	add(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF	
<a href="#">1892</a>	Ceiling	
<a href="#">1893</a>	Create	
<a href="#">1891</a>	Distance	
<a href="#">1891</a>	DotProduct	
<a href="#">1893</a>	equal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean	
<a href="#">1892</a>	Floor	
<a href="#">1891</a>	IsZero	
<a href="#">1893</a>	Length	
<a href="#">1894</a>	multiply(single,TPointF):TPointF	
<a href="#">1894</a>	multiply(TPointF,single):TPointF	
<a href="#">1893</a>	multiply(TPointF,TPointF):Single	
<a href="#">1893</a>	negative(TPointF):TPointF	
<a href="#">1893</a>	notequal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean	
<a href="#">1892</a>	Offset	
<a href="#">1892</a>	Round	
<a href="#">1892</a>	Scale	
<a href="#">1892</a>	SetLocation	
<a href="#">1892</a>	Subtract	
<a href="#">1893</a>	subtract(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF	
<a href="#">1892</a>	Truncate	

**77.5.2 TPointF.Add**

Declaration: `function Add(const apt: TPoint) : TPointF`  
`function Add(const apt: TPointF) : TPointF`

Visibility: public

**77.5.3 TPointF.Distance**

Declaration: `function Distance(const apt: TPointF) : Single`

Visibility: public

**77.5.4 TPointF.DotProduct**

Declaration: `function DotProduct(const apt: TPointF) : Single`

Visibility: public

**77.5.5 TPointF.IsZero**

Declaration: `function IsZero : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.6 TPointF.Subtract

Declaration: `function Subtract(const apt: TPointF) : TPointF`  
`function Subtract(const apt: TPoint) : TPointF`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.7 TPointF.SetLocation

Declaration: `procedure SetLocation(const apt: TPointF)`  
`procedure SetLocation(const apt: TPoint)`  
`procedure SetLocation(ax: LongInt; ay: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.8 TPointF.Offset

Declaration: `procedure Offset(const apt: TPointF)`  
`procedure Offset(const apt: TPoint)`  
`procedure Offset(dx: LongInt; dy: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.9 TPointF.Scale

Declaration: `function Scale(afactor: Single) : TPointF`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.10 TPointF.Ceiling

Declaration: `function Ceiling : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.11 TPointF.Truncate

Declaration: `function Truncate : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.12 TPointF.Floor

Declaration: `function Floor : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.13 TPointF.Round

Declaration: `function Round : TPoint`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.14 TPointF.Length

Declaration: `function Length : Single`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.15 TPointF.Create

```
Declaration: class function Create(const ax: Single; const ay: Single) : TPointF
              ; Overload; Static
              class function Create(const apt: TPoint) : TPointF; Overload; Static
```

Visibility: public

### 77.5.16 TPointF.equal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean

```
Declaration: TPointF.class operator =(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
              : Boolean
```

Visibility: public

### 77.5.17 TPointF.notequal(TPointF,TPointF):Boolean

```
Declaration: TPointF.class operator <>(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
            : Boolean
```

Visibility: public

### 77.5.18 TPointF.add(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF

```
Declaration: TPointF.class operator +(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
            : TPointF
```

Visibility: public

### 77.5.19 TPointF.subtract(TPointF,TPointF):TPointF

```
Declaration: TPointF.class operator -(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
                                     : TPointF
```

Visibility: public

### 77.5.20 TPointF.negative(TPointF):TPointF

**Declaration:** `TPointF.class operator -(const apt1: TPointF) : TPointF`

Visibility: public

### 77.5.21 TPointF.multiply(TPointF,TPointF):Single

```
Declaration: TPointF.class operator *(const apt1: TPointF; const apt2: TPointF)
                                     : Single
```

Visibility: public

### 77.5.22 TPointF.multiply(TPointF,single):TPointF

Declaration: TPointF.class operator \*(const apt1: TPointF; afactor: single) : TPointF

Visibility: public

### 77.5.23 TPointF.multiply(single,TPointF):TPointF

Declaration: TPointF.class operator \*(afactor: single; const apt1: TPointF) : TPointF

Visibility: public

## 77.6 TRect

```

TRect = packed record
private
    function getHeight : LongInt;
    function
        getLocation : TPoint;
    function getSize : TSize;
    function getWidth
        : LongInt;
    procedure setHeight (AValue: LongInt);
    procedure setSize
        (AValue: TSize);
    procedure setWidth (AValue: LongInt);
public
    Create
    ;
    TRect.class operator =(L: TRect; R: TRect) : Boolean;
    TRect
        .class operator <>(L: TRect; R: TRect) : Boolean;
    TRect.class operator
        +(L: TRect; R: TRect) : TRect;
    TRect.class operator *(L: TRect
        ; R: TRect) : TRect;
    class function Empty : TRect; Static;
    procedure
        NormalizeRect;
    function IsEmpty : Boolean;
    Contains;
    function
        IntersectsWith(R: TRect) : Boolean;
    Intersect;
    Union;
    Offset
    ;
    SetLocation;
    Inflate;
    function CenterPoint : TPoint;
    SplitRect
    ;
    property Height : LongInt;

```

```

    property Width : LongInt;
    property
    Size : TSize;
    property Location : TPoint;
case LongInt of
0: (
    public
    Left : LongInt;
    Top : LongInt;
    Right : LongInt;
    Bottom
    : LongInt;
);
1: (
public
    TopLeft : TPoint;
    BottomRight : TPoint
    ;
);
2: (
public
    Vector : TArray4IntegerType;
);
end

```

TRect defines a rectangle in a discrete plane. It is described by the horizontal (`left`, `right`) or vertical (`top`, `Bottom`) positions (in pixels) of the edges, or, alternatively, by the coordinates of the top left (`TopLeft`) and bottom right (`BottomRight`) corners.

### 77.6.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1896</a>	<code>add(TRect,TRect):TRect</code>	
<a href="#">1898</a>	<code>CenterPoint</code>	
<a href="#">1897</a>	<code>Contains</code>	
<a href="#">1896</a>	<code>Create</code>	
<a href="#">1896</a>	<code>Empty</code>	
<a href="#">1896</a>	<code>equal(TRect,TRect):Boolean</code>	
<a href="#">1897</a>	<code>Inflate</code>	
<a href="#">1897</a>	<code>Intersect</code>	
<a href="#">1897</a>	<code>IntersectsWith</code>	
<a href="#">1897</a>	<code>IsEmpty</code>	
<a href="#">1896</a>	<code>multiply(TRect,TRect):TRect</code>	
<a href="#">1896</a>	<code>NormalizeRect</code>	
<a href="#">1896</a>	<code>notequal(TRect,TRect):Boolean</code>	
<a href="#">1897</a>	<code>Offset</code>	
<a href="#">1897</a>	<code>SetLocation</code>	
<a href="#">1898</a>	<code>SplitRect</code>	
<a href="#">1897</a>	<code>Union</code>	



**77.6.2 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1898</a>	Height	rw	
<a href="#">1898</a>	Location	rw	
<a href="#">1898</a>	Size	rw	
<a href="#">1898</a>	Width	rw	

**77.6.3 TRect.Create**

Declaration: constructor Create(Origin: TPoint)  
 constructor Create(Origin: TPoint; AWidth: LongInt; AHeight: LongInt)  
 constructor Create(ALeft: LongInt; ATop: LongInt; ARight: LongInt;  
                     ABottom: LongInt)  
 constructor Create(P1: TPoint; P2: TPoint; Normalize: Boolean)  
 constructor Create(R: TRect; Normalize: Boolean)

Visibility: public

**77.6.4 TRect.equal(TRect,TRect):Boolean**

Declaration: TRect.class operator =(L: TRect; R: TRect) : Boolean

Visibility: public

**77.6.5 TRect.notequal(TRect,TRect):Boolean**

Declaration: TRect.class operator <>(L: TRect; R: TRect) : Boolean

Visibility: public

**77.6.6 TRect.add(TRect,TRect):TRect**

Declaration: TRect.class operator +(L: TRect; R: TRect) : TRect

Visibility: public

**77.6.7 TRect.multiply(TRect,TRect):TRect**

Declaration: TRect.class operator \*(L: TRect; R: TRect) : TRect

Visibility: public

**77.6.8 TRect.Empty**

Declaration: class function Empty : TRect; Static

Visibility: public

**77.6.9 TRect.NormalizeRect**

Declaration: procedure NormalizeRect

Visibility: public

### 77.6.10 TRect.IsEmpty

Declaration: `function IsEmpty : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.6.11 TRect.Contains

Declaration: `function Contains(Pt: TPoint) : Boolean`  
`function Contains(R: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.6.12 TRect.IntersectsWith

Declaration: `function IntersectsWith(R: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.6.13 TRect.Intersect

Declaration: `class function Intersect(R1: TRect; R2: TRect) : TRect; Static`  
`procedure Intersect(R: TRect)`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.6.14 TRect.Union

Declaration: `class function Union(R1: TRect; R2: TRect) : TRect; Static`  
`procedure Union(R: TRect)`  
`class function Union(const Points: Array of TPoint) : TRect; Static`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.6.15 TRect.Offset

Declaration: `procedure Offset(DX: LongInt; DY: LongInt)`  
`procedure Offset(DP: TPoint)`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.6.16 TRect.SetLocation

Declaration: `procedure SetLocation(X: LongInt; Y: LongInt)`  
`procedure SetLocation(P: TPoint)`

Visibility: `public`

### 77.6.17 TRect.Inflate

Declaration: `procedure Inflate(DX: LongInt; DY: LongInt)`  
`procedure Inflate(DL: LongInt; DT: LongInt; DR: LongInt; DB: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

### **77.6.18 TRect.CenterPoint**

Declaration: `function CenterPoint : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

### **77.6.19 TRect.SplitRect**

Declaration: `function SplitRect (SplitType: TSplitRectType; ASize: LongInt) : TRect`  
`function SplitRect (SplitType: TSplitRectType; Percent: Double) : TRect`

Visibility: `public`

### **77.6.20 TRect.Height**

Declaration: `Property Height : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

### **77.6.21 TRect.Width**

Declaration: `Property Width : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

### **77.6.22 TRect.Size**

Declaration: `Property Size : TSize`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

### **77.6.23 TRect.Location**

Declaration: `Property Location : TPoint`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

## **77.7 TRectF**

```
TRectF = packed record
private
  function GetHeight : Single;
  function
    GetWidth : Single;
  procedure SetHeight (AValue: Single);
  procedure
```

```

    SetWidth(AValue: Single);
public
    function Union(const r: TRectF
    ) : TRectF;
    procedure Offset(const dx: Single; const dy: Single
    );
    property Width : Single;
    property Height : Single;
case Integer
    of
0: (
public
    Left : Single;
    Top : Single;
    Right : Single
    ;
    Bottom : Single;
);
1: (
public
    TopLeft : TPointF;
    BottomRight
    : TPointF;
);
end

```

### 77.7.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1899</a>	Offset	
<a href="#">1899</a>	Union	

### 77.7.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1900</a>	Height	rw	
<a href="#">1900</a>	Width	rw	

### 77.7.3 TRectF.Union

Declaration: `function Union(const r: TRectF) : TRectF`

Visibility: public

### 77.7.4 TRectF.Offset

Declaration: `procedure Offset(const dx: Single; const dy: Single)`

Visibility: public

**77.7.5 TRectF.Width**

Declaration: Property Width : Single

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**77.7.6 TRectF.Height**

Declaration: Property Height : Single

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**77.8 TSize**

```
TSize = packed record
public
  cx : LongInt;
  cy : LongInt;
  function
    Add(const asz: TSize) : TSize;
    function Distance(const asz: TSize
    ) : Double;
    function IsZero : Boolean;
    function Subtract(const
    asz: TSize) : TSize;
    TSize.class operator =(const asz1: TSize;
    const asz2: TSize) : Boolean;
    TSize.class operator <>(const asz1
    : TSize; const asz2: TSize) : Boolean;
    TSize.class operator +(const
    asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : TSize;
    TSize.class operator
    -(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : TSize;
  property Width
    : LongInt;
  property Height : LongInt;
end
```

TSize is a type to describe the size of a rectangular area, where cx is the width, cy is the height (in pixels) of the rectangle.

**77.8.1 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1901</a>	Add	
<a href="#">1902</a>	add(TSize,TSize):TSize	
<a href="#">1901</a>	Distance	
<a href="#">1901</a>	equal(TSize,TSize):Boolean	
<a href="#">1901</a>	IsZero	
<a href="#">1901</a>	notequal(TSize,TSize):Boolean	
<a href="#">1901</a>	Subtract	
<a href="#">1902</a>	subtract(TSize,TSize):TSize	

**77.8.2 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1902</a>	Height	rw	
<a href="#">1902</a>	Width	rw	

**77.8.3 TSize.Add**

Declaration: `function Add(const asz: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: public

**77.8.4 TSize.Distance**

Declaration: `function Distance(const asz: TSize) : Double`

Visibility: public

**77.8.5 TSize.IsZero**

Declaration: `function IsZero : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**77.8.6 TSize.Subtract**

Declaration: `function Subtract(const asz: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: public

**77.8.7 TSize.equal(TSize,TSize):Boolean**

Declaration: `TSize.class operator =(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**77.8.8 TSize.notequal(TSize,TSize):Boolean**

Declaration: `TSize.class operator <>(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

**77.8.9 TSize.add(TSize,TSize):TSize**

Declaration: `TSize.class operator +(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: public

**77.8.10 TSize.subtract(TSize,TSize):TSize**

Declaration: `TSize.class operator -(const asz1: TSize; const asz2: TSize) : TSize`

Visibility: public

**77.8.11 TSize.Width**

Declaration: `Property Width : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**77.8.12 TSize.Height**

Declaration: `Property Height : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

**77.9 IClassFactory****77.9.1 Description**

`IClassFactory` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

**77.9.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1902</a>	<code>CreateInstance</code>	Create a new instance of an interface.
<a href="#">1903</a>	<code>LockServer</code>	Lock ActiveX server object.

**77.9.3 IClassFactory.CreateInstance**

Synopsis: Create a new instance of an interface.

Declaration: `function CreateInstance(const unkOuter: IUnknown; const riid: TGUID;  
out vObject) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `IClassFactory.CreateInstance` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

### 77.9.4 IClassFactory.LockServer

Synopsis: Lock ActiveX server object.

Declaration: `function LockServer(fLock: LongBool) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `IClassFactory.LockServer` is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

## 77.10 ISequentialStream

### 77.10.1 Description

`ISequentialStream` is the interface for streams which only support sequential reading of chunks of data. It is defined for Delphi/Kylix compatibility and should not be used.

See also: `IStream` ([1903](#))

### 77.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1903</a>	Read	Read data from the stream
<a href="#">1903</a>	Write	Write data to the stream

### 77.10.3 ISequentialStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream

Declaration: `function Read(pv: Pointer; cb: DWORD; pcbRead: PDWord) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Read` reads `cbCount` bytes from the stream into the memory pointed to by `pv` and returns the number of bytes read in `pcbRead`. The result is zero for success or an error code.

See also: `ISequentialStream.Write` ([1903](#))

### 77.10.4 ISequentialStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream

Declaration: `function Write(pv: Pointer; cb: DWORD; pcbWritten: PDWord) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Write` writes `cbCount` bytes from the memory pointed to by `pv` to the stream and returns the number of bytes written in `pcbWritten`. The result is zero for success or an error code.

See also: `ISequentialStream.Read` ([1903](#))

## 77.11 IStream

### 77.11.1 Description

An abstract interface for an external (non pascal) stream, as defined in Microsoft COM interfaces



**77.11.2 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1906</a>	Clone	Clone the stream instance
<a href="#">1905</a>	Commit	Commit data to the stream
<a href="#">1904</a>	CopyTo	Copy data from one stream to another
<a href="#">1905</a>	LockRegion	Lock a region of bytes in the stream
<a href="#">1905</a>	Revert	Revert changes
<a href="#">1904</a>	Seek	Set the stream position
<a href="#">1904</a>	SetSize	Set the stream size
<a href="#">1906</a>	Stat	return information about the stream.
<a href="#">1905</a>	UnlockRegion	Unlocks a previously locked region of bytes in the stream

**77.11.3 IStream.Seek**

Synopsis: Set the stream position

Declaration: `function Seek(dlibMove: Largeint; dwOrigin: DWORD;  
out libNewPosition: LargeUint) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the stream position at `dlibMove` bytes from `dwOrigin` (one of the `SEEK_*` constants) and returns the new absolute position in `libNewPosition`. The function returns zero on success, or an error code.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

**77.11.4 IStream.SetSize**

Synopsis: Set the stream size

Declaration: `function SetSize(libNewSize: LargeUint) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetSize` sets the size of the stream to `libNewSize` bytes, if the stream allows it. On success, zero is returned.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

**77.11.5 IStream.CopyTo**

Synopsis: Copy data from one stream to another

Declaration: `function CopyTo(stm: IStream; cb: LargeUint; out cbRead: LargeUint;  
out cbWritten: LargeUint) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `CopyTo` copies `cb` bytes from the stream to target stream `stm`. `cbRead` returns how many bytes were read from the stream, `cbwrite` returns how many bytes were actually written to the destination stream. The function returns zero on success.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.11.6 IStream.Commit

Synopsis: Commit data to the stream

Declaration: `function Commit(grfCommitFlags: DWORD) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Commit` commits the data in the stream to the underlying medium. `Flags` is a set of options to control the commit operation (see MSDN for the possible flags).

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.11.7 IStream.Revert

Synopsis: Revert changes

Declaration: `function Revert : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Revert` reverts all changes that were done to a transacted stream, i.e. all changes since the last commit. The function returns zero on success.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.11.8 IStream.LockRegion

Synopsis: Lock a region of bytes in the stream

Declaration: `function LockRegion(libOffset: LargeUInt; cb: LargeUInt;  
dwLockType: DWORD) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `LockRegion` locks a region of the storage, starting at `libOffset`, for `cbCount` bytes. The applied lock is of type `dwLockType`. The function returns zero if the lock was successfully applied.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.11.9 IStream.UnlockRegion

Synopsis: Unlocks a previously locked region of bytes in the stream

Declaration: `function UnlockRegion(libOffset: LargeUInt; cb: LargeUInt;  
dwLockType: DWORD) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnlockRegion` removes the lock on a region of the storage, starting at `libOffset`, for `cbCount` bytes. The lock must be of type `dwLockType`. The function returns zero if the lock was successfully removed.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.11.10 IStream.Stat

Synopsis: return information about the stream.

Declaration: `function Stat(out statstg: TStatStg; grfStatFlag: DWORD) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Stat` returns information about the stream in `statstg`, taking into account the flags in `grfStatFlag` (one of the `STATFLAG_` constants). The function returns zero if the call was successful.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

### 77.11.11 IStream.Clone

Synopsis: Clone the stream instance

Declaration: `function Clone(out stm: IStream) : HRESULT`

Visibility: default

Description: `Clone` returns an independent but initially equal copy of the stream in `stm`. The function returns zero if the call was successful.

Errors: On error, a nonzero exit code is returned.

## Chapter 78

# Reference for unit 'TypeInfo'

### 78.1 Used units

Table 78.1: Used units by unit 'TypeInfo'

Name	Page
sysutils	<a href="#">1571</a>

### 78.2 Overview

The `TypeInfo` unit contains many routines which can be used for the querying of the Run-Time Type Information (RTTI) which is generated by the compiler for classes that are compiled under the `{ $M+ }` switch. This information can be used to retrieve or set property values for published properties for totally unknown classes. In particular, it can be used to stream classes. The `TPersistent` class in the `Classes` unit is compiled in the `{ $M+ }` state and serves as the base class for all classes that need to be streamed.

The unit should be compatible to the Delphi unit with the same name.

The examples in this chapter use a `rttiobj` auxiliary unit, which contains an object that has a published property for all supported types. It also contains some auxiliary routines and definitions. This unit is included in the documentation sources, in the directory `typinfex`.

### 78.3 Auxiliary functions

Other `typinfo` related functions.

Table 78.2:

Name	Description
<a href="#">GetEnumName (1921)</a>	Get an enumerated type element name
<a href="#">GetEnumValue (1923)</a>	Get ordinal number of an enumerated type, based on the name.
<a href="#">GetEnumNameCount (1921)</a>	Get number of elements in an enumerated type.
<a href="#">GetTypeData (1935)</a>	Skip type name and return a pointer to the type data
<a href="#">SetToString (1945)</a>	Convert a set to its string representation
<a href="#">StringToSet (1947)</a>	Convert a string representation of a set to a set

## 78.4 Getting or setting property values

Functions to set or set a property's value.

Table 78.3:

Name	Description
<a href="#">GetEnumProp (1922)</a>	Return the value of an enumerated type property
<a href="#">GetFloatProp (1923)</a>	Return the value of a float property
<a href="#">GetInt64Prop (1924)</a>	Return the value of an Int64 property
<a href="#">GetMethodProp (1925)</a>	Return the value of a procedural type property
<a href="#">GetObjectProp (1927)</a>	Return the value of an object property
<a href="#">GetOrdProp (1929)</a>	Return the value of an ordinal type property
<a href="#">GetPropValue (1932)</a>	Return the value of a property as a variant
<a href="#">GetSetProp (1933)</a>	Return the value of a set property
<a href="#">GetStrProp (1934)</a>	Return the value of a string property
<a href="#">GetWideStrProp (1936)</a>	Return the value of a widestring property
<a href="#">GetVariantProp (1936)</a>	Return the value of a variant property
<a href="#">SetEnumProp (1940)</a>	Set the value of an enumerated type property
<a href="#">SetFloatProp (1941)</a>	Set the value of a float property
<a href="#">SetInt64Prop (1941)</a>	Set the value of an Int64 property
<a href="#">SetMethodProp (1942)</a>	Set the value of a procedural type property
<a href="#">SetObjectProp (1943)</a>	Set the value of an object property
<a href="#">SetOrdProp (1943)</a>	Set the value of an ordinal type property
<a href="#">SetPropValue (1944)</a>	Set the value of a property through a variant
<a href="#">SetSetProp (1944)</a>	Set the value of a set property
<a href="#">SetStrProp (1945)</a>	Set the value of a string property
<a href="#">SetWideStrProp (1947)</a>	Set the value of a widestring property
<a href="#">SetVariantProp (1947)</a>	Set the value of a variant property

## 78.5 Examining published property information

Functions for retrieving or examining property information

Table 78.4:

Name	Description
FindPropInfo (1919)	Getting property type information, With error checking.
GetPropInfo (1930)	Getting property type information, No error checking.
GetPropInfos (1930)	Find property information of a certain kind
GetObjectPropClass (1928)	Return the declared class of an object property
GetPropList (1931)	Get a list of all published properties
IsPublishedProp (1936)	Is a property published
IsStoredProp (1937)	Is a property stored
PropIsType (1938)	Is a property of a certain kind
PropType (1939)	Return the type of a property

## 78.6 Constants, types and variables

### 78.6.1 Constants

```
BooleanIdents : Array[Boolean] of string = ('False', 'True')
```

Names for boolean values

```
DotSep : string = '.'
```

Name separator character

```
OnGetPropValue : TGetPropValue = Nil
```

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable reading of properties as a variant. If set, it is called by the `GetPropValue` (1932) function.

```
OnGetVariantprop : TGetVariantProp = Nil
```

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable reading of variant properties. If set, it is called by the `GetVariantProp` (1936) function.

```
OnSetPropValue : TSetPropValue = Nil
```

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable writing of properties as a variant. If set, it is called by the `SetPropValue` (1944) function.

```
OnSetVariantprop : TSetVariantProp = Nil
```

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable writing of variant properties. If set, it is called by the `GetVariantProp` (1936) function.

```
ptConst = 3
```

Constant used in access method

```
ptField = 0
```

Property access directly from field

```
ptStatic = 1
```

Property access via static method

```
ptVirtual = 2
```

Property access via virtual method

```
tkAny = [Low(TTypeKind)..High(TTypeKind)]
```

Any property type

```
tkArray = System.tkArray
```

```
tkAString = System.tkAString
```

```
tkBool = System.tkBool
```

```
tkChar = System.tkChar
```

```
tkClass = System.tkClass
```

```
tkClassRef = System.tkClassRef
```

```
tkDynArray = System.tkDynArray
```

```
tkEnumeration = System.tkEnumeration
```

```
tkFile = System.tkFile
```

```
tkFloat = System.tkFloat
```

```
tkHelper = System.tkHelper
```

```
tkInt64 = System.tkInt64
```

```
tkInteger = System.tkInteger
```

```
tkInterface = System.tkInterface
```

`tkInterfaceRaw = System.tkInterfaceRaw`

`tkLString = System.tkLString`

`tkMethod = System.tkMethod`

`tkMethods = [tkMethod]`

**Only method properties. (event handlers)**

`tkObject = System.tkObject`

`tkPointer = System.tkPointer`

`tkProcedure = tkProcVar`

**Procedure kind**

`tkProcVar = System.tkProcVar`

`tkProperties = tkAny - tkMethods - [tkUnknown]`

**Real properties. (not methods)**

`tkQWord = System.tkQWord`

`tkRecord = System.tkRecord`

`tkSet = System.tkSet`

`tkSSString = System.tkSSString`

`tkString = tkSSString`

**Alias for the `tsSSString` enumeration value**

`tkUChar = System.tkUChar`

`tkUnknown = System.tkUnknown`

`tkUString = System.tkUString`

`tkVariant = System.tkVariant`

`tkWChar = System.tkWChar`

`tkWString = System.tkWString`



### 78.6.2 Types

`PClassData = ^TClassData`

`PInitManagedField = ^TInitManagedField`

`PInterfaceData = ^TInterfaceData`

`PInterfaceRawData = ^TInterfaceRawData`

`PIntfMethodEntry = ^TIntfMethodEntry`

`PIntfMethodTable = ^TIntfMethodTable`

`PManagedField = ^TManagedField`

`PManagedField` is a pointer to `TManagedField` (1954). It is used to describe automatically managed fields in records when the type kind is `tkRecord`.

`PParameterLocation = ^TParameterLocation`

`PParameterLocations = ^TParameterLocations`

`PProcedureParam = ^TProcedureParam`

`PProcedureParam` is a pointer to `TProcedureParam`. It is used in `TProcedureSignature` (1957).

`PPropData = ^TPropData`

`PPropInfo = ^TPropInfo`

Pointer to `TPropInfo` (1959) record

`PPropList = ^TPropList`

Pointer to `TPropList` (1916)

`PTypeInfo = ^PTypeInfo`

Pointer to `PTypeInfo` (1913) pointer

`PRecInitData = ^TRecInitData`

PRecOpOffsetTable = ^TRecOpOffsetTable

PTypeData = ^TTypeData

Pointer to TTypeData (1975) record.

PTypeInfo = ^TTypeInfo

Pointer to TTypeInfo (1918) record

PVmtFieldClassTab = ^TVmtFieldClassTab

PVmtFieldEntry = ^TVmtFieldEntry

Pointer to #rtl.typinfo.TVmtFieldEntry (1978) type.

PVmtFieldTable = ^TVmtFieldTable

Pointer to #rtl.typinfo.TVmtFieldTable (1979) type.

PVmtMethodEntry = ^TVmtMethodEntry

PVmtMethodParam = ^TVmtMethodParam

PVmtMethodTable = ^TVmtMethodTable

ShortStringBase = string

ShortStringBase is the base definition of a short string.

```
TCallConv = (ccReg, ccCdecl, ccPascal, ccStdCall, ccSafeCall, ccCppdecl,
             ,
             ccFar16, ccOldFPCCall, ccInternProc, ccSysCall, ccSoftFloat
             ,
             ccMWPascal)
```

Table 78.5: Enumeration values for type TCallConv

Value	Explanation
ccCdecl	Cdecl calling convention.
ccCppdecl	Cppdecl calling convention
ccFar16	Far16 calling convention (Delphi compatibility)
ccInternProc	InternProc calling convention (compiler internal)
ccMWPascal	MWPascal (MetroWerks Pascal) calling convention.
ccOldFPCCall	OldFPCCall calling convention (deprecated)
ccPascal	Pascal calling convention.
ccReg	Register calling convention
ccSafeCall	SafeCall calling convention.
ccSoftFloat	Softfloat calling convention.
ccStdCall	stdcall calling convention.
ccSysCall	SysCall calling convention.

TCallConv is a type describing the calling convention used by a method. It contains an element for all supported calling conventions.

TFloatType = (ftSingle, ftDouble, ftExtended, ftComp, ftCurr)

Table 78.6: Enumeration values for type TFloatType

Value	Explanation
ftComp	Comp-type float
ftCurr	Currency-type float
ftDouble	Double-sized float
ftExtended	Extended-size float
ftSingle	Single-sized float

The size of a float type.

TGetPropValue = function(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant

The callback function must return the property with name PropName of instance Instance. If PreferStrings is true, it should favour converting the property to a string value. The function needs to return the variant with the property value.

TGetVariantProp = function(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo  
)  
: Variant

The callback function must return the variant property with name PropName of instance Instance.

TInitManagedField = TManagedField

TIntfFlag = (ifHasGuid, ifDispInterface, ifDispatch, ifHasStrGUID)

Table 78.7: Enumeration values for type TIntfFlag

Value	Explanation
ifDispatch	Interface is a dispatch interface
ifDispInterface	Interface is a dual dispatch interface
ifHasGuid	Interface has GUID identifier
ifHasStrGUID	Interface has a string GUID identifier

Type of interface.

TIntfFlags = Set of TIntfFlag

Set of TIntfFlag (1914).

TIntfFlagsBase = Set of TIntfFlag

Set of TIntfFlag (1914).

```
TMethodKind = (mkProcedure, mkFunction, mkConstructor, mkDestructor,
  mkClassProcedure, mkClassFunction, mkClassConstructor
  ,
  mkClassDestructor, mkOperatorOverload)
```

Table 78.8: Enumeration values for type TMethodKind

Value	Explanation
mkClassConstructor	Class constructor method.
mkClassDestructor	Class destructor method.
mkClassFunction	Class function
mkClassProcedure	Class procedure
mkConstructor	Class constructor
mkDestructor	Class Destructor
mkFunction	Function method
mkOperatorOverload	Operator overloader
mkProcedure	Procedure method.

Method type description

```
TOrdType = (otSByte, otUByte, otSWord, otUWord, otSLong, otULong, otSQWord
  ,
  otUQWord)
```

Table 78.9: Enumeration values for type TOrdType

Value	Explanation
otSByte	Signed byte
otSLong	Signed longint
otSQWord	
otSWord	Signed word
otUByte	Unsigned byte
otULong	Unsigned longint (Cardinal)
otUQWord	
otUWord	Unsigned word

If the property is and ordinal type, then TOrdType determines the size and sign of the ordinal type:

```
TParamFlag = (pfVar, pfConst, pfArray, pfAddress, pfReference, pfOut,
  pfConstRef, pfHidden, pfHigh, pfSelf, pfVmt, pfResult)
```

Table 78.10: Enumeration values for type TParamFlag

Value	Explanation
pfAddress	Parameter is passed by address
pfArray	Parameter is an array parameter
pfConst	Parameter is a const parameter (i.e. cannot be modified)
pfConstRef	
pfHidden	
pfHigh	
pfOut	Parameter is a string parameter
pfReference	Parameter is passed by reference
pfResult	
pfSelf	
pfVar	Parameter is a var parameter (passed by reference)
pfVmt	

TParamFlag describes a parameter.

TParamFlags = Set of TParamFlag

The kind of parameter for a method

TProcInfoProc = procedure(PropInfo: PPropInfo) of object

Property info callback method

Array = Array[0..65535] of PPropInfo

Array of property information pointers

```
TRecInitData = packed record
public
  Terminator : Pointer;
  Size
  : Integer;
  InitOffsetOp : PRecOpOffsetTable;
  ManagementOp : Pointer
;
  ManagedFieldCount : Integer;
end
```

```
TRecOpOffsetEntry = packed record
public
  ManagementOperator : CodePointer
;
  FieldOffset : SizeUInt;
end
```

```
TRecOpOffsetTable = packed record
public
  Count : LongWord;
  Entries
    : Array[0..0] of TRecOpOffsetEntry;
end
```

```
TRegisterType = (Invalid, Int, FP, MMX, MultiMedia, Special, Address)
```

Table 78.11: Enumeration values for type TRegisterType

Value	Explanation
Address	
FP	
Int	
Invalid	
MMX	
MultiMedia	
Special	

```
TSetPropValue = procedure (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
  const Value: Variant)
```

The callback function must set the property with name `PropName` of instance `Instance` to `Value`.

```
TSetVariantProp = procedure (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo
  ;
  const Value: Variant)
```

The callback function must set the variant property with name `PropName` of instance to `Value`.

```
TSubRegister = (None, Lo, Hi, Word, DWord, QWord, FloatSingle, FloatDouble
  ,
  FloatQuad, MultiMediaSingle, MultiMediaDouble,
  MultiMediaWhole, MultiMediaX, MultiMediaY)
```

Table 78.12: Enumeration values for type TSubRegister

Value	Explanation
DWord	
FloatDouble	
FloatQuad	
FloatSingle	
Hi	
Lo	
MultiMediaDouble	
MultiMediaSingle	
MultiMediaWhole	
MultiMediaX	
MultiMediaY	
None	
QWord	
Word	

```

TypeInfo = record
public
  Kind : TTypeKind;
  Name : ShortString
;
end

```

The `TypeInfo` function returns a pointer to a `TypeInfo` record.

Note that the `Name` field is stored with as much bytes as needed to store the name, it is not padded to 255 characters. The type data immediately follows the `TypeInfo` record as a `TTypeData` (1975) record.

```
TTypeKind = System.TTypeKind
```

Type of a property.

```
TTypeKinds = Set of TTypeKind
```

Set of `TTypeKind` (1918) enumeration.

```

TVmtFieldClassTab = packed record
public
  Count : Word;
  ClassRef
    : Array[0..0] of PClass;
end

```

```

TVmtMethodEntry = packed record
public
  Name : PShortString;
  CodeAddress
    : CodePointer;
end

```

## 78.7 Procedures and functions

### 78.7.1 AddEnumElementAliases

Declaration: `procedure AddEnumElementAliases(aTypeInfo: PTypeInfo;  
const aNames: Array of string;  
aStartValue: Integer)`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.2 AlignPTypeInfo

Declaration: `function AlignPTypeInfo(p: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.3 AlignTParamFlags

Declaration: `function AlignTParamFlags(p: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.4 AlignTypeData

Declaration: `function AlignTypeData(p: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.5 DerefTypeInfoPtr

Declaration: `function DerefTypeInfoPtr(Info: PTypeInfo) : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.6 FindPropInfo

Synopsis: Return property information by property name.

Declaration: `function FindPropInfo(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)  
: PPropInfo  
function FindPropInfo(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo  
function FindPropInfo(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string)  
: PPropInfo  
function FindPropInfo(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string;  
AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindPropInfo` examines the published property information of a class and returns a pointer to the property information for property `PropName`. The class to be examined can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass** class pointer.





### 78.7.8 GetEnumeratedAliasValue

**Declaration:** `function GetEnumeratedAliasValue(aTypeInfo: PTypeInfo;  
const aName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.9 GetEnumName

Synopsis: Return name of enumeration constant.

**Declaration:** `function GetEnumName(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; Value: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetEnumName` scans the type information for the enumeration type described by `TypeInfo` and returns the name of the enumeration constant for the element with ordinal value equal to `Value`.

If `Value` is out of range, the first element of the enumeration type is returned. The result is returned in the case that was used in the declaration. (In earlier versions of FPC, the name was lowercased).

This can be used in combination with `GetOrdProp` to stream a property of an enumerated type.

**Errors:** No check is done to determine whether `TypeInfo` really points to the type information for an enumerated type.

See also: `GetOrdProp` ([1929](#)), `GetEnumValue` ([1923](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex9.pp`

---

```

program example9;

{ This program demonstrates the GetEnumName, GetEnumValue functions }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  TI : PTypeInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  TI := GetPropInfo(O, 'MyEnumField')^.PropType;
  WriteLn('GetEnumName      : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  WriteLn('GetEnumValue(mefirst) : ', GetEnumName(TI, GetEnumValue(TI, 'mefirst')));
  O.Free;
end.
```

---

### 78.7.10 GetEnumNameCount

Synopsis: Return number of names in an enumerated type

**Declaration:** `function GetEnumNameCount(enum1: PTypeInfo) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetEnumNameCount` returns the number of values (names) in the enumerated type, described by `enum1`

**Errors:** No checking is done to see whether `Enum1` is really type information of an enumerated type.

See also: `GetEnumValue` (1923), `GetEnumName` (1921)

### 78.7.11 GetEnumProp

**Synopsis:** Return the value of an enumeration type property.

**Declaration:**

```
function GetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : string
function GetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo)
    : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetEnumProp` returns the value of an property of an enumerated type and returns the name of the enumerated value for the object `Instance`. The property whose value must be returned can be specified by its property info in `PropInfo` or by its name in `PropName`

**Errors:** No check is done to determine whether `PropInfo` really points to the property information for an enumerated type. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetEnumProp` (1940), `GetOrdProp` (1929), `GetStrProp` (1934), `GetInt64Prop` (1924), `GetMethodProp` (1925), `GetSetProp` (1933), `GetObjectProp` (1927), `GetEnumProp` (1922)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex2.pp`

---

```
program example2;

{ This program demonstrates the GetEnumProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  TI : PTypeInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'MyEnumField');
  TI := PI^.PropType;
  Writeln('Enum property      : ');
  Writeln('Value                  : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  Writeln('Get (name)                 : ', GetEnumProp(O, 'MyEnumField'));
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)             : ', GetEnumProp(O, PI));
  SetEnumProp(O, 'MyEnumField', 'meFirst');
  Writeln('Set (name, meFirst)        : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  SetEnumProp(O, PI, 'meSecond');
  Writeln('Set (propinfo, meSecond)   : ', GetEnumName(TI, Ord(O.MyEnumField)));
  O.Free;
end.
```

---

### 78.7.12 GetEnumValue

Synopsis: Get ordinal value for enumerated type by name

Declaration: `function GetEnumValue (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const Name: string) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnumValue` scans the type information for the enumeration type described by `TypeInfo` and returns the ordinal value for the element in the enumerated type that has identifier `Name`. The identifier is searched in a case-insensitive manner.

This can be used to set the value of enumerated properties from a stream.

For an example, see `GetEnumName` (1921).

Errors: If `Name` is not found in the list of enumerated values, then -1 is returned. No check is done whether `TypeInfo` points to the type information for an enumerated type.

See also: `GetEnumName` (1921), `SetOrdProp` (1943)

### 78.7.13 GetFloatProp

Synopsis: Return value of floating point property

Declaration: `function GetFloatProp (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Extended`  
`function GetFloatProp (Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)`  
`: Extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFloatProp` returns the value of the float property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`. All float types are converted to extended.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid float property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetFloatProp` (1941), `GetOrdProp` (1929), `GetStrProp` (1934), `GetInt64Prop` (1924), `GetMethodProp` (1925), `GetSetProp` (1933), `GetObjectProp` (1927), `GetEnumProp` (1922)

Listing: `./typinfex/ex4.pp`

---

```

program example4;

{ This program demonstrates the GetFloatProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  WriteLn('Real property : ');
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'RealField');
  WriteLn('Value           : ', O.RealField);

```

---

```

Writeln ( 'Get (name)      : ', GetFloatProp(O, 'RealField') );
Writeln ( 'Get (propinfo)   : ', GetFloatProp(O, PI) );
SetFloatProp(O, 'RealField', system.Pi);
Writeln ( 'Set (name, pi)    : ', O.RealField );
SetFloatProp(O, PI, exp(1));
Writeln ( 'Set (propinfo, e) : ', O.RealField );
Writeln ( 'Extended property : ' );
PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'ExtendedField');
Writeln ( 'Value           : ', O.ExtendedField );
Writeln ( 'Get (name)      : ', GetFloatProp(O, 'ExtendedField') );
Writeln ( 'Get (propinfo)   : ', GetFloatProp(O, PI) );
SetFloatProp(O, 'ExtendedField', system.Pi);
Writeln ( 'Set (name, pi)    : ', O.ExtendedField );
SetFloatProp(O, PI, exp(1));
Writeln ( 'Set (propinfo, e) : ', O.ExtendedField );
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.14 GetInt64Prop

Synopsis: return value of an Int64 property

**Declaration:** `function GetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Int64`  
`function GetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Remark** Publishing of Int64 properties is not yet supported by Free Pascal. This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only at the moment.

`GetInt64Prop` returns the value of the property of type `Int64` that is described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid `Int64` property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception

See also: `SetInt64Prop` ([1941](#)), `GetOrdProp` ([1929](#)), `GetStrProp` ([1934](#)), `GetFloatProp` ([1923](#)), `GetMethodProp` ([1925](#)), `GetSetProp` ([1933](#)), `GetObjectProp` ([1927](#)), `GetEnumProp` ([1922](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex15.pp`

---

```

program example15;

{ This program demonstrates the GetInt64Prop function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln ( 'Int64 property : ' );
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'Int64Field');

```

---

```

Writeln ( 'Value           : ', O.Int64Field );
Writeln ( 'Get (name)      : ', GetInt64Prop(O, 'Int64Field' ));
Writeln ( 'Get (propinfo)  : ', GetInt64Prop(O, PI ));
SetInt64Prop(O, 'Int64Field', 12345);
Writeln ( 'Set (name,12345) : ', O.Int64Field );
SetInt64Prop(O, PI, 54321);
Writeln ( 'Set (propinfo,54321) : ', O.Int64Field );
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.15 GetInterfaceProp

**Synopsis:** Return interface-typed property

**Declaration:**

```

function GetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
    : IInterface
function GetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
    : IInterface

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetInterfaceProp` returns the interface which the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` points to for object `Instance`.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

**See also:** `SetInterfaceProp` ([1942](#)), `GetOrdProp` ([1929](#)), `GetStrProp` ([1934](#)), `GetFloatProp` ([1923](#)), `GetInt64Prop` ([1924](#)), `GetSetProp` ([1933](#)), `GetObjectProp` ([1927](#)), `GetEnumProp` ([1922](#))

### 78.7.16 GetMethodProp

**Synopsis:** Return value of a method property

**Declaration:**

```

function GetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : TMethod
function GetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
    : TMethod

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetMethodProp` returns the method the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`. The return type `TMethod` is defined in the `SysUtils` unit as:

```

TMethod = packed record
    Code, Data: Pointer;
end;

```

`Data` points to the instance of the class with the method `Code`.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

**See also:** `SetMethodProp` ([1942](#)), `GetOrdProp` ([1929](#)), `GetStrProp` ([1934](#)), `GetFloatProp` ([1923](#)), `GetInt64Prop` ([1924](#)), `GetSetProp` ([1933](#)), `GetObjectProp` ([1927](#)), `GetEnumProp` ([1922](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex6.pp

---

```

program example6;

{ This program demonstrates the GetMethodProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo, sysutils;

Type
  TNotifyObject = Class(TObject)
    Procedure Notification1(Sender : TObject);
    Procedure Notification2(Sender : TObject);
  end;

Procedure TNotifyObject.Notification1(Sender : TObject);

begin
  Write('Received notification 1 of object with class: ');
  Writeln(Sender.ClassName);
end;

Procedure TNotifyObject.Notification2(Sender : TObject);

begin
  Write('Received notification 2 of object with class: ');
  Writeln(Sender.ClassName);
end;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  NO : TNotifyObject;
  M : TMethod;

Procedure PrintMethod (Const M : TMethod);

begin
  If (M.Data=Pointer(NO)) Then
    If (M.Code=Pointer(@TNotifyObject.Notification1)) then
      Writeln('Notification1 ')
    else If (M.Code=Pointer(@TNotifyObject.Notification2)) then
      Writeln('Notification2 ')
    else
      begin
        Write('Unknown method address (data: ');
        Write(hexStr(Longint(M.data), 8));
        Writeln(' ,code: ', hexstr(Longint(M.Code), 8), ' ');
      end;
end;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  NO:=TNotifyObject.Create;
  O.NotifyEvent:=@NO.Notification1;
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'NotifyEvent');
  Writeln('Method property : ');

```

---

```

Write( ' Notifying                               : ');
O. Notify;
Write( 'Get (name)                               : ');
M:=GetMethodProp(O, 'NotifyEvent');
PrintMethod(M);
Write( ' Notifying                               : ');
O. Notify;
Write( 'Get (propinfo)                           : ');
M:=GetMethodProp(O, PI);
PrintMethod(M);
M:=TMethod(@NO. Notification2);
SetMethodProp(O, 'NotifyEvent',M);
Write( 'Set (name, Notification2)                 : ');
M:=GetMethodProp(O, PI);
PrintMethod(M);
Write( ' Notifying                               : ');
O. Notify;
Write( 'Set (propinfo, Notification1) : ');
M:=TMethod(@NO. Notification1);
SetMethodProp(O, PI,M);
M:=GetMethodProp(O, PI);
PrintMethod(M);
Write( ' Notifying                               : ');
O. Notify;
O. Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.17 GetObjectProp

Synopsis: Return value of an object-type property.

**Declaration:** `function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : TObject`

```

function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                      MinClass: TClass) : TObject
function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : TObject
function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      MinClass: TClass) : TObject

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetObjectProp` returns the object which the property described by `PropInfo` with name `Propname` points to for object `Instance`.

If `MinClass` is specified, then if the object is not descendent of class `MinClass`, then `Nil` is returned.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetMethodProp` (1942), `GetOrdProp` (1929), `GetStrProp` (1934), `GetFloatProp` (1923), `GetInt64Prop` (1924), `GetSetProp` (1933), `GetObjectProp` (1927), `GetEnumProp` (1922)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex5.pp`



---

```

program example5;

{ This program demonstrates the GetObjectProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  NO1, NO2 : TNamedObject;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  NO1 := TNamedObject.Create;
  NO1.ObjectName := 'First named object';
  NO2 := TNamedObject.Create;
  NO2.ObjectName := 'Second named object';
  O.ObjField := NO1;
  Writeln( 'Object property : ' );
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'ObjField');
  Write( 'Property class      : ' );
  Writeln( GetObjectPropClass(O, 'ObjField').ClassName );
  Write( 'Value                : ' );
  Writeln((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  Write( 'Get (name)           : ' );
  Writeln((GetObjectProp(O, 'ObjField') as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  Write( 'Get (propinfo)       : ' );
  Writeln((GetObjectProp(O, PI, TObj) as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  SetObjectProp(O, 'ObjField', NO2);
  Write( 'Set (name, NO2)      : ' );
  Writeln((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  SetObjectProp(O, PI, NO1);
  Write( 'Set (propinfo, NO1) : ' );
  Writeln((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.18 GetObjectPropClass

Synopsis: Return class of property.

**Declaration:** function GetObjectPropClass(Instance: TObj; const PropName: string)  
   : TClass  
 function GetObjectPropClass(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string)  
   : TClass

Visibility: default

**Description:** GetObjectPropClass returns the declared class of the property with name PropName. This may not be the actual class of the property value.

For an example, see GetObjectProp ([1927](#)).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: [SetMethodProp \(1942\)](#), [GetOrdProp \(1929\)](#), [GetStrProp \(1934\)](#), [GetFloatProp \(1923\)](#), [GetInt64Prop \(1924\)](#)

### 78.7.19 GetOrdProp

Synopsis: Get the value of an ordinal property

Declaration: `function GetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Int64`  
`function GetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetOrdProp` returns the value of the ordinal property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for the object `Instance`. The value is returned as a longint, which should be typecast to the needed type.

Ordinal properties that can be retrieved include:

**Integers and subranges of integers**The value of the integer will be returned.

**Enumerated types and subranges of enumerated types**The ordinal value of the enumerated type will be returned.

**Sets**If the base type of the set has less than 31 possible values. If a bit is set in the return value, then the corresponding element of the base ordinal class of the set type must be included in the set.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: [SetOrdProp \(1943\)](#), [GetStrProp \(1934\)](#), [GetFloatProp \(1923\)](#), [GetInt64Prop \(1924\)](#), [GetMethodProp \(1925\)](#), [GetSetProp \(1933\)](#), [GetObjectProp \(1927\)](#), [GetEnumProp \(1922\)](#)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex1.pp`

---

```
program example1 ;

{ This program demonstrates the GetOrdProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo ;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject ;
  PI : PPropInfo ;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create ;
  Writeln('Boolean property      : ');
  Writeln('Value                  : ', O.BooleanField);
  Writeln('Ord(Value)                   : ', Ord(O.BooleanField));
  Writeln('Get (name)                   : ', GetOrdProp(O, 'BooleanField'));
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'BooleanField');
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)               : ', GetOrdProp(O, PI));
  SetOrdProp(O, 'BooleanField', Ord(False));
  Writeln('Set (name, false)            : ', O.BooleanField);
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, Ord(True));
  Writeln('Set (propinfo, true)         : ', O.BooleanField);
  O.Free ;
end.
```

---

### 78.7.20 GetPropInfo

Synopsis: Return property type information, by property name.

Declaration: 

```
function GetPropInfo (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const PropName: string)
                    : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const PropName: string;
                    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                    : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (AClass: TClass; const PropName: string) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo (AClass: TClass; const PropName: string;
                    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPropInfo` returns a pointer to the `TPropInfo` record for the `PropName` property of a class. The class to examine can be specified in one of three ways:

**Instance** An instance of the class.

**AClass** A class pointer to the class.

**TypeInfo** A pointer to the type information of the class.

In each of these three ways, if `AKinds` is specified, if the property has `TypeKind` which is not included in `AKinds`, `Nil` will be returned.

For an example, see most of the other functions.

Errors: If the property `PropName` does not exist, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `GetPropInfos` ([1930](#)), `GetPropList` ([1931](#))

### 78.7.21 GetPropInfos

Synopsis: Return a list of published properties.

Declaration: 

```
procedure GetPropInfos (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; PropList: PPropList)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPropInfos` stores pointers to the property information of all published properties of a class with class info `TypeInfo` in the list pointed to by `PropList`. The `PropList` pointer must point to a memory location that contains enough space to hold all properties of the class and its parent classes.

Errors: No checks are done to see whether `PropList` points to a memory area that is big enough to hold all pointers.

See also: `GetPropInfo` ([1930](#)), `GetPropList` ([1931](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `example12;`

*{ This program demonstrates the GetPropInfos function }*

---

```

uses
    rttiobj , typinfo ;

Var
    O : TMyTestObject ;
    PT : PTypeData ;
    PI : PTypeInfo ;
    I , J : Longint ;
    PP : PPropList ;
    prl : PPropInfo ;

begin
    O := TMyTestObject.Create ;
    PI := O.ClassInfo ;
    PT := GetTypeData(PI) ;
    WriteLn('Property Count : ', PT^.PropCount) ;
    GetMem(PP, PT^.PropCount * SizeOf(Pointer)) ;
    GetPropInfos(PI, PP) ;
    For I := 0 to PT^.PropCount - 1 do
        begin
            With PP^[I]^ do
                begin
                    Write('Property ', I + 1 : 3, ': ', name : 30) ;
                    writeln('  Type: ', TypeName[typinfo.PropType(O, Name)]) ;
                end ;
            end ;
        FreeMem(PP) ;
    O.Free ;
end .

```

---

### 78.7.22 GetPropList

**Synopsis:** Return a list of a certain type of published properties.

**Declaration:**

```

function GetPropList(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; TypeKinds: TTypeKinds;
    PropList: PPropList; Sorted: Boolean) : LongInt
function GetPropList(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; out PropList: PPropList)
    : SizeInt
function GetPropList(AClass: TClass; out PropList: PPropList) : Integer
function GetPropList(Instance: TObject; out PropList: PPropList)
    : Integer

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetPropList stores pointers to property information of the class with class info TypeInfo for properties of kind TypeKinds in the list pointed to by PropList. PropList must contain enough space to hold all properties.

The function returns the number of pointers that matched the criteria and were stored in PropList.

**Errors:** No checks are done to see whether PropList points to a memory area that is big enough to hold all pointers.

**See also:** GetPropInfos ([1930](#)), GetPropInfo ([1930](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex13.pp

---

```

Program example13;

{ This program demonstrates the GetPropList function }

uses
    rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
    O : TMyTestObject;
    PT : PTypeData;
    PI : PTypeInfo;
    I, J : Longint;
    PP : PPropList;
    prl : PPropInfo;

begin
    O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
    PI:=O.ClassInfo;
    PT:=GetTypeData(PI);
    WriteLn('Total property Count : ',PT^.PropCount);
    GetMem (PP,PT^.PropCount*SizeOf(Pointer));
    J:=GetPropList(PI, OrdinalTypes, PP);
    WriteLn('Ordinal property Count : ',J);
    For I:=0 to J-1 do
        begin
            With PP^[I]^ do
                begin
                    Write ('Property ', i+1:3, ': ', name:30);
                    writeln (' Type: ', TypeNames[typinfo.PropType(O, Name)]);
                end;
            end;
        FreeMem(PP);
    O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.23 GetPropValue

Synopsis: Get property value as a string.

**Declaration:** function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)  
: Variant

function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant

function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Variant

function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant

Visibility: default

**Description:** Due to missing Variant support, GetPropValue is not yet implemented. The declaration is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

### 78.7.24 GetRawByteStrProp

**Declaration:** function GetRawByteStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)

```

                                : RawByteString
function GetRawByteStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                                : RawByteString

```

Visibility: default

### 78.7.25 GetRawInterfaceProp

Synopsis: Get a raw (CORBA) interface property.

Declaration: 

```
function GetRawInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                                : Pointer
function GetRawInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
                                : Pointer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetRawInterfaceProp` can be used to retrieve the value of a published CORBA interface property with name `PropName` from object `Instance`. Alternatively, the required property information can be specified by `PropInfo` instead of the property name. In difference with the `GetInterfaceProp` (1925) function, no reference counting is done.

Errors: If the property `PropName` does not exist, an `EPropertyError` exception is raised.

See also: `GetInterfaceProp` (1925), `SetRawInterfaceProp` (1944)

### 78.7.26 GetSetProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a set property.

Declaration: 

```
function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : string
function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetSetProp` returns the contents of a set property as a string. The property to be returned can be specified by its name in `PropName` or by its property information in `PropInfo`.

The returned set is a string representation of the elements in the set as returned by `SetToString` (1945).

The `Brackets` option can be used to enclose the string representation in square brackets.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetSetProp` (1944), `GetStrProp` (1934), `GetFloatProp` (1923), `GetInt64Prop` (1924), `GetMethodProp` (1925)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex7.pp`

---

```

program example7;

{ This program demonstrates the GetSetProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

```

---

```

uses rttiobj , typinfo ;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

Function SetAsString (ASet : TMyEnums) : String;

Var
  i : TmyEnum;

begin
  result := '';
  For i := mefirst to methird do
    If i in ASet then
      begin
        If (Result <> '') then
          Result := Result + ', ';
          Result := Result + MyEnumNames[i];
        end;
      end;
end;

Var
  S : TMyEnums;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  O.SetField := [mefirst, meSecond, meThird];
  Writeln('Set property      : ');
  Writeln('Value                               : ', SetAsString(O.SetField));
  Writeln('Ord(Value)                           : ', Byte(O.SetField));
  Writeln('Get (name)                             : ', GetSetProp(O, 'SetField'));
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'SetField');
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)                          : ', GetSetProp(O, PI, false));
  S := [meFirst, meThird];
  SetOrdProp(O, 'SetField', Byte(S));
  Write('Set (name,[ mefirst, methird]) : ');
  Writeln(SetAsString(O.SetField));
  S := [meSecond];
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, Byte(S));
  Write('Set (propinfo,[ meSecond]) : ');
  Writeln(SetAsString(O.SetField));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.27 GetStrProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a string property.

**Declaration:** `function GetStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Ansistring`  
`function GetStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** GetStrProp returns the value of the string property described by PropInfo or with name PropName for object Instance.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid string property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: [SetStrProp \(1945\)](#), [SetWideStrProp \(1947\)](#), [GetOrdProp \(1929\)](#), [GetFloatProp \(1923\)](#), [GetInt64Prop \(1924\)](#), [GetMethodProp \(1925\)](#)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex3.pp

```

program example3;

{ This program demonstrates the GetStrProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
    O : TMyTestObject;
    PI : PPropInfo;

begin
    O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
    PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'AnsiStringField');
    Writeln('String property : ');
    Writeln('Value' : ' ', O.AnsiStringField);
    Writeln('Get (name)' : ' ', GetStrProp(O, 'AnsiStringField'));
    Writeln('Get (propinfo)' : ' ', GetStrProp(O, PI));
    SetStrProp(O, 'AnsiStringField', 'First');
    Writeln('Set (name, ''First'')' : ' ', O.AnsiStringField);
    SetStrProp(O, PI, 'Second');
    Writeln('Set (propinfo, ''Second'')' : ' ', O.AnsiStringField);
    O.Free;
end.

```

### 78.7.28 GetTypeData

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to type data, based on type information.

**Declaration:** `function GetTypeData (TypeInfo: PTypeInfo) : PTypeData`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetTypeData` returns a pointer to the `TTypeData` record that follows after the `TTypeInfo` record pointed to by `TypeInfo`. It essentially skips the `Kind` and `Name` fields in the `TTypeInfo` record.

Errors: None.

### 78.7.29 GetUnicodeStrProp

### Synopsis: Get UnicodeString-valued property

```
Declaration: function GetUnicodeStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
              : UnicodeString
function GetUnicodeStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
              : UnicodeString
```



Visibility: default

Description: `GetUnicodeStrProp` returns the `UnicodeString` property from `Instance`, where the property is identified by the `PropInfo` pointer or the `PropertyName`.

Errors: If no property of the indicated name exists, or the value is not a Unicode string, an exception will occur.

See also: `GetStrProp` (1934), `SetUnicodeStrProp` (1946)

### 78.7.30 GetVariantProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a variant property.

Declaration: 

```
function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
                        : Variant
function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                        : Variant
```

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, the `GetVariantProp` function is not yet implemented. Provided for Delphi compatibility only.

See also: `SetVariantProp` (1947)

### 78.7.31 GetWideStrProp

Synopsis: Read a widestring property

Declaration: 

```
function GetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
                        : WideString
function GetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                        : WideString
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetWideStrProp` returns the value of the widestring property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for object `Instance`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid widestring property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetStrProp` (1934), `SetWideStrProp` (1947), `GetOrdProp` (1929), `GetFloatProp` (1923), `GetInt64Prop` (1924), `GetMethodProp` (1925)

### 78.7.32 IsPublishedProp

Synopsis: Check whether a published property exists.

Declaration: 

```
function IsPublishedProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                        : Boolean
function IsPublishedProp(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string)
                        : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsPublishedProp` returns true if a class has a published property with name `PropName`. The class can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass** A class pointer to the class.

**Instance** An instance of the class.

**Errors:** No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `AClass` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsStoredProp` (1937), `PropIsType` (1938)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex10.pp`

---

```

program example10;

{ This program demonstrates the IsPublishedProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln('Property tests      : ');
  Write('IsPublishedProp(O, BooleanField)      : ');
  Writeln(IsPublishedProp(O, 'BooleanField'));
  Write('IsPublishedProp(Class, BooleanField) : ');
  Writeln(IsPublishedProp(O.ClassType, 'BooleanField'));
  Write('IsPublishedProp(O, SomeField)          : ');
  Writeln(IsPublishedProp(O, 'SomeField'));
  Write('IsPublishedProp(Class, SomeField)      : ');
  Writeln(IsPublishedProp(O.ClassType, 'SomeField'));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.33 IsReadableProp

**Declaration:** `function IsReadableProp(PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Boolean`  
`function IsReadableProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)`  
`: Boolean`  
`function IsReadableProp(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string)`  
`: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

### 78.7.34 IsStoredProp

**Synopsis:** Check whether a property is stored.

**Declaration:** `function IsStoredProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Boolean`  
`function IsStoredProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsStoredProp` returns `True` if the `Stored` modifier evaluates to `True` for the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for object `Instance`. It returns `False` otherwise. If the function returns `True`, this indicates that the property should be written when streaming the object `Instance`.

If there was no `stored` modifier in the declaration of the property, `True` will be returned.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: [IsPublishedProp \(1936\)](#), [PropIsType \(1938\)](#)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex11.pp

```
program example11 ;
```

```
{ This program demonstrates the IsStoredProp function }
```

$$\{ \$mode \ obj fpc \}$$

```
uses rttiobj , typinfo ;
```

**Var**

```
O : TMyTestObject;
```

```
PI : PPropInfo;
```

**begin**

```
O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
```

```
WriteLn( 'Stored tests      : ' );
```

```
Write('IsStoredProp(O, StoredIntegerConstFalse)      : ');
```

```
WriteIn(IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerConstFalse'));
```

```
Write( 'IsStoredProp(O, StoredIntegerConstTrue)      : ' );
```

```
WriteIn(IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerConstTrue'));
```

```
Write( 'IsStoredProp (O, StoredIntegerMethod)' : '');
```

```
WriteIn(IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerMethod'));
```

```
Write( 'IsStoredProp (O, StoredIntegerVirtualMethod) : ' );
```

```
WriteIn(IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerVirtualMethod'));
WriteIn(IsStoredProp(O, 'StoredIntegerVirtualMethod'));
```

**O. Free ;**

end.

### 78.7.35 IsWritableProp

```
Declaration: function IsWritableProp(PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Boolean
            function IsWritableProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)
                                : Boolean
            function IsWritableProp(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string)
                                : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

### 78.7.36 PropsType

**Synopsis:** Check the type of a published property.

**Declaration:** `function PropIsType(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
TypeKind: TTypeKind) : Boolean  
function PropIsType(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string;  
TypeKind: TTypeKind) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PropIsType` returns `True` if the property with name `PropName` has type `TypeKind`. It returns `False` otherwise. The class to be examined can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass**A class pointer.

**Instance**An instance of the class.

**Errors:** No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `AClass` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsPublishedProp` (1936), `IsStoredProp` (1937), `PropType` (1939)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex16.pp`

---

```
program example16;

{ This program demonstrates the PropIsType function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln('Property tests      : ');
  Write('PropIsType(O, BooleanField, tkBool)      : ');
  Writeln(PropIsType(O, 'BooleanField', tkBool));
  Write('PropIsType(Class, BooleanField, tkBool) : ');
  Writeln(PropIsType(Class, 'BooleanField', tkBool));
  Write('PropIsType(O, ByteField, tkString)      : ');
  Writeln(PropIsType(O, 'ByteField', tkString));
  Write('PropIsType(Class, ByteField, tkString) : ');
  Writeln(PropIsType(Class, 'ByteField', tkString));
  O.Free;
end.
```

---

### 78.7.37 PropType

**Synopsis:** Return the type of a property

**Declaration:** `function PropType(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string) : TTypeKind  
function PropType(AClass: TClass; const PropName: string) : TTypeKind`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `PropType` returns the type of the property `PropName` for a class. The class to be examined can be specified in one of 2 ways:

**AClass**A class pointer.

**Instance**An instance of the class.

Errors: No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `AClass` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsPublishedProp` ([1936](#)), `IsStoredProp` ([1937](#)), `PropIsType` ([1938](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex17.pp`

---

```

program example17;

{ This program demonstrates the PropType function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  WriteLn('Property tests      : ');
  Write('PropType(O, BooleanField)      : ');
  WriteLn(TypeNames[PropType(O, 'BooleanField')]);
  Write('PropType(Class, BooleanField) : ');
  WriteLn(TypeNames[PropType(O.ClassType, 'BooleanField')]);
  Write('PropType(O, ByteField)      : ');
  WriteLn(TypeNames[PropType(O, 'ByteField')]);
  Write('PropType(Class, ByteField)    : ');
  WriteLn(TypeNames[PropType(O.ClassType, 'ByteField')]);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.38 RemoveEnumElementAliases

Declaration: `procedure RemoveEnumElementAliases(aTypeInfo: PTypeInfo)`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.39 SetDynArrayProp

Declaration: `procedure SetDynArrayProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: Pointer)  
procedure SetDynArrayProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

### 78.7.40 SetEnumProp

Synopsis: Set value of an enumerated-type property

**Declaration:** `procedure SetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: string)  
procedure SetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: string)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetEnumProp` sets the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` to `Value`. `Value` must be a string with the name of the enumerate value, i.e. it can be used as an argument to `GetEnumValue` (1923).

For an example, see `GetEnumProp` (1922).

**Errors:** No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `PropInfo` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

**See also:** `GetEnumProp` (1922), `SetStrProp` (1945), `SetFloatProp` (1941), `SetInt64Prop` (1941), `SetMethodProp` (1942)

### 78.7.41 SetFloatProp

**Synopsis:** Set value of a float property.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
Value: Extended)  
procedure SetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
Value: Extended)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetFloatProp` assigns `Value` to the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

For an example, see `GetFloatProp` (1923).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid float property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

**See also:** `GetFloatProp` (1923), `SetOrdProp` (1943), `SetStrProp` (1945), `SetInt64Prop` (1941), `SetMethodProp` (1942)

### 78.7.42 SetInt64Prop

**Synopsis:** Set value of a Int64 property

**Declaration:** `procedure SetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Int64)  
procedure SetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: Int64)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetInt64Prop` assigns `Value` to the property of type `Int64` that is described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

For an example, see `GetInt64Prop` (1924).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid `Int64` property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: [GetInt64Prop \(1924\)](#), [GetMethodProp \(1925\)](#), [SetOrdProp \(1943\)](#), [SetStrProp \(1945\)](#), [SetFloatProp \(1941\)](#)

### 78.7.43 SetInterfaceProp

**Synopsis:** Set interface-valued property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                           const Value: IInterface)
procedure SetInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                           const Value: IInterface)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetInterfaceProp` assigns `Value` to the object property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid interface property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: [GetInterfaceProp \(1925\)](#), [SetObjectProp \(1943\)](#), [SetOrdProp \(1943\)](#), [SetStrProp \(1945\)](#), [SetFloatProp \(1941\)](#), [SetInt64Prop \(1941\)](#), [SetMethodProp \(1942\)](#)

### 78.7.44 SetMethodProp

**Synopsis:** Set the value of a method property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        const Value: TMethod)
procedure SetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        const Value: TMethod)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetMethodProp` assigns `Value` to the method the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`.

The type `TMethod` of the `Value` parameter is defined in the `SysUtils` unit as:

```
TMethod = packed record
  Code, Data: Pointer;
end;
```

`Data` should point to the instance of the class with the method `Code`.

For an example, see [GetMethodProp \(1925\)](#).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: [GetMethodProp \(1925\)](#), [SetOrdProp \(1943\)](#), [SetStrProp \(1945\)](#), [SetFloatProp \(1941\)](#), [SetInt64Prop \(1941\)](#)

### 78.7.45 SetObjectProp

Synopsis: Set the value of an object-type property.

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        Value: TObject)
procedure SetObjectProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        Value: TObject)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetObjectProp` assigns `Value` to the object property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

For an example, see `GetObjectProp` (1927).

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid object property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetObjectProp` (1927), `SetOrdProp` (1943), `SetStrProp` (1945), `SetFloatProp` (1941), `SetInt64Prop` (1941), `SetMethodProp` (1942)

### 78.7.46 SetOrdProp

Synopsis: Set value of an ordinal property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                    Value: Int64)
procedure SetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                    Value: Int64)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetOrdProp` assigns `Value` to the ordinal property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`.

Ordinal properties that can be set include:

**Integers and subranges of integers** The actual value of the integer must be passed.

**Enumerated types and subranges of enumerated types** The ordinal value of the enumerated type must be passed.

**Subrange types** of integers or enumerated types. Here the ordinal value must be passed.

**Sets** If the base type of the set has less than 31 possible values. For each possible value; the corresponding bit of `Value` must be set.

For an example, see `GetOrdProp` (1929).

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. No range checking is performed. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetOrdProp` (1929), `SetStrProp` (1945), `SetFloatProp` (1941), `SetInt64Prop` (1941), `SetMethodProp` (1942)



**78.7.47 SetPropValue**

Synopsis: Set property value as variant

Declaration: `procedure SetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: Variant)  
procedure SetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, this function is not yet implemented; it is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

**78.7.48 SetRawByteStrProp**

Declaration: `procedure SetRawByteStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: RawByteString)  
procedure SetRawByteStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: RawByteString)`

Visibility: default

**78.7.49 SetRawInterfaceProp**

Synopsis: Set a raw (CORBA) interface property.

Declaration: `procedure SetRawInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject;  
const PropName: string;  
const Value: Pointer)  
procedure SetRawInterfaceProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetRawInterfaceProp` can be used to set the value of a published CORBA interface with name `PropName` from object `Instance` to `Value`. Alternatively, the required property information can be specified by `PropInfo` instead of the property name. In difference with the `SetInterfaceProp` (1942) procedure, no reference counting is done.

Errors: If the property `PropName` does not exist, an `EPropertyError` exception is raised.

See also: `SetInterfaceProp` (1942), `GetRawInterfaceProp` (1933)

**78.7.50 SetSetProp**

Synopsis: Set value of set-typed property.

Declaration: `procedure SetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;  
const Value: string)  
procedure SetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: string)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetSetProp` sets the property specified by `PropInfo` or `PropName` for object `Instance` to `Value`. `Value` is a string which contains a comma-separated list of values, each value being a string-representation of the enumerated value that should be included in the set. The value should be accepted by the `StringToSet` (1947) function.

The value can be formed using the `SetToString` (1945) function.

For an example, see `GetSetProp` (1933).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. No range checking is performed. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetSetProp` (1933), `SetOrdProp` (1943), `SetStrProp` (1945), `SetFloatProp` (1941), `SetInt64Prop` (1941), `SetMethodProp` (1942), `SetToString` (1945), `StringToSet` (1947)

### 78.7.51 SetStrProp

**Synopsis:** Set value of a string property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                    const Value: AnsiString)
procedure SetStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                    const Value: Ansistring)
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetStrProp` assigns `Value` to the string property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`.

For an example, see `GetStrProp` (1934)

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid string property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetStrProp` (1934), `SetWideStrProp` (1947), `SetOrdProp` (1943), `SetFloatProp` (1941), `SetInt64Prop` (1941), `SetMethodProp` (1942)

### 78.7.52 SetToString

**Synopsis:** Convert set to a string description

**Declaration:**

```
function SetToString(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; Value: LongInt;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
function SetToString(PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: LongInt;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
function SetToString(PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: LongInt) : string
function SetToString(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; Value: Pointer;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
function SetToString(PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: Pointer;
                    Brackets: Boolean) : string
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetToString` takes an integer representation of a set (as received e.g. by `GetOrdProp`) and turns it into a string representing the elements in the set, based on the type information found in the `PropInfo` property information. By default, the string representation is not surrounded by square

brackets. Setting the `Brackets` parameter to `True` will surround the string representation with brackets.

The function returns the string representation of the set.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether `PropInfo` points to valid property information.

See also: `GetEnumName` (1921), `GetEnumValue` (1923), `StringToSet` (1947)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex18.pp`

---

```

program example18;

{ This program demonstrates the SetToString function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  I : longint;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'SetField');
  O.SetField :=[ mefirst, meSecond, meThird ];
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Set property to string : ');
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, False));
  O.SetField :=[ mefirst, meSecond ];
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, True));
  I:=StringToSet(PI, 'mefirst');
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, I);
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, False));
  I:=StringToSet(PI, '[mesecond, methird]');
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, I);
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ', SetToString(PI, I, True));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 78.7.53 SetUnicodeStrProp

Synopsis: Set UnicodeString-valued property

**Declaration:** `procedure SetUnicodeStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;`  
   `const Value: UnicodeString)`  
           `procedure SetUnicodeStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;`  
   `const Value: UnicodeString)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetUnicodeStrProp` sets the `UnicodeString` property from `Instance` to `Value`, where the property is identified by the `PropInfo` pointer or the `PropertyName`.

Errors: If no property of the indicated name exists, or it is not of type `unicodestring`, an exception will occur.

See also: `SetStrProp` ([1945](#)), `GetUnicodeStrProp` ([1935](#))

### 78.7.54 SetVariantProp

Synopsis: Set value of a variant property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        const Value: Variant)
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        const Value: Variant)
```

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, this function is not yet implemented. Provided for Delphi compatibility only.

### 78.7.55 SetWideStrProp

Synopsis: Set a widestring property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        const Value: WideString)
procedure SetWideStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        const Value: WideString)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWideStrProp` assigns `Value` to the widestring property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid widestring property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetWideStrProp` ([1936](#)), `SetStrProp` ([1945](#)), `SetOrdProp` ([1943](#)), `SetFloatProp` ([1941](#)), `SetInt64Prop` ([1941](#)), `SetMethodProp` ([1942](#))

### 78.7.56 StringToSet

Synopsis: Convert string description to a set.

Declaration: 

```
function StringToSet(PropInfo: PPropInfo; const Value: string) : LongInt
function StringToSet(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const Value: string) : LongInt
procedure StringToSet(PropInfo: PPropInfo; const Value: string;
                    Result: Pointer)
procedure StringToSet(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const Value: string;
                    Result: Pointer)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToSet` converts the string representation of a set in `Value` to a integer representation of the set, using the property information found in `PropInfo`. This property information should point to the property information of a set property. The function returns the integer representation of the set. (i.e, the set value, typecast to an integer)

The string representation can be surrounded with square brackets, and must consist of the names of the elements of the base type of the set. The base type of the set should be an enumerated type. The elements should be separated by commas, and may be surrounded by spaces. each of the names will be fed to the `GetEnumValue` (1923) function.

For an example, see `SetToString` (1945).

**Errors:** No checking is done to see whether `PropInfo` points to valid property information. If a wrong name is given for an enumerated value, then an `EPropertyError` will be raised.

See also: `GetEnumName` (1921), `GetEnumValue` (1923), `SetToString` (1945)

## 78.8 TArrayTypeData

```
TArrayTypeData = packed record
private
  function GetElType : PTypeInfo
  ;
  function GetDims(aIndex: Byte) : PTypeInfo;
public
  property
    ElType : PTypeInfo;
  property Dims[Index: Byte]: PTypeInfo;
  Size
    : SizeInt;
  ElCount : SizeInt;
  ElTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  DimCount
    : Byte;
  DimsRef : Array[0..255] of PPTypeInfo;
end
```

`TArrayTypeData` is used to describe arrays in RTTI. It can be encountered when the type kind is `tkArray`, and is used for both static and dynamic arrays and single or multi-dimensional arrays. The type of the array elements is described in `elType`, and the ranges for each of the dimensions (specified in `DimCount` in `Dims`).

### 78.8.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1949</a>	<code>Dims</code>	r	Range information for each dimension in the array
<a href="#">1948</a>	<code>ElType</code>	r	Type information for an element in the array

### 78.8.2 TArrayTypeData.ElType

**Synopsis:** Type information for an element in the array

**Declaration:** `Property ElType : PTypeInfo`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

### 78.8.3 TArrayTypeData.Dims

Synopsis: Range information for each dimension in the array

Declaration: `Property Dims[Index: Byte]: PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.9 TClassData

```
TClassData = packed record
private
    function GetUnitName : ShortString
    ;
    function GetPropertyTable : PPropData;
public
    ClassType : TClass
    ;
    Parent : PTypeInfo;
    PropCount : SmallInt;
    property UnitName
        : ShortString;
    property PropertyTable : PPropData;
private
    UnitNameField
        : ShortString;
end
```

### 78.9.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1949</a>	PropertyTable	r	
<a href="#">1949</a>	UnitName	r	

### 78.9.2 TClassData.UnitName

Declaration: `Property UnitName : ShortString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.9.3 TClassData.PropertyTable

Declaration: `Property PropertyTable : PPropData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.10 TInterfaceData

```
TInterfaceData = packed record
private
    function GetUnitName : ShortString
    ;
    function GetPropertyTable : PPropData;
    function GetMethodTable
    : PIntfMethodTable;
public
    Parent : PTypeInfo;
    Flags : TIntfFlagsBase
    ;
    GUID : TGUID;
    property UnitName : ShortString;
    property PropertyTable
    : PPropData;
    property MethodTable : PIntfMethodTable;
private
    UnitNameField : ShortString;
end
```

### 78.10.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1950</a>	MethodTable	r	
<a href="#">1950</a>	PropertyTable	r	
<a href="#">1950</a>	UnitName	r	

### 78.10.2 TInterfaceData.UnitName

Declaration: Property UnitName : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.10.3 TInterfaceData.PropertyTable

Declaration: Property PropertyTable : PPropData

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.10.4 TInterfaceData.MethodTable

Declaration: Property MethodTable : PIntfMethodTable

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.11 TInterfaceRawData

```

TInterfaceRawData = packed record
private
    function GetUnitName
      : ShortString;
    function GetIIDStr : ShortString;
    function GetPropertyTable
      : PPropData;
    function GetMethodTable : PIntfMethodTable;
public
    Parent : PTypeInfo;
    Flags : TIntfFlagsBase;
    IID : TGUID;
    property UnitName : ShortString;
    property IIDStr : ShortString
    ;
    property PropertyTable : PPropData;
    property MethodTable : PIntfMethodTable
    ;
private
    UnitNameField : ShortString;
end

```

### 78.11.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1951</a>	IIDStr	r	
<a href="#">1952</a>	MethodTable	r	
<a href="#">1951</a>	PropertyTable	r	
<a href="#">1951</a>	UnitName	r	

### 78.11.2 TInterfaceRawData.UnitName

Declaration: Property UnitName : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.11.3 TInterfaceRawData.IIDStr

Declaration: Property IIDStr : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.11.4 TInterfaceRawData.PropertyTable

Declaration: Property PropertyTable : PPropData



Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.11.5 TInterfaceRawData.MethodTable

Declaration: Property MethodTable : PIntfMethodTable

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.12 TIntfMethodEntry

```
TIntfMethodEntry = packed record
private
    function GetParam(Index
        : Word) : PVmtMethodParam;
    function GetResultLocs : PParameterLocations
    ;
    function GetTail : Pointer;
    function GetNext : PIntfMethodEntry
    ;
    function GetName : ShortString;
public
    ResultType : PTypeInfo
    ;
    CC : TCallConv;
    Kind : TMethodKind;
    ParamCount : Word;
    StackSize
    : SizeInt;
    NamePtr : PShortString;
    property Name : ShortString
    ;
    property Param[Index: Word]: PVmtMethodParam;
    property ResultLocs
    : PParameterLocations;
    property Tail : Pointer;
    property Next
    : PIntfMethodEntry;
end
```

### 78.12.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1953</a>	Name	r	
<a href="#">1953</a>	Next	r	
<a href="#">1953</a>	Param	r	
<a href="#">1953</a>	ResultLocs	r	
<a href="#">1953</a>	Tail	r	

### 78.12.2 TIntfMethodEntry.Name

Declaration: Property Name : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.12.3 TIntfMethodEntry.Param

Declaration: Property Param[Index: Word]: PVmtMethodParam

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.12.4 TIntfMethodEntry.ResultLocs

Declaration: Property ResultLocs : PParameterLocations

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.12.5 TIntfMethodEntry.Tail

Declaration: Property Tail : Pointer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.12.6 TIntfMethodEntry.Next

Declaration: Property Next : PIntfMethodEntry

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.13 TIntfMethodTable

```
TIntfMethodTable = packed record
private
    function GetMethod(Index
        : Word) : PIntfMethodEntry;
public
    Count : Word;
    RTTICount : Word
;
    property Method[Index: Word]: PIntfMethodEntry;
end
```

### 78.13.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1954</a>	Method	r	

### 78.13.2 TIntfMethodTable.Method

Declaration: `Property Method[Index: Word]: PIntfMethodEntry`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.14 TManagedField

```
TManagedField = packed record
private
    function GetTypeRef : PTypeInfo
;
public
    property TypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    TypeRefRef : PTypeInfo
;
    FldOffset : SizeInt;
end
```

TManagedField describes 1 managed field in a record. It consists of type information (TypeRef) and an offset in the record's memory layout (FldOffset). Size can be determined from the type information.

### 78.14.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1954</a>	TypeRef	r	Type information for the field

### 78.14.2 TManagedField.TypeRef

Synopsis: Type information for the field

Declaration: `Property TypeRef : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.15 TParameterLocation

```
TParameterLocation = packed record
private
    LocType : Byte;
    function
```

```

    GetRegType : TRegisterType;
    function GetReference : Boolean;
    function GetShiftVal : Int8;
public
    RegSub : TSubRegister;
    RegNumber
    : Word;
    Offset : SizeInt;
    property Reference : Boolean;
    property
    RegType : TRegisterType;
    property ShiftVal : Int8;
end

```

### 78.15.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1955</a>	Reference	r	
<a href="#">1955</a>	RegType	r	
<a href="#">1955</a>	ShiftVal	r	

### 78.15.2 TParameterLocation.Reference

Declaration: Property Reference : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.15.3 TParameterLocation.RegType

Declaration: Property RegType : TRegisterType

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.15.4 TParameterLocation.ShiftVal

Declaration: Property ShiftVal : Int8

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.16 TParameterLocations

```

TParameterLocations = packed record
private
    function GetLocation
    (aIndex: Byte) : PParameterLocation;

```

```

    function GetTail : Pointer
    ;
public
    Count : Byte;
    property Location[Index: Byte]: PParameterLocation
    ;
    property Tail : Pointer;
end

```

### 78.16.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1956</a>	Location	r	
<a href="#">1956</a>	Tail	r	

### 78.16.2 TParameterLocations.Location

Declaration: `Property Location[Index: Byte]: PParameterLocation`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

### 78.16.3 TParameterLocations.Tail

Declaration: `Property Tail : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

## 78.17 TProcedureParam

```

TProcedureParam = packed record
private
    function GetParamType :
    PTypeInfo;
    function GetFlags : Byte;
public
    property ParamType
    : PTypeInfo;
    property Flags : Byte;
    ParamFlags : TParamFlags
    ;
    ParamTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    Name : ShortString;
end

```

`TProcedureParam` describes a single parameter to a procedure (or function).

### 78.17.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1957</a>	Flags	r	Flags for this parameter (see TParamFlags)
<a href="#">1957</a>	ParamType	r	Type information for this parameter

### 78.17.2 TProcedureParam.ParamType

Synopsis: Type information for this parameter

Declaration: `Property ParamType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.17.3 TProcedureParam.Flags

Synopsis: Flags for this parameter (see TParamFlags)

Declaration: `Property Flags : Byte`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.18 TProcedureSignature

```

TProcedureSignature = packed record
private
    function GetResultType
        : PTypeInfo;
public
    property ResultType : PTypeInfo;
    Flags :
        Byte;
    CC : TCallConv;
    ResultTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
    ParamCount
        : Byte;
    function GetParam(ParamIndex: Integer) : PProcedureParam
;
end

```

TProcedureSignature describes a procedure/method call signature. It consists of some flags (Flags), a calling convention (CC), the result type (ResultType) if any, and a list of ParamCount parameters (of type TProcedureParam ([1956](#))).

### 78.18.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1958</a>	GetParam	Get parameter signature

### 78.18.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1958</a>	ResultType	r	Result type info (Nil if no result)

### 78.18.3 TProcedureSignature.GetParam

Synopsis: Get parameter signature

Declaration: `function GetParam(ParamIndex: Integer) : PProcedureParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetParam` can be used to retrieve a pointer to the description of a parameter. The index `ParamIndex` is zero-based.

Errors: In case of an invalid parameter index, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TProcedureParam` ([1956](#))

### 78.18.4 TProcedureSignature.ResultType

Synopsis: Result type info (Nil if no result)

Declaration: `Property ResultType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.19 TPropData

```

TPropData = packed record
private
    function GetProp(Index: Word)
        : PPropInfo;
    function GetTail : Pointer;
public
    PropCount : Word
    ;
    PropList : record
    public
        _alignmentdummy : puint;
    end
    ;
    property Prop[Index: Word]: PPropInfo;
    property Tail : Pointer
    ;
end

```

The `TPropData` record is not used, but is provided for completeness and compatibility with Delphi.

**78.19.1 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1959</a>	Prop	r	
<a href="#">1959</a>	Tail	r	

**78.19.2 TPropData.Prop**

Declaration: `Property Prop[Index: Word]: PPropInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.19.3 TPropData.Tail**

Declaration: `Property Tail : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.20 TPropInfo**

```

TPropInfo = packed record
private
    function GetPropType : PTypeInfo
    ;
    function GetTail : Pointer;
    function GetNext : PPropInfo;
public
    PropTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    GetProc : CodePointer;
    SetProc :
    CodePointer;
    StoredProc : CodePointer;
    Index : Integer;
    Default
    : LongInt;
    NameIndex : SmallInt;
    PropProcs : Byte;
    Name : ShortString
    ;
    property PropType : PTypeInfo;
    property Tail : Pointer;
    property
    Next : PPropInfo;
end

```

The `TPropInfo` record describes one published property of a class. The property information of a class are stored as an array of `TPropInfo` records.

The `Name` field is stored not with 255 characters, but with just as many characters as required to store the name.



**78.20.1 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1960</a>	Next	r	
<a href="#">1960</a>	PropType	r	Property type
<a href="#">1960</a>	Tail	r	

**78.20.2 TPropInfo.PropertyType**

Synopsis: Property type

Declaration: `Property PropType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.20.3 TPropInfo.Tail**

Declaration: `Property Tail : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.20.4 TPropInfo.Next**

Declaration: `Property Next : PPropInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.21 TTypeData**

```

TTypeData = packed record
private
    function GetBaseType : PTypeInfo
    ;
    function GetCompType : PTypeInfo;
    function GetParentInfo : PTypeInfo
    ;
    function GetRecInitData : PRecInitData;
    function GetHelperParent
    : PTypeInfo;
    function GetExtendedInfo : PTypeInfo;
    function GetIntfParent
    : PTypeInfo;
    function GetRawIntfParent : PTypeInfo;
    function
    GetIIDStr : ShortString;
    function GetElType : PTypeInfo;
    function
    GetElType2 : PTypeInfo;

```

```

function GetInstanceType : PTypeInfo;
function GetRefType : PTypeInfo;
public
property BaseType : PTypeInfo
;
property CompType : PTypeInfo;
property ParentInfo : PTypeInfo
;
property RecInitData : PRecInitData;
property HelperParent
: PTypeInfo;
property ExtendedInfo : PTypeInfo;
property IntfParent
: PTypeInfo;
property RawIntfParent : PTypeInfo;
property IIDStr
: ShortString;
property ElType2 : PTypeInfo;
property ElType
: PTypeInfo;
property InstanceType : PTypeInfo;
property RefType
: PTypeInfo;
case TTypeKind of
tkUnknown: (
);, tkLString: (
);,
    tkWString: (
);, tkVariant: (
);, tkUString: (
);
tkAString: (
public
    CodePage : Word;
);
tkInt64: (
public
    OrdType : TOrdType;
case
    TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue
    : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar: (
public

```

```

    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue :
    LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkBool: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value
    : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64;
);
tkQWord: (
public
    MinQWordValue

```

```

    : QWord;
    MaxQWordValue : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
    SetSize :
    SizeInt;
    CompTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
);
);, tkQWord: (
public
    OrdType
    : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt
    ;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar
    : (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
    of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList
    : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt
    ;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkBool
    : (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;

```

```

case TTypeKind
  of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
  NameList
    : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue
    : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
  MinInt64Value : Int64;
  MaxInt64Value : Int64;
);
tkQWord: (
public
  MinQWordValue : QWord;
  MaxQWordValue : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
  SetSize : SizeInt;
  CompTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
);
);, tkInteger
  : (
public
  OrdType : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
  : (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar: (
public

```

```

    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue
    : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkBool: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue :
    LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration:
    (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
    );
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64
    ;
);
tkQWord: (

```

```

public
  MinQWordValue : QWord;
  MaxQWordValue :
    QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
  SetSize : SizeInt;
  CompTypeRef : PPTypeInfo
  ;
);
);, tkChar: (
public
  OrdType : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
  tkInteger: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case
  TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt
  ;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration
  : (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
  of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList
  : ShortString;
);
);, tkBool: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue

```

```

    : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value
    : Int64;
);
tkQWord: (
public
    MinQWordValue : QWord;
    MaxQWordValue
    : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
    SetSize : SizeInt;
    CompTypeRef :
    PTypeInfo;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    OrdType : TOrdType;
    case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue
    : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);

```



```

);, tkChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue :
    LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkBool: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value
    : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64;
    );
tkQWord: (

```

```

public
  MinQWordValue
    : QWord;
  MaxQWordValue : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
  SetSize :
  SizeInt;
  CompTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
);
);, tkBool: (
public
  OrdType
    : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt
    ;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar
  : (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
  of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList
    : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt
    ;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkBool
  : (
public

```

```

    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
  of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
  NameList
    : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue
    : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
  BaseTypeRef
    : PTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
  MinInt64Value : Int64;
  MaxInt64Value : Int64;
);
tkQWord: (
public
  MinQWordValue : QWord;
  MaxQWordValue : QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
  SetSize : SizeInt;
  CompTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
);
);, tkWChar:
(
public
  OrdType : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger: (
public
  MinValue : LongInt;
  MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
  : (
public
  BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
  NameList : ShortString;
);
);

```

```

);, tkChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue
    : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkBool: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue :
    LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration:
    (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64
    ;

```

```

);
tkQWord: (
public
    MinQWordValue : QWord;
    MaxQWordValue :
        QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
    SetSize : SizeInt;
    CompTypeRef : PPTypeInfo
    ;
);
);, tkSet: (
public
    OrdType : TOrdType;
case TTypeKind of
tkInteger
    : (
public
        MinValue : LongInt;
        MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind
    of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
    NameList
        : ShortString;
);
);, tkChar: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue
        : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef
        : PPTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkEnumeration: (
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration
    : (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PPTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
    );
);, tkBool: (

```

```
public
    MinValue : LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt
    ;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration: (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);, tkWChar: (
public
    MinValue :
        LongInt;
    MaxValue : LongInt;
case TTypeKind of
tkEnumeration:
    (
public
    BaseTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
    NameList : ShortString;
);
);
tkInt64: (
public
    MinInt64Value : Int64;
    MaxInt64Value : Int64
    ;
);
tkQWord: (
public
    MinQWordValue : QWord;
    MaxQWordValue :
        QWord;
);
tkSet: (
public
    SetSize : SizeInt;
    CompTypeRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
);
);
tkFloat: (
public
    FloatType : TFloatType;
);
tkSSString:
    (
public
    MaxLength : Byte;
);
tkClass: (
public
```

```

    ClassType : TClass
    ;
    ParentInfoRef : PTypeInfo;
    PropCount : SmallInt;
    UnitName
    : ShortString;
);
tkRecord: (
public
    RecInitInfo : Pointer;
    RecSize
    : Integer;
case Boolean of
False: (
public
    ManagedFldCount : Integerdeprecated
    ;
);
True: (
public
    TotalFieldCount : Integer;
);
);
tkHelper:
(
public
    HelperParentRef : PTypeInfo;
    ExtendedInfoRef : PTypeInfo
    ;
    HelperProps : SmallInt;
    HelperUnit : ShortString;
);
tkMethod
: (
public
    MethodKind : TMethodKind;
    ParamCount : Byte;
    ParamList
    : Array[0..1023] of Char;
);
tkProcVar: (
public
    ProcSig : TProcedureSignature
    ;
);
tkInterface: (
public
    IntfParentRef : PTypeInfo;
    IntfFlags
    : TIntfFlagsBase;
    GUID : TGUID;
    IntfUnit : ShortString;
);
tkInterfaceRaw

```

```

    : (
public
  RawIntfParentRef : PTypeInfo;
  RawIntfFlags : TIntfFlagsBase
  ;
  IID : TGUID;
  RawIntfUnit : ShortString;
);
tkArray: (
public
  ArrayData : TArrayTypeData;
);
tkDynArray: (
public
  elSize :
  PtrUInt;
  elType2Ref : PTypeInfo;
  varType : LongInt;
  elTypeRef
  : PTypeInfo;
  DynUnitName : ShortStringBase;
);
tkClassRef: (
public
  InstanceTypeRef : PTypeInfo;
);
tkPointer: (
public
  RefTypeRef
  : PTypeInfo;
);
end

```

If the typeinfo kind is `tkClass`, then the property information follows the `UnitName` string, as an array of `TPropInfo` ([1959](#)) records.

### 78.21.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1976</a>	BaseType	r	Base type on which this type is based.
<a href="#">1976</a>	CompType	r	Comp type
<a href="#">1978</a>	ElType	r	Dynamical array Element type
<a href="#">1977</a>	ElType2	r	Dynamical array Element type
<a href="#">1977</a>	ExtendedInfo	r	Type information for the extended type (record or class).
<a href="#">1976</a>	HelperParent	r	Type information for parent helper class
<a href="#">1977</a>	IIDStr	r	IID string representation of interface
<a href="#">1978</a>	InstanceType	r	Pointer to instance type data
<a href="#">1977</a>	IntfParent	r	Parent interface type data.
<a href="#">1976</a>	ParentInfo	r	Parent class type info
<a href="#">1977</a>	RawIntfParent	r	Raw interface parent.
<a href="#">1976</a>	RecInitData	r	
<a href="#">1978</a>	RefType	r	Type info for referred type (Nil for untyped pointer)



### 78.21.2 TTypeData.BaseType

Synopsis: Base type on which this type is based.

Declaration: `Property BaseType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.3 TTypeData.CompType

Synopsis: Comp type

Declaration: `Property CompType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.4 TTypeData.ParentInfo

Synopsis: Parent class type info

Declaration: `Property ParentInfo : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.5 TTypeData.RecInitData

Declaration: `Property RecInitData : PRecInitData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.6 TTypeData.HelperParent

Synopsis: Type information for parent helper class

Declaration: `Property HelperParent : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `HelperParent` points to the type information of the parent helper class. It is `Nil` if there is no parent class.

See also: `TTypeData.ExtendedInfo` ([1977](#))

### 78.21.7 TTypeData.ExtendedInfo

Synopsis: Type information for the extended type (record or class).

Declaration: `Property ExtendedInfo : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ExtendedInfo` points to the type information of the type that is being extended.

See also: `TTypeData.HelperParent` ([1976](#))

### 78.21.8 TTypeData.IntfParent

Synopsis: Parent interface type data.

Declaration: `Property IntfParent : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.9 TTypeData.RawIntfParent

Synopsis: Raw interface parent.

Declaration: `Property RawIntfParent : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.10 TTypeData.IIDStr

Synopsis: IID string representation of interface

Declaration: `Property IIDStr : ShortString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.21.11 TTypeData.ElType2

Synopsis: Dynamical array Element type

Declaration: `Property ElType2 : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.21.12 TTypeData.ElType**

Synopsis: Dynamical array Element type

Declaration: `Property ElType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.21.13 TTypeData.InstanceType**

Synopsis: Pointer to instance type data

Declaration: `Property InstanceType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.21.14 TTypeData.RefType**

Synopsis: Type info for referred type (Nil for untyped pointer)

Declaration: `Property RefType : PTypeInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**78.22 TVmtFieldEntry**

```
TVmtFieldEntry = packed record
private
  function GetNext : PVmtFieldEntry
  ;
  function GetTail : Pointer;
public
  FieldOffset : PtrUInt;
  TypeIndex : Word;
  Name : ShortString;
  property Tail : Pointer
  ;
  property Next : PVmtFieldEntry;
end
```

TVmtFieldEntry records are generated by the compiler for all fields of a record or class that have RTTI associated with them. They describe the field as known to the compiler.

**78.22.1 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1979</a>	Next	r	
<a href="#">1979</a>	Tail	r	

### 78.22.2 TVmtFieldEntry.Tail

Declaration: Property Tail : Pointer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.22.3 TVmtFieldEntry.Next

Declaration: Property Next : PVmtFieldEntry

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.23 TVmtFieldTable

```

TVmtFieldTable = packed record
private
  function GetField(aIndex
    : Word) : PVmtFieldEntry;
public
  Count : Word;
  ClassTab : PVmtFieldClassTab
  ;
  Fields : Array[0..0] of TVmtFieldEntry;
  property Field[aIndex
    : Word]: PVmtFieldEntry;
end

```

TVmtFieldTable describes the fields for which RTTI was generated. A TVmtFieldTable entry is generated by the compiler in the RTTI information, it is not something one creates manually. Basically it contains a list of TVmtFieldEntry ([1978](#)) values.

### 78.23.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1979</a>	Field	r	

### 78.23.2 TVmtFieldTable.Field

Declaration: Property Field[aIndex: Word]: PVmtFieldEntry

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.24 TVmtMethodParam

```

TVmtMethodParam = packed record
private

```

```

    function GetTail : Pointer
    ;
    function GetNext : PVmtMethodParam;
    function GetName : ShortString
    ;
public
    ParamType : PTypeInfo;
    Flags : TParamFlags;
    NamePtr
    : PShortString;
    ParaLocs : PParameterLocations;
    property Name
    : ShortString;
    property Tail : Pointer;
    property Next : PVmtMethodParam
    ;
end

```

### 78.24.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1980</a>	Name	r	
<a href="#">1980</a>	Next	r	
<a href="#">1980</a>	Tail	r	

### 78.24.2 TVmtMethodParam.Name

Declaration: Property Name : ShortString

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.24.3 TVmtMethodParam.Tail

Declaration: Property Tail : Pointer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

### 78.24.4 TVmtMethodParam.Next

Declaration: Property Next : PVmtMethodParam

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 78.25 TVmtMethodTable

```

TVmtMethodTable = packed record
private
    function GetEntry(Index
        : LongWord) : PVmtMethodEntry;
public
    Count : LongWord;
    property
        Entry[Index: LongWord]: PVmtMethodEntry;
private
    Entries : Array
        [0..0] of TVmtMethodEntry;
end

```

### 78.25.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">1981</a>	Entry	r	

### 78.25.2 TVmtMethodTable.Entry

**Declaration:** `Property Entry[Index: LongWord]: PVmtMethodEntry`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

## 78.26 EPropertyConvertError

### 78.26.1 Description

`EPropertyConvertError` is not used in the Free Pascal implementation of the `typinfo` unit, but is declared for Delphi compatibility.

## 78.27 EPropertyError

### 78.27.1 Description

Exception raised in case of an error in one of the functions.

## Chapter 79

# Reference for unit 'unicodedata'

### 79.1 Overview

The `fpwidingstring` (1982) unit relies on having relevant Unicode collation data linked in the binary. The Unicode data is managed using the routines in the `unicodedata` unit. The FPC project distributes some Unicode collation data in `.bco` files which can be loaded using the `LoadCollation` (1993) routines. The `LoadCollation` is the main routine of this unit.

All collation data requires at least the Default Unicode Collation Element Table to be registered (called `DUCET`). The `DUCET` encoding is provided by the `unicodeducet` unit, part of the `rtl-Unicode` package.

There are two ways to register collations :

1. **at compile time**: by including the desired collation unit, for example for Russian and Japanese languages to be available you will have to include `collation_ru` and `collation_ja` from package "rtl-unicode".
2. **at runtime** using the above mentioned `LoadCollation` function.

The two ways can co-exist: some collations may be compile time included (for example for most used collations) and others can be loaded at runtime in the same application.

The binary collation files are endian sensitive:

- there are files for little endian systems named `collation__le.bco` (such as `collation_ru_le.bco` and `collation_ja_le.bco`)
- there are files for big endian systems named `collation__be.bco` (such as `collation_ru_be.bco` and `collation_ja_be.bco`).

Note that the compile time units collation units (`collation_lang.pas`) include already the `unicodeducet.pas` (`DUCET`) unit so it is not necessary to include it manually, contrary to the binary files. So an application that only uses the binary collation files should at least include the `unicodeducet` unit or manually load the binary collation `collation_ducet_le.bco` or `collation_ducet_be.bco`, depending on the endianness of the platform. The `LoadCollation` (1993) call using a directory and the language `ducet` automatically select the correct file.

## 79.2 Constants, types and variables

### 79.2.1 Resource strings

`SCollationNotFound` = 'Collation not found : "%s".'

Error message when a collation is not found.

### 79.2.2 Constants

`DEFAULT_UCA_COMPARISON_STRENGTH` = 3

`DirectorySeparator` = '/'

`ENDIAN_NATIVE` = `TEndianKind.Little`

`ENDIAN_NON_NATIVE` = `TEndianKind.Big`

`ENDIAN_SUFFIX` : `Array[TEndianKind] of UnicodeString` = ('le', 'be')

`ENDIAN_SUFFIX` contains the suffixes used in `LoadCollation` (1993) when constructing a collation filename for a language.

`ERROR_INVALID_CODEPOINT_SEQUENCE` = 1

Error exit code for `UnicodeToLower/UnicodeToUpper`

`HIGH_SURROGATE_BEGIN` = `Word($D800)`

First value for high surrogate values.

`HIGH_SURROGATE_COUNT` = `HIGH_SURROGATE_END` - `HIGH_SURROGATE_BEGIN`  
+ 1

Number of high surrogate values.

`HIGH_SURROGATE_END` = `Word($DBFF)`

Last value for high surrogate values.

`LOW_SURROGATE_BEGIN` = `Word($DC00)`

First value for low surrogate values.

`LOW_SURROGATE_END` = `Word($DFFF)`

Last value for low surrogate values.



`MAX_LEGAL_UTF32 = $10FFFF`

Maximum value of a legally encoded UTF32 value (currently unused)

`MAX_WORD = High (Word)`

`MAX_WORD` is the maximum value of a `WORD` typed value.

`reCodesetConversion = reRangeError`

`ROOT_COLLATION_NAME = 'DUCET'`

Name of the root collation (used if no collation name is given)

`UCS4_HALF_BASE = LongWord ($10000)`

Offset for UCS4 character encoding

`UCS4_HALF_MASK = Word ($3FF)`

Unused currently

`UGC_ClosePunctuation = 14`

Unicode token category: Close punctuation

`UGC_CombiningMark = 6`

Unicode token category: Uppercase letter

`UGC_ConnectPunctuation = 11`

Unicode token category: Connect punctuation

`UGC_Control = 25`

Unicode token category: control token

`UGC_CurrencySymbol = 19`

Unicode token category: Currency symbol

`UGC_DashPunctuation = 12`

Unicode token category: Dash punctuation

`UGC_DecimalNumber = 8`

Unicode token category: Uppercase letter

UGC\_EnclosingMark = 7

Unicode token category: Uppercase letter

UGC\_FinalPunctuation = 16

Unicode token category: Final punctuation

UGC\_Format = 26

Unicode token category: Formatting token

UGC\_InitialPunctuation = 15

Unicode token category: Initial punctuation

UGC\_LetterNumber = 9

Unicode token category: Letter-number

UGC\_LineSeparator = 23

Unicode token category: Line separator

UGC\_LowercaseLetter = 1

Unicode general category: Lowercase letter

UGC\_MathSymbol = 18

Unicode token category: Math symbol

UGC\_ModifierLetter = 3

Unicode general category: modifier letter

UGC\_ModifierSymbol = 20

Unicode token category: modifier symbol

UGC\_NonSpacingMark = 5

Unicode general category: Non-spacing mark

UGC\_OpenPunctuation = 13

Unicode token category: Open punctuation

UGC\_OtherLetter = 4

Unicode general category: Other letter

UGC\_OtherNumber = 10

Unicode token category: Other number

UGC\_OtherPunctuation = 17

Unicode token category: Other punctuation

UGC\_OtherSymbol = 21

Unicode token category: Other symbol

UGC\_ParagraphSeparator = 24

Unicode token category: Paragraph separator

UGC\_PrivateUse = 28

Unicode token category: For private use

UGC\_SpaceSeparator = 22

Unicode token category: Space separator

UGC\_Surrogate = 27

Unicode token category: Surrogate token

UGC\_TitlecaseLetter = 2

Unicode general category: Titlecase letter

UGC\_Unassigned = 29

Unicode token category: As yet unassigned

UGC\_UppercaseLetter = 0

Unicode general category: Uppercase letter

```
UnicodeCategoryNames : Array[0..29] of string = ('Lu', 'Ll', 'Lt'
, 'Lm', 'Lo', 'Mn', 'Mc', 'Me', 'Nd', 'Nl', 'No', 'Pc', 'Pd', 'Ps'
, 'Pe', 'Pi', 'Pf', 'Po', 'Sm', 'Sc', 'Sk', 'So', 'Zs', 'Zl', 'Zp'
, 'Cc', 'Cf', 'Cs', 'Co', 'Cn')
```

ZERO\_UINT24 : UInt24 = (byte0: 0; byte1: 0; byte2: 0)

TUInt24Rec value with all bytes zero.

### 79.2.3 Types

DWord = UInt32

PCollationTableItem = ^TCollationTableItem

PDWord = ^DWord

PtrInt = NativeInt

PtrUInt = NativeUInt

PUCA\_DataBook = ^TUCA\_DataBook

**Pointer to TUCA\_DataBook type.**

PUCA\_PropItemContextRec = ^TUCA\_PropItemContextRec

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropItemContextRec**

PUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec =  
^TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec**

PUCA\_PropItemContextTreeRec = ^TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeRec

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeRec**

PUCA\_PropItemRec = ^TUCA\_PropItemRec

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropItemRec**

PUCA\_PropWeights = ^TUCA\_PropWeights

**Pointer to TUCA\_PropWeights**

PUC\_Prop = ^TUC\_Prop

**Pointer to TUC\_Prop record**

PUInt24 = ^UInt24

**Pointer to UInt24Rec**

PUnicodeChar = ^UnicodeChar

SizeInt = NativeInt

TCategoryMask = Set of

TCollationField = (BackWard, VariableLowLimit, VariableHighLimit, Alternate, Normalization, Strength)

Table 79.1: Enumeration values for type TCollationField

Value	Explanation
Alternate	
BackWard	Backwards encoded
Normalization	
Strength	
VariableHighLimit	Has upper bound on variable weights
VariableLowLimit	Has lower bound on variable weights

TCollationField describes some properties of the collation data items.

TCollationFields = Set of TCollationField

Set of TCollationField

Array = Array[0..(128-1)] of Byte

Collation name string type (fixed length)

```
TCollationTableItem = record
public
  Collation : PUCA_DataBook;
  Aliases : TUnicodeStringArray;
end
```

Array = Array of TCollationTableItem

TCollationVersion = TCollationName

TEndianKind = (Little, Big)

Table 79.2: Enumeration values for type TEndianKind

Value	Explanation
Big	Big-endian platform
Little	Little-endian platform

TEndianKind is an auxiliary enumerated type to enumerate the endianness of platforms.

TSetOfByte = Set of Byte

Array = Array of TUCASortKeyItem

Array of TUCASortKeyItem

TUCASortKeyItem = Word

Alias for WORD

```
TUCA_PropWeights = packed record
public
  Weights : Array[0..2] of
    Word;
end
```

TUC\_PropWeights describes the weights of collation characteristics of a unicode character. It is an internal structure which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

```
TUCA_VariableKind = (ucaShifted, ucaNonIgnorable, ucaBlanked,
  ucaShiftedTrimmed, ucaIgnoreSP)
```

Table 79.3: Enumeration values for type TUCA\_VariableKind

Value	Explanation
ucaBlanked	Variable collation elements and any subsequent ignorable collation elements are reset so that all weigh
ucaIgnoreSP	Not implemented (variant of Shifted that reduces the set of variable collation elements to include only
ucaNonIgnorable	Variable collation elements are not reset to be quaternary collation elements
ucaShifted	Variable collation elements are reset to zero at levels one through three
ucaShiftedTrimmed	This option is the same as Shifted, except that all trailing FFFFs are trimmed from the sort key.

Options for weighting data

Array = Array of UnicodeString

UInt24 = TUInt24Rec

Alias for TUInt24Rec

UnicodeChar = WideChar

## 79.3 Procedures and functions

### 79.3.1 AddAliasCollation

Declaration: function AddAliasCollation (ACollation: PUCA\_DataBook;  
AALias: UnicodeString) : Boolean

Visibility: default

### 79.3.2 BytesToName

**Declaration:** `function BytesToName(const ABytes: Array of Byte) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

### 79.3.3 BytesToString

**Declaration:** `function BytesToString(const ABytes: Array of Byte;  
const AValidChars: TSetOfByte) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

### 79.3.4 CanonicalOrder

**Synopsis:** Put unicode string in canonical order.

**Declaration:** `procedure CanonicalOrder(var AString: UnicodeString); Overload  
procedure CanonicalOrder(AString: PUnicodeChar; const ALength: SizeInt)  
; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CanonicalOrder` transforms a unicode string `AString` (or the alternate form using a null-terminated `AString` with length `ALength`) so it is in canonical order (as defined by the unicode specification). A string needs to be in canonical order to be able to compare strings. This function is called as part of `NormalizeNFD` (1994).

See also: `NormalizeNFD` (1994)

### 79.3.5 CompareSortKey

**Synopsis:** Compare two sort keys.

**Declaration:** `function CompareSortKey(const A: TUCASortKey; const B: TUCASortKey)  
: Integer; Overload  
function CompareSortKey(const A: TUCASortKey; const B: Array of Word)  
: Integer; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CompareSortKey` compares 2 sort keys `A` and `B`. It returns

- a negative number if `A` comes alphabetically ordered before `B`.
- Zero if `A` is alphabetically identical to `B`.
- A positive number if `A` is alphabetically ordered after `B`.

Sort keys can be constructed from unicode strings using `ComputeSortKey` (1991).

See also: `ComputeSortKey` (1991)

### 79.3.6 ComputeSortKey

Synopsis: Compute the sort key for a string

Declaration: 

```
function ComputeSortKey(const AString: UnicodeString;
                        const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook) : TUCASortKey
                        ; Overload
function ComputeSortKey(const AStr: PUnicodeChar;
                        const ALength: SizeInt;
                        const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook) : TUCASortKey
                        ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ComputeSortKey` computes the sort key for a unicode string `AString` (or the alternate form using a null-terminated `AStr` with length `ALength`) using the Unicode Collation Algorithm data in `ACollation`. This key can then be used in `CompareSortKey` ([1990](#)) to compare unicode strings.

See also: `CompareSortKey` ([1990](#))

### 79.3.7 FilterString

Declaration: 

```
function FilterString(const AStr: PUnicodeChar; const ALength: SizeInt;
                     const AExcludedMask: TCategoryMask) : UnicodeString
                     ; Overload
function FilterString(const AStr: UnicodeString;
                     const AExcludedMask: TCategoryMask) : UnicodeString
                     ; Overload
```

Visibility: default

### 79.3.8 FindCollation

Synopsis: Find a collation by name

Declaration: 

```
function FindCollation(AName: UnicodeString) : PUCA_DataBook; Overload
function FindCollation(const AIndex: Integer) : PUCA_DataBook; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `FindCollation` searches a collation with name `AName` or index `AIndex` in the list of known collations and returns a pointer to the collation data. If the requested collation is not known, i.e. the name is not found, or the index is out of range, then `Nil` is returned. The valid index range is 0 to `GetCollationCount-1`.

See also: `GetCollationCount` ([1992](#))

### 79.3.9 FreeCollation

Synopsis: Free collation data.

Declaration: 

```
procedure FreeCollation(AItem: PUCA_DataBook)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeCollation` removes all structures in the collation data from memory. It will not do anything when the header field `Dynamic` is `false`. (collations loaded and registered using `LoadCollation` ([1993](#)) are always dynamic and must be freed).



See also: [LoadCollation \(1993\)](#)

### 79.3.10 FromUCS4

Synopsis: Convert UCS4 to UnicodeChar

Declaration: `procedure FromUCS4(const AValue: UCS4Char; out AHighS: UnicodeChar;  
out ALowS: UnicodeChar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FromUCS4` converts the UCS4 encoded unicode character `AValue` to a set of unicode (surrogate pair) characters encoded in UTF16: `AHighS`, `ALowS`.

See also: [ToUCS4 \(1995\)](#), [UnicodeIsHighSurrogate \(1995\)](#), [UnicodeIsLowSurrogate \(1996\)](#), [UnicodeIsSurrogatePair \(1996\)](#)

### 79.3.11 GetCollationCount

Synopsis: Return the number of known collations.

Declaration: `function GetCollationCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCollationCount` returns the number of registered collations. The collation data can be retrieved by index using the [FindCollation \(1991\)](#). The maximum index is `GetCollationCount-1`.

See also: [FindCollation \(1991\)](#)

### 79.3.12 GetProps

Synopsis: Get unicode character data

Declaration: `function GetProps(const ACodePoint: Word) : PUC_Prop; Overload  
function GetProps(const AHighS: UnicodeChar; const ALowS: UnicodeChar)  
: PUC_Prop; Overload  
function GetProps(const ACodePoint: Cardinal) : PUC_Prop; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProps` returns a pointer to a general unicode character property data structure. The character can be specified using a word or cardinal sized codepoint (`ACodePoint`), or using a UTF16 encoded surrogate pair (`AHighS`, `ALowS`).

The returned pointer must not be freed, it points to part of a static structure.

See also: [GetPropUCA \(1992\)](#)

### 79.3.13 GetPropUCA

Synopsis: Get unicode collation algorithm properties for a unicode character

**Declaration:**

```
function GetPropUCA(const AHighS: UnicodeChar;
                   const ALowS: UnicodeChar; const ABook: PUCA_DataBook)
    : PUCA_PropItemRec; Overload
function GetPropUCA(const AChar: UnicodeChar;
                   const ABook: PUCA_DataBook) : PUCA_PropItemRec
    ; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetPropUCA returns UCA data for the unicode character (AChar) or surrogate pair AHighS, ALowS) in the collation data book ABook. If no data is available, Nil is returned.

**Errors:** if an invalid ABook is specified, an access violation may occur.

**See also:** GetProps ([1992](#))

### 79.3.14 IncrementalCompareString

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 strings using the specified collation

**Declaration:**

```
function IncrementalCompareString(const AStrA: PUnicodeChar;
                                const ALengthA: SizeInt;
                                const AStrB: PUnicodeChar;
                                const ALengthB: SizeInt;
                                const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook)
    : Integer; Overload
function IncrementalCompareString(const AStrA: UnicodeString;
                                const AStrB: UnicodeString;
                                const ACollation: PUCA_DataBook)
    : Integer; Overload
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncrementalCompareString creates 2 compare keys from the strings AStrA and AStrB using collation data in ACollation. The keys are computed only to the point where the two strings differ. This means the keys cannot be reused for other comparisons if the strings differ. The two strings can be specified as a unicode string or as a pointer to a null-terminated character array with a length (ALengthA and ALengthB). It returns then the result of CompareSortKey ([1990](#)).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** ComputeSortKey ([1991](#)), CompareSortKey ([1990](#))

### 79.3.15 LoadCollation

**Synopsis:** Load a binary collation data file from file

**Declaration:**

```
function LoadCollation(const AData: Pointer;
                      const ADataLength: Integer;
                      var AAliases: TUnicodeStringArray) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload
function LoadCollation(const AData: Pointer; const ADataLength: Integer)
    : PUCA_DataBook; Overload
function LoadCollation(const AFileName: UnicodeString;
                      var AAliases: TUnicodeStringArray) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload
```

```

function LoadCollation(const AFileName: UnicodeString) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload
function LoadCollation(const ADirectory: UnicodeString;
    const ALanguage: UnicodeString;
    var AAliases: TUnicodeStringArray) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload
function LoadCollation(const ADirectory: UnicodeString;
    const ALanguage: UnicodeString) : PUCA_DataBook
    ; Overload

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `LoadCollation` loads collation data from file `AFileName`, or from a memory block `AData` with length `ADataLength`. If successful, it returns a pointer which can be used to register the collation using `RegisterCollation` (1995). If there is a problem with the data, `Nil` is returned.

The filename can also be specified as a `Directory` and language name `ALanguage`. The latter is prepended with `collation_` and appended with the native endianness of the current platform, and has extension `.bco`

**Errors:** If the file containing data does not exist or has a size which is less than the encoded header size, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `RegisterCollation` (1995)

### 79.3.16 NormalizeNFD

**Synopsis:** Perform unicode normalization D on a string

```

Declaration: function NormalizeNFD(const AString: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString
    ; Overload
function NormalizeNFD(const AStr: PUnicodeChar; ALength: SizeInt)
    : UnicodeString; Overload

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `NormalizeNFD` normalizes the string `AString` (or the alternate form using a null-terminated `AStr` with length `ALength`) to Unicode Normalization Form D. The resulting string can be used to determine equivalence of unicode strings.

See also: `CanonicalOrder` (1990)

### 79.3.17 PrepareCollation

**Synopsis:** Prepare a collation for use in the list

```

Declaration: procedure PrepareCollation(ACollation: PUCA_DataBook;
    const ABaseName: UnicodeString;
    const AChangedFields: TCollationFields)

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `PrepareCollation` will link collation definition `ACollation` to the base collection with name `ABaseName` (if empty, it defaults to the root collation). It will also initialize some fields in the definition, copying them from the base collation, but excludes the fields enumerated in `AChangedFields`.

It should normally not be needed to call this function, it is called as part of `LoadCollation` (1993).

See also: `LoadCollation` (1993)



### 79.3.21 `UnicodeIsLowSurrogate`

**Synopsis:** Check if a UTF16 character is the low character in a surrogate pair.

**Declaration:** `function UnicodeIsLowSurrogate(const AValue: UnicodeChar) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeIsHighSurrogate` checks whether `AValue` is a valid high character of a surrogate pair, and returns `True` if this is the case. It does this by checking whether the values are within the bounds for high characters in surrogate pairs.

See also: `FromUCS4` (1992), `ToUCS4` (1995), `UnicodeIsHighSurrogate` (1995), `UnicodeIsSurrogatePair` (1996)

### 79.3.22 `UnicodeIsSurrogatePair`

**Synopsis:** Check if a pair of UTF16 encoded characters is a valid surrogate pair.

**Declaration:** `function UnicodeIsSurrogatePair(const AHighSurrogate: UnicodeChar;  
const ALowSurrogate: UnicodeChar)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeIsSurrogatePair` checks whether `AHighSurrogate`, `ALowSurrogate` constitute a valid surrogate pair, and returns `True` if this is the case. It does this by checking whether the values are within the bounds for high and low surrogate pairs.

See also: `FromUCS4` (1992), `ToUCS4` (1995), `UnicodeIsHighSurrogate` (1995), `UnicodeIsLowSurrogate` (1996)

### 79.3.23 `UnicodeToLower`

**Synopsis:** Transform unicode string to lowercase

**Declaration:** `function UnicodeToLower(const AString: UnicodeString;  
const AIgnoreInvalidSequence: Boolean;  
out AResultString: UnicodeString) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UnicodeToLower` transforms a UTF16 unicode string `AString` to its lowercase equivalent and returns this in `AResultString`. If the transformation was successful, then the function returns 0. A nonzero return value means an error occurred. `AResultString` will remain untouched in that case.

If a character in `AString` cannot be found in the unicode data tables, an error will be reported, unless `AIgnoreInvalidSequence` is set to `True`, in which case the character will be copied as-is to the output.

Unicode collation data can be loaded using `RegisterCollation` (1995) or `LoadCollation` (1993)

**Errors:** On error, a nonzero value will be returned.

See also: `UnicodeToUpper` (1997), `RegisterCollation` (1995), `LoadCollation` (1993)

### 79.3.24 UnicodeToUpper

Synopsis: Transform unicode string to uppercase

Declaration: 

```
function UnicodeToUpper(const AString: UnicodeString;
                        const AIgnoreInvalidSequence: Boolean;
                        out AResultString: UnicodeString) : Integer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnicodeToUpper` transforms a UTF16 unicode string `AString` to its uppercase equivalent and returns this in `AResultString`. If the transformation was successful, then the function returns 0. A nonzero return value means an error occurred. `AResultString` will remain untouched in that case.

If a character in `AString` cannot be found in the unicode data tables, an error will be reported, unless `AIgnoreInvalidSequence` is set to `True`, in which case the character will be copied as-is to the output.

Unicode collation data can be loaded using `RegisterCollation` (1995) or `LoadCollation` (1993)

Errors: On error, a nonzero value will be returned.

See also: `UnicodeToLower` (1996), `RegisterCollation` (1995), `LoadCollation` (1993)

### 79.3.25 UnregisterCollation

Synopsis: Remove a collation from the list of known collections.

Declaration: 

```
function UnregisterCollation(AName: UnicodeString) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterCollation` removes a collation `AName` from the list of known collations. It returns `True` if the collation was found and successfully removed.

Errors: If the collation was not found, `False` is returned.

See also: `RegisterCollation` (1995), `UnRegisterCollations` (1997), `LoadCollation` (1993)

### 79.3.26 UnregisterCollations

Synopsis: Unregister all collations.

Declaration: 

```
procedure UnregisterCollations(const AFreeDynamicCollations: Boolean)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnregisterCollations` unregisters all known collations. If `AFreeDynamicCollations` is `True`, then dynamic collations will be removed from memory using `FreeCollation` (1991). This must normally be set to `true`.

See also: `RegisterCollation` (1995), `UnRegisterCollation` (1997), `LoadCollation` (1993), `FreeCollation` (1991)

## 79.4 TCollationTable

```
TCollationTable = record
private
  FItems : TCollationTableItemArray
  ;
  FCount : Integer;
  function GetCapacity : Integer;
  function
  GetCount : Integer;
  function GetItem(const AIndex: Integer) : PCollationTableItem
  ;
  procedure Grow;
  procedure ClearItem(AItem: PCollationTableItem
  );
  AddAlias;
public
  class function NormalizeName(AName: UnicodeString
  ) : UnicodeString
  ; Static;

  procedure
  Clear;
  IndexOf;
  Find;
  function Add(ACollation: PUCA_DataBook
  ) : Integer;
  function Remove(AIndex: Integer) : PUCA_DataBook;
  property Item[AIndex: Integer]: PCollationTableItem; default;
  property Count : Integer;
  property Capacity : Integer;
end
```

### 79.4.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">1999</a>	Add	
<a href="#">1999</a>	Clear	
<a href="#">1999</a>	Find	
<a href="#">1999</a>	IndexOf	
<a href="#">1998</a>	NormalizeName	
<a href="#">1999</a>	Remove	

### 79.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">2000</a>	Capacity	r	
<a href="#">1999</a>	Count	r	
<a href="#">1999</a>	Item	r	

### 79.4.3 TCollationTable.NormalizeName

Declaration: class function NormalizeName(AName: UnicodeString) : UnicodeString

`; Static`

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.4 TCollationTable.Clear**

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.5 TCollationTable.IndexOf**

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AName: UnicodeString) : Integer; Overload`  
`function IndexOf(ACollation: PUCA_DataBook) : Integer; Overload`

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.6 TCollationTable.Find**

Declaration: `function Find(AName: UnicodeString) : PCollationTableItem; Overload`  
`function Find(ACollation: PUCA_DataBook) : PCollationTableItem`  
`; Overload`

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.7 TCollationTable.Add**

Declaration: `function Add(ACollation: PUCA_DataBook) : Integer`

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.8 TCollationTable.Remove**

Declaration: `function Remove(AIndex: Integer) : PUCA_DataBook`

Visibility: public

#### **79.4.9 TCollationTable.Item**

Declaration: `Property Item[AIndex: Integer]: PCollationTableItem; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

#### **79.4.10 TCollationTable.Count**

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read



**79.4.11 TCollationTable.Capacity**

Declaration: Property Capacity : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

**79.5 TUCA\_DataBook**

```
TUCA_DataBook = record
public
  Base : PUCA_DataBook;
  Version :
    TCollationVersion;
  CollationName : TCollationName;
  VariableWeight
    : TUCA_VariableKind;
  Backwards : Array[0..3] of Boolean;
  BMP_Table1
    : PByte;
  BMP_Table2 : PUInt24;
  OBMP_Table1 : PWord;
  OBMP_Table2
    : PUInt24;
  PropCount : Integer;
  Props : PUCA_PropItemRec;
  VariableLowLimit
    : Word;
  VariableHighLimit : Word;
  NoNormalization : Boolean;
  ComparisonStrength : Byte;
  Dynamic : Boolean;
  function IsVariable
    (const AWeight: PUCA_PropWeights) : Boolean;
end
```

TUCA\_DataBook describes a Unicode Collation Algorithm data set. data sets can be registered using the RegisterCollation ([1995](#)) function or loaded from file using LoadCollation ([1993](#)). A collation data book must be specified when comparing unicode strings.

**79.5.1 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2000</a>	IsVariable	Check if a weight is a variable weight

**79.5.2 TUCA\_DataBook.IsVariable**

Synopsis: Check if a weight is a variable weight

Declaration: function IsVariable(const AWeight: PUCA\_PropWeights) : Boolean

Visibility: public

**Description:** IsVariable checks whether AWeight is between the VariableLowLimit and VariableHighLimit limits.

## 79.6 TUCA\_PropItemContextRec

```
TUCA_PropItemContextRec = packed record
public
  CodePointCount :
  Byte;
  WeightCount : Byte;
  function GetCodePoints : PUInt24;
  function GetWeights : PUCA_PropWeights;
end
```

This is an internal structure which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

### 79.6.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2001</a>	GetCodePoints	get the address of actual code points.
<a href="#">2001</a>	GetWeights	Get the Address of actual weights.

### 79.6.2 TUCA\_PropltemContextRec.GetCodePoints

**Synopsis:** get the address of actual code points.

**Declaration:** function GetCodePoints : PUInt24

**Visibility:** public

### 79.6.3 TUCA\_PropltemContextRec.GetWeights

**Synopsis:** Get the Address of actual weights.

**Declaration:** function GetWeights : PUCA\_PropWeights

**Visibility:** public

## 79.7 TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec

```
TUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec = packed record
public
  Left : Word
  ;
  Right : Word;
  Data : TUCA_PropItemContextRec;
  function GetLeftNode
  : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec;
  function GetRightNode : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec
  ;
end
```

This is an internal structure for the tree which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

### 79.7.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2002</a>	GetLeftNode	Access to left tree node data
<a href="#">2002</a>	GetRightNode	Access to right tree node data

### 79.7.2 TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec.GetLeftNode

Synopsis: Access to left tree node data

Declaration: `function GetLeftNode : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec`

Visibility: public

### 79.7.3 TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec.GetRightNode

Synopsis: Access to right tree node data

Declaration: `function GetRightNode : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec`

Visibility: public

## 79.8 TUCA\_PropItemContextTreeRec

```
TUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec = packed record
public
    Size : UInt24
    ;
    function GetData : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec;
property
    Data : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec;
    function Find(const AChars
        : PUInt24; const ACharCount: Integer;
            out ANode: PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec
    ) : Boolean;
end
```

This is an internal tree structure for storing unicode collation data which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

### 79.8.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2003</a>	Find	Find data for encoded character
<a href="#">2003</a>	GetData	Access to tree data (getter for Data property)

### 79.8.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">2003</a>	Data	r	Read-only access to tree data

### 79.8.3 TUCA\_PropltemContextTreeRec.GetData

Synopsis: Access to tree data (getter for Data property)

Declaration: `function GetData : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec`

Visibility: public

### 79.8.4 TUCA\_PropltemContextTreeRec.Find

Synopsis: Find data for encoded character

Declaration: `function Find(const AChars: PUInt24; const ACharCount: Integer;  
out ANode: PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Find searches the tree for the collation data for the character encoded in AChars (ACharCount). It returns true if the data was found, false if not. A pointer to the collation data is returned in ANode.

### 79.8.5 TUCA\_PropltemContextTreeRec.Data

Synopsis: Read-only access to tree data

Declaration: `Property Data : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeNodeRec`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

## 79.9 TUCA\_PropItemRec

```
TUCA_PropItemRec = packed record
private
    FLAG_VALID = 0;
    FLAG_CODEPOINT
    = 1;
    FLAG_CONTEXTUAL = 2;
    FLAG_DELETION = 3;
    FLAG_COMPRESS_WEIGHT_1
    = 6;
    FLAG_COMPRESS_WEIGHT_2 = 7;
    function GetCodePoint : UInt24
    ;
public
    WeightLength : Byte;
    ChildCount : Byte;
    Size : Word
    ;
    Flags : Byte;
    function HasCodePoint : Boolean;
    property CodePoint
    : UInt24;
    function IsValid : Boolean;
    procedure GetWeightArray
```

```

(ADest: PUCA_PropWeights);
function GetSelfOnlySize : Cardinal;
function GetContextual : Boolean;
property Contextual : Boolean
;
function GetContext : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec;
function
IsDeleted : Boolean;
function IsWeightCompress_1 : Boolean;
function
IsWeightCompress_2 : Boolean;
end

```

TUCA\_PropItemRec encodes 1 entry from the Unicode Collation data in an encoded form.

### 79.9.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2005</a>	GetContext	Access to context data
<a href="#">2005</a>	GetContextual	Check if the contextual bit is set in the flags (getter for Contextual)
<a href="#">2005</a>	GetSelfOnlySize	Size of this item data (in bytes).
<a href="#">2005</a>	GetWeightArray	Return an array of weights
<a href="#">2004</a>	HasCodePoint	Check flags whether a codepoint is present.
<a href="#">2005</a>	IsDeleted	Check flags if deleted bit is set
<a href="#">2004</a>	IsValid	Check flags for validity
<a href="#">2005</a>	IsWeightCompress\_1	Check whether weight compression flag 1 is set
<a href="#">2006</a>	IsWeightCompress\_2	Check whether weight compression flag 2 is set

### 79.9.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">2006</a>	CodePoint	r	Get the codepoint
<a href="#">2006</a>	Contextual	r	Check if the contextual bit is set in the flags

### 79.9.3 TUCA\_PropltemRec.HasCodePoint

Synopsis: Check flags whether a codepoint is present.

Declaration: `function HasCodePoint : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 79.9.4 TUCA\_PropltemRec.IsValid

Synopsis: Check flags for validity

Declaration: `function IsValid : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 79.9.5 TUCA\_PropltemRec.GetWeightArray

Synopsis: Return an array of weights

Declaration: `procedure GetWeightArray (ADest: PUCA_PropWeights)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetWeightArray` returns an array with the weights in `ADest`. `ADest` must point to enough room for `WeightLength` weights.

### 79.9.6 TUCA\_PropltemRec.GetSelfOnlySize

Synopsis: Size of this item data (in bytes).

Declaration: `function GetSelfOnlySize : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

Description: Return the size of the item's data and properties.

### 79.9.7 TUCA\_PropltemRec.GetContextual

Synopsis: Check if the contextual bit is set in the flags (getter for Contextual)

Declaration: `function GetContextual : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 79.9.8 TUCA\_PropltemRec.GetContext

Synopsis: Access to context data

Declaration: `function GetContext : PUCA_PropItemContextTreeRec`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetContext` returns a pointer to the context data. It is `Nil` if the context flag is not set.

### 79.9.9 TUCA\_PropltemRec.IsDeleted

Synopsis: Check flags if deleted bit is set

Declaration: `function IsDeleted : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 79.9.10 TUCA\_PropltemRec.IsWeightCompress\_1

Synopsis: Check whether weight compression flag 1 is set

Declaration: `function IsWeightCompress_1 : Boolean`

Visibility: public

### 79.9.11 TUCA\_PropltemRec.IsWeightCompress\_2

Synopsis: Check whether weight compression flag 2 is set

Declaration: `function IsWeightCompress_2 : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

### 79.9.12 TUCA\_PropltemRec.CodePoint

Synopsis: Get the codepoint

Declaration: `Property CodePoint : UInt24`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Access to codepoint if `HasCodePoint` returns true. If `HasCodePoint` returns false, an exception will be raised.

### 79.9.13 TUCA\_PropltemRec.Contextual

Synopsis: Check if the contextual bit is set in the flags

Declaration: `Property Contextual : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

## 79.10 TUC\_Prop

```
TUC_Prop = packed record
private
    function GetCategory : Byte;
    procedure SetCategory(AValue: Byte);
    function GetWhiteSpace : Boolean
    ;
    procedure SetWhiteSpace(AValue: Boolean);
    function GetHangulSyllable
    : Boolean;
    procedure SetHangulSyllable(AValue: Boolean);
    function
    GetNumericValue : Double;
public
    CategoryData : Byte;
    CCC : Byte
    ;
    NumericIndex : Byte;
    SimpleUpperCase : UInt24;
    SimpleLowerCase
    : UInt24;
    DecompositionID : SmallInt;
    property Category : Byte
```

```

;
property WhiteSpace : Boolean;
property HangulSyllable : Boolean
;
property NumericValue : Double;
end

```

TUC\_Prop describes the collation characteristics of a unicode character. It is an internal structure which should not be used directly, the actual structure is subject to change.

### 79.10.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">2007</a>	Category	rw	Get the category
<a href="#">2007</a>	HangulSyllable	rw	Is the character a hangul syllable
<a href="#">2008</a>	NumericValue	r	Numeric value
<a href="#">2007</a>	WhiteSpace	rw	Is the character considered whitespace

### 79.10.2 TUC\_Prop.Category

Synopsis: Get the category

Declaration: Property Category : Byte

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: CategoryData provides access to the category part of CategoryData (encoded).

### 79.10.3 TUC\_Prop.WhiteSpace

Synopsis: Is the character considered whitespace

Declaration: Property WhiteSpace : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Whitespace provides easy access to the Whitespace part of CategoryData (encoded).

### 79.10.4 TUC\_Prop.HangulSyllable

Synopsis: Is the character a hangul syllable

Declaration: Property HangulSyllable : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Whitespace provides easy access to the HangulSyllable part of CategoryData (encoded).



### 79.10.5 TUC\_Prop.NumericValue

Synopsis: Numeric value

Declaration: Property NumericValue : Double

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: NumericValue uses numericalindex to get the numerical value.

## 79.11 TUInt24Rec

```
TUInt24Rec = packed record
public
    byte0 : Byte;
    byte1 : Byte;
    byte2 : Byte;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Cardinal;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec)
    : LongInt;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) :
    Word;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : Byte
    ;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: Cardinal) : TUInt24Rec;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)
    : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: LongInt
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: LongInt; b: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Word
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Word; b: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Byte
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Byte; b: TUInt24Rec
    ) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b
    : TUInt24Rec)
                                : Boolean;

    TUInt24Rec
    .class operator notequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal) : Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) :
    Boolean;
    TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b
```

```

: TUInt24Rec)
                                : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal
)
                                : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec
.class operator greaterthan(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator
greaterthanorequal(a: TUInt24Rec;
b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator
greaterthanorequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator
greaterthanorequal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator
lessthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthan(a: TUInt24Rec
; b: Cardinal) : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthan(a:
Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthanorequal
(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthanorequal(a
: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)
: Boolean;
TUInt24Rec.class operator lessthanorequal(a: Cardinal
; b: TUInt24Rec)
                                : Boolean
;
end

```

Unicode data exists mostly of 24-bit data (3 bytes). This type is meant to deal efficiently with this data. it has members to split out the data in bytes, and functions to query the various properties stored in the data.



**79.11.1 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
2014	<code>equal(Byte,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a byte value.
2013	<code>equal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a cardinal value.
2014	<code>equal(LongInt,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a longint value.
2014	<code>equal(TUInt24Rec,Byte):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a byte value.
2013	<code>equal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean</code>	Check if cardinal and TUInt24Rec are equal
2013	<code>equal(TUInt24Rec,LongInt):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a longint value.
2013	<code>equal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Determine equality of 2 TUInt24Rec records
2014	<code>equal(TUInt24Rec,Word):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a word value.
2014	<code>equal(Word,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a word value.
2015	<code>greaterthan(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Check whether a cardinal value is greater than a TUInt24Rec value
2015	<code>greaterthan(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than a cardinal value
2015	<code>greaterthan(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than another TUInt24Rec value
2016	<code>greaterthanorequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Check whether a cardinal value is greater than or equal to a TUInt24Rec value
2016	<code>greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than or equal to a cardinal value
2016	<code>greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than or equal to a cardinal value
2013	<code>implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec</code>	Assign TUInt24Rec from Cardinal
2012	<code>implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte</code>	Assign TUInt24Rec to byte
2012	<code>implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal</code>	Assign TUInt24Rec to cardinal
2012	<code>implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt</code>	Assign TUInt24Rec to longint
2012	<code>implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word</code>	Assign TUInt24Rec to word
2017	<code>lessthan(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean</code>	Check whether a cardinal value is less than a TUInt24Rec value
2016	<code>lessthan(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean</code>	Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is

### 79.11.2 TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec to cardinal

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign to cardinal, byte0 to MSB and so on.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec` (2013), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Longint):TUInt24Rec` (2009), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Word):TUInt24Rec` (2009), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Byte):TUInt24Rec` (2009)

### 79.11.3 TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec to longint

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign to cardinal, byte0 to MSB and so on.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte` (2012)

### 79.11.4 TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec to word

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : Word`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign to word, byte0 to MSB, byte1 to MSB.

Errors: If the value is too big (>\$FFFF) to be assigned, an overflow error occurs.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Longint` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec` (2013), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Longint):TUInt24Rec` (2009), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Word):TUInt24Rec` (2009), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Byte):TUInt24Rec` (2009)

### 79.11.5 TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec to byte

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: TUInt24Rec) : Byte`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign to byte, byte0 is assigned.

Errors: If the value is too big (>\$FF) to be assigned, an overflow error occurs.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Cardinal` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Longint` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec` (2013), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Longint):TUInt24Rec` (2009), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Word):TUInt24Rec` (2009), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Byte):TUInt24Rec` (2009)

### 79.11.6 TUInt24Rec.implicit(Cardinal):TUInt24Rec

Synopsis: Assign TUInt24Rec from Cardinal

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator implicit(a: Cardinal) : TUInt24Rec`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign from cardinal, byte0 to MSB.

Errors: If the value is too big (>\$FFFFFF) to be assigned, an overflow error occurs.

See also: `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):LongInt` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Word` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(TUInt24Rec):Byte` (2012), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(LongInt):TUInt24Rec` (2009), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Word):TUInt24Rec` (2009), `TUInt24Rec.implicit(Byte):TUInt24Rec` (2009)

### 79.11.7 TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean

Synopsis: Determine equality of 2 TUInt24Rec records

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The 2 records are considered equal if the 3 bytes are equal.

### 79.11.8 TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean

Synopsis: Check if cardinal and TUInt24Rec are equal

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The cardinal b is considered equal to a if the fourth byte (LSB) is zero, and the first three bytes equal byte0, byte1, and byte2.

### 79.11.9 TUInt24Rec.equal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a cardinal value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The cardinal a is considered equal to b if the fourth byte (LSB) is zero, and the first three bytes equal byte0, byte1, and byte2.

### 79.11.10 TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,LongInt):Boolean

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value equals a longint value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The longint b is considered equal to a if the fourth byte (LSB) is zero, and the first three bytes equal byte0, byte1, and byte2.

### 79.11.11 `TUInt24Rec.equal(LongInt,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a longint value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: LongInt; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The longint `a` is considered equal to `b` if the fourth byte (LSB) is zero, and the first three bytes equal `byte0`, `byte1`, and `byte2`.

### 79.11.12 `TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Word):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a word value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The word `b` is considered equal to `a` if its 2 bytes equal `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2` is zero.

### 79.11.13 `TUInt24Rec.equal(Word,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a word value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Word; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The word `a` is considered equal to `b` if its 2 bytes equal `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2` is zero.

### 79.11.14 `TUInt24Rec.equal(TUInt24Rec,Byte):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a byte value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Byte) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The byte `b` is considered equal to `a` if it equals `byte0` and `byte1` and `byte1` are zero.

### 79.11.15 `TUInt24Rec.equal(Byte,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value equals a byte value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator equal(a: Byte; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The byte `b` is considered equal to `a` if it equals `byte0` and `byte1` and `byte1` are zero.

### 79.11.16 `TUInt24Rec.notequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether 2 `TUInt24Rec` values differ.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.17 **TUInt24Rec.notequal(TUInt24Rec, Cardinal):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value differs from a cardinal value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The cardinal `a` is considered not equal to `b` if the fourth byte (LSB) is nonzero, or one of the first three bytes differ from `byte0`, `byte1`, and `byte2`.

### 79.11.18 **TUInt24Rec.notequal(Cardinal, TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value differs from a cardinal value.

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator notequal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The cardinal `a` is considered not equal to `b` if the fourth byte (LSB) is nonzero, or one of the first three bytes differ from `byte0`, `byte1`, and `byte2`.

### 79.11.19 **TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(TUInt24Rec, TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than another TUInt24Rec value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`

### 79.11.20 **TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(TUInt24Rec, Cardinal):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is greater than a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.21 **TUInt24Rec.greaterthan(Cardinal, TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a cardinal value is greater than a TUInt24Rec value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthan(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.



### 79.11.22 `TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is greater than or equal to a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthanorequal(a: TUInt24Rec;  
b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.23 `TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is greater than or equal to a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthanorequal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.24 `TUInt24Rec.greaterthanorequal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a cardinal value is greater than or equal to a `TUInt24Rec` value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator greaterthanorequal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.25 `TUInt24Rec.less than(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is less than another `TUInt24Rec` value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less than(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing the bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### 79.11.26 `TUInt24Rec.less than(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean`

Synopsis: Check whether a `TUInt24Rec` value is less than a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less than(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### **79.11.27 TUInt24Rec.less-than(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a cardinal value is less than a TUInt24Rec value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less-than(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Check whether a cardinal value is less than a TUInt24Rec value

### **79.11.28 TUInt24Rec.less-than-or-equal(TUInt24Rec,TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is less than or equal to another TUInt24Rec value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less-than-or-equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing the bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### **79.11.29 TUInt24Rec.less-than-or-equal(TUInt24Rec,Cardinal):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a TUInt24Rec value is less than or equal to a cardinal value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less-than-or-equal(a: TUInt24Rec; b: Cardinal)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

### **79.11.30 TUInt24Rec.less-than-or-equal(Cardinal,TUInt24Rec):Boolean**

Synopsis: Check whether a cardinal value is less than or equal to a TUInt24Rec value

Declaration: `TUInt24Rec.class operator less-than-or-equal(a: Cardinal; b: TUInt24Rec)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The comparison is done by comparing 3 first bytes of the cardinal value with bytes `byte0`, `byte1` and `byte2`.

## Chapter 80

# Reference for unit 'unicodeducet'

### 80.1 Overview

The `unicodeducet` unit registers the root Unicode collation (DUCET). This collation is needed by all other collations, so any collation unit will include this file.

This unit does not contain any routines. It simply registers the collation in the initialization section of the unit, so including the unit in the `uses` clause of the program is sufficient.

# Chapter 81

## Reference for unit 'Unix'

### 81.1 Used units

Table 81.1: Used units by unit 'Unix'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">137</a>
unixtype	<a href="#">2057</a>

### 81.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 81.2.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = UnixType.ARG_MAX`

Maximum number of arguments to a program.

`fs_ext = $137d`

File system type (TStatFS ([2034](#))): (ext) Extended

`fs_ext2 = $ef53`

File system type (TStatFS ([2034](#))): (ext2) Second extended

`fs_iso = $9660`

File system type (TStatFS ([2034](#))): ISO 9660

`fs_minix = $137f`

File system type (TStatFS ([2034](#))): Minix

`fs_minix_30 = $138f`

File system type (TStatFS (2034)): Minix 3.0

`fs_minix_V2 = $2468`

File system type (TStatFS (2034)): Minix V2

`fs_msdos = $4d44`

File system type (TStatFS (2034)): MSDOS (FAT)

`fs_nfs = $6969`

File system type (TStatFS (2034)): NFS

`fs_old_ext2 = $ef51`

File system type (TStatFS (2034)): (ext2) Old second extended

`fs_proc = $9fa0`

File system type (TStatFS (2034)): PROC fs

`fs_xia = $012FD16D`

File system type (TStatFS (2034)): XIA

`IOctl_TCGETS = $5401`

IOCTL call number: get Terminal Control settings

`LOCK_EX = 2`

FpFLock (2043) Exclusive lock

`LOCK_NB = 4`

FpFLock (2043) Non-blocking operation

`LOCK_SH = 1`

FpFLock (2043) Shared lock

`LOCK_UN = 8`

FpFLock (2043) unlock

`MAP_FAILED = baseunix.MAP_FAILED`

Error return value for mmap: mmap operation failed.

`MAP_FIXED = baseunix.MAP_FIXED`

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap ([197](#)) map type: Interpret addr exactly

MAP\_PRIVATE = baseunix.MAP\_PRIVATE

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap ([197](#)) map type: Changes are private

MAP\_SHARED = baseunix.MAP\_SHARED

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap ([197](#)) map type: Share changes

MAP\_TYPE = baseunix.MAP\_TYPE

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap ([197](#)) map type: Bitmask for type of mapping

NAME\_MAX = UnixType.NAME\_MAX

Maximum filename length.

Open\_Accmode = 3

Bitmask to determine access mode in open flags.

Open\_Append = 2 shl 9

File open mode: Append to file

Open\_Creat = 1 shl 6

File open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.

Open\_Direct = 4 shl 12

File open mode: Minimize caching effects

Open\_Directory = 2 shl 15

File open mode: File must be directory.

Open\_Excl = 2 shl 6

File open mode: Open exclusively

Open\_LargeFile = 1 shl 15

File open mode: Open for 64-bit I/O

Open\_NDelay = Open\_NonBlock

File open mode: Alias for Open\_NonBlock ([2022](#))

Open\_NoCtty = 4 shl 6

File open mode: No TTY control.

`Open_NoFollow = 4 shl 15`

File open mode: Fail if file is symbolic link.

`Open_NonBlock = 4 shl 9`

File open mode: Open in non-blocking mode

`Open_RdOnly = 0`

File open mode: Read only

`Open_RdWr = 2`

File open mode: Read/Write

`Open_Sync = 1 shl 12`

File open mode: Write to disc at once

`Open_Trunc = 1 shl 9`

File open mode: Truncate file to length 0

`Open_WrOnly = 1`

File open mode: Write only

`PATH_MAX = UnixType.PATH_MAX`

Maximum pathname length.

`PRIO_PGRP = UnixType.PRIO_PGRP`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (191)` option: Get process group priority.

`PRIO_PROCESS = UnixType.PRIO_PROCESS`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (191)` option: Get process priority.

`PRIO_USER = UnixType.PRIO_USER`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (191)` option: Get user priority.

`PROT_EXEC = baseunix.PROT_EXEC`

`#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (197)` memory access: page can be executed

`PROT_NONE = baseunix.PROT_NONE`

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (197) memory access: page can not be accessed

PROT\_READ = baseunix.PROT\_READ

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (197) memory access: page can be read

PROT\_WRITE = baseunix.PROT\_WRITE

#rtl.baseunix.FpMMap (197) memory access: page can be written

P\_IN = 1

Input file descriptor of pipe pair.

P\_OUT = 2

Output file descriptor of pipe pair.

SIG\_MAXSIG = UnixType.SIG\_MAXSIG

Maximum system signal number.

STAT\_IFBLK = \$6000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Block device

STAT\_IFCHR = \$2000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Character device

STAT\_IFDIR = \$4000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Directory

STAT\_IFIFO = \$1000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: FIFO

STAT\_IFLNK = \$a000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Link

STAT\_IFMT = \$f000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: File type bit mask

STAT\_IFREG = \$8000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Regular file

STAT\_IFSOCK = \$c000



File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Socket

`STAT_IRGRP = STAT_IROTH shl 3`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Group read permission

`STAT_IROTH = $4`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Other read permission

`STAT_IRUSR = STAT_IROTH shl 6`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Owner read permission

`STAT_IRWXG = STAT_IRWXO shl 3`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Group permission bits mask

`STAT_IRWXO = $7`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Other permission bits mask

`STAT_IRWXU = STAT_IRWXO shl 6`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Owner permission bits mask

`STAT_ISGID = $0400`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: GID bit set

`STAT_ISUID = $0800`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: UID bit set

`STAT_ISVTX = $0200`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Sticky bit set

`STAT_IWGRP = STAT_IWOTH shl 3`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Group write permission

`STAT_IWOTH = $2`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Other write permission

`STAT_IWUSR = STAT_IWOTH shl 6`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Owner write permission

`STAT_IXGRP = STAT_IXOTH shl 3`

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Others execute permission

```
STAT_IXOTH = $1
```

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Others execute permission

```
STAT_IXUSR = STAT_IXOTH shl 6
```

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (230) record) mode: Others execute permission

```
SYS_NMLN = UnixType.SYS_NMLN
```

Max system name length.

```
Wait_Any = - 1
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (226): Wait on any process

```
Wait_Clone = $800000000
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (226): Wait on clone processes only.

```
Wait_MyPGRP = 0
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (226): Wait processes from current process group

```
Wait_NoHang = 1
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (226): Do not wait

```
Wait_UnTraced = 2
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (226): Also report stopped but untraced processes

### 81.2.2 Types

```
cbool = UnixType.cbool
```

Boolean type

```
cchar = UnixType.cchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.cchar (2059)

```
cdouble = UnixType.cdouble
```

Double precision real format.

```
cfloat = UnixType.cfloat
```

Floating-point real format

```
cint = UnixType.cint
```

C type: integer (natural size)

```
cint16 = UnixType.cint16
```

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

```
cint32 = UnixType.cint32
```

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

```
cint64 = UnixType.cint64
```

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

```
cint8 = UnixType.cint8
```

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

```
clock_t = UnixType.clock_t
```

Clock ticks type

```
clong = UnixType.clong
```

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

```
clonglong = UnixType.clonglong
```

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

```
coff_t = UnixType.TOff
```

character offset type.

```
cschar = UnixType.cschar
```

Signed character type

```
cshort = UnixType.cshort
```

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

```
csigned = UnixType.csigned
```

`csigned` is an alias for `cint` ([2026](#)).

```
csint = UnixType.csint
```

Signed integer

```
csize_t = UnixType.size_t
```

Character size type.

```
cslong = UnixType.cslong
```

The size is CPU dependent.

```
cslonglong = UnixType.cslonglong
```

cslonglong is an alias for clonglong (2026).

```
csshort = UnixType.csshort
```

Short signed integer type

```
cuchar = UnixType.cuchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.cuchar (2060)

```
cuint = UnixType.cuint
```

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

```
cuint16 = UnixType.cuint16
```

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint32 = UnixType.cuint32
```

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint64 = UnixType.cuint64
```

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint8 = UnixType.cuint8
```

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
culong = UnixType.culong
```

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

```
culonglong = UnixType.culonglong
```

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

```
cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned
```

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cunsigned` (2061)

`cushort = UnixType.cushort`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t = UnixType.dev_t`

Device descriptor type.

`gid_t = UnixType.gid_t`

Group ID type.

`ino_t = UnixType.ino_t`

Inode type.

`mode_t = UnixType.mode_t`

Inode mode type.

`nlink_t = UnixType.nlink_t`

Number of links type.

`off_t = UnixType.off_t`

Offset type.

`pcbool = UnixType.pcbbool`

Pointer to boolean type `cbool` (2025)

`pcchar = UnixType.pcchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.pcchar` (2062)

`pcdouble = UnixType.pcdouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (161) type.

`pcfloat = UnixType.pcfloating`

Pointer to `cfloat` (161) type.

`pcint = UnixType.pcint`

Pointer to `cInt` (2026) type.

`pcint16 = UnixType.pcint16`

Pointer to 16-bit signed integer type

```
pcint32 = UnixType.pcint32
```

Pointer to signed 32-bit integer type

```
pcint64 = UnixType.pcint64
```

Pointer to signed 64-bit integer type

```
pcint8 = UnixType.pcint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits signed integer type

```
pClock = UnixType.pClock
```

Pointer to TClock (2032) type.

```
pclong = UnixType.pclong
```

Pointer to cLong (2026) type.

```
pclonglong = UnixType.pclonglong
```

Pointer to longlong type.

```
pcschar = UnixType.pcschar
```

Pointer to character type cschar (2026).

```
pcshort = UnixType.pcsshort
```

Pointer to cShort (2026) type.

```
pcsigned = UnixType.pcsigned
```

Pointer to signed integer type csigned (2026).

```
pcsint = UnixType.pcsint
```

Pointer to signed integer type csint (2027)

```
pctype_t = UnixType.pctype_t
```

Pointer to character size type pctype\_t.

```
pcslong = UnixType.pcslong
```

Pointer to the signed long cslong (2027)

```
pcslonglong = UnixType.pcslonglong
```

Pointer to Signed longlong type cslonglong (2027)

```
pcssshort = UnixType.pcssshort
```

Pointer to short signed integer type csshort (2027)

```
pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.pcuchar (2063)

```
pcuint = UnixType.pcuint
```

Pointer to cUInt (2027) type.

```
pcuint16 = UnixType.pcuint16
```

Pointer to 16-bit unsigned integer type

```
pcuint32 = UnixType.pcuint32
```

Pointer to unsigned 32-bit integer type

```
pcuint64 = UnixType.pcuint64
```

Pointer to unsigned 64-bit integer type

```
pcuint8 = UnixType.pcuint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits unsigned integer type

```
pculong = UnixType.pculong
```

Pointer to cuLong (2027) type.

```
pculonglong = UnixType.pculonglong
```

Unsigned longlong type

```
pcunsigned = UnixType.pcunsigned
```

Alias for #rtl.unixtype.pcunsigned (2064)

```
pcushort = UnixType.pcushort
```

Pointer to cuShort (2028) type.

```
pDev = UnixType.pDev
```

Pointer to TDev (2032) type.

```
pGid = UnixType.pGid
```

Pointer to TGid (2033) type.

```
pid_t = UnixType.pid_t
```

Process ID type.

```
pIno = UnixType.pIno
```

Pointer to TIno (2033) type.

```
pMode = UnixType.pMode
```

Pointer to TMode (2033) type.

```
pnLink = UnixType.pnLink
```

Pointer to TnLink (2033) type.

```
pOff = UnixType.pOff
```

Pointer to TOff (2033) type.

```
pPid = UnixType.pPid
```

Pointer to TPid (2033) type.

```
pSize = UnixType.pSize
```

Pointer to TSize (2034) type.

```
pSize_t = UnixType.pSize_t
```

Pointer to type Size\_t.

```
pSocklen = UnixType.pSocklen
```

Pointer to TSockLen (2034) type.

```
psSize = UnixType.psSize
```

Pointer to TsSize (2034) type

```
pstatfs = UnixType.PStatFs
```

Pointer to statfs type

```
pthread_cond_t = UnixType.pthread_cond_t
```

Thread conditional variable type.

```
pthread_mutex_t = UnixType.pthread_mutex_t
```



Thread mutex type.

```
pthread_t = UnixType.pthread_t
```

POSIX thread type.

```
pTime = UnixType.pTime
```

Pointer to TTime (2034) type.

```
ptimespec = UnixType.ptimespec
```

Pointer to timespec (2033) type.

```
ptimeval = UnixType.ptimeval
```

Pointer to timeval (2033) type.

```
ptime_t = UnixType.ptime_t
```

Pointer to time\_t (2033) type.

```
pUId = UnixType.pUId
```

Pointer to TUid (2034) type.

```
size_t = UnixType.size_t
```

Size specification type.

```
socklen_t = UnixType.socklen_t
```

Socket address length type.

```
ssize_t = UnixType.ssize_t
```

Small size type.

```
TClock = UnixType.TClock
```

Alias for clock\_t (2026) type.

```
TDev = UnixType.TDev
```

Alias for dev\_t (2028) type.

```
TFSearchOption = (NoCurrentDirectory, CurrentDirectoryFirst,  
    CurrentDirectoryLast)
```

Table 81.2: Enumeration values for type TFSearchOption

Value	Explanation
CurrentDirectoryFirst	Search the current directory first, before all directories in the search path.
CurrentDirectoryLast	Search the current directory last, after all directories in the search path
NoCurrentDirectory	Do not search the current directory unless it is specified in the search path.

Describes the search strategy used by FSearch (2045)

TGid = UnixType.TGid

Alias for gid\_t (2028) type.

timespec = UnixType.timespec

Short time specification type.

timeval = UnixType.timeval

Time specification type.

time\_t = UnixType.time\_t

Time span type

TIno = UnixType.TIno

Alias for ino\_t (2028) type.

TIOCtlRequest = UnixType.TIOCtlRequest

Alias for the TIOCtlRequest (2067) type in unixtypes

TMode = UnixType.TMode

Alias for mode\_t (2028) type.

TnLink = UnixType.TnLink

Alias for nlink\_t (2028) type.

TOff = UnixType.TOff

Alias for off\_t (2028) type.

TPid = UnixType.TPid

Alias for pid\_t (2031) type.

`TSize = UnixType.TSize`

Alias for `size_t` (2032) type

`TSocklen = UnixType.TSocklen`

Alias for `socklen_t` (2032) type.

`TsSize = UnixType.TsSize`

Alias for `ssize_t` (2032) type

`tstatfs = UnixType.TStatFs`

`StatFS` returns in `Info` information about the file system on which the file `Path` resides. `Info` is of type `TStatFS` (2071).

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value is returned if the call failed.

`TTime = UnixType.TTime`

Alias for `TTime` (2034) type.

`Ttimespec = UnixType.Ttimespec`

Alias for `TimeSpec` (2033) type.

`TTimeVal = UnixType.TTimeVal`

Alias for `timeval` (2033) type.

`TUId = UnixType.TUId`

Alias for `uid_t` (2034) type.

`uid_t = UnixType.uid_t`

User ID type

### 81.2.3 Variables

`tzdaylight : Boolean`

Indicates whether daylight savings time is active.

`tzname : Array[Boolean] of pchar`

Timezone name.

## 81.3 Procedures and functions

### 81.3.1 AssignPipe

**Synopsis:** Create a set of pipe file handlers

**Declaration:** `function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: cint; var pipe_out: cint) : cint`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: text; var pipe_out: text) : cint`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: File; var pipe_out: File) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** AssignPipe creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. What is written to Pipe\_out, can be read from Pipe\_in.

This call is overloaded. The in and out pipe can take three forms: an typed or untyped file, a text file or a file descriptor.

If a text file is passed then reading and writing from/to the pipe can be done through the usual `Readln(Pipe_in, ...)` and `Writeln(Pipe_out, ...)` procedures.

The function returns `True` if everything went successfully, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** In case the function fails and returns `False`, extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `POpen` (2048), `#rtl.baseunix.FpMkFifo` (197)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex36.pp

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** pipi, pipo : Text;  
       s : String;

```
begin
  Writeln ('Assigning Pipes. ');
  If assignpipe(pipi, pipo) <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Error assigning pipes !', fpgeterrno);
  Writeln ('Writing to pipe, and flushing. ');
  Writeln (pipo, 'This is a textstring '); close(pipo);
  Writeln ('Reading from pipe. ');
  While not eof(pipi) do
    begin
      Readln (pipi, s);
      Writeln ('Read from pipe : ', s);
    end;
  close (pipi);
  writeln ('Closed pipes. ');
  writeln
end.
```

### 81.3.2 AssignStream

Synopsis: Assign stream for in and output to a program

Declaration: 

```
function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text; var Streamout: text;
                    const Prog: ansiString;
                    const args: Array of ansistring) : cint
function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text; var Streamout: text;
                    var streamerr: text; const Prog: ansiString;
                    const args: Array of ansistring) : cint
```

Visibility: default

Description: AssignStream creates a 2 or 3 pipes, i.e. two (or three) file objects, one for input, one for output, (and one for standard error) the other ends of these pipes are connected to standard input and output (and standard error) of Prog. Prog is the path of a program (including path). The options for the program can be specified in Args.

What is written to StreamOut, will go to the standard input of Prog. Whatever is written by Prog to it's standard output can be read from StreamIn. Whatever is written by Prog to it's standard error read from StreamErr, if present.

Reading and writing happens through the usual Readln(StreamIn, ...) and Writeln(StreamOut, ...) procedures.

**Remark** You should *not* use Reset or Rewrite on a file opened with POpen. This will close the file before re-opening it again, thereby closing the connection with the program.

The function returns the process ID of the spawned process, or -1 in case of error.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (188) function.

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

Other errors include the ones by the fork and exec programs

See also: AssignPipe (2035), POpen (2048)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex38.pp

**Program** Example38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignStream function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** Si, So : Text;  
S : String;  
i : longint;

```
begin
  if not (paramstr(1) = '-son') then
    begin
      Writeln('Calling son');
      Assignstream(Si, So, paramstr(0), ['-son']);
      if fpgeterrno <> 0 then
        begin
          writeln('AssignStream failed !');
          halt(1);
        end;
```

---

```

Writeln ('Speaking to son');
For i:=1 to 10 do
begin
  writeln (so,'Hello son !');
  if ioreult<>0 then writeln ('Can''t speak to son...');
end;
For i:=1 to 3 do writeln (so,'Hello chap !');
close (so);
while not eof(si) do
begin
  readln (si,s);
  writeln ('Father: Son said : ',S);
end;
Writeln ('Stopped conversation');
Close (Si);
Writeln ('Put down phone');
end
Else
begin
  Writeln ('This is the son ');
  While not eof (input) do
  begin
    readln (s);
    if pos ('Hello son !',S)<>0 then
      Writeln ('Hello Dad !')
    else
      writeln ('Who are you ?');
    end;
  close (output);
  end
end.

```

---

### 81.3.3 FpExecL

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment)

Declaration: `function FpExecL(const PathName: RawByteString;  
const S: Array of RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecL` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. `S` is an array of command options. The executable in `PathName` must be an absolute pathname. The current process' environment is passed to the program. On success, `FpExecL` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([188](#)) function:

**sys\_eaccessFile** is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `FpExecve` (182), `FpExecv` (2040), `FpExecvp` (2041), `FpExecl` (2038), `FpExeclp` (2039), `FpFork` (185)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex77.pp

**Program** Example77;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecl function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
 FpExecl ( '/bin/ls', ['-l'] );

**end.**

### 81.3.4 FpExecLE

**Synopsis:** Execute process (using argument list, environment)

**Declaration:** `function FpExecLE(const PathName: RawByteString;  
                               const S: Array of RawByteString; MyEnv: ppchar) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpExecLE` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. `S` is an array of command options. The executable in `PathName` must be an absolute pathname. The environment in `MyEnv` is passed to the program. On success, `FpExecLE` does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `FpExecve` (182), `FpExecv` (2040), `FpExecvp` (2041), `FpExecl` (2037), `FpExeclp` (2039), `FpFork` (185)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex11.pp

**Program** Example11;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execl function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

---

```

begin
  { Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
  { 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }
  { envp is defined in the system unit. }
  Execle ( '/bin/ls -l', envp );
end.

```

---

### 81.3.5 FpExecLP

**Synopsis:** Execute process (using argument list, environment; search path)

**Declaration:** `function FpExecLP(const PathName: RawByteString;  
const S: Array of RawByteString) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpExecLP replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. S is an array of command options. The executable in PathName is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, FpExecLP does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno ([188](#)) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: FpExecve ([182](#)), FpExecv ([2040](#)), FpExecvp ([2041](#)), FpExecle ([2038](#)), FpExecl ([2037](#)), FpFork ([185](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the FpExeclp function. }
```

**Uses** Unix, strings;

```

begin
  { Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
  { 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }
  { envp is defined in the system unit. }
  FpExeclp ( 'ls', [ '-l' ] );
end.

```

---



### 81.3.6 FpExecLPE

Synopsis: Execute a program in the path, and pass it an environment

Declaration: `function FpExecLPE(const PathName: RawByteString;  
const S: Array of RawByteString; env: ppchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecLPE` does the same as `FpExecLP` (2039), but additionally it specifies the environment for the new process in `env`, a pointer to a null-terminated array of null-terminated strings.

Errors: On success, this function does not return.

See also: `FpExecLP` (2039), `FpExecLE` (2038)

### 81.3.7 FpExecV

Synopsis: Execute process

Declaration: `function FpExecV(const PathName: RawByteString; args: ppchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecV` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. It gives the program the options in `args`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `FpExecV` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `FpExecve` (182), `FpExecvp` (2041), `FpExecle` (2038), `FpExecl` (2037), `FpExeclp` (2039), `FpFork` (185)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lis';  
Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

```

begin
  GetMem (PP, 3 * SizeOf (Pchar));
  PP[0] := Arg0;
  PP[1] := Arg1;
  PP[3] := Nil;
  { Execute '/bin/lis -l', with current environment }
  fpExecv ('/bin/lis', pp);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.8 FpExecVP

Synopsis: Execute process, search path

Declaration: `function FpExecVP(const PathName: RawByteString; args: ppchar) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecVP` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. The executable in `path` is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in `args`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execvp` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function:

**sys\_eaccessFile** is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `FpExecve` (182), `FpExecv` (2040), `FpExecl` (2038), `FpExecl` (2037), `FpExeclp` (2039), `FpFork` (185)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex79.pp`

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecVP function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = 'ls';  
           Arg1 : PChar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

---

```

GetMem (PP,3*SizeOf(Pchar));
PP[0]:=Arg0;
PP[1]:=Arg1;
PP[2]:=Nil;
{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }
fpExecvp ('ls',pp);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.9 FpExecVPE

**Synopsis:** Execute process, search path using environment

**Declaration:** `function FpExecVPE(const PathName: RawByteString; args: ppchar;  
env: ppchar) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FpExecVP replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. The executable in path is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in args. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The environment in Env is passed to the program. On success, execvp does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (188) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: FpExecve (182), FpExecv (2040), FpExecle (2038), FpExecl (2037), FpExeclp (2039), FpFork (185)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex79.pp

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecVP function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = 'ls';  
Arg1 : PChar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**  
GetMem (PP,3\***SizeOf**(Pchar));

---

```

PP[0]:=Arg0;
PP[1]:=Arg1;
PP[2]:=Nil;
{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }
fpExecvp ('ls',pp);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.10 fpFlock

Synopsis: Lock a file (advisory lock)

Declaration: `function fpFlock(var T: text; mode: cint) : cint`  
`function fpFlock(var F: File; mode: cint) : cint`  
`function fpFlock(fd: cint; mode: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFlock` implements file locking. it sets or removes a lock on the file `F`. `F` can be of type `Text` or `File`, or it can be a Linux file descriptor (a `longint`) `Mode` can be one of the following constants :

**LOCK\_SH**sets a shared lock.

**LOCK\_EX**sets an exclusive lock.

**LOCK\_UN**unlocks the file.

**LOCK\_NB**This can be OR-ed together with the other. If this is done the application doesn't block when locking.

The function returns zero if successful, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([188](#)) function:

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpFcntl` ([183](#)), `FSync` ([2019](#))

### 81.3.11 fpfStatFS

Synopsis: Retrieve file system information.

Declaration: `function fpfStatFS(Fd: cint; Info: pstatfs) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpStatFS` returns in `Info` information about the file system on which the open file descriptor `fd` resides. `Info` is of type `tstatfs`. The function returns 0 if the call was successful, or an error code if the call failed.

Errors: On error, a non-zero error code is returned

See also: `fpStatFS` ([2044](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpfStat` ([185](#))

### 81.3.12 `fpfsync`

Synopsis: Flush cached data to disk

Declaration: `function fpfsync(fd: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpfsync` forces the system to write all paged (in-memory) changes to file descriptor `fd` to disk. If the call was successful, 0 is returned.

Errors: On error, a nonzero error-code is returned.

### 81.3.13 `fpgettimeofday`

Synopsis: Return kernel time of day in GMT

Declaration: `function fpgettimeofday(tp: ptimeval; tzp: ptimezone) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetTimeOfDay` returns the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT in a `ptimeval` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account timezones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call.

Errors: None.

### 81.3.14 `fpStatFS`

Synopsis: Retrieve file system information.

Declaration: `function fpStatFS(Path: pchar; Info: pstatfs) : cint`  
`function fpStatFS(Path: ansistring; Info: pstatfs) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpStatFS` returns in `Info` information about the file system on which the file or path `Path` resides. `Info` is of type `tstatfs`. The function returns 0 if the call was successful, or an error code if the call failed.

Errors: On error, a non-zero error code is returned

See also: `fpFStatFS` ([2043](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpStat` ([218](#))

### 81.3.15 `fpSystem`

Synopsis: Execute and feed command to system shell

Declaration: `function fpSystem(const Command: RawByteString) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSystem` invokes the bash shell (`/bin/sh`), and feeds it the command `Command` (using the `-c` option). The function then waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command in `wait(3)` format, or 127 if it could not complete the `FpFork` ([185](#)) or `FpExecve` ([182](#)) calls. To convert the return value of `fpssystem` to the real return value use `WEXITSTATUS()` ([227](#)).

Errors: Errors are reported in (fpget)ErrNo ([188](#))

See also: POpen ([2048](#)), FpFork ([185](#)), FpExecve ([182](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex80.pp

---

```

program example56;

uses Unix;

{ Program to demonstrate the Shell function }

Var S : Longint;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Output of ls -l *.pp' );
  S:=fpSystem( 'ls -l *.pp' );
  WriteLn ( 'Command exited with status : ',S);
end.

```

---

### 81.3.16 FSearch

Synopsis: Search for file in search path.

**Declaration:**

```

function FSearch(const path: RawByteString; dirlist: RawByteString;
                 CurrentDirStrategy: TFSearchOption) : RawByteString
function FSearch(const path: RawByteString; dirlist: RawByteString)
                 : RawByteString
function FSearch(const path: UnicodeString; dirlist: UnicodeString;
                 CurrentDirStrategy: TFSearchOption) : UnicodeString
function FSearch(const path: UnicodeString; dirlist: UnicodeString)
                 : UnicodeString

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** FSearch searches in DirList, a colon separated list of directories, for a file named Path. It then returns a path to the found file.

The CurrentDirStrategy determines how the current directory is treated when searching:

**NoCurrentDirectory** Do not search the current directory unless it is specified in the search path.

**CurrentDirectoryFirst** Search the current directory first, before all directories in the search path.

**CurrentDirectoryLast** Search the current directory last, after all directories in the search path

It is mainly provided to mimic DOS search path behaviour. Default behaviour is to search the current directory first.

Errors: An empty string if no such file was found.

See also: #rtl.unixutil.FNMatch ([2073](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex46.pp

---

```

Program Example46;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }

```

---

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix, Strings;

```
begin
  WriteLn ('ls is in : ', FSearch ('ls', strpas(fpGetenv('PATH'))));
end.
```

---

### 81.3.17 GetDomainName

**Synopsis:** Return current domain name

**Declaration:** `function GetDomainName : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Get the domain name of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if the domain is not set.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** GetHostName ([2046](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex39.pp

---

**Program** Example39;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDomainName function. }*

**Uses** Unix;

```
begin
  WriteLn ('Domain name of this machine is : ', GetDomainName);
end.
```

---

### 81.3.18 GetHostName

**Synopsis:** Return host name

**Declaration:** `function GetHostName : string`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Get the hostname of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if hostname is not set.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** GetDomainName ([2046](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex40.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetHostName function. }*

**Uses** unix;

```
begin
  WriteLn ('Name of this machine is : ', GetHostName);
end.
```

---

### 81.3.19 GetLocalTimezone

Synopsis: Return local timezone information

Declaration: `procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: cint; var leap_correct: cint;  
var leap_hit: cint)  
procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: cint)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLocalTimezone` returns the local timezone information. It also initializes the `TZSeconds` variable, which is used to correct the epoch time to local time.

There should never be any need to call this function directly. It is called by the initialization routines of the Linux unit.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` (2047), `ReadTimezoneFile` (2049)

### 81.3.20 GetTimezoneFile

Synopsis: Return name of timezone information file

Declaration: `function GetTimezoneFile : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTimezoneFile` returns the location of the current timezone file. The location of file is determined as follows:

- 1.If `/etc/timezone` exists, it is read, and the contents of this file is returned. This should work on Debian systems.
- 2.If `/usr/lib/zoneinfo/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on SuSE systems)
- 3.If `/etc/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on RedHat systems)

Errors: If no file was found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ReadTimezoneFile` (2049)

### 81.3.21 PClose

Synopsis: Close file opened with `POpen` (2048)

Declaration: `function PClose(var F: File) : cint  
function PClose(var F: text) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `PClose` closes a file opened with `POpen` (2048). It waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command.

For an example, see `POpen` (2048)

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function.

See also: `POpen` (2048)



### 81.3.22 POpen

Synopsis: Pipe file to standard input/output of program

Declaration: `function POpen(var F: text; const Prog: RawByteString; rw: Char) : cint`  
`function POpen(var F: File; const Prog: RawByteString; rw: Char) : cint`  
`function POpen(var F: text; const Prog: UnicodeString; rw: Char) : cint`  
`function POpen(var F: File; const Prog: UnicodeString; rw: Char) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `POpen` runs the command specified in `Prog`, and redirects the standard in or output of the command to the other end of the pipe `F`. The parameter `rw` indicates the direction of the pipe. If it is set to 'W', then `F` can be used to write data, which will then be read by the command from `stdin`. If it is set to 'R', then the standard output of the command can be read from `F`. `F` should be reset or rewritten prior to using it. `F` can be of type `Text` or `File`. A file opened with `POpen` can be closed with `Close`, but also with `PClose` (2047). The result is the same, but `PClose` returns the exit status of the command `Prog`.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (188) function. Errors are essentially those of the `Execve`, `Dup` and `AssignPipe` commands.

See also: `AssignPipe` (2035), `PClose` (2047)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex37.pp`

---

**Program** `Example37`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Popen function. }

uses BaseUnix, Unix;

var f : text;
    i : longint;

begin
  writeln ('Creating a shell script to which echoes its arguments');
  writeln ('and input back to stdout');
  assign (f, 'test21a ');
  rewrite (f);
  writeln (f, '#!/bin/sh');
  writeln (f, 'echo this is the child speaking.... ');
  writeln (f, 'echo got arguments \'$*\');
  writeln (f, 'cat');
  writeln (f, 'exit 2');
  writeln (f);
  close (f);
  fpchmod ('test21a ', &755);
  popen (f, './test21a arg1 arg2 ', 'W');
  if fpgeterrno <> 0 then
    writeln ('error from POpen : errno : ', fpgeterrno);
  for i:=1 to 10 do
    writeln (f, 'This is written to the pipe, and should appear on stdout. ');
  Flush(f);
  Writeln ('The script exited with status : ', PClose (f));
  writeln;
  writeln ('Press <return> to remove shell script. ');
  readln;
  assign (f, 'test21a ');
```

---

```

    erase (f)
end.

```

---

### 81.3.23 ReadTimezoneFile

Synopsis: Read the timezone file and initialize time routines

Declaration: `procedure ReadTimezoneFile(fn: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadTimezoneFile` reads the timezone file `fn` and initializes the local time routines based on the information found there.

There should be no need to call this function. The initialization routines of the linux unit call this routine at unit startup.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` ([2047](#)), `GetLocalTimezone` ([2047](#))

### 81.3.24 ReReadLocalTime

Synopsis: Re-Read the local time files.

Declaration: `procedure ReReadLocalTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReReadLocalTime` can be used to re-initialize the local timezone information.

To speed up conversion of epoch (UTC) time to local time, the timezone information is loaded only once, at program startup. Calling this routine re-reads the timezone information using current timezone settings.

The `EpochToLocal` ([2074](#)) function uses timezone information to transform epoch time to local time. This timezone information does not change while the application is running: in particular, on DST transitions or when the timezone files change, the time returned by local time routines will be wrong.

See also: `Date` ([1628](#)), `Time` ([1729](#)), `Now` ([1695](#)), `EpochToLocal` ([2074](#))

### 81.3.25 SeekDir

Synopsis: Seek to position in directory

Declaration: `procedure SeekDir(p: pDir; loc: clong)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekDir` sets the directory pointer to the `loc`-th entry in the directory structure pointed to by `p`.

For an example, see `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` ([202](#)).

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([188](#)) function:

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpCloseDir` ([179](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpReadDir` ([206](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` ([202](#)), `TellDir` ([2050](#))

### 81.3.26 TellDir

Synopsis: Return current location in a directory

Declaration: `function TellDir(p: pDir) : TOff`

Visibility: default

Description: `TellDir` returns the current location in the directory structure pointed to by `p`. It returns -1 on failure.

For an example, see `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (202).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpCloseDir` (179), `#rtl.baseunix.fpReadDir` (206), `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (202), `SeekDir` (2049)

### 81.3.27 WaitProcess

Synopsis: Wait for process to terminate.

Declaration: `function WaitProcess(Pid: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `WaitProcess` waits for process `PID` to exit. `WaitProcess` is equivalent to the `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (226) call:

```
FpWaitPid(PID, @result, 0)
```

Handles of Signal interrupts (`errno=EINTR`), and returns the Exitcode of Process `PID` ( $\geq 0$ ) or - Status if it was terminated

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (226), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (228), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (228), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (227), `WIFSTOPPED` (2050), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (228), `W_EXITCODE` (2051), `W_STOPCODE` (2051), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (227)

### 81.3.28 WIFSTOPPED

Synopsis: Check whether the process is currently stopped.

Declaration: `function WIFSTOPPED(Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFSTOPPED` checks `Status` and returns `true` if the process is currently stopped. This is only possible if `WUNTRACED` was specified in the options of `FpWaitPID` (226).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (226), `WaitProcess` (2050), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (228), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (228), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (227), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (228), `W_EXITCODE` (2051), `W_STOPCODE` (2051), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (227)

### 81.3.29 W\_EXITCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on an return code and signal.

Declaration: `function W_EXITCODE(ReturnCode: Integer; Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `W_EXITCODE` combines `ReturnCode` and `Signal` to a status code fit for `WaitPid`.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (226), `WaitProcess` (2050), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (228), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (228), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (227), `WIFSTOPPED` (2050), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (228), `W_EXITCODE` (2051), `W_STOPCODE` (2051), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (227)

### 81.3.30 W\_STOPCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on a signal.

Declaration: `function W_STOPCODE(Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `W_STOPCODE` constructs an exit status based on `Signal`, which will cause `WIFSIGNALED` (228) to return `True`

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (226), `WaitProcess` (2050), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (228), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (228), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (227), `WIFSTOPPED` (2050), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (228), `W_EXITCODE` (2051), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (227)

# Chapter 82

## Reference for unit 'unixcp'

### 82.1 Used units

Table 82.1: Used units by unit 'unixcp'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">137</a>

### 82.2 Overview

The unixcp unit provides routines to handle mapping of code page names to numerical values as used in libiconv>. The GetCodepageByName ([2055](#)) function is the main function for this. The GetCodepageData ([2056](#)) can be used to map a code page number to a name. These function can be used for instance to map code page information in environment variables to code page numbers used in string encodings. The supported code page names are the ones commonly in use in libiconv.

This unit is used for example in unit cwstring ([576](#)).

### 82.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 82.3.1 Constants

```
UnixCpMap : Array[-1..UnixCpMapLimit] of TUnixCpData = ((cp: 0; name
: 'UTF-8'), (cp: 37; name: 'IBM037'), (cp: 37; name: 'IBM-037'),
(cp: 154; name: 'CP154'), (cp: 154; name: 'CYRILLIC-ASIAN'), (cp:
154; name: 'PT154'), (cp: 154; name: 'PTCP154'), (cp: 154; name:
'CSPTCP154'), (cp: 437; name: '437'), (cp: 437; name: 'CP437'),
(cp: 437; name: 'IBM-437'), (cp: 437; name: 'CSPC8CODEPAGE437'),
(cp: 437; name: 'IBM437'), (cp: 500; name: 'IBM500'), (cp: 500; name
: 'IBM-500'), (cp: 708; name: 'ASMO-708'), (cp: 720; name: 'DOS-720'
), (cp: 737; name: 'CP737'), (cp: 737; name: 'ibm737'), (cp: 775;
name: 'CP775'), (cp: 775; name: 'IBM775'), (cp: 775; name: 'CSPC775BALTIC'
), (cp: 775; name: 'ibm775'), (cp: 850; name: '850'), (cp: 850; name
: 'CP850'), (cp: 850; name: 'IBM850'), (cp: 850; name: 'CSPC850MULTILINGUAL'
), (cp: 850; name: 'ibm850'), (cp: 852; name: '852'), (cp: 852; name
```

```

: 'CP852'), (cp: 852; name: 'IBM852'), (cp: 852; name: 'CSPCP852'
), (cp: 852; name: 'ibm852'), (cp: 853; name: 'CP853'), (cp: 855;
name: '855'), (cp: 855; name: 'CP855'), (cp: 855; name: 'IBM855'
), (cp: 855; name: 'CSIBM855'), (cp: 855; name: 'IBM855'), (cp: 857
; name: '857'), (cp: 857; name: 'CP857'), (cp: 857; name: 'IBM857'
), (cp: 857; name: 'CSIBM857'), (cp: 857; name: 'ibm857'), (cp: 858
; name: 'CP858'), (cp: 858; name: 'IBM00858'), (cp: 860; name: '860'
), (cp: 860; name: 'CP860'), (cp: 860; name: 'IBM860'), (cp: 860;
name: 'CSIBM860'), (cp: 860; name: 'IBM860'), (cp: 861; name: '861'
), (cp: 861; name: 'CP-IS'), (cp: 861; name: 'CP861'), (cp: 861; name
: 'IBM861'), (cp: 861; name: 'CSIBM861'), (cp: 861; name: 'ibm861'
), (cp: 862; name: '862'), (cp: 862; name: 'CP862'), (cp: 862; name
: 'IBM862'), (cp: 862; name: 'CSPC862LATINHEBREW'), (cp: 862; name
: 'DOS-862'), (cp: 863; name: '863'), (cp: 863; name: 'CP863'), (cp
: 863; name: 'CSIBM863'), (cp: 863; name: 'IBM863'), (cp: 864; name
: 'CP864'), (cp: 864; name: 'CSIBM864'), (cp: 864; name: 'IBM864'
), (cp: 865; name: '865'), (cp: 865; name: 'IBM-865'), (cp: 865; name
: 'CP865'), (cp: 865; name: 'CSIBM865'), (cp: 865; name: 'IBM865'
), (cp: 866; name: '866'), (cp: 866; name: 'CP866'), (cp: 866; name
: 'IBM866'), (cp: 866; name: 'CSIBM866'), (cp: 866; name: 'cp866'
), (cp: 869; name: '869'), (cp: 869; name: 'IBM-869'), (cp: 869; name
: 'CP-GR'), (cp: 869; name: 'CP869'), (cp: 869; name: 'IBM869'),
(cp: 869; name: 'CSIBM869'), (cp: 869; name: 'ibm869'), (cp: 870;
name: 'IBM870'), (cp: 874; name: 'CP874'), (cp: 874; name: 'WINDOWS-874'
), (cp: 874; name: 'windows-874'), (cp: 875; name: 'cp875'), (cp:
932; name: 'CP932'), (cp: 932; name: 'IBM-943'), (cp: 932; name:
'MS932'), (cp: 932; name: 'SHIFFT_JIS'), (cp: 932; name: 'SHIFFT_JIS-MS'
), (cp: 932; name: 'SJIS'), (cp: 932; name: 'SJIS-MS'), (cp: 932;
name: 'SJIS-OPEN'), (cp: 932; name: 'SJIS-WIN'), (cp: 932; name:
'WINDOWS-31J'), (cp: 932; name: 'WINDOWS-932'), (cp: 932; name: 'CSWINDOWS31J'
), (cp: 932; name: 'shift_jis'), (cp: 932; name: 'shift-jis'), (cp
: 936; name: 'CP936'), (cp: 936; name: 'GBK'), (cp: 936; name: 'MS936'
), (cp: 936; name: 'WINDOWS-936'), (cp: 936; name: 'gb2312'), (cp
: 949; name: 'CP949'), (cp: 949; name: 'UHC'), (cp: 949; name: 'EUC-KR'
), (cp: 949; name: 'ks_c_5601-1987'), (cp: 950; name: 'CP950'), (cp
: 950; name: 'BIG5'), (cp: 950; name: 'big5'), (cp: 1026; name: 'IBM1026'
), (cp: 1047; name: 'IBM01047'), (cp: 1125; name: 'CP1125'), (cp:
1125; name: 'IBM-1125'), (cp: 1133; name: 'CP1133'), (cp: 1133; name
: 'IBM-1133'), (cp: 1133; name: 'IBM-CP1133'), (cp: 1140; name: 'IBM01140'
), (cp: 1141; name: 'IBM01141'), (cp: 1142; name: 'IBM01142'), (cp
: 1143; name: 'IBM01143'), (cp: 1144; name: 'IBM01144'), (cp: 1145
; name: 'IBM01145'), (cp: 1146; name: 'IBM01146'), (cp: 1147; name
: 'IBM01147'), (cp: 1148; name: 'IBM01148'), (cp: 1149; name: 'IBM01149'
), (cp: 1200; name: 'UTF-16LE'), (cp: 1200; name: 'UTF16LE'), (cp
: 1200; name: 'UCS-2LE'), (cp: 1200; name: 'CP1200'), (cp: 1201; name
: 'UTF-16BE'), (cp: 1201; name: 'UTF16BE'), (cp: 1201; name: 'UCS-2BE'
), (cp: 1201; name: 'unicodeFFFE'), (cp: 1201; name: 'CP1201'), (cp
: 1250; name: 'CP1250'), (cp: 1250; name: 'MS-EE'), (cp: 1250; name
: 'WINDOWS-1250'), (cp: 1250; name: 'windows-1250'), (cp: 1251; name
: 'CP1251'), (cp: 1251; name: 'MS-CYRL'), (cp: 1251; name: 'WINDOWS-1251'
), (cp: 1251; name: 'windows-1251'), (cp: 1252; name: 'CP1252'),
(cp: 1252; name: 'MS-ANSI'), (cp: 1252; name: 'WINDOWS-1252'), (cp
: 1252; name: 'windows-1252'), (cp: 1253; name: 'CP1253'), (cp: 1253
; name: 'MS-GREEK'), (cp: 1253; name: 'WINDOWS-1253'), (cp: 1253;

```

```

name: 'windows-1253'), (cp: 1254; name: 'CP1254'), (cp: 1254; name
: 'MS-TURK'), (cp: 1254; name: 'WINDOWS-1254'), (cp: 1254; name: 'windows-1254'
), (cp: 1255; name: 'CP1255'), (cp: 1255; name: 'MS-HEBR'), (cp: 1255
; name: 'WINDOWS-1255'), (cp: 1255; name: 'windows-1255'), (cp: 1256
; name: 'CP1256'), (cp: 1256; name: 'MS-ARAB'), (cp: 1256; name: 'WINDOWS-1256'
), (cp: 1256; name: 'windows-1256'), (cp: 1257; name: 'CP1257'),
(cp: 1257; name: 'WINBALTRIM'), (cp: 1257; name: 'WINDOWS-1257'),
(cp: 1257; name: 'windows-1257'), (cp: 1258; name: 'CP1258'), (cp
: 1258; name: 'WINDOWS-1258'), (cp: 1258; name: 'windows-1258'),
(cp: 1361; name: 'CP1361'), (cp: 1361; name: 'JOHAB'), (cp: 1361;
name: 'Johab'), (cp: 10000; name: 'macintosh'), (cp: 10001; name
: 'x-mac-japanese'), (cp: 10002; name: 'x-mac-chinesetrad'), (cp:
10003; name: 'x-mac-korean'), (cp: 10004; name: 'x-mac-arabic'),
(cp: 10005; name: 'x-mac-hebrew'), (cp: 10006; name: 'x-mac-greek'
), (cp: 10007; name: 'x-mac-cyrillic'), (cp: 10008; name: 'x-mac-chinesesimp'
), (cp: 10010; name: 'x-mac-romanian'), (cp: 10017; name: 'x-mac-ukrainian'
), (cp: 10021; name: 'x-mac-thai'), (cp: 10029; name: 'x-mac-ce'
), (cp: 10079; name: 'x-mac-icelandic'), (cp: 10081; name: 'x-mac-turkish'
), (cp: 10082; name: 'x-mac-croatian'), (cp: 12000; name: 'UTF-32LE'
), (cp: 12000; name: 'CP12000'), (cp: 12000; name: 'UTF32LE'), (cp
: 12001; name: 'UTF-32BE'), (cp: 12001; name: 'CP12001'), (cp: 12001
; name: 'UTF32BE'), (cp: 20000; name: 'x-Chinese_CNS'), (cp: 20001
; name: 'x-cp20001'), (cp: 20002; name: 'x_Chinese-Eten'), (cp: 20003
; name: 'x-cp20003'), (cp: 20004; name: 'x-cp20004'), (cp: 20005;
name: 'x-cp20005'), (cp: 20105; name: 'x-IA5'), (cp: 20106; name
: 'x-IA5-German'), (cp: 20107; name: 'x-IA5-Swedish'), (cp: 20108
; name: 'x-IA5-Norwegian'), (cp: 20127; name: 'US-ASCII'), (cp: 20127
; name: 'ASCII'), (cp: 20127; name: 'ANSI_X3.4-1968'), (cp: 20127
; name: 'ANSI_X3.4-1986'), (cp: 20127; name: 'CP367'), (cp: 20127
; name: 'IBM367'), (cp: 20127; name: 'ISO-IR-6'), (cp: 20127; name
: 'ISO646-US'), (cp: 20127; name: 'ISO_646.IRV:1991'), (cp: 20127
; name: 'US'), (cp: 20127; name: 'CSASCII'), (cp: 20127; name: 'us-ascii'
), (cp: 20261; name: 'x-cp20261'), (cp: 20269; name: 'x-cp20269'
), (cp: 20273; name: 'IBM273'), (cp: 20277; name: 'IBM277'), (cp: 20278
; name: 'IBM278'), (cp: 20280; name: 'IBM280'), (cp: 20284; name:
'IBM284'), (cp: 20285; name: 'IBM285'), (cp: 20290; name: 'IBM290'
), (cp: 20297; name: 'IBM297'), (cp: 20420; name: 'IBM420'), (cp:
20423; name: 'IBM423'), (cp: 20424; name: 'IBM424'), (cp: 20833;
name: 'x-EBCDIC-KoreanExtended'), (cp: 20838; name: 'IBM-Thai'),
(cp: 20866; name: 'koi8-r'), (cp: 20871; name: 'IBM871'), (cp: 20880
; name: 'IBM880'), (cp: 20905; name: 'IBM905'), (cp: 20924; name:
'IBM00924'), (cp: 20932; name: 'EUC-JP'), (cp: 20936; name: 'x-cp20936'
), (cp: 20949; name: 'x-cp20949'), (cp: 21025; name: 'cp1025'), (cp
: 21866; name: 'koi8-u'), (cp: 28591; name: 'CP819'), (cp: 28591;
name: 'IBM819'), (cp: 28591; name: 'ISO-8859-1'), (cp: 28591; name
: 'ISO-IR-100'), (cp: 28591; name: 'ISO8859-1'), (cp: 28591; name
: 'ISO_8859-1'), (cp: 28591; name: 'ISO_8859-1:1987'), (cp: 28591
; name: 'L1'), (cp: 28591; name: 'LATIN1'), (cp: 28591; name: 'CSISOLATIN1'
), (cp: 28591; name: 'iso-8859-1'), (cp: 28591; name: 'iso8859-1'
), (cp: 28592; name: 'iso-8859-2'), (cp: 28592; name: 'iso8859-2'
), (cp: 28593; name: 'iso-8859-3'), (cp: 28593; name: 'iso8859-3'
), (cp: 28594; name: 'iso-8859-4'), (cp: 28594; name: 'iso8859-4'
), (cp: 28595; name: 'iso-8859-5'), (cp: 28595; name: 'iso8859-5'
), (cp: 28596; name: 'iso-8859-6'), (cp: 28596; name: 'iso8859-6'

```

```

), (cp: 28597; name: 'iso-8859-7'), (cp: 28597; name: 'iso8859-7'
), (cp: 28598; name: 'iso-8859-8'), (cp: 28598; name: 'iso8859-8'
), (cp: 28599; name: 'iso-8859-9'), (cp: 28599; name: 'iso8859-9'
), (cp: 28603; name: 'iso-8859-13'), (cp: 28603; name: 'iso8859-13'
), (cp: 28605; name: 'iso-8859-15'), (cp: 28605; name: 'iso8859-15'
), (cp: 29001; name: 'x-Europa'), (cp: 38598; name: 'iso-8859-8-i'
), (cp: 38598; name: 'iso8859-8-i'), (cp: 50220; name: 'iso-2022-jp'
), (cp: 50221; name: 'ISO-2022-JP'), (cp: 50221; name: 'CP50221')
, (cp: 50221; name: 'ISO-2022-JP-MS'), (cp: 50221; name: 'ISO2022-JP'
), (cp: 50221; name: 'ISO2022-JP-MS'), (cp: 50221; name: 'MS50221'
), (cp: 50221; name: 'WINDOWS-50221'), (cp: 50221; name: 'csISO2022JP'
), (cp: 50222; name: 'iso-2022-jp'), (cp: 50225; name: 'iso-2022-kr'
), (cp: 50225; name: 'iso2022-kr'), (cp: 50227; name: 'x-cp50227'
), (cp: 51932; name: 'EUC-JP'), (cp: 51932; name: 'CP51932'), (cp
: 51932; name: 'MS51932'), (cp: 51932; name: 'WINDOWS-51932'), (cp
: 51932; name: 'euc-jp'), (cp: 51936; name: 'EUC-CN'), (cp: 51949
; name: 'euc-kr'), (cp: 52936; name: 'hz-gb-2312'), (cp: 54936; name
: 'GB18030'), (cp: 57002; name: 'x-iscii-de'), (cp: 57003; name: 'x-iscii-be'
), (cp: 57004; name: 'x-iscii-ta'), (cp: 57005; name: 'x-iscii-te'
), (cp: 57006; name: 'x-iscii-as'), (cp: 57007; name: 'x-iscii-or'
), (cp: 57008; name: 'x-iscii-ka'), (cp: 57009; name: 'x-iscii-ma'
), (cp: 57010; name: 'x-iscii-gu'), (cp: 57011; name: 'x-iscii-pa'
), (cp: 65001; name: 'UTF-8'), (cp: 65001; name: 'CP65001'), (cp:
65001; name: 'UTF8'))

```

UnixCpMap is a fixed structure with codepage number/codepage name pairs. It is used in `GetCodepageData` (2056), `GetSystemCodepage` (2056) and `GetCodepageByName` (2055) to map code page names to numbers and vice versa.

The map is ordered on code page number, and for equal code page numbers, the names are ordered so the most common one is used first.

UnixCpMapLimit = 406 - 83

Number of code pages in map UnixCpMap.

## 82.3.2 Types

## 82.4 Procedures and functions

### 82.4.1 GetCodepageByName

Synopsis: Find code page by name

Declaration: `function GetCodepageByName(cpname: rawbytestring) : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCodepageByName` returns the code page number matching `cpname`. The supported code page names are the ones commonly in use in `libiconv`. Names are searched case-sensitively, with the exception that `'cpN'` is converted to `'CPN'`, where N is a digit.

Errors: If no matching code page name is found, `CP_NONE` is returned.

See also: `UnixCpMap` (2055), `GetSystemCodepage` (2056), `GetCodepageData` (2056)



### 82.4.2 GetCodepageData

Synopsis: Return index of codepage.

Declaration: `function GetCodepageData(cp: TSystemCodePage) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCodepageData` returns the index of the first entry in `UnixCpMap` (2055) which matches `cp`. Since the entries are ordered by code page number, this means the entries can be scanned for alternate code names starting at this index.

Errors: If no matching code page is found, -1 is returned.

See also: `UnixCpMap` (2055), `GetSystemCodepage` (2056), `GetCodepageByName` (2055)

### 82.4.3 GetSystemCodepage

Synopsis: Return the system code page based on the program environment.

Declaration: `function GetSystemCodepage : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetSystemCodepage` returns the system code page, based on one of the environment variables `LC_ALL`, `LC_CTYPE` or `LANG`. The first non-empty variable (in the order mentioned here) is used.

Errors: If none is found, then a system default is used: Linux and Darwin use `CP_UTF8`, others use `CP_ASCII`.

See also: `UnixCpMap` (2055), `GetSystemCodepage` (2056), `GetCodepageByName` (2055)

## 82.5 TUnixCpData

```
TUnixCpData = record
  cp : Word;
  name : ansistring;
end
```

`TUnixCpData` contains 2 fields necessary to construct a map between code page number (`cp`) and name (`name`).

# Chapter 83

## Reference for unit 'unixtype'

### 83.1 Overview

The `unixtype` unit contains the definitions of basic UNIX types. It was initially implemented by Marco van de Voort.

When porting to a new UNIX platform, this unit should be adapted to the sizes and conventions of the platform to which the compiler is ported.

### 83.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 83.2.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = 131072`

Max number of command-line arguments.

`NAME_MAX = 255`

Max length (in bytes) of filename

`PATH_MAX = 4095`

Max length (in bytes) of pathname

`Prio_PGrp = 1`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (191)` option: Get process group priority.

`Prio_Process = 0`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (191)` option: Get process priority.

`Prio_User = 2`

`#rtl.baseunix.fpGetPriority (191)` option: Get user priority.

`pthread_rwlocksize = 56`

Size of `pthread_rwlock_t` \_data structure

`SIG_MAXSIG = 128`

Maximum signal number.

`SYS_NMLN = 65`

Max system namelength

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ADAPTIVE_NP = 3`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_DEFAULT = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK_NP = 2`

Mutex options: double lock returns an error code.

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_FAST_NP = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_ADAPTIVE_NP`

Mutex options: Fast mutex

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_TIMED_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE_NP = 1`

Mutex options: recursive mutex

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_TIMED_NP = 0`

Mutex options: ?

### 83.2.2 Types

`cbool = longbool`

Boolean type

`cchar = cint8`

C type: 8-bit signed integer

`cdouble = Double`

Double precision real format.

`cfloat = single`

Floating-point real format

`cint = cint32`

C type: integer (natural size)

`cint16 = SmallInt`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint32 = LongInt`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint64 = Int64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cint8 = ShortInt`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clock_t = cuint64`

Clock ticks type

`clong = Int64`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`longdouble = extended`

Usually translates to an extended, but is CPU dependent.

`longlong = cint64`

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

```
cschar = cint8
```

Signed character type

```
cshort = cint16
```

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

```
csigned = cint
```

csigned is an alias for cint ([2059](#)).

```
csint = cint32
```

Signed integer

```
cslong = Int64
```

The size is CPU dependent.

```
cslonglong = cint64
```

cslonglong is an alias for clonglong ([2060](#)).

```
csshort = cint16
```

Short signed integer type

```
cuchar = cuint8
```

C type: 8-bit unsigned integer

```
cuint = cuint32
```

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

```
cuint16 = Word
```

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint32 = LongWord
```

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint64 = QWord
```

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

```
cuint8 = Byte
```

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`culong = QWord`

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

`culonglong = cuint64`

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

`cunsigned = cuint`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cuint` ([2060](#))

`cushort = cuint16`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t = cuint64`

Device descriptor type.

`gid_t = cuint32`

Group ID type.

`ino64_t = cuint64`

`ino64_t` is an inode type capable of containing 64-bit inodes.

`ino_t = clong`

Inode type.

`ipc_pid_t = cint`

Process ID

`kDev_t = cushort`

Kernel device type

```
mbstate_value_t = record
case Byte of
0: (
  __wch : wint_t;
);
1
  : (
  __wchb : Array[0..3] of Char;
);
end
```

This type should never be used directly. It is part of the `mbstate_t` (2069) type.

`mode_t = cint`

Inode mode type.

`nlink_t = cuint32`

Number of links type.

`off64_t = cint64`

64-bit offset type.

`off_t = cint64`

Offset type.

`pbool = ^cbool`

Pointer to boolean type `cbool` (2059)

`pcchar = ^cchar`

Pointer to `#rtl.UnixType.cchar` (2059)

`pcdouble = ^cdouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (2059) type.

`pcfloat = ^cfloat`

Pointer to `cfloat` (2059) type.

`pcint = ^cint`

Pointer to `cInt` (2059) type.

`pcint16 = ^cint16`

Pointer to 16-bit signed integer type

`pcint32 = ^cint32`

Pointer to signed 32-bit integer type

`pcint64 = ^cint64`

Pointer to signed 64-bit integer type

`pcint8 = ^cint8`

Pointer to 8-bits signed integer type

```
pClock = ^clock_t
```

Pointer to TClock (2067) type.

```
pclong = ^clong
```

Pointer to cLong (2059) type.

```
pclongdouble = ^clongdouble
```

Pointer to the long double type clongdouble (2059)

```
pclonglong = ^clonglong
```

Pointer to longlong type.

```
pcschar = ^cschar
```

Pointer to character type cschar (2060).

```
pcshort = ^cshort
```

Pointer to cShort (2060) type.

```
pcsigned = ^csigned
```

Pointer to signed integer type csigned (2060).

```
pcsint = ^csint
```

Pointer to signed integer type csint (2060)

```
pcslong = ^cslong
```

Pointer to the signed long cslong (2060)

```
pcslonglong = ^cslonglong
```

Pointer to Signed longlong type cslonglong (2060)

```
pcsshort = ^csshort
```

Pointer to short signed integer type csshort (2060)

```
pcuchar = ^cuchar
```

Pointer to #rtl.UnixType.cuchar (2060)

```
pcuint = ^cuint
```



Pointer to cUInt (2060) type.

```
pcuint16 = ^cuint16
```

Pointer to 16-bit unsigned integer type

```
pcuint32 = ^cuint32
```

Pointer to unsigned 32-bit integer type

```
pcuint64 = ^cuint64
```

Pointer to unsigned 64-bit integer type

```
pcuint8 = ^cuint8
```

Pointer to 8-bits unsigned integer type

```
pculong = ^culong
```

Pointer to cuLong (2061) type.

```
pculonglong = ^culonglong
```

Unsigned longlong type

```
pcunsigned = ^cunsigned
```

Pointer to #rtl.unixtype.cunsigned (2061)

```
pcushort = ^cushort
```

Pointer to cuShort (2061) type.

```
pDev = ^dev_t
```

Pointer to TDev (2067) type.

```
pGid = ^gid_t
```

Pointer to TGid (2067) type.

```
pid_t = cint
```

Process ID type.

```
pIno = ^ino_t
```

Pointer to TIno (2067) type.

```
pIno64 = ^ino64_t
```

Pointer to `ino64_t` (2061)

`pkDev = ^kDev_t`

Pointer to `TkDev` (2068) type.

`pmbstate_t = ^mbstate_t`

Pointer to `mbstate_t` (2069) type

`pMode = ^mode_t`

Pointer to `TMode` (2068) type.

`pnLink = ^nlink_t`

Pointer to `TnLink` (2068) type.

`pOff = ^off_t`

Pointer to `TOff` (2068) type.

`pOff64 = ^off64_t`

Pointer to `off64_t` type

`pPid = ^pid_t`

Pointer to `TPid` (2068) type.

`pSize = ^size_t`

Pointer to `TSize` (2068) type.

`psize_t = pSize`

Pointer to `size_t` (2067) type.

`pSockLen = ^socklen_t`

Pointer to `TSockLen` (2068) type.

`pSSize = ^ssize_t`

Pointer to `TsSize` (2068) type

`PStatFS = ^TStatfs`

Pointer to `TStatFS` (2071) type.

`pthread_key_t = cuint`

Thread local storage key (opaque)

```
PTHREAD_MUTEX_T = record
case Byte of
1: (
  __m_reserved : LongInt
  ;
  __m_count : LongInt;
  __m_owner : pointer;
  __m_kind : LongInt
  ;
  __m_lock : record
    __status : sizeint;
    __spinlock : LongInt
  ;
  end;
);
end
```

`_pthread_mutex_t` describes a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_rwlock_t = record
case Boolean of
False: (
  _data : Array
    [0..pthread_rwlocksize-1] of Char;
);
True: (
  align : clong;
);
end
```

`pthread_rwlock_t` describes a lock. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_t = culong
```

Thread description record

```
pTime = ^time_t
```

Pointer to TTime (2068) type.

```
ptimespec = ^timespec
```

Pointer to timespec (2071) record.

```
ptimeval = ^timeval
```

Pointer to timeval (2071) record.

`ptime_t = ^time_t`

Pointer to `time_t` (2067) type.

`pUId = ^uid_t`

Pointer to `TUId` (2068) type.

`pwchar_t = ^wchar_t`

Pointer to `wchar_t` (2069) type.

`size_t = cuint64`

Size specification type.

`socklen_t = cuint32`

Socket address length type.

`ssize_t = cint64`

Small size type.

`TClock = clock_t`

Alias for `clock_t` (2059) type.

`TDev = dev_t`

Alias for `dev_t` (2061) type.

`TGid = gid_t`

Alias for `gid_t` (2061) type.

`time_t = cint64`

Time span type

`TIno = ino_t`

Alias for `ino_t` (2061) type.

`TIno64 = ino64_t`

Alias for `ino64_t` (2061)

`TIOCtlRequest = cint`

Opaque type used in `FpIOCtl` (192)

TkDev = kDev\_t

Alias for kDev\_t (2061) type.

TMode = mode\_t

Alias for mode\_t (2062) type.

TnLink = nlink\_t

Alias for nlink\_t (2062) type.

TOff = off\_t

Alias for off\_t (2062) type.

TOff64 = off64\_t

Alias for off64\_t type.

TPid = pid\_t

Alias for pid\_t (2064) type.

TSize = size\_t

Alias for size\_t (2067) type

TSockLen = socklen\_t

Alias for socklen\_t (2067) type.

TSSize = ssize\_t

Alias for ssize\_t (2067) type

TTime = time\_t

Alias for TTime (2068) type.

TTimeSpec = timespec

Alias for TimeSpec (2071) type.

TTimeVal = timeval

Alias for TimeVal (2071) record.

TUid = uid\_t

Alias for uid\_t (2069) type.

```
uid_t = cuint32
```

User ID type

```
wchar_t = cint32
```

Wide character type.

```
wint_t = cint32
```

Wide character size type.

### 83.3 mbstate\_t

```
mbstate_t = record
  __count : cint;
  __value : mbstate_value_t;
end
```

This type should never be used directly.

### 83.4 pthread\_attr\_t

```
pthread_attr_t = record
  __detachstate : cint;
  __schedpolicy :
  cint;
  __schedparam : sched_param;
  __inheritsched : cint;
  __scope
  : cint;
  __guardsize : size_t;
  __stackaddr_set : cint;
  __stackaddr
  : pointer;
  __stacksize : size_t;
end
```

`pthread_attr_t` describes the thread attributes. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime. Use the appropriate functions to set the thread attributes.

### 83.5 pthread\_condattr\_t

```
pthread_condattr_t = record
  __dummy : cint;
end
```

`pthread_condattr_t` describes the attributes of a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.6 pthread\_cond\_t

```
pthread_cond_t = record
  __c_lock : _pthread_fastlock;
  __c_waiting
  : pointer;
  __padding : Array[0..48-1-sizeof(_pthread_fastlock)
    -sizeof(pointer)-sizeof(clonglong)] of Byte;
  __align : clonglong
;
end
```

pthread\_cond\_t describes a thread conditional variable. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.7 pthread\_mutexattr\_t

```
pthread_mutexattr_t = record
  __mutexkind : cint;
end
```

pthread\_mutexattr\_t describes the attributes of a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.8 pthread\_rwlockattr\_t

```
pthread_rwlockattr_t = record
  __lockkind : cint;
  __pshared : cint
;
end
```

pthread\_rwlockattr\_t describes the attributes of a lock. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.9 sched\_param

```
sched_param = record
  __sched_priority : cint;
end
```

Scheduling parameter description record.

### 83.10 sem\_t

```
sem_t = record
```

```

__sem_lock : _pthread_fastlock;
__sem_value : cint
;
__sem_waiting : pointer;
end

```

`sem_t` describes a thread semaphore. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

### 83.11 timespec

```

timespec = record
  tv_sec : time_t;
  tv_nsec : clong;
end

```

Record specifying time interval.

### 83.12 timeval

```

timeval = record
  tv_sec : time_t;
  tv_usec : clong;
end

```

Time specification type.

### 83.13 TStatfs

```

TStatfs = record
  fstype : clong;
  bsize : clong;
  blocks : culong
;
  bfree : culong;
  bavail : culong;
  files : culong;
  ffree
  : culong;
  fsid : Array[0..1] of cint;
  namelen : clong;
  frsize
  : clong;
  spare : Array[0..4] of clong;
end

```

Record describing a file system in the `unix.fpstatfs` (2057) call.



### 83.14 `_pthread_fastlock`

```
_pthread_fastlock = record
  __status : clong;
  __spinlock : cint
;
end
```

`_pthread_fastlock` describes a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

## Chapter 84

# Reference for unit 'unixutil'

### 84.1 Overview

The UnixUtil unit contains some of the routines that were present in the old Linux unit, but which do not really belong in the UNIX ([2019](#)) or baseunix ([137](#)) units.

Most of the functions described here have cross-platform counterparts in the SysUtils ([1571](#)) unit. It is therefore recommended to use that unit.

### 84.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 84.2.1 Variables

`Tzseconds` : `LongInt`

Seconds west of GMT

### 84.3 Procedures and functions

#### 84.3.1 ArrayStringToPPchar

**Synopsis:** Convert an array of string to an array of null-terminated strings

**Declaration:** `function ArrayStringToPPchar(const S: Array of RawByteString;  
reserveentries: LongInt) : ppchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ArrayStringToPPchar` creates an array of null-terminated strings that point to strings which are the same as the strings in the array `S`. The function returns a pointer to this array. The array and the strings it contains must be disposed of after being used, because it they are allocated on the heap.

The `ReserveEntries` parameter tells `ArrayStringToPPchar` to allocate room at the end of the array for another `ReserveEntries` entries.

**Errors:** If not enough memory is available, an error may occur.

**See also:** `StringToPPChar` ([2075](#))

### 84.3.2 EpochToLocal

Synopsis: Convert epoch time to local time

Declaration: `procedure EpochToLocal (epoch: LongInt; var year: Word; var month: Word;  
var day: Word; var hour: Word; var minute: Word;  
var second: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00, January 1, 1970, corrected for your time zone) to local date and time.

This function takes into account the timezone settings of your system.

Errors: None

See also: LocalToEpoch ([2075](#))

**Listing:** ./unutilx/ex3.pp

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ Program to demonstrate the EpochToLocal function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix, UnixUtil;

**Var** Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds : Word;

**begin**

EpochToLocal (FTime, Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds);

**WriteLn** ( 'Current date : ', Day:2, '/', Month:2, '/', Year:4);

**WriteLn** ( 'Current time : ', Hour:2, ': ', minute:2, ': ', seconds:2);

**end.**

---

### 84.3.3 GregorianToJulian

Synopsis: Converts a Gregorian date to a Julian date

Declaration: `function GregorianToJulian (Year: LongInt; Month: LongInt; Day: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: GregorianToJulian takes a Gregorian date and converts it to a Julian day.

Errors: None.

See also: JulianToGregorian ([2074](#))

### 84.3.4 JulianToGregorian

Synopsis: Converts a Julian date to a Gregorian date

Declaration: `procedure JulianToGregorian (JulianDN: LongInt; var Year: Word;  
var Month: Word; var Day: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `JulianToGregorian` takes a Julian day and converts it to a Gregorian date. (Start of the Julian Date count is from 0 at 12 noon 1 JAN -4712 (4713 BC),)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GregorianToJulian` ([2074](#))

### 84.3.5 LocalToEpoch

**Synopsis:** Convert local time to epoch (UNIX) time

**Declaration:** `function LocalToEpoch(year: Word; month: Word; day: Word; hour: Word; minute: Word; second: Word) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Converts the Local time to epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00, January 1, 1970).

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `EpochToLocal` ([2074](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the LocalToEpoch function. }*

**Uses** UnixUtil;

**Var** year, month, day, hour, minute, second : Word;

**begin**

```

Write ( 'Year      : ' ); readln (Year);
Write ( 'Month     : ' ); readln (Month);
Write ( 'Day       : ' ); readln (Day);
Write ( 'Hour      : ' ); readln (Hour);
Write ( 'Minute    : ' ); readln (Minute);
Write ( 'Seonds    : ' ); readln (Second);
Write ( 'This is   : ' );
Write ( LocalToEpoch(year, month, day, hour, minute, second) );
Writeln ( ' seconds past 00:00 1/1/1980' );

```

**end.**

---

### 84.3.6 StringToPPChar

**Synopsis:** Split string in list of null-terminated strings

**Declaration:** `function StringToPPChar(S: PChar; ReserveEntries: Integer) : ppchar`  
`function StringToPPChar(var S: RawByteString; ReserveEntries: Integer)`  
`: ppchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StringToPPChar` splits the string `S` in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of `pchars` that point to the first letters of the words in `S`. This array is terminated by a `Nil` pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of PChar; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function can be called to create arguments for the various Exec calls.

Errors: None.

See also: ArrayStringToPPchar ([2073](#)), #rtl.baseunix.FpExecve ([182](#))

**Listing:** ./unutilx/ex70.pp

---

**Program** Example70;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StringToPPchar function. }*

**Uses** UnixUtil;

**Var** S : **String**;  
       P : PPChar;  
       I : longint;

**begin**

*// remark whitespace at end.*

    S:= 'This is a string with words. ';

    P:= StringToPPChar(S,0);

    I:=0;

**While** P[I]<>Nil **do**

**begin**

**Writeln**( 'Word ',i, ' : ',P[ i ]);

**Inc**(I);

**end**;

**FreeMem**(P, i\***SizeOf**(Pchar));

**end.**

---

## Chapter 85

# Reference for unit 'Variants'

### 85.1 Used units

Table 85.1: Used units by unit 'Variants'

Name	Page
rtlconsts	??
sysconst	??
sysutils	<a href="#">1571</a>
TypeInfo	<a href="#">1907</a>

### 85.2 Overview

The compiler has built-in support for variants, and for many operations, variants can be used without thinking about it. The system unit has built-in support for some of the basic operations on a variant, as well as some compiler helper routines. However, some operations and definitions are implemented in the `Variants` unit so as not to burden the system unit with routines that may not always be needed.

There is a basic set of variants that are defined by the Windows OS, these are supported by the compiler and the routines in the `Variants` unit. Additional variant types can be registered using the `TCustomVariantType` ([2106](#)) type.

The variants unit also registers a handler for setting published properties (using RTTI) using variant-typed values. Nothing needs to be done for this except including the variants unit in your program.

### 85.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 85.3.1 Constants

```
CFirstUserType = CMinVarType + CIncVarType
```

`CFirstUserType` is the first allocated value for `vType` when registering a variant type by the RTL, when instantiating a `TCustomVariantType` ([2106](#)) to register a variant type. It is better not to specify a custom variant type value, but let the system allocate a custom variant type.

```
CIncVarType = $000F
```

`CIncVarType` specifies the width of the gap after `CMinVarType` (2078). No user types are registered between `CMinVarType` and `CMinVarType+CIncVarType`.

`CMaxNumberOfCustomVarTypes` = \$0EFF

`CMaxNumberOfCustomVarTypes` is the amount of custom variant types that can be registered. The range of the variant type indicator (`vType`) only allows a limited amount of variants. This constant is the maximum amount.

`CMaxVarType` = `CMinVarType` + `CMaxNumberOfCustomVarTypes`

`CMaxVarType` is the maximum allowed value for `vType` when registering a variant type, instantiating a `TCustomVariantType` (2106) to register a variant type. It is better not to specify a value, but let the system allocate a custom variant type.

`CMinVarType` = \$0100

`CMinVarType` is the first allowed value for `vType` when registering a variant type by the OS, instantiating a `TCustomVariantType` (2106) to register a variant type. It is better not to specify a custom variant type value, but let the system allocate a custom variant type.

`FloatVarTypes` = [`varSingle`, `varDouble`, `varCurrency`]

`FloatlVarTypes` is used in `VarIsFloat` (2095) to decide which variant types are considered ordinals.

`OrdinalVarTypes` = [`varSmallInt`, `varInteger`, `varBoolean`, `varShortInt`, `varByte`, `varWord`, `varLongWord`, `varInt64`]

`OrdinalVarTypes` is used in `VarIsOrdinal` (2095) to decide which variant types are considered ordinals.

`VarOpAsText` : `Array[TVarOp]` of `string` = ('+', '-', '\*', '/', 'div', 'mod', 'shl', 'shr', 'and', 'or', 'xor', '', '-', 'not', '=', '<>', '<', '<=', '>', '>=', '\*\*')

`VarOpAsText` is an array with the names of the various variant operations.

### 85.3.2 Types

`TAnyProc` = `procedure`(`var V: TVarData`)

`TAnyProc` is the type for the `ClearAnyProc` (2080), `ChangeAnyProc` (2080) and `RefAnyProx` (2077) callbacks. It accepts a reference to a variant record. The operation to be performed depends on the callback.

`TBooleanToStringRule` = (`bsrAsIs`, `bsrLower`, `bsrUpper`)

Table 85.2: Enumeration values for type TBooleanToStringRule

Value	Explanation
bsrAsIs	Leave casing as is
bsrLower	Convert to lowercase
bsrUpper	Convert to uppercase

TBooleanToStringRule describes how boolean values are converted to string values. It is defined for Delphi compatibility, but is not used in the FPC runtime.

TCustomVariantTypeClass = Class of TCustomVariantType

TCustomVariantTypeClass is the class type of TCustomVariantType.

TNullCompareRule = (ncrError, ncrStrict, ncrLoose)

Table 85.3: Enumeration values for type TNullCompareRule

Value	Explanation
ncrError	Raise an error when one of the values is Null.
ncrLoose	Attempt to compare anyway
ncrStrict	Act as if the comparison is false

TNullCompareRule is the type for the NullEqualityRule (2081) and NullMagnitudeRule (2081) variables. It can have the following values:

**ncrError** Raise an error when one of the values is Null.

**ncrStrict** Act as if the comparison is false

**ncrLoose** Attempt to compare anyway

TVarCompareResult = (crLessThan, crEqual, crGreaterThan)

Table 85.4: Enumeration values for type TVarCompareResult

Value	Explanation
crEqual	Both values are equal
crGreaterThan	The first value is greater than the second value
crLessThan	The first value is less than the second value

TVarCompareResult is used when comparing 2 custom variant values in TCustomVariantType.Compare (2110). The following values exist:

**crLessThan** The first value is less than the second value

**crGreaterThan** The first value is greater than the second value



**crEqual** Both values are equal

`Array = Array of TVarData`

`TVarDataArray` is a helper type for instance used in `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2105) to represent the arguments passed to a function.

```
TVarDispProc = procedure(Dest: PVariant; const Source: Variant;
    CallDesc: PCallDesc; Params: Pointer)
```

`TVarDispProc` is the type for the `VarDispProc` (2082) callback handler. It accepts a destination variant (`Dest`) for a result. `Source` is the variant on which the operation was invoked, `CallDesc` Describes the arguments to the call and `Params` points to the parameters provided in the call.

```
TVariantRelationship = (vrEqual, vrLessThan, vrGreaterThan, vrNotEqual
    )
```

Table 85.5: Enumeration values for type `TVariantRelationship`

Value	Explanation
<code>vrEqual</code>	Are the 2 variants equal
<code>vrGreaterThan</code>	Is the first variant (strictly) greater than the second
<code>vrLessThan</code>	Is the first variant (strictly) less than the second
<code>vrNotEqual</code>	Are the 2 variants unequal

`TVariantRelationship` is used by `VarCompareValue` (2091) to indicate the type of comparison operation it must perform. It has the following values:

**vrEqual** Are the 2 variants equal

**vrLessThan** Is the first variant (strictly) less than the second

**vrGreaterThan** Is the first variant (strictly) greater than the second

**vrEqual** Are the 2 variants equal

**vrEqual** Are the 2 variants equal

### 85.3.3 Variables

```
ChangeAnyProc : TAnyProc
```

`ChangeAnyProc` is currently not used in the `Variants` unit.

```
ClearAnyProc : TAnyProc
```

`ClearAnyProc` is called when the system needs to clear a variant of type `varAny`. it must clear the variant.

```
EmptyParam : OleVariant
```

`EmptyParam` is an initialized variant with type `varError` and error value `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`. In difference with `Null` (2084) and `UnAssigned` (2085) it is a variable. You should take care never to write to it.

`InvalidCustomVariantType` : `TCustomVariantType`

`InvalidCustomVariantType` can be set to a `TCustomVariantType` (2106) instance to indicate an unknown type. By default it is set to `Pointer(-1)`.

`NullAsStringValue` : `string` = ''

`NullAsStringValue` is the value used when converting a `Null` to a string. It is only used when `NullStrictConvert` (2081) is `False`, if `NullStrictConvert` (2081) is `True`, the value of `NullAsStringValue` is ignored.

`NullEqualityRule` : `TNullCompareRule` = `ncrLoose`

`NullEqualityRule` is checked when the system needs to compare the equality of variants with `Null` values (operations `opCmpEq`, `opCmpNe`). Check `TNullCompareRule` (2079) for a list of allowed values. The default is `ncrLoose`.

For determining the order (less than, greater than etc.) see `NullMagnitudeRule` (2081).

`NullMagnitudeRule` : `TNullCompareRule` = `ncrLoose`

`NullEqualityRule` is checked when the system needs to determine the ordering of variants with `Null` values (operations like `opCmpGe`, `opCmpLe`). Check `TNullCompareRule` (2079) for a list of allowed values. The default is `ncrLoose`.

For determining equality (`opCmpEq`, `opCmpNe`) of `Null` values, see `NullEqualityRule` (2081).

`NullStrictConvert` : `Boolean` = `True`

`NullStrictConvert` determines what to do when typecasting a `Null` value to another type: If it is `True` then an exception will be raised using `VarCastError` (2090). If it is `False` then a sensible default is used: 0 or some variation on 0 based on the type of the variant. For string values the `NullAsStringValue` (2081) is used.

`OleVariantInt64AsDouble` : `Boolean` = `False`

`OleVariantInt64AsDouble` describes what to do when a `Int64` value must be converted to a `OleVariant` value. When `True` the `Int64` variant is cast to a double. When `False`, it remains an `int64` value.

`PackVarCreation` : `Boolean` = `True`

`PackVarCreation` determines what to do when a variant array is created for elements with an integer type (`varSmallint`, `varByte` and the like). A value of `False` means the array will contain `varInteger` elements. This can result in better memory alignment. When `PackVarCreation` is `True` then the smallest possible size is selected for the elements.

`RefAnyProc` : `TAnyProc`

`RefAnyProc` is called when the system needs to obtain a reference to a variant of type `varAny`. it must replace the variant with a reference to the variant.

`VarDispProc : TVarDispProc`

`VarDispProc` is the handler invoked when a dispatch invoke is handled on a variant of type `varDispatch`, `varAny` or `varUnknown`.

## 85.4 Procedures and functions

### 85.4.1 DynArrayFromVariant

Synopsis: Convert a variant to a dynamic array

Declaration: `procedure DynArrayFromVariant(var DynArray: Pointer; const V: Variant; TypeInfo: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayFromVariant` transforms a variant array to a dynamic array. It uses `TypeInfo` to calculate the length, element type and dimension of the array.

The opposite transformation can be performed with `DynArrayToVariant` (2082).

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2086), `VarArrayCreate` (2085), `VarArrayOf` (2088), `DynArrayToVariant` (2082)

### 85.4.2 DynArrayToVariant

Synopsis: Convert a Dynamic Array To a Variant

Declaration: `procedure DynArrayToVariant(var V: Variant; const DynArray: Pointer; TypeInfo: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DynArrayToVariant` converts the dynamic array `DynArray` to a variant array `V`. It uses the type information in `TypeInfo` to calculate the number of dimensions, array lengths and type of the element. The dynamic array can only contain basic types.

If there is no data, an empty variant will be returned.

The opposite transformation can be performed with `DynArrayFromVariant` (2082).

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2086), `VarArrayCreate` (2085), `VarArrayOf` (2088), `DynArrayFromVariant` (2082)

### 85.4.3 FindCustomVariantType

Synopsis: Find a custom variant class on `vartype`

Declaration: `function FindCustomVariantType(const aVarType: TVarType; out CustomVariantType: TCustomVariantType): Boolean; Overload`  
`function FindCustomVariantType(const TypeName: string; out CustomVariantType: TCustomVariantType): Boolean; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindCustomVariantType` searches the registry of known `TCustomVariantType` (2106) classes and returns the instance registered for the variant type `aVarType` or the class name `TypeNames` in `CustomVariantType` if found.

It returns `True` if it found a matching definition, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `TCustomVariantType` (2106)

#### 85.4.4 FindVarData

Synopsis: Return a pointer to variant data

**Declaration:** `function FindVarData(const V: Variant) : PVarData`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindVarData` returns a pointer to the argument `V` if it is not a reference. If it is a reference, then the reference pointer is returned.

#### 85.4.5 GetPropValue

Synopsis: Return a property value as a variant

**Declaration:** `function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetPropValue` returns the value of the property described by `PropInfo` from the `Instance`. The property value is returned as a variant type.

when `PreferStrings` is true, the implementation will tend to cast to a string-valued variant when a conversion must be done.

This function is used as the value for the `TypeInfo` (2077) unit's `OnGetPropValue` (2077) callback. This callback is automatically initialized with the function when the variants unit is used.

See also: `TypeInfo` (2077), `TypeInfo.OnGetPropValue` (2077), `SetPropValue` (2084)

#### 85.4.6 GetVariantProp

Synopsis: Get variant valued property

**Declaration:** `function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)  
: Variant  
function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string)  
: Variant`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetVariantProp` returns the value of the variant-types property described by `PropInfo` or `PropName` from the `Instance`.

This function is used as the value for the `TypeInfo` (2077) unit's `OnGetVariantProp` (2077) callback. This callback is automatically initialized with the function when the variants unit is used.

See also: `TypeInfo` (2077), `TypeInfo.OnGetVariantProp` (2077), `SetVariantProp` (2085), `GetPropValue` (2083)

### 85.4.7 HandleConversionException

Synopsis: Convert an exception to a variant exception

Declaration: `procedure HandleConversionException(const ASourceType: TVarType;  
const ADestType: TVarType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `HandleConversionException` converts a RTL exception (`EConvertError` (2077) or `ERangeError` (2077) or `EOverflow` (2077)) to an appropriate variant error (`varCastError` (2090) and `varOverflowError` (2097)). Other exceptions are re-raised. If a source and destination type `ASourceType` and `ADestType` are specified they are included in the error message.

See also: `EConvertError` (2077), `ERangeError` (2077), `varCastError` (2090), `varOverflowError` (2097), `EOverflow` (2077)

### 85.4.8 Null

Synopsis: Return a null variant

Declaration: `function Null : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnAssigned` returns a Null variant (`type = varNull`). It can be used to test for equality with a Null variant.

See also: `UnAssigned` (2085), `EmptyParam` (2081)

### 85.4.9 SetClearVarToEmptyParam

Synopsis: Create an error variant with value `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`

Declaration: `procedure SetClearVarToEmptyParam(var V: TVarData)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetClearVarToEmptyParam` clears the variant `Vvar` and sets its type to `varError` and value to `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`. `VarIsEmptyParam(SetClearVarToEmptyParam(V))` will return `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `VarIsEmptyParam` (2094), `VarIsError` (2094)

### 85.4.10 SetPropValue

Synopsis: Set a property value as a variant

Declaration: `procedure SetPropValue(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Variant); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetPropValue` sets the value of the property described by `PropInfo` from the `Instance`. The property value is set from the variant-typed value `Value`.

This function is used as the value for the `TypeInfo` (2077) unit's `OnSetPropValue` (2077) callback. This callback is automatically initialized with the function when the variants unit is used.

See also: `TypeInfo` (2077), `TypeInfo.OnSetPropValue` (2077), `GetPropValue` (2083)

### 85.4.11 SetVariantProp

Synopsis: Set variant valued property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: string;
                        const Value: Variant)
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                        const Value: Variant)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVariantProp` sets the value of the variant-types property described by `PropInfo` or `PropName` from the `Instance` to `Value`.

This function is used as the value for the `TypeInfo` (2077) unit's `OnSetVariantProp` (2077) callback. This callback is automatically initialized with the function when the variants unit is used.

See also: `TypeInfo` (2077), `TypeInfo.OnSetVariantProp` (2077), `GetVariantProp` (2083), `GetPropValue` (2083)

### 85.4.12 Unassigned

Synopsis: Return an unassigned variant

Declaration: 

```
function Unassigned : Variant
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UnAssigned` returns an unassigned variant (`type = varEmpty`). It can be used to test for equality with an empty variant.

See also: `Null` (2084), `EmptyParam` (2081)

### 85.4.13 VarArrayAsPSafeArray

Synopsis: Return internal array of variant value

Declaration: 

```
function VarArrayAsPSafeArray(const A: Variant) : PVarArray
```

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayAsPSafeArray` returns the internal array of the variant `A` if it is a variant array. If not, an exception is raised.

Errors: if the variant `A` is not an array, an `EVariantInvalidArgError` (2102) exception is raised.

See also: `VarIsArray` (2093), `EVariantInvalidArgError` (2102)

### 85.4.14 VarArrayCreate

Synopsis: Create a variant array

Declaration: 

```
function VarArrayCreate(const Bounds: Array of SizeInt;
                        aVarType: TVarType) : Variant
function VarArrayCreate(const Bounds: PVarArrayBoundArray;
                        Dims: SizeInt; aVarType: TVarType) : Variant
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `VarArrayCreate` creates a (optionally multidimensional) array with upper,lower bounds specified in `Bounds`. The number of bounds (in case of a single array) must be even: 2 bounds for every dimension of the array are required. All elements of the array are of the same type. The following examples create a one-dimensional array with 10 elements

```
VarArrayCreate([0,9],varInteger);
VarArrayCreate([1,10],varInteger);
```

The first array is 0-based, the second is 1-based. The following creates a 2-dimensional array:

```
VarArrayCreate([0,9,0,1],varInteger);
VarArrayCreate([1,10,1,2],varInteger);
```

The first array is 0-based, the second is 1-based. Each array consists of an array of 2 elements.

The array can also be specified as a pointer to array of `system.tvararraybound` (2077) records, and a number of dimensions. The above 1-dimensional arrays can be specified as:

```
var
  B : tvararraybound;
begin
  b.elementcount:=10;
  B.lowbound:=0;
  VarArrayCreate(@B,1,varInteger);
  b.elementcount:=10;
  B.lowbound:=1;
  VarArrayCreate(@B,1,varInteger);
```

**Errors:** If an uneven amount of bounds is specified or the operating system failed to create the array, an exception is raised using `VarArrayCreateError` (2086)

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2086), `VarArrayOf` (2088)

#### 85.4.15 VarArrayCreateError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EVariantArrayCreateError` error

**Declaration:** `procedure VarArrayCreateError`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayCreateError` raises an `EVariantArrayCreateError` (2101) exception with a standard error message.

See also: `EVariantArrayCreateError` (2101), `VarOverflowError` (2097), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2092), `VarInvalidOp` (2092), `VarBadIndexError` (2089), `VarArrayLockedError` (2087)

#### 85.4.16 VarArrayDimCount

**Synopsis:** Return the number of dimensions of the array.

**Declaration:** `function VarArrayDimCount(const A: Variant) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayDimCount` returns the number of dimensions of the array `A`. If `A` is not an array, zero is returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `VarArrayCreate` (2085), `VarArrayLowBound` (2088), `VarArrayHighBound` (2087)

### 85.4.17 `VarArrayHighBound`

**Synopsis:** Return lower bound of an array

**Declaration:** `function VarArrayHighBound(const A: Variant; Dim: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayHighBound` returns the high bound (max index) of dimension `Dim` of array `A`. The dimension `Dim` is 1-based.

**Errors:** If the dimension is out of range, or `A` is not a variant array, an exception will be raised.

**See also:** `VarArrayCreate` (2085), `VarArrayDimCount` (2086), `VarArrayLowBound` (2088)

### 85.4.18 `VarArrayLock`

**Synopsis:** get a pointer to data of a variant array

**Declaration:** `function VarArrayLock(const A: Variant) : Pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayLock` returns a pointer to the data of an array-typed variant `A` and locks the variant. The pointer can then be used to manipulate the data of the array and be sure that the data is not modified by another process or thread. While the data is not released using `VarArrayUnlock` (2088) the variant cannot be changed or released, it is therefor imperative that the variant is again released. Memory leaks will be the result if this is not done.

**See also:** `VarArrayUnlock` (2088)

### 85.4.19 `VarArrayLockedError`

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EVariantArrayLockedError` error

**Declaration:** `procedure VarArrayLockedError`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `VarArrayLockedError` raises an `EVariantArrayLockedError` (2101) exception with a standard error message.

**See also:** `EVariantArrayLockedError` (2101), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2092), `VarInvalidOp` (2092), `VarBadIndexError` (2089)



### 85.4.20 VarArrayLowBound

Synopsis: Return lower bound of an array

Declaration: `function VarArrayLowBound(const A: Variant; Dim: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayLowBound` returns the lower bound (min index) of dimension `Dim` of array `A`. The dimension `Dim` is 1-based.

Errors: If the dimension is out of range, or `A` is not a variant array, an exception will be raised.

See also: `VarArrayCreate` (2085), `VarArrayDimCount` (2086), `VarArrayHighBound` (2087)

### 85.4.21 VarArrayOf

Synopsis: Create a variants array of a series of values

Declaration: `function VarArrayOf(const Values: Array of Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayOf` creates a variant array with elements of type `varVariant`. The array has as many values as there are elements in `Values` and the element values are copied from `Values`.

Errors: If the array cannot be created, an `EVariantError` exception may be raised.

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2086), `VarArrayCreate` (2085), `DynArrayToVariant` (2082)

### 85.4.22 VarArrayRef

Synopsis: Get a reference to a variant array

Declaration: `function VarArrayRef(const A: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayRef` returns a reference to the variant array `A`.

Errors: An exception will be raised if the variant `A` is not an array.

See also: `VarArrayLock` (2087), `VarArrayUnlock` (2088), `VarIsArray` (2093)

### 85.4.23 VarArrayUnlock

Synopsis: Release data captured by `VarArrayLock`

Declaration: `procedure VarArrayUnlock(const A: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayUnlock` unlocks the variant array `A` that was previously locked using `VarArrayLock` (2087).

See also: `VarArrayLock` (2087)

#### 85.4.24 VarAsError

Synopsis: Create an error-typed variant

Declaration: `function VarAsError (AResult: HRESULT) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarAsError` creates an error-typed variant with value `aResult`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetClearVarToEmptyParam` (2084), `VarIsError` (2094)

#### 85.4.25 VarAsType

Synopsis: Attempt to cast a variant to another type

Declaration: `function VarAsType (const V: Variant; aVarType: TVarType) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarAsType` attempts to cast the variant `V` to a new variant of type `aVarType` and returns the new variant.

Errors: If the requested type cast is not supported or possible, an `EVariantTypeCastError` (2104) exception may be raised.

See also: `EVariantTypeCastError` (2104), `VarIsType` (2096), `VarAsType` (2089)

#### 85.4.26 VarBadIndexError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantBadIndexError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarBadIndexError`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarBadIndexError` raises an `EVariantBadIndexError` (2102) exception with a standard error message.

See also: `EVariantBadIndexError` (2102), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2092), `VarInvalidOp` (2092), `VarArrayLockedError` (2087)

#### 85.4.27 VarBadTypeError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantBadVarTypeError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarBadTypeError`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarBadTypeError` raises an `EVariantBadVarTypeError` (2102) exception.

See also: `EVariantBadVarTypeError` (2102), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2092), `VarInvalidOp` (2092)

### 85.4.28 VarCastError

Synopsis: Raise a variant type cast error `EVariantTypeCastError`

Declaration: `procedure VarCastError`  
`procedure VarCastError(const ASourceType: TVarType;`  
`const ADestType: TVarType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCastError` raises an `EVariantTypeCastError` (2104) exception. If the source and destination types are specified, then a description of the types is included in the error message.

See also: `EVariantTypeCastError` (2104), `VarCastErrorOle` (2090)

### 85.4.29 VarCastErrorOle

Synopsis: Raise a variant type cast error `EVariantTypeCastError`

Declaration: `procedure VarCastErrorOle(const ASourceType: TVarType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCastError` raises an `EVariantTypeCastError` (2104) exception. a description of the source type (`aSourceType`) is included in the error message.

See also: `EVariantTypeCastError` (2104), `VarCastError` (2090)

### 85.4.30 VarCheckEmpty

Synopsis: Raise exception if a variant is empty.

Declaration: `procedure VarCheckEmpty(const V: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCheckEmpty` will raise an `EVariantError` (2077) exception if the variant `V` is empty (it uses `VarIsEmpty` (2094) to check this.)

Errors: if the variant is empty an `EVariantError` (2077) exception is raised.

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarType` (2100), `VarIsNull` (2095)

### 85.4.31 VarClear

Synopsis: Clear the variant value

Declaration: `procedure VarClear(var V: Variant)`  
`procedure VarClear(var V: OleVariant)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarClear` clears the variant, possibly freeing any memory taken by the value

Errors: None.

See also: `SetClearVarToEmptyParam` (2084), `VarIsError` (2094), `VarIsClear` (2093)

### 85.4.32 VarCompareValue

Synopsis: Compare 2 variant values

Declaration: `function VarCompareValue(const A: Variant; const B: Variant)  
: TVariantRelationship`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCompareValue` compares 2 variants A and B. It returns one of the following values:

**vrEqual** if the 2 variant values are equal.

**vrUnequal** if one of the 2 variant is null or empty and the other is not.

**vrGreaterThan** if  $A > B$

**vrLessThan** if  $A < B$

See also: `VarSameValue` ([2097](#))

### 85.4.33 VarCopyNoInd

Synopsis: Not supported

Declaration: `procedure VarCopyNoInd(var Dest: Variant; const Source: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarCopyNoInd` is currently not supported.

Errors: An `EVariantError` exception is always raised.

### 85.4.34 VarEnsureRange

Synopsis: Make sure the variant is within a specified range.

Declaration: `function VarEnsureRange(const AValue: Variant; const AMin: Variant;  
const AMax: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarEnsureRange` checks `AValue` and returns it if it is in the range specified by `AMin`, `AMax`. If it is less than `AMin`, then `AMin` is returned. If it is larger than `AMax`, then `AMax` is returned.

Errors: If the variants are of different types and they cannot be converted, an exception will be raised.

See also: `VarInRange` ([2092](#))

### 85.4.35 VarFromDateTime

Synopsis: Create variant from `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function VarFromDateTime(const DateTime: TDateTime) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarFromDateTime` creates a variant with type `varDate` and value `DateTime`.

Errors: None.

See also: `varToDateTime` ([2098](#))

### 85.4.36 VarInRange

Synopsis: Check if a variant is in a range of values

Declaration: `function VarInRange(const AValue: Variant; const AMin: Variant;  
const AMax: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarInRange` is an auxiliary function which checks whether `AValue` is in the range defined by `AMin` and `AMax`, borders included.

Errors: If the variants are of different types and they cannot be converted, an exception will be raised.

See also: `VarEnsureRange` (2091)

### 85.4.37 VarInvalidArgError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantInvalidArgError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarInvalidArgError  
procedure VarInvalidArgError(AType: TVarType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarInvalidArgError` raises an `EVariantInvalidArgError` (2102) exception with a standard error message. If the `AType` argument is specified, a description of the argument type is included in the error message.

See also: `EVariantInvalidArgError` (2102), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2092), `VarInvalidOp` (2092), `VarBadIndexError` (2089), `VarArrayLockedError` (2087)

### 85.4.38 VarInvalidNullOp

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantInvalidOpError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarInvalidNullOp`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarInvalidNullOp` raises an `EVariantInvalidOpError` (2102) exception including null type description.

See also: `EVariantInvalidOpError` (2102), `VarInvalidOp` (2092)

### 85.4.39 VarInvalidOp

Synopsis: Raise a `EVariantInvalidOpError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarInvalidOp  
procedure VarInvalidOp(const aLeft: TVarType; const aRight: TVarType;  
aOpCode: TVarOp)  
procedure VarInvalidOp(const aRight: TVarType; aOpCode: TVarOp)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarInvalidOp` raises an `EVariantInvalidOpError` (2102) exception. when the left and/or right operand types (`aLeft`, `aRight` and the operation are specified, a description of the operand types and operation is included in the error message.

See also: `EVariantInvalidOpError` (2102), `VarCastError` (2090)

### 85.4.40 VarIsArray

Synopsis: Check whether a variant is an array

Declaration: `function VarIsArray(const A: Variant) : Boolean`  
`function VarIsArray(const A: Variant; AResolveByRef: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsArray` returns `True` if `A` is an array. If `AResolveByRef` is `True` (the default) then it will resolve all references first.

Errors: None.

See also: `VarTypeIsValidArrayType` (2100)

### 85.4.41 VarIsBool

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a boolean

Declaration: `function VarIsBool(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is a boolean value.

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarIsNull` (2095), `VarIsCustom` (2094), `VarIsOrdinal` (2095), `VarIsFloat` (2095), `VarIsStr` (2096)

### 85.4.42 VarIsByRef

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a reference to a value.

Declaration: `function VarIsByRef(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsByRef` checks whether the variant `V` is a reference to a value instead of an actual value. It returns `True` if this is the case, `False` if not.

See also: `VarType` (2100), `VarAsType` (2089), `VarIsType` (2096), `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarIsNull` (2095)

### 85.4.43 VarIsClear

Synopsis: Check if a variant is clear

Declaration: `function VarIsClear(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsClear` returns `True` if the variant `V` is empty, or it is a dispatch type with value `Nil`. For custom types, the decision is left to the custom type.

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarIsNull` (2095), `VarIsNumeric` (2095), `VarIsStr` (2096)

#### 85.4.44 VarIsCustom

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a custom value.

Declaration: `function VarIsCustom(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is a custom variant (type is larger than `CFirstUserType` (2077)).

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarIsNull` (2095), `VarIsOrdinal` (2095), `VarIsNumeric` (2095), `VarIsStr` (2096)

#### 85.4.45 VarIsEmpty

Synopsis: Check if the variant is empty

Declaration: `function VarIsEmpty(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsEmpty` checks whether the variant `V` is empty (i.e. the type is `varEmpty`).

See also: `VarType` (2100), `VarAsType` (2089), `VarIsType` (2096), `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarCheckEmpty` (2090), `VarIsNull` (2095)

#### 85.4.46 VarIsEmptyParam

Synopsis: Check if the variant is an error value for `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`

Declaration: `function VarIsEmptyParam(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsEmptyParam` returns `True` if the variant `V` is an error typed variant with value `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND`, or `False` otherwise.

See also: `VarIsError` (2094), `SetClearVarToEmptyParam` (2084)

#### 85.4.47 VarIsError

Synopsis: Check if the variant has type `varError`

Declaration: `function VarIsError(const V: Variant; out AResult: HRESULT) : Boolean`  
`function VarIsError(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsError` checks `V` and returns `True` if the type is `varError`.

See also: `VarIsNull` (2095), `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarIsOrdinal` (2095), `VarIsEmptyParam` (2094)

#### 85.4.48 VarIsFloat

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a floating-point value.

Declaration: `function VarIsFloat(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is of one of the ordinal types: `FloatVarTypes` (2078) (`varSingle`, `varDouble`, `varCurrency`).

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarIsNull` (2095), `VarIsCustom` (2094), `VarIsOrdinal` (2095), `VarIsNumeric` (2095), `VarIsStr` (2096)

#### 85.4.49 VarIsNull

Synopsis: Check if a variant is null

Declaration: `function VarIsNull(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsNull` returns `True` if the type of the variant `V` is `varNull`. No dereferencing is done.

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarType` (2100), `VarIsNumeric` (2095), `VarIsStr` (2096)

#### 85.4.50 VarIsNumeric

Synopsis: Check if the variant is a numerical value

Declaration: `function VarIsNumeric(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is of one of the ordinal or floating point types: `FloatVarTypes` (2078), `OrdinalVarTypes` (2078)

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarIsNull` (2095), `VarIsCustom` (2094), `VarIsOrdinal` (2095), `VarIsFloat` (2095), `VarIsStr` (2096)

#### 85.4.51 VarIsOrdinal

Synopsis: Check if the variant is an ordinal value.

Declaration: `function VarIsOrdinal(const V: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarIsCustom` returns `True` if the variant `V` is of one of the ordinal types: `OrdinalVarTypes` (2078) (`varSmallInt`, `varInteger`, `varBoolean`, `varShortInt`, `varByte`, `varWord`, `varLongWord`, `varInt64`)

See also: `VarIsEmpty` (2094), `VarIsNull` (2095), `VarIsCustom` (2094), `VarIsFloat` (2095), `VarIsNumeric` (2095), `VarIsStr` (2096)



### 85.4.52 VarlsStr

### Synopsis: Check if the variant is a string

```
Declaration: function VarIsStr(const V: Variant) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** VarIsCustom returns True if the variant V is of one of the string types: varOleStr, varUString, varString

See also: [VarIsEmpty \(2094\)](#), [VarIsNull \(2095\)](#), [VarIsCustom \(2094\)](#), [VarIsOrdinal \(2095\)](#), [VarIsFloat \(2095\)](#), [VarIsBool \(2093\)](#)

### 85.4.53 VarIsType

### Synopsis: Check if a variant is of certain type

```
Declaration: function VarIsType(const V: Variant; aVarType: TVarType) : Boolean
                ; Overload
function VarIsType(const V: Variant; const AVarTypes: Array of TVarType)
                : Boolean; Overload
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `VarIsType` will return `True` if the variant `V` is of type `aVarType` or is in `aVarTypes`.

See also: [VarType \(2100\)](#), [VarAsType \(2089\)](#), [VarIsByRef \(2093\)](#), [VarIsNull \(2095\)](#), [VarIsEmpty \(2094\)](#)

### 85.4.54 VarNotImplError

### Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantNotImplError` error

```
Declaration: procedure VarNotImplError
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `VarNotImplError` raises an `EVariantNotImplError` (2103) exception with a standard error message.

See also: [EVariantNotImpError \(2103\)](#), [VarInvalidNullOp \(2092\)](#), [VarInvalidOp \(2092\)](#), [VarBadIndexError \(2089\)](#), [VarArrayLockedError \(2087\)](#)

### 85.4.55 VarOutOfMemoryError

### Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantOutOfMemoryError` error

Declaration: procedure VarOutOfMemoryError

Visibility: default

**Description:** `VarOutOfMemoryError` raises an `EVariantOutOfMemoryError` (2103) exception with a standard error message.

See also: [EVariantOutOfMemoryError \(2103\)](#), [VarInvalidNullOp \(2092\)](#), [VarInvalidOp \(2092\)](#), [VarBadIndexError \(2089\)](#), [VarArrayLockedError \(2087\)](#)

### 85.4.56 VarOverflowError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantOverflowError` error.

Declaration: `procedure VarOverflowError`  
`procedure VarOverflowError(const ASourceType: TVarType;`  
`const ADestType: TVarType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarOverflowError` raises a `EVariantOverflowError` (2103) exception with a description of the `ASourceType` and `ADestType` types in the message.

See also: `EVariantOverflowError` (2103), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2092), `VarInvalidOp` (2092)

### 85.4.57 VarRangeCheckError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantOverflowError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarRangeCheckError(const AType: TVarType)`  
`procedure VarRangeCheckError(const ASourceType: TVarType;`  
`const ADestType: TVarType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarRangeCheckError` raises an `EVariantOverflowError` (2103) exception with a standard error message. A description of the type `AType` is included in the error message, similarly if a `ASourceType` and `aDestType` source and destination types are provided.

See also: `EVariantOverflowError` (2103), `VarOverflowError` (2097), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2092), `VarInvalidOp` (2092), `VarBadIndexError` (2089), `VarArrayLockedError` (2087)

### 85.4.58 VarResultCheck

Synopsis: Check the result of an operation and raise exception if not OK.

Declaration: `procedure VarResultCheck(AResult: HRESULT)`  
`procedure VarResultCheck(AResult: HRESULT; ASourceType: TVarType;`  
`ADestType: TVarType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarResultCheck` checks the result `aResult`. If it differs from `VAR_OK` then an appropriate exception is raised based on the error code. If a source and destination type `ASourceType` and `aDestType` are specified they are included in the error message.

See also: `VarOverflowError` (2097), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2092), `VarInvalidOp` (2092), `VarBadIndexError` (2089), `VarArrayLockedError` (2087)

### 85.4.59 VarSameValue

Synopsis: Check if 2 variants are the same

Declaration: `function VarSameValue(const A: Variant; const B: Variant) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `varSameValue` checks whether A and B have the same value. Here empty variants equal empty variants, and null variants equal null variants. For all other cases, the actual values are compared.

Errors: If the variants are of different types and they cannot be converted, an exception will be raised.

### 85.4.60 VarSupports

Synopsis: Check if a variant supports an interface.

Declaration: `function VarSupports(const V: Variant; const IID: TGUID; out Intf) : Boolean`  
`function VarSupports(const V: Variant; const IID: TGUID) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarSupports` checks if the variant `V` contains an interface (types `Unknown`, `varDispatch`) and the interface supports the specified interface `IID`. If it does, `True` is returned, `False` otherwise. If `Intf` is specified, and the variant supports the requested interface, the interface instance is returned in `Intf`.

See also: `#rtl.Sysutils.Supports` ([1726](#))

### 85.4.61 VarToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a variant to datetime value

Declaration: `function VarToDateTime(const V: Variant) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarToDateTime` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a `TDateTime` value.

Errors: If the value is `Null`, an exception is raised.

See also: `VarToUnicodeStr` ([2099](#)), `VarToStrDef` ([2098](#)), `VarIsStr` ([2096](#)), `VarToWideStr` ([2099](#)), `VarToWideStrDef` ([2099](#)), `VarFromDateTime` ([2091](#))

### 85.4.62 VarToStr

Synopsis: Convert a variant to string value

Declaration: `function VarToStr(const V: Variant) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarToStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is an empty string.

See also: `VarToStrDef` ([2098](#)), `VarIsStr` ([2096](#)), `VarToWideStr` ([2099](#))

### 85.4.63 VarToStrDef

Synopsis: Convert a variant to string value, specifying a default

Declaration: `function VarToStrDef(const V: Variant; const ADefault: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarToStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is the specified `aDefault` string.

See also: `VarToStrDef` ([2098](#)), `VarIsStr` ([2096](#)), `VarToStr` ([2098](#))

#### 85.4.64 VarToUnicodeStr

Synopsis: Convert a variant to string value

Declaration: `function VarToUnicodeStr(const V: Variant) : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarToUnicodeStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is an empty string.

See also: `VarToWideStr` (2099), `VarToUnicodeStrDef` (2099), `VarIsStr` (2096), `VarToStr` (2098), `VarToUnicodeStr` (2099)

#### 85.4.65 VarToUnicodeStrDef

Synopsis: Convert a variant to string value, specifying a default

Declaration: `function VarToUnicodeStrDef(const V: Variant;  
const ADefault: UnicodeString)  
: UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarToUnicodeStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is the specified `aDefault` string.

See also: `VarToUnicodeStr` (2099), `VarToStrDef` (2098), `VarIsStr` (2096), `VarToWideStr` (2099), `VarToWideStrDef` (2099)

#### 85.4.66 VarToWideStr

Synopsis: Convert a variant to string value

Declaration: `function VarToWideStr(const V: Variant) : WideString`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarToWideStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is an empty string.

See also: `VarToWideStrDef` (2099), `VarIsStr` (2096), `VarToStr` (2098), `VarToUnicodeStr` (2099)

#### 85.4.67 VarToWideStrDef

Synopsis: Convert a variant to string value, specifying a default

Declaration: `function VarToWideStrDef(const V: Variant; const ADefault: WideString)  
: WideString`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarToWideStr` attempts to convert the variant `V` to a string. If the value is `Null`, the result is the specified `aDefault` string.

See also: `VarToWideStrDef` (2099), `VarIsStr` (2096), `VarToWideStr` (2099), `VarToUnicodeStrDef` (2099)

### 85.4.68 VarType

Synopsis: Return the type of a variant.

Declaration: `function VarType(const V: Variant) : TVarType`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarType` returns the type of the variant `V`. (it returns the internal type field of the variant structure)

See also: `VarTypeDeRef` (2100), `VarIsType` (2096), `VarAsType` (2089)

### 85.4.69 VarTypeAsText

Synopsis: Return a textual description of the variant type

Declaration: `function VarTypeAsText(const AType: TVarType) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarTypeAsText` returns a textual description of the variant type `aType`. It is used in all exception raising routines to describe types, if a type is provided. For custom variant types, the name of the class is returned.

See also: `VarOpAsText` (2078)

### 85.4.70 VarTypeDeRef

Synopsis: Returns the resolved type of a variant.

Declaration: `function VarTypeDeRef(const V: Variant) : TVarType; Overload`  
`function VarTypeDeRef(const V: TVarData) : TVarType; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarTypeDeRef` will resolve the final type of the variant `V`: if `V` is a reference to another variant, the function will return the type of the referenced variant, recursing as much as needed till a non-variant type is encountered.

See also: `VarType` (2100), `VarIsType` (2096), `VarAsType` (2089)

### 85.4.71 VarTypeIsValidArrayType

Synopsis: Check if a variant type can be used in an array

Declaration: `function VarTypeIsValidArrayType(const aVarType: TVarType) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarTypeIsValidArrayType` checks if the variant type `aVarType` can be used as the type of a variant array. It returns `True` if it is usable, false otherwise. Currently, the following types are valid: `SmallInt`, `Integer`, `Single`, `Double`, `Date`, `Currency`, `OleStr`, `Dispatch`, `Error`, `Boolean`, `Variant`, `Unknown` (interface `IUnknown`), `ShortInt`, `Byte`, `Word`, `LongWord`.

See also: `VarIsArray` (2093), `VarTypeIsValidElementType` (2101)

### 85.4.72 VarTypeIsValidElementType

Synopsis: Check if a variant type can be used in an array

Declaration: `function VarTypeIsValidElementType(const aVarType: TVarType) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarTypeIsValidElementType` checks if the variant type `aVarType` can be used as the type of a variant array, similar to `VarTypeIsValidArrayType` (2100). It returns `True` if it is usable, `False` otherwise. Currently, the following types are valid: `SmallInt`, `Integer`, `Single`, `Double`, `Date`, `Currency`, `OleStr`, `Dispatch`, `Error`, `Boolean`, `Variant`, `Unknown` (interface `IUnknown`), `ShortInt`, `Byte`, `Word`, `LongWord` `int64`. In addition, if the variant type is an known custom variant type, `True` is also returned.

Reference and array indicators are stripped before the test.

See also: `VarIsArray` (2093), `VarTypeIsValidArrayType` (2100)

### 85.4.73 VarUnexpectedError

Synopsis: Raise an `EVariantUnexpectedError` error

Declaration: `procedure VarUnexpectedError`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarUnexpectedError` raises an `EVariantUnexpectedError` (2104) exception with a standard error message.

See also: `EVariantUnexpectedError` (2104), `VarInvalidNullOp` (2092), `VarInvalidOp` (2092), `VarBadIndexError` (2089), `VarArrayLockedError` (2087)

## 85.5 EVariantArrayCreateError

### 85.5.1 Description

`EVariantArrayCreateError` is the exception raised when a problem is detected during creation of an array. It can be raised manually by calling `VarArrayCreateError` (2086).

See also: `VarArrayCreateError` (2086)

## 85.6 EVariantArrayLockedError

### 85.6.1 Description

`EVariantArrayLockedError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_ARRAYISLOCKED` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` (2097)

See also: `VarResultCheck` (2097)

## 85.7 EVariantBadIndexError

### 85.7.1 Description

EVariantBadIndexError is the exception raised when the VAR\_BADINDEX error is encountered in VarResultCheck ([2097](#))

See also: VarResultCheck ([2097](#))

## 85.8 EVariantBadVarTypeError

### 85.8.1 Description

EVariantBadVarTypeError is the exception raised when the VAR\_BADVARTYPE error is encountered in VarResultCheck ([2097](#))

See also: VarResultCheck ([2097](#))

## 85.9 EVariantDispatchError

### 85.9.1 Description

EVariantDispatchError is the exception raised when a dispatch call fails.

See also: TCustomVariantType ([2106](#))

## 85.10 EVariantInvalidArgError

### 85.10.1 Description

EVariantInvalidArgError is the exception raised when the VAR\_INVALIDARG error is encountered in VarResultCheck ([2097](#))

See also: VarResultCheck ([2097](#))

## 85.11 EVariantInvalidNullOpError

### 85.11.1 Description

EVariantInvalidNullOpError is defined for Delphi compatibility, but is not used in the FPC run time.

## 85.12 EVariantInvalidOpError

### 85.12.1 Description

EVariantInvalidOpError is the exception raised when the VAR\_EXCEPTION error is encountered in VarResultCheck ([2097](#))

See also: VarResultCheck ([2097](#))

## 85.13 EVariantNotAnArrayError

### 85.13.1 Description

`EVariantNotAnArrayError` is not used in FPC and is defined for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2097](#))

## 85.14 EVariantNotImplError

### 85.14.1 Description

`EVariantNotImplError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_NOTIMPL` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2097](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2097](#))

## 85.15 EVariantOutOfMemoryError

### 85.15.1 Description

`EVariantOutOfMemoryError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_OUTOFMEMORY` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2097](#)) It can be raised manually by calling `VarOutOfMemoryError` ([2096](#)).

See also: `VarOutOfMemoryError` ([2096](#)), `VarResultCheck` ([2097](#))

## 85.16 EVariantOverflowError

### 85.16.1 Description

`EVariantOverflowError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_OVERFLOW` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2097](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2097](#))

## 85.17 EVariantParamNotFoundError

### 85.17.1 Description

`EVariantParamNotFoundError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_PARAMNOTFOUND` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` ([2097](#))

See also: `VarResultCheck` ([2097](#))

## 85.18 EVariantRangeCheckError

### 85.18.1 Description

`EVariantRangeCheckError` is defined for Delphi compatibility, it is not used in FPC.



## 85.19 EVariantTypeCastError

### 85.19.1 Description

`EVariantTypeCastError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_TYPEMISMATCH` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` (2097)

See also: `VarResultCheck` (2097)

## 85.20 EVariantUnexpectedError

### 85.20.1 Description

`EVariantUnexpectedError` is the exception raised when the `VAR_UNEXPECTED` error is encountered in `VarResultCheck` (2097). It can be raised manually by calling `VarUnexpectedError` (2101).

See also: `VarVarUnexpectedError` (2077), `VarResultCheck` (2097)

## 85.21 IVarInstanceReference

### 85.21.1 Description

`IVarInstanceReference` is used to get the instance of an object from a custom variant. It has only one method, `GetInstance` (2104) which is used to retrieve the instance of a variant that contains an object.

The `TPublishableVariantType` (2113) descendent of `TInvokeableVariantType` (2111) uses this interface to implement reading published properties from the instance.

See also: `IVarInstanceReference.GetInstance` (2104)

### 85.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2104</a>	<code>GetInstance</code>	Return the object instance referenced by the custom variant

### 85.21.3 IVarInstanceReference.GetInstance

Synopsis: Return the object instance referenced by the custom variant

Declaration: `function GetInstance(const V: TVarData) : TObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetInstance` must return the object instance referenced by the custom variant `V`.

See also: `TPublishableVariantType` (2113)

## 85.22 IVarInvokeable

### 85.22.1 Description

`IVarInvokeable` must be implemented by the `TCustomVariantType` (2106) descendent if the custom variant needs to implement dynamic properties and methods.

`IVarInvokeable` has four functions that must be implemented. Any of these functions can be called whenever a custom variant's method is invoked or a property of the variant is read or written using `DispInvoke`.

The `TCustomVariantType` descendent `TInvokeableVariantType` (2111) implements the needed `DispInvoke` to call the `IVarInvokeable` interface, so you can descend from that type instead when creating a new custom variant type and override the needed functions.

See also: `TInvokeableVariantType` (2111), `TCustomVariantType` (2106)

### 85.22.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2105</a>	<code>DoFunction</code>	Called for methods that return a result (functions)
<a href="#">2105</a>	<code>DoProcedure</code>	Called for methods that do not return a result (procedures)
<a href="#">2106</a>	<code>GetProperty</code>	Called when a property must be read
<a href="#">2106</a>	<code>SetProperty</code>	Called when a property must be set

### 85.22.3 IVarInvokeable.DoFunction

Synopsis: Called for methods that return a result (functions)

Declaration: 

```
function DoFunction(var Dest: TVarData; const V: TVarData;
                    const Name: string; const Arguments: TVarDataArray)
                    : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `DoFunction` is called whenever a variant method that returns a result needs to be invoked. The `Dest` parameter points to the location where the result of the function must be placed; the result must be a variant value.

`V` is the variant on which the method is being executed. The `Name` is the name of the function to execute, and `Arguments` is an array of variant arguments that were passed to the function.

The function must return `True` if the function was executed correctly, `False` otherwise.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2105), `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2106), `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2106)

### 85.22.4 IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure

Synopsis: Called for methods that do not return a result (procedures)

Declaration: 

```
function DoProcedure(const V: TVarData; const Name: string;
                    const Arguments: TVarDataArray) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DoProcedure` is called whenever a variant method that does not return a result needs to be invoked. `V` is the variant on which the method is being executed. The `Name` is the name of the method to execute, and `Arguments` is an array of variant arguments that were passed to the method.

The function must return `True` if the procedure was executed correctly, `False` otherwise.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2105), `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2106), `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2106)

### 85.22.5 IVarInvokeable.GetProperty

**Synopsis:** Called when a property must be read

**Declaration:** `function GetProperty(var Dest: TVarData; const V: TVarData;  
const Name: string) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DoFunction` is called whenever a variant property is read. `Dest` must be filled with the value of the property on success. `V` is the variant on which the property is read. The `Name` is the name of the property to read.

The function must return `True` if the property was read correctly, `False` otherwise.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2105), `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2105), `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2106)

### 85.22.6 IVarInvokeable.SetProperty

**Synopsis:** Called when a property must be set

**Declaration:** `function SetProperty(var V: TVarData; const Name: string;  
const Value: TVarData) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `DoFunction` is called whenever a variant property is written. `Value` is filled with the new value of the property. `V` is the variant on which the property is written. The `Name` is the name of the property to write.

The function must return `True` if the property was written correctly, `False` otherwise.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2105), `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2105), `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2106)

## 85.23 TCustomVariantType

### 85.23.1 Description

`TCustomVariantType` is used as a base class to implement custom variants. To define a custom variant type, a descendent of `TCustomVariant` must be made, and the appropriate methods must be overridden and implemented according to the specifications of the new type. Typically this means defining how your new type maps to another variant or a basic type.

Note that the `TCustomVariantType` descendent does not hold the data of the variant: it just describes how a variant record (`TVarRec` (1387)) that contains the new type's data can be examined or manipulated.

See also: `#rtl.system.TVarRec` (1387)

**85.23.2 Interfaces overview**

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">2077</a>	<code>IInterface</code>	

**85.23.3 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2109</a>	<code>BinaryOp</code>	Perform a binary mathematical operation
<a href="#">2108</a>	<code>Cast</code>	Cast a custom variant to another type
<a href="#">2108</a>	<code>CastTo</code>	Cast a custom variant to another type
<a href="#">2108</a>	<code>CastToOle</code>	Cast variant value to OLE value
<a href="#">2109</a>	<code>Clear</code>	Clear a value
<a href="#">2110</a>	<code>Compare</code>	Comparison 2 custom variant values
<a href="#">2110</a>	<code>CompareOp</code>	Check result of a comparison between 2 custom variant values
<a href="#">2109</a>	<code>Copy</code>	Copy a custom variant value
<a href="#">2107</a>	<code>Create</code>	Instantiate a new custom variant type
<a href="#">2107</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Unregister variant type
<a href="#">2108</a>	<code>IsClear</code>	Is the custom value unassigned ?
<a href="#">2110</a>	<code>UnaryOp</code>	Perform a unary mathematical operation

**85.23.4 Property overview**

Page	Properties	Access	Description
<a href="#">2111</a>	<code>VarType</code>	<code>r</code>	Registered type

**85.23.5 TCustomVariantType.Create**

Synopsis: Instantiate a new custom variant type

Declaration: `constructor Create; Overload`  
`constructor Create(RequestedVarType: TVarType); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` sets up the necessary reference counting mechanisms to act as an interface, and assigns the new variant type identifier. If specified, the `RequestedVarType` is the variant type that is registered. if it is zero, a new identifier is assigned.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Destroy` ([2107](#))

**85.23.6 TCustomVariantType.Destroy**

Synopsis: Unregister variant type

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` unregisters the custom variant type and removes the instance from memory. After this is called, variants with the (now unregistered) type can no longer be used.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Create` ([2107](#))

### 85.23.7 TCustomVariantType.IsClear

Synopsis: Is the custom value unassigned ?

Declaration: `function IsClear(const V: TVarData) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsClear` must be overridden to decide whether the custom variant `V` is equivalent to `varClear` (unassigned) value. The `VarIsClear` (2093) function calls this method to decide whether a custom variant is unassigned.

The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of `IsClear` always returns `False`.

See also: `VarIsClear` (2093)

### 85.23.8 TCustomVariantType.Cast

Synopsis: Cast a custom variant to another type

Declaration: `procedure Cast(var Dest: TVarData; const Source: TVarData); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Cast` is called when a variant value `Source` is cast to a custom variant `Dest`. Descendents must override this method to provide the desired conversion behaviour.

The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of `Cast` calls `CastTo` on the source variant with as destination type the custom variant type.

Errors: If the variant type cannot be cast, an exception is raised.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.CastTo` (2108), `TCustomVariantType.CastToOle` (2108)

### 85.23.9 TCustomVariantType.CastTo

Synopsis: Cast a custom variant to another type

Declaration: `procedure CastTo(var Dest: TVarData; const Source: TVarData;  
const aVarType: TVarType); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CastTo` is called when a custom variant value `Source` is cast to a variant type `aVarType` and stores the result in `Dest`. Descendents must override this method to provide the desired conversion behaviour.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Cast` (2108), `TCustomVariantType.CastToOle` (2108)

### 85.23.10 TCustomVariantType.CastToOle

Synopsis: Cast variant value to OLE value

Declaration: `procedure CastToOle(var Dest: TVarData; const Source: TVarData)  
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `CastToOle` is called when a variant must be cast to a value that can be used in OLE variants. Descendents must override this method to provide the desired conversion behaviour.

The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of `CastToOle` raises an 'unsupported' exception.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Cast` (2108), `TCustomVariantType.CastTo` (2108)

### 85.23.11 `TCustomVariantType.Clear`

**Synopsis:** Clear a value

**Declaration:** `procedure Clear(var V: TVarData); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Clear` is called when a variant value must be cleared, by `VarClear`. This is an abstract method that must be overridden and implemented in descendent classes. When the method returns, the type of the variant record must be `varClear`

If the custom variant value used some heap memory (for instance in an object) then this is the place to release that memory.

**Errors:** If this method is not overridden, an abstract error will be thrown.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.IsClear` (2108), `TCustomVariantType.Copy` (2109), `VarClear` (2090)

### 85.23.12 `TCustomVariantType.Copy`

**Synopsis:** Copy a custom variant value

**Declaration:** `procedure Copy(var Dest: TVarData; const Source: TVarData;  
const Indirect: Boolean); Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Copy` is used when a custom variant value is assigned to another variant. This is an abstract method that must be overridden and implemented in descendent classes. When the method returns, the type of the `Dest` variant record must be equal to the `Source` type (the custom variant type value).

If `Indirect` is `True` source contains a reference to the custom variant. In that case, `dest` should also contain a reference.

**Errors:** If this method is not overridden, an abstract error will be thrown.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Clear` (2109)

### 85.23.13 `TCustomVariantType.BinaryOp`

**Synopsis:** Perform a binary mathematical operation

**Declaration:** `procedure BinaryOp(var Left: TVarData; const Right: TVarData;  
const Operation: TVarOp); Virtual`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `BinaryOp` performs `Operation` on `Left` and `Right` and stores the result of the result in `Left`. The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of this method raises an invalid operation error. Descendent classes must override this.

**Errors:** If a descendent does not override this, an invalid operation error is raised.

See also: `=TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp` (2077), `=TCustomVariantType.CompareOp` (2077)

**85.23.14 TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp**

Synopsis: Perform a unary mathematical operation

Declaration: `procedure UnaryOp(var Right: TVarData; const Operation: TVarOp)  
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnaryOp` performs `Operation` on `Right` and stores the result of the result in `Right`. The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of this method raises an invalid operation error. Descendent classes must override this method.

Errors: If a descendent does not override this, an invalid operation error is raised.

See also: `=TCustomVariantType.BinaryOp` (2077), `=TCustomVariantType.CompareOp` (2077)

**85.23.15 TCustomVariantType.CompareOp**

Synopsis: Check result of a comparison between 2 custom variant values

Declaration: `function CompareOp(const Left: TVarData; const Right: TVarData;  
const Operation: TVarOp) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CompareOp` performs the comparison specified in `Operation` on `Left` and `Right` and returns `True` if the values satisfy the requested operation. The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of this method raises an 'unsupported' error. Descendent classes must override this method.

Errors: If a descendent does not override this, an 'unsupported' error is raised.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Compare` (2110), `TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp` (2110), `TCustomVariantType.binaryOp` (2109)

**85.23.16 TCustomVariantType.Compare**

Synopsis: Comparison 2 custom variant values

Declaration: `procedure Compare(const Left: TVarData; const Right: TVarData;  
var Relationship: TVarCompareResult); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Compare` performs the comparison specified in `Operation` on `Left` and `Right` and returns the result of the comparison. The `TCustomVariantType` implementation of this method raises an 'unsupported' error. Descendent classes must override this method.

Errors: If a descendent does not override this, an 'unsupported' error is raised.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.CompareOp` (2110), `TCustomVariantType.UnaryOp` (2110), `TCustomVariantType.binaryOp` (2109)

### 85.23.17 TCustomVariantType.VarType

Synopsis: Registered type

Declaration: `Property VarType : TVarType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `VarType` is the custom variant type identifier for the custom variant values. It is assigned by the system in the constructor.

See also: `TCustomVariantType.Create` (2107)

## 85.24 TInvokeableVariantType

### 85.24.1 Description

`TInvokeableVariantType` is a `TCustomVariantType` (2106) descendent which implements the `TCustomVariantType.Dispatch` (2106) method. It translates the `Dispatch` method to calls to one or more of the four methods of `IVarInvokeable` (2105): `DoFunction` (2105) or `DoProcedure` (2105) for method calls (`DISPATCH_METHOD`) and `GetProperty` (2106) for property reading (`DISPATCH_PROPERTYGET`) or `SetProperty` (2106) for property writing (`DISPATCH_PROPERTYSET`). Other combinations are possible. It has empty stubs for these methods, which must be implemented in a descendent that is used to describe a custom variant.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2105), `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2105), `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2106), `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2106)

### 85.24.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">2105</a>	<code>IVarInvokeable</code>	Interface needed for custom variants that need to implement dynamic properties and methods

### 85.24.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2111</a>	<code>DoFunction</code>	Empty stub for <code>IVarInvokeable.DoFunction</code> , to be implemented in descendents
<a href="#">2112</a>	<code>DoProcedure</code>	Empty stub for <code>IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure</code> , to be implemented in descendents
<a href="#">2112</a>	<code>GetProperty</code>	Empty stub for <code>IVarInvokeable.GetProperty</code> , to be implemented in descendents
<a href="#">2112</a>	<code>SetProperty</code>	Empty stub for <code>IVarInvokeable.SetProperty</code> , to be implemented in descendents

### 85.24.4 TInvokeableVariantType.DoFunction

Synopsis: Empty stub for `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction`, to be implemented in descendents

Declaration: `function DoFunction(var Dest: TVarData; const V: TVarData;  
const Name: string; const Arguments: TVarDataArray)  
: Boolean; Virtual`



Visibility: public

Description: `DoFunction` is the default implementation of `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2105), which always returns `False`. It must be overridden in descendent classes to implement actual calling of a function.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoFunction` (2105)

### 85.24.5 `TInvokeableVariantType.DoProcedure`

Synopsis: Empty stub for `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure`, to be implemented in descendents

Declaration: `function DoProcedure(const V: TVarData; const Name: string;  
const Arguments: TVarDataArray) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DoProcedure` is the default implementation of `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2105), which always returns `False`. It must be overridden in descendent classes to implement actual calling of a procedure.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.DoProcedure` (2105)

### 85.24.6 `TInvokeableVariantType.GetProperty`

Synopsis: Empty stub for `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty`, to be implemented in descendents

Declaration: `function GetProperty(var Dest: TVarData; const V: TVarData;  
const Name: string) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetProperty` is the default implementation of `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2106), which always returns `False`. It must be overridden in descendent classes to implement actual reading of a property.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.GetProperty` (2106)

### 85.24.7 `TInvokeableVariantType.SetProperty`

Synopsis: Empty stub for `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty`, to be implemented in descendents

Declaration: `function SetProperty(var V: TVarData; const Name: string;  
const Value: TVarData) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetProperty` is the default implementation of `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2106), which always returns `False`. It must be overridden in descendent classes to implement actual writing of a property.

See also: `IVarInvokeable.SetProperty` (2106)

## 85.25 TPublishableVariantType

### 85.25.1 Description

TPublishableVariantType implements the IVarInvokeable.GetProperty (2106) and IVarInvokeable.SetProperty (2106) methods by getting or setting the published properties of the class instance returned by the IVarInstanceReference interface it implements.

See also: TInvokeableVariantType (2111), IVarInvokeable.GetProperty (2106), IVarInvokeable.SetProperty (2106), IVarInstanceReference (2104)

### 85.25.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
<a href="#">2104</a>	IVarInstanceReference	Interface for variants that refer to an object

### 85.25.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
<a href="#">2113</a>	GetProperty	Read the property
<a href="#">2113</a>	SetProperty	Write the property

### 85.25.4 TPublishableVariantType.GetProperty

Synopsis: Read the property

Declaration: `function GetProperty(var Dest: TVarData; const V: TVarData;  
const Name: string) : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: GetProperty implements reading the property by looking for the property in the published properties of the instance returned by the IVarInstanceReference (2104) interface, and returning the value as a variant.

See also: IVarInstanceReference (2104), IVarInvokeable.GetProperty (2106)

### 85.25.5 TPublishableVariantType.SetProperty

Synopsis: Write the property

Declaration: `function SetProperty(var V: TVarData; const Name: string;  
const Value: TVarData) : Boolean; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: SetProperty implements writing the property by looking for the property in the published properties of the instance returned by the IVarInstanceReference (2104) interface, and setting the value as a variant.

See also: IVarInstanceReference (2104), IVarInvokeable.SetProperty (2106)

## Chapter 86

# Reference for unit 'video'

### 86.1 Overview

The `Video` unit implements a screen access layer which is system independent. It can be used to write on the screen in a system-independent way, which should be optimal on all platforms for which the unit is implemented.

The working of the `Video` is simple: After calling `InitVideo` (2131), the array `VideoBuf` contains a representation of the video screen of size `ScreenWidth*ScreenHeight`, going from left to right and top to bottom when walking the array elements: `VideoBuf[0]` contains the character and color code of the top-left character on the screen. `VideoBuf[ScreenWidth]` contains the data for the character in the first column of the second row on the screen, and so on.

To write to the 'screen', the text to be written should be written to the `VideoBuf` array. Calling `UpdateScreen` (2134) will then copy the text to the screen in the most optimal way. (an example can be found further on).

The color attribute is a combination of the foreground and background color, plus the blink bit. The bits describe the various color combinations:

**bits 0-3** The foreground color. Can be set using all color constants.

**bits 4-6** The background color. Can be set using a subset of the color constants.

**bit 7** The blinking bit. If this bit is set, the character will appear blinking.

Each possible color has a constant associated with it, see the constants section for a list of constants.

The foreground and background color can be combined to a color attribute with the following code:

```
Attr:=ForeGroundColor + (BackGroundColor shl 4);
```

The color attribute can be logically or-ed with the blink attribute to produce a blinking character:

```
Attr:=Attr or blink;
```

But not all drivers may support this.

The contents of the `VideoBuf` array may be modified: This is 'writing' to the screen. As soon as everything that needs to be written in the array is in the `VideoBuf` array, calling `UpdateScreen` will copy the contents of the array screen to the screen, in a manner that is as efficient as possible.

The updating of the screen can be prohibited to optimize performance; To this end, the `LockScreenUpdate` (2131) function can be used: This will increment an internal counter. As long as the counter differs from zero, calling `UpdateScreen` (2134) will not do anything. The counter can be lowered with `UnlockScreenUpdate` (2134). When it reaches zero, the next call to `UpdateScreen` (2134) will actually update the screen. This is useful when having nested procedures that do a lot of screen writing.

The video unit also presents an interface for custom screen drivers, thus it is possible to override the default screen driver with a custom screen driver, see the `SetVideoDriver` (2133) call. The current video driver can be retrieved using the `GetVideoDriver` (2128) call.

**Remark** The video unit should *not* be used together with the CRT unit. Doing so will result in very strange behaviour, possibly program crashes.

## 86.2 Examples utility unit

The examples in this section make use of the unit `vidutil`, which contains the `TextOut` function. This function writes a text to the screen at a given location. It looks as follows:

**Listing:** `./videoex/vidutil.pp`

---

```
unit vidutil;
```

**Interface**

```
uses
  video;
```

**Procedure** `TextOut(X,Y : Word;Const S : String);`

**Implementation**

```
Procedure TextOut(X,Y : Word;Const S : String);

Var
  W,P,I,M : Word;

begin
  P:=((X-1)+(Y-1)*ScreenWidth);
  M:=Length(S);
  If P+M>ScreenWidth*ScreenHeight then
    M:=ScreenWidth*ScreenHeight-P;
  For I:=1 to M do
    VideoBuf^[P+I-1]:=Ord(S[I])+($07 shl 8);
  end;
end.
```

---

## 86.3 Writing a custom video driver

Writing a custom video driver is not difficult, and generally means implementing a couple of functions, which should be registered with the `SetVideoDriver` (2133) function. The various functions that can be implemented are located in the `TVideoDriver` (2135) record:

```
TVideoDriver = Record
```

```

InitDriver      : Procedure;
DoneDriver      : Procedure;
UpdateScreen    : Procedure(Force : Boolean);
ClearScreen     : Procedure;
SetVideoMode    : Function (Const Mode : TVideoMode) : Boolean;
GetVideoModeCount : Function : Word;
GetVideoModeData : Function(Index : Word; Var Data : TVideoMode) : Boolean;
SetCursorPos    : procedure (NewCursorX, NewCursorY: Word);
GetCursorType   : function : Word;
SetCursorType   : procedure (NewType: Word);
GetCapabilities  : Function : Word;
end;

```

Not all of these functions must be implemented. In fact, the only absolutely necessary function to write a functioning driver is the `UpdateScreen` function. The general calls in the `Video` unit will check which functionality is implemented by the driver.

The functionality of these calls is the same as the functionality of the calls in the `video` unit, so the expected behaviour can be found in the previous section. Some of the calls, however, need some additional remarks.

**InitDriver** Called by `InitVideo`, this function should initialize any data structures needed for the functionality of the driver, maybe do some screen initializations. The function is guaranteed to be called only once; It can only be called again after a call to `DoneVideo`. The variables `ScreenWidth` and `ScreenHeight` should be initialized correctly after a call to this function, as the `InitVideo` call will initialize the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays based on their values.

**DoneDriver** This should clean up any structures that have been initialized in the `InitDriver` function. It should possibly also restore the screen as it was before the driver was initialized. The `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays will be disposed of by the general `DoneVideo` call.

**UpdateScreen** This is the only required function of the driver. It should update the screen based on the `VideoBuf` array's contents. It can optimize this process by comparing the values with values in the `OldVideoBuf` array. After updating the screen, the `UpdateScreen` procedure should update the `OldVideoBuf` by itself. If the `Force` parameter is `True`, the whole screen should be updated, not just the changed values.

**ClearScreen** If there is a faster way to clear the screen than to write spaces in all character cells, then it can be implemented here. If the driver does not implement this function, then the general routines will write spaces in all video cells, and will call `UpdateScreen(True)`.

**SetVideoMode** Should set the desired video mode, if available. It should return `True` if the mode was set, `False` if not.

**GetVideoModeCount** Should return the number of supported video modes. If no modes are supported, this function should not be implemented; the general routines will return 1. (for the current mode)

**GetVideoModeData** Should return the data for the `Index`-th mode; `Index` is zero based. The function should return true if the data was returned correctly, false if `Index` contains an invalid index. If this is not implemented, then the general routine will return the current video mode when `Index` equals 0.

**GetCapabilities** If this function is not implemented, zero (i.e. no capabilities) will be returned by the general function.

The following unit shows how to override a video driver, with a driver that writes debug information to a file. The unit can be used in any of the demonstration programs, by simply including it in the `uses` clause. Setting `DetailedVideoLogging` to `True` will create a more detailed log (but will also slow down functioning)

**Listing:** `./videoex/viddbg.pp`

---

```
unit viddbg;
```

```
Interface
```

```
uses video;
```

```
Procedure StartVideoLogging;
```

```
Procedure StopVideoLogging;
```

```
Function IsVideoLogging : Boolean;
```

```
Procedure SetVideoLogFileName (FileName : String);
```

```
Const
```

```
    DetailedVideoLogging : Boolean = False;
```

```
Implementation
```

```
uses sysutils, keyboard;
```

```
var
```

```
    NewVideoDriver ,
    OldVideoDriver : TVideoDriver;
    Active, Logging : Boolean;
    LogFileName : String;
    VideoLog : Text;
```

```
Function TimeStamp : String;
```

```
begin
```

```
    TimeStamp := FormatDateTime( 'hh:nn:ss', Time());
```

```
end;
```

```
Procedure StartVideoLogging;
```

```
begin
```

```
    Logging := True;
    WriteLn(VideoLog, 'Start logging video operations at: ', TimeStamp);
```

```
end;
```

```
Procedure StopVideoLogging;
```

```
begin
```

```
    WriteLn(VideoLog, 'Stop logging video operations at: ', TimeStamp);
    Logging := False;
```

```
end;
```

```
Function IsVideoLogging : Boolean;
```

```
begin
```

```
    IsVideoLogging := Logging;
```

```
end;
```

**Var**

ColUpd, RowUpd : **Array**[0..1024] **of** Integer;

**Procedure** DumpScreenStatistics(Force : Boolean);

**Var**

I, Count : Integer;

**begin**

**If** Force **then**

**Write**(VideoLog, 'forced ');

**WriteLn**(VideoLog, 'video update at ', TimeStamp, ' : ');

**FillChar**(ColUpd, **SizeOf**(ColUpd), #0);

**FillChar**(RowUpd, **SizeOf**(RowUpd), #0);

  Count:=0;

**For** I:=0 **to** VideoBufSize **div** **SizeOf**(TVideoCell) **do**

**begin**

**If** VideoBuf^[I]<>OldVideoBuf^[I] **then**

**begin**

**Inc**(Count);

**Inc**(ColUpd[I **mod** ScreenWidth]);

**Inc**(RowUpd[I **div** ScreenHeight]);

**end**;

**end**;

**Write**(VideoLog, Count, ' videocells differed divided over ');

  Count:=0;

**For** I:=0 **to** ScreenWidth-1 **do**

**If** ColUpd[I]<>0 **then**

**Inc**(Count);

**Write**(VideoLog, Count, ' columns and ');

  Count:=0;

**For** I:=0 **to** ScreenHeight-1 **do**

**If** RowUpd[I]<>0 **then**

**Inc**(Count);

**WriteLn**(VideoLog, Count, ' rows. ');

**If** DetailedVideoLogging **Then**

**begin**

**For** I:=0 **to** ScreenWidth-1 **do**

**If** (ColUpd[I]<>0) **then**

**WriteLn**(VideoLog, 'Col ', i, ' : ', ColUpd[I]:3, ' rows changed');

**For** I:=0 **to** ScreenHeight-1 **do**

**If** (RowUpd[I]<>0) **then**

**WriteLn**(VideoLog, 'Row ', i, ' : ', RowUpd[I]:3, ' columns changed');

**end**;

**end**;

**Procedure** LogUpdateScreen(Force : Boolean);

**begin**

**If** Logging **then**

    DumpScreenStatistics(Force);

  OldVideoDriver.UpdateScreen(Force);

**end**;

**Procedure** LogInitVideo;

**begin**

  OldVideoDriver.InitDriver();

```

    Assign (VideoLog , logFileName );
    Rewrite (VideoLog );
    Active := True ;
    StartVideoLogging ;
end;

Procedure LogDoneVideo ;

begin
    StopVideoLogging ;
    Close (VideoLog );
    Active := False ;
    OldVideoDriver . DoneDriver ( ) ;
end;

Procedure SetVideoLogFileName (FileName : String );

begin
    If Not Active then
        LogFileName := FileName ;
    end;

Initialization
    GetVideoDriver ( OldVideoDriver );
    NewVideoDriver := OldVideoDriver ;
    NewVideoDriver . UpdateScreen := @LogUpdateScreen ;
    NewVideoDriver . InitDriver := @LogInitVideo ;
    NewVideoDriver . DoneDriver := @LogDoneVideo ;
    LogFileName := ' Video . log ' ;
    Logging := False ;
    SetVideoDriver ( NewVideoDriver );
end.

```

---

## 86.4 Constants, types and variables

### 86.4.1 Constants

Black = 0

Black color attribute

Blink = 128

Blink attribute

Blue = 1

Blue color attribute

Brown = 6

Brown color attribute

cpBlink = \$0002



Video driver supports blink attribute

`cpChangeCursor = $0020`

Video driver supports changing cursor shape.

`cpChangeFont = $0008`

Video driver supports changing screen font.

`cpChangeMode = $0010`

Video driver supports changing mode

`cpColor = $0004`

Video driver supports color

`cpUnderLine = $0001`

Video driver supports underline attribute

`crBlock = 2`

Block cursor

`crHalfBlock = 3`

Half block cursor

`crHidden = 0`

Hide cursor

`crUnderLine = 1`

Underline cursor

`Cyan = 3`

Cyan color attribute

`DarkGray = 8`

Dark gray color attribute

`errOk = 0`

No error

`ErrorCode : LongInt = ErrOK`

Error code returned by the last operation.

```
ErrorHandler : TErrorHandler = @ DefaultErrorHandler
```

The `ErrorHandler` variable can be set to a custom-error handling function. It is set by default to the `DefaultErrorHandler` (2125) function.

```
ErrorInfo : Pointer = Nil
```

Pointer to extended error information.

```
errVioBase = 1000
```

Base value for video errors

```
errVioInit = errVioBase + 1
```

Video driver initialization error.

```
errVioNoSuchMode = errVioBase + 3
```

Invalid video mode

```
errVioNotSupported = errVioBase + 2
```

Unsupported video function

```
FVMaxWidth = 240
```

Maximum screen buffer width.

```
Green = 2
```

Green color attribute

```
iso_codepages = [iso01, iso02, iso03, iso04, iso05, iso06, iso07,
  iso08, iso09, iso10, iso13, iso14, iso15]
```

`iso_codepages` is a set containing all code pages that use an ISO encoding.

```
LightBlue = 9
```

Light Blue color attribute

```
LightCyan = 11
```

Light cyan color attribute

```
LightGray = 7
```

Light gray color attribute

LightGreen = 10

Light green color attribute

LightMagenta = 13

Light magenta color attribute

LightRed = 12

Light red color attribute

LowAscii = True

On some systems, the low 32 values of the DOS code page are necessary for the ASCII control codes and cannot be displayed by programs. If LowAscii is true, you can use the low 32 ASCII values. If it is false, you must avoid using them.

LowAscii can be implemented either through a constant, variable or property. You should under no circumstances assume that you can write to LowAscii, or take its address.

Magenta = 5

Magenta color attribute

NoExtendedFrame = False

The VT100 character set only has line drawing characters consisting of a single line. If this value is true, the line drawing characters with two lines will be automatically converted to single lines.

NoExtendedFrame can be implemented either through a constant, variable or property. You should under no circumstances assume that you can write to NoExtendedFrame, or take its address.

Red = 4

Red color attribute

ScreenHeight : Word = 0

Current screen height

ScreenWidth : Word = 0

Current screen Width

vga\_codepages = [cp437, cp850, cp852, cp866]

vga\_codepages is a set containing all code pages that can be considered a normal vga font (as in use on early VGA cards) Note that KOI8-R has line drawing characters in wrong place.

vioOK = 0

No errors occurred

White = 15

White color attribute

Yellow = 14

Yellow color attribute

### 86.4.2 Types

`PVideoBuf = ^TVideoBuf`

Pointer type to `TVideoBuf` ([2123](#))

`PVideoCell = ^TVideoCell`

Pointer type to `TVideoCell` ([2123](#))

`PVideoMode = ^TVideoMode`

Pointer to `TVideoMode` ([2135](#)) record.

```
TErrorHandler = function(Code: LongInt; Info: Pointer)
    : TErrorHandlerReturnValue
```

The `TErrorHandler` function is used to register an own error handling function. It should be used when installing a custom error handling function, and must return one of the above values.

`Code` should contain the error code for the error condition, and the `Info` parameter may contain any data type specific to the error code passed to the function.

```
TErrorHandlerReturnValue = (errRetry, errAbort, errContinue)
```

Table 86.1: Enumeration values for type `TErrorHandlerReturnValue`

Value	Explanation
<code>errAbort</code>	abort and return error code
<code>errContinue</code>	abort without returning an errorcode.
<code>errRetry</code>	retry the operation

Type used to report and respond to error conditions

```
Array = Array[0..32759] of TVideoCell
```

The `TVideoBuf` type represents the screen.

```
TVideoCell = Word
```

`TVideoCell` describes one character on the screen. One of the bytes contains the color attribute with which the character is drawn on the screen, and the other byte contains the ASCII code of the character to be drawn. The exact position of the different bytes in the record is operating system specific. On most little-endian systems, the high byte represents the color attribute, while the low-byte represents the ASCII code of the character to be drawn.

```
TVideoModeSelector = function(const VideoMode: TVideoMode;
    Params: LongInt) : Boolean
```

Video mode selection callback prototype.

### 86.4.3 Variables

`CursorLines` : Byte

`CursorLines` is a bitmask which determines which cursor lines are visible and which are not. Each set bit corresponds to a cursorline being shown.

This variable is not supported on all platforms, so it should be used sparingly.

`CursorX` : Word

Current horizontal position in the screen where items will be written.

`CursorY` : Word

Current vertical position in the screen where items will be written.

`external_codepage` : Tencoding

This variable is for internal use only and should not be used.

`internal_codepage` : Tencoding

This variable is for internal use only and should not be used.

`OldVideoBuf` : PVideoBuf

The `OldVideoBuf` contains the state of the video screen after the last screen update. The `UpdateScreen` (2134) function uses this array to decide which characters on screen should be updated, and which not.

Note that the `OldVideoBuf` array may be ignored by some drivers, so it should not be used. The Array is in the interface section of the video unit mainly so drivers that need it can make use of it.

`ScreenColor` : Boolean

`ScreenColor` indicates whether the current screen supports colors.

`VideoBuf` : PVideoBuf

`VideoBuf` forms the heart of the `Video` unit: This variable represents the physical screen. Writing to this array and calling `UpdateScreen` (2134) will write the actual characters to the screen.

`VideoBufSize` : LongInt

Current size of the video buffer pointed to by `VideoBuf` (2124)

## 86.5 Procedures and functions

### 86.5.1 ClearScreen

Synopsis: Clear the video screen.



Visibility: default

**Description:** `DoneVideo` disables the Video driver if the video driver is active. If the videodriver was already disabled or not yet initialized, it does nothing. Disabling the driver means it will clean up any allocated resources, possibly restore the screen in the state it was before `InitVideo` was called. Particularly, the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays are no longer valid after a call to `DoneVideo`. The `DoneVideo` should always be called if `InitVideo` was called. Failing to do so may leave the screen in an unusable state after the program exits.

For an example, see most other functions.

**Errors:** Normally none. If the driver reports an error, this is done through the `ErrorCode` variable.

See also: `InitVideo` (2131)

### 86.5.4 GetCapabilities

**Synopsis:** Get current driver capabilities.

**Declaration:** `function GetCapabilities : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetCapabilities` returns the capabilities of the current driver. It is an or-ed combination of the following constants:

**cpUnderLineVideo** driver supports underline attribute

**cpBlinkVideo** driver supports blink attribute

**cpColorVideo** driver supports color

**cpChangeFontVideo** driver supports changing screen font.

**cpChangeModeVideo** driver supports changing mode

**cpChangeCursorVideo** driver supports changing cursor shape.

Note that the video driver should not yet be initialized to use this function. It is a property of the driver.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `GetCursorType` (2127), `GetVideoDriver` (2128)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetCapabilities function. }*

**Uses** `video`;

**Var**

`W: Word`;

**Procedure** `TestCap`(`Cap: Word`; `Msg : String`);

**begin**

**Write**(`Msg`, ' : ');

**If** (`W and Cap=Cap`) **then**

**WriteLn**( 'Yes' )

```

    else
        Writeln( 'No' );
    end;

begin
    W:= GetCapabilities;
    Writeln( 'Video driver supports following functionality' );
    TestCap(cpUnderLine, 'Underlined characters');
    TestCap(cpBlink, 'Blinking characters');
    TestCap(cpColor, 'Color characters');
    TestCap(cpChangeFont, 'Changing font');
    TestCap(cpChangeMode, 'Changing video mode');
    TestCap(cpChangeCursor, 'Changing cursor shape');
end.

```

---

### 86.5.5 GetCursorType

Synopsis: Get screen cursor type

Declaration: `function GetCursorType : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCursorType` returns the current cursor type. It is one of the following values:

**crHidden** Hide cursor  
**crUnderLine** Underline cursor  
**crBlock** Block cursor  
**crHalfBlock** Half block cursor

Note that not all drivers support all types of cursors.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCursorType` ([2133](#)), `GetCapabilities` ([2126](#))

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** Example5;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetCursorType function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Const**

    Cursortypes : **Array**[crHidden..crHalfBlock] **of string** =  
         ( 'Hidden', 'UnderLine', 'Block', 'HalfBlock' );

**begin**

```

    InitVideo;
    InitKeyboard;
    TextOut(1,1, 'Cursor type: '+CursorTypes[GetCursorType]);
    TextOut(1,2, 'Press any key to exit. ');
    UpdateScreen(False);
    GetKeyEvent;
    DoneKeyboard;
    DoneVideo;
end.

```

---



### 86.5.6 GetLockScreenCount

Synopsis: Get the screen lock update count.

Declaration: `function GetLockScreenCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLockScreenCount` returns the current lock level. When the lock level is zero, a call to `UpdateScreen` (2134) will actually update the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: `LockScreenUpdate` (2131), `UnlockScreenUpdate` (2134), `UpdateScreen` (2134)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex6.pp`

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetLockScreenCount function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Var**

  I : Longint;  
  S : **String**;

**begin**

```
  InitVideo;
  InitKeyboard;
  TextOut(1,1,'Press key till new text appears. ');
  UpdateScreen(False);
  Randomize;
  For I:=0 to Random(10)+1 do
    LockScreenUpdate;
  I:=0;
  While GetLockScreenCount<>0 do
    begin
      Inc(I);
      Str(I,S);
      UnlockScreenUpdate;
      GetKeyEvent;
      TextOut(1,1,'UnLockScreenUpdate had to be called '+S+' times ');
      UpdateScreen(False);
    end;
  TextOut(1,2,'Press any key to end. ');
  UpdateScreen(False);
  GetKeyEvent;
  DoneKeyboard;
  DoneVideo;
end.
```

### 86.5.7 GetVideoDriver

Synopsis: Get a copy of the current video driver.

Declaration: `procedure GetVideoDriver(var Driver: TVideoDriver)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetVideoDriver` returns the currently active video driver record in `Driver`. It can be used to clone the current video driver, or to override certain parts of it using the `SetVideoDriver` (2133) call.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetVideoDriver` (2133)

### 86.5.8 GetVideoMode

**Synopsis:** Return current video mode

**Declaration:** `procedure GetVideoMode(var Mode: TVideoMode)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetVideoMode` returns the settings of the currently active video mode. The `row`, `col` fields indicate the dimensions of the current video mode, and `Color` is true if the current video supports colors.

**See also:** `SetVideoMode` (2133), `GetVideoModeData` (2131)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetVideoMode function. }*

**Uses** `video`, `keyboard`, `vidutil`;

**Var**

`M` : `TVideoMode`;

`S` : **String**;

**begin**

`InitVideo`;

`InitKeyboard`;

`GetVideoMode(M)`;

**if** `M.Color` **then**

`TextOut(1,1,'Current mode has color')`

**else**

`TextOut(1,1,'Current mode does not have color');`

**Str**(`M.Row`,`S`);

`TextOut(1,2,'Number of rows : '+S);`

**Str**(`M.Col`,`S`);

`TextOut(1,3,'Number of columns : '+S);`

`Textout(1,4,'Press any key to exit.');`

`UpdateScreen(False)`;

`GetKeyEvent`;

`DoneKeyboard`;

`DoneVideo`;

**end.**

---

### 86.5.9 GetVideoModeCount

**Synopsis:** Get the number of video modes supported by the driver.

**Declaration:** `function GetVideoModeCount : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetVideoModeCount` returns the number of video modes that the current driver supports. If the driver does not support switching of modes, then 1 is returned.

This function can be used in conjunction with the `GetVideoModeData` (2131) function to retrieve data for the supported video modes.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetVideoModeData` (2131), `GetVideoMode` (2129)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** `Example8;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetVideoModeCount function. }*

**Uses** `video, keyboard, vidutil;`

**Procedure** `DumpMode (M : TVideoMode; Index : Integer);`

**Var**

`S : String;`

**begin**

```
  Str(Index:2,S);
  inc(Index);
  TextOut(1,Index,'Data for mode '+S+' : ');
  if M.Color then
    TextOut(19,Index,'  color,')
  else
    TextOut(19,Index,'No color,');
  Str(M.Row:3,S);
  TextOut(28,Index,S+' rows');
  Str(M.Col:3,S);
  TextOut(36,Index,S+' columns');
end;
```

**Var**

`i,Count : Integer;`  
`m : TVideoMode;`

**begin**

```
  InitVideo;
  InitKeyboard;
  Count:=GetVideoModeCount;
  For I:=1 to Count do
    begin
      GetVideoModeData(I-1,M);
      DumpMode(M,I-1);
    end;
  TextOut(1,Count+1,'Press any key to exit');
  UpdateScreen(False);
  GetKeyEvent;
  DoneKeyboard;
  DoneVideo;
end.
```

---

### 86.5.10 GetVideoModeData

Synopsis: Get the specifications for a video mode

Declaration: `function GetVideoModeData(Index: Word; var Data: TVideoMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoModeData` returns the characteristics of the `Index`-th video mode in `Data`. `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `GetVideoModeCount-1`. If the current driver does not support setting of modes (`GetVideoModeCount=1`) and `Index` is zero, the current mode is returned.

The function returns `True` if the mode data was retrieved successfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `GetVideoModeCount` (2129).

Errors: In case `Index` has a wrong value, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetVideoModeCount` (2129), `SetVideoMode` (2133), `GetVideoMode` (2129)

### 86.5.11 InitVideo

Synopsis: Initialize video driver.

Declaration: `procedure InitVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitVideo` initializes the video subsystem. If the video system was already initialized, it does nothing. After the driver has been initialized, the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` pointers are initialized, based on the `ScreenWidth` and `ScreenHeight` variables. When this is done, the screen is cleared.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: if the driver fails to initialize, the `ErrorCode` variable is set.

See also: `DoneVideo` (2125)

### 86.5.12 LockScreenUpdate

Synopsis: Prevent further screen updates.

Declaration: `procedure LockScreenUpdate`

Visibility: default

Description: `LockScreenUpdate` increments the screen update lock count with one. As long as the screen update lock count is not zero, `UpdateScreen` (2134) will not actually update the screen.

This function can be used to optimize screen updating: If a lot of writing on the screen needs to be done (by possibly unknown functions), calling `LockScreenUpdate` before the drawing, and `UnlockScreenUpdate` (2134) after the drawing, followed by a `UpdateScreen` (2134) call, all writing will be shown on screen at once.

For an example, see `GetLockScreenCount` (2128).

Errors: None.

See also: `UpdateScreen` (2134), `UnlockScreenUpdate` (2134), `GetLockScreenCount` (2128)

**86.5.13 SetCursorPos**

Synopsis: Set write cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure SetCursorPos (NewCursorX: Word; NewCursorY: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCursorPos` positions the cursor on the given position: Column `NewCursorX` and row `NewCursorY`. The origin of the screen is the upper left corner, and has coordinates `(0, 0)`.

The current position is stored in the `CursorX` and `CursorY` variables.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCursorType` ([2133](#))

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex2.pp`

---

```

program example2;

uses video , keyboard;

Var
  P,PP,D : Integer;
  K: TKeyEvent;

  Procedure PutSquare (P : INteger; C : Char);

  begin
    VideoBuf^[P]:=Ord(C)+($07 shl 8);
    VideoBuf^[P+ScreenWidth]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
    VideoBuf^[P+1]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
    VideoBuf^[P+ScreenWidth+1]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
  end;

begin
  InitVideo;
  InitKeyBoard;
  P:=0;
  PP:=-1;
  Repeat
    If PP<>-1 then
      PutSquare(PP, ' ');
      PutSquare(P, '#');
      SetCursorPos(P Mod ScreenWidth,P div ScreenWidth);
      UpdateScreen(False);
      PP:=P;
    Repeat
      D:=0;
      K:=TranslateKeyEvent(GetKeyEvent);
      Case GetKeyEventCode(K) of
        kbdLeft : If (P Mod ScreenWidth)<>0 then
          D:=-1;
        kbdUp : If P>=ScreenWidth then
          D:=-ScreenWidth;
        kbdRight : If ((P+2) Mod ScreenWidth)<>0 then
          D:=1;
        kbdDown : if (P<(VideoBufSize div 2)-(ScreenWidth*2)) then
          D:=ScreenWidth;

```

---

```

    end;
    Until (D<>0) or (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q' );
    P:=P+D;
    until GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q' ;
    DoneKeyBoard;
    DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

#### 86.5.14 SetCursorType

Synopsis: Set cursor type

Declaration: `procedure SetCursorType(NewType: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCursorType` sets the cursor to the type specified in `NewType`.

```

crHidden Hide cursor
crUnderLine Underline cursor
crBlock Block cursor
crHalfBlock Half block cursor

```

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCursorPos` ([2132](#))

#### 86.5.15 SetVideoDriver

Synopsis: Install a new video driver.

Declaration: `function SetVideoDriver(const Driver: TVideoDriver) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVideoDriver` sets the videodriver to be used to `Driver`. If the current videodriver is initialized (after a call to `InitVideo`) then it does nothing and returns `False`.

A new driver can only be installed if the previous driver was not yet activated (i.e. before a call to `InitVideo` ([2131](#))) or after it was deactivated (i.e after a call to `DoneVideo`).

For more information about installing a videodriver, see `viddriver` ([2115](#)).

For an example, see the section on writing a custom video driver.

Errors: If the current driver is initialized, then `False` is returned.

See also: `viddriver` ([2115](#))

#### 86.5.16 SetVideoMode

Synopsis: Set current video mode.

Declaration: `function SetVideoMode(const Mode: TVideoMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetVideoMode` sets the video mode to the mode specified in `Mode`:

If the call was successful, then the screen will have `Col` columns and `Row` rows, and will be displaying in color if `Color` is `True`.

The function returns `True` if the mode was set successfully, `False` otherwise.

Note that the video mode may not always be set. E.g. a console on Linux or a telnet session cannot always set the mode. It is important to check the error value returned by this function if it was not successful.

The mode can be set when the video driver has not yet been initialized (i.e. before `InitVideo` (2131) was called) In that case, the video mode will be stored, and after the driver was initialized, an attempt will be made to set the requested mode. Changing the video driver before the call to `InitVideo` will clear the stored video mode.

To know which modes are valid, use the `GetVideoModeCount` (2129) and `GetVideoModeData` (2131) functions. To retrieve the current video mode, use the `GetVideoMode` (2129) procedure.

**Errors:** If the specified mode cannot be set, then `errVioNoSuchMode` may be set in `ErrorCode`

See also: `GetVideoModeCount` (2129), `GetVideoModeData` (2131), `GetVideoMode` (2129)

### 86.5.17 UnlockScreenUpdate

**Synopsis:** Unlock screen update.

**Declaration:** `procedure UnlockScreenUpdate`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `UnlockScreenUpdate` decrements the screen update lock count with one if it is larger than zero. When the lock count reaches zero, the `UpdateScreen` (2134) will actually update the screen. No screen update will be performed as long as the screen update lock count is nonzero. This mechanism can be used to increase screen performance in case a lot of writing is done.

It is important to make sure that each call to `LockScreenUpdate` (2131) is matched by exactly one call to `UnlockScreenUpdate`

For an example, see `GetLockScreenCount` (2128).

**Errors:** None.

See also: `LockScreenUpdate` (2131), `GetLockScreenCount` (2128), `UpdateScreen` (2134)

### 86.5.18 UpdateScreen

**Synopsis:** Update physical screen with internal screen image.

**Declaration:** `procedure UpdateScreen(Force: Boolean)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `UpdateScreen` synchronizes the actual screen with the contents of the `VideoBuf` internal buffer. The parameter `Force` specifies whether the whole screen has to be redrawn (`Force=True`) or only parts that have changed since the last update of the screen.

The `Video` unit keeps an internal copy of the screen as it last wrote it to the screen (in the `OldVideoBuf` array). The current contents of `VideoBuf` are examined to see what locations on the screen need to be updated. On slow terminals (e.g. a Linux telnet session) this mechanism can speed up the screen redraw considerably.

On platforms where mouse cursor visibility is not guaranteed to be preserved during screen updates this routine has to restore the mouse cursor after the update (usually by calling `HideMouse` from unit `Mouse` before the real update and `ShowMouse` afterwards).

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearScreen` ([2124](#))

## 86.6 TVideoDriver

```
TVideoDriver = record
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure
  ;
  UpdateScreen : procedure(Force: Boolean);
  ClearScreen : procedure
  ;
  SetVideoMode : function(const Mode: TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  GetVideoModeCount
  : function : Word;
  GetVideoModeData : function(Index: Word; var
  Data: TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  SetCursorPos : procedure(NewCursorX
  : Word; NewCursorY: Word);
  GetCursorType : function : Word;
  SetCursorType
  : procedure(NewType: Word);
  GetCapabilities : function : Word;
end
```

`TVideoDriver` record can be used to install a custom video driver, with the `SetVideoDriver` ([2133](#)) call.

An explanation of all fields can be found there.

## 86.7 TVideoMode

```
TVideoMode = record
  Col : Word;
  Row : Word;
  Color : Boolean
  ;
end
```

The `TVideoMode` record describes a videomode. Its fields are self-explaining: `Col`, `Row` describe the number of columns and rows on the screen for this mode. `Color` is `True` if this mode supports colors, or `False` if not.



## Chapter 87

# Reference for unit 'WinCRT'

### 87.1 Overview

The `wincrt` unit provides some auxiliary routines for use with the `graph` (829) unit, namely keyboard support. It has no connection with the `crt` (553) unit, nor with the Turbo-Pascal for Windows `WinCrt` unit. As such, it should not be used by end users. Refer to the `crt` (553) unit instead.

### 87.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 87.2.1 Variables

`directvideo` : `Boolean`

On windows, this variable is ignored.

`lastmode` : `Word`

Is supposed to contain the last used video mode, but is actually unused.

### 87.3 Procedures and functions

#### 87.3.1 `delay`

Synopsis: Pause program execution

Declaration: `procedure delay(ms: Word)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Delay` stops program execution for the indicated number `ms` of milliseconds.

See also: `sound` (2137), `nosound` (2137)

#### 87.3.2 `keypressed`

Synopsis: Check if a key was pressed.

**Declaration:** `function keypressed : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `KeyPressed` returns `True` if the user pressed a key, or `False` if not. It does not wait for the user to press a key.

**See also:** `readkey` ([2137](#))

### 87.3.3 nosound

**Synopsis:** Stop the speaker

**Declaration:** `procedure nosound`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `NoSound` does nothing, windows does not support this.

**See also:** `sound` ([2137](#))

### 87.3.4 readkey

**Synopsis:** Read a key from the keyboard

**Declaration:** `function readkey : Char`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `ReadKey` reads a key from the keyboard, and returns the ASCII value of the key, or the scancode of the key in case it is a special key.

The function waits until a key is pressed.

**See also:** `KeyPressed` ([2136](#))

### 87.3.5 sound

**Synopsis:** Sound PC speaker

**Declaration:** `procedure sound(hz: Word)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Sound` sounds the PC speaker. It emits a tone with frequency `Hz` for 500 milliseconds. (the time argument is required by the windows API)

**See also:** `nosound` ([2137](#))

### 87.3.6 textmode

**Synopsis:** Set indicated text mode

**Declaration:** `procedure textmode(mode: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `TextMode` does nothing.

## Chapter 88

# Reference for unit 'WinDirs'

### 88.1 Overview

This unit contains only one function: `GetWindowsSpecialDir` ([2152](#)). It is a simple pascal wrapper around the `shfolder.dll` library, and is available under Windows only.

### 88.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 88.2.1 Constants

`CSIDL_ADMINTOOLS` = \$0030

ID for the personal "Start Menu\Programs\Administrative tools" folder (In the user's personal folder)

`CSIDL_APPDATA` = \$001A

ID for the roaming "Application Data" folder (in the user's personal folder)

`CSIDL_CDBURN_AREA` = \$003B

ID for the personal "Local Settings\Application Data\Microsoft\CD Burning" folder (Under "All users" folder)

`CSIDL_COMMON_ADMINTOOLS` = \$002F

ID for the common "Start Menu\Programs\Administrative tools" folder (Under "All users" folder)

`CSIDL_COMMON_APPDATA` = \$0023

ID for the common "Application Data" folder (Under "All users" folder)

`CSIDL_COMMON_DESKTOPDIRECTORY` = \$0019

ID for the public "Desktop" folder (Under "All users" folder)

`CSIDL_COMMON_DOCUMENTS` = \$002E

ID for the common "Documents" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_FAVORITES = \$001F

ID for the public "Favorites" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_MUSIC = \$0035

ID for the common "Documents\My Music" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_PICTURES = \$0036

ID for the common "Documents\My Pictures" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_PROGRAMS = \$0017

ID for the public "Programs" folder (Under "All users" Start menu folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_STARTMENU = \$0016

ID for the public "Start Menu" folder (Under "All users")

CSIDL\_COMMON\_STARTUP = \$0018

ID for the public "Startup" folder (Under "All users\Start menu\Programs" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_TEMPLATES = \$002D

ID for the common "Templates" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COMMON\_VIDEO = \$0037

ID for the common "Documents\My Video" folder (Under "All users" folder)

CSIDL\_COOKIES = \$0021

ID for the "Cookies" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_DESKTOPDIRECTORY = \$0010

ID for the "Desktop" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_FAVORITES = \$0006

ID for the "Favourites" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_FLAG\_CREATE = \$8000

Flag to specify if the requested folder must be created if it didn't exist yet.

CSIDL\_FONTS = \$0014

CSIDL\_HISTORY = \$0022

ID for the "History" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_INTERNET\_CACHE = \$0020

ID for the "Temporary Internet Files" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_LOCAL\_APPDATA = \$001C

ID for the local "Application Data" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_MYMUSIC = \$000D

ID for the "My Music" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_MYPICTURES = \$0027

ID for the "My Pictures" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_MYVIDEO = \$000E

ID for the "My Videos" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_NETHOOD = \$0013

ID for the "Nethood" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_PERSONAL = \$0005

ID for the "My Documents" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_PRINTHOOD = \$001B

ID for the "Printhood" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_PROFILE = \$0028

ID for the user's personal folder

CSIDL\_PROFILES = \$003E

ID for the parent folder for the user's folders

CSIDL\_PROGRAMS = \$0002

ID for the "Program files" folder

CSIDL\_PROGRAM\_FILES = \$0026

ID for the "Program Files" folder (alias for CSIDL\_PROGRAMS)

CSIDL\_PROGRAM\_FILES\_COMMON = \$002B

ID for the Common folder under the "Program Files" folder.

CSIDL\_RECENT = \$0008

ID for the "Recent" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_SENDTO = \$0009

ID for the "Send to" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_STARTMENU = \$000B

ID for the "Start menu" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_STARTUP = \$0007

ID for the "Startup" menu folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_SYSTEM = \$0025

ID for the Windows System32 dir.

CSIDL\_TEMPLATES = \$0015

ID for the "Templates" folder (in the user's personal folder)

CSIDL\_WINDOWS = \$0024

ID for the Windows installation dir.

FOLDERID\_AccountPictures : TGUID =  
 '{008CA0B1-55B4-4C56-B8A8-4DE4B299D3BE}'

FOLDERID\_AddNewPrograms : TGUID =  
 '{DE61D971-5EBC-4F02-A3A9-6C82895E5C04}'

FOLDERID\_AdminTools : TGUID =  
 '{724EF170-A42D-4FEF-9F26-B60E846FBA4F}'

FOLDERID\_AllAppMods : TGUID =  
 '{7AD67899-66AF-43BA-9156-6AAD42E6C596}'

FOLDERID\_AppCaptures : TGUID =  
 '{EDC0FE71-98D8-4F4A-B920-C8DC133CB165}'

FOLDERID\_AppDataDesktop : TGUID =  
' {B2C5E279-7ADD-439F-B28C-C41FE1BBF672} '

FOLDERID\_AppDataDocuments : TGUID =  
' {7BE16610-1F7F-44AC-BFF0-83E15F2FFCA1} '

FOLDERID\_AppDataFavorites : TGUID =  
' {7CFBEFBC-DE1F-45AA-B843-A542AC536CC9} '

FOLDERID\_AppDataProgramData : TGUID =  
' {559D40A3-A036-40FA-AF61-84CB430A4D34} '

FOLDERID\_ApplicationShortcuts : TGUID =  
' {A3918781-E5F2-4890-B3D9-A7E54332328C} '

FOLDERID\_AppsFolder : TGUID =  
' {1E87508D-89C2-42F0-8A7E-645A0F50CA58} '

FOLDERID\_AppUpdates : TGUID =  
' {A305CE99-F527-492B-8B1A-7E76FA98D6E4} '

FOLDERID\_CameraRoll : TGUID =  
' {AB5FB87B-7CE2-4F83-915D-550846C9537B} '

FOLDERID\_CameraRollLibrary : TGUID =  
' {2B20DF75-1EDA-4039-8097-38798227D5B7} '

FOLDERID\_CDBurning : TGUID =  
' {9E52AB10-F80D-49DF-ACB8-4330F5687855} '

FOLDERID\_ChangeRemovePrograms : TGUID =  
' {DF7266AC-9274-4867-8D55-3BD661DE872D} '

FOLDERID\_CommonAdminTools : TGUID =  
' {D0384E7D-BAC3-4797-8F14-CBA229B392B5} '

FOLDERID\_CommonOEMLinks : TGUID =  
' {C1BAE2D0-10DF-4334-BEDD-7AA20B227A9D} '

FOLDERID\_CommonPrograms : TGUID =  
' {0139D44E-6AFE-49F2-8690-3DAFCAE6FFB8} '

```
FOLDERID_CommonStartMenu : TGUID =  
    '{A4115719-D62E-491D-AA7C-E74B8BE3B067}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonStartMenuPlaces : TGUID =  
    '{A440879F-87A0-4F7D-B700-0207B966194A}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonStartup : TGUID =  
    '{82A5EA35-D9CD-47C5-9629-E15D2F714E6E}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CommonTemplates : TGUID =  
    '{B94237E7-57AC-4347-9151-B08C6C32D1F7}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ComputerFolder : TGUID =  
    '{0AC0837C-BBF8-452A-850D-79D08E667CA7}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ConflictFolder : TGUID =  
    '{4BFEBF45-347D-4006-A5BE-AC0CB0567192}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ConnectionsFolder : TGUID =  
    '{6F0CD92B-2E97-45D1-88FF-B0D186B8DEDD}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Contacts : TGUID =  
    '{56784854-C6CB-462B-8169-88E350ACB882}'
```

```
FOLDERID_ControlPanelFolder : TGUID =  
    '{82A74AEB-AEB4-465C-A014-D097EE346D63}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Cookies : TGUID =  
    '{2B0F765D-C0E9-4171-908E-08A611B84FF6}'
```

```
FOLDERID_CurrentAppMods : TGUID =  
    '{3DB40B20-2A30-4DBE-917E-771DD21DD099}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Desktop : TGUID =  
    '{B4BFCC3A-DB2C-424C-B029-7FE99A87C641}'
```

```
FOLDERID_DevelopmentFiles : TGUID =  
    '{DBE8E08E-3053-4BBC-B183-2A7B2B191E59}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Device : TGUID =  
    '{1C2AC1DC-4358-4B6C-9733-AF21156576F0}'
```



FOLDERID\_DeviceMetadataStore : TGUID =  
' {5CE4A5E9-E4EB-479D-B89F-130C02886155} '

FOLDERID\_Documents : TGUID =  
' {FDD39AD0-238F-46AF-ADB4-6C85480369C7} '

FOLDERID\_DocumentsLibrary : TGUID =  
' {7B0DB17D-9CD2-4A93-9733-46CC89022E7C} '

FOLDERID\_Downloads : TGUID =  
' {374DE290-123F-4565-9164-39C4925E467B} '

FOLDERID\_Favorites : TGUID =  
' {1777F761-68AD-4D8A-87BD-30B759FA33DD} '

FOLDERID\_Fonts : TGUID = ' {FD228CB7-AE11-4AE3-864C-16F3910AB8FE} '

FOLDERID\_Games : TGUID = ' {CAC52C1A-B53D-4EDC-92D7-6B2E8AC19434} '

FOLDERID\_GameTasks : TGUID =  
' {054FAE61-4DD8-4787-80B6-090220C4B700} '

FOLDERID\_History : TGUID =  
' {D9DC8A3B-B784-432E-A781-5A1130A75963} '

FOLDERID\_HomeGroup : TGUID =  
' {52528A6B-B9E3-4ADD-B60D-588C2DBA842D} '

FOLDERID\_HomeGroupCurrentUser : TGUID =  
' {9B74B6A3-0DFD-4F11-9E78-5F7800F2E772} '

FOLDERID\_ImplicitAppShortcuts : TGUID =  
' {BCB5256F-79F6-4CEE-B725-DC34E402FD46} '

FOLDERID\_InternetCache : TGUID =  
' {352481E8-33BE-4251-BA85-6007CAEDCF9D} '

FOLDERID\_InternetFolder : TGUID =  
' {4D9F7874-4E0C-4904-967B-40B0D20C3E4B} '

```
FOLDERID_Libraries : TGUID =
    '{1B3EA5DC-B587-4786-B4EF-BD1DC332AEAE}'

FOLDERID_Links : TGUID = '{BFB9D5E0-C6A9-404C-B2B2-AE6DB6AF4968}'

FOLDERID_LocalAppData : TGUID =
    '{F1B32785-6FBA-4FCF-9D55-7B8E7F157091}'

FOLDERID_LocalAppDataLow : TGUID =
    '{A520A1A4-1780-4FF6-BD18-167343C5AF16}'

FOLDERID_LocalDocuments : TGUID =
    '{F42EE2D3-909F-4907-8871-4C22FC0BF756}'

FOLDERID_LocalDownloads : TGUID =
    '{7D83EE9B-2244-4E70-B1F5-5393042AF1E4}'

FOLDERID_LocalizedResourcesDir : TGUID =
    '{2A00375E-224C-49DE-B8D1-440DF7EF3DDC}'

FOLDERID_LocalMusic : TGUID =
    '{A0C69A99-21C8-4671-8703-7934162FCF1D}'

FOLDERID_LocalPictures : TGUID =
    '{0DDD015D-B06C-45D5-8C4C-F59713854639}'

FOLDERID_LocalVideos : TGUID =
    '{35286A68-3C57-41A1-BBB1-0EAE73D76C95}'

FOLDERID_Music : TGUID = '{4BD8D571-6D19-48D3-BE97-422220080E43}'

FOLDERID_MusicLibrary : TGUID =
    '{2112AB0A-C86A-4FFE-A368-0DE96E47012E}'

FOLDERID_NetHood : TGUID =
    '{C5ABBF53-E17F-4121-8900-86626FC2C973}'

FOLDERID_NetworkFolder : TGUID =
    '{D20BEEC4-5CA8-4905-AE3B-BF251EA09B53}'
```

FOLDERID\_Objects3D : TGUID =  
' {31C0DD25-9439-4F12-BF41-7FF4EDA38722} '

FOLDERID\_OneDrive : TGUID =  
' {A52BBA46-E9E1-435F-B3D9-28DAA648C0F6} '

FOLDERID\_OriginalImages : TGUID =  
' {2C36C0AA-5812-4B87-BFD0-4CD0DFB19B39} '

FOLDERID\_PhotoAlbums : TGUID =  
' {69D2CF90-FC33-4FB7-9A0C-EBB0F0FCB43C} '

FOLDERID\_Pictures : TGUID =  
' {33E28130-4E1E-4676-835A-98395C3BC3BB} '

FOLDERID\_PicturesLibrary : TGUID =  
' {A990AE9F-A03B-4E80-94BC-9912D7504104} '

FOLDERID\_Playlists : TGUID =  
' {DE92C1C7-837F-4F69-A3BB-86E631204A23} '

FOLDERID\_PrintersFolder : TGUID =  
' {76FC4E2D-D6AD-4519-A663-37BD56068185} '

FOLDERID\_PrintHood : TGUID =  
' {9274BD8D-CFD1-41C3-B35E-B13F55A758F4} '

FOLDERID\_Profile : TGUID =  
' {5E6C858F-0E22-4760-9AFE-EA3317B67173} '

FOLDERID\_ProgramData : TGUID =  
' {62AB5D82-FDC1-4DC3-A9DD-070D1D495D97} '

FOLDERID\_ProgramFiles : TGUID =  
' {905E63B6-C1BF-494E-B29C-65B732D3D21A} '

FOLDERID\_ProgramFilesCommon : TGUID =  
' {F7F1ED05-9F6D-47A2-AAAE-29D317C6F066} '

FOLDERID\_ProgramFilesCommonX64 : TGUID =  
' {6365D5A7-0F0D-45E5-87F6-0DA56B6A4F7D} '

FOLDERID\_ProgramFilesCommonX86 : TGUID =  
' {DE974D24-D9C6-4D3E-BF91-F4455120B917}'

FOLDERID\_ProgramFilesX64 : TGUID =  
' {6D809377-6AF0-444B-8957-A3773F02200E}'

FOLDERID\_ProgramFilesX86 : TGUID =  
' {7C5A40EF-A0FB-4BFC-874A-C0F2E0B9FA8E}'

FOLDERID\_Programs : TGUID =  
' {A77F5D77-2E2B-44C3-A6A2-ABA601054A51}'

FOLDERID\_Public : TGUID =  
' {DFDF76A2-C82A-4D63-906A-5644AC457385}'

FOLDERID\_PublicDesktop : TGUID =  
' {C4AA340D-F20F-4863-AFEF-F87EF2E6BA25}'

FOLDERID\_PublicDocuments : TGUID =  
' {ED4824AF-DCE4-45A8-81E2-FC7965083634}'

FOLDERID\_PublicDownloads : TGUID =  
' {3D644C9B-1FB8-4F30-9B45-F670235F79C0}'

FOLDERID\_PublicGameTasks : TGUID =  
' {DEBF2536-E1A8-4C59-B6A2-414586476AEA}'

FOLDERID\_PublicLibraries : TGUID =  
' {48DAF80B-E6CF-4F4E-B800-0E69D84EE384}'

FOLDERID\_PublicMusic : TGUID =  
' {3214FAB5-9757-4298-BB61-92A9DEAA44FF}'

FOLDERID\_PublicPictures : TGUID =  
' {B6EBFB86-6907-413C-9AF7-4FC2ABF07CC5}'

FOLDERID\_PublicRingtones : TGUID =  
' {E555AB60-153B-4D17-9F04-A5FE99FC15EC}'

FOLDERID\_PublicUserTiles : TGUID =  
' {0482AF6C-08F1-4C34-8C90-E17EC98B1E17}'

```

FOLDERID_PublicVideos : TGUID =
    '{2400183A-6185-49FB-A2D8-4A392A602BA3}'

FOLDERID_QuickLaunch : TGUID =
    '{52A4F021-7B75-48A9-9F6B-4B87A210BC8F}'

FOLDERID_Recent : TGUID =
    '{AE50C081-EBD2-438A-8655-8A092E34987A}'

FOLDERID_RecordedCalls : TGUID =
    '{2F8B40C2-83ED-48EE-B383-A1F157EC6F9A}'

FOLDERID_RecordedTVLibrary : TGUID =
    '{1A6FDBA2-F42D-4358-A798-B74D745926C5}'

FOLDERID_RecycleBinFolder : TGUID =
    '{B7534046-3ECB-4C18-BE4E-64CD4CB7D6AC}'

FOLDERID_ResourceDir : TGUID =
    '{8AD10C31-2ADB-4296-A8F7-E4701232C972}'

FOLDERID_RetailDemo : TGUID =
    '{12D4C69E-24AD-4923-BE19-31321C43A767}'

FOLDERID_Ringtones : TGUID =
    '{C870044B-F49E-4126-A9C3-B52A1FF411E8}'

FOLDERID_RoamedTileImages : TGUID =
    '{AAA8D5A5-F1D6-4259-BAA8-78E7EF60835E}'

FOLDERID_RoamingAppData : TGUID =
    '{3EB685DB-65F9-4CF6-A03A-E3EF65729F3D}'

FOLDERID_RoamingTiles : TGUID =
    '{00BCFC5A-ED94-4E48-96A1-3F6217F21990}'

FOLDERID_SampleMusic : TGUID =
    '{B250C668-F57D-4EE1-A63C-290EE7D1AA1F}'

FOLDERID_SamplePictures : TGUID =
    '{C4900540-2379-4C75-844B-64E6FAF8716B}'

```

```
FOLDERID_SamplePlaylists : TGUID =
    '{15CA69B3-30EE-49C1-ACE1-6B5EC372AFB5}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SampleVideos : TGUID =
    '{859EAD94-2E85-48AD-A71A-0969CB56A6CD}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SavedGames : TGUID =
    '{4C5C32FF-BB9D-43B0-B5B4-2D72E54EAAA4}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SavedPictures : TGUID =
    '{3B193882-D3AD-4EAB-965A-69829D1FB59F}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SavedPicturesLibrary : TGUID =
    '{E25B5812-BE88-4BD9-94B0-29233477B6C3}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SavedSearches : TGUID =
    '{7D1D3A04-DEBB-4115-95CF-2F29DA2920DA}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Screenshots : TGUID =
    '{B7BEDE81-DF94-4682-A7D8-57A52620B86F}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SearchHistory : TGUID =
    '{0D4C3DB6-03A3-462F-A0E6-08924C41B5D4}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SearchHome : TGUID =
    '{190337D1-B8CA-4121-A639-6D472D16972A}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SearchTemplates : TGUID =
    '{7E636BFE-DFA9-4D5E-B456-D7B39851D8A9}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SEARCH_CSC : TGUID =
    '{EE32E446-31CA-4ABA-814F-A5EBD2FD6D5E}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SEARCH_MAPI : TGUID =
    '{98EC0E18-2098-4D44-8644-66979315A281}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SendTo : TGUID =
    '{8983036C-27C0-404B-8F08-102D10DCFD74}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SidebarDefaultParts : TGUID =
    '{7B396E54-9EC5-4300-BE0A-2482EBAE1A26}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SidebarParts : TGUID =
    '{A75D362E-50FC-4FB7-AC2C-A8BEAA314493}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SkyDrive : TGUID =
    '{A52BBA46-E9E1-435F-B3D9-28DAA648C0F6}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SkyDriveCameraRoll : TGUID =
    '{767E6811-49CB-4273-87C2-20F355E1085B}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SkyDriveDocuments : TGUID =
    '{24D89E24-2F19-4534-9DDE-6A6671FBB8FE}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SkyDriveMusic : TGUID =
    '{C3F2459E-80D6-45DC-BFEF-1F769F2BE730}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SkyDrivePictures : TGUID =
    '{339719B5-8C47-4894-94C2-D8F77ADD44A6}'
```

```
FOLDERID_StartMenu : TGUID =
    '{625B53C3-AB48-4EC1-BA1F-A1EF4146FC19}'
```

```
FOLDERID_StartMenuAllPrograms : TGUID =
    '{F26305EF-6948-40B9-B255-81453D09C785}'
```

```
FOLDERID_Startup : TGUID =
    '{B97D20BB-F46A-4C97-BA10-5E3608430854}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SyncManagerFolder : TGUID =
    '{43668BF8-C14E-49B2-97C9-747784D784B7}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SyncResultsFolder : TGUID =
    '{289A9A43-BE44-4057-A41B-587A76D7E7F9}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SyncSetupFolder : TGUID =
    '{0F214138-B1D3-4A90-BBA9-27CBC0C5389A}'
```

```
FOLDERID_System : TGUID =
    '{1AC14E77-02E7-4E5D-B744-2EB1AE5198B7}'
```

```
FOLDERID_SystemX86 : TGUID =
    '{D65231B0-B2F1-4857-A4CE-A8E7C6EA7D27}'
```

```

FOLDERID_Templates : TGUID =
    '{A63293E8-664E-48DB-A079-DF759E0509F7}'

FOLDERID_UserPinned : TGUID =
    '{9E3995AB-1F9C-4F13-B827-48B24B6C7174}'

FOLDERID_UserProfiles : TGUID =
    '{0762D272-C50A-4BB0-A382-697DCD729B80}'

FOLDERID_UserProgramFiles : TGUID =
    '{5CD7AEE2-2219-4A67-B85D-6C9CE15660CB}'

FOLDERID_UserProgramFilesCommon : TGUID =
    '{BCBD3057-CA5C-4622-B42D-BC56DB0AE516}'

FOLDERID_UsersFiles : TGUID =
    '{F3CE0F7C-4901-4ACC-8648-D5D44B04EF8F}'

FOLDERID_UsersLibraries : TGUID =
    '{A302545D-DEFF-464B-ABE8-61C8648D939B}'

FOLDERID_Videos : TGUID =
    '{18989B1D-99B5-455B-841C-AB7C74E4DDFC}'

FOLDERID_VideosLibrary : TGUID =
    '{491E922F-5643-4AF4-A7EB-4E7A138D8174}'

FOLDERID_Windows : TGUID =
    '{F38BF404-1D43-42F2-9305-67DE0B28FC23}'

KF_FLAG_CREATE = DWORD($8000)

KF_FLAG_DEFAULT = DWORD(0)

```

## 88.3 Procedures and functions

### 88.3.1 ConvertCSIDLtoFOLDERID

Declaration: function ConvertCSIDLtoFOLDERID(CSIDL: Integer; out FOLDERID: TGUID)  
: Boolean

Visibility: default



### 88.3.2 ConvertFOLDERIDtoCSIDL

**Declaration:** `function ConvertFOLDERIDtoCSIDL(const FOLDERID: TGUID;  
out CSIDL: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

### 88.3.3 GetWindowsSpecialDir

Synopsis: Get the location of a special directory.

**Declaration:** `function GetWindowsSpecialDir(ID: Integer; CreateIfNotExists: Boolean)  
: string  
function GetWindowsSpecialDir(const GUID: TGUID;  
CreateIfNotExists: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetWindowsSpecialDir` can be used to to get the path of special folders on the Windows system. The locations are identified using one of the `CSIDL_*` constants. If the ID of a location is or-ed with the `CSIDL_FLAG_CREATE` constant, then the directory will be created if it didn't exist yet (and the user has sufficient rights to do so).

**Errors:** On error, an empty string is returned.

### 88.3.4 GetWindowsSpecialDirUnicode

**Declaration:** `function GetWindowsSpecialDirUnicode(ID: Integer;  
CreateIfNotExists: Boolean)  
: UnicodeString  
function GetWindowsSpecialDirUnicode(const GUID: TGUID;  
CreateIfNotExists: Boolean)  
: UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

### 88.3.5 GetWindowsSystemDirectory

**Declaration:** `function GetWindowsSystemDirectory : string`

Visibility: default

### 88.3.6 GetWindowsSystemDirectoryUnicode

**Declaration:** `function GetWindowsSystemDirectoryUnicode : UnicodeString`

Visibility: default

## Chapter 89

# Reference for unit 'x86'

### 89.1 Used units

Table 89.1: Used units by unit 'x86'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">137</a>

### 89.2 Overview

The x86 unit contains some of the routines that were present in the 1.0.X Linux unit, and which were Intel (PC) architecture specific.

These calls have been preserved for compatibility, but should be considered deprecated: they are not portable and may not even work on future Linux versions.

### 89.3 Procedures and functions

#### 89.3.1 fpIOperm

Synopsis: Set permission on IO ports

Declaration: `function fpIOperm(From: Cardinal; Num: Cardinal; Value: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpIOperm` sets permissions on `Num` ports starting with port `From` to `Value`. The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value otherwise.

Note:

- This works ONLY as root.
- Only the first `0x03ff` ports can be set.
- When doing a `FpFork` ([185](#)), the permissions are reset. When doing a `FpExecVE` ([182](#)) they are kept.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `FpGetErrno` ([188](#))

### 89.3.2 fpIoPL

Synopsis: Set I/O privilege level

Declaration: `function fpIoPL(Level: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpIoPL` sets the I/O privilege level. It is intended for completeness only, one should normally not use it.

### 89.3.3 ReadPort

Synopsis: Read data from a PC port

Declaration: `procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: Byte)`  
`procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadPort` reads one Byte, Word or Longint from port `Port` into `Value`.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (2153) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (2153), `ReadPortB` (2154), `ReadPortW` (2155), `ReadPortL` (2155), `WritePort` (2155), `WritePortB` (2156), `WritePortL` (2156), `WritePortW` (2156)

### 89.3.4 ReadPortB

Synopsis: Read bytes from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortB(Port: LongInt) : Byte`  
`procedure ReadPortB(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortB` reads `Count` bytes from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` bytes.

The functional form of `ReadPortB` reads 1 byte from port `B` and returns the byte that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (2153) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (2153), `ReadPort` (2154), `ReadPortW` (2155), `ReadPortL` (2155), `WritePort` (2155), `WritePortB` (2156), `WritePortL` (2156), `WritePortW` (2156)

### 89.3.5 ReadPortL

Synopsis: Read longints from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortL(Port: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`procedure ReadPortL(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortL` reads `Count` longints from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` Longints.

The functional form of `ReadPortL` reads 1 longint from port `B` and returns the longint that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (2153) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (2153), `ReadPort` (2154), `ReadPortW` (2155), `ReadPortB` (2154), `WritePort` (2155), `WritePortB` (2156), `WritePortL` (2156), `WritePortW` (2156)

### 89.3.6 ReadPortW

Synopsis: Read Words from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortW(Port: LongInt) : Word`  
`procedure ReadPortW(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortW` reads `Count` words from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` words.

The functional form of `ReadPortW` reads 1 word from port `B` and returns the word that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (2153) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (2153), `ReadPort` (2154), `ReadPortB` (2154), `ReadPortL` (2155), `WritePort` (2155), `WritePortB` (2156), `WritePortL` (2156), `WritePortW` (2156)

### 89.3.7 WritePort

Synopsis: Write data to PC port

Declaration: `procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WritePort` writes `Value` – 1 byte, `Word` or longint – to port `Port`.

**Remark** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the `FpIOPerm` (2153) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(2153\)](#), [WritePortB \(2156\)](#), [WritePortL \(2156\)](#), [WritePortW \(2156\)](#), [ReadPortB \(2154\)](#), [ReadPortL \(2155\)](#), [ReadPortW \(2155\)](#)

### 89.3.8 WritePortB

**Synopsis:** Write byte to PC port

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortB(Port: LongInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure WritePortB(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the [FpIOPerm \(2153\)](#) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(2153\)](#), [WritePort \(2155\)](#), [WritePortL \(2156\)](#), [WritePortW \(2156\)](#), [ReadPortB \(2154\)](#), [ReadPortL \(2155\)](#), [ReadPortW \(2155\)](#)

### 89.3.9 WritePortL

**Synopsis:** Write longint to PC port.

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortL(Port: LongInt; Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure WritePortL(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the [FpIOPerm \(2153\)](#) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(2153\)](#), [WritePort \(2155\)](#), [WritePortB \(2156\)](#), [WritePortW \(2156\)](#), [ReadPortB \(2154\)](#), [ReadPortL \(2155\)](#), [ReadPortW \(2155\)](#)

### 89.3.10 WritePortW

**Synopsis:** Write Word to PC port

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortW(Port: LongInt; Value: Word)`  
`procedure WritePortW(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the `FpIOPerm` (2153) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

**See also:** `FpIOPerm` (2153), `WritePort` (2155), `WritePortL` (2156), `WritePortB` (2156), `ReadPortB` (2154), `ReadPortL` (2155), `ReadPortW` (2155)